

*The University Library
Leeds*



*Medical and Dental
Library*

1940 HENRY W.
NEW LIBRARY
200 400
BY ARRANGEMENT



30106

004170410

Pathology
H-01
Histology Store

LEADS & WEST - KING
MEDICAL SURGICAL SOCIETY

THEORY AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE

EDS AND ST. L'NG
MEDICO-CHIRURGICAL SOCIET

THE

THEORY AND PRACTICE

OF

MEDICINE

BY

FREDERICK T. *[Signature]* ROBERTS, M.D., B.Sc., F.R.C.P.,

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE; PROFESSOR OF MATERIA MEDICA AND THERAPEUTICS, AND OF CLINICAL MEDICINE, AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE; PHYSICIAN TO UNIVERSITY COLLEGE HOSPITAL; CONSULTING PHYSICIAN TO BROMPTON HOSPITAL FOR CONSUMPTION AND DISEASES OF THE CHEST; LATE EXAMINER IN MEDICINE AT THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, AND FOR THE CONJOINT BOARD; VICE-PRESIDENT OF THE MEDICAL SOCIETY OF LONDON, ETC. ETC.

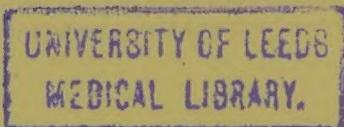
NINTH EDITION

LONDON

H. K. LEWIS, 136 GOWER STREET

1894

LONDON :
PRINTED BY H. K. LEWIS,
136, GOWER STREET.



601903

TO

SIR WILLIAM JENNER, BART.,

K.C.B., D.C.L., M.D., F.R.S., ETC.,

THIS WORK IS DEDICATED

AS A

TOKEN OF ESTEEM AND ADMIRATION, AND IN GRATEFUL
REMEMBRANCE OF MANY ACTS OF KINDNESS

BY

THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE TO THE NINTH EDITION.

THE present edition has been carefully revised throughout, and many parts have been re-written, while several subjects which have come into recent prominence are now discussed for the first time. I have also thought it desirable to alter the arrangement of the work in some respects.

There are two points to which I desire to draw particular attention. First, Bacteriology having now assumed such an important position in relation to practical medicine, this subject has received special consideration, both from its general aspect, and in connection with individual diseases. Secondly, I have prepared new sections dealing with the General Therapeutics of the principal systems and organs of the body, which I venture to think will be found useful as a preliminary introduction to the study of the symptoms and diseases belonging to each, as well as in their practical treatment.

I desire to express my cordial thanks to my friends, Dr. VIVIAN POORE, Dr. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, Dr. F. W. MOTT, and Mr. JOHN HAROLD for valuable assistance.

I can only hope that this, the ninth, edition of my work may be found as acceptable with Students and Practitioners of Medicine as its predecessors.

THE AUTHOR.

102, HARLEY STREET,

October, 1894.

CONTENTS.

SECTION I.

CHAP.			PAGE
I.	Introduction—Objects and Methods of Study		1
II.	Ætiology or Causation of Disease		4
III.	Symptomatology or Semeiology—Clinical History—Diagnosis—Prognosis		11
IV.	Treatment or Therapeutics		21
V.	Abnormal Conditions of the Blood and Circulation—General Hyperæmia or Plethora—General Venous Stagnation—Cyanosis—Local Hyperæmia or Congestion—General Anæmia—Chlorosis—Local Anæmia or Ischaemia—Vaso-motor Disorders—Embolism and Thrombosis		25
VI.	Dropsy—Hydrops		45
VII.	Hæmorrhage—Hæmophilia—Hæmorrhagic Diathesis		53
VIII.	Inflammation		60
IX.	Alterations in Nutrition and Growth—Hypertrophy—Atrophy		73
X.	Degenerations—Fatty—Parenchymatous or Granular—Vitreous—Mineral or Calcareous—Fibroid—Pigmentary—Mucoid—Colloid—Albuminoid or Lardaceous Disease		77
XI.	Clinical Thermometry		89
XII.	Pyrexia—Fever		95
XIII.	Contagion—Immunity—Epidemics		115

SECTION II.

I. GENERAL DISEASES.

I.	Simple Continued Fever—Febricula—Weil's Disease	130
II.	Typhus Fever	131
III.	Typhoid or Enteric Fever—Pythogenic Fever—Abdominal Typhus	140
IV.	Relapsing Fever—Famine Fever	158
V.	Scarlatina—Scarlet Fever	162
VI.	Rubeola—Morbilli—Measles	171
VII.	Rötheln—Rubeola Notha—Epidemic Roseola—German Measles	175
VIII.	Variola—Small-pox	177
IX.	Vaccinia—Cow-pox	189
X.	Varicella—Chicken-pox	193
XI.	Erysipelas—The Rose—St. Anthony's Fire	194
XII.	Septicæmia and Pyæmia	200
XIII.	Diphtheria	203
XIV.	Mumps—Idiopathic Parotitis	217
XV.	Whooping- or Hooping-Cough—Pertussis	219
XVI.	Influenza—Epidemic Catarrh	223
XVII.	Epidemic or Asiatic Cholera—Cholera Morbus	228
XVIII.	Dysentery—Bloody Flux	239
XIX.	Glanders and Farcy—Equinia	247
XX.	Malignant Pustule—Anthrax—Charbon—Wool Sorter's Disease	250

CHAP.		PAGE
XXI.	Rabies—Hydrophobia	254
XXII.	Tetanus—Lock-jaw	258
XXIII.	Pestis—Plague	261
XXIV.	Yellow Fever	263
XXV.	Cerebro-Spinal Fever—Epidemic Cerebro-Spinal Meningitis	266
XXVI.	Malarial or Paludal Fevers—Malaria or Marsh-Miasm—Malarial Diseases—Intermittent Fever or Ague—Remittent and Continuous Malarial Fever—Pernicious or Malignant Fever—Malarial Cachexia—Masked Intermittent	268
XXVII.	Dengue or Dandy Fever—Beriberi—Malta Fever—Actinomycosis—Trichinosis	282
XXVIII.	Constitutional Syphilis	289
XXIX.	Tuberculosis—Acute Miliary Tuberculosis	296
XXX.	Rheumatism—Acute Articular Rheumatism—Rheumatic Fever—Chronic Articular Rheumatism—Muscular and Tendinous Rheumatism or Myalgia—Gonorrhœal Rheumatism or Synovitis—Rheumatoid Arthritis—Arthritis Deformans—Osteo-Arthritis	310
XXXI.	Gout—Podagra	326
XXXII.	Scorbutus—Scurvy	339
XXXIII.	Purpura—Morbus Maculosus	343
XXXIV.	General Diseases affecting the Osseous System—Rachitis—Rickets—Mollities Ossium or Osteo-Malacia—Acromegaly	346
XXXV.	Malignant Growths—Carcinoma—Cancer	359

II. LOCAL DISEASES.

I.	Diseases of the Mouth, Tongue, and Salivary Glands—Stomatitis—Acute Glossitis—Chronic Glossitis and Allied Conditions—Ulcers of the Mouth and Tongue—Symptomatic Parotitis or Parotid Bubo—Disorders of Saliva—Salivation or Ptyalism—Xerostomia	364
II.	Diseases of the Throat—Acute Inflammatory Affections—Ulceration—Chronic Affections—Retro-pharyngeal Abscess—Cellulitis of the Neck—Angina Ludovici	377
III.	Diseases of the Oesophagus—Acute Oesophagitis—Perforation and Rupture—Functional Disorders—Chronic Organic Diseases	391
IV.	Diseases of the Respiratory Organs—Clinical Phenomena—Physical Examination—Of the Larynx and Trachea—Of the Chest	400
V.	General Therapeutics of the Respiratory System	427
VI.	On Respiratory Symptoms—Dyspnœa—Apnoea—Cough—Expectoration—Hæmoptysis	431
VII.	Catarrh—Coryza—A Cold	437
VIII.	Diseases of the Larynx and Trachea—Acute Laryngitis and Tracheitis—Chronic Laryngitis or Laryngeal Catarrh—Tuberculosis of the Larynx and Trachea—Syphilitic Disease—Morbid Growths—Functional or Nervous Affections	440
IX.	Diseases of the Bronchi—Acute Bronchitis—Chronic Bronchitis or Bronchial Catarrh—Plastic or Croupous Bronchitis—Dilatation of the Bronchi or Bronchiectasis	462
X.	Pulmonary Congestion—Œdema—Hæmorrhage	474
XI.	Acute Pneumonia or Inflammation of the Lungs—Acute Croupous Pneumonia—Catarrhal Pneumonia—Broncho-pneumonia	478
XII.	Chronic Interstitial Pneumonia—Cirrhosis of the Lung—Fibroid Phthisis	491
XIII.	Gangrene of the Lung	493
XIV.	Emphysema of the Lungs—Vesicular—Interlobular or Interstitial	495
XV.	Asthma—Bronchial Asthma—Diaphragmatic Asthma	503
XVI.	Atelectasis—Pulmonary Collapse and Compression	509
XVII.	Pulmonary Phthisis or Consumption—Acute Phthisis—Chronic Phthisis	511
XVIII.	Morbid Growths in the Lungs—Cancer or Malignant Disease—Syphilitic Disease—Rare Morbid Formations—Hydatids	538

CHAP.	PAGE
XIX. Diseases of the Pleura—Acute Pleurisy—Empyema—Chronic Pleurisy—Peripleuritis—Hydrothorax—Hæmorthorax—Pneumothorax—Hydro- and Pyo-pneumothorax—Malignant Disease	542
XX. Diseases of the Circulatory Organs—Clinical Phenomena connected with Heart, Arteries, and Veins—Physical Examination of the Circulatory Organs	561
XXI. General Therapeutics of the Circulatory System.	588
XXII. Symptoms and Functional Disorders connected with the Heart—Disordered Cardiac Action—Palpitation—Syncope—Angina Pectoris	591
XXIII. Diseases of the Pericardium—Acute Pericarditis—Chronic Pericarditis—Adherent Pericardium—Hydro-pericardium—Pericardial Haemorrhage—Pneumo-pericardium	600
XXIV. Acute Diseases and Sudden Lesions of the Heart—Acute Endocarditis—Acute Myocarditis—Acute Degenerations—Rupture of the Heart	609
XXV. Chronic Diseases of the Heart—Affections of the Valves and Orifices—Enlargement of the Heart—Hypertrophy—Dilatation—Atrophy—Fatty Disease—Connective-tissue Hypertrophy and Fibroid Disease—Peculiar Degenerations—New Growths—Cardiac Aneurism—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	618
XXVI. Congenital Malpositions and Malformations of the Heart and Great Vessels	646
XXVII. Diseases of the Arteries	650
XXVIII. Internal Aneurisms—Thoracic Aneurism—Abdominal Aneurism	654
XXIX. On certain forms of Thrombosis—Cardiac Thrombosis—Thrombosis of the Pulmonary Artery—Of the Systemic Veins—Phlegmasia Dolens—Of the Arteries	663
XXX. Raynaud's Disease—Local Syncope and Asphyxia	667
XXXI. Diseases of the Mediastinum	669
XXXII. Clinical Examination of the Abdomen—General Eulargements—Local Enlargements	671
XXXIII. Diseases of the Peritoneum—Acute Peritonitis—Chronic Peritonitis—Morbid Growths in the Peritoneum—Abdominal Perforations and Ruptures—Ascites or Dropsy of the Peritoneum	676
XXXIV. Diseases of the Stomach and Intestines—Clinical Characters and Investigation	692
XXXV. General Therapeutics of the Stomach and Intestines	696
XXXVI. On certain Gastric Symptoms and Functional Disorders—Gastrodynia or Gastralgia—Spasm or Cramp of the Stomach—Vomiting—Hæmatemesis	700
XXXVII. Dyspepsia—Indigestion.	707
XXXVIII. Acute Gastritis—Acute Gastric Catarrh	716
XXXIX. Chronic Diseases of the Stomach—Chronic Gastritis or Gastric Catarrh—Fibroid Disease—Atrophy and Degeneration—Ulcer—Cancer—Pyloric Obstruction—Dilatation of the Stomach—Pyloric Incompetence—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	719
XL. On Intestinal Symptoms and Functional Disorders—Enteralgia—Intestinal Colic—Constipation—Diarrhoea—Melæna	733
XLI. Inflammation of the Intestines—Intestinal or Euteric Catarrh—Enteritis—Duodenitis—Colitis	742
XLII. Perityphlitis—Typhlitis—Appendicitis—Appendicular Colic	747
XLIII. Intestinal New Formations and Ulcerations—Cancer—Tubercle—Tubercular Ulceration—Albuminoid Disease	753
XLIV. Intestinal Obstruction	757
XLV. Intestinal Worms—Helminthiasis	765
XLVI. Diseases of the Liver and its Appendages—Clinical Phenomena and Investigation—General Therapeutics	774
XLVII. On Hepatic Symptoms—Hepatalgia—Jaundice—Icterus	778
XLVIII. Congestion or Hyperæmia of the Liver	784
XLIX. Acute Inflammatory Diseases of the Liver—Hepatic Abscess—Suppurative Pyle-phlebitis—Perihepatitis—Inflammation of the Bile-ducts—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	785

CHAP.		PAGE
L.	Acute Yellow Atrophy	791
LI.	Chronic Diseases of the Liver—Hypertrophy and Atrophy—Fatty Liver—Albuminoid Liver—Hydatid Tumour of the Liver—Malignant Disease—Cirrhosis of the Liver—Syphilitic Disease—Miscellaneous Affections—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	793
LI.II.	Affections of the Gall-bladder	813
LI.III.	Gall-stones - Biliary Calculi—Cholelithiasis	815
LI.IV.	Diseases of the Spleen—Clinical Phenomena and Investigation—Congestion or Hyperæmia—Hæmorrhagic Infarction—Splenitis—Hypertrophy—Leucocythaemia or Leukæmia—Miscellaneous Morbid Conditions—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	819
LV.	Idiopathic, Progressive, or Pernicious Anæmia	829
LVII.	Diseases of the Pancreas	832
LVIII.	Disease of the Supra-renal Capsules—Addison's Disease	837
LIX.	Diseases of the Urinary Organs—Clinical Phenomena—Examination of Urine—Renal Tumour—Distended Bladder	840
LX.	General Therapeutics of the Urinary System	861
LXI.	On certain Abnormal Conditions of the Urine—Albuminuria—Albumosuria — Peptonuria—Pyuria — Chyluria—Filaria Sanguinis Hominis—Hæmaturia—Hæmoglobinuria	864
LXII.	Uræmia—Obstructive Suppression of Urine	875
LXIII.	Diabetes—Diabetes Mellitus—Glycosuria—Diabetes Insipidus—Polyuria	878
LXIV.	Renal Congestion—Embolism—Infarction	890
LXV.	Suppurative Inflammation in connection with the Kidneys—Suppurative Nephritis or Renal Abscess—Pyelitis—Pyonephrosis—Pyelonephritis—Surgical Kidney — Perinephritis—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	891
LXVI.	Bright's Disease—Acute Bright's Disease—Chronic Bright's Disease—Albuminoid Disease	897
LXVII.	On certain Rare Diseases of the Kidneys—Cancerous and other Growths—Tubercular Disease—Scrofulous Kidney—Parasitic Growths—Cystic Disease—Hydronephrosis—Dropsy of the Kidney—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	914
LXVIII.	Urinary Calculus and Gravel	919
LXIX.	Cystitis—Vesical Catarrh	922
LXX.	Diseases of the Absorbent System—Lymphadenoma—Hodgkin's Disease	924
LXXI.	Bronchocele—Goitre—Exophthalmic Goitre	932
LXXII.	Myœdema	936
LXXIII.	Diseases of the Nervous System—Clinical Characters—Physical and Skilled Examination	939
LXXIV.	General Therapeutics of the Nervous and Muscular Systems	951
LXXV.	On certain Head-symptoms—Headache or Cephalalgia—Vertigo or Giddiness—Menière's Disease	955
LXXVI.	Disorders of Consciousness—Delirium—Insensibility—Stupor—Coma	960
LXXVII.	Disorders affecting Sleep—Somnolence—Insomnia—Somnambulism—Somniloquism	963
LXXVIII.	Motor Disorders — Spasms — Convulsions—Eclampsia — Motor Paralysis or Palsy—Paresis—Superficial and Deep Reflexes	965
LXXIX.	Disorders of Sensation—Sensory Paralysis—Hypæsthesia—Anaesthesia — Hyperæsthesia — Dysæsthesia — Referred Pains — Tender Spots—Neuralgia—Tic Douloureux—Intercostal Neuralgia—Sciatica	979
LXXX.	Aphasia—Aphemia—Amnesia	986
LXXXI.	On Secondary and Trophic Lesions in Nervous Diseases—Facial Hemi-atrophy	989
LXXXII.	On the Localization of Nervous Diseases	993
LXXXIII.	Hemicrania—Migraine or Megrim—Sick-headache	1001
LXXXIV.	Epilepsy—Falling Sickness	1004
	Hysteria and Allied Affections—Hystero-epilepsy—Catalepsy—Trance—Ecstasy	1011

CHAP.		PAGE
LXXXV.	Hypochondriasis	1019
LXXXVI.	Chorea—St. Vitus's Dance	1020
LXXXVII.	Tetany	1025
LXXXVIII.	Alcoholism—Delirium Tremens—Chronic Alcoholism	1027
LXXXIX.	On certain Forms of Metallic-poisoning—Lead-poisoning— Saturnism—Mercurial-poisoning	1032
XC.	Diphtheritic and Allied Paralyses	1035
XCI.	Sunstroke—Insolation—Coup de Soleil	1037
XCII.	Acute Cerebral Inflammations—Simple or Primary Meningitis— Tubercular Meningitis—Acute Hydrocephalus—Acute Cere- britis or Encephalitis—Cerebral Abscess—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	1038
XCIII.	Diseases affecting the Cerebral Circulation—Cerebral Congestion or Hyperæmia—Cerebral Anæmia—Cerebral and Meningeal Hæmorrhage—Sanguineous Apoplexy—Cerebral Embolism and Thrombosis—Cerebral Softening—General Diagnosis, Prog- nosis, and Treatment	1048
XCIV.	Chronic Diseases of the Brain and its Membranes—Chronic Meningitis — Chronic Cerebral Softening — Adventitious Growth — Cerebral Tumour — Chronic Hydrocephalus — Hypertrophy of the Brain—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	1063
XCV.	Diseases of the Spinal Cord and its Membranes—Neurasthenia Spinalis—Concussion—Acute Inflammatory Diseases—Acute Spinal Meningitis—Acute Myelitis—Acute Anterior Polio- myelitis—Infantile Paralysis—Adult Spinal Paralysis—Sub- acute Anterior Polio-myelitis—Acute Ascending Paralysis— Landry's Paralysis—Spinal Congestion and Anæmia—Spinal Hæmorrhage or Apoplexy -- Chronic Spinal Meningitis — Chronic Myelitis—White Softening—Adventitious Growths in the Cord—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment .	1072
XCVI.	Sclerosis of the Nerve-centres—Diffused Cerebral Sclerosis— Locomotor Ataxy—Tabes Dorsalis—Friedreich's Disease— Ataxic Paraplegia—Primary Lateral Sclerosis—Spasmodic Spinal Paralysis—Spastic Paraplegia—Congenital Spastic Paraplegia—Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis—Secondary Lateral Sclerosis—Secondary Descending Degeneration—Disseminated or Multiple Sclerosis—General Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment	1089
XCVII.	On certain Special Nervous Diseases—Progressive Muscular Atrophy — Wasting Palsy — Cruveilhier's Paralysis — Bulbar Paralysis—Glosso-labio-laryngeal Paralysis—Syringo- myelia—Morvan's Disease—Multiple Neuritis—Peripheral Neuritis—Writer's Cramp—Pseudo-hypertrophic Muscular Paralysis—Duchenne's Paralysis—Paralysis Agitans—Shaking Palsy—Spasmodic Wryneck—Thomsen's Disease—Congenital Mystonia	1103
XCVIII.	Diseases of the Skin	1117

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Poikilocytes	26
2.	Amœboid leucocytes	62
3.	Pus-corpuscles	65
4.	Fatty degeneration of striped muscles	77
5.	Fatty degeneration of nerve-fibres	78
6.	Liver-cells, infiltrated with oil	79
7.	Cells in various stages of pigmentary infiltration	84
8.	Cells undergoing colloid degeneration	86
9.	Liver-cells infiltrated with amyloid matter	87
10.	Spirilla of relapsing fever	158
11.	Spirilla amongst red blood-corpuscles	158
12.	Spores, rods, and filaments of <i>Bacillus anthracis</i>	251
13.	Cyst of <i>Trichina spiralis</i>	288
14.	<i>Trichina spiralis</i> removed from its cyst	288
15.	Gummy growth of liver	291
16.	Koch's <i>Bacillus tuberculosis</i> in sputum from a case of phthisis	297
17.	Elements from grey tubercle	303
18.	Giant-cells	304
19.	Cells from a mammary cancer	361
20.	Primary cancer of rectum	361
21.	Epithelial carcinoma	362
22.	Oidium albicans	367
23.	Charcot-Leyden crystals in expectoration	505
24.	Cardiogram	569
25.	Sphygmographic tracing	584
26.	Enlarged sphygmographic curve	584
27.	Sarcinæ	704
28.	Diagram of intus-susception	759
29.	Cysticercus cellulosæ	766
30.	Cysticercus with head extruded	766
31.	Tænia solium	767
32.	Head and neck of Tænia solium	768
33.	Circle of hooks	768
34.	Head of Tænia medio-canellata	768
35.	Head of Bothriocephalus latus	769
36.	Bothriocephalus latus	769
37.	Ascaris lumbricoides	769
38.	Oxyuris vermicularis	770
39.	Trichocephalus dispar	771
40.	Hydatids	795
41.	Echinococci	796
42.	Enchinococcus viewed transversely	796
43.	Circle of hooklets, and separate hooklets	796
44.	Uric acid crystals	853
45.	Urates	853

FIG.	PAGE
46. Oxalate of lime crystals	854
47. Crystals of phosphates	854
48. Cystin	855
49. Epithelium from vagina, bladder, ureter, and kidney	856
50. Pus-cells in urine	856
51. Blood-corpuscles in urine	857
52. Urinary casts	858
53. Filaria Sanguinis Hominis and its ovum	868
54. Filaria Sanguinis Hominis Diurna	869
55. Filaria Sanguinis Hominis Nocturna	869
56. Filaria Sanguinis Hominis Perstans	869

THEORY AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE.

SECTION I.

THE present edition of this work is divided into two sections, the first dealing with general principles, and with subjects pertaining to general pathology; the second with individual diseases.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.—OBJECTS AND METHODS OF STUDY.

THE study of the Science and Art of Medicine, in its full and comprehensive sense, may be defined as the study of *disease* in all its relationships. This term properly includes every deviation from the normal and healthy condition of the body or any portion of it, either as regards its structural integrity, state of nutrition, or functional activity and perfection. There is no absolute line of demarcation between *health* and *disease*, these being merely relative terms, but in ordinary language the words convey sufficiently obvious meanings. When a disease is associated with some recognizable structural lesion, it is said to be *organic*; if no such change can be detected by any method of investigation with which we are at present acquainted, it is called *functional*. Not a few object to such a distinction, maintaining that there can be no purely functional affection, but that every deviation from health must necessarily be attended with some kind and degree of organic change. In practice, however, the division is a convenient one, and will be adopted in this work. Minor complaints, whether of a structural or functional nature, are often spoken of as *ailments* or *disorders*.

It must be familiar to all that a treatise on "Medicine" does not pretend to deal with the whole range of disease, as just defined, and by common assent it is understood that its scope is limited to particular classes of subjects, as distinguished from those discussed in works on Surgery, Obstetrics, and Gynæcology. The remarkable development and multiplication of "special" branches of practice during recent years makes it increasingly difficult even to this extent to fulfil the purpose for which a general treatise of this kind is intended. For obvious reasons some of the more prominent and well-established "specialisms" must be entirely omitted; while others can only be referred to in a brief and comprehensive way. There are not a few complaints, however, often regarded as belonging to this category, which have no claim whatever to be thus classed, and of course these will be as fully considered as the limits of this work permit.

Disease requires to be studied from different aspects, which are expressed by certain general terms, and it is desirable at the outset to explain their respective meanings.

I. PATHOLOGY.—In its correct sense *pathology* has a wide and comprehensive signification, for it takes within its scope the teaching and explanation of the origin, causes, nature, and clinical history of all morbid conditions or diseases. *General pathology* is concerned with such important subjects as congestion, haemorrhage, inflammation, degenerations, fever, and other morbid processes or states, in their general aspect and relations. *Special pathology* deals with the various individual diseases which are recognized by particular names, as measles, pneumonia, or pericarditis. The application of the word “pathology” in ordinary medical language is, however, often much more restricted in its meaning than that just indicated. Thus it is commonly employed as merely signifying the explanation of the essential nature of a morbid process; of the characteristic changes associated with a particular disease; or of the immediate causation of some prominent symptom. In one or other of these limited senses we speak, for example, of the pathology of inflammation, fever, pneumonia, phthisis, endocarditis, valvular diseases of the heart, hepatic cirrhosis, dropsy, jaundice, vomiting, dyspnoea, convulsions, or coma. Not infrequently the term is used as synonymous with “*morbid anatomy*” or “*anatomical characters*,” but this is quite erroneous.

II. AETIOLOGY.—This is the branch of pathology which deals with the causation of general morbid states and individual diseases, or the influences and agencies by which they are originated.

III. SYMPTOMATOLOGY OR SEMEIOLOGY.—These terms are applied to the department of pathology which is concerned with all that pertains to morbid conditions, whether general or local, in their *clinical* relations, that is, as they are revealed in the living subject. It has to do therefore with:—1. Their *CLINICAL HISTORY*, including—(a) *mode of onset* or *invasion*; (b) *symptoms* and *physical signs* or *clinical phenomena*; (c) *course, duration, and modes of termination*; (d) *varieties and types*; (e) *complications and sequelæ*. 2. Their *DIAGNOSIS*, which signifies the recognition of the presence, seat, and nature of particular diseases, and their discrimination from other morbid states. 3. Their *PROGNOSIS*, or the judgment which is formed as to the future course and ultimate issue, both in relation to diseases in themselves, and as they occur in individual cases.

IV. TREATMENT OR THERAPEUTICS.—This important branch of Medicine deals with the general principles which guide us in combatting disease; and the measures and agents which are employed with the view of preventing or curing the different maladies, of modifying their progress, or of relieving their attendant symptoms.

V. MORBID OR PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY AND HISTOLOGY.—The structural and other recognizable changes which are associated with organic diseases come under this head, as revealed usually by *post-mortem* examination, though in some cases morbid tissues or products can be obtained for observation and investigation during life. The gross lesions associated with individual diseases may be conveniently described as their *ANATOMICAL CHARACTERS*.

A satisfactory and adequate knowledge of Medicine can only be built up by studying the subject in all the particulars just indicated. Before proceeding to learn individual diseases, it is highly desirable to have a comprehensive acquaintance with the main facts pertaining to general morbid processes, such as are usually grouped under *general pathology*. Further, it is important that all classes of diseases should receive due

attention; but especially those which are of common occurrence in ordinary practice. Students at the present day need to be particularly on their guard against being unduly attracted by complaints which are merely of scientific or pathological interest, while neglecting those with which they will have so constantly to cope during their professional life. Moreover, the evident tendency to study special branches or diseases, before having properly mastered general principles and facts, cannot be too strongly condemned. Another point worthy of note is the necessity of becoming acquainted with, and duly recognizing the pathological and clinical relations of different systems and organs to each other.

Methods of Study.—I proceed now to point out the plan according to which Medicine can be learnt most easily and satisfactorily. First, it should be studied as a *Science*, a knowledge of its *theory* being acquired, as taught in books, lectures, etc., by means of which such information and explanations are given with reference to principles and facts as can be conveyed by these methods of instruction. Secondly, it must be learnt as an *Art*, the *practice* of medicine being studied:—(i.) By personal observation and examination of actual cases of the several diseases, as exemplified in individual patients. (ii.) By intelligent and diligent attention to the different modes of *clinical instruction*, in connection with which allusion may be made to the great advantages to be derived from a thorough training in “case-taking,” under competent supervision. (iii.) By the education of those external senses which are of such essential and constant service in the investigation of diseased conditions, especially sight, touch, and hearing; and by repeated practice in the employment of the various instruments which are available for a similar purpose. (iv.) By the systematic observation and study of the morbid changes produced in the several organs and tissues. Pathological anatomy and histology have now come to occupy a very prominent place in the medical curriculum, and ample opportunities are afforded for studying this subject practically. Every student should certainly learn how to conduct a *post-mortem* examination or “necropsy” in a thorough and systematic manner; and should at least be familiar with the gross anatomical characters of the organic lesions usually met with. Up to a certain point also the practical value of microscopical and chemical examination must be recognized; but the more elaborate methods of pathological investigation belong rather to the domain of the “skilled pathologist” or “bacteriologist.”

All the methods of study just mentioned are important, though, of course, those of a practical kind are far the more essential, for anyone who relies on a mere theoretical knowledge of medicine is absolutely incompetent to enter upon its practice. Still this theoretical knowledge is not to be despised, seeing that it helps materially to clear the way for practical study, and saves a great waste of time and labour, for the student is enabled to comprehend far better what he observes, if he has mastered at least the elements of the subject, and the more information he possesses before beginning his practical work, the more likely is he to derive full and permanent benefit therefrom.

The usual fields for the study of illustrative cases of the several diseases are the wards of a hospital, and the different out-patient departments: each has its advantages and should be duly attended, the former affording examples of the acute or more serious chronic affections, the latter of the more common ailments met with in ordinary practice, and of the minor or more localized disorders not usually admitted into

hospitals. If practicable, however, it is very desirable that patients should also be visited at their own homes, so that they may be observed in the midst of those conditions which form part of their every-day life. There are certain diseases, moreover, a practical acquaintance with which is of the greatest consequence, which generally can only be studied in this way, namely, the majority of the *acute specific fevers*, which, with few exceptions, are not admitted into general hospitals, on account of their infectious nature, but it appears that in the near future medical students will have facilities for observing these complaints in special hospitals set apart for their treatment. Though it is requisite, if possible, that examples of *all* forms of disease should be seen, however rarely they may be met with, yet those which are of common occurrence should receive the chief attention, and of these the student cannot observe too many cases, in order to become familiar with all the important facts pertaining to them. There are certain special departments, such as those connected with the skin, eye, ear, and throat, which ought certainly not to be neglected at the present day ; and the necessary practical instruction and experience can be readily obtained in most general hospitals or in special institutions.

CHAPTER II.

ÆTILOGY OR CAUSATION OF DISEASE.

This is a subject of the utmost importance, for an intelligent acquaintance with Ætiology is of great value in several respects. Thus, it often gives material aid in diagnosis ; it not uncommonly throws a light upon prognosis, as the same morbid condition may differ much in its gravity according to its cause ; in most cases it affords most useful indications as regards treatment ; and, above all, it enables the practitioner to adopt preventive measures against the development or propagation of many diseases, and thus to preserve the health of the general community.

In studying ætiology, it is well in the first instance to obtain a comprehensive knowledge of the causes which are capable of producing disease. Then the subject may be regarded in its relation to the several systems and organs of the body, for it will be found that each of these is, as a rule, acted upon by a limited range of influences, which tend more or less directly to injure it. This statement may be illustrated by the connection which exists between atmospheric conditions and respiratory affections ; between improper food or drink and disorders of the alimentary canal ; or between excessive mental labour and brain-affections. Lastly, the causes of particular morbid conditions or diseases, whether general or local, as well as of the more prominent symptoms, must be learnt, and these are usually sufficiently definite. Some complaints can only be originated by one special cause, and to such the term *specific* is applied. In dealing with individual cases it is most desirable to obtain as clear an insight as possible into their ætiology, and in the majority of instances it will be noted that more than one cause, perhaps several, have been at work, each of which needs to be duly recognized. A complete study of causes, both individually and in their relation to particular diseases, implies an

intelligent comprehension of the mode or modes in which they produce their injurious effects. This may be obvious enough, but not uncommonly it is a matter of doubt, or a question involving much controversy.

General Aetiological Summary.—The remainder of this chapter is devoted to a general outline of the principal recognized causes of disease, but for much necessary detail the reader is referred to special works on the subject. The aetiological facts relating to individual diseases and symptoms will be subsequently dealt with in their appropriate connections.

Numerous terms have been employed for the purposes of classifying causes, but they are often very ambiguous, and are of little, if any, practical value. I will, therefore, only allude here to the division into *predisposing* and *exciting* causes, the latter under certain circumstances being also named *determining*.

Predisposing causes include those influences which bring about a condition of the system as a whole, or of some organ or part, rendering it more liable to become the seat of disease generally, or of some particular lesion. *Exciting* causes comprehend the immediate and direct agencies by which the different morbid changes are produced. The term *predisposition* is used to express the state favourable to the action of an exciting cause, and the individual in whom it exists is said to be *predisposed*. It is not to be supposed, however, that there is any distinct line of demarcation between the two classes of causes thus named; what may only predispose at one time may excite at another, and especially is this true when several influences act together and for a long period. Further, a so-called predisposing cause may only render one organ more liable to be attacked with a certain disease than another; for example, age exercises a marked influence as regards the seat of tubercle or cancer.

For the purpose of summarizing the more common causes of disease it will be convenient to divide them primarily into :—1. INTRINSIC, or those depending upon the individual, in whom they are either *inherent* or *acquired*. 2. EXTRINSIC, or those due to accidental, and chiefly external influences. So far as this is practicable, an endeavour will be made in the following remarks to indicate which may be ranked as predisposing, and which as exciting causes.

1. INTRINSIC. *a. Age.*—A number of diseases are more prone to occur at certain periods of life than at others; while some morbid conditions tend to affect different organs at different ages, or even to be limited to special tissues in a particular organ. This may often be explained by the nutritive and functional activity of the system generally, or of certain organs, being much greater at one time of life than at another, and therefore the liability either to general or local disease is more marked. Changes of structure also, in the direction of decay, not unfrequently account for the predisposition due to age, as, for example, degeneration of the vessels in advanced life rendering them brittle, and thus leading to cerebral haemorrhage. Young children and aged persons are very subject to ailments of various kinds.

b. Sex.—Females are more prone to certain affections than males, and *vice versa*; while some diseases are necessarily limited to one or other sex. This depends on the difference in the conditions of special organs in the two classes of persons, and in the length of outlets (*e.g.*, the urethra); on the functions peculiar to each sex; on the dissimilarity in habits, occupation, etc.; on the difference in constitutional strength and vigour; or on certain peculiarities in the nervous system, women being

as a rule much more sensitive and excitable, and therefore more liable to various nervous disorders. The proportion of deaths is on the whole greater among males than females.

c. General or Constitutional Condition. State of Health, Previous Illnesses, etc.—A state of general debility, whether congenital or acquired, predisposes to many diseases. Possibly the opposite condition of robustness and vigour may increase the liability to other affections. The quantity and quality of the blood have also much influence, plethoric or anaemic individuals, for example, being predisposed respectively to certain complaints. Diseases of various kinds, especially those of an acute nature, frequently predispose to or excite others, *e.g.*, the various fevers, whooping-cough, lung-affections, rheumatism, and syphilis. Certain symptoms, such as cough, particularly if neglected, may be productive of serious mischief. Habitual neglect in attending to the natural functions, especially those connected with the alimentary canal, very commonly leads to injurious results. The existence of morbid changes in certain organs or tissues may readily induce or predispose to further lesions in them, or may give rise to secondary diseased conditions in other parts. Thus a fatty or calcified state of the arteries renders them liable to be easily ruptured; cardiac diseases often set up lung-affections, and vice *versâ*: one disease of the lung or heart frequently originates another; while the secondary effects of affections of these organs upon other structures are familiar to all. Other causes of disease which may be alluded to under this head are direct loss of blood; excessive or long-continued morbid discharges; and the sudden suppression of an habitual discharge, of a chronic skin-disease, or of some local development of a constitutional disorder, such as gout.

d. Temperament.—Four principal temperaments are described, namely, the *sanguineous*, *lymphatic*, *bilious*, and *nervous*, and each is supposed to indicate a susceptibility to particular diseases, though the statements made on this matter are very contradictory, and are often without any foundation in fact. Speaking generally, the *sanguineous* temperament is believed to predispose to fevers of a sthenic type, active congestion or haemorrhage, and acute inflammations; the *lymphatic* to passive congestion, dropsy, low inflammations, and certain constitutional affections; the *nervous* to various disorders of the nervous system; and the *bilious* to digestive and hepatic derangements.

e. Idiosyncrasy.—Some individuals are affected injuriously by certain agencies, which do not at all influence others in the same way. This is the case with articles of diet, as fish or mushrooms; or with medicines, such as iodide of potassium, opium, or quinine. To this individual peculiarity the term “idiosyncrasy” is applied, and it probably has some influence in predisposing to particular diseases.

f. Hereditary predisposition.—Several diseases are supposed to be capable of transmission from parent to offspring, and with regard to some of them this belief is unquestionably well-founded, but the evidence is by no means so clear or reliable with respect to others. It must be borne in mind that members of different generations may be exposed to the same extrinsic causes of disease, and this may account for the fact that certain affections seem to run through families. Amongst the maladies or general morbid conditions more especially considered to be hereditary may be mentioned:—(i.) Certain constitutional or blood-diseases, namely, gout, rheumatism, scrofula, tuberculosis, cancer, syphilis, and the haemorrhagic diathesis. (ii.) Some affections of the nervous system,

namely, epilepsy, chorea, insanity, hysteria, hypochondriasis, neuralgia, alcoholism, apoplexy, paralysis. (iii.) Physical deformities, as well as deficiencies in connection with the special senses, such as blindness or deafness. (iv.) Early degenerations, either local or general, evidenced by degeneration of the vessels, fatty changes in organs, loss of the elasticity of the skin, premature greyness or baldness, loss of teeth, and other signs of decay. (v.) Some skin-diseases. (vi.) Emphysema and asthma. (vii.) Gravel and urinary calculus. (viii.) Diabetes. (ix.) Hæmorrhoids (?).

The morbid conditions observed in different generations of the same family need not be identical, but may be merely allied in their nature. This particularly applies to nervous affections, and to degenerations. For instance, there may be epilepsy in one generation, and insanity in the next. Again, some vicious habit in the parent may lead to disease in the offspring; thus, intemperance may undoubtedly originate certain nervous complaints. In some cases a constitutional disease in the parent, such as syphilis, may only cause the offspring to be weakly and delicate.

The transmitted disease may be actually developed in the foetus *in utero*, being then termed *congenital*; it may appear spontaneously at some period or other after birth; or it may lie dormant until brought out by an exciting cause. In some cases it is supposed to pass over one generation and appear in the next, this being called "Atavism."

Hereditary tendency to disease may unquestionably be intensified by intermarriage of those suffering from the same affection, for example, phthisis; and also by the marriage of those who are closely related, very young, or of very unequal ages. It appears to be transmitted in many cases more readily by female than by male branches of families.

The hereditary character of a disease is sometimes revealed by its development at an earlier age than is usual, of which gout is a striking instance. Families occasionally seem remarkably prone to be attacked by certain affections, and to have them with great severity, of which some of the infectious fevers afford illustrations.

g. Race.—There can be no doubt respecting the influence of race in increasing the liability to certain diseases, and *vice versa*. This is exemplified in the greater proneness of white than black people to suffer from malarial fever. The excessive prevalence of some diseases among particular races may be explained by their habits, mode of living, and place of abode.

2. EXTRINSIC. a. Causes depending on surrounding conditions.

(i.) *Atmosphere*.—The air breathed must necessarily influence greatly the state of health, and it does so in the following ways. It may be impure, because it is not sufficiently changed by proper ventilation, and therefore contains an undue amount of the products of respiration and combustion. Or it may be mixed with gases not usually present, such as those which emanate from sewers or decomposing animal or vegetable matters, or those which are given off in connection with many manufactories or other branches of industry. Suspended impurities are also constantly present more or less, for example, dust, cotton, hair, wool, unconsumed carbon, fragments of metals, arsenic, and living organisms. The atmosphere is frequently the vehicle for the transmission of specific poisons. The degree of moisture of the air is highly important, excess or deficiency in this respect often producing injurious consequences. Temperature will be noticed separately. Possibly its electrical condition, or the amount of

ozone in it, may have some influence. And, lastly, modifications in the atmospheric pressure certainly affect the health, of which we have a familiar illustration in the consequences which sometimes follow the ascent of a high mountain. Atmospheric influences may act either as predisposing or exciting causes of disease.

(ii.) *Temperature.*—Excessive or long-continued heat or cold acting upon the general system is most injurious. A sudden change from one extreme to the other also often causes serious mischief; and so does exposure to cold winds, especially east wind. Even in warm weather a "chill" may give rise to disease, and this is frequently due to the patient's own carelessness, for instance, neglecting to change wet clothes, or remaining exposed to a draught when heated and perspiring. The local effects resulting from the direct action of excessive heat or cold are sufficiently familiar.

(iii.) *Amount of light and insolation.*—Those who reside or spend a considerable part of their life where little or no sunlight enters, are unquestionably below par as regards health. The amount and kind of artificial light employed has also an influence in the causation of certain forms of disease.

(iv.) *Soil.*—The chief modes in which the soil exercises its influence upon the body are by the amount of vegetable matter which it contains, capable of decomposition; by its degree of, and permeability to moisture; by its effect on the heat and light of the sun, whether absorptive or reflective; and by its chemical composition, which affects that of the water and air in the neighbourhood. Wherever there is an accumulation of decaying vegetable substances, with sufficient moisture and a certain temperature, as is the case in marshy districts, malarial affections are almost always prevalent. Clayey soils are very moist and cold. Most sandy and gravelly soils are healthy, unless they contain vegetable or other matters liable to decomposition. Those in which there is a large proportion of lime and magnesia are believed to originate goitre and renal calculus, probably by impregnating the drinking water. The sudden breaking up of soil is often attended with evil consequences.

(v.) *Sewage, House-refuse, Manure, etc.*—These are very common sources of disease, on account of the decomposing organic matters of which they mainly consist, and of the deleterious gases given off. Sewage matters in certain cases contain morbific agents of a specific kind, and promote their development or render them more virulent. These materials, or the gases which emanate from them, are particularly hurtful when they contaminate water which is used for drinking purposes.

b. Causes due to the social condition and habits of the individual, and to certain other accidental influences.

(i.) *Food.*—This may be deficient in quantity or of insufficiently nutritive quality, either habitually or only temporarily, and may thus promote or induce disease, especially in children. On the other hand the diet may be excessive, or too rich in quality. Habitual irregularity as regards meals, bolting food, or insufficient mastication from any cause are often very injurious; while the harmful effects of occasional errors in diet are familiar to all.

(ii.) *Drink.*—Intemperance in the use of *alcoholic stimulants* is a fertile source of disease, and this fact can never be ignored when investigating any doubtful case. Spirits do most harm, especially if taken at frequent intervals, strong or only slightly diluted, and on an

empty stomach. It must be borne in mind also that many of the compounds sold as beer, wines, and spirits contain highly noxious adulterations. Water, or the want of it, is a very prolific cause of disease. When this element is insufficiently supplied for cleanliness and other purposes, serious results often ensue. The habit of drinking large quantities of water, especially during meals, frequently does harm. Again, water may be the direct means of conveying various morbid agents into the system, such as noxious gases, certain salts, poisonous metals, the ova of worms, animal organic matters, particularly those contained in the excreta, vegetable matters in a state of decomposition, and specific poisons. Tea-drinking to excess is a common cause of troublesome symptoms, and its injurious effects are familiar in all classes of society. Milk may do harm if decomposed or adulterated; and it has been definitely proved to be not unfrequently the medium by which certain specific poisons enter the system.

(iii.) Certain *habits*, such as smoking or snuff-taking to excess; the abuse of narcotics, especially opium, morphine, or chloral hydrate, as well as of other drugs now commonly resorted to; and excessive indulgence in hot condiments, tend to injure the health more or less, and not uncommonly lead to serious results.

(iv.) *Clothing*.—This may be insufficient, either habitually or only from time to time; or certain regions may be inadequately protected. Thus infants and young children are frequently completely exposed about the lower part of the body, and no doubt "take cold" as a consequence. The chest is also in many persons insufficiently covered. On the other hand, individuals are not uncommonly over-clad, especially children. Clothing may also do harm by being too tight and exerting pressure, as in the case of those who wear tight stays or belts. The habit of neglecting to change wet clothes is very dangerous.

(v.) *Want of cleanliness*, domestic or personal, often induces disease. Cutaneous affections may arise from the repeated contact with the skin of various substances of an irritating character.

(vi.) *Amount of labour and exercise*.—Many persons suffer as the result of excessive and prolonged labour or exertion, whether carried on habitually or only at intervals. On the contrary, a much larger number are injured by leading a sedentary life, and taking no exercise. Various occupations furnish instances of both these hygienic errors, though they are often voluntarily indulged in apart from occupation, and at the present day there is a decided danger from the violent efforts and strain associated with athletic exercises and other forms of voluntary exertion.

(vii.) *Mental causes*.—Among these may be specially mentioned excessive intellectual effort or study, particularly if combined with deficient sleep or mental anxiety; prolonged worry; and all violent or depressing emotions, such as grief, sudden joy, deep anxiety of mind, or severe and sudden fright. They may either predispose to or excite diseases, especially those connected with the nervous system.

(viii.) *Mechanical causes*.—These constitute a very important class, especially in exciting or determining some morbid condition, owing to the direct injury or irritation which they occasion. Mechanical causes chiefly include external violence, long-continued pressure, friction, excessive use of a part, over-exertion and straining, prolonged maintenance of a fixed position, and the irritation or damage produced by foreign bodies and other solid substances. Among the last may be particularly mentioned calculi of different kinds, accumulations of faeces, parasitic

animals and plants, and particles inhaled into the respiratory organs. Occupations often act injuriously in one or more of the ways just indicated. A mechanical cause sometimes leads to the local development of a constitutional disease; thus pressure or injury may determine the formation of cancer in a particular structure.

(ix.) *Causes connected with the sexual functions.*—Venereal excesses, masturbation, and too early or frequent sexual excitement, unquestionably often give rise to serious mischief.

Such are the chief elementary causes which have to be borne in mind in ordinary practice, but it will be found that they are usually more or less combined in an individual case. On an extensive scale their influence is evident in the diversities which are observed as to the general state of health of communities, and as to the particular diseases which prevail in civilized and uncivilized countries; in different nations, and in the same country under varying modifications of government, civilization, religion, etc.; in large towns and country places, as well as in different towns or districts, and in separate parts even of limited localities; and in mountainous regions and low confined valleys. It must also be remembered that what are commonly spoken of as causes of disease, such as *climate*, *season*, and *occupation*, are in reality more or less complex, consisting, it may be, of several factors, each of which must be recognized as contributing to the general result.

Special causes of disease.—There are certain agents having a causal relation to disease which require separate notice. They are chiefly of the nature of poisons of various kinds, and produce effects which are more or less definite and constant.

1. *Chemical irritants and poisons.*—The irritant effects of certain substances, when brought into contact with the skin or a mucous surface, are well known, and some have even a caustic action. The various chemical poisons produce disorders or lesions which are more or less definite and specific in each case, and they belong both to the inorganic and organic group. Particular attention must be called to the fact that some of these poisons may gain an entrance into the body in connection with the occupation of an individual, or in some other way, without being directly administered as poisons or medicines. This is seen in the deleterious effects which are produced by lead, mercury, phosphorus, arsenic, copper, gold, and other substances. With respect to arsenic, it is important to note that certain of its compounds may be given off as a fine powder from papers used for papering rooms, being afterwards inhaled, thus giving rise to symptoms of arsenical poisoning.

2. *Causes derived from the vegetable kingdom.*—(i.) Many of the ordinary poisons are of vegetable origin, such as opium. (ii.) Parasitic plants growing in various structures of the body are frequent causes of disease, especially of skin-affections. The presence of certain vegetable organisms (*sarcina*) in the stomach is supposed occasionally to excite vomiting. (iii.) Decomposing vegetable matter often does much harm. It is particularly injurious by producing the *malaria* or *miasmatic poison*, so prevalent in marshy districts. (iv.) It is generally believed that the specific micro-organisms originating certain special diseases are of vegetable nature.

3. *Causes connected with the animal kingdom.*—(i.) Certain animals are venomous, and are capable of inflicting poisoned wounds, for example, wasps and serpents; others merely sting the skin by means of an irritating secretion. (ii.) Some animals are poisonous if taken in-

ternally, such as cantharides. (iii.) Parasites derived from the animal kingdom very commonly set up morbid conditions in the human body. The various intestinal worms, and the external parasites which infest the skin, afford familiar illustrations. (iv.) *Specific poisons.*—A number of very important diseases originate from the entrance into the system of certain specific poisons, which are transmitted from some other animal to man, or from one human being to another, for instance, hydrophobia, anthrax, small-pox, scarlatina, syphilis. These specific agents are now almost universally regarded as being of the nature of micro-organisms ; which are also believed to be the direct cause of certain other diseases, not of an infectious character. This subject will call for detailed consideration later on.

4. *Causes originating within the system.*—Some complaints are probably due to the presence of morbid agents in the blood, which have been generated within the body, as the result of perversion of the functions of digestion, assimilation, and nutrition. Gout furnishes an illustration, and once developed the malady may be hereditarily transmitted. In this connection allusion may also be made to the *ptomaines*, *leucomaines*, and other substances, which are produced by the decomposition of various foods and other organic materials, as well as during the process of digestion, and in certain special diseases. These are now looked upon as powerful poisons, which may be introduced from without, as well as developed within the body.

CHAPTER III.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY OR SEMEIOLOGY.

THE scope of this branch of medicine has already been indicated, but before proceeding to the study of the symptomatology of individual diseases, it is desirable to consider the subject somewhat more in detail from a general standpoint, under the headings :—I. CLINICAL HISTORY. II. DIAGNOSIS. III. PROGNOSIS.

I. CLINICAL HISTORY.—The expression “clinical history” may be associated with particular diseases or with individual cases. It implies generally a description of their mode of onset, symptoms, course, duration, and terminations. Many complaints have a more or less definite clinical history, if allowed to run their natural course, and thus it is not uncommon to speak of the “natural history” of a disease. There are numerous modifying influences at work, however, even in relation to affections which most clearly come under this category ; while, in a large proportion of instances, no such definite description is applicable. When we come to deal with individual cases, it need scarcely be said that very great variety is met with, but nevertheless this obvious fact is frequently forgotten, and cannot be too strongly enforced as one of the lessons taught in ordinary medical practice.

It is desirable to discuss briefly the particulars relating to clinical history, and to explain certain terms connected therewith. They may be conveniently considered under the following heads :—

1. **Mode of Invasion or Onset, Course, and Duration.**—The varieties which may be met with in these particulars are as follows :—
1. The invasion of an illness may be quite *sudden*, as often happens in

the case of apoplexy, syncope, and many forms of haemorrhage, the subsequent course necessarily differing in different instances, a rapidly fatal termination being not uncommon. 2. Frequently a disease is *acute*, coming on rapidly; being severe in its character; and of brief, or at any rate, limited duration. Many acute affections run a tolerably definite course ordinarily—for instance, the eruptive fevers and pneumonia: but irregularities are frequently observed, owing to disturbing influences, and several diseases of this class exhibit distinct *varieties* in their progress. When the onset is less rapid, and the symptoms are less intense, the illness is said to be *subacute*. 3. The great majority of complaints are more or less *chronic*, the symptoms setting in gradually and not being pronounced, at any rate at first; while the progress is slow, and often very prolonged. A chronic disease may, however, be the sequel of an acute attack; or such an attack may supervene, and is often the cause of a fatal termination in chronic cases. 4. Some diseases are characterized by *periodical* exacerbations, which come on at regular or irregular intervals, the patient being comparatively or even quite well in the meantime. Such complaints are usually chronic in their progress, but acute or sudden as regards the onset and intensity of the attacks, having a remittent or intermittent course. Epilepsy, ague, gout, and asthma will serve as illustrations of this group. It may be mentioned here that before the actual manifestation of a disease or of an attack belonging to either of the groups above indicated, symptoms are not uncommonly present, giving more or less clear intimation or warning of what is about to happen; such phenomena are termed *premonitory* or *precursory*, and they are also known as *prodromata*. The normal course of a disease is not uncommonly interrupted by one or more *relapses*; or actual *recurrence* may take place.

2. Symptoms and Modes of Clinical Investigation.—Symptoms, using the term in its widest and most comprehensive sense, include *all* manifestations of disease in living subjects or "patients," by the aid of which we not only recognize its presence, but in most cases are enabled to determine its seat and nature. They may be concisely described as *clinical phenomena*, an expression which will be found frequently employed in this work. The word *sign* is used with much ambiguity. By many it is regarded as synonymous with symptom; more correctly, in my opinion, it should only be associated with such phenomena as indicate the seat and nature of a particular disease, or, in other words, with symptoms which are more or less diagnostic. *Physical signs* may be conveniently limited to a special group of clinical phenomena, which will be referred to presently.

Since the introduction of the word "symptom," Medicine has made remarkable advances in relation to clinical investigation; and it is most important for the student to understand clearly at the outset what it includes at the present day, and what methods of examination are applicable for diagnostic purposes.

A. A large group of the manifestations of disease consist merely in subjective sensations experienced by the patient, such as pain, chilliness, itching, or fatigue; or of objective phenomena, which are at once obvious to the observer, or can be readily detected by the intelligent and unaided employment of the external senses, or, at any rate, with the help of very simple apparatus, for example, wasting, redness of the skin, local swelling, objective heat or coldness, or dropsy. To this group it might be expedient to limit the term "symptom," the two sub-divisions being respectively

named *subjective* and *objective*, but writers are not agreed on this point, and consequently such a limitation leads to confusion. Some phenomena are both subjective and objective. In this connection allusion may be made to the division of symptoms into *general* and *local*. The obvious distinction is that *general* symptoms, which are also often called *constitutional*, involve the whole body more or less, and have no definite relation to individual organs; while those of the *local* class are referred to a limited region or area, or are connected with a particular organ or system. Similar phenomena, however, may be either general or local in their extent in different cases, such as pain, itching, dropsy, wasting, or paralysis; while symptoms which are of general distribution may have a distinctly local origin, for instance, jaundice. Moreover, phenomena which are in a sense local, being more directly associated with, or evidenced by, particular structures, organs, or parts, and which it should always be the custom to note by simple methods in ordinary practice, often afford information of the highest value as to the state of the system generally, or the existence of some constitutional disease. In this connection special allusion must be made to the facial characters and expression; the bodily temperature; the pulse; the condition of the tongue, mouth, teeth, and throat; appetite and thirst; the odour of the breath; and certain states of the skin. It must further be noted that not a few conditions which are commonly spoken of as general symptoms, are in reality more or less complex morbid states, such as rigors, fever, anaemia, collapse, or the "typhoid condition."

From the foregoing remarks it will be obvious that there is no absolute line of demarcation between general and local symptoms; and it must further be borne in mind that some which fairly belong to the local category may in reality depend upon a general or constitutional condition, as is often exemplified by headache, vomiting, palpitation, or disturbance of breathing. Allusion may be here made to the terms *direct* or *idiopathic*, and *indirect*, as applied to local symptoms. They signify respectively that the phenomena noted are immediately associated with the diseased structure; or that they affect some more or less distant, it may be a very remote part, having no evident connection with the actual seat of mischief. It is very important to recognize the fact that such indirect symptoms are often met with in practice, and they are in different cases further described as *secondary*, *sympathetic*, or *reflex*, according to the explanation, real or supposed, of their occurrence.

The methods applicable for the recognition and investigation of the class of phenomena now under discussion may be summed up as (1) *Superficial* or *cursory examination*; (2) *Systematic questioning*; and (3) *Simple objective examination*.

(1.) *Superficial or cursory examination*.—It often happens that when a patient comes under notice certain symptoms are evident to the most casual observer, and at once attract attention, or they can be recognized by a very cursory examination. Such symptoms may actually reveal, or, at any rate, give a good clue to the seat and nature of a disease; while they very commonly indicate the lines along which further investigation should be conducted. Hence it is necessary to be always on the alert to detect any phenomena of this kind, and to be on the look-out for them. Not only may they be obvious to sight or inspection, but the senses of touch, smell, or hearing often thus afford information of the highest value. As illustrative symptoms or conditions may be mentioned prostration, emaciation, corpulency, anaemia, jaundice, dropsy of

various kinds, burning heat of skin, cutaneous eruptions, dyspnoea, delirium or unconsciousness, and vomiting; the odour of the sweat in acute rheumatism, and of the breath in alcoholism, diabetes, uræmia, or gangrenous conditions of the respiratory organs; and peculiar sounds associated with the act of breathing or coughing, or alterations in voice or speech.

(2.) *Systematic questioning.*—It is evident that for much necessary information concerning symptoms we must in a large number of cases rely upon what we are told by patients, or by their friends or others who are in a position to give such information. To "ask questions" for this purpose may at first sight appear to be a very simple matter, but in reality it is not uncommonly decidedly difficult. This line of investigation should always be conducted in an intelligent and orderly manner, with a definite notion of what it is desired to ascertain, and guided by a knowledge of details about symptoms which is by no means always possessed. Phenomena which are entirely subjective can only be thus made out, but certain symptoms generally recognized as belonging to this group may be verified in other ways. The sensations complained of or described by patients, though of course they should be taken into account and duly considered in every case, must be accepted with more or less caution, and they must be properly inquired into and analysed, so that their reality and actual significance may be determined. It is a matter of common observation that such sensations are very liable to be exaggerated or misrepresented, even if they exist at all; while they may be referred to parts altogether remote from the actual seat of disease. With regard to objective symptoms, it must be borne in mind that by judicious questioning we may gather much important information about many of these phenomena, in relation to details which we may have no opportunity of watching for ourselves.

(3.) *Simple objective examination.*—By this is meant the *personal* examination of patients by simple objective methods, in the first instance with reference to symptoms of which they complain, or which are evident on superficial investigation; but the fact must not be overlooked that clinical phenomena are not uncommonly present of which they are unaware, and which are not obvious at once, so that the practitioner must always be on the alert to seek for such phenomena, should there be any reason to suspect their existence. This examination implies in the main the systematic and intelligent use of the external senses, but in an ordinary and simple way, such as can be readily and efficiently carried out in daily practice. It will be convenient, however, also to include under this head the employment of such aids as the clinical thermometer, for determining the temperature; the tongue-depressor, which helps in examining the throat; and apparatus for recording height and weight—as these are in common use, and require no special training for their application in clinical investigation. Sight and touch are the senses upon which, as a rule, we rely as affording the information required, and the methods of applying them are technically termed "inspection" and "palpation," but these expressions will be more fully explained later on. But here again it must not be omitted to mention that smell and hearing are in certain cases of much value in the investigation of particular symptoms.

The phenomena to be studied by the methods now under consideration include chiefly the ordinary objective symptoms met with, but they often help in determining the reality and meaning of subjec-

tive sensations of which patients complain, such as debility, pain, or tenderness. There is one rule which should be invariably followed by the practitioner, namely, to *test the statements of patients by personal observation and investigation* in every case, so far as this is practicable, so as to verify them or otherwise, and to find out as much as possible for himself about details. To take for granted what they complain of or describe is often most misleading. These remarks may be illustrated by such symptoms as wasting, cough, spitting of blood, vomiting, local redness or swelling, and dropsy, about which patients not uncommonly give most unreliable accounts. In carrying out this process it is in many instances necessary to make the patient perform some act, such as walk, cough, speak, or execute local movements, for the purpose of studying particular symptoms. It should be noted that among the phenomena which are open to ordinary objective examination, in addition to those which are entirely external, must be reckoned morbid changes associated with certain orifices or mucous surfaces which can be easily seen or felt by the finger, such as the mouth, throat, anus and its vicinity, or vagina.

B. A second group of clinical phenomena may be made to include those to which the term *physical signs* has been more particularly applied. Some writers use this expression as synonymous with objective symptoms, but although there is no positive line of demarcation between them, the distinctive recognition of physical signs is convenient and useful, in order to emphasize the fact that they are brought out by definite methods of *physical examination*, which demand special study and much practical training, before they can be employed with any advantage in the investigation of disease. Such methods are chiefly applicable to the chest and abdomen, and by their aid we are enabled to obtain most valuable and often essential information as to the conditions of these regions and their contents. They are also of much service in the examination of the parts of the respiratory apparatus outside the chest, and of the vessels generally. They will be discussed in detail in future chapters, but in the meantime it may be stated that they include mainly *inspection*, *palpation* or *manipulation*, *percussion*, and *auscultation*. Further aids in diagnosis are sometimes employed, such as *mensuration*, *succussion*, and others, which it is not necessary to refer to more particularly at present. The point I wish to insist upon is that physical examination, in the technical sense here employed, stands on a very different footing from mere ordinary objective examination, and needs a far greater degree of skill and experience before it can be practised satisfactorily. At the same time it is well within the capacity of anyone of average ability and intelligence, who pays due attention to clinical instruction and study during the medical curriculum at a hospital. Certain instruments, such as the *stethoscope*, are usually employed as aids in the investigation, but these are of a comparatively simple kind, and can be easily mastered, while not uncommonly they may be entirely dispensed with.

In addition to what has just been stated, some writers would definitely apply the expression "physical examination" to the systematic investigation of the general condition of the body; as well as to that directed to the nervous system. At any rate, this will serve to emphasize the important facts that such investigations ought always to be carried out on a very definite plan, and that physical methods are often of great service in the process. Further, these methods are frequently applicable in the

examination of local conditions, such as a swelling or tumour, or a diseased joint. A form of physical exploration which deserves special mention is the *digital* or *manual examination* of internal parts, which can be reached by passing one or more fingers, or sometimes even the whole hand, through an external opening, such as the anus or vagina.

C. I would place in a third division the phenomena revealed by the *examination of secretions or excretions, and of morbid products or discharges of various kinds.* As illustrations may be mentioned urine, faeces, vomited matters, expectoration, fluids obtained from serous cavities or cysts, and purulent discharges. It is well known that phenomena of this nature are frequently of essential service in diagnosis, and they should always be separately dealt with. Up to a certain point this line of investigation is within the province of any well-trained practitioner, who is supposed at least to be able to note the quantity of these materials; to observe their general physical characters, with the specific gravity and reaction when required; and to examine them chemically and microscopically in an ordinary way. The more elaborate chemical analyses and advanced investigations with the microscope and other special instruments require, however, the aid of scientific experts, who are competent to carry them out in a satisfactory manner. It may be mentioned here that solid materials of a morbid nature have sometimes to be examined more or less carefully and fully for diagnostic purposes, such as calculi and other concretions, or fragments of growths removed from the body.

D. The progress of clinical medicine, more particularly during recent years, has brought into use a variety of instruments and apparatus intended for the demonstration or study of *special phenomena*, and as a class these may be conveniently placed in a separate category. It would serve no useful purpose to discuss them at length here, as they are severally considered in their appropriate connections in this work. Each is intended for some definite object or objects, and has to be specially studied and practically learnt before it can be of any value for clinical purposes. As illustrations may be mentioned the laryngoscope, rhinoscope, ophthalmoscope, endoscope, and different kinds of speculum; the cyrtometer, stethometer, spirometer, cardiograph, and sphygmograph; the hæmacytometer and hæmoglobinometer; the dynamometer, and other apparatus used in the investigation of the nervous and muscular systems; electrical apparatus of various kinds; the polariscope; and the spectroscope. Some of these instruments are now in constant employment in ordinary practice, and students are fully trained in their use; others, however, are of very limited application, and require the assistance of an expert specially skilled in carrying out the particular mode of examination which exceptional circumstances might call for.

E. Another modern clinical advance is the more extensive application of various *operative procedures* for diagnostic purposes. Amongst these may be first mentioned placing the patient under the influence of chloroform or other anaesthetic, which may itself give valuable information, but is still more important in enabling other methods of investigation to be carried out more readily and efficiently. Further examples are afforded by the special modes of examination directed to the oesophagus, stomach, and intestines; exploration of the urethra and bladder by the catheter and other instruments; the use of the exploring needle or trochar, or of the aspirateur, to determine the presence and nature of fluids; abdominal section; and nephrectomy in suspected cases of renal calculus. In this connection also allusion may be made to the inocula-

tion-method of diagnosis which has been introduced in relation to tuberculosis and other specific diseases believed to be due to micro-organisms.

General Remarks.—In relation to the groups of phenomena and methods of investigation which have just been discussed, there are certain points to which attention needs to be particularly directed. In the first place the student should make himself acquainted with the different kinds of symptoms which are met with, and should endeavour to understand their significance and pathological relations. Then it is most desirable that a definite knowledge should be acquired of the clinical phenomena which may be associated with each system and organ of the body, as well as of the plan of examination which it is most convenient to follow, before the study of its individual diseases is entered upon. In this work, therefore, an introductory clinical outline is given in each case, which may serve as a guide in this matter. In some instances the course of investigation is very simple and easily mastered; in others it is more or less difficult, or even complicated, as is well exemplified by the nervous system. Going a step further, it is obviously essential that the symptomatology of the various diseases which are definitely recognized in medical nomenclature, both general and local, should be thoroughly learnt and understood; and as a rule this branch of the subject does not present any great difficulty. When we come to deal with individual cases, however, it will be readily understood that they exhibit great variety, and are often very complicated, a number of symptoms, general and local, subjective and objective, being grouped together, associated not uncommonly with a number of physical signs, and with other phenomena detected by more special modes of examination. It not uncommonly happens that some one symptom stands out so prominently that it is popularly regarded as the disease itself, for example, jaundice, dropsy, or paralysis. For a properly trained medical practitioner to fall into such an error is, however, inexcusable, and it must be emphatically stated, and clearly understood, that any such symptom must only be taken for what it is worth, and thorough investigation should be made with the view of tracing it to its actual pathological cause or causes. At the same time it is often highly suggestive in relation to diagnosis, and may demand very definite treatment. It may here be remarked that the terms *diagnostic*, *prognostic*, and *therapeutic* are sometimes applied to clinical phenomena, and the words are in themselves sufficiently explanatory, as representing respectively those which point to the seat and nature of a disease, guide the prognosis of a case, or indicate its treatment. *Pathognomonic* is a term associated with one or more phenomena which belong to a particular complaint or condition, and no other, and which are, therefore, absolutely characteristic and diagnostic.

3. Varieties and Types.—Many diseases are liable to present more or less evident deviations from their ordinary clinical course, and these are in some instances so distinct and characteristic as to be termed *varieties*. The acute specific fevers afford familiar illustrations. A few diseases exhibit well-marked *types*, such as those due to malaria.

4. Complications and Sequelæ.—*Complications* include morbid conditions which arise during the course of a disease, but which do not usually form part of its clinical history. They may be due to the same cause; or be the direct result of the primary affection; or supervene as accidental and independent events. *Sequelæ* comprise those morbid states

which are left behind after, or are developed subsequent to the apparent cure of various affections, but as their more or less direct consequences. Complications and sequelæ are particularly observed in connection with acute diseases, such as fevers. It is very necessary to be familiar with those which are liable to develop in the several disorders, in order to be prepared for them, and to take measures with the view of preventing their occurrence.

5. **Terminations.**—From a clinical point of view a case may terminate in :—1. *Complete recovery*, which is usually gradually established, the patient passing through a period of convalescence of longer or shorter duration, but may be suddenly or very rapidly brought about. 2. *Incomplete recovery*, either a condition of impaired general health remaining, or some organ or part being permanently altered in its structure or functions: in fact, a *chronic* state of disease remaining behind. 3. *Death*, which event may take place suddenly, rapidly, or slowly. As a rule it is a complex process, the functions of all the chief vital organs being more or less involved; but often the signs of approaching dissolution are associated more especially either with the heart, respiratory organs, or brain. Death beginning at the heart is said to be by *syncope*, and it may be due either to a want of a proper supply of blood to the heart—*anaemia*; or to a loss of contractile power in this organ, from mechanical interference with its action, structural changes in its walls, or nervous disturbance—*asthenia*. In some instances, such as when death results from starvation, these two modes are combined. Death commencing in the respiratory organs is said to be by *suffocation* or *asphyxia*. This may depend upon the air inspired being unfit to aërate the blood, or, for various reasons, not entering the lungs in sufficient quantity—*apnoea*; or upon a stoppage of the flow of blood through these organs, as happens when a clot suddenly obstructs the pulmonary artery. Death beginning at the brain is said to be by *coma*, being characterized by a primary state of stupor or insensibility, which, however, is soon followed by interference with the respiratory and circulatory functions. These modes of death are merely mentioned at present, as their characteristic phenomena will demand a full description when treating of the diseases of the several organs mentioned.

II. **DIAGNOSIS.**—It cannot be too often insisted upon, that to endeavour to arrive at a *satisfactory diagnosis* ought to be the first duty of a medical practitioner in every case which is brought under his observation and treatment. Now it is necessary that those who are studying medicine should understand at the outset what a *satisfactory diagnosis* means. It implies a complete, exact, and comprehensive knowledge of the case under consideration, as regards the seat, extent, origin, and nature of *all* existing morbid conditions. Of course such a diagnosis is not always attainable, but it is what should be conscientiously aimed at, and, if the observer has acquired the knowledge indicated in the previous chapters, and conducts his investigation with sufficient care and thoroughness, a tolerably correct opinion can generally be formed. It is not an uncommon error to be content with merely ascertaining the chief symptoms present, perhaps giving a name to the group, such as *dyspepsia*; or, as already hinted, to fix upon one prominent symptom, e.g., *ascites* or *jaundice*, and to call that *the disease*, while no attempt is made to interpret the meaning of the phenomena which are observed, or to find out the morbid conditions upon which they depend. Again, when an organ is found to be diseased, it often happens that

very inadequate attention is paid to the determination of the precise locality, extent, and nature of the existing lesions; while the possibility of other organs being implicated is very liable to be overlooked, and thus the diagnosis is by no means so thorough and exact as it ought to be.

In attempting to form a diagnosis, a process of mental reasoning should be gone through, which needs to be more or less elaborate in different cases, according to their degree of difficulty, the facts elicited being passed in review, and certain conclusions founded upon them. The main questions to be decided may be thus stated:—

1. Whether there is anything wrong at all?—for it must be borne in mind that not a few persons complain when there is no actual disease, especially among those who belong to the class of malingerers.
2. Should there be indications that the patient is really ill, it is requisite to determine:—
 - a. Whether the affection is *acute* or *chronic*?
 - b. Does it belong to the class of *general* diseases, and, if so, what is its nature?
 - c. Is the mischief localized in one or more of the organs of the body, or in some particular tissue?
 - d. Should this be the case, is there merely functional disorder, or can any positive organic and structural change be detected?The seat, extent, and nature of all morbid conditions should then be made out as accurately as possible. It must not be forgotten that *local* lesions are frequently found accompanying so-called *general* diseases, such as the various fevers, and a diagnosis would be anything but complete in such affections, unless every care had been taken to ascertain the existence of any local mischief.

The exact mode of arriving at a diagnosis differs in different cases, while the degree of difficulty experienced in coming to a correct conclusion is necessarily very variable. In some instances we can make a *direct* diagnosis speedily and confidently, some combination of clinical phenomena, or some one or more pathognomonic symptoms clearly revealing the nature of the malady. Indeed, certain diseases may be evident almost at a glance to an experienced observer, when they are sufficiently pronounced. In other cases the diagnosis has to be more or less *differential*, diseases which resemble each other being called up in the mind, and discriminated from each other. This is a less simple and easy process, and a very careful consideration of all the data which are available for assisting at forming a diagnosis is often required. These data, when the patient is first seen, are:—

1. The account which is given of the general history, family history, and previous health.
2. The history of the present illness, as to its duration, probable cause, mode of invasion, and progress.
3. The clinical phenomena noted, especially those of an objective character.

Even after the fullest consideration of all these points, it is sometimes impossible to come to any definite conclusion. Under these circumstances it is very important to learn not to form a hasty opinion, but to wait and see what assistance the course of events can render in diagnosis. This rule is especially to be attended to in acute febrile cases, otherwise very serious mistakes are liable to be made. The further elements in connection with the progress of a case which may aid diagnosis are:—

4. Its clinical course, duration, and termination.
5. The phenomena observed on repeated examination under various conditions.
6. The results of treatment.

In some obscure cases a diagnosis can only be made by *exclusion*, that is, by proving the absence of all diseases which might give rise to the symptoms observed,

except one, the presence of which is therefore rather a matter of probability than actually established by any positive signs. Occasionally it is quite impossible to come to any definite conclusion as to the nature of the malady from which a patient may be suffering.

In order to render the process of arriving at a diagnosis more easy and rapid, as well as to ensure greater certainty in the opinion formed, the following points are worthy of the attention of students. They should make themselves familiar with the more characteristic clinical signs of, at least, the ordinary diseases. Further, it is very useful to be able, speedily and without difficulty, to call up in the memory the complaints which have to be discriminated from each other in any case in which a differential diagnosis is required. Therefore it is necessary to bear in mind what affections resemble each other; to have a clear knowledge of the diseases to which the several organs are liable, with their distinctive signs; and to be familiar with the pathological causes to which any very prominent symptom may be due, such as dropsy or jaundice. Lastly, in making a diagnosis it must not be forgotten that irregularities and deviations from the usual clinical course of diseases are often met with in practice; that many affections present distinct and well-marked varieties; that complications are of common occurrence; and that some serious complaints are liable to set in very insidiously, not being attended with any prominent symptoms.

III. PROGNOSIS.—To "give a prognosis" is often a matter of considerable difficulty, and in many cases it implies an amount of knowledge and tact such as can only be acquired by prolonged experience. In this connection it is only practicable to give a few general hints bearing upon the subject. In the first place it is requisite to understand generally the questions which have to be determined in forming a prognosis. These questions have reference to the progress, ultimate issue, and duration of the case, and the following include the most important:—1. Whether the disease is more or less likely or certain to terminate in death or recovery; or to continue for an indefinite period as a permanent or incurable malady, but without causing any danger to life? 2. In case of death, may this event be expected to take place suddenly or slowly, and in what way will it probably be brought about? 3. If the patient recovers, will the cure be complete, or is there a danger of some morbid condition being left behind, either a state of general ill-health or some local organic lesion remaining? 4. What will be the probable duration of the complaint? 5. What events are likely to happen in its course, such as changes in symptoms, development of new symptoms, critical phenomena, or the occurrence of complications? 6. Does its presence render the patient more amenable to other affections; or, on the other hand, does it afford protection against certain maladies? 7. May not slight symptoms observed be but signs and warnings of some more serious mischief which is likely to happen? For example, numbness, tingling, slight local paralysis, and other apparently trivial nervous phenomena may be premonitory of some grave organic lesion in the nerve-centres.

Of course it will be impossible to give a reliable prognosis unless a due knowledge has been acquired of the various points bearing upon this matter, in connection with each particular disease, such as whether it is or is not dangerous to life; its rate of mortality; usual modes of termination; ordinary duration; unfavourable symptoms; complications and sequelæ; and how it is influenced by accidental circumstances, whether

dependent upon the patient or upon external conditions. In any individual case it is necessary to try to realize distinctly what questions apply to it more particularly, as regards prognosis, before offering an opinion. Moreover, it is important always to observe due caution, to give the matter proper consideration, and to avoid anything like rashness or thoughtlessness. If there are good reasons for coming to a certain and definite conclusion, this ought to be stated confidently, and not with doubt and hesitation. On the other hand, when the prognosis is uncertain, it is a great mistake to give a positive opinion, but the state of affairs should be made as clear and explicit to those interested as circumstances permit, and the probabilities as to the result of the case pointed out, as well as the dangers which are liable to arise. It is better in doubtful cases to err in the direction of giving too hopeful an opinion rather than the opposite, especially with regard to acute diseases, as this often encourages perseverance in treatment upon which the issue may materially depend. Particular care is necessary in speaking to patients themselves about the prognosis of their case, and it should be a rule to make it appear to them as favourable as possible, due regard being paid to any dangers against which they need to be warned. At the same time the friends should be fully informed as to the exact condition of things in every instance in which the prognosis is at all grave. In a hopeless case, should the patient desire a positive opinion, it is the duty of the practitioner to give all the information required.

CHAPTER IV.

TREATMENT OR THERAPEUTICS.

THE ultimate and most important object of the study of Medicine, from a practical point of view, is to learn how to cure, relieve, or prevent the various maladies to which the human frame is liable. It needs to be particularly enforced at the present day that treatment may bring about most beneficial results, if conducted properly and according to correct principles. It must further be added, however, that in order to become competent to carry out treatment in a satisfactory manner much experience is required, as well as the constant exercise of intelligent and independent observation and thought. There is always a danger of falling into a mere routine treatment of particular diseases; or of relying too implicitly on the experience and teaching of others. These mistakes should be avoided, and each individual case ought to be considered on its own merits, for even the same disease may require very different management under different circumstances, and therefore the practitioner should be able to bring his own knowledge, discretion, and common-sense to bear upon the matter. Before commencing treatment in any case an endeavour should always be made to realize distinctly what it is intended to accomplish by its aid; and what indications are afforded as to the therapeutic measures which require to be adopted. Further, it must never be forgotten that there are limits to our therapeutic resources, and that not a few cases come under observation for which little or nothing can be done.

It is desirable to offer a few general remarks upon the **objects**, **indications**, and **methods** of treatment.

1. The **objects** which have to be kept in view in treatment may be stated as follows :—*a.* To *cure* the patient as speedily and completely as possible. This is what should properly be termed *curative treatment*, but though a reality, it is applicable to only a limited number of diseases. *b.* To *guide the progress* of a malady towards a favourable termination, when it is not directly curable, but must run a certain course, the objects being to avert death, and prevent permanent injury to health. This is generally regarded as *expectant treatment*, which may be illustrated by the treatment of many cases of the ordinary fevers, and it is very important that it should be duly recognized, as a great deal of mischief is often done by meddlesome interference, it being far better to let certain diseases take their natural course, merely watching their progress, attending to nursing and other obvious matters, and only adopting active measures when circumstances seem to require them. *c.* To *prolong life*, and render the condition of the patient as comfortable as possible, should a fatal termination be inevitable. *d.* To *remove or relieve symptoms*. The result is often merely *palliative*, but sometimes in a sense *curative*. For instance, the removal of ascites and other forms of dropsy may practically be regarded as a cure, in so far that the patient may be able, for a longer or shorter period, to follow the ordinary avocations of life, although the organic disease upon which the dropsy depends is permanent. It is, as a rule, entirely wrong in principle merely to direct treatment to symptoms, or to attempt to relieve them at the expense of the general well-being of the patient. At the same time symptoms frequently need particular attention; and in not a few cases nothing more can be done than to endeavour to mitigate them. *e.* To *prevent diseases*. *Preventive* or *prophylactic treatment* is of the utmost importance. In its principal aspects it includes attention to the general health of individuals, so as to obviate any tendency to disease; the prevention of the extension of a disease in the same person or to others; the guarding against possible complications in the course of an illness, or sequelæ; the warding-off of habitual or paroxysmal attacks, such as those of acute dyspepsia, asthma, epilepsy, or gout; and the rooting out of various maladies, especially of constitutional disorders from the members of a family, and of contagious diseases from the midst of communities. In some instances all that can be done in the way of prevention is to warn patients against actions, habits, or other causes which might prove injurious to them in relation to the disease from which they are suffering.

2. The **indications** for treatment are derived from—*a.* The *nature* and *seat* of the disease or diseases. *b.* The *atiology* of the case as a whole. *c.* The *personal peculiarities and conditions*, and the *surrounding circumstances* of the patient. *d.* The *symptoms* present, which may not only call for the adoption of certain measures, but may *contra-indicate* a line of treatment which would otherwise be suitable. *e.* The *state of the system* generally, and of the *chief organs* of the body. The condition of the lungs, heart, alimentary canal, and kidneys often influences treatment materially, an important reason for making it a rule always to investigate these organs before proceeding to any active measures.

3. The **methods** of treatment may be generally summarized in the following way :—

a. General Management—Diet—Hygiene.—It is very necessary to bring this fact into special prominence, as it is apt to be frequently forgotten, namely, that *treatment does not consist solely in the use of medicines*. In not a few cases these are not required at all, or they hold a very subordinate position in point of importance, while their beneficial action may be almost invariably assisted more or less by paying due regard to the measures to be now mentioned. Attention to *diet* is often of the greatest consequence, proper directions being given, not only as to the nature of the food and drink, but also as to its quantity, the intervals at which it should be taken, and other matters which individual cases might suggest. The use of *alcoholic stimulants* always demands the utmost care and consideration. They ought never to be recommended in an off-hand manner, or unless it is felt that they are really required; while as definite instructions as possible should be given with regard to the kind and amount of stimulant which should be taken, and other particulars, especially when it is deemed advisable to order spirits. It will often be found necessary to limit the consumption of alcoholic drinks, as habitual indulgence to excess is a common cause of ill-health. It is also essential always to keep in mind various matters connected with *general hygiene*, as these frequently need to be looked into, and have an important influence in treatment, such as the place of residence of the patient, with its surrounding conditions; habits of life; occupation; clothing; the kind and amount of exercise; and the use of baths. General rest is often a potent factor in treatment, and hence the importance or even the imperative necessity of keeping patients entirely or for a part of the day in bed, under various circumstances, by which means, moreover, warmth of the body is ensured, which is frequently indicated. In some instances the posture has to be studied in relation to treatment. The necessity for change of air and scene, or even of permanent change of climate, must be always watched for. The therapeutic value of sea-air and sea-voyages in a large number of cases is familiar to all. It should be remembered that it is the duty of the practitioner to be prepared, if required, and especially in cases of acute febrile diseases, to attend personally to questions pertaining to diet and hygiene, so as to ensure that his instructions are duly carried out. Thus it is often advisable to examine food, such as beef-tea, and to see that it is of the proper kind and properly made; also to look to the conditions of the sick-room, especially as to ventilation and cleanliness, temperature, the state of the bed, and the removal of excessive curtains or carpets. The help of a properly-trained and sensible nurse is invaluable, but in serious cases the practitioner should always assure himself that she is competent and reliable, as upon her skill and attention the ultimate issue may in a great measure depend.

b. Medicinal.—There can be no doubt as to the great advantages to be derived from the proper and judicious administration of medicinal remedies. There are a few drugs which undoubtedly exert a *specific curative* action upon certain diseases, and it is to be hoped that, as the result of the investigations which are now being made with regard to the action of medicines, many more such remedies may be discovered. For the large majority of complaints, however, no curative medicine is known, and it is particularly necessary at the present day strongly to warn those entering upon the practice of medicine against believing in the vaunted “*specifics*” for various diseases. By using remedies in different doses and in various combinations, according to scientific and rational

principles, we can modify materially the course of many affections, as well as exercise an important influence upon symptoms. It must not be forgotten that there are other modes of introducing medicines into the system besides by the mouth, especially by subcutaneous or intra-venous injection; through the skin, by means of baths, inunction, or endermic applications; by enemata or suppositories; and by inhalation.

c. Local and external applications.—These are often most serviceable in treatment, such as hot fomentations or poultices, cold applications, baths, liniments, ointments, lotions, blisters, sinapisms, plasters, mechanical appliances, electricity and galvanism, gargles, and various other local remedies. In this connection may also be mentioned the employment of friction, local support or pressure, shampooing, massage, kneading, passive movements, and allied measures, which are of the utmost value in many suitable cases.

d. Special methods.—Apart from "systems of treatment," intended to influence particular conditions, such as those recommended for obesity, and the "Weir-Mitchell" treatment, there are certain special methods much in vogue at the present day, some of which are of the greatest service when properly carried out, but others are on their trial, or cannot be recommended. It will suffice to mention the external application of cold in various ways for the reduction of febrile heat; the extensive use of antiseptics for a variety of conditions; the administration of preparations of glandular organs, such as the thyroid and pancreas, which has yielded most remarkable results; and inoculation with materials prepared from infective substances, or from cultures of specific micro-organisms, as exemplified by the use of tuberculin for tubercular diseases, and the Pasteur treatment for hydrophobia. The removal of blood by venesection or in other ways may also be regarded as a special method of treatment, though not much employed now; and, on the other hand, transfusion of blood, which is only required under peculiar circumstances. Hydropathy, hypnotism, treatment at various Spas, and that by residence in high altitudes, the inhalation of condensed or rarefied air, and various other methods would come under this category.

e. Operations are not uncommonly required even in cases which occur in medical practice, for instance, paracentesis of the thorax or abdomen, acupuncture, the use of the aspirateur, tracheotomy, or the removal of lymphatic glands. Moreover, operations of a more serious character are now not unfrequently called for and performed, especially in connection with the abdominal viscera, and the brain, in cases which in the first instance come under the observation of the physician. When any such operation is clearly indicated, there ought to be no unnecessary delay or hesitation in having recourse to it, but this will depend principally upon the opinion of the surgeon.

Therapeutic groups.—It cannot be too strongly insisted upon, in my opinion, that a comprehensive knowledge of "General Pharmacology and Therapeutics," as taught in systematic works and lectures on this subject, is of the greatest help as a preliminary to the study of the actual treatment of pathological conditions and individual diseases, as well as in carrying out such treatment in cases as they occur in ordinary practice. The medical student is supposed to be at least familiar with the fact that therapeutic agents are arranged under certain groups, to which distinctive names are applied, for example, antipyretics, tonics, astringents, emetics, or diuretics. Beyond this, however, it is most desirable that he should have an intelligent acquaintance with the real

meaning or significance of the terms used; the important members of each group; their modes of action, so far as this can be determined; and the practical purposes, direct or indirect, which they serve, as well as the ways in which they are administered or otherwise employed, and the most suitable remedies for particular objects. Especially important is it to acquire this knowledge in relation to the several systems and organs of the body, and in subsequent chapters I propose to give an introductory outline of the general therapeutics of each of the more important of these systems and organs, so as to enable the student to gain some idea of the principles to be recognized in their treatment, before discussing the particular measures to be adopted when dealing with their individual diseases.

CHAPTER V.

ABNORMAL CONDITIONS OF THE BLOOD AND CIRCULATION.

THE blood and circulation are concerned in many morbid processes, but in the present chapter it is only intended to deal briefly with certain recognized conditions, in which they are more immediately and obviously affected. It will be understood, moreover, that the structures by which the circulation is carried on will only be incidentally referred to. At the outset it may be well to point out the ordinary methods of clinical investigation which are applicable to the blood itself; and to give a summary of the principal morbid changes to which it is liable.

Clinical Investigation.—Formerly the chief information which the blood was supposed to afford was by the mode in which it coagulated after removal in quantity from the body, especially by venesection, the so-called “buffy-coat” being a familiar illustration of what was regarded as an important abnormal condition. At present, however, it is only exceptionally that blood is thus examined; but it must be remembered that its mere appearance in bulk, and the way in which it coagulates, may give useful information, as in inflammatory diseases, leucocythaemia, or lipæmia. It may be requisite to submit the blood to *chemical analysis*, or to examine it with the *spectroscope*; but only those specially skilled are competent to conduct such investigations. The methods of examination to which the blood can be ordinarily subjected are as follows:—1. *Simple microscopic examination*. In order to examine recent blood under the microscope, all that is necessary usually is to cleanse carefully the end of the finger, and prick it with a needle. No pressure should be used to squeeze out the blood, but the drop which escapes spontaneously is to be received on a clean microscopic slide, the cover-glass applied, and the examination carried out immediately. 2. *Examination by special apparatus*. Two kinds of special instruments are used in the clinical investigation of the blood, namely, the *haemacytometer*; and the *haemoglobinometer*. The *haemacytometer* is intended for the purpose of counting the number of corpuscles contained in a given quantity of blood, both red and white, and thus determining its corpuscular richness, and the relative proportion of the two kinds. In employing this apparatus a definite dilution of a certain quantity of blood is made, and the number of corpuscles in a certain

volume of this dilution is counted by the aid of the microscope. In Dr. Gowers's instrument a glass slide is used, in which there is a cell, having lines engraved at the bottom, so as to enclose squares within which the corpuscles may be counted. The *haemoglobinometer* is used for the purpose of estimating the amount of haemoglobin in the blood. This object is effected either by diluting the blood to a given point, and comparing the colour with standard solutions of carmine or microcarmine, or with coloured discs; or, according to Dr. Gowers's method, by progressively diluting the blood until it reaches the tint of a standard, the colour of which corresponds to a dilution of 1 part of healthy blood in 100 of water. The standard consists of glycerine jelly coloured to the required tint. The degree of dilution necessary to make the blood correspond to the standard tint represents the amount of haemoglobin.*

Changes in the Blood.—The principal morbid alterations to which the blood is liable may be summed up as follows:—

I. *In its absolute quantity.* This may be:—1. Excessive (*plethora, polyæmia, or general hyperæmia*). 2. Deficient (*hypæmia, oligæmia, or anaemia*). II. *In its distribution.* Under this head come:—1. *Local hyperæmia or congestion.* 2. *Local anaemia.* III. *In colour and obvious physical characters.* The blood may be unusually pale and watery; dark from pigment; thick and tarry; or the serum has sometimes a milky or chylous appearance, due to the presence of fat. Occasionally the blood presents puriform streaks. Lake blood is a peculiar condition in which this fluid becomes transparent. Its colour is altered after poisoning by various substances. IV. *In the number and characters of its corpuscles.* 1. The red corpuscles may be:—(a) deficient in number (*oligocythaemia*); (b) in excess (*polycythaemia*); (c) deficient in haemoglobin (*oligochromæmia*); or (d) altered in shape and size (*microcytes, poikilocytes, etc.*), or in their tendency to and mode of mutual adhesion. 2. The white corpuscles are often too numerous, but this is particularly seen in the condition named *leucocythaemia* or *leukaemia*. A lesser degree of increase is termed *leucocytosis*. On the other hand, they may be deficient. Transitional cells between the white and the red corpuscles are in abnormal number in certain cases of leukæmia. V. *In its normal chemical constituents.* 1. Fibrinogenous elements may be:—(a) increased (*hyperfibrinosis*); (b) diminished (*hypofibrinosis*). The coagulability of the blood is very important.

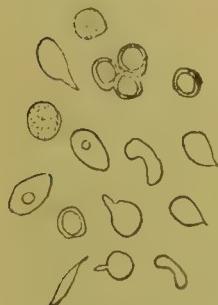


FIG. 1.
POIKILOCYTES.

There may be an undue tendency in this direction, and this is one of the causes of the condition termed *thrombosis*, in which the blood coagulates spontaneously in the heart or vessels. On the other hand, the clot may be imperfect and soft, or the blood may even remain quite fluid after removal from the body. The "buffy coat" is met with under particular circumstances. 2. Albumin is frequently deficient (*hypalbuminosis*); sometimes above the normal (*hyperalbuminosis*). Haemoglobin may be deficient in the blood as a whole, as a result of both oligocythaemia and oligochromæmia (*aglobulism*). 3. Water may be excessive (*hydramia*); or deficient. 4. A diminution of alkaline or earthy salts, especially those of potash and lime, is considered important in

* For further details see articles "Haemacytometer" and "Haemoglobinometer" in Quain's *Dictionary of Medicine*.

some diseases, the blood being consequently less alkaline than normal; occasionally they are increased. 5. Fatty elements, particularly cholesterol, may be present in unusual quantity. So-called *chylous* blood is due to the presence of a quantity of fat in the serum, a cream-like layer forming on the surface after standing, consisting of granules and oil-globules. Distinct particles of fat occasionally separate. 6. Carbonic acid is in excess in some conditions. VI. *Abnormal chemical substances* are often found in the blood; or at all events such as are usually present in so small a quantity as to be detected only with difficulty, and to be practically harmless, including mainly lactic, uric, hippuric, formic, and other organic acids; leucine and tyrosine; urea and its products; sugar; bile-elements; and certain metals. VII. *Abnormal particles* are sometimes observed in the blood. These are usually microscopic, such as abundant pigment-granules (*melanämia*); but especially micro-organisms, chiefly exemplified by the spirillum of relapsing fever, bacillus anthracis, bacillus tuberculosis, plasmodium malariæ, filaria sanguinis hominis, and the ova of bilharzia hæmatobia. Particles of large size may also gain access into the circulation, giving rise to embolism.

I proceed now to consider more in detail the prominent morbid conditions associated with the blood and circulation, and will take them in the following order:—I. GENERAL HYPERÆMIA OR PLETHORA. II. GENERAL VENOUS STAGNATION.—DEFICIENT BLOOD-AERATION.—CYANOSIS. III. LOCAL HYPERÆMIA OR CONGESTION. IV. GENERAL ANÆMIA. V. LOCAL ANÆMIA. VI. VASO-MOTOR DISORDERS. VII. EMBOLISM AND THROMBOSIS.

I. GENERAL HYPERÆMIA.—PLETHORA.

Pathology and Aëtiology.—*Plethora*, or *general hyperæmia*, signifies primarily that there is an excess of blood in the body as a whole; but this is often associated with an increase in the proportion of red corpuscles, and in the amount of hæmoglobin. It is by no means always easy to draw the line between what may be regarded as a healthy condition, which is natural to the individual, and a morbid plethora. The latter is generally caused by excessive eating, especially of animal food; intemperance in the use of alcohol; or general high living, especially if combined with want of exercise and luxurious habits. It is often associated with undue corpulence or obesity, or with the gouty state.

Symptoms and Effects.—The plethoric state is evidenced in the aspect of the individual, which is well-described by the term “full-blooded.” The face is of a more or less deep-red colour, varying in tint, but it is often bright and healthy-looking; the features tend to be full and turgid; the ears are large; and in some cases enlarged venules are visible on the cheeks and nose. Some plethoric subjects have a bloated look. Care must be taken, however, not to mistake mere facial congestion for general plethora. In typical cases the circulation is vigorous and active, the pulse being full and strong; but this is by no means always the case. Not uncommonly there is a tendency to congestion of internal organs, as indicated by digestive derangements, hepatic disorders, haemorrhoids, and abnormal characters of the urine. Plethoric persons are often short of breath; subject to palpitation or other cardiac disorders; and liable to congestion or catarrh of the throat and respiratory mucous tract, or to more serious pulmonary

affections of a congestive or inflammatory nature. They are also prone to suffer from sensations of fulness in the head or actual headache, giddiness, disturbed vision or hearing, mental obscurity, somnolence or disturbed sleep, and other signs of cerebral congestion; and a certain class of plethoric individuals are decidedly favourite subjects for apoplexy. Spontaneous haemorrhages, especially in the form of epistaxis and bleeding piles, are of common occurrence, and may afford decided relief. Inflammatory diseases of any kind are supposed to assume a more "sthenic" type in plethoric subjects, but this only applies to those who may be regarded as belonging to the more healthy group of "full-blooded" individuals.

Treatment.—Many plethoric individuals do not require any particular treatment. Ordinarily the main indications are to caution against excess in eating and drinking, or, if necessary, even to put the individual on a more or less restricted regimen; to encourage active habits; and to keep the bowels and excretory organs free. Systematic general depletion, by means of baths, especially the Turkish-bath, purgatives, and diuretics, is useful in appropriate cases. Plethoric patients are often greatly benefited by going through a course of treatment at certain Spas, such as Carlsbad or Homburg. It was formerly the custom to bleed them at intervals, but such a method of treatment can only be called for under exceptional circumstances. Local removal of blood may be indicated in some cases. It is not desirable to check haemorrhages too soon or suddenly in plethoric subjects.

II. GENERAL VENOUS STAGNATION.—DEFICIENT BLOOD-AÉRATION.—CYANOSIS.

Pathology and Aëtiology.—Interference with the general venous circulation is often observed in various degrees, and gives rise to prominent phenomena. The condition termed *cyanosis* or *blue-disease*, in which the patient presents a peculiar colour, though not always blue, as the names imply, is in part the result of this cause, though another important factor in many cases is imperfect aeration of the blood. In special instances, associated with certain malformations of the heart and great vessels, the circulation is entirely of a venous character; or there is a direct admixture of arterial and venous blood.

General venous stagnation, and various degrees of cyanosis, are usually associated with some physical difficulty or imperfection at the centre of the circulation, in connection with the heart and great vessels; or some condition of the respiratory apparatus, interfering with the pulmonary circulation, and the due oxygenation of the blood. Not uncommonly these causes are combined in the same case, and it is very important to remember that lung-affections, or even respiratory disorders, often aggravate temporarily any tendency to cyanosis associated with some cardiac complaint. The most pronounced chronic forms of cyanosis are met with in certain cases of malformation of the heart and vessels, and are usually congenital. As an acute condition of course it is very marked in all forms of suffocation or apnoea, and strangulation. A variety which at first sight appears to be general, but which is really limited to the upper half of the body, is due to some obstruction of the circulation through the superior vena cava. Lesser degrees of cyanosis are observed in connection with severe collapse, as in cholera; and from the effects of prolonged exposure to cold.

Symptoms.—While varying much in degree, the phenomena associated with cyanosis are of a very definite kind. It may come on very rapidly or acutely, or is manifested as a chronic condition. The appearance of the patient is characteristic, and in a marked case attracts immediate attention. The skin may present different tints, being more or less blue, leaden, purple, livid, or claret in extreme cases. The coloration is usually not uniform, but mottled. It may be pretty generally distributed, but is to be looked for more particularly about the face and head, especially the cheeks, lips, nose, and ears; and over the hands and fingers. The feet and toes also frequently present marked cyanotic discolouration in chronic cases. The colour varies in degree at different times, and is intensified by external cold, and by such acts as coughing or crying, which interfere with respiration and circulation. In course of time in chronic cases permanent enlargement of the capillaries and small venules is produced, particularly obvious on the cheeks. The eyes may be red, suffused, bleared, watery, and sometimes even unduly prominent. There is a tendency to fulness or enlargement of certain features, as the lips, nose, and ears, which subsides in cases of temporary venous obstruction, but becomes permanent in marked cyanotic conditions. General puffiness or a bloated appearance of the face is also common; and the neck may be full and tumid, sometimes to a very striking degree. More or less dropsey is often associated with cyanosis, chiefly involving the lower extremities; but when the superior vena cava is obstructed, the œdema is limited to the head and neck, upper limbs, and chest-walls, the combination of phenomena presenting a very peculiar and characteristic aspect. The finger-ends, as well as the toes, become obviously "clubbed" in chronic cyanotic conditions, of whatever kind, and this is a very striking appearance in some instances. In these conditions also subjective and objective coldness are common symptoms, especially in the extremities, which are very liable to chilblains. General vitality is much below par, the patient being physically and mentally lethargic and languid, indisposed for any exertion, easily fatigued, and short of breath. The effects of prolonged venous congestion upon different organs and tissues are developed in course of time, but these will be more conveniently considered under the next heading.

Treatment.—Nothing definite can be stated under this head, as each case must be dealt with according to the conditions with which the venous stagnation or cyanosis is associated.

III. LOCAL HYPERÆMIA OR CONGESTION.

Pathology and Aetiology.—*Congestion* is a familiar word in medical language, but it is often employed in a most vague, loose, and meaningless fashion, either as the diagnostic conclusion in relation to a variety of ailments, for which there is no foundation whatever, or being not uncommonly associated with morbid conditions of a very different and far more serious character. Let it be clearly understood, therefore, at the outset, that this is a definite pathological state of frequent occurrence, the effects of which often call for the attention of the practitioner. In its comprehensive sense, *local hyperæmia* or *congestion* signifies the presence of an unusual and excessive quantity of blood in some part or organ of the body, or in one set of vessels. It presents certain varieties, but for practical purposes they may be brought under the two divisions usually recognized of:—1. *Active* or *Arterial*;

2. *Mechanical, Passive, or Venous.* It will be convenient first to explain the nature and causation of each of these forms, and afterwards to consider them together.

1. ACTIVE OR ARTERIAL.—*Determination of Blood.*—In this form of congestion the arteries and arterioles are chiefly implicated, becoming dilated, so that there is an increased afflux of blood to the part which they supply, the circulation is more active and accelerated, and usually too much blood passes out by the veins as well.

Active congestion is usually the result of vaso-motor disturbance, in consequence of which the affected vessels become enlarged, either owing to paralysis of the muscular coat, or, as some suppose, from a process of active dilatation. Other immediate causes usually recognized are the rapid withdrawal of external support from arteries, as that of the atmospheric pressure in the application of a cupping-glass to the surface; and increased pressure from within upon the walls of the vessels. Among the more prominent examples of visible active congestion may be mentioned the effects produced by the internal administration of certain drugs or poisons, such as belladonna; those resulting from the direct application of cold, heat, stimulants, or irritants to the skin; congestion associated with local neuralgia, or with certain conditions affecting the central nervous system, the sympathetic trunk, or particular vaso-motor nerves, often due to reflex influences; that which follows excessive use or increased functional activity of an organ, as the eye or mammary gland; and the “collateral circulation” which is set up when a main artery of a limb is tied or suddenly blocked in any way. As regards internal parts, they may become actively congested from chilling of the surface of the body, or, on the other hand, certain organs are believed to be thus affected as the result of tropical heat; from the direct contact of stimulants or irritants taken into the alimentary canal; as a consequence of the rapid removal of large serous effusions, for instance, from the pleura or peritoneum; or from the local irritation or disturbance of the circulation set up by foreign bodies, calculi, morbid formations, such as cancer or tubercle, embolic infarcts, and other conditions. Excessive cardiac action may lead to both external and internal congestion, which is most evident about the head and in connection with the cerebral circulation. Active hyperæmia is a prominent factor in the early stage of inflammation in any part of the body.

2. MECHANICAL, PASSIVE, OR VENOUS.—Here there is no excessive flow of blood, but it does not escape properly by the veins, so that it accumulates, leading to engorgement of these vessels and of the capillaries with dark blood, which moves slowly and languidly. *Passive* congestion has been more particularly associated with the capillary circulation, and attributed to some disturbance of the vital relations existing between the tissues and the blood, but the leading pathologists now seem to be agreed that there is no real foundation for this distinction.

It is very important that the circumstances under which venous and capillary congestion occurs should be thoroughly understood, and therefore it will be desirable to point them out in systematic order.

a. Some *mechanical obstacle* interfering with the circulation of the blood through the veins is the most important cause of this form of congestion. Such an obstacle is often seated in the heart, thus affecting the entire systemic or pulmonary circulation, or both, according to the precise locality of the impediment; or it may originate in the lungs, partly or entirely. In other cases some special vein or system of veins

is affected, such as the portal, the renal, the superior or inferior vena cava, either of the innominate veins, or those of a limb, the obstruction being correspondingly localized. The cause of the impediment may be either something within the vessel, blocking its channel, such as a clot; constriction from morbid changes in its coats rarely; external pressure upon it by a tumour, ligature, fibrous thickening, or other conditions; or compression of the branches of a peculiar vein, as the portal, by fibroid changes in the organ through which they are distributed, which is exemplified in cases of cirrhosis of the liver. It may be mentioned under this head that incompetence of the valves of a vein, from any cause, materially helps in producing and maintaining venous congestion; and varicose veins must be particularly remembered.

b. Parts which are in a *dependent position* are very prone to become venously congested under certain circumstances, from the mere influence of gravitation. Illustrations of such a mode of origin are presented in the congestion of the veins of the legs which follows prolonged standing; and in the formation of haemorrhoids as the result of sedentary occupations. Gravitation is not uncommonly a helping cause of venous engorgement.

c. *Impairment of the forces* which carry on the circulation often gives rise to capillary and venous hyperæmia, or assists other agencies in its production. The heart may be weakened or inefficient in its action, or the arteries may be impaired in their elasticity and contractility, owing to degeneration or other causes, and thus the *vis a tergo* is inadequate to drive the blood through the veins. This is especially observed in old people. Deficiency of respiratory movements, and want of muscular activity, which normally assist the venous circulation, may also be mentioned here as *ætiological factors* in certain cases.

d. A *weak state of the general system* may induce passive congestion, owing to the languid state of the circulation, and want of tone in the muscular and other tissues. It especially affects parts which are dependent, or which are distant from the heart.

e. *Morbid conditions of the blood* are believed to contribute to capillary hyperæmia. That which is associated with imperfect aëration of the blood is considered by some to be of this nature; and deficiency of fibrinogenous elements is also said to favour its occurrence. A thick or tarry condition of the blood must necessarily retard its flow.

f. If an *organ or part of the body is debilitated* from any cause, and its functional activity is exhausted or impaired, it is prone to become the seat of passive congestion. As illustrations of this mode of origin may be mentioned the congestion which is often observed in paralyzed limbs; and that which follows excessive use of an organ. It may also be a sequel of active congestion or inflammation.

g. The condition known as *hypostatic congestion* demands separate notice. It usually occurs in persons who are confined to bed for a long time, and obliged to maintain the recumbent posture, especially if they are old and feeble, or suffer from the effects of some prolonged debilitating illness. Hypostatic congestion may, however, rapidly supervene in connection with certain acute diseases of low type, which gravely depress the vital functions. As the expression implies, it affects dependent parts, both externally and internally, but is especially important in relation to the lungs. The congestion may be the result of several factors, chiefly including gravitation, feeble cardiac action and circulation, blood-changes probably, and impaired respiratory movements.

Anatomical Characters and Effects.—Redness, varying in its tint and form according to the nature of the congestion, is the essential *post-mortem* manifestation of all the varieties of this morbid condition. In active hyperæmia the colour is bright-red, and it usually assumes the appearance of a minute net-work, but may be uniform or punctiform when certain special structures are involved. It must be borne in mind, however, that this condition may have been present during life, and yet redness is not apparent after death, owing to the arteries having contracted and expelled the blood into the veins. Points of redness are sometimes seen, due to minute extravasations of blood. The colour of mechanical or passive congestion is generally more or less dark red, but it may present a blue, purple, or livid tint; while the veins are often visibly distended, and form a net-work.

Organs are often said to be congested in *post-mortem* descriptions, when this has not been the case in reality during life, the appearance being simply due to the gravitation of the blood after death into dependent parts. Tissues are also subject to *post-mortem* staining by the colouring matter of the blood, which may simulate congestion.

The pathological effects of congestion are very important, and often lead to permanent changes. The more immediate of these are transudation of serum, giving rise to œdema or more or less extensive dropsy of cellular tissues; serous effusions, or a watery flux from mucous surfaces; occasionally the exudation of an albuminous or fibrinous fluid; escape of the colouring matter of the blood; migration of leucocytes or of red corpuscles; or actual rupture of vessels and consequent haemorrhage. In connection with venous congestion thrombosis may occur. In prolonged cases the affected vessels become permanently dilated, and their walls are often thickened. Venous and capillary congestion of a severe type, or long-continued, may lead to such grave interference with the circulation and nutrition as to cause ulceration, or even gangrene, while it often predisposes to low forms of inflammation. Prolonged active hyperæmia may ultimately cause true hypertrophy of the affected structures. The more common effects of chronic congestion upon tissues and organs, however, are seen in the formation of a fibroid tissue, which leads to thickening and stiffness of certain structures, enlargement and subsequently contraction of viscera, induration, and loss of the properties of elasticity and muscular contractility. Pigmentary blood-changes are also common, the parts affected becoming grey, brown, or even black. Ultimately organs may become markedly changed, being usually diminished in size, abnormally firm or even hard, and often seriously disorganized in their minute structure. Atrophic and degenerative changes are supposed to occur as the result of passive congestion.

Symptoms.—It will be readily understood that the exact symptoms associated with congestion must vary considerably according to circumstances, and it is only intended here to indicate their general nature.

If a congested part is external or open to inspection, the condition will be revealed by its colour, which in the active form tends to be more or less bright-red, while in venous hyperæmia it is darker, being often dusky, blue, purplish, or even livid, culminating in cases of marked general or extensive congestion in the condition already described as *cyanosis*. Other objective phenomena are also frequently evident, such as enlargement of vessels; abnormal pulsation of arteries in the active variety; swelling from local œdema, or more extensive subcutaneous

dropsy, which pits on pressure; in exceptional cases a firmer and more brawny tumefaction, due to fibrinous exudation in the midst of the tissues; or sometimes superficial or subcutaneous haemorrhages. On further examination of external parts it may be noted that the temperature is altered, in active hyperæmia being raised, and in the passive form lowered; in the latter variety, indeed, the affected part is not uncommonly distinctly cold to the touch. Patients may be conscious of subjective sensations, such as pulsation, undue heat, coldness and numbness in the venous form, or a feeling of uneasiness, fulness, weight, or heaviness, mainly due to the effects of the congestion. In connection with a visible mucous surface there may be an obvious watery discharge as a result of hyperæmia, and haemorrhage is not uncommon. Structures may also be observed to be swollen, as in the case of the throat; and such swelling may lead to much discomfort, or even to more or less obstruction.

With regard to congestion of internal parts, the clinical evidences may be of the following nature:—The patient may be conscious of local sensations of discomfort, fulness, or weight, and in the case of the head a form of congestive headache is described. The functions of organs which are much engorged are liable to be seriously interfered with, as exemplified by the nerve-centres, respiratory organs, liver, alimentary canal, and kidneys. In the case of the alimentary canal secretions may be rendered more profuse, or altered in quality, and thus the digestive functions are affected, while a form of diarrhoea may be caused. The urine is increased by certain forms of active hyperæmia: diminished by venous congestion, from which albuminuria may also result. Haemorrhages from mucous surfaces are not uncommon evidences of hyperæmia; and they may sometimes even be recognized in the substance of organs, as the brain. *Physical examination* is in certain cases of great assistance in the diagnosis of internal congestion—by revealing enlargement of solid viscera, as the liver or spleen; or the particular signs to which it gives rise in the case of the lungs; or the presence of those indicating serous effusions, especially ascites. In this way also we often recognize some condition with which congestion is likely to be associated, such as cardiac disease or a cirrhotic liver, and thus the diagnosis is indirectly aided. The permanent morbid changes resulting from prolonged hyperæmia originate their own special symptoms.

Treatment.—All that can be done here is to point out the general principles which are to be borne in mind in the prevention and treatment of congestion, the particular measures to be adopted necessarily varying much in different cases. The indications are:—1. To remove the cause of the hyperæmia, if possible, especially should this be of a mechanical nature. 2. To attend to position, so as to obviate the effects of gravitation, and assist the passage of blood through, and its return from, the congested part. 3. To modify the circulation of the blood, especially by acting upon the heart and vessels, either checking it when excessive, or assisting it when it is languid and feeble. Active respiratory movements or voluntary muscular actions may help in promoting the circulation in certain cases. 4. To diminish the quantity of the blood, either by venesection or by local methods, such as the application of leeches or cupping. It has been proposed to remove blood directly from certain internal organs, as the liver, by means of puncturing instruments, but this is a dangerous procedure. 5. To

draw blood away from the seat of congestion, by means of sinapisms, heat, or other irritants applied to the skin, dry-cupping, and similar agencies. 6. To employ *local measures*, with the view of diminishing the quantity of blood in the affected region, such as the application of cold, pressure, or astringents; or intended to promote more active circulation, for instance, friction, shampooing, or galvanism. It is possible to relieve the portal circulation directly by the use of saline or hydragogue purgatives. 7. To alter the *quality* of the blood, employing low diet, purgatives, diuretics, and such remedies if there is plethora; improving its quality, by the administration of good food and preparations of iron, if the blood is impoverished. 8. To improve the condition of the *general system*, when this is below par, especially in cases of passive congestion. It may be remarked that it is particularly important to endeavour to prevent and relieve congestion in febrile diseases; not to allow mechanical congestion to continue for any length of time if it can be avoided; and to warn aged persons against performing acts which lead to sudden temporary congestion, as their vessels are extremely liable to give way.

IV. GENERAL ANÆMIA.—CHLOROSIS.

Pathology.—The term *anæmia* is often used very vaguely. In one class of cases the patient presents a so-called anæmic or pale aspect, mainly because the arteries are inadequately filled, and this occurs temporarily in connection with syncope or shock of any kind. The conditions with which it is more properly associated are those in which the blood as a whole is deficient in quantity—*oligamia*; or where it presents certain abnormal qualities, indicative of impoverishment. These conditions are, as a rule, associated in different degrees. The most important alterations in quality include deficiency in the number of red corpuscles—*oligocytæmia*; deficiency of hæmoglobin in these corpuscles—*oligochromæmia*; or a combination of both—*aglobulism*; and in advanced cases deficiency in albuminous constituents—*hypalbuminosis*.

In pronounced anæmia the blood is more or less thin and watery, and its specific gravity lowered. In marked cases it appears distinctly pale, when seen as it escapes from a prick of the finger. In some forms of anæmia there is a tendency to thrombosis, but outside the body the blood usually coagulates slowly and loosely, or in extreme cases remains fluid, and separates into layers on standing. Examination with the microscope, hæmacytometer, and hæmoglobinometer reveal the minute blood-changes; as well as in some instances relative increase in the proportion of white corpuscles, the presence of intermediate cells, or peculiarities in the size, shape, and other characters of the red corpuscles. These corpuscles may also not run into rouleaux in the normal way. Chemical analysis shows deficiency of iron in the blood. The more prominent changes affecting the red corpuscles may be due to direct loss of blood; imperfect formation or development—*hæmogenesis*; or excessive destruction, either by some direct influence, or because the ordinary rate of consumption is increased—*hæmolysis*.

The phenomena which are associated with general anæmia are mainly due to the deficiency of red corpuscles or hæmoglobin, which normally convey oxygen to the tissues, in combination with iron; and of the

albuminous constituents, which are the oxidizable materials. In marked cases all the bodily structures are more or less blanched and bloodless; their functional and nutritive activity is impaired; and atrophy or fatty degeneration may follow in certain organs. In some forms of anæmia there is a tendency to accumulation of fat in the body. It has been asserted that this condition may ultimately lead to serious organic diseases, such as phthisis or gastric ulcer, but there is no positive evidence, and Dr. James E. Pollock found that chlorotic females are peculiarly free from phthisis. Acute illnesses occurring in anæmic individuals tend to assume a low type, and to be followed by protracted convalescence.

Aetiology.—Anæmia occurs under a variety of circumstances, and for practical purposes it may be expedient to adopt a classification of the cases met with, which is now much in vogue, into:—1. *Primary or essential*, including (a) *Chlorosis or green-sickness*; (b) *Idiopathic, pernicious, or progressive anæmia*. 2. *Secondary or symptomatic*, in which the condition is associated with, and the result of, certain definite causes or diseases. In the present chapter it is only intended to deal with the latter group of cases, and with those of chlorosis. Pernicious anæmia is a very peculiar disease, which can be more advantageously considered in a later part of this work.

Chlorosis or green-sickness, so-named on account of the peculiar greenish or yellowish-green tint which the patient often presents, is a form of primary anæmia resulting from defective hæmogenesis, in which it is found that although the red corpuscles are diminished in number—it may be as low as from 80 to 60 per cent. of the normal—the hæmoglobin is lessened in quantity in much larger proportion, being sometimes reduced to from 25 to 30 per cent., and the corpuscles appear pale under the microscope. Microcytes and poikilocytes may be present in numbers. Young females, from 14 or 15 to 25 years of age, form the great bulk of patients of this class, and the condition most frequently begins during the earlier portion of this period. It is extremely rare in young children, but may continue beyond 30, generally with intermissions. Blondes are said to be more often affected than brunettes. Young males are very exceptionally the subjects of the complaint. Its occurrence has been generally attributed to the great demands made upon the developmental powers about the period of puberty, especially in females, so that the blood is not properly formed, and certainly this must have considerable influence. Virchow has affirmed that in chlorotic patients the heart and aorta and its branches are frequently congenitally small and attenuated, and that irregularities in the origin of the arteries are common. These conditions he regards as having a causative relation in such cases. According to another view, the main cause of chlorosis is constipation. Even in the earliest edition of this work I laid stress upon the importance of long-continued habitual constipation as an ætiological factor in cases of this kind, but attributed its effects to the derangement of the digestive functions and consequent imperfect nutrition which it produced. The late Sir Andrew Clark, however, advanced the opinion that the anæmia is due to decomposition of the retained faeces, and absorption of the products (ptomaines, leucomaines, etc.) into the blood. Another idea is that the organic iron-compounds of the food are decomposed in the faeces, and assume forms which are less readily absorbed (Runge). The presence in the blood of unassimilable forms of iron, due to a deficiency

of hydrochloric acid in the system, is a theory advanced by Zander. Dilatation of the stomach has been said to be present in some cases of chlorosis, which has been regarded by Contourier as a cause.

The fact must be recognized that in not a few instances chlorosis is developed under the most satisfactory sanitary and dietetic conditions. In most cases, however, various injurious influences have to be reckoned with, such as bad or improper feeding; abstinence from food, especially meat, from loss of appetite, which often amounts to disgust for food; want of exercise; close confinement; want of sunlight; excessive study; over-work, frequently under the most insanitary conditions, with sewing-machines and the like; and mental depression from different causes. The sexual factor must also not be overlooked, and especially the habit of masturbation.

Secondary or symptomatic anaemia includes a large number of cases, due to a variety of causes. All that can be done here is to give a general summary of the principal conditions under which it occurs, premising that it is always important to recognize as clearly as possible how the blood-changes are brought about. Under this category would come cases of anaemia resulting from deficiency in the supply or nutritive quality of the food, especially when associated with unfavourable sanitary conditions, which may be met with at any period of life; that associated with rapid growth in children and young persons, apart from the chlorotic group; that which accompanies old age in some instances; and the anaemia due to certain particular causes, as depressing mental influences, over-lactation and repeated pregnancies, sexual excesses, or masturbation. As regards actual morbid conditions or diseases with which anaemia may be associated, they chiefly include haemorrhages of different kinds, whether leading to sudden or rapid loss of blood in quantity, or to repeated small losses; acute febrile or inflammatory affections; acute tuberculosis; diseases of the oesophagus or other part of the alimentary canal, preventing the passage of food, or interfering with its digestion and assimilation; conditions causing excessive drain from the system, as prolonged suppuration, abundant albuminuria, chronic diarrhoea or dysentery, or profuse leucorrhœa; various chronic diseases of a constitutional nature, or which more or less profoundly affect nutrition, or lead to undue waste—for example, pulmonary phthisis and other forms of tuberculosis, scrofula, syphilis, cancer (especially if of rapid growth), rickets, gout, rheumatoid arthritis, gastric ulcer, hepatic cirrhosis, and Bright's disease; prolonged exposure to malaria, with or without definite attacks of ague; chronic poisoning by certain metals, such as lead, mercury, arsenic, or antimony—*toxic anaemia*; and a special group of diseases, including mainly the varieties of leukæmia, lymphadenoma, Addison's disease, scurvy and purpura, goitre and exophthalmic goitre. An anaemic appearance may be a striking feature in certain cases of cardiac disease, especially those of aortic regurgitation, and when children are affected; as well as in morbid conditions of the aorta itself, such as co-arctation or anenrism. Here the condition is partly and in variable degree due to inadequate supply of blood to the arterial system. In a large number of instances anaemia can be referred to more than one cause, perhaps several.

Symptoms.—Anaemia may be acute or chronic in its development, but the phenomena are more or less similar in both groups of cases.

The appearance of persons suffering from anaemia is, as a rule, sufficiently characteristic. They are pale, often waxy-looking, and have

usually a clear, transparent skin, but the exact tint of the face will differ materially in different forms. As already mentioned, a greenish or yellowish-green hue is observed in chlorosis. Not uncommonly the cheeks exhibit a faint pink flush. The veins are frequently very distinct, and may have a peculiar pinkish tint, which is well seen on the back of the hands. The mucous membranes present the most marked signs of anaemia, especially the conjunctiva of the lower eyelid, and the membrane covering the lips, gums, and tongue, these being more or less pale and bloodless. The nails also show the anaemic appearance well. The sclerotics appear clear and bluish or white. The general condition will vary according to the cause of the anaemia; in chlorosis the patient is often apparently well-nourished, though the tissues are usually flabby and wanting in tone. œdema about the ankles, and puffiness of the eyelids in the morning, are common symptoms, and there may even be considerable swelling of the legs after standing for some time. Anaemia has often considerable influence in promoting dropsy from other causes; and by originating thrombosis in different veins, may itself produce this symptom on an extensive scale. See DROPSY.

The subjective sensations complained of in anaemic cases are also of a very uniform character. These are debility, languor, and incapacity for exertion; general chilliness and coldness of the extremities; shortness of breath and palpitation after any effort, especially after ascending a height or going upstairs, or in bad cases hurried breathing and cardiac disturbance even when the patient is at rest; a tendency to faintness or actual syncope from time to time; throbbing of arteries; headache, dizziness, spots before the eyes, and noises in the ears; neuralgic pains in different parts of the body, but especially in the left side, this being frequently accompanied with tenderness, and liable to come and go. It has appeared to me that this pain in the left side may possibly be connected with the spleen in some cases. Anaemic females are especially liable to painful sensations; and they are often low-spirited or irritable, or subject to hysterical attacks.

The digestive organs are usually at fault, especially in cases of chlorosis. In these cases appetite is almost always impaired, capricious, or depraved, and there may be absolute disgust for food, especially for meat. Severe gastralgia and atonic dyspepsia are common complaints. The bowels are obstinately constipated as a rule. Haematemesis, melæna, or other haemorrhages occur in severe cases. Menstruation is almost always deranged, being absent, infrequent, irregular, scanty, unhealthy, painful, or sometimes menorrhagic. Leucorrhœa is also a frequent symptom. The urine varies much in its characters in different cases. In chlorosis it is often excessive in quantity, pale and watery, and of low specific gravity. The temperature is sometimes above the normal. Retinal haemorrhages and pyrexia, which are of common occurrence in pernicious anaemia, are met with occasionally in chlorosis and in symptomatic anaemia.

Physical signs.—Certain abnormal physical signs are observed in marked anaemia, but it will be more satisfactory to discuss these in detail in connection with the examination of the circulatory system. In the meantime it will suffice to state that they include systolic cardiac murmurs, especially at the base of the heart, and more to the left of the sternum; a blowing murmur in the arteries, particularly the subclavian, and sometimes a thrill; and a venous hum, chiefly audible in the neck, over the jugular vein, this being also occasionally accompanied with a

thrill. The heart's action is very liable to be disturbed, becoming easily excited and hurried, and in severe cases even irregular. Temporary dilatation of the heart, especially the left ventricle, may occur, which probably accounts for certain physical signs. It is stated that hypertrophy of the left ventricle may subsequently take place, but I have never met with such a condition as a direct result of anaemia. The pulse is either full, soft, and compressible; or small, feeble, and sometimes scarcely perceptible.

Diagnosis.—As a rule the fact that a state of anaemia exists is easily diagnosed. At the same time it is necessary to guard against mistaking for this condition an appearance of pallor which is normal to the individual, or certain peculiar tints of the skin. The most important points are to determine the causation of anaemia; and its exact nature and significance in any particular case. In most instances these are either at once evident; or can be made out by proper investigation. In young females special care must be taken to avoid regarding a case as one of chlorosis, when there is really some serious organic disease present. On the other hand, the presence of cardiac murmurs in anaemic cases may lead to the diagnosis of disease of the heart, which does not exist. Careful inquiry may be necessary as regards haemorrhages, for I have known instances in which the fact that a slow bleeding has been going on for some time, as from piles or from the female generative organs, has been denied or concealed.

Prognosis.—This must very much depend on the cause of the anaemia in the case under consideration, and the conditions with which it is associated. When it is due to profuse and sudden haemorrhage, which can be arrested, recovery is generally remarkably rapid and complete. In chlorosis the prognosis is usually very hopeful, if proper measures can be carried out, but some cases do not yield to treatment even under the most favourable circumstances, while others are so unfortunately situated that it is hardly possible to hope for any improvement. It is a serious mistake to allow anaemia to go on indefinitely without attempting to remedy the condition, for it appears highly probable that the pernicious form may be established by such neglect.

Treatment.—The first thing to be done in all cases of anaemia is to find out its *cause* or *causes*, and remedy these if possible. Of course any haemorrhage must be stopped; as well as chronic discharges which tend to impoverish the blood. Attention to *hygienic conditions* is essential, especially in the case of chlorotic girls. Abundance of fresh air, good ventilation, sunlight, moderation in work, avoidance of late hours and of hot and crowded rooms, change of air and scene to some dry and bracing climate, especially to the sea-side or to mountain districts of moderate altitude, cheerful society, and the removal of all disturbing mental influences, are most efficient aids in treatment. Baths, particularly sea-bathing, or douches followed by friction, are very beneficial if followed by good reaction; and in some cases massage is useful. With regard to exercise, it may be affirmed that an out door life is in the large majority of cases most suitable for anaemic patients; and that more or less active exercise, not beyond the power of the individual, is generally beneficial. Experience has shown, however, that caution is necessary in this matter, and that not a few patients can bear but little walking, and should, therefore, drive chiefly, if circumstances permit. Others need actual rest, it may be even in bed, and I have seen some striking cases of chlorosis improve rapidly under such treatment, which were previously very obstinate.

In the next place it is most important to look to the *diet*, and to the state of the *digestive organs*. A sufficient quantity of nutritious food must be given at regular times, and it is often requisite to lay down strict rules on this matter, particularly with regard to meat, to which many chlorotic patients have a strong objection. It ought to be taken underdone; and if it causes pain, it may be given in a minced or pounded form. Nutritious soups are also useful; and beer, stout, or wine is generally indicated. The state of the bowels demands particular attention, and the patient should be fully impressed with the necessity of having a sufficient daily evacuation. Aloes is one of the best forms of aperient in these cases, and may be given in combination with other suitable drugs. Remedies which act upon the stomach are frequently very beneficial also; bicarbonate of sodium with some preparation of bismuth and hydrocyanic acid being particularly valuable for relieving the morbid sensations connected with this organ, when taken shortly before meals.

The medicinal agents which directly improve the quality of the blood are named *haematinics* or *blood-tonics*. Of these iron in some form stands pre-eminent. It would serve no useful purpose to attempt to discuss here its mode of action, and it must suffice to state that different preparations are suitable in different cases, including reduced iron, compound iron mixture, Bland's pill, saccharated carbonate, ammonio-citrate, tartarated iron, solution or tincture of perchloride, solution of pernitrate, the different forms of sulphate, tincture of acetate, and dialyzed iron. In anaemic children steel-wine and the syrup of phosphate of iron produce excellent results. Albuminate of iron has been much recommended in chlorosis. Chalybeate waters are beneficial in some instances. Iron may in suitable cases be variously combined with aloes, infusion of quassia or calumba, quinine, nux vomica or strychnine, arsenic, manganese, pepsine, and other remedies. Citrate of quinine and iron, and Easton's syrup are very valuable compounds. It is frequently desirable to change the form of the preparation from time to time; or even to stop the administration of iron temporarily, should it appear to disagree. Quinine, arsenic, preparations of manganese, and sulphur have been recommended as useful agents in the treatment of chlorosis, when given alone, but they cannot be relied upon.

Pain in the left side often requires attention in chlorosis, and is usually much relieved by making the patient wear a belladonna plaster. Other symptoms must be treated on general principles. In extreme anaemia from loss of blood, transfusion may possibly be required.

V. LOCAL ANÆMIA.—ISCHÆMIA.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Local anaemia signifies that there is a deficient quantity of blood within a certain area, owing to some interference with the arterial supply to the affected part. Thus a limb or organ may be involved; or the condition may be on a still more limited scale. The obstruction may be complete, the flow of blood being absolutely cut off; or partial, the latter being known as *ischæmia*. Arterial closure is intentionally produced in certain surgical procedures, and may also result from injury. Apart from such cases, the chief causes to be noted are embolism and thrombosis; disease of the wall of an artery, narrowing or even ultimately completely closing its channel; and direct pressure, as by a tumour, enlarged glands, fibroid thickening,

and the like. Occasionally an aneurism compresses the neighbouring portion of the artery from which it springs, and thus leads to obstruction of its channel. Temporary anaemia results in certain cases from vaso-motor disorder, giving rise to contraction of arteries, but this variety will be separately considered.

Anatomical Characters and Effects.—The immediate result of local anaemia from arterial obstruction is, as the term suggests, more or less pallor of the tissues or bloodlessness. In certain conditions, however, there may be actual excess of blood in the affected part, owing to venous congestion. If the difficulty is temporary, or if collateral circulation can be speedily established, the involved structures resume their normal appearance after a variable interval. The more serious results which, under different circumstances, may follow complete or persistent arterial obstruction, include gangrene or necrosis, fatty degeneration, softening, or atrophy. In connection with embolism so-called "haemorrhagic infarctions" may be formed. (See EMBOLISM.) The wasting of various structures, and the degenerations which occur in advanced age, are to a great extent due to partial anaemia associated with vascular changes.

Symptoms.—The immediate effect of marked and sudden or rapid anaemia is total abolition of, or serious interference with the functions of the part thus deprived of blood. In other cases the clinical phenomena are similar, but less pronounced and more gradual in their onset. The brain affords some of the most striking illustrations of these remarks. Obstruction of the abdominal aorta may cause temporary paralysis in the legs, due to anaemia of the lower portion of the spinal cord. I have known an arm temporarily paralysed by blocking of its arteries. If the affected part is within the range of objective examination, as in the case of a limb, it is found to be more or less pale and diminished in temperature, while the pulse is small and feeble, or may be altogether imperceptible. In certain cases a local cyanosis may be noticed alternating with anaemia. As already intimated, the anaemia may be temporary, or it is made up for by the establishment of a collateral circulation, and then the symptoms disappear. Otherwise they remain, and merge into those indicative of the pathological changes to which the deprivation of blood leads.

Treatment.—If anything can be done, the indications are to remove any obstruction; to keep the affected parts warm, should they be external; to endeavour to promote the local circulation by friction or other means; and to treat the effects of the anaemia. Time is an important factor in dealing with cases of this kind.

VI. VASO-MOTOR DISORDERS.

It may be worth while to allude briefly in the present connection to the subject of vaso-motor disorders as a whole, though individual complaints in which they do undoubtedly occur, or with which they are supposed to be concerned, will be dealt with subsequently in their appropriate connections. Some of these disorders have already been incidentally noted. The fact of the existence of a vaso-motor nervous apparatus is now fully recognized, through the influence of which the arteries are either contracted or dilated. This apparatus is affected by many conditions, even in health, and it is not always easy to draw the line between what is

normal and what is abnormal. Among the most familiar and obvious vaso-motor disturbances may be mentioned involuntary blushing from inadequate causes; alternating pallor and redness of the face; "heats and flushes"; temporary diffused blotches of redness of the skin, or even actual erythema or urticaria; and sudden feelings of chilliness or peculiar sensations without any obvious cause. A vaso-motor phenomenon which is met with in many febrile conditions, especially in nervous subjects, in cerebral affections in children, and under other circumstances, is named "*tache cerebrale*"; it is produced by drawing the nail along the skin, when a red line with white borders appears. Some very curious conditions result from local vaso-motor disorder, which are evident superficially, affecting the skin in certain parts, the arteries becoming spasmodically contracted, this state lasting a variable time, and causing temporary local anaemia (so-called *local syncope*) or cyanosis, or in some cases leading to more serious results, as in "*Raynaud's disease*," which will be separately considered. Among other affections in which the vaso-motor system is supposed to play a part may be mentioned exophthalmic goitre, some cases of angina pectoris or cardiac functional disorder, a form of asthma, certain hysterical attacks, a variety of epilepsy according to some authorities, and disorders of secretion. Vaso-motor changes account for many cases of active congestion; and also occur in the early stage of inflammation.

VII. EMBOLISM AND THROMBOSIS.

EMBOLISM and THROMBOSIS are now universally recognized as of great importance. It is only intended to give here a general account of these morbid conditions, but their special connection with individual organs and structures will demand fuller notice in subsequent chapters. They may be considered in relation to each other, as they are not uncommonly associated in the same case, and their effects are in some degree similar; but it must be clearly understood that they differ entirely in nature, and before discussing embolism and thrombosis individually, it will be desirable to explain definitely their respective meanings.

Embolism signifies that a solid particle or fragment, varying much in size, and technically named an *embolus*, is detached and conveyed from some more or less distant part by means of the circulating blood into a blood-vessel, generally an artery, where it becomes lodged, causing partial or complete plugging of its channel, and consequent obstruction. By *thrombosis* is meant a local coagulation of blood during life, either within one of the cavities of the heart—*cardiac thrombosis*; or in some vessel or vessels, most commonly veins, a more or less extensive clot being thus formed, named a *thrombus*.

A. EMBOLISM.—HÆMORRHAGIC INFARCTION.

Origin of emboli.—The following are the principal sources of emboli:—1. Most commonly a thrombus or clot, either in a systemic vein; in the heart; in an artery, especially in connection with aneurism; or, rarely, in the pulmonary vessels. A thrombus may give rise to an embolus, either in consequence of a portion of it becoming detached, or as the result of softening of its substance. 2. Vegetations in connection with the valves and orifices of the heart, particularly if there is obstructive disease, especially mitral

stenosis. 3. Atheroma and calcification of the cardiac valves or of arteries, portions of the morbid materials becoming detached. 4. A new growth, such as cancer, communicating with the interior of a vessel. 5. Particles resulting from gangrene of organs. 6. Parasites which have gained access into the vessels. 7. Pigment granules. 8. Fat particles from bone-marrow.

Anatomical Characters and Effects.—The seat of arrest of an embolus will depend upon its size and place of origin. It may be sufficiently large to plug an artery of considerable size, or is only stopped in the smaller vessels, even the capillaries, or the particles may be so minute that they pass through even the finest of these vessels. When originating in the venous portion of the circulation, emboli rarely pass beyond the pulmonary vessels, becoming impacted in them as a rule; those coming from the pulmonary circulation, the left side of the heart, or the arteries, lodge either in smaller arteries or in the capillaries, and especially in the vessels of the brain, spleen, and kidneys; those from the portal tributaries are generally arrested in the capillaries of the liver. An embolus is chiefly carried in the direction of the main stream, but it is somewhat influenced by gravitation, especially if of large size. The seat of impaction is usually at a bifurcation, or where the calibre of a vessel rapidly diminishes, owing to large branches being given off. The closure may be complete or only partial at first, and this depends not only upon the size and shape of the embolus, but also upon its nature and consistence; thus a soft fragment of a recent thrombus will adapt itself to the channel of the vessel, and completely close it, while a firm irregular fragment of calcareous matter may only partially obstruct it. Subsequently, however, *secondary thrombi* always form, both in front of and behind the embolus, so that ultimately the vessel is entirely blocked up to a variable extent. *Secondary emboli* are sometimes separated from the primary one or from the resulting thrombus, which pass on into smaller vessels.

An embolus causes local irritation of the vessel in which it lodges, and if the circulation is not permanently disturbed, this will be the only result, the plug and its secondary thrombi usually becoming either absorbed or organized. Under certain conditions, however, namely, in organs where there is but one supplying artery, or only insignificant ones besides, or where the branches of the main vessels communicate only by capillaries (*terminal arteries of Cohnheim*), so that no collateral circulation can be established, other important changes follow, a *haemorrhagic infarct* being formed. According to the experimental observations of Cohnheim, the arterioles supplied by the obstructed artery at first empty themselves, but as the result of venous pressure the blood regurgitates to fill the arterioles and capillaries beyond the obstruction, the arteries around the area dilating, and the capillaries becoming full of blood. The vascular walls also become impaired in their vitality, so that first plasma, and then white and red corpuscles pass through them, the escape taking place through the capillaries and veins, there being no actual rupture of their walls. A *haemorrhagic infarct* thus produced presents at first a dark central area of black-red colour, likened to damson-cheese, due to stagnant venous blood and red corpuscles cramming the tissues, surrounded by a zone of arterial redness. On section the infarct is generally seen to be wedge-shaped, with the base directed towards the surface of the organ, and slightly raised above it. Litten's experiments are opposed to Cohn-

heim's view of venous reflux causing infarction, and he attributes its formation to the continued supply of blood by small arteries, which become dilated. He also thinks that the diapedesis of the red corpuscles is merely due to stretching of capillaries and small veins by mechanical congestion. Litten further states that in the case of truly terminal arteries no infarct occurs in the great majority of cases after obstruction.

In course of time an infarct undergoes certain changes, either becoming decolorized, more consistent, and organized; or a process of softening and molecular disintegration taking place, beginning in the centre of the infarct, and extending more or less to its circumference, the *débris* of the involved tissue being evident in the softened mass. Ultimately it may be absorbed; or remain as a caseous encapsulated mass; or become calcified. The nature of the changes which occur after embolism will depend upon the degree to which the circulation is obstructed, and the difficulty or impossibility of establishing the collateral circulation; the structure affected; the size of the infarct; and the nature of the embolus. If this has septic properties and contains micro-organisms, especially when it comes from a gangrenous part, it sets up rapid and violent inflammation, ending in speedy disorganization, with the production of a puriform material, constituting an *embolic abscess*, which is surrounded by hyperæmia. Septic embolism is highly important in connection with ulcerative endocarditis and pyæmias.

The effects of an embolus, as regards the part supplied by the vessel which is blocked up, are similar to those of obstruction from any other cause, namely, anaemia, atrophy, softening, fatty degeneration, or actual gangrene. In the arteries of the limbs embolism may lead to the formation of an aneurism; and it is now generally believed that cerebral aneurisms in young people often originate in this way. The production of the aneurism is supposed to be chiefly due to inflammatory softening of the walls of the artery, resulting from the irritation of the embolus.

The organs most frequently affected by embolism are the lungs, brain, spleen, kidneys, and heart. Petechial spots on the skin, or on mucous and serous membranes, are sometimes due to this cause. A very interesting case came under my notice in which sudden embolism occurred in connection with the main vessels of the fore-arm.

Symptoms.—The clinical phenomena of embolism necessarily vary greatly according to the vessels affected; the rapidity and degree of obstruction; the characters of the embolus; and other circumstances. It need only be stated here in general terms that the early symptoms, if any, are those characteristic of sudden or gradual obstruction of the vessel supplying some particular organ or part; followed by those indicating the local effects of the embolus, and in some cases by evidences of septicaemia. Fatty embolism is important in certain injuries and diseases of bones, particles from the marrow gaining access into the circulation; and this form of embolism has also been regarded as a cause of death in diabetes. Chorea and other nervous complaints have been attributed by some authorities to embolism of the minute vessels of the central nervous system.

Treatment.—There is no special treatment applicable to embolism. Attention must be directed to the organ or part involved, the ill-effects resulting from the morbid process being obviated by rest, and by the adoption of other measures which may be indicated in any particular instance. Care must be taken to prevent embolism as far as possible in cases where it is likely to occur.

B. THROMBOSIS.—CLOTTING OF BLOOD.

Pathology and Aetiology.—The conditions which lead to the formation of a thrombus may be thus stated:—1. Anything which impedes or retards the *blood-current*, for example, valvular and other organic diseases of the heart, pressure upon its cavities, or mere feeble cardiac action, such as is observed in low fevers, or in various chronic wasting affections; diseases of the lungs impeding the pulmonary circulation; obstruction of a vessel as the result of constriction, pressure, or internal plugging, especially by an embolus; pressure upon the capillaries of a part; solution of continuity of a vessel; and vascular dilatation, particularly in connection with aneurisms, varicose veins, and distended venous plexuses. A feeble state of the circulation generally, and gravitation of the blood into dependent parts, may also contribute to the formation of a thrombus. 2. Conditions which give rise to roughness, irregularity, or other abnormal state of the *inner surface of the heart*, or of the *coats of the vessels*, for example, acute inflammation; fissuring of the surface; atheroma or calcification; projection of cancerous and other new formations into the interior of vessels; and the changes in their walls associated with surrounding gangrene or inflammation. 3. Certain conditions of the *blood*, namely, hyperinosis or increased tendency to coagulation of fibrin, such as may be observed in various acute inflammatory affections, and in pregnancy; probably pyæmia and allied states; and anaemia. Increased heat of the blood, either local or general, has been regarded as a probable cause of thrombosis. In many instances more than one of the above-mentioned conditions have contributed to the clotting process.

Anatomical characters and effects.—Thrombosis may take place in the cavities of the heart; in the trunk or branches of the pulmonary artery; in the systemic veins, or those of a particular circulation, as the portal, or the venous sinusses within the skull; or in arteries. Each of these varieties will demand separate consideration in relation to the circulatory system and to certain organs, and it must suffice here to offer a few general observations. The clotting process is often primary, but it may be secondary to embolism. It takes place either suddenly, rapidly, or gradually; and the thrombus often increases by continuous additions after its first formation. The clot varies much in its colour, consistence, and other characters, according to its seat, age, mode of formation, and other circumstances. It undergoes changes, and in course of time may become adherent to the interior of a vessel, organized, softened in the centre, actually purulent, or calcified. Portions of a thrombus may become detached, leading to embolism, which may be infective; or ultimately it is sometimes gradually removed by liquefaction or absorption. When in the heart or pulmonary artery, thrombosis produces immediate consequences of a grave character; in a vessel it obstructs the local circulation, with various results, according to its seat. Venous thrombosis causes mechanical congestion, and often gives rise to œdema or other forms of dropsy, and to enlargement of veins communicating with the obstructed vessel or vessels. Arterial thrombosis leads to local anaemia, and interference with nutrition, as in other forms of obstruction. A clot may cause irritation of vessels or contiguous structures, and thus set up inflammation and its consequences.

Symptoms.—These vary much in different kinds of cases of thrombosis, and nothing of a very definite nature can be stated from

a general point of view. Undoubtedly clotting in connection with the heart or pulmonary vessels is a very grave event, which may prove immediately or rapidly fatal, or is attended with serious disturbance of the respiratory and cardiac functions. When it takes place in external parts the thrombus and its effects are, as a rule, obvious enough, especially when the veins are involved, there being also much local pain and tenderness in some of these cases. Arterial thrombosis must always be remembered as a cause of dry gangrene of the extremities in old people. When the condition is internal, it may be very difficult to recognize, but should be borne in mind as possibly accounting for symptoms connected with certain structures, especially the brain and the portal system.

Treatment will be more conveniently dealt with in relation to the several varieties of thrombosis.

CHAPTER VI.

DROPSY—HYDROPS.

It is a matter of controversy what place dropsy should occupy in medical nomenclature. Many eminent authorities claim for it the right of being regarded as a distinct "disease," and no doubt in one sense it comes fairly within this category, for it is a morbid condition of a very definite kind. At the same time, it cannot, in my opinion, be too strongly enforced that dropsy is not an independent disease, but that it is associated with well-recognized conditions, either general or local, and often depends upon obvious and definite structural lesions affecting important organs, of which it is a prominent symptom. The practitioner must, therefore, invariably regard dropsy from this point of view, and should in every case endeavour to trace its pathological relationships. So long as this is done, it matters little what it is called, whether a disease or a symptom.

Dropsy consists in an accumulation of serous fluid, which has escaped from the blood-vessels, either in the subcutaneous or submucous cellular tissue, in serous cavities, or in the cellular tissue of certain organs; it may occupy all these parts at the same time. The following terms are used to indicate the situation and distribution of a dropsical collection:—*Dropsy of the subcutaneous cellular tissue*, if at all extensive, is named *anasarca*, if localized, *œdema*; *hydrothorax* signifies dropsical accumulation in the pleuræ, *hydropericardium* in the pericardium, *ascites* in the peritoneum, *hydrocephalus* in the ventricles of the brain or the arachnoid cavity; dropsy of submucous tissue or of organs is termed *œdema*, for example, *œdema* of the glottis, or of the lungs. When dropsy involves both the subcutaneous cellular tissue and serous cavities, it is said to be *general*, although this term is also often applied to extensive superficial dropsy, when it affects the trunk or arms, as well as the legs.

It is necessary to mention certain morbid conditions which are known as *spurious dropsies*, but which really have no pathological relation to dropsy. They include ovarian dropsy, which is a cystic disease of the ovary; accumulations of fluid in the interior of hollow organs, as the

result of obstruction of an orifice or duct, or of inflammation, such as dropsy of the uterus (*hydrometria*), or of the gall-bladder; certain serous effusions consequent upon inflammation, for instance, some forms of hydrocele, and acute inflammatory œdema of the glottis; dropsy of the kidney (*hydronephrosis*), a term which is either applied to renal cystic disease, or, more correctly, to obstruction of the ureter, and consequent accumulation of urine and inflammatory products within the pelvis of the kidney, which gradually destroy this organ.

Pathology.—A dropsical accumulation is the immediate result, either of excessive flow of fluid out of the vessels; of deficient absorption; or of both causes combined: in short, the balance between exhalation and absorption is in some way disturbed. This derangement may be due to the following pathological conditions:—

1. *Over-distension of the vessels*, associated with the different forms of congestion, but especially venous congestion, is one of the most common causes of dropsy, which is then due both to an excessive escape of fluid from the vessels, and to their diminished power of absorption. It appears from recent observations that this cause does not act merely mechanically, as exudation and absorption are found to depend upon active work done probably by the endothelial plates of the blood-vessels. Obstruction to the circulation on the right side of the heart thus causes more or less general dropsy, beginning in the feet and ankles, and extending upwards; the same result may follow serious impediment to the circulation through the lungs. Any difficulty affecting the mitral orifice tends to lead primarily to œdema of the lungs, because the pulmonary vessels are distended, but in course of time it tells back upon the right side of the heart and general venous system. Any local venous obstacle may originate correspondingly limited dropsy. Thus, interference with the portal circulation is followed by ascites; a clot in a principal vein of the arm or leg, or external pressure upon it, will give rise to œdema of the affected limb. Hydrocephalus is chiefly the result of pressure upon the small veins returning the blood from the ventricles of the brain. Gravitation necessarily influences the seat of the congestive form of dropsy, and may itself induce it under certain conditions. Active congestion does not give rise to any great amount of dropsy as a rule, but it often causes local œdema.

2. A *feeble and relaxed state of the vessels and tissues*, in consequence of which the former readily yield and allow transudation of fluid, often aids in the production of dropsy. The œdema of the feet and ankles which is met with in some cases of general debility is partly due to this cause, assisted by anaemia and feeble cardiac action.

3. An *unhealthy condition of the blood* may originate dropsy, especially if this fluid is very watery, deficient in albuminous constituents, or, it is said, if it should be impregnated with certain morbid materials, such as urea. Under these circumstances its fluid portion more readily transudes through the walls of the vessels. This cause often aids materially in the production of all forms of dropsy, but it is most important in connection with the anaemic and renal varieties.

4. It has been asserted that dropsy depends chiefly on a *withdrawal of nervous influence* from the vessels, and experiments have been made to prove that so long as the nerves remain intact dropsy will not occur, even though the veins are over-distended. That the nervous system does exercise considerable control over the processes of exhalation and absorption by the vessels is beyond doubt, and it must therefore in-

fluence the occurrence of dropsy, but it by no means occupies the important relation to this symptom attributed to it by some pathologists. Oedema is not uncommonly observed in paralyzed limbs.

5. *Deficient power of absorption by the lymphatic system* is probably an important factor in the production of dropsy in many instances. In certain cases of cardiac dropsy the chief lymph-ducts are unable to empty themselves properly into the distended veins, and this may indirectly interfere with lymphatic absorption. It is believed, further, that the endothelial plates and stomata of the lymphatic spaces and serous cavities are actively concerned in the process.

Etiology.—Such being the immediate pathological conditions which explain the occurrence of dropsy, and which are often more or less combined, its more obvious causes may be summed up as follows:—

1. *Cardiac diseases or conditions that interfere with the circulation of the blood, and lead to overloading of the veins and capillaries.* The most important are affections of certain of the orifices and valves of the heart; dilatation of its cavities; and degeneration of its walls, with consequent weak action. The heart may also be displaced, or pressed upon by neighbouring morbid conditions; it may be extensively adherent; or the blood in the right cavities may be clotted.

2. *Affections of the lungs impeding the circulation.* When acute bronchitis complicates extensive emphysema, more or less dropsy may supervene. Prolonged cases of emphysema and bronchitis may end in dropsy by producing dilatation of the right cavities of the heart, and tricuspid regurgitation. Pulmonary diseases also not uncommonly help in starting or aggravating cardiac dropsy.

3. *Diseases of the kidneys attended with deficient elimination of water and urea, but allowing the escape of albumen in the urine.* As a consequence the blood is impoverished and impure, and the vessels are over-distended. Scarlatina demands special mention in this connection as a cause of dropsy, which generally depends upon acute renal inflammation when associated with this disease, but not invariably. In advanced chronic cases of Bright's disease, however, the dropsy is to a great extent due to cardio-vascular changes resulting therefrom.

4. *Diseases of the liver, or any other morbid condition causing obstruction to the portal circulation.* This is a local form of dropsy, resulting from mechanical congestion of the tributaries of the portal vein, which leads to ascites; but the pressure of the fluid in the peritoneum upon the veins may subsequently cause oedema of the legs.

5. *Any local obstacle in connection with a particular vein.* Local dropsy is not uncommonly due to this cause, resulting from the pressure of a pregnant uterus, ovarian and other tumours, enlarged glands, aneurisms, or fibrous thickenings; as well as from inflammation of veins, varicose veins, and thrombosis. A clot in the portal vein may add seriously to the ascites associated with hepatic disease.

6. *Gravitation of the blood into dependent parts.* Prolonged standing may itself lead to oedema of the legs, but more especially if the patient is anaemic, and the tissues are wanting in tone. Posture will often help in promoting the occurrence, or influencing the seat of dropsy due to more definite causes, by keeping certain parts of the body in a dependent position.

7. *Anæmia.* The conditions of blood included under this term often materially help in inducing dropsy; while anaemia not uncommonly itself causes more or less oedema. Venous thrombosis occasionally

occurs in these cases in different parts, giving rise to extensive dropsy. Chlorotic females frequently suffer from œdema about the feet and ankles. On account of the blood changes which they induce, dropsy may be brought about or increased by a want of proper diet, especially if combined with unfavourable hygienic conditions; by haemorrhage or excessive discharges, either natural or morbid; and by various acute or chronic diseases, such as fevers, especially malarial, phthisis, cancer, splenic disease, affections of the absorbent glands, scurvy, or purpura.

8. Conditions leading to active congestion.—Dropsy is said occasionally to follow exposure to cold and wet, or a chill from any cause; the rapid disappearance of chronic skin-diseases; or the sudden suppression of habitual discharges; and is then believed to result from active internal congestion. The reality of these cases is, however, very doubtful, as well as their pathology if they do occur. Local active congestion is also supposed to account for the œdema surrounding morbid deposits, such as tubercle or cancer; as well as for that often observed in the neighbourhood of inflamed parts.

It must not be forgotten that in many individual cases more than one, it may be several, causes have been instrumental in originating dropsy. (Edema of the legs is a frequent symptom in old people, and is then obviously a complex phenomenon.

Anatomical Characters.—The seat and extent of dropsy vary considerably in different cases, as well as the quantity of fluid accumulated. Dropsical fluid presents the following characters:—It is almost always thin and watery; either colourless or light-yellow as a rule, but sometimes tinged by the colouring matter of the blood or of bile; clear and transparent, or rarely opalescent; usually varying in its specific gravity from 1008 to 1012 or 1014. Its reaction is generally alkaline, but occasionally neutral or slightly acid. Chemically it is allied to the serum of the blood, consisting of water holding in solution albumen, alkaline and earthy salts, especially chlorides, and extractive matters, but the proportion of these ingredients varies much in different parts and in different cases, especially the amount of albumen, and the composition is never identical with that of blood-serum, the proportion of solids being much less. Fatty elements, especially cholesterin, fibrinogenous materials, or pigments are sometimes present; and urea may be found in one special form, namely, in renal dropsy.

Symptoms and Course.—As a rule dropsy comes on more or less gradually, but sometimes its progress is extremely rapid, and it may extend over the whole body in a few hours. It usually appears first, and is most abundant, in dependent parts, especially such as are distant from the heart; in those which are exposed; or in regions where there is much loose cellular tissue. It is liable to vary with position, being usually influenced by gravitation.

The objective signs of anasarca or œdema are swelling of the affected part, and pitting of the surface on pressure, the skin being generally pale, but sometimes congested. The degree of distension varies much: it may be so great as to cause the skin to assume a tense, shining aspect, or even to burst or slough. The vitality of dropsical tissues is impaired, and hence they are very liable to erysipelatous and other forms of low inflammation, either spontaneously or from slight irritation. When fluid accumulates within serous cavities, it may or may not produce evident enlargement, but its presence can be made out in most cases by certain "physical signs," to be hereafter described. The subjective symptoms

accompanying dropsy of external parts may amount to more or less discomfort or uneasiness, and a sense of tightness or stiffness, but no actual pain or tenderness is felt. An accumulation of dropsical fluid internally interferes mechanically with organs, and may thus cause most serious disturbance of their functions. In certain parts it may lead to a rapidly fatal issue, as, for instance, when oedema occurs in the neighbourhood of the glottis.

The general symptoms will necessarily vary according to the cause of the dropsy. If it is at all considerable in amount, the normal secretions are as a rule deficient in quantity.

Diagnosis.—It is usually not difficult to determine whether dropsy is present, when it is looked for. The peculiar condition named *myxoædema* might be mistaken for general dropsy, but is of a different nature. (See *MYXEDEMA*.) The chief point in diagnosis is to make out the *cause* or *causes* of dropsy. For this purpose of course it is necessary to enquire into the history of the patient; to observe what other symptoms are present, both local and general; and to examine carefully those organs and structures, diseases of which are known to originate dropsy. Much help may, however, be derived from a consideration of certain facts with regard to this particular symptom, namely:—

1. *Its place of origin, seat, and extent.* *Cardiac* dropsy begins in both feet and ankles, and extends upwards, ultimately tending to become more or less general. Ascites only follows in these cases, with rare exceptions, after the circulation through the liver has been for some time obstructed. *Renal* dropsy frequently starts in the face and upper part of the body, especially about the eyelids, where there is much loose cellular tissue; and in the hands, because they are exposed. It may rapidly spread over the whole body, and involve all the serous cavities, though not usually to a great extent. *Hepatic* dropsy is confined to the peritoneal cavity at first, because the portal system is alone interfered with. The abdomen may become considerably distended before any dropsy is observed elsewhere, but in most cases after a while anasarca of the legs sets in, in consequence of the pressure exercised by the accumulated fluid upon the *vena cava inferior*. Anasarca of the legs and ascites may appear simultaneously, should there be any pressure upon the *inferior vena cava* just before it passes through the diaphragm; this vessel may also be obstructed lower down, giving rise to dropsy of both legs. *Anæmia* alone never causes much dropsy; it is always limited to the subcutaneous tissues; and is usually only seen about the feet and ankles, or in the loose tissue of the eyelids. If it should lead to disseminated thrombosis, the dropsy will be correspondingly distributed and extensive. *Local* dropsy, as, for instance, oedema of one leg or arm, always indicates some local obstruction of a vein. Rarely the *superior vena cava* is pressed upon, and dropsy of the upper part of the body is one of the consequences.

2. *Its rate and mode of progress.*—*Cardiac* dropsy is generally slow and gradual in its progress, liable for a time to vary more or less in amount, according to position, but ultimately this does not influence it much. It may increase rather quickly, in consequence of some acute pulmonary complication. *Renal* dropsy, if acute, may be extremely rapid in its course, in some cases producing enormous enlargement of the whole body, and obliterating the features in a few hours. This is the only form of dropsy in which such a mode of progress is observed; it may also disappear in the same rapid manner. *Hepatic* dropsy

progresses slowly and steadily as a rule, but may be somewhat acute. That of *anaemia* comes and goes easily when uncomplicated, being often present about the feet and ankles in the evenings, but disappearing with a night's rest, while the eyelids are puffy in the mornings.

3. *The effect of pressure.*—This is said to distinguish between *cardiac* and *renal* dropsy, when subcutaneous. The latter is stated to pit much less, and to retain the impression of the finger for a longer time, elasticity not being quite lost. This supposed distinction is, however, not very reliable.

4. *Appearance.*—The appearance of a dropsical part may assist the diagnosis. Thus in some cases of *renal* disease the skin presents a very peculiar dull-white, pasty aspect. In *cardiac* dropsy signs of venous congestion are often present, and the skin may be remarkably shiny and tense.

5. *Characters of the fluid.*—That of *renal* dropsy is of a very low specific gravity, containing only a small quantity of albumen, and urea can in some instances be detected in it.

6. *The effects of treatment.*—The dropsy of *anaemia* is easily got rid of; the *renal* form can frequently be removed for a time, or permanently, by appropriate treatment; it is often difficult to bring about absorption of *cardiac* dropsy, if at all considerable in amount, and it is liable to return more or less speedily, but to this statement there are many exceptions. Dropsy due to both renal and cardio-vascular changes is of a very obstinate nature, and not uncommonly cannot be influenced in the least.

It is important to bear in mind that in not a few cases of dropsy more than one, it may be several, causes are accountable for the condition; while occasionally its aetiology cannot be definitely made out.

Prognosis.—The chief questions with which the prognosis of dropsy is concerned are its immediate danger to life; the probability of curing it permanently; and its temporary removal or alleviation. Caution should be exercised in giving an opinion, especially an unfavourable one, for cases which seem almost hopeless sometimes improve in a remarkable manner. The main data upon which the prognosis is founded are:—1. The cause or causes of the dropsy, and the possibility of removing them, special attention being directed to those organs which are so frequently accountable for this symptom. 2. Its seat, dropsy of some structures, for example, oedema of the larynx or lungs, being immediately dangerous to life; while in other parts it is very difficult to get rid of. 3. Its extent over the body, and the quantity of fluid accumulated. 4. Its duration and progress, acute and rapidly-spreading dropsy being highly dangerous, but at the same time often more easily dispelled than that which is chronic and steadily progressive. 5. The possibility of adopting appropriate treatment, and the effects resulting therefrom. This applies particularly to those active measures which have for their object the absorption of the fluid, much depending upon the strength of the patient, and his ability to undergo the requisite treatment, as well as upon the state of those organs which are directly acted upon. 6. The condition of dropsical parts, there being more danger if their nutrition is obviously impaired, or if they are the seat of congestion or low inflammation, or exhibit a tendency to erysipelas.

Treatment.—The objects to be kept in view in the treatment of dropsy are:—1. Its removal or cure. 2. The prevention of its recurrence. 3. The prevention and management of its injurious effects. The particulars of treatment must necessarily be governed by the cause of the

dropsy, and the condition of the several organs, but there are certain general principles which need attention, of which an outline will now be given, as well as of the means by which they are to be carried out.

1. *Removal of the cause.*—As illustrations may be mentioned the removal of any pressure or constriction directly affecting a vein; or the relief of an attack of acute bronchitis in cases of cardiac disease, which may seriously aggravate dropsy due to this cause. Abundant anasarca will often clear up rapidly after an ascitic collection has been removed by tapping. Of course it is highly important to attend specially to any organ, a morbid condition of which is keeping up dropsy, and to try to cure the disease, or at all events to render the organ capable of performing its functions, so far as this is possible.

2. *Attention to rest, position, and regulated pressure.*—Far too little heed is usually paid to the influence of *rest* and *position* in the treatment of dropsy. The part affected should, if necessary, be maintained continuously and for a long time in an elevated position. Much benefit may often be obtained by keeping the legs, if they are the seat of anasarca, on a level higher than the body; or by raising an oedematous scrotum by means of a pillow made of cotton wool placed underneath. *Pressure* is also very valuable in many cases, if carefully and properly applied. A well-fitting elastic stocking will often cure and prevent oedema of the legs.

3. *Diet.*—In cases of considerable dropsy it is desirable to limit the amount of fluid taken into the body as much as possible, and under certain circumstances even a *dry diet* is indicated, if it can be borne. An entire *skim-milk diet* has been found very valuable in the treatment of some cases of renal dropsy, and also of ascites, as I can testify from personal experience. As a general rule it may be stated that the diet in cases of dropsy should be of a nutritious character.

4. *Promotion of absorption of the fluid.*—This indication is carried out by the use of *diaphoretics*, *hydragogue purgatives*, and *diuretics*, with the view of carrying away the watery portion of the blood, and thus emptying the vessels, so that they are able to absorb the dropsical accumulation.

The only *diaphoretic* that usually proves of much practical value in the treatment of dropsy is some form of bath which promotes free perspiration, such as the warm, vapour, hot-air, or Turkish bath. Either of these may be used as frequently as circumstances require and permit; and local baths may sometimes be employed with much advantage if the patient cannot sustain general baths. It is in the treatment, both curative and preventive, of renal dropsy that they are most valuable, and especially of acute cases. They must always be employed cautiously in cardiac diseases. Various diaphoretic medicines are often given, but the only drugs belonging to this group likely to be of any real service in relieving dropsy are jaborandi and its active principle pilocarpine.

Hydragogue purgatives are frequently highly efficient in relieving dropsy, but care must be exercised in their administration, as they tend to weaken the patient. The most important are elaterium (gr. $\frac{1}{6}$ gradually increased to gr. $\frac{1}{2}$), or preferably elaterin, in the form of the compound powder of the B.P.; and the compound jalap powder (gr. 20 to 5*i*). Either of these may be given two or three times a week, or oftener if required. Prof. Matthew Hay has recommended the administration of a concentrated solution of a saline purgative, especially sulphate of magnesium, in the treatment of certain cases of dropsy. It

thus acts both on the intestines and the kidneys; and rapidly reduces the fluids of the blood. He has found this treatment more useful in general than local dropsies; and most beneficial in those depending on a stasis of the circulation, as cardiac dropsy. As requisite conditions he recommends that the patient should abstain from food for some hours previously; and that the salt should be administered along with the smallest possible quantity of water. Other strong purgatives are employed in treating dropsy, such as gamboge, podophyllin, calomel, or croton oil, but these are much less admissible ordinarily, though some of them may be occasionally serviceable.

Diuretics are most beneficial in some forms of dropsy, but obviously they are contra-indicated in cases of serious renal disease, and can only be used with the greatest caution when the kidneys are at all affected. Those usually given are the nitrate, acetate, citrate, or iodide of potassium or sodium in full doses, freely diluted; acid tartrate of potassium in small doses; benzoate of ammonium; spirit of nitrous ether; infusion or tincture of digitalis, or the powdered leaf; squill in the form of tincture or pill; spirit or infusion of juniper; infusion of fresh broom tops; or oil of turpentine. The balsam and resin of copaiba have been found very efficacious in the treatment of some cases of ascites, and in certain other forms of dropsy. Strophanthus and caffeine are also valuable agents sometimes; as well as other drugs allied to digitalis in their effects, producing diuresis by their action on the heart and vessels, such as convallaria, casca bark, and senega. The employment of small doses of calomel as a diuretic in the treatment of dropsy has during late years been much advocated, and in suitable cases undoubtedly answers this purpose. Diuretics are often given in various combinations in the treatment of dropsy, and a pill which has been specially recommended is one containing elaterium, squill, digitalis, and extract of hyoscyamus, taken every other night. Gin or whisky freely diluted acts as an efficient diuretic in the treatment of certain cases of dropsy.

Blood-letting has been recommended under certain circumstances in dropsy, with the view of unloading the vessels, and thus assisting the action of other remedies, but such treatment can rarely be indicated.

5. *General treatment.*—Treatment directed to the general system, and especially to the state of the blood, is in a large proportion of cases of much service, and may be the chief or only indication, as in cases of dropsy due to anaemia. The digestive and nutritive functions must be attended to; and all hygienic conditions properly regulated. Tonics are often called for, and above all some preparation of iron, especially the tincture of the perchloride. Arsenic is a useful remedy in certain cases of dropsy.

6. *Removal of the fluid by operation.*—If dropsy cannot be got rid of in any other way, it is necessary to have recourse to certain operative procedures, and I believe that they are often delayed until too late a period, and ought in appropriate cases to be performed, not as last resources, but as curative measures. These operations include:—1. *Paracentesis or tapping* of serous cavities, especially to be adopted in certain cases of ascites. 2. *Acupuncture, scarification, or free incision* of the skin, or the introduction of small *canulae* into the subcutaneous cellular tissue, in cases of anasarca or oedema. It is generally sufficient to make several superficial punctures with an angular needle in dependent parts, repeating them as often as may be required, and taking care that the punctured spots are not inflamed by urine or other sources of irritation.

Southeys small trocharæ and canulæ are now much used, being introduced through the skin, and each canula being left in after the withdrawal of the trochar, so that the dropsical fluid may drain away through it, a drainage-tube being attached. By this method a considerable quantity of fluid is often rapidly taken away. It is also employed to remove ascitic fluid. Of late years I have practised in several cases of extensive anasarca the method of scarification or incision over the outer malleolus, and I think with decided advantage. Whatever operative treatment is adopted, it is most important to attend carefully to antiseptic precautions, both at the time and subsequently.

7. *Prevention of irritation of dropsical parts.*—It is important to keep all external dropsical parts clean and dry; to prevent them from being unduly pressed upon; and to ward off all other sources of irritation. Should erythema, erysipelas, gangrene, or other complications supervene, they must be treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER VII.

HÆMORRHAGE.

HÆMORRHAGE signifies an escape of blood out of the current of the circulation, either from the heart itself, or from the arteries, capillaries, or veins. *Capillary* hæmorrhages are most frequent in medical practice. The blood may be poured out on a free cutaneous, mucous, or serous surface; or into the interstices of tissues, the substance of organs, or morbid growths. An accumulation of blood in a solid organ or mass of tissue is named an *extravasation*, *apoplexy*, or under certain circumstances, a *humorrhagic infarct*; subcutaneous hæmorrhages assume the form of *ecchymoses* or more or less extensive patches, *stigmata* or minute points, *petechiae* or rounded spots, and *vibices* or lines.

Special names are used to indicate whence a discharge of blood comes, of which the chief are *epistaxis* or bleeding from the nose; *haemoptysis*, from the air-passages or lungs; *haematemesis*, from the stomach; *melæna*, from the bowels; *haematuria*, from the urinary organs; and *menorrhagia*, from the female genital organs.

Certain general terms are also often applied to hæmorrhages, with the view of classifying them, the meaning of which is sufficiently obvious. Thus they are said to be *traumatic* or *spontaneous*; *idiopathic* or *symptomatic*; *active* or *passive*; *arterial*, *venous*, or *capillary*; *vicarious*, *critical*, or *periodical*.

Aetiology.—The causes of hæmorrhage may be thus arranged:—

1. *Traumatic.*—A vessel may be directly injured by a cut or contusion; by hard and rough substances within the body, such as a calculus in the renal pelvis or bladder, a foreign body, or dry hard fæces in the intestine; or by the action of corrosive poisons.

2. *Destructive processes.*—Hæmorrhage is often associated with ulceration, gangrene; abscess, diphtheritic lesions, cancerous or other growths which open up vessels either directly or by pressure, and tubercular softening. Inflammation not uncommonly leads to hæmorrhage, and this may be partly the result of a destructive process.

3. Intense congestion.—All forms of congestion may end in haemorrhage, but especially if the force of the circulation is at the same time much increased, the pressure becoming so great as to cause the vessels to give way. Therefore, whatever can occasion marked congestion may bring on haemorrhage, which is then usually of the capillary variety. As illustrations may be mentioned the haemorrhage which relieves the vessels in active congestion or early inflammation; that into the alimentary canal which results from cirrhosis of the liver; bleeding piles; critical and vicarious haemorrhages; those induced by over-straining or local irritation; and that which follows embolism.

4. Morbid conditions of the walls of the heart or coats of the vessels.—Among the most important causes to be mentioned under this head are fatty degeneration or aneurism of the cardiac walls; atheromatous or calcareous degeneration of arteries; arterial aneurisms; so-called "miliary aneurisms" affecting small vessels; varicose veins; nutritive and degenerative changes affecting the minute vessels; or, as some think, mere "want of tone." Where vessels are not well supported, as in the brain, or if the tissues are weak and flabby, haemorrhage from this cause is much more likely to take place. The feeble new vessels in recent inflammatory exudations, and those in certain vascular cysts or villous growths, are very liable to give way. Polypi also very readily bleed.

5. Abnormal states of the blood, and constitutional conditions.—These often predispose to haemorrhage, as in anaemia, especially if this is due to previous loss of blood, or is of the pernicious type; scurvy or purpura; leukæmia and allied diseases; jaundice; low fevers, particularly typhus, small-pox, and bad forms of measles; tropical fevers, whether malarial or other; and in the condition induced by bad diet, intemperance, various chronic diseases, or other lowering agencies. A plethoric state of the vascular system favours some forms of bleeding, and hence this symptom may be predisposed to by over-feeding, sedentary habits, and other causes of plethora. There is a special condition termed *haemophilia* or the *haemorrhagic diathesis*, which will be separately considered.

Hæmorrhage may occur at any time of life, but is most common about the period when growth and development are proceeding rapidly; and in advanced life, when the vessels and other tissues have undergone degeneration. It is also prone to affect different parts at different ages—thus in the young epistaxis is frequent; in young adults hæmoptysis; later on hæmatemesis, malæna, and hæmaturia are more common; and in old age cerebral haemorrhage chiefly occurs. Some individuals are much more liable to haemorrhage than others, for no obvious reason.

Anatomical Characters.—When haemorrhage has taken place from the capillaries of a mucous membrane, it is often impossible even on the most careful examination to detect the vessels from which the blood has escaped. Generally the source of the bleeding can be discovered, and remnants of the blood are visible. Extravasations vary in amount from minute points of blood to large clots, which are either distinct and well-defined, or mixed up with the tissues of the structure involved; there may be one or more such extravasations in the same organ. The blood is generally found more or less firmly coagulated, and at first presents a dark red colour. It may cause irritation of the surrounding tissues, as evidenced by redness, inflammatory exudation, softening, or even the formation of an abscess. Its colouring matter may also stain neighbouring structures. If the extravasation does not

speedily prove fatal, it undergoes the following changes:—1. The colour gradually becomes paler, at the same time changing to brown or yellow, and ultimately it may become almost white; a granular pigment often forms simultaneously, along with crystals of hæmatoidine. 2. The clot contracts in size, becoming firmer, and being presently surrounded with a fibrous capsule; it also frequently itself undergoes organization and vascularization, in which condition it may remain permanently. 3. In some cases it is absorbed, leaving a cystic cavity containing fluid; or this fluid may also ultimately be taken up, the walls of the cyst coming together, and only a hard cicatrix remaining, sometimes coloured by pigment. Occasionally nothing is left but altered blood-pigment, of a yellow or black colour, especially on membranous surfaces; or there may be no trace of a previous hæmorrhage, except a puckering and contraction. In some instances a clot softens and assumes a puriform appearance.

Symptoms.—Active hæmorrhage is often preceded by premonitory symptoms. Thus there may be general excitement of the circulation, with a quick, sharp, and full pulse; or local sensations of weight or fulness and heat are complained of, with increased pulsation, the extremities being at the same time cold. Special symptoms frequently indicate the approach of bleeding in connection with particular organs.

The actual symptoms may be described as *general* and *local*.

General.—According to the quantity of blood lost, and the rapidity with which it escapes, hæmorrhage may either be unattended with any general symptoms at all; or it proves more or less speedily fatal; or gives rise to faintness or syncope; or merely originates an anæmic condition.

Local.—The local phenomena necessarily vary with the seat and amount of the hæmorrhage. Instant or very speedy death may result from the mere local effects of the blood effused. The symptoms usually observed are dependent upon:—*a. Physical interference* with an organ, owing to the mere presence of the blood, as when it escapes into the pericardium or pleura, and presses upon the heart or lung respectively; or when a large quantity accumulates in the bronchial tubes. *b. Destruction of tissues*, which may be broken up or lacerated. This generally happens when extravasation takes place into the substance of an organ, the functions of which are thus materially disturbed. *c. Irritation* by the coagulated blood, this being liable to give rise to more or less local inflammation, with its accompanying symptoms. *d. Excitation of certain acts*, which have for their object the rejection of the blood, should it escape on a free mucous surface. Thus blood in the stomach often causes vomiting; in the air-passages it excites cough. The amount and characters of blood which escapes or is discharged externally vary considerably, and valuable indications are usually thus afforded as to its source. It is often more or less mixed with secretions or morbid products. The presence of blood may be obvious to ordinary objective examination, as in the case of subcutaneous hæmorrhages, or bleeding from mucous surfaces may be visible; in other cases it may be indicated by certain *physical signs*, as, for instance, when it accumulates in the bronchial tubes or a pleural cavity.

Diagnosis.—There are three main classes of cases which are met with in medical practice, bearing upon the diagnosis of hæmorrhage. At present it will only be practicable to offer a few general remarks with reference to these several groups, more complete details on the subject being given in relation to individual hæmorrhages.

1. Blood may escape or be discharged externally, as through the mouth, nose, or anus, or along with the urine. The points to be then determined are :—*a.* The actual occurrence of haemorrhage, and the amount of blood lost. *b.* The source of the bleeding, both as regards the organ or part from which the blood comes; and the vessels from which it escapes. *c.* The immediate cause of the haemorrhage, and the pathological condition or lesion upon which it depends. At the outset it is necessary to warn strongly against relying too implicitly on the mere statements of patients with regard to haemorrhage, it being the duty of the practitioner to see the blood for himself, if possible, and to submit it to an adequate examination, thus ascertaining definitely and certainly, not only whether bleeding has really taken place, but also the quantity and characters of the blood discharged. It must be borne in mind that malingeringers sometimes pretend to be the subjects of haemorrhage, while other patients mislead unintentionally; that certain materials may resemble and be mistaken for blood; and that this is sometimes so altered in its characters, or mingled with other substances, especially when it comes from the alimentary canal, that it cannot be recognized as blood. The observation of the quantity and characters of discharged blood is often of material assistance in the diagnosis of the source and immediate cause of haemorrhage, which is further aided by a consideration of the history of the patient; the mode in which the blood is expelled; the accompanying symptoms, both local and general; the results of objective, and particularly of special modes of physical examination; and the further progress of the case. Should there be persistent or repeated bleeding, the cause of which is not evident, it must on no account be allowed to continue without making strict local examination, with a view of finding out its source.

2. The diagnosis of extravasation of blood into the substance of organs or tissues has next to be considered. When haemorrhages are subcutaneous, they are generally easily recognized, but those which take place in connection with organs, as the brain or lungs, or into the substance of deep tissues, often present more or less difficulty in their diagnosis. Extravasation associated with an organ is usually indicated by obvious local symptoms referable to such organ, which are frequently sudden in their onset. In this class of cases the diagnosis comprehends :—*a.* The fact of haemorrhage having occurred, and its distinction from other lesions. *b.* The exact seat of the extravasation, so far as this can be determined. *c.* The amount of blood effused. *d.* The direct effects produced upon the implicated organ; and the further morbid changes subsequently set up by, or associated with the extravasation. These questions can only be decided by a careful consideration of each individual case in all its details.

3. Haemorrhages sometimes take place into spaces within the body, as into serous or mucous cavities, and these may be on a large scale. Not uncommonly such cases are very obscure, and it is impossible to make a positive diagnosis, but in some instances this might be arrived at from a previous knowledge of the presence of some morbid condition likely to be attended with such an event, for example, an aneurism; the occurrence of general symptoms of shock and loss of blood; and the discovery of local physical signs indicative of the accumulation of blood.

Prognosis.—In the large majority of instances haemorrhage must be regarded as more or less serious, but its gravity differs very widely in different cases, and occasionally it is a favourable event within certain

limits. The chief circumstances which influence the prognosis when blood escapes externally are:—1. Its amount. 2. Its source, and the immediate cause of the bleeding. 3. The power of checking the haemorrhage, and its liability to recur, with the frequency of such recurrence. 4. The previous condition of the system, and the effects of the loss of blood. It is remarkable, however, from what grave conditions induced by haemorrhage recovery may take place. Extravasations into organs are always serious, but their degree of danger depends on:—1. Their size and number. 2. The organ involved, and the precise seat of the lesion. 3. The cause of the haemorrhage. 4. The immediate and remote effects upon the organ implicated. Haemorrhage into internal cavities is generally highly dangerous, on account of its ordinary causes; the serious interference with the functions of important organs which it involves; and the loss of blood, which cannot be prevented by any direct means.

Treatment.—The general principles and indications which are applicable to the treatment of haemorrhages in medical practice, and the means by which they are to be carried out, are as follows:—

1. The first indication is to *stop the bleeding*, should this be desirable; and to *prevent its recurrence*. It is not always advisable to check haemorrhage, provided the amount of blood lost is not serious, for it may be the means of warding off some worse evil, as in many cases of bleeding from piles, or of epistaxis. Usually it needs to be stopped, and the following are the measures to be borne in mind for this purpose:—

a. Absolute *rest of the body* in the recumbent posture is frequently demanded; and, so far as this is practicable, the part from which the blood comes should be kept in a quiescent state, every disturbing action being avoided, such as cough in cases of haemoptysis, or vomiting in those attended with haematemesis. Any exertion that is liable to excite the heart, or to cause undue pressure upon the interior of the vessels, should be strictly guarded against. Unnecessary physical examination must also be forbidden. It is of great importance, moreover, to prevent any mental excitement, and to keep the patient calm and hopeful.

b. Attention to *position* may prove most serviceable, one main object being to assist the return of blood by the veins; and every impediment to the venous circulation must be removed or avoided. The effect of posture is strikingly shown in the arrest of haemorrhage from varicose veins of the legs, by merely raising the limbs to a higher level than the body. Sir Joseph Lister explains the influence of certain positions in stopping bleeding, by the theory that the arteries become contracted, through the influence of the nervous system, and he believes that the effect may travel some distance by extension along the vessels, or may influence remote vessels by reflex or sympathetic action.

c. The *circulation* must be maintained in as calm a state as possible, and should the heart be excited, *cardiac sedatives* are of the utmost value, such as aconite, tartar emetic in small doses, opium or morphine, the last-mentioned being often very useful as a subcutaneous injection. In other instances digitalis is indicated, to control and regulate the action of the heart. Venesection is sometimes resorted to, with the view of lowering the cardiac action, but this measure can only very rarely be indicated in the treatment of haemorrhage.

d. The administration of *astringents* in full doses is generally called for in medical practice in treating haemorrhage, the most important being acetate of lead, gallic or pyrogallic and tannic acids, dilute or aromatic sulphuric acid, alum, iron-alum, oil of turpentine, preparations of ergot

or ergotin, tincture or solution of perchloride of iron, and tincture of hamamelis. Some of these may be advantageously combined, and either opium or digitalis frequently forms a most useful adjunct. Subcutaneous injection of ergotin, ergotinin, or sclerotinic acid may often be employed with great benefit. The ordinary vegetable astringents are of but little, if any, value in the treatment of internal haemorrhages. All food and drink should be taken cold; and stimulants must not be given unless absolutely required. In some forms of haemorrhage the constant sucking of ice is decidedly serviceable.

e. Local measures are often indicated, such as pressure: plugging of canals; astringent applications; or cold, especially by means of ice, which may be usefully applied to the neighbouring surface, as to the chest or epigastrium in certain cases of haemoptysis or haematemesis, or even to distant parts, as in the treatment of epistaxis, which may sometimes be checked by the application of cold to the back of the neck. The employment of cold in internal haemorrhages must always be practised with discretion, and its effects watched. In cases of haemorrhage from certain mucous surfaces it may be desirable to employ astringent injections. Injections or a spray of hot water have been found very serviceable in some forms of haemorrhage from mucous surfaces. In certain cases it becomes necessary to have recourse to more urgent measures, such as the use of the cautery or galvano-cautery, or torsion or ligature of vessels.

f. It is highly important to improve the general condition of the patient, and the state of the blood, should these be at fault and give rise to a tendency to bleeding, by the exhibition of good diet, tonics, tincture of perchloride of iron, and similar remedies. In this way haemorrhage may often be prevented when it tends to recur. On the other hand, when it is associated with a full plethoric habit, the administration of saline aperients from time to time is very serviceable, while the diet must be restricted. Saline purgatives are also in much favour with some practitioners in the immediate treatment of special forms of haemorrhage, such as haemoptysis.

g. Sometimes it is advisable to draw off blood, either to the superficial structures over the seat of haemorrhage, or to some distant part, by means of heat or sinapisms, leeches, or dry or wet cupping; or to prevent it from entering a part, by the aid of pressure upon the main arteries.

2. The second indication is to attend to the general effects of the loss of blood. Syncope must be treated by position, stimulants, and other appropriate measures, as will be more fully described in a future chapter. In some cases transfusion of blood is demanded, in order to save life. Anæmia due to loss of blood calls for the administration of some preparation of iron, with proper dietetic and hygienic management. (See ANÆMIA.)

3. The local effects of effused blood must also receive attention. In exceptional instances it may be desirable in medical practice to have recourse to some surgical operation, in order to remove a clot, as in some cases of intra-cranial haemorrhage. Usually all that can be done is to keep the part affected entirely at rest; and to employ measures which tend to promote the absorption or removal of the extravasated blood. The administration of iodide of potassium, and the application of blisters, are often decidedly useful measures for aiding its absorption. If inflammation is set up, this must be treated on ordinary principles.

HÆMOPHILIA.—HÆMORRHAGIC DIATHESIS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Under these terms are included certain cases in which there is a liability to excessive haemorrhages from slight causes, supposed to be due to a peculiar constitutional condition or diathesis. The condition is often hereditary, and may be observed in several members of the same family, the individuals being known as "bleeders." Mr. Hutchinson thinks it may be associated with hereditary gout. The tendency to haemorrhage is congenital. Hæmophilia is far more frequent in males than females, and the latter do not usually present the complaint in its typical form. At the same time it seems to be through the mothers rather than the fathers that it is transmitted to the sons. The subjects of hæmophilia do not exhibit any obvious peculiarities. It has been stated that the blood presents certain changes to account for the haemorrhage, namely, deficiency of fibrinogenous elements and of red corpuscles, but the most competent authorities affirm that the blood is not altered; nor have any definite changes been discovered in the blood-vessels, although it is presumed that these vessels are really in an abnormal condition.

Symptoms.—Hæmophilia very rarely manifests itself at birth, but is usually revealed in early infancy; sometimes at the time of the second dentition, or even later in life. The symptoms include a marked tendency to haemorrhages, either both spontaneous and traumatic, or in the less marked cases merely spontaneous; and swelling of the joints. The bleeding is almost always of the capillary variety. When spontaneous, it may be preceded by local premonitory symptoms similar to those which are met with in other forms of haemorrhage. It usually takes place from mucous surfaces, epistaxis being most frequent in children. The frequency of the haemorrhages, their duration, and the amount of blood lost, vary in different cases and at different times. Interstitial extravasations, either diffused or circumscribed, and superficial ecchymoses may also occur. Traumatic haemorrhages also vary in their site and extent, and may arise from contusions; wounds or cuts, however insignificant in themselves; or slight operations, such as vaccination, leeching, tooth-extraction, cutting the frænum linguae, or opening an abscess.

When the joints are affected, those of large size are mainly involved, especially the knee-joint. Usually there has been some injury to cause the haemorrhage, but not necessarily. An affected articulation is swollen, more or less fluctuating, and painful. The enlargement seems to depend upon extravasation of blood into the interior of the joint.

The haemorrhages in hæmophilia may prove fatal, either rapidly or slowly; or they leave a condition of extreme anaemia, which lasts for a long time, or may never be recovered from. In connection with the joint-affection febrile symptoms may supervene, and this condition sometimes continues for a long period, while relapses are very liable to occur. Those who are the subjects of this complaint rarely recover completely.

Treatment.—Persons who are affected with hæmophilia should, if practicable, live in a warm climate. They require good food, including plenty of meat. Ferruginous preparations and cod liver oil seem to be the best medicinal remedies. Marriage ought to be forbidden, and this particularly applies to women belonging to families of "bleeders." On no account should any operation be performed likely to cause haemorrhage, especially tooth-extraction. It is very difficult to check bleeding

by the ordinary measures, but early compression appears to answer best in traumatic forms. Tincture of perchloride of iron in full doses may at the same time be given internally. The effects of the loss of blood must be treated on ordinary principles; and transfusion may be called for. In the treatment of the condition of the joints, rest and support are chiefly indicated.

CHAPTER VIII.

INFLAMMATION.

INFLAMMATION is one of the most frequent and important morbid processes with which we have to deal in medical practice, both in itself and its results. In former editions of this work I have been accustomed to consider the subject at some length, but it has now assumed such proportions that I have thought it desirable to omit theoretical discussions, which more properly belong to works on PATHOLOGY, and to confine my remarks to the more practical aspects of inflammation.

Pathology and Aetiology.—The most prominent views held as to the immediate origin or causation of inflammation are—(a) That it is the physiological effect of the damage done to a tissue when it is injured, provided the injury is not so intense as to destroy its structure and vitality, the blood-vessels and circulation being alone concerned in the process; (b) that some disturbance of the nervous system, either centric or of particular nerves, is a necessary factor; (c) that it is an active process, attended with an alteration or perversion of the nutrition of the tissues themselves; (d) that it is directly and invariably due to the action of “germs” or micro-organisms. The last-mentioned view, originally advanced by Hueter and Ogston, is most in favour at present, and especially in relation to suppuration, which is one of the results of inflammation, bacteria, and particularly certain species of micrococci, being almost always found in collections of pus. The most common varieties are *Staphylococcus pyogenes, aureus, and albus*, and *Streptococcus pyogenes*; but several others have also been recognized in acute abscesses, which are believed to have pyogenic properties. According to this theory inflammation is really an infective lesion, whatever may be its more obvious cause, which is regarded as merely predisposing; and in this connection it may be mentioned that *phagocytosis* is now supposed to take an active part in the inflammatory process. It cannot be admitted, however, that the germ-theory applies to all cases of inflammation, or even of suppuration, for these changes certainly can occur without the presence of any micro-organisms, according to reliable and careful observers.

Exciting Causes.—Whether we agree with the germ-theory of inflammation or not, the condition is generally brought about by what may be conveniently regarded as *exciting causes*, and these may be grouped as follows:—

a. *Local.*—These include mechanical injury or irritation of various kinds; chemical irritants; excessive heat or cold; definite specific organisms acting locally; undue exercise or activity of an organ; and direct irritation of a nerve, when the inflammation sometimes appears in the course of such nerve at a distance from the actual seat of irritation. Not only is inflammation associated with surgical injuries, or other

traumatic causes, but in medical practice mechanical causes setting up irritation are also very common, such as pressure or friction, foreign bodies, calculi, extravasated blood or clots, particles floating in the atmosphere, worms and parasites, diseased bone or cartilage, gouty or other morbid deposits, tumours, and the like. Several drugs or poisons may act as chemical irritants, some of them originating special kinds of inflammation, or affecting particular structures. Under the same category may be mentioned certain stinging animals and plants; some forms of irritation associated with improper food or its products, or with alcoholie excess or abuse of condiments; retained or decomposed excretions; and irritant gases in the air. Pathologists who do not acknowledge the germ-theory would attribute the inflammation which may be set up by unhealthy pus or gangrenous fluids to a chemical irritant.

b. General.—Under this head come cases of inflammation resulting from general chilling of the body, however caused; from the accumulation of deleterious morbid products in the system, as in connection with high or prolonged pyrexia, or in gout or rheumatic fever; from the action of specific poisons producing their several special diseases; and those forms of internal inflammation attributed to the sudden disappearance of a chronic skin-disease, or the suppression of habitual discharges, if such really exist.

c. Secondary.—When an organ or structure is inflamed, secondary inflammation may be set up in other parts, by direct extension; by so-called "metastasis," as is commonly supposed; by sympathetic or reflex nerve-irritation; or by embolic particles or septic materials being conveyed by the agency of the blood-vessels or lymphatics.

Predisposing causes.—These are classed as *general* and *local*, and they may not only influence the occurrence of inflammation, but also its seat, variety, and progress. The most important *general* predisposing causes usually recognized are debility with impoverishment of the blood; plethora, especially from over-feeding, combined with excessive indulgence in stimulants and general luxurious habits: and, above all, the presence of some morbid poison in the blood, as in the case of the eruptive fevers, gout, rheumatism, or syphilis; or when the products of tissue-change accumulate in the system, either from too rapid disintegration, as in fevers, or from deficient action on the part of the excretory organs, especially the kidneys and skin. Children and old people are on the whole most liable to inflammation, but this statement does not apply to all structures. Persons of sanguine temperament are also believed to be more predisposed than others. The chief *local* predisposing causes of inflammation are mechanical or passive congestion; defective nutrition of the tissues, their power of resistance being diminished, as after a previous attack of inflammation, or when the vessels are in state of degeneration; and impaired innervation. The last cause acts partly by lowering the vitality of the tissues; but chiefly by diminishing the power of sensation and motion, so that the patient is often not aware of the presence of irritants, and is at the same time unable to remove them.

Anatomical Characters.—Under this head it will be expedient to describe at the outset the minute changes which are characteristic of the inflammatory process.

A. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES.—The microscopical changes which occur in inflammation may be considered in the following order:—

1. Changes in connection with the Blood-vessels, Circulation, and Blood.—The phenomena associated with the vascular system constitute a most

important part of the inflammatory process, and they occasion some of its more obvious anatomical signs.

a. Blood-vessels.—In almost all causes inflammation is attended with an immediate *dilatation* of the small arteries; rarely there is a primary contraction of short duration, according to some observers. If the irritation is sufficient to cause inflammation, the dilatation is permanent, and increases gradually for some ten or twelve hours, then remaining stationary, the vessels also becoming elongated and tortuous. The veins enlarge after a while, and they assume a varicose or aneurismal aspect, presenting little irregular bulgings and contractions. The capillaries also dilate, while their walls undergo structural changes in course of time, fat-granules accumulating in their substance, especially around the nuclei, and they send out processes by budding, which finally join together. In an inflamed vascular structure vessels which were previously visible become obviously enlarged; while new vessels come into view where none were seen before.

b. Circulation.—Inflammation has been usually described as being attended at first with *increased rapidity* or *acceleration* of the flow of blood, constituting what has been long known as *determination of blood*; but this phenomenon does not appear to be essential, and some pathologists consider that it forms no actual part of the inflammatory process. The acceleration is soon followed, when it occurs, by a rather sudden return to the normal rate of movement, and afterwards the circulation lags, and gradual *retardation* takes place, this change commencing in the veins, or sometimes it flags almost suddenly. A to-and-fro *oscillation* is then often seen; and finally complete capillary *stasis* or *stagnation* occurs, the vessels appearing to be crowded with red corpuscles. The stasis may be at first transitory, but it afterwards becomes permanent. Finally *thrombosis* or coagulation of the blood may occur, but not until the capillary walls are dead. In an inflamed area all the different conditions affecting the movement of the blood may frequently be observed in neighbouring vessels. The quantity of blood which actually flows through an inflamed part is greatly increased in the early part of the process, and Cohnheim proved experimentally that about four times the normal amount of blood may flow through an inflamed limb.

c. Blood.—Important phenomena are observed in connection with the *blood-corpuscles*:—The *white corpuscles* accumulate in the vessels, especially in the veins, falling out from the mid-stream, loitering along and finally adhering to the wall, thus forming a continuous motionless layer, the central current still persisting, though at a much diminished rate, until stasis is completed. Some observers believe that there is an actual production of these corpuscles in the inflamed part, and that their number is in this way increased. After a time so-called *migration* takes place, the corpuscles penetrating the walls of the vessels, through which they may be observed in various stages of their

transit. The liberated white corpuscles are named *leucocytes*, and after they leave the vessels they send out processes, assume peculiar shapes, and migrate far and wide into the surrounding tissues, at the same time often undergoing a process of division, and thus becoming increased in number. The *red corpuscles* exhibit the same tendency to aggregation and stasis, so that they frequently look like rods of red coral, or they may adhere to each other so closely that

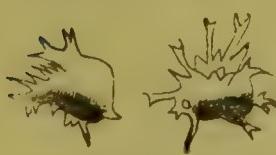


FIG. 2.
Amoeboid Leucocytes (v.
Recklinghausen.)

rods of red coral, or they may adhere to each other so closely that

their outlines are quite obscured. Often a sudden extravasation of a number of coloured blood-discs takes place from a capillary, which has been termed *diapedesis*. They also migrate through the walls of the vessels, chiefly the capillaries, but not nearly to the same extent as the white blood-cells as a rule; in the most severe inflammations, however, where blood stagnates in a large number of capillaries, the reverse may be the case. In an inflamed area no migration occurs in the centre, where there is stasis; around this both white and red corpuscles escape; but in the outer circle only white corpuscles migrate.

Another phenomenon which almost invariably occurs in inflammation is the *exudation* of the liquid portion of the blood out of the vessels into the surrounding tissues. Its exact nature and quantity will vary much according to the seat and intensity of the inflammation, as will be more fully pointed out further on.

The alterations thus far described cannot of course be observed in structures which have no vessels, such as the cornea or cartilage; but they may then be noticed in the vessels of neighbouring tissues, from which the nutriment which supplies the non-vascular structures is derived.

2. *Changes in the affected tissues.*—According to the so-called "cellular pathology," which was at one time generally accepted, the most important element in the inflammatory process consists in a primary disturbance of the process of nutrition in the tissues themselves. This doctrine is held by few, if any, pathologists at the present day; and whatever nutritive changes occur are generally regarded as secondary and subordinate to the vascular phenomena already described. There can be no doubt that nutrition does become affected in inflammation, and this is observed in different degrees in different tissues. Some inflammations have been named *parenchymatous*, such as that involving cartilages, this term being intended to imply that nutritive changes in the tissues themselves constitute the prominent feature of the inflammatory process.

In the earlier period of inflammation the change which the affected tissue is supposed to undergo is an increase in the nutritive activity of certain cellular elements. This increased activity is said to be observed chiefly in connection with those cells which are active in health, and which contribute by their growth and proliferation to the maintenance of the structure of which they form a part. Hence it is exhibited most strikingly by the epithelial elements of the skin, mucous membranes, and glandular organs; and to a less degree by the endothelium lining serous membranes and allied structures. It is very questionable whether the fixed cells of connective tissue or of the cornea, or cartilage-cells undergo any active changes in inflammation, but at any rate they are far less in degree; while in the higher tissues, such as nerve-cells, they do not occur at all. The inflammatory process affects young cells much more than those of older growth; and the changes are more marked in proportion to its intensity. These changes are thus described:—The cells exhibit active amoeboid movements, and undergo many alterations in form, throwing out processes in various directions. They generally enlarge, their protoplasm increasing in amount, at the same time becoming cloudy and granular, so that it conceals any enclosed nuclei. This is exemplified by the so-called "cloudy swelling" of the renal epithelium in acute inflammation of the kidney. *Cell-proliferation* or *germination*, as it is termed, then takes place, leading to the active production of new cells by endogenous development.

The later effects of inflammation upon tissues is in many cases to impair their nutrition more or less, or even to destroy them, as will be more fully pointed out presently. New cells are prone to decay, especially if they are very quickly produced, and if the inflammation has been severe; but they may develop into a permanent tissue, which tends to be of lower organization than the original one. Where inter-cellular substance exists, as in cellular tissue or cartilage, this often softens and breaks down, and the entire structure may become at last completely destroyed, the histological elements being involved in the common destruction.

B. PATHOLOGICAL PRODUCTS AND TERMINATIONS.—It now remains to point out the more gross changes associated with inflammation, and its modes of termination.

1. The changes already described having taken place to a greater or less extent, *resolution* may follow, that is, a subsidence of the vascular disturbances, and the absorption of any exudation, the tissue affected being restored to its normal condition. Any leucocytes which are present in it either undergo fatty degeneration before absorption, or possibly may re-enter the blood-vessels or lymphatics. Resolution may take place very quickly—*delitescence*; or it is supposed that *metastasis* may happen, which implies the disappearance of inflammation from one part, with its simultaneous appearance in some other structure.

2. *Exudation and Effusion*.—As already stated, inflammation is usually attended with an escape of fluid from the vessels, varying much in quantity and composition. The materials exuded under different circumstances are chiefly *serum* and *fibrinous exudation or lymph*. Blood or mucus may be mixed with these inflammatory products under certain circumstances, but they do not call for special consideration.

a. *Serum—Serous Effusion*.—The best examples of this effusion are seen in connection with inflammation of serous membranes, and in the submucous tissue of certain parts, such as the larynx. The fluid is not uniform in its composition and characters, but contains a variable amount of albumen, and frequently also a small proportion of fibrinogenous elements, with a considerable quantity of phosphates and chlorides. It may remain for a long time unaltered; or is absorbed sooner or later; or becomes more or less purulent. The less severe the inflammatory process, the more likely is the effusion to be merely serous.

b. *Fibrinous Exudation—Lymph—Coagulable Lymph—Inflammatory Effusion*.—These terms are applied to an exudation which is produced in certain forms of inflammation, the material exuded containing more or less fibrinogenous elements, and being spontaneously coagulable. It is especially observed in inflammation of serous membranes; and is more likely to occur when the inflammation is severe. There is in reality, however, no distinct line of demarcation between this exudation and inflammatory serous effusion. It contains a number of cells, which are probably all leucocytes.

Two kinds of lymph have long been recognized, namely, the *plastic* or *fibrinous*, which contains abundant fibrin-forming ingredients, tends to coagulate, and promotes tissue-development; and the *aplastic, corpuscular*, or *croupous*, in which there are a large number of cells, exhibiting but little tendency to organization, but being on the other hand prone to become purulent or to undergo degeneration.

After inflammation has subsided the lymph frequently becomes organized into a new tissue. Some pathologists affirm that only the

leucocytes and the cells produced by proliferation develop, the liquid portion merely nourishing these elements; others maintain that the fibrin coagulates and fibrillates, and itself contributes to the formation of tissue. Some kind of connective or fibrous tissue is generally produced, but bone, elastic tissue, epithelium, or fat may be ultimately formed. Certain of the higher tissues, such as muscle and nerve, are never developed under these circumstances. This organization is well seen in the changes which occur in the granulation-tissue by which wounds cicatrize, and in the adhesions and thickenings formed in connection with inflamed serous membranes. The consequences of these changes are often very serious, various structures becoming thickened, hardened, contracted, or bound together, and transparent tissues being rendered opaque.

Even after organization a process of degeneration may set in, evidenced by wasting or withering, the organized tissue becoming dry, yellow, horny, and stiff; by fatty or liquefactive change, which may lead to its absorption; or by the formation of black pigment.

3. *Suppuration or Formation of Pus.*—Suppuration is a common result of inflammation, but the tendency to this termination varies according to the tissue affected, and the constitutional condition of the patient, and it is generally more liable to take place if the inflammation is very severe and concentrated. Pus may form on a free surface and be discharged, being then often mixed with other materials; it may accumulate in serous or other cavities; or it may involve the substance of tissues and organs, either as a circumscribed abscess, or as diffuse purulent infiltration. Healthy pus is a thick, viscid, pale yellow liquid, odourless, alkaline in reaction, with a specific gravity of about 1030. It consists of a fluid portion—*liquor puris*—in which float pus-corpuscles and other microscopic particles. Liquor puris is an albuminous fluid, but also contains salts, pyin, chondrin, and fat. The corpuscles, as usually seen under the microscope, closely resemble white blood-corpuscles in size and appearance, being more or less round or sometimes irregular, and granular, and having one or more nuclei, which are rendered more evident by the addition of acetic acid, and often break up when acted upon by this reagent. They have the power of spontaneous movement and migration, and can alter in form, as well as increase in number by fission. It is now generally supposed that the great majority of the pus-cells, especially in the earlier stages of inflammation, are merely leucocytes; and some pathologists maintain that they are solely derived from this source.

Others hold that they are also formed by proliferation of the cells and germinal matter of the affected tissue, and that they increase in number by cleavage and endogenous formation.

Various kinds of pus are described, such as *healthy* or *laudable*; *ichorous* or *watery*; *serous*; *sanguous* or *bloody*. It may decompose and form highly noxious gases; or it may undergo physical and vital changes if not discharged, its fluid portion being absorbed, while its cells become withered and undergo fatty degeneration, so that it is converted into a caseous mass, containing fat granules, cholesterol, shrivelled cells, and nuclei. Ultimately the remains may calcify.

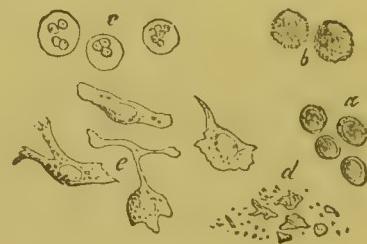


FIG. 3.
Pus-corpuscles. a. From a healthy-granulating wound; b. From an abscess in the areolar tissue; c. The same treated with dilute acetic acid; d. From a sinus in bone (necrosis); e. Migratory pus-corpuscles. (Rindfleisch).

4. Other obvious results of inflammation which may occur are *softening* of tissues, which may terminate in the complete breaking-down and destruction of the structures involved; or *interstitial absorption* sometimes.

5. *Ulceration*.—When inflammation destroys the tissues on a surface, an *ulcer* is formed. If this is quite superficial, only epithelium being removed, it is termed an *excoriation* or *erosion*. Ulcers of different kinds frequently occur in connection with mucous surfaces. Usually there is a discharge of pus after the inflammatory process subsides. An ulcer cicatrizes by the development of granulation-tissue into fibrous tissue, and the cicatrix in certain cases afterwards tends to contract, and may thus lead to serious consequences. Ultimately the original structures may be developed anew, but this is not accomplished for a long time, and some tissues are never reproduced after ulceration.

6. *Gangrene or Mortification*.—If inflammation is very intense, rapid death of the involved tissue in mass may result under certain circumstances, and a slough is formed, which becomes isolated and detached from the living textures, leaving an ulcerated surface. Almost any tissue may thus mortify, but gangrene from inflammation is particularly liable to occur in connection with the subcutaneous areolar tissue, and the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal, being but rarely seen in the substance of organs. It is in these cases of the moist kind, and therefore the slough is liable to undergo rapid decomposition. Bone may become necrosed as the result of inflammation.

General Morbid Anatomy.—The exact appearances and other objective characters which accompany inflammation in a particular case must of necessity vary widely, according to the part involved; the intensity, rate of progress, and type of the inflammatory process; the nature and amount of its products, which differ materially in different tissues; and numerous other circumstances. Hence it is not practicable to give a definite and precise general description of its more obvious anatomical characters. It may, however, be useful to present a brief summary of, and to contrast the more evident effects which inflammation produces in connection with some of the principal classes of structures.

THE SKIN.—The morbid changes which accompany cutaneous inflammation are so obvious and well-known, that they have come to be regarded and familiarly described as the typical and characteristic signs of the inflammatory process. One of the most constant anatomical characters is redness, varying in its extent, degree, and hue, the latter usually tending towards brightness. There is increased local heat, either evident to the touch or detected by the thermometer. Swelling or thickening of the cutaneous structures is often evident; and they either feel soft or firm according to the conditions present. The epithelium undergoes proliferation, while the superficial layers frequently soon lose their vitality and are shed freely. Serum may be effused upon the surface of the skin, giving rise to superficial moisture; under the epidermis, originating vesicles, or larger bullæ, or blisters; or into the tissues beneath, causing subcutaneous œdema. A fibrinous exudation containing leucocytes may also collect in the substance of, or beneath the skin, the tissues hence feeling thickened, firm, and brawny. The glands are liable to become enlarged, their cells increasing rapidly. Papules, wheals, or pustules form in certain varieties of cutaneous inflammation; or it may lead to superficial cracks or abrasions, ulceration, diffuse subcutaneous suppuration, or gangrene.

The skin is the seat of peculiar kinds of inflammation in connection with several of the acute specific fevers. In chronic forms the cutaneous structures undergo serious and permanent organic changes.

SEROUS AND ALLIED MEMBRANES.—In serous inflammations there is at first marked redness, with loss of polish, more or less opacity, and swelling of the affected membrane. Then a fibrinous exudation collects on the surface, varying much in its amount, characters, and arrangement, which contains abundant cells, consisting chiefly, or according to some pathologists, entirely of leucocytes, but according to others partly derived from proliferation of epithelium-cells. At the same time an effusion of serum takes place into the cavity, which is more or less turbid, and may contain coagula, as well as numerous cells similar to those present in the fibrinous layer. The further tendency is usually towards the absorption of this fluid, and the formation of thickenings, adhesions, or agglutinations involving the serous surfaces. These are generally supposed to result from the organization of the layer of lymph with its enclosed cells, fibrous tissue being thus developed. It has been stated, however, that, at least in many cases, this fibrinous layer does not become organized, but undergoes fatty degeneration and subsequent absorption; and that the adhesions result from the development of small vascular granulations which form on the surface of the membrane, under the epithelium. Pus may be produced if the inflammation is intense or prolonged, as well as under other special circumstances.

It may be stated that the general tendency of serous inflammations is to originate morbid materials capable of absorption, or tending towards organization into fibrous tissue.

MUCOUS MEMBRANES.—In connection with mucous membranes three varieties of inflammation are generally recognized, namely, *catarrhal*; *croupous*, *membranous*, *plastic*, or *fibrinous*; and *diphtheritic*.

a. *Catarrhal*.—This is the ordinary form of mucous inflammation. It commences with hyperæmia and swelling of the membrane, which is at first abnormally dry. Soon, however, there is an increased secretion of a watery or viscid mucus, the latter containing abundant cells, and if the inflammation continues, the discharge assumes a more or less muco-purulent or even purulent appearance, owing to the large number of cells present, many of which have the precise characters of pus-cells. The mucous glands and follicles enlarge, and are also filled with cells. In some cases the submucous tissue becomes infiltrated, and if it is of lax texture may be considerably oedematous. Abrasions or ulcers of a mucous surface are frequently originated by inflammation, and gangrene may ensue. If the process becomes chronic, considerable changes are produced in the structure of the membrane and its glands.

b. *Croupous*.—This variety of mucous inflammation differs from the former in that a layer of so-called *false membrane* is deposited on the surface, varying in thickness and consistence. It consists of coagulated fibrin, either amorphous or fibrillated, enclosing epithelium and other cells; or it may be entirely made up of altered epithelium cells, without any fibrin. Even when distinctly fibrillated it shows no tendency towards permanent organization.

c. *Diphtheritic*.—Some pathologists regard diphtheritic as differing from croupous inflammation, in that a fibrinous exudation forms not only upon, but also in the substance of and beneath the mucous membrane, which as a consequence is destroyed and converted into a slough, and an ulcerated surface is left on its separation. Special microbes are present

in true diphtheritic deposit, and it is to their action that the necrotic changes are probably due.

It will thus be seen that inflammation of mucous membranes differs from that of serous membranes in that the products have little or no tendency to become organized.

ORGANS.—In addition to other causes which influence the inflammatory process, the pathological results of inflammation of a solid organ depend very materially upon the structures entering into its formation, and they further differ even in the same organ according to the particular tissue involved. In acute inflammation there is almost always a change in colour, which usually, though not invariably, tends towards redness at first, but subsequently may pass through various hues. The vessels are overloaded, and an unusual amount of blood escapes on section. Some organs become oedematous in the early stage of inflammation, so that a quantity of serous fluid can be expressed from their tissues. The principal more immediate effects are proliferation and detachment of epithelium cells, where these exist, the products either accumulating or being carried away; changes in special structures, such as those of the liver or nerve-centres, usually of a destructive character; escape of fibrinous exudation and leucocytes; and either increase, or softening and breaking down of interstitial tissue, where this is present. On account of these effects many very obvious alterations in physical characters are brought about. Inflamed organs are often enlarged and heavier than normal, or the specific gravity of the affected portion is increased. Occasionally inflammation leads to wasting and diminution in bulk; or the size may remain unaltered. The consistence may be increased or diminished, some structures becoming apparently firmer and more solid, others undergoing rapid softening; it is often found, however, that even when organs seem to be unusually firm, their consistence is really lessened, the affected parts readily tearing or breaking down under pressure. A section frequently reveals marked alterations in general appearance and structure; and inflammatory products may be visible to the naked eye, or microscopic examination reveals their presence. The subsequent progress varies considerably. Resolution or absorption often takes place, the structures being restored to their normal condition; or the inflammation may terminate in speedy destruction of the tissues, the formation of an abscess, diffuse suppuration, or gangrene. Ultimately an inflamed organ may remain permanently more or less altered; or remnants of pathological products may be evident, in the form of fibroid tissue, caseous or calcareous deposits, or other materials. Chronic inflammation of organs usually tends to cause contraction and hardening of their structure, with increase of cellular or fibrous tissue.

Symptoms.—The precise clinical phenomena associated with inflammation necessarily present much diversity according to its seat, intensity, products, and other circumstances, but the following outline will serve to indicate their general nature.

1. **LOCAL.**—*a.* If an inflamed part is visible, it usually presents the characteristic *objective* phenomena already described under the anatomical characters, especially redness (*robor*), swelling (*tumor*), and increased local heat (*ardor*).

b. Inflammation is commonly attended with *local subjective symptoms*. Of these pain is one of the most frequent, its severity and characters differing much according to the tissue affected; it may be entirely ab-

sent, however, even when structures are involved which are usually very painful when inflamed. Anything that disturbs or irritates the affected part will generally aggravate the painful sensations ; while there is almost always tenderness on pressure, if the inflamed part can be thus influenced, which may exist even without any spontaneous pain. Other morbid sensations, not amounting to actual pain, are often complained of, such as uneasiness, itching, burning, fulness or tension. Sympathetic pains are sometimes referred to parts distant from the seat of inflammation ; or pain may only be felt in some remote structure, which is supplied by the same nerve as that which is affected.

c. The functions of inflamed organs and tissues are always disturbed more or less, on account of the vascular disorder ; of actual changes in the involved textures ; of the mechanical effects of the pathological products ; and of the acts which these frequently excite with a view to their removal, such as cough in bronchitis. Secretions are often modified as to quantity, general characters, and composition, when the organs forming them are inflamed.

d. The accumulation of effusion or exudation may lead to more or less serious symptoms, by *interfering with neighbouring structures and organs*. This is well exemplified in cases of inflammation of serous membranes leading to much effusion.

e. When internal parts are the seat of inflammation, this condition can often be made out by *physical examination*, which reveals physical signs usually associated with the presence of inflammatory products.

2. GENERAL OR CONSTITUTIONAL.—At present it must suffice to state that the general symptoms of acute inflammation are those of *fever* or *pyrexia*, which will be hereafter described. The fever is often of the so-called *inflammatory* type at the outset, but differs much in its intensity, especially according to the tissue affected. The occurrence of suppuration is often indicated by one or more severe rigors, and the fever is then apt to be irregular, or to assume the *adynamic* or the *hectic* type. *Typhoid* or *adynamic* symptoms are also liable to be developed under other circumstances, but particularly if the inflammation assumes a low form, or if it terminates in *gangrene*.

The fever attending inflammation is regarded as *symptomatic*, but its cause is not satisfactorily explained. It has been chiefly referred to increased production of heat at the seat of inflammation, which raises the temperature of the blood passing through the part ; to the entrance into the blood of some *pyrogenic* substance formed there ; or to some effect produced on the nervous system. (*See FEVER.*)

In many forms of acute inflammation the blood is hyperinotic, and coagulates firmly, often presenting the "buffy" coat. The red corpuscles often show a marked tendency to run together, and under the microscope are seen to form "rouleaux."

Treatment.--It is not easy to give even a general outline of the treatment of inflammation, as this has to be so materially modified under different circumstances. At the same time it may be worth while to point out the principles upon which the management of this important morbid condition should be conducted, and the chief measures employed.

A. Measures must be taken to *prevent* inflammation, should there be any condition present in which it is likely to be set up. For instance, after an injury the part affected should be kept at rest, and appropriate remedies applied. In conditions of the blood which tend to originate

secondary inflammations, every care should be exercised in warding off such influences as are likely to favour this event. If there is paralysis of any part, all local sources of irritation must be avoided. These illustrations will suffice for this point.

B. Supposing inflammation to have become established, the main indications for treatment, and the means for carrying them out are as follows:—

1. The first indication is to *subdue the morbid process* as soon as possible, and to prevent or limit the formation of its various products. In order to carry out this principle, it is essential to remove the cause of the inflammation, if practicable; to keep the part affected in as complete a state of rest as possible, physiological as well as physical; to avoid every source of irritation; and in many instances to attend to position, so as to obviate local accumulation of blood. By such measures further disturbance will be avoided, while the involved structures are left in conditions most favourable for recovery.

The more active measures employed in controlling inflammation are those usually termed *antiphlogistic*, the more immediate object of which is to subdue or arrest the vascular and circulatory disturbances in the inflamed tissues. It is necessary to allude briefly to the most important of these agencies individually.

a. *Removal of blood*.—This was in times past the great remedy for inflammation of all kinds, but at the present day the tendency is to go to the opposite extreme, and to ignore blood-letting altogether. Blood may either be removed by venesection or arteriotomy—*general blood-letting*; or it may be taken immediately from the vessels in the neighbourhood of the affected structure, by means of leeches, cupping, punctures, scarification, or incisions—*local blood-letting*. Venesection is the common method of general blood-letting, but without entering into any discussion on the subject, I venture to express the opinion that it is not often required at the present day in the treatment of inflammation, and great care should be exercised before adopting it in any individual case. If practised at all, it should be had recourse to at an early period, before inflammatory products have accumulated to any extent. Local blood-letting is frequently most serviceable, and undoubtedly it is not made use of to the extent which it deserves. By this means the vessels of a part can be considerably relieved, and thus a most beneficial local effect produced, while the general bulk of the blood is not materially diminished, or the patient lowered in any appreciable degree.

b. Certain *vascular depressants* are much employed in checking or modifying the inflammatory process. Of these the most important are preparations of antimony, aconite, veratrum viride, and digitalis in full doses. Tincture of aconite has been found especially useful in the milder and more limited forms of inflammation. Tartarated antimony has long occupied a prominent position in the treatment of certain inflammatory affections, and justly so; it exerts a powerful influence over the heart, while at the same time it increases some of the secretions.

c. A class of remedies often of much value in inflammation, if properly employed, are those which increase the principal secretions and excretions, and thus relieve the circulation, namely, *purgatives*, *diaphoretics*, and *diuretics*. Purgatives must be used with caution, but it is generally advisable to keep the bowels freely open, and particularly when the blood is loaded with products of tissue-waste. The best diaphoretic is some

form of bath, especially the vapour, hot-air, or Turkish bath. Jaborandi has been found useful in some forms of inflammation, on account of its diaphoretic action. Saline mixtures are also frequently of much service. Of course these classes of remedies are as a rule severally contra-indicated, should there be any local inflammation of the bowels, skin, or kidneys respectively.

d. Local treatment. - There are certain important local means of subduing the vascular disturbance in inflammation, and thus arresting or modifying the process. Among these the most valuable is the application of cold. Cold may be applied for this purpose by means of lint or other suitable material dipped in water, iced water, or evaporating spirit-lotions; irrigation; ice, or a mixture of ice and salt contained in a bladder or india-rubber bag. It is in the early stage that this remedy proves most useful, and when the inflammation is quite superficial or affects structures near the surface; it has, however, been strongly advocated in the treatment of certain internal inflammations, such as pneumonia. On the other hand, heat and moisture act very beneficially in some cases, applied in the form of hot poultices or fomentations. In others turpentine fomentations, dry-cupping, mustard poultices, or blisters are valuable. The local application of belladonna has been found most effective in inflammation of superficial parts, especially as a combination of equal parts of extract of belladonna and glycerine. A lotion containing solution of subacetate of lead, or other astringent or sedative applications, are also useful in some cases.

2. The second indication is to endeavour to promote the absorption, or the removal in some other way, of *exudation or other inflammatory products*, and thus to avert immediate danger, or prevent permanent damage to the structures affected. This will be favoured by attention to many of the points already mentioned, such as rest and position. If absorption is going on satisfactorily, no further interference is needed. In order to aid this process, when required, certain *alteratives* are extensively used. Of these mercury in some form is very commonly employed. In syphilitic inflammations this drug acts most efficiently, but in other cases it ought at least to be used with particular caution, if at all; a great deal of harm has been and still is done by its indiscriminate use. Iodine, especially in the form of iodide of potassium or sodium, is often of real value. Liquor potassæ and the alkaline bicarbonates are also serviceable sometimes. Absorption of inflammatory products may undoubtedly be assisted in some instances by acting freely on the various excretory organs, especially by promoting the functions of the skin by means of suitable baths, or in some cases by jaborandi or pilocarpine. Local measures intended for the purpose now under consideration also frequently produce excellent results, particularly the employment of various forms of counter-irritation, such as blistering, painting with preparations of iodine, the use of irritating liniments, issues, setons, or the actual cautery. Friction and regulated pressure are in some cases most serviceable, and in practising the former method it may be advisable to use absorbent liniments or ointments. Mercurial ointment is much employed in this way.

In dealing with inflammation of certain structures, one chief point to be aimed at is to encourage particular acts by which the products are discharged, such as the act of coughing in cases of bronchitis. At the same time it is often possible to diminish the quantity of these products, or to modify their characters.

Under special circumstances *operative procedures* are not uncommonly called for, in order to remove inflammatory products which resist all other methods of treatment, or which are incapable of absorption. This may be illustrated by large serous effusions, or by accumulations of pus in any part, which often demand surgical interference.

3. In the next place the *general condition* of the patient must invariably be attended to:—The various forms of *fever* met with must be treated according to the principles which will be laid down when considering this subject. If the inflammation is of a *specific* character, special remedies are called for, such as mercury in syphilis, or colchicum in gout. In certain other forms of inflammation also particular medicines have been found most useful, such as tincture of perchloride of iron in erysipelas, and chlorate of potassium in inflammations about the mouth and throat. Diet must be regulated according to circumstances, and it is impossible to lay down any definite rules, so much depending on the part affected, the state of the patient, and other circumstances. Should there be any tendency to depression, nourishing diet and stimulants are called for, often in considerable quantities, and this is especially the case if suppuration, ulceration, or gangrene sets in. Tonics, such as quinine, bark, mineral acids, or preparations of iron, as well as cod-liver oil, are then also indicated. Of course it is necessary to pay strict attention to all hygienic and sanitary conditions.

4. Every precaution must be taken to guard as far as possible against the occurrence of *untoward terminations*, such as suppuration, ulceration, or gangrene. Should either of these occur, however, it must be treated by appropriate measures. Thus, the escape of pus must be encouraged, or its formation checked; ulceration healed; and the separation of dead parts promoted.

5. It is often necessary to attend to *local symptoms*, these necessarily depending upon the part affected. Among them a prominent one is pain. For its relief many of the remedies already considered are very valuable, but the most important drug for this purpose is opium. It is exceedingly serviceable in many inflammations in various other ways, such as by inducing sleep, arresting the peristaltic action of muscular tissues, allaying nervous irritability, and probably directly influencing the inflammatory process. Opium is contra-indicated or must be given with great caution under certain circumstances, namely, when the respiratory organs, kidneys, or brain are involved. Morphine, hydrate of chloral, bromide of potassium, tincture of henbane, sulphonal, and other anodynes or hypnotics are also very useful in many cases for the relief of pain or sleeplessness. Other symptoms must be treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER IX.

ALTERATIONS IN NUTRITION AND GROWTH.

I. HYPERTROPHY.

HYPERTROPHY implies an over-growth, and ought to be strictly limited in its meaning to the "increase in an organ or structure of its normal tissue-elements." This increase may be due either to enlargement of these elements—*simple hypertrophy*; or to a multiplication of their number—*numerical hypertrophy* or *hyperplasia*. It must be noted that an organ is usually made up of several structures, either of which may become hypertrophied. For instance, as has been pointed out by Sir Richard Quain, in the heart either the muscular tissue, the fibrous tissue, or the fat may be increased, and each form is a true hypertrophy of a certain kind. In most cases, however, it is the active tissue of an organ which is added to, and its functions are thereby promoted. Muscle is peculiarly prone to become hypertrophied, both voluntary and involuntary.

Etiology and Pathology.—1. In the great majority of cases hypertrophy is the result of *an organ or part being called upon to do extra work*, and it is truly a conservative or compensatory lesion. Thus, in the case of hollow muscular organs, such as the stomach, heart, or bladder, whenever an obstruction exists at an orifice or elsewhere, interfering with the passage or exit of their contents, the tissues, especially the muscular, almost always hypertrophy. Involuntary muscular tissue is very frequently hypertrophied, and this may be a natural event for a definite physiological purpose, of which the pregnant uterus affords an illustration. When organs are in pairs, as the lungs and kidneys, should one be incapacitated in any way from performing its functions, the other may undoubtedly undergo compensatory hypertrophy.

2. Probably *prolonged excessive action of an organ* may lead to hypertrophy. Functional palpitation of the heart, for example, does in exceptional cases certainly cause permanent enlargement of this organ. It is a familiar fact that voluntary muscles enlarge in proportion to the degree in which they are exercised.

3. *Excess of blood flowing to a part* may unquestionably originate hypertrophy of the structures thus unduly supplied with nutriment.

4. Increase in a particular tissue may result from the presence of an *excess of its formative elements in the system*. This is illustrated by the large formation of adipose tissue throughout the body which occurs in some individuals.

5. Occasionally hypertrophy of certain structures takes place without any obvious cause, and the condition may then be termed *idiopathic*. In some instances it depends upon some *trophic* change connected with the nervous system.

Anatomical Characters.—Increase in weight is the only necessary result of hypertrophy. Usually there is enlargement of an organ thus affected, and sometimes change in shape, but not always. The walls of hollow organs are generally thickened. The tissue involved may be

quite natural as regards colour, consistence, and other physical characters; or these may be more or less altered. The newly-formed structure is often prone to undergo degeneration, as happens not uncommonly in the case of the heart, and this leads to further changes in appearance and other characters.

Symptoms.—It frequently happens that hypertrophy of an organ is not attended with any symptoms whatever, especially when it is compensatory. There may be signs of its increased functional activity, of which the patient is also sometimes conscious, as in the case of the heart, and this excessive action occasionally leads to more or less serious consequences. An enlarged organ may also mechanically interfere with neighbouring structures. Physical examination often detects hypertrophy when it is not otherwise revealed.

Treatment.—Should anything be required in the way of treatment of hypertrophy, the indications are to get rid of the cause, if practicable; to reduce the functional activity of any organ affected; to diminish the supply of blood, or modify its composition; and to use such remedies as are known to check the growth of any special organ or structure.

II. ATROPHY.

ATROPHY is the reverse of hypertrophy, and implies a diminution in the size or number of normal tissue-elements, the former being termed *simple*, the latter *numerical atrophy*, but both forms are frequently met with in combination.

Degeneration often accompanies atrophy, and when structures are actually destroyed and disappear, they must of necessity pass through a process of decay during their removal—*necrobiosis*. Atrophy may be general, involving all the tissues and fluids of the body, some, however, more than others; it may be limited to a particular class of structures, such as the muscular or glandular; or it may only affect a special organ, or even one of its constituent tissues, for example, the heart, liver, or kidney.

Etiology and Pathology.—The following outline will serve to indicate the causes to which atrophy may be due in different cases, excluding certain special forms, the origin of which has not been as yet satisfactorily determined.

1. Whatever interferes with the *proper nutritive qualities of the blood* will give rise to general wasting to a greater or less degree. Hence this may arise from direct loss of blood; from deficiency in the quantity or quality of the food; or from diseases which interfere with digestion and assimilation, as well as those which lead to the excessive consumption or waste of the nutritive elements, such as Bright's disease, diabetes, prolonged suppuration, or phthisis. In cancer there is frequently an extraordinary degree of wasting, involving also the internal organs.

2. Combined with the foregoing cause, or acting alone, there is often *increased waste of tissue*, such as that which occurs in fevers and many other diseases. In some instances this kind of atrophy is limited to one organ, of which acute atrophy of the liver affords an illustration, although the pathology of this disease is not clearly understood.

3. The *vitality and nutritive activity* of the tissues generally may be impaired, or only those of some particular part or organ, and thus general or local atrophy may result. This is in many instances the normal course of events, associated with a natural impairment or cessation of functions, as, for example, in *senile atrophy*, of which it is an

important element, as well as in the wasting of organs or structures, such as the thymus gland, spleen, and lymphatic glands, which at a certain period of life become atrophied because their functional activity is at an end. The same thing is seen in the rapid diminution in the size of the uterus after delivery. In other instances the impairment of vitality of a part is due to some previous disease, such as inflammation. Excessive use on the one hand, or deficient exercise on the other, may lead to the same result. There can be no doubt that if certain organs are exercised unduly they may waste, for instance, the brain or testicle; while examples of the opposite condition are found in the wasting of the muscles of paralyzed limbs, of bone after amputation, or of nerves after their connection with the cerebro-spinal axis has been severed.

4. An important cause of atrophy is a *deficient supply of arterial blood*, in whatever way this may be brought about, whether by something directly interfering with its entrance into a part, or by over-loading of the veins in long-continued mechanical congestion. To some extent this will explain senile atrophy, the heart and arteries having undergone degeneration, and the circulation being consequently feeble or impeded. It is in the production of local atrophy, however, that this cause mainly acts, and any structure may be thus affected if the supply of blood is not adequate to the demand, provided this is not so deficient as to lead to more serious lesions.

5. *Direct pressure* upon an organ or tissue may occasion atrophy, partly, but not entirely, on account of the interference with the vascular supply thus brought about. The pressure of pericardial adhesions and thickenings upon the heart occasionally causes atrophy of this organ; but the best illustration of this form of atrophy is that which follows the continued pressure of an aneurism or solid tumour, by which bones and other structures are often extensively removed.

6. It has long been known that the *nervous system* exercises an important influence over nutrition, but this fact has during recent years been more clearly recognized. Wasting of muscles and other structures may be definitely associated with diseases affecting nerve-centres, especially the spinal cord, or with nerves. This result is partly attributed to want of use or cessation of function; partly to impaired supply of blood through the vessels; but probably it is to a great extent due to direct trophic influence exercised by the nervous system.

7. Certain *medicines*, such as mercury, iodide or bromide of potassium, and alkalies, when administered for some time, have the power of causing the absorption and wasting of particular organs or tissues. This power is often made use of in therapeutics, for the purpose of promoting the removal of morbid products.

Anatomical Characters.—In *general atrophy* or *marasmus* the entire body is more or less wasted, though the change may be more evident in some parts than others. The wasting may terminate in the most extreme emaciation. The fat is first removed, then follows muscular tissue, and subsequently other structures become atrophied, as well as the elements of the blood and the internal organs. There is corresponding loss of weight, both as regards the whole body and particular organs. In a case of cancer attended with much emaciation which came under my notice, the heart only weighed $3\frac{1}{4}$ ounces. The tissues generally feel flabby and wanting in healthy tone.

Local atrophy is necessarily attended with diminution in weight of the organ or part involved, and there is usually a lessening in dimen-

sions as well, though this is not invariably the case, and there may even be apparent enlargement, as is sometimes observed in atrophy of bone. The physical characters of a wasted organ are generally altered. It appears paler than normal and less vascular, while its consistence is changed. Frequently it feels unusually dry and firm, and may be remarkably tough, because its fibrous element remains longest unaffected; wasted structures may, however, lose in consistence and become softened; while bone is in some instances much rarified and rendered very brittle, so that it crackles and breaks down readily under pressure. Atrophy occasionally leads to the entire removal of a particular structure, or even of a whole organ, so that not a trace of it remains.

It is needful to warn against mistaking other organic changes which lead to diminution in the size of organs for mere atrophy; and to call attention to the fact that congestion or other conditions may obscure the loss of weight which accompanies this process.

Symptoms.—The appearance of the patient constitutes the most prominent clinical sign of general marasmus, but it must be remembered that the face may present a tolerably healthy aspect, while the body is much emaciated. The reality and degree of wasting can only be made out accurately by weighing the patient from time to time, and this is especially required in the less-marked cases. It may be rapid or gradual in its progress. As a rule the patient experiences a sense of weakness, in proportion to the emaciation, but this is not always the case. The muscles usually feel flabby and wanting in tone. There may be obvious indications of impaired activity on the part of certain organs, particularly the heart.

When an organ becomes atrophied, there may be no sign whatever of this condition, or more or less serious symptoms may result from interference with its functions. Local atrophy can also frequently be discovered by physical examination, as in the case of the heart or lungs; and when an external part, such as a limb, is wasted, this is easily recognized by proper objective investigation.

Treatment.—In the treatment of *general atrophy* the indications are:—
1. To endeavour to remove the cause or causes, and to cure any disease with which it may be associated. 2. To repair the waste, by introducing into the system a due supply of nutritious food, in such form as it can be best assimilated. Milk and cream are of great service in many cases, as well as prepared amylaceous and other kinds of food; alcoholic stimulants in moderation are also often very valuable. If from any cause food cannot be swallowed, it is frequently of great consequence that it should be administered by means of some feeding apparatus, or introduced into the rectum by nutrient enemata or suppositories. 3. To attend to the digestive organs, if required, giving remedies to improve the appetite, or to promote or assist digestion. 4. To regulate the hygienic conditions, change of air being in many cases a most important part of the treatment. 5. To administer medicines, either with the view of curing a disease, or of checking any pathological process which may be the cause of wasting, such as fever or suppuration; or of giving tone to the system, and assisting in its nutrition. Cod-liver oil is a most valuable remedy in many forms of marasmus. The employment of "massage" has been found most useful in the treatment of certain forms of general wasting, especially when carried out according to the "Weir-Mitchell" plan, which will be described in a future chapter.

In *local atrophy* attention must be mainly directed to improving the nutrition of the affected part, at the same time guarding against making any undue call upon it; or, on the other hand, as in cases of atrophy from paralysis, endeavouring to rouse the involved tissues into activity, and thus to promote their growth and vitality.

CHAPTER X.

DEGENERATIONS.

STRICTLY speaking a *degeneration* is a *retrograde metamorphosis*, and implies the conversion of some tissue into one of lower type and organization than itself, which is incapable of performing efficiently its normal functions. This may result either from an immediate change in its albuminous components; or from a molecular absorption of the structural elements, and their replacement by others lower in the scale. The term *degeneration* is, however, also applied to certain pathological processes, in which a new material is deposited in the midst of the original elements of a tissue, which frequently leads to their absorption, and may ultimately replace them entirely. These two kinds of so-called degeneration have been respectively denominated *metamorphosis* and *infiltration*. They comprehend pathological changes of great importance, which demand individual consideration.

I. FATTY DEGENERATION.

This includes FATTY METAMORPHOSIS and FATTY INFILTRATION, each of which requires separate notice.

1. FATTY METAMORPHOSIS.

The fact of the direct conversion of the albuminous or protein elements of tissues into fat has been established by observation and experiment. It takes place in certain physiological processes, and is a frequent pathological occurrence, being also one of the natural events of decay in old age, when it often leads to serious consequences. The formation of adipocere after death is due to fatty degeneration, and this change can be produced artificially in dead tissues. The process may take place in connection with cells or fibres. The fat is usually deposited in a granular form, but ultimately it may accumulate into masses, or run into drops of oil. The granules are recognized by their dark and distinct outline; their peculiar refractive power upon light; and their solubility in ether.

When cells undergo fatty degeneration, they often enlarge and become more spherical and distended. The granules first appear at a distance from the nucleus, scattered irregularly; they then increase in number and size, obscure the nucleus, and finally

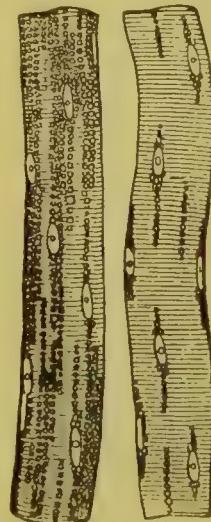


FIG. 4.
Fatty degeneration of
fibres of striped muscle,
 $\frac{1}{100}$. (Kinderfleisch.)

render it quite invisible. The cell-wall is often ruptured or absorbed, leaving merely an accumulation of granular fat, which frequently separates into its constituent particles, owing to intermediate liquefaction.

Fatty degeneration often involves muscular tissue, both voluntary and involuntary. The muscular fibres of the heart are very commonly affected. The arteries are also exceedingly liable to this form of degeneration, especially in connection with the condition termed *atheroma*; and the capillaries frequently undergo a similar change. Nerve-tissues, both fibres and cells, are the seat of fatty degeneration under certain circumstances.

Among other illustrations of the process may be mentioned degeneration of leucocytes, of the epithelial cells lining the renal tubules, and of the cells of the liver, supra-renal capsules, and lymphatic glands; the "arcus senilis"; and the changes which the placenta undergoes on the approach of the full period of pregnancy. Morbid products, such as cancer, tubercle, haemorrhagic infarcts, inflammatory exudations, and various tumours are also subject to fatty metamorphosis.

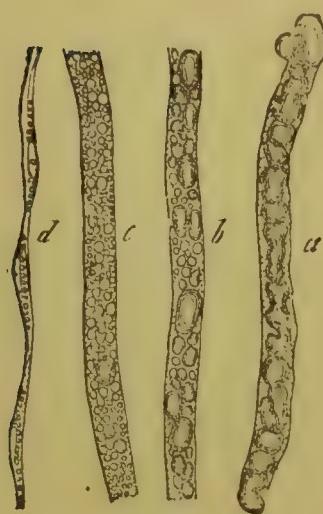
Caseation; Caseous or Cheesy Degeneration.

These terms are now in common use, and signify the formation of a soft, dryish, cheesy-looking substance of yellowish colour. It is really a process of partial fatty degeneration with desiccation, and the material formed is found to consist of withered cells, fat granules, partially saponified fat, and crystals of cholesterin.

FIG. 5.
Fatty degeneration of double bordered nerve fibres in the peripheral part of a divided cerebro-spinal nerve. *a.* After three days have elapsed; *b.* After a fortnight; *c.* After three weeks; *d.* After two months, $\frac{1}{307}$. (*Kindfleisch*)

Caseation is affirmed by some pathologists to take place only in connection with tubercle, but it may certainly be noticed in other morbid products. Pulmonary phthisis affords some of the most frequent examples of the condition. It is also often seen in scrofulous lymphatic glands, cancer, and chronic abscesses. Ultimately a more or less creamy or puriform-looking fluid substance may be produced, or a fatty emulsion, which may be completely removed by absorption or in other ways; or it may become encapsulated by dense fibrous tissue, and finally calcify. Caseous material is undoubtedly capable of originating tubercle, but this matter will be considered in a future chapter.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Some interference with nutrition, either affecting the general system or some local part, is, in the great majority of cases, the immediate cause of fatty degeneration. Probably the presence of an excess of fat in the blood may occasion a fatty change. It has been directly attributed to imperfect metabolism, associated with an absolute or relative deficiency of oxygen in the blood. The more obvious causes to which it may be due are:—1. *Senile decay*, during which most of the tissues undergo degeneration. 2. *Deficient supply of arterial blood* to a part, owing to obstruction or compression of vessels, or morbid changes affecting their coats. 3. Some *general disease* or *condition* lowering vitality, such as phthisis or cancer, considerable loss of blood, or certain other forms of anaemia. 4. *Poisoning* by phosphorus, arsenic, or antimony. 5. Certain *special conditions* affecting



some particular structure, whereby its vitality is impaired, such as prolonged congestion, inflammation, very rapid development, or undue exercise of its functions.

Anatomical Characters—The changes induced by fatty degeneration are usually quite obvious if the process is at all advanced, but in less pronounced cases they can only be detected by the aid of the microscope. In marked forms there is an alteration in colour, the affected tissue becoming usually paler than normal, and assuming a yellowish or brownish tint; this is well seen in muscular tissue, but in some instances, as in softening of the brain, the colour ranges from white to red according to circumstances. A tendency towards opacity is also evident. One of the most marked changes is a diminution in the consistence and power of resistance of the affected structure, which varies from a slight degree of softening, the tissue breaking down under pressure or tearing more easily than in health, to its conversion into almost a fluid pulp. All vital properties, such as elasticity or contractility, are at the same time impaired or lost. When the process is advanced, the affected tissues may have an oily feel, and ether will dissolve out a considerable quantity of fat.

The remote pathological consequences of fatty degeneration are often very important. For instance, the affected structures are liable to rupture, as happens sometimes in the case of the heart or vessels. Arteries may also become the seat of aneurism; or the changes in them may lead to degeneration of the structures which they nourish, owing to inadequate blood-supply.

Symptoms.—There may be no clinical indications whatever of fatty degeneration. This may be due to the fact that the structure involved is of but little consequence; but even when an important organ is implicated, such as the heart, the process may go on insidiously until it becomes very advanced, and is only revealed by some sudden grave symptoms. The phenomena to be looked for are those indicative of impaired functional activity on the part of the affected structure; or of the secondary lesions to which fatty degeneration may give rise. Physical examination may also reveal the change in some instances, as in the case of the heart and vessels.

2. FATTY INFILTRATION OR GROWTH.

This is a process essentially distinct from fatty degeneration, there being no necessary change in the elementary structures themselves, but merely a deposit of fat from the blood within the cells of the part affected, and this infiltrates the tissues to a variable extent. The condition might, in fact, be described as a *fatty hypertrophy*. The deposit occurs in the form of oil-drops, which ultimately run together, completely obscuring the other contents of the cells, without of necessity destroying them. In course of time the original tissues may degenerate, from the mere pressure of the infiltrated fat, and may even become finally absorbed. The best examples of fatty growth are found in the increase of ordinary adipose tissue observed in some individuals, subcutaneous as well as around internal

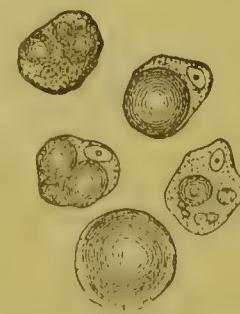


FIG. 6.
Liver-cells, infiltrated with
oil. *(Kandlreisch.)*

organs, constituting *general obesity*; in connection with the heart; in the cells of the liver; in voluntary muscles; and in the formation of fatty tumours. In the first two instances the connective-tissue cells become filled with fat; while in the case of the liver the hepatic cells are more or less loaded with drops of oil, which cause them to become larger and more spherical, and hide their contents.

Aetiology and Pathology.—1. *Excess of fat in the blood* is a common cause of general obesity, and of fatty infiltration of organs. This may result from undue consumption of fatty or oily substances, or of aliments which contribute to the formation of fat; from a deficiency in the amount of exercise taken, and general luxurious habits; or from both these causes combined. There is also a diminution in the ordinary waste of fat under these circumstances.

2. In certain *wasting affections* some of the organs are prone to become the seat of fatty infiltration, especially the liver. This is best seen in phthisis, and is supposed to be due to the absorption of the general fat, and its consequent accumulation in the blood, from which it is afterwards deposited in the liver.

3. Undoubtedly *interference with the respiratory process* and *deficient oxidation* may lead to fatty infiltration, because the fat is then not properly consumed, and thus its not infrequent occurrence in connection with certain pulmonary and cardiac affections will be partly accounted for.

4. *Local inactivity* may be the cause of fatty infiltration. Thus it may be observed in voluntary muscles which are paralyzed or otherwise rendered inactive.

Anatomical Characters.—Fatty infiltration of an organ may occasion enlargement, accompanied with a certain degree of alteration in form, there being a tendency towards roundness of margins and general outline. The colour also becomes paler, and may be similar to that of adipose tissue. The principal changes observed are that the affected structure is softened, and has the doughy feel characteristic of ordinary fat; while evidence of the presence of more or less oil may be obtained, either by the finger, the knife, blotting-paper, or ether. Microscopic examination reveals the appearances already described.

Symptoms.—General obesity is usually evident enough in the appearance of the individual. Many individuals who are abnormally fat feel no inconvenience, enjoy good health, and are physically and mentally active. The tendency in such subjects, however, is to feel languid, to be deficient in bodily activity and vitality, disinclined for exertion, and easily tired. The muscles are generally wanting in healthy tone and firmness. Digestive disturbances are common; the cardiac action is easily disturbed; and there is often shortness of breath on exertion. Not uncommonly the mental faculties are also dull and inactive. In extreme cases the patient experiences great distress and discomfort, and is often incapable of any exertion.

Fatty infiltration of an organ may be indicated by symptoms pointing to impairment of its functions, as well as by physical signs. The condition is, however, often difficult of diagnosis: but it may be of little moment. In the case of the heart it is of decided importance.

Treatment.—In the treatment of *fatty degeneration* all that can be done is to improve the general nutrition, as well as that of the affected structure, by the aid of good food, tonics, cod-liver oil, and similar remedies. Care must be taken to avoid any undue strain upon im-

portant structures which are the seat of this change, such as the heart or vessels.

General obesity is usually treated by restricting and regulating the diet, more particularly cutting off or limiting those articles which contribute to the formation of adipose tissue, especially starchy foods, sugar, and alcohol; by making the patient avoid sedentary habits, and take sufficient exercise; by keeping the bowels acting freely, especially by means of mineral waters; by employing baths to promote the action of the skin, especially the Turkish bath; and in other respects regulating the habits of the patient. Some think that the quantity of fat taken makes but little difference. Oertel recommends a marked diminution of fluids. A special method of treating this condition consists in giving for a certain time a purely meat diet, with a large quantity of hot water. Medicines are of but little service, but liquor potassæ, iodide of potassium in large doses, and preparations of *fucus vesiculosus* or seaweed, have been administered for the purpose of reducing obesity. Iron is of service when the condition is associated with anaemia. A course of treatment at Carlsbad, Marienbad, Homburg, or other suitable Spas is of decided benefit in many cases. Local fatty infiltration requires no special treatment.

II. PARENCHYMATOUS OR GRANULAR DEGENERATION.— VITREOUS DEGENERATION.

As being probably related to fatty degeneration, it will now be convenient to notice briefly certain forms of degeneration, to which the above terms have been applied. They occur mainly in the course of certain infectious fevers, especially typhus, typhoid, scarlatina, diphtheria, and pyæmia, but may also take place in other febrile diseases, as pneumonia.

Parenchymatous degeneration involves cells, especially the renal epithelium and liver-cells, producing "cloudy swelling;" and also muscular tissue, particularly that of the heart. It interferes more or less seriously with the functions of the affected organs. After death they appear pale, dull, and opaque; and the structural elements are observed under the microscope to have lost their transparency, and to be filled with minute granules. The appearances resemble more or less those of fatty degeneration, of which this change has been regarded by some as an early stage, but the granules are soluble in acetic acid, and insoluble in ether. It has been attributed to the effects of high temperature; but has also been looked upon as a *post-mortem* change.

Vitreous or *waxy* degeneration, originally described by Zenker, affects the voluntary muscles and heart. The fibres present little or no striation, and the myosin is seen in coagulated lumps, irregularly distributed. It appears to be a *post-mortem* change, but some abnormal composition of the muscle during life is held to account for the coagulation.

III. MINERAL OR CALCAREOUS DEGENERATION. —CALCIFICATION.—PETRIFICATION.

The condition thus named must be distinguished from true *ossification*. In calcification there is no formation of bone, but merely an infiltration of the tissue involved with particles of calcareous matter. These assume the form of very minute molecules, chiefly deposited

irregularly between the histological elements, but partly in their interior as well. Under the microscope they look like dark, opaque, irregular particles under transmitted light, and when aggregated have a glistening aspect. They often resemble fat in appearance, but may be distinguished by their solubility in dilute mineral acids, this being frequently attended with effervescence and the formation of small bubbles of gas, owing to the decomposition of earthy carbonates. The deposit occurs first immediately around small vessels, where these exist, but ultimately it may increase so as to form irregular patches or concretions of considerable extent and size. Chemically it is made up chiefly of calcic and magnesic phosphates and carbonates, but other salts are also present, and the composition is not uniform in all structures.

Calcification is particularly prone to occur in tissues which have lost their vitality, or which have previously undergone other forms of degeneration, especially the fatty change. It is in fact very commonly the final stage of the degenerative process, after which no further alteration can take place. Among its most frequent seats are the arteries, and the valves and orifices of the heart, and it is in connection with these structures that its injurious effects are most obvious; the veins are also liable to be affected. Calcareous deposit may, however, be met with in many other tissues, namely, in fibrous or fibro-serous membranes, such as the pericardium, dura mater, or tunica albuginea; in the walls of hollow organs, as the gall-bladder or stomach; in the pia mater and choroid plexuses of the brain, constituting "brain-sand;" in cartilage, muscle, and nerve-tissues; in various organs and glands, for example, the kidneys, lungs, absorbent glands, thyroid, prostate, and pineal gland; and in connection with different morbid products, as tubercle, cancer, inflammatory exudations, blood-clots, chronic abscesses, and tumours of all kinds. Bones themselves become the seat of excess of calcareous deposit in old age, and in certain other conditions.

Aetiology and Pathology.—1. Calcification is usually associated with *deficient vitality and nutritive activity*, either general, such as attends advanced age: or local, being then dependent upon an insufficient supply of blood, with slowness of the circulation. As already stated, it is frequently the termination of other atrophic and degenerative processes. With regard to the immediate cause of the accumulation of calcareous matter, it is supposed to be due partly to inability on the part of the tissues to take up the nutritive fluid in which the salts are dissolved; partly to the precipitation of these salts, because the carbonic acid which holds them in solution escapes, owing to stagnation of the fluid.

2. Occasionally calcification is dependent upon *the presence of an excess of calcareous salts in the blood*. This may arise in connection with diseases of bone, such as mollities ossium or extensive caries or necrosis, in which its salts are rapidly absorbed, and afterwards deposited in other parts, often involving many structures and organs. It is said that interference with the urinary secretion may also lead to this condition, the salts not being properly eliminated, and when this happens the kidneys are particularly prone to become the seat of calcareous deposit.

Anatomical Characters.—The deposit of calcareous matter occasions more or less roughness, hardness, stiffness or rigidity, often combined with brittleness. A gritty sensation is felt on making a section of the involved part, and when membranes are implicated they can frequently be broken up with a crackling noise. Stony masses of some size are formed sometimes. Now and then a kind of chalky fluid is produced,

or a substance like cement. Serious consequences often result from calcification, owing to the change in size and shape of structures; the roughness of surfaces; the interference with free movement, and with elasticity and contractility; and the brittleness which it produces. Thus, in the case of arteries, it narrows their calibre, makes them rough and rigid, destroys their elastic and muscular tissues, and renders them liable to be easily ruptured. Hence it leads to insufficient blood-supply, with consequent atrophy, degeneration, or gangrene; to the formation of clots obstructing the vessels; or to haemorrhage. In connection with the valves and orifices of the heart it often causes serious obstruction to the flow of blood, and interference with their normal functions. In some cases, however, calcification is distinctly a favourable termination, and indicates the arrest of some active morbid process. It is, in fact, in such instances a practical cure, and the calcified substance may remain for an indefinite time inert, without causing any further trouble. This is well seen in connection with phthisical consolidations, and scrofulous lymphatic glands. A case fell under my notice many years ago, where, in a highly scrofulous young man, aged 21, the whole of the absorbent glands within the abdomen were converted into calcareous masses, and had evidently been in this condition for a long time without leading to any inconvenience, the patient dying from an entirely independent acute illness.

Symptoms.—There may be objective or physical signs of calcification, as in the case of the arteries, or occasionally of the heart. This change affecting the ribs and their cartilages is often of much consequence clinically, owing to the rigidity of the chest-walls thus induced. Various symptoms may arise from the injurious effects of the condition already mentioned. Particles of calcareous matter coming from internal parts, for instance, the lungs, may be discharged externally. When petrifaction is a favourable event, indicating the arrest of some active disease, a corresponding diminution or cessation of symptoms may be expected.

IV. FIBROID DEGENERATION.

Tissues are sometimes gradually changed into a tough, inelastic material, made up of imperfect fibres resembling those of fibrous tissue. There is no apparent exudation to any extent, but a hyperplasia of the cellular-tissue elements occurs. The affected part becomes more or less opaque, whitish, thickened, and stiff, sometimes being hard and rough. The fibro-serous and serous membranes often present this change, in the form of thickened patches, which are well seen in connection with the pericardium. It also affects other structures, for instance, the coverings of organs, as that of the spleen or liver; the sheaths of vessels; or the valves, tendinous cords, and muscular tissue of the heart. The functions of the involved parts are liable to be much impaired. Ultimately the structures affected may become calcified. This fibroid degeneration results from pressure and friction; from repeated traction; or sometimes from long-continued venous congestion. It is not always practicable to draw a line between the effects of this process and those of chronic inflammation; some pathologists, indeed, consider that the latter always precedes, and is the cause of the fibroid change, which merges into the conditions termed *cirrhosis* and *sclerosis*; others, however, are of opinion that this change is often of a degenerative nature.

V. PIGMENTARY DEGENERATION.—PIGMENTATION.

General or local changes of colour in tissues may result from various causes. As illustrations may be mentioned the colour due to jaundice or local staining by bile; that produced in adjacent structures by the action of the intestinal gases, or of those set free in mortifying parts; the bronzed hue of the skin observed in Addison's disease; and the cutaneous discoloration following the prolonged administration of nitrate of silver. What is at present under consideration, however, is the deposit of actual pigment in connection with various textures, and it is necessary to indicate briefly the origin, nature, and characters of the different kinds which may be met with.

1. In the great majority of cases in which pigment is found as a pathological condition, it is derived from the *colouring matter of the blood*, which undergoes certain changes. This colouring matter may be present in some limited part, either from its mere transudation through the coats of the vessels; from the migration of red corpuscles; from actual haemorrhage having taken place; or from capillary stagnation. At first it is diffused, and stains the tissues which it involves, especially the cells, colouring their contents, but leaving the nucleus and envelope unaffected. After a while the colour changes, assuming a variety of tints, such as yellow, yellowish-brown, brown, reddish-brown, dark-brown, grey or black; the exact hue depends much upon the length of time the pigment has been formed, and the tissue which it occupies. At the same time it separates into minute molecules, or crystals, or both, which are found within or outside the cells. The molecules may aggregate into larger granules. They are round or irregular in shape, well-defined, opaque or sometimes glistening in appearance. The crystals are in the form of minute oblique prisms, needles, or plates, which present various tints of yellow, red, brown, or black, and have a shining aspect. These particles are very persistent, and are not easily destroyed. They resist the action of ordinary acids; water, alcohol, and ether do not affect them; but they are dissolved by strong alkalies, forming a red solution, while concentrated mineral acids bring out a series of changes of colour. Chemically the pigment is supposed to consist of *haematoidine*; but when it becomes black it is named *melanin*. Examples of these changes of blood-pigments are frequently met with in connection with cerebral apoplexy; in pulmonary congestion or haemorrhage; in subcutaneous extravasations; and in the formation of the corpus luteum in the ovary. The alterations in the colour of the "rusty expectoration" of pneumonia during the progress of this disease are due to the same cause. In certain affections the blood itself contains corpuscles enclosing a quantity of black pigment.

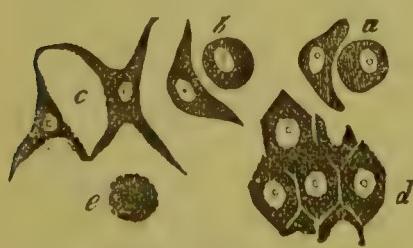


FIG. 7.

Cells in various stages of pigmentary infiltration; (a, b, c, e.) from a melanotic cancer; d. Pigmented epithelium from the vessels (same specimen). $\frac{1}{300}$ (Kinderfleisch.)

the same pigment, which is supposed to be absorbed into the blood. It is, however, originally derived from the blood-pigment. The same

material is observed in melanotic tumours. Occasionally the minute portal vessels of the liver become filled with black pigment.

In some instances pigment is supposed to be directly formed and secreted in certain cells, but here again the blood must be looked upon as its ultimate source. This is presumed to occur especially in growths connected with tissues which normally contain much pigment, such as the choroid coat of the eye.

Allusion may here be made to the so-called *brown atrophy of the heart*, in which condition granules of brownish-yellow or blackish pigment form, the muscular fibres being at the same time atrophied, as well as often the seat of fatty change.

2. An important source of pigmentation in connection with the lungs and bronchial glands is the inhalation of certain substances along with the air breathed. All persons are liable to inhale small particles of carbon, the product of imperfect combustion, and this occurs especially in large towns and manufacturing districts. Hence it is found that the lungs become darker as age advances. It is, however, in the lungs of those who, owing to their occupation, are exposed to the constant breathing of air containing various minute particles suspended in it, that the most marked alterations are observed. Colliers inhale fragments of coal, and their lungs become ultimately perfectly black. Miners, stonemasons, and others following similar occupations are also subject to changes in the colour of these organs, due to the inhalation of solid particles.

The carbon or coal exists in the form of minute granules, which resist all chemical change, and these after entering the small bronchi and air-cells somehow penetrate the tissues, passing into the epithelium cells, as well as into the tissue between the lobules and around the bronchi, where they lie either free or enclosed in the connective-tissue corpuscles. They are taken up by the lymphatics and conveyed to the bronchial glands, which also soon become quite black. Abundant pigment is seen within the cells which the expectoration contains, and the sputa may be perfectly black. The change of colour in these cases is, however, not entirely due to the direct deposit of material from without, but partly to the irritation caused by this material setting up inflammation, with stagnation of blood, the pigment of which undergoes the usual alterations.

VI. MUCOID DEGENERATION.

Some tissues occasionally undergo a process of softening or liquefaction, to which the term *mucoid degeneration* is applied. They become changed into a mucilaginous substance, colourless and homogeneous, which yields *mucin*. In fact they seem to return to their original foetal condition. The change may take place extensively or in limited spots, in which, being surrounded by healthy tissue, it may give rise to an appearance of cysts. The *intercellular tissue* is most affected, but sometimes the cellular elements become involved in the degeneration. This degeneration is met with in cartilage, bone, serous membranes, and in the choroid plexuses of the brain. Some tumours are of a *mucoid* structure when first formed, and many others may undergo this change to a greater or less degree.

VII. COLLOID DEGENERATION.

The substance formed in colloid degeneration is of a jelly or glue-like consistence, glistening, transparent, and devoid of colour. It is derived from the albuminoid tissues, and differs from mucin in that sulphur is one of its constituents, and it is not precipitated by acetic acid. This degeneration also involves the *contents of the cells themselves*, and not the intercellular substance.

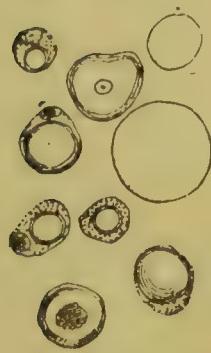


FIG. 8.
Cells undergoing colloid degeneration.
From a colloid cancer. (Rindfleisch.)

Ultimately separate portions of the colloid substance may coalesce so as to form considerable masses, which often appear to be contained in cystic cavities. New growths sometimes start as *colloid tumours*, and other tumours are liable to the change. Formerly all colloid tumours were looked upon as being of a cancerous nature, but it is now recognized that non-malignant tumours may also become the seat of this degeneration. Enlarged thyroid and lymphatic glands occasionally contain colloid material.

VIII. LARDACEOUS, ALBUMINOID, AMYLOID, OR WAXY DISEASE.

By the above names, amongst others, an important morbid condition is recognized. It is characterized by the infiltration of certain structures with a material the nature of which has not even yet been definitely determined. This material was formerly considered to be allied to starch or cellulose—hence the term *amyloid*. The view generally accepted at present, however, is that it is of an *albuminoid* nature.

Etiology.—Albuminoid disease is invariably a consequence of some previous morbid condition, which in the great majority of cases is attended with *long-continued and excessive suppuration*, but this is certainly not absolutely necessary. The chief individual diseases with which it is associated are :—*a.* Caries or necrosis of bones and their consequences. *b.* Syphilis, congenital or acquired, especially if it has caused disease of bones with considerable suppuration, or if much mercury has been given. *c.* Chronic pulmonary phthisis attended with much purulent expectoration. *d.* Chronic empyema. *e.* Extensive ulceration of the intestines, tubercular or dysenteric. *f.* Pyelitis or other suppurative diseases of the kidney. *g.* Chronic glandular abscesses.

Albuminoid disease has been attributed by some authorities to prolongedague, or exposure to malarial influence; and also to rickets.

Anatomical Characters.—*1. Characters of the albuminoid material, and objective changes in the affected tissues.*—Albuminoid material is colourless, refractive, structureless and homogeneous, somewhat tough and consistent, and at first nearly transparent. It is not prone to decomposition, and is unaffected by most chemical reagents, but yields certain characteristic reactions. When a tincture or watery solution of iodine is applied to the cut surface of an affected structure, a yellow, orange, or deep reddish-brown or mahogany colour is brought out, according to the degree of the change, but this is not invariable, even when the disease is advanced, and it may be of more service in indicating a slight degree of the change, especially when the solution is applied to microscopic sections. The subsequent addition of a drop of strong

sulphuric acid may develop a violet or dark purple colour, owing to the precipitation of the iodine in a molecular form. Albuminoid material is stained blue by solution of sulphate of indigo; and red by methyl-violet or gentian-violet. In fine sections methyl-violet colours the affected structural elements pink, while the rest of the section is blue. This material may undergo granular or fatty degeneration; and it is also stated that it sometimes tends to contract, and to become changed into fibrous tissue.

When an organ or tissue is the seat of marked albuminoid disease, it presents certain striking characters. The organ is enlarged, sometimes to a great degree, but without any irregularity in form or outline, the surface being quite smooth, and the margins inclined to be rounded. The weight is proportionately increased; the specific gravity is high; and the organ feels heavy, solid, and firm. It may be cut into regular fragments, presenting sharp margins; or very thin slices may easily be removed. It can also be torn into pieces; while the consistence is peculiar, presenting a combination of toughness and resistance with elasticity, resembling somewhat that of wax, or wax and lard combined —hence the names *waxy* and *lardaceous*. A section of an albuminoid organ is dryish, paler than normal, anaemic, and presents a glistening or semi-translucent aspect, being also quite smooth, uniform, homogeneous, and compact. Often, however, the change has not advanced to such a degree as to alter much its general physical characters; and it may be limited to the vessels, or to certain spots, as is well seen in the so-called "sago-spleen," in which the material is confined to the Malpighian corpuscles. In still less marked cases the change may only be detected by examining sections of the affected tissue under the microscope, and to these, well-washed, the iodine test may be applied. The minute arteries and capillaries are almost always first involved, especially their muscular coat, and the cells of their inner coat. The walls become thickened; the channel is narrowed; and on section the vessels remain patent; while they assume a compact, homogeneous, translucent, shining appearance, so that they come to resemble silvery cords or threads. After a time the material extends to the cells and intercellular tissues, enlarging the former and making them more spherical, at the same time displacing their normal contents, the nucleus being ultimately destroyed, so that the cells become converted into amorphous masses, with a tendency to irregular fracture. They then coalesce; and the whole structure presents finally the peculiar glistening appearance already mentioned. It also involves the walls of ducts. It is supposed by some pathologists that the albuminoid substance makes its way directly through the walls of the vessels, and afterwards extends into the tissues around.

2. *Organs and tissues involved.*—Albuminoid disease is particularly liable to affect small arteries and capillaries, cells, and involuntary muscular fibres. Any organ or tissue in the body may be implicated, and usually several organs are involved at the same time. The liver, spleen, kidneys, and absorbent glands are most frequently affected; but



FIG. 9.
Liver-cells infiltrated with amyloid matter.
a. Isolated cells; *b.* A fragment of the secreting network in which the boundaries of the individual cell, have ceased to be visible. (*Rindfleisch*).

other structures may also be attacked, namely, the stomach and intestines, supra-renal capsules, bones, voluntary muscles, brain and spinal cord or their membranes, tonsils, serous membranes, heart, lungs, pancreas, uterus, and bladder; morbid deposits, such as inflammatory exudations, tubercle, or cancer, are also said to present the albuminoid change. In some cases, when it follows disease of bones, it begins in the neighbouring lymphatic glands. In many of the organs just mentioned the disease seems to be limited to the minute vessels.

Pathology.—The supposed nature of albuminoid material has already been indicated. The results of chemical analyses have shown that it is certainly a nitrogenous compound. Dr. Dickinson affirms that organs in which it exists are deficient in alkaline salts, and this observer has advanced the view that the substance consists of *de-alkalized fibrin*. Marcey found that the affected structures were deficient in potash and phosphoric acid, but contained excess of soda and chlorine. Cholesterin is also present. With regard to the origin of the albuminoid material, two distinct theories are held, namely:—(1.) That it is the product of some local *degeneration* or *metamorphosis* of *albuminous tissues*; or (2.) That there is a *direct deposit from the blood*, in consequence of some alteration in this fluid, which deposit infiltrates the tissues. Nothing of the nature of this albuminoid substance has, however, been detected in the blood. Dr. Dickinson thinks that the blood is deprived of its alkali, as the result of prolonged suppuration, and that the material is then deposited. Dr. Grainger Stewart strongly advocates the degeneration-theory, and calls attention to the distinction between the waxy degeneration proper, and the secondary deposit of fibrinous material which results from it.

Symptoms.—It will only be needful to offer here a few general remarks with regard to the symptomatology of albuminoid disease, as this subject will be more fully considered in relation to particular organs. There are no definite clinical signs of the change until it has become somewhat advanced. It is, moreover, not always easy to make out, in a particular case, what symptoms are due to the original affection, and what to the albuminoid disease. Nutrition is usually impaired, the patient being thin or emaciated, it may be extremely so; at the same time becoming pale and anaemic, and presenting a peculiar transparency of tissues, or a waxy look. There is great debility in many cases, with a tendency to syncope. Oedema of the legs is often observed, due to weakness of the tissues and anaemia. With regard to organs, should either of these be the seat of albuminoid disease, its functions are liable to be interfered with more or less when the change becomes considerable, local symptoms being thus developed; while certain organs are frequently obviously enlarged, and may give rise to pressure-symptoms, at the same time presenting well-defined characters on physical examination.

Treatment.—This must be directed in the first place to the primary cause of albuminoid disease, especially to the checking of chronic suppuration. At the same time the general health must be improved by good diet; attention to hygienic measures; and the administration of tonics, preparations of iron, and other remedies which may be indicated in particular cases. The prolonged use of the syrup of iodide of iron has, in my experience, been attended with considerable benefit in some cases.

CHAPTER XI.

CLINICAL THERMOMETRY.—CHANGES IN BODILY TEMPERATURE.

THE importance of systematically studying the temperature of the body as a part of ordinary clinical investigation is now generally recognized. Formerly reliance had to be placed upon the information afforded by the touch, but at the present time the *clinical thermometer* is almost universally employed, by means of which an accurate record of the degree of temperature is obtained. It may be affirmed that no practitioner can safely or conscientiously neglect *the routine and intelligent use of this instrument in daily practice*.

It is not necessary to give any detailed description of the apparatus. Generally a glass thermometer is employed, which should be sensitive and accurate; of a sufficient range and marked in fifths; self-registering; easily read; and of a convenient size to be carried in the waistcoat-pocket. These conditions are fulfilled in the various *clinical thermometers* ordinarily sold. It is well, however, to compare the one used with a standard thermometer from time to time. Longer instruments than those usually employed are made for taking extreme temperatures; exceedingly sensitive thermo-electric apparatus are used for special researches; and self-registering thermographs have also been invented for continuous observations. For taking surface-temperatures mercurial thermometers are made of special shape, having a long cylindrical bulb coiled up in a plane at a right angle to the stem; thermo-electric and other instruments are likewise employed for this purpose. It may be mentioned here that Fahrenheit's scale is adopted throughout this work.

Mode of Use.—When using the clinical thermometer for *general* purposes, the object aimed at is to determine the temperature of the interior of the body, or the blood-heat. The regions usually employed are the axilla, the mouth, the inner side of the upper part of the thigh, the rectum, or the vagina. Sometimes it is requisite to observe or to compare *local* temperatures. The instrument must be kept in close contact with the surface, and completely covered. When the temperature is taken in either axilla, which is the most convenient place in most cases, the patient should lie on the same side, and press the arm firmly to the side; or it may occasionally be necessary to fix the thermometer to the surface by means of plaster. If there is much perspiration the skin should be wiped dry before inserting it. The mouth does not afford accurate results, but is convenient for giving approximate information, the bulb of the instrument being placed under the tongue, and the lips firmly closed. The rectum and vagina give the most reliable and rapid indications, but, for obvious reasons, cannot be made use of in ordinary cases; under certain circumstances, however, the temperature should be taken in one or other of these cavities, as in restless children, very emaciated adults, patients who are unconscious, or where there is a marked or suspected difference between the axillary and the internal temperature. Care must be taken

that the instrument does not slip into the rectum, and that it is not broken by restless movements. The patient should lie on his side, the thermometer being then introduced for about two inches, and held there with one hand, while the other hand is placed on the patient's hip. With regard to the time required for the instrument to be retained in its position, there is a difference of opinion. With proper precautions *five minutes* is usually sufficient, especially if "two observations at intervals of one or two minutes give exactly the same result" (Aitken). To be strictly accurate, however, the mercury ought to remain stationary for *five minutes*. Baumler gives, in order to be scientifically correct, and in obscure cases, where a trifling elevation of temperature may be of importance in diagnosis—for the rectum, three to six minutes; mouth, nine to eleven minutes; axilla, ten to twenty-four minutes. More time is required if the circulation is weak. The time needed in the rectum may be much shortened by heating the thermometer to a degree a little below that which is expected; and in the case of the axilla, although usually, and in first observations, the index should be shaken down to or below normal before the temperature is taken, it may often be previously raised in the same way. The time required in the axilla and mouth may be materially shortened by keeping these cavities closed for from ten to fifteen minutes before the thermometer is introduced.

Temperature in Health.—It is obviously necessary to have an adequate knowledge of the physiology of animal heat, and also of the main facts relating to the normal temperature, and the circumstances by which it is influenced in health, before the subject can be studied with any advantage from a pathological and clinical aspect. It will only be practicable here to draw attention to a few of the more prominent points.

With reference to the animal heat, we have to consider—first, its *production*: and, secondly, its *regulation* and *loss*. As regards *heat-production*, there can be no doubt that the main source of the normal animal heat consists in the chemical changes which take place in the food, and the tissues of the body, during which they undergo combustion or oxidation, and give out their latent heat. These changes are especially active in the muscles, which are estimated to contribute four-fifths of the body-heat in health; next come the various secreting glands, the alimentary canal, and the nervous tissues. Dr. Donald MacAlister maintains (*Goulstonian Lectures*, 1887) that there is a "thermogenic stuff" as well as a "contractile stuff" in muscles, and that each is subject to a metabolic process, having its own laws. The thermogenic metabolism, so long as the blood-supply and nerve-supply are intact, is a continuous process increased by muscular contraction, but not interrupted by rest. In the formation of new structures it is probable that some of the heat evolved in the destruction and disintegration of tissues becomes reabsorbed and again latent, to be subsequently set free, and these transmutations are constantly going on in the system. A slight amount of heat is generated by the friction of the blood against the vessels, and of the muscular fibres against each other, and it has even been supposed that this occurs during the passage of nerve-currents; but these are merely instances of the giving out of heat which has been latent, for the body has no power of creating heat *within itself*.

With respect to the *regulation* of the bodily heat, it is in the first place rendered tolerably uniform throughout the system, by means of the circulating blood. *Loss* of heat takes place mainly by the skin, and

is constantly going on, by evaporation, conduction, and radiation, this loss amounting to about 80 per cent. The condition of the superficial circulation has thus a most important influence in regulating the temperature, for when the vessels of the skin are contracted, less heat will be lost, at the same time more being produced in the deeper parts; while if the cutaneous vessels are dilated, more heat will be given off. A certain amount of heat, under 20 per cent., is lost in the respiratory organs, by evaporation, and by the warming of the colder inspired air. There are other minor channels of loss of heat, which need not be discussed here. A normal temperature is maintained when the production and loss of heat are in due equilibrium.

The influence of the *nervous system* upon the temperature demands special notice. It may be regarded as an established fact, founded upon physiological and experimental investigations, as well as upon clinical observation, that the nervous system does materially affect the bodily heat. This system influences *heat-production*, as well as *heat-loss*. It modifies the temperature chiefly through the vaso-motor apparatus; but it is also maintained that the nervous system directly affects tissue-change, and consequently heat-production. MacAlister is strongly in favour of the *thermotaxic* or heat-regulating power of this system, and maintains that it influences *thermogenesis* in the muscles, as well as *thermolysis* or loss of heat by the skin. He further affirms "that the heat production in the muscles is probably carried on under the influence of a two-fold nervous mechanism, the one part exciting to thermogenesis, accompanied by destructive metabolism, the other staying thermogenesis, and subserving constructive metabolism. The thermogenic tonus is the manifestation of the normal balance between the two parts." Nothing is definitely known, however, at present as to the anatomical course of the supposed thermal nerves of muscles. In addition to vaso-motor centres regulating heat, it is believed that there is a centre in the corpus striatum influencing heat-production, and that the cortex of the brain, both by voluntary and reflex action, has also its share in the maintenance of the normal heat. Another theory in relation to the nervous system is that it merely exerts a check or restraining force upon nutritive and metabolic changes, but in what way is not known. Sir William Broadbent has advanced the theory that it does so through tension maintained in the nerve-centres, the tension there generated in the cells being sustained in their peripheral terminations, where they are merged into, and blended with the other structures.

Normal temperature.—In a healthy adult the temperature taken in the axilla or mouth averages about 98·4 or 98·6° F. In the rectum or vagina it is under ordinary conditions from 0·3° to 0·6° higher. In other localities it will be much influenced by circumstances. The surface temperature may be considerably below that of the interior, if there is much subcutaneous fat. An important fact to bear in mind is the daily fluctuation of the body-heat, which is partly due to the influence of rest and exercise, of taking food, and, it is believed, of habit and inheritance. But observations have shown that even when a healthy individual is kept at rest in bed the temperature will range from 1·8° to 2·3° F., during the twenty-four hours. It gradually rises from early morn during the day, but more rapidly in the afternoon, reaching its maximum between 5 p.m. and 8 p.m.; then it falls slowly, being lowest from 2 a.m. to 6 a.m. In general terms, therefore, according to the time at which it is taken, the temperature may be said to

vary from $97\cdot5^{\circ}$ to 99° under ordinary circumstances, but it may temporarily rise to $99\cdot5^{\circ}$ or even 100° . As regards age, in infants and children the temperature is somewhat higher than later on; while the daily range is greater and less steady, being readily influenced by external conditions. In old age also it is rather higher, and more easily disturbed. Various factors affect the bodily heat temporarily, as regards its degree and distribution, but it must suffice to mention here a few of the more prominent, without entering into details, such as prolonged exposure to external heat or cold, exercise, food and drink, including special articles, as alcohol, tea, and coffee, and mental or nervous conditions. These must be borne in mind in particular instances. In females the menstrual function has to be considered, as there is a slight rise of temperature during the pre-menstrual period.

Temperature in Disease.—It is only intended to offer here some general remarks on the use of the thermometer in disease, and the indications it affords. The peculiarities which individual affections present as regards the degree and course of bodily temperature will be pointed out in relation to each.

In using the thermometer for clinical purposes the points to be observed are :—1. The *exact temperature*, as indicated by the *end of the index most distant from the bulb of the instrument*. 2. The *rapidity with which the mercury rises*, if it goes above normal, this being in proportion to the height of the temperature. It is often important in febrile cases to take a note at the same time of the *frequency of the pulse and respirations*; and in some cases to make a *quantitative analysis of the urine*, in order to determine whether there is a relation between the temperature and the amount of waste-products discharged. All these observations should be recorded on suitable forms or charts, the course of temperature being indicated by lines or curves.

It is desirable, if possible, that the individual upon whom the observation is made should have been at rest in bed for at least an hour previously. In many cases, however, the thermometer has to be employed without any such preparation.

The intervals at which the temperature should be taken will vary according to the nature of the case. Often only one observation is required. In most instances twice a day is sufficient, namely, in the morning and evening, and in many once daily is enough. Sometimes, however, it is most important to note the temperature at regular, and more or less frequent intervals, or even to take continuous observations. Properly trained nurses are now quite competent to use the instrument for routine purposes, and they can also be instructed to employ it should any unusual symptoms arise. In all febrile cases it is essential to take the temperature daily until convalescence has been thoroughly established.

Uses in Diagnosis.—Much help is constantly derived from the employment of the thermometer for diagnostic purposes, and it may be useful to offer a few general remarks on this subject.

1. *Elevation of temperature.*—In the great majority of cases the tendency of disease is to raise the temperature to an abnormal height, there being more or less pyrexia. In relation to this deviation from health, the following points may be noted. *a.* In many cases which present themselves in ordinary practice, where symptoms exist which might or might not belong to the premonitory stage of some acute illness or fever, such as scarlatina or small-pox, all doubt can often at

once be cleared up by taking the temperature, and determining whether *pyrexia* is present or not, as well as its degree. *b.* Occasionally by one, or at most two observations, it is possible to ascertain positively the *nature of a fever*. A sudden rise of temperature to 104° or 106° F. is very suggestive of some form of malarial fever, especially if it falls rapidly, and becomes normal in a few hours. *c.* Many febrile disorders are now known to have tolerably regular and uniform ranges of temperature throughout their entire course, and to present peculiar diurnal variations, the temperature being generally higher in the evening than during the day. It is therefore essential to become acquainted with this portion of the *natural history* of each of these affections, and to employ the thermometer regularly in investigating them, so that they may be thus distinguished from each other, and from all complaints which may simulate them. *d.* The habitual use of the thermometer may lead to the discovery of disease when there is no obvious sign of its existence, for the fact of a patient presenting a temperature above the normal should always call for a more minute examination, which would probably lead to a satisfactory diagnosis. This has been frequently observed by those who employ the thermometer in lunatic asylums, who have thus detected phthisis in insane patients when they could not otherwise have suspected it. *e.* Complications occurring during the progress of a fever, or during the period of convalescence, as well as relapses, are indicated either by a disturbance of the typical range, by delayed defervescence, or by a rise in temperature after it has once subsided; and either of these deviations may be the first thing observed. Hence the necessity of taking a daily note of the temperature until the patient has perfectly recovered. *f.* In certain diseases the thermometer gives valuable information as to the *nature and degree of activity* of morbid processes, for instance, in pulmonary phthisis. It may also reveal the secondary effects of certain lesions, such as inflammation associated with pulmonary or cerebral haemorrhage. *g.* The temperature may be much raised in certain cases of nervous disease; and also in connection with painful attacks, such as those of hepatic colic.

Caution must be exercised in dealing with children. In these subjects the temperature is liable to run up rapidly to a considerable height, without any adequate cause, thus creating unfounded alarm; and it may subside with equal rapidity. Sensitive persons and hysterical females are similarly more or less susceptible. Of course it is necessary to be on guard against malingerers and such like, who raise the temperature by artificial means.

2. *Depression of temperature.*—This is far less common, but it is an important element in certain conditions, as in shock or collapse from various causes, when the temperature may sink considerably and rapidly; some cases of severe injury to the upper part of the spine; certain diseases of the brain and cord; starvation; great loss of blood; and some chronic wasting diseases, such as cancer of certain organs. It is somewhat below the normal also in certain chronic pulmonary and cardiac affections, and in chronic Bright's disease; and it must be remembered that in these conditions the temperature may not rise to the usual height when febrile complaints supervene. Defervescence sometimes proceeds so rapidly and so far that the temperature falls considerably below the normal, a condition of collapse being produced. After convalescence from severe febrile diseases it often remains low for some time; and

may present a similar deviation during the apyrexial periods of intermittent fever. Sometimes the temperature is very low on the surface, but high internally, as in cholera. A very low temperature has been noted in carbolic acid poisoning; and in sclerema neonatorum. A temperature from 97·5° to 96° is said to be *sub-normal*; below that point it is called a *collapse-temperature*.

3. *Inequality of temperature* in different parts is sometimes observed. This may be of aid in diagnosing paralysis or other nervous disorders. In a paralyzed limb the temperature may be higher or lower than in the corresponding limb on the opposite side; in hemiplegia the paralyzed side is often $\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ to $\frac{2}{3}^{\circ}$ higher than the healthy one. Neuralgia may be accompanied with marked local rise of temperature; and a similar condition may be observed in hysteria. These differences all depend on vaso-motor influence. Local stagnation of blood and its consequences lower temperature. Of course local differences of temperature may be due to external causes. Attempts have been made to use local temperatures in the diagnosis of pulmonary phthisis, pneumonia, pleurisy, brain-affections, articular diseases, tubercular formations, and other conditions, but the results are not reliable.

Uses in Prognosis.—The temperature may be of use in assisting towards a prognosis, either in itself; from its relation to the pulse, respirations, or amount of excreta; or from its association with other symptoms. *a.* The *degree of heat* observed during the early period of a febrile disease, especially when taken in conjunction with the prominent symptoms, will often give a good idea as to whether the particular case under observation is likely to be a severe one or not. If the temperature is at all high, it shows that a sharp attack may be anticipated, and that complications resulting from the presence of products of tissue-change in the blood are liable to arise; therefore a guarded prognosis should be given. *b.* A *very high temperature*, or *hyperpyrexia*, especially when it exhibits a tendency to a continuous and rapid rise, is extremely dangerous, especially if the excretions are deficient. *c.* A *sudden change* in the temperature may be premonitory of a coming event, even for some days before this actually happens. Thus a marked fall in cases of typhoid fever not uncommonly precedes the discharge of blood from the bowel, indicating that haemorrhage is taking place internally. *d.* If the temperature *does not increase*, or if it *falls from morning to evening*, this is a favourable sign; if it is *higher in the morning* than on the previous evening, this shows that the disease is advancing, and the prognosis is consequently more grave. *e.* In many pyrexial diseases the fever usually subsides on certain days, often by *crisis*; if in a particular case the expected fall takes place, and defervescence goes on regularly and continuously, the prognosis is favourable; if the contrary happens, or if the decline of the fever is irregular, an unfavourable course is indicated. *f.* Should the temperature *decline rapidly* in certain acute febrile affections, such as pneumonia or typhus fever, while the pulse and respirations increase in frequency, and the other symptoms show no signs of improvement, but on the other hand become worse, the prognosis is very serious. A markedly low temperature is in itself of evil omen in these complaints. *g.* A *very low temperature*, as in collapse, is more or less dangerous, and should it sink below 93°, the termination is almost always fatal.

CHAPTER XII.

PYREXIA—FEVER.

FEVER is one of the most frequent and important conditions which is met with in daily practice. Although increased bodily heat is one of its most striking phenomena, it is in reality a complex general morbid state, in which all the functions are liable to be more or less disturbed. *Pyrexia*, while commonly employed as synonymous with fever, is sometimes used in a more limited sense, as merely indicating rise of temperature, however brought about. Fever implies that the increased heat is of some duration, and reaches a certain height, for the term is not usually applied to slight and temporary elevations of temperature.

Etiology.—According to the circumstances under which it occurs, fever has been broadly divided into:—1. *Primary, idiopathic, or essential*, where it starts as a general disturbance of the system, and is not the result of any evident local cause. 2. *Secondary or symptomatic*, where the febrile condition is associated with some local disease, especially inflammation. A definite complaint belonging to the former group is generally spoken of as *a fever*. In cases originating in this way, however, organic lesions often supervene, either as essential effects of a particular disease, or as accidental secondary events, which intensify or prolong the pyrexia.

SUMMARY OF CAUSES.—The actual circumstances under which pyrexia or increase in the bodily heat occurs are very numerous, and it may be of some advantage to attempt to classify the causes under certain heads, as follows:—

1. Some *temporary local disorder*, such as dentition, indigestion, intestinal worms, a loaded rectum, a distended bladder, an attack of headache or migraine, a restless night, disturbance of either of the special senses, or local irritation of the skin, as by a pin or rough clothing. In this class of cases the pyrexia is generally slight and of short duration, but the temperature may run up to a considerable height, even from slight causes, especially in children and sensitive persons; and sometimes a definite febrile paroxysm is produced.

2. The action of *excessive or prolonged heat* upon the system, as in some forms of sunstroke. Here the temperature may reach a great or even fatal height.

3. Certain conditions directly and obviously affecting the *nervous system*—*neurotic fever*. Severe pain often gives rise to pyrexia, especially that associated with the passage of a gall-stone or a renal calculus, in connection with which there is sometimes a very pronounced febrile attack. The same effect not uncommonly follows the passage of a catheter or sound along the urethra into the bladder—*catheter fever* (Sir A. Clark). A high temperature may supervene in nervous affections, such as hysteria, epilepsy, delirium tremens, chorea, or tetanus; and is also met with in cases of injury to, or organic diseases of, certain parts of the nerve-centres.

4. Disturbance of the *general system*. There are not a few cases of more or less definite febrile attacks occurring in ordinary practice, which can only be referred to some general disturbance, such as that resulting from chilling of the body. They are usually classed as cases of *febricula*,

or *catarrhal fever*, if there happen to be catarrh of mucous surfaces. Some cases which seem to fall under this group, however, are really mild forms of recognized fevers.

5. *Specific fevers.* There are a number of well-known diseases belonging to this group, of which pyrexia is a prominent manifestation, requiring careful and systematic observation and study. They may be divided into:—*a. Eruptive fevers* or *exanthemata*, as typhus, typhoid, measles, scarlatina, and small-pox. It must be remembered that these may occur without any eruption. *b. Peculiar diseases* without eruption, as diphtheria, mumps, whooping-cough, influenza, relapsing fever, or epidemic cerebro-spinal meningitis. *c. Malarial fevers*, of an intermittent or remittent type.

6. Certain *general or constitutional diseases*, and forms of *blood-poisoning*, either with or without local lesions. The chief complaints belonging to this group which are accompanied with fever include rheumatism, gout, tuberculosis, syphilis, and septicæmia or pyæmia of all kinds; but pyrexia may also be associated with rickets, cancer, scurvy, purpura, pernicious anaemia, uræmia, and other conditions affecting the general system or blood. More or less fever is very common in cases of phthisis, but here it may be the result of different factors. Puerperal fever is a well-recognized affection, which is probably of a septic nature. Pregnancy does not raise the temperature, and the act of parturition only slightly, on account of the increased muscular action; it soon becomes normal during the puerperal state, provided no complications supervene to cause pyrexia.

7. *Local inflammation* and its consequences, especially *suppuration*. The connection between this class of conditions and the febrile state is familiar to all, but the phenomena differ much in their exact characters, intensity, and course, according to the structure affected, and various other circumstances. Some writers would include certain inflammatory diseases, such as acute primary pneumonia, among the "specific fevers," but at present at any rate there is no adequate justification for such an arrangement. Lesions which do not themselves originate pyrexia, such as haemorrhage into an organ, may indirectly induce it by setting up inflammation. Abscess is a very prominent cause of fever; which may also be associated with ulceration or gangrene.

8. *Miscellaneous conditions.* Under this head may be mentioned certain diseases which may give rise to fever, but which do not exactly come under either of the foregoing categories, or are of a more or less complicated nature, such as dysentery, lymphadenoma, leucocythaemia, embolism and thrombosis, paroxysmal haemoglobinuria, and acute yellow atrophy of the liver.

Such is a general outline of the chief circumstances under which pyrexia occurs in ordinary practice, and in the large majority of instances it can be definitely referred to one or other of the groups indicated. It must be remembered, however, that in an individual case there may be more than one cause at work, and all the factors should be duly recognized. For example, in a specific fever an inflammatory complication frequently aggravates the pyrexia; or it may be even increased by some temporary disorder, such as constipation, pain, or restlessness. Again, two acute specific diseases may exist together, as typhoid fever and diphtheria; or two or more inflammatory affections. Now and then it must be acknowledged that febrile attacks come under observation, the meaning of which it is impossible to fathom.

Pathology and Anatomical Changes.—The pathology of fever has always been a matter of much controversy, and although much has been done of late years to clear up many points, there are still considerable differences of opinion. I do not propose to attempt any discussion of the several questions involved, but will only offer a few general remarks on the subject. Before it can be at all rationally understood, an acquaintance with the main facts relating to the physiology of the animal heat is essential. These have already been considered.

With regard to the immediate *origin* of pyrexia, it seems so far clear that the condition may be set up by some morbid poison, which has either gained an entrance from without, or been generated within the system; in connection with a definite local disorder or lesion, especially inflammation and its consequences; or as the result of a primary disturbance of the central nervous system. The morbific agents are now generally supposed to be of the nature of micro-organisms (bacteria, etc.); but it appears highly probable, if not certain, that septic fluids or toxic chemical compounds may originate fever without the actual presence of any visible organisms. When the condition is associated with inflammation, it is believed by many pathologists that the real cause of the pyrexia is a pyrogenic fluid or, as some think, definite micro-organisms, which gain access into the circulation from the inflammatory focus. How these agents set up pyrexia is not definitely known. One view is that they act directly upon the blood and living tissues, multiplying greatly in number, increasing metabolism, and leading to excessive destruction and oxidation. According to another theory, they produce their effects through the medium of the nervous system, either directly affecting the nerve-centres concerned with the animal heat or the vaso-motor apparatus, or acting by reflex influence. In relation to inflammation, moreover, some pathologists are of opinion that the pyrexia is here also merely due to reflex irritation, acting upon and through the central nervous system; and this explanation might certainly apply to non-inflammatory local disorders.

The explanation of the *phenomena* of the febrile state is a complicated subject, but allusion will only be made here to the *rise of temperature*. Many theories have been propounded to account for the pyrexia. The most simple and obvious is that it is due to *increased heat-production*, resulting from excessive destruction of tissues, and the combustion or oxidation associated therewith. That this is often an important factor cannot be doubted, but it does not always occur, and various facts prove that it cannot be the sole explanation. Another view is that there is *retention of heat* or *diminished loss* from the surface of the body, owing to contraction of the cutaneous vessels; or a relatively diminished heat-discharge in proportion to the heat-production. This partly accounts for the temperature during the early stage of a pyrexial attack, and it may subsequently act as a subsidiary cause under certain conditions. But that it cannot be regarded as the chief explanation of the excessive bodily heat is proved by the facts that, even when perspiration is profuse, as in rheumatic fever, or when sweating has been induced by jaborandi before a fit of ague, the temperature still goes up; while it has been demonstrated experimentally that in fever there is increased discharge of heat from the body.

Liebermeister's theory, which was adopted by the late Dr. Fagge, affirms "that pyrexia consists, not in a mere rise of the temperature of

the body, still less in increase of heat-generation, or in diminution of loss of heat, but in a change in the normal function of heat-regulation, by which the production of heat and its loss are so balanced as to create and maintain, while the pyrexia lasts, a higher temperature instead of the normal temperature." In short, it is regulated for a higher level than normal.

Dr. Ord has advanced the hypothesis that the increased temperature in fever results from the heat produced by the destruction and disintegration of tissues accumulating in the body, because not used up, as in health, by the formation of new tissues, which process is probably accompanied by the absorption of heat. He regards it as due to "persistence in the form of heat, of energy which should have taken another form."

The relation of the *nervous system* to pyrexia has already been alluded to, and in this connection the views of Dr. Donald MacAlister demand special notice. He refers fever definitely to the nervous system, and only associates the term with that kind of thermal disorder in which there is excessive thermogenesis, with the excessive catabolism of nitrogenous tissues which that involves. He remarks :—" High temperature is not necessarily fever, and fever is not necessarily accompanied with high temperature. We may have a *febris sine febro*, a morbid thermogenesis without high temperature, the increased heat-production being compensated, or more than compensated, by increased heat-loss. And we may have a rise of temperature even with diminished thermogenesis, if the heat-loss is so diminished as no longer to balance even the diminished production. The former would be fever; though the patient were cool ; the latter would not be fever, even though the patient were hot." Briefly stated, Dr. MacAlister's theory as to disorders of bodily temperature is as follows :—He considers the thermal nervous system as consisting of three parts, which he calls the *thermotaric* or adjusting, the *thermogenic* or producing, and the *thermolytic* or discharging mechanism. Disorder of the first implies irregularity of temperature only ; disorder of the first and second implies, in general, heightened temperature and increased body heat—that is ordinary fever ; disorder of the first, second, and third implies, in general, hyperpyrexia, dangerous increase of heat, and steadily rising temperature. Regarding thermal mechanisms as a functional and evolutional hierarchy, he looks upon fever as a " dissolution," a progressive negative process, a relaxation of control from above downwards.

Sir William Broadbent also favours the theory that the nervous system is concerned in the febrile process, in some cases the restraining influence of the great nerve-centres over nutrition, and especially oxidation associated with tissue-change, being directly impaired, owing to their power of maintaining tension being lessened or abolished in consequence of disease or injury. In other instances, where septic matters or other substances are introduced into the blood, they increase oxidation by acting as fermenters or in other ways, and thus directly raise the temperature, and overpower the restraining influence of the nerves until this is reinforced.

The *anatomical changes* which may be referred to the febrile state itself, when it is severe or prolonged, are of the following nature :—The tissues, especially the muscles and fat, become more or less rapidly destroyed, with consequent wasting. The voluntary muscles may pre-

sent the peculiar degeneration described by Zenker. The glandular organs, on the other hand, tend to become enlarged, congested, and soft, especially the spleen, and to a less degree the liver, kidneys, and lymphatic glands. The cells of the liver and kidneys may exhibit the granular change. The heart also undergoes granular degeneration in bad cases; and there is a tendency to hypostatic congestion, especially in the lungs. The blood-changes vary much under different circumstances. Those chiefly noticed are a diminution in alkalinity; deficiency of albumen and red corpuscles; and increase of white corpuscles (*leucocytosis*) in many cases. Consequently a state of anaemia is produced. In some forms of fever fibrinogenous elements are much above the normal, and the blood readily clots; in others they are greatly reduced. In cases of low type the blood becomes thin, fluid, and dark, staining the aorta and its main branches. Changes in the capillaries may also occur, leading to petechiae or haemorrhages, not only superficial, but in connection with mucous or serous membranes, and in the substance of muscles or organs. Secondary inflammations not uncommonly supervene in severe febrile cases, such as pneumonia, and these are due to the impaired circulation, with consequent passive congestion or stagnation of blood; to the effects of retained deleterious waste-products; to emboli, which may be septic; or to micro-organisms.

Symptoms.—The precise symptoms observed in febrile cases are necessarily very variable, but the phenomena which are more or less characteristic of the pyrexial condition may be thus arranged:—

1. *Rise in temperature.*—Excessive bodily heat is generally looked upon as the only absolutely essential sign of fever, provided the increase of temperature continues for a certain time. This may be evident in the aspect or sensations of the patient, or the skin may feel hot or burning to the touch; but no reliance ought to be placed on these sources of information, and the existence of pyrexia can only be satisfactorily determined by means of the clinical thermometer. The temperature may range from only a little above the normal to as much as 108°, 110°, 112°, or perhaps even higher, but it seldom exceeds 105° or 106°. When the temperature is below 101° fever is regarded as "slight"; up to 103° "moderate"; to 105° "high"; and above 105° or 106° the condition is termed *hyperpyrexia*. The bodily heat may continue to rise for some time after death.

2. *Disorder of secretions.*—Pyrexia is attended with deficient elimination of water from the system, while at the same time there is excessive destruction of tissues. Hence the secretions and excretions are as a rule diminished in quantity, as well as altered in quality, from which result some prominent symptoms, namely:—*a. Dryness of the skin*, though this is by no means essential, for in some cases more or less perspiration occurs, which may even be profuse. *b. Derangements of the alimentary canal.* The salivary, gastric, intestinal, and biliary secretions are deficient or altered. Hence the tongue is furred, and the mouth dry or clammy; the taste is unpleasant; there is much thirst; appetite is impaired or lost; the breath is offensive; and the bowels are constipated. Nausea and vomiting are also not unfrequent symptoms in febrile cases. *c. Changes in the urine.* This is much diminished in quantity, high-coloured, very acid, with a strong odour, and of high specific gravity; there is also generally an excessive discharge of uric acid and urea, and deposits of urates, or sometimes of uric acid, form when the urine cools

on standing. There may be an increase in hippuric acid, sulphates, phosphates, potash-salts, and colouring matters. Chlorides are commonly deficient, and may be absent altogether; while soda-salts are also below the normal. Slight albuminuria is common in febrile cases.

3. *Derangement of the circulatory system and blood.*—The pulse is increased in frequency, and may rise to 100, 120, 140, 160, or more, being not uncommonly in proportion to the temperature. In its other characters it varies greatly under different circumstances, but a typical febrile pulse is full, bounding, and of good tension. In long-continued or severe cases it tends to become weak, very compressible, dicrotic, irregular, or even intermittent. Physical examination reveals corresponding failure in the action of the heart.

4. *Disorders of respiration.*—The respirations tend to be increased in frequency in febrile diseases, but their number bears no definite ratio to the temperature or pulse, notwithstanding statements to the contrary. The elimination of carbonic acid is above the normal on the whole, sometimes considerably, owing to the increased frequency of breathing, though there is a smaller relative proportion in the expired air.

5. *Disturbance of the nervous system.*—Symptoms referable to the nervous system are commonly associated with the pyrexial state. In the early stage chills or rigors are often experienced, as well as general muscular pains, or sensations of aching or soreness, especially in the back and limbs, weariness, exhaustion, languor, and inaptitude for any occupation or effort. Some fevers present peculiar localized pains: while headache and giddiness are very frequently complained of. Restlessness, insomnia, and slight nocturnal delirium are also common symptoms. Alternations of chilliness or even rigors and flushes of heat may occur during the course of a pyrexial attack; and rigors are often brought on by partial exposure of the surface of the body. Under special circumstances very serious nervous disturbance may arise, indicated by marked general prostration; delirium, either violent or muttering; somnolence, or actual stupor, tending to coma or coma-vigil; muscular disorders, such as tremors, subsultus tendinum, picking at the bedclothes, or convulsions; or peculiar phenomena.

6. *General symptoms.*—Owing to the excessive waste of tissues, at the same time but little food being taken to make up for the loss, while even this is assimilated with difficulty, patients suffering from fever lose flesh and weight more or less rapidly, and usually feel debilitated and depressed. In some cases they become speedily emaciated and prostrated, the tissues being very rapidly consumed. Anaemia is also frequently induced by a severe or prolonged febrile illness.

Course and Terminations.—A typical febrile attack is characterized by three stages, namely, those of *invasion*, *acme* or *fastigium*, and *decline* or *defervescence*. These are seen in their fullest development when the paroxysm runs through its course rapidly, as during a fit of ague, or in so-called "hectic" fever. They are also present in a less pronounced and more prolonged form in those cases of fever which are continuous for a longer or shorter period, it may be for weeks or months, and in such cases there are often daily or more frequent pyrexial paroxysms; but the several stages are not then distinct and well-marked as a rule, and it is often impossible to recognize them.

Taking a typical febrile paroxysm, during the stage of *invasion*, also called the *cold stage*, the patient feels cold and chilly, and generally has more or less severe shivering or rigors. The internal temperature rises

from the very outset, as proved by clinical and experimental observations, even before the occurrence of the phenomena just mentioned. At the same time the skin may continue to be cold and pale, owing to the contraction of the small vessels, and may appear shrunken and bluish or dusky. These conditions are especially noticed in the hands and feet, and about the ears, nose, and lips. At this time the pulse is small, hard, and prolonged, from contraction of the arteries. Headache is frequently more marked in this stage than later on ; and the patient feels usually much depressed. In the *second* or *hot* stage, the external surface becomes hot, and in many cases more or less bright-red, especially about the face ; there is a subjective sensation of heat ; and the pulse becomes full and bounding. The actual temperature presents much variety. The *third* stage varies considerably in its course and characters. As applied to a particular paroxysm it is usually called the *sweating* stage, being commonly accompanied with perspiration, which may be very profuse, while the temperature falls, and the pulse becomes softer and less frequent.

Taking the course of a “febrile disease” as a whole, the decline of the fever in cases of recovery, or *defervescence*, may be brought about in the following ways :—1. *Crisis*.—This mode is characterized by a sudden or speedy abatement of the fever, indicated by a rapid fall in temperature, which may become normal in a few hours ; while at the same time there is generally a considerable increase in the various excretions, evidenced by profuse perspiration, a free flow of urine containing a large amount of solid ingredients, especially urea and urates, or watery diarrhoea, which are regarded as *critical discharges*. Occasionally some form of haemorrhage occurs, such as epistaxis. Rapid crisis is liable to be followed by more or less collapse. 2. *Lysis*.—Here there is a gradual defervescence, the temperature subsiding slowly and regularly for some days, and there being no critical discharges. 3. *Combination of crisis and lysis*.—At first a rapid fall of temperature occurs to a certain point, this being followed by a gradual lowering ; or for some days a regular alternation of high and low temperatures is observed. 4. *Irregular*.—Occasionally defervescence is quite irregular in its progress. During convalescence the temperature and the amount of the excretions often fall below the normal standard.

Death is a frequent termination in febrile diseases, from a variety of conditions or complications, but this event is only occasionally traceable to the fever itself, then resulting either from excessively high temperature ; blood-poisoning ; asthenia and exhaustion ; cardiac failure ; or pulmonary hypostatic congestion and its consequences.

Types or Varieties.—The symptoms described as belonging to fever are very variously combined, and present a wide range as regards their severity and course. In some instances, indeed, the only phenomenon noticed is a high temperature, which may even be considerable without any other obvious disturbance. In relation to definite febrile cases certain types are recognized, which will now be pointed out.

1. TYPES DEPENDING UPON THE COURSE AND MODE OF PROGRESS OF THE SYMPTOMS :—*a. Continued*.—This group comprehends all febrile diseases which run a tolerably regular course, the variations in temperature at different periods of the day coming within a limited range. It includes the acute specific fevers, and most cases of inflammatory fever. In these complaints the temperature rises more or less rapidly up to a certain point, then remains tolerably stationary for a time, and finally deferves-

cence occurs in one of the ways already mentioned. *b. Remittent*.—Here the fever presents marked remissions alternating with exacerbations, as indicated by the temperature and other symptoms. During the remission the temperature may fall even below the normal. This variety is met with chiefly in tropical climates, but remission is also an important characteristic of *hectic* fever. *c. Intermittent*.—This type is characterized by temporary cessation of all febrile symptoms, which only come on at certain more or less regular intervals, and run through a definite course, the temperature in the meanwhile being quite normal. The different forms of ague afford familiar examples. *d. Relapsing*.—In one particular form of fever, after an attack of the *continued* type, defervescence and apparent recovery take place, but this is followed after some days by a *relapse*, which course of events may be repeated more than once. *e. Ataxic*.—This is the term applied to very irregular fever, conforming to no known type.

2. TYPES DEPENDING UPON THE SEVERITY AND COMBINATION OF SYMPTOMS—*a. Simple*.—This form is the simplest expression of fever, presenting the characteristic symptoms, but in a mild degree. It is well exemplified in ordinary *febricula*.

b. Inflammatory.—As the term suggests, this type is usually associated with local acute inflammations, at all events in the early stage. Pyrexia does not, however, by any means necessarily accompany every inflammatory disease, nor does its degree always bear any proportion to the intensity and extent of the inflammation. It is more likely to be present, and to be greater in intensity, when some tissues are affected than others, as, for example, in pneumonia; also in young and plethoric persons, and in those of a sanguine temperament. The symptoms of inflammatory fever are well-marked, and of a sthenic character. Shivering or distinct rigors mark the onset, followed by considerable reaction. The temperature becomes high, the skin feeling hot and dry. There are marked pains in the limbs, with much headache. Vascular excitement runs high, as evidenced by a frequent, strong, and full pulse. The blood often exhibits the “buffy-coat.” The digestive organs are much disturbed, there being a thickly-furred but moist tongue, disagreeable breath, marked thirst, total loss of appetite, and constipation. The urine is distinctly febrile. There is much restlessness, with sleeplessness or nocturnal delirium; and occasionally severe nervous symptoms, such as convulsions or delirium, usher in the attack, especially in the case of young children.

c. Hyperpyrexia.—Here the temperature is very high, varying from 105° or 106° to 115° or more. It shows a tendency to ascend very rapidly, this being associated with grave symptoms referable to the respiratory and nervous systems. The breathing becomes very hurried and shallow as a rule, the mouth being open, and the nostrils distended during inspiration, which act may be attended with a sucking or sipping sound. The nervous phenomena included marked restlessness, mental confusion and disorder, passing into violent or muttering delirium, and coma. Hyperpyrexia has been most frequently met with in cases of acute rheumatism, sun-stroke, and septicæmia or pyæmia; but it may be observed in other febrile conditions, such as pneumonia, typhoid fever, or puerperal fever; and also in certain diseases or injuries affecting the nervous system.

d. Low types.—Under this group may be included the following:—
i. Asthenic or Adynamic.—The patient is very weak, and feels much pros-

trated. The temperature is only slightly raised; and the pulse is feeble and small, though accelerated. In short, febrile reaction is not prominent. At the same time there is not much thirst, and the tongue continues moist. Usually cerebral symptoms are not present, but there may be nocturnal delirium. ii. *Typhoid*. “*The Typhoid State*.”—This presents some important distinctions from the former. There is great prostration. The tongue tends to become small, dry, and covered with a brown or black crust; the lips are dry and cracked; the teeth and gums at the same time being encrusted with sordes; deglutition and speech are consequently more or less interfered with. The heart's action is much impaired, as evidenced by the characters of its impulse and sounds; by the pulse, which becomes more and more rapid, is very weak and compressible, often irregular or intermittent, dicrotic or undulating, and may be at last imperceptible at the wrist; and by the tendency to capillary congestion and stagnation of the circulation in dependent parts, leading to low inflammation, or to bed-sores affecting parts which are pressed upon. Before death the superficial capillaries generally dilate, and then profuse sweating takes place, which may be offensive, while parts of the surface become dusky, and the skin may be cold, especially that of the extremities and over exposed parts. Breathing is usually shallow, and more or less frequent. Diarrhoea may set in, with offensive stools. Nervous symptoms are prominent, especially low muttering delirium, muscular tremblings and twitchings, subsultus tendinum, and stupor ending in coma. The special senses are blunted, and there may be marked deafness. Ultimately the condition culminates in profound exhaustion, the patient lying on his back and sinking towards the bottom of the bed, being indifferent to all around. The typhoid condition is not solely met with in febrile cases, being also observed in uræmia, acute atrophy of the liver, and other conditions. It seems to be mainly due to the accumulation of the products of incomplete tissue-waste in the system, and consequent toxæmia. The symptoms have also been attributed to the direct action of some specific fever poison upon the nerve-centres; ptomaine-poisoning; plugging of the minute vessels of the grey matter of the brain with white corpuscles or septic emboli; or hyperpyrexia. iii. *Malignant*.—In some cases the symptoms are of such an exceedingly low type, being frequently attended with haemorrhages and petechiae, that they may be truly termed malignant. The term *putrid* is sometimes applied to fever under these circumstances. Another form of *malignant* fever is that in which some poison seems to act upon the system so violently as to cause the patient to succumb at once, there being no evident reaction, or any local lesions set up. This is sometimes observed in connection with the exanthemata.

e. *Hectic*.—Hectic fever is usually associated with profuse suppuration, but may attend any great drain upon the system. Phthisis frequently presents this variety in its most typical form. It is of a distinctly intermittent or remittent type, there being exacerbations as a rule once in the twenty-four hours, occasionally twice. The fever sets in very gradually, at first only a slight evening rise in temperature being noticed, with quickening of the pulse; after a while pyrexia becomes more or less constant, but a marked increase takes place towards evening, beginning with chilliness or rigors, followed by much heat of skin, which increases up to or beyond midnight, and is succeeded by profuse sweats, so that the patient's clothes and the bed-clothes may

become saturated; in some cases the exacerbation takes place in the afternoon. The subjective feeling of heat is usually very considerable, and the palms of the hands and soles of the feet have often a burning sensation. The appearance of the patient is frequently very characteristic and striking, there being a circumscribed bright red or pink spot on each cheek, familiarly known as the *hectic flush*. The pulse is very easily excited; during a paroxysm it may rise to 120 or more. It varies in its characters, but is generally jerky, moderately soft, and compressible. The respirations are also temporarily hurried. This fever is attended with considerable and often rapid wasting, while the patient feels much exhausted after each attack, becoming ultimately exceedingly feeble and emaciated. The mental faculties are unaffected until near the close of life, being often, in fact, peculiarly lively and brilliant. The duration of hectic fever is very variable, but it tends to be prolonged. It is really a form of *septic fever*; and this kind of fever may occur without being exactly of the hectic type, there being a high, but irregular temperature, with much sweating and wasting.

Diagnosis.—The first point in diagnosis is to determine whether fever is present or not, and remembering its frequency, it is obviously necessary to be always on the look-out for the condition. The habitual and systematic use of the clinical thermometer will generally reveal pyrexia when it exists; but it must be borne in mind that a rise of temperature may only occur at certain periods of the day, and, therefore, in suspected or obscure cases it is important to employ the instrument with more than usual care, and at more or less frequent intervals, in order to detect any deviation from the normal. On the other hand, it is necessary to guard against exaggerating the significance and gravity of a mere temporary increase in the bodily heat, especially in susceptible individuals.

Any case which has been made out to be definitely febrile demands thoughtful attention, and should never be made light of. Therefore the next step is to endeavour to determine the cause or causes upon which the condition depends. Not uncommonly this is evident at once, or the diagnosis is arrived at after a very cursory examination; in other instances it is only determined by more or less careful enquiry and investigation; while occasionally the origin of pyrexia is obscure or even undiscoverable.

In dealing with *acute febrile diseases*, it is obviously of great consequence that a correct diagnosis should be made as quickly as possible, and, therefore, it may be serviceable to indicate here the line of investigation to be pursued, and the chief points to be attended to, in relation to this class of diseases. At the same time it is necessary to avoid undue haste in coming to a positive conclusion which the data do not sufficiently warrant.

1. It is necessary to enquire at the outset what febrile complaints the patient has previously suffered from, if any. It should then be ascertained whether there is a history of exposure to any infectious disease; or of any other cause likely to give rise to a febrile condition, for example, malaria or cold.

2. If possible, the *exact date, even the hour*, of the onset of symptoms must be fixed; and the *mode of invasion* ascertained, as regards rapidity, the occurrence of initial rigors, or other points.

3. The *symptoms* which have developed in the course of the case are then to be enquired about, as well as the times at which they appeared;

those being subsequently noted which are present at the time of examination of the patient. During their *premonitory* or *early stage*, the acute specific fevers are usually attended with certain *peculiar symptoms*, differing in each complaint, and more or less characteristic. Those which require to be particularly investigated are:—The severity of general pains; the presence of any localized pain, especially in the back or epigastrium; catarrhal, throat, gastric, intestinal, and head-symptoms. Of course, if the pyrexia is due to inflammation of some particular organ or structure, there will probably be local symptoms indicating the seat of mischief, as in the case of pneumonia, acute rheumatism, or gout.

4. It is of the greatest importance to determine the *degree of pyrexia*; as well as its *course* and *mode of progress*. In this way, even at a very early period, much assistance is gained in arriving at a diagnosis. In the specific fevers the temperature is more or less of the *continued* type. By its degree, rapidity of onset, or peculiar course, the nature of a febrile disease may in many cases be speedily determined. The course of temperature in intermittent fever is very characteristic.

5. Most of the acute specific fevers are attended with a characteristic *skin-eruption* or *rash*, and are hence called *exanthemata*. It must be remembered, however, that this is not always present in individual cases. The points to be learnt with regard to each eruption are:—*a*. The *exact time* of its appearance after the first onset of symptoms. *b*. Its *primary seat*, as well as the parts of the body to which it spreads, and the mode and rapidity of its extension. *c*. Its ordinary *amount*. *d*. Its precise *characters*, from its first appearance to its decline, including any changes which it may undergo during its progress. *e*. Its *duration*, both as regards the entire eruption and its individual constituents. *f*. The *cutaneous sequelæ* which may follow it, such as desquamation. *g*. The *chief varieties* it may present.

6. Some acute specific diseases are accompanied with obvious local morbid conditions of a peculiar nature, such as diphtheria or mumps. In others, as typhoid fever, the symptoms resulting from local lesions become sooner or later characteristic as a rule.

7. In all acute febrile cases it is imperative to make a careful *physical examination* of all the chief organs of the body, and to *examine the urine*. This may reveal the cause of the pyrexia, even when there are no symptoms pointing to any particular organ. Besides, it must be borne in mind that even in the specific fevers complications are very liable to arise, or some of the organs may be primarily involved, and it is most important to detect any lesion affecting these organs as early as possible. Hence *daily examination* at least should be carried out, and in many cases it is requisite to examine the principal organs even more frequently than this.

When the cause of fever is obscure, among the conditions to be especially thought of, may be mentioned suppuration in some deep or remote part; septicæmia; embolism; ulcerative endocarditis; certain forms of peritonitis; gall-stones; tuberculosis; the rheumatic or gouty state, without obvious joint-affection; and the effects of malaria. It not unfrequently happens that by watching the course of events any obscurity or difficulty of diagnosis is cleared up in a short time, but occasionally one is completely baffled.

There is one other point to be noticed bearing upon the diagnosis of fever, namely, that in some instances it is desirable, if possible, to deter-

mine the exact factors which are producing the rise of temperature and other phenomena. This may be illustrated by many cases of phthisis, typhoid fever, small-pox, rheumatic fever, and other diseases.

Prognosis.—The prognosis in febrile cases must necessarily depend on the cause of the disturbance, the particular disease with which it is associated, and numerous other circumstances. So far as the pyrexia itself is concerned, however, there are certain indications which always influence the gravity of the prognosis, namely:—1. *Its intensity.*—The higher the temperature the more dangerous is the case, and the prognosis becomes very serious when it reaches above 106°. Under appropriate treatment, however, many patients have recovered, even after the temperature has risen as high as, or even above 110°. 2. *Its type.*—All low forms of fever are grave, and any tendency towards typhoid or adynamic symptoms, especially if the nervous system is much affected, should be looked upon with anxiety. 3. *Defective elimination.*—This is an unfavourable sign, particularly if associated with a very high temperature. 4. *The previous condition, habits, and health of the patient.*—Young, robust, and plethoric persons are often severely affected; but at the same time they are more likely to recover from serious fevers than those in opposite conditions. Intemperate habits materially add to the gravity of these cases. Some constitutional affections, such as gout, increase the danger of febrile diseases considerably; while the presence of organic lesions, especially of the kidneys or heart, may render them exceedingly grave.

Treatment.—The management of febrile cases should never be conducted in a routine fashion, and each one demands intelligent consideration. Frequently it is a very simple matter, the condition needing little or no active treatment; in many instances, however, questions arise presenting much difficulty, and requiring the most careful and constant attention, it may be for a prolonged period. There are two rather prevalent errors which need to be guarded against. First, it must not be imagined that treatment is of no avail in febrile diseases, and that the practitioner has nothing whatever to do. By judicious interference it is possible to mitigate their severity, to avert death, to relieve symptoms, and to shorten the duration of the illness in a considerable proportion of cases. On the other hand, *over-active* and *meddlesome* treatment is most injurious, especially when dealing with those specific fevers which must of necessity pass through a definite course. The practice of attempting to *cut short* fevers has unquestionably often done much mischief; though under certain circumstances it no doubt is possible to check the febrile process.

The treatment of fever and its accompanying phenomena is so important, and of such wide application in practice, that it is most desirable to have a comprehensive and intelligent acquaintance with the principles or indications upon which it is founded, and with the chief therapeutic measures and remedies which may be called for. For this reason, and in order to avoid repetition, I propose once for all to consider the subject in some detail, especially with reference to the treatment of febrile diseases which have a more or less prolonged duration. At the outset a warning must be given against the tendency to treat vigorously a high temperature of recent onset, which the course of events may show to be due to some transient disorder, especially when dealing with children.

1. The first indication is to look out for any definite *cause*, sufficient to account for the pyrexia, and to get rid of this, if possible. As illustrations may be mentioned the removal of any physical source of irrita-

tion; lancing the gums for delayed dentition; emptying the bowels or bladder; opening an abscess, or giving exit to any other accumulation of pus, such as an empyema. The specific treatment of certain febrile diseases by medicines might come under this category, but in very few instances can such treatment be carried out, and it is chiefly exemplified by the effects of salicylates in acute rheumatism, and of quinine in malarial fevers.

2. Attention to *general management* and to *hygienic conditions* is always of essential importance in the treatment of a febrile illness. This matter will be again specially considered, but in the meantime it may be stated that two of the most essential requisites are *free ventilation*, so as to ensure that the patient obtains plenty of fresh air, and that the vitiated air is removed; and *cleanliness*. Rest of the body and mental quietude are also most important elements in the treatment of many febrile cases, and whenever there is pyrexia it is the safest plan to keep the patient in bed. Of course in a large majority of instances patients are so ill that they are unable or have no desire to get up. In serious cases they should not be disturbed by the presence of friends or others who are not required in the sick room. Of course *competent nursing* is often indispensable; and the nurse should wear dresses which do not rustle, and to which, in the case of contagious fevers, the contagious poison will not readily adhere.

3. One of the most necessary and difficult parts of the treatment in many cases of fever consists in judicious *dieting*, including the administration of *food* and *alcoholic stimulants*. When acute pyrexia is present, it may be stated as a general rule that solid food should not be given, and that the diet should be of a liquid nature. In many cases low diet is indicated at first, and in mild febrile attacks throughout. In more severe cases, however, abundant nutriment is subsequently needed, or sometimes even from the outset. Then the food must be nutritious, and at the same time capable of easy assimilation. Milk is a most valuable article of diet, as well as good beef-tea, mutton-broth, chicken-broth, and eggs. Meat-extracts and juices are often of much service; and "peptonized foods" are also frequently of great value. A most important matter which often needs special attention is to give the food at *frequent and regular intervals, in definite and moderate quantities*, and the patient should in severe cases not be allowed to sleep for too long a time, and thus be deprived of the requisite nutriment. It is quite impossible to lay down any definite and rigid rules on these points, but each case must be treated on its own merits. In low forms of fever large quantities of nutriment are called for.

With regard to *alcoholic stimulants*, these are by no means always required in febrile diseases, and their indiscriminate use may do a great deal of harm, but in a large number of cases they are of the utmost value, though much experience is necessary in order to determine the particular kind and quantity of stimulant to be administered under different circumstances. Therefore young practitioners should be extremely cautious as to how they employ these remedies, and should watch their effects very closely. Wine, especially champagne or port, or brandy generally answer best, of which it may be necessary to give large quantities, and it is astonishing how much may be taken in certain febrile cases without producing the ordinary intoxicating effects of alcohol. It is most important that stimulants should be administered at *regular intervals* and in *definite doses*. The essential value of alcohol

consists, not in its making up for food, which must be given at the same time, but in that it maintains the action of the heart while the system is struggling against the effects of the fever. Hence the chief indication for its use is to be found in the condition of this organ, as evidenced by its impulse and sounds; by the frequency, force, and characters of the pulse; and by the state of the capillary circulation. Particular stress has been laid by some writers on keeping up the action of the heart and the arterial tension, in order to ensure proper elimination by the kidneys. Other organs, however, must not be overlooked in judging of the effects of the administration of alcoholic stimulants, and attention must be paid to the tongue, skin, respiratory organs, and nervous system. Their good effects are seen in the tongue becoming moist and less furred, the skin perspiring, the temperature being reduced, the number of respirations diminished, and the nervous system calmed. If the tongue becomes dry and baked, the skin burning and non-perspiring, the respirations hurried, and the nervous system excited, alcohol is doing harm. It is useful to smell the breath from time to time, and to stop the administration of stimulants should this give evidence that the system is becoming saturated with alcohol.

It is in the later stages of prolonged fever that alcohol is most useful, and especially when it tends towards an adynamic or typhoid type. No case, however, should be allowed to sink into a low condition for want of stimulants, as it may then be very difficult or even impossible to revive the patient. If there is any probability of this event taking place, they should be employed from the first. At the same time it is very important in these cases to watch constantly and thoroughly, and to observe at frequent intervals the effects of the administration of stimulants, lest they should be pushed too far. They must be given with particular caution if the urine is very deficient or albuminous. As to the quantity required, this will vary much in different cases. Usually from a teaspoonful to a tablespoonful of brandy will be needed, given at intervals of from three hours to half an hour, according to circumstances. Old people require a considerable quantity as a rule, and young children bear stimulants well. Wine or brandy may be conveniently given beaten up with eggs, the brandy-and-egg mixture (B.P.) being an excellent preparation; or brandy may be mixed with beef-tea or milk.

4. The next indication is to attend to the *pyrexia* itself, and, when required, to have recourse to more or less active measures for reducing the bodily temperature. In cases of slight or moderate fever it is sufficient to administer the milder classes of remedies, conveniently named *refrigerants* or *febrifuges*. The term *refrigerant* has been specially applied to agents which relieve thirst, and there can be no doubt that the febrile condition is thus materially alleviated. For this purpose the following drinks will be found agreeable in different cases, namely, simple iced water; barley-water; toast-and-water; iced milk with soda-water; solution of chlorate of potassium, which may be flavoured according to taste; some acid drink, such as lemonade made with the juice of lemons, or a drink composed of 5*j* of dilute hydrochloric acid with 10*j* of water or barley-water, and a little honey or sugar; "imperial drink"; tamarind-water; or iced champagne with seltzer-water or soda-water in small quantities, if stimulants are indicated. The frequent sucking of small fragments of ice will generally be found of much service. Patients may also in most cases be allowed to suck juicy fruits in moderation, such as grapes or oranges.

In addition to the administration of refrigerants of this class, the bowels should be kept properly opened, and a simple *saline mixture* given, composed of solution of acetate or citrate of ammonium, or citrate of potassium, with spirit of nitrous ether or nitrate of potassium, and some syrup. The skin and kidneys are thus acted upon, and in many cases, even of some duration, this line of treatment is all that is required, in addition to general nursing. Indeed, in the early stage of even high pyrexia it is usually best to be content with these measures, for the temperature will probably be thus brought down if the fever is not due to some definite and persistent cause.

The agents and methods intended more directly for lowering temperature are named *antipyretics* or *apyretics*. In suitable cases they are of the utmost value, but always need to be employed with judgment and discretion. The immediate purposes to be kept in view in having recourse to them may be thus stated: First, to check at the onset what threatens to be a severe febrile attack of an indefinite kind. Secondly, to hasten the progress and termination of a paroxysm, which has to go through its course, as in the case of a fit of ague. Thirdly, to make the patient more comfortable while passing through one of the usual fevers, or any other illness of limited duration attended with considerable pyrexia. Fourthly, by systematic antipyretic treatment to keep down the temperature in such cases when it tends to be high; to lengthen the intervals of remission or apyrexia; and to shorten the entire duration of the illness. Fifthly, to moderate pyrexia in various diseases in the course of which it is liable to occur, such as pulmonary phthisis, pernicious anaemia, or lymphadenoma. In this class of cases particular caution is necessary. Lastly, above all to treat hyperpyrexia, and to bring down the temperature as speedily as possible when it threatens to reach a dangerous height, or is rising rapidly. There can be no doubt of the extreme value of the more energetic methods of antipyretic treatment under such circumstances, and the practitioner must always be on the watch, so as to be prepared to carry them out without delay and efficiently when required, but at the same time with due care and discrimination.

Coming now to the *agents and methods* of treatment employed as antipyretics, no attempt will be made here to explain their modes of action. The most powerful means at our disposal is the *application of cold* to the body generally, or to some portion of it. The modes of applying cold are various, of which the chief are sponging the surface of the body with water, either tepid or cold; placing the patient upon a water-bed containing cold water; the use of the "ice-cradle," as employed by Dr. Samuel Fenwick (*OUTLINES OF MEDICAL TREATMENT*); cold affusion or douching, which may be practised independently, or while the patient is in a warm bath; wet-packing in a sheet; applying compresses dipped in cold or iced water over the chest and abdomen; the use of cold or tepid baths; the application of ice-bags to different parts of the body, especially over the spine, nape of the neck, cardiac region, or epigastrium; an ice-cap applied to the head, or a Leiter's coil; injecting iced water into the rectum; or placing the patient in a warm or tepid bath, the temperature of which is then gradually reduced by the removal of the warm, and the addition of cold water or even of ice, the latter being also in some cases applied to the head, spine, chest, or abdomen at the same time. After having been kept in the bath for a varying time, according to the circumstances of the case, the patient is

quickly dried, removed to bed, and wrapped in blankets; it may also be necessary to apply hot bottles to the feet. In suitable cases it is requisite to repeat the bath, even several times, and to apply ice in the intervals.

Some of the methods mentioned are not only useful in reducing temperature, and making the patient feel more comfortable, but they likewise diminish the frequency of the pulse; give marked relief to low nervous symptoms; and may have an influence upon the development of certain exanthematous eruptions, either in the way of bringing them out, or of limiting their amount and improving their quality. A systematic hydrotherapeutic treatment of all fevers is now often practised, especially on the Continent. In my opinion, however, this plan of treatment ought not to be followed as a matter of routine, and there are grave objections against the more severe methods by which it is carried out. Sponging the skin, the wet-pack, the use of a cold water-bed, the application of compresses over the abdomen and chest, or of the ice-cap or Leiter's coil to the head, are modes which are available in many cases, and might be practised with advantage much more frequently than is customary, especially as they are not at all dangerous if proper care be exercised. When baths are used to control temperature which is not serious in itself, but from its duration, as in typhoid fever, it is unnecessary to employ them below 70° or 65°. The cases, however, in which the use of external cold is so eminently serviceable are those in which the temperature shows a tendency to ascend rapidly, or in which there is actual hyperpyrexia. My own experience agrees with that of a large number of other observers as to the remarkable benefit which may be derived under such circumstances from the employment of baths in the manner above described. Undoubtedly in similar cases not only is it advisable to adopt such a plan of treatment, but this is the only method which seems to offer any chance of recovery. Of course it must always be conducted under competent and strict supervision, and its effects carefully watched.

Venesection has been employed with the view of subduing pyrexia, but there is positive evidence that it acts most injuriously, and therefore should never be practised merely for this object, although it may be required for other purposes in febrile cases.

Medicinal agents used as antipyretics are of different kinds, and act in different ways. One group include *depressing* drugs, especially aconite, veratrum viride, and tartar emetic, and in appropriate cases these are decidedly beneficial. They reduce the temperature in some degree, but have also a striking effect on the cardiac action and pulse, diminishing both frequency and force, and lower the respirations. Some of these drugs have a further action on the excretory organs. A favourite mode of treatment in certain cases is to give tincture of aconite in one or two minim doses every half-hour; while some practitioners administer it every five minutes, until twenty or thirty minimis have been taken. Quinine is usually regarded as one of the most effective antipyretics, and is much used for the purpose of lowering temperature, or checking its ascent. It is well known that this drug has a powerful influence overague, and when given in considerable doses — v-xx grains or more, repeated at variable intervals, according to circumstances — it has some power of diminishing excessive heat in other conditions. Its administration may be accompanied with the application of cold. Digitalis has been employed as an antipyretic, especially in

combination with quinine, but on no very definite grounds. Salicine, salicylic acid, and salicylates are valuable in certain forms of fever; and salicylate of quinine has been especially recommended. Salol has been introduced as a substitute for these remedies. Another class of agents which are in certain cases efficacious in reducing temperature are those which produce free perspiration, such as a full dose of spirit of nitrous ether, Dover's powder, or more especially jaborandi or subcutaneous injection of nitrate of pilocarpine.

During the last few years a remarkable series of artificial compounds have been obtained by refined methods of synthetical chemistry, which possess powerful antipyretic properties. Numerous preparations of this kind are in use, but it will suffice to mention phenazone or anti-pyrin, acetanilide or antifebrin, phenacetin, and pyrodin or hydracetin. While recognizing the power of these agents in considerably reducing febrile temperature, it must be borne in mind that they are liable to produce more or less unpleasant or even dangerous effects, and experience has shown that they should always be employed with caution, and only under proper medical supervision.

With regard to alcohol as an antipyretic, it is certain that this agent only lowers temperature when given in large quantities, and then only to a comparatively slight degree. To pour it into the system in a reckless manner for this purpose is, therefore, most objectionable, especially in cases of hyperpyrexia. At the same time its judicious use as a stimulant is of great service under such circumstances, especially when the more severe methods of applying cold are being carried out.

5. Another important indication in febrile cases is to *watch the excretions*, and observe whether proper elimination is taking place. Some authorities advocate energetic eliminatory treatment in all such cases, by which they propose to get rid of any specific morbid poison, as well as of the products resulting from tissue-change. Such treatment, however, is only exceptionally called for, though mild eliminatory measures, such as keeping the bowels acting properly, and giving diluents freely, in addition to the saline mixture already mentioned, should always be carried out. It is requisite in serious febrile diseases to examine the excretions, especially the urine, at frequent intervals, and thus to ascertain whether the materials formed are being properly got rid of, and, if such is not the case, to adopt measures calculated to aid their removal. Should symptoms arise indicating that the system is being poisoned by the accumulation of the products of tissue-change in the blood, energetic eliminatory treatment is decidedly called for. This consists in measures which promote the free action of the skin, bowels, and kidneys, by suitable *diaphoretics*, *purgatives*, and *diuretics*. The employment of baths materially increases the skin-action. In severe cases, should the urine be markedly deficient, it is desirable to endeavour to excite the kidneys into activity, by applying hot fomentations, linseed-meal poultices, or sinapisms over the loins, or by means of dry-cupping. Purgatives must be employed with caution, as they are likely to weaken the patient, but they are often required, and the *saline aperients* are very efficient in these cases. When diarrhoea is present, some advocate that this symptom should not be checked, or should even be encouraged by the aid of medicines, as it is a natural mode of elimination of a poison. It certainly is not always desirable to stop diarrhoea, but should it be excessive, or evidently weakening the

patient, it is, in my opinion, decidedly advisable to control the discharge by appropriate remedies.

6. Many *symptoms* occur in the course of febrile diseases which demand particular treatment. The more common of these will now be considered.

a. Symptoms referable to the *alimentary canal* are often troublesome. Thirst has been already alluded to. The mouth is frequently unpleasant, and it is necessary to give instructions to the nurse to see that it is properly cleansed from time to time. A mouth-wash containing a few drops of Condy's fluid, or some other simple antiseptic, may be used with advantage in many cases.

Vomiting is not uncommonly a symptom needing attention. It was a former practice, still adopted by some, to give an emetic at the commencement of any febrile attack, but for such treatment there is no warrant. If, however, vomiting or an inclination to vomit seems to be due to some source of irritation in the stomach, an emetic may be useful, such as a full dose of ipecacuanha wine or sulphate of zinc, followed by plenty of lukewarm water. In order to check vomiting special attention must be paid to the diet, and it will be well to give no food at all, if this symptom is troublesome, except very small quantities of iced milk with lime-water or soda-water at frequent intervals; or a teaspoonful of brandy with the same quantity of strong beef-tea or beef-juice. Iced champagne with seltzer-water in small doses is also very serviceable, as well as the sucking of ice. Should it be necessary to support the patient while there is persistent sickness, it will be best to give the stomach entire rest, and to administer nutriment and stimulants by means of enemata and suppositories. With regard to medicinal remedies, the most efficacious in checking vomiting in febrile conditions are effervescent draughts with hydrocyanic acid— m ij-iv; or the latter with a little mucilage or some preparation of bismuth. If opium or morphine is admissible, it is useful in some cases to add tincture of opium or solution of morphine— m iij-v—to each effervescent draught. When sickness resists the ordinary remedies, minute doses of strychnine sometimes have a remarkable effect in checking it. Local applications over the epigastrium are serviceable in obstinate cases, namely, linseed-meal poultices, sinapisms, flying blisters, or cold by means of the ice-bag. Care must be taken that the tendency to vomiting is not kept up by anything wrong in the sick-room, such as a bad smell or deficient ventilation.

The *bowels* very often require to be regulated. In most cases constipation is the symptom calling for treatment. Among the best aperients in febrile conditions may be mentioned a compound rhubarb pill; compound senna mixture; sulphate and carbonate of magnesia with peppermint-water; a Seidlitz powder; castor-oil; or, for children, compound rhubarb powder. In some cases calomel, colocynth, or other more powerful purgatives are required. Diarrhoea sometimes needs to be checked, but it must be borne in mind that this may be of an eliminatory character, and therefore it should not be heedlessly interfered with. It may be generally stopped, if necessary, by the ordinary remedies in different combinations, such as opium in the form of pill, tincture, or enema; carbonate or nitrate of bismuth; chalk-mixture; tincture of catechu; mineral acids; or Dover's or compound kino powder.

b. *Head-symptoms* are among the most common needing attention in acute febrile diseases. If *headache* is severe or persistent, it is desirable

to apply some cold lotion or an ice-bag to the head or nape of the neck, or to employ cold or warm affusion, the latter answering best for old and feeble patients. It is often advisable to cut the hair as short as possible, or in grave cases it may even be needful to shave the scalp. Dry-cupping over the nape of the neck is serviceable in some cases; or, if the patient is young and robust, the application of two or three leeches over the temples might be advantageous. Similar treatment is indicated should there be active or violent *delirium*, this symptom being often much relieved by freely douching the head with water, either cold or warm. Small blisters to the temples or nape of the neck are also beneficial in some cases. Low delirium generally calls for the free administration of stimulants.

Sleeplessness is a very important symptom to treat in febrile cases, and demands great attention. Patients often suffer seriously from want of sleep, and I believe that very injurious consequences sometimes result in fevers from a needless dread of giving hypnotics. Opium and morphine are the chief remedies of this class, and it is best to give either of them in the liquid form, in a tolerably full dose. If there is much throbbing headache or active delirium, it is recommended to combine the opium with a small dose of tartar emetic or with ipecacuanha, Dover's powder being an excellent preparation. Should there be a tendency to low delirium opium may be given along with stimulants. This drug is contra-indicated if the lungs are involved to any considerable extent, and the respiratory functions much interfered with; if the kidneys are affected; if there is any tendency to stupor; or if the pupils are much contracted. Other useful *hypnotics* in febrile conditions, either separately, or some of them in combination, are hydrate of chloral; bromide of potassium or ammonium; sulphonal; tincture of hyoscyamus; or tincture of belladonna. Paraldehyde, urethane, hypnone, or other more recent hypnotics, are useful in some cases. Hypodermic injections of morphine, atropine, or hyoscine, may be called for under particular circumstances. General restlessness and irritability is frequently much relieved by sponging the skin, or in some cases it may be desirable to put the patient into a warm bath. If the sense of hearing is unpleasantly acute, it is useful to put a little cotton-wool into the ears.

Any tendency to *stupor* or *coma* must be combated by freely douching the head; applying sinapisms or a blister to the nape of the neck, as well as sinapisms or turpentine fomentations to the legs and chest; and administering diffusible stimulants internally, with strong coffee. In extreme cases much benefit has followed the application of a blister to the shaven scalp. It must be remembered that any of the nervous symptoms above alluded to may be dependent upon retention of deleterious matters within the system, and therefore care must be taken that the excretory organs are acting properly, while it may be requisite to promote the removal of retained morbid products, by exciting a free action of these organs.

c. Measures directed against *adynamic* or *typhoid* symptoms are very often called for in the course of febrile diseases. As already stated, alcoholic stimulants and abundance of nourishment are demanded under such circumstances, and it is extremely important that these should be administered at frequent intervals, strict directions being given that the patient must not be allowed to sleep for too long a time, and thus be deprived of the necessary support. In addition to these remedies, certain *tonic* and *stimulant* medicines are very useful in adynamic cases,

namely, carbonate of ammonium with some preparation of cinchona bark, quinine in full doses, mineral acids, sulphuric ether, spirit of chloroform, camphor, and musk. At the same time sinapisms may be applied over different parts of the body. The application of the ice-bag over the cardiac region has been recommended to rouse the heart into activity when it is failing. Digitalis and allied remedies are also called for under such circumstances. When there is great depression, strong coffee and the administration of phosphorus have been found serviceable; or subcutaneous injection of ether may be resorted to in very bad cases. If patients are in such a condition that they cannot swallow, recourse must be had to enemata, by means of which food and stimulants, as well as medicines, may be administered. It is important in these cases to look to the bladder, and to take care that it is properly emptied, the catheter being employed if required.

7. In acute fevers it is requisite to watch for, and take every precaution against *local complications*, and to treat them as they arise. It is especially needful to look to the state of the lungs, as these organs are very liable to become the seat of hypostatic congestion or inflammation. Position will have some influence in preventing this untoward event, the patient not being allowed to lie with the head too low, while change of posture from time to time is encouraged. It is further advisable to promote cough and expectoration occasionally, so as to avoid any accumulation of mucus in the bronchial tubes; and also to instruct the patient to breathe deeply from time to time, so that the bases of the lungs may be duly expanded. Inflammatory affections arising in the course of fevers do not contra-indicate the use of stimulants, provided these remedies are otherwise called for. Indeed, not uncommonly they indicate a necessity for increasing their amount. Particular attention should be directed to the prevention of bed-sores, as they are very prone to occur in low febrile cases. If a patient is likely to be confined to bed for any length of time a firm mattress should be provided, a feather or flock bed being decidedly objectionable. The parts upon which the patient lies must be frequently examined, and kept dry and clean: continued pressure must be obviated by frequent changes of position, and the use of proper pads or air-cushions; and should there be the least sign of irritation, a water-pillow or bed ought to be provided. Various applications are used to prevent bed-sores, or to treat slight abrasions, such as spirit of wine, eau de Cologne, or some ordinary spirit, either strong or diluted with water; oxide of zinc powder; simple ointment or zinc ointment; vaseline; and soap plaster. The treatment of these lesions, when they do occur, is described in surgical works.

8. Great care is required during *convalescence* after a severe fever, as regards diet, hygiene, and medicinal treatment. Tonics and remedies for promoting digestion are often very beneficial at this period. Undue muscular exertion and fatigue must be avoided for some time; and any sudden effort during early convalescence is to be specially guarded against after a severe febrile disease, lest it may cause cardiac failure or venous thrombosis. Change of air is often attended with marked benefit, and hastens convalescence considerably. Sequelæ must be watched for, and treated according to their nature, if they should supervene.

CHAPTER XIII.

CONTAGION.—IMMUNITY.—EPIDEMICS.

THESE subjects are of such vital importance in relation to practical medicine, that their consideration from a general point of view is quite within the scope of a treatise of this kind. They may conveniently be dealt with in the same chapter, and their discussion appropriately follows that of fever, on account of their special connection with this morbid state.

I. CONTAGION.—IMMUNITY.

Using the word in its general sense, a *contagious disease* may be defined as "a disease which is capable of being transmitted from one animal to another, either of the same or some other species." The agent by which it is so transmitted is named the *contagium* or *contagion*. In this connection allusion may be made to the use of the term *zymotic*. Originally it implied a particular fermentation theory in relation to this class of diseases. Now, however, it is employed to include all contagious and other maladies which can be prevented by proper attention to hygienic and other prophylactic measures.

Origin and source of contagion; conditions under which it exists; and modes of propagation.—It is needless to enter into any discussion as to the primary origin of the various contagious poisons, and as to whether they are capable of being developed *de novo* at the present time. Probably a limited number of the infectious diseases may be thus generated, but the majority of these affections with which we have to deal are always communicated from one human being to another; while a small number are transmitted from some other animal to man, such as vaccinia, hydrophobia, glanders, and malignant pustule. In some cases the latter class can be re-transmitted to the same or another animal, usually in a modified form.

The contagium exists under different forms, and is given off in different ways. There is one distinct class of affections in which it is associated with obvious parasitic animals or plants, or their germs, for instance, scabies and the various forms of tinea. In other cases the contagium is believed to be connected with organized cells, such as those of cancer. Not unfrequently the poison is conveyed by means of pus or other morbid products, derived from an inflamed or ulcerated surface, or from pustules, of which diphtheria, small-pox, gonorrhœa, syphilis, glanders, and puerperal peritonitis afford illustrations. It may exist also in the contents of papules or vesicles; or in the substance of the dried scab which succeeds a pustule, as in the case of small-pox. Many contagious poisons have no palpable form, so far as has been at present ascertained, but pass off in the various exhalations and excretions of the body, especially in those emanating from the lungs and skin. Some are supposed only to contaminate the breath, such as that of whooping-cough; others seem to be present in all the exhalations, as

well as in the various secretions, for example, that of small-pox. The poison of scarlatina is very abundant in connection with the epithelium of the skin which is shed in this disease, and may thus be retained in a dormant state in clothing for an indefinite time. Cholera and typhoid fever are communicable mainly through the faeces. Hydrophobia is an example of a contagious malady only transmissible through a special secretion, namely, the saliva. It is said that malignant pustule may arise from eating the flesh of an animal affected with this disease. The blood may be the channel by which a contagious poison is directly conveyed. It is important to remember also that emanations from the dead body may convey infection, even for some time after death.

The next point to consider is how the contagium may be transmitted from one animal or individual to another, and how it gains access into the system? In some cases it is necessary to bring the material in which the poison resides into close and intimate relationship with the minute vessels of the tissues, so that immediate absorption may take place. This is artificially carried out by *inoculation*, that is, by puncturing the skin or otherwise destroying its superficial portion, and introducing the contagious material into the subcutaneous areolar tissue, or even directly into a vessel. It may be absorbed, however, through any abrasion or ulcer, situated either on the skin or a mucous surface. Hydrophobia, syphilis, and vaccinia are examples of diseases which can only be propagated in this way.

Another mode of communication is by *direct contact*, without any breach of continuity of the surface. This has been specially termed transmission by *contagion*, but it is not advisable thus to restrict the use of this word. It is particularly through mucous membranes that contagious poisons enter the system in this way, as is well illustrated by gonorrhœa and purulent ophthalmia. Parasitic diseases are propagated by contact, such as scabies; and it is stated that malignant pustule may arise in consequence of the infected matter soaking through the skin.

Many contagious affections can be conveyed from one individual to another without the necessity of any immediate contact between them. The contagium is given off into the surrounding atmosphere, and travels to the unaffected person, being subsequently inhaled or swallowed, thus reaching the several mucous surfaces, or possibly even entering the air-cells of the lungs; or in some instances being directly absorbed by the skin. To this mode of communication many would limit the application of the word *infection*. Tuberculosis is now generally regarded as being infectious through the dried sputum of patients suffering from pulmonary phthisis being diffused in the air. An infective poison may also be conveyed into the system by means of water, or of food, such as milk or beef-tea. Water used for drinking purposes is a most dangerous medium for conveying the poison of certain diseases, especially cholera and typhoid fever, in consequence of its being tainted with the excreta of patients suffering from these complaints. Further, contagious elements often become attached to what are termed *fomites*, including articles of clothing, especially those of a woollen, silken, or cotton fabric; bedding and bed-clothes; hair and various other articles; and they are thus propagated. They may retain their activity under these circumstances for long periods, in this way being the means of originating their several diseases after considerable intervals, though they tend to become weakened by lapse of time.

Persons passing between the sick and healthy are liable to carry an infectious disease to the latter. Probably domesticated animals, such as dogs and cats, may be the means of transmitting contagium from one individual to another. A contagious poison may also be conveyed by clothes sent to laundries, or sent home from an infected school; as well as by letters, cabs, and numerous other agencies. Moreover, it frequently becomes attached to furniture, or to the floor and walls of rooms, and thus an infectious disease may break out after an indefinite interval, if an apartment which has been occupied by a patient suffering from the complaint has not been properly disinfected.

Flies and other insects are believed to be the means of disseminating contagious diseases in some instances, by alighting first on diseased, and then on healthy individuals; or they may probably convey contagious poisons directly from excreta. Earthworms are said to be instrumental in carrying the contagion of splenic fever from dead to living animals.

Some contagious maladies may be communicated by all the modes just considered, others only through one or more of them.

Degrees of contagiousness of different diseases, and modifying influences.—There are marked differences with regard to the facility and certainty of the transmission of contagious diseases. Some, such as small-pox, measles, and scarlet fever, are very readily communicated; others, such as typhoid fever, are uncertain. The contagium of influenza is extremely difusible; that of typhus fever seems to be concentrated about the patient, and is much weakened or destroyed by dilution with air. Many modifying influences are also at work. The probability of a contagious disease being communicated is, as a rule, in proportion to the quantity and strength of the poison which reaches the system, but it must be remembered that in many instances a very minute dose is sufficient. The virulence of a contagium also often varies at different periods, either in the course of a particular infectious malady, or of an epidemic. The mode of application has considerable influence, inoculation being obviously the most certain. It is believed that a contagium becomes weakened by passing through several individuals.

Much probably depends on the temperament, constitution, state of health, and previous habits of the individual whom a contagium reaches, as to whether the corresponding disease will be transmitted or not. A previous attack of an infectious malady usually affords *immunity* against a second, provided it is not too slight, but not invariably, and it may appear a third time or even more frequently in exceptional instances; when a second attack does occur, it is generally of a mild character. Syphilis cannot be produced even by inoculation after this has been done a certain number of times. On the other hand, it is believed that in the case of certain infective diseases, such as erysipelas and tuberculosis, one attack actually predisposes to others of the same complaint. It is quite exceptional, but not impossible, for two infectious diseases to be present in the same person at the same time, and should such an event occur, they generally modify one another; in some instances one affection of this kind exercises a protective influence against another, either temporarily or permanently, or greatly modifies it, as is well-exemplified in the relation which exists between small-pox and vaccination. Not uncommonly a patient suffers from two or more contagious complaints in succession, and it is affirmed that the first one may predispose the individual to be affected by those which follow it. Some persons seem quite insusceptible to certain infectious disorders, without

any obvious explanation. In such cases it has been suggested that the disease has occurred during intra-uterine life.

External circumstances have a very important influence in the dissemination of contagion. Unfavourable hygienic conditions undoubtedly increase the virulence of many contagious poisons, such as those of typhus and relapsing fevers. It is believed that water intensifies the action of the contagium of typhoid fever and cholera, and some even maintain that these contagia are harmless when they first escape, and only acquire virulent properties after a certain interval. Climate and season have a considerable modifying influence, some diseases requiring a high temperature for their development, others being checked by much external heat. The direct application of great heat or extreme cold, as well as of certain chemical agents, is of the highest importance in arresting the development of, or destroying contagious poisons, as upon these effects depend in a great measure the power which we possess of checking the spread of the diseases which they originate.

Nature of contagion.—There are certain contagious affections which are evidently produced by definite parasitic plants or animals, and in each individual disease of this class, the particular animal or plant which originates it obviously constitutes its contagious element, as exemplified by scabies, different forms of tinea, and actinomycosis. With regard to the diseases usually regarded as infectious, it is assumed that in connection with each of them there is a "specific morbid agent or poison, capable of exciting and propagating this one disease and no other, and without the action of which upon the system it cannot possibly arise." This agent has been variously named a *contagium*, *virus*, or *zyme*; and its nature we have now to consider.

A contagium, especially in the case of infective forms of inflammation, may be associated with distinct morbid products, such as diphtheritic membrane or pus; but it is in reality something quite distinct from such morbid materials.

The theories as to the nature of *contagium*, which are at all worthy of consideration, may be classed as:—1. *Chemical* or *Physico-chemical*. 2. *Vital* or *Germ-theory*. Under the former, two chief views may be mentioned, namely:—(a.) That the contagium in each disease is a specific chemical compound, probably of an organic nature, and either solid, liquid, or in the form of a volatile gas. (b.) That it is albuminoid matter in a state of rapid chemical and physical change—in short, mere decomposing organic matter.

The *germ-theory*, or theory of *contagium virum*, is at the present day very generally, though not universally, accepted. According to this doctrine, it is maintained that in all contagious diseases the infective agents are living *micro-organisms* (also termed *micro-zymes* and *microbes*) or their *germs*, which are specifically distinct from each other in the several individual affections.

These organisms are generally regarded as being of a vegetable nature, belonging to the *Schizomycetæ* or *fission-fungi*. Different classifications are adopted, but it is a common practice to speak of all pathogenic organisms as *Bacteria*, which for convenience' sake are divided into certain groups, namely:—1. *Cocci* or *micrococci*, spherical or slightly oval cells, arranged as—*diplococci*, in pairs; *streptococci*, in threads or chains; *tetracocci* or *tetragena*, in fours; *sarcinae*, in cube-like masses, forming groups of eights; and *staphylococci*, in irregular masses or balls, like bunches of grapes. 2. *Bacilli*, straight, elongated, rod-shaped, or

thread-like cells (also sometimes specially called *bacteria*). 3. *Spirilla* or *spirochete*, curved, spiral, or screw-like rods or filaments. Masses of cocci or rods joined together by a gelatinous intercellular substance have been named *zooglaea*.

The main arguments upon which the *germ-doctrine* in relation to contagious diseases rests may be briefly stated as follows:—First, the foundation for this doctrine originated in a supposed analogy between ordinary fermentation and the mode of action of contagia; and it was affirmed that fermentation is invariably associated with, and dependent upon, the growth of organisms. Moreover, special kinds of fermentation are related to special organisms; thus, vinous fermentation is set up by, and is accompanied with the development of the *tornula cerevisiae*; while the *bacterium lactis* always leads to the lactic acid fermentation (Lister). Secondly, the germ-doctrine seems to explain more satisfactorily than any other the phenomena which contagious diseases present, the rapid multiplication of contagium within the body, as well as its power of retaining its vitality for long periods, and of resisting destructive influences. Thirdly, infective inflammations are found to be attended with the development of abundant micro-organisms in the affected tissues; and these organisms have been proved to be concerned in originating septicæmia. Some pathologists, however, look upon the bacteria present in the tissues which are the seat of infective inflammation, not as the cause of the morbid process, but as its products, being developed from pre-existing germs, the tissues undergoing a “bacterial degeneration.” Fourthly, the connection between certain contagious diseases and characteristic organisms now seems to have been definitely established. Indeed, in relation to certain of these complaints, their specific microbes are regarded as being of great value in diagnosis, in the hands of experts in bacteriology, either in themselves, or from their staining-reactions, their modes of cultivation and the results thus produced, or the effects of inoculation of animals with the cultures or their products.

The following are the conditions laid down by Koch as necessary to prove that a disease is caused by a special micro-organism:—1. It must be constantly found in the blood or tissues of those suffering from the disease. 2. It must be capable of growth and cultivation in some medium outside the body, and of being completely separated by successive cultivations. 3. After cultivation through several generations, the product must produce the original disease when inoculated into some animal. 4. In the blood and tissues of this animal a micro-organism precisely the same as the original one must be found.

Effects of a contagium in the body; and modes of action.—The effects of a contagium may be entirely local and superficial, as in the case of scabies; or in some instances they are at first local, but subsequently become general or constitutional, for example, diphtheria, syphilis, vaccinia, and small-pox by inoculation. As a rule, however, the primary action of the poison seems to be on the general system, and this is usually followed by local lesions.

When contagious diseases begin with obvious local effects, as in syphilis or inoculated small-pox, the lymphatic glands next above speedily become specifically affected. At or about the time that these changes are at their height, febrile symptoms appear, and soon after the characteristic eruption or other phenomena become developed. In those affections where there are no evident primary local changes, it is

generally believed that the several contagia act first upon the blood, or, as some think, upon the nervous system. The view held by some pathologists, however, is that even in these diseases the poison sets up in the first instance a specific local process at the spot or spots where it reaches the body, followed by changes in the next lymphatic glands, and then by general infection of the system. In any case the general system and the blood become affected more or less speedily.

The manner in which micro-organisms act in infective diseases, when they reach the body, and the effects they produce, were at first mere matters of conjecture or hypothesis. The observations and experimental researches of recent years, however, have thrown considerable light upon this part of the subject, but the results can only be briefly alluded to here. In the first place the organisms develop and multiply abundantly, as they find suitable media, so that the smallest quantity of a contagium introduced into the system may generate an enormous amount of the same. In one class of infective complaints, as anthrax and glanders, they are conveyed all over the body, by means of the blood-current and lymphatics. In another group, exemplified by diphtheria and tetanus, the bacillus is said to be confined to the seat of inoculation, or to the local lesions. Some observers are also of opinion that in typhoid fever and cholera the organisms are limited to the intestinal walls. A third division has been made to include those diseases, such as leprosy, in which the infective agent enters the circulation, but is only found in the formed elements of the tissues.

The phenomena of *phagocytosis* are held by Metchnikoff and his followers to be of great importance in relation to micro-organisms, and to explain their action as infective agents. They maintain that phagocytes, including the leucocytes or migratory cells, the fixed cells of connective tissue, the lining cells of the pulmonary alveoli, and other cells capable of taking in solid particles, have, as one of their highest functions, the elimination of microbes. In the normal state they are able to take into their substance these organisms, and to destroy them; but in the case of infective diseases, though they incorporate the virus, they cannot destroy it, but, on the contrary, the microbe becomes victorious, and causes destruction of the cell. In some instances it has been observed that the organisms actually develop and multiply in the interior of leucocytes, leading to their enlargement, so that they may become arrested in the lymphatic glands. Other pathologists do not consider that the action on microbes is limited to leucocytes, but affirm that in health blood-serum and other materials also exert a destructive influence upon them. In short, according to this view, all the *healthy* fluids and tissues of the living body exert an antagonistic action against, or do not serve as a suitable soil for the growth of bacteria or other micro-organisms.

Recent researches have demonstrated the important fact that certain infective agents, during their growth and development, lead to the formation of *chemical products* out of the media in which they grow, of a toxic nature, which, circulating through the body, give rise to the more prominent symptoms associated with the several diseases. Different observers have described these products as enzymes or ferments, albuminoes, organic acids, etc., and doubtless each infective agent originates its own peculiar poison. In the case of diseases in which the organisms are localized, as diphtheria and tetanus, it is supposed that their effects on the system are caused by the diffusion through the circulation of the poisonous materials there formed.

It may be noted here that the pathogenic activity of a micro-organism will depend upon its degree of vitality, its stage of development, the nature of the nutrient medium upon which it has grown, and the presence in the virus of ferment or other substances which depress the vitality of the body generally, or of the tissues locally.

At first there is no evident indication of the action of a contagium upon the system, but a *period of incubation* ensues, differing in duration in different diseases, though having tolerably defined limits in each several malady. This incubation-period is generally considered as lasting from the time of entrance of the contagium into the system until the first onset of definite symptoms; but some writers reckon it as only terminating with the development of the more characteristic symptom or symptoms of the particular disease, and divide the incubation-period into the separate stages of *latency* and *invasion*. In this work the former definition will be adhered to. The action of a contagious poison, when it originates *a fever*, is first indicated by more or less severe general symptoms of a pyrexial nature, the onset of which is usually well-marked, being characterized by rigors or other phenomena. Frequently there are significant local symptoms as well. The contagium may act so violently upon the system, and its increase may be so rapid, as to cause death at a very early period, without the production of any evident structural lesion. If this event does not happen, the local manifestations or specific lesions of the disease become developed after a certain time, which may be limited to one tissue or organ, or be observed in several parts, and these constitute its *anatomical characters*. The eruptions characteristic of many of the contagious fevers are important examples of such manifestations. The local lesions are indicated by corresponding symptoms, while they often aggravate the constitutional disturbance as well. After a certain period has elapsed the symptoms subside, and if there has been fever, defervescence follows according to one or other of the methods already described. The poison ceases to multiply, and is finally expelled altogether out of the system; but the process of elimination has also been going on during the whole course of the illness. Permanent structural changes may or may not remain.

It is important to observe that in each of the specific diseases there is a considerable regularity and uniformity, not only in the course of the stages above described, but also in their duration, and therefore in that of the entire affection from first to last, and it is necessary to become adequately acquainted with this *natural history* of the several maladies. Complications and sequelæ are, however, very liable to arise, which interfere with the natural progress of events. Great variety is also observed as regards the intensity of these complaints. In some instances they are very mild; in others they assume a typhoid or malignant type, and are extremely fatal. This difference is sometimes seen running through epidemics.

Immunity.—This is a most important subject in relation to contagious diseases, and one which has of late attracted much attention. Immunity implies that, in some way or other, the body is able to resist the invasion of one or more of these complaints. Such immunity may be *natural* or *acquired*; and the person or animal in whom it exists is said to be *protected* against the disease or diseases. Some points bearing on this matter have already been referred to, such as the effects of previous attacks; the quantity and strength of the virus; the personal condition, age, habits, and state of health; the influence of temperature, etc.; and

the antagonistic relations of different contagia. Different animals are susceptible to different contagious diseases; and while man enjoys a natural immunity to certain of them, some to which he is liable are not met with in other animals, and a few are common to man with certain of the lower animals. These facts have to some extent been proved by experimental inoculations with different forms of virus, which have demonstrated that certain animals are entirely "refractory" to particular infective diseases. Some of these complaints, however, which occur naturally in man, but not in other animals, may be produced in the latter by inoculation; and it appears that natural immunity, as thus tested, is not always absolute, but is rather a quality possessed in varying degree by different animals.

Acquired immunity is of great importance in relation to the prevention of infective diseases. Much light has also been thrown on this part of the subject by the experimental investigations of the last few years, which have led to some valuable practical results. It will be more convenient, however, to consider this matter further when dealing with the preventive treatment of contagious affections.

The explanation of the nature of immunity is at present a subject of much controversy, but it is impossible to discuss it here at any length. It is assumed to depend upon an antagonism between the tissues of the body and the several microbes, which ends in the victory of the former. The two chief views held are that there is a "vital antagonism," associated with the phenomena of phagocytosis (Metchnikoff); or that a "chemical antagonism" resides in the cultivating medium or fluids of the body, which renders them destructive to, or an unsuitable soil for, the development of the infective agents.

Treatment and Prevention of Contagious Diseases.—But little of a definite nature can be stated as to the actual treatment of contagious diseases as a whole, seeing that they differ so much in their nature and phenomena, as well as in the severity of particular cases of the same complaint. In the case of the infectious fevers, our object is to guide them through their course to a favourable termination, in accordance with the principles already laid down. The aim of modern research, however, is to find some *specific* remedy for each infective complaint, which, by acting upon its particular micro-organism, shall, even after its development in an individual, either produce an immediate curative effect, or so modify and control the course of the disease, as to materially shorten its duration, and obviate its recognized dangers, thus rendering it comparatively unimportant. In addition to the employment of antiseptic agents, by internal administration, subcutaneous injection, or in other ways, various inoculations are also used, similar to those to be mentioned later on in relation to preventive treatment, as well as antagonistic microbes, and special chemical agents. What has been done in this direction will be more conveniently discussed in relation to the several diseases which have been thus investigated, but I feel bound to say here that many of the statements made must be received with great caution, and the experience of recent years should teach us to be extremely careful in adopting any specific and unusual method of treatment, until its value has been thoroughly tested and confirmed by competent observers.

The *prevention* of contagious diseases is obviously a subject of the utmost importance, and it is highly desirable to have a general knowledge of the principles upon which preventive treatment is conducted.

and of the measures which may be called for under various circumstances. These need to be carried out more or less thoroughly, in proportion to the degree of infectiveness of a particular disease, and of its immediate danger to life, or liability to injure the system permanently. It will be convenient to discuss them under the following heads:—

A. *General Measures.*—The adoption of the measures now to be considered is intended more immediately to prevent the extension of a contagious disease from an infected patient to other individuals, but they are also most useful for his own personal well-being. The preventive treatment in relation to persons who deliberately put themselves in the way of contracting such diseases as gonorrhœa or syphilis does not fall within the province of this work; while that of peculiar complaints, as anthrax or glanders, will be more conveniently referred to when dealing with them individually. The following instructions, therefore, apply more particularly to the infectious complaints which occur in ordinary medical practice.

1. *Separation* of patients from other individuals is necessary in most diseases of this class, so far as this is practicable, and in many cases almost complete *isolation* is demanded. Under any circumstances anything like crowding must be avoided; and only those persons who have any business in the sick-room should be admitted. They should wear clothes to which a contagium cannot easily adhere; and go as little as possible into the midst of healthy people. Medical men ought to take adequate precautions against conveying any contagious affection by means of their clothing, the thermometer, or in other ways. Care must also be taken that dogs or cats do not carry infection. The telephone is likely to prove useful for communication between isolated patients and persons at a distance. 2. Proper *ventilation* is essential, and this is best carried out by placing the patient in a large room, and opening the windows more or less according to the weather, by night as well as by day, care being taken of course to protect against draughts. A good fire in the room materially assists ventilation. In summer a lamp placed in the grate may answer the same purpose, creating a draught up the chimney, while not giving out much heat. 3. All excessive curtains, bedclothes, carpets, and other objects which might act as *fomites*, ought to be removed at the outset. In this way ventilation is also promoted. 4. *Cleanliness* must be thoroughly attended to, as regards the patient, bedding, clothing, bedroom, etc. 5. Those who are obliged to come close to the patient should avoid, as far as possible, inhaling the breath or exhalations, and should not swallow their saliva immediately afterwards; indeed it may be desirable to make a rule of always cleansing the mouth and nostrils with some disinfectant solution. In certain diseases, such as scarlatina or diphtheria, the close contact entailed by such an act as kissing must be absolutely forbidden. Medical men should also, in dealing with such cases, especially when operating for diphtheria, protect the mouth and nose by cotton-wool or some such covering. 6. One of the most important matters to attend to is the *disinfection* or *complete destruction* of everything which is capable of conveying contagion. In the first place all *exhalations* and *discharges* should be *at once disinfected*. Anything coming off from the skin is best destroyed by frequent sponging with some suitable disinfectant, such as a weak solution of Condy's fluid or carbolic acid, or by applying carbolic oil. The air of the room should also be judiciously impregnated with some volatile material of

this nature, such as chlorine (from chlorinated lime), carbolic acid, or sulphurous acid. It may further be advisable to place across the doorway a sheet moistened with dilute carbolic acid, Burnett's fluid, Condy's fluid, or chloralum. Secretions or discharges from the nose, mouth, throat, or other part ought to be removed by means of rags moistened with some disinfectant, these being afterwards immediately burnt. Excretions *should be received into utensils containing some disinfectant*, and thoroughly mixed with this before being removed from the room. This is especially needful in the case of those diseases which are known to be propagated chiefly by the stools, namely, cholera and typhoid fever, and if possible a separate water-closet should be used for the reception of the excreta in these affections, which should be frequently flushed with some disinfecting fluid. The best disinfectants for this purpose are carbolic acid and carbolic powder, chloride or sulphate of zinc, chlorinated lime, or chloralum. All dirty clothing, bed-clothes, handkerchiefs, etc., must be put at once into vessels containing some disinfecting fluid, especially Condy's or chloride of lime, before being taken out of the room for the purpose of being washed. The clothes worn immediately before his illness by a person suffering from a contagious disease ought also to be disinfected. The floor, doors, windows, and other wood-work should be frequently washed with some disinfectant. 7. *Food*, such as beef-tea or milk, should not be allowed to remain for any length of time in the sick-room, and should never be taken by any one who is not habitually in the apartment. Milk should be boiled before administration. All water used for drinking-purposes should also be boiled and filtered. 8. After the patient has become convalescent, the apartment should be thoroughly *cleansed and disinfected* in every corner, and then white-washed, or re-papered and painted. The disinfection can be efficiently done by burning sulphur, or by means of chlorine gas. Bedding and bed-clothes are disinfected by special apparatus, in which powerful dry heat or superheated steam is used.

It must be understood that the instructions just given are only intended to be of a general nature, and for details reference must be made to special works on this subject.

b. *Preventive Inoculations*.—The employment of vaccination as a protection against small-pox is familiar to all, and there can be no doubt of its efficacy when properly carried out. Under special circumstances it was formerly deemed permissible to inoculate small-pox itself, on the supposition that a milder form of the disease was thus produced. During late years, however, the subject of preventive inoculation has advanced rapidly, and important experimental researches have for some time been carried on, with the object of discovering agents which, when introduced by inoculation into the system, will confer immunity upon the individual against particular infective diseases. They generally act by producing the disease in a mild form, but sufficiently pronounced to afford protection against a subsequent attack. This principle has been applied in practice, not only to protect against certain complaints of a contagious nature, but also to obviate the more serious effects of a virus which has already gained access into the body, as in the case of hydrophobia. Only the general principles can be alluded to here, and a few of the more prominent illustrations mentioned, but further details will be given in relation to particular diseases.

The materials used for protective inoculations, now known as "vaccines," include—1. The *attenuated virus* of a disease. Pasteur's researches

in relation to anthrax, fowl-cholera, and hydrophobia have led, as is well-known, to remarkable results, as showing the immense value of the attenuated virus of these diseases. Experiments have also been made which seem to show that, under certain conditions, the bacilli of tetanus, diphtheria, and cholera may be similarly attenuated.

2. *Chemical products of the virus.* Attempts have been made to obtain protective inoculations of this kind against anthrax, tetanus, cholera, and other diseases, but the results are doubtful.

3. *Chemical agents not derived from micro-organisms.* In this group come substances named "defensive proteids," which are obtained from the fluids or tissues of the body, each of which is supposed to be a vaccine against a particular infective disease. It has been attempted to prove experimentally, that the spleen and blood of an animal which presents a natural immunity to a disease will yield a chemical substance which acts as a vaccine against such disease. It may be affirmed, however, that but little of a reliable nature is known on this part of the subject at present, and agents of this kind cannot be employed for any practical purposes. Another class of chemical substances to be mentioned here are certain antiseptics, which have been recommended, both by internal administration and by subcutaneous injection, as preventives against particular infective complaints.

II. EPIDEMICS.

Diseases are divided into three classes, according to the mode in which they are disseminated amongst the population, namely:—1. *Sporadic*, or those which occur in an isolated and scattered manner, and do not attack large numbers of people at the same time, e.g., bronchitis.

2. *Endemic*, or those which are peculiar to certain districts, or which are constantly prevalent in these districts to a greater or less extent, e.g., ague and goitre.

3. *Epidemic*, or those which attack numbers of people, and spread more or less rapidly amongst them, often causing great destruction of life, this event occurring at irregular intervals, and lasting a variable time, but being of limited duration, e.g., cholera, enteric fever, small-pox, or influenza.

These three classes, however, are not essentially distinct. Sporadic cases of epidemic diseases are common enough, and these are frequently endemic in a district; for instance, typhus fever often prevails in the filthy quarters of large towns; while yellow fever, plague, and other endemic affections may become epidemic.

Attention will now be directed to the subject of *epidemics*. An epidemic may be distinctly traceable to the direct influence of infection, aided frequently by unfavourable hygienic conditions; to the use of drinking-water from tainted wells; to a particular milk-supply; or to some other obvious cause, such as famine in the case of typhus fever. In many instances, however, its origin cannot be thus definitely fixed. Moreover, certain diseases may prevail as epidemics, the infectious nature of which is disputed. Various theories have been suggested to explain the occurrence of epidemics under these circumstances. They have been attributed to an *epidemic influence* or *constitution*, which has been supposed to reside in the atmosphere, and to depend upon a variety of hypothetical causes. It is highly probable that certain conditions affecting the vitality and development of contagious germs account for the occurrence of not a few epidemics.

When an epidemic of a contagious disease arises as the result of evident anti-hygienic conditions, or from some other obvious cause, it is believed either that the specific poison is increased in quantity or rendered more virulent; or that the constitution of individuals becomes so altered as to render them more amenable to its influence, and less able to resist it.

The chief facts which have been observed in relation to epidemics may be stated as follows :—1. Epidemic influence chiefly affects diseases which are infectious, rendering them more prevalent and more dangerous: or those which have a malarial origin. As a rule, only one of these complaints is epidemic at the same time, but sometimes there seems to be a tendency to the prevalence of two or more of the acute specific diseases simultaneously. Occasionally other maladies assume an epidemic character; and now and then an entirely new disease makes its appearance in this way. Sometimes it is only the type of ordinary diseases which is influenced: or there is a tendency to the implication of special organs. 2. The prevalent epidemic affects more or less the characters of other diseases. This is well illustrated in the case of cholera and influenza, choleraic diarrhoea being very common during the existence of the former, catarrhal affections during the prevalence of the latter. 3. The extent of an epidemic varies within wide limits. If it is very large, the disease usually attacks different places in succession, becoming milder in one region as it invades another. It may be confined to a limited district, being then usually traceable to some evident local cause. Amongst the diseases which often occur in extensive epidemics may be mentioned influenza, measles, scarlatina, and small-pox. Typhus and relapsing fever are limited as epidemics to districts where certain anti-hygienic conditions, combined with poverty, exist; cholera, typhoid fever, and diphtheria often occur in irregularly scattered local outbreaks. 4. The progress of an epidemic is also subject to variations. Often it advances steadily onward in a definite direction, and in this way may make the circuit of the globe. It may advance very rapidly, or exceedingly slowly and gradually. Sometimes an epidemic seems to leave a place and then return, as if falling back upon itself: or it passes over particular regions without affecting them; or goes out of its course in a lateral direction, attacking parts not in the line of progress. Epidemics are not under the influence of winds, as they frequently advance in a course directly contrary to these. 5. The mode of invasion of an epidemic disease may be sudden, but is usually more or less gradual. It also generally gives warning of its approach by the occurrence of cases presenting some of its symptoms in a mild form; thus, an epidemic of cholera is generally preceded by cases of diarrhoea, or a few sporadic cases may occur. 6. The intensity of an epidemic is subject to much variety, the disease being in some instances exceedingly fatal, in others comparatively mild. It is most virulent as a rule at the early period, judged by its characters and fatality. This is partly explained by the fact that probably those are first attacked who are most predisposed. 7. The mode of disappearance is generally gradual also, cases becoming by degrees less severe and fewer in number; but it may be rapid, either from some evident cause or without any apparent reason. 8. The duration of an epidemic is very uncertain. It may persist, with intermissions, for several years, as in the case of cholera and influenza. 9. Cycles of epidemics are frequently observed, one disease being after a certain time followed by another, and this by a third, and so on. The theory

has been advanced that there is what is termed a *pandemic wave*, under the influence of which a series of oscillations of febrile diseases occur, these following each other regularly over the globe. 10. It is most important to notice that epidemics are greatly under human control, and can be prevented or made much less severe by attention to proper hygienic and other measures, which will be presently considered. With the advance of civilization several epidemic, as well as endemic diseases have been entirely eradicated from countries and districts where formerly they were exceedingly rife; and, by the aid of well-directed efforts, there is no reason why many others should not be similarly controlled, or, at any rate, greatly mitigated. 11. Epidemic influences seem to affect other animals at the same time as human beings; and it is not at all improbable that this is also true with regard to plants.

General Management.—It may be useful to sum up the chief practical points to be attended to when an epidemic invades or threatens a district, under which circumstances special precautions and measures are often required.

1. *Cleanliness* must be strictly observed in every particular. Frequent washing and white-washing of premises is desirable. 2. All *overcrowding* must be prevented, and *free ventilation* insisted upon. It is particularly necessary to look to these matters among the poor, and in common lodging-houses or crowded alleys. 3. Persons who are likely to spread infection *must not mingle with others* in places of public resort. 4. Special attention must be paid to all *decomposing organic matter*, especially *house-refuse*. Everything of this description should, if possible, be burnt in the grate, or at once removed, having been previously disinfected; or if it cannot be got rid of, abundance of disinfecting material must be mixed with it. House-drains and sinks, street-drains and sewers, water-closets, cesspools, privies, ditches, etc., require careful and frequent examination, so that they may be kept in order. The earth in the neighbourhood of dwelling-houses is also often saturated with organic matters, and demands attention. During the removal of house-refuse it is well for the inhabitants to keep away as much as possible. 5. *Disinfectants* should be freely employed in and around houses, especially where there is much filth. 6. It is most important to look to the source of the *water-supply*, particularly that which is used for drinking purposes, and to see that no organic matter finds its way into it from sewers, drains, cesspools, polluted ground, etc. The waste-pipe of cisterns and baths often opens into drains, and, owing to an imperfect state of the traps, organic matters or poisonous gases become mixed with the water, or may pass through the waste-pipe of the bath into the bath-room. This matter must be especially attended to during an epidemic of typhoid fever or cholera. On no account should water be taken which obviously contains organic matter, and it ought always to be boiled and filtered. 7. It may be advisable to *remove healthy persons* to some place where they would be free from the danger of infection. 8. If there is any known *preventive* of an epidemic disease, this must be at once resorted to, and fully carried out. Thus vaccination or re-vaccination should be thoroughly enforced during an epidemic of small-pox, in the case of all unprotected persons. 9. It may be requisite to carry out the practice of *quarantine*, but this should be done in accordance with rational principles and common sense. 10. It is important that the *general health* of the community should be maintained by every possible means; and all causes which tend to lower the-

system, such as intemperance or bad living, should be avoided. It is particularly necessary for those who attend upon the sick to take every precaution for the preservation of their health. They should live well, but temperately, and should never go with an empty stomach near the sick person. They require daily exercise in the open air, at the same time avoiding fatigue. They also need sufficient sleep; and must pay strict attention to personal cleanliness. 11. Any person who presents the *slightest symptoms* of the disease which is epidemic ought, *without delay*, to be brought under medical treatment. 12. On no account should an individual suffering from an epidemic disease of an infectious character be *brought into the midst of healthy persons, or into an unaffected district*, if this can possibly be avoided. The conveying of infected persons by *vehicles used by the public* is a serious misdemeanour, which the law now takes cognizance of and punishes. Special conveyances or ambulances are provided, should it be necessary to remove such persons to a hospital. 13. It will be sufficient to mention as a preventive measure "notification of infectious diseases," by the medical attendant and others, which is now made compulsory in relation to certain of these complaints, with the view of checking their spread. How far this method of procedure will contribute to such a desirable result cannot at present be adequately determined, but if carried out in an efficient, and at the same time in a rational manner, it ought to be productive of much good in various ways.

SECTION II.

THE remainder of this work is devoted to the consideration of individual diseases. As regards their NOMENCLATURE and CLASSIFICATION the arrangement adopted in the following chapters is mainly in accordance with that recognized by the Royal College of Physicians of London, most of the complaints being described as they come under one or other of the groups mentioned below, though it will be expedient to deviate from this arrangement in some instances.

I. GENERAL DISEASES.—These affect more or less the entire system, and although local morbid conditions are often present, as a rule they arise secondarily, as the necessary or accidental consequence of the general disorder, or they are not in proportion to such disorder. Under this class are included :—

(A.) The various **Acute Fevers**, and certain other **Specific Diseases**, each of which is due to the action of a peculiar morbid agent introduced from without. *E.g.* Scarletina, small-pox, ague, whooping-cough, diphtheria, hydrophobia, syphilis, tuberculosis.

(B.) **Constitutional Diseases**.—These maladies are dependent upon some unhealthy condition of the blood or general system, or a so-called *cachexia* or *diathesis*, which, however, is usually revealed by local lesions, often developed in several parts of the body at the same time or in succession. Some of them originate from the action of a definite morbid poison, most commonly generated within the system, or handed down by hereditary transmission. *E.g.* Rheumatism, gout, rickets, scurvy, cancer.

II. LOCAL DISEASES.—This group comprises the various affections to which the several organs and tissues of the body are liable. It will be convenient to describe under this heading not only primary local disorders, but also certain complaints which are more strictly of a general character, but which present special local manifestations.

I. GENERAL DISEASES.

CHAPTER I.

SIMPLE CONTINUED FEVER.—FEBRICULA.— CATARRHAL FEVER.

A CONSIDERABLE number of cases come under observation in ordinary practice, which present the usual symptoms of *fever*, but which cannot be referred to any of the contagious group, nor can the symptoms be traced to any adequate local cause. These may be classed as *simple fever* or *febricula*. The condition may be associated with catarrh of mucous surfaces—*catarrhal fever*. Besides these, anomalous forms are not uncommonly met with, to which various names have been applied.

Etiology.—Simple febricula does not seem to be contagious, or to depend upon any specific poison as a rule. It may result from cold or chilling of the body; excessive heat, such as prolonged exposure to the sun; over-eating or drinking; or great fatigue. In many instances no distinct cause can be made out. Probably some cases of so-called febricula result from the action of one of the contagious poisons, modified by the constitutional condition of the individual, or by the quantity entering the system being very minute. I have known a severe epidemic of typhoid fever to be preceded by cases which would be classed as mere febricula.

Symptoms.—Febricula is characterized by the ordinary signs of *fever*, in their most typical and simple form, but of variable intensity. The *invasion* is indicated either by chilliness or slight rigors, with general pains, lassitude, and headache. Afterwards the skin becomes hot and dry; and the pulse frequent and full. Severe headache is usually complained of; the face is flushed; while the patient is restless, and sometimes a little delirious at night. There is thirst, with a furred tongue, loss of appetite, and constipation. The urine presents febrile characters. In catarrhal fever symptoms are present indicating implication of the mucous membranes, but these are not sufficient to account for the pyrexia. Roseolar or erythematous eruptions have been observed in some instances, and in others certain bluish spots on the skin have been described.

The *temperature* rapidly ascends, usually to a moderate height, but it may reach 102° , 103° , or even 104° in a few hours. This high temperature, however, if it occurs, only lasts for a short time usually, often but a few hours, or at most one or two days, and then it falls rapidly.

Duration and Termination.—The *duration* of cases belonging to this group is generally about three or four days, but a week or ten days may elapse before convalescence is completely established. Defervescence usually takes place by *crisis*, the temperature falling to the normal in from 24 to 36 hours, there being also a copious discharge of urine, with abundant deposit of lithates; free perspiration; and sometimes diarrhoea or epistaxis. Occasionally defervescence takes place by *lysis*, convalescence being consequently delayed. The *termination* is always in recovery.

Diagnosis.—A case in which a sharp febrile attack occurs, unattended with phenomena characteristic of either of the acute specific fevers, and not dependent upon any discoverable local lesion, may be looked upon as one of febricula; or if there be catarrhal symptoms, it may be called catarrhal fever. The rapid rise of temperature is important, especially in distinguishing this complaint from typhoid fever. At the outset of course it is often impossible to say what may be the nature of any particular case; and probably many cases of so-called febricula are really examples of pyrexia associated with some local morbid condition which has not been detected. Catarrhal cases border very closely on those of a form of mild influenza. The course of events will usually very soon clear up any difficulty in diagnosis.

Treatment.—All that is required usually is to keep the patient in bed; to give a diet of milk and beef-tea, with cooling drinks; to open the bowels freely; and to administer a simple saline mixture. Catarrhal or other symptoms must be treated, when present. If there is much heat of skin, tepid sponging is very useful. During convalescence quinine should be given.

WEIL'S DISEASE.—ACUTE FEBRILE ICTERUS.—It will be convenient to notice here a febrile complaint described by Weil in 1886, as occurring in hot seasons, chiefly in males in the prime of life, and especially amongst butchers, and supposed to be infectious. It comes on suddenly, often with a chill; and is characterized by pyrexia, headache, gastric disturbance, jaundice, and muscular pains, especially in the calves of the legs. The pulse is rapid at first, but afterwards becomes less frequent than normal. The spleen and liver are usually enlarged, and there is hepatic tenderness. Herpes and erythema are occasionally observed; and nephritis often occurs. The fever lasts about eight or ten days, but a relapse may take place.

CHAPTER II.

TYPHUS FEVER.—EXANTHEMATIC TYPHUS.—SPOTTED FEVER.

Aetiology.—Typhus fever is generated by a *specific poison*, and is highly contagious, occurring chiefly in epidemics. The nature of the contagium has not been determined, but actively motile dumb-bell micrococci undergoing division have been described in the blood by Mott and Blore, and plugs of these organisms in the lymphatics of the heart. Hlava also found a strepto-bacillus. A specific bacillus has more recently been described. The contagium is principally given off in the exhalations from the skin and lungs, being afterwards inhaled or swallowed. Infection is far more likely to happen in the case of those who are brought into close contact with the sick, and hence nurses and medical men are very liable to be attacked. If there are a number of cases congregated together, however, so that the poison is concentrated, a very short, even a momentary exposure may originate the disease. The contagium does not seem to be conveyed to any great distance, and is much weakened by dilution with air. In well-ventilated private houses typhus fever rarely spreads, and it never extends from

hospitals to adjacent streets. It is more likely to pass from a low storey to a higher one than in the contrary direction. Fomites, such as clothing, bedding, furniture, or the walls of rooms, may retain the contagion for some time if not properly disinfected, and may thus subsequently originate the disease in the same place, or be the means of conveying it to other districts. Woollen and dark-coloured materials are said to take up the poison most readily. Typhus fever is probably infectious from the end of the first week until convalescence is fully established, but the greatest danger is supposed to be during the second week. A second attack is an exceedingly rare event.

The opinion is strongly held by some eminent authorities that typhus fever may be developed *de novo*, in consequence of great overcrowding and destitution; the general opinion is, however, that these conditions only encourage the development, and increase the virulence of disease-germs already existing.

Predisposing causes.—There are certain circumstances which either greatly intensify the action of the typhus contagium, or render individuals more liable to be attacked. These are:—1. A low physical condition, induced by intemperance and bad feeding, or by chronic disease. 2. Overcrowding and deficient ventilation, especially overcrowding of dwelling-houses, or of individuals in the same house or room, along with imperfect ventilation. 3. Want of cleanliness, domestic and personal. 4. Mental depression, from overwork or anxiety, or fear of contagion. 5. A temperature not too high. In consequence of the action of these causes, typhus fever is most prevalent amongst the poor; in the crowded parts of large towns, especially where the sanitary arrangements are inefficiently carried out; in low-lying districts; in crowded camps or dwelling-houses, such as the lower class of lodgings; in cold or temperate climates; and during the colder seasons. Epidemics are also very apt to arise during periods of destitution and famine, but it is maintained by some that the real factor is the overcrowding which attends destitution, and not the destitution itself (Collie). According to the conditions under which it occurs, typhus has received various names, as *jail-fever*, *camp-fever*, *ship-fever*, *hospital-fever*. The disease seems to be much more rife in Great Britain and Ireland than in other countries, and is stated not to occur within the tropics. Mental causes appear chiefly to affect persons belonging to the better grades of society. Something may probably be attributed to individual susceptibility, certain persons being more prone to be attacked than others. With regard to age, it is generally supposed that typhus attacks adults more than children, but "when inquiry as to age is made to include every case of attack, children and adults are found to be quite equally susceptible" (Buchanan).

Anatomical Characters.—There are no characteristic anatomical lesions in typhus fever. The blood is much altered in fatal cases. It either remains fluid or forms very soft clots, and tends to decompose rapidly. The colouring matter transudes, tinging more or less the various tissues, and the fluid contained in serous cavities. The body does not usually present much emaciation, but decomposes rapidly. The skin-eruption is frequently persistent after death.

The voluntary muscles are of a dark colour and softened. Their fibres often exhibit vitreous degeneration under the microscope, as described by Zenker in typhoid fever. Sometimes they are the seat of haemorrhages. Similar softening with fatty or granular degeneration is

observed to a marked degree in the heart. It is believed that the same change occurs in connection with the involuntary muscular tissue generally.

There is nothing characteristic in the brain. There may be some congestion and excess of serum, and occasionally slight arachnoid haemorrhage has been observed. A peculiar lesion has been described in the cervical sympathetic, the ganglia of which are said to be somewhat enlarged by a granular amorphous deposit. This, which extends more or less to all the cervical ganglia, is best seen in cases dying during the second week; when death occurs later, it is much less noticeable, or may be wanting altogether (Beveridge).

All the organs are commonly hyperæmic, softened, friable, and enlarged, especially the liver and spleen; the latter may be quite pulpy, but does not reach a very great size. In the liver and kidneys cloudy swelling and parenchymatous degeneration occur. The salivary glands are not uncommonly inflamed, and may be the seat of suppuration or gangrene.

In the alimentary canal the appearances which may be met with are redness and softening of the gastric mucous membrane; congestion or inflammation of that lining the intestines, especially the colon; and enlargement of the glands, which is particularly noticed in children.

There may be various lesions of the nature of *complications*. Bronchitis is very commonly observed, as well as hypostatic congestion of the lungs, which may end in hypostatic pneumonia. Sometimes ordinary acute pneumonia is present, or pleurisy more rarely. Acute nephritis is occasionally met with.

Symptoms.—1. *Incubation-stage.*—The usual period of incubation in typhus fever is from two to twelve days, but it may extend to a fortnight. During this time there may be such symptoms as chilliness, general pains and malaise, restlessness, headache, and loss of appetite, but these may be entirely absent, and are not at all significant.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—The invasion of typhus fever may be singularly sudden, as I know from personal experience, and it is usually tolerably marked, but may be more or less indefinite. The disease begins either with a series of slight or moderate rigors, or with one severe and prolonged fit of shivering, followed by pyrexial symptoms. The rigors often recur for two or three days. There is from the first a marked sense of depression and exhaustion, and the patient speedily takes to his bed as a rule, presenting an aspect of weariness and heaviness, or even of considerable prostration. General muscular pains are complained of, and the limbs tremble on movement. Nervous symptoms soon become prominent. These are dull frontal headache, often severe, with a feeling of heaviness in the head and throbbing; giddiness; more or less dulness of hearing, with noises in the ears; flashes of light and photophobia; sometimes an unpleasant smell; restlessness and disturbed unrefreshing sleep, though the patient is at the same time often very drowsy. The mind speedily begins to wander, and becomes confused as to time, place, and surrounding circumstances and individuals, distinct delirium setting in from the fourth to the eighth day, which, however, is not constant at first, while the patient can be roused to answer questions. The delirium is most frequently of a dull and muttering character, but may be extremely active and exciting at the outset, the patient being sometimes very violent. The expression is heavy and indifferent; the eyes are injected and suffused; and a more or less dusky flush covers the cheeks, the complexion having a dingy and dirty appearance.

Nausea and vomiting are sometimes present, and may be distressing symptoms. The tongue is at first covered with a thick white fur, but tends to become speedily dry and brown; it is often tremulous. There is much thirst, with total anorexia, and a disagreeable slimy taste in the mouth. The bowels are generally confined, but diarrhoea is not very uncommon, the stools, however, presenting no peculiar characters, and being usually dark. A slight degree of enlargement of the spleen can often be detected.

The skin feels hot and pungent. The pulse becomes frequent, rising steadily to 100 or more, and being often large and full, but very compressible, arterial tension being low; it may be small and weak, or dicrotic under the finger. The urine is markedly febrile, being high-coloured and scanty.

Commonly there are signs of more or less catarrh of the nasal and respiratory mucous membranes, accompanied with cough and expectoration, and some dry rhonchi may be heard over the chest.

3. *Eruption-stage*.—Two forms of eruption are usually described in typhus fever, namely:—(a) *subcuticular mottling*; and (b) distinct *maculae* or *mulberry spots*. Usually both are present in variable proportions, but the mottling is not unfrequently observed without the spots, though the latter very rarely appear without the former. Children often do not exhibit any rash, and when present the mottling is most marked. The eruption usually appears on the 4th or 5th day, but may come out at any time from the 3rd to the 7th or 8th day. It is generally seen first in the subelavicular regions, on the back of the wrists and hands, along the borders of the axillæ, and over the epigastrium; it then spreads rapidly over the trunk and limbs, but is rarely seen on the face and neck. *The rash is all out within one, two, or three days, no fresh spots appearing after this time, while each spot is perceptible until the entire rash disappears.* The amount of eruption varies considerably, but the maculæ are frequently very numerous, and may cover the skin almost completely.

Characters and Course. a. *Macule or Mulberry Rash*.—A number of distinct spots are first observed, varying in size from mere points to two or three lines in diameter, the larger being formed by the union of smaller ones. They are irregularly roundish, the larger spots being the more irregular, and their margin is ill-defined. They are quite superficial, and at first are often slightly raised, but this elevation subsides in a day or two. The colour is described as resembling the stains of mulberry juice, being as a rule at the outset of a brightish or pinkish-red or rose-coloured. It is deeper at the centre than at the margin, and completely disappears under pressure, returning again when the pressure is removed. In a few days the hue deepens, and may become purple or dark crimson or livid, especially towards the centre of the spots, which at the same time become more defined at their edge. This is especially observed over the back and other dependent parts. Pressure only diminishes the colour after three or four days, a light-yellow stain being left, and finally it does not affect it at all, the spots being in fact converted into true petechiae, of an uniform hue. The eruption, viewed as a whole, has not an equal depth of colour.

Dr. Alexander Collie* writes with regard to the eruption of typhus:—“This is perfectly distinctive to the practised eye, but very difficult to describe correctly. It consists of three parts—(a) rose-coloured spots,

* “On Fevers,” p. 108.

which disappear on pressure; (b) dark red spots, which are modified by pressure; and (c) petechiae, upon which pressure produces no effect, and which persist after death." He further insists that the typhus eruption is not a petechial eruption, although petechiae occur in the severer cases; that in the milder cases the spots will disappear on pressure all through the attack, and in the severer forms in the earlier stages; and that a diagnosis can hardly be made from the eruption until about the seventh day.

b. *Subcuticular Mottling*.—This is most marked in dependent parts, and is described by Sir George Buchanan as "a faint, irregular, dusky red, fine mottling, as if below the surface of the skin some little distance, and seen through a semi-opaque medium."

The duration of the rash of typhus fever varies. It usually subsides from the 14th to the 21st day. The mottling disappears more readily and sooner than the spots, and the latter remain longer if they become petechial. No desquamation follows the disappearance of the eruption.

The skin of dependent parts is more or less congested in severe cases, especially that of the back. Miliary vesicles or sudamina may appear about the end of the second week, usually over the groins, subclavicular regions, or epigastrium. A peculiar unpleasant odour is given off from the skin of persons suffering from typhus.

During the eruption-stage most of the symptoms previously existing become worse, and the general tendency is in the direction of the "typhoid state," though cases differ much in severity. The headache usually subsides on or before the 10th day, and if it should continue along with marked delirium, this is a sign of danger, indicating some cerebral complication. Weakness and prostration become very marked, and in bad cases the patient lies helplessly on his back, with the eyes closed or half-closed, in a state of muttering delirium, from which it is difficult, and may be impossible, to rouse him. Somnolence often sets in, which may culminate in complete stupor and coma. Muscular twitchings (*subsultus tendinum*) and trembling, rigidity, picking at the bed-clothes, and floccitation are frequently observed, and occasionally convulsions with strabismus. Sometimes coma-vigil is noticed, the patient lying with the eyes wide open, apparently awake, but staring vacantly into space. The complexion becomes muddy-looking, and a more dusky flush covers the face, which may be almost livid. The conjunctivæ are extremely injected and suffused, the pupils being often contracted. In bad cases the extremities become cold and clammy. The tongue is dry, brown, and cracked, or frequently even covered with a thick blackish crust, and immovable; its surface is red and tends to bleed; while sores cover the lips and teeth. Patients suffering from typhus fever usually drink with avidity, but deglutition may be difficult. The nostrils are often stuffed up. Tympanites is sometimes a prominent symptom. The pulse rises to 120, 140, 150, or more, but remains stationary after reaching a certain point; it becomes small and weak, and may be irregular. The heart's impulse and sounds are feeble, especially the systolic sound; and capillary stasis is very liable to arise. Respiration is much hurried and disturbed, being also frequently unduly abdominal. The breath has a peculiar and most unpleasant odour. Physical examination of the chest reveals bronchitic râles, or the signs of more serious complications. Incessant hiccup is sometimes a distressing symptom.

The urine is not uncommonly albuminous, or contains a little sugar; it may be retained or passed involuntarily along with the stools. Bed-

sores are very liable to be produced over parts which are pressed upon.

When typhus fever advances to a fatal termination prostration becomes more and more complete, the heart's force is exhausted, and the nerve-centres become more and more affected. Before death the temperature may rise or fall rapidly, and in some instances the pulse suddenly falls. Complications frequently hasten the fatal result.

4. Stage of Defervescence.—This sets in in cases of recovery from the 13th to the 17th day, generally at the end of the second week. There is a remarkable and sudden *crisis*, which often occurs at night, the patient falling into a deep sleep, lasting for many hours, on awaking from which a wonderful improvement is observed in his aspect and in the symptoms generally. The temperature falls considerably, as well as the pulse, which gains in strength. The skin is soft and perspiring, the eruption less marked, and the complexion clearer. The tongue becomes moist, and cleans from the edges, either in patches or molecularly, and some inclination for food may be felt. Delirium ceases, the patient recognizes those around, but the mind is still confused, and entirely unconscious of all recent events. There is a sense of extreme weakness, and the limbs feel as if they did not belong to the body. Unless complications or sequelæ impede the favourable progress, convalescence begins at once, and the strength is regained comparatively rapidly, but some time elapses before it is completely restored. The tongue soon cleans, and the appetite becomes perfectly ravenous; only those who have experienced the feeling can realize the extreme sense of hunger which is felt. Much sleep is indulged in, and the mind does not regain its normal vigour for some time. A relapse of typhus is extremely rare.

Temperature.—Different observers have described different ranges of temperature in typhus fever, and this appears to depend partly upon the type of the epidemic. The *ascent* is steady and continuous up to the 4th or 5th evening, without any morning remission. The maximum temperature is rarely under $104^{\circ}9$ to 105° , often temporarily reaching 107° , or even above this. It may rise to 105° on the 3rd or 4th evening in severe cases; in slighter cases it may not be above 103° . A slight morning remission is observed on the 6th morning, and a well-marked fall occurs on the 7th day, unless the case is very severe. After this a rise takes place again, but rarely to the former maximum. The temperature is *continuous* up to the *period of defervescence*, with a distinct but not considerable morning remission. This is more marked in cases where the temperature is high, and may average from 106° to 107° . Defervescence is very rapid and sudden, setting in from the 13th to the 17th day, and the temperature may fall to or below the normal in from 12 to 48 hours. This event is often preceded by a rise above the temperature of the previous day. Occasionally after the sudden fall there is a rise of 2° or 3° , and then defervescence extends over some days; in short, a combination of *crisis* and *lysis* is observed. In fatal cases there is frequently a rapid elevation or sinking of temperature, and it may reach 108° or 109° on the one hand, or 95° on the other. There is no definite relation between the pulse and temperature in typhus fever. The pulse often remains frequent, 90 to 100 for some days after the crisis.

Varieties.—Cases of typhus fever present considerable differences as regards their intensity and prominent symptoms, to which special

names have been applied. Collie classifies them under three forms, according to their severity, namely :—(a) Typhus simplex ; (b) Typhus gravior ; (c) Typhus gravissimus. They also vary according as the nervous, circulatory, or respiratory system is most implicated. In some epidemics there has been a great tendency to gangrene, hence named *putrid fever*. Typhus fever may kill in a few days, by the direct action of its poison upon the system, before the development of any local lesions.

Complications and Sequelæ.—Complications should always be watched for and guarded against in cases of typhus fever, as they may arise without any evident symptoms. The most important complications or sequelæ are :—1. Affections of the respiratory organs, namely, bronchitis; pulmonary hypostatic congestion or consolidation; pneumonia; gangrene of the lung (very rare); pleurisy; phthisis as a sequela; laryngitis with oedema glottidis. 2. Affections of the circulatory organs and blood, including cardiac softening and degeneration; thrombosis of the femoral or iliac vein and its consequences; scurvy. 3. Peritonitis extremely rarely. 4. Partial paralysis, which is usually soon recovered from. 5. Dysentery in some epidemics. 6. Gangrene of the toes, nose, pudenda, or other parts, especially during the winter; cancrum oris or noma in children. 7. Erysipelatous affections of the skin, throat, or deep tissues ending in suppuration. 8. Suppurative inflammation or bubos of the parotid, submaxillary, or sublingual glands, beginning in the cellular tissue around. 9. Inflammation and abscesses in various parts of the body. 10. Suppurative inflammation in joints. 11. Acute nephritis rarely, which may cause uræmic convulsions, or terminate in chronic renal disease. 12. Meningitis occasionally or mania during convalescence.

Terminations and Duration.—Most cases of typhus fever end in recovery. The mortality varies in different epidemics, but the average number of deaths is stated to be about 1 in 5; under 20 years of age it is only about 6 per cent. The average duration is about 14 days, but it may extend to 21 days; if beyond this, the prolonged course is due to complications. On the other hand, the disease may run a much shorter course. Death may result either from coma or cardiac failure, or, most commonly, from both causes combined; or it may be due to complications, especially pulmonary congestion or pneumonia.

Diagnosis.—Typhus fever is, as a rule, diagnosed without much difficulty, especially when the disease is epidemic, or if an individual has been exposed to infection. Its well-marked or sudden onset, with prominent symptoms; rapid and continuous rise of temperature; evident depression and prostration; the aspect of the patient; pronounced nervous symptoms; and tendency to the typhoid state, are generally very characteristic. The eruption will make matters clear if there is any doubt. The acute exanthemata from which it has more particularly to be distinguished are typhoid fever; relapsing fever; haemorrhagic small-pox; erysipelas; and measles at the very early stage. At first febricula may simulate typhus fever. Other conditions with which it might be confounded are low forms of pneumonia, especially in old, feeble, or intemperate persons; meningitis or other intra-cranial inflammations; certain cases of delirium tremens; or toxæmic conditions, such as uræmia, septicæmia, or pyæmia.

Prognosis.—Typhus fever is always a serious disease, and a guarded opinion should be given as to the issue of any particular case. The

chief general circumstances which increase the danger are:—1. The patient being of middle or advanced age. 2. The male sex to some degree. 3. A low condition of the system, whether constitutional, or due to privation or fatigue, intemperate habits, previous diseases, or other causes. The presence of the gouty diathesis is highly dangerous. 4. Mental depression, and a presentiment of death on the part of the patient. 5. Improper hygienic conditions, especially bad ventilation and overcrowding. 6. Neglect of proper treatment until a late period.

The *symptoms* and *complications* present afford most important indications as regards prognosis. Those of unfavourable import are:—
 1. Extreme prostration, with a dry, hard, and brown tongue; marked tympanites; or persistent hiccup. 2. Excessive feebleness of the heart's action, as evidenced by its impulse and sounds, and by the pulse; or very excited action, with a weak pulse; or an exceedingly frequent pulse, which is at the same time extremely feeble, irregular, or intermittent. 3. Severe and early cerebral and other nervous symptoms, especially continued sleeplessness with delirium; deep coma or *coma-vigil*; muscular tremors, twitchings, or rigidity; carphology, subsultus tendinum, *convulsions*, early relaxation of the sphincters, strabismus, and *great contraction of the pupils*. 4. A very high temperature, without any remission on the 7th day, especially if it persists and shows a tendency to rise; or a *sudden fall*, the other symptoms not improving. 5. A large amount and dark colour of the eruption, especially if mingled with numerous petechiæ, and if there is lividity of the face and limbs, with marked congestion in dependent parts. 6. Suppression or retention of urine; deficient elimination of its solid ingredients; the presence of much albumen or of blood in the urine, especially if associated with casts; and particularly the early recurrence of these symptoms. 7. Signs of collapse. 8. Marked pulmonary congestion, pneumonia, gangrene, erysipelas, uræmia, and other dangerous complications.

Treatment.—The principles already laid down with regard to the treatment of *fever* are those which must be followed in the management of cases of typhus. There is no possibility of checking the disease, and all that can be done is to avert the tendency to death, and to assist nature towards a satisfactory termination.

1. *General management.*—It is most important to attend strictly to all the *hygienic conditions* which demand attention in contagious fevers, and particularly to look after every point connected with the sick-room, including the nursing. These matters are often of greater moment than any medicinal treatment, and always aid considerably in conducting a case to a successful issue, while they prevent the dissemination of the disease.

It may be laid down as an invariable rule of practice that patients suffering from typhus fever *will not bear any kind of lowering treatment*, but that they always need to be supported more or less, and their strength must be husbanded in every possible way. They should take to bed *at once*, and use no exertion whatever, on no account being permitted to get up to stool, but a bed-pan being provided for their use. From the first a nutritious and easy assimilable *diet* must be administered, chiefly consisting of liquids, such as milk, beef-tea, or chicken broth. It is essential to give these at regular intervals, in considerable quantity, and *not to neglect them during the night*.

Alcoholic stimulants are required in the great majority of cases, but they ought not to be given recklessly, the nature and quantity of the

stimulant to be employed being determined by a careful consideration of each individual case. Port or sherry wine, or some spirit, especially brandy, answer best as a rule, and they should be given in stated doses at regular intervals, by night as well as by day. It is well to begin with a small quantity, gradually increasing it as circumstances require, the amount being again reduced as the symptoms improve. Champagne may also be of much service. Stimulants are not usually called for during the first few days, but in the case of the aged, the intemperate, and those who are much debilitated from any cause, they are demanded at the very outset. The signs which chiefly indicate the necessity for alcohol are :—1. A feeble state of the circulation, as shown by the pulse, the heart's impulse and sounds, a tendency to capillary stasis, or any disposition to syncopal attacks. 2. The development of typhoid symptoms, the amount needed being usually in proportion to the severity of these symptoms. 3. A large amount and dark colour of the eruption, with abundant petechiæ. 4. Profuse perspiration, the other symptoms not improving. 5. Coldness of the extremities. 6. The existence of complications of a low type. On the other hand, alcohol is contra-indicated or requires to be cautiously administered should there be a very hot and dry skin; symptoms of much cerebral excitement; or conditions of the urine pointing to deficient elimination on the part of the kidneys. In all cases the propriety of continuing or increasing the amount of stimulant must be judged of by the effects produced.

2. *Medicinal treatment.*—In a case of typhus fever the bowels should be kept open daily by some mild aperient, or by the use of simple enemata. In order to maintain free elimination, it is advisable to allow the patient plenty of drink, which may contain in solution citrate of potassium, nitre, cream of tartar, or chlorate of potassium. Tea, coffee, and salt are also recommended to be given freely for this purpose. The medicines which have obtained most repute in the treatment of typhus are the *dilute mineral acids* and *quinine*. Nitric, hydrochloric, nitro-hydrochloric, sulphuric, and phosphoric acids are all employed. Either of these may be made into a drink, or given in doses of $\text{m}\text{ x-xxx}$ every three or four hours, along with tincture of cinchona, or with quinine in moderate doses. Sulphuric acid answers best when typhoid symptoms set in. Tincture of perchloride of iron has been highly recommended in typhus fever; and also salicylate of sodium. Various *antiseptics* have been tried, such as carbolic acid, sulpho-carbolates, creasote, sulphites, Condy's fluid, and peroxide of hydrogen, but they cannot be relied upon.

3. *Symptomatic treatment* often demands particular attention in cases of typhus fever. The symptoms which are likely to call for interference are high fever; nausea and vomiting; constipation or diarrhoea; and head-symptoms, namely, headache, sleeplessness, delirium, stupor, or coma. Collie states that the cold bath is inadmissible in typhus fever, but in many cases good effects are produced by warm and tepid baths; he does not object to cold sponging of the forehead, face, and hands. He does not recommend opium or sedatives generally, but when it is necessary to procure sleep prefers the warm bath, or whisky and warm water, or both combined. This authority urges that in typhus fever the patient should be carefully watched, even when not delirious, because he is occasionally the subject of delusions, and cunningly watches for the absence of his nurse in order to run away. Hiccup sometimes causes much distress in this disease. For its relief the best

remedies are aromatic spirit of ammonia, ether, spirit of chloroform, hydrocyanic acid, camphor, and musk, in various combinations. A sinapism may be applied over the epigastrium; or the ice-bag may be tried if necessary.

Should there be a tendency to marked prostration, it is necessary to administer diffusible *stimulants* freely, such as spirit of ether, camphor, musk, aromatic spirit of ammonia, or carbonate of ammonium, along with alcohol. Sometimes patients become so low that they cannot swallow, and then recourse must be had to nutrient and stimulant enemata, which should be persevered with to the last; or even subcutaneous injection of ether may be resorted to in extreme cases. It is always very important to look to the bladder, and to draw off the urine if necessary.

4. The *complications* liable to arise must be watched for, and every care taken to prevent them, especially *pulmonary complications* and *bed-sores*. As regards inflammatory affections, it must be borne in mind that a stimulating and supporting plan of treatment is invariably indicated when such complications supervene during the course of typhus fever.

5. Much care is requisite during the stage of *convalescence*, all over-exertion being avoided, as well as excessive eating. Tonics and change of air are highly beneficial at this time. It is especially necessary to guard against any sudden effort during the early period of convalescence from typhus fever, as this is liable to cause thrombosis in the femoral or other veins. Any sequelæ which may arise must be attended to, and treated by appropriate measures.

CHAPTER III.

TYPHOID OR ENTERIC FEVER—PYTHOGENIC FEVER— ABDOMINAL TYPHUS.

Aetiology.—Typhoid fever is a specific disease, and is now commonly believed to depend upon a peculiar *typhoid bacillus*, discovered by Eberth, and subsequently studied and cultivated by Gaffky. The subject has since occupied the attention of many observers, but the results are not conclusive, according to high authorities, and other bacilli have been described. The typhoid bacillus has been found in the stools, the blood, and the urine during life; and also in the swollen Peyer's patches and the solitary glands during the early stage of the fever, the spleen, the mesenteric glands, the liver, and the kidneys. The organisms diminish in number as the disease progresses, or they are much more difficult to detect. They have been cultivated, and numerous inoculation-experiments have been made upon animals with the cultivations, but the results are not by any means conclusive. Typhoid bacilli are said to possess a greater power of resistance to heat than some others; and to be capable of development in the presence of carbolic acid (2 to 1000). It is also affirmed that they have been found in water and earth; and that they possess great vitality. Peculiar cilia have recently been described in connection with them. The typhoid bacillus is short and thick, with rounded ends, one or both of which present a

glistening round body, supposed to be a spore. A ptomaine (typhotoxin) and a toxalbumin have been obtained from it by Brieger. Luff also believes that he has found a special ptomaine in the urine in typhoid fever.

Typhoid fever is decidedly infectious. The general opinion is that the contagium is not contained in the exhalations, and that there is very little danger from merely coming into the vicinity of patients suffering from this complaint. Medical men or nurses are comparatively rarely infected from patients. Collie, however, agrees with Budd and others that typhoid fever is infectious in the ordinary way, but that experience shows that "it does not spread any great distance when the ventilation is good, the cubic space abundant, and the general sanitary arrangements good." It cannot be doubted, however, that it is the *faeces* which chiefly contain the typhoid poison, and by their agency the disease is mainly propagated. The atmosphere may become impregnated with emanations from the excreta, either because the latter are thrown into some open space, or because the water-closets, drains, sewers, etc., are imperfect, and undoubtedly the poison may thus find its way into the system by inhalation of the tainted air. Water is one of the main channels by which the contagium is conveyed, and numerous epidemics and endemics, as well as sporadic cases of typhoid fever, have been traced to some special water-supply. The faecal matters may soak through the soil from cess-pits, or in consequence of being merely thrown upon the ground, thus obtaining access into wells, the water of which is used for drinking purposes; or they or their gaseous effluvia may find their way into cisterns through the waste-pipes. The occurrence of typhoid fever is very often traceable to defective sanitary arrangements in particular houses. It has also been clearly proved that *milk* is not uncommonly the vehicle by which the typhoid poison reaches the system, either in consequence of water containing it being mixed with the milk, or used for washing milk-cans; or from this article of diet becoming tainted in some other way with the excreta of patients suffering from the fever. The opinion has been advanced that typhoid fever may be communicated through drinking the milk of cows fed on soil containing much sewage matter; or from eating the flesh of animals suffering from the disease. Epidemics of this disease have not uncommonly been definitely traced to milk obtained from a particular source. Fomites may convey it, such as bedding or clothing, but only when contaminated with the typhoid stools.

The name *pythogenic* was given to typhoid fever by the late Dr. Murchison, who, with others, was of opinion that this complaint is as a rule *spontaneously* originated in connection with ordinary sewer emanations and putrefying animal matter, and he believed that even in the specific stools the poison is always a product of decomposition. That it can be thus originated seems by no means improbable, at any rate when water is contaminated with faecal matters, or with the gases emanating therefrom; but, as a rule, cases can be traced distinctly to the action of the typhoid poison. Enteric fever has been attributed to other sources of decomposing organic matter, and even to recently exposed mud, but on no adequate grounds.

It is important to recognize the fact that the typhoid contagium in the *faeces* becomes more virulent after a time, and it has even been maintained that when first discharged it is comparatively, if not quite, harmless. It may form, however, probably in as short a time as twelve

hours (Cayley). Its quantity and virulence are increased by stagnation, accumulation, and concentration of the infected faeces; exclusion from a free current of air; and a certain degree of heat. A kind of fermentation takes place, and hence a very small proportion of a typhoid evacuation may lead to the infection of large quantities of excreta; the same process is believed to occur in milk.

Predisposing causes.—Age materially influences the occurrence of typhoid fever. It is by far most common during the period of youth and adolescence; while it is very rare in young infants, and in persons beyond 45 or 50 years of age, though it may occur even in advanced life. Individuals under 30 are twice as liable as those over 30, and half the cases occur from 15 to 25 (Murchison). Sex does not seem to have any effect. Cases are most numerous during autumn, especially after a dry and hot summer. Over-crowding is not a predisposing cause of typhoid fever, but deficient ventilation may have some influence. The disease attacks persons in all classes of society, and is not at all more prevalent among the poor; if anything, the contrary is the case. Individual susceptibility is believed to predispose to enteric fever; and some families are very liable to the disease, and have it in a severe form. Recent comers into an infected district are very likely to be attacked. Persons in good health, especially if over-fed, are often attacked before others; but overwork, mental depression or shock, and debility from any cause, are said to predispose to typhoid fever. Various chronic and acute diseases, as well as pregnancy, seem to afford some protection against the complaint. Habitual use of impure water has in some instances rendered epidemics of typhoid fever very severe; in other cases it has almost appeared to confer immunity against the disease.

Anatomical Characters.—The general condition of the body in fatal cases of enteric fever will vary with the time at which death occurs, and its severity. Usually there is more or less wasting; *rigor mortis* is distinct and of moderate duration; but the excessive *post-mortem* congestion, rapid putrefaction, and dark colour with softening of the muscles, so often observed in typhus, are rarely met with. The muscles present more or less of the vitreous degeneration described by Zenker, especially those of the abdominal walls, the adductors of the thighs, and the pectorals. The eruption is not persistent after death; but there may be the remains of bed-sores, gangrene, erysipelas, or sudamina.

ABDOMEN. It is in connection with this region that the principal morbid conditions occur in the large majority of cases of typhoid fever, and they require to be considered in some detail.

The *stomach* occasionally presents hyperæmia, mammillation, softening, or superficial ulceration, but is usually normal.

The *small intestines* are distended with gas; while they contain more or less of the materials similar to those passed in the stools. Increased vascularity of the mucous membrane may be observed, either uniform or in patches, but this is by no means necessary; it is most evident towards the lower part. At a later period the colour may be greyish or slate-coloured. The membrane is sometimes swollen and softened, the latter being probably a *post-mortem* change.

The characteristic lesions of enteric fever consist in certain morbid changes in connection with *Peyer's patches* and the *solitary glands*. These structures present different appearances, according to the time at which death occurs, the morbid changes being divided into certain well-defined stages.

1. *Stage of deposition or enlargement.*—The first alteration observed is a swelling or enlargement of Peyer's patches and of the solitary glands, owing to the presence of a morbid material, made up chiefly of granular matter and oil-globules, with a variable number of cells, having no special characters. Murchison stated that there is no preceding congestion, and that a deposit has been met with on the 1st or 2nd day; but Troussseau gives the 4th or 5th day as the time of its appearance. As already stated, typhoid-bacilli are found in the early stage of typhoid fever in the swollen patches and glands. They occur usually in scattered colonies or clusters, made up of bacilli closely massed together; and around them active proliferation and degeneration of the tissue-elements is going on.

The affected Peyer's patches appear to be unduly prominent, being raised one or two lines or more above the level of the mucous membrane, and having steep edges, with a smooth or granular surface; they are more or less firm, though the membrane covering them is often softened; while they vary in colour from pinkish-grey to different hues of red, the mucous membrane over them being sometimes purplish, and each patch is surrounded by a vascular ring. The corresponding peritoneum is also injected. The substance seems to be adherent to the mucous and muscular coats. On section it appears soft, and greyish-white or pale-reddish in colour.

Two forms of patches are described, the *plaques molles* and the *plaques dures*, but there are gradations between them, and they may coexist. The latter are more prominent and firmer, and the membrane over them is smoother and more uniform. The differences between the two kinds are that in the *plaques molles* the morbid substance is less abundant, and is confined to the glands, which in the *plaques dures* have burst and discharged their contents (Murchison).

The solitary glands are not always involved. On the other hand, in exceptional instances they may be alone affected. They vary in size from a millet-seed to a pea, and sometimes look like pustules.

2. *Stage of destruction.*—In some instances, or in particular patches, a kind of resolution takes place, and the morbid material is absorbed, without the occurrence of any breach of surface. Almost invariably, however, ulceration takes place, the average time at which this process begins being about the ninth or tenth day. Each ulcer is commonly the result of the death of a Peyer's patch and of the membrane covering it, the whole separating as a single slough or in separate irregular portions. These sloughs are usually yellowish or yellowish-brown from staining, or they are sometimes discoloured by blood. There may be mere superficial abrasion and softening of the mucous membrane preceding ulceration. Sometimes the glands simply rupture and discharge their contents, giving rise to a net-like appearance, and the late Sir William Aitken believed that this is the most frequent mode of elimination of the softened material. The solitary glands undergo a similar destructive change; and it may also spread to the mucous membrane between the glands.

3. *Stage of ulceration.*—The characters presented by *typhoid ulcers* are as follows:—In length they usually vary from a line to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch, but if several ulcers join a surface of some inches may be involved. The shape is oval or elliptical, round, or irregular, according as the ulcer corresponds to a Peyer's patch, to a solitary gland, or to several patches or glands united. There is never any thickening or hardening of the

edges or floor, nor is any morbid deposit observed here. The margin consists of a "well-defined fringe of mucous membrane, detached from the submucous tissue, a line or more in width, and of a purple or slate-grey colour: this is best seen when the bowel is floated in water" (Murchison). The floor is formed either by the submucous, muscular, or peritoneal coat, the ulcer accordingly varying in depth, and all degrees of destruction may be met with even in the same ulcer. Those ulcers which correspond to Peyer's patches occupy the part of the intestine most distant from the mesentery, and have a longitudinal direction.

4. *Stage of cicatrization.*—This stage commences usually about the end of the third week, but may be delayed considerably beyond this period, the ulcers becoming chronic or atonic. Each ulcer takes about a fortnight to cicatrize. Healing is accomplished without any puckering, contraction, or constriction of the gut. A thin transparent layer of lymph forms on the surface of the ulcer, by which the mucous membrane becomes gradually attached to its floor from the periphery to the centre, and into which at last it passes imperceptibly. The cicatrix is slightly depressed, thinner at the centre than at the circumference, pale, smooth, and translucent. After a time the mucous membrane may become movable, and it is said that villi may form, but if the glands are destroyed it is very unlikely that these ever become renewed.

The changes above described begin first, and are most extensive and most advanced in the lower portion of the ileum, and from this point they gradually extend upwards, until ultimately they may occupy the lower third of the small intestine. The extent of the disease is, however, very variable, the number of patches involved ranging from 2 or 3 to 30 or 40. Generally at a *post-mortem* examination the morbid process is observed in different stages at different levels, being most advanced below, where the most extensive ulcerations exist. At the upper part there is usually a somewhat abrupt transition from diseased to healthy patches, and all those below the first diseased patch are generally involved. The solitary glands are, as a rule, only implicated in the lower 12 inches of the gut, and they ulcerate later than the patches. Occasionally the small circular ulcers associated with these structures constitute the chief or only lesion, especially when Peyer's patches are absent. They are more liable to be involved in children.

If a case of typhoid fever has a very prolonged duration, it is said that the coats of the intestine, as well as the glandular structures, become considerably atrophied.

Large intestines.—These are usually distended with gas, sometimes to an extreme degree. The mucous lining may be congested or softened. Swelling and ulceration not unfrequently occur in connection with the solitary glands, these morbid changes being, as a rule, limited to the caecum and ascending colon. The ulcers are generally small and circular, but may be $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch long, with the long diameter transverse. Rarely the appendix vermiciformis is the seat of ulceration. In one fatal case of typhoid fever which came under my notice the morbid appearances were observed chiefly in the caecum and ascending colon, where there were at least twenty ulcers, some as large as half-a-crown, while in the small intestines there were not altogether above half-a-dozen, and these were confined to the solitary glands, Peyer's patches presenting but little alteration.

Intestinal perforation is an event to be dreaded in connection with typhoid ulcers, especially when they are deep. It may be brought about in the following ways:—1. Most frequently by molecular disintegration or an extension of ulceration, producing one or more minute, round apertures, like pin-holes. 2. By more or less extensive sloughing, involving the peritoneum, the slough separating partially or completely, and leaving an opening of variable size. 3. By rupture or laceration, leading to an elongated perforation, which may happen even after cicatrization has been practically completed. Generally there is but one perforation, but occasionally two, three, or more have been observed. In most cases the opening is in the lower portion of the ileum, but it may be higher up. Rarely perforation occurs in the cæcum, or in the vermiform appendix.

The mesenteric glands always present more or less changes in typhoid fever, which are most marked in those glands which correspond to the part of the intestines most diseased. They become enlarged at the very outset, from a multiplication of their lymphatic elements, and continue to increase in size until the 10th to the 14th day. They present a red or purplish colour, and feel tolerably firm. On section, little opaque, pale-yellow, friable masses are sometimes seen. Subsequently these may soften into a pus-like fluid mixed with sloughs, and the glands in rare instances actually burst into the peritoneum. Typhoid bacilli have been found in them. Ultimately they frequently become tough, contracted and shrivelled, pale or of a grey or bluish colour, or occasionally calcified. The mesocolic glands are similarly altered when the colon is involved. Other glands may enlarge from irritation.

The spleen is almost always more or less enlarged in enteric fever, but especially in young persons, very dark in colour, and softened. Sometimes it contains infarcts. It may be quite pulpy; and occasionally ruptures, either spontaneously or from injury. The rupture may be due to a softened infarct, or rarely to a gangrenous abscess. The liver may be congested or softened. Its cells always undergo more or less granular degeneration, and in severe cases this is very marked. Hepatic abscess and acute yellow atrophy have been met with in exceptional instances. The gall-bladder is occasionally the seat of catarrhal or diphtheritic inflammation, or rarely of ulceration, which may lead to perforation.

The kidneys are sometimes congested. Cloudy swelling, with granular degeneration of the renal cells, is common in various degrees. Sometimes there is acute nephritis. A rare condition has been met with, in which numerous small areas become infiltrated with round cells, which may end in softening or suppuration, forming *miliary abscesses*. The pelvis of the kidney is exceptionally the seat of diphtheritic inflammation; and also the bladder. Vesical congestion or catarrh is not uncommon. In one case which came under my observation the vulva was covered with diphtheritic deposit.

Peritonitis is liable to occur in typhoid fever, either extensive or circumscribed, limited abscesses sometimes forming. It may arise from mere extension of irritation from the bowel; from intestinal perforation; from rupture of glands or of the spleen very rarely; or from perforation of an ulcer in the gall-bladder.

CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.—The blood in typhoid fever has been said to present important changes. In the third week the corpuscles and haemoglobin usually fall below normal; the latter is always reduced, and generally in greater relative proportion than the corpuscles. The

white cells are but little altered, but appear to be as a rule slightly reduced in number. This has been considered important in diagnosis in certain cases. Anæmia may be very marked after typhoid. In low cases the blood may be found dark and fluid after death, and non-coagulable. The heart is often more or less softened, and presents parenchymatous or fatty degeneration, which in grave cases becomes a marked change, and may lead to fatal syncope. Vitreous degeneration may also take place. Even in cases fatal from cardiac failure, however, the fibres may not present any obvious change. Pericarditis or endocarditis are occasionally met with; and also myocarditis. Forms of arteritis have been described in typhoid fever, especially in the arteries of the lower extremities; and the smaller vessels may be involved, especially those of the heart. Venous thrombosis may occur as a complication.

THROAT AND RESPIRATORY ORGANS.—There may be congestion, various forms of inflammation, oedema, or ulceration of the throat and larynx. Sometimes diphtheritic membrane forms, and may cause obstruction. These conditions may extend even to the œsophagus. More or less bronchitis is very common in typhoid fever, and it may be pronounced. Hypostatic congestion of the lungs and splenization are also frequent. Hæmorrhagic infarction is not uncommon. Pneumonia, pulmonary abscess or gangrene, pleurisy, or empyema may be met with as complications. The bronchial glands are sometimes enlarged.

NERVOUS SYSTEM.—This does not present any definite changes. There may be excess of serum in connection with the brain and its membranes. Meningitis is extremely rare. It has been suggested that a slight encephalitis may account for aphasia said to be sometimes met with in typhoid. Judging from the long period which elapses before some patients recover the use of their limbs, there is reason to believe that occasionally there is some kind of degeneration of the spinal cord (Collie). Parenchymatous changes in the peripheral nerves are not uncommon, and there may be actual neuritis. Other nervous affections will be alluded to under complications and sequelæ.

Symptoms.—*1. Incubation-stage.*—The period of incubation in typhoid fever is of indefinite duration. Squire gives the usual time as four or five to twenty days, but it may be a month or more. There are no distinctive symptoms. Sometimes the incubation-period appears to be very short if the poison is concentrated, the disease setting in with vomiting and purging, attacking a number of persons at the same time, and giving rise to a suspicion of irritant poisoning.

2. Actual attack.—It is scarcely possible to divide this affection into distinct stages, but at the same time it often presents more or less definite periods in its progress. The *invasion* is ordinarily *very indefinite and gradual*, and the patient often cannot fix the exact date of the commencement of the attack. Frontal headache, with giddiness and noises in the ears; general pains in the limbs and back, with a feeling of lassitude and illness; restlessness and disturbed sleep; slight, irregular chills; diarrhoea, with loss of appetite, furred tongue, not uncommonly nausea, and sometimes vomiting, are the ordinary symptoms observed more or less at the outset. Sometimes there is much abdominal pain. Diarrhoea may be the only prominent symptom for some time. The tongue may be quite clean for some days, even when pyrexia is high. Occasionally repeated epistaxis occurs. Soon signs of pyrexia appear, increasing towards evening. It frequently happens that the patient

does not feel sufficiently ill to take to bed for some days, but follows his occupation, and it is not an uncommon event for patients suffering from typhoid fever to come to the out-patient room of a hospital, having felt poorly for many days, but thinking that there is not much the matter with them, while they sometimes walk about during the entire illness—*ambulatory typhoid*. It is extremely important, from a diagnostic point of view, to bear in mind this ill-defined character of the onset of enteric fever, and to be on the look-out for the disease when its symptoms are anything but characteristic. Murchison met with cases in which at first the symptoms resembled those of ague.

Early stage.—The disease being established, the symptoms present in an ordinary case during the first week or ten days are as follows:—

The general appearance does not indicate any serious condition, and although some degree of depression is felt, it is not very marked. The expression presents nothing peculiar: and the face is normal in colour, or pale; or a pink circumscribed flush may be noticed on one or both cheeks, varying in depth of tint, and not constant. There is pyrexia, the skin being hot and usually dry, but sometimes moist; while the pulse is accelerated to 100 or 120, and somewhat weak and soft; it varies in frequency in the same patient, being readily quickened, and is generally more rapid at night. The tongue presents usually a thin whitish or yellowish fur, is moist at first, small and pointed, red at the tip and edges, with enlarged papillæ. In exceptional cases it is large and thickly coated; or red, smooth, and glazed. The lips are parched and dry, and the mouth feels slimy. There is more or less thirst, with loss of appetite, and a feeling of nausea not uncommonly persists, but vomiting is exceptional.

Abdominal symptoms are more particularly to be looked for and studied in cases of typhoid fever. These are pain and tenderness, especially in the right iliac fossa; more or less tumidity or tympanitic distension; small gurgling on pressure in the right iliac fossa; and looseness of the bowels or diarrhoea. Physical examination will probably reveal enlargement of the spleen. Sometimes intestinal haemorrhage occurs even at an early period. The diarrhoea varies considerably in severity, the stools numbering from two to twelve, twenty, or more within the twenty-four hours. Usually they range from three to six. At first the faeces present no peculiarities, but after a few days they assume special characters, becoming thin, yellow, pultaceous, and somewhat resembling “pea-soup” or “yellow-ochre” in appearance; offensive, and often ammoniacal; and alkaline in reaction. Uniform throughout when first passed, they separate on standing into an upper watery layer, of a yellowish or brownish colour, containing albumen and salts in solution, the latter including chloride of sodium and carbonate of ammonium; and a lower layer or deposit consisting of the remains of food, epithelium, blood, small yellow flocculi, shreds of slough, and crystals of triple phosphate.

Head-symptoms are not very marked at this time. Frontal headache may persist, with dizziness and buzzing in the ears. Sleep is restless and disturbed, but the mind is clear, though inactive, and there is no delirium even at night. Epistaxis is not an uncommon symptom during this period.

The urine presents well-marked febrile characters; urea, uric acid, and pigments are in excess; and chloride of sodium is diminished.

Frequently there are slight bronchitic symptoms, dry rhonchi being also heard over the chest.

Eruption.—A specific eruption is present in the majority of cases of enteric fever, but by no means invariably. It is not unfrequently absent in very young patients, and in persons over thirty. It first appears usually from the 7th to the 12th day, but may in rare instances be seen as early as the 4th, or not until the 20th day. The abdomen, chest, and back are the regions which it generally occupies, but it is occasionally observed on the limbs, especially the thighs, or very rarely on the face. It does not appear all at once, but comes out in successive crops, each spot lasting from two to five days, and then fading away completely. The amount of eruption present at one time is seldom great, the number of spots rarely exceeding from 12 to 20 or 30, and there may be but two or three; in some cases, however, it is very abundant. Sometimes the spots are grouped in twos or threes. They continue to come out often until the 28th or 30th day, or sometimes even much later than this. The eruption appears earlier, and lasts a shorter time in children.

The typhoid rash consists of separate papular spots, which are round, lenticular, or oval in shape, and from $\frac{1}{2}$ a line to 2 lines in diameter. They are slightly but distinctly elevated as a rule; rounded on the surface; having a well-defined margin, and a soft feel. They present a pinkish or rose colour, which throughout their whole course disappears completely on pressure, and which gradually fades away, a faint yellowish stain being left. In a well-marked case the eruption is mixed, bright spots coexisting with faintly violet spots (Collie). They never become petechial. In very rare instances the spots are minutely vesicular. They never persist after death.

Collie states that along with the red spots are occasionally seen flat streaky spots of a bluish colour, but rarely true petechiae. Also that "the eruption is occasionally preceded by an erythematous injection of the skin, which is sometimes so intense as to simulate scarlet fever." Urticaria is occasionally observed; and "tachés cérébrales" can be often produced.

Advanced stage.—The symptoms of typhoid fever thus far described may continue without any particular change until convalescence sets in, the tongue remaining moist throughout, and there being no marked prostration or severe nervous symptoms. Usually, however, the phenomena change more or less. The patient emaciates and becomes much weaker, being not uncommonly very prostrate at last. When the pectoral muscle is gently tapped with the end of the finger, it sometimes rises in a small swelling—*myoïdema*, lasting from twenty to thirty seconds, due to contraction of the degenerated muscular fibres. The face is more flushed; the conjunctivæ may be injected, and the pupils dilated. The fever continues; and the pulse becomes more frequent, but weaker. The heart's action and sounds are feeble. The tongue tends to become dry and brown; or red, shining, and fissured; while sordes collect on the lips and teeth; and the breath has a very disagreeable odour. Labial herpes is not uncommonly observed. There is no diminution in the abdominal symptoms, which indeed are often intensified; and haemorrhage from the bowels is now liable to occur at any time, and may be very abundant. Sometimes the stools are passed involuntarily. The spleen also becomes larger. A peculiar odour is said to be given off from patients suffering from typhoid fever, but I have never noticed anything distinctive of this nature.

The nervous symptoms undergo a marked change. From the 10th to the 14th day the headache ceases, but there is more tendency to giddiness,

with a feeling of deafness. The mind also becomes affected, as indicated by more or less somnolence, mental confusion, or delirium. The delirium is at first only nocturnal, but may become continuous, though it is usually worse at night, while drowsiness is more marked by day. It is generally of an active, noisy, and talkative kind at the outset, and may be very violent, the patient throwing off the bed-clothes, trying to get up constantly, and having various delusions. The co-existence of headache and delirium, according to Sir W. Jenner, indicates intra-cranial inflammation. Sometimes the patient lies in an apathetic state, with half-closed eyes, appearing to understand what is said and done, but unable to make intelligible replies. Epistaxis is not uncommon at this time.

Sudamina may appear, usually in the third or fourth week, especially over the chest and abdomen, and on the sides of the neck. The skin is as a rule dry; but in some instances profuse sweating occurs, and a *sudoral* form of typhoid fever has been described. Bed-sores are liable to form in parts which are pressed upon, and must be specially guarded against.

The respirations become hurried and shallow, and there are more marked signs of bronchial catarrh; while air enters imperfectly into the lungs, and there is a danger of hypostatic congestion. The urine becomes more abundant, lighter in colour, and of lower specific gravity; while slight albuminuria may set in, but is not very common. Sometimes the urine is retained, or is passed involuntarily with the stools. Rarely it contains blood, renal epithelium, or casts, these changes being indicative of acute nephritis, and they may be associated with oedema. Ehrlich has introduced a test applied to the urine, which he considers very characteristic of typhoid fever, but it may be met with in other acute diseases attended with high fever, and also in miliary tuberculosis. It is named the *diazo-reaction*, and is produced by means of a saturated acid solution of sulphanilic acid, a solution of nitrite of sodium, and ammonia, but is carried out in different ways. One method is to place some urine in a test-tube, and make it strongly alkaline with ammonia. Then add an equal volume of the test-solution (mixed immediately before), consisting of a concentrated solution of sulphanilic acid, 200 c.c.; pure nitric acid, 10 c.c.; $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. solution of nitrite of sodium, 6 c.c. A red colour is produced, and after standing for 12 to 24 hours a sediment falls, the upper part of which exhibits a light or dark-green, or a violet-blackish colour.

In grave cases the characteristic symptoms of the *typhoid state* are developed, petechiae at the same time occasionally making their appearance, but this is an unusual course of events.

When typhoid fever ends in recovery it presents a gradual subsidence of the symptoms, defervescence taking place by *lysis* and not by *crisis*. Convalescence makes slow progress, and is liable to be retarded by one or more relapses, as well as by complications or sequelæ.

Temperature.—Typhoid fever is usually regarded as presenting some very characteristic features in its temperature. The *ascent* is quite regular and gradual, and continues for four or five days. The *evening temperature* is about 2° higher than that of the morning, and there is a remission each morning of about 1° compared with the previous evening, so that there is a daily rise of about 1° , and at last the evening temperature comes to be from 103.5° to 104° as a rule. This mode of ascent is quite distinctive of typhoid in typical cases, but is not always observed.

The *stationary* period varies greatly in duration, according to the severity of the case. The temperature ranges usually between 103° and 106° in the evenings, and only a *slight morning remission* is observed. It may reach 107°, 108°, or even higher in grave or fatal cases.

The *decline* is also peculiar. Defervescence takes place gradually, and is first indicated by a more distinct morning remission; in three or four days the evening temperature falls, and the morning remissions become very considerable, a difference of 2°, 3°, or even more being observed. The time taken to reach complete defervescence, so that the evening temperature is normal, varies much. Complications and sequelæ also not uncommonly lead to irregularities; and a relapse may cause the temperature again to rise in the same regular manner as at first.

Deviations from the course of temperature just indicated are not uncommon. Cases have been described in which paroxysms of chill, pyrexia, and sweats occur, simulating ague.

Varieties.—Remarkable differences are observed in cases of typhoid fever, as regards their mode of onset, degree of severity, and the prominent symptoms which they present. There may be no abdominal or other characteristic symptoms from first to last; while the abdominal symptoms bear no necessary proportion to each other. Instead of there being diarrhoea, constipation may be marked throughout; and I have had several series of cases under my care in which this symptom required regular treatment.

Murchison recognized the following varieties of typhoid fever:—

1. The *mild form*, under which would be included the *abortive* variety of certain writers, which ends in the second or at the beginning of the third week; as well as some cases considered to be of the nature of simple febricula. It is even affirmed that an *afebrile* form of typhoid may be met with.

2. The *grave form*, which, according to the prominent symptoms present, is subdivided into—*inflammatory, ataxic, adynamic, irritative, abdominal, thoracic, and hæmorrhagic*.

3. The *insidious or latent form*, also called *ambulatory*, because the patient often walks about during the entire attack. Sudden death may occur in such cases, from perforation or hæmorrhage.

Collie divides cases of enteric fever for the purpose of description into:—(a) *mild*; (b) *ordinary*; (c) *severe*; (d) *enteric fever with stupor*; and (e) *malignant*. The complaint presents some peculiarities in children, the chief being a more rapid rise of temperature; frequency of early bronchial catarrh; tendency to prominent nervous symptoms; slight character of abdominal symptoms, and frequent absence of diarrhoea; and want or slight amount of the eruption. There can be no doubt but that many of the cases of so-called *infantile remittent fever*, as well as those of *gastric* or *bilious fever*, are merely cases of modified typhoid fever.

Relapses.—Typhoid fever is particularly liable to relapses, and in exceptional cases they may occur even three or four times. Sometimes there is a recurrence of pyrexia only, but a true relapse is attended with a return of the characteristic lesions and symptoms. Generally it appears from ten to fourteen days after the temperature has become normal, and may or may not be attributable to error in diet. A relapse is almost always shorter in duration than the original attack; and the advanced stage is very often not observed. Recovery generally follows.

Complications and Sequelæ.—The abdominal complications to be specially dreaded in typhoid fever are *perforation of the intestine*, and *peritonitis*. Perforation generally happens in the third or fourth week, but it may occur as early as the eighth day, or not until the patient is apparently almost convalescent. It is very frequent in the *latent* variety. Usually the event is indicated by the ordinary symptoms of perforation (to be described hereafter), but sometimes these are very obscure. Peritonitis may be general or local, and it sometimes occurs without any perforation. There may or may not be prominent symptoms of this complication. *Intestinal haemorrhage* is regarded by some as a complication, but in reality it is a symptom which may come on at any time after about the 10th day, being most common from the 14th to the 24th day. It may be independent of any cause, or is brought on by improper food or by exertion.

Conditions affecting the throat and main air-tube must be borne in mind as possible complications of typhoid, including the formation of diphtheritic membrane. Subcutaneous emphysema has been met with as a consequence of laryngeal ulcer. Bronchitis is sometimes very pronounced in the initial stage of enteric fever, or may become a source of danger during the course of the illness. Pneumonia also has occurred exceptionally at the onset of the disease (*pneumo-typhus*) ; but is particularly to be watched for in severe cases during the 2nd or 3rd week, as it may supervene without any marked symptoms. Hypostatic congestion of the lungs is of common occurrence. Other pulmonary complications are rare. Hæmoptysis is an exceptional event. Pleurisy is not very uncommon ; and it may end in empyema. Acute tuberculosis has occasionally developed during the progress of, or convalescence from typhoid fever.

As regards the circulatory system, degenerative changes in the heart must be watched for, as indicated by its action and sounds. Other complications in connection with this organ are rare. Venous thrombosis, especially affecting the left femoral vein, and its consequences, are liable to occur during convalescence ; and sudden death has happened from dislodgment of a portion of clot. Embolism and infarction are exceptional, but might possibly be recognized during life.

Cerebral lesions are very rare in cases of typhoid fever, but meningitis is now and then met with. Paralysis varying in distribution may supervene as a complication, attributed to neuritis, or possibly to poliomyelitis in some cases. A condition of trance, simulating death, has been observed in very exceptional instances. As occasional complications may be mentioned optic neuritis ; and otitis media, leading to otorrhœa or other more serious consequences.

Acute nephritis is said sometimes to give rise to prominent symptoms in typhoid fever, even at an early period ; a less severe form may develop during convalescence. Symptoms of pyelitis or catarrh of the bladder may also supervene. Other occasional complications are orchitis, usually associated with urethritis ; parotitis, which may end in more or less extensive suppuration ; periostitis, especially of the tibia, followed by necrosis, which has been noticed in several cases of typhoid ; arthritis, either multiple, but more commonly limited to one joint, which may suppurate ; hæmorrhage and abscess in muscles ; and cancerum oris.

Typhoid fever may be complicated by other infective diseases, such as facial erysipelas, measles, varicella, and diphtheria. It is also sometimes associated with malarial fever, but a majority of the cases of so-

called *typho-malarial fever* are said to be either remittent or true-typhoid.

Many of the conditions just mentioned may only develop during convalescence, and their effects may remain. Other sequelæ to be noted are pulmonary phthisis; mental weakness or insanity, usually recovered from; aphasia, or hesitation in speech, especially in the young; neuralgia; marked anaemia; and a general state of ill-health, with much debility and wasting, which may never be recovered from. The last-mentioned condition has been attributed to destruction of the villi and glands of the intestines, accompanied with shrivelling of the mesenteric glands.

Duration and Terminations.—It is often difficult to fix accurately the *duration* of cases of typhoid, on account of its insidious mode of onset. Generally it ranges from three to four weeks, seldom extending beyond the 30th day. Many cases terminate on or about the 21st or 28th day. The mean duration of fatal cases seems to be about 22 days, but many run a much shorter course, and death may occur within the first few days. On the other hand, the complaint may be more prolonged, and Murchison mentions an instance in which fresh spots appeared up to the 60th day. Complications and sequelæ also not uncommonly protract the disease, as well as one or more relapses.

Typhoid fever may terminate in complete recovery; in death; or in a permanent state of ill-health. The average *mortality* is said to be about 1 in 5·4 cases, ranging usually from 15 to 25 per cent., but it differs greatly in different epidemics, and also with the mode of treatment, and other circumstances. It is affirmed that hydrotherapeutic treatment has reduced the mortality in certain hospitals to as low as 5 to 6 per cent. The causes of death are:—1. Gradual asthenia, or this condition combined with anaemia. 2. Direct loss of blood, from epistaxis or intestinal haemorrhage. 3. Blood-poisoning, as the result of imperfect excretion, or absorption of septic matters or ptomaines from the intestines. 4. Hyperpyrexia. 5. Cardiac failure. 6. Complications, especially perforation of the bowels, peritonitis, or severe bronchitis or pneumonia.

Diagnosis.—When a case of typhoid fever is marked by its characteristic mode of onset and clinical phenomena, there ought to be no difficulty in recognizing its nature. At first, however, the diagnosis is not uncommonly very uncertain or even impossible, when the complaint comes on insidiously, and a positive opinion can only be arrived at by watching the progress of events, especially studying the course of temperature, and looking for typical loose stools, tympanites, enlarged spleen, and the typhoid rash. It must not be forgotten, however, that constipation is not uncommon. In this country, whenever a patient has an indefinite recent illness, especially if accompanied with marked frontal headache, unaccountable weakness, tendency to diarrhoea, or epistaxis, typhoid fever should be thought of, and the clinical thermometer may at once help in clearing up any obscurity. In really doubtful cases it is far preferable to suspect the complaint, and keep the patient in bed. In the opposite direction, typhoid fever may be initiated with such severe and varied symptoms that it is impossible to determine at first what they mean, and here again caution is necessary before coming to any definite conclusion. Ehrlich's urinary test has been supposed to help in the diagnosis of difficult cases, but it cannot be relied upon. It has even been proposed to puncture the spleen under special circumstances, in order to obtain cultures of the typhoid bacillus, but this procedure can rarely be justifiable.

The principal fevers from which typhoid has to be distinguished are febricula, typhus, relapsing fever, and malarial remittent fever. Apart from other phenomena, it is soon marked off from other exanthemata, such as scarlet fever, measles, or small-pox, by their respective eruptions. Osler states that he is unable to differentiate certain cases of malarial remittent from typhoid fever except by examination of the blood, and the detection of the characteristic organisms of malaria. A great number of diseases have been mistaken for typhoid fever and vice *versâ*, but it must suffice to mention here mere bronchitis or pneumonia; cerebro-spinal meningitis; tubercular meningitis, and other forms of acute tuberculosis; tubercular peritonitis, with intestinal ulceration; typhlitis and perityphlitis; gastro-enteritis; septicæmia or pyæmia, especially when associated with abdominal conditions, as hepatic abscess or perinephritis; malignant endocarditis; acute nephritis, with uræmia; rheumatic fever; and trichinosis.

An important point relating to the diagnosis of typhoid, is to be prepared for meeting with certain of its severe symptoms or complications under unexpected circumstances, such as intestinal haemorrhage or perforation; and also to be on the look-out for these or other serious phenomena which are liable to arise in the course of a well-marked case.

Prognosis.—Until a patient is quite convalescent after an attack of typhoid fever it cannot be considered that all danger is past, and a guarded opinion should always be given as to the ultimate result, even in the mildest cases. The prognosis is worse in females, in those advanced in years, in fat individuals, and in persons who have come recently to an infected district. It is favourable in the young, and especially in children. Family constitution seems to have some influence. Previous debility does not materially increase the danger from enteric fever; indeed, my experience has led me to the conclusion that robust individuals, especially those who are accustomed to high living, are more likely to have the disease severely, and that the prognosis is often unusually grave in such subjects. When a patient has been walking about for some time he is more liable to dangerous symptoms and complications.

Many of the conditions mentioned as being unfavourable in typhus are to be similarly regarded in typhoid fever, especially severe nervous symptoms, and great prostration, but the pulse and tongue are not so much to be relied upon, and abundant eruption is not a bad sign in typhoid. Great frequency, with marked weakness and compressibility of the pulse, and physical signs of cardiac failure, are, however, always to be regarded as more or less grave. The chief indications of danger are severe abdominal symptoms, with excessive diarrhoea; intestinal haemorrhage, especially if profuse; signs of perforation; symptoms of peritonitis; profuse epistaxis; marked muscular tremors, the mind being clear, which is said to indicate deep ulceration; sudden extreme prostration; and unaccountable aggravation of all the symptoms after a temporary improvement in the second or third week. A relapse rarely proves fatal. Sudden death occurs in rare instances without any obvious cause, and has been attributed to cardiac failure.

The value of the thermometer in guiding the prognosis of typhoid fever requires particular notice. During the second week the temperature shows whether a case is likely to be severe or not. In mild cases a marked morning remission is observed, which begins early and increases; the evening exacerbation is late; and soon there is a permanent fall,

the stage of defervescence setting in. In severe cases the opposite conditions are observed. The prognosis is unfavourable in proportion to the height of the temperature, and to the duration of this increased bodily heat, especially if there are but slight morning remissions. Either a sudden rise, or a rapid and extreme fall, is a bad sign. Considerable irregularity in the ordinary course of the temperature suggests the existence of complications. A marked fall often gives warning of the occurrence of intestinal haemorrhage.

Treatment.—1. The remarks made with regard to the *hygienic management* of cases of typhus apply equally to those of typhoid fever, but there are some points which require special notice. Remembering the origin and chief modes of propagation of the poison of typhoid, every attention must be paid to the *disinfection*, or even *destruction*, of the stools; to the removal of all filth; and especially to the *water-supply*, in accordance with the rules already laid down in relation to the prevention of infectious diseases, and of epidemics. Very rigid measures of disinfection are carried out in some institutions, but it is impossible to describe them in detail here. Particular care must be exercised as regards the disinfection of soiled bedding and bed-clothes, and of the patient's linen.

2. *General management.*—Any patient suffering from typhoid fever should take to bed from the outset, or as soon as ever the disease is recognized, and must remain there until practically convalescent. As a rule it is best to employ the bed-pan from the first, so that the patient may become habituated to its use.

The greatest care is necessary as to *diet*, which should be entirely liquid, nutritious, and non-irritating, and administered at stated intervals, but not too frequently. Good milk is by far the most important article of diet, but beef-tea, which may be thickened with arrowroot or bread-crumb, beef-juice or essence, eggs beaten up, and custards are also serviceable. Whey may be useful in some cases. The patient may partake freely of iced-water, toast-water, barley-water, or other suitable drink, special care being taken that the water has been boiled; and may also have tea or coffee in moderation, if desired. Fruits are not to be permitted in any quantity, but a few good grapes are sometimes welcome, their seeds and skins being removed, but their effects must be watched. This caution as regards diet is to be observed in all cases, but especially when there is any reason to suspect extensive ulceration. By proper attention to this matter many cases of enteric fever may be brought safely through, without the administration of any medicine whatever, or any other treatment. It is very important to see that the *milk is good*, and that it is obtained from a healthy source, as it has happened that milk actually infected with the typhoid poison has been persistently given; moreover, it must not be administered in too large quantity, else it will curdle in the stomach and do harm, and to guard against this, the stools should be regularly watched. It may be desirable to give the milk with soda-water or lime-water; or with arrowroot or gelatine. Some patients cannot take milk, and Collie then recommends as substitutes veal-, mutton-, or chicken-broth. As to the frequency of giving food, this must depend upon circumstances, but Collie states that in a fairly severe case about three hours would be a fair interval. He properly warns against annoying patients by too frequent administration of food; and also against arousing them from sleep unnecessarily for this purpose, but at the same time to avoid mistaking an apathetic condition, due to exhaustion, for sleep, from which the patient should invariably be roused to be

fed. Much difference of opinion prevails as to the value of *alcoholic stimulants* in typhoid fever. Unquestionably their indiscriminate use may do a great deal of harm, and they are not nearly so much needed as in typhus, or at such an early period. They may not be required at all, and it is only in the more advanced stages, when the strength has been reduced and the circulation is feeble, that they are usually called for. Large quantities are demanded in cases of a low type. They should as a rule be given to patients who have been in the habit of taking alcohol. Their effects must be closely watched. In bad cases both food and stimulants may need to be administered by the rectum.

3. *General medicinal treatment.*—Mineral acids and quinine are often given in the ordinary treatment of typhoid fever, but they are not nearly so efficacious in this disease as in typhus; and in a large number of cases there is really no indication for these or any other medicines. Quinine, as will be noticed presently, is also employed specially as an antiseptic or antipyretic.

4. *Symptomatic treatment* calls for the chief attention in most cases of enteric fever; and *complications* must also be grappled with. The ordinary symptoms associated with fever must be dealt with in the usual way; and the supervention of the "typhoid state," hyperpyrexia, or other conditions calls for appropriate treatment. Digitalis may be decidedly helpful in improving and controlling the action of a failing heart; strychnine is also sometimes most useful, and may be given hypodermically, if urgently needed. Subcutaneous injection of ether has been found efficacious in extreme cases. Epistaxis sometimes requires the use of local styptics; or it may become necessary to plug the nares.

A few special remarks are needed with regard to the abdominal symptoms, which are so often a source of trouble and anxiety during the progress of typhoid fever.

If there is much pain, the assiduous and early application of linseed-meal poultices or fomentations may give relief. Occasionally turpentine stupes or sinapisms are needed; and if the pain is very severe at an early period in young and plethoric patients, it has been recommended to apply three or four leeches over the right iliac fossa, or a small blister. Opium or morphine internally may possibly be required for the relief of this symptom.

Diarrhoea ought to be checked if it is excessive, or if the patient is very weak, but it is by no means always desirable to try to stop the action of the bowels, and particular care must be taken not to encourage accumulation of faecal matters. Collie advises that if the motions consist of true faecal and undigested food matter, the bowels should not be interfered with; but diarrhoea should be controlled when the motions consist mainly of water, and the patient is being weakened. Enemata of starch and opium are highly efficacious for the purpose of keeping diarrhoea within bounds. Internally the best remedies are Dover's powder, either alone or combined with carbonate of bismuth; sulphuric acid with tincture of opium; or chalk-mixture or some preparation of bismuth, combined with tincture of opium and vegetable astringents. Acetate of lead, sulphate of copper, or nitrate of silver have been employed in obstinate cases.

In cases which are attended with constipation, due care must be exercised in the use of aperients. A teaspoonful of castor-oil, or a simple

tepid enema every third or fourth day, answers well under these circumstances as a rule. Some recommend a saline mineral water.

Tympanites is often prevented by keeping the bowels properly emptied; with the judicious use of antiseptic agents. Should it become excessive, it is sometimes relieved by the use of enemata containing turpentine or asafoetida, along with the external applications already mentioned for pain. Cayley recommends the application of small lumps of ice between two pieces of flannel. The passage of a long oesophagus-tube into the rectum sometimes gives marked relief.

Intestinal haemorrhage, if not checked by the remedies mentioned for diarrhoea, demands the internal administration of full doses of tannic or gallic acid, turpentine, or tincture of perchloride of iron; or the hypodermic injection of ergotine. Ice may be given to suck constantly; and also applied over the right iliac region.

Should perforation or peritonitis occur, the treatment must consist of absolute rest; the total withdrawal of food, or its administration in very small quantities; and the free use of opium. Constipation must on no account be interfered with under such circumstances.

5. *Special treatment.*—Certain special modes of treatment have been advocated for typhoid fever, to which it is necessary to call separate attention.

a. *Antiseptic treatment.*—Various antiseptics are recommended by different writers to be administered internally, and some employ them as enemata. Without discussing their respective merits, it must suffice to mention here the chief remedies of this class which have been advocated, namely, sulphurous acid and hyposulphites, carbolic acid or sulphocarbonates, creasote, salicylic acid or salicylates, salol, solution of chlorine or chlorinated soda, benzoate of sodium, boric acid, quinine, tannic acid, oil of eucalyptus, charcoal, iodine, iodoform, thymol, turpentine, naphthalin and the naphthols, calomel and certain other mercurial preparations. The immediate object of this method of treatment is to bring about a condition of intestinal antisepsis, by acting not only on the typhoid bacilli and their products, but also upon other organisms of a non-specific nature, which cause decomposition of the contents of the bowel, or putrefaction. It is assumed, however, that some of the agents used are also absorbed, and act on the blood and tissues. Treatment of this kind is obviously founded on rational principles, and provided it is carried out judiciously along with other suitable measures, it may be adopted as a routine practice in any well-marked case of typhoid fever, but my personal experience does not enable me to recommend one antiseptic remedy more than another.

b. *Antipyretic treatment.*—Typhoid fever is one of the most prominent examples of a disease in which a routine system of energetic hydro-therapeutic treatment has been most strongly advocated, for the purposes mentioned in the chapter on FEVER. The systematic use of baths is practised extensively on the Continent, and especially in Germany, as well as in other parts of the world, and is also recommended by some high authorities in this country. The exact plan of carrying out this treatment is different with different practitioners, the bath being used at 65° to 70°, at 75°, or from 80° to 90°, and then gradually cooled to 70° or 65°; the patient is kept in it for periods varying from 10 to 25 minutes; it is repeated from three to eight times during the twenty-four hours; and the treatment is continued for two-

or three weeks or more. Brandy is often given at the same time; and some administer also large quantities of quinine or salicylic acid. There are obvious objections to such a routine treatment as this, especially in private practice; and from personal experience I cannot recognize the necessity for its adoption in ordinary cases of typhoid, but am content with the milder and more convenient measures described in the chapter above referred to. Dr. James Barr treats cases of typhoid fever by more or less prolonged immersion in a specially constructed tank, filled with water at a temperature of from 90° to 95°. Quinine in large doses, phenazone, acetanilide, phenacetin, and other remedies have been advocated as antipyretics in the ordinary treatment of typhoid fever, but they certainly cannot be recommended. Should any tendency to hyperpyrexia be manifested, energetic hydropathic treatment should be at once resorted to, in order to bring down the temperature.

c. Eliminatory treatment.—Some practitioners, instead of endeavouring to check the diarrhoea in typhoid fever, encourage it throughout by means of aperients, with the view of assisting elimination. This plan of treatment is obviously attended with much danger, and in my opinion is most objectionable. At the same time an aperient at the outset may be of decided use; and in some cases two or three full doses of calomel in the early stage of enteric fever will prove of great service.

*d. Typhoid fever is one of the infective diseases in the treatment of which *inoculation with cultures or vaccines* has been practised, and for such treatment great advantages have been claimed. At present it is impossible to come to any definite conclusion on this matter.*

6. Convalescence.—During convalescence from typhoid fever much careful supervision is needed for some time, especially with regard to food and the employment of purgatives. The diet must be very gradually improved, and only taken in moderate quantities. No solid food should be given until the temperature has been normal for at least a week, or even ten days. It is the more necessary to insist upon this, because patients are often much inclined to indulge to excess in all kinds of food, and neither they nor their friends can understand why they should be restricted. Wine is very valuable at this time, if properly employed. If an aperient is required, a small dose of castor-oil or a simple enema answers best. Tonics and change of air have a very beneficial effect in promoting recovery and restoring strength. Cod-liver oil is also useful, if much debility and wasting remain. Sequelæ must be watched for, and treated according to their nature.

CHAPTER IV.

RELAPSING FEVER—FAMINE-FEVER.

Aetiology.—Relapsing fever is an independent acute specific disease, originating in a *specific poison*, which is highly infectious, and rarely occurs except as an epidemic. This fever often spreads rapidly, especially where there is freedom of intercourse between the sick and healthy. The contagium is chiefly given off in the breath and exhalations, and those who come much into contact with patients suffering from relapsing fever are most liable to be attacked. It may be conveyed by individuals or fomites, and clings tenaciously to a house for months. With regard to the nature of the contagium, this is now generally regarded as being definitely associated with a certain organism, originally discovered by Obermeier in 1872, and hence named *spirillum* or *spirochete Obermeieri*. It has been subsequently studied by Münch, Koch, Vandyke Carter, Metchnikoff, Heydenreich, and others. The organisms of relapsing fever are in the form of spiral fibrils, extremely delicate, and from two to six times the diameter of a blood-corpuscle in length ($\frac{1}{1500}$ to $\frac{1}{500}$ inch). They are actively mobile, both in a wavy and spiral manner, and are capable of rapid locomotion. They are only found in the blood, not having been detected in any of the other fluids of the body, or in either of the secretions. They lie free, and are never found within the red corpuscles or leucocytes. Moreover, they are only present at certain times, namely, during the febrile paroxysms, for they disappear entirely shortly before the crisis, and are absent during defervescence and in the apyrexial intervals. At this period, however, the experiments of Metchnikoff seem to show that they accumulate in the spleen, and are incorporated with leucocytes in that organ. It has been proved by experiment that relapsing fever is easily communicated by inoculation of the blood, but only during the paroxysms, when

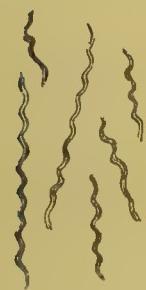


FIG. 10.

Spirilla of Relapsing Fever. $\times 500$.

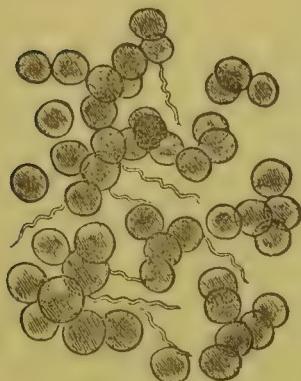


FIG. 11.

Spirilla amongst red blood-corpuscles.

the spirilla are present. The complaint cannot be produced by inoculation of any other fluid of the body. Heydenreich has shown that spirilla are very short-lived even at the normal temperature of the blood, but still more so at febrile temperatures; and probably their variable prevalence in the same attack is associated with the development and disappearance of successive generations.

Predisposing causes.—The anti-hygienic conditions which promote the spread of typhus have a similar influence in the case of relapsing fever, particularly want of food, overcrowding, and filth, and Murchison believed that the disease may be spontaneously developed, especially

as the result of destitution. It prevails generally during periods of famine, and has hence been called *famine-fever*. This fever is most frequently met with in the British Islands, especially in Ireland, but is now far less prevalent than formerly. Males are attacked in larger proportion than females; and the complaint is most common between 15 and 25 years of age. Season has no influence.

Anatomical Characters.—There are no *post-mortem* appearances at all characteristic of relapsing fever. *Rigor mortis* is said to come on unusually early, and to remain late. The blood is dark and fluid in fatal cases; and petechiae or ecchymoses may be evident. The heart may be softened, and in a state of granular degeneration. The spleen is usually much enlarged during the febrile paroxysm, and softened; sometimes it contains infarcts. The liver is also considerably increased in size and congested. The kidneys are sometimes enlarged, and their cells may show cloudy swelling; in rare cases numerous small haemorrhages are observed in these organs, or they may be the seat of infarcts. Hyperplasia of the bone-marrow has been noticed. There may be various morbid conditions of the nature of complications.

Symptoms.—The *period of incubation* in cases of relapsing fever lasts from about four to ten days usually, but may be very much shorter, the attack even appearing to commence almost simultaneously with exposure to infection in exceptional instances.

The *invasion* is remarkably sudden, the patient usually feeling perfectly well immediately before, and being able to fix upon the exact moment of attack. The first symptoms are often felt on awaking in the morning. Generally, however, there has been constipation for some days previously (De Zouche). The attack is commonly ushered in with a severe rigor, and a sense of great weakness, but there may be only slight shivering. Sharp frontal headache is complained of at once or very soon, rapidly increasing in intensity, with giddiness, and pains in the back and limbs, often exceedingly severe. After a variable time marked pyrexia sets in, with dry pungent skin, flushed cheeks, frequent pulse, and excessive thirst. In two or three days profuse and general perspiration follows in some cases, but gives no relief. The rigors are repeated at intervals, and may alternate with sweating, simulating ague. In children the disease may commence with a "heavy sleep." Vomiting and retching are early symptoms, the vomited matters being yellow, yellowish-green, or green, and consisting of bile and gastric secretions; sometimes they are black. Epigastric uneasiness or pain, and pain or tenderness over the liver and spleen, are also complained of, these organs, especially the latter, being obviously enlarged. Appetite is quite lost as a rule, and there is great thirst. The tongue is at first moist and covered with a white or yellowish fur, and generally remains in this condition throughout; but it may become dry and brown, with sordes on the teeth. It is often transversely fissured and red at the edges, with enlarged papillæ. In bad cases patches of ulceration are observed on the tongue and inside of the cheeks. Constipation generally persists throughout, the stools being normal in colour or dark. Sore-throat is frequently complained of, the fauces being reddened, and one or both tonsils being enlarged.

The appearance of the patient is often quite characteristic. "The eyes appear somewhat sunken, from the dark circle which surrounds them; they are clear, but have a despairing, woe-begone look, not easily to be forgotten if once seen. The whole face expresses the consciousness.

of pain and helplessness" (De Zouche). More or less jaundice is observed in many cases, and sometimes the skin exhibits a bronzed hue. Various eruptions have been described in individual cases, but there is nothing of this nature at all characteristic of relapsing fever. Sudamina are said to be very common.

The pulse rises rapidly to 100, 120, 140, or even 160, but has no constant relation to the temperature. It may be full and strong, but in bad cases tends to become weak, intermittent, or irregular, the impulse and sounds of the heart being at the same time feeble. The urine is febrile; it may be much diminished in quantity or suppressed, and urea is often deficient; in exceptional cases there is albuminuria. Headache continues very severe throughout, with a throbbing sensation, and there is much restlessness and sleeplessness. Delirium is uncommon, but is occasionally observed, especially towards the crisis, when it may be violent in character.

The symptoms become intensified as the period of *crisis* is approached, which event happens in most cases on the 5th or 7th day, but it may take place at any time from the 3rd to the 10th day. They are often alarming at this time, and dyspncea may be prominent. Crisis is almost always accompanied with profuse sweating, the perspiration pouring off for some hours. Sometimes sudamina appear: and occasionally watery diarrhoea or vomiting occurs. Hæmorrhages are not uncommon, especially epistaxis, and now and then hæmaturia, menorrhagia, or hæmorrhage from the stomach or bowels occurs. Hæmatemesis has been supposed to be associated with enlargement of the spleen. In severe cases, and in weak individuals, a copious and general petechial eruption is often observed at this time. The symptoms usually rapidly abate; the pulse and temperature fall even below the normal, the former frequently continuing below par; the tongue cleans; and the patient often feels quite well, only being a little weak. Most patients soon get up, and some try to work.

In exceptional cases there is not a complete cessation of symptoms, but only a partial remission. In other instances severe muscular and arthritic pains are complained of over the body generally, the metacarpal and phalangeal joints being most liable to be attacked. These painful sensations prevent sleep, and may make the patients cry out. At this time the disease is liable to be mistaken for acute rheumatism, especially as some of the joints occasionally become swollen. Bronchitis may set in during the intermission, with much spasmodic cough, and expectoration of viscid tenacious mucus, or even of blood; the symptoms sometimes resemble those of whooping cough, especially in children.

Relapse.—Occasionally no relapse occurs, particularly towards the end of an epidemic, or it is scarcely noticeable. It may set in any day from the 12th to the 17th, generally on the 14th. Its onset is equally sudden with the primary attack, and the symptoms are precisely the same, their intensity being, however, usually less, though they are in exceptional cases more severe. The average duration of the relapse is from three to five days, but it may vary from a few hours to seven or eight days, and it terminates by crisis, usually in the same manner as after the first attack. A second, third, fourth, and even fifth relapse has been sometimes observed.

In rare instances extreme prostration suddenly comes on, with signs of collapse, the face being of a purplish colour, especially the nose, the

limbs cold and livid, the pulse very feeble, and the patient becoming unconscious. In other cases typhoid symptoms and prominent nervous phenomena are developed, accompanied with suppression of urine.

Temperature.—There is a continuous ascent in relapsing fever for four or five days, without any evident morning remission, the temperature finally reaching 104°, 105°, 106°, or even higher. It may then remain stationary, with slight morning remissions, until the period of *crisis*, when it falls below the normal. At the *relapse* it again rapidly rises, and may reach even a higher point than during the first attack; it once more suddenly falls at the second crisis.

Complications and Sequelæ.—The most important are bronchitis or pneumonia; various haemorrhages; sudden syncope; pains in the muscles and joints, occasionally with effusion into the latter; a peculiar form of ophthalmia, preceded by amaurosis; diarrhoea or dysentery; œdema of the legs, due to debility and anaemia; parotid or other buboes; and abortion. Very rarely an enlarged spleen has ruptured. Post-febrile paralysis is sometimes a sequela of relapsing fever. De Zouche observed in many cases fine desquamation of the cuticle about the second week after crisis, and also falling-off of the hair.

Terminations.—The great majority of cases of relapsing fever recover; in a large number collected by Murchison the mortality was only 4·75 per cent., and it may be as low as from 1 to 2 per cent. Convalescence, however, is often tedious, and a state of marked debility sometimes remains, which may ultimately prove fatal. Death may result from syncope, collapse, or nervous exhaustion; excessive diarrhoea or dysentery; uterine haemorrhage, especially after premature labour; uræmia; persistent vomiting in children; or from pneumonia, peritonitis, or other complications.

Prognosis.—This is generally favourable in relapsing fever, but is less so in aged persons, and in those who have been lowered by disease, intemperance, or privation.

The chief signs of danger are marked jaundice; severe haemorrhages, especially uterine; extensive petechiae or purpuric spots; sordes and ulcerations about the tongue and mouth; incomplete defervescence after the first crisis; suppression or great diminution of the quantity of urine; severe cerebral symptoms; a tendency to syncope; and the presence of grave complications. It must be remembered that serious symptoms may come on quite suddenly, even in a mild case. Convalescence is often considerably delayed on account of sequelæ.

Treatment.—1. During the *first febrile paroxysm* it is desirable to keep the bowels regularly open, but not to purge excessively. If the case is seen early, an *emetic* seems to be useful. Attention must be paid to the urine, to see that excretion is properly taking place; and a saline mixture may be given. A drink containing 5*i* or 5*j* of nitre to the pint was recommended by Murchison. Tincture of aconite and Warburg's tincture have been well spoken of in the treatment of relapsing fever. Cold or tepid sponging is very useful.

Opium is a most valuable remedy to relieve headache, sleeplessness, vomiting, and severe pains. De Zouche found hydrate of chloral of use. He only considers it desirable to moderate vomiting, should this symptom be excessive. Ammonia and digitalis may be called for at the crisis. Other symptoms and complications must be attended to as they arise.

The *diet* should be light, though nutritious, as a rule, but if the patient is low, a more supporting diet is indicated. *Alcoholic stimulants* are

not often required, but should be given from the first if there is much debility or anaemia, or if there is any tendency to syncope. They are also called for in the case of old people, and of young infants who cannot take the breast; and are in most cases necessary during the exhaustion following the crisis, as well as during convalescence.

2. During the *interval* the patient should be kept in bed. Various remedies have been tried with the view of preventing the relapse, but without success. Quinine in five-grain doses may be given. The *relapse* must be treated on the same principles as the primary attack.

3. During *convalescence* good diet and *tonics*, especially quinine, mineral acids, and iron, are indicated. These appear to be the best remedies for the various sequelæ. The application of leeches and blisters behind the ears, the administration of calomel internally, and the local use of atropine are recommended for the ophthalmia which follows relapsing fever.

CHAPTER V.

SCARLATINA—SCARLET FEVER.

Etiology.—Produced by a *specific poison*, scarlatina is highly infectious. Different organisms have been described, but at the present time there is no adequate proof of the causal relation of any one of them to scarlet fever. Streptococci are occasionally found in the blood; and in fatal cases are present in the kidneys and lymphatic glands. The contagium of scarlatina is especially abundant in connection with the epithelium which is shed from the skin, by means of which it may be extensively disseminated; it is also given off from the throat, and is present in any discharges from this part. Infection may result from merely going into a room where a patient is lying ill of scarlatina, or being in the same house, or even in the neighbourhood. The apartment also frequently retains the poison lurking in various parts for an indefinite time, unless it has been thoroughly disinfected, and thus the disease is again started after a long interval. The infected epithelium-particles easily cling to clothes, letters, and other fomites, and by their aid are often carried far and wide. They are also sometimes conveyed by milk and other kinds of food. It is important to remember that insusceptible individuals may disseminate scarlatina, if allowed to pass from the sick-room into the midst of healthy persons. A second attack of scarlet fever seldom occurs, and still more exceptionally a third. Occasionally a relapse takes place; or a recurrence of the disease after a very short interval. As to the time that infection lasts in a patient, there is no certainty, but it is safer to consider it as beginning with the incubation-period, and not ceasing until desquamation has been thoroughly completed.

Observations made by Mr. Power and Dr. Klein in connection with an epidemic of scarlet fever which occurred in London in 1885, and was traced to milk obtained from a certain dairy at Hendon, led them to believe that the complaint was directly conveyed from cows suffering from a disease characterized by the appearance of vesicles and ulcers on the teats and udders. From subsequent investigations, however,

Prof. Crookshank concluded that "the disease on the teats of the cattle was the true Jennerian cow-pox," and had nothing to do with scarlatina.

Predisposing Causes.—Young children are chiefly attacked with scarlet fever, from eighteen months to six years of age, but especially those from three to four years old. In addition to the immunity afforded by a previous attack, the liability to the disease decidedly diminishes with advancing years. Both sexes are equally affected. Individual susceptibility is an important predisposing cause. The complaint is more prevalent in large towns, and amongst the poor, on account of the greater liability to infection under these circumstances. It has been maintained that defective house-drainage acts as a predisposing cause. Cases are said to be most frequent in autumn and early winter, especially from September to November; there are many exceptions to this statement, however, and epidemics are but too common at other times.

It is a well-known fact that a scarlatinal rash is peculiarly liable to occur after operations, and in puerperal cases, and sometimes the disease assumes a typical and very severe or even fatal form. Mr. Howard Marsh has brought forward strong evidence to prove that the surgical rash is a true, though often modified, form of scarlatina. Others, however, have attributed the rash to septicæmia, or to the medicinal use of quinine.

Anatomical Characters.—The changes found after death from scarlatina vary much according to the severity of the attack, and the structures involved. The scarlatinal rash may or may not persist after death; but œdema and petechiæ remain if they have been present during life. Klein specially investigated the anatomical changes observed in certain organs in scarlet fever, and has described them with much minuteness.*

The kidneys hold an important relation to scarlet fever. Whether they are always affected as an essential part of the complaint is a disputed point, but they often become more or less involved. The lesions have been studied by Coats, Klebs, Wagner, and others, as well as by Klein. It will suffice to state here that they are of the nature of vascular changes, followed by acute nephritis, both parenchymatous and interstitial, according to Klein. Klebs has described a condition of glomerulo-nephritis in cases of scarlatina which die with symptoms of anuria and uræmic poisoning, where the kidneys do not show any marked changes. Klein remarks "a very curious fact is the deposit of lime matter in the epithelium and lumen of urinary tubes, first of cortex, then also of pyramids, at an early stage of scarlatina, when the kidney otherwise shows only very slight change."

The structures of the *fauces* are the seat of various degrees of inflammation in scarlet fever, which may terminate in destructive lesions; and Klein has described peculiar changes in the following lymphatic structures, namely, the lymphatic follicles at the root of the tongue and pharynx, those in the mucous membrane lining the posterior surface of the epiglottis, those forming the tonsils, those in the mucous membrane of the larynx and trachea, and those in the submaxillary lymphatic glands. In the glands of the neck he found fibrinous thrombi in the veins, in addition to other changes. In severe cases the tissues of the neck become involved in inflammatory œdema, and suppuration or even

* See "Pathological Transactions," Vol. XXVIII., p. 30.

gangrene may ensue. Streptococci are abundant in the glands, and in the areas of suppuration.

The *liver* is slightly enlarged; while the *spleen* is not uncommonly decidedly increased in size and hyperæmic. Klein has described various changes in these organs; and in the liver he noticed particularly indications of acute interstitial hepatitis. The *mesenteric glands* may also be enlarged and congested. A catarrhal state of the gastro-intestinal mucous membrane is not uncommon.

Various morbid conditions of the nature of complications or sequelæ are frequently met with in fatal cases of scarlatina, such as serous inflammations, bronchitis or pneumonia, endocarditis, or suppurative affections. Myocardial changes are not frequent. In malignant forms of the disease the blood remains fluid and coagulable, while petechiae are noticed in connection with the serous membranes; the lungs are the seat of hypostatic congestion and œdema; and the liver and spleen may be soft and pulpy.

Symptoms.—Scarlatina presents several well-marked clinical varieties, but a typical case will first be described—*Scarlatina Simplex*.

1. *Incubation-stage.*—The *period of incubation* lasts in most cases from two to five days; it may not be longer than a few hours, or may extend to six or eight days. Generally there are no symptoms, but the patient may be somewhat ailing, languid, and restless.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—The onset of scarlatina is usually definite. Chilliness is felt, but not severe rigors, followed by pyrexia, the temperature generally rising rapidly to 104° or more. The skin feels hot and dry, the face is flushed, and the pulse is very frequent. Sorethroat is complained of, and on examination the fauces is seen to be red and dry, while the neck may feel stiff, and tenderness is noticed about the jaws. Vomiting is often a prominent symptom, with much thirst, and total loss of appetite. The tongue is usually furred, and red at the tip and edges, presenting also enlarged papillæ. Pains in the back and limbs, lassitude, frontal headache, and restlessness are generally present; and there may be some nocturnal delirium. In young children scarlatina is sometimes ushered in by convulsions.

3. *Eruption-stage.*—The scarlatinal *rash* generally appears on the 2nd day, but sometimes it comes out within twelve hours, or not until the 3rd or 4th day. Its primary seat is ordinarily the neck and upper part of the chest, but it spreads rapidly to the face, as well as over the trunk and limbs. Sometimes it appears first on the legs. The eruption begins as minute bright red spots, which speedily coalesce to form more or less extensive patches, or a uniform widely-spread rash. The precise tint varies, but it is usually bright scarlet, or of a boiled lobster or raspberry hue, though it becomes darker as the case progresses. The colour is deeper in the centre of each spot, and disappears completely on pressure, returning again on removal of the pressure, being preceded by a yellowish hue. The patches are usually very distinct in the flexures of the joints. The rash is not at all elevated as a rule, but occasionally separate spots are slightly papular. It reaches its height usually about the 4th or 5th day from the commencement of the illness, and begins to fade from that to the 6th day. It has generally disappeared before the 9th or 10th day, and then desquamation sets in.

Sudamina are frequently observed if the rash is intense, especially in adults. They are seen about the neck and chest, in the axillæ or groins,

or occasionally over the whole body. The skin feels dry, and often in some parts rough, presenting the condition known as *cutis anserina*. Not unfrequently the eyelids, hands, and feet are puffy. The patient often experiences a sensation of heat or burning, and there may be much itching or tingling.

State of the throat.—There is more or less general bright redness of the fauces, with oedema and swelling. The surface is dry or covered with viscid mucus, and thick opaque secretion is often seen on the tonsils. These may be slightly ulcerated, or the seat of suppuration. There are the usual subjective symptoms of sore-throat, with pain and difficulty in swallowing. The glands about the angles of the lower jaw are enlarged and painful; and the surrounding subcutaneous tissue is sometimes oedematous. The mucous membranes lining the nose and mouth, as well as the conjunctivæ, are often red and inflamed.

The temperature usually continues to rise until the rash attains its height; then it remains stationary, and subsides as the eruption begins to fade, either by *crisis* or gradually. It ranges as a rule from 104° to 105° F. There is a slight morning remission. The pulse is frequent, and may reach 120, 130, 160, or more; it varies in its force, but is usually strong and full. It falls with the temperature.

The tongue is furred, and usually presents the so-called "strawberry" appearance, owing to the papillæ being much enlarged and red, and projecting through the fur, so that the surface may actually feel rough. As it cleans, the tongue is seen to be red, and the papillæ remain prominent, sometimes for a considerable period. Appetite is quite lost, but there is much thirst. The bowels are usually constipated. More or less headache continues; while the patient is restless and sleepless, or has slight nocturnal delirium.

The urine is febrile; uric acid and urea being usually increased. Chloride of sodium and phosphates are diminished in quantity. Albumen is often present, and sometimes blood. Renal epithelium may be visible under the microscope.

4. *Desquamation-stage.*—The symptoms subside more or less rapidly, and then the epidermis begins to be shed, this process starting where the rash first appeared, and lasting a variable period, while the amount of desquamation also differs much, being usually in proportion to the intensity of the rash, and the number of sudamina. Where the skin is thin, the epidermis comes off in minute, branny scales; in other regions it forms small patches; but where the cuticle is very thick, as over the palms and soles, it peels off in extensive pieces, sometimes forming a mould of the fingers or hand.

During this period the pulse and temperature frequently fall below the normal for some days. The urine becomes abundant and watery; and it may contain a considerable amount of renal and vesical epithelium. The throat often remains sore, and the tonsils enlarged, for some time after an attack of scarlatina.

Varieties.—Scarlatina presents striking varieties, with which it is very important to be familiar.

I. In some instances the symptoms are very trifling, the temperature not being at any time higher than 101° or 102°, and only a slight rash and sore-throat being present, which soon disappear. It is even probable that scarlatina may occur without any rash, especially in second attacks—*S. sine erupione*. Latent cases also undoubtedly occur, in which the fact that the patient has suffered from scarlet fever is only

known by cutaneous desquamation, or the development of albuminuria and dropsey.

2. *Scarlatina Anginosa*.—In this form the condition of the throat is serious, and gives rise to severe and prominent symptoms. There is extensive and deep inflammation of the tissues, the redness tending towards a dark hue, the tonsils and uvula being much swollen, and sticky mucus and secretion covering the surface, while sometimes diphtheritic-looking patches are visible, or there may be distinct diphtheria. Ulceration then often supervenes, or occasionally gangrene, which may spread extensively, and may even involve the larynx. Dangerous haemorrhage is thus liable to be caused. The glands about the jaw and the soft structures of the neck swell considerably, and may suppurate or slough to a variable extent. In some cases the salivary glands are involved. The throat is very painful, and much difficulty is experienced in opening the mouth and examining this region; while deglutition is exceedingly difficult and distressing, and fluids tend to enter the posterior nares during the act of swallowing. The breath is intensely disagreeable.

Often there is much swelling of the nasal mucous membrane, with offensive and irritating discharges from the nostrils, or blocking-up of these passages by secretion. The mouth and lips are also sore and cracked; and the tongue has a darker hue than in ordinary cases.

The rash is usually delayed in its appearance; is less marked or diffused; disposed to fade and return again; and its final departure occurs later than in ordinary cases.

The general symptoms are prone to be of a low type, this being partly due to interference with respiration, and partly to the absorption of septic matters from the throat. Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea with irritating discharges, and tympanites may result from swallowing these materials. Should a case of this kind terminate in recovery, the temperature continues high after the rash has disappeared, owing to the state of the throat.

3. *Scarlatina Maligna*.—The symptoms may assume an exceedingly adynamic or malignant type in connection with a grave state of the throat—*S. Maligna Anginosa*; and the same course of events may happen during any severe attack of scarlatina, especially if the patient has been previously in a weak or unhealthy condition. Nervous symptoms are then prominent from the first. There is much prostration, with restlessness, insomnia, and muttering delirium; followed by convulsions, stupor, or coma. The pulse is very feeble, rapid, small, and irregular; the circulation is embarrassed, as evidenced by duskiness of the face, and capillary congestion in dependent parts; while petechiae are frequently observed, and sometimes haemorrhages occur. Respiration is much hurried. The tongue becomes dry and brown.

An important class of cases of malignant scarlatina are those in which there is extreme prostration from the first, with intense nervous depression, the poison seeming to act powerfully upon the nervous system. The child becomes faint and sick, is pale and cold or almost collapsed, very restless and anxious, or delirious. The pulse is extremely rapid, weak, small, and irregular. The depression speedily increases; the face becomes very pale, livid, or mottled; and coma or convulsions set in. The breathing is quick and irregular. The skin becomes cold, or alternately hot and cold, and clammy perspirations break out. Death may take place before the eruption has time to appear; or a slight irregular rash comes out, should the child live long enough.

Several cases of this character are sometimes met with in the same family, its members being rapidly carried off one after another.

Complications and Sequelæ.—1. The most frequent and important complication in scarlatina, and the one that requires special notice, is *acute nephritis* and its consequences. It is imperative in all cases to examine the urine at frequent intervals, even for some time after apparent convalescence. There is often a certain amount of albuminuria, as in other febrile diseases, but this disappears as the fever subsides. The renal affection generally appears in the second or third week, during or after desquamation, and though exposure to cold seems to excite it in some instances, as a rule it cannot be traced to any such obvious cause. The symptoms are usually similar to those of ordinary *acute Bright's disease*. The urine becomes diminished or suppressed; is concentrated; contains more or less blood, or has a smoky tint; is highly albuminous; and presents blood-corpuscles, renal epithelium, and epithelial, blood, or granular casts under the microscope. Drowsiness sets in, beginning usually in the subcutaneous tissue, and it may spread with great rapidity, becoming more or less general, and involving the serous membranes, larynx, and lungs in some cases. More or less pyrexia is usually present, as well as vomiting, constipation, headache, and drowsiness; while there is always a danger of definite uræmic symptoms setting in. The symptoms often subside, complete recovery taking place; or a form of chronic Bright's disease remains as a sequela. In some instances the renal complication is indicated by grave changes in the urine, with acute uræmic symptoms, proving speedily fatal. In others the phenomena are very mild, and convalescence is speedily established. Sir George Johnson is of opinion that in the presence of certain casts in the urine, which he terms "exudation-cell casts," or "white-cell casts," and which he thinks may probably be made up of leucocytes, we have the means of diagnosing the existence of the glomerulo-nephritis of Klebs.

Other important complications or sequelæ which may be associated with scarlet fever include:—2. Drowsiness without albuminuria, and having no obvious cause. 3. Ulceration of the throat, either a continuation and extension of that originally present; or a new form, spreading rapidly with much sloughing, and affecting the tissues of the neck widely. Pus may then find its way into the chest; or the vessels of the neck may be opened, causing fatal haemorrhage. 4. Affections of the joints, either of a rheumatic character, generally mild, rarely severe; or local inflammation, occasionally ending in suppuration or in chronic disease. The inflammation is sometimes around, rather than in the joints; or it may be associated with the muscles. 5. Serous inflammations, which exhibit a special tendency to become purulent, especially pleurisy and pericarditis, rarely peritonitis, being usually, but not necessarily, associated with renal disease or rheumatism. 6. Laryngitis, bronchitis, or pneumonia. 7. Endocarditis, which may lead to permanent organic affections of the valves and orifices of the heart; malignant endocarditis rarely; myocarditis. 8. Affections of the ear. These are highly important, and include inflammation of the tympanum, ending in suppuration, followed by rupture of the tympanic membrane and chronic otorrhœa; inflammation or ulceration of the Eustachian tube, with subsequent closure; deafness; and rarely necrosis of the bones, which may cause meningitis, thrombosis of the lateral sinus, abscess of the brain, or facial paralysis. 9. Abscesses in various parts, as in the neck, behind the pharynx, or in

the mastoid cells, but especially in connection with lymphatic glands. 10. Cancerum oris. 11. Conjunctivitis and keratitis, with destruction of the cornea in rare instances.

Among the exceptional complications or sequelæ which have been described in scarlet fever may be mentioned chorea; convulsions with hemiplegia; mania or melancholia; progressive paralysis of the limbs, with wasting, probably due to neuritis; acute tuberculosis; and symmetrical gangrene. Occasionally the glands of the neck remain permanently enlarged, and they may attain a very great size. Scarlet fever may be complicated with other specific diseases, as diphtheria or whooping-cough.

Diagnosis.—In well-marked cases scarlet fever is easily recognized by its mode of onset, with rapid and high fever, sore-throat, vomiting, and peculiar tongue; the early development of the rash will usually clear up any doubt. Prevalence of the disease, or the fact that the patient has been exposed to infection, will help the diagnosis. In rapidly fatal cases of a malignant type it may be very difficult or impossible to recognize scarlatina. The milder types of the disease also present decided difficulties in diagnosis; and when the rash is very slight and evanescent, or altogether absent, the fact that an individual has had scarlet fever may only be known by the occurrence of marked cutaneous desquamation, or the development of symptoms of renal disease. There can be no doubt, moreover, that parents sometimes deliberately conceal their knowledge of the occurrence of mild attacks of this complaint, and thus much mischief is done. The development of a rheumatic affection may help in the diagnosis of scarlatina in a doubtful case.

The exanthemata with which scarlet fever is liable to be confounded are measles, rötheln, typhus possibly, and small-pox with an initial roseolar rash. It may be very difficult to distinguish it from diphtheria, especially when an erythematous rash appears in the latter disease. Septicaemia may also simulate scarlatina. Other conditions to be borne in mind are various acute throat-inflammations; erythema, urticaria, roseolar eruptions, or acute exfoliating dermatitis; and drug-rashes, especially those due to belladonna, quinine, and iodide of potassium.

Prognosis.—The number of deaths from scarlatina varies greatly at different periods, and in different epidemics, but the mortality from this disease is considerable every year. A careful prognosis should always be given, and full account must be taken of the possible *complications* and *sequelæ*. The complaint is most fatal among very young children; and in large towns, especially among the poorer classes. The chief circumstances which render the prognosis grave are a severe epidemic type of the disease; family predisposition to a fatal termination; great depression at an early period; very high pyrexia; typhoid symptoms at any time; late development of, or a tendency to duskiness in the eruption, especially if accompanied with petechiae or haemorrhages; prominent nervous symptoms; extensive membranous deposit, sloughing, or ulceration about the throat, haemorrhage from this part, and other dangerous local complications; laryngeal obstruction; renal inflammation and its consequences; and severe diarrhoea or vomiting. Special allusion must be made to *pregnancy* and *parturition*. The occurrence of scarlatina under these circumstances is extremely dangerous, and life may be destroyed in a few hours.

Treatment.—1. In the first place, the general measures for the prevention of infection must be thoroughly carried out in every parti-

cular in cases of scarlatina, and the patients kept strictly under observation and treatment until desquamation has entirely ceased, and all danger of the development of renal disease has passed away. Isolation or removal to a special hospital is imperative.

2. In ordinary cases little more than *general management* is required. The bowels should be acted upon occasionally; and a simple saline mixture may be administered. Barley-water, lemonade, or iced water may be given freely as a drink; and a diet of milk and beef-tea or chicken-broth allowed. Jaccoud, however, insists upon the great importance of an absolute milk-diet in scarlatina, as a preventive of nephritis. The skin should be carefully sponged with lukewarm water twice a day, different parts being exposed in succession and then dried; to the water may be added a little carbolic acid, Condy's fluid, or camphor, to act as a disinfectant. Some practitioners prefer a daily tepid bath; and others recommend that olive oil, grease, vaseline, or glycerine should be rubbed in, or carbolized oil applied, either from the first or as soon as desquamation begins. When the fever and rash have subsided, a daily warm bath should be used, the patient being well scrubbed with carbolic or other disinfectant soap. Friction with pumice stone may help desquamation.

3. A *specific* treatment for scarlatina has been recommended by Dr. Illingworth, and also spoken favourably of by others, namely, the administration of biniodide of mercury to act as a germicide. He affirms that it not only modifies the course of the disease, and prevents its worse sequelæ, but is also an efficient prophylactic. When begun on the first day of the fever, he states that it arrests it, prevents the rash developing, and rapidly cures the inflamed throat. This method has, however, been tried at the London Fever Hospital without beneficial results. Other special remedies which have been advocated in the treatment of scarlatina are carbolic acid, salicylic acid or salicylates, and oxygen, either inhaled or administered in the form of oxygenated water.

4. Some of the principal *symptoms* which may call for active interference in cases of scarlet fever will now be considered.

The *throat-symptoms* are best relieved in ordinary cases, if necessary, by sucking ice or inhaling steam. If there is much redness and swelling these measures should be steadily persisted in, or the throat may be gargled frequently with lukewarm water, if the patient is old enough to perform this act, poultices or fomentations being at the same time applied externally over the neck, or cotton-wool. It may possibly be advisable to apply a few leeches about the angles of the jaw, but very seldom. For ulceration and gangrene *antiseptic* gargles should be freely used, or if these cannot be employed, the application may be made with a brush, or in the form of spray. The best antiseptic remedies are carbolic acid, creasote, chlorate of potassium, Condy's fluid, or sulphurous acid; some prefer solution of chlorinated soda, chlorine water, dilute hydrochloric acid, common salt, peroxide of hydrogen, boro-glyceride, or tannic acid. It may be requisite to touch ulcers with nitrate of silver or its solution. Excessive secretions or discharges may be carefully removed by pieces of lint soaked in a disinfectant, which should then be immediately burnt.

If the throat is in a serious condition, it is most important to attend to *general treatment*. Nourishing food, in the form of soups, meat-extracts, milk, etc., as well as stimulants, especially port wine or brandy, must be

given more or less freely in proportion to the degree of prostration of the patient, which is often considerable in these cases. At the same time tincture of perchloride of iron should be administered in full doses— $\text{mxx-}x\text{l}$ every three or four hours, alone or combined with quinine or a mineral acid, or with chlorate of potassium. In some cases ammonia and tincture of cinchona are preferable. Carbolic acid and sulphocarbolates, creasote, hypochlorite of sodium, the hyposulphites, and other *antiseptics* have been much commended in *scarlatina anginosa*, and there is no harm in giving either of these along with the remedies just indicated. Chlorate of potassium may be allowed freely as a drink. When the nostrils are blocked up, and there is much nasal discharge, it is well to wash out the meatuses occasionally with some weak disinfectant solution, or a weak solution of nitrate of silver may be required. The ears may need similar treatment. Should there be a discharge from the conjunctivæ, the eyes should be bathed with cold water at intervals.

In actual practice it is not uncommonly exceedingly difficult to carry out the instructions just given, especially when we have to deal with young children who cannot or will not swallow; much must then depend upon the judgment, sagacity, and firmness of the practitioner, but it must be borne in mind that the only hope of recovery in a large number of this class of cases lies in free support of the patient, and if the necessary nutriment cannot be introduced into the stomach, it must be administered by enemata.

The other conditions which are likely to call for attention in scarlet fever are hyperpyrexia; adynamic symptoms; restlessness, sleeplessness, or delirium. These must be treated as in other febrile diseases.

5. One or more of the *complications* and *sequelæ* mentioned often require particular treatment in cases of scarlatina. Special allusion must be made to the management of the *renal* affection. This should be combated by free dry-cupping over the loins, or it may in some cases even be advisable to take a little blood from the renal region; the application of hot poultices over the same region, frequently changed; the employment of hot-air or vapour baths, in order to excite skin-action; purgation by means of compound jalap powder; and a plentiful supply of diluent drinks, with a simple saline mixture. When the acute symptoms have subsided, some preparation of iron is most valuable, especially the tincture of the perchloride; quinine is also a useful remedy at this time. When otitis occurs, this condition requires very careful attention, and it may be necessary to puncture the membrana tympani. Haemorrhage from the throat may prove troublesome or dangerous, and Mr. Pepper has successfully tied the common carotid artery for bleeding in connection with a post-pharyngeal abscess after scarlatina.

6. For those extremely malignant cases of scarlatina which are attended with early and severe cerebral symptoms no treatment is of much avail, for they generally prove fatal. The use of a hot mustard-bath, or cold water affusion seems likely to do most good. A blister may be applied to the nape of the neck; and stimulants administered by means of enemata.

CHAPTER VI.

RUBEOLA—MORBILLI—MEASLES.

Aetiology.—Measles is markedly infectious, especially when the eruption is out, and its contagium passes off abundantly in the exhalations of a patient, but especially in the breath, the air around being thus contaminated, though it is not very diffusible. The disease spreads rapidly in houses, or where children are collected together, as in schools. The cough in the catarrhal stage helps its dissemination. It is also conveyed by fomites, but to a much less degree than scarlatina. Children have undoubtedly taken the disease from sleeping in a bed or room previously occupied by a patient suffering from measles. Inoculation has been accomplished through the blood, serum, nasal and other secretions. Infection probably lasts from the incubation-period for at least a month, and it may be two months; but is most marked during the prodromal and eruption-stages. The time the contagium clings to fomites or rooms is uncertain. A second attack very rarely occurs.

Micrococci and other organisms have been described in cases of measles in the blood, the catarrhal exudations, the expired air, the papules and capillary vessels of the skin, and in the liver and lungs. No definite contagium has, however, yet been detected.

Children are most frequently affected with measles, but those only a few months old often escape during an epidemic, while no age is exempt. The complaint is more frequent in adults than scarlatina. Epidemics are more liable to occur during cold and damp seasons.

Anatomical Characters.—The chief anatomical change in measles is the specific eruption, but this often disappears to a great extent after death. It is due to hyperæmia of the skin, with some inflammatory exudation; and in certain forms minute extravasations of blood occur. The conjunctivæ, and the mucous lining of the nasal cavities, their communicating sinuses, the throat, and the air-passages, are in a state of congestion or catarrh. More or less bronchial catarrh is invariably present in measles; but in fatal cases there is usually extensive bronchitis, of the capillary variety, associated with collapse of the lungs and lobular pneumonia. Laryngitis is not unfrequent. The bronchial glands are swollen. The gastro-intestinal mucous membrane may be congested. Peyer's glands are not uncommonly swollen, and may reach a considerable size. The spleen is moderately enlarged. The blood is dark and fluid in fatal cases.

Symptoms.—1. *Incubation-stage.*—This generally lasts from eight to twelve days, but may possibly extend to eighteen days. By inoculation measles has been produced in seven days. As a rule there are no symptoms during this stage.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—Measles usually sets in somewhat acutely, with chilliness, actual rigors, or occasionally convulsions. Then follow the ordinary symptoms of pyrexia, but these are not of great severity in the majority of cases, though the temperature rises rapidly to 101° or 102°, and now and then even to 104°. A child attacked with the complaint is languid, irritable, and restless, or may be somewhat delirious at night. The most striking symptoms, however, are those of catarrh or

coryza. The eyes are injected and watery, with a feeling of soreness and sandiness, and a dislike for light, the eyelids being also red and tumefied. There is a constant, irritating, watery discharge from the nose, with frequent sneezing; and occasionally epistaxis takes place. A sense of tightness, fulness, or actual pain is experienced over the frontal sinuses. The throat is generally slightly sore and red, or may even exhibit intense punctiform redness; while the voice is somewhat husky or hoarse; but these symptoms are not prominent. Catarrh of the air-passages is indicated by a sense of tightness and uneasiness over the chest; frequent cough; quick breathing; and wheezing or dry rhonchial sounds, with rhonchial fremitus. Some degree of epigastric pain and tenderness is sometimes complained of, or even general abdominal pains, and there may be much vomiting. The bowels are usually constipated, but may be relaxed.

3. *Eruption-stage*.—The rash of measles makes its appearance in most cases on the 4th day, but may come out from the 1st to the 7th or 8th day. It begins usually on the face, especially on the forehead, by the roots of the hair, on the bridge of the nose, on the chin, and on the back of the neck, then spreads to the trunk, and lastly to the limbs, appearing in these parts in almost distinct crops on three successive days. Occasionally it is first evident on the limbs. Commencing as small scattered red spots, these enlarge to the size of a millet-seed or a small pea, and become perceptibly raised and papular, especially on the face, eventually being flattened at the summit. They are distinct to the touch, smooth, and sometimes have a firm feel. Collie states that with the spots come out very minute pimplies, occupying chiefly the bridge of the nose and the chin.

The eruption tends to form lines, spirals, or patches of a crescentic, semilunar, or irregularly-circular shape. In some cases it is so abundant and confluent as to form extensive, irregular, though well-defined patches, almost uniformly red, but with elevations upon them; in others it is only sparsely scattered, especially on the limbs, where Collie states that it does not usually become confluent; or it may be limited to the face and upper part of the chest. The tint varies, and is described as rose-coloured, dark-raspberry, lilac, and yellowish-red in different cases; it generally tends to be dusky. It is more marked and brighter on exposed parts, such as the hands and face. Pressure removes the colour temporarily, leaving a slight yellowish hue. If the rash is very intense, minute vesicles may form; and small petechial extravasations are sometimes observed. It goes on increasing for about twelve hours, being at its height on the 5th or 6th day of the disease in ordinary cases, and then declines in the same order in which it appeared, the elevations subsiding, and only a reddish or coppery discolouration remaining, the latter continuing for some time. The cuticle desquamates slightly, separating in the form of fine powdery scales, especially on the face and where the eruption has been considerable; rarely does it come off in patches. Occasionally the eruption suddenly recedes. During the height of the rash the face and hands are often somewhat puffy and swollen. Frequently much itching is felt, and the skin is irritable.

The catarrhal symptoms generally increase during the progress of the eruption. The conjunctivæ and mucous membranes of the nose, mouth, and throat are more or less inflamed, and various discharges escape, or ulceration is occasionally produced. Deafness is now and then noticed, owing to the Eustachian tube being involved. The tongue is much

furred, usually moist, and presents a few enlarged and red papillæ; it cleans in patches; sometimes it tends to be dry and brown. Vomiting and diarrhoea may be prominent and persistent symptoms, when the alimentary canal is involved. The lymphatic glands of the neck are often enlarged. The chest-symptoms and physical signs indicate more or less extensive bronchial catarrh, the cough becoming moist, with muco-purulent expectoration; and rhonchal fremitus, with various rhonchal sounds, being detected on examination.

The urine is febrile, and abundant lithates are deposited on standing; it has a peculiar odour; and not uncommonly there is slight albuminuria, or sometimes blood is passed. The sweat and breath are said to have a peculiar smell in measles.

Convalescence generally begins in cases of measles about the end of the first week, and is usually complete by the end of the second week.

Temperature.—This increases up to the height of the rash, especially during the later period, there being, according to Dr. E. Long Fox, a fall before the commencement of the eruption-stage. It does not usually reach above 103°. Morning remissions may be slight, marked, or absent. Defervescence takes place from the fourth to the tenth day, as a rule by rapid *crisis*, the temperature falling 2°, 3°, 4°, or even 5° in 12 hours. After one or two slight evening exacerbations the temperature becomes normal, or falls even below this point for a few days. In rare instances it rises to 108° or 109°. It must be remembered that the temperature may be much influenced by complications in measles.

Varieties.—The varieties of measles are:—1. *Morbilli mitiores, vulgares, or simplices.*—This is the ordinary form already described. 2. *Sine eruptione.*—Sometimes there is fever and catarrh, but no eruption appears. 3. *Sine catarrho.*—There may be no catarrh, and it is said that occasionally even pyrexia is absent, so that the disease is merely indicated by its eruption. 4. *Graviores, malignant, black, or hemorrhagic.*—This form may depend upon the epidemic character of the disease; or upon an unhealthy state of the patient. At first the symptoms may be mild, or they assume a virulent aspect from the outset. The malignant variety of measles is characterized by typhoid symptoms; severe nervous disturbance; and irregularities in the eruption. There is great depression and prostration, with a very weak, frequent, and irregular pulse, cold extremities, a dry and brown tongue, and sordes on the teeth and lips. Twitchings, picking at the bed-clothes, convulsions, delirium of a low and muttering character, or stupor, are generally observed at a very early period. The eruption comes out only slightly and irregularly, often receding and reappearing. It is distinctly livid, purple, or black, being mixed with abundant petechiae, especially about the legs; and sometimes haemorrhages from mucous surfaces take place. Extensive bronchitis, pulmonary congestion, or pneumonia are very liable to set in. Death usually occurs from asthenia, coma, or asphyxia.

Complications and Sequelæ.—These include:—1. Affections of the respiratory organs more especially, which may become dangerous during, or subsequent to, the attack of measles. They comprise acute laryngitis, catarrhal or croupous; chronic laryngitis; capillary bronchitis; chronic bronchial catarrh; lobular collapse; croupous pneumonia rarely; catarrhal or broncho-pneumonia; pleurisy; very rarely gangrene of the lung. 2. Conditions of the nervous system, as convulsions; hemiplegia very rarely, paraplegia, or more general paralysis, attributed to

disseminated myelitis or polyneuritis; or false disseminated sclerosis, as recently described by Dr. Dawson Williams. 3. Acute tuberculosis or phthisis. An attack of measles is believed to predispose to tubercular disease, which may affect the lungs or the bronchial glands, or take the form of acute miliary tuberculosis. 4. Inflammatory affections in connection with the eyes, nose, or ears, tending to become chronic, and being accompanied with discharges; these may ultimately lead to serious consequences in exceptional cases, such as destruction of the eye, permanent deafness, cerebral meningitis or abscess, or pyæmia. 5. Inflammation of the tonsils, or of the lymphatic glands of the neck and other parts, which may remain permanently enlarged. 6. Severe diarrhoea, which may become chronic; or occasionally dysentery. 7. Acute Bright's disease rarely. 8. Severe stomatitis or cancrum oris in exceptional instances, in children lowered by bad living or previous disease; or gangrene of the labia in the same subjects. 9. Diphtheria.

Diagnosis.—Measles has chiefly to be diagnosed from scarlet fever and rötheln. From the former it is usually distinguished at first by the lesser degree of severity of the invasion-stage, and its longer duration, with the prominence of coryza and other catarrhal symptoms, rather than sore-throat. The later appearance of the rash, with its mode of arrangement, papular character, and colour, seldom leave much doubt. The diagnosis from rötheln will be pointed out in relation to that disease. Other complaints or conditions with which measles may possibly be confounded are small-pox in the early stage of its eruption, and at the commencement of haemorrhagic cases; typhus fever; influenza at first; roseola; syphilitic exanthem; flea-bites; and certain drug-eruptions, especially that due to copaiba. Proper consideration should prevent any such mistake, especially if a doubtful case is watched for a short time.

Prognosis.—As a rule the immediate prognosis of measles is favourable, but the number of deaths varies much in different epidemics, the average being about 10 to 12 per cent. The mortality is greater in very young children and in elderly persons; in large towns; in cold climates; during cold and damp seasons; or during extremely hot seasons in hot climates. It is also increased by unfavourable hygienic conditions, bad feeding, and debility or impaired health from any cause. The supervention of measles in cases of acute or prolonged chronic disease is often very serious; it is also highly dangerous in scurvy and allied conditions. The chief sources of danger in measles are the pulmonary complications. The malignant variety is necessarily exceedingly grave, and should recovery take place convalescence is much delayed. Sequelæ are very liable to follow measles, and these must be borne in mind when giving a prognosis; while it may be a long time before the general health is fully re-established.

Treatment.—Measles must be dealt with as an infectious disease, but it is not necessary to be so strict as in the case of scarlatina. In many instances little or no active treatment is required, and the patients only need to be properly nursed through their illness. Decidedly the principal indication in the majority of instances is to ward off any dangerous complications in connection with the respiratory organs. This is best carried out by keeping the patient in bed, in a room maintained at a uniform temperature of from 60° to 65° F., according to the time of the year, into which steam from a boiling kettle may be admitted. All exposure to draughts must be carefully avoided until the entire course of the disease has been run through, and the bronchitic symptoms have

subsided. The patient must remain quiet, and it is well to darken the room somewhat. Only a liquid diet should be given, but it need not be too low. The bowels must be kept regularly open by the aid of mild aperients. A mixture containing solution of acetate of ammonium, ipecacuanha wine, and compound tincture of camphor if the cough is troublesome, may be administered. A hard cough may be relieved by applying glycerine or glycerine of borax to the throat. If there is much oppression and a sense of tightness about the chest, a sinapism or hot poultices or fomentations should be applied. Thirst is to be alleviated by sucking ice, or by means of small quantities of acid drinks. If there is much heat and discomfort about the skin, careful sponging with tepid water may be resorted to, only a limited surface being exposed at the same time. Should bronchitis become extensive, tending to involve the smaller tubes, it is best treated at first by giving ipecacuanha wine in moderate doses; avoiding all opiates; encouraging cough; and applying linseed-meal poultices or sinapisms freely over the chest. Local removal of blood to a small extent may now and then be indicated in plethoric children. In most of these cases, however, *stimulant* remedies are called for, such as carbonate of ammonium, spirit of chloroform, and squill, with more or less wine or brandy, and abundance of liquid nourishment. If signs of suffocation appear, mustard baths or warm baths with cold douching should be resorted to, as well as artificial respiration. All forms of pneumonia require a stimulant plan of treatment in cases of measles.

Laryngeal symptoms should be treated by the constant application of heat and moisture externally over the larynx; the assiduous employment of inhalations of steam; and other suitable measures. Other complications must be attended to as they arise.

Any tendency towards the *typhoid condition* must be combated by the free use of stimulants and nourishing food. If the eruption suddenly recedes, it is recommended to try to bring it out again by means of various baths, and by the administration of warm drinks internally, but this must be done with caution.

During *convalescence* from measles it is necessary to exercise much care for some time; to guard against colds; and, in order to restore the health fully, it is often advisable to give quinine, iron, and cod-liver oil, and to send the patient for change of air to a suitable climate; cold bathing, especially with salt water, may also be useful. The clothing must be warm, and flannel should be worn next the skin. Sequelæ not uncommonly require attention after measles.

CHAPTER VII.

RUBELLA—RÖTHELN—RUBEOLA NOTHA—EPIDEMIC ROSEOLA—GERMAN MEASLES.

Aetiology.—Rötheln has been regarded either as a mild form of measles or scarlatina; or as a combination of these two diseases, and hence termed *hybrid measles* or *hybrid scurlatina*. The general opinion, however, is that it is quite distinct from both these complaints, though resembling them in many of its features, and that it is undoubtedly an independent *acute specific fever*, propagated by a specific contagium. Dr.

Robert Liveing believes that rötheln is far less contagious than either measles or scarlatina, but that it is more distinctly epidemic, at least in this country, even than ordinary measles, and certainly more so than scarlatina. The contagium probably comes off in the breath and cutaneous exhalations. The disease only occurs once usually. Adults who have had measles may be attacked with rötheln, as well as children.

Symptoms.—Rötheln is almost invariably a very mild disease, but in exceptional instances it assumes a serious type, as in two epidemics observed by Dr. Cheadle, in which the symptoms were of a severe and even malignant character; and I have met with cases of a similar kind.

1. *Incubation-stage.*—The incubation-period of rötheln may range from ten to twenty-one days. There are no symptoms.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—Rötheln may be ushered in with slight shiverings, pains about the body and limbs, and pyrexia: while sore-throat is almost always complained of, which differs from that of scarlatina in being much less severe, there being only slight injection, or spots and streaks of redness, and perhaps a little swelling of the tonsils; the local inflammation very seldom goes on to ulceration. The lymphatic glands at the back of the neck are frequently enlarged; and sometimes those in other parts of the body. In many cases, but not nearly so frequently, signs of catarrh are present, such as are observed in measles. The intensity of the symptoms is generally comparatively mild, and not uncommonly they are quite insignificant; though, on the other hand, they may be rather severe, the temperature running up to 103° , or even higher in some instances; usually it reaches its acme on the second day.

3. *Eruption-stage.*—The rash of rötheln comes out generally on the 2nd day, or even within the first 24 hours; it may be delayed, however, until the 3rd or 4th day. Its amount is usually in proportion to the intensity of the early symptoms. It appears more or less simultaneously over the body, but rather earlier on the face and chest, and is less marked on the limbs than elsewhere. At first the rash resembles that of measles, consisting of a number of minute red papules, which become grouped in patches, but these are more irregular and less distinctly crescentic than the patches observed in measles. The colour is also rather brighter than in this disease, and it is deeper at the centre than towards the circumference of the patches; a brownish hue has been described. In some instances the groups coalesce either partially or completely, so that the skin is uniformly red over a greater or less extent of surface, and then the rash becomes more like that of scarlatina. The eruption lasts longer than that of either measles or scarlatina, its duration being never less than four or five days, and it may continue for eight or ten days. Slight desquamation of the cuticle follows, but this is never a prominent feature, being merely of a furfuraceous character. When the rash appears, the general symptoms abate considerably in most cases, but the sore-throat persists, being often the last symptom complained of, and continuing sometimes for several days after the rash has disappeared.

Rötheln is unattended by any particular complications or sequelæ as a rule. Slight albuminuria is not uncommon, but it soon passes away. In rare instances acute renal disease with dropsy sets in; and I believe that I have met with a case in which a fatal result has thus been brought about.

Diagnosis.—Rötheln is distinguished from measles by the shorter duration of the invasion-stage; milder symptoms and more sore-throat

than catarrh usually; and the distribution, characters, and course of the rash. The earlier enlargement of the glands of the neck is also said to be a point of distinction. As a rule, the eruption is quite different from that of scarlatina. For a full discussion of the diagnosis of rötheln, the reader is referred to a recent valuable contribution on the subject by Dr. Clement Dukes, of Rugby.

Prognosis.—This is highly favourable, death from rötheln being an exceedingly rare event, while recovery is usually speedy and complete.

Treatment.—All that is needed is to keep the patient in bed; to give a liquid diet; and to administer an aperient if necessary, with some simple saline mixture. Should the throat be very sore, it may be gargled with milk and warm water. Of course the treatment must be modified in severe cases, according to the symptoms present.

CHAPTER VIII.

VARIOLA—SMALL-POX.

Aetiology.—The *specific poison* which generates small-pox is very easily conveyed from one individual to another by inoculation, contact, and infection through the atmosphere. It exists in the blood, in the contents of the eruption, and in the substance of the dried scabs, being also given off abundantly in the various secretions, excretions, and exhalations, especially in those emanating from the lungs and skin. Inoculation can be accomplished through the blood, as well as most effectually through the contents of the eruption, and the dried scabs which follow the pustules. Small-pox is one of the most infectious diseases, and its contagium can be conveyed to considerable distances through the air, especially from small-pox hospitals. It is exceedingly dangerous to be in the vicinity of a patient suffering from this disease, even in its mildest form, as this may originate the most virulent type. The fluid obtained from the small-pox eruption can be kept for an indefinite time between two pieces of glass, or on ivory points, and still retains its contagious properties. The poison also clings tenaciously to fomites, especially to clothes and other articles of a rough texture, and retains its vitality for a long period; therefore it is highly dangerous to go into a room which has been occupied by a small-pox patient until this has been most thoroughly disinfected; while clothing, bedding, and other articles will certainly propagate the disease unless treated in a similar manner. There can be no doubt but that the disease has been not uncommonly conveyed by the agency of cabs. I formerly met with several instances in which persons suffering from early or mild variola came as hospital out-patients, and it is highly probable that the affection is sometimes thus disseminated. Further, the complaint may be so slight that those suffering from it attend to their daily avocations during the entire course of the attack, and thus carry infection far and wide.

In cases of small-pox micrococci have been found in the pustules and neighbouring lymphatics of the skin, and are said to take a prominent part in developing the eruption, being also present in connection with certain secondary lesions which occur in internal organs. These have

been regarded as the contagium, but on no adequate grounds, and nothing definite is known as to its real nature.

The safer conclusion as regards the time during which infection lasts in small-pox is to consider it as at any rate beginning with the earliest appearance of symptoms, and continuing for some time after the eruption has disappeared; it has even been supposed that the complaint may be conveyed in the incubation-stage. The danger is greatest during the period of suppuration. It is very important to bear in mind that the bodies of those who have died from small-pox may undoubtedly convey infection. A second attack is only rarely met with, but even a third may occur.

Predisposing causes.—Variola may be met with at any age. It attacks most commonly and most severely those who have either not been vaccinated at all, or only inefficiently. Collie writes: "Efficient vaccination destroys entirely the susceptibility of the individual to small-pox. In no case have I met with an efficiently vaccinated small-pox nurse, unprotected by a previous attack, who contracted small-pox, however much exposed to it." Constitution and race seem to influence the occurrence and characters of the disease. Some individuals resist all infection, and cannot even be inoculated. The negro and dark races generally suffer severely. Dread of infection is said to act as a predisposing cause of small-pox. The lower classes suffer most; but general insanitary conditions are said to have no influence over the spread of the disease, except in so far as these may favour the action of the cause of over-crowding (Collie).

Anatomical Characters.—The eruption of small-pox constitutes one of its most prominent anatomical characters, and it is the result of a circumscribed inflammation of the skin, extending more or less deeply. There is first congestion, which some believe begins in the follicles of the skin. Then the papillæ enlarge, and the cells of the rete mucosum increase, thus giving rise to papules. A layer of soft whitish exudation is described as forming between the cuticle and the true skin, due to proliferation of the cells of the rete mucosum. Next a clear fluid collects beneath the superficial layer of the epidermis, a vesicle being thus formed, and subsequently pus is produced. The pustules either rupture, or dry up and shrivel. The true skin may be extensively involved and destroyed.

Mucous surfaces are not uncommonly affected in small-pox, especially the conjunctivæ, and the mucous membranes of the mouth, throat, and nose. Occasionally the whole extent of the respiratory or alimentary mucous tract is involved. There may be merely signs of inflammation; or the specific eruption may be observed in certain parts. Collie states that it is found on the mucous membrane of the cheeks, on the tongue towards the tip and edges, on the hard and soft palate, on the tonsils, on the epiglottis, in the larynx and trachea, occasionally in the bronchi as far as the third division, and in the œsophagus, but not in the stomach or intestine. It has been described as occurring even on serous surfaces. Various organs are often inflamed in small-pox, as well as serous membranes, especially the pleura, and the exudations resulting therefrom are liable to be of a low type, or of a sanguineous nature. Weigert observed that early in the suppurative stage of small-pox cylindrical masses are seen under the microscope in various organs, particularly the liver, spleen, lymphatic glands, and kidneys, consisting entirely of capillaries plugged with micrococcii, which have found their way from the eruption into the

circulation, probably through the lymphatics. Afterwards, although the organs appear quite healthy to the naked eye, each plug becomes surrounded by a zone of altered tissue, the nuclei of the cells being wasted. Ultimately infiltration with leucocytes may take place, and a circumscribed miliary abscess is formed, with a surrounding zone of congestion. This, however, probably depends upon the quantity and progress of the cutaneous suppuration, and on the degree in which the circulation becomes impregnated with septic material (Burdon-Sanderson). The heart, kidneys, liver, and voluntary muscles generally are found to be very soft in fatal cases of small-pox, being the seat of acute degeneration. The spleen is usually enlarged and pulpy. In children Peyer's patches are swollen and congested, but the patches nearest the valve are unaffected (Collie). Petechiae and haemorrhages in various parts are met with in certain forms of small-pox. Different lesions of the nature of complications may be found at the *post-mortem* examination. Putrefaction proceeds rapidly after death.

Symptoms.—1. *Incubation-stage.*—After inoculation of the small-pox virus the first symptoms appear in seven days. When communicated by infection, the incubation-period is almost always twelve days, but it may be a day or two longer or shorter. Fifteen days is its extreme duration. During this period there may be some feeling of general illness, but no definite symptoms are noticed.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—Small-pox usually commences suddenly, with chills or repeated and well-marked rigors, followed by pyrexial symptoms, constituting the *primary fever*. The temperature rises rapidly, and may reach 104° or 106° before the eruption appears. Along with the usual symptoms of fever, which are generally severe, there are others of a very significant character, namely, a feeling of marked uneasiness and fulness or actual pain in the epigastrium, with nausea and more or less obstinate vomiting; pains over the body generally, but especially in the middle of the back, opposite the lower dorsal, lumbar, and sacral regions, this pain not being aggravated by movement; and considerable debility and sense of illness, with tremulousness of the muscles. Even in mild cases it is often remarkable how prominent these symptoms are. Much headache is usually complained of, while the face is flushed, and the carotids throb. In some cases the disease sets in with marked nervous symptoms, such as restlessness, delirium, somnolence, stupor, coma, or convulsions, the last-mentioned being particularly frequent in children. Occasionally there is considerable sore-throat or coryza. The severity of the symptoms at this period is generally in proportion to that of the subsequent stages.

3. *Eruption-stage.*—For some years particular attention has been called to the fact that in some epidemics of small-pox the eruption characteristic of this disease is often preceded by "prodromal exanthems." They are met with very irregularly in different epidemics, and the percentage of cases in which they occur is also very variable. These exanthems appear from one to five days before the small-pox eruption, and are described as presenting two varieties, the *diffuse scarlatiniform*, and the *macular* or *measly*, generally accompanied with petechiae; they may occur singly or together. In exceptional instances an *urticarial* rash has been seen. Their extent is very variable; the rashes without petechiae may cover large areas, or even the entire body, presenting a strong resemblance to scarlet-fever or measles, but in other instances they are limited to certain regions, and this is usually the case

with regard to the petechiae. The scarlet rash is most marked and most frequent on the lower abdomen, where it forms a triangle, having for its base a line drawn through the umbilicus, and its apex the symphysis pubis; and on the upper and inner parts of the thighs, the sides, the axillæ, and the inner surface of the arms. It is occasionally accompanied by a few papules. The measly rash is most common on the chest, arms, and legs (Collie). These initial rashes may be useful in the diagnosis of cases of small-pox before the true eruption appears. Usually they disappear as this comes out, but sometimes they persist more or less.

The characteristic eruption of small-pox appears generally during the 3rd day, but may come out on the 2nd, or be delayed until the beginning of the 4th. The face is almost invariably its primary seat, especially the forehead, but it may also appear about the wrists and hips. It spreads over the body and limbs in from one to two days, and is described as forming three successive crops. The number of spots or "pocks" varies from just a few to thousands, but as a rule from 100 to 300 are present. On the face they are more abundant than elsewhere. They are either distinct or run together in different ways, thus giving rise to certain varieties which will presently be noticed.

Characters.—If a typical individual pock be observed, it will be found to pass through the following course. It starts as a minute bright red spot, a little raised; enlarging and becoming more elevated, it forms a distinct papule on the 2nd or 3rd day, circular, well-defined, flattened at the top, and having a peculiar solid, hard, dense feel, compared to that of a shot or mustard-seed under the skin, which is very characteristic. This soon changes into a vesicle, a little clear thin fluid collecting in the centre, under the epidermis. About the 5th day a depression forms on the top of the pock, which thus becomes umbilicated; at the same time the contents gradually assume a purulent character, this change beginning at the circumference, the central part still for some time remaining vesicular, and this vesicular portion is stated to be distinctly separated from the surrounding pus by a transverse partition, so that the two spaces may be severally emptied of their contents. At this time a distinct ring of inflammatory redness appears around each pock. The pus increases in quantity, and after a while the umbilication disappears, the pock becoming either globular or pointed at the top; while the colour changes to yellow. Its interior is divided into a variable number of areolæ or compartments, sometimes regularly arranged and of equal size, but usually irregular and unequal, the partitions being formed by the white substance already mentioned. With regard to the cause of the umbilication, it has been attributed to the passage of a gland-duct or hair-follicle through the pock; or to a central organic connection between the epidermis and cutis, which finally gives way.

About the 8th day the pustule is at its height, having arrived at the end of the stage of *maturity*. Then it undergoes retrograde changes. From the 8th to the 11th day it either bursts, its contents being discharged and drying up, so as to form a yellowish-brown scab; or it shrivels and dries up without rupturing. The scab usually separates from the 11th to the 14th day, leaving a stain of a reddish-brown colour, which remains for a variable period; sometimes scabs continue for a long time adherent, particularly about the nose and on the scalp. When they fall off the face and the body generally, there is fine, scaly desquamation (Collie). If the cutis is at all destroyed, a pit

is left of greater or less depth, which ultimately becomes of a dead-white colour.

The course of small-pox eruption just described is materially modified by circumstances which will be alluded to presently. It is generally completed on the face before other parts of the body; and is influenced by the region which the eruption occupies. On the soles of the feet particularly, on the palms of the hands and under the nails, where the epidermis is very thick, the pocks may be seen as yellow-brown spots, which cannot discharge their contents until the epidermis has come off, and this often takes a long time (Collie).

The appearances and symptoms associated with the eruption of small-pox will vary according to its amount. If it is at all considerable, there is tumefaction and puffiness of the scalp, face, neck, and other parts, accompanied with a sensation of throbbing and tightness. The eyelids may be so swollen as to be completely closed. The skin is generally of a deep red colour between the pocks, and feels more or less sore and tender. There is almost always most uncomfortable itching, which induces patients to scratch themselves, thus causing much soreness and ultimate disfigurement. A characteristic, unpleasant, sickly odour is exhaled from the body.

When the small-pox eruption involves the mucous membrane of the mouth and throat, it is accompanied with soreness, salivation, and dysphagia. There is often a discharge from the nostrils, or these passages are blocked up. Sometimes the larynx, trachea, and bronchi are involved, as indicated by hoarseness, cough, and more or less dyspnoea. The urino-genital mucous membrane is often affected, causing much pain and soreness, with dysuria, and sometimes haematuria. Diarrhoea is not an uncommon symptom in cases of small-pox.

The conjunctiva is frequently in an irritable and inflamed condition, and hence a burning sensation is experienced about the eyelids, accompanied with inability to bear the light, and increased secretion of tears. Occasionally a pustule forms on the ocular conjunctiva, which may lead to ulceration and destruction of the cornea.

Secondary fever.—When the eruption of small-pox appears, the primary fever abates rapidly, so that the temperature falls nearly or quite to the normal in moderate cases, the patient feeling as if convalescent. When suppuration commences, however, *secondary* or *sympathetic fever* sets in, depending upon and being in proportion to the severity of the morbid process in the skin, and subsiding as this subsides. It often begins with rigors or chills. The pulse becomes frequent; and there is much thirst, with dryness of the tongue and mouth. The temperature rises to 104° or 105° in a typical case, reaching its maximum when suppuration is at its height, but it may be considerably above this. Defervescence is gradual, and there may be another elevation of temperature when desiccation occurs.

The urine is febrile so long as the pyrexial condition lasts; sometimes it contains a little albumen; or in cases of a low type more or less blood may be mixed with it.

Varieties.—Cases of small-pox present very wide differences in their severity and characters under different circumstances, and many varieties are described. I propose to follow in the main the classification adopted by Dr. Collie, which is founded on much practical experience.

1. **NORMAL FORMS.**—These consist of cases in which the characteristic eruption appears.

a. Discrete.—In this variety the pocks are distinct, and do not run into each other, though some of them may touch. They are never numerous, and there may be but a few scattered about here and there. The symptoms are usually mild, but their severity depends upon the amount of eruption. As a rule but slight pitting remains.

b. Confluent.—This is a serious form, in which the eruption is abundant, and the pocks run into each other. The symptoms of the invasion-stage are severe, accompanied with great thirst, and marked restlessness. The eruption is often preceded by prodromal rashes. Very numerous papules appear, small and but slightly prominent, arranged in groups or irregularly, and they quickly spread over the whole body. Occasionally the eruption is confluent in the papular stage, more frequently in the vesicular, but most commonly it only becomes so in the pustular stage, about the 8th day. The pustules present variable appearances, but they are often extensive and flat, and there may be large bullæ filled with pus. The face appears sometimes “as if covered with one bladder of matter.” Frequently there is no distinct red areola around each pustule, but the general surface of the skin is of a dark red colour. Extensive crusts form after desiccation, often of a dark colour and soft, which do not separate for some time. Confluence is usually most evident and most serious about the scalp, face, and neck; the face may ultimately be covered with a continuous crust, like a mask. The true skin is destroyed more or less, and extensive pits, scars, or seams are left, which tend to contract, thus causing great disfigurement. The eruption is generally abundant on the mucous surfaces, giving rise to the various symptoms already mentioned, but it is very rare on the conjunctivæ.

Secondary fever does not stand out so distinctly in the confluent as in the discrete variety of small-pox, but at the same time there is a more or less decided remission, followed by increase in the pyrexial symptoms from the 8th to the 11th day, accompanied with great thirst, extreme restlessness, and delirium, which is sometimes violent; adynamic symptoms are very apt to set in, with intense nervous depression. Complications and sequelæ are also very liable to arise, many of them of a serious and dangerous character. This form is exceedingly fatal, and when recovery takes place convalescence is generally very slow. Occasionally, however, cases of confluent small-pox are met with which run a remarkably favourable course.

Collie mentions as a special form *confluent vesicular small-pox*, which has also been described as *malignant*, in which “the vesicles instead of swelling and becoming pustular remain flat, the face assuming a dirty-white, pasty appearance. There is great exhaustion, and the patient dies from the seventh to the ninth day.”

2. HÆMORRHAGIC FORMS.—The characteristic feature of these forms of small-pox is hæmorrhage into the vesicles, the pustules, the skin, beneath the skin, and from the mucous membranes. Collie recognizes the following sub-divisions:—

a. Variola Hæmorragica Pustulosa.—Here hæmorrhage occurs in the pustular stage, accompanied with vomiting and expectoration of blood, sometimes having a horrible stink, hæmaturia, or melæna, or possibly all these varieties. If the hæmorrhage be extensive, in particular if it be largely in the skin, the case will be fatal. There is usually more or less mental confusion or delirium.

b. Variola Hæmorrhagica Vesiculosa.—This differs from the former in that the eruption does not proceed to pustulation. It is almost invariably fatal from the 6th to the 8th day.

c. Variola Hæmorrhagica Papulosa.—This variety is characterized by hæmorrhage into the skin, of the most varied form, with usually a sparse eruption of papules, but they may be very numerous. It may assume the form of distinct purpuric spots, with large inky black spots on a deep scarlatinoid efflorescence which covers the body. In the lower abdomen they are usually more marked than in other parts. Sometimes the extravasations unite into a confluent mass. There is hæmorrhage into the conjunctivæ, and from the mucous membranes. Death takes place usually from the 5th to the 6th, or in rare cases the 7th day. The mind is usually clear to the last.

d. Variola Nigra vel Purpura Hæmorrhagica (Black Small-Pox).—In this, the severest form, the hæmorrhage appears as livid and inky black spots, which are sometimes small and crowded, sometimes large and widely separated, looking like bruises. In addition to other hæmorrhages, blood is effused into the conjunctiva, which sometimes forms a clot round the pupil—a condition found in no other acute disease. Other characteristic features are a complete absence of the normal eruption, a low temperature, and mental clearness up to death, which takes place from the 3rd to the 5th day.

3. MODIFIED FORMS.—These consist of cases in which the susceptibility of the individual has been altered by art or by small-pox. There are three divisions, namely :—

a. Inoculated small-pox.—When the contagium of variola is directly introduced by inoculation, the course of events is usually as follows:—On the 2nd day a slight discolouration or pimple is observed at the seat of inoculation, and on the 4th or 5th day this is somewhat inflamed and irritable, a small vesicle forming, which enlarges, becomes surrounded by an inflamed areola, and forms a pustule about the 7th or 8th day. From this time to the 9th day the ordinary primary fever sets in, preceded by rigors, with swelling and pain in the axillary glands; and on the 11th day the general eruption appears, the original vesicle having in the meantime reached its height, after which it undergoes retrograde changes. The important fact in connection with the inoculated disease is, that in its entire course it tends to be exceedingly mild as a rule, the number of pustules being very limited. Occasionally, however, small-pox thus originated assumes a serious or even fatal form.

b. Small-pox after Vaccination.—There can be no question as to the fact of variola being either prevented or greatly modified in the large majority of cases by efficient vaccination and re-vaccination; and the modification is in proportion to the adequacy and proximity of the vaccination. “A good vaccination up to ten years of age is protection against all but the mildest and most harmless small-pox, but as this age is passed the primary vaccination appears to lose its efficiency, and in proportion to the advance of age unmodified small-pox appears in primarily well-vaccinated persons” (Collie). It may even assume the hæmorrhagic and fatal form, but this only occurs almost invariably after puberty. Moreover, while re-vaccination is generally a complete protection against variola, there are exceptions to this rule, and very rarely the complaint is fatal in its severest form. The modifications usually observed after vaccination or re-vaccination, when small-pox does occur, may be thus indicated,

according to Collie :—(i.) *Variola sine eruptione*. Here there are only the invasion-symptoms, and primary fever of short duration, without any subsequent eruption. It is seen in well-vaccinated children under ten. (ii.) *Variola papulosa*. This is the most common form after good vaccination, and is chiefly met with in well-vaccinated young adults. The premonitory symptoms may be very severe. The papules come out usually on the 3rd day, vary in number from one or two to hundreds, but towards the 5th day dry up and disappear. (iii.) *Variola vesiculosa*. The complaint becomes less modified with the advance of age in primary well-vaccinated individuals, and the eruption passes into the vesicular stage. Some of the vesicles discharge their contents and form slight scabs, which fall off in the usual way; in others the fluid appears to be absorbed, the vesicles dry up, and desquamation takes place. Sometimes the disease seems to abate just when the pustular stage is reached. The varieties of small-pox eruption which have been named *horn-pock*, *wart-pock*, and *crystalline pock* are modifications produced by vaccination.

c. *Small-pox modified by small-pox*.—A second attack is occasionally met with, usually more or less modified, but exceptionally fatal.

Complications and Sequelæ.—These are very frequent, especially in connection with the more severe forms of small-pox, the more important being:—1. Affections of the respiratory organs, namely, low forms of broncho-pneumonia; rarely lobar pneumonia; pleurisy, rapid in its progress and very dangerous; bronchitis, or inflammation of the general respiratory tract, with the formation of much thick purulent material; laryngitis; occasionally œdema glottidis. 2. Affections of the alimentary canal, such as severe glossitis, pseudodiphtheritic angina, parotitis, gastritis, enteritis, profuse diarrhoea. 3. Rarely endocarditis, pericarditis, or more frequently myocarditis, which may be associated with endarteritis of the coronary arteries. Various local inflammations and abscesses, namely, over parts that are pressed upon; in the subcutaneous cellular tissue; or in the deep structures of the limbs: along with which may be included boils, which often come out in large numbers during convalescence, and carbuncles. The pus is generally very unhealthy, and sanguous. 5. Gangrene of certain parts, such as the scrotum or labia, or of the extremities, particularly of the tips of the fingers and toes. 6. Erysipelas, especially of the head and face; ecthyma, rupia, eczema, or acne. 7. Pyæmia or septicæmia. 8. Affections of the organs of sense, which are not uncommonly very destructive, especially ophthalmia; ulceration of the cornea; otitis with purulent discharge, ending in caries of the bones; and destructive inflammation of the nose. 9. Urinary complications, including cystitis; retention and subsequent incontinence of urine; renal congestion, with albuminuria and casts; acute nephritis rarely; or abscess of the kidney. 10. Inflammation of the ovaries or testicles. 11. Peritonitis in exceptional cases. 12. Nervous affections, chiefly including convulsions, aphasia and hemiplegia, due to encephalitis; perineuritis, either limited to the pharynx, or multiple, the latter being supposed to account for the condition termed pseudo-tabes or *ataxie-variolique*; diffuse myelitis; epilepsy; and mania or dementia. 13. Arthritis, or acute necrosis of bones.

Diagnosis.—It is extremely important, for obvious reasons, to diagnose a case of small-pox at as early a period as possible. Should there be an epidemic of the disease, the occurrence of a marked and acute illness, with rigors, rapid and considerable pyrexia, prominent

headache, general pains with severe pain in the back, vomiting, and a pronounced feeling of weakness and illness, would be very suggestive, and ought to lead to careful watching for the eruption. Under any circumstances such a combination of phenomena should excite suspicion, and especially if the individual had been exposed to infection. The prodromal rashes are very helpful in diagnosis during this stage, but there is a danger of confounding them with the eruptions of measles, scarlatina, or typhus fever, when they are haemorrhagic. In the early period also it may be impossible to distinguish small-pox from influenza or impending erysipelas; and the malignant haemorrhagic form has been mistaken for cerebro-spinal fever. In such cases the patient may die before any eruption appears, but as a rule small shotty papules can be felt about the wrists, or at the roots of the hairs.

When the eruption appears, there is as a rule no difficulty in recognizing small-pox in a well-marked case. At this time, however, it may again be confounded with measles at first; and later on with varicella, pustular syphilides, acne, or rarely glanders in the pustular form. The distinctions from varicella will be pointed out under that disease. The history of the case; concomitant symptoms; and the several points characteristic of the eruption of variola, should seldom leave much room for doubt. It is the milder and modified forms of the complaint that are likely to give trouble, and even those who have had very extensive experience of small-pox occasionally make mistakes. When a slight case of small-pox comes under observation for the first time in the eruption-stage, those who have little or no experience of the disease may be much puzzled to determine its nature. Enquiry may even then, perhaps, elicit a distinct history of marked symptoms characteristic of the invasion-stage, and the initial rashes may be present.

Prognosis.—Small-pox is a very grave disease, the proportion of deaths being exceedingly high, averaging about 1 in 3 cases. Death may take place at any period of its course, but occurs most frequently between the 8th and 13th days, and especially on the 11th. The usual causes of death are high fever; apnoea; blood-poisoning; pyæmia or septicæmia; direct loss of blood; or, at a later period, asthenia.

The chief circumstances which influence the prognosis of small-pox are:—1. *Age.* The complaint is very fatal in children under five years of age; and in persons who have passed middle life. From 10 to 15 is the most favourable period. 2. The *hygienic conditions* surrounding the patient, the prognosis being worse if these are unfavourable. 3. The *previous habits and health* of the patient, intemperance, debility from any cause, or any organic disease being injurious. 4. Whether *satisfactory vaccination* or *re-vaccination* has been accomplished or not. 5. The *nature and intensity of the symptoms*. Among the signs of evil import are recognized a very high temperature; persistent and excessive lumbar pain; severe vomiting after the appearance of the eruption; as well as all symptoms of an adynamic or malignant character, with marked nervous depression and haemorrhages. 6. The *amount and characters of the eruption*. The gravity of a case is in proportion to the confluence of the eruption, and to the rapidity of its extension. Other dangerous signs in connection with the eruption are imperfect development of the pustules, or their sudden subsidence; lividity, haemorrhages, or extensive petechiae; the occurrence of gangrene; or pallor with absence of swelling between the pustules. 7. The *complications and sequelæ*. These

materially influence the prognosis, and especially the complications referable to the respiratory and nervous systems. Convalescence is often much delayed by complications and sequelæ. Pregnancy is regarded as a peculiarly dangerous condition if associated with small-pox; abortion usually results, and the termination of the case is stated to be generally fatal. Collie, however, affirms that many pregnant women recover. In some instances the eruption is observed over the foetus. 8. *Epidemic constitution.* Some epidemics are comparatively mild, others very grave.

Treatment.—The indications for the treatment of small-pox may be laid down as follows:—1. To pay strict attention to all hygienic conditions; as well as to diet. 2. To prevent a copious eruption, and endeavour to cause this to pass through its different stages as mildly as possible, checking extensive suppuration and destruction of the skin, especially about the face. 3. To subdue excessive pyrexia. 4. To sustain the strength of the patient during the process of suppuration. 5. To treat symptoms, which are often distressing. 6. To guard as much as possible against complications, and treat them as they arise. 7. To promote convalescence, and attend to sequelæ.

1. *General management.*—Even in the mildest cases patients suffering from small-pox should be strictly confined to one room, and isolated as far as possible. The best plan is to send them to a special hospital, but this is not always practicable. Free ventilation is essential, and the apartment should be large and moderately cool, all carpets and curtains being removed, as well as excessive bedclothes, due care being taken to protect the patient against draughts. Cleanliness is also most important, the linen being frequently changed, and at once subjected to the action of some disinfecting agent. In the early period a low diet is called for as a rule, with plenty of cooling drinks or ice, as well as fruits, especially roasted apples, while stimulants must be avoided. Later on it is generally necessary to alter the diet gradually, and to have recourse to beef-tea, soups, jellies, and such aliments, as well as to alcoholic stimulants, the nature and quantity of these being regulated by the circumstances of each individual case. In all cases of a low type, and especially when there is much suppuration, considerable support is needed in the way of nutritious food and stimulants, and if there are indications that the patient will have to struggle through a long process of suppuration, it is important not to allow the strength to become too much reduced, but to employ supporting measures carefully from the first.

2. The management of the *eruption* has always naturally attracted considerable attention. At one time it was the custom to keep patients suffering from small-pox very warm, and to give them hot drinks, with the view of "bringing out the eruption," but at the present day the objects aimed at are to limit this as much as possible, and to modify its course, so as to prevent the dangers of excessive suppuration, and the subsequent pitting and disfigurement. The skin must be sponged freely with lukewarm water, to which may be added some *antiseptic*, such as carbolic acid, Condyl's fluid, chlorine water, or sulphurous acid. It has been recommended to apply carbolic oil freely over the surface, but this proceeding is of questionable propriety. Some consider that the eruption is best checked by keeping the patient in a dark room, but this practice has been condemned by others. The puncturing of each pock as soon

as pus forms has also been advocated. Many *local applications* have been made use of in order to prevent pitting, the chief of which are nitrate of silver, either applied in the solid form to each pustule, or brushed over the surface as a solution; mercurial plaster or ointment; solution of corrosive sublimate (gr. ij ad $\frac{3}{4}$ vi); sulphur ointment; tincture of iodine; gutta percha dissolved in chloroform; and carbolic acid, either alone or mixed with glycerine or oil. Most of these are very irritating, and require much care in their employment. Dr. Sampson advocates touching each pustule with carbolic acid, and then applying a mixture of this substance with oil of thyme. All the pustules should not be touched at one time, but they should be attacked on successive occasions. Other plans are to cauterize each pock with carbolic acid on the 1st or 2nd day of the vesicular stage; or to open the vesicles when at their height, and dab the surface with carbolic lotion. Mr. Marson recommends waiting until the pustules have discharged their contents, and then applying either olive oil, alone or mixed with lime-water or calamine; a mixture of glycerine and rose-water; or cold cream and oxide of zinc. He warns against allowing the scabs to dry, and to remain for some time on the nose and other parts of the face. Of course the patient must be prevented as much as possible from scratching the skin. The irritation excited by the acrid secretions is best relieved by frequent sponging, and by the free use of some absorbent powder, such as flour, starch, toilet powder, or calamine. Collie advises that olive oil be applied to relieve the itching, or, still better, vaseline, which will facilitate the removal of scabs from the face; and that some deodorant powder, such as sanitas powder, should be sprinkled about and over the patient's face and head, to destroy the disagreeable odour. If there is much eruption on the scalp, it is necessary at an early period to cut the hair very short, or even to shave the head.

3. In most cases of small-pox *pyrexia* can be kept within due limits by sponging the skin; and by the administration of cooling drinks, with a *saline* mixture. A brisk *purgative* is advisable at the outset, and the bowels should be kept freely open afterwards. If there is a tendency to hyperpyrexia, quinine (gr. iii-iv every three or four hours) seems to answer best in this disease, but other antipyretics or cold applications may be required; antifebrin has been specially recommended.

4. During the process of *suppuration* it is necessary to give *tonics*, such as quinine, iron, or mineral acids with decoction of bark. If there are adynamic symptoms, these remedies must be given freely, along with ammonia, camphor, and other *diffusible stimulants*; as well as plenty of nourishing food, and wine or brandy. The patient should be kept in bed until suppuration under the crusts has ceased, and the skin has healed.

5. The chief *symptoms* which may require to be treated in cases of small-pox are vomiting or diarrhoea; restlessness, sleeplessness, or delirium; soreness of the throat; and haemorrhages. It is recommended to give morphine for one or two nights, in order to get the patient into the habit of sleeping. Caution must be exercised in the administration of *narcotics*, should there be much bronchial catarrh or salivation. Delirium in small-pox is frequently an indication for the free use of stimulants; and benefit is sometimes derived from the use of the warm bath. Collie objects to any mechanical restraint, but advises that an attendant should be present in addition to the nurse, and that the patient should be per-

mitted to leave his bed and put on his clothes, walk about his room, or sit over the fire, should he persist in doing so. In maniacal delirium chloroform may be administered. Sore-throat is best relieved by the use of some mild gargle, or by sucking ice frequently, or taking a little currant jelly. Haemorrhages call for the administration of full doses of tincture of perchloride of iron, tannic or gallic acid, turpentine, or ergot, some of which may be given in combination. The catheter must be employed should the urine be retained.

6. The *complications* which it is specially necessary to guard against are those connected with the respiratory organs and the eyes, as well as various abscesses. Inflammatory affections usually call for a stimulating plan of treatment, and rarely is any removal of blood required; occasionally it may be advisable to apply a few leeches. If there is much bronchitis, the patient must be encouraged to cough frequently. Laryngitis may call for tracheotomy, if merely to relieve suffering. All abscesses should be speedily opened. Should there be any purulent discharge, particular attention is required as regards cleanliness. A water-bed may be necessary in severe cases of small-pox.

In order to prevent complications connected with the eyes, it is recommended to apply cold water constantly, or cold compresses; or to use compresses of a weak solution of corrosive sublimate (gr. i ad 3 vi). Should either of these complications arise, a supporting treatment is indicated. A blister over the temple often does good if there is much conjunctivitis. Marson recommends the use of poppy-fomentations with alum. It may be necessary to touch an ulcer of the cornea with a pointed stick or a solution of nitrate of silver. A green shade should be worn over the eyes.

7. During *convalescence* good diet and *tonics* are required, and cod-liver oil is often very useful. As soon as the patient is in a fit condition, warm baths should be employed, carbolic soap being freely used. Collie states that the patient may be considered free from danger when the crusts and scabs have disappeared, and not less than six baths have been given, at intervals of two days. Sequelæ must be attended to, if they should occur; and certain cutaneous sequelæ may require special treatment.

8. *Special treatment.*—Numerous special methods for the treatment of small-pox have been brought forward, but the only one that calls for separate notice is the treatment by *antiseptics*. On the whole the balance of opinion seems to be in favour of the internal administration of these remedies, but there is decidedly no unanimity of opinion as to which antiseptic answers best. Different observers advocate the administration of carbolic acid, sulpho-carbolates, sulphurous acid, sulphites, or hypochlorites. At the same time *tonics*, such as quinine or iron, may be given. Salicylate of sodium has also been specially advocated in small-pox.

9. *Preventive treatment.*—The rules for preventing the spread of contagious diseases should be rigidly carried out in the case of small-pox. Patients who have suffered from this disease must not be allowed to mingle with healthy persons until they are quite convalescent, and have been completely disinfected. Rooms which have been occupied by such patients, as well as clothing worn by them, must also be thoroughly cleansed and disinfected. Any articles used for cleansing the skin, such as pieces of sponge or rags, should be immediately destroyed. The great prophylactic against small-pox, however, is *satisfactory vaccination*.

and *re-vaccination*. *Inoculation with variolous virus* has been practised, with the view of producing a mild type of the disease, but this is only justifiable under certain rare circumstances, if ever, namely, when small-pox breaks out among a number of people in a confined space, and no vaccine-matter can be obtained, as, for instance, on board ship out at sea.

CHAPTER IX.

VACCINIA—COW-POX.

VACCINIA is an acute specific disease, originating from a *specific virus*. In the cow, especially the milch-cow, it occurs as a natural malady, either sporadic or epizootic, running a definite course, and attended with the formation of a vesicular eruption near the udder and on the body of the teats. Prof. Crookshank believes that he has discovered the "true Jennerian cow-pox" in cattle in this country. In the human being it is only induced by direct inoculation, either of the matter taken from the cow or calf, or of that conveyed from one individual to another. Many believe that vaccinia is identical in its nature with variola, only modified by its occurrence in another animal.

Methods of Vaccination, and Precautions to be Observed.—The great majority of practitioners vaccinate with "humanized lymph," that is, with vaccine originally derived from cows, but afterwards transferred from one child to another. Another method is to inoculate cows with human small-pox, and then to inoculate human beings with lymph thus produced, and transfer it from man to man. There seems to be positive proof that the lymph does not deteriorate or lose its protective power after passing through any number of individuals. The vaccine should, if possible, be inoculated when fresh, being inserted directly from arm to arm. Often, however, this is not practicable, and the lymph has therefore to be collected in glass tubes, on ivory points, or on little plates of glass, and used subsequently. It has been recommended to mix the lymph in a watch-glass with twice its quantity of pure glycerine and water, and to preserve this mixture in capillary tubes, which is said to be equally effective. The matter should always be taken from a perfectly healthy child; from thoroughly characteristic vesicles; and on the 8th day. Several punctures are to be made on the summit of each vesicle, so that no blood shall be mixed with the lymph, and all pressure must be avoided, only such fluid as escapes spontaneously being made use of. If dried lymph is employed for vaccinating, it must be rendered liquid by mixing it with a very minute quantity of water. Inoculation with "calf-lymph" is now practised by many, the humanized cow-pox being inoculated into calves and then transmitted from calf to calf, or from the calf to man, but not from man to man. The advantages claimed are that the results are quite as certain in infants, and more so in re-vaccinated adults; that the period of immunity is as long or longer; and that there is no risk of accidental inoculation of other diseases.

Vaccination ought to be performed when children are very young, that is, from six weeks to three months old, provided other circumstances are favourable. It is most important that they should be in good health at the time, and especially that they are free from skin-affections, and from acute disorders, such as diarrhoea. If small-pox is in the neighbourhood, however, vaccination ought to be performed under any circumstances, and, at the earliest age, even immediately after birth, should there be risk of infection. If children are weakly, and there is no great urgency, vaccination may be delayed for a year or two. Of course no subject is too old to be vaccinated, if the operation has not previously been satisfactorily done. When vaccination proves unsuccessful, it must be repeated after a short interval.

The part selected for inoculation is the outside of the arm, over the insertion of the deltoid muscle, the skin covering this region being made tense. The chief methods of performing the operation, which should always be carried out thoroughly and carefully, are as follows:—1. By a single or double puncture with a sharp lancet well charged with lymph, the instrument being introduced obliquely under the cuticle into the cutis, so as to make a valvular aperture; it should be left in for a few seconds, and during its removal the seat of puncture must be compressed. 2. By making a number of minute superficial punctures, or "tattooing," as it is termed, and then applying the lymph with the flat surface of the lancet. 3. By first rubbing in the lymph, then tearing up the cuticle with the lancet over a surface equal to about the area of a sixpenny piece, and finally rubbing in more lymph. Two such patches are sufficient. 4. By scratching the cuticle, and thus producing superficial scarification, the lymph being then applied. Some employ single long scratches, distant half an inch to an inch from each other; the best plan, however, is to make a number of fine parallel scratches over a small area, and others may be made across these. Scarifiers have been invented for this purpose, but the ordinary lancet answers very well. 5. By abrasion of the cuticle with the edge of the lancet, which is used as an eraser is employed to remove blots from paper. 6. By vesication, liquor ammoniae being applied, and then the cuticle rubbed off, and the vaccine matter applied.

When the surface over which vaccination is performed is small, as in the case of puncture or limited scarification, it is necessary to inoculate in at least five points in the same arm at distances of about half an inch apart, or in three places on each arm.

Revived lymph may either be inserted directly by means of the lancet; or, if it is on ivory points, these may be introduced into punctures, or rubbed on scarified surfaces.

Phenomena following Vaccination.—At the end of the 2nd or beginning of the 3rd day, little papular elevations are visible over the points of inoculation, with slight redness around. The elevation and redness increase, and by the 5th or 6th day distinct vesicles form. These are round or oval, bluish-white, raised at the margin and depressed in the centre. At the close of the 7th or beginning of the 8th day a circular inflamed areola forms around each vesicle. The latter continues to enlarge during the 8th day, when it is in its most perfect state, being full, tense, rounded and much raised at the margin, and presenting a pearly colour and lustre, with an appearance of translucency. The contents are clear and slightly viscid, but minute active particles are visible under high powers of the microscope, supposed to be micrococci.

The areola continues to extend for a couple of days, reaching a diameter of from one to three inches, and being accompanied with more or less induration and swelling; sometimes small vesicles form upon it. On the 10th or 11th day it begins to fade, and at the same time the contents of the vesicle become opaque, while it gradually dries up and becomes brown in the centre, by the 14th or 15th day a hard reddish-brown scab being formed. This darkens in colour, shrivels, and falls off from the 21st to the 25th day, leaving a permanent scar. A typical cicatrix ought to be circular, white, not less than one-third of an inch in diameter, depressed, with minute pits or foveolæ over its base. Sometimes radiations from the centre are observed.

The appearances and course just described may be modified by various circumstances. After some of the methods of vaccination the vesicles are compound or in crops. In adults they do not usually present thoroughly typical characters, on account of the structure of the skin; while their course is often retarded, and the areola is more diffused. In some cases an entirely irregular and spurious form of eruption is met with. This irregularity is generally due either to improper lymph having been used, to the child being in an unhealthy condition, or to mechanical irritation at the seat of inoculation; but occasionally it cannot be thus explained.

Many irregularities are observed when the lymph is taken immediately from the calf. "Papulation is deferred till the 7th, 8th, 9th, or 10th day, and the areola is not complete till from the 11th to the 14th or 16th day, being also harder, and it is said to revive and decline, continuing to exhibit a brick-red or purplish hue while the hardness remains. The vesicles are usually not more developed than those produced by ordinary lymph. Desiccation is prolonged, and the crust is often retained till the 4th or 5th week."

Certain local and constitutional symptoms usually accompany the development of the vaccine vesicles. Itching, heat, tension, and pain are experienced in the arm at the time of maturation, with a feeling of stiffness and difficulty in movement. Occasionally erythema or erysipelas breaks out; or the vesicles may ulcerate or slough. The glands in the axilla are often enlarged and tender, especially in adults. There is no primary fever, but a symptomatic fever is set up during the process of maturation, and it is said that the temperature may reach as high as 104° . At this time the child is fretful and restless, and the alimentary canal is often deranged. In rare instances severe or even dangerous symptoms supervene, especially in weakly children. A general rash is sometimes observed, of a roseolar, lichenous, or vesicular character, which does not usually last beyond a week. These eruptions are more common after vaccination direct from the cow.

Re-vaccination.—It is now regarded as essential that re-vaccination should be performed after puberty. Some recommend that the operation should be performed every seven years, but this appears quite unnecessary, and one efficient re-vaccination may be considered as usually affording absolute and perfect protection. The same precautions and care are required as in the case of primary vaccination. Fainting has been noticed as a frequent occurrence during the performance of re-vaccination.

Results of Re-vaccination.—In some cases no effect can be produced by re-vaccination, especially in children. On the other hand, now and

then a perfectly typical course is observed, chiefly in adults. Usually the progress and characters of the eruption are much modified. It appears earlier, and reaches its height by the 5th or 6th day; being either papular, or in the form of an acuminated vesicle, with an indurated, diffused, and irregular areola. A small scab forms by the 8th day, which soon falls off. There is generally much local irritation; and constitutional symptoms are usually conspicuously more marked than in primary vaccination. Erysipelas is liable to occur; and occasionally fatal septicaemia or pyæmia has been set up. I have known a patient sink rapidly after re-vaccination, without any obvious cause. The local and general symptoms are likely to be more severe in an adult when calf lymph is used.

Effects of Vaccination.—There cannot be the slightest doubt in the mind of any unprejudiced observer with regard to the powerfully protective influence exercised by vaccination against the ravages of small-pox. In a large proportion of cases, if vaccination has been thoroughly and efficiently performed, and especially after re-vaccination, absolute and complete protection against this malady is established. But even when it is not entirely prevented, the disease almost invariably manifests itself only in a slight and modified form, is rarely attended with any danger, and does not leave behind the hideous disfigurement which it so often produces if allowed to proceed unchecked. Epidemics of small-pox have been much less frequent and severe since the introduction of the practice of vaccination, and this result has been in direct proportion to the efficiency of the measures which have been put in force to ensure its general and successful performance. This has been observed in every part of the world, and amongst all races. It is very important to bear in mind, that in proportion to the number and typical characters of the vaccination-marks will this immunity from small-pox be the more certain.

One of the main objections against vaccination is that certain affections are thus transmitted to children, especially cutaneous diseases, tubercle, and syphilis. There is no reliable evidence that this happens to any appreciable extent, but it appears certain that syphilis has been thus conveyed in rare instances, and in order to guard against the mere possibility of this untoward event, it is necessary to pay strict attention to the precautions already alluded to, and especially to see that the vaccine-lymph employed is taken from a perfectly healthy child, or from the calf.

Treatment.—All that is generally required after vaccination is to protect the arm from irritation, and to prevent the vesicles from being scratched. The arm should be left entirely out of the sleeve. If there is much subsequent inflammation, wet lint, lead-lotion, or cream may be applied; or the part may be covered with finely-powdered starch.

During the pyrexial condition it is well to keep the child indoors; and to give some mild *aperient*, if required, such as a teaspoonful of castor-oil. Unusual complications, such as erysipelas, may call for special treatment, and these are particularly to be borne in mind when re-vaccination has been performed.

CHAPTER X.

VARICELLA—CHICKEN-POX.

Etiology.—Varicella has been supposed to be merely a modified form of variola, but the evidence is conclusive that they are perfectly distinct diseases. It is decidedly an infectious complaint, having a *specific contagium*, and it may be transmitted either with or without direct contact. It is doubtful whether it can be inoculated, but probably not. Occasionally this affection assumes an epidemic form. A second attack is very rarely met with. Varicella is only observed in children as a rule, especially towards the fourth year, but now and then it affects young or adult females. Micrococci have been found in the contents of the eruption.

Symptoms.—1. *Incubation-stage.*—The ordinary duration of the *period of incubation* in varicella is from ten to fourteen days, but it may extend to two and a half weeks. There are no symptoms.

2. *Invasion-stage.*—Frequently this stage is absent, the first symptoms being simultaneous with the appearance of the eruption. In other cases this is preceded for twenty-four to thirty-six hours by slight pyrexia, with headache, lassitude, and sometimes a slight cough.

3. *Eruption-stage.*—The eruption of varicella is rarely delayed beyond 24 to 36 hours at the latest, and it is said that a scarlatinal rash occasionally precedes its development. At first there are but a few spots, but fresh crops appear during four or five nights, often in considerable numbers, and they may continue to come out for ten or twelve days. The spots are quite discrete as a rule, but occasionally a few become confluent. They are first seen usually on the body, especially about and between the shoulders, and over the chest, but there are many exceptions to this rule (Collie). Afterwards they extend to the limbs, while the scalp is often much affected, but the face is generally only slightly involved, though the eruption is sometimes abundant here. Some authors have described the eruption as being vesicular from the first. In most cases, however, it begins as bright red spots, slightly papular, not at all hard, and disappearing on pressure. Within a few hours these become vesicular, a clear fluid collecting under the epidermis. The vesicles quickly gain a large size, are round or oval, ill-defined, translucent, glistening, and neither umbilicated nor divided into spaces, so that when punctured they collapse completely. There is no inflammatory areola. The appearance is described as being in some instances "as if the patient had been subjected to a shower of scalding water." In about twenty-four hours the contents of the vesicles become slightly and uniformly opalescent, and a faint red areola appears. About the third day a few of the vesicles may have a pustular appearance, and sometimes a small number of pustules are seen; but regarding the eruption as a whole, pustulation forms an incident rather than an essential feature of its progress (Collie). Each vesicle either ruptures or dries up from the third to the fifth day, a small scab extending rapidly from the centre towards the margin. This is generally thin and crumbly, coming away in particles, but

occasionally a thick coherent crust is formed. It separates in about four or five days usually. As the skin is not deeply involved or destroyed, only a slight redness is left, which soon disappears, and there is no pitting as a rule; in exceptional instances, however, distinct pits are left, which are round or elliptical, smooth, and shining. Owing to the development of successive crops, vesicles are seen side by side in different stages of their progress. The only subjective sensation which attends the eruption of chicken-pox is that of itching, which may be considerable. A faint peculiar odour is said to be given off, but this is certainly not constant. About the end of the second day a few vesicles may be seen on the sides of the tongue, on the lips, cheeks, or palate, and sometimes upon the mucous membrane of the genitals (Collie). In delicate, and especially tubercular children, gangrene occurs exceptionally about the vesicles of chicken-pox. Hæmorrhagic varicella, with cutaneous ecchymoses, and bleeding from mucous surfaces, has also been described.

The general symptoms are very slight in the great majority of cases of chicken-pox, there being only a little feverishness, if any. Sometimes there are rather severe exacerbations of fever during the night. Catarrh is frequently present, and may prove dangerous in weakly children, if the bronchi should become extensively implicated. In some cases the patient remains in an unsatisfactory state of health for some time after an attack of varicella. Nephritis, and infantile hemiplegia, are possible complications or sequelæ.

Diagnosis.—Small-pox is the only disease with which varicella is likely to be confounded. The mode of onset; slight symptoms; and earlier appearance of the eruption, with its different distribution, characters, and course, ought as a rule to make diagnosis of varicella clear. The absence of the prodromal rashes which are met with in small-pox may assist the diagnosis in doubtful cases.

Prognosis.—Death never occurs as the result of varicella, and therefore the prognosis is highly satisfactory.

Treatment.—Nothing is required as a rule in varicella but to keep the patient quiet; to give a simple and mild diet; and to see that the bowels are freely opened. Children must be prevented from scratching themselves, and if there is much irritation, vaseline or a soothing lotion may be applied. Catarrh must be attended to if present; and should there be much fever, a saline mixture is useful. Quinine may be administered during convalescence.

CHAPTER XI.

ERYSIPelas—THE ROSE—ST. ANTHONY'S FIRE.

Etiology.—Apart from the *traumatic* and *puerperal* varieties of erysipelas, there is a so-called *idiopathic* form, which occurs in ordinary practice, and may be regarded as an *acute specific disease*. There is ample evidence to prove that it is infectious, especially when a number of persons are collected together, as in hospitals. Sometimes erysipelas assumes an epidemic form. The infective agent is given off into the atmosphere, and may likewise be conveyed by individuals or fomites, as well as by direct contact or inoculation. There is reason to believe,

further, that erysipelas may originate certain allied diseases, such as puerperal fever or hospital gangrene, and *vice versa*.

The presence of micrococci in the affected tissues in cases of erysipelas has long been recognized. They grow in chains and singly, plugging the lymphatics and lymph-spaces, and invading the cellular elements. Probably a few enter the blood-stream, but experiments seem to prove that they are not able to multiply there. Fehleisen isolated and cultivated an organism which he named *streptococcus erysipelatis*, for which he claims special characters, and which he has found capable of producing the disease by inoculation in the human subject, and in certain other animals. This organism, however, closely resembles the *streptococcus pyogenes*, and many observers maintain that they are identical. There seems to be no doubt that micrococci are the infective agents in erysipelas, but whether there is one specific organism is a matter of doubt. When suppuration occurs, it is due to the microbes which usually set up this condition. The general symptoms associated with erysipelas are attributed to absorption of the products of the development and growth of the organisms in the tissues.

Many cases of erysipelas are met with in which there is no obvious source of infection. Not unfrequently no definite *exciting cause* can be discovered, while in some instances the complaint is attributed to local exposure; cold or heat; general exposure to cold and wet; very slight injury; irritation of bad teeth; errors in diet, especially the consumption of shell-fish and such articles; and violent mental emotion. Some maintain that there is always some slight injury or abrasion; and that the causes mentioned only aid the action of the infective agents upon the system. The epidemic occurrence of erysipelas cannot, as a rule, be explained.

Among the most important *predisposing causes* of erysipelas are:—
1. Age, the disease being most common in newly-born infants, and in persons from twenty to forty years old. 2. The female sex, especially during menstruation. 3. Individual and family predisposition. 4. The occurrence of previous attacks, erysipelas differing from most other acute specific fevers in this respect. It has been found that inoculation cannot be effected for a short time after an attack of erysipelas, but the immunity is only of brief duration. 5. Certain conditions of the system, namely, plethora; the condition produced by intemperance or debilitating diseases, as well as that associated with gout or renal disease; and any low febrile state. 6. Certain local conditions, such as various forms of injury; or the presence of dropsy in a part. 7. A warm season.

Anatomical Characters.—Erysipelas is characterized by a diffuse and spreading inflammation of the skin, the subcutaneous cellular tissue being also generally involved, and sometimes the deeper structures. At first there is hyperæmic redness, varying in tint, followed by vesication of the skin, and by serous infiltration of the subjacent areolar tissue, which causes more or less swelling. In severe cases pus may form under the cuticle, in the subcutaneous tissue, or in the deep tissues. There is but little tendency to limitation of the inflammatory process by organized lymph; while any pus which is formed is liable to be of a low type. Occasionally erysipelas terminates in ulceration or gangrene, especially when the tissues affected are in a low state of vitality, as, for instance, when they are the seat of dropsy. The neighbouring lymphatic glands and vessels are always affected; while the veins leading from the

erysipelatous part are also inflamed in many cases, and may contain pus. Micrococci are most abundant in the zone of spreading inflammation; and in the unaffected tissues beyond the inflamed margin they are described as carrying on an active warfare with the phagocytes. They rapidly break down and disappear after the inflammatory condition has been established. The tissue-elements become somewhat swollen, and may show degenerative changes, but they do not actually soften or liquefy unless suppuration takes place.

In fatal cases of erysipelas the blood is often dark and liquid, and does not coagulate firmly. The various organs are congested, especially the lungs. The small vessels of the lungs and head frequently contain pus. Minute emboli, composed of white corpuscles or of albuminoid particles, have been found by Bastian and others in the small vessels of the grey matter of the brain. Different complications may be met with at the *post-mortem* examination.

The mucous and serous tissues may be the seat of erysipelatous inflammation, as well as the cutaneous structures.

Symptoms.—After an *incubation-period*, which is said to range generally between ten and fourteen days, but which may extend to three weeks, an attack of idiopathic erysipelas is in most cases, but not invariably, ushered in by *premonitory symptoms* of a general character. A feeling of illness is experienced, with general uneasiness or muscular pains, disturbance of the digestive organs, sore-throat, headache, restlessness, and other signs of nervous disorder, with more or less pyrexia, which may be considerable. Some degree of shivering or chilliness may be felt at the outset, but usually no marked rigors are experienced until the local inflammation is about being, or has actually developed. These symptoms may last from a few hours to four or five days before the characteristic signs of erysipelas appear, but generally the latter are evident within two or three days. Epistaxis occasionally occurs at the period of invasion.

The *local symptoms* of erysipelas are as follows:—At first there is a feeling of heat, irritation, and tightness in the affected part; the skin is tender to the touch; and a stinging or smarting sensation is noticed. Soon the surface becomes red, swollen, firm, tense, and shining; at the same time all the painful sensations being aggravated; while there is increased local heat. Sometimes the swelling precedes the redness.

Erysipelatous inflammation starts from one spot, and generally extends principally in a particular direction, but it sometimes spreads in all directions equally. There is a well-marked boundary-line between the advancing inflammation and the healthy skin, as shown by the difference in colour, and by the abrupt termination of the swelling, but only a gradual transition is observed at the border at which the process is subsiding.

The hue of the redness varies, but it tends to become darker as the case progresses. The swelling is much greater where abundant loose cellular tissue exists, and is then often irregular in form and unequal in consistence, while the surface pits on pressure. In structures which are tense, unyielding, and closely attached, such as those of the scalp, the sensations are far more painful than in lax tissues.

In slight cases the inflammation subsides, being followed by desquamation of the cuticle; far more commonly, however, cutaneous vesicles or blebs of various sizes form, which contain a yellowish serum, and in serious cases large irregular bullæ or bladders appear. These burst and

discharge their contents, often leaving crusts, which on separating may disclose superficial ulceration. The cuticle always peels off extensively afterwards. Occasionally signs of more or less suppuration, ulceration, or moist gangrene are observed ; and these processes may lead to great destruction of tissues.

The seat and extent of erysipelatous inflammation vary in different cases. Idiopathic erysipelas is most common about the *head and face*, and it generally begins about the nose, ear, angle of the mouth, lower eyelid, or cheek. Dr. Russell Reynolds has observed that it usually starts at the point where the skin is undergoing transition into a mucous membrane. The erysipelas tends to spread rapidly, so that the whole face, scalp, and neck may become speedily affected, and great swelling is produced, the features being obliterated, the eyelids closed, and the nostrils blocked up, while deafness is often complained of. Not unfrequently abscesses form, especially in the cheeks or eyelids. The inflammation is apt to extend to the mouth and fauces, and may even reach the larynx. There is also a possible danger of the supervention of meningitis and thrombosis of the lateral sinus, by the extension of the inflammation inwards through a foramen.

In some instances the limbs are affected, especially the legs, and now and then the trunk. I have met with two cases of erysipelas involving the whole of both legs, as a complication of acute rheumatism. Some local irritation not uncommonly determines the locality of an erysipelatous inflammation.

The time taken by erysipelatous inflammation in running its course varies, but the redness and swelling generally attain their height on the second or third day. Different parts of the surface are seen in different stages of advancement. After it has apparently stopped, the inflammation may again spread ; and *relapses* are by no means uncommon. In some cases the complaint is *erratic* or wandering in its progress ; or it may assume a *metastatic* character.

Usually the absorbent glands and vessels in the neighbourhood of the affected structures show signs of irritation, being enlarged as well as painful and tender, sometimes very much so, and they may be involved first. Suppuration of the glands takes place in exceptional cases.

The *general symptoms* in erysipelas usually increase with the onset of the local inflammation. Ordinarily they merely indicate more or less pyrexia. The pulse rises to 100 or 120, and is full and strong. The temperature ascends rapidly at the outset, and may attain a height of 104° or 105° on the first evening. Usually the maximum temperature is reached on the 3rd day, but it tends to increase so long as the inflammation advances, and may attain to 106° or 108°. As a rule there are distinct evening exacerbations, but the evening temperature may be 2°, 4°, or even 5° lower than that of the morning (Reynolds). Defervescence sets in in favourable cases about the 5th or 6th day of the appearance of the local inflammation, and the temperature rapidly falls, becoming normal in from twelve to thirty-six hours. It may, however, remain high for a much longer time, and defervescence is then less critical. Sometimes, moreover, irregular returns of pyrexia are noticed during convalescence, without any increase of the local condition. These observations apply chiefly to *facial erysipelas*, for great deviations as regards temperature are met with when the disease attacks other parts. Any relapse or extension of inflammation is indicated by a fresh rise in temperature, which may be noticed before any external signs are

observed. Complications will also influence the temperature. The urine is febrile, while urea is increased, and chlorides are diminished. Albuminuria is a frequent phenomenon in cases of erysipelas.

In *facial erysipelas* there is considerable restlessness, with, in many instances, mental wandering or actual delirium, especially at night, quite apart from any cerebral complication. In this form the tongue tends to become dry and brownish; and in all cases of a low type it assumes distinctly adynamic characters, with sordes on the lips and teeth, the pulse also becoming very rapid and feeble, and other typhoid symptoms setting in. Tympanites and hiccup may be prominent symptoms in such cases. This course of events is likewise apt to occur in very feeble or intemperate persons, and in aged subjects.

Complications.—The chief complications to be feared in connection with erysipelas are cerebral or spinal meningitis; bronchitis or sometimes pneumonia; ulcerative endocarditis; purulent pleurisy or pericarditis; embolism and infarction in the lungs, spleen, or kidneys; acute intestinal catarrh; and renal congestion or inflammation. Many of these lesions are of a septic nature, and there may be a condition of general septicæmia or pyæmia. As already mentioned, erysipelas may spread to the throat or larynx.

Varieties.—Several varieties of erysipelas are described, founded on the intensity, mode of progress, appearances, and terminations of the local changes. The chief of these are:—1. *Simple* or *Cutaneous*. 2. *Miliary*. 3. *Phlyctenous*. The last two are named from the size of the vesicles or blebs. 4. *Œdematosus*, where there is much œdema. 5. *Phlegmonous* or *Cellulo-cutaneous*, in which the deep tissues are extensively involved, and tend to suppurate. 6. *Gangrenous*. 7. *Erratic* or *Migratory*. 8. *Metastatic*. Varieties are also named according to the part affected, for example, *facial*, *scrotal*, *crural*, and *abdominal*.

The *erratic* form usually presents less hyperæmia and swelling than is ordinarily observed; while the pyrexia is not so severe, considerable and rapid changes in temperature being also noted. This variety tends to run a protracted course, and occurs chiefly in the old, or in those suffering from gout, rheumatism, or kidney disease.

Diagnosis.—When erysipelas is pronounced, it is generally easily recognized. At the outset, however, it may be impossible to say what is going to happen, but the fact that a patient has had the disease before, or is subject to it, may enable an early probable diagnosis to be made. In a febrile case of rapid onset the absence of any of the premonitory symptoms of other fevers, or of any phenomena pointing to a local internal inflammation, might lead to the suspicion of erysipelas, especially if the patient complains of unusual subjective sensations about the face or other parts. The progress of events will soon clear up any difficulty as a rule. The diseases with which erysipelas may possibly be confounded are typhus fever, scarlatina, small-pox, influenza, or septicæmia in the early period; later on acute eczema, erythema, or herpes along the 5th nerve with intense hyperæmia; and acute necrosis of bone.

Prognosis.—Erysipelas is always a serious malady, and a cautious prognosis should be given in all cases, but especially when it attacks the scalp or face. The principal circumstances which increase the danger of any individual case are as follows:—1. The patient being either very young or of advanced age. 2. A low condition of the system, especially that due to intemperance. 3. The presence of organic disease, particularly renal disease with dropsy. 4. The complaint being epidemic,

much depending on the type of the epidemic. 5. Any tendency to typhoid symptoms; or signs of blood-poisoning. 6. Severe cerebral symptoms, particularly if they point to meningitis. 7. Extension of the disease to the throat or larynx. 8. A dark colour of the inflammation, or the appearance of livid vesicles. 9. Any disposition to involve the deep tissues extensively, or to end in suppuration or gangrene. 10. The sudden disappearance of the external inflammation, with simultaneous occurrence of symptoms indicating that some internal part is attacked.

Treatment.—1. *General management.*—Unquestionably lowering measures are to be avoided in erysipelas, and a supporting treatment is that which gives the best results. A nutritious diet is necessary from the first, with cooling drinks, and in many instances *alcoholic stimulants* are called for at an early period, not uncommonly considerable quantities being required during the progress of the disease. The patient should, if possible, be isolated, and placed in a comfortable, well-ventilated, but not draughty apartment; and every attention must be paid to hygienic measures.

2. *Medicinal treatment.*—The bowels should be kept well-opened by *saline aperients* in all cases of erysipelas. Ringer recommends the administration of tincture of aconite or belladonna, for the purpose of checking the complaint. The most reliable remedy, as a rule, in my experience, is tincture of perchloride of iron— m xx-xl every three or four hours. Some practitioners advocate the use of salicylates or other *antiseptics* internally. In adynamic cases quinine, or ammonia and tincture of cinchona may be given, along with alcoholic stimulants. It is often necessary to administer opium, chloral, bromide of potassium, or some such agent, at night or more frequently, for the purpose of procuring sleep and relieving pain.

3. *Local treatment.*—Ordinarily it will be found the best plan to cover the erysipelatous part with cotton-wool, having previously dusted it over with some powder. Flour, a mixture of starch and oxide of zinc, and kaoline with a few drops of creasote, are useful applications of this kind. When the face is affected, a kind of mask may be made, with apertures corresponding to the mouth, nostrils, and eyes. Among the numerous *local applications* recommended for erysipelas the most important are cold water; collodion or flexible collodion; nitrate of silver, either in the form of the solid stick or in solution; extract or liniment of belladonna, or equal parts of extract of belladonna and glycerine; solution or glycerine of carbolic acid; and ichthyol. In some cases great pain is experienced, and then warm fomentations containing opium or belladonna are serviceable, the surface being afterwards dried and covered with cotton-wool. Nitrate of silver has been much used with the object of checking the progress of erysipelas, the stick being rubbed into the skin a little beyond the advancing margin of the inflammation. This measure appears to succeed sometimes. It has appeared to me a good plan to apply glycerine and belladonna, or glycerine of carbolic acid, along the line where erysipelas seems to be spreading. Another method more recently advocated is to inject an antiseptic solution just beyond the margin of the spreading inflammation, especially two per cent. solution of carbolic acid, or perchloride or biniodide of mercury. Suppuration calls for free incision; and in the phlegmonous variety of erysipelas scarification is of great value.

4. *Symptomatic treatment.*—Various symptoms may require particular attention in erysipelas, as well as complications. High fever may call

for sponging or baths, or perhaps phenazone or acetanilide might be of service. Extension of the inflammation to the throat or larynx demands immediate local treatment. If there is much œdema about the glottis, it may be requisite to scarify the mucous membrane covering this part, or even to perform laryngotomy or tracheotomy.

5. *Prevention.*—In order to prevent the spread of erysipelas, it is imperative upon those who are attending cases of this complaint, especially medical men and nurses, to exercise every precaution against conveying the disease to others, particularly if they have to come into contact with parturient women, or with persons suffering from wounds or ulcers. Should there be any condition present in a case in connection with which erysipelas is liable to arise, such as dropsy, special care must be taken to prevent its occurrence.

CHAPTER XII.

SEPTICÆMIA AND PYÆMIA.

THE full discussion of these conditions, and especially pyæmia, comes more appropriately within the scope of surgical treatises; but as they also occur in medical practice, it is necessary to consider them briefly in this work. They are now definitely included among the *infective diseases*.

Septicæmia implies a general blood-poisoning or febrile infection, due to the absorption of certain toxic materials within the body, but unaccompanied with the formation of centres of suppuration. *Pyæmia* is also a general febrile condition, which, however, is attended with the development of abscesses in various parts of the body. No absolute line of demarcation can be drawn between these two classes of cases.

Aetiology.—Excluding obvious injuries and operations, and puerperal conditions, the following are the principal causes of septicæmia or pyæmia. 1. Diseases of bone, either acute or chronic, leading to necrosis or suppuration; disease of the temporal bone, associated with otitis media, is particularly to be borne in mind in this connection, and also disease of the nose. 2. Affections of the heart or vessels originating septic materials which contaminate the blood, particularly malignant endocarditis, and softening of clots, especially in the veins. 3. Diffuse suppuration, abscess, or gangrene in any part of the body, either external to or within organs. 4. Ulceration of mucous surfaces, such as the throat, the gall-bladder or ducts, or the intestines. In relation to the intestines the chief conditions to be remembered are typhoid, tubercular, or dysenteric ulceration; cancer sometimes; ulceration of the appendix vermiciformis and its consequences; and fistula. 5. Inflammation of a low type and attended with suppuration, implicating the pelvis of the kidney, the bladder, or the urinary passages. Gonorrhœa is believed to lead to a pyæmic condition sometimes. Prostatic septic thrombosis may also be mentioned here. 6. Diseases characterized by external inflammation of an unhealthy character, leading to the formation of pus or gangrene, especially certain varieties of erysipelas, variola, vaccinia in connection with re-vaccination, malignant pustule, glanders, plague, carbuncles or boils. Under this

class may also be mentioned the effects of dissection- and *post-mortem* wounds. 7. Low fevers occasionally, such as typhus, there being no evident local source of blood-poisoning. 8. Idiopathic pyæmia has been described, but it must be borne in mind that pyæmia may follow a very slight injury in unhealthy subjects, and that there are many internal causes which might escape detection. Septicæmia may probably arise from inhaling sewer-gas or other product of organic decomposition. Intemperance and renal disease decidedly predispose to this class of diseases. In many cases of phthisis there is really a septicæmic condition.

Pathology.—Septicæmia has been divided into three kinds, namely:—
 1. *Fermentation fever*, supposed to be due to the absorption of fibrin-ferments, which act in a similar manner to the toxins produced by micro-organisms, and it is believed by many that such organisms do take an important part in their production. 2. *Sapramia*, in which the septic condition is caused by the absorption of toxins (ptomaines, etc.), formed by putrefactive bacteria of various kinds, which have infected some local focus of necrotic tissue. 3. *Progressive septicæmia*, where, in addition to the effects of toxins formed at the primary seat of infection, microbes also actually enter the blood-stream from this focus, and there produce other ptomaines. These microbes are in the main similar to those which cause suppuration, and they gain access into the blood either through the walls of the blood-vessels, or through the lymph-channels.

Pyæmia is now generally recognized as being the result of the micro-organisms which cause suppuration, namely, the *streptococcus pyogenes*, and *staphylococci*. Several observers have found a streptococcus most frequently present in pyæmia, and this has been regarded as the principal microbe. These organisms, associated with some local focus of suppuration, induce coagulation-necrosis in the small vessels, and consequent thrombosis and purulent phlebitis. Generally fragments of the softened thrombi become detached, and are conveyed as emboli to various parts, where, if the conditions are favourable, the organisms they contain set up suppuration, and thus more or less numerous purulent centres are established. Their situation will depend upon the original seat of mischief. In conditions associated with external parts or bones, the lungs are very often affected; but the infected particles may pass through these organs, and lodge in the heart or kidneys. When the foci are in the intestines or other structures which contribute to the portal venous system, the liver is mainly involved secondarily. Malignant endocarditis and allied conditions give rise to large numbers of infective emboli, which are conveyed to the spleen, kidneys, brain, intestines, and even to the skin—*arterial pyæmia* of Wilks. The general symptoms associated with pyæmia are attributed to contamination of the blood with the products of the microbes which set up the suppurative process.

Anatomical Characters.—No doubt death may occur from virulent septicæmia before any characteristic lesions are developed. Pyæmia implies that abscesses have formed, but without entering into details, it must suffice to give a summary of the morbid changes which may be met with in different cases of this class of diseases, namely:—1. Intense congestion throughout the various organs and tissues of the body; with a dark and fluid condition of the blood. 2. Haemorrhages, in the form of petechiae or vibices, in connection with the skin, mucous, and serous membranes; haemorrhage into serous cavities; extravasations into

muscles and among deep tissues; and apoplectic clots in the substance of organs, which are prone to undergo rapid destructive changes. 3. Acute inflammation in the solid organs, of a low type. 4. Formation of abscesses in these organs, especially the lungs, liver, spleen, kidneys, or sometimes the substance of the heart; often in considerable numbers, and containing unhealthy pus. 5. Gangrene of portions of organs. 6. Low serous inflammations, especially pleurisy, with a tendency to purulent effusion, which may be confined within adhesions. 7. Inflammation of mucous membranes, leading to suppuration, ulceration, or sometimes to submucoous abscesses or gangrene. 8. Severe inflammation of joints, with a great tendency to rapid formation of pus, and to destruction and disorganization of tissues, both within and around the articulations, several of them being usually involved. 9. Inflammation and formation of abscesses in various parts of the body, namely, in the substance of muscles; in the cellular tissue, either superficial or deep; or sometimes in the skin itself, giving rise to pustules. The micro-organisms already alluded to are found in the areas of suppuration.

Symptoms.—Cases which are classed as septicaemic differ greatly in their severity, precise symptoms, course, and duration, according to the nature and intensity of the poison, the possibilities of local antiseptic treatment, and other circumstances. They may be extremely grave, ending in speedy death, with profound nervous symptoms. On the other hand, in the slighter cases only more or less febrile disturbance occurs, which soon subsides. The usual phenomena are shivering or rigors, often repeated; rise of temperature, which is frequently rapid and considerable, to 103° , 104° , or more, with marked and irregular remissions or even intermissions; profuse sweats, alternating with dryness and burning heat of the skin; a very frequent pulse, small and compressible, and easily disturbed; anorexia, accompanied with nausea or vomiting, or later on with diarrhoea; a red and irritable or glazed tongue, tending to dryness, and soon becoming brown, with sordes on the lips and teeth; marked weakness, with tendency to prostration, combined with restlessness; and headache, followed by early delirium, mental heaviness and lethargy, or other nervous phenomena. The patient wastes rapidly; and the face may present pallor or sallowness, a hectic flush, or a yellowish hue, which in some cases is very pronounced. Respiration tends to become hurried and shallow. Other phenomena which may be noticed in certain cases are enlargement and tenderness of the spleen; albuminuria; and capillary haemorrhages, with petechiae.

Pyæmia is characterized by very similar symptoms to those just described, but in a well-marked case there is generally a severe and prolonged rigor at the outset, followed by profuse sweating, and this is repeated at irregular intervals. Within a short period symptoms and physical signs of the *local lesions* appear, differing according to the structures affected, but when situated internally, these have often to be looked for carefully, and not uncommonly certain of them cannot be detected. A transient erythematous rash is not uncommon; or there may be sudamina, or a vesicular or pustular eruption. The breath has a sweetish odour in some cases of pyæmia.

When any case of septicaemia or pyæmia tends towards a fatal termination, evidences of the typhoid state appear, namely, extreme prostration and adynamia, with low nervous phenomena; the face becoming pale and pinched; the heart's action exceedingly rapid, weak, irregular, or inter-

mittent, as evidenced by the impulse, sounds, and pulse; the tongue brown and dry, with sordes on the lips, teeth, and gums; delirium, coma, or rarely convulsions setting in at last, with involuntary discharge of faeces and urine. Hyperpyrexia sometimes occurs, and hastens death. The duration varies much in different cases.

In some instances pyæmia runs a somewhat chronic course, and may then terminate in recovery.

Diagnosis.—It is important to distinguish pyæmia or septicæmia from fevers and other affections with which these conditions are likely to be confounded, especially typhoid fever, acute tuberculosis, acute rheumatism, ulcerative endocarditis, ague, and certain other cases in which chills and high fever may occur, such as pernicious anaemia, Hodgkin's disease, gall-stones, and rapidly-developing cancer. When they occur in connection with obvious wounds, injuries, operations, or the puerperal state, the diagnosis is easy; and in many other cases the source of infection is evident enough, if proper investigation be made. Sometimes, however, the fact that a septicæmic or pyæmic state exists is clear, but it may be very difficult or impossible to find out its cause. The more obscure morbid conditions mentioned under the aetiology must be kept in mind under such circumstances, and carefully sought for. The inefficiency of quinine is regarded as an important aid in the diagnosis of pyæmia from malarial fever; and microscopical examination of the blood might be of service in the detection of malarial organisms. The possibility of septic conditions being due to the entrance of poisons from without must not be overlooked.

Prognosis.—This is always grave, but in individual instances of pyæmia or septicæmia the prognosis will depend on a variety of circumstances. Recovery sometimes takes place even in very severe cases.

Treatment.—The first principle in the treatment of septicæmic or pyæmic cases is, if possible, to remove the source of infection, or to treat it effectually by *antiseptic* methods. Not uncommonly this cannot be done in medical practice. As regards internal treatment, the only chance of recovery lies in the free and regular administration of nutritious food, *stimulants*, and *tonics*, especially mineral acids, quinine, and tincture of perchloride of iron. *Antiseptics* are also strongly recommended, and may be given along with the remedies just indicated. *Antipyretic* remedies may be needed, as well as external applications of cold, to bring down excessive temperature, but they are not of much service as a rule. The administration of boric acid (gr. 5-15) with sulphuric ether has been specially advocated in the treatment of septic diseases. Local lesions must be attended to as they arise, and treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER XIII.

D I P H T H E R I A.

Etiology.—Diphtheria is an independent acute specific disease, being produced by a *specific poison*, and it is distinctly infectious, not unfrequently assuming a severe epidemic form. The complaint appears to have become increasingly prevalent of late years, and numerous outbreaks have occurred in various localities, while in many places it has become established as an endemic disease. It is now generally main-

tained that the contagium is associated only or chiefly with the peculiar diphtheritic deposit, and that this material must be brought into direct contact with a mucous membrane, or with an abraded cutaneous surface, before the complaint can be transmitted; some believe, however, that the contagium is also given off in the breath, and is contained in the various excretions. It appears now to be definitely decided that the primary effect of the infective agent in diphtheria is in the large majority of cases strictly local, its action being first exerted upon the throat or other surface with which it comes into contact, and the general infection being secondary to the local lesion. Some, however, maintain that general infection through the pulmonary vesicles, or possibly through the alimentary canal, may precede the local manifestations. The disease may spread to any of the inmates of a house, but there is always much more danger of infection in the case of those who are brought into immediate contact with a patient suffering from diphtheria, and who consequently inhale the breath, or are liable to have the morbid products coughed out upon them. The practice of sucking out diphtheritic membrane through the tube after the performance of tracheotomy is most dangerous. Kissing is also accountable for the transmission of diphtheria in some cases. The affection is more liable to be propagated if there is much discharge, as from the nose, especially if cleanliness is not attended to. The poison clings tenaciously to houses and rooms for a considerable period; and may be conveyed by fomites, such as clothing, toys, or other objects, as well as by instruments used for surgical purposes. It seems capable of being disseminated for some distance, and this has been attributed to the influence of winds. It is probable that diphtheria or an allied disease occurs in cats and other domesticated animals, as well as among cattle and horses, and that infection may be thus conveyed to human beings, and also from them to the lower animals. The complaint may certainly be transmitted by infected milk. The same individual may be attacked more than once.

The researches made in relation to the contagium of diphtheria have led to some remarkable results. For a long time bacteria and other organisms have been known to be almost constantly present in the diphtheritic membrane; and masses or clumps of streptococci and staphylococci are found not only in this membrane, but also in the deeper tissues, the large lymphatic glands of the neck, the kidneys, and sometimes in other organs. These, however, have been proved not to be special infective agents of diphtheria, though they are concerned in the production of certain of the secondary phenomena, such as secondary suppurations, serous inflammations, and broncho-pneumonia. It has also been suggested that they may help in preparing a suitable nidus for the true diphtheritic virus, if sufficiently active. This virus is now generally believed to consist in a specific organism, known as Löffler's *bacillus diphtheriae*, or the Klebs-Löffler bacillus. The organism is invariably found in true diphtheria and membranous croup; and has been extensively cultivated and submitted to inoculation experiments. It is a minute bacillus, usually varying from 2·5 to 3 μ in length, and from 0·5 to 0·8 μ in thickness; straight or slightly curved, with rounded ends, which are sometimes swollen; and non-motile. The diphtheria bacillus possesses great tenacity of life, and a remarkable power of resistance to drying, remaining dormant afterwards for a long period. It also multiplies readily in milk.

The bacilli of diphtheria are found practically only in the false membrane, mainly in its superficial layers, and they multiply as this increases

in thickness. They rarely penetrate deeply, or become diffused through the body, and are never found in internal organs. They may be scattered, or collected in lines, patches, or spheroidal masses. Experiments have shown that these organisms will not produce any effect upon the mucous membrane of the fauces or trachea, unless it has been abraded or otherwise injured.

The mode in which diphtheria bacilli produce their effects upon the system is highly interesting and important. It seems certain that in connection with their growth and development in the membrane one or more toxic agents are generated, which are absorbed, and give rise to the general symptoms of the disease. The original researches of Roux and Yersin led them to the conclusion that the poison is of the nature of an enzyme or ferment; but Brieger and Fraenkel regard it as a tox-albumen. The more recent investigations by Sidney Martin (*Goulstonian Lectures*, 1892) show that from the tissues of patients who have died of diphtheria two kinds of chemical substances can be obtained, both having poisonous properties of the same nature, namely, albumoses (proto- and deutero-), which are much the more powerful, and an organic acid. Similar substances are produced by the organism when grown in meat-broth with alkali-albumen added. His view, briefly, is that the bacillus produces a ferment in its growth, which by its local action in the membrane originates albumoses, and is also absorbed into the blood, forming from its proteids similar albumoses, especially in the spleen, which have definite toxic effects, particularly on the nervous system.

There seems to be no doubt that a bacillus identical with that of diphtheria morphologically, and in its modes of cultivation, is often present in the secretions of the mouth of healthy children, as well as in certain "pseudo-diphtheritic" membranes, which is not pathogenic, and is harmless when inoculated. Hence the opinion has been advanced that the diphtheria bacillus is merely this harmless bacillus, which has acquired accidental toxic properties. Roux and Yersin have found a distinction between the bacilli obtained from the mouth of children and those of diphtheria; and hold that those present in pseudo-diphtheritic membrane are an attenuated form. It has been found experimentally that cultures from different cases of diphtheria differ much in virulence, which accords with the varying intensity observed in different epidemics, as well as in individual cases of the complaint.

A form of diphtheria does undoubtedly occur under circumstances in which it cannot be traced to infection, and it is probable that it may be developed in connection with drainage emanations, contamination of drinking water, insanitary surroundings, or houses recently built on damp soils. An epidemic is sometimes preceded by the prevalence of ordinary sore-throats, and virulent epidemics have sometimes occurred in sparsely inhabited country districts, in which it has been impossible to trace infection. Hence diphtheria has been classed by some as a *miasmatic-contagious* disease, due to an agent which can fertilize in air and water, and when taken into the human body is capable of producing the disease in a contagious form. The formation of a diphtheritic membrane may be associated with scarlatina, measles, typhoid fever, and whooping-cough. It is affirmed, however, that this affection is not true diphtheria in most cases, the specific bacillus being absent, and only streptococci and staphylococci being found in the membrane; this applies particularly to scarlet fever, but late in its course infection with the actual *bacillus diphtheriae* may occur. Some throat-conditions

appear to be both diphtheritic and septic. It is believed that there is a form of pseudo-diphtheritic angina in which the non-pathogenic bacillus already alluded to is present. A membranous or croupous form of inflammation may also be set up rarely by mechanical causes; by chemical irritants, as hot steam, ammonia, or chlorine; and by exposure to cold.

The *predisposing causes* of diphtheria are the period of childhood, especially from the 3rd to the 10th or 12th year; individual and family susceptibility; bad feeding; general debility; bodily fatigue or exhaustion; and nervous excitability. It frequently occurs under the most satisfactory sanitary surroundings, and there has been lately much controversy as to whether the complaint is actually predisposed to by unfavourable hygienic conditions. As regards children, special predisposing causes in these subjects are said to be enlarged tonsils, chronic naso-pharyngeal catarrh, carious teeth, and an unhealthy condition of the mucous membrane of the mouth and throat. The opinions of Dr. Thorne Thorne in relation to diphtheria demand special notice. His observations as to its distribution in England and Wales seem to prove that the complaint is encouraged by wet and cold. Stagnant moisture is very different from running water in relation to this disease. Originally diphtheria was a rural disease, but now it also rages in urban districts, and is becoming a stable affection. It is to some extent a seasonable complaint, generally beginning in September and increasing in violence until December, when it usually begins to abate, there being less in the late spring and early summer than in any other portion of the year. Sanitary conditions certainly have some influence; but Dr. Thorne is confident that there is no relation between polluted water and diphtheria, water being, to a large extent, destructive of the organism. He is, however, convinced that soil has some influence, especially when there are alternations in the level of the subsoil. He has formed the opinion that diphtheria never attacks a healthy throat. The disease is spread by aggregation of children in schools.

Anatomical Characters.—A peculiar inflammation of the fauces, attended with the formation of patches of membranous exudation, constitutes the ordinary local manifestation of diphtheria. At first there is redness, which may begin in any part of the throat, being accompanied with swelling and increased secretion of viscid mucus. The redness spreads over the entire mucous surface, and then the exudation makes its appearance. The deposit may commence at any spot, such as on one of the tonsils, on the soft palate, or at the back of the fauces, and may start from one or several points, at first only small specks being observed, which, however, speedily extend and coalesce so as often to form extensive patches, or even to cover uniformly the entire surface. The patches have a variable thickness, and they become thicker by successive layers being formed underneath. The characters of the deposit vary much. The colour is usually grey, white, or slightly yellowish; but it may be brownish or blackish. The consistence ranges from "cream to wash-leather." The material resembles in some cases wet parchment or damp and dirty wash-leather. On removing it, which is effected with more or less difficulty, a raw bleeding surface is left, or sometimes a distinct ulcer, which is again speedily covered by fresh deposit. The under-surface of a patch may present little spots of blood. If the exudation separates of itself, it is either not renewed at all, or only in thinner films. Occasionally considerable ulceration or sloughing of the soft palate, uvula, or tonsils is set up; or abscesses may form.

Diphtheritic deposit may spread from the throat to the mouth, lips, nose, Eustachian tubes and tympanic cavity, conjunctivæ, larynx, trachea, or bronchi; rarely to the œsophagus, stomach, intestines, and gall-bladder. In exceptional instances it starts primarily in certain of these parts, especially the main air-tube. The membrane may appear over the vulva or vagina, the anus and rectum, the glans penis and prepuce, the external ear, and other parts. Any raw cutaneous surface is liable to become implicated.

The minute changes which take place in diphtheria have been studied by Wagner, Weichert, Oertel, and others. The bacilli set up inflammation, with migration of leucocytes. The poison produced by these organisms causes, first, necrosis of the cells with which it comes into contact, particularly the superficial epithelium and leucocytes; but it may also affect similarly the deeper cells of the mucosa and other parts. Then follows a hyaline transformation of the dead cells, or the production of coagulation-necrosis. The false membrane consists of an aggregation of dead cells, most of which have undergone the hyaline transformation. This change is regarded as a conservative process, by which, to some degree, the poison is prevented from reaching the deeper structures. It does, however, become more or less absorbed, and the contiguous bronchial glands show extensive foci of necrosis. In severe cases necrotic areas are also observed in the internal organs, the solitary glands of the intestines, and the mesenteric glands. The blood-vessels may likewise be much altered, the capillaries exhibiting extensive hyaline degeneration. In the experimental production of diphtheria by inoculation with the bacillas similar changes have been found, especially the necrotic areas in the deep-seated organs, associated in the lymph-glands with a remarkable fragmentation of the nuclei.

The lymphatic glands in the neck are enlarged and inflamed, especially those near the angles of the jaw. The parotid and submaxillary glands are also often swollen. Should there be much ulceration or gangrene of the fauces, general swelling of the neck ensues, owing to infiltration of the tissues with serum or lymph.

In fatal cases of diphtheria the various organs are found to be much congested. The spleen and the absorbent glands generally are enlarged. The bronchial tubes usually contain more or less muco-purulent material. The lungs are in most fatal cases the seat of acute insufflation, areas of collapse, capillary bronchitis, and broncho-pneumonia, or sometimes of pulmonary apoplexy. The kidneys show signs of acute parenchymatous inflammation, or there is sometimes acute nephritis. The spleen and liver may present the usual changes associated with fever. Fibrinous coagula are frequently observed within the cavities of the heart, and extending thence into the great vessels; and the heart-fibres may have undergone acute degeneration. In many malignant cases the blood is dark and fluid. In some instances small haemorrhages are found in connection with the mucous and serous membranes; as well as in the substance of the lungs, heart, and kidneys.

The peculiar nervous phenomena which follow diphtheria have been attributed to anterior poliomyelitis; but more recent observations show that they are probably due to a multiple neuritis, or degeneration of nerve-trunks. In his injection-experiments, Sidney Martin found well-marked changes in the nerves, both motor and sensory, affecting first the myelin sheath, which breaks up into fragments and disintegrates; the axis-cylinder becomes thin, and may ultimately break across. These

changes occur regularly in patches. The central nervous system was unaffected. As regards the heart-disorder also, this is said to be in a majority of cases due to a neuritis of the cardiac nerves.

Symptoms.—Diphtheria is a disease accompanied with local and general symptoms, but differing much in its intensity in different cases, as well as in the exact character of the phenomena observed. Either the local or the general symptoms may appear first.

The period of incubation in diphtheria ranges usually from two to four days. It may be limited to thirty hours, or may perhaps extend to twelve or fourteen days. The invasion is generally ill-defined, a feeling of illness, languor, weakness, and depression being often experienced; accompanied with chilliness, anorexia, nausea, diarrhoea, headache, drowsiness, and a certain degree of pyrexia. At the same time some stiffness of the neck, tenderness about the angles of the jaw, or slight sore-throat may be complained of.

General Description.—In the large majority of instances the local symptoms of diphtheria are mainly associated with the throat. The patient complains of more or less soreness or actual pain in this part, especially on swallowing, and this act may become difficult or even impossible in bad cases. There is in many instances a constant desire to clear the throat. On examination the structures of the fauces are seen to be red and swollen, and covered to a variable thickness and extent with the diphtheritic deposit already described. Sometimes the tonsils and uvula are so much enlarged that they seem to block up the passage, and an examination can only be accomplished with difficulty. In bad cases more or less extensive ulceration or sloughing may be observed. The diphtheritic material is not uncommonly coughed up in fragments of *false membrane*; and offensive matters are expectorated when the structures ulcerate or become gangrenous. The glands about the angles of the lower jaw are more or less enlarged and tender; in severe cases they become much swollen, and the structures of the neck generally may be considerably tumefied. In some instances the nasal cavities are implicated, and symptoms arising therefrom may be the first noticed, a discharge, which is often sanious and offensive, escaping through the nostrils or through the posterior nares. When the larynx is involved, this event is indicated by hoarseness, or complete loss of voice; cough, of a hoarse and croupy character; and obstructive dyspnoea, which often becomes very urgent, the breathing being noisy and stridulous, and subject to paroxysmal exacerbations. If the deposit extends down the air-tube to the bronchi, the respiration becomes still more embarrassed. The breath has often an offensive odour, and may become extremely foetid. Should the diphtheritic deposit form in other parts, such as the stomach or intestines, corresponding local symptoms may be developed; and if it occurs over external parts, it will be evident on examination.

The general symptoms in diphtheria are usually at first of a febrile character, but their intensity bears no necessary relation to the condition of the throat. As a rule, the temperature in this disease is not very high, usually ranging from 101° to 103° , and it has no characteristic course. The patient not uncommonly experiences a marked sense of illness, weakness, and depression, which may be quite out of proportion to the apparent gravity of the disease; and in some instances I have observed a remarkable foreboding of death on the part of the patient, when there did not appear to be any reason for anticipating such an

event. In bad cases of diphtheria the general symptoms assume an asthenic or typhoid character, either from the first, or during the course of the attack, the patient becoming greatly prostrated, and presenting the usual phenomena characteristic of the typhoid condition. When the respiratory passages are involved the symptoms indicate more or less interference with the aeration of the blood, and may culminate in those of actual asphyxia. The urine in diphtheria is not only febrile, but frequently contains albumen, as well as in some cases blood and casts.

Clinical Varieties.—Having thus pointed out the general features of the clinical history of diphtheria, a brief description will now be given of the principal varieties met with, mainly founded on the classification adopted by Sir William Jenner.

1. **MILD FORM.**—Here there are slight throat-symptoms, and on examination redness, with more or less diphtheritic deposit, is visible. The glands about the angles of the jaw are a little swollen and tender. Pyrexia is usually mild and of short duration, but the temperature may rise considerably. The urine is not albuminous. Occasionally the throat is extensively covered with false membrane, while the general symptoms are very slight. Recovery is generally rapid and complete : and there are no sequelæ as a rule. It must be remembered, however, that in cases which at first seem to be of a very mild character, serious symptoms may at any time supervene, or dangerous sequelæ may arise. Some of the cases coming under this group would be regarded as pseudo-diphtheritic, where the specific bacilli are not present in the false membrane.

2. **ACUTE INFLAMMATORY FORM.**—After premonitory symptoms, high pyrexia sets in, the patient at the same time feeling very ill and weak. The pulse soon tends to become feeble and wanting in tone. Throat-symptoms are prominent, while examination reveals signs of marked inflammation, which may be accompanied with much enlargement of the tonsils and uvula, a considerable diphtheritic deposit forming in from twelve to forty-eight hours, which possesses a fair degree of consistency and toughness. This may be coughed up in pieces of variable size. Subsequently the throat may ulcerate or slough more or less extensively. The disease sometimes spreads to the respiratory passages, thus causing serious interference with respiration. The glands of the neck are much enlarged. The urine is febrile ; but also frequently contains much albumen, as well as some granular casts.

3. **NASAL FORM.**—In this variety there is at first a saious discharge from the nose, accompanied with low fever. Soon the throat is seen to be red and swollen, and fluid escapes through the posterior nares, while the glands about the angles of the jaw swell considerably. The discharge may be very foetid. The disease may spread through the lachrymal ducts to the conjunctivæ, or to the lips by means of the discharge. Membranous deposit may also form on the pharynx or larynx, the latter being sometimes unexpectedly attacked. Glandular inflammation is usually very intense in these cases, which has been attributed to the abundance of lymphatics in the nasal mucous membrane.

4. **PRIMARY LARYNGEAL AND TRACHEAL FORM.**—This is characterized by the exudation starting in the larynx and trachea, but it may subsequently spread to the pharynx. Laryngeal symptoms are therefore prominent from the first. The disease may also extend downwards to the bronchi. This variety is now generally regarded as being almost always identical

with so-called *true croup* or *croupous laryngitis*, but this question will be considered under the latter disease. Here may also be mentioned certain cases which are grouped by Sir William Jenner as *insidious*, in which, without any particular general disturbance, and only slight sore-throat, laryngeal symptoms suddenly set in with severity, and this course of events may terminate in speedy suffocation.

5. ASTHENIC AND MALIGNANT FORMS.—In the asthenic class of cases the general symptoms assume a low type, either from the outset, or during the progress of ordinary diphtheria. The sense of illness and prostration becomes very great; the complexion is dirty-looking and opaque; and the general surface may assume a dirty-yellowish tint, having also a peculiar feverish pungency, though the temperature is not remarkably high. The pulse tends to be very frequent, small, weak, and irregular; and the heart's action is greatly enfeebled. The tongue becomes dry and brown, while sordes form on the lips and teeth. Ultimately the characteristic symptoms of the "typhoid state" set in, with delirium and other low nervous phenomena, and at last the patient sinks.

The symptoms just described may or may not be associated with abundant diphtheritic deposit over the throat or larynx, but the material is frequently of a soft, pulpy kind, and hence the local symptoms are often not proportionately severe. They are not uncommon in the nasal variety. It is in these cases that extensive ulceration and sloughing are chiefly met with, the asthenic symptoms being then due partly to septicæmia. Under such circumstances the breath becomes extremely foetid; and there is great swelling about the neck. Hyperpyrexia may occur in some cases of diphtheria; or, on the other hand, the temperature may fall below the normal.

A malignant variety of diphtheria is sometimes met with, coming on insidiously, without marked local or general symptoms, but occasionally with great and unaccountable mental depression, death taking place in two or three days, or even earlier.

6. ANOMALOUS FORM.—A group of cases may be made to include those in which the diphtheritic deposit first appears in some unusual region, such as over the mouth (*buccal*), about the anus, on the vulva or vagina, over the glans penis or prepuce, in the external auditory meatus, or on cutaneous excoriations or ulcerations. The throat often becomes secondarily involved. The membranous deposit is white, buff, grey, or black, and more or less adherent; it is surrounded by redness, usually vivid and marked. On the skin its extension is preceded by the formation of vesicles, and subsequent excoriation.

Complications and Sequelæ.—*Albuminuria* is of frequent but uncertain occurrence in the course of diphtheria. This condition always demands special attention, and should be looked for daily in all cases *from the first*. It may be merely febrile, but is most important as a symptom of *acute parenchymatous nephritis*, when it may be accompanied with blood-corpuscles, blood-casts, and epithelial casts in the urine. Renal dropsy is very rare. Some observers affirm that in cases of diphtheria which have ended fatally within the first few days, with abundant albuminuria, the kidneys have only presented more or less congestion. Albuminuria in diphtheria is an early phenomenon, and nephritis comes on much sooner in this complaint than in scarlatina. The albumen may be found in the urine within twenty-four hours of the onset of the disease, and usually appears about the 3rd or 4th day, being exceptional for the first time after ten or twelve days. As a rule

it does not continue long, being in some instances a mere transitory phenomenon; sometimes, however, it goes on for several weeks, or may even be permanent. The amount of albumen discharged varies considerably, and it may be very large; while it is sometimes intermittent, or more frequently varies in quantity at different periods within the twenty-four hours. Occasionally the urine is much diminished or even suppressed in diphtheria.

Hæmorrhage from the nose, throat, air-passages, and other parts is not uncommon in bad cases of diphtheria, and there may be purpuric spots on the skin. Cutaneous rashes are occasionally observed, transient in duration, and either erythematous, erysipelatous, roseolar, urticarial, or even vesicular in appearance. Arthritis has occurred in exceptional cases. *Pulmonary* complications are especially to be feared if the respiratory passages are involved, namely:—acute insufflation of the lungs, the vesicles sometimes giving way; lobular collapse; bronchopneumonia; and occasionally pulmonary apoplexy. Broncho-pneumonia is also very liable to occur if there is much ulceration or gangrene of the throat. Diphtheritic exudation may extend even to the bronchi, where it gradually merges into a thick purulent material. Pleurisy, pericarditis, or endocarditis are very rare complications.

Diphtheria is liable to be followed by important *sequelæ*. Thus, in some cases the progress towards convalescence is very slow, and a state of marked debility and anaemia remains for some time. Slight albuminuria may also continue for a considerable period; or permanent renal disease may be set up. The most remarkable series of sequelæ, however, are those connected with the *nervous system*. It will be more convenient to discuss these sequelæ in relation with the other diseases of this system, and in the meantime it must suffice to state that they may follow the mildest attack of diphtheria; that they usually supervene after an interval of apparent convalescence; and that the phenomena are those of more or less extensive *paralysis*, motor and sensory, which usually commences in, and may be limited to, the throat and palate, but generally tends to be more or less progressive, involving ultimately in extreme cases the whole body, and sometimes proving fatal, owing to implication of the respiratory muscles or of the heart, especially in children. The eye-muscles, both intrinsic and extrinsic, are often affected. Most cases recover, but the duration of the symptoms is very variable. Abnormal sensations, such as hyperæsthesia or marked tenderness in various parts, or intense neuralgia, may also follow diphtheria.

Cardiac disorder following diphtheria is of great importance, and is indicated either by infrequent action (*brachycardia*), the beats, it may be, falling to 40, 30, or even 20; or very rapid action (*tachycardia*); or these conditions may alternate. There may be also much feebleness or irregularity of action.

Duration and Terminations.—The *duration* of diphtheria usually ranges from two to fourteen days, but it may extend much beyond this limit, and complications and sequelæ often prolong its course considerably. *Relapses* also are not very uncommon. Death is a very frequent event, especially in some epidemics. The chief causes of death are:—
1. Suffocation, owing to the air-passages being implicated, which is most frequent in children, and generally happens within the first week.
2. Gradual asthenia, from the effects of the absorbed poisons, most common in persons beyond the age of puberty, death usually occurring

after the first week. 3. Septicæmia. 4. Renal disease. 5. Pulmonary complications. 6. Nervous sequelæ, especially when the respiratory muscles or heart become involved. These are very fatal in children, but death does not occur from nervous sequelæ after a lapse of two months. Occasionally patients attacked with diphtheria die within a few hours, apparently killed by the virulence of the poison. Sudden or very rapid death has also happened in several instances, probably due to cardiac failure, which may occur at the height of the disease, or more commonly during convalescence, it may be as late as the 6th or 7th week after apparent recovery. When not actually sudden, death is preceded by grave cardiac symptoms, and sometimes vomiting, which speedily culminate in a condition of collapse.

Diagnosis.—The character of the general symptoms; the local throat-symptoms; with satisfactory examination of the throat, will in most cases enable diphtheria to be recognized. It may at first be mistaken for any form of acute sore-throat, or for scarlatina, extensive thrush, or herpes on the pharynx. In the last-mentioned complaint vesicles may be seen on the fauces, which cannot be removed: the pain is much more severe, but limited; and herpes is also usually visible on the lips. Some cases of follicular tonsillitis are very difficult to separate from diphtheria. Laryngeal diphtheria cannot be distinguished from croupous laryngitis, and these two conditions may be regarded as practically identical. The nasal variety must not be forgotten. Some asthenic cases of diphtheria may be difficult to recognize at first. A history of exposure to infection may aid the diagnosis, but it must be remembered that diphtheria may occur when it is not possible to trace any such exposure. Some cases are so mild that the fact of a patient having had diphtheria is only recognized by the development of the nervous sequelæ. The detection of the bacillus by trained bacteriologists, with its subsequent cultivation and inoculation, is now regarded as of great value in the diagnosis of true diphtheria.

Prognosis.—Always grave, the prognosis of diphtheria is much worse in children than adults, and especially in infants. It is seldom fatal after 25 (Thorne). The chief signs of danger are:—Implication of the air-passages, with consequent interference with respiration, as well as the development of pulmonary complications: extensive ulceration or sloughing of the throat; great discharge from the nares; epistaxis; repeated vomiting or diarrhœa; very rapid and feeble cardiac action and pulse, or a very infrequent pulse; typhoid symptoms, especially if accompanied with delirium; suppression of urine; signs of uræmia; the presence of abundant albumen, blood, or casts in the urine, particularly if accompanied with laryngeal symptoms; and a sudden rise or fall of temperature. Even mild cases may prove fatal from cardiac failure; or the nervous sequelæ may set in and cause death. The prognosis is more unfavourable in certain constitutions; in particular epidemics; and when diphtheria follows some other acute disease, particularly scarlet fever and measles, or occurs as a complication of typhoid fever. The mortality appears to be greater during cold and damp seasons.

Treatment.—The management of cases of diphtheria must depend very much on their type and intensity, but even the mildest case needs to be carefully watched, so as to be prepared for any untoward course of events. It cannot be too strongly enforced that there is no specific remedy for this disease, and that the measures to be adopted must be

determined by the circumstances of each individual case. It may be further affirmed that lowering measures are never admissible, a more or less supporting treatment being always indicated from the outset for diphtheria.

1. *General management.*—Any patient suffering from diphtheria should, if possible, be isolated, and must remain in bed, well-protected from draughts, the room being kept at a moderate uniform temperature, all hygienic conditions being duly observed, especially as regards *cleanliness* and *proper ventilation*, while every precaution is taken to prevent the spread of the disease, by proper disinfection and other suitable measures. The judicious use of disinfectants in the apartment is desirable. In a severe case it is important that the air of the room should be maintained at a temperature of from 60° to 65°, and kept slightly moist with steam, either by means of a steam-kettle, or by boiling water in an open vessel over a spirit lamp. In the case of children it is often desirable to fix up a "steam-tent," especially if there is any tendency to implication of the windpipe. It may be useful to impregnate the steam with some disinfectant, by boiling eucalyptus leaves in the water, or adding a few drops of oil of turpentine or carbolic acid. It must be noted, however, that not a few practitioners object to making the air moist with steam; and Dr. Jacobi only approves of it in cases of tracheo-bronchial diphtheria.

In all cases of diphtheria a fair quantity of milk and beef-tea should be given; but in those which are at all severe the diet demands strict attention. These and similar nutritious liquids must then be administered in considerable quantity; and it may be desirable to give them in a peptonized form. The patient should also take cool drinks freely, and suck small lumps of ice at frequent intervals. *Alcoholic stimulants* are not required at first in most cases, but they must be given as soon as there is any indication that the vital powers are failing. They are often needed in large quantities in adynamic cases, and children bear them well. The best stimulant ordinarily is brandy, some of which may be administered beaten up with eggs. Good port wine and iced champagne are also very valuable. If a patient cannot or will not swallow, or if there is severe vomiting, it is highly important to administer food and stimulants, as well as medicines, by means of enemata, and the remarks made with reference to the treatment of children suffering from scarlatina apply equally in the case of diphtheria.

2. *Medicinal treatment.*—A mild *aperient* may be given daily, if required, in order to keep the bowels open. Chlorate of potassium may be allowed in moderation in the form of a drink. The medicine which I have found most efficacious in cases of diphtheria is tincture of perchloride of iron, which I have been in the habit of administering in full doses— m xx-xl every two or three hours. It may be combined in some cases with quinine or with dilute hydrochloric acid. Dr. Jacobi also speaks very favourably of this remedy as a rule, but he recommends that it should be given in hourly or half-hourly doses, or even every 15 or 20 minutes, along with glycerine. Quinine alone in large doses has been advocated as almost a specific in diphtheria. Dr. Wade recommends iodide of potassium (gr. ij to iv), with chlorate of potassium (gr. v to x), every two or three hours. Numerous other medicines have been specially advocated, but I will only mention calomel, perchloride, cyanide, or biniodide of mercury; sulphur; phenazone; and chloride of gold. Some practitioners have great faith in

antiseptic medicines, such as carbolic acid, sulpho-carbolates, sulphite or hyposulphite of sodium, tincture of iodine, salicylate or benzoate of sodium, oil of eucalyptus, or peroxide of hydrogen, but, in my opinion, these agents cannot be solely relied upon. Jacobi recommends the administration of chlorate of potassium or sodium as a preventive measure during an epidemic of diphtheria.

3. *Local treatment*.—This demands careful consideration in every case of diphtheria, for different cases need to be treated in very different ways. It must be acknowledged, however, that there is even now great diversity of opinion amongst experienced authorities as to what local measures answer best in this complaint; and some, indeed, think that the less that is done in this way the better.

It is almost universally agreed at the present time that under no circumstances should the diphtheritic patches be torn off from the surface of the throat, but a plan of treatment is advocated by Dr. Nix, of Rude, Denmark, which consists in repeatedly scraping away the membranes, and eventually the subjacent softened infiltrated parts, by means of a scoop, and cauterizing the scraped surfaces energetically with solid nitrate of silver. A modified treatment of a similar kind is practised, in which, after removal of the membrane, a strong antiseptic is applied.

The application of ice externally to the neck was recommended by the late Sir Morell Mackenzie in the early stage of diphtheria, but is contra-indicated when it causes pain, in young children, in advanced stages, and especially if gangrene be present; it may be employed if the external glands are much enlarged. Poultices or fomentations to the neck are useful in some cases.

Coming now to the employment of topical applications directly to the throat, these may be made either by means of a solid substance, as a stick of nitrate of silver; gargles; steam-inhalations; injections with a syringe; the index-finger swathed in lint; a large and soft throat-brush, or a firm cotton-wool brush; atomized spray; insufflation of powders; or fumigation. The methods of application must be accommodated to the age and other conditions of the patient, and to the purpose intended to be carried out, but more than one mode may be combined in the same case; for instance, patients who are old enough may gargle with advantage, while inhalations, the spray, or other modes are employed at stated intervals. Gargling, however, is not uncommonly inadmissible or useless in diphtheria. Another method which has been advocated is to wash the membrane off the fauces by nasal injections.

With regard to the nature of the applications which are used, it will be convenient to discuss them under their several groups.

a. *Caustics and Astringents*.—The objects of the application of *caustics* are to destroy the diphtheritic deposit, and to check its advance or extension. Those which are chiefly employed include nitrate of silver, either in the form of the solid stick, or in strong solution ($\frac{3}{4}$ i to $\frac{5}{4}$ i of water); and equal parts of hydrochloric acid and water. The actual cautery has also been advocated. Powerful *astringents* are likewise made use of, such as tincture or solution of perchloride of iron mixed with an equal proportion of glycerine. The liquids are applied by means of a brush. Most practitioners at the present time are decidedly averse to the use of these agents in any form. If they are employed at all, it should only be at a very early period, the application being thoroughly and efficiently made, around as well as over the membranous patches.

It is really difficult to determine whether this treatment is positively beneficial, and it certainly may do much harm; while its repetition at more or less frequent intervals, as recommended by some, is decidedly mischievous. Weak astringent gargles, containing tincture of perchloride of iron and glycerine, dilute hydrochloric acid with or without chlorate of potassium, tannin, alum, and other agents of this class, have been much employed; and tannin, or alum mixed with sugar, have been used as powders for insufflation.

b. Steam-inhalations.—These are generally recognized as of great service in the treatment of diphtheria, and some practitioners rely upon them entirely. They may be employed at more or less frequent intervals, or even constantly, according to the severity of the case. They are particularly useful if the windpipe becomes involved; and may be of service in promoting detachment of the membrane.

c. Solvents.—Several agents have been applied locally, intended either to dissolve the diphtheritic membrane, or at any rate so to separate its molecular particles that it easily comes away. The agents chiefly employed for this purpose are lactic acid, lime-water or steam containing small particles of lime evolved in the process of slackening, salt water, chlorate of potassium, bicarbonate of sodium, phosphate of sodium, borax, resorcin, pepsin, trypsin, and papaine. Dr. Young, of Rome, has employed with much success a solution of three drachms of lactic acid in eight ounces of lime-water. Lactic and acetic acids have been considered useful for neutralizing the poison produced by the diphtheria bacilli. These applications are usually best made by means of some spray-apparatus, but they are also employed directly, and some of the drugs mentioned may be mixed with glycerine and applied with a brush.

d. Antiseptics.—Of the value of the persistent use of antiseptic agents there can be no doubt, especially when putrefactive or gangrenous processes are set up, and they may have an immediate effect upon the diphtheritic organisms and their products. The chief agents used are carbolic acid, tincture of iodine, bichloride of mercury, Condy's fluid, hypochlorite of sodium, chlorine water, solution of chlorinated soda, boric acid, salicylic acid or salicylate of sodium, acetic acid or vinegar, chloral hydrate, quinine, sulphurous anhydride derived from burning sulphur or sulphurous acid in solution, iodoform or iodol, oil of peppermint, and peroxide of hydrogen. Most of these may be employed as gargles, sprays, or direct local applications; and the volatile antiseptics are very valuable as inhalations. Calomel has been employed as a vapour, being volatilized by heat.

In the foregoing remarks it has been impossible to do more than to give an outline of the local measures which have been advocated in the treatment of diphtheria. It must again be urged that every case requires careful consideration, and must be managed on its own merits. It is certainly safer, in my opinion, to err on the side of doing too little than too much, as regards the employment of powerful and irritating remedies. Some writers are strongly in favour of frequent applications to the throat, employing them at very short intervals, even every half or quarter of an hour, and have attributed the want of success in local treatment to neglect of this point. So far as the use of milder remedies is concerned, especially of antiseptics, by means of the spray, I am inclined to think that they might often be used with advantage more freely than is the general custom.

When the nasal cavities are affected, they must be frequently and thoroughly cleared out by antiseptic injections, either by means of the syringe or the spray-apparatus. Various other applications are recommended, such as plugs of cotton-wool soaked in an oily solution of menthol. Jacobi specially recommends for this purpose common salt; a saturated solution of boric acid; a 1 per cent. solution of carbolic acid; or a mixture of bichloride of mercury 1, chloride of sodium 35, water 1,000. Should the nostrils be blocked, they can be cleansed by means of a probe wrapped in cotton wool, and dipped in carbolic acid solution.

4. The treatment which should be adopted when the *main air-tube* is involved in diphtheria is a subject of much controversy. Jacobi thinks that the early administration of bichloride of mercury is of great service in laryngeal diphtheria, and that it may prevent the necessity for tracheotomy. If the difficulty of breathing is only moderate, relief may perhaps be afforded by giving an *emetic*, to expel some of the exudation, especially sulphate of zinc or ipecacuanha; or by subcutaneous injection of apomorphine. Paroxysmal dyspnoea may sometimes be alleviated by inhalations of chloroform or ether. Should there, however, be evidence of considerable and increasing obstruction to the breathing, the proper treatment unquestionably lies in the performance of *tracheotomy* or *laryngotomy* before it is too late. The trachea should be opened as high up as possible. It may be requisite to remove pieces of membrane through the tracheotomy-tube, but this *should not be done by the mouth of the operator*, except under urgent circumstances, but by *some suitable suction-apparatus*. If the mouth has been used, it should be thoroughly washed out with some antiseptic immediately afterwards. The utmost precautions must be taken after the operation, with the view of preventing broncho-pneumonia. The tracheotomy-tube must also be kept properly cleansed. The operation almost always affords temporary relief and prolongation of life; ultimately the issue is frequently fatal, but still not a few cases recover, some when apparently in almost a hopeless condition. Sir B. W. Richardson has recorded a case in which the employment of artificial respiration, by means of the double-acting bellows, was efficacious in saving the life of a patient when *in extremis*, after tracheotomy had been performed. If there are signs that the bronchi are extensively involved, no advantage can be derived from opening the windpipe. The subcutaneous injection of strychnine, inhalation of oxygen, artificial respiration, or the use of the interrupted current may be of service in threatened asphyxia.

The treatment of diphtheria of the main air-tube by "intubation of the larynx" has been advocated on the ground that, while less severe than tracheotomy, it is quite as, or more, effectual in relieving dyspnoea. My experience of this treatment is not favourable on the whole, but it has been successful now and then.

5. *Symptoms or complications* may need special attention in diphtheria, such as sickness, or hyperpyrexia, which must be managed on ordinary principles. It is important to look to the urine, and should there be any signs of suppression, poultices and fomentations should be freely applied over the loins, or dry-cupping may be employed. Adynamic or typhoid symptoms call for the administration of ammonia and tincture of bark, camphor, ether, and allied remedies; in extreme cases ether may even be injected subcutaneously. When there are signs of cardiac failure, digitalis, strychnine, or caffeine are called for, in addition to free stimulation.

6. *Convalescence.*—A patient who has had diphtheria must be carefully watched during convalescence, special attention being paid to the heart. Change of air is most useful, especially to the seaside. Good diet is essential, with tonics and cod-liver oil. For the nervous sequelæ the best remedies are quinine, iron, and strychnine, along with a supporting and nutritious diet, which should include a moderate supply of stimulants. Rest in bed is often indicated; and sudden exertion must be particularly avoided when the cardiac rhythm is disturbed. Massage and galvanism may be employed in connection with paralyzed parts. If deglutition is seriously interfered with, feeding should be carried out by means of the stomach-tube.

7. *Prevention.*—Children in a house where diphtheria exists should not be allowed to go to school, or to mix with others in any way. The patient must be kept apart for at least a fortnight after apparent recovery, and the mouth should be thoroughly disinfected, as bacilli are said to remain in the buccal secretions for some time. The importance of attending to the teeth and tonsils in children has been urged by Caillé, as a preventive measure in relation to diphtheria. Kissing a diphtheritic patient must be absolutely forbidden; and medical men, when examining the throat or performing tracheotomy, should cover the mouth with cotton wool or some other protective. Antiseptic mouth-washes may also be used by those directly exposed to infection. Protective inoculation against diphtheria has been introduced, but does not seem as yet to be of any real service. The apartment which has been occupied by a diphtheritic patient must be most thoroughly disinfected, as well as all articles likely to act as fomites, on account of the great vitality of the bacilli. The fact that diphtheria may be conveyed by milk must not be forgotten in relation to the prevention of the disease.

CHAPTER XIV.

MUMPS—IDIOPATHIC PAROTITIS.

Etiology.—Mumps is an *acute specific disease*, and there can be no doubt that it is infectious. Almost invariably the complaint assumes an epidemic form, but it may be localized in houses or institutions where a number of young persons are aggregated together. It rarely occurs except in young individuals, being very common about the period of puberty, and also from five to seven years of age. Males are much more frequently attacked than females. Epidemics are most common in spring and autumn.

Anatomical Characters.—Mumps is chiefly characterized anatomically by inflammation of one or both parotid glands. Whether the process begins in the cellular tissue, or as a catarrh of the gland-ducts, is a matter of discussion. The affected gland becomes hyperæmic and enlarged, being infiltrated with a serous fluid. Fibrinous exudation is not often observed; and extremely rarely is there any tendency to the formation of pus. The tissues around are more or less infiltrated. As a rule the swelling rapidly subsides, and the gland returns to its normal

condition. Occasionally the submaxillary and other neighbouring glands are involved. The testicles may become affected; or in females the labia, ovaries, or mammary glands. Implication of the testes has been attributed to extension from an inflamed urethra.

Symptoms.—The *period of incubation* for mumps varies from twelve to twenty-one days. In most cases there is some degree of premonitory fever, which generally lasts from one to three days before local symptoms are manifested, but occasionally they come on simultaneously. Pyrexia usually continues throughout the attack, but may subside on the appearance of the local signs, and it is seldom severe, nor does the patient feel particularly ill. A swelling or fulness appears in the region of either parotid gland, commencing just below the external ear, and then extending up to the zygoma, as well as to a variable extent over the face and down the neck, thus giving rise to much disfigurement. It has an elastic feel, being firmer over the centre than at the circumference. The skin may be reddened over the swelling, but is frequently unaltered. More or less pain or uneasiness is felt, with a sense of tension, increased by opening the mouth, by masticating, or by swallowing: there is also tenderness on pressure. Salivation occurs now and then; and occasionally deafness is complained of. In the great majority of cases the swelling subsides about the 5th or 6th day, and has quite disappeared in two or three days more; but in the meantime the gland on the opposite side frequently becomes affected, and goes through a similar course; or both glands may be involved simultaneously. A hardness occasionally remains for some time; and in very exceptional instances abscesses form in the gland, which open externally, or into the external auditory meatus. The submaxillary gland is sometimes attacked; and the surrounding lymphatic glands, as well as the tonsils, are often enlarged.

An important character of mumps is its liability to so-called *metastasis*, especially in adults. This event may be preceded by some dangerous symptoms. The testicle is most frequently attacked, orchitis setting in as the inflammation subsides in the parotid, with effusion into the tunica vaginalis and oedema of the scrotum. Occasionally the parotid gland and testicle are affected at the same time, or alternately for several times in succession. The orchitis generally runs a favourable course, but it may lead to wasting of the testicle. In females the labia, mammary gland, or ovary may be attacked in the same way. Meningitis is stated to have occurred in very rare cases of mumps.

Treatment.—In most cases of mumps but little treatment is required. It is necessary to keep the patient indoors, in a comfortable room, or even in bed if the complaint is at all severe. An *aperient* is useful at the outset, and the bowels should be kept regularly open. A *saline* mixture may be given; and during convalescence quinine is sometimes required. The *diet* should consist of liquids, especially milk and beef-tea. The only *local* treatment generally needed is to use hot fomentations, and to cover the parotid region with cotton-wool. The application of two or three leeches may possibly be indicated in severe cases. If an abscess forms it must be opened; and any hardness that is left may be removed by friction with oil, or by painting the surface with tincture of iodine. When metastasis takes place, it is recommended to endeavour to excite the return of inflammation in the parotid gland by means of mustard poultices or blisters. Orchitis must be treated by rest, fomentations, and other appropriate measures.

CHAPTER XV.

WHOOPING—OR HOOPING-COUGH—PERTUSSIS.

Etiology.—Whooping-cough is undoubtedly an infectious disease, depending upon a *specific poison*, which may travel a considerable distance through the atmosphere, or be conveyed by fomites, but is much more likely to be transmitted by intimate association of individuals. The contagium is chiefly given off in the breath, and is believed to be present in the secretions from the nasal and respiratory mucous membranes. Various organisms have been described, including a peculiar *bacillus* in the respiratory mucous membrane and sputum, but these are not recognized by reliable authorities. Whooping-cough commonly occurs in an epidemic form, but may be sporadic. It may be communicated by infection before the characteristic "whoop" is developed. A pronounced second attack is scarcely ever observed.

The chief *predisposing causes* of pertussis are childhood, especially from 1 to 8 years of age; the female sex; weakness and anaemia, with nasal or bronchial catarrh; a cold and damp season or climate; and exposure to all causes of "cold." With regard to age, it must be mentioned that the complaint may occur in adults, or even in advanced life, when it may be very serious. An epidemic of whooping-cough has often immediately preceded or followed one of measles, less commonly of scarlatina.

Anatomical Characters and Pathology.—Whooping-cough has been generally regarded as a peculiar catarrh of the mucous membrane of the air-passages, attended with hyperæsthesia. It has also been attributed to some morbid condition affecting the vagus nerve; to a reflex neurosis from the nasal cavities or the air-passages; or to some condition of the central nervous system. Some observers affirm that redness, with slight swelling of the mucous membrane of the larynx and trachea, may be seen with the laryngoscope during life; others deny this statement. There may be evidences of catarrh in fatal cases, but frequently these are absent. Those who advocate the nervous origin of the disease have described signs of inflammation about the vagus nerves; enlarged bronchial or tracheal glands pressing upon these nerves; or congestion of the medulla oblongata and its membranes. In the majority of cases, however, none of these appearances are observed. The most important morbid conditions associated with whooping-cough are those which will be mentioned as complications, especially bronchitis; lobular collapse of the lungs; acute insufflation or emphysema; and broncho-pneumonia. Rarely croup, meningitis, or other unusual complications are met with.

Symptoms.—The *period of incubation* for whooping-cough is uncertain, but is said to range usually from six to twelve days, fourteen days being the extreme. Dr. William Squire has found evidence of the development of the disease as early as from two to four days after exposure to infection. The symptoms may be conveniently divided into certain stages.

First or Catarrhal stage.—At the commencement whooping-cough presents no characteristic signs, there being merely pyrexia, which may be slight or sharp, accompanied with signs of catarrh, namely,

running from the nose, sneezing, redness of the eyes, frequent and usually severe paroxysms of cough, at first dry, but soon attended with a peculiar expectoration. This stage may last from two days to two or three weeks or more, and its duration and severity will indicate the probable duration and intensity of the entire attack.

Second or Spasmodic stage.—The fully-established disease is characterized by peculiar fits of spasmodic cough. A paroxysm generally sets in abruptly without any obvious cause, but it may be excited by emotion, such as crying, irritation in the throat, the act of swallowing, or a close and dusty atmosphere. It is in many cases preceded by a sensation of tickling in the throat, or some other unpleasant feeling. Sometimes it is ushered in by marked pallor, or even a sensation of faintness. At the onset of an attack, children often run to their mother or nurse for help, and their sufferings are most trying to witness. The cough is very severe and distressing, consisting of a number of short, quick, spasmodic or convulsive, and forcible expiratory puffs, followed by a prolonged, clear, shrill, or crowing inspiration, or "whoop," these alternating for a variable number of times; if the fit is of very long duration, the cough at last becomes almost inaudible. It is usually terminated by the expectoration of a small amount of tenacious mucus; or of a considerable quantity of viscid, clear fluid, which may also be discharged through the nose; not uncommonly vomiting also takes place. Breathing being interfered with, the child speedily presents the appearances characteristic of deficient aeration of the blood and venous congestion, and in prolonged attacks may become almost asphyxiated. Usually there is a feeling of much exhaustion, with soreness about the muscles of the chest, after a paroxysm, but these sensations soon pass away. As accidental events there may occur bleeding from the eyes, nose, mouth, ears, or rectum; involuntary discharge of urine and faeces; hernia or prolapsus ani; or convulsions. *Physical examination* of the chest during a fit reveals that air does not enter the lungs properly; and there is frequently in young patients marked retraction of the lower part of the thorax during inspiration. The physical signs of pulmonary complications can often be detected.

The frequency and duration of the paroxysms in whooping-cough vary greatly, the one being generally in proportion to the other. As a rule the disease becomes intensified up to a certain point, attaining its height at about the end of the third, fourth, or fifth week, and then it subsides gradually.

During the intervals between the fits the patient is usually apparently well, but in severe cases there may be prolonged exhaustion, languor, and debility, loss of appetite, headache, sleeplessness, pyrexia, and other symptoms; or various complications may give rise to their special clinical phenomena.

Some years ago Dr. T. Morton drew special attention to a condition which had long been known, namely, the frequent occurrence of ulceration about the *frænum linguae* in cases of whooping-cough. Subsequent observations, however, by Prof. Roger showed that this lesion is in no way specific, and that it does not hold any causative relation to the disease. Its origin is purely mechanical, the lesion being due to the impulsion forwards of the tongue in its hyperæmic state against the lower teeth during the paroxysms of coughing, when the *frænum* is easily cut by the sharp lower incisors. It may be of use in diagnosis in cases of pertussis, where the nature of the disease is not thoroughly declared, as this is the

only complaint in which the cough is violent enough to propel the tongue against the teeth.

Third or Decline stage.—There is no sudden transition to this stage, but a gradual diminution in the frequency and intensity of the paroxysms, while the cough loses its special characters, and expectoration becomes more easy, resembling in its nature that of ordinary bronchial catarrh. Finally the cough stops altogether. The general health also improves.

Complications and Sequelæ.—Some of these are directly due to the cough; others are accidental. They chiefly include bronchitis, which may become capillary; lobular collapse; emphysema or acute insufflation of the lungs; rupture of air-vesicles, followed by interstitial emphysema, a collection of air in the mediastinum, or subcutaneous emphysema; broncho-pneumonia; pleurisy; phthisis; acute tuberculosis; croup; convulsions; cerebral apoplexy; meningitis; hemiplegia; sudden blindness, with optic neuritis followed by optic atrophy; gastritis or enteritis, with obstinate vomiting and diarrhoea; and hernia. It has been stated that the urine is frequently saccharine in whooping-cough. Dr. Dolan examined the urine of fifty children with confirmed whooping-cough, and only found traces of sugar in thirteen.

Duration and Terminations.—The entire *duration* of whooping-cough is very variable, but from six to eight weeks is about the average. The third stage may continue for an indefinite period; and a *relapse* is not uncommon. Most cases terminate in recovery, but death is not an infrequent event, being usually the result of complications. Permanent organic mischief of different kinds not uncommonly follows whooping-cough; or the chest may become deformed.

Diagnosis.—In the early stage this complaint cannot be diagnosed with certainty, but it might be suspected if the disease is epidemic; if a child suffers from cough of a violent and spasmodic character; and if there is pyrexia. Subsequently the peculiar fits of cough, with characteristic expectoration, are usually absolutely distinctive of whooping-cough. In doubtful cases ulceration about the *frænum linguae* might help the diagnosis. The possible occurrence of whooping-cough in adults or old persons must not be forgotten.

Prognosis.—Whooping-cough is always a serious disease, and calls for a guarded prognosis. The general circumstances which increase its gravity are early infancy; the period of dentition; constitutional weakness; residence in a large town; poverty and its surroundings; and epidemic prevalence. The complaint is more dangerous in proportion to the number and severity of the paroxysms; to the degree of pyrexia; and to the gravity of the complications present. It is said to be very fatal among negroes in the United States.

Treatment.—The chief indications in the treatment of whooping-cough are to prevent or subdue the paroxysms of cough, at the same time avoiding any accumulation of secretion in the bronchial tubes; to obviate complications, and treat them as they arise; to attend to the general health, as well as to the state of the important organs and functions; to promote convalescence; and prevent or treat sequelæ.

1. *General treatment.*—A child suffering from suspected whooping-cough should at the outset be kept in a warm room, or even in bed; be well-clad, with flannel next the skin; and have warm drinks, in order to promote perspiration. An *aperient* may be given if required. During the catarrhal stage, it may be well to administer a mixture containing solution of acetate of ammonium, ipecacuanha wine, and compound tinc-

ture of camphor. When the disease is established, the most serviceable remedies for internal administration are *pulmonary sedatives* and *anti-spasmodics*. Most of these are powerful drugs, and should only be given under proper supervision. The most efficient are extract or tincture of belladonna; preparations of opium or morphine; hydrocyanic acid; hydrobromic acid or bromides; hydrate of chloral; conium-juice; tincture of hyoscyamus; tincture of lobelia; cannabis indica; ether; and chloroform. The alkaline carbonates, especially carbonate of potassium, are believed to be useful, and either of these may be combined with one of the above remedies. In my own experience I have found decided benefit from a combination of ipecacuanha wine with hydrocyanic acid ($m \frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$), or with tincture of belladonna. Oxymel of squill has also been specially recommended. Some advocate the employment of chloroform or ether by inhalation to relieve the paroxysms. Emetics are useful if there is any tendency to accumulation of secretion in the bronchi.

2. *Specific treatment*.—Numerous specific remedies have been advocated for whooping-cough, but in most instances they all fail. The chief are alum (which is in some cases decidedly valuable); dilute mineral acids, especially nitric; cochineal; arsenic; nux vomica or strychnine; bromide of potassium or ammonium; infusion of clover; quinine in small doses often repeated; phenazone or acetanilide; tincture of myrrh; repeated emetics; and certain antiseptics. Metallic salts of copper, zinc, iron, and silver have been recommended, and may be useful in cases which tend to assume a chronic form. With regard to *antiseptics*, different agents are advocated, and they are employed in different ways. Some, such as benzol, carbolic acid, quinine, tincture of iodine, and salicylates, have been given internally. Moist and dry inhalations and sprays have been much used, containing carbolic acid, iodine, thymol, turpentine, sulphurous acid, salicylic acid, chloride or bromide of potassium, oil of eucalyptus, and various other remedies. Another plan is to impregnate the air of the room with the vapour or spray of carbolic acid, turpentine, or petroleum; or with the fumes from burning sulphur. In carrying out the treatment last mentioned, a quantity of sulphur equivalent to 10 grains per cubic foot is burnt in the empty bedroom; after an interval of five hours the doors and windows are thrown open, and the child sleeps there the same night. The day-nursery is similarly fumigated during the night. Antiseptics are also used as direct local applications.

3. *Local applications* have long been advocated in the treatment of whooping-cough, but during recent years they have come more into prominence. One method is to use reagents externally, such as friction over the neck, back, or chest with various stimulant or sedative liniments; the application of a belladonna-plaster; the wearing of picked oakum in muslin (Illingworth); or counter-irritation over the chest or along the course of the vagus nerve. Another plan is to apply remedies directly to the throat and larynx. Solution of nitrate of silver, glycerine of tannin, alum, bromides, chloral, resorcin, and various *antiseptics* have been thus employed; but one of the most important agents is cocaine, the throat being painted with a 4 to 10 per cent. solution two or three times a day, as soon as the catarrhal stage has subsided. No doubt this is a valuable remedy, but it needs to be used very cautiously in young children. A spray of a mixed solution of resorcin and cocaine has been found useful in alleviating severe fits of cough. On the supposition that the paroxysms of whooping-cough are set up by organisms in the nasal cavities, another local method of treatment has been advocated, namely,

the direct introduction of remedies into these cavities. Goldschmidt recommends that the nostrils be syringed with a solution of salicylic acid (1 in 1,000) or of corrosive sublimate (1 in 10,000). Nasal insufflation has also been well spoken of, a fine powder of boric acid and coffee, pulverized benzine, and quinine being among the agents recommended to be thus employed. Sansom has suggested that remedies might be inserted into the nostrils in the form of an ointment, in small pellets, or mixed with glycerine.

4. The general management of patients suffering from whooping-cough is important. In bad weather they should be confined to the house altogether, or even to one room, maintained at a warm and uniform temperature; but in favourable seasons it is decidedly beneficial for them to be out in the fresh air during sunshine. The clothing must be sufficiently warm. It is important to attend to the diet, and to the state of the alimentary canal; fluid food answers best, and sometimes it may be peptonized with advantage; should dentition be proceeding, the teeth must be looked to. Children who are sufficiently intelligent should be taught to suppress unnecessary cough as much as possible.

5. *Complications* must be carefully watched for, and treated as they arise. Inflammatory affections do not bear lowering measures well in whooping-cough, and supporting treatment is usually indicated.

6. During convalescence much care is also needed, and sequelæ must be guarded against as much as possible. *Tonic* remedies, especially iron and quinine, are often very useful at this time. Change of air is found to be highly beneficial in prolonged cases, especially to the sea-side; or a sea-voyage may be desirable if a state of debility persists. Good diet is needed, and a little wine is desirable sometimes.

7. *Prevention*.—There is no protection against whooping-cough except in keeping away from infection. Children known or suspected to be suffering from the disease must not be allowed to mingle with others until thoroughly convalescent.

CHAPTER XVI.

INFLUENZA—EPIDEMIC CATARRH.

THIS complaint has come into conspicuous prominence during recent years, in consequence of the serious and widespread epidemics which have occurred, and still continue to prevail. It must not be supposed, however, that it is in any way a new disease, or different from the influenza which assumed an epidemic form in times past, the last memorable occasion in Europe having been in 1847-8.

Etiology.—True influenza is essentially an *epidemic* disease, and usually attacks a large number of persons, either simultaneously or in rapid succession. It often breaks out in several parts at the same time. An epidemic of influenza generally progresses in a certain direction, travelling with great rapidity, and has been said to have a cyclical course; frequently, however, it prevails simultaneously over a very large area, and has hence been regarded as a *pandemic* disease. The inhabitants

of large towns are chiefly affected, especially of those parts which are low, damp, overcrowded, and in other unfavourable hygienic conditions, but the complaint prevails extensively amongst all classes, and under every condition of life. Dr. Brackenridge observed, indeed, that in Edinburgh the wealthier classes suffered most ; and he thought that the overheating of houses and rooms might have had something to do with the spread of the disease. Sometimes influenza breaks out even at sea. It is very prone to modify the characters of other affections ; and it has been noted that other acute specific diseases often prevail extensively at the same time as influenza. An epidemic generally lasts in a district from six to ten weeks, and it often rapidly subsides at the close.

The exciting cause of influenza is believed to be a *specific poison*, conveyed only by the atmosphere, through which it is widely diffusible. A favourite view is that it acts primarily on the nervous system. The complaint is generally regarded as belonging to the *miasmatic-contagious* class, being capable of transmission by infection after introduction into the system, and this seems unquestionably to be the case ; some, however, are of opinion that it is entirely a *miasmatic* or *malarial* disease, and non-infectious. Various hypotheses have been advanced to explain the occurrence of epidemics of influenza, but none of them are at all satisfactory. Many of them have started in Russia, hence the names *Russian influenza* or *Russian fever*. They break out at all seasons, but are most frequent in autumn and winter, and sudden changes of temperature appear to favour the development of the disease. Other animals besides human beings seem to suffer during or previous to an influenza-epidemic.

As to the nature of the infective agent in influenza, various micrococcii and other organisms have been described in the bronchial secretions and blood, but these are not peculiar to the complaint. A *specific bacillus* has, however, been found by Pfeiffer and Kitosato in the bronchial secretion ; by Canon in the blood ; and by Pfuhl in the sputum. Cultivations have been obtained from all these sources. The bacilli are very thin, and relatively short. They are said to be present in enormous numbers in the expectoration, occurring singly, in pairs, or in short rows. It is supposed that these organisms are situated in the respiratory mucous membrane, and only enter the blood at certain stages.

The chief individual predisposing causes of influenza are the female sex slightly, especially during the menstrual periods ; adult and advanced age ; a low condition of the system ; exposure to cold ; and, it is said, the existence of chronic lung or heart disease. The presence of any acute disease is believed to afford protection against the complaint. One attack does not prevent another, and probably renders the individual more susceptible.

Anatomical Characters.—The usual morbid appearances in influenza are those of catarrh of the mucous membrane lining the nose and its communicating sinuses, the mouth, throat, and respiratory tract ; and of the conjunctivæ. In severe cases capillary bronchitis, pulmonary congestion and œdema, or lobar or lobular pneumonia may supervene, the inflammation often involving both lungs. Sometimes the lining membrane of the entire alimentary canal is affected, there being marked gastro-enteritis ; or the genito-urinary mucous membrane may be involved. Occasionally pleurisy, empyema, or pericarditis supervenes ; or very rarely meningitis. Cerebral abscess may follow influenza ; and also peripheral neuritis. There is no splenic enlargement.

Symptoms.—Influenza is a disease running a more or less definite course; and characterized by pyrexia, with much constitutional disturbance and depression, and local symptoms due to the implication of the mucous membranes just indicated. The *period of incubation* is very uncertain, but appears to be short as a rule, ranging from a few hours to three or four days; it is supposed, however, that it may extend to eight or ten days, or even to two or three weeks.

The *general* symptoms usually precede the *local*, but not always. The *invasion* is often strikingly sudden, but in other cases it is gradual. The early symptoms are chilliness, lassitude, pains in the limbs, and in some cases intense frontal headache, or nausea and vomiting; followed by fever, which is usually high, the temperature rising to 102° , 103° , 104° , or even higher, the skin feeling very hot and dry, though sometimes there is much sour perspiration. Very soon the patient complains of a feeling of great prostration and debility, apathy, lowness of spirits, and mental inaptitude; with severe aching and shooting pains about the chest, back, limbs, and neck, or a bruised feeling; giddiness; sleeplessness, or, on the other hand, somnolence; and general restlessness. The pulse is at first frequent, full, and bounding; but soon tends to become soft, weak, and slow. The urine is febrile. The pyrexia generally presents evening exacerbations, and is said to be in some districts intermittent. There is no special rash, but erythematous, urticarial, or papular eruptions, as well as sudamina, have been noticed in individual cases of influenza. In uncomplicated cases the duration of the fever usually varies from four to eight days, being frequently terminated by *crisis*, accompanied with copious perspiration, a free flow of urine depositing lithates, or diarrhoea; but in other cases the pyrexia subsides gradually.

The *local* symptoms vary according to the seat and extent of the catarrh, but in the recent epidemics they have generally been absent, or at any rate not prominent. When it occurs, the catarrhal condition usually begins in the nose and conjunctivæ, and spreads downwards. The nasal cavities feel hot and dry at first, and the eyelids smart. Soon a watery acrid discharge flows abundantly, and there is much sneezing, the sense of smell being impaired or lost; occasionally profuse epistaxis occurs. The mouth, tongue, and throat feel sore; and taste is defective. Severe pain may be experienced across the forehead, owing to implication of the frontal sinuses. There may be pain along the Eustachian tube, with noises in the ears, and some degree of deafness. Examination reveals redness of those membranes which are visible; while herpes is often seen about the lips. The symptoms indicating implication of the air-passages are hoarseness; soreness and a tickling sensation along the larynx and trachea; more or less dyspnœa; oppression and stuffiness across the chest; paroxysmal cough, not uncommonly very violent, at first dry, but afterwards attended with bronchitic expectoration. These catarrhal symptoms usually subside from the fifth to the seventh day, the materials discharged undergoing the ordinary changes observed in the course of a catarrh. The tongue is furred, and there is much thirst, with loss of appetite. Gastro-enteric catarrh is evidenced by epigastric or abdominal pain and tenderness; redness of the tongue; nausea or vomiting; diarrhoea, which may be severe; and occasionally jaundice.

Cases of influenza differ much in their severity, as well as in the exact combination of symptoms; and some writers recognize certain types. Not unfrequently dangerous pulmonary complications arise, especially

capillary bronchitis, lobar pneumonia, or broncho-pneumonia. The pneumonic condition is apt to come on very insidiously, without any marked symptoms. Dr. Brackenridge noticed in some of his cases a peculiar variety of patchy pneumonia, with haemoptysis. In not a few instances there seems to be rather a congestive condition, with viscid secretion, especially in the interscapular regions, attended with a very irritable and troublesome cough, but only slight expectoration. It has not uncommonly happened in my experience that a patient who has had influenza has gone out too soon, and this has been followed by rapid and extensive pneumonia, often terminating fatally. Abscess of the lung follows occasionally. Pleurisy and empyema must also be borne in mind as possible complications. *Cardiac* feebleness is sometimes noticed, quite out of proportion to the pyrexia, the pulse becoming very weak, small, and irregular or intermittent. The condition may be very alarming, or may even prove fatal. In some instances *gastro-enteric* symptoms are very severe. *Nervous* symptoms are also occasionally prominent, namely, delirium, stupor, convulsions, or trance. In cases of a low type, or accompanied with serious complications, the patient may sink into a typhoid condition, with dry and brown tongue. As special complications noticed in particular cases may be mentioned haemorrhages; cystitis, followed by orchitis; and paralysis of the bladder.

Duration and Terminations.—Uncomplicated cases of influenza generally begin to convalesce from the fifth to the tenth day, but the duration may be much prolonged by complications or sequelæ; or relapses or recurrences may take place. The great majority of cases end in recovery. Convalescence is often very tedious. Sequelæ are very apt to remain, especially great debility with mental inaptitude or depression; actual mental derangement; anaemia; neuralgic and rheumatic pains, which are common about the head and neck; hyperæsthesia; peripheral neuritis; parotitis; otitis and its consequences; or persistent cough. Occasionally chronic bronchitis, emphysema, chronic laryngitis, or phthisis is set up. Death is usually the result of lung-complications, but is sometimes due to adynamic symptoms or cardiac failure.

Diagnosis.—Influenza is usually easily recognized by its epidemic distribution; mode of onset; general symptoms, with marked depression; and catarrhal phenomena, when present. It might be confounded with simple catarrhal fever, measles or small-pox at first, dengue, or possibly typhoid fever. The complications are important to remember, and to be on the look-out for, in relation to diagnosis.

Prognosis.—The circumstances which render an attack of influenza grave are advanced age; a feeble constitution; the presence of chronic pulmonary or cardiac disease; serious lung-complications, with great dyspnœa, inability to expectorate, and signs of imperfect blood-aeration; severe nervous disturbance; grave cardiac complications; or the appearance of typhoid symptoms. Some epidemics are much more fatal than others. Many deaths have occurred during the epidemics of recent years, especially among adults and elderly persons.

Treatment.—It has been fully established that lowering treatment is injurious in influenza. In all cases it is advisable to keep the patient indoors, in a cool well-ventilated room, but protected from draughts. At the outset an *aperient* is useful, and in adults a dose of calomel seems to be beneficial, but repeated purgation is decidedly to be deprecated. Some recommend an *emetic* at the commencement, but such

treatment is only indicated if there is much nausea. A warm bath is sometimes useful to relieve the general pains, the patient being then placed in a warm bed, and given a hot drink. The *diet* must depend on the severity of the case; if it is slight, a moderate quantity of beef-tea and milk may be allowed; but in severe cases, attended with much depression, a considerable amount of liquid nourishment is required. It is found preferable to give things cool, and cold or iced drinks are very grateful, and may be freely allowed. The late Dr. Parkes recommended a highly diluted solution of nitrate of potassium with lemon-juice and sugar. *Alcoholic stimulants* are not required at first, unless there is much debility, except in old persons, who generally need them early; in some instances large quantities of wine or brandy are called for, but they must be used cautiously.

As might be expected, a variety of remedies have been advocated for influenza. On the whole quinine seems to have held its ground as a valuable drug in this disease, especially during its later stages; the ammoniated tincture is a useful preparation. Amongst other remedies specially recommended may be mentioned phenazone, phenacetin, salicin or salicylate of sodium, bromide of ammonium, and citrate of caffein.

The catarrhal symptoms are best relieved by inhalations of steam, to which some add ether, chloroform, or conium. For bronchial catarrh ipecacuanha wine may be given at first, and if there is troublesome cough it may be cautiously combined with some *sedative*, such as tincture of henbane or conium. Opium should only be employed with particular caution. Poultices, sinapisms, and warm or anodyne fomentations to the chest are often valuable. Should capillary bronchitis or pneumonia supervene, a *stimulant* treatment is decidedly indicated, ammonia with decoction of cinchona and spirit of chloroform, ether, camphor, or other remedies of this class being administered, as well as alcoholic stimulants. Free dry-cupping is often valuable in these cases. The patient must be encouraged to cough should there be extensive bronchitis, in order to get rid of the secretion; and if this accumulates an *emetic* might be given. Vomiting or diarrhoea may call for particular treatment.

If the general pains are severe, iodide of potassium with quinine often gives relief. It may be necessary under such circumstances to administer opium, or even to have recourse to subcutaneous injection of morphine. Pyrexia may be moderated by cold sponging. Cold to the head, or the application of two or three leeches might be necessary, should dangerous cerebral symptoms arise. Cardiac debility may require the administration of digitalis or strychnine.

During convalescence *tonics* are needed, especially quinine and iron, or strychnine, with nourishing food, and wine or beer. Change of air is highly beneficial, but special care must be taken that the patient does not go out too soon. He should wear flannel, and guard in every way against taking cold. Sequelæ must be attended to as required.

CHAPTER XVII.

EPIDEMIC, ASIATIC, ALGIDE, OR MALIGNANT
CHOLERA—CHOLERA MORBUS.

Etiology.—Cholera is an *acute specific disease*, which chiefly prevails as a virulent epidemic, but in certain regions is endemic. The evidence is emphatically in favour of cholera being an infectious disease, and that it is capable of being transmitted from one human being to another, but there is abundant proof that the stools constitute the main, if not the only channel of contagion, and that the great cause of the propagation of cholera is the contamination of water used especially for drinking purposes, but also for cooking and washing, with the excreta of persons suffering from this complaint. It has been stated that the specific poison is innocuous when first discharged, and only acquires virulent properties after the lapse of four or five days. The admixture of an extremely minute quantity of a cholera-stool will impart to great quantities of water the power of originating the disease, if taken into the alimentary canal. Probably the contagium becomes rapidly multiplied in the water, especially if this is exposed to the heat of the sun. Milk is also capable of conveying the cholera poison, as in the case of typhoid fever, and possibly other articles of food, especially vegetables which have been washed in infected water, such as lettuce and cress. There does not seem to be any danger from merely being in the presence of those suffering from cholera, but emanations from the excreta into the atmosphere may generate the disease, being afterwards swallowed or inhaled, especially in places which are ill-ventilated. Linen or bed-clothes contaminated with the stools may also convey the disease.

The infective agent in cholera is now generally believed to consist in the *comma-bacillus* or *spirillum cholerae Asiatica*, discovered by Koch in 1884. Various other organisms have been described, but they have no peculiar relation to the disease. The comma-bacilli are said to be present in the intestinal discharges and contents in all cases of true Asiatic cholera, and in no other condition, becoming most abundant at the height of the attack, when they almost entirely replace the ordinary bacteria which inhabit the intestinal canal. They are practically limited to this part, and though they penetrate the Lieberkuhn crypts, and may be found beneath the epithelium, they rarely pass more deeply, never having been detected in the blood, nor in other organs than the intestines.

The cholera-bacillus or spirillum is very minute, each cell measuring about $1\cdot5$ to $2\ \mu$ in length, and $\cdot5$ to $\cdot6\ \mu$ in thickness; and more or less curved, hence resembling a “comma.” Each cell has at some period of its life a flagellum, either at one or both ends; and is actively mobile, especially in warm temperatures. When grown under various conditions the cells are differently arranged, in pairs, S-shaped, in longer cork-screw filaments, or even as straight rods. The organisms present peculiarities in their modes of cultivation, in the results thereof, and in certain reactions. Inoculation-experiments in animals seem to have been ultimately successful; and a human being is said to have been accidentally inoculated in Koch's laboratory.

This organism appears to be capable of existing and multiplying outside the human body, under suitable conditions of temperature, site, and soil, and may thus be continuously propagated. It can live in pure water for some time, but only for a short period in water containing organic matter and other bacteria. It is readily destroyed by drying when grown in the intestinal canal, but seems to have a greater degree of vitality in conditions of free growth outside the body.

The poison of cholera is regarded by some as having a *malarial* or *miasmatic* origin, and they deny that the malady is infectious. Pettenkofer believes that the germs of the disease, after leaving the human body, develop and multiply in the subsoil moisture under the influence of heat, and then rise as a miasm into the atmosphere.

The immediate cause of a *cholera-epidemic* is often obscure and difficult to detect, but many local outbreaks can be readily explained when proper investigation is made. Many authorities maintain that cholera has been imported into Europe and other parts of the world from India, and Macnamara affirms that every outburst can be traced back through a series of cases to that country, the disease having been propagated thence by human agency, and always having followed the principal paths of human intercourse.

Many conditions are said to promote the spread of cholera, and to aggravate its intensity, but those deserving of notice include a high temperature, with a moist, heavy, and stagnant atmosphere, cholera being therefore most prevalent in certain hot climates, and during hot seasons; a low position of a district; unhealthy sanitary conditions, especially overcrowding, want of proper ventilation, accumulation of decomposing organic matter from imperfect drainage or any other cause, and impure or unhealthy food or water; and perhaps the nature of the soil. Pettenkofer holds that the conditions of the soil are most important, especially a certain porosity, combined with moisture, and contamination with organic matter, such as sewage. It is found that most cases of cholera break out early in the morning.

Certain individual *predisposing causes* of cholera have been mentioned, but about many of these there is much contradiction. Among the chief are fatigue, as after marching a long distance; destitution; errors in diet; abuse of purgatives; depressing mental influences, especially grief and fright; rather advanced age; race; intemperate habits; a bad state of health; certain occupations; and recent arrival in an infected district. One attack of cholera does not afford protection against another.

Pathology.—All authorities are now agreed that cholera is primarily due to the action of a *specific poison* upon the system. Beyond this point, however, there are wide divergencies of opinion. Sir George Johnson and others who agree with him maintain that the phenomena of cholera are directly due to the action of this poison, first on the blood, in which it is enormously multiplied, and then upon certain portions of the nervous system, especially the sympathetic and the nerve-centres influencing the respiratory and circulatory organs, thus leading to paralysis of the coats of the intestinal smaller arteries and capillaries, with consequent distension and free transudation, while the small vessels of the lungs are spasmodically contracted, and will not allow the blood to pass through these organs. According to this theory the purging and vomiting are regarded as *eliminatory* of a morbid poison. The opposite view held is that the cholera-poison acts primarily and immediately on the intestinal canal, and that the subsequent phenomena are the consequence

of the violent purging and vomiting thus excited, which lead to rapid withdrawal of water from the blood and tissues, and disturbance of the sympathetic nervous system and vagi. Most of those who believe that the comma-bacillus is the immediate cause of the phenomena of cholera are of opinion that its action is in the main, if not entirely, local, and that it produces an intense and peculiar irritation of the intestinal mucous membrane. Some think, however, that there is probably a poison produced within the bowel, which is absorbed into the blood, and originates certain of the symptoms. No special toxin or tox-albumen has yet been definitely isolated. Other points relating to the pathology of cholera will be more conveniently alluded to later on.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid conditions met with in the majority of cases of death from cholera may be thus summarized:—The temperature generally rises after death, and the body remains warm for some time. *Rigor mortis* sets in very speedily, there being often powerful muscular contractions, displacing and distorting the limbs. The skin is mottled, more or less livid or blue, especially in dependent parts, and the limbs are shrunken, but these appearances are less marked than before death. Some striking peculiarities as regards the distribution of the blood are usually observed. The left cavities of the heart are contracted and rigid, and almost or quite empty, as well as the arterial system generally; the right cavities are distended with blood, as are likewise the pulmonary artery and its divisions, and the systemic veins. The pulmonary capillaries and veins, however, contain little or no blood, while the lungs are more or less collapsed, in some cases being almost completely airless and bloodless. Occasionally there is some degree of hypostatic congestion. The condition just described is regarded by some observers as being highly important from a pathological point of view, but Macnamara affirms that it is frequently due to *post-mortem* change, the blood being forced by *post-mortem* rigidity out of the left ventricle and arteries into the capillary and venous systems; and that if the examination is made immediately after death, the left side of the heart will be found as full of blood as the right. Most of the organs of the body are not congested, but, on the other hand, they are shrunken and pale, their capillaries being empty; the alimentary canal and kidneys, however, are commonly more or less injected. The blood is frequently much altered in its physical and chemical characters, being thick, dark, and tarry-looking, becoming lighter on exposure. Most observers affirm that it is deficient in coagulability. The blood not only loses water rapidly, but later on the proportion of saline ingredients is much diminished, and that of the organic constituents is relatively increased, especially the corpuscles and albumen. The specific gravity is much raised. Occasionally the blood is acid. In the advanced stages of cholera it contains abundance of urea and other products of tissue-changes. The late Dr. Lewis and Dr. Cunningham have described peculiar microscopic changes observed in choleric blood during life and after death. Eechymoses are sometimes seen under mucous and serous membranes; while the endocardium, and the fluid contained in serous cavities, are often stained with haematine.

The stomach and small intestines generally present more or less injection of their mucous lining, that of the intestines being also somewhat thickened and oedematous. The bowels are distended, and contain a quantity of materials in the main similar to those discharged during life. They differ, however, in having an abundant admixture of detached epithelium, which is believed therefore to be shed after death. Some-

times there are masses of gelatinous or fibrinous material, or much grumous blood. The glandular structures are commonly enlarged and prominent, especially Peyer's patches and the solitary glands, the latter in rare instances presenting ulceration. In exceptional cases a diphtheritic deposit has been observed. The comma-bacilli are found in the contents of the bowels and the intestinal mucous membrane, as already described. The large intestines are usually shrunken, but do not exhibit any special characters. The bladder is contracted, sometimes extremely so; and its epithelium, as well as that of the urinary passages and vagina, may be shed profusely.

In cases of cholera which survive into the *reaction-stage*, more marked *post-mortem* appearances are visible, indicating gastric and intestinal inflammation; acute Bright's disease; extreme congestion, low inflammation, or gangrene of the lungs; serous inflammations of a low type; or other complications to be hereafter mentioned. At the same time those characteristic of cholera disappear more or less.

Symptoms.—Cholera affords in typical cases a well-defined clinical history, which it is customary to divide into certain stages. The *period of incubation* is of uncertain duration, but it may range, according to different observers, from one to eighteen days. Squire gives from two to five days as the usual incubation-period.

1. *Invasion-stage.*—In many instances this stage is not apparent, the disease manifesting itself suddenly in all its virulence. Diarrhoea is the most important premonitory symptom observed, which may or may not be attended with griping. Nervous disturbances have also been noticed sometimes, though many doubt their reality, such as a sense of languor, debility, exhaustion, or marked depression, trembling, altered expression of countenance, unaccountable lowness of spirits, headache, giddiness, noises in the ear, epigastric uneasiness and oppression, and various other phenomena. This stage is of short duration.

2. *Evacuation-stage. Stage of Development.*—At this time the prominent symptoms are severe purging and vomiting, the materials discharged having special characters; constant thirst; painful cramps; and signs of marked general disturbance, in the direction of prostration and collapse, combined with great restlessness. The purging is the first symptom, and it often sets in early in the morning, becoming speedily very frequent or almost constant, being followed by a sense of much exhaustion, and of sinking at the epigastrium. The stools are very profuse, watery, at first coloured by the previous intestinal contents, but soon presenting peculiar characters, and hence named "rice-water" stools, from their resemblance to water in which rice has been boiled. At this time they are perfectly liquid, exceedingly pale, somewhat opalescent or occasionally whitish or milky, having but little odour. When this liquid is allowed to stand, more or less sediment falls, resembling flakes of boiled rice, leaving a whey-like fluid above, which has a specific gravity of from 1005 to 1010, and a neutral or slightly alkaline reaction. The quantity of deposit is actually very small, the late Dr. Parkes having found the amount deposited from a pint not to weigh when dried more than 4 grains. Chemically the evacuations consist mainly of water, holding in solution a considerable proportion of salts of sodium and potassium, especially chloride of sodium, with but very little albumen or other organic matter. The sediment has been supposed to be modified fibrin or mucus. Microscopically various objects have been described; and the specific bacillus is found in abundance.

In exceptional cases blood or its colouring matter is discharged. Often the diarrhoea is painless, but there may be griping, and a burning sensation at the pit of the stomach is frequently experienced. Vomiting comes on later than the diarrhoea, and is less severe and profuse, occurring chiefly after anything is taken. The vomited matters, which are often expelled with much force, at first consist of the previous stomach-contents, but soon assume the characters of a clear, colourless or yellow, thin fluid, mixed with mucus and disintegrated epithelium. They also sometimes contain the bacillus. The cramps usually set in at the same time as the rice-water stools appear, affecting mainly the muscles moving the fingers and toes, the calves of the legs, and the thighs, but sometimes the abdominal muscles also suffer. Thirst soon becomes a distressing symptom. The rapid withdrawal of fluid from the blood and tissues will explain the occurrence of the cramps and thirst.

In proportion to the severity of the purging and vomiting a sense of exhaustion is felt, and signs of depression and collapse appear, culminating, if the symptoms do not subside, in those characteristic of the next stage, under which they may be more conveniently described.

3. *Stage of Collapse.* *Algide stage.*—There is no abrupt commencement of this stage, but a more or less rapid transition from that just described. The aspect of the patient becomes highly characteristic. The features are pinched and shrunken, assuming a leaden or livid hue, especially about the lips; the eyeballs sink in their sockets, while the lower eyelids fall, and the eyes are half-closed; the nose becomes sharp and pointed; and the cheeks are hollowed. The entire surface of the body is more or less cyanotic, but especially that of the extremities; while the skin presents a peculiar wrinkled and shrivelled aspect, being often at the same time bathed in cold sweat, the hands appearing sodden like those of a washerwoman. When the skin is pinched up the folds disappear slowly. The temperature rapidly falls, and the surface soon assumes a deathlike coldness, particularly over exposed parts, though the temperature within the body appears to be usually increased. In the mouth it ranges from 79° to 88° , in the axilla from 90° to 97° (Goodeve); in the vagina and rectum it is considerably higher, it may be up to 103° or 104° . The circulatory organs and blood afford evidences of grave disturbance. The radial pulse is exceedingly feeble and thready, or even extinct, and in bad cases no pulsation can be felt in the brachial, or even in the carotid arteries, while the cardiac impulse and sounds become extremely weak or almost imperceptible. The general capillary circulation is seriously embarrassed. When a vein is opened, little or no blood escapes, this fluid being thick, viscid, and tar-like. The respiratory functions are also impeded. There is paroxysmal dyspnoea, accompanied with gasping for breath, and a sense of oppression and craving for air, this *air-hunger* becoming at last almost continuous. The expired air is cold, and very deficient in carbonic anhydride. The voice is extremely weak, and often becomes ultimately a mere whisper or even entirely inaudible. The nervous system necessarily suffers severely. As a rule muscular prostration is marked, but the strength is now and then wonderfully maintained. There is great restlessness and jactitation, with wakefulness, the patient tossing about, and throwing off the bed-clothes. At first much mental anxiety is felt, but this soon changes into apathy and indifference. Occasionally headache, giddiness, tinnitus aurium, muscae volitantes, or cloudiness of vision are complained of. The mind is for a time clear though inactive, but in

cases ending fatally stupor sets in, followed by coma. Reflex excitability is markedly impaired. Cramps continue from time to time.

A prominent feature of this stage is the *impairment or complete cessation of the functions of absorption and secretion*. No saliva is formed; while the urine is almost entirely or quite suppressed. At this time the purging and vomiting diminish in amount and frequency, or even cease, though there may be much retching; the stools are less liquid usually, they contain mucus or gelatinous masses, and are often passed in bed. Ultimately they may become extremely offensive, the smell resembling that of decomposed fish. It is important to note that the cessation of purging during the collapse-stage does not always imply that fluid has ceased to transude, for the intestines are often paralyzed, and may have abundant contents, which they cannot expel. Intense thirst is experienced at this time, with a sense of heat in the epigastrium, the patient constantly craving for cold drinks, which are swallowed with spasmodic avidity, probably to be immediately rejected. The tongue feels cold to the touch.

The severity of the symptoms just described varies considerably. When they are developed in their full intensity recovery seldom takes place, death occurring more or less speedily, being preceded by signs of more and more complete interference with the respiratory functions, increased capillary stagnation, and coma. As a rule the temperature rises with the approach of death. In the less-marked cases, however, recovery follows not unfrequently, and there is no condition which is utterly hopeless. The phenomena attending restoration will now be considered.

The withdrawal of water from the system, and the physical changes in the blood, will explain many of the phenomena of this stage. They are, however, partly accounted for by the effects produced on the sympathetic nervous system and the vagus nerves, which affect the action of the heart, and the respiratory functions. The disturbance of breathing is partly due to pulmonary collapse. The cyanotic appearance is the result of stagnation and venosity of blood. How far the phenomena described may be the effect of a poison absorbed from the intestines cannot at present be determined.

4. *Stage of Reaction*.—The prominent signs indicating restoration after an attack of cholera are a gradual change in the expression, general aspect, and colour; improvement in the pulse and cardiac action, with diminution in the capillary stasis; and return of heat to the surface. Breathing becomes at the same time more regular and calm; while the restlessness, thirst, and other symptoms abate; and the secretions are re-established. The patient often falls into a calm doze; vomiting ceases, but a little purging may continue, the stools, however, containing bile. There is said to be no actual rise of temperature at the beginning of reaction, but a cooling of the interior parts of the body while the outer parts warm up (Jüterbogk). This stage may terminate in speedy convalescence, but certain *complications* or *sequelæ* are very liable to supervene, or now and then a *relapse* takes place, which may prove fatal. Occasionally also the reaction is imperfect, and the symptoms continue to a greater or less degree, there being no pyrexia, and the patient dying in a few days, or sinking into a typhoid state, or ultimately making slow progress towards recovery. A most important matter during the progress of convalescence after an attack of cholera is to look for the re-establishment of the secretory functions, especially as evidenced

by an increase in the quantity of urine. The temperature not unfrequently rises above the normal without any obvious cause.

Complications and Sequelæ.—Among the less important complications and sequelæ of cholera mentioned by Dr. Goodeve are mild consecutive fever, with general disturbance, which may assume a remittent or intermittent type, usually ending in recovery in a few days; obstinate vomiting, often associated with more or less gastritis, which may become very serious; frequent hiccup, with gaseous eructations, and loss of appetite; and want of sleep. The more grave complications usually met with are acute desquamative nephritis, with signs of uræmia, the renal disease sometimes becoming chronic; "cholera-typoid;" severe enteritis, or colitis, occasionally of a diphtheritic character; diphtheritic inflammation of other mucous surfaces, especially the throat and genitals; chronic diarrhoea or dysentery; and low pneumonia or pleurisy. The urine is usually albuminous, and may contain some hyaline casts during convalescence, but in favourable cases it soon becomes normal. In some instances, however, it assumes the characters indicative of acute renal disease, while other symptoms of this condition appear. The term *cholera-typoid* has been used vaguely; the symptoms are merely those pertaining to the *typhoid state* generally, which may be associated with uræmia, or with any low form of inflammation, while they are sometimes independent of obvious morbid changes, being then probably due to blood-poisoning. The temperature rises should inflammatory complications set in.

A *cholera-eruption* or *exanthem* has been described, but though erythematous, maculated, papular, urticarial, or even purpuric eruptions appear in some instances, there is nothing characteristic of cholera.

The unfavourable phenomena which are liable to occur during or after the reaction from cholera are due chiefly to the deleterious waste products which accumulate in the blood; and they are more likely to supervene in proportion to the duration of the collapse-stage, and to the time which elapses before secretion is properly established. It has been suggested that they are sometimes promoted by injudicious employment of stimulants and drugs.

As sequelæ of cholera are mentioned inflammation of the genitals; parotid bubo; ulceration of the cornea and its consequences; destructive abscesses or gangrene of various parts; and the formation of bed-sores, boils, or ulcers. In many cases, especially if the illness has been prolonged, a condition of marked debility and anaemia remains behind, or there may be troublesome cramps in the muscles of the arms and legs.

Varieties.—In some cases of cholera the *collapse-stage* sets in after little or no previous purging or vomiting, death ensuing very speedily. On the other hand this stage may be imperfectly developed. During an epidemic of cholera numerous cases of diarrhoea are met with, lasting several days, and generally unattended with pain, to which the terms *choleraic diarrhoea* or *cholerine** have been applied. The stools are usually pale, liquid, and copious; there may be vomiting and cramps; while the patient feels much exhausted and seriously ill. These cases have been regarded as the result of a milder dose of the cholera poison, and they may pass into true cholera, though sometimes they prove fatal without becoming distinctly of this nature. Towards the end of some epidemics the choleraic diarrhoea passes into a kind of low fever.

* The term *cholerine* has also been applied by the late Dr. W. Farr to the poison which originates cholera.

Diagnosis.—During an epidemic of cholera, it is the safest plan to treat any case presenting suspicious symptoms as being of this nature. The painless purging and vomiting, with “rice-water” stools; cramps; intense thirst; great restlessness; suppression of secretions; rapid collapse; and peculiar appearance of the face, are but too significant of the malady when it is fully developed.

The diagnosis of Asiatic cholera from the so-called *sporadic, bilious, or English cholera, cholera nostras, or summer diarrhoea*, the symptoms of which not uncommonly closely resemble those of true cholera. Ordinarily they are less severe; the stools and vomited matters contain bile; there is more griping; urine is not entirely suppressed; the duration is longer; while the mortality is much less (Goodeve). Some dietetic cause can generally be found for the attack of English cholera. The only absolute distinction, however, lies in the discovery in the stools of the comma-bacillus, and its cultivation, by competent bacteriological experts. This is now extensively practised, and important results are said to have been thus attained in the early detection of cholera.

Cholera occasionally sets in so violently and under such circumstances as to simulate irritant poisoning. On the other hand, intense gastro-enteritis, excited by poison or some other irritant, such as fungi taken into the stomach, has been mistaken for cholera; and so likewise has the collapsed condition resulting from the rupture of a gastric or duodenal ulcer into the abdominal cavity.

Prognosis—Mortality—Duration.—It need scarcely be remarked that the prognosis in cholera is always very grave. The *mortality* varies in different epidemics, ranging from 20 or 30 to 70 or 80 per cent.; it is higher in the early period of an epidemic. On an average more than half the cases recover. The chief general circumstances rendering the prognosis worse are infirmity and old age; unfavourable hygienic conditions; previous intemperance; debility from any cause; or the existence of renal disease. During the actual attack the prognosis, both immediate and remote, is more grave in proportion to the rapidity with which signs of collapse set in; and to their intensity and duration. Rapid cessation of pulsation in the larger arteries; great disturbance of the respiratory functions; a striking fall in temperature; marked cyanosis; and a tendency to coma, are all very bad signs. The cessation of purging is sometimes unfavourable, indicating paralysis of the intestines. When reaction sets in, there are many dangers to be feared, but a more favourable progress towards convalescence is to be expected in proportion to the rapidity with which the functions of secretion and absorption are re-established, and to the continuous and regular improvement in the symptoms. Most of the complications or sequelæ of cholera are exceedingly serious.

The *duration* of cases of cholera may range from a couple of hours to some weeks, reckoning in its sequelæ. The average duration of fatal cases is from two to three days. The length of each stage varies considerably.

Treatment.—1. The *preventive treatment* of cholera is extremely important, and calls first for consideration. During an epidemic of this disease all the rules relating to the management of contagious diseases and epidemics must be rigidly carried out, under the personal superintendence of competent individuals. *Cleanliness* and *free ventilation* are highly important. *Isolation* is desirable, so far as this is practicable. Particular attention is demanded with regard to the *choleraic stools*,

which should be immediately removed and disinfected, and so disposed of that there shall be no danger of their becoming mixed with water used for drinking or cooking purposes, care being also taken that the sewers and drains are kept in good order, and that they are well-flushed with disinfectants from time to time. On no account must the excreta be recklessly thrown out on the ground, and if there is no proper place to receive them, they should be buried a considerable depth in the earth, away from all habitations. Wet and soiled clothes or bedding must also be at once taken away, and properly disinfected. It is desirable to place a mackintosh-sheet under the patient. Most important is it to attend to the *water-supply*, and to see that the water used is abundant and pure. Food must also be looked to, and especially milk. Persons exposed to infection should be warned against errors in diet, intemperance, and other injurious influences; while everything must be done to calm the minds of those inhabiting an infected district, and to prevent needless fear and depression. It is highly desirable that all persons who are able to do so should remove from places where cholera prevails. Quarantine is extremely important in checking the spread of the disease, when properly and judiciously carried out, but much that is practised under that name does infinitely more harm than good.

With regard to the disposal of the dead, the bodies of persons who have died from cholera should be buried as soon as possible, each being surrounded in its coffin with some disinfectant, such as a mixture of charcoal, lime, and carbolic acid. An apartment which has been occupied by a patient suffering from cholera must be thoroughly disinfected and cleansed; and it is often necessary to destroy clothing and bedding.

As might be expected, numerous plans of producing immunity against cholera have been brought forward. The most important is that of Haffkine, who first injects subcutaneously an attenuated virus, and afterwards a *virus exultè*, produced by growing the comma-bacillus in the peritoneal cavities of a series of guinea-pigs. In the human subject, as in guinea-pigs, this treatment only causes a local oedema and some fever, but it is still a question whether it confers immunity against cholera, or how long such immunity lasts.

2. The *curative treatment* of cholera is unfortunately in many cases quite hopeless, but often much may be done, particularly at an early period of the complaint. It is a great mistake to follow any routine plan in all cases, but the medical attendant should be guided as to the measures to be employed by the actual condition of the patient, and the stage of the disease. Personal supervision on his part, or by competent assistants, is most desirable, in order to see that treatment is properly carried out. The earlier such treatment is commenced the more likely is it to be successful; and in any case of suspected cholera the patient should take to bed at once. During a cholera-epidemic, the slightest case of diarrhoea ought to receive the most prompt attention, and the public should be instructed on this point, places being established where they may at once obtain the necessary medicines.

In the *evacuation-stage* two directly contrary plans of treatment have been employed, most practitioners using measures for checking the diarrhoea; a few encouraging it, acting on the principle that it is eliminatory of a poison. For this purpose the use of castor-oil at frequent intervals, calomel, sulphate of magnesium, and other purgatives has been advocated. Undoubtedly in some cases of early choleraic diarrhoea a dose of castor-oil is beneficial, with the view of getting rid

of irritant matters; but, apart from all theoretical considerations, experience has proved that the systematic employment of the castor-oil treatment is by no means attended with favourable results. Most decidedly the evacuations ought to be checked as soon as possible, in my opinion. Opium is the great remedy for this purpose, the best preparations being the compound soap pill, tincture of opium, liquor opii sedativus, or Dover's powder, the liquid preparations answering best if there is much vomiting, or if speedy absorption is required. This drug, however, requires much care in its employment in cholera, especially when the collapse-stage is approaching; and it is inadmissible if this stage has become established. If the indications are favourable, it seems best to give a full dose at once, and subsequently to repeat it in small quantities as may be needed. Should the first dose be vomited, it can be repeated after a short interval. Some prefer subcutaneous injection of morphine at first. Various *astringents* are also useful, especially acetate of lead (gr. ij-iii); tannic or gallic acid (gr. x-xxx); and dilute sulphuric acid. Some prefer giving opium by itself, and administering the remedies just mentioned between-times; others combine them with opium. The combination of chalk and opium is a favourite with many. The experience of some cases seems to indicate that the encouragement of very free sweating at the commencement of an attack of cholera, by means of baths or pilocarpine, might prove beneficial.

In the *collapse-stage* opium must on no account be given, but if purging continues, one of the astringents just mentioned may be employed. At this time most reliance is to be placed on the judicious use of *stimulants*. Before any indications of collapse appear, stimulants are not called for, but as soon as any weakness of the pulse is observed, or other signs of failure, their administration should be commenced. The practice of pouring in large quantities of alcoholic stimulants in cases of cholera is to be highly deprecated, and their employment needs the most careful regulation. The most serviceable are brandy with iced water, and champagne. They must be given in small quantities; at more or less frequent intervals according to circumstances; and their administration must be mainly guided by their influence upon the pulse. If the purging has ceased, brandy may be given in enemata with beef-tea. Diffusible stimulants are also of service in this stage, such as hot strong coffee; aromatic spirit or solution of ammonia, or carbonate of ammonium; the various ethers; camphor, which has been vaunted as a specific; and similar remedies. These may be combined with essential oil of peppermint, cinnamon, or cajeput. Ether may be injected subcutaneously in grave cases.

With regard to *diet*, it is useless to give any nourishment at the commencement of an attack of cholera, as this is only rejected immediately. A little beef-tea, chicken-broth, or arrowroot and milk may be tried at a later period, if the vomiting ceases. The patient should be allowed an unlimited supply of ice to suck throughout, which Macnamara considers invaluable in the treatment of cholera, but he lays great stress on prohibiting every kind of drink until the collapse-stage sets in, when iced water in moderation may be permitted. Enemata of iced water, or, on the other hand, those of warm milk, have been recommended.

Local measures are often of much service for the relief of symptoms. A large mustard poultice should be applied at once over the abdomen, and repeated as occasion requires. Dry or moist heat may also be

serviceable. For the relief of the cramps, hot bottles, sinapisms, and friction, either with the hand alone, or with turpentine or chloroform liniment, may be employed. If they are very severe, inhalation of chloroform is admissible. In the collapse-stage Niemeyer recommended the application of cold compresses over the abdomen.

Should *reaction* set in, the utmost care must be exercised, and the natural progress towards convalescence must not be interfered with by meddlesome drugging. The diet requires particular attention at this time, only the blandest liquid food being allowed in moderate quantities, and this regulation of diet is demanded until the patient is thoroughly restored, it being improved gradually as the stools become natural. Water may be freely allowed during this stage, and it has been recommended to dissolve some chloride and carbonate of sodium in it, in order to replace the loss of these salts. It is highly important to watch for the re-establishment of the secretions, and, if necessary, measures may be adopted to encourage this result. *Complications* and *sequelæ* must be treated as they arise. It need only be mentioned here that it is not always desirable to check diarrhoea at this time, should the stools be offensive; and that inflammatory affections require a supporting treatment. *Tonics* and preparations of iron are often serviceable during convalescence.

Due precautions must be taken against bed-sores, frequent examination of parts pressed upon being made. Should the urine be retained, the bladder must be emptied by means of the catheter; if it is suppressed, hot applications over the loins and dry-cupping are indicated.

3. *Specific treatment.*—For such a disease as cholera it is not to be wondered at that innumerable *specific* modes of treatment have been advocated, but none of them can be relied upon. Without making any comment, I merely mention some of the most prominent, namely—the administration of saline salts, chiefly carbonates and chlorides, either freely by the stomach, by enemata, by subcutaneous injection, or by injection of a warm solution into the veins; the use of warm, vapour, or hot-air baths, or of the wet sheet; application of ice to the spine; the employment of *antiseptics*, such as creasote, carbolic acid, or sulphocarbonates; inhalation of oxygen, or of nitrite of amyl; the administration of calomel, gr. i-ij, at frequent intervals, or of bisulphide of mercury. Salicine, salicylic acid, and salol have also been specially recommended in cholera. The various cholera-drops and pills, which are held in repute in different countries, are made up of stimulants, generally combined with some preparation of opium. The use of copious enemata, either warm or cold, has been particularly recommended of late, two or three pints being allowed to flow slowly into the rectum, the hips being raised. Cantani used this method with much success in Italy, administering tannic acid with each injection, and generally laudanum.

CHAPTER XVIII.

DYSENTERY—BLOODY FLUX.

It is now generally the custom to include dysentery among the *acute specific diseases*, and it may therefore be discussed in the present connection. The affection is always *acute* at first, but it may remain as a *chronic* condition. Dysentery may occur as a sporadic disease, but chiefly prevails in epidemics, which are sometimes very grave, and is also endemic in certain regions.

Etiology.—Although here classed as an acute specific disease, it must be understood that there is by no means an agreement among those who have had the opportunity of studying cases of dysentery on a large scale, as to the actual nature and causation of the disease. The chief views held are as follows:—1. That it is due to a malarial poison. 2. That though primarily originating in this manner, it may be afterwards propagated from one individual to another by means of a specific contagium; conveyed, as some suppose, only by the stools, especially when mixed with drinking-water; or, as others believe, by all the excretions and exhalations. 3. That it is independent of any specific poison, and merely results from certain general causes which tend to produce intestinal irritation and inflammation, such as exposure to cold, especially to night chills and dews; errors in diet, particularly want of, or improper quality of food; excessive use of salt meat; drinking impure water or irritating liquors; or indulgence in excess of, or in sour fruit. Those who regard the malady as *specific*, consider the causes just mentioned as merely *predisposing*, or as aiding in *propagating* the poison; but it seems highly probable that they may at all events set up the sporadic form. Amongst other *predisposing causes* are recognized a hot and moist climate, especially during the seasons when the nights become chilly, most cases occurring in the autumn, and particularly after much exposure to night air; sudden changes of temperature; a malarial soil; overcrowding and filth; bad ventilation, especially if accompanied with exposure to emanations from any kind of decomposing organic matter; physical exhaustion; and dyspeptic conditions, especially with chronic constipation. Epidemics of dysentery may occur even in temperate climates under certain circumstances, as in military camps and prisons. These are obviously due to insanitary conditions, associated often with bad food, and an impure water-supply. A dysenteric condition may complicate or follow certain diseases, particularly ague or remittent fever, pneumonia, scurvy, relapsing fever, cholera, or syphilis. Ague and chronic dysentery were not uncommonly met with together in the case of sailors admitted under my care at the Liverpool Northern Hospital; and occasionally the latter complaint accompanied scurvy. A form of diphtheritic dysentery may occur as a terminal event in certain chronic diseases, as cardiac affections, Bright's disease, and various cachexiæ.

Micrococci have long been described in dysentery, but the *ameba coli* is now regarded by Losch and others as the specific cause of the tropical form. These amæbæ have been found constantly in the dysenteric stools; in the intestines; in pus from hepatic abscess; and in sputum. They are

described as unicellular, protoplasmic, motile organisms, from 10 to 20 μ in diameter, and consisting of a clear ectosarc, and a granular endosarc, enclosing a nucleus and one or more vacuoles. They have been cultivated in straw infusion, and by inoculation are said to have produced the disease in cats and dogs.

Anatomical Characters.—In general terms acute dysentery may be said to be characterized anatomically by inflammation of the large intestine, ending in ulceration or gangrene, often accompanied with membranous exudation on its mucous surface. Usually only the lower part of the bowel is involved, including the rectum and neighbouring part of the colon; sometimes the entire tract is affected, but the disease is then generally more advanced towards the lower end of the intestine. Occasionally it extends into the small intestine, even for a considerable distance, but this is said to be chiefly observed only in scorbutic cases, or when patients are much debilitated. The exact morbid appearances in cases of dysentery are exceedingly diverse, and cases have been divided into *catarrhal* and *diphtheritic*, but these conditions often exist together, and probably are merely stages of the dysenteric process.

In the early stage the chief appearances are considerable enlargement of the solitary glands (which has been regarded by most authorities as the *primary lesion*), and of the tubular glands: increased vascularization, varying much in extent and intensity, but being especially marked around the glands; with some swelling and softening of the mucous membrane, which is often covered with tenacious blood-stained mucus. The solitary glands form little rounded projections, and in many of them a minute spot can be detected, corresponding to the orifice. They are filled with a whitish exudation, containing abundant cells. Some observers regard these prominences as at all events partly due to exudation outside the glands, and affirm that these structures are not specially involved in dysentery. An exudation also forms in the inter-tubular tissues, and in many cases on the surface of the mucous membrane. It covers this surface more or less extensively and thickly, sometimes being uniform, but usually granular, often presenting an appearance like bran or sawdust, and being most abundant on the tops of the mucous folds. At first the colour is greyish or yellowish-grey, but this is soon liable to many alterations from various causes. The material is opaque, of some consistence, and can be detached, leaving a more or less red surface underneath, or the remains of extravasated blood. It appears to be of a fibrinous nature, with abundant granules, nuclei, micro-organisms, epithelium cells, and young nucleated cells. Occasionally the exudation undergoes a process of partial organization.

Some writers describe dysentery as consisting primarily in an infiltration of the submucous tissue, due to oedema, with local multiplication of the fixed cells, which causes necrosis of the overlying mucous membrane, and consequent ulceration.

Ulceration begins chiefly in connection with the enlarged glands, the ulcer afterwards spreading; but sometimes several glands, with the intervening tissues, are destroyed simultaneously. It may originate in submucous suppuration. At the outset most of the ulcers are small and circular, with rounded edges: by extension they become larger and irregular, often having a transverse direction, the margins being flattened, and the depth and appearance of the surface varying greatly, so that in course of time the ulcers are altogether wanting in

uniformity. Not unfrequently the floor of an ulcer becomes covered with exudation. *Amæbæ coli* are found in certain cases in the tissues at the base of and around the ulcers, in the lymphatic spaces, and occasionally in the blood-vessels. Now and then the coats are rapidly destroyed so as to lead to perforation. Should the disease terminate favourably, and cicatrization ensue, this generally takes place with little or no puckering, the edges becoming rounded and adhering to the base of the ulcer; a layer of lymph then extending over the surface, and becoming organized. Now and then healing is attended with much thickening, irregularity, induration, and contraction, leading to more or less obstruction. There is never any fresh formation of glands in the cicatrix.

The rapidity with which the changes just described take place in the course of a case of dysentery differs considerably. In very severe cases the entire mucous lining of the large intestine is speedily converted into a slough. The affected part is generally dilated, and contains extremely offensive materials similar to those passed in the stools, with fragments of exudation, and often blood.

When the small intestines are implicated, the appearances which they present are redness; exudation on the surface, sometimes extensive; and enlargement, or, rarely, ulceration of Peyer's patches and the solitary glands. The stomach may be more or less inflamed.

Various other morbid conditions may be observed in acute dysentery, chiefly including enlargement, redness, and softening of the mesocolic or mesenteric glands; serous inflammations, especially peritonitis, either corresponding to the affected part of the bowel, or due to perforation; perityphlitis or periproctitis; hepatic complications, particularly scattered areas of local necrosis of the parenchyma, and inflammation ending in abscess; enlargement of the pancreas and spleen, or rarely splenic abscess; renal disease; extensive bronchitis, lobular pneumonia, or abscess in the lung; and pyæmic abscesses. The relation of *hepatic abscess* to *dysentery* has been much disputed. Some maintain that there is no connection whatever between them; others regard the two affections as independent effects of the same cause; but the commonly accepted view is that the abscess is secondary to the dysenteric ulceration, having probably an embolic origin, and being a form of local pyæmia. The hepatic abscess may be single or multiple. Amæbæ are found in the walls of the abscess, chiefly in the inner zone. The necrotic areas have been attributed to the action of a poison produced by these organisms. Pylephlebitis may occur as a pyæmic phenomenon in prolonged cases of dysentery.

In *chronic* dysentery the appearances presented are very diverse. Usually firm exudation collects between the coats, matting them together, and causing much thickening and induration, so that the intestine feels very firm and solid, and pieces of it will sometimes stand on end. The colour of the mucous surface alters, becoming dirty brownish-grey, or in parts black. The exudation undergoes a certain degree of organization, and often forms thick, warty, adherent masses. The surface presents in some cases a bark-like aspect. Frequently ulcers are observed, in every conceivable variety of stage and character, as well as cicatrices of former ulcers. In some cases cicatrical bands and contractions alter greatly the calibre and form of the bowel, and sinuses may pervade its walls. In others there is extreme atrophy of the intestinal coats, including the glandular structures. An appearance of

pseudo-ulceration may result from separation or cracking of the firm exudation, thus exposing the mucous surface, which is extremely red and raw.

Symptoms.—1. *Acute dysentery* occurs in all grades of intensity, from a mild sporadic form to an epidemic of the most virulent type, but its symptoms are generally highly characteristic. Many cases, especially in temperate climates, commence with simple diarrhoea, slight colicky pains, thirst, loss of appetite, and some degree of constitutional disturbance, the special symptoms setting in after a short interval; sometimes, however, these are observed from the outset. A chill or rigor commonly ushers in the disease in severe cases.

The prominent *local* symptoms are griping pains in the abdomen, technically named *tormina*, irregular in site, but chiefly felt along the colon; often a sense of heat or burning along the colon and rectum, or, in grave cases, over the whole abdomen; tenderness, especially in the left iliac fossa; more or less tympanites; tenesmus, indicated by a sensation of fulness, weight, bearing-down, or of the presence of a foreign body about the lower end of the rectum, with frequent or constant desire to defaecate, the act being accompanied with much straining; and the passage of peculiar stools. The morbid sensations differ greatly in their severity and persistency; in most cases they are paroxysmal, increasing until a stool is passed, by which act they are temporarily relieved; sometimes, however, they become constant and most agonizing. The tenesmus is more marked when the lower portion of the rectum is implicated. At first the stools are often semi-faeculent, or consist of hard scybala, but they soon assume the dysenteric characters, becoming scanty, slimy or gelatinous from the presence of mucus, and bloody; also giving out a most offensive and characteristic odour. Usually the different matters are more or less mixed, the more so the higher the disease is situated, when the stools contain abundant depraved biliary secretion. If the rectum is chiefly affected, the blood is less intimately incorporated, while the stools are more muciform (Maclean). Not uncommonly scybala are passed from time to time, covered with mucus and blood. Mild cases do not go beyond this, but in grave forms of the disease, occurring in tropical countries, the stools change in their characters, becoming muddy-looking; brownish, brownish-red, or even black; often watery and copious; and containing shreds or masses of membrane, which look like "washed raw meat." Sometimes a large quantity of pure blood is passed; or sloughs of the mucous membrane are expelled. At this time the odour becomes intolerable, and it has been compared to carrion, or to the "smell of a macerating tub in the dissecting-room." If the stools are washed with water, so as to leave nothing behind but the sediment, which contains the products of the intestinal disease, these can be examined, and the condition of the bowel thus more accurately determined. Chemically they yield a large proportion of albuminous elements, even when there is little or no visible blood. They are alkaline in reaction, and contain much carbonate of ammonium. Microscopically the stools present abundant epithelium cells, blood-corpuscles, pus-cells, remnants of the membrane, and micro-organisms, including amæbæ in certain cases.

There are other indications of digestive disturbance in dysentery, in the way of anorexia; thirst, which may be intense; furred tongue; and sometimes nausea and vomiting. There may be irritability of the bladder, with strangury; or, on the other hand, paralysis with retention

of urine, when the rectum is much affected. The urine is generally high-coloured, scanty, and prone to rapid decomposition; in low forms of the disease it becomes very offensive; occasionally it is suppressed. In females suffering from dysentery irritation of the vagina is sometimes complained of.

The *constitutional* symptoms in the less severe cases are only those of slight pyrexia. In the graver forms these are more marked, there being at the same time much nervous depression and irritability, with an anxious and distressed expression of countenance. When a case tends towards a fatal issue, or in the most severe types of the disease almost from the first, the symptoms assume an adynamic or typhoid character, with great prostration, the tongue becoming dry, red, brown, or blackish, with sordes on the teeth; the pulse being very rapid, feeble, or irregular; while the tympanites increases; the painful sensations cease; there is persistent hiccup; and low nervous symptoms supervene, ending in coma. In the *malignant* type of dysentery speedy collapse sets in, resembling that of cholera; accompanied with haemorrhage from the mouth and nose, or from other parts.

Several varieties of acute dysentery have been described, according to the severity and nature of the symptoms present, and the conditions with which the disease is associated. The chief are named:—1. *Mild*. 2. *Sthenic*. 3. *Asthenic* or *Typhoid*. 4. *Bilious*. 5. *Malarious*, characterized by the periodicity of the febrile paroxysms, much gastric irritability, the serous character of the stools from the first, which contain but little blood, the greater frequency of hepatic complications, and the efficiency of quinine in treatment (Maclean). 6. *Malignant*. 7. *Scorbutic*, associated with scurvy.

Acute dysentery lasts a very variable time, and either terminates in death or recovery, or becomes chronic. Death may happen within two days, or not for two or three weeks or more. This event results either from collapse; the typhoid state; gradual exhaustion in prolonged cases; haemorrhage; or occasionally from perforation. A favourable turn is indicated by the stools becoming faeculent, and losing their dysenteric characters; the cessation of the painful sensations; diminution of fever; and improvement in strength, in the state of the pulse, and in the expression of the face.

2. *Chronic dysentery* is a most troublesome complaint, but the precise symptoms do not entirely depend upon the state of the bowels, being often modified by some constitutional condition, or by a diseased state of other organs. The tenesmus and other local morbid sensations are less marked than in the acute form, or they may be absent. In some cases control over the sphincter ani becomes completely lost. The stools differ considerably in their characters, even in the same case from time to time. They may be formed, but covered with mucus or blood; usually, however, they are more or less liquid, presenting a mucous, serous, or bloody appearance, with an admixture of faeces; sometimes they are either reddish-brown, pale and frothy, muco-purulent, or actually purulent. The peculiar odour is retained more or less, and may be very intense. Appetite varies much, but is usually impaired; the tongue is often red, glazed, or fissured. The general system necessarily suffers considerably in marked cases of chronic dysentery, as evidenced by wasting; anaemia, or a sallow and cachectic aspect; shrunken features, with a distressed, weary, or aged expression; a feeling of weakness and exhaustion; pyrexia, tending towards the hectic

type, with night-sweats; and loss of hair. Albuminoid disease is liable to supervene. Death often results from gradual asthenia with anaemia.

Complications and Sequelæ.—In addition to those already mentioned, it is said that typhoid fever and dysentery have occurred together under certain circumstances. Rheumatic pains and arthritic swellings have sometimes been met with in epidemics. Among the important sequelæ are chronic Bright's disease; persistent dyspepsia, with an irritable condition of the bowels; and paralysis, chiefly in the form of paraplegia, said to be due to neuritis. Intestinal obstruction very rarely results from the changes associated with dysentery.

Diagnosis.—The symptoms of acute dysentery are usually quite characteristic, and an examination of the stools, combined with the sensations of the patient, and the general symptoms, ought to leave no doubt as to the nature of the disease. All authorities lay much stress upon the peculiar odour of the evacuations. The fact of the disease being endemic or epidemic may also be of service in diagnosis. The acute diphtheritic form is said to be not infrequently mistaken for typhoid fever. The amæbic variety is characterized by an irregular chronic course; while the amæbæ are found in the stools, or possibly in the sputum, when an abscess of the liver bursts through the lung into a bronchus. Dysenteric symptoms may arise in cases of long-continued catarrh of the lower bowel, which might then be mistaken for true dysentery. I have known cancer of the rectum simulate chronic dysentery; and so may syphilitic disease.

Prognosis.—The prognosis of *acute dysentery* will depend upon whether the disease is sporadic or epidemic; the severity of the attack; the characters of the stools; the general condition of the patient; the progress of the case; and the presence or absence of serious complications, especially hepatic abscess. Epidemic dysentery, particularly when of a low type, is extremely fatal. Signs of collapse or adynamia are of course very unfavourable, and among specially bad signs are mentioned gangrenous stools; severe haemorrhage; subsidence of the pain, while the other symptoms are becoming worse; and suppression of urine. An early return of the evacuations to their normal state is highly favourable. *Chronic dysentery* may often be improved by appropriate treatment, as I found from a tolerably extensive experience of this disease at the Liverpool Northern Hospital. Cases of very prolonged duration, however, are not likely to be benefited by any treatment.

Treatment.—Early attention is of extreme importance in *acute dysentery*, and the patient should immediately take to bed, and be kept warm and quiet. In the sporadic form, if resulting from a chill, some authorities advocate the use of a warm, vapour, or hot-air bath at the outset. In some cases also a dose of castor oil with laudanum is beneficial at first. *The remedy*, however, in this disease, and one which seems to have almost a specific action, is ipecacuanha in full doses. Dr. Maclean recommends the following plan of administration:—To give gr. 24 to 30 of the powder in a small quantity of fluid, with a little syrup of orange peel, after which the patient must keep perfectly quiet, and take no fluid for at least three hours, if thirsty being allowed to suck a little ice occasionally. In from eight to ten hours a smaller dose may be given, this depending on the effect of the first, and the urgency of the symptoms, by which also the subsequent repetition of the drug must be guided, and it may be required for some days. It is well to administer 10-

or 12 grains at bed-time for a night or two after the stools appear healthy. Some authorities recommend the ipecacuanha to be administered more frequently in smaller quantities; and others employ 5½ to 5j every four or five hours, but these large doses seem unnecessary, and are liable to produce dangerous depression. It has also been advocated to introduce the drug by enema, but this is likewise objectionable. Many consider it desirable to make the stomach tolerant of the medicine beforehand, by giving a full dose of laudanum or Battley's solution, or a few drops of chloroform; or by applying anodyne poultices over the epigastrium. Perhaps a small subcutaneous injection of morphine might answer this purpose. Dr. Maclean states, however, that frequently no sedative is required, and that if vomiting is unmanageable after the administration of ipecacuanha for dysentery, hepatic complication or overcharging of the system with malaria should be suspected.

Local applications over the abdomen are very useful in dysentery, especially light and warm poultices; fomentations sprinkled with turpentine, laudanum, or chloroform; and sinapisms. If the tenesmus is very troublesome, warm emollient enemata, or a suppository of opium may be tried. Of course *diet* requires the utmost attention. Beef-tea, soups, arrowroot, sago, raw white of egg, jellies, and such articles should be given in small quantities. *Alcoholic stimulants* are to be avoided as a rule, but if the typhoid condition supervenes they are certainly required. As the patient improves, so must the food be cautiously changed. *Hygienic measures* also demand every care, especially as regards the immediate *disinfection* and *destruction* of the evacuations.

The evidence in favour of the treatment of acute dysentery by ipecacuanha seems very strong, but some authorities do not support it, and other methods are advocated, namely:—1. By *astringents*, especially opium, and large doses of bismuth preparations. These are useful if diarrhoea holds on after the stools have lost their dysenteric characters. Opium is often a valuable remedy for various purposes, or hypodermic injection of morphine may be employed. 2. By *purgatives*, such as castor-oil, or sulphate of magnesium. 3. By venesection and calomel. Calomel has been given in large quantities; or in doses of gr. i to gr. ij with opium every three or four hours. This treatment had better be avoided, and the only removal of blood which seems justifiable is by the application of a few leeches in the left iliac fossa, should the pain be very intense, and the state of the patient be favourable. 4. By a combination of blue pill, opium, and ipecacuanha. 5. By *antiseptics*, especially administered by enemata, as carbolic acid, naphthol, quinine, iodine, or tannin. 6. By large doses of tincture of perchloride of iron. It is important to note that there are two forms of dysentery which require a modification of treatment, namely, the *malarious* and the *scorbutic*. The former calls for full doses of quinine, alternating with ipecacuanha; the latter demands fresh fruits, and Maclean and others recommend bael fruit very highly in these cases.

In the management of *chronic dysentery* the most essential matters are to regulate the *diet*; and to attend to *hygienic measures*, with the view of improving the general health. Rest for the bowels and body, with a bland nutritious diet, are most important parts of the treatment. As regards medicinal treatment, I have derived much benefit from the administration of Dover's powder, gr. iv-v three or four times daily; and still more from full doses of tincture of perchloride of iron during the day, with Dover's powder night and morning. Dr. Reginald

Thompson found ipecacuanha (gr. iiij-v every three hours) most serviceable. Cannabis indica has also been found beneficial. The stronger astringents, such as gallic acid, acetate of lead, sulphate of copper, or nitrate of silver, are often employed, but they did not prove of much permanent service in my experience. Minute doses of bichloride of mercury have also been recommended. A dose of castor-oil with a little opium may be taken from time to time. Small enemata or suppositories containing opium are useful for relieving unpleasant local sensations. Other measures recommended for this purpose are the use of a water-compress over the anus, or gentle douching of this part; wearing a bandage or a water-belt over the abdomen; friction over this region with anodyne or irritant liniments; or the application of a blister over the left iliac fossa. Among the *hygienic* matters needing special attention are change of air, particularly speedy removal from a malarial district, or from a tropical country to Europe; the wearing of warm clothing; and the use of cold baths, followed by friction, if they are well borne. Some practitioners employ baths containing dilute nitro-hydrochloric acid. If there is any malarial, scorbutic, or other constitutional condition, the treatment must be modified accordingly. Any acute or sub-acute exacerbation of symptoms calls for complete rest; and the immediate administration of ipecacuanha.

The employment of large enemata or irrigation of the bowels in the treatment of dysentery calls for brief notice. Even in the acute stage it is recommended to introduce a large quantity of water at a temperature of 100°, the patient being placed in the dorsal position, with the hips raised by a pillow, and a long tube passed in, through which the fluid is allowed to pass in slowly. A suppository or small injection of a four per cent. solution of cocaine will sometimes subdue the great irritability of the rectum and the tenesmus which interfere with this treatment. It is after the acute symptoms have subsided, and in chronic dysentery, that large enemata have been found most useful. Different astringents have been thus used, such as alum, acetate of lead, sulphate of zinc or copper, but especially nitrate of silver. Dr. Stephen Mackenzie has treated cases successfully by irrigating the bowels with three pints of tepid water containing from 30 to 90 grains of nitrate of silver. Antiseptics are also thus employed, and in amœbic dysentery warm injections of quinine in strength of 1 to 5,000, 1 to 2,500, and 1 to 1,000 have been found of great benefit (Osler). These large enemata are not altogether without danger, and often cause much pain and suffering.

Prevention.—In any case of dysentery attention must be paid to the stools, bedding, etc., as in typhoid fever and cholera, proper disinfection being carried out. When an epidemic occurs every care must be taken as regards sanitary conditions, especially avoiding over crowding, attending to cleanliness and ventilation, and seeing that the closet and sewage arrangements are satisfactory. Individuals who are in danger of being attacked with dysentery should carefully guard against the personal conditions which are known to predispose to the disease.

CHAPTER XIX.

GLANDERS AND FARCY—EQUINIA.

Etiology.—These affections, which are occasionally observed in man, are transmitted from the horse, ass, or mule. It is doubtful whether they are distinct diseases, or varieties of the same malady. They are produced by the inoculation or direct contact of a *specific poison*, which is contained chiefly in certain discharges from the nasal cavities, but also in the excretions, secretions, and blood; and are rarely met with except amongst those whose occupation brings them much into contact with horses, such as ostlers and grooms. The introduction of the poison into the system takes place either through an abrasion or wound of the skin, or through a mucous surface.

Glanders may be conveyed by a horse snorting, and thus expelling a quantity of the discharge from the nostrils on to an individual, or into the surrounding air, from which it is afterwards inhaled. The poison may also be conveyed by fomites, to which the discharges have become attached. It is even said that glanders may result from breathing the atmosphere of a stable inhabited by glandered horses, and this seems to be certain as regards the horse and ass. This class of diseases can be re-transmitted to these animals, as has been proved experimentally, and there is reason to believe that they are capable of being communicated from one human being to another.

The infective agent in glanders has been definitely proved to be a *specific bacillus*, first observed by Babes in 1881, but more definitely studied by Löffler and Schutz in 1882. It is present in the affected tissues in abundance, and has been isolated and cultivated, not only from animals, but also from the human subject, while the disease has been frequently produced by inoculation of the cultures. The glanders bacillus is rather shorter and thicker than the tubercle-bacillus; generally straight, with rounded ends; and contains spores. In the glanders nodules the rods usually occur separately, scattered, or in little groups, and never form long filaments. They are found both within and outside the cells. They present peculiarities in staining, and grow comparatively easily on nearly all the ordinary media. They can be dried without being killed, but their vitality is only maintained for a short period; and they are readily destroyed by heat and disinfectants. Their cultivations exhibit marked differences in their virulence.

The growth of the glanders bacillus may be for a long time local, or a general infection may be rapidly produced. Its action is chiefly limited to the lymphatic system, but it also enters the circulation, and is distributed by the blood. By its growth it sets up irritation, which leads to infiltration with leucocytes and cell-proliferation, with consequent production of nodules; while a similar action is excited along the lymphatic vessels and glands. It is supposed that one or more chemical poisons are generated by the organisms, which cause softening and breaking-down of the structures, and consequent ulceration. A substance named *morceine* has been isolated by Babes, supposed to be of the nature of an enzyme.

Anatomical Characters.—Glanders and farcy are characterized by peculiar morbid changes. In the former, hard nodules form in connection with the mucous membrane of the nose, mouth, throat, and respiratory passages; as well as in the lymphatic glands, skin, subcutaneous tissue, muscles, lungs, and other organs. These are made up of cells, partly leucocytes, partly the result of proliferation, which soon degenerate, the nodules rapidly becoming soft and breaking down, forming abscesses and ulcers. The Schneiderian membrane is inflamed, and presents little pustular elevations or patches, which finally break out into excavated ulcers, and these may lead to necrosis of the cartilages and bones, with perforation of the septum. The frontal sinuses may contain a puriform fluid. The larynx, trachea, and bronchi are also frequently affected. The lungs present pneumonic patches or abscesses. Small yellow elevations may be seen on the pleurae, with fibrinous deposits underneath. The lymphatic glands are enlarged, softened, and reddish. Superficial petechiae, ecchymoses, or gangrene are sometimes observed; or there may be suppuration or gangrene of the subcutaneous tissues, or in the substance of the muscles. A peculiar eruption appears on the skin.

Fancy differs from glanders in that the nasal mucous membrane is not affected, but so-called *tubercles*, *buds*, or *tumours* form in connection with the cutaneous structures, which break down into deep, unhealthy ulcers; or the lymphatic system may be chiefly involved. In acute fancy an extensive fatty embolism of the pulmonary vessels is supposed to occur.

The glanders-bacilli are found in the different lesions, as already stated. They occur in largest numbers in small and recent nodules; and it may be very difficult or even impossible to detect them in old nodules, especially when ulceration has taken place.

Symptoms.—1. *Acute Glanders.*—The period of incubation is usually from three to eight days. After inoculation local signs of inflammation appear first as a rule, the neighbouring lymphatics being also affected. Ordinarily the disease is ushered in by such general symptoms as rigors, languor, pains in the limbs and joints, headache, often vomiting and diarrhoea, with a certain degree of pyrexia. Soon subcutaneous formations are noticed, especially on the face and near the joints, which quickly change into abscesses containing unhealthy and foetid pus. Over these the skin becomes red or violet, and sometimes limited gangrene sets in. Usually a peculiar cutaneous eruption appears, especially on the cheeks, arms, and thighs. It begins in the form of small, intensely red spots, which soon become papular, and afterwards pustular. Dark bullæ often appear also on the face, trunk, fingers or toes, and organs of generation, followed by gangrene. Erysipelas-like inflammation of the nose, eyes, and surrounding parts is not uncommonly observed, which may extend to the scalp. The eruption is preceded and accompanied by profuse foetid sweats.

A prominent symptom of glanders is a discharge from the nose, at first thin and scanty, but soon becoming abundant, purulent, viscid, extremely foetid, and often sanguineous. It clogs the nostrils and obstructs breathing, while it escapes through the posterior nares, causing much distress and irritation. A thick matter also comes from between the eyelids, and sometimes from the mouth, which is then the seat of ulceration and pustules. The submaxillary lymphatic glands may be enlarged.

The constitutional symptoms increase in severity as the case progresses, being more or less of a typhoid character, and indicative of septicæmia. Thus there is marked prostration, with a brown and dry tongue, and a very rapid, feeble, and irregular pulse. Diarrhœa and tympanites are frequent symptoms, the stools being exceedingly fetid, and sometimes bloody. Other symptoms are dyspnœa, with hurried breathing; hard cough with but little expectoration; weak voice; and foul breath. Delirium and coma ultimately set in, and death terminates the scene, in most cases at the end of the second or beginning of the third week, but it may happen much earlier or later than this.

2. *Chronic Glanders*.—This variety is very rarely met with, and is usually a sequel to farcy. Its chief symptoms are lassitude and articular pains; sore-throat; disagreeable or painful sensations in the nose, with more or less puriform and bloody discharge; cough with expectoration, dyspnœa, and altered voice. After a time ulceration may be observed on the mucous membrane of the nose, followed by caries or perforation. The pharynx may also be ulcerated. There is no eruption. The general symptoms are less marked than in the acute form of glanders, but the latter may supervene. The duration of chronic glanders is very variable.

3. *Acute Farcy*.—The great difference between this affection and glanders lies in the want of implication of the nares. In one class of cases the eruption is present; in another there is no eruption, but merely inflammation of the lymphatic glands and vessels, with soft tumours under the skin, named *farcy buttons* and *farcy buds*. The former group are by far the more serious.

4. *Chronic Farcy*.—After constitutional symptoms, subcutaneous tumours form, which become abscesses, and these discharge their contents, leaving foul, deep, and indolent ulcers. As a consequence there is wasting, with great debility. The complaint may end in true glanders; or death may result from exhaustion or pyæmia. Occasionally recovery takes place. The duration is very variable.

5. *Equinia Mitis*.—An affection is thus named which is derived by contagion from horses suffering from the “grease.” The symptoms are fever, depression, and shivering; with a pustular eruption, which dries up into scabs, and these fall off, leaving distinct scars.

Diagnosis.—When either glanders or farcy is fully declared, the diagnosis presents no difficulty. At the onset glanders has been mistaken for acute or subacute rheumatism, but the occupation of the patient might at any rate lead to the suspicion of glanders, while in this affection there is more prostration from the first, and the joints are not swollen or red. Other diseases for which it might possibly be confounded are typhoid fever, small-pox, and pyæmia; as well as scrofula, syphilis, or phthisis in chronic cases. Inoculation of the guinea-pig, in addition to the detection of the bacilli, is of special service in doubtful cases. Extracts of the cultures have also been introduced for diagnostic purposes, which are said to produce a febrile reaction in glandered animals, but not in others.

Prognosis in all these affections is very grave, for they almost always prove fatal. Chronic farcy may terminate in recovery.

Treatment.—The most important matter is to carry out adequate measures for the prevention of these diseases. If inoculation should happen, the affected spot must be immediately destroyed by some escharotic. A supporting, stimulating, and tonic plan of treatment is

the only one which offers any chance of success in dealing with either of these affections; at the same time strict attention being paid to cleanliness and other *hygienic conditions*. Abscesses should be opened as they form, and treated antiseptically. *Antiseptics* internally might, perhaps, be of service; and these agents are also useful as local applications. Babes has used injections of "morceine," both for the purpose of curing and producing immunity against glanders, but the results are doubtful.

CHAPTER XX.

ANTHRAX—MALIGNANT PUSTULE—CHARBON—WOOL-SORTER'S DISEASE.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Anthrax is a *specific disease*, conveyed by contagion, mainly from sheep and oxen, but also from horses, and possibly from other animals which it affects, such as elephants, camels, etc. In these animals it is known under the name "splenic fever." The poison is transmitted either directly or indirectly, but almost invariably from the dead carcass, rarely, if ever, from the living animal. All parts of the dead bodies are capable of conveying the disease. The contagium is usually transmitted by direct inoculation, the material containing it being brought in some way into contact with an abraded or wounded surface, but there is reason to believe that it may be absorbed by the unbroken skin in parts where this structure is very thin. Rarely malignant pustule arises from eating the flesh of cattle that have died from splenic fever; but the poison is destroyed by thorough cooking. Flies and other insects have also been supposed to be instrumental in conveying it to human beings. The disease has further been attributed to the consumption of milk or butter containing the contagium. The wool and hair of animals that have died from splenic fever are now generally recognized as important sources of infection. Anthrax may thus arise either by direct inoculation, or by inhaling the dust containing the poison. It is also believed that it may be communicated by means of drinking-water; or by wool-waste and bone-dust used as manure.

Considering its mode of origin, it will be readily understood that malignant pustule is met with almost invariably amongst those who follow certain occupations, which bring them into contact with the carcasses or skins of infected animals, or with their wool or hair. Thus it occurs amongst butchers, slaughterers, tanners, wharf-labourers who handle foreign hides and fleeces, wool-packers and sorters, furriers, horsehair cleaners, and workers in felt manufactorys. The patients are almost always males, and chiefly young adults, but the complaint has been met with at eleven years of age (Davies-Colley).

Malignant pustule has been proved to be intimately associated with a specific organism, originally discovered by Davaine, and named by him *bacteridium*, but usually known as the *bacillus anthracis*. This is now generally regarded as the contagium. It is found in the blood, in the fluid of serous cavities, and in organs and tissues; being a good example of an organism which causes rapidly fatal results by multiply-

ing in the blood. It is either diffused, or aggregated into masses in the vessels and lymphatics. Anthrax bacilli are also present in the eruption, and in the surrounding skin. Usually they appear in the form of minute rods or filaments, motionless, apparently homogeneous, but the longer ones are really made up of segments. They range from $\frac{1}{2500}$ inch upwards, and are either straight, curved, bent, or looped. They may be cultivated, producing spores, which are highly tenacious of life, and can reproduce the bacillus; although the bacilli themselves have comparatively slight resisting power against drying, heat, and chemical antiseptics. By cultivation filaments of great length may be developed, forming loops, curves, or spirals, and becoming matted together inextricably. Pasteur's researches show that these bacilli may be cultivated and increased in the earth around buried carcasses, and they are supposed to be carried thence to the surface by earthworms, thus propagating the disease.

As to the way in which anthrax bacilli produce their effects, it appears that, owing to their enormous number, they act partly mechanically, and by using up the oxygen in the blood; but probably mainly through the specific chemical poisons which they originate. A toxalbumen has been separated by Brieger and Fraenkel; while albumoses and a poisonous alkaloid have been obtained by Sydney Martin, both from anthrax cultures, and from the blood and spleen in infected animals. The albumoses produce coma; while the alkaloid is a local irritant, causing inflammatory oedema and fever. Hankin has also isolated an albumose.

Anatomical Characters.—The following is a general summary of the *post-mortem* appearances likely to be met with in fatal cases of anthrax:—Early *rigor mortis*, of short duration; venous congestion and hypostasis; superficial petechiae; oedema of the face; rapid decomposition, with subcutaneous emphysema of the neck and face; a tarry condition, and sometimes a peculiar viscosity of the blood, which is indisposed to coagulate; ecchymoses or large extravasations in internal parts; congestion of, or haemorrhages in connection with organs. The spleen is usually much enlarged and softened; and the liver may be also somewhat soft. Oedema and partial collapse of the lungs are common. When there is an external malignant pustule, haemorrhagic patches are found radiating into the surrounding tissues, which are extensively infiltrated with a blood-stained semi-gelatinous fluid.

Certain special forms of anthrax are described, with corresponding anatomical characters. In the *pulmonary* form the thoracic structures and those of the neck are mainly or solely implicated—cellular tissue, lymphatic glands, air-tubes, lungs, and pleurae—indicated by much congestion, swelling of glands, serous effusion, gelatinous oedema, and haemorrhages. Professor Greenfield thinks that the lesions frequently present in the larger bronchi correspond with the external malignant pustule, and that the virus, having gained an entrance by local infection of the mucous membrane, is conveyed to the bronchial glands, and thence

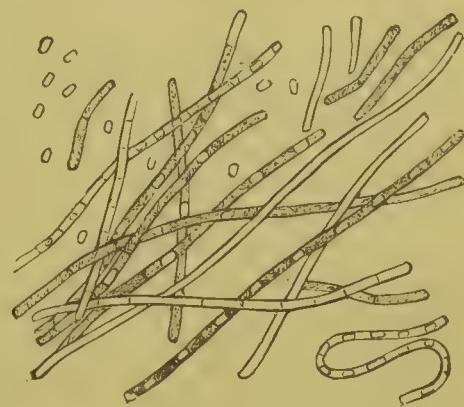


FIG. 12.
Spores, rods, and cultivated filaments of
bacillus anthracis. $\times 500$.

into the blood. In another form—*gastro-intestinal*—the peritoneum, stomach, and intestines are mainly involved, and it is said that pustules and carbuncles have been found in the intestines, similar to those on the skin.

The anthrax bacilli are found in the blood in enormous numbers, and in the various affected structures, as already stated.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of anthrax present much variety, but a primary division of cases may be made into (1) those in which there are specific external manifestations; and (2) those in which no such manifestations occur.

1. In the former class, or those of true *malignant pustule* or *carbuncle*, the external local lesion is first perceived. This usually results from direct inoculation, but it is said that it may arise from general infection. Almost always some exposed surface is affected, such as the lip, cheek, eyelid, or other part of the face, the neck, or the hand or arm. The malignant pustule appears at the seat of inoculation in a few hours, or within two or three days. At first slight redness is perceived, like that produced by the bite of a gnat; then a small papule forms, which vesicates at the top; the vesicle bursts, discharging a watery fluid, either clear or turbid, and often blood-stained. A deep-red surface remains, which dries up into a central dark-brown or black eschar or slough, on an angry and hard base. The tissues around rapidly swell, and become oedematous, or hard and brawny. The eschar extends; and around it appears an erysipelatous livid-red areola, upon which usually a circle of secondary vesicles forms. The absorbent vessels and glands in the neighbourhood become inflamed, the glands being often much enlarged. When the face is affected, the swelling of the parts may be very great, extending also to the neck; and if the lip is involved, saliva escapes in abundance, and the breath is extremely foetid. The patient often feels itching, stinging, or burning sensations, causing him to scratch the part. Should recovery take place, the eschar separates, or more or less extensive sloughing ensues, and the ulcerated surface left heals by granulation. Numerous carbuncles may develop in cases of malignant pustule from general infection, but these seem to be merely of the ordinary kind. In exceptional cases *malignant anthrax œdema* is met with, without any actual pustule, especially affecting the eyelids.

The general symptoms accompanying the local phenomena are usually those of fever, and the temperature may be very high. Such symptoms may, however, be absent or slight, and even in severe cases there may be little or no constitutional disturbance. In cases tending towards a fatal issue symptoms of blood-poisoning arise, namely, great prostration and exhaustion, mental depression, cold clammy sweats, a very weak and rapid pulse, hurried respiration, sometimes diarrhoea, low delirium and other nervous phenomena, ending in coma. Not uncommonly, however, the mind is clear to the last, but a cyanotic condition supervenes before the fatal issue.

2. In the cases which have no external manifestation—*internal anthrax*, the symptoms are by no means always well-defined, and they are very variable. There may be premonitory symptoms indicating nervous disturbance, before those of an acute character appear, but they are often absent, the onset being sudden, with vomiting, rigors, headache, or other phenomena. The chief symptoms are marked general prostration, great mental depression and anxiety, hurried and laboured breathing, coldness

of the extremities, and delirium and other nervous disturbances, though in some cases the mental faculties are clear to the last. Usually the temperature is not high, and the external surface may be cold; but sometimes there is a tendency to hyperpyrexia. Symptoms of collapse often precede a speedily fatal termination, which results from the general disease—*anthracæmia*. In some cases pulmonary lesions are prominent, as revealed by difficult and laboured breathing, and signs of cyanosis, these phenomena being out of proportion to the physical signs. Cough is rarely a conspicuous symptom. In other instances symptoms connected with the alimentary canal are marked, such as dysphagia, sometimes haemorrhage from the mouth and throat, vomiting, abdominal uneasiness or pain, and diarrhoea, the stools being sometimes bloody. Sore-throat and swelling of the glands and other tissues of the neck are observed in some cases.

Duration and Terminations.—In fatal cases of malignant pustule death may take place in a few hours, or not for five or six days. The duration varies somewhat in the different forms. Although if the disease is left to itself the termination is almost always fatal, many cases of the external form have recovered under suitable treatment.

Diagnosis.—The occupation of the patient is an important element in the diagnosis of early or obscure cases of anthrax, and this complaint should always be borne in mind under such circumstances. The external manifestation of anthrax has been mistaken at first for a mosquito-bite, and for absorption of arsenic through an abrasion; later on for malignant facial carbuncle, a poisoned wound, and primary chancre of the face. When the pustule presents well-marked characters, there ought to be no difficulty in diagnosis. In doubtful cases the finding of the characteristic bacilli in the fluid of the vesicle may verify the diagnosis, as well as in cases where there is mere œdema. Cultivation of the bacilli and inoculation of animals are most reliable in diagnosis. Internal anthrax is very difficult to diagnose positively, except by taking into consideration the occupation of the patient, and it is liable to be mistaken for many other affections.

Prognosis.—This is necessarily very grave, but if energetic local treatment can be carried out at an early period, the prognosis is much more hopeful. Cases of a mild character also occur sometimes, in which recovery takes place.

Treatment.—In *external malignant pustule* local treatment at as early a period as possible is of essential importance, and even if the changes have advanced considerably, it may be of great service. The local measures are free excision or incision; and efficient cauterization, which is best carried out by means of strong carbolic acid, nitric acid, or the actual cautery. Afterwards carbolic dressings must be used. General treatment also demands particular attention, and this alone can be carried out when there is no external manifestation of the disease. The patient should be kept in a well-ventilated room, and have abundant nourishment, with more or less alcoholic stimulants. Quinine, tincture of perchloride of iron, and mineral acids may be given internally; and carbolic acid or other antiseptics might also be administered with advantage. Diffusible stimulants are frequently indicated, such as ammonia and ether. Symptoms must be treated as they arise. In cases where the respiratory organs are specially involved, it has been recommended to use inhalations of carbolic acid; and should there be abundant pleuritic effusion, the fluid ought to be removed.

The prevention of malignant pustule is of great importance in relation to those who, on account of their occupation, are exposed to infection. In an ordinary way, this can only be efficiently carried out by the destruction of all infected carcasses and hides; and the thorough disinfection of all materials, especially those coming from foreign parts, which may be the means of propagating the disease. It has been suggested that the consumption of a large quantity of animal food may diminish the danger of those exposed to contagion. Perchloride of mercury in considerable doses is said to fortify against anthrax by inoculation. Several methods of protective inoculation against the disease have been introduced. The most important in the case of animals is that by means of different degrees of attenuated virus, according to Pasteur's method, a *premier vaccin* and a *deuxieme vaccin* being successively employed. The fact that protection could be afforded by inoculation was first demonstrated in this country by Duguid and Burdon-Sanderson, and afterwards by Greenfield, who used cultivations. Hankin has affirmed that the albumose which he has separated from the anthrax bacilli will confer immunity when injected in very small quantities.

CHAPTER XXI.

RABIES—HYDROPHOBIA.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Hydrophobia is unquestionably a specific contagious disease, resulting from the action of a *specific poison*, which in the human being is almost invariably introduced into the system through the bite of a dog suffering from the affection named *rabies*, inflicted upon some exposed part of the skin, but is in rare instances transmitted from other allied animals, as the cat, wolf, or fox. Only a certain proportion, however, of persons bitten by dogs actually suffering from rabies take the disease, not more than 15 per cent., according to Horsley. It may be conveyed in consequence of a dog merely licking an exposed surface, especially a mucous membrane; and it has even been supposed that the poison may be absorbed by the entire skin, where this is thin. The contagium is contained in the saliva or buccal secretion, and it is only through the agency of this fluid that it enters the human system; it is also present in the nervous system. It is generally believed that the virus of rabies does not retain its power after death, but in one instance the disease is said to have been conveyed through making a *post-mortem* examination of a rabid dog. Many herbivora are liable to the complaint; and a case is recorded in which a groom took hydrophobia through a scratch which he had received from the tooth of a rabid horse. It is affirmed that hydrophobia can be transmitted from man to man. Mental anxiety is supposed to predispose to the disease, and, indeed, some go so far as to maintain that this complaint is merely the result of mental terror, produced in a person who has been bitten by a mad dog, and that it is entirely independent of contagion; this, however, is a mere assumption, against which there is the strongest evidence. Males suffer much more frequently than females.

The infective agent of rabies has not yet been isolated. It is believed that it undergoes a kind of fermentation, and becomes increased both at the wound and in the system. It mainly affects certain nerves and nerve-centres, especially the medulla oblongata, which will account for the phenomena observed. Inoculation experiments have shown that the virus is abundant in the spinal cord and brain; and that it is absent from the internal viscera, as the liver, spleen, and kidneys.

Anatomical Characters.—The most striking morbid changes in rabies and hydrophobia are observed in connection with the nerve-centres, and they are mainly revealed by microscopic examination. The more obvious appearances which have been described are marked congestion of the meninges of the brain and spinal cord; excess of serum in the ventricles; and effusion of blood or serum about the upper part of the cord, with small extravasations into its substance.

The microscopic changes in the nerve-centres have been specially studied by Gowers, Coats, Clifford Allbutt, and others. In specimens removed from the human subject Gowers describes great distension of the minute vessels of the grey matter of the cord and medulla; distension of the medium-sized vessels, especially the veins, with blood, these also containing ante-mortem clots, portions of which had undergone granular or peculiar changes; aggregation of leucocytes within the peri-vascular sheath of the medium and larger veins, or occasionally infiltrating the adjacent tissue; here and there diffuse local infiltrations of similar cells, varying in size, and corresponding to the condition termed "miliary abscess;" while similar small cells were scattered through the tissue much more abundantly than in health. In every case examined many vessels were observed to be surrounded by spaces, either empty or containing more or less granular débris. The nerve-cells presented comparatively little change. Many had a granular aspect; while others had a somewhat swollen appearance. Adjacent to, or around many cells were spaces, in some cases apparently empty, in others containing granules.

These lesions were found to be comparatively slight in the spinal cord, but were much more marked above the decussation of the pyramids, and still more above the point of the calamus scriptorius. They were most intense in the neighbourhood of the hypoglossal, pneumogastric, and glosso-pharyngeal nuclei, and slighter in the auditory, facial, and fifth nuclei. The higher part of the pons was much less affected. The region most affected corresponds to what is regarded as the "respiratory centre" of the medulla.

The morbid appearances observed in the dog were similar to those in man, only more intense, amounting to a local disseminated myelitis. Changes in the convolutions have also been described by Benedikt in dogs which had died from rabies.

As to the relation of the vascular changes to the disease, it is doubtful whether they are primary, or secondary to irritation of the nerve-elements. Dr. Gowers believes that "the lesions are characteristic of hydrophobia, not in themselves, but in their character and distribution, being intense about the respiratory centre, taken in conjunction with the fact that they are due to an acute disease."

Other morbid conditions noted in cases of hydrophobia are congestion of the throat, larynx, trachea, and bronchi; follicular enlargement in the fauces, or sometimes a membranous deposit; congestion and leuco-cytal infiltration of the salivary glands (Coats); hyperæmia of the

stomach, the mucous membrane being not unfrequently covered with blood-stained mucus; and general fluidity of the blood, with congestion of dependent parts, often very marked. Acute desquamative nephritis occasionally supervenes.

Symptoms.—The *period of incubation* of hydrophobia is very indefinite. About forty days is said to be the average, but it may vary from three days to many months, or, it is affirmed, even a year or two. Horsley states that the incubation is affected by age, being short in children; the part infected, whether naked or clothed; the character, extent, and severity of the wound, punctured wounds being the most dangerous; and the animal conveying the infection, the wolf being the worst. In some cases unusual objective appearances or subjective sensations are developed in connection with the cicatrix of the bite, before the actual symptoms of hydrophobia break out, such as redness, lividity, swelling, a papular eruption, pain, itching, numbness, tingling, coldness, or curious and ill-defined feelings.

In its clinical history hydrophobia has been divided into three stages, named *premonitory*, *furious*, and *paralytic*, but there is no definite line of demarcation between them. When the disease begins to declare itself, the patient feels uncomfortable, irritable, low-spirited, despondent, and restless; loses his appetite, and sometimes vomits; has an undefined feeling of anxiety or dread; complains of headache or giddiness, or of alternate chills and heats; and is unusually sensitive. Then follows a sense of oppression in the chest, with involuntary deep sighing inspirations from time to time; or a sudden catch in the breathing may be first noticed, accompanied with severe pains in the epigastrium, due to spasm of the diaphragm. The subsequent characteristic symptoms are well grouped by Mr. Erichsen as:—1. Spasmodic affection of the muscles of deglutition and respiration. 2. Extreme sensibility of the surface and of the special senses. 3. Excessive mental terror and agitation. The nature of the malady is generally revealed to the patient by a fit of choking brought on by an attempt to drink, and by finding that swallowing has become difficult or impossible. This condition becomes rapidly worse, each attempt at drinking bringing on a spasmodic paroxysm in connection with the muscles of deglutition and respiration, especially those of the mouth and larynx, which is attended with a feeling of intense oppression and impending suffocation, causing great distress. The sense of dyspnoea is very great, even when the glottis is widely opened, or tracheotomy has been performed (Horsley). The paroxysms last a variable time, and when they are prolonged the patient becomes pale and livid, and covered with sweat. There is no general spasm, and it is affirmed that trismus never occurs, as in tetanus. The pupils are dilated. Not unfrequently solids can be swallowed at first without producing any disturbance. Soon the sight or sound of any liquid, or anything that even suggests the idea of drinking, brings on the spasmodic attacks: while the patient spits out in all directions the viscid secretion which forms in abundance in the mouth as fast as it is produced, so as not to be tempted to swallow it. The tongue is generally clean and moist; but the fauces and palate may be injected, and their glands enlarged; the larynx may also be red, and the voice husky. The skin and special senses become extremely sensitive, so that the least touch or a sudden sound or light will bring on the spasms, which ultimately extend to other muscles. The patient is in a state of great terror, anxiety, agitation, and depression, combined with restlessness. Often fits of

furious mania subsequently occur, in which the patient is extremely dangerous and utters strange sounds, which has given rise to the idea of barking being a symptom of hydrophobia. In the intervals the intellect is generally quite clear. Sometimes there are curious persistent delusions. As a rule there is some degree of pyrexia, the temperature ranging from 100° to 103°, and the pulse being quickened, but fever may be absent. As the case progresses towards a fatal termination, the special symptoms diminish, or may even disappear altogether, and the patient becomes gradually unconscious, and within a short time sinks from exhaustion and collapse, or from cardiac failure; paraplegia has occasionally set in before death. Albuminuria has sometimes been observed. In some instances priapism, with frequent involuntary emissions, is a troublesome symptom.

The duration of hydrophobia is usually from two to four days, but it may range from twelve hours to six or seven days. In women and children the disease is said to run a comparatively mild course, although equally fatal. Death may occur suddenly, from suffocation during a fit of spasm.

Diagnosis.—The circumstances under which it occurs, its peculiar symptoms, and rapid course, render the diagnosis of hydrophobia very easy in the great majority of cases. The chief liability to error lies in the fact that there is a form of *pseudo-hydrophobia*, which may be met with in an individual who has been bitten by a supposed mad dog, who may imagine all kinds of symptoms simulating the real disease, especially if of a nervous or hysterical temperament. The progress of events will soon make matters clear. It is said that hydrophobia may possibly be simulated by tetanus, epilepsy, hysteria, or mania, but there can rarely be any actual difficulty in distinguishing it from these affections.

Prognosis is very grave, hydrophobia being practically hopeless, but possibly recovery may take place in exceptional instances.

Treatment.—The most important indication is to prevent hydrophobia. Systematic muzzling of dogs is the most obvious preventive measure, and it is affirmed that in Germany the disease has been thus practically eradicated. If a person has been bitten by a rabid dog, or other animal, the immediate measures usually adopted are to apply a ligature above the bitten part; to wash the wound thoroughly, or suck it repeatedly, provided the mucous membrane of the mouth is intact, and taking care to rinse it out freely afterwards; to cauterizing the bite freely by means of nitrate of silver, nitric acid, the actual cautery, caustic potash, or concentrated carbolic acid; or to have recourse to complete excision. It is recommended to keep the wound open for some weeks. The patient's mind should be calmed as much as possible, and he should be prevented from brooding over his danger. Should hydrophobia set in, he must be kept as quiet as possible, in a darkened room, with two attendants. There is no remedy at present known which is of any real service for the cure of hydrophobia, once the disease has become developed. Relief may be afforded by subcutaneous injection of morphine, atropine, eserine, or curare; by the application of the ice-bag to the spine; or by the inhalation of chloroform. The local application of cocaine to the throat may enable the patient to take liquid nourishment. Nutrient enemata should also be employed. It has been affirmed that hydrophobia has been cured by the wet-pack and cold baths; cold affusion to the cervical spine and head; inhalations of oxygen, followed

by the administration of mono-bromide of camphor; subcutaneous injection of curare; or the combined administration of morphine and chloral or calabar bean.

Protective inoculation.—Pasteur's method of preventive inoculation in the case of persons who have been bitten by animals suffering from rabies is now a recognized practice, and "Institutes" for carrying it out have been established in various parts of the world. A detailed account of the treatment is given by Dr. Ruffer in the *British Medical Journal*, 1889. Briefly the course of procedure is as follows:—The virus from the brain of a rabid dog is inoculated successively into a series of rabbits, whereby its virulence is rapidly increased, and the period of incubation is gradually reduced to seven days. The spinal cord of these rabbits contains very intense virus, but when portions of it are preserved in dry air, their virulence gradually diminishes according to the number of days they have been kept, and finally disappears altogether. Dogs inoculated first from cords preserved for from 12 to 15 days, and then successively with those kept for a shorter period, so that a progressively stronger virus is introduced, gradually acquire immunity against rabies. The same principle is carried out in the prevention of hydrophobia in man. Fragments of spinal cords from rabbits thus treated are kept suspended in dry air in separate bottles, on each of which is indicated the number of days the portion it contains has been drying. An emulsion of these cords is injected subcutaneously into the patient, beginning with the one which has been longest drying, and which is therefore the mildest, and using a more and more virulent one on successive days, ending with a cord which has only been dried one day. By this method immunity is obtained against the effects of the virus introduced by the bite. The *rationale* of this procedure is supposed to be that the organisms of rabies produce a chemical substance which is destructive to them, or incompatible with their development, but which is not destroyed in the process of drying in the same degree as they are. When injected therefore in larger and larger quantities from cords dried for progressively shorter periods, it protects both against the virus introduced with it, and that already in the system.

CHAPTER XXII.

TETANUS—LOCK-JAW.

Aetiology.—Tetanus is in the large majority of cases of *traumatic* origin, and therefore as a rule comes under the notice of the surgeon. It may, however, occur apart from any obvious wound; or this may be so slight as to be considered of no consequence, or is not even recognized. Again, tetanus may result from a mere blow or contusion, without any external lesion. A form is met with in new-born infants—*tetanus neonatorum*, which is probably associated with the division of the umbilical cord at birth. In tropical countries the disease is said not uncommonly to follow abortion or delivery at the full period. *Idiopathic* or *rheumatic tetanus* has been attributed to exposure to cold or wet, sleeping

on damp ground, or chilling of the body while perspiring. Occasionally it cannot be referred to any definite cause.

Tetanus was until recently regarded as a disease of the nervous system, although for some time its infectious nature has been suspected. Now it is classed as one of the *acute specific diseases*, produced by a *specific bacillus*, and capable of transmission by inoculation, while it occasionally assumes an epidemic form. The *tetanus bacillus*, originally discovered by Nicolaier, was subsequently isolated and cultivated by Kitasato, and has since been investigated by many observers. It is very minute, occurring in rods from 3 to 5 μ in length, averaging about 4 μ in diameter, and growing to filaments; and is slightly motile. In cultivations spherical or ovoid spores are formed, wider than the rods, producing curious shapes; and these possess a remarkable power of resistance.

The tetanus bacillus appears to be widely diffused in the soil, and is said to be commonly found in the faeces of healthy horses and oxen, as well as sometimes in putrefying fluids. The disease can be produced by the subcutaneous inoculation of earth or garden mould. The organism is anaerobic, only growing freely in an atmosphere devoid of oxygen; but it can develop in the presence of aerobic bacteria, which are supposed to absorb the oxygen. It is also supposed to grow in faeces, owing to the relative deficiency of oxygen in the intestines. The introduction of material containing tetanus bacilli or their spores into a partially closed wound, especially where faecal matters abound, is believed to be the immediate cause of the disease; and when tetanic symptoms arise which are not obviously of traumatic origin, it is assumed that the point of entry of the infective agent has not been recognized.

It appears from experimental investigations that tetanus bacilli multiply but to a slight extent in the wound and neighbouring tissues; and they only pass into the blood at a later period, especially during the last hours of life. They may not be found in the internal organs, and inoculation with these organs shortly after death will not produce any result, but they become more virulent after a time, as the bacillus multiplies *post-mortem*. The tetanic symptoms are due to one or more chemical diffusible poisons, which the organisms generate in the wound, and which are there absorbed. Several investigators have studied these poisons. Brieger and Fraenkel affirm that the chief one is a tox-albumen; but others consider it to be a soluble enzyme or ferment. They possess very powerful properties, but are exceedingly unstable, and easily destroyed by heat, chemical agents, etc. Their effects are produced when they are injected subcutaneously or into the blood, but not when swallowed or injected into the stomach. Similar poisons are present in the blood of animals which have died of tetanus, as proved by the results of injecting blood or its serum. The urine is also said to contain them, as the disease can be produced in animals by injection of this excretion in the case of patients suffering from tetanus. One, named *tetanin*, causes the peculiar symptoms of tetanus; another—*tetanotoxine*—produces tremors, convulsions, and afterwards paralysis; and a third—*spasmoxine*—excites immediately clonic and tonic spasms (Brieger).

Anatomical Characters.—There are no lesions characteristic of tetanus. In traumatic cases the wound presents various conditions, or it may be quite healed. Occasionally the nerve proceeding from it is unduly vascular or inflamed. The nerve-centres present no obvious

alterations, but sometimes changes are observed on microscopical examination, in the way of peri-vascular exudations, and granular degeneration of the nerve-cells, which are probably mainly the effects and not the cause of the disease. Certain muscles, especially those of the abdominal wall, may be ruptured or the seat of hemorrhages. In fatal cases the lungs are the organs most commonly affected, presenting signs of bronchitis, congestion, oedema, haemorrhages, or pneumonia.

Symptoms.—The peculiar features of tetanus are persistent tonic spasm or rigidity of the muscles; with extremely painful paroxysms of cramp occurring at intervals. The patient first complains generally of pain and stiffness behind the neck, which increases until the muscles of this part become fixed, the head being drawn back. Then trismus or lock-jaw sets in; and swallowing becomes difficult. Next the rigidity extends to the muscles of the trunk; and finally all the voluntary muscles may become involved, except those of the hands, eye-balls, and tongue. They feel hard, tense, knotted, and rigid. The body is generally curved backwards—*opisthotonus*, but may be rigidly stretched out—*orthotonus*, bent forwards—*emprosthotonus*, or laterally—*pleurosthotonus*. A very painful feeling of constriction is experienced in the epigastrium, shooting towards the back. Soon paroxysms of painful spasm commence, at first slight and occurring at long intervals, but becoming rapidly more frequent, intense, and prolonged, so that they are excited by any slight disturbance, such as a touch or a noise, or even come on spontaneously, at last being almost constant. During these fits the patient experiences great distress and suffering; the muscles stand out and become extremely hard, and the back is often so curved that only the head and heels touch the bed; the countenance presents the “*risus sardonicus*,” and has a peculiar aged expression, combined with that of intense anguish. Breathing is arrested, owing to the fixation of the respiratory muscles, which causes an extreme feeling of oppression and impending suffocation, but the act of respiration is comparatively free in the intervals. The voice is weak. During the attacks there is much heat and sweating; and the pulse is very frequent and small. Soon it becomes impossible for the patient to swallow anything, though often feeling very hungry and thirsty; while the mouth is clogged with viscid mucus. Sleep is entirely prevented. There are no head-symptoms, and the intellect remains undisturbed, except towards the close, when there may be delirium. The pupils are dilated. Cutaneous sensation is not affected, but there is increased reflex excitability. The power over the sphincters is retained; constipation is generally present; and micturition is often difficult, so that the catheter is required. Death is a very frequent termination, either from sudden or gradual apnoea; from asthenia, in consequence of exhaustion and want of support; or from both causes combined. The temperature may be normal throughout or a little raised; in some cases it rises in a remarkable way before death, reaching 107° or 108° , and continues to ascend after death to 110° or more. Recovery takes place in a certain proportion of cases of tetanus, but convalescence is very slow. Temporary remissions not uncommonly occur, which are apt to mislead as to the ultimate issue. Tetanus now and then assumes a somewhat chronic course. It is usually less acute in its progress when idiopathic than when traumatic.

A peculiar form of tetanus is described by Rose—*hydrophobic tetanus*, associated with injuries affecting the fifth nerve, in which there is

facial paralysis, while spasms of the throat occur, simulating those of hydrophobia.

Diagnosis.—Strychnine-poisoning is the chief condition with which tetanus is likely to be confounded; for their distinctions reference must be made to toxicological works. The complaint might possibly be mistaken for hydrophobia, especially hydrophobic tetanus; acute spinal meningitis; certain cases of hysteria; or muscular rheumatism of the neck.

Prognosis is extremely grave in tetanus, as may be gathered from what has been previously stated, but the disease is by no means so dangerous now as formerly. It is much worse in traumatic than idiopathic cases; and in those which follow abortion or parturition. The danger is greater also in proportion to the rapidity of development of symptoms, their extent, and severity.

Treatment.—The measures which seem to be of most service in idiopathic tetanus are to use warm, vapour, or hot-air baths freely; to administer large doses of hydrate of chloral, bromides, or calabar bean, or subcutaneous injections of morphine or eserine; to relieve the spasms by inhalation of chloroform; and to support the patient by means of liquid nourishment and stimulants, introduced by enemata when they cannot be swallowed. Belladonna and atropine, aconite, Indian hemp, cinare, nicotine, and nitrite of amyl are among the numerous remedies recommended. All sources of disturbance must be removed, and the patient kept perfectly quiet. The application of ice to the spine has been advocated, but in one case which came under my observation no good effects whatever resulted from its employment.

A special method of conferring immunity against tetanus, and also of curing the disease after it has developed, has been introduced, namely, the subcutaneous injection of a substance called "tetanus antitoxin," by Tizzoni and Cattani, who consider it to be of the nature of a globulin having the properties of an enzyme. It is obtained from the serum of dogs and other animals, in which immunity has been obtained by repeated injections of small doses of the tetanus poison, or by other methods. Cases have been reported in which this treatment is said to have been successful in the human subject.

CHAPTER XXIII.

PESTIS—PLAGUE.

Etiology.—Plague is a *specific disease*, and generally prevails as an epidemic, but may be sporadic. Formerly it was met with in Europe, but at the present time its chief seats are Syria, Asia Minor, and the coast of Barbary. It is undoubtedly contagious, and can be conveyed in various ways. The infective agent has not been discovered. The chief *predisposing causes* are overcrowding and bad ventilation; want of cleanliness, with accumulation of filth; insufficient and unwholesome food; debility from any cause; a warm and moist condition of the air; and residence on a marshy soil, or in the neighbourhood of certain rivers. Epidemics often follow famine; and are generally preceded by a sickly, oppressive, warm, and moist season.

Anatomical Characters.—The blood is dark, and remains fluid or coagulates imperfectly, while it rapidly putrefies. All the organs are greatly congested and softened, especially the spleen; also the mucous and serous membranes, which may present petechiae and ecchymoses. The serous cavities contain more or less effusion. The absorbent glands generally are swollen, dark, softened, or disintegrated. Buboes and carbuncles are usually present.

Symptoms.—Plague is characterized by fever, generally of a low type, with the local development of buboes, carbuncles, and petechiae. The period of incubation is very short, and symptoms may set in almost immediately after exposure to infection. After inoculation the distinctive glandular swellings are developed in four days. The invasion is sudden in most cases, and the severity of the constitutional symptoms varies from a slight fever to one of the most virulent type. The early symptoms are rigors, restlessness, a feeling of debility and languor, headache and giddiness, nausea or vomiting, and precordial oppression or uneasiness. The expression is heavy and stupid, and the eyes look muddy or suffused. Soon the temperature rises, while prostration increases, with a tendency to syncope. The pulse is frequent, but weak or irregular. The tongue is thickly furred, and tends to become dry and brown or black, with sordes on the teeth. The other prominent symptoms are vomiting, sometimes of black matters; great thirst; diarrhoea with offensive stools; hurried respiration; and very foul breath. The urine is much diminished in quantity, and may contain blood. Haemorrhages from mucous membranes are not uncommon. Nervous symptoms are generally present, such as delirium, stupor, coma, or convulsions. Death may take place before the appearance of any local signs.

Buboes are formed chiefly in connection with the glands of the groin, but are also seen in the axilla, and about the angles of the jaws. They appear at different periods, being preceded by darting pains. Generally they form abscesses, which discharge and heal slowly, leaving permanent scars. Carbuncles are observed mostly on the limbs, but may affect any part of the body. They vary in number and size, and are liable to end in gangrene, sometimes thus causing great destruction of tissues. Petechiae, vibices, and livid patches are seen only in bad cases, and there may also be extravasations of blood into the subcutaneous tissue in such cases.

Prognosis is very grave.

Treatment.—Attention to all hygienic measures is essential in the treatment of plague. The bowels should be freely opened. An emetic at the outset is recommended. Nutritious food, stimulants, mineral acids, and tonics are the remedies which afford the best results. Probably the internal administration of antiseptics might be useful in this disease. Cold affusion or sponging may also be employed. Poultices are indicated for the buboes and carbuncles, followed by antiseptic dressings when they are discharging.

CHAPTER XXIV.

YELLOW FEVER.

Etiology.—There has been much discussion among those who have had opportunities for the observation and study of cases of yellow fever, as to whether it is of *malarial* origin, or of the nature of a *specific contagious disease*. Most authorities maintain the latter view, though the disease may be simulated by malarial remittent fever. It can be conveyed by infection, and has thus originated in seaport towns in this and other countries where vessels have arrived with cases of yellow fever on board. Fomites may be the means of propagating yellow fever.

In certain regions yellow fever is endemic, and it occurs also in severe epidemics. Its principal seats are the West Indian Islands, the seaports of North and South America, the South Coast of Spain, Mexico, and the West Coast of Africa. It requires a temperature of at least 72° F.; and is rarely met with at an altitude of more than from 2,000 to 3,000 feet above the level of the sea.

Among the chief external *predisposing causes* are mentioned:—Long-continued high temperature; a swampy or low-lying and crowded district; accumulations of filth, and other anti-hygienic conditions. The disease is more liable to attack children, males, the white races, and those who have recently come into an infected district. Intemperance and other excesses, fatigue, and exposure to night air and dews also increase the liability to the complaint; while individual predisposition seems to exist in some instances.

Anatomical Characters.—The body may or may not be emaciated. The skin is of a deep yellow colour, as well as much congested in dependent parts, and in those distant from the centre of circulation. The tissues are generally soft and flabby. More or less congestion of organs is observed, sometimes with extravasations of blood and effusions into serous cavities. Softening of the heart, with degeneration of its fibres, is usually met with; and the blood coagulates imperfectly, though soft clots are generally found in the cardiac cavities. The stomach is the most frequent seat of morbid changes. It often contains more or less "black vomit," or blood undergoing alterations. Sometimes a black or bloody mucus sticks to the lining membrane. Signs of congestion or inflammation are present in most cases. An inflammatory condition has been described in connection with the membranes of the spinal cord; and in the sympathetic system.

Symptoms.—The prominent symptoms of yellow fever vary in different epidemics, and cases exhibit all grades of intensity, from a very mild form of the disease to one of the most malignant type. Usually three stages may be recognized, following a *period of incubation*, the duration of which is usually from two to four days, but it is said that it may range from one to fifteen days.

1. *Invasion-stage.*—The attack may be preceded by premonitory symptoms, or may come on quite suddenly. Chills generally occur at the outset, but are not always observed in tropical climates. These alternate with a sense of heat, and soon there is marked pyrexia, its degree being in proportion to the previous chills, the temperature pre-

senting a morning remission. The pulse is frequent, and in most cases full and strong. The face is flushed, the eyes are red and suffused, and the expression is anxious and distressed. The skin feels hot, dry, and harsh. The tongue is covered with a white fur, moist, red at the tip and edges, with enlarged papillæ. Sore-throat may be complained of; and there is a constant desire for cool drinks or ice. Gastric symptoms may be present from the first, but as a rule they only become prominent in from twelve to twenty-four hours. These symptoms include a sense of oppression, uneasiness, weight, or burning pain in the epigastrium, with considerable tenderness; nausea, violent vomiting, and retching, the vomited matters being of a bilious character, or containing streaks of blood or chocolate-coloured floeculi. After a while the stomach rejects everything without any effort. There is usually obstinate constipation, with unhealthy stools, which are deficient in bile; and there may be much flatulence or tympanites. The urine is deficient in quantity, of dark colour, and generally contains albumen.

Nervous symptoms are most distressing in the majority of cases. Severe frontal headache is complained of from the first, with shooting pains in the temples and eyes. One of the earliest and most prominent symptoms in most instances, however, is pain in the lumbar region and limbs, which often becomes so intense as to elicit screams and groans, and to make the patient writhe in agony. As this stage advances the patient becomes very restless, the mind is confused, or wild and violent delirium may set in, attended with hallucinations. Occasionally there is more or less stupor.

The invasion-stage lasts from a few hours to two or three days usually, but it may extend to four or five days. It is longer in the milder cases.

2. *Stage of Remission.*—A marked improvement is observed at the close of the first stage, which in most cases is only temporary, but sometimes is permanent, convalescence setting in, preceded by critical discharges. The symptoms subside more or less completely, the patient feeling comparatively comfortable and often hopeful, occasionally appearing to be quite well. But at this time there are frequently some unfavourable signs, namely, more marked tenderness in the epigastrium; a yellowish tinge of the skin and urine; a slow pulse; and sometimes heaviness or stupor. The duration of this remission is usually but a few hours, but may be prolonged to twenty-four hours.

3. *Stage of Collapse or Secondary Fever.*—In most cases of yellow fever signs of collapse appear, with great prostration and debility. The skin generally assumes a yellow, orange, or bronzed hue, but not invariably. This spreads from the forehead downwards, and is derived from the colouring matter of the blood. The circulation is impeded, the pulse becoming very rapid, weak, and irregular, while capillary congestion or stagnation is observed in dependent and distant parts, sometimes accompanied with petechiae and vibices; at the same time the heart may be beating violently. In bad cases haemorrhages are common, especially from the mucous surfaces. The tongue tends to become dry, brown, or black; or it is smooth, red, and fissured; sordes may also form on the lips and teeth. The gastric symptoms return and become very intense. The so-called *black vomit* sets in by degrees, the black colour being probably due to altered blood. It is often preceded by *white vomit*. Black vomit is not a constant symptom, and the exact characters of the vomited matters vary, pure blood being sometimes discharged. Similar materials may pass away in the stools. The urine is often more or less

-deficient, and contains albumen; it is sometimes entirely suppressed or retained. The patient frequently lies in a state of apathy and gloomy indifference. Ultimately collapse becomes extreme, with a cold, clammy skin; slow, sighing respiration; and hiccup. Consciousness may be retained to the last; or low delirium or coma may set in, with convulsions at the close.

In some cases the symptoms of this stage of yellow fever are those of more or less intense secondary fever, instead of collapse. This course of events may terminate in convalescence; or the fever assumes a typhoid type, ending fatally.

Varieties.—As already stated, great differences are observed in the intensity of the symptoms of yellow fever; and also in the nature of the phenomena which are most prominent in different cases. Some patients are prostrated at once, and die very speedily. The named varieties are:—1. *Algid*. 2. *Sthenic*. 3. *Hæmorrhagic*. 4. *Petechial*. 5. *Typhous*. These several terms indicate the prominent characters which are peculiar to each variety.

Diagnosis.—Yellow fever is most liable to be confounded with remittent malarial fever, but the points of distinction will be indicated under the latter disease. Relapsing fever might possibly be mistaken for yellow fever, but it differs in its course; in attacking chiefly the poor and destitute; in the rarity of black vomit, and comparative infrequency of jaundice; and in being seldom fatal.

Prognosis.—Yellow fever is always a terrible disease, but the mortality varies much in different epidemics. Death usually takes place from the 4th to the 6th day, but may be delayed to the 9th or 11th day, or even to a much later period than this. It has been observed that many apparently hopeless cases recover, while others which seem to be mild prove speedily fatal; hence the prognosis is very uncertain.

Treatment.—Attention to all *hygienic measures* and personal rules of health is of prime importance in the treatment of yellow fever. At the outset hot drinks and warm foot-baths have been recommended, with *emetics* and *purgatives*. Large doses of calomel or of quinine used to be given, but they have been proved to be injurious.

It is important to excite free action of the excreting organs as soon as possible. Copious enemata containing turpentine are serviceable. Saline drinks may be given abundantly. The skin should be sponged; or wet-packing may be resorted to if the patient is very hot. In an epidemic of yellow fever which occurred in America, it is affirmed that a patient was restored when apparently in a hopeless condition, by being placed in a net under which an india-rubber sheet was hung, and constantly syringed with iced water. Liquid food should be given in small quantities, with cool drinks, and plenty of ice. Alcoholic stimulants well-diluted are also valuable. Champagne is most beneficial, if it can be obtained.

Various symptoms require attention in yellow fever, but especially vomiting. For its relief lime-water and milk, hydrocyanic acid, creasote, chlorodyne, and chloroform have been found most useful. Great care must be exercised in the administration of opium or morphine, particularly if there is any tendency to suppression of urine. Chlorodyne is suggested as a substitute, in order to procure sleep and to relieve pain; hot applications or mustard poultices being also applied externally over painful parts. Haemorrhages, collapse, and typhoid symptoms must be treated by the ordinary remedies. During convalescence quinine may be given, should recovery take place.

CHAPTER XXV.

CEREBRO-SPINAL FEVER—EPIDEMIC CEREBRO-SPINAL MENINGITIS.

Aetiology.—This complaint prevails as an epidemic, as well as sporadically, and presents the characters of an *acute specific disease*, but its exciting cause is by no means definitely made out. Various micrococci have been described in the meningeal exudations; and Cornil and Babes conclude that cerebro-spinal meningitis may be produced by several different, but often associated, micro-organisms, of which the lance-shaped coccus is the most common. There is no reliable evidence that the disease is at all contagious. It has been attributed to the action of a malarial poison; to excessive fatigue; to the use of unwholesome food, especially diseased grain; and to exposure to cold. Among the chief predisposing causes are early age, especially from fifteen to thirty, the complaint being uncommon after thirty-five, and very rare after forty, but not infrequent in children; the male sex markedly; and a cold season, most cases occurring during winter or early spring. Unfavourable hygienic conditions do not seem to have much influence. Cerebro-spinal fever is met with as an epidemic principally where young people are collected together, and it is particularly common among young recruits in barracks; it may, however, occur in country districts.

Anatomical Characters.—The most important morbid changes observed in cases of cerebro-spinal fever are those indicative of inflammation of the membranes of the brain and spinal cord. There is hyperæmia of the scalp and of the structures within the cranium, the sinuses of the dura mater containing much dark fluid or softly-coagulated blood. There may be small hæmorrhagic effusions in connection with the dura mater. The sub-arachnoid space contains excess of serum, but the most striking appearance is due to the presence of more or less exudation in this space, both over the convexity and at the base of the brain, though it is much more abundant in the latter situation, the cranial nerves being often embedded in it. The amount and characters of this material vary with the duration of the disease; in cases of very short duration it is generally in small quantity, whitish, and soft; later on it becomes more abundant, yellowish or greenish, and somewhat purulent-looking; while in prolonged cases it is again whiter and firmer, there being also more serum under these circumstances. The brain-substance is unduly vascular, and may be softened, especially in the neighbourhood of the ventricles, which contain in many cases a small quantity of purulent-looking fluid, or occasionally much serum.

The membranes of the cord present similar changes, there being a purulent fluid under the arachnoid, with exudation, which is almost entirely confined to the posterior surface.

Rigor mortis is well-marked. *Post-mortem* congestion rapidly sets in; and purpuric patches are usually visible. The blood is dark and tarry-looking; and the muscles are of a deep colour. The spleen, liver, and lungs are often much congested, and there may be signs of inflammatory complications. Purulent infiltration of the eyeball has been occasionally met with; and also effusion into the joints.

Symptoms.—In the great majority of cases cerebro-spinal fever is not ushered in by any premonitory symptoms, and the *invasion* is quite sudden, being indicated by a rigor or chill; faintness; intense headache, causing the patient to cry out, and being usually more or less general, but sometimes localized, especially at the back of the head; vertigo; frequently epigastric pain and cerebral vomiting, the vomited matters being generally of a bilious character; great restlessness; and pyrexia. The pupils are contracted. In a day or two the pain extends to the back of the neck, and then down the spine, being increased in this locality by movement and pressure. The head is drawn back, partly voluntarily in order to relieve pain, partly from spasm of the muscles. In three or four days distinct tetanic spasms set in, there being often well-marked opisthotonus, and occasionally trismus, risus sardonicus, or strabismus. The respiratory muscles may become involved, causing serious interference with breathing. The skin generally becomes extremely sensitive, and severe pains are felt in the limbs, these being aggravated or sometimes only produced by movements of the spine. At first the mind is clear, but soon mental confusion is observed, followed by muttering delirium, and afterwards by stupor, which in fatal cases ends in deep coma. In rare instances epileptiform convulsions occur; or there may be hemiplegia, paraplegia, or signs of paralysis of some of the cranial nerves. Amaurosis is occasionally noticed; and deafness is not uncommon.

Early in the course of the disease herpes usually appears, chiefly about the lips and face, but it may be observed on the limbs or trunk. Other forms of eruption are sometimes seen; and the body becomes more or less thickly scattered over with purpuric spots in bad cases, in some instances considerable patches being involved, which may become quite black, or even gangrenous; in such cases mucous haemorrhages are also liable to occur. The degree of pyrexia varies much in different cases; but the temperature usually ranges from 100° to 103° , in some instances rising to 105° or higher. It has no regular course, and often presents sudden variations, but there is generally a slight evening exacerbation. The pulse rises to 100 or 120, but is liable to considerable changes in frequency; it is sharp, weak, and wanting in tone. The respirations are hurried. The bowels are constipated, and the abdomen is retracted. The urine may contain a large quantity of albumen in severe cases; and when stupor sets in, it is retained or passed involuntarily.

A favourable termination of the complaint is indicated by a gradual subsidence of the nervous phenomena; restoration of the mental faculties; and a steady fall in temperature. Convalescence is very slow, and headache usually continues for some time. There may only be partial restoration, the mind being permanently impaired, or some form of paralysis remaining; or death may take place after many weeks, from general marasmus.

Cases of cerebro-spinal fever present much variety in their severity, and in their exact combinations of symptoms, and different writers have arranged them into corresponding groups or *varieties*.

Complications and Sequelæ.—These are not uncommon in cerebro-spinal meningitis, the chief being inflammatory affections of the eyeball, especially the right one, which may end in suppuration and total destruction of its tissues; inflammation of joints, terminating in formation of pus; bronchitis, pleurisy, or pneumonia; pericarditis; and parotitis.

Diagnosis.—Cerebro-spinal fever is a well-defined disease, characterized by the circumstances under which it arises; its sudden onset; high fever; and symptoms indicative of grave cerebro-spinal meningitis. The appearance of herpes, or of purpuric spots and haemorrhages, would also assist the diagnosis. The complaint may be mistaken at first for typhus, typhoid, or relapsing fever, or for malignant small-pox; and subsequently for tetanus; but there is more danger of its being confounded with other forms of meningitis, especially tubercular. It may also resemble pneumonia with meningeal complications.

Prognosis.—Cerebro-spinal fever is a grave malady, but the mortality varies in different epidemics from 20 or 30 to 80 per cent., the average being about 60 per cent. The early appearance of purpuric spots, and the occurrence of haemorrhages, are very unfavourable signs. Death is most to be feared during the first few days, but it may take place after many weeks. The mortality is highest at the commencement of an epidemic; and amongst young children, or persons over 30 years of age.

Treatment.—If there is much depression at the outset, it is desirable to give small quantities of *stimulants*, and to apply heat externally. Subsequently the indications are to promote absorption of the exudation; to relieve the pain and muscular spasms; to support the strength of the patient; and to treat symptoms and complications as they arise. Mercury and iodide of potassium have been given with the view of aiding absorption, but the former drug seems to be quite inadmissible in the treatment of cases of cerebro-spinal fever. The application of a few leeches to the temples or behind the ears often relieves the headache. Ice should be applied constantly to the head and along the spine. In prolonged cases it has been recommended to blister the nape of the neck and the spinal region. The most reliable remedies for relieving the symptoms are opium internally, or hypodermic injection of morphine; hydrate of chloral; bromide of potassium in full doses; and belladonna. The patient must have nutritious and sustaining food throughout; and considerable quantities of *alcoholic stimulants* are frequently required. Enemata are often of much service for their administration, as well as for the purpose of acting upon the bowels. It is requisite to pay careful attention to *hygienic conditions*. During convalescence tonics and good diet are necessary.

CHAPTER XXVI.

MALARIAL OR PALUDAL FEVERS.

I. ON MALARIA OR MARSH-MIASM.

THERE are certain affections which have been almost universally recognized as being the result of the action of a *malarial* or *telluric* poison upon the system. Amongst these the most striking are fevers of an *intermittent* or *remittent* type, and before considering this class of fevers it will be expedient to indicate the main facts relating to malaria; and to describe generally the morbid changes which are produced by exposure to its influence.

1. Origin and propagation.—The malarial poison is ordinarily an emanation from soils more or less rich in organic matter, but which are not devoted to the maintenance of healthy vegetation. The essential conditions for its production are decomposition of vegetable organic matter; a certain temperature; and a certain degree of moisture. Without the first of these it cannot possibly originate. Very rarely are malarial diseases generated under a temperature of 60° F., and the heat must be of some duration. As this rises, they become more prevalent and more severe, and hence they exhibit a very virulent type in certain tropical climates. There must not be too much moisture, else the malarial poison is absorbed by it; while it is not formed if the atmosphere is dry. It is the alternate moistening of the soil and vegetation, and exposure to the heat of the sun, leading to partial dryness and decomposition, which usually accounts for the development of malaria.

The necessary conditions, as regards vegetable decomposition and moisture, are met with under the following circumstances:—1. In marshes and swamps, unless the soil is peaty or constantly overflowed with water, conditions which materially interfere with the development of malaria. 2. Where there is much vegetable matter in the soils of valleys and ravines, at the bases of mountain ranges in tropical climates, in alluvial deposits, along the banks of tropical rivers, in old estuaries, the deltas of rivers, etc. 3. Where surfaces covered with much vegetation have been temporarily overflowed, so as to be left moist. 4. During the draining of lakes, ponds, etc. 5. In sandy plains containing organic matter, if there is a subsoil of clay or marl, conditions often existing simultaneously in old river courses; also in the lower chalk-formations, with a subsoil of clay or marl. 6. In certain hard granitic or trap rocks containing organic matter, such as fungi, especially if they are disintegrating. 7. In turning up the soil in the early cultivation of land, digging canals, making railways, etc. 8. Where copious vegetation has been cleared away in dense jungles for purposes of cultivation, sufficient being left behind to decompose. It frequently happens that the first result of attempts at cultivation of a new district is the production of malarial diseases, which ultimately disappear. 9. When tracts of land are from any cause allowed to fall out of cultivation, especially if the soil is rich in organic matters. 10. On board ship, where decomposing vegetable matter is mixed with bilge-water; or where malarial mud has in any way been allowed to accumulate.

The following conditions influence the development and propagation of malarial affections:—1. *Season.* Usually these complaints are most prevalent towards the latter part of summer and in the autumn, and many malarial districts may be visited without any danger in the winter, which cannot be approached in the warm season. They are particularly liable to occur after long-continued dry and hot weather, followed by warm rains; and the occurrence of rains at particular times influences the prevalence of malarial fevers in different countries. In climates where the summer is short, even though very hot, they are not prevalent. 2. *Water.* Abundance of water constitutes a protection against malarial affections, because it absorbs the poison. Hence they are temporarily diminished by long and heavy rains and floods. Any deep sheet of water, especially running water, affords some degree of protection, and thus the intervention of a river may prevent the poison from passing from one of its banks to the

opposite one. A ship at a little distance from shore is in comparative safety. Some believe that sea-water is peculiarly protective, though it is said that the occasional admixture of salt water increases the emanations from marshes. 3. *Winds.* These frequently convey the malaria for a considerable distance along plains, and may thus be the means of originating malarial affections in places remote from a malarial district, also counteracting the good effects of the intervention of water, etc. On the other hand, a storm may drive away the poison altogether. 4. *Low districts* are more dangerous than those which are elevated, the malaria tending to cling to the earth. By the aid of ravines and hot air, however, it may be carried up mountains to a great height, it is stated even as much as 2,000 or 3,000 feet. It appears, moreover, that malaria may be actually developed at high altitudes, when the conditions are favourable, namely, where there is a loose porous soil, resting on a clay bottom or rocky base, by which the moisture is retained, while there is sufficient vegetable matter to decompose. Thus malarial fevers have been met with in the Apennines at a height of 1,100 feet; in the Pyrenees at 5,000 feet; and in Peru at 10,000 feet. The lower rooms of houses are more dangerous than the upper. 5. *Trees.* When in large numbers these afford decided protection, both by interfering with the propagation of the poison, and by keeping off the sun's rays from the soil; in some cases, however, they seem to be injurious. Certain trees are said to exert a specially protective influence, particularly the *Eucalyptus globulus*, but this is more than doubtful. 6. *Mountains and hills* interfere considerably with the dissemination of malaria. 7. *Time of the day.* Morning and evening dews augment the danger of malaria materially, probably from condensing the poison. It is highly dangerous to sleep in tents at night in malarial districts. 8. The *air of cities* in some way renders the poison innocuous, for though a malarial disease may be raging in the surrounding districts, it does not penetrate far into their interior. 9. *Artificial heat* destroys malaria, if sufficiently intense. 10. *Individual susceptibility* is increased by certain circumstances, namely, recent arrival in a malarial district; fatigue and exhaustion from any cause; exposure to the full heat of the sun; sudden changes in temperature, and chills of all kinds; abuse of alcohol; exposure to malaria on an empty stomach; over-feeding; mental exhaustion or nervous depression; and over-crowding. Some persons are far more susceptible than others. Young children and old persons are least subject to malarial affections; and males are said to be more predisposed than females. White races suffer more than blacks. It has been affirmed that the use of drinking water from a malarial district may produce malarial diseases.

The conditions which have just been discussed do not exist at the present day in Great Britain to any extent, and malarial diseases are only met with in certain limited districts, especially the Cambridgeshire and Lincolnshire fens, and along the banks of the Thames in Kent and Essex. On the Continent they occur in the flat country of Holland and North Germany, and the west coast of Italy. They prevail principally, however, and in their more severe forms, along the West Coast of Africa, and in many parts of its interior, as well as in Asia, many districts of India, especially along the Ganges and Indus, and in parts of China and Persia.

2. **Nature.**—The association of certain micro-organisms with malarial conditions is now generally recognized, and these are believed to have a

causative relation. A *bacillus malariae* was discovered by Klebs and Tommasi-Crudeli in 1879, but their observations have not been corroborated. The organisms which are at present regarded as malarial belong to the *protozoa*, and to a group known as *haematozoa*, which inhabit the blood. They were originally discovered by Laveran in 1880, and his investigations have since been amply confirmed by numerous observers in different parts of the world, by some of whom the organisms were discovered independently. They present different characters, and have been arranged by Laveran under four classes, namely :—1. *Spherical bodies*, which are most common, presenting active amæboid movements. These consist of hyaline protoplasm, all but the smallest containing dark pigment granules, derived from the haemoglobin, the largest as a rule containing most pigment. They occur within the red corpuscles, as well as free in the serum. To the amæboid forms within the red corpuscles Marchiafava and Celli gave the name *plasmodium malariae*. 2. *Flagellated organisms* and *flagella*. These are frequently observed, one to four flagella appearing to grow chiefly from some of the larger spherical bodies which have become free, being very delicate, and sometimes becoming detached. The organisms have a very rapid lashing movement, and the detached flagella have an independent movement in the serum. 3. *Crescentic bodies* or *crescents*, found in the serum, which are non-amæboid, vary in exact shape, are colourless and transparent, and generally show a small collection of dark pigment about their middle. 4. *Rosette-shaped* or *segmented bodies*. These are somewhat spherical, presenting a central mass of pigment granules, sometimes surrounded by a hyaline envelope. Segmentation of the protoplasm takes place in radiating lines from the centre to the periphery, and they split into oval or elongated bodies.

One or more kinds of the organisms thus briefly described are said to be invariably found in malarial diseases all over the world, and under no other circumstances. They are present in the blood during a paroxysm of fever, and almost entirely disappear when this subsides, as well as under the influence of quinine, except the crescents, which may persist for some time. All forms, except the flagella, can be studied in dried films of fresh blood on a warm stage, which after being fixed by heating are stained for thirty seconds in a saturated watery solution of methyl blue, and then washed in water. Inoculation with blood containing these organisms has produced malarial fever in man, accompanied with their multiplication in the blood, and also in apes. They have not yet been isolated or cultivated outside the body; and it is not known in what form or under what conditions they exist externally, how they gain access into the system, or in what way they produce the fever.

The relation of the different organisms to each other and to the several varieties of malarial disease is much disputed. Laveran maintains that they are merely stages of the same organism, and that the flagellated body represents the stage of full development. Most Italian authorities, however, hold that there are distinct kinds of parasite, producing different types of fever, in which the developmental phases occupy different periods of time. The typical intermittent seems to be associated with large forms. The crescents are most frequent in malarial cachexia, or in the irregular types of fever. The segmented bodies are the most rare, and are said to be seen especially in cases of quartan fever. The new generations which are formed are said to

collect chiefly in the spleen, liver, and bone-marrow during the non-febrile intervals, and to enter the blood during the paroxysm of fever.

The changes produced by malaria can be explained by the effects of these parasites. They rapidly and extensively destroy the red corpuscles, hence causing marked anaemia; while pigment-granules (*melanine*) are formed from the haemoglobin, which are taken up chiefly by leucocytes, and deposited in various parts of the body. Possibly some of the graver phenomena which occur in connection with malaria are partly due to the influence of toxic agents which the organisms produce. These organisms and pigment-granules often lead to blocking of the smaller arterioles and capillaries.

3. Mode of entrance into the system, and general effects.—Malaria is chiefly inhaled, and then absorbed by the pulmonary membrane; it may also be taken up by the stomach, which it often seriously disorders; and possibly by the skin. The malarial organisms act on the blood, as already indicated, and also on the nervous system, giving rise to fevers, usually of an intermittent or remittent type, but occasionally continuous, followed after a time by permanent organic changes, especially in the liver and spleen; while neuralgic affections, often of a very pronounced character, are liable to be set up. Certain other disorders are attributed to malarial influence, such as diarrhoea, gastric derangements, palpitation of the heart, pains in the limbs and joints, and amenorrhœa; while it leads to a general state of ill-health, and a peculiar *cachexia*, with ultimate degeneration of the race. A large number of males in some malarial districts are said to be impotent. Dysentery and hepatic abscess are very prevalent in certain tropical malarial regions. Malaria imparts a peculiar periodicity to the affections which it originates, and once they become established they are liable to recur on subsequent occasions, quite independent of the action of the original exciting cause, sometimes, indeed, apparently arising spontaneously. Various complaints tend to assume a periodic character in malarial districts.

4. Special morbid changes—The blood soon becomes affected in malarial fevers, or even as the result of mere prolonged exposure to malarial influence. The usual changes consist in hydæmia, with destruction of the red corpuscles by the organisms already described, and the formation of pigment, which may be visible under the microscope. More or less anaemia is thus produced, which ultimately becomes extreme, accompanied with a yellowish discolouration of the skin. In pernicious cases the serum may be tinged with haemoglobin; while the smaller capillaries in certain organs are crowded with or obstructed by the parasites, degenerating red-corpuscles, pigment-granules, and pigmented leucocytes. Haemorrhages are liable to occur from various parts, which may be serious or even fatal.

The spleen is one of the organs most frequently and seriously involved in connection with malaria. In early cases it is merely slightly or moderately enlarged from congestion, the swelling subsiding partly during the apyrexial period in cases of ague, but increasing with every fresh attack. In grave cases the organ may become very large and markedly soft, the pulp being lake-coloured and turbid. It has been known occasionally to rupture, usually from external injury, but in exceptional cases spontaneously. After ordinary ague the spleen assumes its normal condition sooner or later under proper treatment, but after repeated attacks, or prolonged exposure to malaria, it becomes

permanently enlarged and firm, constituting the so-called *ague-cake*, and ultimately may attain a very considerable size and weight, being also markedly hard. Its capsule is then more or less thickened, and its trabeculae and special tissues increased; but the most remarkable change is the large amount of pigment which collects in its substance. This is evidenced by a brownish or yellowish-brown colour of the parenchyma, with areas of pigmentation; or in very prolonged cases it is extremely melanosed, particularly in the trabeculae and about the vessels. The enlargement of the spleen in chronic instances may be partly due to albuminoid disease; or it may end in leucocythaemia. (See DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.)

The liver also tends to become enlarged in malarial cases, but to a much less degree than the spleen as a rule. In ordinary intermittent fever it is not materially altered at first. In the pernicious form it is decidedly swollen, and its capillaries may be crowded with degenerating and deeply pigmented red blood-cells. Perivascular infiltration in connection with the portal branches has been described. In chronic cases the liver becomes permanently increased in size, unduly firm, and pigmented. The colour ranges from greyish-brown to a deep slate-grey. In the portal canals and beneath the capsule the connective tissue is impregnated with melanin. The increased firmness is due more or less to a cirrhotic change, resulting from the irritation produced by the pigment. Some writers describe several forms of *paludal hepatitis*. Others, however, who have had much experience, are of opinion that when marked cirrhotic lesions are met with in malarial cases, they are in reality the result of alcoholic excess. Albuminoid disease may ultimately involve the liver.

The kidneys may be congested, and their small vessels blocked in grave cases of malarial fever. In chronic malarial conditions they may be large and pigmented, presenting a greyish-red colour, or areas of pigmentation. The pigment is often abundant in the renal cells and tubules; or it may be diffusely scattered, though particularly abundant about the blood-vessels and malpighian bodies. Acute nephritis is rare in the milder forms of malarial fever, but is more likely to be met with in grave cases. Haemorrhage from the kidneys is not uncommon in connection with pernicious malaria. Chronic Bright's disease is said to result occasionally from malaria, but this is doubtful.

Pneumonia is regarded by many authorities as having an important relation to malarial disease, both in its acute and chronic forms; and some look upon it as a special variety produced by the malarial poison. By others it is merely considered as a complication to be guarded against, especially in patients returning from a tropical to a cold climate, when it tends to come on rapidly, often involving both lungs, and being of a very dangerous character. Osler states that in about 400 cases of malaria observed at the Johns Hopkins Hospital and Dispensary, bronchitis was frequent as an early symptom, but there was no indication of any special form of inflammation of the lungs.

Other morbid changes occur sometimes in connection with malarial conditions. In severe cases the brain exhibits more or less staining of its tissues, which may become chocolate-coloured; with blocking of the small vessels with parasites, etc. In rapidly fatal cases the muscular tissue of the heart becomes the seat of acute degeneration; or in other instances temporary dilatation may occur, which is subsequently recovered from. The stomach and duodenum are said often to pre-

sent evidence of congestion, with softening of the mucous membrane, and sometimes ulceration. In chronic cases the mucous lining of the stomach and intestines may show a collection of slate-coloured pigment in and about the blood-vessels, sometimes confined to Peyer's patches. The peritoneum is also of a deep slate-colour in some instances.

II. MALARIAL DISEASES.

I now proceed to consider from a clinical point of view the more definite diseases and conditions which are recognized as belonging to the malarial group. They include :—1. *Intermittent Fever or Ague*. 2. *Remittent and Continuous Malarial Fever*. 3. *Pernicious or Malignant Fever*. 4. *Malarial Cachexia*. 5. *Masked Intermittent*. It must be mentioned, however, that there is no distinct limit between the different types of malarial fever, while one type sometimes changes into another. A very high temperature favours the more severe forms.

Clinical History and Symptoms.—This part of the subject will have to be discussed separately in relation to each of the conditions just mentioned.

1. **INTERMITTENT FEVER—AGUE.**—This is the only malarial fever which is met with in this country, and in days gone by it prevailed much more extensively than at present, being now, as already stated, only developed in certain limited districts. Cases, however, may come under observation in which the complaint has originated in some foreign climate. Once it has become established in the system, subsequent attacks are liable to arise without any further exposure to malarial influence, and they may even be severe.

Ague is characterized clinically by paroxysms of fever, running through certain definite stages, and occurring at more or less regular intervals, with intermediate periods of complete apyrexia.

1. The *invasion* is generally indicated by the ordinary symptoms premonitory of fever, which are noticed for some days before the disease declares itself, the pyrexia presenting well-marked remissions, with a periodic tendency. Sometimes the attack is sudden.

2. A *paroxysm* or *fit* of ague consists of three successive stages, named respectively the *cold*; the *hot*; and the *sweating* stage.

a. *Cold stage.*—Ordinarily a fit of ague is preceded by general uneasiness and languor, inaptitude for any exertion, headache, and loss of appetite. Soon the patient feels cold, first in the limbs, then along the back and over the body. The teeth begin to chatter, and finally the entire frame shivers. At the same time the general surface of the skin appears pale and shrunken, especially that of the face, the features being pinched and sharp. The tips of the fingers and the lips are blue, while in severe cases the whole surface assumes a purplish hue. *Cutis anserina* is frequently observed. There is objective coldness externally, as determined by a surface thermometer, but the temperature is really rising, and may reach 105° or 106° in the rectum. The patient often complains of pains in the back and limbs, as well as of headache. The tongue is usually pale, moist, clean, and cool; appetite is lost, but thirst is a frequent symptom. Nausea and vomiting are not uncommon, with uneasiness and a sense of weight in the epigastrium. There is a feeling of want of air, with hurried breathing, and often a dry cough, the

expired air being cool. The pulse is usually frequent, small, and hard; it may be irregular.

The intensity of this stage varies greatly. There may be signs of serious depression or collapse, with a tendency to stupor or coma. Its duration is very variable, but it usually lasts from a few minutes to an hour or so.

b. *Hot stage*.—The transition to this stage may be sudden, but is generally gradual, being indicated by alternate flushings and chilliness, or by parts of the body becoming warm. When it becomes fully developed, the skin feels burningly hot and dry, is red and tumid, and sometimes a patchy rash appears. The face is flushed, and the eyes are injected and sparkling. There is intense thirst, with dryness and heat of mouth, total anorexia, a white tongue, and sometimes nausea or vomiting. The heart and great arteries throb, and the pulse is generally strong and full. Respiration is more quiet than in the first stage. Headache is always present, with a sense of throbbing; and sometimes more or less delirium occurs, which may be very violent, or convulsions set in.

This stage lasts usually from half-an-hour to three or four hours, the extremes being from two to eighteen hours.

c. *Sweating stage*.—Perspiration breaks out first about the forehead, and then by degrees extends over the body. Its amount varies, but it is generally considerable or even profuse, so that the bed-clothes become saturated, and sometimes even the bedding. In cases originating in certain malarial districts, the perspiration is said to have a peculiar sickly and most disagreeable odour. It continues to pour off for some time, during which the pyrexia becomes reduced, and the symptoms rapidly abate; the patient usually soon falls asleep, and awakes feeling comparatively or quite well. Along with the sweating there is a critical urinary discharge, and not unfrequently diarrhoea. Anasarca has been observed when sweating is deficient.

During a fit of ague the spleen can be made out to be enlarged, especially after repeated attacks. Herpes about the lips or nose is of common occurrence; and bronchitis is said to be frequent in some parts of the world. Urticaria, purpura, and other eruptions have been described in exceptional cases.

3. *Intermission*.—At first a patient suffering from ague may feel quite convalescent during the periods intervening between the paroxysms, but soon complains of more or less languor and depression, with neuralgic pains, and loss of appetite, at the same time becoming pale and anaemic. After a while the spleen and liver become permanently enlarged.

Temperature.—The course of temperature in ague is quite characteristic, the paroxysms being marked by a rapid ascent; short and intense stationary period; and critical defervescence; the temperature in the intervals being perfectly normal. A rise takes place as soon as, or even before, the cold stage begins; at first it is only slight and gradual, but soon becomes rapid, continuing during the hot stage, and sometimes into the commencement of the sweating stage. The temperature generally runs up to 105° , but may reach 107° , 108° , 110° , or even 112° in hot climates. When sweating begins, there is usually a slight alternate rise and fall at first, but soon a steady fall sets in, of 2° or more every five to fifteen minutes, until the temperature becomes normal. It is important to notice that even before definite fits of ague occur, and after they have

apparently ceased, the temperature has been observed to rise at the usual periods.

Urine.—During the cold and hot stages the excretion of water is increased, but it diminishes at the close of the latter stage, and is very deficient while sweating is going on, the urine becoming concentrated, and of high specific gravity. Urea suddenly increases in amount as soon as the rise of temperature begins, and this continues until the sweating stage sets in, when it rapidly or gradually diminishes, often falling below the normal. Uric acid is also considerably in excess, and urates are generally deposited abundantly at the close of a fit of ague. Chloride of sodium is greatly increased; while phosphates are much diminished, or even disappear after the height of the paroxysm. Albuminuria is not infrequent during a fit of ague, and blood may be present. In the intervals the state of the urine varies much. It is not uncommonly alkaline in reaction. Urea is deficient as a rule during the intermissions.

Varieties.—These are founded upon the length of the interval between the fits of ague. The important types are:—1. *Quotidian*, in which there is a daily paroxysm, with an interval of twenty-four hours. 2. *Tertian*, where a fit occurs every other day, the interval being forty-eight hours. 3. *Quartan*, a paroxysm taking place every third day, the interval being seventy-two hours. Other varieties are described, but they are of no practical significance.

The *quotidian*, which is the most common type, has the longest paroxysm, while it is said to occur earlier in the day, and to have the shortest cold stage, but the longest hot stage. In the *quartan* variety, which is the least common, the conditions are just the opposite; the *tertian* being intermediate. Sometimes the fits tend to begin earlier or later each time, and thus ultimately one type may be converted into another; or the change may take place suddenly.

A paroxysm may present certain peculiarities. Occasionally one or more of the stages may be ill-defined or wanting. The phenomena are in rare instances limited to certain parts of the body; thus in paralyzed patients they may be confined to the non-paralyzed parts.

The entire duration of cases of intermittent fever varies greatly according to circumstances. The complaint may subside spontaneously within a short period, especially if the patient removes from a malarial district; it is then, however, very liable to recur. Treatment materially modifies its course. If neglected a permanent disposition to fits of ague is established, which it may be very difficult or impossible to get rid of, and ultimately a chronic condition of malarial cachexia is set up.

2. REMITTENT AND CONTINUOUS MALARIAL FEVER.—The malarial fevers of hot climates often assume a *remittent* type, presenting irregular exacerbations and remissions, the latter being less distinct if the fever is very intense. They vary much in their severity; and in some cases the pyrexia is practically of the *continued* type.

There are generally *premonitory* signs, but the attack may be rapidly or suddenly developed. Gastric irritation is usually first noticed, there being a sense of uneasiness or oppression at the epigastrium, nausea, and anorexia; with headache, general pains, and a feeling of languor and malaise; or an initial bronchitis may occur. Chilliness or distinct rigors may be experienced, but there is no *cold stage* of any duration, and the temperature rises immediately and rapidly. The *hot stage* becomes very intense, the skin being burning and dry, the face flushed, the eyes

injected, with extreme headache, giddiness, restlessness, sleeplessness, and often delirium, which is sometimes violent. Vomiting and nausea are commonly present, the vomited matters consisting first of food, then of a watery fluid, and finally of biliary matters; they may become brown or black in bad cases. A sense of oppression and weight is felt in the epigastrium; the tongue is furred and tends to dryness; the lips are parched; and there is intense thirst. The pulse is frequent, and either full, or small and compressible. The temperature may rise to 105° or 106°. The patient looks ill, and the appearance is said to be often very suggestive of typhoid fever.

The symptoms generally abate in from six to twelve hours, but may continue unchanged for twenty-four, thirty-six, or forty-eight hours, or even longer. Some degree of perspiration usually breaks out as improvement takes place.

The *remission* is of variable duration, and this is followed by an exacerbation, the symptoms being of greater intensity than during the first paroxysm. The times at which remissions take place, as well as their number, differ in different cases. When the disease is established, there is almost invariably a morning remission. The exacerbation may begin at noon, declining towards midnight; or it may begin at midnight and last till morning. In severe cases there may be a double exacerbation, namely, at noon and midnight.

As the case progresses, signs of intense adynamia may set in. Yellowness of the skin is common (*haematoxenous jaundice*); and haemorrhages sometimes occur. These symptoms, associated with black vomit, often cause remittent fever to resemble specific yellow fever. Occasionally marked jaundice is observed. The spleen and liver are usually enlarged and tender. The urine is generally stated to be scanty, dark, and of high specific gravity. In India just the opposite characters were noticed by Maclean. It is always acid, and rarely albuminous. Urea is increased, and uric acid diminished, until convalescence is established. Haematuria is a symptom of grave significance in malarial remittent fever.

The entire *duration* of remittent fever ranges from five to fourteen days usually. The *terminations* are in death, from blood-poisoning or exhaustion; in recovery, usually ushered in by free perspiration, but sometimes taking place gradually; or in a transition to the intermittent form of fever.

Cases of malarial remittent fever differ considerably in their severity and exact characters. In certain tropical countries it is known as *bilious remittent fever*, and has received special names, according to the locality in which it prevails. With regard to the so-called *typho-malarial fever*, it is supposed to be either typhoid fever modified by malaria, or the result of combined infection. It occurs chiefly in malarial regions, but occasionally in typhoid patients in non-malarial districts who have been previously affected by the malarial poison. The pyrexia tends to be of the intermittent type, and the characteristic symptoms of the two diseases are associated, those of typhoid usually predominating. Typho-malarial fever appears not to be so severe or so dangerous as simple typhoid.

3. PERNICIOUS OR MALIGNANT FEVER.—This term has been associated with certain cases of malarial disease of a grave character, which are only met with in pronounced malarial districts. The symptoms are often preceded by attacks of intermittent fever of a milder type. They then supervene along with a paroxysm usually, but not always, presenting periodicity,

and more or less marked febrile stages. In other instances they occur from the outset. Different types of pernicious fever are recognized, the chief including :—*a. Nervous*, which is most common, in which there is either acute delirium, or usually rapidly-developing unconsciousness, ending in coma; sometimes accompanied with epileptiform or tetanic convulsions. There is generally high fever, with a dry and burning skin. The coma may continue for twelve to twenty-four hours, and if recovery takes place the symptoms disappear when sweating begins, which is as a rule very profuse. The great danger lies in the recurrence of the attacks. *b. Algid, asthenic, or adynamic*. Here gastro-intestinal symptoms are prominent from the outset, namely, vomiting, gastric pains, diarrhoea, or sometimes dysentery, accompanied with grave prostration and debility, the condition in some cases resembling the collapse-stage of cholera. The patient complains of coldness; and the temperature may be normal or subnormal. The pulse is feeble and small; and respiration is hurried. The urine is often diminished, and may be suppressed. This condition may last for some days, with slight exacerbations of fever, death ultimately occurring from profound asthenia. Sometimes intense jaundice supervenes, along with gastro-intestinal symptoms, and grave nervous phenomena. *c. Haemorrhagic*. As the name suggests, this form is accompanied with serious haemorrhages, especially *haematuria*, which sometimes assumes a very malignant character. The condition appears to be really mainly one of *haemoglobinuria*. In some districts it may assume an epidemic form, and proves very fatal. In many cases there is no distinct febrile paroxysm. To my knowledge this malarial haematuria is regarded with grave misgiving by missionaries on the Congo, and has caused many deaths there. Other special varieties of pernicious malarial fever are described, but it must suffice to note that particular diseases occasionally develop during each febrile attack, such as pneumonia or pleurisy, which completely or partially disappear when the paroxysm is over.

4. MALARIAL CACHEXIA.—This is a chronic condition, usually met with in patients who have had repeated attacks of ague or remittent fever; but in highly malarial districts it may develop in those who have never had any definite acute attacks. It varies much in degree, but the essential phenomena are marked anaemia, and its usual symptoms, which may become extreme, with a dirty yellow or sallow tint of skin; general debility; and enlargement of the spleen, often considerable, with increased firmness. The liver may be also enlarged to some degree. In connection with the anaemic condition there is frequently oedema of the lower extremities; and haemorrhages may occur, particularly into the retina (S. Mackenzie). In the course of chronic malarial cachexia irregular febrile attacks not uncommonly occur. (*See DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.*)

5. MASKED INTERMITTENT.—The cases included under this head are those in which periodic disturbances occur, supposed to be due to malaria, but without fever—*dumb ague*. The most frequent of these disorders is neuralgia, especially of the supra-orbital nerve. Other conditions which have been referred to malaria are anaesthesia, convulsions, or paralysis, especially paraplegia; intermittent haemorrhages; skin-affections; and intestinal disturbances.

Diagnosis.—Malarial fevers are in the large majority of cases easily diagnosed by the circumstances under which they occur, and their peculiar course and symptoms. This applies more particularly to ague,

which is the form met with in this country. Difficulty might be experienced at first in recognizing an attack of ague, if no definite malarial exposure could be traced, or if, as I have known happen, the patient concealed the fact, either intentionally or unintentionally, that he had suffered from the disease previously. Any obscurity should be cleared up by watching the case for a few days, and making due investigation. Certain conditions attended with intermittent pyrexia are liable to be mistaken for malarial fever, especially in a malarial district, such as pyæmia, tuberculosis, purulent phlebitis, ulcerative endocarditis, or syphilis rarely. Those who have had much experience affirm that "irregular intermittent fever" is generally not malarial. In doubtful cases the effect of quinine is highly important in diagnosis; an intermittent fever which is only temporarily or not at all influenced by full doses of this drug, is not malarial.

More difficulty may be experienced in the case of the remittent, continuous, or pernicious types, and grave attacks may simulate cerebral meningitis, pneumonia, cholera, and other affections. Here also the effects of quinine may be of service in diagnosis. The question of typhoid fever has already been alluded to. Malarial remittent fever has to be distinguished from yellow fever. The points of distinction are said to be that yellow fever is infectious, has only one paroxysm, and is not periodic; a second attack is very rare; the disease cannot prevail at a temperature at which malarial fevers are often met with; haemorrhages and albuminuria are very common, the latter being almost invariable; while quinine has not the influence over the disease which it exercises in the case of remittent fever. Any actual difficulty of diagnosis in cases of malarial fever is now said to be readily cleared up by examination of the blood, which reveals the organisms already described.

Malarial cachexia is, as a rule, easily determined by the history of the case, the general appearance and symptoms, and the enlarged spleen. Difficulty may arise in cases where there is no definite history of exposure to malarial influence, in making out the nature of a big spleen. The so-called "masked intermittents" are very ill-defined and uncertain, but here again the use of quinine may settle the diagnosis.

Prognosis.—Intermittent fever is not often directly fatal in this country, and can usually be cured. Other forms are exceedingly grave, and especially those of the *pernicious* type. Particular symptoms or complications may also add greatly to the danger, and haemorrhages must be specially mentioned in this connection. If treatment has been long delayed, so that the malarial cachexia has become firmly established, with a very large spleen, it is difficult, or even impossible, to bring about a complete cure, though much may be done even then by a prolonged course of treatment. The *quartan* type of ague is the most obstinate form to get rid of. It must be remembered that those who have once suffered from this disease are liable to subsequent attacks, apart from any exposure to malarial influence.

Treatment.—The indications to be followed, and the measures to be adopted, in dealing with malarial diseases may be discussed under the following heads:—

1. *General management.*—In cases of ordinary ague nothing very special is required, and patients may be allowed to get up during the interval between the fits, if they feel well enough, but they must exercise due care, as regards diet, clothing, exposure to cold, and other matters. When dealing with remittent and other severe types of fever, the patient must

of course be confined to bed, and particular attention must be paid to all *hygienic conditions*, especially ensuring that there is adequate ventilation. Constant and careful nursing is required, but much judgment is often needed as regards the administration of food, which should be in a liquid form, and nutritious. Alcoholic stimulants are called for in many of these cases in considerable quantities, but they must be used with discretion, and their effects watched. The bowels must be kept well-opened, and for this purpose calomel may be of service. When food and stimulants cannot be retained by the stomach, they must be administered by the rectum.

2. *During the febrile attack.*—In the *cold stage* of an ague-fit the patient should remain in bed, being well-covered with blankets, some form of dry heat being applied externally, and a hot drink administered. In this country nothing further is necessary as a rule. When there is much depression, *diffusible stimulants* are required, and a dose of opium may be given to relieve great restlessness. Persistent vomiting is best checked by giving an emetic of sulphate of zinc, with plenty of warm water. If this stage is greatly prolonged a hot-air bath may be employed. In the *hot stage* the skin should be sponged freely; and cooling *effervescent* or *saline* drinks given. During the *sweating stage* nothing is needed except to keep the patient properly covered, so as to prevent a chill.

Similar principles are to be followed in dealing with the more severe types of malarial fever. The application of cold to the head may be of great service; and also sponging the skin or other methods for reducing temperature, which in grave cases must be carried out efficiently and energetically. Quinine must also be administered in large quantity, but this point will be separately considered.

3. *Specific treatment.*—Malarial fevers are treated by the class of drugs termed *antiperiodics*, of which the typical one is quinine. In ague it is given in the intervals between the attacks, and rarely fails to bring about a speedy cure. There is much difference of opinion as to the mode in which this drug should be administered. By some it is recommended to give one large dose—gr. xx-xxx, either before or at the close of the paroxysm. In a large number of cases which came under my treatment many years ago at the Liverpool Northern Hospital, I obtained most satisfactory results from the administration of gr. iii-iv every four or six hours during the intermission, and therefore am disposed to advise this practice. In some cases the stomach rejects quinine, and then it may be combined with a small dose of opium, or be administered by enema. The subcutaneous injection of the neutral sulphate or hydrobromate of quinine has also been advocated. It is important to notice that the remedy must be continued for some time after the paroxysms have apparently ceased, that is, until the temperature has become quite normal. Various substances have been employed as substitutes for quinine. It will suffice to mention cinchona bark, cinchonine, quinidine, cinchonidine, salicine or salicylic acid, and arsenic. The last is decidedly beneficial, and has the advantage of being cheap. It is best given in the form of Fowler's solution, beginning with four or five minims three times a day, after meals. A full dose of tincture of opium or chloral has been said to stop an expected paroxysm of ague, if given just before. Hypodermic injection of nitrate of pilocarpine is also said to cut short the chill, and to prevent the hot stage, producing free sweating very speedily.

In localities and during seasons in which serious cases of malarial fever are likely to occur, it is of great importance to treat even mild attacks promptly and actively by quinine, in order to prevent its more grave developments. When these have actually occurred, boldness in the administration of this remedy is imperatively demanded under all circumstances. It should be given in from 10 to 20 grain doses or more every two hours, until the system has become fully saturated, and cinchonism has been produced, which may then be kept up by smaller doses. If quinine cannot be taken by the stomach, it must be introduced by enema, suppository, or subcutaneous injection; and in pernicious fever even its direct injection into a vein may be the means of saving life. Warburg's tincture has been found of service in serious malarial conditions which have not yielded to quinine.

4. *Symptoms and Complications.*—These often require special attention, but must on no account be permitted to interfere with the use of quinine. Vomiting, diarrhoea, nervous symptoms, haemorrhage, collapse, and other symptoms must be treated on ordinary principles. Adynamic symptoms or signs of cardiac failure call for external and internal stimulation, with the administration of ammonia, ether, strychnine, and similar remedies.

5. *Malarial cachexia.*—For this condition, and the neuralgic or other affections which may be associated with it, quinine, iron, and arsenic constitute the most reliable remedies, and they may be advantageously combined. Phosphorus or hypophosphites, and strychnine may also be found serviceable. The tincture of eucalyptus globulus has been highly extolled. Patients should immediately be sent from a malarial region to some suitable climate, care being taken to attend to hygienic conditions; to give good food; and to see that the clothing is warm, especially if they have to undergo a change from a hot to a cold climate, when there is a special danger of pneumonia. Various mineral waters and baths may be useful, such as Carlsbad and Friedrichschall waters, and warm baths or Turkish baths.

6. *Prophylaxis.*—If possible, residence in a malarial district should be immediately discontinued in the case of anyone who has become attacked by fever. After a time individuals may become acclimatized, so as to be able to return to such a locality, and remain there without injury. The precautions to be taken by those who are obliged to reside in malarial districts may be gathered from the account already given of its causes and predisposing conditions. Everything must be avoided which increases the individual tendency to malarial diseases; and every means of protection adopted, so far as this is possible, in arranging a place of residence and other matters. The advice of a local medical man, if it can be procured, is here of the greatest value. It is a useful practice to give cinchona bark or quinine daily to those who are unavoidably exposed to malaria. Arsenic, decoction of lemons, garlic, and eucalyptus globulus have also been used as preventives. Eucalyptus trees have been extensively planted in some malarial regions, as a preventive measure, but they probably act merely by drying the soil in their rapid growth, and have no specific effect.

CHAPTER XXVII.

DENGUE—BERIBERI—MALTA FEVER—
ACTINOMYCOSIS—TRICHINOSIS.

It will be convenient to discuss briefly in the same chapter a few miscellaneous diseases, which are either of a febrile nature, or due to definite organisms, although they have no actual relation to each other.

I. DENGUE—DANDY FEVER—BREAKBONE FEVER.

Aetiology.—Dengue is a peculiar epidemic fever, which attacks a great number of people in rapid succession. It is generally believed that this complaint is not met with in this country, but some who are familiar with it maintain that the epidemics of supposed influenza which have occurred of late years were really dengue. Usually it prevails in or near the tropics, and has been met with in India, Burmah, Persia, Egypt and other parts of Africa, North and South America, and the West Indian Islands. The actual cause of dengue is not known. Some authorities, amongst them Sir Joseph Fayer, believe it to be contagious, but the evidence on this point is insufficient and unsatisfactory.

Symptoms.—After an *incubation-period* of from twenty-four hours to ten days, the invasion is usually somewhat sudden, the symptoms being chilliness, a sense of debility and general uneasiness, with violent pains in the muscles of the limbs and back, as well as in a variable number of joints, which are somewhat swollen. There is also headache; and the alimentary canal is often disturbed, but the tongue remains clean. At first the symptoms very much resemble those of acute rheumatism. In a short time fever sets in, and sometimes a rash or papular eruption appears. The lymphatic glands and testicles may be painful and enlarged. In from twelve hours to three or four days the symptoms subside, but debility remains, with some painful sensations. After an interval of two, three, or four days the fever and pains return, or severe headache sets in. The tongue becomes much furred, and there is considerable epigastric uneasiness, accompanied with nausea. An eruption appears on the fifth, sixth, or seventh day, especially on the upper part of the body, which presents very variable characters, either resembling that of scarlatina or measles, or being papular, urticarial, vesicular, pustular, furunculous, erysipelatous, or petechial. As it disappears, scaly desquamation sometimes takes place. The eruption is attended with itching and tingling.

The symptoms of dengue present very different degrees of intensity, and they may assume an asthenic character; in grave cases hyperpyrexia, cardiac failure, pulmonary congestion and oedema, cyanosis, or coma may supervene. Almost all cases recover, the average duration being about eight days, but stiffness and soreness of various parts, with debility, may remain for some time, and occasionally several *relapses* occur. A few joints may also continue swollen and painful for a long time, or may even become deformed and partially ankylosed.

Treatment.—*Emetics* are recommended at the outset of an attack of dengue, with free purgation. The patient must remain in bed. A *saline diaphoretic* mixture may be given; and opium is to be freely administered for the relief of pain. The surface of the skin may be sponged in order to subdue pyrexia; and cold applied to the head for the relief of headache. The *diet* must be regulated, and if there are any signs of depression, stimulants and nourishing food should be given. Quinine and mineral acids are recommended during the remission, as well as during the period of convalescence.

II. BERIBERI—BARBIERS.

Etiology and Pathology.—Beriberi is a peculiar disease which is met with in various hot climates, being endemic in Ceylon, certain districts in India, Japan, and other parts of the world. It has been generally attributed to the prolonged action of causes of debility, such as certain conditions of the soil, air, or water; great changes in temperature, especially if associated with much wet; physical exhaustion or fatigue; mental depression; deficient or improper quality of food, especially a fish diet; exhausting diseases; and exposure to malaria. The complaint has been also regarded as of scorbutic origin, and has been noticed amongst sailors and fishermen in certain parts. It does not appear to depend upon organic changes in any of the viscera, although such changes in the kidneys, liver, or spleen may exist in some cases. Beriberi occurring in Ceylon has been attributed to the effects of the entozoon named *anchylostomum duodenale*. Another view is that the complaint is due to a specific micro-organism. As it occurs in Japan and the East Indies, Scheube affirms that it is, in its clinical and anatomical relations, a well-characterized multiple peripheral neuritis.

Anatomical Characters.—Beriberi is characterized by serous effusions into the cellular tissue, serous cavities, and the substance of organs; accompanied by a marked anaemic state of the blood. The tissues generally are soft and degenerate. The muscular tissue becomes fatty, especially that of the heart, which is often dilated. The kidneys are large, pale, and soft, but do not present any characteristic lesions. Changes indicative of multiple neuritis have been described.

Symptoms.—Beriberi is described as occurring in an *acute* and *chronic* form, but the symptoms are more or less similar, and the acute form often supervenes on the chronic state. The disease is chiefly characterized by marked anaemia, with the usual accompanying symptoms and physical signs of this condition; rapid general dropsy, the limbs being much swollen, and the serous cavities presenting signs of effusion; great weakness, with feelings of numbness, heaviness, or pain in the limbs, an unsteady or tottering gait, or sometimes actual paralysis; praecordial oppression or pain, with palpitation or irregularity of the heart, and a rapid pulse, which may at first be rather hard and full, but soon tends to become weak and irregular; dyspnœa, the breathing being hurried, and in some cases irregular and painful; a dry and hot skin at first; scanty, concentrated urine, non-albuminous as a rule, or it may become almost suppressed; and in some cases superficial petechiæ, or haemorrhage from the alimentary canal. The face is sometimes livid, as well as puffy, and the expression anxious. Among the symptoms which have been noticed in individual cases are drowsiness or stupor; vomiting; and

burning of the feet. Appetite soon becomes lost, and the bowels are constipated. In cases tending towards a fatal issue the surface becomes cold, the pulse shows signs of failure, and death occurs from exhaustion, syncope, embolism, or thrombosis. Recovery often takes place in the milder and more chronic forms of beriberi. The exact symptoms differ considerably in individual cases.

Treatment.—Beriberi is both prevented, and treated when it occurs, by due attention to diet, clothing, hygienic surroundings, habits of life, and other conditions which have an influence in originating the disease. *Tonics* and *stimulants* are often of service; while the dropsical accumulations may be combated by *diaphoretics* and *diuretics*. Among the special remedies recommended in the treatment of beriberi may be mentioned preparations of iron, turpentine, ergotin, belladonna, and *nux vomica*. Opium or allied agents may be required to allay pain or irritability; while other symptoms or complications often demand attention.

III. MALTA FEVER.

Aetiology and Pathology.—A febrile disease is endemic in the island of Malta, and sometimes breaks out in epidemics, which of late years has attracted much attention, and therefore demands brief notice. It also occurs in Naples and other parts of the Mediterranean—hence named Neapolitan and Mediterranean fever. Whether it is identical with the so-called “rock fever” of Gibraltar is undecided. Malta fever affects, as a rule, young persons from 10 to 30, and is very rare over 50. Station in life has no influence. The complaint prevails chiefly in summer, and especially in July. There is no evidence that it is at all infectious. One attack seems to confer immunity against a second.

What the real nature of Malta fever is cannot be definitely stated. By different authorities it has been regarded as an anomalous form of malarial fever; a typho-malarial fever; an adeno-typoid, with enlargement of the mesenteric glands; or an independent disease, due to a specific micro-organism. Dr. David Bruce affirms that a definite minute, round or oval micrococcus is found in the organs in every fatal case, which can be readily cultivated, and has been successfully inoculated into a monkey. The spleen is enlarged and soft; but there are none of the characteristic lesions of typhoid fever.

Symptoms and Course.—The incubation-period in Malta fever is said to be about ten days. The disease develops gradually, the early symptoms being headache, either mild or severe, sleeplessness, loss of appetite, thirst, nausea and sometimes vomiting, a feeling of weight and tenderness in the epigastrium, and constipation usually, diarrhoea being the exception. The spleen and liver become somewhat enlarged and tender. Occasionally tympanites and gurgling in the right iliac fossa are noticed. There is almost always slight cough and expectoration. Profuse sweating occurs, often with sudamina, but no cutaneous eruption. There may be slight delirium at night. After a week or two most of these symptoms subside, and a prolonged period of irregular fever sets in, interrupted by indications of apparent but deceptive convalescence, followed by relapses. Different observers give different descriptions of the phenomena which occur in the course of the disease. They appear to be chiefly progressive weakness and wasting; abundant

sweats, especially at night, which give no relief; rheumatic affections of the joints, attacking different articulations successively, or sometimes involving a large number simultaneously, both large and small; pains associated with nerves, or with tendons and aponeuroses, indicated by intercostal neuralgia, lumbar or sacral pains, sciatica, or pain about the tendo Achillis and ankle; and orchitis, which may affect one or both testicles.

Dr. Veale has described cases in which the intervertebral joints, especially those of the lumbar region, and the sacro-iliac synchondroses were so severely affected that the patients dreaded every movement, and would lie for days in one position. There seems to be usually an inclination for food, and patients take fluid nourishment and stimulants freely without any ill-effects. The bowels are generally constipated, but in some descriptions diarrhoea is said to be frequent. The tongue may be clean or thickly-coated. Rigors and severe headache may occur at the commencement of the relapses.

The temperature in Malta fever is chiefly characterized by its irregularity. It may be of the continued or intermittent type, or one may change into the other. Some cases present a prolonged irregular elevation of temperature. As a rule it ranges high, from 104° to 106°. It may reach 105° in the evening, and be nearly normal in the morning.

Diagnosis.—Assuming Malta fever to be an independent disease, it has to be specially distinguished from typhoid fever. In rapidly fatal cases this seems impossible. Ordinary cases are said, however, to be readily differentiated by the symptoms, course, and small mortality. The detection of their several organisms is regarded by Dr. Bruce as an important element in the diagnosis between typhoid and Malta fever.

Prognosis.—The large majority of cases of Malta fever recover, the mortality being given as only 2 per cent. Convalescence, however, is very slow.

Treatment.—This consists chiefly in attending to hygienic conditions and good nursing; keeping up the patient's strength by suitable diet and stimulants, when required; and relieving symptoms. At the outset antipyrine is often of use for headache and sleeplessness. The various pains may be alleviated by anodyne liniments, or in severe cases subcutaneous injection of morphine may be required. The bowels must be kept open by simple aperients or enemata. Various medicines have been tried to affect the course of the disease, but without success. Change of climate is helpful during convalescence.

IV. ACTINOMYCOSIS.

Etiology and Pathology.—The disease thus named is one which particularly affects horned cattle and swine, but of late years several cases have been met with in the human subject, the first having been described by James Israel. It is a specific disease, caused by a definite micro-organism, the *actinomyces bovis* or *ray-fungus*, originally discovered by Bollinger, which is believed to belong, or to be closely allied, to the *cladothrixæ*. This organism presents different forms under the microscope, but these are probably merely different stages of its growth. It is introduced into the system generally through the mouth and pharynx, or the air-passages; but occasionally it is directly aspirated into the lungs; or the mucous membrane of the intestines, especially the large intestine, may be the primary seat of infection. In the mouth and its

vicinity the fungus enters through carious teeth, and by the crypts of the tonsils and pharynx. It is supposed to be taken with food, especially certain varieties of grain. There is no evidence of direct infection or contagion in man, but it is said that the disease has been conveyed to calves by inoculation. When once the fungus has gained access into the body, it exhibits a great tendency to spread from one structure to another, either by continuity or dissemination, in the latter case being probably transmitted through the blood or the lymphatics, and it has been suggested that it may be conveyed by wandering cells and leucocytes. The parasite has been successfully cultivated; and the disease has been produced by inoculation, both with the natural fungus and that artificially grown.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid changes which occur in actinomycosis may be stated generally to consist in a chronic and progressive inflammatory and destructive process, but they vary in their precise characters. Thus on mucous surfaces there have been observed masses of epithelium enclosing the fungus, with underlying ulceration; on serous membranes and the periosteum, tumour-growths; and in various parts dense, indurated masses or infiltrations, composed of granulation tissue, which may become fibroid or calcified. In man the process usually leads to chronic abscesses and necrosis, tracts of suppuration being formed, with communicating sinuses or fistulæ, burrowing and branching widely into the tissues. Different parts of the body are affected in different cases, and Israel divides them into three groups, according as the organism gains entrance into the system by the mouth and pharynx, the air-passages, or the alimentary canal; the head and neck, the thoracic structures, or the abdominal organs being then respectively liable to suffer. In some instances the jaws, vertebrae, and other bones are chiefly affected, leading to periosteal abscesses, caries, or necrosis. The organs principally involved are the liver, lungs, and intestines, especially the large intestine, and actinomycotic ulcers may be formed, or pericæcal abscess may develop. Rarely the brain is affected, tumours or abscesses being produced. Occasionally a retro-pharyngeal abscess is formed. The diseased tracts vary in extent, but the sectional area may involve several square inches; they are generally well-defined, and in solid organs more or less rounded in shape. They consist mainly of a somewhat dense fibroid tissue or induration, honeycombed with cavities containing pus or other inflammatory products. The cavities are mostly small and close set, but may become of considerable size by coalescence. The pus is usually thick, yellow, and somewhat lumpy, and in it are seen the peculiar elements of the disease, in the form of minute granules, the largest not bigger than a small pin's head, round, and of a sulphur-yellow colour, surrounded by inflammatory corpuscles and epithelial cells. Their surface is roughish and granular, under the microscope presenting a somewhat tessellated appearance. Each consists of a mulberry-like group of rosettes of delicate club-shaped, transparent fibres, radiating from the centre, and occasionally dividing dichotomously in their course to the surface, where they terminate in characteristic little clubs. In some cases examined at St. Thomas's Hospital there were no club-shaped rods, but the yellow masses were observed to be made up of extremely delicate threads, some single, some branched, springing from groups of necrosed cells in the centre, and at the periphery often prolonged into the inflammatory matter in which the masses were imbedded (Bristowe).

As already stated, actinomycosis is liable to spread from one structure to another. In the case of the abdominal or thoracic viscera the disease may extend from organ to organ, and inflammation of the serous membranes is likely to be set up, especially empyema. Further, the disease may cause peri-pleuritis, or even advance to the subcutaneous cellular tissue, ultimately reaching the surface, leading to ulceration and the formation of sinuses, from which puriform fluid and fragments of the fungus escape.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—The exact symptoms of actinomycosis are obviously very indefinite and variable, depending upon the structures affected. They may be primarily associated with the alimentary canal; the pulmonary system; the cutaneous structures; or rarely the brain. In man the disease seems to begin generally in the mouth and its vicinity, the jaw, tongue, or other structures being involved. The side of the face is then swollen, and the jaw may be chronically enlarged. The swelling is in some instances much more extensive. Symptoms may be associated with the disease in the intestines. In some cases the vertebræ are the primary seat of the disease, and the symptoms resemble those of ordinary caries. When the lungs are affected the phenomena are like those of phthisis, but the lower parts of these organs are mainly affected; the pleura and superficial structures may become subsequently involved. In the case of the liver hepatic abscess is simulated. The effects of actinomycosis are very liable to be mistaken for simple or tuberculous abscesses. A positive diagnosis can only be founded upon the detection of the characteristic fungus in the diseased tissues or in the discharges, and in any suspicious case this must be carefully looked for by a competent microscopist. It has been found in the sputum, when there were no very definite physical signs in the lungs. When actinomycosis involves the brain, the symptoms are like those of tumour or abscess, and epileptic attacks may occur. The complaint is attended during its progress with more or less general wasting and weakness; while febrile symptoms of a remittent or hectic type, with rigors, may occur, resembling pyæmia, but pyrexia may be entirely absent. Actinomycosis is extremely chronic in its course, but almost always ends fatally.

Treatment.—The fungous growth should be removed, if possible, by surgical methods; or if this is impracticable, its effects must be treated on ordinary principles applied to similar conditions. Antiseptics would probably be of service in the treatment of abscesses. The general health must be promoted by good food, tonics, and other suitable measures.

V. TRICHINOSIS—TRICHINATOUS DISEASE.

Etiology and Pathology.—This is a disease due to the entrance into the human body of a parasite named *trichina spiralis*. It is very rarely met with in this country, but is not uncommon in some parts of the continent, where it occurs sometimes as an epidemic.

Trichinæ are introduced into the human body solely by eating pig's flesh in which they exist, either in a raw or imperfectly cooked condition, or in the form of pickled and smoked meats, sausages, and similar articles. When such flesh reaches the stomach and bowels, the parasites are liberated and develop with great rapidity, the females being by far the more numerous and the larger, and originating an immense number of young trichinæ, which perforate the intestinal wall, migrate along

the mesentery to the spine, and pass thence to all parts of the body, entering into the substance of the muscles, penetrating even the sarcolemma. These structures constitute their *habitat*, and here they set up inflammatory action, becoming surrounded by a capsule or shell. It is supposed that there are several productions of young trichinæ in the alimentary canal, with subsequent migrations.

Anatomical Characters.—In man trichinæ at first excite gastro-enteric catarrh, often attended with enlargement of the mesenteric glands. After about the fifth or sixth week the muscles, when examined with a lens, are seen to present fine striae or minute dots, of a greyish-white and opaque aspect, which are collections of the parasite, contained in capsules or cysts produced by their irritation. These become more abundant as the case advances, and they are chiefly observed in the muscles of the loins, the diaphragm, intercostals, muscles of the neck, eye, larynx, and tongue. In the limbs they are mainly found in those nearest the trunk, being most numerous near their tendinous attachments. The affected parts feel unusually firm and resistant. On microscopic examination the muscular fibres are found to be more or less destroyed, and the interstitial connective tissue increased. Each little cyst (Fig. 13) is somewhat ovoid in shape, being at first transparent, but soon becoming thicker and more opaque, and ultimately calcifying. The *trichina* (Fig. 14) is coiled up in its interior, and is very minute, the female being larger than the male. The head is finely pointed, unarmed, with a minute mouth in the centre. In fatal cases of trichinosis extensive bronchitis, pulmonary congestion or inflammation, venous thrombosis, and parenchymatous degeneration of various organs are frequently observed.

Symptoms.—Trichinosis generally begins with symptoms of more or less gastro-enteric disorder, such as a sense of pressure and fulness in the epigastrium, impaired appetite, discomfort after eating, nausea or vomiting, eructations, colicky pains, and diarrhoea, with a feeling of



FIG. 13.
Slightly magnified cyst of *Trichina Spiralis*.—(Virchow.)

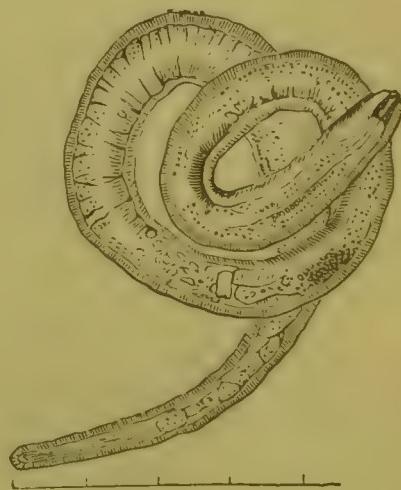


FIG. 14.
100th of an inch × 300.
The *Trichina Spiralis* removed from its cyst.—(Virchow.)

much languor and depression; in some cases the onset is characterized by violent sickness and purging, simulating cholera or irritant poisoning. Occasionally the disease sets in quite insidiously, with merely a

feeling of lassitude and depression, wandering pains, and stiffness in the limbs. The subsequent characteristic symptoms are those dependent upon the condition of the muscles. Those of the limbs which are affected become painful, tender, swollen, hard, and rigid; there is much stiffness, movement being greatly impaired, and the joints are fixed in a state of more or less flexion, any attempt to extend them causing severe pain. From implication of various muscles there may result attacks of severe dyspnoea, aphonia, trismus, dysphagia, impaired movement of the tongue, and other symptoms. A peculiar oedema is also observed, affecting the face and eyelids, and extending in the limbs from the upper part towards the hands and feet.

Symptomatic pyrexia accompanies this condition, often severe, the temperature sometimes rising to 106° , and the pulse to 120 or 140; abundant clammy perspirations may be observed, and occasionally sudamina appear. In cases tending towards a fatal issue low typhoid symptoms set in, frequently accompanied with signs of bronchitis, pneumonia, and other inflammatory affections. Should recovery ensue, the muscular symptoms subside, as well as the pyrexia, but convalescence is usually protracted, marked debility, anaemia, and oedema remaining for a considerable time.

Diagnosis.—Trichinosis may in severe cases be mistaken at first for cholera or irritant poisoning. It may also simulate typhoid fever in the early stage. After a time the symptoms associated with the muscles are quite characteristic.

Treatment.—To prevent trichinosis, meat containing the parasites must be avoided, and microscopic examination of pig's flesh is practised in some parts of the continent, before it is allowed to be sold. In order to be quite safe, the best plan is never to eat any pig's flesh which has not been thoroughly cooked. In the treatment of the actual disease, a matter of the first importance is at once to get rid of the trichinæ from the alimentary canal, by means of castor oil or some other aperient, which may be given even though diarrhoea be present. Benzine, carbolic acid, and other drugs of this class have been administered with the view of destroying the parasites, but it is doubtful whether they succeed in this object. The general treatment must be of a supporting character, quinine and stimulants being also administered. Hot and anodyne fomentations, or warm baths, most effectually relieve the symptoms connected with the muscles. Other symptoms and complications must be treated as they arise.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

CONSTITUTIONAL SYPHILIS.

A full description of syphilis does not come within the scope of this work, and it is only intended to give an outline of the course of the acquired disease, as it results from *direct contagion*, with the constitutional effects thus induced; and to indicate the chief phenomena presented by *hereditary or congenital syphilis*. The lesions produced by this complaint in connection with the more important organs will be discussed in fuller detail in the chapters severally devoted to the diseases of these organs.

1. ACQUIRED SYPHILIS.—Syphilis is now generally classed along with the *specific diseases*, but it is also a typical example of what may be regarded as a *constitutional* affection. As a *primary* disease it can only be transmitted from one individual to another by *direct inoculation*; or by *contact* of the specific virus, either with certain mucous surfaces, or with a wound or abrasion. In the great majority of cases of course infection results from sexual intercourse, but it is very important to bear in mind that it may be conveyed in other ways, and especially by the inoculation of the fingers of medical men, in the course of obstetric or surgical practice. The infective agent is believed by many to consist in a *specific bacillus*, discovered by Lustgarten in 1884. The bacilli of syphilis are described as thin, varying from 3·5 to 4·5 μ in length, often bent or irregular, with small swellings at the ends, and sometimes containing two or four spores. They are said to present peculiar reactions. Other organisms have been at different times brought forward as characteristic of syphilis; while many have failed to find the bacillus; and others affirm that it is identical with the *smegma bacillus*, which may be normally present on the genital organs. At present the whole subject is in an unsettled state.

General Description.—When the syphilitic poison is introduced into the system, it first produces a local *sore* or *specific ulcer*, which is generally of the nature of a *hard chancre*, though some authorities think a *soft chancre* may also be syphilitic. The hard chancre presents an indurated base, with but little tendency to suppuration, and the neighbouring lymphatic glands also soon become hard and somewhat enlarged. After a period of from one to three months *secondary symptoms* arise. These are preceded and accompanied by some general disturbance, indicated by languor; pains in the bones and joints, especially at night; debility and loss of flesh; slight pyrexia; impaired digestion; and a tendency to anaemia. Occasionally the pyrexia is high, the temperature rising to 104° or 105°, and it may present a remittent or distinctly intermittent course, in the latter case simulating ague, and it may continue thus for months. The objective *secondary* phenomena of syphilis may consist of :—1. A cutaneous eruption, of very variable character, being either a mere rash, papular, scaly, vesicular, pustular, bullous, or tubercular. It usually presents a coppery tint, and is most marked in the flexures of the limbs. 2. Ulceration of both tonsils, the ulcers being grey, abruptly cut, scarcely at all painful, and without any tendency to spread. 3. Enlargement of the glands of the neck, especially those situated behind. 4. Superficial inflammation of the mucous lining of the mouth, tongue, palate, pharynx, or larynx, sometimes with slight ulceration. 5. Mucous tubercles or condylomata, in connection with the tongue, angles of the mouth, pharynx, larynx, anus, penis, labia, and other parts. 6. Loss of the hair, which also becomes dry and thin. 7. Onychia. 8. Iritis or retinitis, these being rather late phenomena. 9. Slight and transient periostitis, especially on the cranium. 10. Epididymitis occasionally. More or less of these morbid conditions may be present, and this stage lasts from six to twelve months usually, but in rare instances extends to eighteen months or even longer. Secondary lesions exhibit a remarkable tendency to symmetry.

After this succeeds a period, differing greatly in duration in different cases, during which there are either no symptoms at all, or only occasional slight cutaneous eruptions are observed, or little ulcers on the tongue or lip. This interval is in many cases followed by *tertiary* symp-

toms or sequelæ. The chief pathological tendencies of tertiary syphilis are to produce certain lowly-organized growths, of the nature of fibro-plastic, fibro-nuclear, or fibroid tissue, which are very prone to suppurate or ulcerate.

Many growths are met with in tertiary syphilis which merely present the characters of ordinary fibrous or fibroid tissue, but those which are peculiar to this condition constitute what are termed *gummy tumours* or *gummata*; there is, however, no marked line of demarcation between these two kinds of growths, both often existing together. Gummata result from hyperplasia of the connective-tissue elements, this process beginning in the walls of the vessels, the new elements invading the normal tissues, and being mixed up with or displacing them. At first the growths are soft, translucent, greyish white, and almost homogeneous; but afterwards they become firmer, tough, yellowish, opaque, non-vascular, and caseous-looking, owing to degeneration and gradual drying-up of their structural elements. On section they often present a central yellowish mass, or several distinct yellowish spots, surrounded by a translucent fibrous layer, which sometimes looks like a capsule, but this cannot be separated from the surrounding tissues, into which it gradually passes. Gummata vary much in size, and some of the larger masses seem to be formed by the union of smaller nodules. In structure they resemble at first granulation-tissue or embryonic connective-tissue, consisting of an amorphous matrix, with minute spherical or ovoid finely-granular cells, enclosing obscure nuclei. The matrix becomes fibrillated more or less; while many of the young elements degenerate, and ultimately break down into mere granules of fat and cholesterol, which are imbedded in a small amount of fibrillated stroma. These several stages may be seen in the same growth, the central yellowish portion of the nodule being that which is most advanced in the process of degeneration. A few vessels are present in the recently-formed tissues, but these subsequently disappear. Syphilitic gummata may be absorbed more or less completely; or their fibrous stroma may be left, which tends to shrink, giving rise to deep cicatrices or seams; or in certain structures they are liable to suppurate or to ulcerate. Several tissues and organs are often implicated at the same time, this being one of the prominent characteristics of syphilitic deposits.

The chief morbid conditions which are liable to be met with in *tertiary syphilis* may be enumerated as follows:—1. Skin-eruptions and ulcerations, namely, erythema and psoriasis of the hands and feet; or ulcerations originating in tubercles, subcutaneous gummata, or syphilitic lupus. These ulcers are of a horse-shoe or kidney-shape, and spread in a serpiginous manner. 2. Ulceration of the pharynx and palate. The ulcer may commence at any point, often starting simultaneously in two or more places. It is unsymmetrical, and spreads very irregularly and deeply, causing much destruction of tissues, and forming an excavation with hard borders. It is liable to extend to the larynx, thus inducing very dangerous symptoms; or may even reach the œsophagus. When

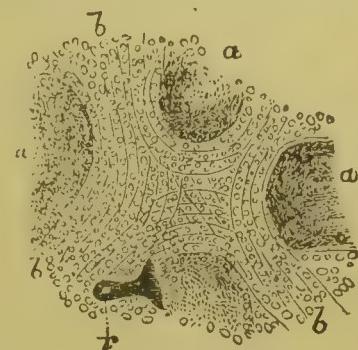


FIG. 15.
Gummy growth of liver. a. Central portions of growth, consisting of granular débris. b. Peripheral granulation tissue. r. A blood-vessel $\times 100$. (After Cornil and Ranvier.)

cicatrization takes place, much induration and contraction often result, which may lead to serious obstruction. 3. Gummata, ulceration, fibrotic changes, and other conditions affecting the tongue. 4. Ulceration of the rectum occasionally, accompanied with dysenteric symptoms, and very apt to be followed by stricture. 5. Growths in, or ulceration of the larynx, the latter generally beginning on the epiglottis, and presenting the usual syphilitic characters. The cicatrix following a syphilitic ulcer in this part is firm, pink, shining, retracted, and surrounded with growths, hence causing serious interference with breathing; or it may lead to more or less stenosis. The laryngeal cartilages often necrose. 6. Fibroid thickening of the trachea and larger bronchi, leading to diminution of their calibre. 7. Gummata in the subcutaneous tissue, or "cellular nodes," most frequent among females, and generally observed on the legs, being either single or multiple. These finally form ulcers. 8. Inflammation of a bursa, especially that over the patella, followed by ulceration. 9. Gummata in the voluntary muscles, often forming indurated tumours. 10. Perostitis and disease of the bones. Periosteal nodes form chiefly over the tibia and skull, sometimes in large numbers, but they may be observed over almost any bone. They are usually accompanied with severe pain, especially at night, and feel very sore and tender. They may undergo absorption, ossification, fibrous development, or suppuration; or they may become truly gummatous. Syphilis often originates caries or necrosis of bones, portions being exfoliated, and much destruction of tissues being thus caused. This is not uncommonly seen about the nose, palate, and skull, and the bone-disease may set up intracranial inflammation and its consequences. I have met with several instances of syphilitic caries of the ribs leading to pleurisy. Syphilitic caries presents a peculiar worm-eaten appearance. 11. Enlargement of the testicle, due to gummata. 12. Chronic enlargement of the lymphatic glands, with but very slight tendency to suppuration. 13. Gummata or fibrous changes in connection with internal organs, especially the liver and nerve-centres, but also the lungs, kidneys, spleen, etc.; or, not unfrequently, albuminoid disease or fatty degeneration. The sclerotic diseases of the spinal cord are often attributed to syphilis; and it may cause neuritis. 14. Morbid changes in the walls of the arteries, giving rise to more or less serious consequences, and liable to lead to the formation of aneurisms. 15. Growths in the placenta, causing abortion or miscarriage, which events may also happen from the direct effects of the syphilitic poison upon the ovum.

The different morbid changes just enumerated are accompanied with more or less *constitutional cachexia*; and they necessarily give rise to *local symptoms* corresponding to the part affected. In tertiary syphilis the lesions present no tendency to symmetry.

2. CONGENITAL OR HEREDITARY SYPHILIS.—Syphilis affecting the infant is occasionally evident at birth, and various internal lesions may be developed in the foetus *in utero*; more commonly, however, the disease is not manifested earlier than from three weeks to a month or two after birth, and very rarely it is revealed as late as six months. In a well-marked case the appearance of the child is highly characteristic. There is great emaciation, with anaemia, all fat having disappeared, while the muscles feel flabby, the skin hangs in loose folds, and growth is retarded. The face has a peculiar shrivelled, aged, decrepit look, which is particularly seen when the child cries; the skin covering it being also dark,

opaque, and earthy or muddy-looking. The nose is often broad or depressed. The entire skin feels dry, harsh, rough, and inelastic; and the cuticle desquamates. Various cutaneous eruptions are liable to break out, which tend to be of a moist character; among the most frequent of these is a dull-red or coppery, shining, erythematous condition of the palms and soles, of the surface around the anus, and of the thighs and genitals. Roseola, lichen, psoriasis, eczema, impetigo, ecthyma, or pemphigus may be observed. Small yellowish patches sometimes form on the skin, like hard scales, which on separating leave superficial ulcers. The hair is often very deficient; and the nails grow slowly, being also prone to ulceration. The mucous membranes may be either inflamed; or the seat of tubercles or condylomata; or ulcerated. The mouth is often hot and swollen; and the lips are fissured. Among the most characteristic phenomena of congenital syphilis are a peculiar hoarse, cracked cry; and snuffling (popularly termed "the snuffles"), with nasal discharge, which tends to clog the nostrils, and interferes with breathing. Ulcers may be visible about the nose, the angles of the mouth, the anus, or the labia. Mucous tubercles are also frequently observed about the mouth and anus; on the labia or scrotum sometimes; near the umbilicus; or in the larynx. Condylomata are occasionally present. Discharges from the eyelids or ears are not uncommon. Occasionally iritis or some other inflammatory affection of the eye is set up. Syphilitic children are more liable to serous inflammations than others. The internal organs may be implicated, enlargement of the spleen and liver being not uncommon. The lymphatic glands may be also affected. Obstructive disease of the pulmonary artery has occasionally appeared to owe its origin to hereditary syphilis. In exceptional cases there are well-marked evidences of congenital syphilis, without any particular emaciation or anaemia.

Peculiar changes may affect the bones in connection with congenital syphilis. In the first months of life complete separation of the epiphyses is often seen at the time of ossification, but different explanations have been given as to how this is brought about. Parrot has shown that neoplasms, showing a marked tendency to the formation of osteoid or osseous tissue, are of common occurrence in hereditary syphilis. They are found on flat bones, as those of the skull, as well as on long bones. At first soft, they eventually form osteophytes, large exostoses, or osteomata; these consist of perfect or incompletely ossified trabeculae, which anastomose together, leaving irregular spaces of variable size, which contain a vascular and more or less fibrous medulla. Ultimately the trabeculae thicken, and the spaces become narrower. Craniotabes has been attributed to syphilis by Barlow and Lees, and no doubt this is its cause in many cases.

Mr. Hutchinson has drawn attention to some important distinctions between *congenital* and ordinary *constitutional* syphilis. He states that in the former the secondary and tertiary phenomena sometimes occur together, but the secondary are then not well-marked; as a rule, however, there is a considerable interval between them, the child apparently recovering more or less completely, while tertiary symptoms do not set in until between five years of age and the time of puberty, or even later. In the meantime the health may be good, but the aspect of the patient is hardly ever satisfactory, while growth and development are sometimes much retarded. As special *secondary symptoms* of congenital syphilis, Mr. Hutchinson mentions diffuse stomatitis without ulcers, and diffuse

inflammation of the mucous membrane of the nares ; and among *tertiary symptoms* a form of phagedenic lupus, and interstitial inflammation of the cornea or keratitis, in which the cornea becomes uniformly hazy, with a few interspersed whitish dots, and is very vascular. Deafness and amaurosis are also stated to be far more common in the inherited disease, but paralysis of single nerves is not observed. Another point of difference is that in all its stages congenital syphilis tends to exhibit symmetry.

The characters presented by the teeth in congenital syphilis have attracted much attention. Some observers regard teeth of bad colour, eroded and honeycombed, as indicative of syphilis, but Mr. Hutchinson considers these changes as merely due to stomatitis, mercurial or other ; they are, however, usually associated with the malformation resulting from congenital syphilis. In accordance with the best authorities, it may now be affirmed that there are no special peculiarities in the temporary teeth of syphilitic infants. It is the permanent set which present the characteristic changes, and especially the *upper central incisors*, such changes being due to peculiar arrests of development, and to these teeth alone Mr. Hutchinson attaches much importance. He states that the commonest and most trustworthy condition is an arrest in the growth of the middle denticle, leaving a single central notch in the tooth, but there is usually also a general dwarfing in all its dimensions, so that it is short and narrow, but broader at the neck than at the cutting edge, and this appearance is called "pegged." The defects are usually symmetrical, but sometimes not so. The cutting edge soon breaks, or wears away irregularly, leaving a single shallow semilunar notch at the centre. At the bottom of this notch the enamel is deficient, and the dentine exposed. The other teeth besides the incisors are also often malformed, but not in a characteristic manner. They are badly developed and stunted ; and sometimes slant together, or are widely separated. Mr. Moon has pointed out that the permanent first molars are often reduced in size, and of a dome-like shape, from suppression of their angles, and that the enamel is absent from the grinding surface. These teeth also show in greatest degree, and most frequently, the changes due to stomatitis. Next come the four incisors and the canines ; while the bicuspid teeth are remarkably exempt. The affected teeth become rough, pitted, eroded, and of bad colour ; often showing a transverse furrow, which crosses all the teeth at the same level.

There are certain important points bearing upon the *transmission of syphilis* which may be alluded to here. It seems certain that the disease may be communicated to the mother through the foetus, usually only tertiary symptoms being then produced, and these are not of a severe character. It appears, however, that she is immune from infection by her child after its birth, even if she nurses it. There is reason to believe that the taint may be transmitted to a third generation. Probably syphilis may be originated by suckling a syphilitic nurse ; and some authorities believe that, on the other hand, a syphilitic child may infect the nurse. The disease may possibly be conveyed by vaccination, but extremely rarely.

Diagnosis.—It is only intended here to offer a few remarks respecting the general diagnosis of constitutional syphilis, whether resulting from inoculation or from hereditary transmission. The possibility of the existence of a syphilitic taint should always be borne in mind, and in any doubtful case it is requisite to make rigid investigation in order to clear up this point. If direct information cannot be obtained, it may often be procured indirectly by enquiring about the ordinary secondary and

tertiary symptoms of syphilis, such as sore-throat, rash, etc. Examination of the throat, mouth, tongue, and eyes, as well as over the tibiae and skull, may give evidence of past or present disease, in the form of cicatrices, iritic adhesions, nodes, and other lesions. Arterial changes may also assist the diagnosis. The existence of paralysis of a single nerve, especially one of the cranial nerves, is strongly indicative of acquired syphilis. Nocturnal pain is also a suspicious sign. In not a few cases the results of treatment afford ample proof of the presence of the disease.

Inherited syphilis may in many instances be recognized at an advanced period by pallor and an unhealthy aspect of the face; arrest of growth or development; a sunken bridge of the nose; the peculiar teeth; pits and scars, or even actual ulcers, on the skin, about the angles of the mouth, or in other parts; keratitis or its remains; double deafness without otorrhœa; amaurosis; the changes in connection with bones; or a very prominent forehead, resulting from meningitis. In young subjects, who are very thin and anaemic or unhealthy-looking, without any obvious cause, a rigid and tortuous state of the superficial arteries is, in my opinion, very suspicious of a syphilitic taint, even when the more characteristic signs are absent.

Treatment.—For *constitutional syphilis* the two great remedies are mercury and iodine, the former being especially valuable during the secondary stage, the latter during the tertiary. Mercury may be introduced into the system by the mouth, by inunction, or by the mercurial bath, and it is in many cases requisite to bring the patient rapidly under its influence, of course due care being taken to avoid the injurious effects of this powerful drug. Calomel, blue-pill, perchloride, or red iodide of mercury are the preparations which are usually administered, and both the perchloride and iodide are often very beneficially combined with iodide of potassium in the later stages. Local applications of mercurial ointment, or of black-wash, are valuable in many cases.

Iodide of potassium is the preparation usually selected for administration in syphilis, and it should be given at first in doses of 5 grains three times a day, and then gradually increased to 10, 15, 20, or even 30 grains. When this drug cannot be borne in such large quantities, great benefit may be derived in some cases from its administration in very small doses. It is often advantageously combined with decoction of cinchona and ammonia. Some authorities prefer iodide of sodium or ammonium.

Congenital syphilis decidedly requires the administration of mercury. It may be given in the form of grey powder, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ twice or thrice a day; or the ointment may be rubbed into the arm-pits and inner surface of the thighs, or into the soles of the feet, socks being afterwards put on; or the milk may be used to convey it, blue-pill being administered to the mother or nurse, or the milk of a mercurialized goat being employed. At the same time all *hygienic conditions* must be carefully attended to, and the child properly fed. Cleanliness is essential, and simple local applications are often required, or black-wash may be needed. Toilet powder should be freely used over the seat of any eruption. The use of cod-liver oil, either internally or by inunction, is frequently attended with much benefit.

In the advanced stage of congenital syphilis mercury often disagrees seriously, and in the early stage it sometimes cannot be borne. Iodide of potassium or sodium must then be substituted. A general *tonic* plan of treatment is often serviceable in cases where specific treatment is not obviously indicated, or even along with this mode.

CHAPTER XXIX.

TUBERCULOSIS.

In this chapter it is proposed to discuss the subject of tuberculosis from a general point of view; and to describe an acute form of the disease—*acute miliary tuberculosis*—which is not associated with any particular organ, tubercle being disseminated in various structures.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Tuberculosis is the condition in which the morbid material named *tubercle* is formed in the body, being often more or less extensively distributed in various structures. The views held on this subject have undergone such a complete revolution of late years, that it has now to be discussed from a totally different standpoint. Until within a comparatively recent period tuberculosis was almost universally regarded as a *constitutional diathesis*, either hereditary or acquired, of which the growth of tubercle was merely the local manifestation. As the result of modern researches it has, at the present day, come to be almost as universally classed as a *specific infective disease*, the development of tubercle being attributed to a definite micro-organism named the *bacillus tuberculosis*. The more important questions relating to its pathology and aetiology will now be briefly discussed under the following headings.

1. *Infection*—*Tubercle bacillus*.—The history of the experimental investigations, originally started by Villemin, which led to the conclusion that tuberculosis is a communicable and infective disease, an idea of very ancient date, is most interesting and instructive, but it is now so familiar to every student of pathology that it need not be repeated here. Suffice it to say that they culminated in the discovery by Koch of the *tubercle bacillus*, which he announced as the immediate and sole cause of tubercle, and which is at the present time very generally recognized as the infective agent producing this morbid growth. Koch demonstrated the invariable presence of the bacilli in all kinds of tubercular lesions, and succeeded in isolating and cultivating them; while he showed, by a very extensive series of experiments with tubercular materials and cultures, that the disease could be produced in animals by inoculation, by feeding them with morbid products containing the bacilli, and by causing them to inhale the organisms diffused through the air which they breathed. In many of these experiments bacilli were used which had been cultivated through more than twenty generations. Koch's discovery and conclusions have been amply confirmed by a large number of observers; while other points of interest have been made out, some of which have an important practical bearing, especially in relation to the prevention of tuberculosis. Tubercle bacilli are present in great abundance in the expectoration of phthisical patients, and in the blood when haemoptysis occurs in such cases. They have also been found in discharges from tubercular abscesses or ulcers; in the faeces in cases of tubercular disease of the intestines; in the urine when the genito-urinary apparatus is affected; and in the blood in some cases of acute miliary tuberculosis.

Characters.—The tubercle bacilli are in the form of rods, usually varying in length from $2\cdot5$ to $4\cdot5 \mu$, very thin, and rounded at the ends. They are either straight or curved, and frequently beaded when stained; usually occur singly, but may be in pairs, rarely in longer rows in the tissues, though these are common in cultivations; and are non-motile.

They stain slowly with the basic aniline dyes, except at the body temperature, but retain the dye after treatment with acids. Koch believes that the bacilli have an external membrane. Spore-formation has been described, but this is a disputed point. The best medium for cultivation is said to be solid blood-serum of the cow or sheep, with or without the addition of gelatine. They can also be cultivated on glycerine-agar or potato. They develop slowly, and require a



FIG. 16.

Koch's *Bacillus Tuberculosis* in Sputum from a case of Phthisis (last stage). a. Pus corpuscles. b. Bacilli. x about 320 diameter. (Horsley.)

degree of heat approaching that of the human body for their development, the limits of temperature between which they can grow and multiply being 86° and 104° . Tubercl bacilli cannot thrive outside the animal body in cold climates, but they can retain their vitality for a considerable time, in both the moist and dry state, at ordinary temperatures. The process of putrefaction in many cases appears to have but little effect upon them. They also show a high resisting power to the action of the gastric juice. Thorough exposure to the action of carbolic acid (2.3 per cent.) and other antiseptics destroys their virulence. Moist heat at a temperature of 100° C. kills the bacilli speedily under all conditions. In sputum that has been thoroughly dried they resist the action of heat longer than in moist sputum.

Distribution.—The relation of bacilli to the histological elements of tubercle will be noticed presently, and their special connection with individual organs and structures will be considered in the appropriate chapters. It will now be sufficient to state generally that these organisms have been found in acute and chronic tubercular lesions in all parts of the body, both medical and surgical; as well as in caseous broncho-pneumonia, scrofulous glands, scrofulous disease of joints, and sections of lupus skin. They appear as a rule to abound in recent and rapidly-growing tubercles, and at the periphery of collections of tubercles or cheesy masses; while they are absent or comparatively few in the case of old and firm caseous masses, and chronic fibroid material. In caseating nodules, bacilli which stain imperfectly and have lost their distinct form are sometimes seen; or there may be merely a few granular remains, some of which are believed to be spores, as caseous material in which no bacilli could be recognized has been found capable of originating tubercle when inoculated. In some very acute forms of tuberculosis it is affirmed that bacilli are sometimes evident in certain structures, as the spleen, before any actual tubercles have formed. They are few in number in connection with chronic scrofulous lesions of absorbent glands, and in tubercular disease of joints.

Bacilli similar to those observed in man are present in "bovine tuberculosis," which occurs in oxen and cows; as well as in the tubercle of horses and other animals, whether produced naturally or artificially. In bovine tubercle they are very numerous, and this material is said to be specially effective and certain for inoculation purposes. They have also been found in the milk of affected cows.

Modes of Infection.—Assuming the bacillus to be the immediate and specific cause of tubercle, it becomes a most important question to determine how it gains access into the human system, and in what ways infection may be brought about. It will be expedient to consider the practical points bearing upon this question once for all in some detail.

a. The main channel for the introduction of tubercle bacilli into the system is the *respiratory apparatus*, these organisms or their spores being inhaled along with the inspired air, in which float fine particles of dust, to which they become attached. It was affirmed at one time that the breath of phthisical patients contains them, and is therefore infective, but more careful observations have proved conclusively that this is not the case. Their great source is the sputum of such patients, especially in the dried state, when it is rapidly converted into dust, and disseminated far and wide. As already stated, this sputum often contains the bacilli in enormous numbers. The investigations of Cornet and others have shown that the dust collected from the walls, floors, and bedsteads of hospitals and other institutions where consumptive persons have been collected together, as well as from private rooms which have been inhabited by such persons, and other places which they are accustomed to frequent, is in a large proportion of cases infective by inoculation. Numerous instances have also been brought forward in which individuals are said to have become tuberculous from occupying apartments in which phthisical patients have previously lived, and which have not been properly cleansed and disinfected. These patients often spit about in various places, such as on floors, into fire-places or chamber utensils, or in the streets, and thus the bacilli become disseminated. Handkerchiefs, linen, or other objects stained with expectoration may also be the means of distributing them. It is further supposed that discharges from other tubercular lesions, as well as the excreta, may, if neglected, add to the number of tubercle bacilli in the atmosphere.

b. The *alimentary canal* is another channel through which tubercle bacilli are believed to get into the body. Experimental investigations upon animals, and observations made in relation to human subjects, seem to have proved conclusively that bovine tuberculosis may be conveyed by the agency of milk, and the frequency of the occurrence of intestinal and mesenteric tuberculosis in children has been by several authorities confidently referred to this cause. It was formerly supposed that only the milk obtained from cows suffering from tuberculous disease of the udder is infective, but more recent observations have led to the conclusion that this is unnecessary, and that milk from tubercular cows may contain bacilli, when the udder is quite healthy. With regard to the flesh, opinions are divided as to whether it is infective or not, but it is safer to conclude that it is, and not to allow meat from tuberculous animals to be eaten. The comparatively high resisting power of tubercle bacilli to the action of the gastric juice enables them to retain their vitality until they pass into the intestine, if they have not been destroyed by heat or in other ways before they are introduced into the stomach.

c. It is very important to determine whether tubercular disease can be transmitted by *direct infection* from one human being to another, apart from the question of heredity, but on this point there is much difference of opinion. Investigations show that where there is habitual close intimacy between individuals, as in the case of husband and wife, special danger must be recognized. This may be probably accounted for chiefly by the effects of sputum, but the transmission of infection has also been attributed to kissing, and even to sexual intercourse, especially from husband to wife, and particularly if pregnancy occurs. It is affirmed that the complaint may be conveyed from mother to child by suckling.

d. The possibility of tubercular infection by *direct inoculation* must not be overlooked, though it is very rare in man, and when it does occur the disease often remains local, but may become general. The "post-mortem wart" or *verruca nicrogenica* (Wilks), met with on the hands or fingers of persons who have much to do with handling dead bodies or animal products, is said to be of a tubercular nature. The question of the alleged transmission of the disease by vaccination may be referred to here, but of this there is no definite proof, and the lymph from the vesicles of re-vaccinated persons suffering from phthisis has been proved to be non-infective. Inoculation with tubercle has been attributed in exceptional instances to circumcision, wearing ear-rings, transplantation of skin, a bite by a tuberculous subject, washing the clothes of a phthisical patient, a cut by a broken receptacle for sputum, and other accidental occurrences. Cracks or excoriations of the skin are believed to favour local infection of this kind, which may be followed by implication of the neighbouring lymphatic glands. In cases where tuberculosis first involves the genito-urinary apparatus, it is supposed that direct inoculation has in some way taken place.

e. Reference must be made to infection from within the body, or *auto-infection*, in relation to tuberculosis; and in this connection the modes of extension of the morbid process in the system may be considered. Tubercl bacilli have been found in the bronchial glands in apparently healthy persons, and might form a source of infection under certain circumstances, but they are generally supposed to have originally come from without. An active or even general tuberculosis may be set up in connection with some caseous centre in the body, or the remains of a former tubercular lesion, and other allied conditions. Auto-infection from caseous material was attributed by Prof. Hamilton to a ferment, which acts as an irritant upon the tissues to which it is carried; the view now generally held, however, is that in the morbid conditions just alluded to bacilli or their spores lie dormant, and when set free give rise to tuberculosis. Cohnheim was of opinion that the tubercle-bacillus may remain latent in the body for an indefinite time, until some accidental circumstance calls it forth into active growth.

When tubercle has once been formed, it may spread in the same structure, or to various parts of the body, in the following ways:—
(i.) By direct continuity, the bacilli being taken up by neighbouring cells and distributed, or being conveyed by leucocytes. (ii.) By means of the circulation, in consequence of the blood-vessels being involved, and the bacilli thus reaching the blood. Large venous trunks, especially the pulmonary veins, are sometimes implicated in tubercular disease. (iii.) Through the lymph-channels, probably a common and important mode of extension. Ponflick found in some cases extensive tuberculosis

of the thoracic duct. (iv.) By the agency of morbid discharges containing tubercle bacilli. Thus it is now commonly supposed that the materials formed in the lungs in phthisis, by gravitating or being drawn into unaffected parts of these organs, or gaining access from a diseased to a healthy lung, cause extension of the disease. The passage of sputum over the mucous surface of the larynx and trachea is also believed to set up mischief in these structures; and when swallowed it is supposed to cause intestinal tuberculosis.

Mode of action.—From the results of experimental inoculations it would appear that the primary action of the tubercle bacillus is local, but it subsequently becomes more or less generalized. It first causes irritation of the tissues, leading to proliferation of cells and migration of leucocytes, and subsequently degeneration of the cellular elements. It tends more especially to affect lymphatic structures. Whether these changes are due to the direct action of the organism, or to its chemical products, is not determined. An albumose and a ptomaine have been separated by Crookshank and Herroun. It is also believed by some that these products affect the system generally, through the agency of the circulation. Under certain circumstances the bacilli themselves exist in large numbers in the blood, setting up general tuberculosis and its accompanying phenomena.

2. *Hereditary transmission.*—From time immemorial tuberculosis has been regarded as a markedly hereditary complaint, though the proportion of cases in which such a predisposition exists has been very variously estimated by different authorities. At the present day the tendency is to make light of this element in its causation, or, indeed, in some quarters to ignore it altogether. It has been affirmed that most, if not all cases of supposed hereditary tuberculosis are really due to accidental infection, as a consequence of the exposure which the circumstances of family-life necessarily involve. Against such a doctrine I must personally strongly protest, as one likely to lead to grave results; and in my opinion hereditary predisposition to tubercular disease should always be recognized to its fullest extent, whenever it exists. The inheritance is much more common through the female than the male line. In rare instances tubercle is actually congenital, being present in the newly-born infant. While thus giving due weight to the hereditary factor in the causation of tuberculosis, I must warn, on the other hand, against attaching too much importance to it, for unquestionably it is a prevalent idea that, provided there is no family taint, individuals are practically free from any danger of contracting the disease.

The explanation of the heredity of tuberculosis is another question, and one about which there is much difficulty. Baumgarten maintains that in many cases the virus itself is actually transmitted; and he regards the late manifestation as analogous to that of hereditary syphilis, there being a prolonged latency of the infective agent. It has been stated that tubercle bacilli have been found in the vas deferens and prostate of phthisical patients, without apparent disease of these parts (Jani). Other views are that merely a "predisposition to tubercular disease" is inherited; or a state of "constitutional debility"; or a condition of "tissue-proclivity," favourable to the action of the tubercle bacillus.

It may be mentioned that intermarriage, very early marriages, and advanced age of the father have been regarded as producing or

aggravating an inherited tendency to tuberculosis. In some instances it appears that hereditary syphilis helps in promoting the development of the disease.

3. *Personal predisposing conditions.*—Granting the bacillary origin of tuberculosis, and recognizing the wide distribution of the organism, it appears remarkable that so many persons escape. To account for this fact, individual peculiarities have been supposed to exist, as in the case of other infective diseases, indicated by the degree of susceptibility or resisting power to its action. Whether there is any definite *tubercular constitution* or *diathesis* has always been a much disputed question. A very large number of persons unquestionably become tuberculous who present no obvious peculiarities, and who are strong and well-formed. Moreover, many who are looked upon as merely predisposed to the disease, are at the time really suffering from its effects. At the same time a combination of conditions may be recognized in a certain proportion of cases, which are fairly characteristic of a tendency to tubercular mischief, especially in children and young persons, and they are thus described:—The subjects are tall, slim, erect, and delicate-looking, having scarcely any fat; while they present usually a pretty oval face, a clear complexion, bright eyes, and large pupils. The skin is very thin, soft, and delicate, and through it bluish veins are visible; the hair is fine and silky, often light, the eye-lashes being long. Tubercular children cut their teeth early, and are generally precocious and clever, walking and talking soon. They are excitable and active in body and mind. The ends of the bones are very small and firm, their shafts also being thin and rigid; while the cartilages seem to be very soft and flexible. The thorax is small, being either long and narrow, or flattened anteriorly, and presents the alar character.

Mention must also be here made of the so-called *scrofulous* or *strumous diathesis*, which is described as follows:—The body is short, thick-set, and heavy; the face plain, tumid-looking, with expanded and thick alæ nasi, a low forehead, a large upper lip, and a dull, pasty complexion. The skin is thick and opaque. Scrofulous children often exhibit the phlegmatic temperament, being inactive and languid in mind and body, as well as backward in intellect, this being evident in their expression. The bones are thick, with rather large ends. The teeth often decay early. Derangements of the alimentary canal are of frequent occurrence, and the belly is generally tumid. Scrofulous subjects are very subject to moist eruptions on the skin, with scabbing; chronic inflammation and suppuration of lymphatic glands; caries and necrosis of bones; unhealthy inflammation of mucous surfaces, with purulent and other discharges; and allied conditions. These lesions are now regarded as mainly tubercular; but scrofulous individuals are also very liable to internal tubercle. Many regard both the tubercular and scrofulous habit as merely indicating delicacy of constitution, incomplete growth, and imperfect development.

Age materially affects both the occurrence of tubercle, and its seat. It is by far most frequently met with in children and young persons. The majority of deaths from tubercular affections as a whole occur between 20 and 30 years of age. They may develop, however, even in old age. In children the disease tends to involve a number of organs; in adults it is more localized. The glandular system, bones, joints, and meninges are frequently implicated in the former. Sex has no apparent influence.

The tendency to tubercle is certainly more marked in persons of a feeble physical constitution, apart from any obvious special tubercular or scrofulous habit. The general health may also be lowered by numerous causes, which thus indirectly predispose to tuberculosis, among the most important being imperfect ventilation, want of fresh air, and close confinement; over-crowding; want of exercise; constant residence in a humid atmosphere; unhealthy, insufficient, or indigestible food, not forgetting the milk of the mother or nurse; intemperance; interference with the free expansion of the chest, due to clothing or occupation; previous diseases, such as measles, whooping-cough, and various exhausting fevers, as well as many chronic affections; long-continued dyspepsia, or gastric ulcer; frequent pregnancies; prolonged lactation; excessive sexual indulgence; undue mental labour; worry, anxiety, and other depressing nervous influences. Many of these are frequently found acting in concert, especially among the poor and hard-worked inhabitants of large towns; and, while lowering the system, they obviously favour infection at the same time. Various occupations materially aid in developing tuberculosis, by impairing the general health, as well as in numerous other ways. Unfavourable hygienic conditions, combined with improper diet, are particularly liable to affect children and young persons injuriously.

Race influences the susceptibility to tuberculosis, although no race is exempt. It appears to be very prevalent among American Indians and negroes.

4. *External predisposing causes.*—Tuberculosis is met with more or less in all parts of the world. It is most prevalent in large towns and cities, and especially in their crowded parts. Hirsch is of opinion that geographical position has less influence than has been supposed. The disease is rare towards the Poles. Altitude is of great importance. In high regions tuberculosis is rare; it is decidedly less common in mountainous countries; while it prevails largely at a low level. Tubercular affections are most common in damp and cold or changeable climates and localities. Dampness of soil is an influential factor, and the investigations of Sir George Buchanan and others have shown clearly that tubercular disease may be materially checked by efficient drainage. Much of what has just been stated applies mainly to pulmonary phthisis, and some of the causes mentioned act chiefly by setting up catarrhal or other conditions in connection with the respiratory organs, which are believed to render them more liable to the action of the bacillus.

5. *Local predisposing causes.*—The results of experimental investigations seem to prove that tubercle bacilli may affect perfectly healthy structures, as the pulmonary air-cells, and the intestinal or other mucous membranes. They are, however, more likely to gain a footing if portions of the mucous surfaces are denuded of their epithelium or otherwise injured, and this is supposed to be the explanation of the development of tuberculosis in some instances. The more obvious local conditions predisposing to tubercular diseases are injury; repeated or continuous irritation of structures, as in occupations involving inhalation of dust, or of mineral or other particles of various kinds; congestive or catarrhal states of mucous surfaces; and inflammatory lesions, especially when they become chronic. These damage the tissues, so that they furnish a favourable soil for infection by the tubercle bacilli. The greater frequency of tuberculosis after certain febrile diseases than others, such as measles or whooping-cough, is be-

lieved to depend upon the fact that bronchial catarrh is so commonly associated with these complaints.

It will be observed that I have discussed the aetiology and pathology of tuberculosis practically from the infective and bacillary point of view. It must be noted, however, that some eminent pathologists still do not accept this explanation of the nature and causation of the disease, but either hold that it is of constitutional origin, or that tubercle is merely the result of a local inflammation, especially affecting lymphatic structures, which may be produced by different forms of local irritation. Certain points bearing more particularly upon pulmonary phthisis will be dealt with in relation to that disease.

Anatomical Characters.—Under this head it is only intended to give a comprehensive account of tubercle and its distribution, its relation to particular structures being discussed in the corresponding chapters.

General description.—The typical variety of tubercle now commonly recognized consists of certain minute bodies, termed *grey granulations* or *miliary tubercles*. These appear as small nodules or granulations, about the size of a mustard or millet-seed; generally of a roundish form, but sometimes slightly angular; well-defined; usually firm and hard, but occasionally soft; of a greyish-white or pearly-grey colour; more or less translucent; and non-vascular. They may be quite separate and distinct; or collected into irregular groups, their individual outline being then rendered indistinct. *White granulations* are also described, which are more opaque and softer, and are said to differ from the grey in the arrangement of their histological elements. In some structures tubercle is more diffused, and appears as a *grey infiltration*, which presents a gelatinous appearance, and a smooth and dense section. In its earliest stage tubercle is not visible to the naked eye, and it is by the continued growth and agglomeration of fresh tubercles that it becomes perceptible, appearing either as granulations or infiltrations according to their mode of arrangement. The latter are often made up partly of areas of inflammatory products, surrounding scattered centres of tubercle.

What has been described as *yellow tubercle* consists of granules, nodules, or masses of caseous matter, which are generally supposed to be derived only from tubercle; some pathologists, however, maintain that they also originate in various inflammatory and other morbid products, which undergo cheesy degeneration. Tubercle is often associated with the products of ordinary inflammation, and thus its physical characters are more or less modified.

Microscopic structure.—The histological elements found in tubercle have been very differently described by different observers. No doubt the microscopical appearances, as well as the arrangement and relative proportions of the constituents, vary much under different circumstances. It is now generally maintained that there is nothing peculiar in the structural elements of early tubercle, or in their arrangement, to distinguish them from the products of other parasites. The experimental observations of Baumgarten, Cornil, and others show that tubercle bacilli first cause a proliferation of the fixed cells, especially the connective-tissue cells, and the endothelium of the capillaries. These multiply by karyokinesis, and become "epithelioid," of rounded, cuboidal, or polygonal shape, and containing

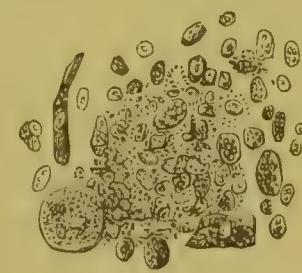


FIG. 17.
Elements from grey tubercle—
miliary granulation.
(Jones and Sieveking).

vesicular nuclei. A little later migration of leucocytes takes place, forming the "lymphoid" cells, which accumulate at the periphery, and do not multiply. The "giant-cell" is looked upon by many pathologists as of great importance in relation to tubercle, occupying its centre, but it appears not to be essential, and to be specially seen in chronic tubercles, while it may be met with in other growths. It has been affirmed that the giant-cells are in inverse ratio to the number and virulence of the bacilli. There has been much controversy as to their mode of formation, but they seem to be formed generally by enlargement of the epithelioid cells, or it may be by the fusion of several cells. It is generally maintained that there is in tubercle a fine reticulum of fibres, formed by the fibrillation and rarefaction of the connective-tissue matrix, which is most apparent at the margins of the growth as a rule. Friedlander, however, as well as Cornil and Ranzier, insist that in recent tubercle no fibres are visible, and that the appearance is due to the hardening processes employed in its preparation for microscopic examination. Tubercle does not contain any vessels or lymphatics of its own, but it may involve those belonging to the original tissue in which it is formed; and it may also enclose pigmentary matters. As



FIG. 18.

Giant-cells. *a.* Rounded (*Virchow*); *b.* With processes; from a muscular tumour (*Billroth*).

it undergoes degenerative changes, its microscopical appearances necessarily alter materially.

Tubercle bacilli can be demonstrated in tubercle, but, as already stated, they vary much in number under different circumstances. They are sometimes scattered pretty uniformly through the tissues, sometimes collected in little clusters; and may be observed partly within cells, partly lying free. In bovine tuberculosis they often have a special relation to the giant-cells, forming a kind of ring or zone towards the periphery, or sometimes presenting a radiate arrangement; this, however, is rare in the human subject.

Changes and terminations.—Some very important changes are liable to take place in connection with tubercle. 1. *Absorption.*—It is probable that tubercle may be absorbed after it has undergone degenerative changes. 2. *Cascous degeneration.*—Tubercle is very prone to this change. In tubercles produced by experimental inoculation the change called "coagulation-necrosis" is soon observed in the centre of the

nodule. The cells become swollen and translucent, exhibit a tendency to fuse together, and their nuclei lose their power of staining. This is followed speedily by a granular disintegration, which often terminates in caseation or cheesy degeneration. The material may become converted into a purulent or curdy-looking fluid, simulating an abscess; or a firm cheesy mass is produced, which may become encapsulated.

3. *Calcification*.—This frequently follows caseation, the material consequently becoming inert. Sometimes the calcareous substance is subsequently discharged, or becomes surrounded with a fibrous capsule.

4. *Elimination and its results*.—The remains of tubercle are often eliminated or discharged, thus giving rise to ulcers on mucous surfaces, or to cavities in organs, as is well-exemplified in the case of the intestines and lungs. These ulcers and cavities may ultimately heal up, and a permanent cure may result, the cicatricial tissue formed being very prone to contract. More commonly, however, the destructive process extends, owing to the formation of fresh tubercles on the walls of the ulcer or cavity, or in other ways, for here new factors are introduced, especially the effects of suppuration. Occasionally a cavity results from the death and discharge of a quantity of tubercle *en masse*.

5. *Fibroid change*.—This consists of an increase of the fibrillated stroma, coincident with a disappearance of the cells, and finally a tuberculous granulation may consist almost entirely of fibroid tissue, becoming dense and hard. The change is probably identical with that which has been described as *cornification* or *obsolescence*, in which tubercle becomes opaque, horny, and bluish-grey. The fibroid change is chiefly observed in the lungs, but Schüppel has also demonstrated its occurrence in lymph-glands, and Rindfleisch has found fibrous tubercles in the great omentum. The late Dr. Fagge was of opinion that the occurrence of a similar change in a tubercular infiltration is the origin of the affection known as "fibroid phthisis."

Tissues and organs affected.—Tubercle presents marked peculiarities in its distribution. Several organs or structures are frequently affected at the same time; but in adults tubercle is often confined to the lungs in chronic cases. In most cases of acute tuberculosis grey granulations are seen throughout almost every organ in the body, and it is one of the characteristics of this disease that it attacks many structures. Parts actively growing are very liable to be implicated. The most frequent seats of tubercle are the lungs and respiratory passages; the bronchial, mesenteric, and other absorbent glands; the intestines; the pleura, peritoneum, and pericardium; the cerebral meninges; bones and joints; the liver and spleen; and the thyroid gland in acute cases. It is less commonly met with in the kidneys and genito-urinary passages; in the testes or vesiculae seminales; or in the brain and spinal cord. Tubercular ulcers, with tubercles, occasionally occur on the tongue or throat. Tubercles may be observed in the choroid coat of the eye-ball in a large proportion of cases of acute tuberculosis, but rarely in the retina. Among the less frequent seats of tubercle are the prostate gland, the supra-renal capsules, the bladder, the uterus, the walls of the heart, and the marrow of bones. It is only very exceptionally met with in other structures, and Litten never found it in the pancreas, salivary glands, or voluntary muscles. Tubercle bacilli are present in lupus, scrofulodermia, and certain forms of lichen and erythema; and they have been found in connection with some non-tubercular lesions, as chancres and malignant growths.

Symptoms.—It would not serve any useful purpose to discuss the clinical history of tuberculosis at any length here, as this part of the subject will have to be fully dealt with in relation to its more important local manifestations; and its acute variety is separately considered in the present chapter. Should any individual present the characters already described as pertaining to tubercular or scrofulous subjects, these should certainly not be ignored, as indicating a tendency to lesions of this nature, or their actual presence. The local development of tubercle is usually accompanied with corresponding local symptoms, and often with definite physical signs or objective appearances; while not uncommonly cases are more or less complicated, owing to different structures being involved. The detection of tubercle bacilli, especially in sputum, is now regarded as highly important in relation to the clinical investigation and diagnosis of tubercular cases. General symptoms are present in most instances, and are frequently pronounced, especially pyrexia, wasting, anaemia, and other signs of failure of nutrition, with night-sweats, weakness, fatigue, languor, and allied subjective sensations. The course and duration of cases of tubercular disease vary within wide limits, while they often exhibit intervals of improvement or arrest during their progress. Sooner or later most of them terminate fatally, but modern treatment has certainly made the outlook in many instances far less grave than formerly.

Prevention and Treatment.—Only a few general remarks need be made here on this subject, as it will be more convenient to discuss the prevention and treatment of tuberculosis in detail in relation to pulmonary phthisis, and any special points requiring notice will be referred to in connection with other local manifestations of the disease. Obviously the first consideration is to prevent as far as possible the procreation of children with a hereditary tendency to tubercle, and hence the questions of marriage and child-bearing are not uncommonly submitted to the medical adviser, though his advice is by no means always followed. Every case must be decided on its own merits, but should a man or woman, or still more both, be suffering from active or pronounced tubercular disease, clearly marriage ought to be interdicted. In the case of children or young persons in whom there is a marked hereditary predisposition, or who present the appearances indicating a tubercular tendency, much may be done in the way of prevention by judicious measures. In the first place all hygienic conditions, as well as diet, should be rigidly attended to. Fresh air and sunlight; suitable exercise; warm clothing; change to the seaside, with salt-water baths, or a residence in some high altitude; nutritious diet carefully regulated, with plenty of good milk; and avoidance of undue mental excitement or work, are among the chief requirements. Not uncommonly a permanent change of climate is advisable, or even imperative. Great care is demanded as regards the choice of occupation. The digestive organs must be kept in order; and all sources of irritation in connection with these organs should be speedily removed. Cod-liver oil; iron in various forms, especially steel-wine, syrup of phosphate, or syrup of iodide of iron in some instances; and other tonics, properly administered, do a great deal of good in these cases.

A consideration of the questions already discussed, bearing upon the modes of infection of tuberculosis, will indicate the broad lines to be followed as regards humanity at large, in its prevention and treatment. It is easy to lay down rules as to hygienic conditions, occupation, good

food, maintenance of sound health, and other matters, but unfortunately but too commonly they cannot be carried out. The isolation of, or avoidance of close contact with persons suffering from tubercular disease; the thorough cleansing and disinfection of rooms which have been occupied by such persons; the modes of dealing with sputum and other infective materials; and the avoidance of tuberculous milk and meat, are all important parts of preventive treatment. Seeing that the respiratory organs are so commonly affected with tubercular disease, it is obviously of the greatest consequence to guard as much as possible against all causes which tend to injure or irritate these organs, and not to neglect even the slightest pulmonary symptoms in persons who are at all predisposed. In such persons also it will be well to examine the chest from time to time.

The treatment of individual patients suffering from actual tubercular disease presents much variety, and always requires intelligent consideration. As a rule it may be affirmed that they demand supporting and tonic measures, with the view of improving the general nutrition. Numerous antiseptic and other "specific" methods are now much in vogue, but in the ways in which they are employed, they often do much more harm than good. Symptoms of various kinds, both local and general, frequently demand attention. The question of surgical interference requires careful consideration in certain cases, and not uncommonly operative measures afford excellent results. Other local methods of treatment are applicable to tubercular lesions of particular structures.

ACUTE MILIARY TUBERCULOSIS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—There is a distinct and important class of cases in which a more or less acute eruption of miliary tubercles takes place, which become disseminated through many of the organs and structures of the body, being often found in large numbers. The lungs, liver, and spleen are always affected in these cases; almost as frequently the kidneys, thyroid gland, marrow of bones, heart, and the choroid coat of the eye-ball; less constantly the serous membranes and the meninges. The distribution may be fairly uniform, but is often very unequal in different structures.

Acute miliary tuberculosis occurs chiefly during early life, but may be met with from infancy even to advanced age; it is much more common in males than females. It appears to be most prevalent during April, May, and June; and sometimes the complaint assumes a quasi-epidemic character. It may occur in persons apparently quite healthy; but commonly supervenes upon some previous tubercular affection or caseous centre, such as chronic phthisis, scrofulous affections of bones or joints, scrofulous glandular abscesses, tubercular mesenteric or bronchial glands, or tubercular disease of the genito-urinary apparatus. It is said to be rather frequent after aspiration for pleuritic effusion, but the pleurisy is then supposed to be tubercular. Acute miliary tuberculosis sometimes becomes developed after an attack of one of the exanthemata, as measles or typhoid fever. The condition is explained by a rapid general infection with the tubercle bacilli or their spores, which are set free from the pre-existing tubercular focus. Probably in many of the cases which cannot be explained, some such focus is present which has not been dis-

covered: Ponflick found in some instances an extensive tuberculosis of the thoracic duct, with destruction of the tubercular growth; more frequently tuberculosis of large venous trunks, especially of the pulmonary veins, as described by Weigert, appears to be the starting-point of acute miliary tuberculosis. It has occasionally followed operations for tubercular diseases, such as resection of a joint.

Symptoms.—It is by no means easy to give a definite and concise clinical history of acute miliary tuberculosis. Different cases of this complaint present very different symptoms, and attempts have been made to classify them into distinct groups, but individual cases present many intermediate grades and variations from the recognized types. The phenomena observed are *general* and *local*, the former depending upon the infection of the system, the latter partly or entirely upon the implication of particular organs or structures. As a rule only the lungs and brain originate prominent local symptoms; but acute tuberculosis of the spleen and of the choroid can often be made out by clinical examination.

General.—Acute miliary tuberculosis commences in many cases gradually, with a feeling of general languor and heaviness; irritability or restlessness; loss of appetite, with thirst; and headache. In other cases repeated rigors occur, with early and marked constitutional symptoms. Vomiting is a frequent symptom at the onset. In some instances the prominent phenomena are from the first connected either with the nervous or the respiratory system. More or less speedily the general symptoms become pronounced as a rule, including fever, wasting, anaemia, profuse sweating, and increasing debility, with a weak and rapid pulse. Acute tuberculosis is almost always attended with pyrexia, but not invariably; while its degree varies, and its course is in no way characteristic or typical. In one class of cases the temperature is high, reaching from 103° to 105° , and rising continuously, so that the temperature-curve may be very like that of typhoid fever. In other instances it is not high, but very irregular; or it may remit or intermit quite regularly for some time, if the duration of the disease is prolonged. A regular daily rise of temperature has been occasionally observed; or even a febrile paroxysm with a distinct chill. There may be a marked rise or fall of temperature before death. Patients suffering from acute tuberculosis are always evidently weak and ill, and the tendency is towards progressive emaciation and debility, until at last they become extremely wasted and prostrated. A peculiar pallor of the face, with marked cyanosis of the lips and cheeks, is said to be very striking and characteristic in some instances. A feeling of great anxiety and oppression may also be experienced, which is evident in the expression. A roseolar eruption on the skin has been observed occasionally; and herpes may break out about the lips. In one group of cases the symptoms assume a distinctly typhoid character, with a dry and brown tongue, sordes on the teeth and lips, and low nervous phenomena. The pulse usually ranges from 100 to 120, but may be much more frequent, and is readily hurried, while it is weak and small, and sometimes irregular. Loss of appetite and thirst continue throughout; the bowels are generally constipated, but in not a few instances more or less diarrhoea occurs. Tubercl bacilli have been detected in the blood in some cases of acute miliary tuberculosis.

Local.—Among the local phenomena, dyspnoea is usually a very prominent symptom in acute tuberculosis, and may become extreme. Not

only is the breathing much hurried, especially during the more advanced stages, reaching in some instances 40, 60, or 70 per minute, but it is often peculiarly deep, and sometimes noisy. When the lungs and pleuræ are involved, there will probably be pains in the sides, and more or less cough, but the latter may be very slight. Expectoration is generally scanty, and not characteristic; it is said not to contain bacilli unless old pulmonary phthisis exists. The *physical signs* in connection with the lungs vary, but are usually not marked, and of an indefinite character. Auscultation generally reveals various rhonchi, and numerous medium-sized or small moist râles scattered over the chest.

In some cases of acute miliary tuberculosis the mind remains clear to the last; in others prominent nervous symptoms appear at an early period, such as headache, giddiness, delirium, or stupor. These are often the result of the general infection and high fever, or perhaps of poisoning by the chemical products of the bacilli, but in a certain proportion of cases definite signs of tubercular meningitis supervene, either at an early or at a late stage, which tend to obscure other phenomena. The meningeal affection is common in infants and young children. Occasionally indications of tubercular peritonitis appear. The spleen is enlarged, sometimes considerably, and in not a few instances it can be felt on palpation.

Much importance has been attached to the discovery of tubercles in the choroid in acute tuberculosis, by the aid of the ophthalmoscope. They usually appear late in the course of the disease, but may be visible some time before death. These choroidal tubercles are in the form of yellowish-white, rounded spots, usually very minute, but sometimes, when confluent, as large as the optic disc; they shade off gradually into the surrounding pigment. They may be watched in their growth from day to day, and their changes may also be observed. Vision is rarely affected by them.

Varieties.—Cases of acute miliary tuberculosis have been divided, according to their course and prominent symptoms, into *acute febrile*; *adynamic* or *typhoid*; *insidious* or *indefinite*; *intermittent*; *pulmonary*; and *meningeal* or *cerebral*. While recognizing these groups, however, it must again be mentioned that all gradations between them are met with. The duration of the complaint usually ranges from two to eight weeks; and the termination may be said to be always fatal.

Diagnosis.—Acute miliary tuberculosis is by no means easy to recognize in many cases, and not uncommonly the condition has been found after death when not suspected during life. It is a disease which should always be borne in mind in obscure cases, especially in children and young persons. The diagnosis may be materially assisted by a history of hereditary predisposition; or by the presence of some tubercular or scrofulous lesion, upon which acute tuberculosis is likely to supervene. The complaint is liable to be mistaken for certain fevers, especially typhoid fever, and these must be excluded by the absence of their characteristic symptoms, or of any skin-eruption, except in rare instances in which a rash like that of typhoid is observed in acute tuberculosis. The combination of phenomena upon which the diagnosis of acute tuberculosis is usually founded are the severity of the general symptoms, associated with the absence of any adequate local cause; the irregular and atypical fever; peculiar pallor with cyanosis; marked dyspnoea, with hurried and deep breathing; very frequent and weak pulse; and the rapid down-

ward course of the illness in most cases. The development of symptoms indicating tubercular meningitis or peritonitis would help to clear up any obscurity. The observation of tubercles in the choroid is very important in the diagnosis of acute tuberculosis. The detection of bacilli in the blood is also regarded as a significant factor.

It is said that in some cases much difficulty arises in diagnosing between severe bronchitis with emphysema, and acute tuberculosis in which the lungs are involved, especially in elderly people. The general symptoms are to be mainly relied on; with the abundance of the râles, and the amount and character of the expectoration in cases of bronchitis.

Prognosis.—This is extremely grave, and although cases of supposed recovery from acute general tuberculosis have been reported, the accuracy of the diagnosis is always open to doubt. Possibly a favourable result may be brought about in cases where the condition is limited to one particular structure.

Treatment.—But little can be done in cases of acute miliary tuberculosis, and the treatment is mainly symptomatic. Full doses of quinine or other *antipyretics*; the judicious administration of nourishment and alcoholic stimulants; and the use of cold applications to the skin, or tepid baths, with an ice-bag to the head, are the chief measures indicated. Some advocate the employment of *antiseptics*. As preventive measures against this condition may be mentioned the removal by surgical measures of any local lesions which might act as centres of tubercular infection; and careful attention to children during convalescence from measles, whooping-cough, and other predisposing diseases.

CHAPTER XXX.

RHEUMATISM.

RHEUMATISM is a name applied to diseases and conditions of very different kinds, some of which are in reality of a local nature. It will be convenient, however, to consider in the present chapter the several complaints which may be fairly included under the term.

I. ACUTE ARTICULAR RHEUMATISM—RHEUMATIC FEVER.

Pathology.—The pathology of acute rheumatism is still much disputed. Some writers start with the fundamental theory of a “basic arthritic stock or diathesis,” from which spring as branches two main classes of disorder, commonly recognized as rheumatism and gout.

A favourite view held is that the immediate pathological cause of rheumatic fever consists in the presence in the blood of some *morbid poison* or *poisons*, generated within the system, in consequence of some derangement of the processes of assimilation and elimination, which act as direct irritants to certain tissues. These agents are, moreover, commonly believed to be of an acid nature, and acute rheumatism has been definitely referred to the action of lactic acid. It has been affirmed that the usual phenomena of the complaint have been produced by injecting this acid

into serous cavities, as well as during its internal administration for diabetes. Some writers, however, maintain that different acids may cause rheumatism; and Haig thinks that there is no real distinction between this disease and gout.

Another theory is that rheumatic fever depends upon some disturbance of the *nervous system*. Mr. Hutchinson calls rheumatism a "catarrhal arthritis," and is of opinion "that it is, in the main, a liability to joint-disease, brought about by exposure to cold and wet, through reflex nervous influence." Others think that the nerve-centres are affected by lactic or other acids, and that they react upon the joints; while still another view supposes that a primary disturbance of the nervous system leads to trophic changes, or to disorder of nutrition and its consequences. Dr. Harkin associates acute rheumatism with the nervous system, but believes that it is essentially a specific form of endocarditis of neuropathic origin, generally allied with myocarditis, which leads to subsequent changes in other structures.

Prof. Latham, of Cambridge, has propounded a very elaborate theory as to the pathology of acute rheumatism. He believes that glycocine is abundantly formed in the tissues, as well as uric and lactic acids. Glycocine is derived from glycocholic acid, a constituent of bile, which is normally transformed in the intestines into this substance and cholic acid; the glycocine passes to the liver and is changed into urea. Imperfect hepatic metabolism leads to the combination of glycocine with other substances to form uric acid. This acid affects the vaso-motor nerves controlling the arterioles of the muscles, at first stimulating and then paralyzing them, and causing dilatation of the vessels, followed by increased hydration and oxidation, and consequent pyrexia. Excessive formation of lactic acid leads also to dilatation of the arterioles of the affected parts, and stimulation of the sweat-centres.

The *germ-theory* has been applied to acute rheumatism, and by some pathologists is regarded with much favour. Hueter supposed that micrococci enter the system and set up endocarditis, the joint-affection being secondary to this, and due to embolism. Bacilli and micrococci have been described in the blood, in serous and synovial effusions, and in endocardial lesions in cases of acute rheumatism; and it has been affirmed that the disease has been reproduced in animals by injecting a cultivated species of micrococcus, obtained from the articular fluid of a patient suffering from rheumatic fever.

MacLagan believes that the poison of rheumatism is of the nature of a *miasma*, introduced from without, generically allied to, but specifically distinct from, that of malaria.

Aetiology.—1. *Exciting causes.*—The ordinary exciting cause of acute rheumatism is a sudden chill, especially induced by exposure to cold and wet; sitting in a draught when heated or perspiring; or neglecting to change wet clothes. It is believed that the complaint may also be produced by excessive muscular exertion. In not a few instances no definite cause can be fixed upon. Errors in diet, digestive and hepatic derangements, suppression of menses, excessive lactation, and numerous other disturbances have been ranked as causes of this complaint, but on no adequate grounds. Scarlatina is followed by acute rheumatism in some instances, probably by interfering with the excretory functions of the skin. It seems to be occasionally connected with the puerperal state.

2. *Predisposing causes.*—Acute rheumatism is distinctly a hereditary disease, and tends to run in families, though to a much less degree than

gout. It chiefly attacks for the first time persons from 15 to 35 years old, being especially frequent between 16 and 20, but no age is exempt, and a good many cases are met with in young children. Previous attacks decidedly increase the predisposition to the disease. More cases are met with among males, and in the lower classes, on account of their greater exposure to the ordinary exciting causes. Climate and season have considerable influence, the affection occurring mainly in temperate but very moist climates, and where sudden changes of temperature are experienced. It is far less common in tropical and very cold countries; and in this country is unfrequent during the months of July, August, and September. A large number of cases are met with in the eastern counties of England. The same conditions influence the prevalence of the complaint at different seasons. A state of ill-health from any cause is said to predispose to rheumatic fever, as well as mental depression or anxiety; but many individuals are attacked when in apparently perfect health and spirits. Joints which are much used, or which have been injured, are particularly liable to become affected in the course of the disease. Occupations involving exposure and hard work predispose materially to acute rheumatism.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid changes associated with acute rheumatism are chiefly evident in connection with fibrous, fibro-serous, and synovial structures. A variable number of the joints of the limbs present evidences of acute inflammation. The synovial membrane is very vascular, thickened, and relaxed; there may be a deposit of more or less lymph; and the joint contains a moderate quantity of fluid-effusion, chiefly serous, but having fibrinous flakes and leucocytes floating in it. The tissues around an affected joint are more or less infiltrated with fluid. In cases of long duration pus may form, and the cartilages sometimes become eroded, but these changes are very exceptional. The sheaths of tendons may also be inflamed, and occasionally they contain a purulent fluid. The muscles are often dark, soft, and infiltrated in fatal cases.

In the majority of cases where death occurs from rheumatic fever, the morbid appearances characteristic of pericarditis, endocarditis, or myocarditis are visible. Fibrinous vegetations are common in the heart, even when no inflammation exists. Evidences of pleurisy, or of pulmonary or other complications may also be present. The blood often becomes buffed and cupped during coagulation in cases of acute rheumatism. There is no reliable evidence that lactic acid can be detected in it.

Symptoms.—1. *Invasion.*—An attack of rheumatic fever may set in gradually, being preceded by a state of general ill-health for some time; but usually the invasion is prominently marked by chills, or occasionally by distinct rigors. These are followed by pyrexia, with general muscular pains; and soon the joints or other structures become affected.

2. *Actual attack.*—When acute rheumatism is established, the symptoms are in most cases very characteristic, being both *general* and *local*, the latter being connected mainly with the joints, but the two classes of symptoms are by no means always in proportion to each other.

a. *General.*—The patient complains of general aching and stiffness, and usually presents an aspect of suffering, combined with restlessness and weariness, but is unable to move, on account of the painful state of the joints, being often strikingly helpless. Usually there is copious perspiration, the patient being bathed in sweat, which has a peculiarly

sour or acrid smell, and is generally very acid in reaction; this is not invariably the case, however, and it is stated that the sweat may be acid, neutral, or alkaline over different parts of the skin in the same patient. Sudamina appear not uncommonly, and may be extremely abundant, coming out in successive crops. There are the ordinary symptoms accompanying pyrexia. The pulse is generally full and strong. The tongue is covered with a thick white coating; while there is much thirst, with anorexia, and constipation. The urine is markedly febrile, deposits urates abundantly, and sometimes contains a little albumen. Patients often cannot sleep on account of the pain which they suffer, but there are no particular head-symptoms as a rule. Occasionally slight delirium is observed. In some cases of a low type the general symptoms in acute rheumatism tend to assume a "typhoid" character.

b. Local.—It is the middle-sized joints which are most commonly attacked in rheumatic fever, namely, the elbows, wrists, knees, and ankles, but the other articulations are by no means exempt. Usually many joints are involved in succession, the complaint exhibiting an erratic tendency, and often the symptoms subside in one articulation as they appear in another, but several may be implicated together. The same joint may be attacked more than once in the course of the illness. A disposition to symmetry as to the joints affected is frequently noticed.

The skin over an affected joint is more or less red, either uniformly or in patches; and hot. Various degrees of swelling are noticed, due partly to infiltration of the tissues around the articulation, partly to effusion into its interior. The skin sometimes pits on pressure. There is considerable pain and tenderness, which is aggravated at night; and any movement causes much distress. In character the pain is dull and aching as a rule, and may be so severe as to make a patient, even of strong nerve, cry. Frequently the suffering is less intense when the swelling is considerable.

Temperature.—The pyrexia of acute rheumatism is of an irregularly remittent type. The *ascent* usually lasts about a week, but it may be longer or shorter than this. The temperature in most cases varies from 100° to 104° , and is generally in proportion to the number of joints involved, and the intensity of the inflammation, but by no means always. The *stationary period* varies greatly in duration; there is generally a considerable difference between morning and evening temperature. *Defervescence* is gradual and indefinite in most cases, *crisis* being rare. The implicated joints may indicate a higher temperature than other parts. Rheumatic fever is one of the diseases in which *hyperpyrexia* is most frequently observed, a remarkably sudden rise in temperature taking place, attended with grave symptoms, namely, severe rigors; marked general depression; prominent nervous phenomena; and sometimes jaundice, diarrhoea, or haemorrhages; death usually speedily ensuing unless prevented by treatment. The temperature may reach 109° , 110° , 112° , or more, and continues to rise after death. Irregularities in temperature are very common in rheumatic fever, even apart from any complications, and the latter are often not indicated by the thermometer in this disease. A disproportion between the temperature and the pulse is frequently observed.

Subacute Rheumatism.—A subacute variety of rheumatism is by no means uncommon, especially in hospital practice, which is very troublesome. There is but slight pyrexia, and one or more joints continue to be affected for a long time, with but little change, except that occasional

exacerbations are liable to occur from slight causes, or even without any evident cause. The joints implicated are not much deformed, nor are they structurally altered to any marked degree. The general condition is usually much below par.

Complications and Sequelæ.—In many cases certain internal organs and structures are implicated in the course of an attack of rheumatic fever, and the resulting morbid conditions are ordinarily classed as *complications*, but in reality some of them are *parts of the disease*, and they may occur *without any joint-affection*. At present they will be merely enumerated, as their symptoms and signs are described in other parts of this work, but it must be specially noted that they may come on very insidiously, and should therefore be constantly watched for, especially those connected with the heart, this organ being examined at least once or twice daily during an attack of rheumatic fever. These complications chiefly include:—1. Cardiac affections, namely, pericarditis; simple endocarditis, with consequent valvular disease, or malignant endocarditis; myocarditis; and the formation of fibrinous deposits or clots in the cavities of the heart. 2. Pulmonary diseases, including pleurisy; pneumonia, chiefly catarrhal; bronchitis; congestion and oedema of the lungs; and pulmonary gangrene in exceptional cases. 3. Rarely peritonitis. 4. Cerebral and spinal meningitis very rarely. In alcoholic subjects delirium tremens may supervene; and a peculiar form of insanity has been described. The cardiac affections are by far the most common, and are especially frequent in the young, being met with in cases of all grades of severity, although their frequency and intensity are as a rule in proportion to the degree of joint-affection. They become more common in second and third attacks. Rheumatic pericarditis is said to be three times more frequent in men above the age of twenty-five than in women, and this is attributed to the laborious occupations which men follow. Pericarditis and endocarditis are not uncommonly associated, especially in young subjects; and sometimes cardiac and pulmonary complications occur together, a very grave combination.

Choreiform movements are not uncommon in acute rheumatism, or even a distinct attack of chorea, especially in children, which is supposed by many to be of embolic origin. Rheumatic subjects are liable to serious inflammatory affections in connection with the eye, namely, ophthalmia, scleritis, or iritis. Cutaneous complications not uncommonly accompany acute rheumatism, of the nature of erythema, urticaria, or purpura. These eruptions have been variously named, such as peliosis rheumatica, erythema multiforme, and purpura urticans; erythema nodosum is an important form. Orchitis or inflammation of the tunica vaginalis is occasionally met with. Thrombosis of the veins of the legs is a possible complication. Rheumatism appears to have a definite relation to acute tonsillitis, the two complaints being sometimes associated, and Dr. William Hill has described different forms of tonsillitis in rheumatic fever, subacute rheumatism, and the chronic rheumatic state. There is every reason to believe that rheumatism and gout may be present in the same subject, constituting true "rheumatic gout."

Sequelæ very often follow rheumatic fever, the most important of these being permanent organic disease of one or more of the orifices or valves of the heart, especially the mitral and aortic, subsequently leading to more or less extensive changes in this organ. Pericardial adhesions remain after pericarditis. Not uncommonly the patient continues in a

weak and anaemic condition for some time. In one case which came under my observation, a state of imbecility remained after an attack of acute rheumatism.

It will be convenient to notice here certain *subcutaneous nodules*, originally described by Drs. Barlow and Warner as occurring in children and young adults, the subjects of rheumatism and chorea. They are observed in connection with fasciæ and tendons, especially near joints, most frequently over the back of the elbow, over the malleoli, and on the margins of the patella. They vary in size from a mustard seed to a bitter almond; are slightly movable usually; mostly symmetrical; and consist of loose fibrous bundles, sometimes very vascular, but never becoming bony. The skin over them is simply raised, without any heat, pain, redness, or infiltration; and often there is no pyrexia, marked fever being rare. The nodules may appear in one crop, or in succession; or they may subside partially or entirely, and then reappear. Later observations have shown that they may be met with in adults; and also in cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

Course, Duration, and Terminations.—Cases of rheumatic fever differ greatly in severity, and therefore their *course* and *duration* are exceedingly variable, but favourable cases generally become convalescent within from three to six weeks. Complications will necessarily materially influence their duration. *Relapses* are also frequent. The *termination* in the great majority of cases is in recovery, so far as the general health is concerned, but permanent cardiac mischief is often established. Sometimes stiffness of joints continues for a considerable period, or they may become chronically affected; they are also liable to subsequent neuralgic pains. Death in cases of acute rheumatism generally results either from internal complications; or from hyperpyrexia.

Diagnosis.—Gout and rheumatoid arthritis are the chief diseases from which acute rheumatism has to be distinguished; the points of difference will be considered under gout. Articular rheumatism has also to be diagnosed from the other forms. Rheumatic fever may be simulated by erysipelas, pyæmia, trichinosis, acute necrosis of bones or osteo-myelitis, dengue, influenza, or the early stage of glanders. The symptoms occurring during the apyrexial period of relapsing fever may also resemble those of acute rheumatism. Care must be taken not to mistake between local inflammation or other affections of a joint and rheumatism, especially in infants. It must, moreover, be remembered that the joints may not be implicated in the least in a rheumatic case, or so slightly that they are overlooked; special attention must be paid to the recognition of acute rheumatism in young children under such circumstances. The presence of subcutaneous nodules is considered by Drs. Barlow and Warner as an aid in the diagnosis of a rheumatic condition, when associated with chorea and heart disease, although no history of rheumatic fever can be obtained.

Prognosis.—As regards life and death, the prognosis is very favourable in cases of acute rheumatism, but in many instances it is grave with respect to the future condition of the patient, on account of the organic mischief which remains. The chief indications of immediate danger are a very high temperature, or one remaining high for some time; severe nervous disturbance, with delirium, convulsions, or coma; adynamic symptoms; extensive complications affecting the heart or lungs, or, still more, a combination of both; cerebral or spinal menin-

gitis; and a failure of the excretory functions. Chorea is considered to be a highly dangerous complication, especially when accompanied with dysphagia. The subcutaneous nodules in children, although unimportant in themselves, are said to be of serious import, because in several cases the associated heart-disease has been found actively progressive.

Treatment.—The indications which need attention in managing a case of rheumatic fever may be stated as follows:—1. To study the general comfort of the patient, and to protect carefully against exposure. 2. To encourage free excretion. 3. To get rid of or neutralize the poison or poisons in the system, if this can be effected. 4. To attend to the joints. 5. To relieve symptoms. 6. To use every precaution against complications; and treat them as they arise.

Of course it is desirable that a patient suffering from rheumatic fever should be restored to health as speedily as possible, but it is a matter of much greater consequence that the attack should be passed through without any permanent organic mischief being left behind, than that convalescence should be established within this or that number of days or weeks.

1. *General management.*—The patient should be placed in a warm bed, on a smooth, firm, but elastic mattress, between soft blankets, the limbs being made as comfortable as possible by means of pillows. A flannel shirt should be worn, which must be frequently changed when there is much sweating. It is important to avoid anything approaching a chill, hence the bed should be carefully protected from draughts, and patients should not be allowed to throw off the bed-clothes, which they are much inclined to do. It is my practice in severe cases to wrap up all the middle-sized joints, whether affected or not, in cotton-wool, and also to place a thin layer of this material over the anterior surface of the chest. The front of the shirt may be cut in such a way as to form a flap covering the region of the heart, so that by drawing it aside this region may be examined without disturbing the patient, or unduly exposing the chest. The cotton-wool must be renewed when it becomes impregnated with perspiration, the surface being dried before each fresh application is made. Sometimes it is desirable to employ a cradle to raise the bed-clothes, when the joints of the legs are very painful.

The *diet* ought not to be too low, but should consist of a good quantity of beef-tea and milk, regularly administered. Lemonade, barley-water, or other simple drinks should be freely allowed, as well as ice to suck, if desired. Alcoholic stimulants are not required in ordinary practice as a rule; in hospital practice, however, patients often need a little wine or brandy, and sometimes considerable quantities are called for during the progress of a case of rheumatic fever, when there exists a marked tendency towards debility or prostration. The bowels should be kept regularly opened.

2. *Medicinal treatment.*—It cannot be too strongly enforced at the present day that no one routine line of treatment can be absolutely relied upon in dealing with cases of acute rheumatism. Observations have been made to prove that the disease runs an equally favourable course without medicines, as when these are administered, and that it cannot be affected by drugs. This is probably true with regard to a certain number of cases, if the measures already mentioned are carefully attended to. Until within the last few years the *alkaline treatment* was most in vogue, and I still believe that it is the most efficient in some instances. In carrying out this treatment bicarbonate of potassium is

the preparation usually selected, and it may be given in doses of 30 to 40 grains every two to four hours. Certain vegetable salts, such as the citrate or tartrate, are also used, and these have the advantage that they can be made into a pleasant drink. Salts of sodium are preferred by some practitioners.

The remedies which have continued most in favour since their introduction for the treatment of rheumatic fever are salicin, salicylic acid, and salicylates, especially the salicylate of sodium. These are administered in doses of from 10 to 20 or 30 grains, at intervals of one to three or four hours, according to circumstances. The conclusions which I have arrived at from personal experience of the employment of these drugs are :—1. That in a considerable proportion of cases they are highly efficacious, speedily checking the progress of the disease; lowering the temperature; and relieving the joint-symptoms. 2. That they are more effectual in mild than in severe cases. 3. That these drugs utterly fail in not a few instances, and therefore can by no means be implicitly relied upon, and certainly do not possess the antidotal or almost *specific* action in the treatment of acute rheumatism which has been claimed for them. 4. That they are of little or no value in the prevention or treatment of cardiac complications; and may prove highly dangerous, if the action of the heart is much weakened or embarrassed. 5. That in some instances in which these medicines have signally failed, alkalies or other modes of treatment have proved undoubtedly efficacious. Different practitioners combine various other drugs with these remedies, to serve particular purposes, such as opium, aconite, or aromatic spirit of ammonia; and the combination of salicylate of sodium with bicarbonate of potassium is sometimes decidedly advantageous. The administration of this class of drugs needs to be watched, as they may produce unpleasant or even dangerous effects. Salol was introduced as having certain advantages over the other preparations, but experience has not proved favourable to its use.

Opium is another remedy of great value in some cases of acute rheumatism. It is best given in the solid form, in doses of gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ -i every three or four hours, according to the indications present; or Dover's powder is sometimes a useful preparation. This drug not only relieves pain, procures sleep, and sustains the nervous system; but it also calms any excited cardiac action, and thus tends to prevent inflammatory complications. Morphine is also very valuable, and should there be much pain, it may be administered by subcutaneous injection.

Numerous other remedies have been advocated for acute rheumatism, among which may be mentioned nitrate or iodide of potassium, phosphate of ammonium, benzoates, and various other alkaline salts; lemon-juice, in quantities of from ʒ iij to ʒ xij or more in the twenty-four hours; quinine in full doses; and tincture of perchloride or other preparations of iron. Certain agents which act powerfully upon the heart have also been employed, namely, aconite, digitalis, and especially veratrum viride. These may possibly have the effect of diminishing the tendency to cardiac inflammations, but require careful watching during their administration. Some of the modern *antipyretics* have been tried, such as phenazone, acetanilide, or phenacetin, but with doubtful results.

Various *baths* and allied methods of treatment have been much employed for rheumatic fever, namely:—the hot-air or vapour bath; different forms of cold bath; the wet-pack; the hot blanket bath; or sponging the skin with cold or tepid water.

3. *Local treatment.*—If possible, it is desirable not to apply anything to the joints except cotton-wool, but in some instances the pain is so severe that other local applications must be resorted to. As a rule warm anodyne fomentations or poultices, containing opium, belladonna, or their active principles, give most relief. To be of any use they must be put on very hot; be well-covered with oil-silk or mackintosh; and frequently changed. I have often tried the local application of an *alkaline* solution, as recommended by some authorities, but in my experience this measure has not appeared to be of much service, unless opium is added to the solution. The use of a solution of salicylate of sodium in this way has been advocated. *Cold compresses* have been much commended. Possibly the application of two or three leeches might be serviceable in exceptional cases. The treatment of rheumatic fever by extensively blistering the joints, as advocated by the late Dr. Herbert Davies, is not now practised; but the application of small blisters or of liquor epispasticus to a particular joint certainly not unfrequently speedily relieves pain, and helps to promote absorption. If an articulation remains chronically affected, this method, or the application of tincture of iodine, may be first tried; but if a speedy effect is not produced, I have found much benefit from strapping the articulation carefully and efficiently with ammoniacum and mercury plaster. If there is much effusion, it has been suggested to tap the joint by means of the aspirateur.

4. *Symptomatic treatment.*—The management of most of the symptoms which may call for interference in cases of rheumatic fever has been sufficiently indicated in the preceding remarks. The occurrence of hyperpyrexia demands immediate recourse to the energetic employment of *cold*, as described under fever; with quinine in full doses internally; and the free administration of stimulants. Many patients have been successfully treated in this way when in an apparently hopeless condition.

5. The treatment of the several *complications* of rheumatic fever will be considered in their respective chapters. At present I will only express the opinion that very rarely is any kind of bleeding justifiable for the inflammatory affections, and that calomel should never be given as an antiphlogistic. Dr. Harkin advocates the early application of a blister over the praecordial region, to produce a derivative or counter-irritant effect upon the inflamed endocardium, and thus to prevent further infection. Opium must be used with caution if the lungs are involved; and free stimulation is then demanded. In cerebral or spinal meningitis ice should be applied locally.

6. Much care is needed during *convalescence* after an attack of rheumatic fever, warm clothing being worn, with flannel next the skin, and every form of exposure avoided. The diet should be improved gradually. The patient ought to be kept in bed for some time, and under medical supervision until thoroughly convalescent; and full instructions must be given as to how to guard against future attacks. Should any of the joints remain chronically affected, the local applications already mentioned must be persevered with, and iodide of potassium administered internally. If the patient continues weak and anaemic, tincture of perchloride of iron is of signal value, either given alone or combined with quinine. Should the heart be implicated, special care is needed, and the patient must rest as much as possible for a long time, so as not to make any undue call upon this organ. A change to a warm district or climate is often highly beneficial after an attack of rheumatic fever.

2. CHRONIC ARTICULAR RHEUMATISM.

Symptoms.—This affection is common among elderly persons, usually coming on gradually as age advances, but occasionally following one or more acute or subacute rheumatic attacks. The fibrous structures connected with, as well as around the articulations, become thickened and stiff. Hence the movements of the joints are impaired, and more or less dull aching pain is felt, which becomes worse at night, and during damp or cold weather. There are no particular objective signs; and the joints are not much altered in appearance as a rule. A form of chronic arthritis is, however, met with, especially in old persons, in which only one, or at most a few joints are affected, gradual changes of a permanent character being produced, and causing deformity. This condition has been specially termed "senile arthritis" or "rheumatic gout." Probably it may be associated with chronic changes in the valves of the heart.

Treatment.—Patients suffering from chronic rheumatism should wear flannel next the skin; and avoid exposure to wet or cold, as well as rapid changes of temperature. They should be encouraged to take a moderate amount of exercise. Baths of various kinds are useful in different cases, such as warm, vapour, hot-air, Turkish, cold, salt-water, sulphur, or alkaline baths. These may also be employed locally, and douches are often very serviceable. Much good frequently results from systematic daily friction of the affected joints with some stimulating and anodyne liniment, such as camphor liniment mixed with laudanum, or with belladonna or aconite liniment; as well as from shampooing, kneading, and passive movement. Local counter-irritation by means of blisters or preparations of iodine is sometimes beneficial. Good results frequently ensue from effectually strapping an affected joint with some plaster, such as ammoniacum and mercury plaster, or iron plaster, or from bandaging. The application of sulphur under a flannel bandage, or sulphur fumigation around a joint, is another plan of treatment recommended for chronic rheumatism. The local use of the constant galvanic current has proved highly serviceable in many cases. Massage is also a useful method of treatment. The combined use of electricity, vapour-baths, and massage has proved efficacious in obstinate cases.

The internal remedies which yield the best results in chronic rheumatism are *tonics*, such as quinine, cod-liver oil, and tincture of iron. Iodide of potassium with decoction of cinchona is also very useful; or the iodide may be combined with quinine. Sulphur, guaiacum resin, sarsaparilla, actaea racemosa, salicylate of sodium, and many other drugs have been specially recommended in the treatment of this complaint. It is not uncommonly necessary to give some remedy to relieve pain and to procure rest at night. Various mineral waters are in many cases serviceable, such as those of Buxton, Bath, Harrogate, Cheltenham, Leamington, and certain of the Continental Spas; while a course of treatment in one or other of these places is also often highly beneficial. The *diet* should be nutritious and easily digestible. A small quantity of some alcoholic stimulant is generally required by persons suffering from chronic rheumatism.

3. MUSCULAR AND TENDINOUS RHEUMATISM—MYALGIA.

The muscles are frequently the seat of a very painful affection supposed to be of a rheumatic character, the fibrous structures and branches of nerves being also probably involved.

Aetiology.—The exciting cause of muscular rheumatism is either exposure to cold and wet, or to a direct draught of cold air; or excessive exertion, fatigue from being for a long time in the same posture, or muscular strain of various kinds. It is usually met with in adults, some forms of the complaint being most common among labouring men, while others chiefly affect weak and anaemic women. One attack predisposes to others. The rheumatic or gouty diathesis seems to increase the tendency to muscular rheumatism.

Symptoms.—In most cases the first attack of myalgia is *acute*, and it often comes on quite suddenly, or sets in during the night. The symptoms are pain in the affected muscles; tenderness, which is often very marked; and stiffness, with difficulty of movement, by which the pain is also much increased. The degree of suffering varies considerably, but it may be extremely severe; sometimes the pain is only felt on moving the affected muscles. In acute cases heat frequently increases it, and it is also worse at night, so that patients suffer most when in bed. Steady pressure gives relief in many cases. There may be a tendency to spasm of the affected muscles. The objective signs are referable to the fact that the patient keeps the involved structures as much at rest as possible. Pyrexia is absent, but slight constitutional disturbance may be observed, due to the pain and want of sleep. There is no tendency towards any cardiac inflammation.

In the *acute* form myalgia only lasts for a few days as a rule, but it often becomes *chronic*, or may be so from the first, and is liable to return again and again. When muscular rheumatism is chronic, heat generally relieves, while cold and damp weather aggravates the pain.

Varieties.—Muscular rheumatism may affect the voluntary muscles in any part of the body, and it is even believed that it may attack the involuntary muscles. Its most frequent and important varieties, however, are as follows:—

1. *Cephalodynia* or rheumatism of the scalp, which is characterized by a form of headache, increased on moving the muscles of the scalp, with much soreness on pressure.

2. *Torticollis, Wry-neck, or Stiff-neck.*—Muscular rheumatism very commonly involves the muscles of the neck, especially the sternomastoid. Usually it is limited to one side, towards which the neck is more or less immovably twisted, constituting one form of torticollis or wry-neck, great pain being experienced on attempting to turn the head in the opposite direction. The muscles at the back of the neck may be more particularly implicated.

3. *Omodynia, Scapulodynia, Dorsodynia.*—These forms are very commonly observed, especially among labouring men, the muscles about the shoulder or upper part of the back being affected. A particular form of "shoulder-rheumatism" has been described, accompanied with considerable pain, and interference with the movements of the upper limb. It is stated that the pain is localized mainly in the brachial

plexus above the clavicle, and at the insertion of the muscles of the shoulder girdle, especially the deltoid and the short head of the biceps; and that there is tenderness at these points. In more severe cases the pain and tenderness are more extensive. This complaint is probably generally a mixture of tendinous rheumatism and neuritis. In some cases which have come under my notice the condition seemed to be connected mainly with the tendon of the biceps, as it runs in the bicipital groove of the humerus.

4. *Pleurodynia, or Rheumatism of the Chest-walls.*—The muscles of the chest are very often implicated, especially those of the left side. The intercostals, pectorals, or serratus magnus may be involved, and the pain appears to be frequently seated over the inter-digitations of the serratus magnus with the external oblique. It is very common in the left infra-axillary region. It may be exceedingly intense, and is increased by any movement which brings the muscles into play. Respiratory movements are restrained on the affected side, and such acts as coughing or sneezing cause much distress. Not unfrequently the chief pain is localized in a point, and is of a catching character, while pressure on this point increases it, though diffused pressure with the palm may give relief. In such cases probably small branches of nerve are implicated. In other instances it alters its position from time to time. Pleurodynia simulates pleurisy, from which it can only be distinguished by careful physical examination. It often results from severe cough, and both sides are then commonly affected, as is frequently observed in phthisical and bronchitic patients.

5. *Rheumatism of the Abdominal walls* is an exceedingly painful complaint, and may be mistaken for peritonitis, on account of the marked tenderness, and interference with abdominal respiratory movements. It not unfrequently results from straining during cough.

6. *Lumbago.*—The mass of muscles, along with the fasciæ, which occupy the lumbar region, are amongst the most common seats of muscular rheumatism. It may set in with peculiar rapidity, or even suddenness, and is usually very severe. Generally both sides are affected. There may be constant aching pain across the loins, but this is increased greatly on any attempt being made to bring the muscles into action, and it then becomes of a sharp, stabbing character. The patient keeps the spine quite stiff, and generally a little bent forward; any attempt to stand erect, or, still more, to get up from the sitting posture, greatly aggravates the suffering. Sometimes the patient cannot stir in bed. Pressure intensifies the pain considerably, and heat produces the same effect in many cases.

In addition to these named varieties, muscular pains are common enough in the limbs in different parts. Sometimes cases are met with in which the plantar fascia and muscles are specially involved, causing marked soreness and tenderness of the soles of the feet, and interfering greatly with walking. The diaphragm is occasionally the seat of a rheumatic affection, which causes much distress. The muscles of the eyeball may also be affected.

Treatment.—In acute cases of muscular rheumatism, the first indication is to keep the affected muscles at rest, and in many cases this is all that is required. I treat pleurodynia by firmly strapping the affected side by means of broad strips of plaster extending from mid-spine to mid-sternum (as will be more fully described under pleurisy), and this rarely fails to give complete relief. In lumbago also the application of

a wide piece of emplastrum ferri firmly across the back, and over this a flannel bandage passing twice round the body, almost always affords much comfort. Acute cases are often relieved by warm anodyne fomentations, a sinapism or mustard-leaf, or a turpentine stupe. Dry heat does not generally answer well, as it increases the pain, but sometimes when persevered with it does good. Gentle friction is often beneficial. In lumbago the subcutaneous injection of a small quantity of morphine generally affords considerable relief. Internally the administration of bicarbonate of potassium, alone or with iodide of potassium, after free evacuation of the bowels, seems to answer best. Salicylate of sodium is also useful in some instances. An opiate may be necessary to relieve pain, or even subcutaneous injection of morphine. Exciting free dia-phoresis, by administering a warm drink and then wrapping the patient in blankets, or by the use of a vapour-bath, in some cases brings about a speedy cure. In rare instances it might be advisable to apply two or three leeches; or dry-cupping may be advantageously employed.

In *chronic* cases of muscular rheumatism, the internal remedies which do most good are iodide of potassium, quinine, and chloride of ammonium. Sulphur, guaiacum resin, arsenic, and various balsams or resins are also employed; as well as colchicum, if there is any gouty tendency. Tincture of *actaea racemosa* has been much vaunted in the treatment of lumbago. Flannel should be worn next the skin. Rest, mechanical support or pressure, cold compresses, friction with stimulating and anodyne liniments, the application of sinapisms, blisters, or iodine, and local baths or douches, with shampooing or massage, constitute the chief local remedies which are found efficacious in different cases of chronic muscular rheumatism. The use of the continuous galvanic current is sometimes attended with marked success in chronic as well as in acute muscular rheumatism. In obstinate cases it might be advisable to have recourse to subcutaneous injection of morphine, or of warm water, daily for a few days. Acupuncture; the use of Corrigan's irons; or ironing the affected part with a common flat-iron, a piece of brown paper being placed next the skin, have proved beneficial in different instances.

4. GONORRHOEAL RHEUMATISM—GONORRHOEAL SYNOVITIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—An affection of the joints is liable to set in during the course of gonorrhœa or gleet, as the result of cold, especially in young and plethoric subjects. As regards its pathology, Sir Alfred Garrod and many others consider that the complaint is allied to pyæmia, being a septic arthritis produced by infection from the urethral discharge, and it has even been attributed to the effects of the gonococcus. On the other hand, Mr. Hutchinson regards it as a true rheumatism, and believes that the predisposing cause is usually the inheritance of arthritic tendencies. It sometimes occurs in persons who are distinctly gouty. A similar kind of complaint is believed to be associated with other infective diseases, as scarlatina.

Symptoms.—The knee-joint is most commonly attacked in gonorrhœal rheumatism; but the ankles, the joints of the feet, the hip-joint, or, indeed, any or all of the joints, are also not unfrequently implicated. It is said to involve articulations rarely attacked in acute rheumatism, as the sterno-clavicular, temporo-maxillary, intervertebral, and sacro-iliac. There is considerable pain, with a tendency to much effusion and exuda-

tion, extending along the sheaths of the tendons, and giving rise to great tension and swelling, but suppuration very rarely occurs. The inflammation is very apt to recur, and to lead to permanent changes in the affected joints, which may remain stiff for a long time, with a crackling sensation on movement ; or destruction of the cartilages and subsequent ankylosis may ensue. Gonorrhœal rheumatism may occur as an *acute* or *subacute* complaint, and is liable to become *chronic*. It is often accompanied with much constitutional disturbance, more or less fever, anaemia, and debility. Several forms of arthritic affection in gonorrhœa have been described, but their consideration is beyond the province of this work. It is said that endocarditis, pericarditis, or pleurisy occasionally supervenes in gonorrhœal rheumatism ; and that the endocarditis is exceptionally of the ulcerative variety.

Treatment.—The affected joints must be kept at rest, and either well fomented or covered with evaporating lotions. When the knee-joint is implicated, the limb should be extended on a splint, as it is apt to become bent. In the acute stage Dover's powder is useful, in addition to the ordinary remedies for gonorrhœa. Salicylates are of little or no service. Afterwards iodide of potassium is beneficial, with *tonics* and some *alcoholic stimulant* if the patient is weak. Friction, shampooing, warm douching, counter-irritation, and passive movement of the joint are the measures indicated when the acute symptoms have subsided. Should suppuration occur, it may become requisite to aspirate or even to open the joint freely. It might be useful to strap the articulation in obstinate cases.

5. RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS—ARTHRITIS DEFORMANS—CHRONIC RHEUMATIC ARTHRITIS—OSTEO-ARTHRITIS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—This is a curious form of joint-affection, which is liable to bring about great deformity. It is regarded by different authorities as a special and peculiar disease, quite distinct from ordinary rheumatism or gout ; as a mere form of rheumatism or gout ; or as a combination of these diseases—hence specially termed *rheumatic gout* by some writers. Dr. Mitchell Bruce is strongly in favour of its rheumatic nature. An important view held as to the pathology of this complaint is that it depends upon some central nervous lesion, and is a neurotrophic disease, a view which is supported by Dr. Kent Spender and Dr. A. E. Garrod. Dr. Ord thinks it may be due either to a primary lesion in the cord, or to peripheral nerve-irritation.

Rheumatoid arthritis occurs mainly in those who are debilitated, and whose circulation is languid. Most cases are met with between 20 and 40 years of age, but it may occur at any period of life, even in childhood. Females suffer far more frequently than males ; and Dr. Ord has traced a connection with uterine and ovarian irritation. The complaint is chiefly observed among the poor, who live badly ; but it not uncommonly attacks those who are in the best circumstances. It is often attributed to cold or damp, or sometimes to injury. Depressing mental causes, as shock, worry, grief, or anxiety, can often be traced. There may be no obvious cause. Hereditary influence is not infrequent, so far as regards the presence of a family predisposition to joint-affections. Rheumatoid arthritis is also said to be more common in phthisical families.

Anatomical Characters.—At first rheumatoid arthritis is attended with increased vascularity of the synovial membrane of the implicated joints, and increase of synovia. After a time the capsular ligament becomes greatly thickened, irregular proliferations forming; while the synovial fluid is much diminished. The internal ligaments may be destroyed, leading to dislocation. Fibrous bands form within the articulation, and cartilaginous or calcified masses may grow there. The inter-articular fibro-cartilages break down and disappear, as well as the cartilages covering the ends of the bones. The latter ultimately become smooth and eburnated to a greater or less extent; enlarged, sometimes considerably, or, on the other hand, atrophied; and either regular or more commonly very irregular at the margins, owing to the formation of cartilaginous deposits, which calcify, and produce a ridge or "lip," or more extensive plates or protuberances. There is no trace of any deposit of urates. Wasting of muscles is an important anatomical change in connection with rheumatoid arthritis, especially the deltoid, interossei, and the muscles about the lower end of the femur. This wasting may become extreme. It is stated that the corresponding nerves have been found to be affected with neuritis.

Symptoms.—Dr. Kent Spender has drawn special attention to the early symptoms of osteo-arthritis, which he classes under four heads, namely:—1. Increased velocity and tension of the heart's action. 2. Disturbance of the chromatogenous function of the skin, giving rise to peculiar patches of bronzing and discoloration, there being a melanistic tinge around the eyes, or shining yellow pigment on the forehead. 3. Vaso-motor disturbances, indicated by clamminess of the skin, the hands feeling cold and wet, and trophic changes. 4. Special neural symptoms, of which the earliest is pain in the muscles of the ball of the thumb, or over the inner side of the wrist.

Rheumatoid arthritis may be *subacute* or *chronic* in its mode of onset. In the former case several joints are involved, being swollen, painful and tender, and stiff, while the skin is slightly red and shiny; there is, however, no erratic tendency. More or less pyrexia may be present, but there is no profuse sweating; nor does the heart show any disposition to become implicated. In the *chronic* variety one joint is first affected, being the seat of a slight degree of pain and swelling, but it soon recovers; in a short time the same articulation is again attacked, and remains permanently altered, becoming gradually worse. A disposition to symmetry is often noticed. Other joints are subsequently involved in succession, until all those of the limbs may finally be observed in various stages of morbid change, and even the temporo-maxillary and upper cervical articulations may become implicated. In course of time they become stiff, rigid, or immovable; either permanently bent or extended; and more or less distorted and nodulated; these changes being accompanied with contraction and wasting of the muscles. There may be distinct signs of fluid in the larger joints. Not uncommonly creaking or grating sensations and sounds can be elicited on passive movement of joints. Occasionally dislocation takes place.

The pain is often very considerable, being sometimes extremely severe, especially at night. The stiffness and pain on movement are frequently worse in the morning, and may wear off after the joints have been used for a time. In some cases little or no pain is complained of throughout; or it may diminish or cease as the disease progresses. Sensations of numbness or tingling are occasionally felt. Patients suffering from

rheumatoid arthritis are usually weak, anaemic, wanting in tone, deficient in appetite, and dyspeptic. They may present pigmentation, glossy skin, or onychia. Ultimately they often become completely crippled and helpless; but they may then be comparatively or entirely free from suffering, and even enjoy good health.

The hands are usually crippled before the feet, and not uncommonly present peculiar deformities. The digits are deflected towards the ulnar side of the fore-arm, a condition which has been attributed to different causes, but which is not confined to cases of rheumatic arthritis. The joint at the base of the index-finger is often greatly swollen. The meta-carpo-phalangeal articulations are bent as a rule, the first phalangeal joints over-extended, and the second flexed. In some cases, however, different deviations are met with. The lower ends of the radius and ulna project posteriorly. The toes are sometimes distorted towards the outside of the foot. The hard nodular thickenings (*digitorum nodi*—“Heberden’s nodosities”), which not uncommonly develop in connection with the phalanges of the fingers in women, much less frequently in men, are supposed by some to be indicative of rheumatoid arthritis, but they are generally regarded as being gouty in origin. In some instances of severe general type, the hands are not so much affected as other parts, and can be used. In others the disease is limited to two or three joints. Cases of rheumatoid arthritis differ greatly in their mode of progress, and the disease may appear to be arrested for a time, but breaks out again.

A partial or mono-articular form of rheumatoid arthritis is described, occurring chiefly in old people, and particularly affecting the shoulder, hip, knee, or spinal column. It is said not uncommonly to follow an injury. In the case of the hip and shoulder, the muscles waste at an early period. In the spinal column—*spondylitis deformans*—the disease is chiefly met with in the cervical region, but may involve the dorsal or lumbar spine. It completely locks the vertebræ together, and prevents all movement.

Diagnosis.—Rheumatoid arthritis has to be chiefly distinguished from gout, and the diagnosis will be considered under that disease. Assuming it to be a different complaint from rheumatism, it will also have to be diagnosed from this affection, in its acute and chronic forms. Certainly the marked structural changes in the joints, the deformities, the muscular wasting, and the general symptoms are different from those of ordinary chronic rheumatism. At first it might possibly be confounded with gonorrhœal rheumatism. Osteo-arthritis localized to one joint must not be mistaken for any surgical disease. Some maintain that the joint-lesions in locomotor ataxy are of this nature, but this affection is easily recognized by its special symptoms.

Prognosis.—Acute or early cases of rheumatoid arthritis may recover if properly treated. When the disease is chronic and advanced, some improvement may be effected, but not much as a rule. Dr. Spender is of opinion that the classes of cases most likely to be benefited by early treatment are those in which the neural symptoms are obtrusive; and the essentially arthritic and muscular group, but without ankylosis or hopeless atrophy.

Treatment.—Patients suffering from rheumatoid arthritis need a sustaining plan of treatment, which must be persevered with. The general health requires every attention; the diet must be nutritious and easily assimilated, and wine or some other form of alcoholic stimulant is

decidedly beneficial. Warm clothing, an equable and warm climate, some pleasant occupation, and moderate exercise, with daily baths, are also to be commended.

Iron, quinine, arsenic, and cod-liver oil are the most efficient internal remedies for osteo-arthritis. Syrup of iodide of iron, iodide of potassium, guaiacum resin, tincture of cimicifuga, alkaline preparations, salicine, and many other medicines have been favourably spoken of in different cases. Strychnine or nux vomica may be tried if the muscles have wasted to any marked degree. Different mineral waters and baths are sometimes beneficial, such as those of Bath, Buxton, Harrogate, Luchon, or Aix-les-Bains.

In early cases local treatment is decidedly useful. Counter-irritation; bathing and douching; vapour-baths; applications of iodine; water-dressing, with or without carbonate of sodium or lithium; systematic strapping of the joints; friction with various liniments; shampooing or massage; and the use of electricity, are the chief methods advocated. Over-used joints may need rest; while on the other hand passive movements may be of service. Anodyne applications are often required to relieve pain.

CHAPTER XXXI.

GOUT—PODAGRA.

THIS is a disease of considerable importance, both in its pronounced form, and on account of the functional disorders and organic lesions affecting different organs and structures which are so often associated with the gouty state. It is only possible within the limits of this work to give a comprehensive account of the subject, without entering into details. The disturbances and structural changes affecting particular organs will be further dealt with in their appropriate connections.

Etiology.—Gout is a markedly *hereditary* complaint, and this is partly evidenced by its development at an early period of life. It is rarely met with under 30 years of age except in hereditary cases, and then it may affect even children. The disease shows itself with greater frequency and in more marked form in the younger than in the older members of a gouty family, the diathesis strengthening in the parent with advancing years (Hutchinson). It is more readily transmitted by the female than the male line. Gout sometimes exhibits the "law of atavism," but it has been affirmed that this only applies to the transmission from a grandfather through his daughter to the grandson.

The hereditary tendency to gout is often aggravated by certain habits and modes of living, and in a large number of instances it is thus originated as an *acquired* disease. The causes which are conducive to its development include over-indulgence in certain alcoholic drinks; excessive consumption of food, especially animal food, and some think sugar and starchy elements; and deficient exercise, with general luxurious habits. These causes are often combined in the same case. Hence it is found that gout is much more prevalent among the better classes of society; as well as among publicans, butchers, butlers, and others who

have special opportunities of indulging in these habits. There is a form of "poor gout" which is met with in persons who drink much beer, while at the same time living badly as regards food, but a hereditary tendency may be discovered in some cases of this class.

Wines and malt liquors are much more conducive to the development of gout than spirits. Port-wine stands first, then come burgundy, madeira, marsala, and sherry. The lighter wines are not so hurtful, except champagne. Rum is said to be a frequent cause of gout. Sweet and unfermented cider and perry can also produce the complaint. Gout appears to be infrequent where whisky is the common alcoholic beverage. Much depends on the quality of wines in producing gout; and habitual indulgence in a mixture of alcoholic drinks is much more likely to lead to the development of the complaint.

A third group of cases of gout have for a considerable time been recognized, in which it is associated with *impregnation of the system with lead*. It does not then appear, however, unless there has been more or less indulgence in alcoholic drinks, though the quantity taken is usually far below what would alone account for the gouty state. It is found that gouty persons are very susceptible to the effects of lead; and in such subjects its administration as a medicine is likely to bring on an acute attack. In relation to this point it must be noted that, according to Dr. Thomas Oliver, of Newcastle-on-Tyne (*Goulstonian Lectures*, 1891), this intimate relation between gout and saturnine poisoning is not seen in the north. "Workmen from the south develop it in the north of England. The natives of the north, though equally exposed, seldom become gouty even when the kidneys are affected." This fact he cannot explain.

Predisposing causes.—Most first attacks of gout occur between 30 and 35 years of age, and the disease does not often commence late in life. Males suffer much more frequently than females. Those who are of sanguine temperament, plethoric, and corpulent are most subject to the disease; but thin, nervous, and wiry persons are also liable to be attacked. It was formerly thought that high mental endowments predisposed to gout, but this is not the case; prolonged mental labour, worry, and other causes which depress the nervous system have some effect. The influence of social position and occupation have already been alluded to. Duckworth is of opinion that sexual indulgence in early life predisposes to gout and the gouty cachexia. The complaint prevails chiefly in cold and temperate climates, especially in those which are at the same time damp and changeable. Early attacks of gout are most frequent in late winter or spring, the first fit being especially liable to occur towards the end of January or beginning of February. It is then likely to be repeated in the autumn, and if the complaint is not checked, the intervals become shorter and more irregular. Occupation may predispose to the development of gout in particular joints which are much used.

The *exciting cause* of a gouty fit may not be evident, but it is often traceable to some definite event, such as exposure to cold or wet, or sudden suppression of perspiration; slight injury to a joint; excessive exertion and fatigue; undue mental labour, worry, or anxiety; sudden, violent, or depressing emotions, such as joy, rage, or grief; over-eating or drinking; indulgence in indigestible food; sexual indulgence or excess; injudicious use of certain drugs, as preparations of iron or lead; prolonged constipation; or a haemorrhage or acute illness. The tendency to the recurrence of gout is increased with each succeeding paroxysm.

Pathology.—The pathology of gout has been much studied and discussed, and many elaborate theories have been propounded on the subject. It is commonly regarded as a *general* or *constitutional* disease, and a *gouty diathesis* or *dyscrasia* is usually recognized. As already mentioned in relation to rheumatism, the existence of a “basic arthritic stock” is believed in by some writers, of which gout is one of the branches.

The intimate connection between gout and *uric acid* is now almost universally granted, and this acid is generally looked upon as the morbid agent which in some way originates the disease. According to the *humoral* theory, gout is the direct result of the presence of excess of this acid, mainly as a salt of sodium, in the blood and tissues. By many it is regarded as a manifestation of the *uric* or *lithic acid diathesis*, or a state of *lithæmia*, a term introduced by the late Dr. Murchison to indicate excess of uric acid in the blood. The accumulation of this acid has been attributed to excessive formation; imperfect oxidation and reduction in the system; the presence of an abnormal amount of other acids in the blood, which, from their greater affinity, combine with the alkalies in this fluid, and thus diminish its alkalinity, so that it cannot hold uric acid or urate of sodium in solution; deficient elimination by the kidneys; or retention in the blood, and especially in the liver and spleen, owing to deficient alkalinity. Probably it may be produced in all these ways. Sir Alfred Garrod has shown that during an acute attack of gout uric acid may be detected in abundance in the blood-serum; and in long-continued chronic cases it may be obtained from this fluid at any time. It is also found in the fluid of blisters; in inflammatory serous effusions; and in dropsical accumulations. Lead interferes with the excretion of uric acid by the kidneys.

Sir William Roberts has proposed the adoption of the term *uratosis*, as distinguished from *lithæmia*, to designate the “precipitation of the crystal urates in the tissues or fluids of the body,” a condition which, even in the minutest degree, is pathological. He believes that there are different forms of uratosis (*gouty, saturnine, etc.*), and that the gouty diathesis and plumbism are radically distinct, except in their tendency to uratic deposits. He also speaks of a “microscopic uratosis,” either in the substance of organs or in the blood itself, which he thinks may account for various phenomena of the gouty state. He states that uric acid exists in the blood and the fluid diffusing therefrom chiefly as a salt of sodium, quadriurate, biurate, or both. The quadriurates are highly soluble in blood-serum, and cannot be thrown down in the crystalline state, while the biurates are very sparingly soluble in that medium, and are readily thrown down in it in a crystalline state.

The late Dr. Murchison attributed lithæmia directly to imperfect digestion, and especially to functional derangement of the liver, gout being thus induced. This organ is believed by many to have considerable influence in developing gout. Prof. Latham’s views as to the formation of uric acid have already been noticed in relation to rheumatism. For the development of gout he considers that there must be another diathesis, superimposed upon the uric acid diathesis. Certain conditions of the kidneys, and especially particular forms of organic disease, must undoubtedly be recognized as important factors in not a few instances, leading to deficient elimination.

Dr. Ord attributes gout to a special form of degeneration in certain of the fibroid textures of the body, characterized by the excessive forma-

tion of urate of sodium in the implicated tissues, whence it is discharged into the blood, and deposited here and there, especially in those parts which are least well supplied with vessels and lymphatics.

Ebstein believes that in gout nutritive tissue-disturbance is the primary factor, a process of necrosis taking place in the affected structures, followed by the deposit of urates, which does not occur before complete death of the damaged texture. Both changes must co-exist in any structure in order to constitute a truly gouty patch; and he has observed such patches in the kidneys, in hyaline and fibro-cartilages, tendons, and connective tissue. This authority further maintains that in gout uric acid may be produced in perverse localities, as in muscles and the marrow of bones.

Sir Dyce Duckworth's views as to the pathology of gout call for special notice. Others have advanced the opinion that the nervous system is concerned in the development of the complaint, but this writer adopts a definite *neuro-humoral* theory. Starting from the hypothesis of a basic arthritic stock or diathesis, he regards gout as essentially a disturbance of the central nervous system, while recognizing at the same time the relation of uric acid to the disease. This condition may be either primary and inherited, or secondary and acquired. He is inclined to think that the medulla oblongata is the particular centre involved. The supposed special neurosis influences the production and elimination of uric acid, and also its local manifestations.

The pathology of the *local manifestations* of gout requires brief notice. According to the lithæmic view, whatever causes a sudden or rapid increase of uric acid in the blood may induce a "fit" of articular gout, or other developments of the complaint. Increased acidity of the blood, driving the uric acid into the joints, the structures of which are less alkaline than other parts, is the explanation of their implication given by Haig. Others refer the phenomena to the nervous system. Sir W. Roberts believes that the quadriurate of sodium which exists normally in the blood, if it lingers unduly and accumulates therein, takes up an additional atom of base from carbonate of sodium, and becomes transformed into the insoluble biurate; and the fluids of the body being impregnated with this salt to saturation, it is suddenly precipitated, and this provokes the arthritic attack.

With regard to the inflammatory process in a gouty joint, some suppose that it is set up by the acid, or by uratic deposit, which acts as a local irritant; others that it is the result of an attempt on the part of the articular structures to eliminate and destroy the morbid agent. Sir W. Roberts thinks that the mechanical effects of the uratic deposits readily explain the phenomena of regular articular gout. It must be remembered, however, that abundant uratic deposit may take place without any definite acute attacks of gout. With some writers a physical theory is in much favour, which attributes gouty deposits and attacks to local influences. According to this theory there is a local stasis of uric acid in certain textures and situations, but in the more vascular parts this excess can be carried away by the circulation, dissolved in the blood, while in less vascular or non-vascular structures the force of the blood-current is too feeble to carry it off, and hence persistent stasis, with a gouty paroxysm. The structures forming the joints and allied structures present slight vascularity, especially the smaller joints, which are also distant from the centre of the circulation. Moreover, they are much exposed to cold and slight injuries, which

affect the irnutrition, and thus predispose them to be attacked by gout. Ebstein's opinion of the primary impairment of nutrition in structures before uratic deposit can take place has been already alluded to. It has also been held that uric acid may actually form locally in the joints, owing to the disintegration of cartilage and gelatinous structures.

With reference to the explanation of the phenomena of irregular gout, it must suffice to state that some regard uric acid as a true *poison* or *toxic agent*; but Sir William Roberts suggests that they may be due to the "microscopic uratosis" already alluded to. Moreover, certain high authorities refuse to acknowledge that the varied phenomena of the gouty state are due entirely or even chiefly to lithic acid, and they refer them to other conditions or causes.

Anatomical Characters.—Gout is characterized essentially by the deposit of urates, chiefly biurate of sodium, in various structures, especially in those entering into the construction of the joints, and in such tissues as are not very vascular. This deposit is usually accompanied with signs of inflammation, but by no means invariably. In an *acute* case there is increased vascularity, with swelling, and effusion into and around the affected joint. Even in the first attack a deposit of urate probably takes place, and this increases with each subsequent paroxysm. In the early period only the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe is usually affected; but subsequently other articulations become involved, so that almost the whole of them may be finally implicated. The deposit first occurs in the superficial part of the cartilages, in the form of fine crystalline needles or prisms, forming a more or less close net-work, and presenting different degrees of opacity. Subsequently the fibro-cartilages, ligaments, and synovial membrane become involved, the entire surface being rendered more or less irregular, and covered either uniformly or in patches with white, chalky-looking deposits, consisting mainly of urate of sodium. The synovial fluid may also contain crystals of the same substance. Owing to the infiltration of the ligaments, the articulations become stiffened or fixed. In long-continued cases the joints are ultimately greatly distorted and nodulated, and the skin over them may be destroyed, exposing the chalky-looking masses, and leading to unhealthy suppuration and ulceration. The periosteum and various bursæ may also be implicated; and some authorities believe that even bone itself may become affected in gout.

Deposits are often found in various other parts, such as the external ear, eyelids, nose, or larynx.

The kidneys become the seat of certain morbid changes in gout, which probably begin at an early period, and may occur without any joint-affection. At first a deposit of urates forms within the renal tubuli, which afterwards extends into the inter-tubular tissue. White or yellowish-white streaks are visible in the direction of the tubuli of the pyramids, and at the extremities of the papillæ. Ultimately the organs become greatly contracted and indurated, at the same time being the seat of extensive deposit; in short, a form of "granular kidney" is produced, which will be more fully described in relation to diseases of the kidneys.

Acute or chronic lesions of several other structures may be associated with gout, but these will be mentioned presently, and do not call for any special description here.

Symptoms.—Cases of gout are divided into two classes, according as the symptoms are associated with the joints—*Regular or Articular gout*; or with one of the internal organs, or some structure other than the joints—*Irregular or Non-articular gout*.

1. REGULAR OR ARTICULAR GOUT.—At first this is generally an *acute* affection, but after a time it tends to become *chronic*.

a. *Acute gout.*—The first attack of gout often comes on without any premonitory warning, but not always, and prodromata usually indicate the approach of subsequent fits. The most frequent precursory signs are derangements of the alimentary canal, with heartburn, acidity, and signs of portal congestion; palpitation or irregular action of the heart; nervous disturbances, such as headache, giddiness, disorders of vision, drowsiness and heaviness, irritability of temper, languor, restless sleep with unpleasant dreams, starting of the limbs, or cramps in the calves of the legs or in other parts; asthmatic attacks, or sudden laryngeal congestion with obstructed breathing; profuse sweats; and changes in the urine, this secretion either becoming scanty and depositing much sediment, or being very abundant and watery. Sir Alfred Garrod has found albuminuria in several instances some days before a fit of articular gout, which has continued during the attack, but has afterwards completely passed away. In some cases the patient feels unusually well, both mentally and bodily, before the occurrence of a paroxysm. This may also be preceded by some uncomfortable local sensations in connection with particular joints.

The onset of the attack usually takes place during the night, especially from 2 to 5 A.M. In the large majority of cases the *metatarsophalangeal articulation of the great toe* is the joint which is first affected, generally on one side, especially the right, but sometimes on both, or they may be attacked in succession. In some instances this joint is alone implicated during several paroxysms, but in most cases other articulations soon become involved, a number of them being affected in the course of a gouty fit, either simultaneously or in succession, though the complaint tends to be limited for a considerable time to the smaller joints of the feet and hands. Exceptionally the knee or ankle is first affected, but very rarely the larger articulations of the upper extremity.

Characters of the joint-affection.—The subjective sensations in gout are extremely severe. The pain rapidly increases until it becomes agonizing and unbearable, being described as burning, tearing, plunging, boring, or piercing. There is exquisite tenderness, so that the slightest touch cannot be endured. These sensations are usually much worse during the night, and remit during the day. Soon the joint becomes much swollen, owing to effusion of fluid into its interior, the skin over it being red, tense, hot, and shining; after a while there is considerable surrounding œdema, which pits on pressure, some degree of relief accompanying these objective signs. The superficial veins are also enlarged. As the inflammation subsides, desquamation of the cuticle takes place, and troublesome itching is often experienced. œdema may continue for some time.

It is in early attacks, and in full-blooded persons, that the phenomena just described are most marked. Subsequently the pain and other symptoms become greatly diminished; and in weakly individuals, espe-

cially females, the characteristic features of the joint-affection are not nearly so pronounced.

Constitutional symptoms of greater or less severity are present during a paroxysm of gout, being in proportion to the intensity of the local symptoms, and to the number of joints involved. Chills or even distinct rigors are felt at the outset, followed by pyrexia, usually attended with perspiration, but not excessive. Marked remissions are generally observed towards morning. The urine is very scanty and dark, and deposits urates abundantly, of variable colour; uric acid is actually deficient, though relatively in excess. The patient is very restless and sleepless, irritable, and not uncommonly suffers from cramps in the legs. The digestive and hepatic functions are much deranged, there being complete anorexia, thirst, a thickly-furred tongue, and constipation. At the close of the paroxysm there may be critical perspiration, diarrhoea, or an abundant sediment of urates in the urine.

The duration of a gouty fit varies from four or five days to several weeks, in the latter case its course being interrupted by remissions or intermissions. It becomes more prolonged as the case advances. *Recurrence* is a characteristic feature of gout, though it does not invariably happen. At first the attacks generally come on once a year, in the spring; then twice, in spring and autumn; and afterwards at more frequent intervals.

Some patients do not recover their usual health for a considerable time after a fit of gout; others are much the better for it. In a short time the affected joints become the seat of permanent changes.

b. *Chronic gout*.—This term is applied to cases in which the joints have become permanently more or less altered in structure and form; and where the attacks are frequent, as well as chronic in duration but diminished in intensity, indeed in some instances being never altogether absent; while at the same time other structures besides the joints are involved. The articulations become stiff, immovable, enlarged, nodulated, and deformed, chiefly owing to the extensive deposits of urates in their structures. The skin appears congested over them, the veins being permanently dilated. Finally it may rupture, masses of urate being exposed, named *chalk-stones* or *tophi*, portions of which are often discharged as a yellowish-white substance; or suppuration and unhealthy ulceration may be set up.

In course of time other structures are affected, such as tendons, bursæ, the periosteum covering the shafts of bones, aponeuroses, and the sheaths of muscles. Gouty abscesses may form in connection with the uratic deposits in these parts. Small deposits may also be observed in the helix of the external ear, the cartilages of the eyelids, the nose, and the sclerotic. At first they are liquid, and when punctured a whitish matter is discharged, containing abundant crystals of urates; ultimately they become solid, and form little hard nodules or beads. These gouty concretions are not always of uniform composition; they may contain urate and other salts of calcium, as well as chloride of sodium, and organic substances.

Patients suffering from chronic gout are almost always weak and wanting in tone. They may have a pale and sallow aspect; or are sometimes plethoric, but flabby-looking. They suffer from various disorders of digestion; as well as from disturbances about the heart, in the way of

palpitation or irregular action ; being also irritable or depressed and restless, and subject to cramps, twitchings, neuralgia, and other nervous disorders. A peculiar grinding of the teeth has been noticed in gouty subjects. From time to time there may be a little feverishness. The urine is generally pale, of light specific gravity, deficient in solids, and often slightly albuminous ; it sometimes contains casts. In some cases of gout the nose is subject to daily paroxysms of heat and redness.

2. IRREGULAR, NON-ARTICULAR, SUPPRESSED, and RETROCEDENT GOUT.— The terms *irregular* or *non-articular* gout apply strictly to all conditions due to the gouty state which are not connected with the articulations ; but they are often more particularly associated with certain internal and special manifestations of the diathesis. Irregular gout may occur when there is no sign of any articular affection, but usually the joints are more or less involved. The severity of the symptoms is often in an inverse ratio to that of the joint-affection, and the two classes of symptoms may exhibit a remarkable tendency to alternation. *Suppressed gout* is an expression implying that internal symptoms are due to a want of, or imperfect development of, the external phenomena ; while *retrocedent gout* signifies that from some cause or other the joint-inflammation suddenly or rapidly subsides, and marked irregular symptoms are simultaneously developed, a kind of *metastasis* being supposed to take place, but probably the phenomena are really due to elimination of uric acid being checked. It will only be practicable here to give a brief summary of the chief conditions usually regarded as manifestations of irregular gout, premising that they may be either acute or chronic, and of the nature of functional disorders, inflammatory affections, or chronic organic lesions of a special kind, many of them being attended with the deposit of urates in different structures. They may be thus arranged :—

a. Nervous disorders, such as attacks of severe headache and vertigo ; mental disturbance, the intellect being impaired, or delirium or acute mania setting in as the result of retrocedent gout ; epileptiform seizures ; various forms of neuralgia, sometimes very acute, the pain being probably due to neuritis in some instances ; morbid sensations of other kinds ; startings of the limbs, severe cramps, or local paralysis. It is believed by some authorities that gout may set up a form of meningitis ; and deposits have been met with in the spinal meninges, and the membranes covering the cerebellum. Apoplexy is common among gouty subjects, but this is probably due to the fact that the vessels are generally diseased in such persons ; a temporary apoplectic attack may be due to cerebral congestion. A gouty form of sciatica has been described, due to implication of the sheath of the sciatic nerve, which may extend up to the spinal cord and its membranes.

b. Derangements of the digestive organs. The stomach is one of the organs most commonly affected in gouty persons. There may be actual gastritis, with severe biliary vomiting ; or merely a neurotic disturbance, indicated by sudden spasmodic pain, of great intensity, but relieved by pressure, with a sense of oppression, much anxiety and distress, and sometimes marked prostration or collapse. Dysphagia is occasionally complained of. In some cases enteralgia or intestinal colic and diarrhoea are associated with gout ; or there may be acute enteritis. Signs of hepatic disorder are often evident ; and fatty liver is said to

be frequently developed in gout. Special appearances of the tongue and throat are described; and in the former a deep-seated pain is sometimes complained of.

c. Cardio-vascular disorders. There is no true gouty cardiac inflammation, such as is met with in rheumatism, but the organic changes which may be set up in connection with the heart include white patches on the pericardium; chronic valvulitis and degeneration of the valves; and hypertrophy, followed by fatty degeneration. This organ is also very liable to functional disorder. The vessels often become atheromatous, or arterio-capillary fibrosis is set up, with hypertrophy of the muscular coat of the arterioles. Symptoms and physical signs indicative of these conditions will be developed; and the cardiac action is liable to become gravely disordered at times, as evidenced by severe palpitation; or it may be very weak, or very slow or rapid, or irregular or intermittent; while at the same time the pulse is feeble and small, and there may be a tendency to syncope or collapse. Painful or disagreeable sensations are often experienced at the same time over the cardiac region, accompanied with a feeling of constriction, dyspnœa, and much anxiety; while true anginal attacks are not uncommon. There is a probable relation between gout and hæmophilia.

d. Respiratory affections. A form of asthma is often met with in gouty patients, and also dry bronchial catarrh, which is attended with much cough. Crystals of uric acid have been found in the expectoration. Emphysema is of frequent occurrence in these subjects. Pulmonary congestion may arise; but pneumonia is uncommon, and there is no special form of gouty pneumonia. Violent fits of sneezing sometimes occur in gouty subjects.

e. Urinary complaints. The abnormal conditions of the urine in gout have already been sufficiently alluded to. Functional albuminuria may occur; and also irritability of the bladder. When renal changes are developed, the urine presents corresponding morbid characters. Chronic cystitis and urethritis are not unfrequent, especially among old people. Gouty persons often suffer from gravel and calculus; and oxaluria is observed in many cases. Glycosuria is also not uncommon; and there may be definite diabetes.

f. Cutaneous affections. The chief skin-diseases which may be associated with gout are acute or chronic eczema, erythema, urticaria, psoriasis, local or general prurigo, and acne. The nails sometimes present peculiar appearances, indicating mal-nutrition.

g. Miscellaneous complaints. Under this head may be mentioned lumbago and other forms of muscular rheumatism. Mr. Hutchinson thinks that many obscure joint-affections in young persons are due to hereditary gout; and he has described a peculiar form of iritis, coming on insidiously and almost painlessly, and ending in destruction of the eye. Other affections of the eye are also attributed to gout. Certain conditions of the external auditory meatus have been described in this disease.

Diagnosis.—The chief points of difference which are usually recognized between gout, rheumatism, and rheumatoid arthritis are indicated in the following table:—

	GOUT.	RHEUMATISM.	RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS.
1. <i>Hereditariness</i> . .	Very marked.	Less marked.	Moderate.
2. <i>Social position and habits of patient</i>	Among the better classes; or those who over-feed and drink.	Among the poorer and hard-working classes chiefly.	Among the poor and ill-fed most commonly.
3. <i>Age</i>	Very rare in early life. Most first attacks from 20 to 35, but may develop much later.	Common in early life; chiefly from 16 to 20.	Usually from 20 to 40.
4. <i>Sex</i>	Much more prevalent among males.	More among males, but to less degree.	More frequent among females.
5. <i>Mode of onset</i> . .	Often no obvious cause of first attack; this is frequently preceded by digestive derangements, and other premonitory symptoms.	Usually follows an obvious cause, giving rise to a chill; and frequently no precur-sory symptoms are observed.	Exciting cause may be evident or not. Preceded by peculiar early symptoms, vaso-motor disorders, pigmentation, nervous symptoms, etc.
6. <i>Joint-affection</i> . .	The smaller joints are most affected, especially the great toe; no erratic tendency. Local symptoms very intense, with much oedema, a shining appearance of the skin, enlarged veins, and desquamation after the attack. In time permanent enlargement of the joints, with distortion, and obvious deposits of urates.	Medium-sized joints most involved; erratic, several joints being usually attacked in succession. Symptoms less severe, and less oedema present than in gout; no enlargement of veins or desquamation.	All joints equally attacked; not erratic. May be confined to one or two joints. Symptoms are not severe, but tend to long continuance. Ultimately deformity is produced, often considerable, but there is no deposit of urates in the articulations or other parts. May be much pain, sounds and sensations of crepitus, etc.
7. <i>General symptoms</i>	Pyrexia, variable in degree; much constitutional disturbance; considerable morning remissions. No special characters of perspiration.	Variable degree of pyrexia, but usually considerable; more continuous than in gout. Tendency to hyperpyrexia. Very profuse and sour-smelling sweats.	Only slight pyrexia. Symptoms of debility, anaemia, and want of tone. No profuse acid perspiration, but often tendency to sweating.
8. <i>Course, duration, and progress</i> . .	Early paroxysm of short duration; great tendency to recurrence, and to periodicity.	Attack of much longer duration; much less tendency to recurrence; not periodic.	Subacute and gradually progressive; often no complete intermission; not periodic.
9. <i>Complications</i> . .	Affects especially the stomach, brain, and kidneys; also gives rise to nervous disturbance of the heart, but not to inflammatory affections.	Very liable to cardiac inflammations; also to pulmonary inflammations. May be chorea or subcutaneous nodules.	Nothing in heart or other organs as a rule.
10. <i>Uric acid in blood</i>	Present.	None.	None.
11. <i>Torhi in auricle and other parts</i>	Present in many cases.	None.	None.
12. <i>Urine</i>	Deficiency of urates before and during the fit, followed by excess; albuminuria common; may have casts, indicating kidney disease.	Feverile; sometimes slight albuminuria.	No special characters.

Although in the great majority of cases the diagnosis between these several affections can be readily made, by attending to the points indicated in the foregoing table, yet it must be remembered that cases do occur in which the distinctions are by no means so marked, and where it becomes difficult to make out the precise nature of the complaint. In some instances there is, in my opinion, undoubtedly a combination of gout and rheumatism, constituting true *rheumatic gout*.

Prognosis.—Acute gout is rarely immediately fatal, but when the internal organs are involved there is considerable danger. The complaint is always liable to return, but much depends upon the mode of living which the patient adopts. The future prognosis is worse in proportion to the youth of the patient; to the degree of hereditary predisposition; and to the frequency of the attacks. Chronic gout decidedly tends to shorten life. The most serious signs are those indicating advanced renal disease, with non-elimination of uric acid; and marked cardio-vascular changes. Gout materially diminishes the chances of recovery from acute diseases and injuries.

Treatment.—1. *During the paroxysm.*—It is well to give a brisk purgative at the commencement of a fit of gout, such as a calomel and colocynth pill, followed by a black draught. Colchicum is generally regarded as the *specific* remedy for this affection, but it must be given with due care. From m_{xx} to m_{xxx} of wine of colchicum should be administered every four to eight hours, and it may be combined with bicarbonate or some vegetable salt of potassium, freely diluted; or with carbonate of lithium. Salicylate of sodium is strongly recommended by several eminent authorities in acute gout, and sometimes acts beneficially, though certainly it is not nearly so serviceable as in rheumatism. Phenazone, acetanilide, and allied agents are also used. The remedy named piperazine has gained a high reputation in the treatment of gout.

A free action of the skin should be kept up by the use of *diaphoretic* drinks; or the vapour or hot-air bath might be advantageously employed in some cases. A low *diet* is generally indicated at first, which should be gradually improved as the attack passes off, but it may be necessary to permit weak patients to have a good quantity of liquid nourishment throughout. As a rule stimulants ought to be prohibited, especially if the patient is young, but sometimes it is advisable to allow a certain quantity of brandy or whisky, well-diluted; in exceptional cases even champagne is of service. If there is much pain and restlessness, a dose of Dover's powder may be given at night; or subcutaneous injection of morphine may be permissible in severe cases. Bromides, tincture of hyoscyamus, sulphonal, or paraldchyde may also be employed as *hypnotics* in gout.

As regards *local treatment*, rest is of course essential, and an elevated position should be adopted for the affected parts. These should be wrapped up in flannel or in cotton-wool, covered with oil-silk. The application of collodion is said to be useful in relieving the pain of a gouty joint. If the local symptoms are very severe, warm fomentations or poultices containing opium, or localized steaming may be tried; or it may be advisable to apply more powerful *anodynes*, such as belladonna liniment, tincture or liniment ofaconite, or a solution of atropine or morphine. Local removal of blood is extremely rarely called for; but sometimes the application of a blister is useful. As the inflammation subsides, light pressure by means of a bandage or an elastic

apparatus is often serviceable, in order to get rid of the oedema and other conditions which are liable to remain; gentle friction may also be employed with advantage.

Irregular gout.—Should gout attack internal organs, an endeavour should be made to excite inflammation in the joints, by means of friction, heat, or sinapisms. In the neurotic affections, opium with *stimulants*, such as ammonia, ether, camphor, and musk are the remedies indicated; as well as alcohol. External heat and sinapisms are also of much service in these conditions. Inflammatory complications may require the application of a few leeches or of a blister, but in most cases gouty patients will not bear much depletion.

2. *During the intervals—Chronic Gout.*—There is no disease in the management of which a careful study of the patient, and of all his circumstances and surroundings, is more necessary than in the case of gout. In the early stage a practical cure may often be effected, especially in acquired cases, in so far that freedom from further attacks can be ensured, provided that due attention is paid to certain rules. Even when the gouty diathesis is hereditary, it may thus be prevented from becoming actively developed, or at all events the complaint can be warded off until a later period in life, and rendered less severe.

Diet requires strict regulation, but must necessarily vary much in different subjects. The food should be nutritious and easily digestible, consisting of a due proportion of animal and vegetable constituents, but the consumption of nitrogenous, saccharine, and starchy substances must be limited. The animal food should be limited to poultry, white fish, game, sweetbreads, and occasionally mutton. Some recommend a strictly vegetarian diet in gout. Moderation in eating, and regularity of meals, are important points to be attended to. Tea and coffee may be allowed to a limited extent; also soft and stewed fruits, provided they do not contain much sugar; but pastry must be avoided. It has been suggested that common salt should be entirely avoided by gouty persons, and decided benefit seems to have followed strict attention to this matter. Abundance of pure water is of great value as a drink in cases of gout; and hot water is in much favour with some.

The use of *alcoholic stimulants* is a matter calling for special consideration. For young persons who are hereditarily predisposed to gout, total abstinence is to be decidedly recommended, as well as for other gouty subjects when there is no obvious necessity for stimulants. The nature and quantity of any stimulant which is permitted should be always definitely stated. Malt liquors and all strong wines ought to be rigidly denied as a rule, although it is the fashion at present with some practitioners to give champagne freely in gouty cases. Lighter wines of good quality, such as claret, hock, moselle, or chablis, may be allowed in moderation; or in some cases a small amount of dry sherry. Small quantities of spirit are also permissible in some instances, either brandy, whisky, or gin, and these, as well as wines, should be taken well-diluted with potass- or lithia-water, or with Apollinaris or other suitable table-water. When a change is being made as regards the diet and drink of a gouty patient, it should not be carried out too abruptly.

With respect to *general hygienic management*, the following are the chief matters which need attention:—Moderate daily exercise in the open air, and the avoidance of sedentary habits; proper ventilation; daily bathing, followed by friction, and the occasional use of a warm,

Turkish, or tepid salt-water bath; the wearing of warm clothing, with flannel next the skin; abstinence from undue mental labour, and freedom from all sources of worry or irritation; the avoidance of late hours at night, of heated and ill-ventilated rooms, and of lying in bed late in the morning; if possible, residence in a warm and equable climate, but if this is not practicable, protection against all sudden alternations of temperature or exposure to wet and cold, with a change to a favourable climate during the winter months. Wet-packing and other forms of hydropathic treatment are decidedly useful in some cases of gout.

The *digestive organs* must be attended to. The bowels should be made to act daily, a mild *aperient* being given if necessary. Much mercury is injurious, but an occasional dose of blue-pill or calomel is often beneficial. It may be requisite to administer remedies with the view of improving digestion, especially alkalies and bitters; or of relieving portal congestion.

Mineral waters are often useful in gout, both internally and as baths, but they should only be employed under medical supervision. Those which are considered most beneficial include the waters of Buxton, Bath, Clifton, Droitwich, Harrogate, Leamington, Llandrindod, Malvern, Moffatt, Strathpeffer, and Woodhall in this country; and numerous Continental waters, such as Vichy, Weisbaden, Baden-Baden, Aix-la-Chapelle, Aix-le-Bains, Carlsbad, Kissengen, Marienbad, Homburg, Ems, Wildbad, Royat, Contrexeville, Vals, Gastein, Ragatz, Evian, Dax, La Bourboule, and various others. Mud-baths are also recommended. A course of treatment from time to time at some suitable Spa is often most useful in gouty cases.

It is scarcely necessary to add that every cause should be avoided which is likely to bring on an acute attack of gout.

Medicinal treatment.—*Colchicum* is a valuable medicine even in chronic gout, when judiciously administered; it is best given in the form of extract at night, with extract of henbane or gentian; or a few minims of wine of colchicum may be combined with other medicines. In a considerable proportion of cases of this disease *tonics* are indicated. Quinine, or some preparation of cinchona; a mild preparation of iron, such as the ammonio-citrate; arsenic; mineral acids; and bitter infusions are frequently serviceable. *Guaiacum resin* and *ammoniacum* are recommended for asthenic gout in old persons. Iodide and bromide of potassium are also beneficial in some cases. Alkaline salts and those of the alkaline earths are valuable in many cases, given freely diluted and on an empty stomach, especially the carbonates and phosphates of potassium or magnesium, or the carbonate or citrate of lithium. Benzoate of ammonium or lithium, phosphate of sodium or ammonium, lime-juice, biniodide of mercury with iodide of potassium, nitrite of amyl, and various other medicines have also been recommended in the treatment of chronic gout. Symptoms often require attention. Bromides may be useful for irritability of temper; and *paraldehyde* as a hypnotic.

Local treatment.—When the joints become much altered in gout, but little can be done locally. I have, however, seen much benefit derived, in cases not far advanced, from the continued application of wet bandages over the affected parts. Friction, shampooing, and pressure by means of strapping might also be carefully employed. Gouty ulceration requires the application of some simple dressing; a solution of a potassium or lithium salt has been favourably spoken of for this purpose.

CHAPTER XXXII.

SCORBUTUS—SCURVY.

Etiology.—Scurvy is a distinct and peculiar disease, though the term is not uncommonly ignorantly applied to a variety of skin-affections. It is met with chiefly among seafaring men, being consequently by far most commonly observed on board ship, or in the hospitals of seaport towns. During the early part of my connection with the Liverpool Northern Hospital a large number of cases were admitted within the year, but subsequently they became less numerous, owing to better regulations being carried out for the prevention of the disease.

Scurvy has been attributed to many causes, among others to the use of salt meat or of putrid meat and bad water, and to imperfect hygienic conditions; my own experience, however, would lead me to agree with those who believe that the complaint is mainly due to the want of fresh vegetable diet, or of some appropriate substitute. This was the invariable cause in the seamen in whom I observed the disease; and in some cases of *land-scurvy* which have come under my notice, the complaint could be distinctly traced to the same cause. Scurvy seems, however, to have broken out under circumstances which indicate that it might possibly arise in other ways. During the siege of Paris numerous cases of the disease occurred, which were attributed to insufficient food and bad hygienic conditions. It is not produced by starvation, as shown by its absence among professional “fasting men.”

The disease called *acute rickets*, met with in infants and children up to 10 years of age, has been shown by Cheadle and Barlow to be a form of scurvy in reality, though rickets is said to be a strong predisposing cause, and is often present. It depends upon improper feeding, and in infants is induced either by the prolonged use of artificial farinaceous foods, or because they are reared by a scorbutic mother.

Advanced age; a cold and damp climate or season; over-crowding; exposure; fatigue; and mental despondency, have been set down as *predisposing causes of scurvy*.

Pathology.—The pathology of scurvy is by no means settled. In what manner a deficient supply of vegetable food acts in producing the disease is still a disputed question, and all that can be positively stated is that this leads to some alteration in the composition of the blood. This change has been attributed to a want of potash salts, of vegetable albumen, of organic acids, and of various other constituents of vegetable substances.

Dr. Ralfe has investigated the pathology of scurvy, and has drawn the following conclusions from his observations:—

1. That the primary change that occurs in scurvy is a *chemical alteration in the quality of the blood*.

2. That this chemical alteration, as far as can be judged from inferences drawn from the analysis of urine in patients suffering from scurvy, and analysis of “scorbutic” and “antiscorbutic” diets, points to a *diminution of the alkalinity of the blood*.

3. That this *diminution of alkalinity* is produced in the first instance (physiologically) by an increase of acid salts (chiefly urates) in the blood, and finally (pathologically) by the withdrawal of salts having an alkaline reaction (chiefly alkaline carbonates).

4. That this *diminution of the alkalinity* of the blood finally produces the same results in scurvy patients as happens in animals when attempts are made to reduce the alkalinity of the body (either by injecting acids into the blood or feeding with acid salts), namely, dissolution of the blood-corpuscles, ecchymoses, and blood-stains on mucous surfaces, and fatty degeneration of the muscles of the heart, the muscles generally, and the secreting cells of the liver and kidney.

Another view advanced as to the pathology of scurvy is that it is produced by a specific micro-organism, but on no definite grounds.

Anatomical Characters.—In fatal cases of scurvy much emaciation is usually observed, with oedema of the legs. The blood is very dark and fluid, and its colouring matter stains the tissues; while the corpuscles are more or less altered or dissolved. The red corpuscles and haemoglobin are deficient in all cases of scurvy, while white corpuscles may be in excess. Extravasations are met with in the subcutaneous tissue, as well as between, or sometimes even within the muscles, within aponeurotic sheaths, and under the periosteum, and they are often firmly coagulated or partially organized. Serous and synovial effusions are common, especially pericardial effusions, these frequently containing an admixture of blood. The organs are loaded with blood, and present ecchymoses and extravasations, being also relaxed and softened. The heart exhibits ecchymoses, and its muscular tissue is the seat of granular or fatty change. A similar alteration has been observed in the secreting cells of the liver and kidneys. Acute nephritis may occur in severe cases. It is supposed that there is some morbid condition of the walls of the smaller vessels, but no definite changes have been detected. Ecchymoses may be seen under the serous membranes; while the mucous membranes are red and swollen in some parts, and also present blood-stains. In the stomach and intestines abrasions or ulcers are sometimes found. Haemorrhage into the brain or its membranes occasionally takes place. Granular fatty degeneration of the voluntary muscles is said to occur in scurvy. The appearances which are characteristic of the disease during life persist after death.

Symptoms.—Scurvy generally sets in gradually and insidiously, and cases are met with of all grades of severity, but in a well-marked example the symptoms are very striking. The patient presents a peculiar unhealthy aspect, the face being sallow and of a dirty-yellowish hue, combined with puffiness about the eyelids, and anaemia, the latter being well seen in the mucous membranes. There is more or less wasting, but emaciation may not be very marked even in bad cases. The skin becomes dry and harsh. The subjective sensations are those of languor, debility, fatigue, shortness of breath, faintness, pains and soreness in the limbs, with mental depression and despondency. These symptoms vary in degree, sometimes amounting to complete prostration, with a tendency to sudden syncope, which may even prove fatal. Scorbutic patients often exhale a peculiar odour from the skin.

The mouth affords certain characteristic signs in scurvy. The gums are either more or less swollen, turgid, dark, and spongy, sometimes reaching to, or even much beyond the level of the teeth; or they become ulcerated or gangrenous, dropping off in masses, and exposing the teeth or jaws. From the first they readily bleed, and after a time

blood oozes constantly from them. The teeth feel very tender, so that chewing becomes difficult or impossible; and they also soon become loosened, or may even drop out. Necrosis of the jaws occasionally occurs. The breath has a peculiar and excessively foul odour.

The legs present small purple spots, corresponding to and being the result of extravasations of blood into the hair-follicles. They are chiefly observed below the knees, but are not uncommon, though less abundant, on the thighs, being rarely seen on the abdomen and arms. In addition to these petechial spots, more or less extensive and irregular ecchymotic patches are visible, presenting various hues, according to the changes which the colouring matter of the extravasated blood has undergone. Brawny indurations can also be felt, due to deeper extravasations, especially in the hams and calves, and these are often very painful and tender. Edema of the feet and legs, and desquamation of the cuticle, are common symptoms. There is much stiffness and pain on movement; while a constant feeling of aching and contusion in the legs is experienced.

In some cases haemorrhages take place from various mucous surfaces. Ulcers are occasionally formed; or old ulcers may break out anew, or assume an unhealthy aspect, being covered with large bleeding granulations. It is said that old fractures sometimes become disunited, that bones soften, or that epiphyses become separated in cases of scurvy.

The alimentary canal is usually disordered. The appetite is impaired as a rule, though sometimes patients feel inclined for food, but cannot chew it, and certainly the appetite generally returns as soon as they are able to masticate. In severe cases there may be nausea and vomiting. Obstinate constipation is the rule, but occasionally the bowels are relaxed, and the stools may contain blood, or actual dysentery may be present as a complication. There is no pyrexia usually, and the temperature may be below the normal. The pulse is infrequent, weak, and small. The patient often passes restless nights. The urine is deficient in quantity, dark-coloured in some cases, and tends to decompose rapidly. Urea, phosphates, and potash are deficient; uric acid is said to be in excess. Occasionally blood or haemoglobin is present in the urine.

Infantile scurvy is characterized by earthy pallor and wasting; swelling of the gums, ranging from definite sponginess to minute transient ecchymoses; and a predominant affection of the lower limbs. These are more or less immobile; excessively tender; and present swelling, with tense and shiny skin, but seldom pitting on pressure; while there is no abnormal local heat. When the swelling subsides, a deep thickening of the shaft of the bones is found, due to haemorrhage under the periosteum; and there is a liability to fracture near the epiphyses, indicated by crepitus. The definite and rapid amelioration under antiscorbutic regimen reveals the true nature of the condition. Gee states that haematuria may be the only sign of scurvy in children.

Diagnosis.—The disease most likely to be confounded with scurvy is purpura; the diagnosis will be pointed out in the following chapter. It is necessary to be on the look-out for slighter degrees of scurvy in persons living in large towns, who do not take vegetable food. The form of the complaint occurring in children must be distinguished from mere rickets.

Prognosis.—All the cases of *sea-scurvy* which came under my notice rapidly recovered, with one exception, and in that case death resulted from an accidental complication, namely, apoplexy. Therefore the prognosis is highly favourable, if proper treatment can be adopted. In

my experience sporadic cases of *land-scurvy* are not so easily cured, and they may end fatally. Under certain circumstances even sea-scurvy is a serious disease, and may prove fatal from gradual cardiac failure, sudden syncope, meningeal haemorrhage, extravasation into serous cavities, or other complications.

Treatment.—Sea-scurvy is one of the most satisfactory diseases to treat, speedy recovery being brought about in the great majority of cases, provided the necessary remedies can be obtained, namely, plenty of fresh, soft, and succulent vegetables; with from $\frac{3}{2}$ iv to $\frac{3}{2}$ viij of lime- or lemon-juice daily. Potatoes and cabbage constitute the best forms of vegetable food. Oranges, lemons, citrons, and other fruits of this class are also most valuable. Water-cress, garden-cress, mustard, scurvy-grass, sauer-kraut, spruce, fir, and various other vegetable substances have obtained repute in the treatment of scurvy, and might be tried if the more reliable remedies cannot be procured. It is stated that vegetables act best when uncooked, but ordinarily it is quite unnecessary to give them in this condition. Yeast is well spoken of in scurvy.

Liquid nutritious food is needed, such as beef-tea and milk, often in considerable quantities, and as soon as the patient can chew, meat should be allowed. Alcoholic stimulants are frequently indicated, but should be given cautiously, and in small quantities. In a few days it is advisable to administer some *tonic*, such as quinine with tincture of perchloride of iron, which aids recovery by exciting the appetite, strengthening the patient, and improving the quality of the blood.

The mouth must at first be frequently washed out with some dilute antiseptic, of which one of the best is Condyl's fluid. At a later period a mild *astringent*, such as a solution of alum, may be used. If the gums are sloughing and bleeding, the daily application of solid nitrate of silver has been recommended by Dr. Buzzard. Constipation is generally a troublesome symptom, and is best overcome by the use of enemata. Fomentations may be applied to the painful swellings in the legs. If sub-periosteal extravasations are not absorbed, iodide of potassium may be given. Serious haemorrhage must be checked by *astringents*. Ulcers may be dressed with lime-juice, but they improve rapidly under its internal administration.

Many remedies have been recommended in the treatment of scurvy, such as salts of potassium; solution of various vegetable acids, especially citric; and phosphoric acid. In my experience these have all proved quite unreliable. Raw meat and seal's flesh have been employed, it is said, successfully for the cure of this disease.

The treatment of land-scurvy must be conducted on the same principles as that of sea-scurvy, but it is much more difficult to cure, the symptoms often lasting a considerable time, and, as already stated, death may occur from this complaint in spite of all treatment.

The prevention of scurvy is a most important matter in relation to persons who lead a sea-faring life. There is no question but that the disease can be completely prevented by the use either of fresh vegetables, preserved vegetables, or of proper lime- or lemon-juice, which should be served out daily. Whatever may be the case at present, formerly many of the specimens of so-called lime-juice used on board ship were worthless. The free employment of vinegar, and of the vegetable salts of potassium has been recommended. Milk is also useful. It is important to attend to all hygienic and other measures for maintaining the general health of the sailors; and they must avoid unnecessary exposure or fatigue.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

PURPURA—MORBUS MACULOSUS.

Etiology and Pathology.—Using the term in its general sense, the purpuric condition may be met with under a variety of circumstances. Thus it may be associated with *acute diseases*, as typhus fever, small-pox, measles, ulcerative endocarditis, pyæmia or septicæmia, and acute atrophy of the liver; certain complaints accompanied with *abnormal states of the blood or small vessels*, as scurvy, hæmophilia, pernicious anaemia, and jaundice; *skin-affections*, as erythema multiforme, urticaria, and lichen; *chronic organic diseases*, as cirrhosis of the liver, Bright's disease, malignant disease, tuberculosis, syphilis, splenic leucocythaemia, or lymphadenoma; *nervous affections*, as locomotor ataxy, especially after attacks of lightning-pains, myelitis, certain cases of hysteria, or an epileptic fit; or is one of the effects of certain *poisons* or *drugs*, especially snake-poison, iodides, quinine, copaiba, belladonna, ergot, and mercury. All these forms may be regarded as *symptomatic*. Strictly the name *purpura*, as a distinct disease, is applied to cases in which it is independent of any of these conditions. Its *aetiology* and *pathology* are then by no means clear. It has been attributed to deficiency of proper food (? vegetables), unhealthy hygienic surroundings, intemperance, amenorrhœa, and various other causes; and may also occur during convalescence from an acute illness. Purpura is said to be most common about the period of puberty; but a form met with in old people has been specially named *purpura senilis*. Persons affected with the complaint may be weak and anaemic, but not uncommonly they appear to be perfectly healthy and well-nourished. Allusion must be made to the so-called *arthritic purpura*, in which the condition is associated with joint-affection, more or less severe. This is generally regarded as a mere complication of rheumatism, but some consider the cases in which it occurs as being of a different nature.

With regard to the immediate pathology of purpura, it has been attributed to some abnormal state of the blood and small vessels. Changes in the blood have been described, but they are not constant, and it may be quite normal. A primary morbid condition of the capillaries and other small vessels, of a degenerative character, has also been supposed to exist.

Anatomical Characters.—Purpura is characterized by rupture of the capillaries and escape of blood in various parts, indicated by petechiæ and other forms of extravasation in connection with the skin; hæmorrhages from mucous, and sometimes from serous surfaces; and extravasations into the cellular tissue or muscles, or rarely into certain organs, such as the brain, lungs, and pelvis of the kidneys. Important organs are often found in a diseased condition, this being the cause of the purpuric state. The muscular fibres of the heart present the appearances of extreme fatty degeneration in prolonged cases of purpura, ending fatally from repeated hæmorrhage.

Symptoms.—Purpura is described under two chief forms:—*Purpura Simplex*; and *Purpura Hæmorrhagica*. In the former the hæmorrhages

are only observed in connection with the skin; in the latter they also take place from mucous surfaces, as well as sometimes into serous cavities, or into the substance of organs, while the cutaneous haemorrhages are generally more abundant.

The skin and subcutaneous tissue present various forms of extravasation, namely, minute points or stigmata; petechiae; vibices; or extensive ecchymoses. These are observed chiefly on the legs, and may appear in successive crops, each crop lasting a variable number of days. Their occurrence is often favoured by much standing. From their first appearance pressure produces no effect on the colour, which is often bright-red at the outset, but afterwards becomes darker, changing to purple, violet, or almost black in some cases. The usual alterations in hue which blood undergoes are seen as the extravasations disappear. The spots are generally roundish, and have a well-defined outline at the commencement, but subsequently they gradually fade into the surrounding skin. They are not at all raised, but there is often induration and swelling of the subcutaneous tissue. Blebs containing sanguineous serum sometimes form under the cuticle; and in rare instances the skin becomes actually gangrenous. The larger extravasations may be very painful and tender.

The haemorrhages from mucous surfaces which may be met with in purpura are epistaxis, bleeding from the gums and mouth, haematemesis, melæna, haematuria, haemoptysis, and menorrhagia. These may be slight, or profuse and frequently repeated. In rare instances bleeding takes place from the ear. Extravasations may also escape into or beneath the mucous membranes, such as the conjunctiva, or the membrane covering the palate, cheeks, or gums. Little blisters containing bloody serum sometimes form on the tongue or cheek. Occasionally haemorrhages from the choroidal vessels occur, even sufficient to cause blindness. Extravasation into organs is rare, but death has occurred from pulmonary or cerebral apoplexy in exceptional cases of purpura.

The general symptoms vary much, and are considerably modified by the conditions with which the purpura is associated. There are often premonitory symptoms for some time, such as general pains, languor, and debility, but not always. The attack may be ushered in by pyrexia, and occasionally febrile symptoms of a hectic type have been noticed. Pains in the abdomen, especially in the epigastrium, loins, chest, and limbs, are often complained of. The digestive organs may or may not be impaired in their functions. There is usually more or less debility, and a sense of depression, and in severe cases this becomes extreme, being accompanied with marked anaemia if much blood has been lost, and a tendency to faintness or syncope. The pulse is usually feeble, quick, and compressible. The urine may be albuminous apart from the presence of blood, and sometimes contains casts.

As regards arthritic purpura, it may be very mild and simple; or assumes the form of so-called *peliosis rheumatica* (Schönlein's disease), associated with fever, sore-throat, oedema, or skin-eruptions, as erythema, urticaria, or pemphigus; or is said sometimes to be accompanied with marked gastro-intestinal and renal symptoms.

Purpura has a very variable duration, being either acute or chronic in its progress. It usually terminates in recovery, if uncomplicated. There is a very malignant form of haemorrhagic purpura, named *purpura fulminans*, which proves rapidly fatal; it is chiefly met with in children.

Diagnosis.—The purpuric condition is generally easily recognized, but it might possibly be mistaken for ecchymoses from injury, or for fleabites. As an independent disease, purpura must be distinguished from the form associated with other complaints or conditions, and more especially from *hæmophilia* and *scurvy*.

In addition to the difference in the ætiology of the two diseases, purpura not being obviously due to the want of vegetable food, and the use of this kind of diet or of lime-juice not having any material influence in its cure or prevention, scurvy presents the following characters which distinguish it from purpura:—1. The peculiar colour and sallowness of the skin. 2. The state of the gums and mouth. 3. The greater extent of the ecchymotic patches. 4. The presence of brawny indurations in the substance of the limbs, accompanied with much pain and stiffness. 5. Extensive desquamation of the cuticle.

Prognosis.—The prognosis of purpura will depend greatly on its cause, and especially whether the complaint is associated with any organic affection. The *haemorrhagic* variety is very dangerous, and especially the *fulminant* form. *Simple* purpura is often very tedious in its progress towards recovery; and it is also liable to return, sometimes periodically. The prognosis is worse in old people.

Treatment.—In the first place it is necessary in the treatment of purpura to enquire into all *hygienic conditions*, and improve these if they have been at fault; at the same time giving a nutritious *diet*, consisting of both animal and vegetable constituents, alcoholic stimulants being also in many cases required in moderation.

Rest in the recumbent posture is generally advisable; or, at any rate, the legs should be kept raised. Attention must be paid to any cachexia present; or to any organic disease on which the purpura depends. If there is much plethora, *saline purgatives* may be given at the outset.

The chief remedies employed for the cure of purpura are tincture of perchloride of iron in full doses; turpentine; tincture of larch bark; and arsenic. The first mentioned is most useful, and it may be combined with quinine and dilute sulphuric acid. In the *haemorrhagic* form, gallic or tannic acid, alum, acetate of lead, turpentine, ergot or subcutaneous injection of ergotin, are the remedies indicated. Other astringents may also be freely administered, but they often fail to produce any effect. Sodium salicylate is recommended in arthritic purpura. Local astringents, pressure, and cold, especially by means of ice, may be tried where their application is practicable. Careful bandaging of the legs, or the use of elastic stockings, may prove advantageous in many chronic cases of simple purpura affecting the lower extremities.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

GENERAL DISEASES AFFECTING THE OSSEOUS SYSTEM.

It will be convenient to consider in this chapter certain diseases of a general or constitutional nature, some of the most striking developments of which, however, are associated with the osseous system.

I. RACHITIS—RICKETS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Although rickets is an exceedingly prevalent complaint amongst children in this and other countries, and the subject has been much discussed, very opposite views are still held as to its nature and causation.

Rickets is a *general* or *constitutional* disorder, and may be fairly regarded as a special *diathesis*. Rousseau strongly maintained the identity of rickets and osteo-malacia in the adult, and Mr. Hutchinson seems to favour this view. The general opinion, however, is that they are entirely distinct maladies.

A very important question is the relation of rickets to *congenital syphilis*. The late Dr. Parrot strenuously maintained that the constant cause of rickets is hereditary syphilis, but that at the period when syphilis produces rickets the syphilis has spent itself. Such a theory is contrary to almost universal experience; and is opposed by all the best authorities. It may be, however, that congenital syphilis ranks in some cases as one of the causes of rickets, as suggested by the late Dr. Fagge. Mr. Parker holds an entirely opposite view to that of Parrot, and affirms that "without rickets there would be little or no congenital bone syphilis."

Allusion may also be made to *tuberculosis*. Dr. Eustace Smith says that rickets never occurs in children in whom the tubercular disposition is well-marked; and a table of cases prepared for Sir William Jenner seems to show that the offspring of phthisical parents are less likely to have rickets than those of non-phthisical parents. On the other hand, one diathesis certainly does not exclude the other, and it is the opinion of some that a tubercular predisposition may favour the development of rickets.

Some writers regard *heredity* as an important aetiological factor in rickets. It is maintained by them that although the external manifestations of rickets in the parents may have disappeared, the constitutional peculiarity still remains, especially under social conditions favourable to this disease, and that the constitutional predisposition may be transmitted, which is developed under suitable conditions. It has even been stated that the rachitic conformation may be hereditarily continued. In the great majority of cases it certainly does not appear that there is any distinct hereditary transmission of rickets; at the same time the health of the parents not uncommonly has an important influence in developing the disease. Sir William Jenner doubts whether impairment of the father's health has any tendency to induce rickets;

but if the health and general nutrition of the mother are below par, and her blood impoverished, the development of rickets in the child is decidedly favoured. Rickets has been attributed to early marriage, inter-marriage, and advanced age of the father, but on no adequate grounds.

Rickets is essentially a disease of *infancy* or *childhood*. The general opinion is that it is rarely congenital, but some maintain that in many cases the complaint is actually present at birth. Parker is strongly of this opinion, and states that among patients of one month old the chest deformity and slight curves of the bones are not unfrequently seen. There is a special condition termed "foetal rickets," but this is usually regarded as quite distinct from the ordinary disease; it was termed *achondroplasy* by Parrot, and has been said to be more like a foetal cretinism. As a general rule rickets is not distinctly present before six or seven months after birth. It appears far more frequently during the first or second year than subsequently. The complaint may, however, commence as late as 7, or even 9 or 12 years of age.

While recognizing the influence of the factors already considered, there can be no doubt that rickets is commonly a disease which is originated *de novo* in a child, as the result of some obvious cause or combination of causes which lead to imperfect nutrition. Amongst these causes *improper feeding* holds a most prominent place. A very large proportion of cases occur in young infants who have been brought up by hand, either throughout or from an early period, and who have been fed artificially with various farinaceous or other articles of food. In another class prolonged suckling is the cause, the child being thus fed for sixteen or eighteen months or even longer, the milk of the mother being quite unfit for its proper nourishment, especially if at the same time, as is often the case, she is weak and anaemic. In addition, not uncommonly different kinds of unsuitable food are given in the intervals. Too frequent suckling has an influence in some instances. Again, the abrupt change from the mother's milk to other foods may have some effect in originating rickets. How these dietetic errors actually produce the disease is not settled, but probably they may do so in more ways than one. There is the premature withdrawal of the mother's milk, which is the infant's natural food; with the substitution of articles of diet which cannot be digested. In either way nutrition is impaired. And it is important to recognize the fact that rickets often results, not from any deficiency in the quantity of the food, the child being, indeed, not uncommonly overfed, but because it is wrong in quality. Another way in which improper food may help in producing rickets is by deranging the digestive functions, and irritating the alimentary canal. The complaint has even been attributed solely to chronic intestinal catarrh thus set up, but this is certainly not correct; although long-continued catarrh of the stomach and intestines, with diarrhoea, must obviously assist in developing the affection. The condition of the digestive and assimilative organs must be recognized as one element in the causation of rickets. Mr. Hutchinson would refer this disease to the class of "diet diatheses," or "assimilation diatheses," and he thinks that while defective food is probably the main cause, defective assimilation in many cases helps, and in a few cases accomplishes, the whole task.

Other causes which, at any rate, often assist in producing rickets are deficient ventilation and want of fresh air; want of sunlight; cold and

deficient clothing; and unfavourable sanitary surroundings generally. In some instances it appears to follow a previous debilitating disease.

From what has been stated as to the causes of rickets, it will be evident that the complaint is much more prevalent among the poorer classes. It is not, however, by any means uncommon amongst well-to-do people; and it has been said that amongst the latter the complaint is generally observed in the eldest child, on account of the improper feeding to which it is subjected, owing to want of experience. The children of the better classes frequently suffer also from want of fresh air. Amongst the poor it is the later children who are affected, and in this condition of life it is very common for all, after the second or third child, to be the subjects of rickets. This is partly due to the condition of the mother, who is exposed to the same unfavourable hygienic conditions as the child, is usually very badly fed, and suffers from the effects of excessive child-bearing.

Rickets is, for obvious reasons, much more prevalent in large towns and cities than in country places and small towns. With regard to its geographical distribution, the complaint is most frequent in cold and damp climates. It seems to be seldom met with in its typical form in America, India, and certain other parts; but is exceedingly common in this country.

Anatomical Characters.—The bones present some of the most obvious morbid changes in rickets, and these changes have been very fully investigated. At first there is an arrest, and then a perversion of organization and growth. It will be convenient in the first instance to give an account of the histological changes, which are observed chiefly in the cartilage of ossification; in the medulla; and in connection with the periosteum.

In normal ossifying foetal cartilage an even layer, presenting a semi-transparent and bluish appearance, is visible, placed between the ossiform and cartilaginous tissues, and named *chondroid* by Broca. In rickets, from its very commencement, this layer is altered. It increases in thickness, often considerably; and its surfaces become very irregular and sinuous. Sometimes it sends out long processes into the bone, which frequently become detached. The layer is furrowed by medullary canals of cartilage, containing dilated blood-vessels. On microscopic examination it is found to resemble cartilage undergoing physiological proliferation, but the primary capsules are much larger, and contain a greater number of secondary capsules, which are also larger. Thus rounded masses of cells are formed, of enormous size, and the cells themselves present an abnormal appearance, which has been termed "dropsical" by Klebs.

Another important change observed is that underneath the layer of cartilage just alluded to, a peculiar spongy tissue forms, named "*tissu spongoide*" by Guerin. There is a distinct line of demarcation, though a sinuous one, between the spongoid tissue and the cartilage; but it sometimes presents islets of hyaline cartilage in its midst, and it is often quite impossible to indicate precisely where the old bone ends. The spongoid substance is red and very vascular, and of the consistence of fine sponge, or of bone partially softened by an acid. It is made up of very irregular alveoli, the trabeculae forming which contain angular corpuscles irregularly scattered through a granular and non-laminated substance. The corpuscles are larger than bone-corpuscles, but have no anastomotic canaliculi. The trabeculae consist of portions of cartila-

ginous tissue not properly ossified, but infiltrated with calcareous salts. This infiltration not only involves the ground substance, but also the secondary capsules, which are not dissolved, as happens in physiological ossification. Thus the cartilaginous tissue is invaded throughout with distinct calcareous granules. While the calcareous incrustation is taking place, the vascular canals of the cartilage, springing from the medullary cavities of the old bone, enlarge by solution of the calcified tissue surrounding them, and open into each other, thus forming a cavernous system.

Coming now to the medulla, that which is contained in the spaces of the spongoid tissue is at first fluid, red, and contains round or angular cells, some pigmented, as well as numerous red blood-corpuscles. In the older medullary spaces it is more consistent, while the cells become stellate in form, and are separated by a slightly fibrillated ground substance. A similar attempt at fibrous organization of the medulla occurs in the old cancellous tissue and Haversian canals, as well as within the central canal of long bones, and under the periosteum. In the central canal the external layers are most modified, and in pronounced cases of rickets, while the centre of the marrow is red, fluid, and in a foetal condition, the periphery is organized into a kind of young connective tissue, which has the appearance of a medullary membrane.

There is a sub-periosteal layer of medulla in young subjects, but the periosteum and bone can generally be easily separated. In rickets this layer changes first into a soft connective tissue, and afterwards becomes more solid. It adheres to and unites the periosteum and bone, so that they cannot be separated, and often attains considerable thickness. In it subsequently appear refractive trabeculae, which curve over and unite with one another, and contain cells. The tissue in which these trabeculae are developed is called *osteoid tissue* by Virchow. Stellate bodies, which apparently anastomose together, are found in the trabeculae and the connective tissue, being larger and more defined in outline in the former.

In advanced rickets delicate nested lamellæ are found beneath the osteoid tissue, forming complete cylinders round the bone, and separated from each other by a soft and vascular connective tissue. The lamellæ consist of cancellous bone, and their cavities are also filled with young connective tissue. This condition results from partial absorption of bone already formed, with fibrous transformation of the medulla, and incomplete sub-periosteal ossification. Ultimately the medulla of the Haversian canals undergoes fibrous change throughout the whole thickness of the compact tissue of the diaphysis; at the same time the osseous trabeculae are absorbed, and the liberated bone cells mix with the medulla cells.

The following is a summary of the description given by Guerin of the changes observed in long bones in rickets:—The concentric lamellæ of the long bones become the seat of a nearly colourless fluid effusion, which separates them from each other. This becomes gelatiniform, reticulated, and pink—*tissu spongoide*. If the disease tends to get well, calcareous deposits form in the spongoid tissue, and can be seen with the naked eye as islets or lamellæ. Finally it acquires the consistence of normal bone. The old osseous tissue is first arrested in development, then loses its consistence, and its lamellæ waste and are partly absorbed. That which remains becomes incorporated with the newly-formed tissue. In extreme cases, where the disease does not tend towards a cure, all the old bone disappears, and gives way to a mass of spongoid tissue, reddish

in colour, areolar, elastic, and very yielding. In lesser degrees some lamellæ remain, but undergo changes in form, from their defective resistance to the weight of the body and to muscular actions.

The histological changes which take place in rickety bones during the curative stage are not known. Some think that there is merely a process of calcification.

With regard to the chemical composition of rickety bones, according to the best authorities the proportion of calcareous salts is diminished. Friedleben found from 33 to 52 per cent.; and they have been stated to be as low as 21 per cent. Lehmann affirmed that rickety bones do not yield ordinary gelatine on boiling, but an animal matter resembling that of malignant bony growths.

As the result of the changes just considered, the bones in rickets come to present more or less obvious alterations. Cornil and Ranvier distinguish three periods in the disease—in the first the bones are not deformed; in the second there are considerable deformities; and in the third consolidation of the affected bones occurs. The more prominent appearances are more or less enlargement of the ends of the long bones, especially in breadth; thickening of the flat bones, particularly at their growing edges; and various curvatures and deformities. All the bones are more or less softened, the flat bones becoming spongy, and the long bones may be so soft that they can be cut with a knife or scissors, and easily bent or broken, while partial (green-stick) or complete spontaneous fractures are not uncommon. Where a long bone is bent, its medullary canal is narrowed, and may become ultimately completely filled up by callus. After fracture of a rachitic bone very abundant callus is usually formed, but it is composed of osteoid tissue and not of true bone. There is much difference observed in different cases in the relative amount of enlargement of the ends of the bones, and of softening of the shafts. The curvatures are generally observed after the enlargements, and usually proceed from below upwards.

It is impossible to enter into any lengthy description of the distortions to which rickets give rise, and a very general outline must suffice. In the limbs the wrists and ankles are usually most enlarged, and then come the elbows and knees. The bones of the forearm are generally curved backwards, but may also be twisted; the humerus is often bent at the attachment of the deltoid. The clavicles are thickened at the ends, and their natural curves tend to be increased, so that they are shortened, and the width between the shoulders is narrowed. The bones of the lower extremity usually bend forwards and outwards, but when rickets comes on late, the curve is often in the opposite direction, and "knock-knee" is produced. Mr. Clement Lucas has described a "knock-knee tubercle" developed in such cases on the inner side of the shaft of the tibia, just below the tuberosity. The spinal column becomes bent, and often more or less twisted. The normal curves are usually exaggerated, and this is frequently accompanied with lateral deviation, resulting from rotation of the bodies of the vertebrae upon their axes. In young infants the lumbar curve is lost in the dorsal, and a "bowed" spine is produced, with the convexity backwards. The bones of the pelvis tend to be flattened and expanded above, while the sacrum is thrown forwards, and the lateral parts in the neighbourhood of the acetabulum are approximated to each other; thus the pelvic cavity is narrowed, and a section of it would be more or less triangular. The chest usually presents distinct changes. The earliest of these is the "beading" observed at the junction of the

ribs with their cartilages, constituting what has been termed the "rachitic garland." This is a very significant and early sign of rickets, beginning and being most marked in connection with the 5th, 6th, and 7th ribs (Barlow); and the beading is often more marked towards the pleural surface than externally. In course of time the thorax often becomes peculiarly deformed. Many authorities class all cases of chest-deformity from rickets under the head of "pigeon-breast," but undoubtedly a pigeon-breast may be produced without rickets, and this disease tends to originate a very distinct form of thorax, which will be described in the chapter dealing with the PHYSICAL EXAMINATION of this region. The skull is often much altered in rickets, but the descriptions given of it by different observers do not exactly correspond. The head is certainly enlarged, although it has been stated that it only appears to be so because it is out of proportion to the size of the face. It has a long antero-posterior diameter, with a high square brow, or even a projecting forehead, and unduly prominent frontal and parietal eminences, while it is flattened on the top. The sutures remain long ununited, and the fontanelles widely open; while the bones are especially thickened at a little distance from their edges, so that grooves are noticed along the sutures, with elevations on each side. Mr. Clement Lucas affirms that there is always increased width between the eyes, showing that the base of the skull is increased as well as the vertex; and he describes an extreme form of rickety head, which he calls the "scallop-shell head," composed of four convexities, like four scallop-shells loosely articulated together, corresponding to the frontal, parietal, and occipital bones. A peculiar condition of the skull has been associated with rickets, which is observed in a certain proportion of cases, and named *craniotabes* by Elsasser, who originally described it, and considered it a form of the disease peculiar to and characteristic of sucklings. It consists in an abnormal thinness of portions of the parietal and occipital bones, causing them to yield to moderate pressure, and to impart to a finger pressed upon them a sensation like that derived from stiff parchment or from the surface of a bladder. The bones may be actually perforated. The investigations of Drs. Barlow and Lees have led them to the conclusion that craniotabes is not due to rickets, nor is it simply a part of general marasmus, but that congenital syphilis is the largest factor in its causation. Their own observations, however, as well as those made by other workers, seem to show that this condition may be due to rickets alone.

The degree and extent of the various deformities and changes just indicated vary widely in different cases of rickets. If the rickety process is arrested, the bones rapidly calcify, and often become unnaturally strong and dense. If the alterations in shape have been slight they may ultimately gradually disappear. As a rule, however, they are permanent, more or less deformity remaining, and the body being stunted in growth. It is said that the skull often continues to enlarge, and may attain a great size.

It will be convenient to offer here a few remarks with regard to the *pathology* of the rickety process in bones, and the immediate causes of the deformities which it produces. The rickety changes have been regarded as the result of a subacute or chronic inflammatory process, and consequent perversion of growth and nutrition. Another view is that they are merely due to a deficiency or malposition of calcareous salts; but this is not an adequate explanation of the phenomena. Rindfleisch

defines rickets as depending upon an acceleration of the changes which usher in and prepare the way for the formation of bone, without the actual ossification keeping pace with them. There is an old "lactic acid" theory, which has been revived, and is supported by Senator, who supposes that rickets is the result of an irritant action upon the growing bones by lactic acid, formed in excess in the alimentary canal from milk or other articles of food; there being also a deficiency of phosphate of lime, either from insufficient supply, or because it is carried away by diarrhoea.

The various deformities are the immediate consequence of the softening of the bones. They result mainly from pressure and gravitation, and therefore are modified according to the age of the child, whether it is able to sit up, crawl, or walk, the mode in which it is supported and carried, the ordinary position assumed, and other circumstances. They are not produced by muscular action, but, on the contrary, muscular weakness allows many of the curvatures to take place. It is said that epiphyses which are most worked or liable to be injured show the greatest enlargement. With regard to craniotabes, this has been attributed to pressure by the brain, due to the mechanical action of its rhythmical movements, its rapid growth, and its own specific weight. Sir W. Jenner thinks the condition results from the pressure of the pillow. Parker looks upon the thin spots as islets of undeveloped bone.

All the structures of the body tend to become relaxed and wanting in tone in rickety children; and those connected with bones are arrested in growth. The muscles become more or less atrophied, pale, and flabby. No special microscopical change has been observed in the muscular tissue.

With regard to the blood in rickets, Dr. Goodhart has found in some cases deficiency of corpuscles, in others deficiency of colouring matter; and he has also specially noticed a remarkable variety in the size of the red corpuscles, along with a quantity of free granules, beaded strings, and dumb-bell accumulations.

The condition of the spleen, liver, and lymphatic glands in rickets has attracted much attention. Dr. Dickinson regards the changes in these viscera as an essential part of the rickety condition; and has observed that where the visceral change is most marked, that in the skeleton is seldom extreme. The affected organs are enlarged, but especially the spleen, without any material alteration in shape or smoothness. The increase is said by Dr. Dickinson to be a form of hypertrophy, which bears resemblance to that which occurs in bones. There is no new growth or deposit, but a large increase in the interstitial tissue, and some in the epithelial elements. In the spleen the trabecular tissue is increased, and its delicate threads swollen; but there is no sago-transformation in the Malpighian bodies. The portal cellular tissue in the liver is also augmented, soft, and loose. The absorbent glands are least affected, but of these the mesenteric show the most decided swelling, the superficial glands being only shotty to the touch. None of the involved structures give the tests of lardaceous disease; and they are deficient in earthy salts. It must be stated, however, that other observers do not agree with Dickinson's views. Gee affirms that the appearance of the spleen differs in no respect from that seen after ague, or in inherited syphilis, and thinks that its enlargement is the result, not of the rickets, but of the general state of health which causes it.

The conditions found within the cranium in rickets are also disputed. The brain may be small, with fluid between it and the skull (Gee); or it is enlarged, but the enlargement is due to increase of the neuroglia, or to albuminoid infiltration (Jenner), and not to true hypertrophy. Ordinary chronic hydrocephalus may occur; and Fagge observed in one case a form of chronic cerebritis.

The remaining morbid conditions which may be met with in cases of rickets need only to be enumerated at present, and these are:—1. Collapse and emphysema in certain parts of the lungs, in connection with the deformed and soft thorax. 2. Bronchial catarrh or extensive bronchitis. 3. Pleurisy. 4. White patches on the pericardium and spleen, due to the distorted chest. 5. Gastro-enteric catarrh.

Symptoms.—At an early period the symptoms of rickets are often very indefinite, the onset of the disease being insidious. Generally there is marked disturbance of the alimentary canal, with some degree of pyrexia, the pulse being quick and irritable. The child alters in disposition, becoming dull or sad, or peevish and irritable; is restless or drowsy; complains of headache; and is languid, refusing to play or to be amused. Either no attempt at walking is made; or, if the patient has commenced to walk, unsteadiness of gait is first observed, followed by inability to stand. At the same time wasting may be observed, the tissues becoming flabby, and the face pale. These and other non-characteristic symptoms may be present, but there are three signs which Sir William Jenner regards as pathognomonic of early rickets, namely:—1. Profuse sweating about the head, neck, and chest, especially during sleep, attended with enlargement of the veins, the other parts of the body being often at the same time hot and dry. 2. General soreness and tenderness of the body, not only affecting the bones, but also the muscles, such as those of the loins and abdomen; gradually increasing in severity until the child cries on being touched or moved, or even on the approach of anyone; cannot bear to be washed or played with; and finally keeps quite still, avoiding every movement. Older children do not suffer so much, but their limbs are painful. 3. A febrile condition, causing the child to throw off the bedclothes at night, in order to try to get cool. At this time also the urine may be very copious; and it may contain abundant calcareous salts or phosphates.

Sooner or later the *changes in the bones* are revealed, and in out-patient hospital practice it is generally found that these are more or less obvious when a child suffering from rickets is brought for treatment. The enlarged ends of the bones can be distinctly seen or felt, so that the joints appear swollen and knobby, especially those which are least covered, such as the wrists and ankles; and they also have a loose feeling. A string of nodules is usually felt along each side of the chest, at the juncture of the ribs with their cartilages. The limbs and trunk are found to be distorted and curved in various ways and degrees, as already described. In some cases the enlargement of the joints is most evident; in others the distortion of the limbs attracts most attention. Ricketty children may become flat-footed, owing to weakness of the plantar aponeurotic and muscular structures, and of the ligaments.

The head and face usually present well-marked rickety characters, and these may be extreme. The cranium is often unsymmetrical. A blowing sound has been said by Rilliet and Barthéz to be commonly

present over the cranial sutures of rickety children. The hair on the scalp is generally thin. The face looks small, especially in contrast with the large head, and is often turned upwards, owing to the head being thrown back or sinking between the shoulders, in consequence of the increase in the curve of the cervical spine. The child assumes a staid, sedate, or pensive expression, and becomes "old-looking." The teeth appear very late, in many cases none having come through at the end of a year or more; while they also rapidly decay or fall out, being deficient in enamel.

The *general* symptoms advance with the progress of rickets. Emaciation, flabbiness of tissues, debility, and loss of power become more or less marked, the child being in extreme cases completely helpless, and unable to sit up or move in the least, the head dropping in any direction. In some cases, however, there is no wasting, but rather undue fatness, and Sir William Jenner regards the emaciation as due to the changes in organs, especially the lymphatic glands. In acute cases the loss of power may become so marked, without any evident changes in the bones, that the condition simulates infantile paralysis. The skin often becomes thick and opaque, and covered with downy hairs; while profuse sweating continues. The alimentary canal is more or less deranged, and there is often much flatulence. Enlargement and protrusion of the abdomen is commonly a prominent symptom in rickets. This is due chiefly to distension of the alimentary canal with flatus; partly to depression of the diaphragm and smallness of the pelvis, enlargement of the spleen and liver in some cases, and weakness of the abdominal muscles. The spleen is in some instances easily recognized, and it may attain a large size; more commonly it has to be felt for, and is only found with some difficulty. The liver may be felt projecting two or three inches below the margin of the ribs. The glands in the neck have frequently a shotty feel, and those in the groin and axilla may be similarly affected. Pyrexia may continue; and hectic symptoms sometimes set in. Some writers, however, state that the temperature is below normal, and in twenty cases Dr. Day found the morning and evening temperature so nearly normal, that the difference was not worth notice. Development and growth are arrested more or less, the body remaining short and stunted.

Much difference of opinion exists as to the state of the intellect in rickety children. Some believe that their mental powers are above par, but this is certainly not the case, although they may appear to be very precocious, and are often amusing and old-fashioned in their ways and mannerisms; in some instances they become stupid, or even almost imbecile, this being evident in the facial expression. Rickety children are late in beginning to talk; and their memory is defective.

The urine is pale and abundant; contains an excess of earthy phosphates and lactates; and sediments of oxalate of lime also form. Urea and uric acid are said to be deficient, but deposits of uric acid may occur. Urinary calculi are not uncommon in rickety subjects.

During the course of rickets symptoms indicative of the *complications* already mentioned frequently appear. Among the most common and dangerous are bronchitis and gastro-enteric catarrh. Laryngismus stridulus and general convulsions are also very liable to occur. It has even been stated that laryngismus is never observed except in connection with rickets, but this is an exaggerated statement. Tetany is occa-

sionally met with in rickets. A fatal termination in cases of rickets is generally due to some complication; but it may be the mere result of the cachexia attending the disease.

Cases of rickets present all grades of severity and advancement. When a favourable termination ensues, the symptoms gradually subside; strength is restored; and the bones ossify, though usually more or less permanent distortion remains, which, however, may in most instances be greatly diminished by appropriate treatment. Children who have suffered from rickets in a marked form rarely attain the ordinary height; and they may become deformed dwarfs.

The cases described as "Acute Rickets" have, as already stated, been satisfactorily proved by Cheadle and Barlow to be truly scorbutic, although occasionally complicated with rickets.

Diagnosis.—In a well-marked case of rickets the diagnosis presents no difficulty, but in its earlier stages the malady is not so easily recognized. It should always be borne prominently in mind among the diseases of children, especially of those belonging to the poorer classes in large towns, though it must not be forgotten that the complaint may also be met with among the better classes. Should there be any reason to suspect rickets, full enquiry must be made with regard to its more characteristic early symptoms; and the history of the mode in which the child has been fed may also help the diagnosis. Delayed dentition, or the fact that a child shows no disposition to walk, not uncommonly first draws attention to the presence of the complaint. The nodules on the chest must be particularly looked for as one of the earliest signs of the changes connected with the bones, special attention being paid to the 5th, 6th, and 7th ribs.

Prognosis.—Most cases of rickets may be cured, if taken at a sufficiently early period, and treated properly. Its complications are very serious, and the presence of rickets adds materially to their gravity, especially in the case of chest-affections. The thoracic and pelvic deformities which it originates may prove highly injurious in course of time; and the latter are specially important in relation to parturition.

Treatment.—1. *General management.*—The first matter requiring attention in the treatment of rickets is the *feeding of the child*, which is almost always at fault, and about which thorough enquiry should be made, with the view of correcting whatever may be wrong. The breast should only be given at regular stated intervals, and for a certain time; or the child should be weaned if suckling has been continued beyond the proper period, or may be partly artificially fed. Often the health of the nursing mother requires to be improved. The feeding of children artificially needs the greatest care in this disease. Milk mixed with a fourth part of lime-water should constitute the principal article of diet, to which may be added a little cream and milk-sugar. This combination must be given in regulated quantities, and the feeding-bottle should be kept scrupulously clean. It is a common custom to give young infants considerable quantities of arrowroot, corn-flour, and various artificial foods of a farinaceous character, and these certainly do much harm. Only a very small quantity of such articles should be allowed, if any. Ass's and goat's milk are useful if they can be obtained. For older children, beef-tea in small quantities and milk puddings are valuable; and at a still more advanced period they may have a small amount of pounded meat, or be allowed to suck a piece of underdone beef, or given

the juice pressed out of it. Potatoes well mashed with gravy may also be permitted in moderation. All indigestible substances must be avoided.

Hygienic management also demands special attention. The ventilation of the bedroom must be looked to, and the child should have a separate bed, if possible, which must be kept very clean and dry. After the early symptoms have subsided, the patient should be a good deal out of doors whenever weather permits, in the sun, a dry bracing air of moderate temperature answering best. The clothing must be sufficiently warm, and the common custom of inadequately covering the lower part of the body in children ought to be avoided. A change to the seaside is very beneficial. The body should be washed over twice a day with warm water; and later on warm salt-water bathing, followed by friction, is useful. It is important to look to the position assumed by the child, and also to the movements carried on, so as to prevent deformity. Straight wooden splints lightly applied along the legs, and extending a little beyond the feet, are of use for the purpose of preventing the child from attempting to walk. The abdomen should be well-supported by a bandage. Any distortion of the limbs must be remedied, as far as possible, by systematic but judicious efforts to straighten them.

2. *Medicinal treatment*.—It is almost always necessary to treat the alimentary canal in cases of rickets, as this is usually out of order. A combination of rhubarb with carbonate of sodium, magnesia, or prepared chalk answers very well, and an occasional dose of castor-oil may be given. Grey powder is useful now and then, when the stools are offensive, but should not be habitually administered. Lime-water also improves the condition of the stomach and bowels. *Alkalies* and bitters are recommended by some practitioners. At a later stage the two great remedies for rickets are cod-liver oil and some preparation of iron, care being taken that the limbs are straightened as much as possible before these are administered. The cod-liver oil should be taken after meals, in half-a-teaspoonful or teaspoonful doses. In the case of infants it may also be rubbed into the arm-pits, and a flannel moistened with some of the oil may be worn over the abdomen. The best preparation of iron is steel-wine, but others are useful, especially the potassium-tartrate, ammonio-citrate, saccharated carbonate, syrup of the phosphate of iodide, or Parrish's food. Chalybeate waters are also of service. Sometimes it is advisable to combine quinine with the iron. The administration of phosphorus has been specially advocated in rickets.

3. *Complications*.—When any inflammatory affection develops in rickety children, supporting treatment is always indicated. Laryngismus stridulus and convulsions require tonics, and warm baths with cold douching. The slightest sign of bronchial catarrh ought to receive immediate attention, as this complaint is extremely dangerous in rickety subjects, while it aids materially in producing deformity of the chest.

II. MOLLITIES OSSIUM—OSTEO-MALACIA.

This condition demands brief notice, and it differs from rickets in that the bones, after having been properly developed, lose their natural firmness, and become more or less soft and yielding, so that they readily bend or break.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Mollities ossium is generally regarded as being due primarily to an active and progressive decalcification of the bones, owing to the action of some solvent, which has been said to be of the nature of lactic acid or carbonic acid. It has also been attributed to a form of atrophy; or to a chronic inflammatory process. The disease occurs only in adults, generally from 30 to 40 years of age; and almost entirely in females. It often begins during pregnancy; and frequent pregnancies predispose to the complaint. Osteo-malacia is met with chiefly among the poorer classes; and prevails much more in some parts of the world than others, being endemic in certain localities.

Anatomical Characters.—The prominent objective change in osteo-malacia is a softening of the bones, so that at last they can be readily bent or indented by the pressure of the finger, or cut with a knife. The change extends from within outwards, until only a thin layer of bone is left under the periosteum, but this never entirely disappears, though the surface may ultimately consist mainly of thickened periosteum, with a few plates of bone on its interior. The medullary cavity enlarges in all directions, and the substance of the bone becomes converted into a mass of soft material, which may be greasy, or finally gelatinous, and of a pale or yellowish colour. At first the medulla is very vascular, and extravasations occur here and there. The spaces are filled with nucleated marrow-corpuscles. The minute structure of the bone becomes confused, the Haversian canals running into each other, and absorption of the salts taking place from within outwards, while the lacunæ alter in shape and size. The trabeculae break down; the calcareous particles are removed; while the fat-cells diminish, and ultimately disappear.

Symptoms.—In osteo-malacia at first aching pains are complained of, worse at night usually, supposed to be rheumatic. Soon marked deformities appear, due to the softening of the bones, those connected with the spinal column, pelvis, ribs, and sternum being first observed, owing to the weight of the body, and the effects of pressure. Extreme lateral and angular curvatures are produced. The ribs become bent and broken, it may be in more than one part, until ultimately a trough-shaped hollow is often formed on each side of the body, in which the arms lie. The sternum is displaced forwards, and gives way at different points. The pelvis becomes much deformed, assuming a trifoliate shape, the promontory of the sacrum projecting forwards, as well as the symphysis pubis, which lies often at right angles to its normal direction, its rami being in contact, while the acetabula are approximated or may even touch, the transverse diameter of the pelvic outlet being thus much diminished. The bones of the limbs bend and fracture from the slightest cause; at first the fractures unite readily by bony callus, but later on they are very imperfectly repaired. The patient becomes progressively more and more deformed, and at the same time helpless, until finally she is completely bed-ridden. There is no special constitutional cachexia.

Death usually occurs sooner or later from exhaustion, but it may result from some intercurrent complication, or from the effects of pregnancy requiring instrumental interference.

Treatment.—But little can be done for osteo-malacia, and there is no special remedy for the complaint. Rest in the recumbent posture; abundant nourishing and easily digestible food; attention to hygienic conditions, especially ensuring a good supply of fresh air; and the administration of *tonics* and *nutrients*, as quinine, preparations of iron, and cod-liver oil, are the chief measures required. Child-bearing ought obviously to be absolutely forbidden in the case of females suffering from mollities ossium.

III. ACROMEGALY.

This is a peculiar complaint, first described and named by Marie in 1880, though previously known, and characterized by a remarkable enlargement of the bones, especially those of the hands and feet.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Acromegaly is most frequent in women, from 30 to 40 years of age, but has been met with both earlier and later, and also occurs in males. In females early cessation of the menses has usually taken place. It is regarded as a constitutional affection, but does not seem to be definitely related to rheumatism or osteo-arthritis. In different cases enlargement or atrophy of the thyroid gland most frequently, enlargement of the thymus gland, and tumours of the pituitary body have been observed; but what relation these morbid conditions have to the complaint is not known.

Symptoms.—The most prominent phenomena in acromegaly are connected with the osseous system. The bones of the hands and feet are enormously enlarged. The normal projections on the long bones are increased in size, and may form large prominences; while the scapulae, clavicles, and ends of the ribs are also involved. The face often presents a characteristic appearance, owing to the great dimensions which the lower jaw assumes, the lower teeth spreading out and projecting considerably beyond the upper ones. The upper jaw and the cranial bones are only occasionally affected. The spinal column is often bent, so that the normal stature of the patient is diminished more or less. In some cases the cartilages of the nose, ears, eyelids, and larynx are thickened.

Acromegaly does not present the changes in the skin and subcutaneous tissue met with in myxoedema, a disease which it is said superficially to resemble; nor does the hair become thin. Sometimes the skin over the face is coarse. There is usually profuse perspiration. Thirst is also a common symptom. Among the other chief symptoms observed in particular cases are marked alteration of the voice; enlargement of the tongue; impairment of the senses of taste and smell; blindness, due to optic atrophy; and shortness of breath, with asthmatic attacks. Palpitation may be complained of, and sometimes the heart becomes hypertrophied.

Acromegaly runs a very chronic course, but usually ends fatally, though it occasionally appears to become arrested after a time. No treatment is of any avail in curing the complaint or checking its progress.

CHAPTER XXXV.

MALIGNANT GROWTHS—CARCINOMA—CANCER.

THOUGH mainly coming within the domain of surgery, growths of a malignant nature occur not uncommonly in medical practice, and therefore a brief general consideration of the subject is called for in this work. Under the terms *carcinoma* or *cancer* are included the more malignant or epithelial growths; while *sarcoma* is associated with those which have connective tissue for their type, but which certainly may be of a malignant character. The following remarks apply more particularly to cancer, to which category the large majority of medical cases belong.

Etiology and Pathology.—In many cases of cancer a distinct hereditary or family tendency can be traced. Age exercises a marked influence as regards its occurrence, nature, and seat. It is rare in the young, being by far most common after middle life, and the mortality from this disease increases as age advances. In early life the softer varieties of malignant growth are met with; and the lymphatic glands are very liable to be involved. Primary cancer is chiefly observed in organs which have been in a condition of high functional activity, but whose functions have ceased. Females suffer most on the whole, on account of the frequency with which the uterus and mammary glands are attacked. The digestive organs, bones, and skin are most affected in males. Anxiety, mental over-work, and prolonged worry or distress, have probably an influence as *predisposing causes*. A depressing climate is also believed to act in this way. It is at present a matter of controversy whether cancer is on the increase or not. It appears to be endemic in certain districts, and Dr. Haviland's statistics have led him to conclude that cancer is most prevalent along the courses of rivers which seasonably flood their banks, and especially where, from the flatness of the country, the floods are retained.

It would be quite beyond the province of this work to attempt to discuss the pathology of cancer at any length. Suffice it to say that two opposite views are held, namely, that it is a *constitutional* disease, of which the growth is but a local manifestation; or, on the other hand, that it is in the first instance a *local* affection, the general system becoming secondarily implicated. A favourite theory now entertained is that cancer is infective, and that it is due either to a *specific microbe*, or a *specific protozoon*, which may be introduced by means of drinking water, cider, etc. At present, however, nothing definite can be stated on this aspect of the question, although different supposed organisms, sporozoa, etc., have been described. Mr. Shattock has recently given an interesting account of the existing state of the subject (*Morton Lecture on Cancer and Cancerous Diseases*), with the results of experiments made by Mr. Ballance and himself. They have found that cancer is not capable of experimental transmission; and up to the present time no specific micro-phyte—bacterium, micrococcus, or other—has been cultivated from carcinomatous tumours. The microzoic theory, which is supported by Dr. Ruffer, is now receiving considerable attention, and may lead to practical results. Malignant disease is not uncommonly grafted on some previous

chronic morbid condition; and it has been suggested that a preparatory inflammation is necessary before the infective agent, whatever it may be, can produce its effect. An important fact adduced in support of the infective theory is that a series of cases of cancer have been observed within a very limited area, including only a few houses, or even in a particular house; and such groups of cases have been styled *cancer epidemics*. This fact may, however, be explained in other ways.

Anatomical Characters.—Under this head it is necessary in the first place to give a brief description of the varieties of cancer usually recognized, which are as follows:—

1. *Scirrhous, fibrous, or hard cancer.* This variety either infiltrates tissues, or forms distinct tumours, which are irregular in shape, but never attain a very large size. The growth is often depressed, and causes puckering of overlying structures. The consistence is very hard and firm, sometimes approaching that of cartilage. A section is grey, bluish-white, or whitish, and glistening, while opaque fibrous bands may be seen intersecting the surface. This form of carcinoma presents but very slight vascularity. The outer part of the growth is less dense than its central portion, and yields a milky juice on scraping.

2. *Encephaloid, medullary, or soft cancer.* Assuming the form of tumours, or being infiltrated, encephaloid increases with great rapidity, forming considerable masses, which are more or less lobulated. The substance is soft and brain-like, and on section presents a pulpy appearance, especially towards the centre of the growth, varying in colour from white to crimson according to its degree of vascularity, and not uncommonly presenting small extravasations of blood. A large quantity of juice can be expressed. This form of cancer may produce very vascular fungous growths, being then named *fungus haematoches*. All grades are met with between the encephaloid and scirrhous forms of carcinoma.

3. *Colloid, alveolar, or gelatiniform cancer.* Many regard this variety of malignant growth as merely one of the other forms which has undergone colloid degeneration. It generally infiltrates tissues, but sometimes forms lobulated masses, which have a tolerably firm and uniform consistence. On section roundish spaces or alveoli are seen, having fibrous walls enclosing the colloid substance, which is of more or less glue-like consistence, glistening and translucent in appearance, and either colourless or greyish-yellow.

4. *Lobular epithelioma, epithelial cancer, or cancroid.* Generally observed in connection with the skin or a mucous membrane, epithelioma commences either as a hard nodule, or as a small excoriation or ulcer. The latter has indurated edges, with an irregular, grey or bloody surface, which is often papillated and villous, or nodulated. The consistence is generally firm, but may be soft and friable. The cut surface is greyish-white, or presents numerous opaque specks, and white lines of fibrous tissue; a small quantity of milky granular fluid can be expressed, which will not mix with water.

5. *Columnar or cylindrical epithelioma—Adenoid glandular cancer.* This variety forms various-sized tumours, very like those of encephaloid cancer, highly vascular, soft, and yielding an abundant milky juice. It is of rare occurrence, and usually originates on a mucous surface, but occasionally starts in the liver or some other solid organ. The lymphatic glands and other parts are liable to be involved secondarily. From its structure, this form of cancer is named *columnar* or *cylindrical epithelioma*, and it consists of tubules with a very small amount of fibrous

stroma. The tubules are usually cylindrical, of tolerably uniform size, lined with spheroidal or columnar epithelium, and generally exhibit a central cavity or canal. They are arranged irregularly. Adenoid cancer is said to present a marked resemblance to sections of the cortical substance of the kidney, deprived of malpighian bodies.

Other rarer varieties of cancer which have been described are named *melanotic*, which contain much pigment, the growth being most commonly of an encephaloid character; *cystic*, where cysts are developed; *chondroid* or *cartilaginous*; *osteoid* or *bony*; and *villous*, which affects mucous surfaces, presenting villous processes.

General and microscopic structure. All the forms of cancer consist of cells, enclosed in the meshes of a fibrous stroma, these elements differing greatly in their relative proportions in the different varieties. The cells are of large but very variable size; present diverse and curious forms; and contain one or more nuclei, as well as usually a number of fat molecules. Each nucleus is large, clear, and well-defined; eccentric; round or oval in shape; and encloses one or more nucleoli. Abundant free nuclei are often present. The expressed juice contains a quantity of these cells, as well as nuclei and free granules. The stroma is generally firm and fibrous, the fibres being either delicate or coarse; but if it has developed rapidly it presents an embryonic structure. The vessels are solely distributed in this stroma, and its fibrous bundles intersect in all directions, forming a communicating network, within the alveoli of which the cells are grouped. Lymphatics have been found accompanying the blood-vessels, and they communicate with the alveoli.

In *scirrhous* the cells, though they may be abundant at first, speedily diminish, and the fibrous stroma becomes greatly in excess, especially towards the centre of the growth, where finally no cells at all can be discovered. In *encephaloid*, on the other hand, the cells largely preponderate, developing rapidly and as speedily degenerating, becoming granular, and their nuclei being set free. There is but little stroma, which is soft, delicate, and very vascular. *Colloid* is in great part structureless, but some cells are present, which are large and spherical, often hav-



FIG. 19.
Cells from a mammary cancer, magnified 300 diameters. (After Billroth.)

delicate or coarse; but if it has developed rapidly it presents an embryonic structure. The vessels are solely distributed in this stroma,



FIG. 20.
Primary cancer of rectum. (Creighton.)

ing a lamellar outline, and containing some of the colloid material. *Epithelioma* presents generally a large number of cells, which, with few exceptions, are exceedingly like those of squamous epithelium, but are subject to great alterations in shape from mutual pressure. They tend to form peculiar *concentric globes* or *nests*, or so-called *epithelial pearls* (Fig. 21), which increase from within, so that the outer layers become hardened and flattened. Ultimately the entire groups of cells may become dry, firm, and brownish-yellow. A variable amount of stroma is present. The structure of *adenoid* cancer has already been described.

Cancerous growths are very liable to *fatty degeneration*, especially the softer forms, and as a result the cells become more granular, and softening takes place; or parts of a growth may assume a caseous appearance. *Calcification* is very uncommon. *Melanosis* and *colloid* are generally regarded as forms of cancer which have respectively undergone these peculiar degenerative processes. All cancerous growths tend to ulcerate, the ulcers having no disposition to heal, but being on the other hand inclined to spread.

Organs and tissues affected. *Scirrhous* is usually observed in the mammary gland, uterus, stomach, rectum, or skin. *Encephaloid* affects chiefly the bones, testicles, eyes, and internal organs, especially the lungs, liver, kidneys, brain, and spleen. *Colloid* particularly involves

the stomach, but may spread to the omentum, intestines, and other parts. *Epithelioma* grows in connection either with the skin or a mucous surface, but by extension it may implicate any tissue. Its ordinary sites are the lower lip, the tongue, eyelids, cheeks, scrotum, prepuce, labia, uterus, or bladder. In exceptional cases internal organs are involved.

Several parts may be attacked with cancer, either simultaneously, or usually in succession. In the latter case the original formation is said to be *primary*, and subsequent growths are named *secondary*. Secondary deposits are frequently observed in internal organs, being generally of the same variety as the primary growth, but *scirrhous* is often followed by *encephaloid* in internal organs. Malignant formations usually show a marked tendency to spread, and to infiltrate surrounding tissues, so that no line of demarcation can be observed; in rare instances a kind of capsule forms around a cancerous growth.



FIG. 21.

Epithelial Carcinoma. *a*. Separate cells; *b*. Epithelial pearls. (After Billroth.)

Symptoms.—Cancer usually gives rise to two classes of symptoms, namely, *general* and *local*. The *general* symptoms may precede any obvious local phenomena, and include more or less wasting; a peculiar

sallow, cachectic look, with a yellowish, earthy tint of countenance; a careworn, gloomy expression; debility and languor, which may culminate in a feeling of extreme depression and exhaustion; anaemia and its accompaniments; and irregular fever. These vary much in their intensity according to the part affected; as well as with the rapidity of growth and nature of the cancer, being most marked in connection with the scirrhous variety. The *local* symptoms may be summed up as pain and tenderness or other subjective sensations, often very severe, the pain being frequently of a lancinating or burning character; symptoms resulting from interference with the functions or actions of the part affected, these being in many cases of a serious character; those due to mechanical interference with neighbouring structures, by pressure, irritation, adhesion, or in other ways; and objective or *physical signs* afforded by the growth itself. The *duration* of cases of internal malignant disease is very variable, but is rarely prolonged, and sometimes they run an acute course.

Treatment.—The treatment of malignant disease belongs chiefly to the domain of surgery, the morbid growth, when conveniently situated, and when other circumstances are favourable, being removed by operation, or destroyed by the use of caustic applications and other methods. When cancer attacks internal parts, no medicine is of any avail as a curative agent, and it may confidently be affirmed that never will any remedy for this disease be discovered, although certain agents have been vaunted as such. All that can be done usually is to support the patient by means of nutritious food and other appropriate measures; and to treat the case symptomatically, according to the structure which happens to be involved. Experience has shown that operations for the removal of malignant growths in connection with internal structures may be resorted to with advantage in exceptional cases, and under favourable conditions.

II. LOCAL DISEASES.

IN treating of *local diseases* in the following pages, the plan is adopted of giving a general summary of the *clinical phenomena* which belong to the several organs and systems, and of the methods to be employed in their investigation, before entering upon the consideration of the individual affections to which they are liable. An outline is also given of the *general therapeutics* of the more important systems. It may be stated once for all that it is always of essential importance to study the *constitutional condition* of the patient, as this materially influences the diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment of local affections. The more important symptoms will be discussed as fully as the limits of this work permit.

CHAPTER I.

DISEASES OF THE MOUTH, TONGUE, AND SALIVARY GLANDS.

CLINICAL PHENOMENA.—Important indications are often afforded by the mouth and tongue with regard to the state of the system generally, as well as of the alimentary canal and its associated organs, but these parts may also be the seat of *local* affections, to such of which as are of a medical nature attention will now be directed. Their presence may be revealed by more or less of the following symptoms and signs:—

1. **Morbid sensations**, such as pain, soreness, or a feeling of heat or dryness; as well as various derangements of the sense of *taste*.
2. More or less interference with the **actions** carried on in the mouth, namely, mastication, sucking, the first stage of deglutition, and articulation. These acts are also often attended with pain.
3. Changes in the quantity or quality of the **saliva**; or the escape of abnormal **discharges**, such as pus, blood, or other materials.
4. A disagreeable odour of the **breath**, which may amount to extreme foetor.
5. Interference with the **act of breathing** occasionally, owing to mechanical obstruction to the entrance of air.
6. A change in colour, or the existence of any swelling, deposit, ulceration, or other morbid condition, as revealed on **objective examination** of the mouth, both by inspection aided by a good light, and in some cases by digital exploration. At the same time the absorbent glands in the neighbourhood should be examined.

I. INFLAMMATION OF THE MOUTH—STOMATITIS.

Stomatitis is a very common affection, and occurs under several forms. Its varieties are:—1. *Catarrhal*. 2. *Follicular*. 3. *Aphthous*. 4. *Ulcerative*. 5. *Parasitic*. 6. *Gangrenous*. 7. *Mercurial*.

Etiology.—The chief *predisposing causes* of stomatitis are:—1. Age, the different forms being far most common in infants and young children. 2. Unfavourable hygienic conditions, such as want of cleanliness, impure air, or an unhealthy residence. 3. Errors in diet, or an insufficient supply of food. 4. Unhealthy conditions of the system; or the presence of certain diseases. The different forms of stomatitis are exceedingly rife among the children of the poor, especially those living in large towns. This applies particularly to the more severe varieties of the disease, the *gangrenous* form being rarely met with except amongst this class of patients. Infants who are brought up by hand, or fed on artificial food, are very commonly affected; as well as those who have been suckled for too long a time, or have been nursed by an unhealthy mother. Children who are debilitated from any cause, and those prematurely born, are also very prone to this class of diseases. They are common in cases of congenital syphilis; and as complications or sequelæ of some of the exanthemata. *Thrush* may be associated with typhoid or other fevers; or, in adults, with chronic wasting diseases, especially phthisis. It may also be observed sometimes in old people at the approach of death. *Gangrenous* stomatitis rarely occurs except after some acute illness, particularly severe measles, less commonly scarlatina or typhoid fever.

Exciting causes.—1. *Local irritation* is one of the most frequent causes of stomatitis. This may arise from want of cleanliness of the mouth, dentition, decayed teeth, sucking imperfectly-formed or inflamed nipples or for too long a time; as well as from all forms of mechanical or chemical irritation, undue heat or cold, excessive smoking, wounds, ulcers, and other local morbid conditions. 2. The milder varieties may be associated with *disorder of the alimentary canal*. Repeated *follicular* stomatitis in adults generally indicates some gastric derangement. 3. The presence of some *poison in the blood* frequently excites stomatitis. This partly explains its occurrence in the acute specific fevers. Certain *metallic* poisons, however, are those which ordinarily and chiefly act in this way, especially mercury. 4. Inflammation of the mouth may be due to *extension* from neighbouring parts. Hence it may be associated with erysipelas of the face; or with throat-affections. 5. *Contagion* originates some forms of stomatitis. *Thrush* is the result of a parasitic fungus, the *oidium albicans* (see Fig. 22), and it can be propagated by direct transplantation of this fungus, though it does not usually spread in this way, being probably due to the presence of the spores in the air, which in the mouth find favourable conditions for their development in the decomposing food and epithelium, their growth being aided by the parts being kept at rest, and by want of cleanliness. Some authorities believe that *ulcerative* stomatitis is contagious; and micrococci have been found in connection with the *gangrenous* form.

Symptoms.—The clinical history of each variety of stomatitis needs a brief description.

1. *Simple or Catarrhal*.—When acute, this form of stomatitis begins as small bright red patches on the inside of the cheeks, or at the angles

of the mouth. Ultimately by extension and coalescence of the patches the whole mucous lining may be involved. There is more or less swelling of the affected parts. At first the surface is dry, but soon excessive secretion forms, containing many imperfect cells. Superficial erosions or ulcerations are often produced. The subjective sensations are pain or soreness, heat, a slimy feeling in the mouth, and impaired or unpleasant taste. The breath is often disagreeable. Generally the alimentary canal is out of order, as evidenced by a furred tongue, loss of appetite, and, in children, by disordered bowels and flatulence. These subjects are also irritable and sleepless. Catarrh of the mouth often occurs as a chronic affection.

2. *Follicular or Papillary*.—At first little red raised spots are seen, which feel hard; these are due to enlarged and obstructed mucous follicles. As a rule they soften and burst, discharging their contents, and leaving small, circular, well-defined ulcers, with some surrounding redness. A good deal of soreness is complained of.

3. *Aphthous or Croupous*.—Much confusion has existed with regard to the use of the term *aphthæ*, but it seems best to restrict it to certain small ulcerations, which have a special mode of origin. They commence as little whitish or whitish-yellow spots on the lips, cheeks, palate, or tongue, which are often in considerable number, and may become confluent. More or less redness surrounds each spot. These are generally considered to be vesicular, and to contain a fluid, which usually becomes opaque, while the vesicles ultimately rupture. Some authorities, however, regard them as solid exudations under the epithelium, of a croupous nature, which become detached from the circumference towards the centre, leaving superficial ulcerations. *Aphthous stomatitis* is usually attended with much pain, rendering sucking, mastication, deglutition, or even speaking difficult to perform. The buccal secretion is increased, and there may be much salivation. The breath has often a very disagreeable smell. Infants are usually feverish and restless, even for some days before the *aphthæ* appear. They refuse nourishment, but are thirsty. The tongue is furred; and diarrhoea or vomiting may be present.

4. *Ulcerative or Diphtheritic—Gyngevitis Ulcerosa*.—This is a form of inflammation which usually ends in extensive and unhealthy ulceration, and it may assume an epidemic character. It is regarded by some as being of a diphtheritic nature. As a rule it begins on the margin of the lower gums in front, but may extend backwards, or involve the lips, cheeks, or tongue. The gums appear much congested, swollen, and spongy; bleed very readily; and seem to be separated from the teeth. Soon a deposit is observed, in the form of membranous-looking patches, at first whitish, but speedily becoming grey or even black. Tolerably firm and adherent at the outset, and leaving a bleeding surface when detached, the substance shortly becomes soft and pulpy. It has been stated that the mucous membrane itself is involved, a diphtheritic slough being formed. The patches usually separate, leaving irregular ulcers, which may spread and run together so as to give rise to an extensive ulcerated line or surface. The margins of the ulcers are raised, the surrounding membrane being congested, swollen, and oedematous. They are usually not deep, and their surface is covered with a pulpy yellowish substance. If properly treated, they generally heal quickly, but in some cases serious results follow, the teeth dropping out, and the jaws becoming carious or necrosed.

The subjective symptoms are generally severe. There is a great deal of pain, increased by movement of the jaws or other local irritation; hence there is much difficulty in chewing or swallowing. The saliva is very abundant, and is frequently mixed with blood and other matters. The breath is very fetid. Often the glands in the neighbourhood are enlarged and tender. In most cases the constitutional symptoms are but slight.

5. *Parasitic* or *Fungous*—*Thrush*—*Muguet*—*White Mouth*.—By these and other names a variety of stomatitis is described, which is due to a parasitic fungus, the *saccharomyces* or *oidium albicans* (Fig. 22). Gravitz states that this fungus is a yeast, probably the *mycoderma vini*. At first red patches form, on which whitish points appear, which may extend and coalesce into considerable patches of variable thickness. They look like curdled milk, being of a soft consistence, and soon becoming easily detached. They consist of epithelium and fat, in which are imbedded the sporules and filaments of the fungus. The deposit first appears generally about the angles of the mouth, but may be noticed on any part of this cavity, and even extends occasionally to the pharynx, larynx, oesophagus, or, very rarely, to the stomach. There is necessarily a good deal of pain and soreness about the mouth, which is hot and dry, the saliva being diminished in quantity at first.

Very young infants are subject to thrush as a distinct affection, which is preceded by some slight febrile disturbance, and attended with digestive disorders, evidenced by vomiting, diarrhoea, pain, tenderness, and swelling of the abdomen, and irritation about the anus. In most cases, however, the condition is associated with some pre-existing disease, especially certain acute specific fevers, and chronic exhausting diseases, such as phthisis. Under these circumstances there may be no symptoms. In connection with the acute specific diseases the presence of thrush does not add to the danger, but in the chronic affections it is often a sign of approaching death.

6. *Gangrenous*—*Cancrum Oris*—*Noma*—*Water Canker*.—This is a very rare, but exceedingly dangerous form of stomatitis. It begins insidiously, and almost invariably first affects one of the cheeks, attacking its inner surface. When the patient comes under observation, there is usually a circumscribed hard swelling in the cheek, with surrounding oedema. The skin covering it is tense, shining, hot, and generally red, the colour shading off from the centre, which is bright; sometimes the surface is pale or mottled. The mucous membrane is merely reddened at the outset, but soon becomes discoloured and gangrenous, and a vesicle often rises upon it. Then a small irregular ulcer forms, with jagged, red or livid edges, and a sloughy surface. After a time the central spot of bright redness becomes livid, and finally black, being converted into a dry slough, which extends rapidly. At the same time the gangrene is spreading internally, so that finally the entire cheek may be affected, or even one-half of the face or more, while the gums,

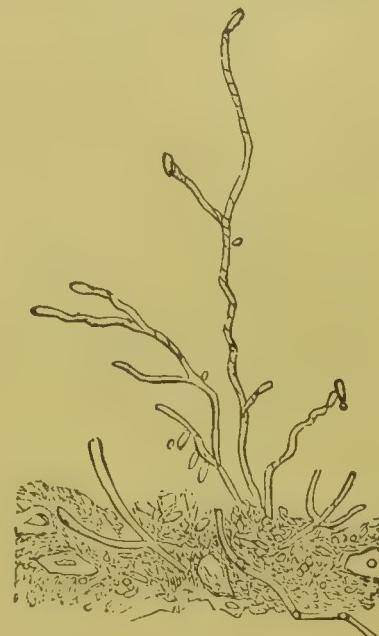


FIG. 22.
Oidium albicans. (Fairlie Clark.)

lips, and tongue are also frequently involved to a variable extent. When the sloughs separate the mouth is opened up, the teeth often drop out, and the bones may be exposed and necrosed. A hideous excavation with ragged gangrenous edges is left, which may still go on spreading. If the destructive process is checked, the surface may clean, granulate, and cicatrize, but great deformity often results, with adhesion of various structures.

The gangrene does not necessarily spread to the extent just described. It may only produce a hole in the cheek, which ultimately closes up, or remains as a fistulous opening. The glands and tissues around are always infiltrated, swollen, and indurated.

One of the most striking features of this disease consists in the fact that pain and tenderness may be either very slight, or altogether absent. A large quantity of saliva flows from the mouth, which is extremely foetid, and mixed with blood and gangrenous discharges. Serious haemorrhage does not occur, because the vessels are blocked up by coagula. The breath has an excessively foul, gangrenous odour.

The general symptoms vary considerably, but it is often observed that even when the disease is extensive, they are by no means severe. Much will depend upon the previous condition of the patient. There is not much fever as a rule, the skin being cool; and the strength may be fairly maintained for a while, at the same time food being taken eagerly. The pulse at first is rather frequent. As the disease progresses there is a tendency to prostration, the patient ultimately becoming extremely low and asthenic, with a very feeble and small pulse. Food may be taken to the last, and there is much thirst. Diarrhoea often sets in. The patient frequently becomes delirious or drowsy in fatal cases. Death may result from septicæmia or asthenia.

7. *Mercurial.*—The first effect of mercury is to cause redness and tumefaction of the gums, which feel tender and bleed readily; while the patient experiences a peculiar metallic taste, the saliva is increased, and the breath has a characteristic unpleasant odour. Afterwards superficial greyish sloughs and ulcerations form along the margins of the teeth, and the gums become detached, the teeth loosening or even falling out. There may be extensive inflammation of the mouth and tongue, ending in ulceration, suppuration, or actual gangrene. Salivation becomes very profuse, various discharges being mixed with the saliva. The salivary and lymphatic glands and other neighbouring structures are swollen and painful; while much pain is experienced in the mouth and face, with difficulty in moving the jaws, in swallowing, and in speaking. Only slight constitutional symptoms are usually observed.

Although the subject has already been discussed under syphilis, it is necessary to refer here to the effects of stomatitis, especially mercurial, upon the teeth. This complaint leads chiefly to defective formation of enamel, and the teeth become of bad colour, eroded, pitted, or "honeycombed," and often show a transverse furrow crossing them at the same level. Mr. Hutchinson regards the first permanent molars as the test teeth of infantile stomatitis, and next to these the incisors.

Diagnosis.—The different forms of stomatitis are readily recognized when the mouth is properly examined. In infants it is highly important to bear these complaints in mind, and to look to the mouth when they are ailing. It must also be mentioned that the *ulcerative* and *gangrenous* varieties sometimes develop very insidiously, giving rise to little or

no evident local or general disturbance. Foetor of the breath may lead to their discovery.

Prognosis.—Most cases of stomatitis can be readily cured, if appropriate treatment is carried out. The *ulcerative* and *gangrenous* forms of the disease may prove extremely serious or even fatal. In chronic wasting diseases, especially phthisis, and in old persons, the occurrence of *thrush* may indicate a speedily fatal termination.

Treatment.—The indications for the treatment of the various forms of stomatitis may be summed up as follows:—

1. *Hygienic conditions* must be properly observed, and duly regulated in every respect. By attention to cleanliness and other matters, many cases of stomatitis of different kinds may be readily prevented.
2. Particular attention is required with regard to *diet*, especially in the case of infants. If they are nursed from the breast, care must be taken that they are not fed too frequently or excessively; and that the nipple is properly cleansed, and in other respects satisfactory. At the same time the mother's health must be looked to, and she must be prevented from indulging in irritating articles of food. If an infant is brought up by hand, good milk should be given, while the feeding-bottle must be kept scrupulously clean, and used only at regular intervals. Enquiry should also be made as to any artificial diet employed, as this is often of a very irritating nature.
3. The state of the *alimentary canal* frequently needs correction. *Aperients* are called for in many cases, such as castor-oil, a dose of jalap with calomel, or rhubarb with magnesia or grey powder. *Antacids* are also valuable, especially lime-water with milk, carbonate of sodium or magnesium, or chalk.
4. A most important indication is to attend to any cause of *local irritation*, such as dentition, bad teeth, and excessive smoking. In the case of *mercurial* stomatitis of course the withdrawal of the drug is essential.
5. *Local applications* are often of great value. In *simple* stomatitis nothing is required, unless there should be much mucus on the surface, when it is desirable to wash the mouth out with a weak solution of bicarbonate of sodium, chlorate of potassium, or glycerine of borax. In the *aphthous*, *follicular*, and *ulcerative* forms, a solution of chlorate of potassium is very valuable, either employed as a mouth-wash, or directly applied with a camel's hair brush. If there is much irritation *demulcent* mouth-washes afford relief, such as thin mucilage. A weak solution of Condy's fluid is serviceable for the purpose of checking foetor. Subsequently *astringent* applications are often called for, especially alum in the form of solution or powder. The direct application of nitrate of silver to ulcers may be requisite, either in the solid form or as a solution. In the treatment of *thrush* various local remedies are useful, such as diluted sulphurous acid; a solution of sulphite or hyposulphite of sodium; borax and honey or glycerine; vinegar and water; creasote; bromide of sodium with glycerine and water; or solution of chlorate of potassium. *Cancrum oris* calls for energetic local treatment. The *gangrenous* surface must be at once freely and effectually destroyed by strong nitric or hydrochloric acid, or other escharotic, and it may be necessary to repeat the application. *Antiseptic* mouth-washes should then be freely used, such as one containing Condy's fluid, chlorine, carbolic acid, or carbolate of glycerine, which may also be employed as local dressings. Chlorate of potassium solution is likewise very valuable in this form of disease. Poultices externally are also required, these being changed frequently, and sprinkled with some antiseptic.
6. *General treatment* is called for under certain circum-

stances. In the majority of cases of ordinary stomatitis no general treatment is required, but if the health is lowered from any cause, it is important to use measures for its improvement. When there is extensive ulceration, *tonics* and tincture of perchloride of iron, along with nutritious diet, are often of essential service; and the internal administration of chlorate of potassium also leads to most satisfactory results. In *gangrenous* stomatitis one of the most necessary parts of the treatment consists in keeping up the patient's strength in every possible way, by means of nourishing soups, wine or brandy, ammonia and decoction of cinchona, mineral acids, or quinine with tincture of perchloride of iron. Chlorate of potassium solution should be employed as a drink at the same time. The internal administration of sulpho-carbolate of sodium, sulphite of sodium, or other *antiseptics* is recommended in this form of the disease.

II. ACUTE GLOSSITIS—ACUTE INFLAMMATION OF THE TONGUE.

Occasionally the surface of the tongue is inflamed, and it may be covered by a herpetic eruption, which may subsequently ulcerate. The important variety of acute glossitis, however, is that in which there is inflammation of its actual substance, leading to an exudation in the midst of its muscular fibres, which are themselves involved in exceptional instances. This is a rare, but very acute and dangerous affection.

Aetiology.—1. Some *direct irritation* is almost always the cause of acute glossitis, which may result from mechanical injury; swallowing boiling liquids or very hot solids; the contact of an acrid, putrid, or corrosive substance; or a sting of the tongue by some insect, especially the bee and wasp. 2. It is very rarely due to some *poison* in the system, especially mercury. 3. Occasionally glossitis occurs as a *complication or sequela* of one of the exanthemata. 4. In extremely rare cases it originates from *extension of inflammation* from neighbouring parts, such as the tonsil. 5. It is sometimes attributed to *taking cold*.

Description and Symptoms.—The entire tongue is usually implicated, and presents the following characters:—The organ is enlarged, so that the mouth cannot contain it, and it may even project some distance beyond the teeth, being indented at the sides, while the pressure exerted upon it may lead to ulceration. The surface is dark-red, generally smooth, shining, and tense, but it may be fissured. The dorsum is covered with fur, which tends to be brownish. Owing to its protrusion and exposure, the tongue soon becomes dry. If resolution does not speedily take place, small abscesses are liable to form in the substance of the organ, which coalesce, and finally burst if they are not opened. Rarely gangrene ensues. The tongue may remain large for a considerable time. Acute glossitis is attended with marked pain and tenderness, a feeling of heat, and other uncomfortable sensations. All the functions of the organ are necessarily greatly interfered with. Occasionally, by causing mechanical obstruction, or by pressing upon or setting up oedema of the larynx, the enlarged organ seriously impedes respiration, and may even threaten asphyxia. There is much salivation; while the breath is very offensive. The salivary glands and surrounding tissues are usually inflamed; and the face may appear tumid and congested, in consequence of pressure upon the jugular veins.

The *general* symptoms are severe in most cases of acute glossitis, there being much inflammatory fever, with marked restlessness. Nutrition becomes seriously impaired; and signs of imperfect aeration of the blood may supervene.

Diagnosis.—The appearances presented by the tongue, and the accompanying local symptoms, are sufficiently characteristic of acute glossitis.

Prognosis.—Acute glossitis is at all times a serious affection, but especially when it results from severe local irritation. It may lead to speedy suffocation. The formation of abscesses increases the gravity of the prognosis.

Treatment.—The first thing to be done in treating acute glossitis is to neutralize any cause of irritation, for instance, the sting of a wasp, which should be immediately touched with solution of ammonia. For severe cases the best treatment seems to be to make free and deep incisions along the upper surface of the tongue. In milder instances the application of a few leeches about the angles of the jaw is recommended. Ice should be constantly given to suck, and the parts must be kept moist. A warm mouth-wash containing borax is useful. *Saline uperients* may be administered, if required. Ammonia and other *stimulants* are often of service; as well as quinine, iron, and other *tonics*. When food cannot be swallowed, it may be necessary to keep up the strength by nutrient enemata. If asphyxia is threatened, it is sometimes requisite to perform laryngotomy or tracheotomy. Incisions must be made as soon as signs of abscess appear.

III. CHRONIC GLOSSITIS AND ALLIED CONDITIONS.

There are certain chronic conditions affecting the tongue, some of which also involve the buccal mucous membrane, and these may be briefly considered together, as they are all due to a chronic inflammatory change of some kind. The tongue may remain enlarged after acute glossitis. Chronic abscess occasionally forms in the organ, the cause of which cannot usually be made out. It is of very slow formation; painless; and produces a tense, elastic swelling, commonly on the dorsum, in front of the circumvallate papillæ. A condition termed *glossitis dissecans* is of rare occurrence, a number of deep fissures and indentations gradually forming on the surface of the tongue.

Syphilis produces different forms of chronic glossitis in its later stages. *Psoriasis lingue* is a condition in which successive limited patches of the epithelium become dead-white and drop off, leaving a red raw surface, which is again speedily covered. *Chronic superficial glossitis* affecting the mucous membrane, is characterized by the appearance of raw-looking patches, of a deep-red colour, often oval or oblong in shape, smooth and glossy on the surface, slightly elevated, and firm to the touch. The epithelium over these patches is either entirely shed, or extremely thin. The entire tongue is swollen; often indented at the edges by the teeth, which may lead to ulceration; and sometimes presents a bluish, congested hue. The secretion over the affected surfaces is viscid and glairy; and the breath may be very offensive. Should the active process subside, the tongue may diminish in size, but the patches remain smooth and shining. A sensitive cicatricial tissue is left, apt to inflame readily, and ultimately portions of it may become whitish and

fibrous. A *chronic interstitial glossitis* is rarely met with in syphilis, in which the tongue is the seat of a diffused fibroid infiltration of gummata tissue, which may cause it to become deeply and irregularly scarred, or much deformed, while the surface presents a very varied appearance.

Certain forms of chronic superficial inflammation of the tongue, sometimes also affecting the buccal mucous membrane to a less degree, have been recognized as *leucoma*, *leucoplakia lingualis et buccalis*, *ichthyosis lingue*, *tylosis*, and by other terms. These have also been attributed to syphilis, but in other cases are supposed to be due to gout, dyspeptic conditions, mechanical irritation, smoking, and indulgence in strong spirits, hot condiments, and the like. In *leucoplakia*, which is most common, one or more patches form (*leucomata*), oval or irregular in shape, blue or yellowish-white, smooth, and somewhat firm when pinched between the fingers. *Ichthyosis* implies that the papillæ are much enlarged, and covered with horny epithelium, giving the tongue a warty appearance. The term *hairy tongue* has been applied when the filiform papillæ are specially hypertrophied. Another change sometimes noticed is that the tongue becomes smooth and red on the surface, and somewhat swollen. In *leucoplakia* the patient often does not complain of any local symptoms; but sometimes the patches throw off their epithelium, and become irritable and sore, this being accompanied with more or less salivation, and a tendency to the formation of fissures or ulcers. These are liable to occur on the smooth tongue, which is also highly sensitive usually. These conditions of the tongue are very prone to end in epithelioma.

Treatment.—The first indication in treating all these chronic inflammatory lesions is to remove or avoid every source of local irritation. Dyspeptic and constitutional conditions must be treated according to their nature, and syphilis requires special attention. All irritant and caustic applications appear to be injurious in *leucoplakia* and allied states, but mouth-washes containing alkaline bicarbonates, glycerine or honey of borax, or weak antiseptics or astringents, may be of some service. Stronger applications of salicylic acid, chromic acid, or cyanide of mercury are recommended to be painted on dried patches; or a single one may be removed under cocaine. Soothing or antiseptic applications are often of much help in syphilitic cases. The food should be bland and nourishing. Chronic abscess will need to be opened; and if the tongue is permanently much enlarged from chronic glossitis, compression of the organ, ligature of the lingual arteries, or partial excision might be demanded, should serious symptoms threaten.

IV. ULCERS OF THE MOUTH AND TONGUE.

In addition to the forms of ulceration in connection with the structures of the mouth already considered, the following may occur:—1. *Variolous*, resulting from small-pox pustules. 2. *Scorbutic*, chiefly seen about the gums. 3. *Traumatic* or *irritative*, the ulcers being due to local injury or irritation. These are common on the tongue, often beginning as small vesicles about its tip and edges. They are generally due to irritation set up by a broken or irregular tooth, or an artificial tooth-plate, and may become distinctly hard, so as to simulate a syphilitic or malignant ulcer. At first they are irritable and painful, presenting a bright-red or sloughy base, with sharp-cut margins, and surrounding œdema. 4. *Dyspeptic*, said to be observed in ill-fed children and dyspeptic

adults, who habitually eat and drink to excess. These are described as being chiefly situated on the sides or upper surface of the tongue near the tip; and to present a shallow base, covered with a greyish slough, and surrounded by an inflamed margin. They are very painful and sensitive; and sometimes give rise to an offensive discharge.
5. *Syphilitic*, which may be primary, secondary, or tertiary.
6. *Malignant or cancerous*.
7. *Tubercular*. It is necessary to consider in somewhat more detail the three forms of ulceration last-mentioned.

Syphilitic.—Apart from the primary chancre, which is very rarely met with in connection with the lip or tongue, two main forms of syphilitic ulceration are described. In the *secondary* stage slight superficial ulcers are very common, usually observed on the edges, tip, and under surface of the free portion of the tongue; but they often involve also the lips, angles of the mouth, and inside of the cheeks. They form cracks and fissures, and are exceedingly painful and tender. Whitish cicatrices are left when they heal, which are very persistent. *Tertiary* ulcers are due to the breaking down of gummata in the tongue, the overlying mucous membrane giving way. They usually occur on the dorsum, and form deep cavities with a ragged opening, which may gape, the edges being thin, flexible, undermined, and irregular, and the walls not indurated. Fluid escapes, and yellowish sloughs may protrude. If a gummatous ulcer becomes chronic, some degree of induration may occur. When it heals, a fissure-like scar remains, with more or less firmness around. Gummata in the tongue may be absorbed under specific treatment without leading to ulceration.

Malignant or Cancerous.—This is essentially a disease which belongs to the domain of surgery, and it is only intended to offer a few general remarks on the subject here. The form of malignant growth met with in connection with the tongue is *squamous epithelioma*. It may begin as a kind of wart, a fissure, or an ulcer. There is always a tendency to marked thickening and induration around and beneath any ulcer or fissure of this nature. Ultimately offensive discharges and sloughs form when there is extensive ulceration. The disease soon spreads to neighbouring structures, and involves the submaxillary glands and the lymphatic glands of the neck. Extension to distant structures is exceptional. As a rule there is severe, radiating pain, with marked salivation, the saliva beingropy. Dangerous or fatal haemorrhage occurs in rare instances. General symptoms are speedily developed, and progressively increase. Obviously it is of the highest importance to determine the nature of malignant disease of the tongue at as early a period as possible, and it seems to be a positive fact that either a simple or a gummatous ulcer may become cancerous; any progressive induration, therefore, in cases of this kind should lead to careful investigation by an experienced surgeon, and thorough microscopical examination, especially if local and general treatment do not produce any beneficial effects.

Tubercular.—This form of ulceration of the tongue is, in my experience, extremely rare, and I have never met with it as a primary disease, though this is said to occur; still more rarely it has been observed on the lip. Tubercular ulcers on the tongue are noticed most frequently about the tip and adjacent edge of the organ, but may appear on the dorsum, or on the under surface. They begin as an aggregation of small nodules or granular bodies, which ulcerate, exposing a greyish or yellowish slough, or a caseous floor. They rarely reach a large size or much depth. As a rule their extension is gradual, and then the edges

become somewhat elevated and rounded, uneven, and of deeper colour than the surrounding parts, while the floor is formed of pale granulations. There is but little, if any, oedema or induration of the structures around. When a tuberculous ulcer spreads rapidly the edge is thin and ragged, and often undermined; the surface may be sloughy, or the structures of the tongue may be exposed. The lymphatic glands about the angle of the jaw are seldom enlarged. Tubercle bacilli may be detected in connection with the ulceration. It is sometimes very painful. A small tuberculous ulcer may heal, but breaks out again. Death results from the effects of the disease in the lungs, larynx, or other structures.

Treatment.—In dealing with ulceration affecting the mouth or tongue, the first indication is to get rid of every source of local irritation, and it is most important not to neglect this point, as such irritation may undoubtedly lead to malignant disease. In the next place constitutional treatment must be carried out when required, which applies specially to syphilitic cases. Attention to the diet and digestive process is also demanded in certain instances. Thirdly, various local remedies are serviceable, *demulcent*, *astringent*, *antiseptic*, or of other kinds, according to circumstances, employed in the form of mouth-washes or direct applications. It is often most beneficial to touch simple ulcers with nitrate of silver. Chlorate of potassium and borax are valuable local remedies in many cases of ulceration of the mouth. Fourthly, surgical interference is imperatively demanded in cases of malignant disease, which should be effectual, and carried out at as early a period as possible.

V. SYMPTOMATIC PAROTITIS—PAROTID BUBO.

Aëtiology.—The form of parotitis characteristic of mumps has already been described, but a brief account is required of the variety of the disease which is liable to attend certain acute affections, either as a *complication* or as a *sequela*. It is frequent during severe epidemics of typhus fever, but may be met with also in connection with typhoid fever, small-pox, measles, scarlatina, cholera, pneumonia, and other complaints. Sometimes it arises by *direct extension*, as when it follows erysipelas of the face. The submaxillary and sublingual glands may be similarly affected.

Anatomical Characters.—Symptomatic parotitis differs from the idiopathic form in its great tendency to end in suppuration, though this is not an invariable result, for resolution may take place. After a period of congestion and tumefaction, a substance collects in the ducts, which soon changes into pus. The lobules break down in the centre, and either form a number of distinct collections of pus, or run into one large abscess, the cellular tissue which separates them being destroyed. The parts around may be extensively involved, cellular tissue, muscles, periosteum, and bones; and the inflammation may even extend to the cerebral meninges or to the brain itself, as well as to the ear. Thrombi sometimes form in the neighbouring veins, and these may lead to embolism and septicæmia. Gangrene occasionally occurs in this form of parotitis.

Symptoms.—These are usually by no means marked at the commencement of parotid bubo, and the inflammation often advances very insidiously. When it ends in suppuration, the skin covering the parotid region becomes red, and prominent fluctuating points appear.

If the pus is not evacuated externally, it may be discharged into the external meatus, pharynx, or mouth; or may find its way to the lower part of the neck, or even into the thorax. The general symptoms are usually of a septic or adynamic type.

Treatment.—The *local* treatment should consist of frequent poulticing, and the repeated use of fomentations. As soon as signs of suppuration appear, proper incisions should at once be made. Internally *stimulants* and *tonics* are generally required; and the strength must be maintained by abundant nutriment.

VI. DISORDERS OF SALIVA—SALIVATION—XEROSTOMIA.

VARIETIES.—The chief disorder affecting the saliva is *an increase in its quantity*, constituting, when considerable, the symptom named *salivation* or *ptyalism*. The secretion is often *diminished in quantity*, giving rise to dryness of the mouth, or more or less thirst, as in the febrile state, diabetes, certain morbid conditions of the digestive organs, or from the effects of opium, belladonna, and other drugs. It is arrested in the condition named *xerostomia* or *dry mouth*. Deficiency of saliva unquestionably helps in the production of dyspeptic symptoms in some cases. With regard to the *quality* of the saliva, certain observations have been made by Dr. Samuel Fenwick. He found a yellow colouring matter in the saliva in every case of jaundice which he examined; and in one case where there was an intense bitter taste without jaundice he discovered traces of the biliary salts by the ordinary tests. This observer also made investigations as to the proportion of sulpho-cyanide of potassium in different diseases. He found that its amount was not affected by decayed teeth or by smoking. It was almost always deficient in cases of obstructive jaundice; and Dr. Fenwick considers that the quantity of sulpho-cyanide in the saliva depends on the amount of bile which reaches the intestine. The quantity of food taken affected and regulated the amount of sulpho-cyanide. It was always deficient in oesophageal stricture and cancer of the stomach; in persistent vomiting, diarrhoea, and dysentery; in cases of severe atonic dyspepsia; and in all cases of chronic disease where the appetite was very bad. It was in excess in fat persons, and in those who were gaining flesh; deficient in those who were thin or rapidly losing weight. The sulpho-cyanide was greatly in excess in all cases of acute rheumatism, reaching the maximum in the second week; also in excess in acute gout, and in most persons liable to "biliary headaches." An excess was found in the early stages of all inflammatory disorders, as gastric catarrh, acute pleurisy, renal disease, and phthisis, but the quantity fell much below the average in the later stages of these diseases.

1. SALIVATION.

Increased flow of saliva is a frequent and troublesome symptom, which calls for special consideration. It may be brought on by a variety of causes. In some cases the secretion is not actually formed in excess, but is allowed to flow from the mouth instead of being swallowed, so that it appears to be produced in abnormal quantity. The amount discharged varies greatly, but it may be exceedingly large, either continually running from the mouth, or causing the patient to be

perpetually spitting or swallowing, or to saturate several handkerchiefs daily. The fluid is not quite identical in composition with healthy saliva, and may be mixed with various morbid materials. It contains some mucus, with numerous epithelium cells. Its reaction is alkaline, and it yields a good proportion of fat, but after a time little or no ptyaline or sulpho-cyanide of potassium can be detected. Albumen is sometimes present. Digestion is generally impaired; and marked emaciation may be produced. Sometimes the fluid is ejected from the stomach in considerable quantity, after having been swallowed.

Aetiology.—1. More or less salivation accompanies the various sources of *local irritation* in connection with the mouth already considered, such as stomatitis or ulcers; being also produced by irritating substances taken into the mouth. These act by causing reflex excitation. 2. *Reflex irritation* through other nerves often induces ptyalism. Thus it may be associated with throat-inflammations, many diseases of the stomach and pancreas, or worms in the intestines; while it is a symptom very commonly observed in cases of pregnancy. 3. In certain *nervous diseases* salivation is not uncommon, as in various forms of insanity, hydrophobia, hysteria, paralysis, and neuralgia of the face. In some of these affections it is produced in a reflex manner; in others as the result of some direct cerebral influence. 4. Certain *metallic* and *vegetable* substances, when taken for some time, induce ptyalism, by causing local irritation, and also by directly influencing the secretion of saliva. Of these the most important is mercury, but iodine and other substances have sometimes a similar action. 5. *Critical salivation* is observed in some cases of fever, but salivation in febrile diseases is not always connected with a crisis. 6. *Infants* and *old people* are liable to an excessive flow of saliva. In the former this is often associated with *dentition*. In both classes of subjects there is frequently no excess of secretion formed, but the saliva is allowed to escape from the mouth instead of being swallowed. 7. *Idiopathic salivation* is that form which occurs without any obvious cause.

Treatment.—In treating salivation the cause must be sought out, and if possible removed. In many cases this is all that is required. Astringent mouth-washes are useful, such as solution of alum, tannic acid, oak-bark, weak mineral acids, or chlorate of potassium; or alum may be sucked. Opium and tincture of belladonna are the most useful internal remedies in obstinate cases of ptyalism, as they have a direct influence in checking the secretion of saliva through the nerves.

2. XEROSTOMIA—DRY MOUTH.

This is a peculiar condition, originally brought prominently before the profession by Mr. Jonathan Hutchinson. It has only been met with in women, usually between 50 and 65, but has commenced as early as 23 years of age. There are no obvious changes in the salivary apparatus; and the complaint has been attributed to some persistent functional disorder of the nerve-apparatus governing secretion by the salivary and buccal glands. It has occasionally been preceded by severe mental shock.

Symptoms.—Xerostomia sometimes sets in quite suddenly, and always reaches its highest degree rapidly, then remaining unchanged. It is characterized by a peculiar dryness, usually limited to the inside of the mouth, tongue, hard and soft palate; the salivary and buccal secre-

tions being entirely arrested. The tongue presents an appearance like raw beef, being red, devoid of epithelium, cracked, and absolutely dry. Over the inside of the cheeks and the palate the mucous membrane is pale, smooth, and shiny. In exceptional cases the pharynx is similarly affected, along with diminished or arrested nasal and lachrymal secretion. The teeth have been known to fall out, owing to the condition of the mouth. Articulation and deglutition are difficult, and have to be assisted by constant sipping. The general condition is not affected, but occasionally there is marked dryness of the skin; digestion is uninpaired; and the urine is normal, absence of sugar having been specially noted.

Treatment.—Local application of glycerine appears to answer best for relieving the condition of the mouth in xerostomia. The internal remedies which have proved of most benefit in this complaint are tincture of jaborandi, pilocarpin, and iodide of potassium.

CHAPTER II.

DISEASES OF THE THROAT.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

In the present chapter it is intended to deal with affections associated with the pharynx and its related structures, the soft palate, uvula, and tonsils; and of the neighbouring tissues. Throat-complaints are of very common occurrence, and may be indicated by more or less of the following clinical phenomena:—

1. The presence of soreness, pain, or other **morbid sensations**. These vary greatly, both in degree and kind; but among the most common are a sense of dryness, burning, tightness, or as if a foreign body were present, which induces a constant desire to hawk or swallow. There may also be external tenderness. 2. **Disorders of deglutition**. This act may be painful or difficult, or even quite impossible, and sometimes substances tend to pass in wrong directions, such as into the larynx or posterior nares. The physical conditions of the materials which are being swallowed—such as whether they are solid or liquid, hot or cold—often influence the degree of dysphagia. 3. **Alteration of the voice**, which is either somewhat hoarse or husky, or completely altered in its quality, becoming thick and guttural or nasal. The act of speaking may cause pain. 4. **Hawking and cough**. These are very common and troublesome symptoms attending throat-affections, especially those of a chronic nature. Even in pulmonary affections, particularly phthisis and bronchial catarrh, the state of the throat often aggravates cough considerably; and the same is true of the so-called *stomach-cough* observed in dyspeptic cases. Frequently the act is attended with the discharge of abundant mucus or other materials. 5. **Disturbance of breathing**. There is not as a rule any difficulty of breathing in mere throat-affections, but in certain cases considerable obstructive dyspnoea may be noticed, especially in the recumbent posture; while patients suffering from these complaints often sleep with the mouth wide

open, and snore loudly. 6. An unpleasant or foul smell of the **breath**. 7. **Deafness** occasionally, due to obstruction about the openings of the Eustachian tubes. 8. Signs revealed on **objective examination**. A careful examination of the whole of the fauces is requisite, whenever symptoms point to this part as being the seat of mischief. A good light is needed, and it is sometimes useful to employ artificial light, with the aid of the reflector of the laryngoscope. The tongue must be kept down by means of the handle of a spoon or a tongue-depressor, or with the finger. In some cases it is desirable to use the finger for the purpose of feeling the structures in the throat, especially when examining children, and when searching for adenoid growths. By the objective examination of the throat a knowledge is gained :—(a) of the appearance of the general surface of the fauces, as regards colour, degree of moisture, smoothness or roughness, and other characters; (b) of the presence of any membranous or other deposit, or accumulation of secretion; (c) of the general form and dimensions of the pharynx and its openings; as well as of the size, shape, and other characters of the soft palate and its arches, the uvula, and the tonsils; (d) of the existence of any enlarged follicles, abscesses, ulcers, eruptions, gangrene, old cicatrizations, polypi, adenoid masses, cancerous or other tumours. *Rhinoscopy* is of much help in the examination of the upper part of the pharynx, and it is often desirable at the same time to investigate fully the nasal cavities by this method. When the throat is affected, the external structures of the neck should likewise be examined, particularly those about the angles of the lower jaw, special attention being paid to the lymphatic glands. It will be well also to notice the state of the mouth and lips. 9. *General symptoms*. These may be of a peculiar kind, accompanied with changes in the face and expression, and certain mental phenomena, in cases of prolonged obstruction of the throat or naso-pharyngeal region in early life.

II. SPECIAL DISEASES.

A. ACUTE INFLAMMATORY AFFECTIONS OF THE THROAT.

The throat is the seat of acute inflammation of a special character in diphtheria and scarlatina; thrush may also extend from the mouth to this part; or it may be inflamed in connection with eruptions on its mucous surface, especially herpetic and variolous, or from the extension of erysipelas from the face. In the following remarks, however, attention will be directed to the more *local* inflammatory affections, which are of considerable importance.

Aetiology.—*Exciting causes.*—1. Inflammatory throat-affections generally result from *taking cold* in some way or other, especially from exposure to cold and wet, to sudden changes of temperature, or to damp cold winds. In many cases they seem to be but a part of a general catarrh from this cause. 2. The opinion is now very generally held that many cases of sore-throat, and especially of acute tonsillitis, are associated with the *rheumatic diathesis*; and it has been affirmed that the latter usually precedes other local manifestations, and is sometimes the only lesion. Dr. William Hill has described different kinds of tonsillitis in rheumatic fever, sub-acute rheumatism, and the chronic rheumatic state, and attributes them to the absorption of contaminated and irritating buccal

fluids by the mucous membrane of the mouth and fauces, which are then conveyed by the lymphatics to the tonsils. He considers the contamination to be both microbic and chemical. 3. Occasionally the milder forms of sore-throat appear to be due to some *derangement of the alimentary canal*; follicular pharyngitis is often associated with gastric disorders. 4. *Local irritants* excite more or less inflammation, which may then be of a very serious character, as from swallowing hot fluids or solids, or chemical irritants. 5. Certain forms of throat-inflammation may be due to the action of some *poison* in the atmosphere. Many cases of hospital sore-throat seem to arise in this way. Irritating fogs may certainly cause catarrh of the throat. 6. Pharyngeal catarrh is often a *complication* of certain of the exanthemata. Syphilis produces a specific form of sore-throat. 7. *Excessive use of the voice* is liable to cause sore-throat, especially the follicular variety, which constitutes a part of *clergymen's sore-throat*.

Predisposing causes.—Throat-inflammations may occur at any age, but are most common on the whole in adults, probably because they are more exposed to the exciting causes. Tonsillitis is, however, chiefly met with among young persons. Previous attacks increase the liability to these complaints, many individuals suffering from the slightest cause, or being liable to periodic attacks, especially if the tonsils are enlarged. Anything that lowers the health is believed to be a predisposing cause of sore-throat, and certainly this is true with regard to prolonged residence in a hospital. Persons who are constitutionally weak appear to suffer with unusual frequency. The relation of throat-conditions to the rheumatic diathesis and to syphilis has already been alluded to. Intemperance acts as a predisposing cause not uncommonly; and so does excessive smoking. Tonsillitis appears sometimes to run in families. Most cases occur during spring and autumn.

Symptoms.—For clinical description, cases of acute inflammation affecting the different structures of the throat may be conveniently arranged under the following groups:—

1. *Acute Pharyngeal Catarrh—Catarrhal Pharyngitis—Relaxed Sore-throat—Cynanche Pharyngea—Angina Simplex.*—A large proportion of sore-throats may be included in this general group, being due to *catarrhal inflammation* of the fauces and pharynx, differing much in its extent and severity in different cases. Occasionally the inflammation is very pronounced, and extends more or less deeply. Uneasiness, soreness, or pain is experienced in the throat, in proportion to the degree of inflammation, often accompanied with a sense of heat and dryness. Swallowing is always attended with discomfort, and is often painful, though the patient may be constantly inclined to perform the act, being prompted thereto by a feeling as if there were something in the throat, especially when the uvula is involved. There is also a frequent tendency to cough, or to hawk and clear the throat, in order to remove secretion, or to get rid of the feeling of obstruction. The voice is often thick or husky, and the act of speaking may cause pain; but there is no interference with breathing. The symptoms are generally worse during the night, and after sleep. Occasionally deafness is complained of, the Eustachian tubes being blocked up.

Examination reveals more or less general redness of the throat, which is usually bright, but may tend to lividity. The surface appears dry and glistening. Considerable oedema may be observed where the submucous tissue is loose, giving rise to swelling and a watery translucent appear-

ance, particularly in connection with the uvula. Secretion often collects in patches and points over the back of the fauces and on the tonsils; these sometimes look remarkably like diphtheritic deposits, but they are easily detached without causing bleeding or excoriation. Not uncommonly superficial erosion is produced, and the more intense forms of inflammation are liable to terminate in ulceration, or in more or less deep suppuration; the latter may constitute a *pharyngeal abscess*.

In slight cases of sore-throat there are no general symptoms. The more severe forms of pharyngeal inflammation may be ushered in with chilliness, headache, and pains in the limbs; and are attended with pyrexia. The pulse may rise to 100 or 120; and the temperature to 102° or even higher. A bright blush occasionally suffuses the face and upper part of the body, where there is no reason to suspect scarlatina. In some cases of apparently simple pharyngeal catarrh I have met with albuminuria, which entirely disappeared after a time.

Sore-throat may come on very rapidly, attaining considerable intensity in a few hours, and this particularly applies to a form of *hospital sore-throat*. This generally sets in during the night, and by the morning the symptoms are very pronounced. There is much œdema and swelling, but no particular redness, while deglutition is very uncomfortable and difficult.

2. *Acute Follicular Pharyngitis*.—This variety is characterized by the follicles of the throat being chiefly implicated, which become enlarged, hard, and red. It is attended with a good deal of local soreness or pain, and abundant secretion forms, causing continuous hawking. Sometimes the follicles suppurate and ulcerate.

3. *Acute Tonsillitis*—*Amygdalitis*—*Cynanche Tonsillaris*—*Quinsy*.—Different forms of tonsillitis are described by different writers, namely: (a) *superficial or erythematous*, in which the mucous covering of the tonsils and the epithelial lining of the crypts are chiefly involved; (b) *follicular, lacunar, or cryptic*, characterized by the presence of soft, whitish, fatty concretions in the crypts or lacunæ; and (c) *parenchymatous*, either *suppurative* or *non-suppurative*, where the adenoid or lymphoid tissue of the glands is involved, along with the contained lymphoid follicles or sacs.

In *parenchymatous* tonsillitis, to which the following description applies, one or both glands may be affected. Usually some general febrile disturbance is observed before throat-symptoms are complained of, but they may appear simultaneously. At first uneasiness is felt over one or both tonsils, which soon increases to considerable pain, of a dull, aching character, with much tenderness. The throat feels dry, and a sensation is experienced as if a foreign body were present. External tenderness is felt behind the angles of the jaw, which may be considerable. Deglutition is difficult and causes much distress, the pain during the act often shooting towards the ear, while in severe cases fluids return through the nose. After a time a quantity of sticky mucus forms, entailing frequent efforts to swallow, or continuous hawking. The voice is characteristically altered, having a thick, muffled, guttural, or nasal character, which cannot be mistaken when once heard; occasionally it is altogether lost. Breathing is not interfered with as a rule, but if both tonsils are greatly enlarged, dyspnœa may be felt, especially on lying down, and the patient snores loudly during sleep. The breath is very unpleasant. Salivation may be present. Deafness and noises in the ear are often complained of.

Examination of the throat is not always easily carried out in tonsillitis, but if it can be effected, the appearances observed are:—General redness of the fauces, but more particularly of one or both tonsils; enlargement of these structures, sometimes so considerable that they meet in the middle line, and almost completely block up the passage, while they look like “balls of flesh,” and may actually ulcerate from mutual pressure; and in some cases white or yellowish opaque spots or patches on the surface, the products of follicular secretion. The palate and uvula are also swollen and oedematous, the latter being almost always observed to adhere to one of the tonsils. When the parts cannot be inspected, the tonsils must be felt by the finger, and this is especially required in children, or in the later stages of the complaint, in order to ascertain whether suppuration is taking place. Very often the salivary glands are swollen, as well as the soft structures of the neck, especially the lymphatic glands, which feel firm and tender; a sensation of stiffness and uneasiness being likewise complained of.

Tonsillitis is usually attended with considerable fever, and the patient feels decidedly ill, being often much prostrated. The temperature frequently rises to 102° or more, and may reach 104° ; the pulse usually ranging from 100 to 120. There is often severe headache, with much restlessness, and occasionally slight delirium at night. The tongue presents a thick creamy coating; appetite is lost, but there is much thirst; and the bowels are constipated. A red rash on the skin is now and then observed. The urine is markedly febrile; while chlorides are deficient, or sometimes almost entirely absent.

Cases of tonsillitis differ greatly in their severity. Frequently only one tonsil is involved, but in many instances both are attacked, generally in succession, occasionally simultaneously. The inflammation usually attains its height in five or six days, and the entire duration of most cases is under ten days. Pathologically the disease may terminate in:—*a. Resolution*, the symptoms gradually subsiding. *b. Suppuration*. This is very common, being indicated by the pain becoming more pulsating or throbbing, and shooting towards the ear; by the occurrence of rigors in some cases; and by the tonsil feeling soft and fluctuating, or the colour of the pus being actually visible through the redness. The abscess often bursts suddenly, either spontaneously or from some mechanical irritation, or it is opened by operation; and in either case rapid improvement follows the escape of pus, which is often very offensive. Only one tonsil suppurates as a rule. *c. Gangrene*, of very rare occurrence, and only met with in those who are in a low and debilitated state of health. *d. Chronic enlargement*, with a granular or irregular appearance of the tonsil, especially after repeated attacks ending in suppuration. Clinically cases of tonsillitis almost invariably terminate in recovery. Death is an exceedingly rare event, but may possibly result from haemorrhage, or from extension of inflammation to the larynx.

Diagnosis.—The fact of the existence of an acute inflammation of the throat is usually readily recognized by the symptoms, and a satisfactory examination will generally reveal its nature. Difficulty, however, is not uncommonly experienced in determining whether the complaint is *local* or of a *specific* nature, especially associated with diphtheria or scarlatina. Adequate enquiry as to the aetiology of the case; the mode of invasion; the collateral symptoms; and the degree of pyrexia, ought generally to clear up any doubt. In some cases it

is impossible to give a definite opinion at once; and it must be remembered that an indefinite sore-throat may be practically almost the only symptom of scarlatina or diphtheria. From a diagnostic point of view the relation between throat-conditions and rheumatism must also not be overlooked.

From acute *laryngeal* inflammations, those involving the throat are distinguished by the absence or slight degree of dyspnoea as a rule, or its different character when present; by deglutition being more interfered with; by the voice being less altered, or affected in a different way; by cough being a much less marked symptom, and not having laryngeal characters; and, above all, by the results of examination. It must be remembered that the inflammation may spread to the larynx; or both parts may be involved simultaneously, each then giving rise to its own special symptoms.

Prognosis.—Local throat-inflammations are rarely dangerous to life, but they may become so by giving rise to considerable œdema of the tissues, or by spreading to the larynx, being thus liable to cause suffocation. Death from haemorrhage has in rare instances occurred in connection with an abscess in the tonsil. It is often difficult, and may be impossible, to get rid of the liability to attacks of sore-throat.

Treatment.—1. *General management.*—In slight cases of sore-throat the application of a wet bandage round the throat at night, covered with a piece of flannel, is all that is necessary. Even when the affection threatens to be severe, it may probably be checked not infrequently by the assiduous application of cold water outside the throat, and the frequent sucking of ice.

In many cases, however, of acute inflammation in connection with the throat, more active treatment is required, and there are certain general rules which should always be carried out. The patient should be kept quiet, in a comfortably warm room, and not allowed to talk. A *saline aperient* may be given at the outset, and the bowels should be kept well-opened throughout. If there is pyrexia, and the patient is not weak, it is sufficient to administer a *saline* mixture for two or three days. It is not desirable to keep the patient low, therefore a good quantity of beef-tea, milk, and other liquid nutritious food should be given in moderate quantities, at frequent and regular intervals. Mucilaginous drinks afford relief; and the frequent sucking of ice is very grateful, as well as beneficial. *Alcoholic stimulants* are often indicated, good port-wine being one of the best forms, and being particularly useful in cases of tonsillitis and hospital sore-throat, as well as during convalescence.

2. *Medicinal treatment.*—It is affirmed that, by the employment of certain drugs, especially tincture of aconite in small doses frequently repeated, resin of guaiacum, or salicylate of sodium, acute inflammatory affections of the throat, particularly tonsillitis, can be very rapidly subdued, and their progress arrested. Personally I cannot speak favourably of these agents, and the remedies which I have found of most service are quinine (gr. i-iiij); tincture of perchloride of iron (m xv-xxx); or dilute nitric acid with decoction of cinchona. Either of these may be given at intervals of three or four hours, or three times a day, according to the severity of the case. Quinine and iron may in many cases be advantageously combined. A mixture containing dilute hydrochloric acid and chlorate of potassium has been much commended in acute catarrh of the throat: or chlorate of potassium may be given with tincture of perchloride of iron. A *saline* drink may be

taken as well, such as a solution of citrate of potassium, so as to maintain a free action of the skin and kidneys. In cases of tonsillitis a *hypnotic* is often required at night, but sleep should not be too prolonged, and the head must be kept well-raised.

3. *Local treatment* is always most important. In the various forms of *catarrhal* or *follicular pharyngitis* steam-inhalations, tepid milk-and-water gargles, with poultices and fermentations over the front of the neck, give most relief at first. Afterwards *astringent* gargles are useful, such as one containing alum, tannic acid, dilute mineral acids, or port-wine. Gargles of chlorate of potassium are often serviceable. It may be desirable to apply nitrate of silver or its solution directly, especially in the *follicular* variety. If there is dangerous œdema, it is necessary to scarify the surface; and should suppuration occur, the pus must be let out by incision.

For *acute tonsillitis* similar soothing measures must be adopted at the outset, and to any gargle a little Condyl's fluid may often be added with advantage, in order to diminish the unpleasant taste and odour of the breath. Dr. Hill insists upon the importance of attention to the condition and cleanliness of the mouth and teeth; and in the rheumatic forms specially recommends ice-cold antiseptic and alkaline mouth-washes, as well as gargles and sprays containing salicylate or carbonate of sodium, or both. At the same time very hot and well-made linseed-meal poultices should be applied round the front of the neck, being changed at frequent intervals; or spongio-piline wrung out of hot water answers very well. When these applications are removed, the part should be well fomented. Should indications appear that pus has formed, it is desirable to let this out by means of a guarded curved bistoury, and thus give immediate relief; or it may be requisite to puncture the tonsils, even though there is no distinct evidence of the presence of pus, especially if the breathing be seriously impeded. Some practitioners advocate the use of irritating applications to the neck externally, such as sinapisms, liniments, and blisters, but in my opinion these are decidedly objectionable. Possibly, should there be very severe local symptoms, accompanied with great swelling, it might be advisable to apply two or three leeches behind the angle of the jaw. Cocaine is sometimes a useful local application in acute tonsillitis.

4. *Convalescence and prophylaxis*.—During convalescence after tonsillitis *tonics* are needed for some time, with good nourishing food and a little wine. A change of air often does much good. Locally *astringent* gargles or other forms of application are necessary, the most serviceable being glycerine of tannin or alum, tincture of perchloride of iron with glycerine, or solution of nitrate of silver. Should the tonsils remain permanently much enlarged, it may be requisite to excise them.

5. As *prophylactic* measures in the case of those who are subject to sore-throat or quinsy, frequent cold douching of the throat externally, and the daily use of cold water or of some mild astringent as a gargle, should be recommended. The general health must be attended to; and all injurious habits checked, especially intemperance and excessive smoking. A change of air or climate, and a course of *tonics* frequently lead to good results. A tendency to acute sore-throat may sometimes be prevented by allowing the beard to grow.

B. ULCERATION OF THE THROAT.

Ulcers are very common in connection with the various structures of the throat, being either *acute* or *chronic*. They may be enumerated as follows :—1. *Catarrhal*, which are slight and superficial, being very frequently observed, especially at the back of the pharynx, and often associated with chronic catarrh. 2. *Follicular*. These ulcers are generally small, and circular or oval, corresponding to the follicles, but by their union they may become irregular and of some size. 3. *Syphilitic*, either secondary or tertiary. 4. *Scarlatinal*. 5. *Diphtheritic*. 6. Ulcers following *eruptions*, such as herpes. 7. *Gangrenous* or *Sloughing sore-throat*—*Cynanche* or *Angina maligna*. This form of ulceration is generally associated with syphilis or scarlatina, but may be independent of these affections. Thus it may follow severe catarrhal inflammation, if the patient is in a very low state of health from any cause; and occasionally it occurs as a complication of typhus, enteric fever, or other exanthemata. It spreads more or less extensively, but not as a rule deeply; the mucous membrane is dusky; while there is much œdema around. 8. Ulcers on the *tonsils*, simulating syphilitic ulcers, but probably originating in blocking-up and subsequent inflammation of their follicles. 9. *Cancerous* ulceration, which is extremely rare. 10. *Tubercular*, also very rare, except as the result of extension of the disease from the larynx and epiglottis, when it causes distressing dysphagia. Tubercles occasionally form on the hard or soft palate: on the tonsils, which may ulcerate; or over the back of the pharynx. Marked anaemia of this region is described as an early indication of tuberculosis, associated with a similar condition of the larynx.

Symptoms.—Ulceration of the throat may be unattended with any symptoms whatever, even when of considerable extent. Usually, however, *local* symptoms are present to a greater or less degree. There may be merely uneasiness or pain, and difficulty in swallowing, but when certain parts are destroyed, most unpleasant and dangerous symptoms are liable to arise. Food, especially of a liquid kind, may tend to pass into the posterior nares or down the larynx, instead of into the œsophagus. The voice is often completely altered, being thick, guttural, and indistinct; or the patient may scarcely be able to articulate at all. Offensive matters are hawked or coughed up; and the breath is in many cases very foul, sometimes peculiarly so. Dyspnœa, with noisy breathing, may be present; and in some cases there is a liability to sudden suffocation, in consequence of the ulceration involving the upper opening of the larynx. There may also be a danger of haemorrhage.

Ulceration of the throat is often attended with a low state of the general health, and there may be much emaciation and debility, owing to inability to swallow food. In *gangrenous* ulceration there is a danger of septicæmia; or of septic matters passing down into the air-passages, and causing a low form of pneumonia. Of course when the ulceration is a part of some special disease, such as scarlatina, diphtheria, or syphilis, the general symptoms will be modified accordingly.

The ultimate local consequences of ulceration are also liable to be very unpleasant, or may even prove dangerous, in the way of permanent destruction of tissues, adhesions, and contraction after cicatrization. I have seen a case in which the throat was one large chasm, with thickened bands extending along its walls, every trace of its various

parts having disappeared. Of course under these circumstances swallowing becomes very difficult; and the voice is permanently altered.

Diagnosis.—It must be borne in mind that the throat may be ulcerated without any complaint of local symptoms being made by the patient. The smell of the breath has in not a few instances led me to the discovery of unsuspected ulceration in this part, and when this is fetid, the throat should always be carefully examined. In conducting the examination it is necessary to raise the uvula, in order to see the upper part of the back of the pharynx, as ulcers are not uncommon here, and may otherwise be overlooked. It is important to determine the nature of any ulceration of the throat, and especially whether it be syphilitic.

Prognosis.—Ulceration of the throat may prove immediately dangerous, by interfering with deglutition, and thus affecting nutrition; by spreading to the larynx, with consequent spasm and interference with respiration; by giving rise to haemorrhage; or by inducing septicæmia. Some forms are difficult to cure. The destructive effects of ulceration in this region may lead to serious permanent mischief.

Treatment.—1. *Local.* For most ulcerations of the throat nothing answers better than the frequent use of chlorate of potassium as a gargle, or in the form of lozenges or spray. *Follicular* ulcers, as well as other chronic forms, often require to be freely touched with nitrate of silver or its solution. When the surface is sloughy, some *antiseptic* gargle or spray must be freely employed, such as one containing Condy's fluid, carbolic acid, creasote, or chlorine, and it may be used alternately with the chlorate of potassium gargle. In *gangrenous* forms of ulceration, exhibiting a tendency to spread, it may be advisable to start by brushing the surface over carefully with strong nitric or hydrochloric acid, then proceeding with the other applications. Inhalations containing carbolic acid, creasote, or other *antiseptics* are also very valuable.

2. *General.*—It is very important before commencing treatment to determine the nature of any throat-ulceration, and especially whether it is due to syphilis. If such be the case, iodide of potassium with decoction of cinchona bark or quinine generally produces the best results. Sometimes a course of mercury is required, but it must be administered judiciously and cautiously. It will often be found, even in syphilitic cases where there is much sloughing, that dilute nitric acid with decoction of bark brings about rapid improvement, and this mixture is very useful in other forms of gangrenous ulceration. Tincture of perchloride of iron, in doses of m xx-xl every four or six hours, is also exceedingly valuable, especially if there is much debility, and it may be combined with quinine. The internal administration of chlorate of potassium is regarded by many as almost a specific in throat-ulcerations. It may be given as a drink, or in combination with tincture of iron. Dr. Sansom advocates the use of the sulpho-carbolates internally.

Not uncommonly one of the most important matters requiring attention in ulceration of the throat is the feeding of the patient. In certain cases, owing to great difficulty or pain being experienced in swallowing, very little or no nourishment is taken, and hence the system becomes greatly lowered, so that healthy action cannot take place, and the ulceration will not heal. Under these circumstances the patient must be compelled to take small quantities of beef-tea and milk at frequent

intervals, and in this way a considerable amount of nutriment may be administered. If this is persevered in for a short time, the patient generally becomes able to swallow easily, and there is a marked effect for good produced on the ulceration. At the same time a good quantity of port-wine should be given in similar small doses. If deglutition is really impossible, nutrient enemata must be employed.

When there is much dyspnoea accompanying throat-ulceration, the patient must be carefully watched, as remarkably sudden death may occur from suffocation, and laryngotomy or tracheotomy may be called for at a moment's notice. Indeed, in cases attended with great danger, it might be advisable to open the larynx as a precautionary measure, while at the same time the ulcerated structures are left in a state of rest, and therefore more favourably situated for undergoing the healing process.

C. CHRONIC AFFECTIONS OF THE THROAT.

1. CHRONIC PHARYNGEAL CATARRH.—This is a very common condition, the symptoms being uneasiness or soreness of the throat, increased by the contact of irritating substances; roughness or huskiness of the voice; a frequent desire to clear the throat; hawking and cough, especially in the mornings, there being much difficulty in clearing away the viscid mucus. Examination reveals redness of the fauces, frequently with permanent enlargement of the vessels; a rough and granular appearance—*granular pharyngitis*, numerous enlarged follicles—*follicular sore throat*, or raised hard papules of considerable size; generally much thick sticky secretion; and in many cases superficial erosions or ulcerations, or follicular ulcers. Chronic pharyngeal catarrh is often associated with disorders of the stomach; phthisis; chronic alcoholism; excessive smoking; too much talking or singing; violent cough; or a relaxed uvula. A form of dry catarrh of the throat has been attributed to excessive indulgence in tea which has been boiled, occurring chiefly in anaemic women.

2. RELAXED THROAT.—Relaxed throat is frequently the cause of unpleasant symptoms, being either the result of pharyngeal catarrh, or associated with general want of tone. A quantity of secretion forms on the surface of the fauces, which excites cough. A *relaxed* and *elongated uvula* gives rise to very uncomfortable sensations, with a tickling cough, which comes on particularly when the patient lies down at night, owing to the uvula falling back, and irritating the top of the larynx. It may also excite nausea and vomiting.

3. CHRONIC ENLARGEMENT OF THE TONSILS.—Enlargement of the tonsils, rarely congenital, but often beginning during early life, is very liable to lead to more or less serious results, and, therefore, when examining children it is always desirable to ascertain the condition of these structures. The change may commence in young adults, or exceptionally even later in life. Its pathological causes are:—1. Simple *hypertrophy*. 2. *Chronic inflammation*, either following acute tonsillitis, especially after several attacks; or coming on gradually. 3. Persistent or frequently-repeated *congestion*. 4. Repeated *ulceration*. Enlarged tonsils may remain after diphtheria or the eruptive fevers. The actual structural changes vary in different cases. In some the lymphoid elements are chiefly increased; while in others the fibrous stroma is in excess, when

the tonsil is very firm and hard. Cheesy collections may form in the crypts, which sometimes become calcareous.

Symptoms.—The chief symptoms of enlarged tonsils are more or less difficulty of deglutition; and alteration of the voice, which acquires a marked nasal quality, and in some cases the pronunciation of certain letters is changed, while there is an inability to pronounce the consonants *m* and *n*. Breathing is not uncommonly interfered with, and the report frequently given is "that the child makes a great noise when asleep, snoring loudly or snorting, and sleeps with the mouth open." In some cases rest is much disturbed, and the child may wake up suddenly with a sense of suffocation. Sometimes there are prolonged pauses in breathing, followed by deep noisy inspiration. In course of time deformity of the chest may result in very young subjects, from the obstruction to the entrance of air into the lungs, a "pigeon-breast" being generally produced. On inspection the tonsils are seen to be more or less enlarged, and they may actually meet in the middle line. There is no particular redness, but the surface appears granular or irregular, and white opaque accumulations of secretion are often observed in the crypts, which when squeezed out are extremely offensive. The tonsils feel unusually firm and hard. The condition of these structures causes increased secretion of mucus in the throat, which in older patients may lead to much hawking. In some cases the breath is very unpleasant.

Children with enlarged tonsils are often listless, easily tired, and indisposed for exertion. The mental condition also tends to become markedly affected in course of time, as indicated by stupidity, dulness of intellect, backwardness, sullenness or crossness, inability to fix the attention (*aprosexia*), slowness in answering questions, or indisposition for any mental effort or study, which causes discomfort. The face and expression exhibit by degrees corresponding changes, and in marked cases reveal at once the condition present. The mouth comes to be habitually kept open, breathing being entirely carried on through this cavity; hence the lips are thick, the nasal orifices small and contracted, and in the buccal cavity the superior dental arch is narrowed, and the roof much raised. The expression of the face becomes dull, heavy, and apathetic. More or less deafness is common; and the senses of smell and taste are often much impaired. There may be little or no nasal catarrh. Among other symptoms mentioned as associated with enlarged tonsils are liability to headaches, habit-spasm of the face, and enuresis. They are liable to acute exacerbations of follicular tonsillitis from time to time; and children with enlarged tonsils are particularly predisposed to colds, as well as, it is affirmed, to diphtheria, and to severe anginal forms of scarlatina.

4. ADENOID GROWTHS.—The occurrence of adenoid growths in the pharynx has of late years attracted much attention, and great importance is now attributed to them. They are most abundant as a rule over the vault, on a line with the fossa of the Eustachian tube, but may lie posterior to this fossa, or upon the parts parallel to the posterior wall of the pharynx. They appear to spring mainly from the mucous membrane covering the localities where the connective tissue fills in the inequalities at the base of the skull. The growths form vegetations or masses, from a pea to a small almond in size; which are either sessile with broad bases, or pedunculated. They are reddish in colour, very vascular, and moderately firm. In structure they are mostly papillo-

matous, with a lymphoid parenchyma. These adenoid formations may accompany enlarged tonsils, or are met with alone. Chronic nasal catarrh is usually present.

Symptoms.—These are in the main similar to those described in relation to chronic enlargement of the tonsils; and when the two conditions exist together, the obstruction and its consequences are all the greater. The symptoms, however, may be very pronounced when the tonsils are quite normal or but little enlarged, owing to the adenoid vegetations completely blocking the naso-pharynx. It is important, therefore, to feel thoroughly for them, even though nothing can be seen in the throat, when there is reason to suspect their presence. They give the sensation of small, flat bodies; or of velvety, grape-like masses. Rhinoscopy may also help in detecting them.

5. POLYPI and other *morbid growths*, benign or malignant, are in rare instances met with in the throat, in addition to adenoids. They cause more or less unpleasant local sensations, with obstruction to deglutition or breathing, and abundant secretion may be hawked or coughed up. Sometimes haemorrhage takes place. The nature of any growth is revealed on examination; and it may sometimes be felt when it cannot be seen.

Diagnosis.—Chronic affections of the throat may be simulated in nervous and fanciful people when there is nothing really wrong; while, on the other hand, certain symptoms which are attributed to other diseases, such as cough and expectoration, are not uncommonly due to some abnormal condition of this part, which has been overlooked. The habit of always examining the throat properly will, as a rule, make the diagnosis easy. Particular attention to this matter is required in the case of children.

Treatment.—In treating any chronic throat-affection, it is requisite first of all to find out its cause or causes, and to remove these if possible. Intemperance in drink; excessive smoking; the habitual use of hot spices and condiments in excess; or too much speaking in public or singing, must be checked. In many cases it is important to improve the general health, by careful attention to hygienic conditions and diet, especially in the case of children suffering from enlarged tonsils, for whom a change to the seaside often proves highly beneficial. The alimentary canal frequently requires attention. The internal administration of quinine and iron, acids with bitter infusions, or *nux vomica* or strychnine, frequently does much good. Steel-wine, or syrup of phosphate or iodide of iron, and cod-liver oil are very useful for children whose tonsils are chronically enlarged, or who suffer from adenoid growths.

Local treatment is often essential. The regular and efficient employment of *astringent* or *stimulant* applications is called for in many cases, in the form of gargles, glycerines or solutions applied with a brush, sprays, lozenges, or powders. The most serviceable topical remedies are alum, tannin, dilute mineral acids, tincture of capsicum, catechu, rhatany, tincture of perchloride of iron, tincture of myrrh, sulphate of zinc, or nitrate of silver. Infusion of roses with dilute sulphuric acid and tincture of capsicum, or alum with honey, constitute agreeable and efficient gargles. Glycerine of tannin or alum are very useful applications in many chronic conditions of the throat. In others such remedies as chlorate of potassium, borax, or chloride of ammonium are indicated. It may be necessary to puncture follicles, and then touch them with

nitrate of silver. Not uncommonly an elongated uvula has to be snipped off. When the tonsils are enlarged, the regular application of strong glycerine or tannin, nitrate of silver, or tincture of iodine may be tried, but generally these are quite ineffectual, and the tonsils have to be excised. After excision care must be taken that they are properly healed, as they are apt to remain in a painful state for some time. If the general condition is evidently becoming affected, or the chest deformed, there should be no delay in removing the tonsils. Morbid growths may also need excision. Galvano-puncture, the wire being at a white heat, has been advocated instead of excision in cases of chronic enlargement of the tonsils. The galvano-cautery is also used in the treatment of certain cases of chronic pharyngeal catarrh. In treating adenoid vegetations, they can either be removed with the finger, the patient being anaesthetized, or scraped away with a suitable curette. Afterwards cauterization with nitrate of silver is recommended, and daily injections of a solution of bicarbonate of sodium or chlorate of potassium. Cauterization with nitrate of silver may suffice in milder cases. Another method is to destroy adenoid growths by the galvano-cautery.

D. RETRO-PHARYNGEAL ABSCESS.

This is a very rare disease, in which inflammation, terminating in suppuration, takes place in the cellular tissue between the posterior surface of the pharynx and the front of the spine. It may be either *acute* or *chronic*.

Aetiology.—Retro-pharyngeal abscess may occur under the following circumstances :—1. As a *complication* or *sequela* of certain acute specific fevers. 2. In *pyæmia*. 3. In connection with *local injury* or *disease*, for example, caries of the cervical vertebrae, or disease of the laryngeal cartilages. 4. Extremely rarely as an *idiopathic primary inflammation*. This form is said to be most common in infancy, before the second year, and it may appear in perfectly healthy children. It cannot be traced to any definite cause, but it has been suggested that organisms penetrate from the pharynx, and set up inflammation ; or that this process begins in the small lymphatic glands which lie in front of the vertebral column.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of retro-pharyngeal abscess are pain at the back of the pharynx; much difficulty in swallowing food, while drink returns by the nose; alteration in the voice; cough; and often great dyspnoea, with a sense of suffocation. The abscess may be seen or felt on examination of the pharynx, or it may even form an external swelling; and after a time fluctuation can be detected in most instances.

When the disease is primary in children, they become restless, and cannot suckle properly; then respiration is disturbed, and acquires a peculiar stridulous character, especially during sleep; food regurgitates through the nose, or falls into the larynx; the neighbouring lymphatic glands are usually somewhat swollen; and there may be slight oedema. Signs of obstructive dyspnoea increase, and the child becomes cyanosed, while there is recession of the thorax. The voice is feeble, and may be

hoarse or indistinct. If not relieved suffocation may follow. Occasionally the abscess bursts spontaneously, followed by recovery; or the pus passes into the air-passage, and causes asphyxia; or it may penetrate far down into the neck and posterior mediastinum.

Treatment.—This consists in at once letting out the pus by careful incision; and keeping up the strength of the patient by nutritious diet, stimulants, and tonics.

E. CELLULITIS OF THE NECK—ANGINA LUDOVICI.

It will be convenient to notice in the present chapter a morbid condition in which the cellular tissue of the neck is the seat of a more or less extensive phlegmonous inflammation. In most cases the inflammation appears to start in the floor of the mouth, in connection with the submaxillary gland, but it may begin in other ways. Most commonly it occurs as a *complication* or *sequela* of some of the specific fevers, especially diphtheria or scarlatina; but may be *traumatic* or *idopathic* in origin. The condition is attributed to infection by a streptococcus.

Symptoms.—A swelling is noticed, which usually begins about the submaxillary region on one side. It spreads rapidly until it fills the floor of the mouth, and covers the whole front of the neck, or it may even extend more widely. Articulation, chewing, and deglutition are greatly interfered with, and finally become impossible; while marked obstructive dyspnoea may supervene, due either to compression of the larynx or oedema of the glottis. More or less fever is present; or symptoms of septicæmia are very liable to develop. In exceptional instances the swelling subsides, resolution taking place; in other cases an abscess forms, pointing into the mouth or externally; while in others still the condition ends in extensive sloughing—*cynanche gangrenosa*. The breath is very disagreeable; and the tongue foul. When the morbid products are let out, the smell is extremely offensive. A fatal issue is not uncommon, but, on the other hand, I have known recovery follow under the most untoward circumstances. Exacerbations and relapses now and then occur.

Treatment.—In the early stage the progress of the disease may be sometimes checked by leeches, or the application of ice. Later on poultices may be useful. As a rule surgical interference is demanded. When asphyxia is threatened, tracheotomy may be called for. The patient must be sustained by abundant nourishment and alcoholic stimulants.

CHAPTER III.

DISEASES OF THE OESOPHAGUS.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

THE clinical phenomena which are to be looked for as indicative of oesophageal affections include :—

1. **Morbid sensations**, namely, pain, which is generally felt deep in the chest, as if between the shoulders, and fixed in some particular spot, but may be diffused ; as well as other abnormal sensations, such as fulness, tightness, oppression, burning, or a feeling of obstruction by a foreign body. Oesophageal pain may come on in severe spasms.

2. **Painful or difficult deglutition**—**Dysphagia**.—When this symptom is noticed, enquiry must be made with regard to its degree ; whether the difficulty can be overcome by repeated efforts ; if it can be localized in any particular spot ; whether it has come on gradually and steadily increased, or suddenly ; if it is constant or only paroxysmal, associated or not with the taking of food ; if it is influenced by the liquid or solid character of things swallowed, the size of solids, hot or cold substances, or special articles of diet ; and whether the act is aided by any particular position.

3. **Rejection** of various substances, such as food, mucus, blood, membranous exudation, pus, or other materials, either by mere regurgitation, by spasmotic action of the oesophagus, or by vomiting. This may occur immediately after taking food, or only after an interval, a large quantity being then discharged, the materials having accumulated for some time. Food which has remained in the oesophagus instead of entering the stomach has an alkaline reaction, and is macerated and decomposed, instead of having undergone the digestive process.

4. Signs revealed on **physical examination**. Physical examination often aids materially in the investigation of oesophageal affections. This includes :—*a.* A full **inspection of the throat**. It has been attempted to view the oesophagus itself by means of a speculum, with strong illumination. *b.* The passage of an **oesophageal bougie**, which must be done cautiously, the instrument having been previously softened, and then lubricated with oil, glycerine, or white of egg. The tube of the stomach-pump answers very well for this purpose. Before either of these instruments is used, it must be ascertained as far as possible that no aneurism exists in the chest ; but in doubtful cases it may be permissible to introduce a bougie very cautiously. By the employment of this method of examination important information may be obtained :—
(i.) The practitioner can thus ascertain by mediate palpation if there is any actual obstruction, as well as its seat and degree ; whether such obstruction is constant and increasing, or only present from time to time ; if it can be overcome by continuous moderate pressure, giving way more or less suddenly ; or if it yields when the patient is under the influence of an anaesthetic. *(ii.)* Should there be contraction, the actual shape of the obstructed part may be determined by making the bougie warm and soft, and thus getting a mould of the passage

(iii.) Frequently the bougie brings up materials on its surface, such as blood, pus, or cancer-cells, which should then be examined microscopically.
 (iv.) Occasionally the instrument may be felt to pass round something, such as a polypus; or into a diverticulum. (v.) The patient's feelings must not be forgotten in relation to diagnosis. Pain always felt at one particular spot when the bougie is passed may be indicative of the precise seat of an organic disease. *c. Auscultation.* This is sometimes useful, the stethoscope being applied in the course of the œsophagus behind, a little to the left of the spine, in the cervical and dorsal regions. In health, when a person swallows water, a short, clear, gurgling sound is heard; if there is marked stricture, the sound is prolonged, and altered in character—"it eddies as it were in a funnel, with a prolonged resonant gurgle" (Clifford Allbutt). In cases of lesser degrees of obstruction it is said that food may be heard passing through with difficulty, and with a creaking sound. *d. External examination:*—(i.) For any swelling in the neck or elsewhere in the course of the gullet, which might indicate dilatation or sacculation of this tube; at the same time noticing whether any such enlargement is influenced by taking food or drink, or by the act of vomiting or retching. (ii.) For any tumour in the neck or chest likely to affect the functions of the œsophagus, by exerting pressure upon this tube or upon its nerves.

II. SPECIAL DISEASES.

The individual diseases of the œsophagus may be conveniently described under the following divisions:—A. ACUTE DISEASES. B. FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS. C. CHRONIC ORGANIC DISEASES.

A. ACUTE DISEASES.

1. ACUTE ÖSOPHAGITIS.—Inflammation of the œsophagus of different kinds is the chief affection coming under this group, and it probably occurs more frequently than is usually recognized.

Ætiology.—Acute œsophagitis may arise:—1. As a simple *catarrhal* inflammation, along with catarrh of other mucous membranes. 2. From *direct injury* by foreign bodies. 3. From *irritation* or *corrosion* by chemical substances, such as acids, alkalies, or corrosive sublimate: as well as by the contact of very hot or cold materials. 4. By *extension* of thrush or diphtheria, when the characteristic deposits are met with. 5. As a *complication* of certain specific fevers, cholera, pyæmia, and other acute affections; or occasionally of phthisis, Bright's disease, or cancer. 6. In connection with local *organic diseases*, such as ulceration or stricture. 7. By *extension* from neighbouring disease, as glandular or spinal abscess, or laryngeal perichondritis.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute œsophagitis presents the usual signs of inflammation, namely, redness and swelling of the mucous membrane; diminution in consistence; and the presence of various secretions or deposits on the surface, differing according to the nature of the inflammation. Occasionally ulceration is produced, and superficial erosions are common; while, if the inflammation is caused by corrosive poisons, there will be more or less destruction or necrosis of the œsophageal tissues, and the inner surface may be converted into a

haemorrhagic slough, of dirty grey or almost black colour. As a rare event pus forms beneath the mucous membrane. In most cases such a collection bursts into the interior, and recovery may then ensue.

Symptoms.—More or less pain is felt, deeply situated in the chest, along the course of the oesophagus, and it may extend to the epigastrium. If ulceration occurs the pain is very severe at the corresponding spot. Deglutition is difficult and painful; and the food and drink may be ejected, either immediately by spasm, or subsequently by vomiting, along with much mucus, or sometimes with blood, pus, or membranous shreds or casts. In severe cases there may be great distress, with an urgent sense of oppression about the chest. The *general* symptoms are of a febrile character; and there is much thirst. Should the oesophagus be corroded or ulcerated, perforation and its consequences may possibly take place.

Treatment.—In mild cases of acute oesophagitis no special treatment is required. In severe forms of the disease all that can be done is to let the patient suck ice freely; to give only liquid and mucilaginous diet in small quantities, or, if there is corrosion, to employ nutrient enemata, so that the oesophagus may be left entirely at rest; to apply hot fomentations externally; and to administer opium in order to relieve pain and procure rest.

2. PERFORATION AND RUPTURE.—The oesophagus may be perforated or ruptured from within, as the result of ulceration, corrosive destruction, the opening of a diverticulum, injury by a foreign body, or cancer; or it may be penetrated from without, by an aortic aneurism, an abscess bursting into its interior, or a glandular or other tumour. Extremely rare cases have been recorded in which rupture of the oesophagus has occurred suddenly in persons previously in perfect health. This has been attributed to softening of the walls of the tube by the action of gastric juice which has escaped from the stomach, and attacked a surface in which the normal power of resistance is lost, owing to some temporary disturbance of the circulation. The rupture is then invariably in the lower half of the tube, and is almost always longitudinal. Perforation may take place into the mediastinal cellular tissue, the trachea or a bronchus, the pleura, the pericardium, or other parts. Should the patient live long enough, a secondary purulent inflammation may be set up in the surrounding tissues. Food or morbid products are liable to pass into the lungs, and cause pulmonary gangrene. The *symptoms* vary according to circumstances. As a rule there are signs of collapse. In the spontaneous cases sudden nausea and vomiting usually occur during or shortly after a heavy meal; and sometimes a darting pain in the chest is experienced. Almost always extensive subcutaneous emphysema of the neck and thorax soon follows. Death speedily ensues. *Treatment* must be entirely symptomatic.

B. FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS.

1. PARALYSIS.—This extremely rare condition of the oesophagus is met with only in certain nervous affections, namely, in general paralysis of the insane; progressive muscular atrophy; some cases of brain-disease; the paralysis which follows diphtheria, and allied forms; hysteria; or as a part of glosso-pharyngeal paralysis.

Symptoms.—Dysphagia is the only symptom of œsophageal paralysis, which is particularly felt with regard to liquids, these tending to pass into the larynx. Solids, especially large pieces, are more easily swallowed; and the erect posture facilitates the act of deglutition. The bougie can be passed quite readily.

2. **ŒSOPHAGISMUS OR SPASM.**—A slight degree of œsophageal spasm is not at all infrequent; but sometimes this condition gives rise to much distress or pain, and it may cause complete obstruction.

Aetiology.—As a temporary condition, œsophagismus may be due to swallowing foreign bodies, unmasticated lumps of food, or very hot or cold things; dyspepsia with much flatulence or acidity; or abuse of alcohol. As a more or less chronic disorder its usual recognized causes are:—Most commonly some nervous condition, especially hysteria and hypochondriasis; brain-disease very rarely; local irritation, particularly that produced by an ulcer; and direct irritation of the nerves supplying the œsophagus. It has recently been affirmed that œsophagismus may result from certain morbid conditions of the nasal cavities, by reflex irritation.

Symptoms.—*Acute* œsophagismus is attended with severe, and sometimes extremely intense spasmodic pain, seated deep in the thoracic cavity. It may be localized, but in some cases can be distinctly felt rising upwards from the cardiac orifice of the stomach along the œsophagus. At the time deglutition will be difficult or impossible, but the obstruction is soon removed, or may be overcome by slowly swallowing some fluid. In *chronic* cases there may be a constant feeling of obstruction in some fixed point, as if a foreign body were impacted in the gullet, but pain is absent. When food is taken, sudden dysphagia comes on, and a stoppage is felt at a certain spot, either absolute and complete, or yielding after several efforts have been made to swallow, this event often occurring equally suddenly. The attacks are not constant in all cases, for at times deglutition may be effected quite comfortably. The act is often influenced by the nature and temperature of the food. Usually much discomfort is felt during the attempts at swallowing, with a sense of oppression or suffocation, and sometimes spasmodic movements of the muscles of the neck are excited. On attempting to pass a bougie its progress is stopped, but after careful continued pressure the spasm gives way, sometimes suddenly, and the instrument passes on. In the cases of *chronic* œsophagismus which have fallen under my notice the upper part of the canal was usually affected, but the lower end may be involved. Dyspeptic symptoms are frequently complained of, especially flatulence and eructations, which may bring on the spasm. There are no signs of wasting or of serious organic disease as a rule, but generally the patient is distinctly hysterical or hypochondriacal. Should œsophagismus be due to a tumour pressing on the nerves of the œsophagus, this will probably be revealed by physical signs.

Treatment.—Acute œsophagismus can usually be speedily relieved by a warm drink. The treatment of the chronic form will be more conveniently dealt with later on, along with that of other chronic diseases of the œsophagus.

C. CHRONIC ORGANIC DISEASES.

1. CHRONIC CONGESTION AND CATARRH.—These conditions of the oesophagus may be associated with cardiac diseases causing mechanical congestion. Catarrh is also set up in connection with local morbid conditions, especially cancer and diverticula; or may be produced by persistent abuse of ardent spirits or other irritants. It gives rise to an increased secretion of mucus, with a marked thickening of the epithelium, and sometimes to ulceration. In very chronic cases papillomata may form. The *symptoms* present no definite character. It is believed that chronic catarrh may ultimately lead to dilatation of the oesophagus.

2. CHRONIC ULCERATION.—An ulcer is occasionally met with in the oesophagus, presenting characters similar to those of gastric ulcer. In rare cases it leads to perforation.

Symptoms.—Usually considerable localized pain is experienced, which is of a burning character. Deglutition is very painful and difficult, or may even be impossible, chiefly on account of spasm, and this is sometimes the only symptom observed. Blood and mucus may be expelled, or brought away on the bougie. Great care must be exercised in using this instrument if there is any reason to suspect oesophageal ulceration.

3. STRICTURE AND OBSTRUCTION.—The conditions which may cause narrowing or complete closure of the canal of the oesophagus, excluding the presence of foreign bodies, may be thus enumerated:—

(i.) *Organic changes in its walls*, namely:—*a.* Cancerous infiltration. *b.* Cicatricial thickening and contraction after wounds, ulcers, or corrosion. *c.* Hypertrophy of its coats, especially of the submucous cellular tissue; or exudation and thickening, as the result of chronic inflammation. *d.* Syphilitic disease. *e.* Ulceration, with induration and swelling of the margins of the ulcer.

(ii.) *External pressure from*:—*a.* An enlarged thyroid gland. *b.* Enlarged lymphatic glands in the neck or chest. *c.* Various tumours or growths in the neighbourhood, such as cancer, fibrous tumours, or exostoses; as well as aneurisms and abscesses very rarely. *d.* Great distension of the pericardium by fluid.

(iii.) *Growths projecting inwards from the walls of the oesophagus, or from without*, these being generally either cancerous, fibrous, or of the nature of polypi.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid appearances will necessarily vary according to the cause of the oesophageal obstruction. Its first effect is to cause hypertrophy of the muscular coat above; but after a time this coat becomes paralyzed, and food collects, which is followed by progressively increasing dilatation, and in the dilated part ulceration may occur, or sometimes perforation. The mucous membrane is also liable to ulcerate at the point of stricture. Below this point the tube usually becomes narrowed and atrophied.

Symptoms.—Dysphagia is the chief symptom of organic obstruction of the oesophagus, and the patient feels that the food always stops at a certain spot. At first the difficulty is only slight, but it increases, usually gradually and slowly, until at last nothing whatever will pass. Liquids and soft pulpy substances are far more easily swallowed than

solids, especially when these are in large pieces; hence patients suffering from œsophageal obstruction learn to chew their food thoroughly. If a good-sized lump can be got through the narrowed part, what follows will then pass more readily for a time. Food, if it cannot get through the obstruction, is either immediately regurgitated or spasmodically rejected; or it is retained in the dilated gullet for some time, and then discharged in large quantities, being almost always alkaline in reaction, as well as sodden and decomposed. A good deal of mucus is brought up, and sometimes blood or pus, should there be ulceration. Pain is frequently absent or very slight, unless cancer or an ulcer be present, when it will probably be severe. A sense of pressure and weight in the chest is often complained of. If the obstruction is seated near the lower end of the œsophagus, the symptoms may appear to be associated with the stomach.

In proportion to the difficulty experienced in taking nourishment, there will be more or less emaciation and weakness, these symptoms being in many cases extreme, the abdomen becoming greatly retracted, and the patient exhibiting all the signs of starvation, at the same time being often very hungry and thirsty.

The use of the bougie gives accurate information as to the actual existence, position, degree, shape, and rate of progress of any stricture or obstruction. It may also reveal its cause, by the peculiar sensation it communicates to the fingers of the operator, or by the substances which it brings up. The sensation yielded by syphilitic or cicatricial stricture is very firm and resistant. Auscultation may afford some aid in diagnosis. A tumour usually gives rise to symptoms of pressure on surrounding structures; as well as to external physical signs.

4. CANCER OR MALIGNANT DISEASE.—It is requisite to make a few additional remarks with regard to this cause of obstruction of the œsophagus, which is practically its most important disease. Males and persons of advanced years—from 40 to 60—are most frequently the subjects of œsophageal cancer, but I have met with it in females. It has been attributed to local injury or irritation of various kinds, and is said to be very common in hard drinkers. Carcinoma has also been found developing in the scars of old ulcers.

Anatomical Characters.—The upper end of the œsophagus is involved in most cases, the lower portion much less frequently, and only very exceptionally the middle part. All forms of cancer are met with, the *epithelial* variety being most frequent above, and *scirrhus* near the cardiac orifice. The growth begins in the submucous tissue, and it may infiltrate the coats throughout the entire circumference of the tube, or form a distinct tumour. The affected part is thickened, constricted, hard, and irregular; and ulceration of the mucous surface is liable to occur. The disease may extend to the cardiac end of the stomach. The glands in the neighbourhood are generally cancerous; and neighbouring structures are sometimes involved, as the trachea, bronchi, pleura, pericardium, spinal column and cord; or pulmonary gangrene may supervene. The liver and lungs are most frequently affected secondarily.

Symptoms.—In addition to symptoms pointing to œsophageal obstruction, there is much pain, generally localized, but also shooting along the sides, or upwards, or backwards between the scapulae. The bougie may bring up cancer-cells, or these elements may be discovered in the materials rejected. Signs of pressure upon adjoining structures are

usually evident, especially obstructive dyspnœa. In a case recently under my care the left recurrent laryngeal nerve was involved, causing alteration in the voice, and spasmodyc cough, the laryngoscope showing paralysis of the corresponding vocal cord. Dyspeptic symptoms, with pyrosis and eructations, are common, and may be present for some time before any local signs of the disease appear. Great wasting and debility are generally observed, with œdema of the legs; and the cancerous cachexia may be well-marked. (Esophageal cancer almost always runs a rapid course, the average duration being about thirteen months.

5. DILATATION AND DIVERTICULA.—The oesophagus may present a general dilatation of its entire circumference; or a local pouching or diverticulum of a circumscribed portion of its walls. Each of these varieties requires a brief description, but exceptionally they are associated in the same case.

General dilatation is in the large majority of instances the consequence of some local stricture or obstruction, and when this is situated near the cardiac orifice, the tube is affected in its entire extent, but chiefly towards its lower end, the dilatation gradually diminishing in an upward direction, so that it is spindle-shaped. It may ultimately attain very large dimensions. This form of enlargement of the oesophagus occurs rarely without any obstruction, and in some of these cases it has been attributed to a chronic catarrh, or to an accidental bend or distortion of the tube at its lower end. It is also said to have followed a blow on the chest, or lifting a heavy weight. The *symptoms* are those already described in relation to stenosis; but it is important to note that there may be almost equal dysphagia when there is no actual obstruction. Sometimes a limited bulging of the wall of the gullet causes the food to collect at that spot, and thus adds to the difficulty. The passage of the oesophageal bougie will generally reveal whether stenosis exists.

Limited pouches of the oesophagus have been divided by Zenker into *pressure-* and *traction-diverticula*, according to their mode of origin. A diverticulum due to *pressure from within* is in reality a form of hernia or sacculation of the mucous membrane and thickened sub-mucous tissue through a gap in the muscular coat. It is of very rare occurrence, and its origin has been attributed in some cases to a foreign body or injury separating the muscular fibres or causing a slight rupture, the food then pushing out the mucous membrane at the weak spot, afterwards increasing the size of the pouch by collecting in it and dragging it down, as well as by pressure. This form of diverticulum may attain a considerable size; and is either hemispherical in shape, or more or less cylindrical or pyriform. In almost all cases it is situated at the top of the oesophagus, or practically between it and the pharynx, implicating the lower part of the inferior constrictor, and it involves the posterior wall, the pouch hanging in front of the spine. It occurs almost invariably in men of somewhat advanced age; but has been met with exceptionally in children.

Traction-diverticula are much more frequent, but of less importance, and are generally only found *post-mortem*. There may be two or three in the same subject; and they are of very small dimensions. These are explained on the supposition that some adjacent structure becomes adherent to the oesophagus, and then gradually contracts, dragging out the oesophageal wall in the shape of a funnel. Disease of the bronchial

glands is said to be one of the commonest causes acting in this way, and the traction-diverticula are therefore frequent in children, while they occur chiefly about the level of the bifurcation of the trachea. The wall may consist of all the coats of the gullet, or of merely a hernia of the mucous membrane. Internally the mucous lining, much wrinkled, is seen to be drawn towards the apex of the diverticulum. There is one danger in this class of diverticulum, namely, lest it should ulcerate and perforate, either into the mediastinum; into a bronchus, leading to pulmonary gangrene; into the pleura, causing empyema; into the pericardium; or into a large vein.

Symptoms.—Only the large pressure-diverticula give rise to any definite clinical signs, and these vary considerably. Deglutition is gradually impeded; and when a distended sac presses upon the œsophagus, the act may become impossible. Some of the food lodges in the pouch, and is afterwards wholly or partly regurgitated at intervals. This may be accompanied with much strangling and retching. In some instances a tumour has been observed in the neck on one side, appearing or being increased when food or drink is taken, and subsiding when these are rejected. Occasionally signs of pressure upon veins, or upon the recurrent laryngeal or phrenic nerves, have been observed. When the œsophageal bougie is passed, it sometimes enters the diverticulum, sometimes glides past it without difficulty; and this varying result is important in diagnosis. Owing to decomposition of retained food, the breath is often very offensive, and the patient may be conscious of a bad smell or taste, and often complains of nausea. He has various devices to aid in getting the food down. The general condition is below par; and ultimately progressive wasting sets in, ending in starvation. The duration of cases of this kind is very variable, but they may last many years.

GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT OF CHRONIC ŒSOPHAGEAL DISEASES.

Diagnosis.—When a chronic case occurs in which symptoms point to the œsophagus, the diagnosis has to determine:—1. Whether this tube is itself organically or functionally affected; or is interfered with by some neighbouring tumour or other morbid condition. 2. The nature and origin of the disease—if organic, whether cancerous or other; if functional, whether of the nature of paralysis or spasm. 3. The seat of the morbid condition, as regards the part of the tube involved.

It is often very difficult to determine the actual condition present, and in order to arrive at a correct diagnosis the following points must be carefully taken into account:—1. The general and family history of the patient; the conditions as regards age and other circumstances; as well as the history of the case with respect to its aetiology, duration, and course. 2. The general state of the patient, especially noting the degree of emaciation and debility, and signs of any constitutional diathesis. 3. The degree, characters, and situation of the local symptoms, particular attention being paid to deglutition, from which important information may be gained. 4. The knowledge conveyed by the use of the bougie, which is often very accurate and decisive; as well as by the other modes of physical examination employed, especially with the view of determining whether any tumour exists in the vicinity of the œsophagus. 5. Whether any signs of adjacent pressure are present, and their nature. 6. The state of the nervous system. 7. The

condition of the stomach. 8. The progress of the case. The descriptions already given will sufficiently indicate how the several diseases of the oesophagus differ in these particulars.

Prognosis.—Spasmodic affections of the oesophagus are not dangerous as a rule, but they are often exceedingly difficult to cure. Paralysis is very serious in most cases, being a part of some grave nervous disease. In all organic diseases of the gullet prognosis is highly unfavourable. In ulceration the chief dangers to be feared are perforation, or stricture after healing of the ulcer. Every form of actual obstruction involves an unfavourable prognosis; and when cancer exists, a speedy termination may be foretold. In some of the conditions which cause oesophageal obstruction the prognosis depends partly on the effects of treatment.

Treatment.—1. The *general condition* of the patient must be attended to. In the hysterical state asafoetida, aloetics, iron, and valerian or valerianate of zinc are indicated. In cases of serious nervous disease, strychnine and electricity are of most service, but generally little or no good can be done. Attention to *diet* is most essential if there is any positive obstruction; liquid or pulpy nourishing food must be administered in sufficient quantities, and the patient may need to be fed at intervals by means of the stomach-pump, or an oesophageal tube or catheter. At last nutrient enemata have generally to be employed, and should there be ulceration, they are decidedly indicated at an early period, so that the ulcer may not be irritated, and may have the chance of healing. Ice may be allowed freely, if desired. Any special diathesis, such as syphilis, demands its appropriate remedies. Dyspeptic symptoms frequently require attention. The strength must be kept up by *tonics*, cod-liver oil, and *stimulants*; as well as by nutritious food.

2. External local applications sometimes do good in oesophagismus such as a blister over the sternum, a belladonna plaster, or friction with belladonna liniment. Probably these act beneficially chiefly by the mental effect which they produce. No local treatment of this kind has any influence whatever upon other conditions of the oesophagus.

3. The *bougie* is most valuable in treatment, as well as in diagnosis. The threat of its use sometimes does good in spasmodic cases; and its regular employment often leads to much improvement in such cases. By its aid oesophageal strictures can often be dilated, but great care must be exercised in passing the instrument, especially if there should be ulceration. It has also been used for applying local remedies, such as nitrate of silver, tannic acid, salts of bismuth, or cocaine.

4. Various *symptoms*, such as pain, sleeplessness, or vomiting, frequently call for special treatment—for instance, the administration of opium, morphine, or similar remedies; the application of local heat or of the ice-bag; and other appropriate remedial measures.

5. In some instances the advisability of performing *oesophagotomy* or *gastrostomy* has to be considered, with the view of prolonging life, or of relieving distressing symptoms. In certain cases of fibrous stricture of the oesophagus, the operation has been successfully practised of opening the stomach, and dilating the stricture from below.

CHAPTER IV.

DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY ORGANS.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA.

THE clinical phenomena associated with the respiratory organs vary considerably in their precise characters, according to the part affected, and the nature of the disease; but the following outline will serve to indicate their general features.

1. **Morbid Sensations** are very commonly complained of. When the larynx or trachea is involved, these sensations are referred to this portion of the respiratory tract, and they include chiefly mere uneasiness, soreness, or actual pain of variable characters; burning; irritation; or a sensation as if a foreign body were present. They are often increased by acts causing local disturbance, such as coughing, speaking, or singing. There may be external tenderness over the larynx, especially on making pressure directly backwards. In affections of the bronchi, lungs, or pleura, pain or other morbid sensation is generally experienced over some part of the chest, frequently modified by cough and deep inspiration.

2. The act of **breathing** is in many cases disturbed in various ways, there being some form of so-called **dyspnœa**. Any obstruction in the main air-tube causes more or less interference with the passage of air, and hence in laryngeal and tracheal disease breathing is frequently noisy, hissing, whistling, or stridulous; at the same time the act being prolonged and laboured; while there may be signs of urgent dyspnœa, with indications that little or no air enters the lungs during inspiration, especially in the case of young children. In certain conditions expiration is undisturbed. Laryngeal dyspnœa may be constant or only paroxysmal, sometimes coming on very suddenly, and being always liable to exacerbations. As regards other portions of the respiratory apparatus, the characters of the disorder of breathing will vary considerably according to the nature and extent of the disease.

3. Certain **expulsive actions** are often excited, which have for their object the removal of some source of irritation in connection with the respiratory apparatus. The most important of these is **cough**, but **sneezing** and **hawking** also come under this head, the former being excited by some irritation in the nasal passages, the latter by a similar condition in the larynx or throat. Cough differs much in its characters according to its cause. Laryngeal cough is peculiar and characteristic, being irritable and liable to come on in distressing fits; difficult to repress; hard, hoarse, cracked, croupous, metallic, or barking in quality; or occasionally aphonic. In many cases of laryngeal disease there is a constant desire to cough or hawk, brought on by a feeling of persistent irritation or obstruction.

4. The expulsive acts just alluded to are frequently attended with the discharge of various substances, technically termed **expectoration** or **sputum**, and popularly known as **phlegm**. These may consist of mucus; muco-purulent matter; actual pus; croupous or diphtheritic exudation;

portions of morbid structures, or of the tissues of the air-passages or lungs; calcareous particles; and various other materials.

5. **Hæmoptysis** or **spitting of blood** demands notice as a special form of expectoration, this being a symptom of considerable importance in relation to the respiratory organs.

6. The **voice** is liable to more or less alteration in its characters when the larynx or trachea is implicated. It may be weak to complete aphonia; altered in quality, being rough, harsh, husky, hoarse, croupy, or cracked; or changed in pitch or range.

7. Occasionally the **expired air**, especially that driven out by the act of coughing, has an offensive odour of a peculiar kind, which is very characteristic of certain diseases of the respiratory apparatus.

8. In diseases affecting the larynx, **deglutition** may be more or less uneasy or painful, or even difficult; and if the epiglottis is ulcerated or destroyed, the act of swallowing becomes much affected, or even impossible, materials being then very apt to pass into the air-passage. In exceptional cases of certain lung-affections the patient may also experience some difficulty in deglutition.

9. The **general aspect** and **posture** of the patient often afford important indications in connection with diseases of the respiratory organs, and therefore should always receive particular attention.

II. PHYSICAL AND OTHER METHODS OF EXAMINATION.

Physical examination constitutes an essential and most important part of clinical investigation directed to the respiratory organs, and this subject needs therefore to be discussed as fully and completely as the limits of this work permit, though it will be impossible to enter into lengthy details.

A. EXAMINATION OF THE LARYNX AND TRACHEA.

Physical examination directed to the investigation of morbid conditions affecting the larynx or trachea includes:—

1. **External examination of the neck.**—This may reveal, for example, the presence of any tumour interfering with the main air-tube, or a fistulous communication with its interior. Direct examination over the larynx and trachea, by means of *palpation* and *auscultation* more especially, may also be useful, the latter method detecting alterations in the breath-sounds, or revealing local adventitious sounds. It is said that the *vocal fremitus* on the two sides of the larynx may differ in intensity, if one vocal cord is paralyzed.

2. **Examination of the throat internally.**—Much information is often gained by inspecting this part with a good light, as in many cases the throat and larynx are affected with similar morbid conditions. The state of the epiglottis can also be frequently made out in this manner. The finger may likewise be employed sometimes with advantage, to feel the epiglottis, oedematous swelling, a foreign body, or a growth.

3. **Examination of the chest.**—This will show whether there is any obstruction to the entrance of air into the lungs; or if there is any tumour in the thorax, disturbing the functions of the main air-tube.

4. **Examination with the laryngoscope.**—The laryngoscope is the special instrument employed for determining the state of the upper part

of the windpipe by inspection, and although it is possible in many instances to come to a tolerably accurate conclusion on this matter without its aid, yet the exact conditions present can only be positively ascertained by the use of this apparatus. It is also serviceable for the purpose of applying local remedies, and in the performance of operations.

The *laryngoscope* consists of an apparatus for illuminating the back of the throat; and a small mirror, which is introduced into this region in such a way as to reflect an image of the interior of the larynx. Illumination is usually carried out by *reflection*, a mirror being attached to the observer's head in various ways, which is made to reflect either solar light, or, more commonly, light derived from some artificial source. Numerous lamps have been invented, but any lamp which yields a clear, strong, and steady light will suffice for ordinary purposes. *Direct illumination* is also employed, either by means of a suitable gas- or oil-lamp having a powerful lens, or by the oxy-hydrogen or electric light. The *throat-mirrors* ordinarily used are circular, varying in diameter from half-an-inch to an inch; but if the tonsils are enlarged, oval or ovoid mirrors may be employed. They are made of glass backed with a coating of silver; mounted in German silver; and fixed at an angle of about 120° to a slender shank, which is inserted into a handle.

Mode of examination. The patient sits opposite the observer with the head inclined very slightly backwards, an interval of about a foot being left between their faces. The lamp is placed at the side of the patient, the flame being on a level with the eyes. The mouth being opened as widely as possible, and the tongue protruded, this is held gently between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, covered with a handkerchief or soft napkin. By means of the reflector the light is then directed to the back of the throat, so that the centre of the disc corresponds to the base of the uvula. The throat-mirror having been properly warmed over the lamp, is now introduced, the handle being held between the thumb and fingers of the right hand; its reflecting surface is directed more or less obliquely downwards, while the opposite surface touches the base of the uvula, which should be pushed gently upwards and backwards. In order to facilitate the introduction of the mirror, it is often necessary to make the patient take a deep breath, or repeat the sound "a," as in "fate." Some persons can bear laryngoscopic examination for any length of time, if it is properly conducted, but in most cases it is better to introduce the mirror several times in succession for a few seconds each time. In some cases it is necessary to deaden sensation in the throat by sucking ice, or by the application of cocaine.

It is requisite to become familiar with the appearances observed with the laryngoscope in the healthy larynx, before this instrument can be of any service in investigating diseased conditions. The morbid conditions which may be detected are:—1. Changes in colour, due to congestion, inflammation, or other causes. 2. Alterations in the size, shape, and position of the epiglottis. 3. Thickening of tissues, with irregularity, resulting from chronic inflammation. 4. Edematous swelling. 5. Various deposits, especially croupous or diphtheritic. 6. Ulcerations. 7. Morbid growths or tumours. 8. Changes in the shape and size of different parts, particularly of the opening of the glottis. 9. Derangement of the action of the muscles of the glottis, as observed during the act of breathing or vocalization. The laryngoscope may also reveal the presence of a foreign body in the air-tube; and it can sometimes be employed for examining the trachea.

B. EXAMINATION OF THE CHEST.

Physical examination of the chest includes that of its walls; and of its several contents. The present section will be mainly devoted to a consideration of the subject so far as it applies to the respiratory apparatus; other structures must, however, be alluded to more or less, but the examination of the heart and vessels will be treated of separately.

There are some general points of practical importance to which it is desirable to call attention at the outset. 1. A knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the thorax and its contents is essential before physical examination can be applied with any advantage to the investigation of their morbid conditions. It is also requisite to be familiar with the normal *physical signs*, and hence students should first practise the examination of healthy individuals. 2. When investigating for disease the chest should be, as a rule, exposed to the full extent that any individual case may require. It is often necessary to strip the chest and upper part of the abdomen completely, and in the case of males and children there need be no hesitation about doing this; the examination of females must of course be conducted with due regard to decency. To make a practice of examining the thorax through garments is most objectionable. This remark, however, only applies to those cases in which there is no danger from exposing the chest. In some instances this cannot be done at all, or only a very small portion should be uncovered at a time. 3. The patient should assume an appropriate position, the objects aimed at being to place the superficial structures under such conditions that they will not interfere with the production or perception of the physical signs; and to enable the operator to conduct the examination in a comfortable and unrestrained attitude. Ordinarily, when the front of the chest is being examined, the patient should sit or stand with the hands hanging down by the sides. A slightly stooping posture, with the head bent forward and the arms well folded across the chest, so that the scapulae are drawn away from the spine, and the muscles put on the stretch, answers best for the examination of the back. The sides are most conveniently reached by having the arms raised vertically above the head. Of course the position has in many cases to be modified on account of the patient being confined to bed, or even being unable to be moved. 4. The investigation ought to be carried out thoroughly and completely, whenever circumstances seem to require this, every part of the chest being explored. Certain regions, however, demand special attention, namely, those corresponding to the apices of the lungs, both in front and behind; to their bases posteriorly and laterally; and to the heart and great vessels. 5. It is most desirable that the examination should be conducted in a systematic and orderly manner. The different methods should be gone through in regular succession, the lungs being first attended to, and then the heart and vessels. In many cases it is advisable to complete the examination of a particular region before proceeding to another part of the chest. It must be remembered that the various structures within the thorax mutually affect the physical signs which they severally present; and that examination of one organ may aid in detecting some morbid condition in another. 6. Repeated examination may be needed before a satisfactory diagnosis can be arrived at. Moreover, in many acute cases the physical signs should be

noted at frequent intervals, in order to observe their progress; while in the course of affections which are known to have a tendency to implicate the thoracic organs, these organs must be examined as often as the nature of the case seems to require. 7. Certain conditions which influence the physical signs both in health and disease must always be taken into account. These are the state of the chest-walls, as regards the amount of fat and muscle, and the conditions of the ribs and cartilages; the form of the thorax; the part over which the examination is made; the age and sex of the individual examined; the state of the nervous system, nervousness and hysteria materially affecting the respiratory and cardiac actions; the manner in which the breathing is carried on, many persons needing instruction as to how to perform this act; and the amount of air contained in the lungs, according to the stage of the respiratory act as regards inspiration and expiration. 8. When examining opposite sides of the chest, with the view of comparing them, care must be taken that the examination is made over corresponding regions, and in precisely the same manner. 9. A preliminary acquaintance with the principles or theory of physical examination is highly desirable, but the student must remember that by long-continued training and experience alone can he become thoroughly grounded in the practical application of these principles. 10. Physical signs are in the main but indications of certain physical conditions; and, therefore, in order to appreciate the significance of the signs elicited in any particular disease, the abnormal physical conditions associated with such disease must be clearly understood.

DIVISIONS OF THE THORAX.

For the purpose of describing the situation and limits of physical signs elicited in connection with the chest, certain imaginary lines are drawn, and regions marked off, the chief of which are as follows:—

I. **Lines.**—These are drawn vertically from the top to the bottom of the chest, and are thus named according to their position:—1. *Mid-sternal*. 2. Right and left *lateral sternal*. 3. *Nipple- or mammary-line*. 4. *Acromial*, extending from the acromion process. 5. *Mid-axillary*. 6. *Scapular*, along the vertebral border of the scapula. 7. *Mid-spinal*.

II. **Regions.**—These may be arranged in the following manner:—

1. *Median*, included within the width of the sternum:—*a. Supra-sternal*, corresponding to the depression above the sternum. *b. Upper sternal*, extending to the lower border of the third cartilages. *c. Lower sternal* from the third cartilages to the lower end of the sternum.

2. *Antero-lateral*, bounded internally by the margin of the sternum: externally by the acromial line on each side:—*a. Supra-clavicular*, including the space above the clavicle, and bounded superiorly by a line from the outer third of this bone to the trachea. *b. Clavicular*, corresponding to the inner half or two-thirds of the clavicle. *c. Infra-clavicular*, limited below by the lower margin of the third rib. *d. Mammary*, from the third rib to the lower border of the sixth. *e. Infra-mammary*, from the sixth rib to the lower margin of the thorax.

3. *Lateral*, bounded in front by the acromial line: behind by the axillary border of the scapula:—*a. Axillary*, from the apex of the axilla down to a line continuous with the lower boundary of the mammary region. *b. Infra-axillary*, from the above line to the lower margin of the thorax.

4. *Posterior*, from the axillary edge of the scapula to the middle line behind :—*a. Supra-spinous* or *superior scapular*, corresponding to the supra-spinous fossa of the scapula. *b. Infra-spinous* or *inferior scapular*, opposite the infra-spinous fossa. *c. Infra-scapular*, below the scapula to the margin of the thorax, and extending internally to the spine. *d. Inter-scapular*, including the space between the base of the scapula and the spinous processes of the corresponding dorsal vertebræ.

METHODS AND OBJECTS OF PHYSICAL EXAMINATION.

It is necessary to have a clear comprehension of the different methods of examination employed in connection with the chest, with regard to their nature; the manner in which they are severally performed; and what each is capable of teaching; therefore a brief outline of this part of the subject will now be given.

I. **Inspection.**—This merely signifies “the act of looking,” and all that need be said about the mode of conducting it is that different views of the chest must be taken, from the sides and behind as well as from the front; and that a good light should be obtained. Inspection reveals :—1. The state of the *superficial parts*, as regards colour, oedema, amount of fat, fulness of the veins, and other conditions. 2. The *shape* and *size* of the thorax, along with which may be noted the state of the supra-sternal and supra-clavicular depressions; the direction of the ribs; the characters of the intercostal spaces; the size of the costal angles, that is, the angle between the ensiform cartilage and the contiguous rib-cartilages on each side; and the relative height of the shoulders. 3. The frequency, extent, and characters of the *respiratory movements*.

II. **Palpation, Manipulation, or Application of the Hand.**—The palmar surface of the hand and fingers is applied to the chest, in order to appreciate certain impressions which are capable of being conveyed by the sense of touch. In some cases it may be necessary to grasp the sides, particularly in the examination of children; in others only the tips of the fingers need be used, especially when it is desired to localize certain signs; but generally it is best to feel with as much of the hand as can be applied. The objects of palpation are :—1. To give more accurate information with regard to the signs revealed by inspection. 2. To determine the existence and characters of various kinds of *fremitus*. This term comprehends certain tactile sensations conveyed to the surface of the chest, and which are classed as :—(i.) *Vocal* and *cry-fremitus*, produced by the act of speaking or crying. (ii.) *Tussive fremitus*, originated by coughing. (iii.) *Rhonchial fremitus*, due to the passage of air during the act of breathing through the air-tubes or into cavities, when certain physical conditions are present. (iv.) *Friction fremitus*, elicited by the rubbing together of roughened surfaces of the pleura during respiration. 3. To detect the presence of any *fluctuation*; or of *succussion-movement*.

III. **Mensuration or Measurement.**—In some cases it is important to obtain accurate information as to the size and shape of the chest; and the extent of the respiratory movements. For this purpose certain measurements are taken, either while the chest is at rest, or in different states as regards expiration and inspiration. The only measurements likely to be required are :—1. *Circular* or *circumferential*, in different parts of the chest. 2. *Semi-circular*, so as to compare the two sides.

3. *Antero-posterior*, in the middle line and on either side, especially under the clavicles; and *transverse* or *lateral*; at the same time noticing the relations of these two diameters. 4. *Vertical*, from the middle of the clavicle to the lower margin of the thorax. 5. *Local*, particularly from the nipple to the mid-sternal line; and from the same point to the clavicle on each side. The requisite instruments include an ordinary tape-measure; a double tape-measure, made by uniting two tapes in such a manner that they start in opposite directions from the same point, which is useful for comparing the two sides, the point of junction being applied to the middle line behind, and the tapes drawn round, one on each side of the chest, until they meet in the mid-sternal line; and different movable calipers, by which the diameters are taken. Several ingenious instruments have been invented for the purpose of indicating the respiratory movements very precisely, such as the *stethometer*, *thoracometer*, and *stethograph*, but in my opinion they are not of much clinical value. The same remark applies to the *spirometer*, an apparatus by which the vital capacity of the lungs is determined; and to the *pneumatometer*, which measures the force of inspiration and expiration respectively.

In some instances it is essential to get an outline of the shape as well as of the size of the two sides of the chest in different parts, in order to determine the exact capacity of each half, as this depends much on the form, the measurement being sometimes actually less on the side which has the larger sectional area and volume. This is accomplished by means of the *cyrtometer*, and a convenient form of the instrument consists of two portions of flexible lead-tubing of small calibre, united by a short piece of india-rubber tubing. The latter is fixed over the spine, and the two parts of lead-tubing are brought round the sides until they meet in the middle line in front. When the apparatus is removed it indicates the shape as well as the size of each lateral half of the chest, and the outline may then be traced on paper.

IV. Percussion.—By this term is meant "the act of striking," and it affords signs of the highest value in diagnosis. There are two ways of performing percussion, namely, first, by striking the part under examination directly, which is called *immediate* or *direct* percussion; secondly, by placing something on the surface, technically named a *pleximeter*, and percussing over this, which is termed *mediate* or *indirect* percussion. As a rule the latter mode should be employed, but the former is useful sometimes, especially when percussing over a bone, such as the clavicle. A great deal of discussion has been carried on as to the relative value of instruments or of the fingers in percussion. Some practitioners use small plates made of ivory or other materials to place on the chest; and a light flexible hammer or *plessor* to strike with. Other instruments are also employed, but without entering into any discussion on the subject, I venture to express the opinion that the use of the fingers is much preferable, and answers every necessary purpose. The following description may give some notion as to how this mode of examination is to be conducted:—One of the fingers of the left hand should be used as a pleximeter, especially the fore- or middle-finger, but the little-finger is conveniently applied when percussing above the clavicle. It must be laid on evenly and firmly, with the palmar aspect next the surface of the chest. Percussion must then be made with the ends of the fingers of the right hand, the nails being appropriately shortened. Some percuss with all the fingers, either ar-

ranged in a line, or gathered into a cone with the thumb ; others employ only three, two, or even one finger. It is well to practise all methods, but ordinarily the fore- and middle-fingers together answer best, or the middle-finger alone. The force employed must vary according to circumstances, but usually it should only be moderate. The stroke should be made perpendicularly to the surface ; from the wrist ; quickly and sharply ; the fingers not being allowed to remain on for too long a time.

The objects of percussion are :—1. To elicit certain *sounds*. 2. To bring out different *sensations*, such as the amount of resistance, elasticity, fluctuation, and other objective feelings. These physical signs will be considered in detail further on.

V. **Auscultation.**—This signifies the “act of listening,” which may also be performed in two ways. The ear may be applied to the chest either directly, or only with the intervention of a handkerchief or towel, or of part of the clothing, which is termed *immediate* or *direct* auscultation ; or the *stethoscope* is employed as a medium of communication between the part to be examined and the ear of the operator, this mode of examination constituting *mediate* or *indirect* auscultation. For many reasons the latter method should be adopted as a rule ; but the former is often practised with advantage, especially in the examination of children and fat persons, and when auscultation is performed over the back. It is impossible here to enter into any discussion with regard to the numerous stethoscopes which have been invented. A great deal more depends upon the ability to practise auscultation, and a knowledge of what is to be heard, than on the kind of instrument employed ; and any simple ordinary stethoscope answers perfectly well, if the auscultator is competent. A convenient instrument is one made of a single piece of wood, such as deal or cedar, with a moderate-sized hollow stem, a well-fitting and slightly-hollowed ear-piece, and a rather small chest-extremity, which will fit into the intercostal spaces. In using the stethoscope, care must be taken that the chest-end is applied in its whole circumference, without undue pressure ; and also that the ear is properly placed upon the ear-piece. During auscultation the instrument must not be held by the fingers ; and care must be taken that it is not touched by clothing or any other article which might occasion abnormal sounds. Various forms of flexible *binaural stethoscopes* are now much employed, and they have certain advantages.

So far as the *respiratory organs* are concerned, the objects of auscultation are to investigate *sounds*, namely :—1. The *respiratory* or *breath-sounds*. 2. *Râles* or *rhonchi*, which include adventitious sounds originating in the lungs or air-tubes from certain abnormal physical conditions. 3. *Friction-sounds*, due to the rubbing together of roughened surfaces of the pleura. 4. Certain peculiar sounds, namely, *metallic tinkling*, *amphoric echo*, and the *bell-sound*, which are met with in rare conditions of the lungs or pleurae. 5. *Vocal resonance*, or the sound produced during the act of speaking or crying. 6. *Tussive resonance*, or the sound elicited by the act of coughing.

VI. **Hippocratic succussion.**—This mode of examination is rarely required, and it simply means “shaking the patient,” when a *splashing sensation* is felt, or a *splashing sound* is heard in exceptional cases, where a mixture of air and fluid exists in the pleural cavity, or in a large pulmonary vomica.

VII. **Determination of the displacement of organs** is ordinarily ranked as a special method of examination, but in reality it is merely a

conclusion founded on the information derived from some of the other modes already considered. At the same time displacement of organs, both thoracic and abdominal, often gives most valuable indications in the diagnosis of abnormal conditions within the chest.

VIII. The use of the aspirateur, exploratory trochar, or allied apparatus may be classed as a mode of examination, and these instruments occasionally afford most important assistance in the diagnosis of morbid conditions within the thorax.

Other modes of examination are exceptionally employed, but they are not of sufficient practical value to call for notice in this work.

SPECIAL PHYSICAL SIGNS.

Having given this outline of the modes of examination, the physical signs will now be considered under the following headings:—I. SHAPE AND SIZE OF THE CHEST. II. MOVEMENTS OF RESPIRATION. III. VARIOUS KINDS OF FREMITUS. IV. PERCUSSION-SIGNS. V. AUSCULTATION-SIGNS. VI. SUCCUSION-SIGNS.

I. SHAPE AND SIZE OF THE CHEST.

The shape and size of the chest are ascertained by *inspection*, *palpation*, and *measurement*. They may be considered together, as they generally bear a close relation to each other, the thorax being larger in proportion as it approaches the circular form; while both its capacity and its shape depend considerably on the direction of the ribs, and on their relative position to each other. In healthy children the thorax is comparatively large, and nearly circular in form; in adults it is usually more or less elliptical during ordinary breathing, the long diameter being transverse. Many diversities of form may, however, be observed within the range of health, and although there ought to be no obvious want of symmetry between the two sides, slight differences can generally be detected.

A. DEVIATIONS FROM THE NORMAL NOT DUE TO EXISTING DISEASE.

1. The thorax may be *small* and *contracted* in its capacity, this condition being either congenital or acquired. Two forms of small chest are met with, namely:—*a*. That in which the ribs are very oblique, and the intercostal spaces widened about the junction of the true ribs with their cartilages, while the ribs posteriorly are approximated more closely to each other; the chest is long and narrow in all its diameters; the costal angles are very acute; while the scapulae are often tilted up behind, so as to resemble wings, this form of chest having on this account been termed *alar* or *winged*. *b*. That in which the front of the chest is flattened, so that the antero-posterior diameter is very small. Both these conditions may co-exist in the same case.

2. Some important *deformities* of the chest are originated during the period of infancy and childhood, in consequence of an insufficient amount of air entering the lungs during the act of breathing. This may be due either to some obstruction in the air-passage; to a weak condition of the muscles which expand the chest; or to both these causes combined; and the deformities are more liable to occur in proportion to the yielding nature of the thoracic walls, being therefore very readily produced in rickety subjects. When these conditions exist, sufficient air does not reach the lungs during inspiration to enable them to fill up the vacuum produced by the descent of the diaphragm, and hence the chest is driven

in to a greater or less degree by external atmospheric pressure, being also partly drawn in by the action of the diaphragm and possibly of other muscles. The chief diseases originating the obstruction which leads to deformity of the chest are bronchitis; whooping-cough; laryngismus stridulus; croup; and chronic enlargement of the tonsils, or adenoid growths in the naso-pharyngeal region.

Four special deformities of the chest have to be described, namely:—

a. Transversely constricted. This is a very frequent deviation from the normal, the lower part of the chest presenting in front a more or less deep groove or depression, passing obliquely outwards and downwards from the ensiform cartilage.

b. Pigeon-breast. Here there is a falling-in of the true ribs on each side, so that they become more or less straight in front of their angles, while the sternum is actually or seems to be projected forwards. Hence a transverse section of the chest would be triangular, with the base behind and the apex in front. The ensiform cartilage is also frequently bent sharply backwards at its junction with the sternum, where there is consequently an angular ridge or prominence. More or less transverse constriction is always observed along with the pigeon-breast.

c. Anteriorly-depressed. Occasionally the part of the sternum below the third cartilages is considerably depressed, so as to present a concavity of variable depth, carrying with it the contiguous portions of the rib-cartilages. In some instances this deformity is congenital, but this is by no means always the case.

d. Ricketty. Many will not recognize a special form of rickety thorax, but, while it may be merely an ordinary pigeon-breast, undoubtedly the form of chest in rickets is not uncommonly very peculiar and characteristic. It is more or less flattened posteriorly as far as the angles of the ribs, where there is a marked bend; on each side a groove, varying in breadth and depth, runs obliquely downwards and outwards, which may extend from the first to the ninth or tenth ribs, but is most marked about opposite the fifth, sixth, and seventh; this corresponds mainly to the line of junction of the ribs with their cartilages, which is indicated by a series of nodular swellings, but the bottom of the groove is formed more by the ribs than by the cartilages. In front of this groove the cartilages are more or less curved, and the sternum is somewhat prominent, so that the antero-posterior diameter is increased. The longest lateral diameter is opposite the angle of junction between the dorsal and lateral regions; and the shortest corresponds with the bottom of the lateral depressions. The solid organs underneath will influence the form of the ricketty chest.

3. The thorax may be deformed as the result of occupation; of the pressure of stays or belts; or of previous injury to, or disease of the ribs or spinal column. Spinal disease often gives rise to extreme distortion.

B. CHANGES IN SHAPE AND SIZE DUE TO EXISTING DISEASE.

1. *General enlargement.*—In this condition the chest is more or less expanded, approaching to the form and size which it presents after a deep inspiration, or even going beyond this, so as to become “barrel-shaped.” The enlargement may involve the whole length of the thorax, or only its upper or lower part. *Causes.* *a.* Emphysema usually. *b.* Double pleuritic effusion very rarely.

2. *General diminution*.—This is the opposite of enlargement, and the thorax may assume either the alar or flattened form. It often results from phthisis, but the two sides are rarely contracted to an equal extent, while local depressions are usually observed in this disease.

3. *Unilateral enlargement*.—An enlarged side is usually more rounded than the opposite one, and appears to be short, having a comparatively long antero-posterior diameter, and a large costal angle. The corresponding shoulder is raised; and the spine tends to be curved towards the opposite side. *Causes.* *a. Conditions of the pleura.* (i.) Pleuritic effusion in the great majority of cases. (ii.) Occasionally pneumothorax, hydro-pneumothorax, or pyo-pneumothorax. (iii.) Very rarely haemothorax. *b. Conditions of the lung.* (i.) Hypertrophy or distension of one lung. (ii.) Extensive cancer or sarcoma.

4. *Unilateral diminution—Retraction*.—The characters are the reverse of those observed in enlargement, the entire side being small and cramped, while the ribs are aggregated together to a variable degree. *Causes.* *a.* In most instances pleuritic agglutination, binding down the lung so that it cannot expand. In all cases of retracted side pleuritic adhesions are formed after a while. *b.* Collapse of the lung from any cause. *c.* Changes in the pulmonary structure diminishing the volume and power of expansion of one lung, namely, phthisis; chronic or interstitial pneumonia; primary cancer.

5. *Local enlargement—Bulging*.—This alteration necessarily varies much in its situation, extent, and form, and careful measurement may be required in order to determine it accurately. *Causes.* The most frequent and important causes of bulging of the chest are enlargement of the heart; pericardial effusion; and aneurism of one of the great vessels. The remaining causes include:—*a. Conditions of the pleura.* (i.) Empyema pointing on the surface. (ii.) Localized pleuritic effusion. (iii.) Localized pneumothorax. *b. Conditions of the lung.* (i.) Pneumonia at the base or apex. (ii.) A large phthisical cavity at the apex. (iii.) Localized emphysema. (iv.) Very rarely a hernial protrusion. *c. Mediastinal tumours or enlarged glands.* *d. Enlargements of the liver or spleen.* *e. Disease of the sternum or ribs, or of their investing periosteum.* *f. Superficial abscesses and growths.*

6. *Local diminution—Depression or Flattening—Causes.* (i.) Phthisis, the depression being due to the local changes in the lung and the accompanying pleuritic adhesions, and especially affecting the supra- and infra-clavicular regions. (ii.) Localized pleuritic adhesions. (iii.) Wasting of portions of the thoracic muscles.

7. The *costal angles* and *intercostal spaces* are often altered in size; and the latter are frequently abnormally bulged or depressed, as the result of morbid conditions of the pleura. Anything that affects the size of the chest, either generally or unilaterally, will necessarily influence that of the costal angle and intercostal spaces; while the latter will also be altered locally along with any local bulging or depression.

II. MOVEMENTS OF RESPIRATION.

The respiratory movements are investigated by *inspection*, *palpation*, and *mensuration*; some employ special instruments. When examining for disease, it is necessary to observe these movements during ordinary and forced respiration.

The following facts bearing upon the physiology of the respiratory movements must be borne in mind:—1. They are partly *costal* or *thoracic*;

partly *diaphragmatic* or *abdominal*. The thoracic movements are made up during inspiration of *elevation* and *expansion*; during expiration of *depression* and *retraction*. 2. In health there is no obvious difference in the movements of the two sides. 3. In males and children the diaphragm and lower ribs chiefly act during ordinary breathing, the movements being mainly abdominal; while in females the upper part of the chest moves most, and breathing is upper costal. During forced respiration the movements are chiefly upper costal in all individuals. 4. The ordinary number of respirations ranges from 16 to 20 per minute. 5. Different observers have given different statements as to the relative length of inspiration and expiration, but it may be affirmed that there is no marked difference between them. Walshe states that if the whole act of respiration is taken as 10, inspiration may be taken as 5, expiration as 4, and the pause between expiration and inspiration as 1. 6. The intercostal spaces in most parts become rather more hollow during inspiration; as well as the supra-clavicular fossæ. This is especially noticed when a deep breath is drawn, and the sinking of the spaces is best observed towards the lower and lateral part of the chest. 7. Inspiration is almost entirely effected by muscular action; expiration chiefly by the elasticity of the lungs and chest-walls, aided somewhat by muscular force, which is called into play to a much greater degree during forced respiration.

ABNORMAL RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS.

The deviations from the normal which the respiratory movements present may be arranged in the following manner:—

A. ALTERATIONS AFFECTING THE GENERAL MOVEMENTS.

1. *Alterations in frequency*.—The respirations may be counted by watching the movements; or by applying the hand over the epigastrium. Their frequency may be:—(i.) *Increased*. *Causes.* a. Most conditions which interfere with the action of the lungs in any way, and which give rise to the different forms of dyspnoea. b. Many cardiac affections. c. Certain nervous disorders, such as hysteria. d. An unhealthy state of the blood, for example, that present in anaemia or fevers. (ii.) *Diminished*. A slow rate of breathing is often noticed in apoplexy, narcotic poisoning, and some nervous derangements, for example, trance.

2. *General movements in excess*.—The patient breathes deeply and with unusual force, the extraordinary muscles being brought into play; the range of upper thoracic movement is greater; and more air is changed during each respiration. *Causes.* a. Anything that interferes with the functions of the lower part of the lungs, such as diseases in these organs themselves, for example, pneumonia, congestion, oedema, bronchitis; accumulations in the pleura; or abdominal enlargements, as ascites, enlarged liver, or various tumours. b. Cardiac diseases which impede the circulation of the blood, and hence interfere with its proper aeration. c. Certain abnormal conditions of the blood itself, such as anaemia.

3. *General movements deficient*.—This deviation may be associated either with increased, normal, or diminished frequency. *Causes.* a. Anything that extensively obstructs the functions of the lungs, such as capillary bronchitis, double pneumonia, or effusion into both pleuræ. b. Painful chest-affections, for example, acute pleurisy or pneumonia, pleurodynia, intercostal neuralgia. c. Rarely, interference with the action of the respiratory muscles, from spasm or paralysis. d. Certain conditions of

the central nervous system, for instance, narcotic poisoning and trance. *e.* Rigidity of the chest-walls; or, very rarely, infiltration of their structures with cancer.

4. Altered relation between the thoracic and abdominal movements.—(i.) Thoracic movements in excess, from diminished action of the diaphragm. Causes. *a.* Usually some accumulation in the abdomen, mechanically interfering with the descent of the diaphragm, such as ascites, tympanites, or a large tumour. *b.* Conditions which render movement of the diaphragm or abdominal walls painful, especially peritonitis, but also diaphragmatic pleurisy, muscular rheumatism, and inflammation of the diaphragm or abdominal walls. *c.* Extreme pericardial effusion. *d.* Paralysis of the diaphragm from any cause. *(ii.) Diaphragmatic and abdominal movements in excess.* Causes. *a.* Any condition which is attended with pain on bringing the chest-walls into play, such as pleurisy, or pleurodynia. *b.* Paralysis of the thoracic muscles. *c.* Obstruction in connection with the air-passages, preventing the entrance of a sufficient amount of air.

5. Alteration in the ratio between the expansion- and elevation-movements of the ribs.—The only important deviation in this respect is a diminution in the expansion-movement, which may amount to its complete absence. It is especially observed during forced breathing, when there may appear to be considerable movement of the chest, but none of the expansile kind. Causes. *a.* General emphysema, the lungs being already distended, and the chest expanded to a greater or less extent. *b.* Rigidity of the chest-walls. *c.* Anything within or external to the lungs which either prevents them from acting, or interferes with the entrance of air, for example, pulmonary consolidations, pleuritic accumulations or adhesions, or obstruction of the air-tubes.

6. Alteration in the rhythm of the respiratory act.—Unequal or jerky breathing is often noticed in certain nervous disorders, such as chorea and hysteria. The peculiar disorder named "rhythmic dyspnœa," or "Cheyne-Stokes breathing" is noticed under certain circumstances. The most important change in rhythm, from the point of view of physical examination, is that in which the *relative length of inspiration and expiration becomes disturbed*, the former being more or less short and quick; and the latter prolonged, slowly performed, and often laboured—*Expiratory dyspnœa.* Causes. *a.* Diminution in the elasticity of the lung-tissue and chest-walls, which is particularly observed in emphysema with rigid chest. Expiration becomes then either a muscular act; or far more so than in the normal condition. *b.* Some obstruction to the escape of air through the principal air-passages; or narrowing of a large number of bronchi.

7. Recession of the chest-walls during inspiration.—Inspiratory dyspnœa.—Instead of expanding during the inspiration, the chest may fall in to a greater or less extent, especially at its lower part, producing either temporarily or permanently one of the forms of deformed thorax already described. This deviation is chiefly observed in children. Causes. *a.* Almost invariably some obstruction to the entrance of air into the lungs. The conditions to which such obstruction is mainly due are:—(i.) Bronchitis. (ii.) Whooping-cough. (iii.) Anything tending to occlude the larynx or trachea, such as croup, œdema glottidis, laryngismus stridulus, or the pressure of a tumour or aneurism. (iv.) Enlarged tonsils, adenoid growths, or other impediment in the naso-pharyngeal region. *b.* Occasionally, it is said, very rapid œdema of the lungs, or hydrothorax.

B. ALTERATIONS AFFECTING UNILATERAL MOVEMENTS.

1. *Inequality of the respiratory movements on opposite sides.*—This is usually due to deficient or complete want of expansion on one side.
Causes. a. Some accumulation in one of the pleural cavities, or adhesions binding down the lung, and preventing its expansion more or less. b. Changes in the lung-tissue on one side, interfering with its inflation; for example, acute or chronic pneumonia, phthisis, cancer. c. Pressure on either chief bronchus by a tumour, or obstruction of its canal, air being thus prevented from passing into the lung. d. Painful affections of one side. e. Unilateral paralysis of the muscles rarely. When the movements of one side are interfered with, those of the opposite side frequently become excessive, owing to the corresponding lung having to perform extra work.

2. *Altered relation of the abdominal to the thoracic movements on one side.*—This is certainly observed occasionally, but it is not of much consequence as a rule.

3. *Unilateral inspiratory dyspnoea.*—The chest-wall may fall in on one side during inspiration, owing to obstruction of a main bronchus.

C. LOCAL CHANGES IN MOVEMENT.

1. The common deviation met with is a *local deficiency*, in which both expansion and elevation are involved, but especially the former. The usual causes of this change are phthisis; and localized pleuritic adhesions.

2. Occasionally a *limited falling-in* of the chest during inspiration is observed, due to obstruction of one of the smaller bronchial divisions; or associated with a pleuritic adhesion.

D. ABNORMAL MOVEMENTS OF THE INTERCOSTAL SPACES.

In pleuritic effusion, pneumonia, and other conditions which affect the movements of the chest, the intercostal spaces frequently do not exhibit their usual changes of form during the act of breathing, and in some instances of extreme pleuritic effusion an undulatory motion is perceptible. These spaces are often quite motionless over the seat of local deficiency in movement.

III. EXAMINATION OF VARIOUS KINDS OF FREMITUS.

A. *Vocal and Cry-fremitus.*—Vocal fremitus is investigated by applying the hand to the surface, while the patient repeats the words "ninety-nine," or counts "one, two, three," or answers a question. As already remarked, the cry answers the same purpose in children. The normal variations due to the quality of the voice; the age and sex of the individual; the state of the chest-walls; and the part of the chest over which the examination is made, must be borne in mind. As a rule vocal fremitus is more marked on the right than on the left side, especially over the upper part of the chest in front.

The changes affecting vocal fremitus which may be observed in disease are:—

1. *Changes in area.*—This may be—(i.) *Increased*, in distension of the lungs from emphysema or hypertrophy. (ii.) *Diminished*, when the lung is retracted by adhesions; or pushed aside by some fluid ac-

cumulation, or solid mass, such as pericardial effusion, an enlarged heart, or a tumour in the chest.

2. *Changes in intensity.*—(i.) *Increased.* *Causes.* a. Consolidation of the lung from any cause, provided that the consolidating material is not too abundant, or too dense or pulpy; and that it encloses tubes or spaces containing air. Vocal fremitus is especially marked if at the same time the bronchial tubes are dilated; or if cavities of certain characters exist in the lungs. Hence increased vocal fremitus is an important sign of pneumonia, phthisis, chronic pneumonia with dilated bronchi, some cases of cancer, and similar conditions. b. Condensation of the lung from compression or collapse. c. Bronchitis, congestion or oedema of the lungs, and pulmonary apoplexy, but the fremitus is by no means constantly increased in these affections, and is of little importance. (ii.) *Diminished or suppressed.* *Causes.* a. Separation of the lung from chest-wall by some intervening imperfectly-conducting material, for example, fluid or air in a pleural cavity; or enlarged organs or morbid growths encroaching upon the cavity of the thorax. b. Very extensive, as well as dense or pulpy consolidation of the lungs, with obliteration of the tubes, so that no air can enter, as in extensive soft cancer, certain cases of phthisis, and pneumonia with rapid and abundant exudation. c. Distension of the lungs in marked emphysema.

These alterations in the intensity of the vocal fremitus may be observed over a very limited region, or over a considerable part of the chest. It is at the base and apex of the lungs that they are chiefly important, especially in distinguishing between fluid-effusion and pneumonic consolidation at the base, and in aiding the diagnosis of consolidation at the apex, mainly in phthisis. Increase and deficiency may often be noticed in different parts of the thorax on the same side; thus, in many cases of pleuritic effusion the fremitus is absent below, but in excess above, on account of the compressed state of the lung.

B. *Tussive fremitus.*—This is affected in much the same way as vocal fremitus, but it is of little importance, except when the voice is very weak, and hence cannot be made use of.

C. *Rhonchal fremitus.*—Due to the passage of air through bronchial tubes containing thick mucus or some other fluid, rhonchal fremitus becomes an important sign of bronchitis or oedema, especially in the case of young children. It may also be felt occasionally over cavities in the lungs, being especially brought out by cough.

D. *Pleuritic friction-fremitus.*—Not often met with, this fremitus indicates the presence of much firm material in connection with the pleural surfaces. It is most frequently observed during the later stages of acute pleurisy; but may be very marked in cases of chronic dry pleurisy.

IV. PHYSICAL SIGNS OBTAINED BY PERCUSSION.

A. PERCUSSION-SOUNDS.

SOUNDS IN HEALTH.—Five distinct sounds may be obtained by percussion in a healthy subject, which differ in their degree of resonance, length, fulness, pitch, and clearness.

I. *Tympanitic or Drum-like.*—In this country the term *tympanitic* is applied to the sound which is normally elicited by percussing over the abdomen, being dependent upon accumulation of gas within the stomach

and intestines. It has considerable resonance; is of prolonged duration, low in pitch, and full; being either more or less muffled or clear, according to the degree of distension.

2. *Pulmonary or Sub-tympanitic.*—This is the sound brought out by percussing over healthy lungs, and which is therefore audible over the greater part of the chest. Possessing a fair amount of resonance, it is shorter, less full, and higher-pitched than the tympanitic sound, and ordinarily is somewhat muffled. It has been likened to the sound elicited by striking over a "muffled drum."

3. *Laryngeal, Tracheal, or Tubular.*—As the names indicate, this sound is produced over the main wind-pipe in the front of the neck. Much less resonant than those already described, it is also considerably shorter and of higher pitch, and has a tubular quality; as a rule it is not clear, on account of the structures which cover the air-tube.

4. *Bony or Osteal.*—It is not always possible to obtain the osteal sound distinctly over the healthy chest, but it imparts its characters to other sounds, especially over the sternum and clavicles. It can be observed over any of the bony prominences of the body. With hardly any resonance, this sound is very short, high-pitched, and tolerably clear.

5. *Dull or Non-resonant.*—When percussion is made over organs and other structures which are solid, the sound elicited is more or less dull or flat, short, and abrupt; it is supposed that each organ gives rise to a sound having a peculiar pitch of its own, but certainly few persons are able to appreciate this difference.

CHANGES AFFECTING THE PERCUSSION-SOUNDS.

When percussing the chest with the view of obtaining evidence of disease by the aid of the sounds elicited, the points to be noticed are:—
 1. Whether there is any actual change in the characters of the sound elicited, either over the chest as a whole, or over any part of it. 2. If there is any increase or diminution in the extent over which the normal pulmonary sound is heard. 3. Whether the proper difference is noticed between the sounds produced after a full inspiration and after a deep expiration respectively, either generally or locally, both as regards characters and area. 4. If superficial and deep percussion yield different results.

(A.) Changes in the characters of the Pulmonary Sound.—

1. *The percussion-sound may become hyper-resonant or actually tympanitic.*—*Causes.* (i.) Pneumothorax, provided the amount of air in the pleura is not so great as to stretch the chest-walls to an extreme degree, when it is found that the sound becomes muffled or dull. (ii.) Certain states of the lungs, in which they contain excess of air in proportion to the solid tissues and blood, this being often combined with more or less distension of the air-vesicles, namely, emphysema, hypertrophy, atrophy, or extreme bloodlessness. In these conditions the sound is more or less hyper-resonant, but rarely actually tympanitic.

2. Without any marked alteration in quality, *the pulmonary percussion-sound may become unusually clear*, as in some cases of bronchitis, congestion, oedema of the lungs, or the early period of pneumonia. This is due to "liquid or solid being mixed intimately with air-containing tissues," and the sound under these conditions may even assume a tubular quality.

3. *Resonance may be more or less diminished, to absolute dulness.* When this deviation exists, it is necessary to note the degree of the change, which may vary from a slight deficiency in resonance to the most complete dulness or flatness; its situation and extent; the form of the dulness; the pitch of the sound elicited; and, in some cases, whether alteration in posture has any effect upon it. There are two dull percussion-sounds which call for special mention, namely:—1. The *hard wooden* sound, which is very short and abrupt; almost non-resonant; exceedingly high-pitched; and accompanied with a sensation of much resistance. 2. The *putty-like* sound, this being, as its name suggests, absolutely non-resonant, dull, heavy, and dead. *Causes.* It will be useful to enumerate here all the causes which are capable of giving rise to abnormal dulness in various parts of the chest. They include—(i.) Certain affections of the chest-walls, such as infiltrated cancer, diseased or inflamed bone and its consequences, periostitis. (ii.) Fluid accumulations in the pleural sac, whether of serum, pus, or blood; or its extreme distension with air. (iii.) Consolidation of the lung, as in pneumonia, phthisis, thickening of the bronchi, cancer. (iv.) Excessive collection of fluid in the bronchi, air-vesicles, or lung-tissues, due to extensive bronchitis, congestion, or œdema; or a local collection, such as an abscess or hydatid-cyst. (v.) Considerable collapse or compression of the lungs; or, on the other hand, extreme distension of these organs. (vi.) Enlargements of the heart; or solid or fluid accumulations in the pericardium. (vii.) Mediastinal enlargements of all kinds, such as solid tumours, enlarged glands, abscess, or aneurism. (viii.) Enlarged or displaced abdominal organs, especially the liver or spleen; or tumours extending upwards from the abdomen.

4. *Peculiar sounds.* a. *Tubular.* This sound is not uncommonly met with in some part of the chest, but never over any large area. It resembles that produced over the trachea, varying somewhat in its pitch, and usually being quite clear. *Causes.* (i.) Cavities in the lungs, not too large, either superficial, or having some well-conducting material between them and the chest-walls, and containing little or no fluid. Such cavities are generally associated with phthisis, but may possibly be due to dilated bronchi. (ii.) The presence of some solid mass in the chest, not too large, intervening between the trachea or one of the main bronchi and the surface, and forming a well-conducting medium, for example, any mediastinal tumour, but especially enlarged glands in the posterior mediastinum, the tubular sound being then heard in the interscapular region, particularly in children. (iii.) Certain conditions in which the lower part of the chest is encroached upon, so that the lung is pushed or floated upwards, when it is partly in a relaxed, partly in a condensed condition; a tubular sound—*Škodaic resonance*—may then be perceptible under the clavicle. This is often observed in cases of pleuritic effusion; and occasionally in connection with tumours in the chest, enlarged abdominal organs, or consolidation of the lung itself, for example, basic pneumonia.

b. *Amphoric.* This is a peculiar resonant sound of very rare occurrence, having a markedly hollow and metallic character. *Causes.* (i.) A very large phthisical cavity in the lung, situated near the surface; usually with adherent pleura; having smooth, thin, but firm walls; and containing chiefly air, with but little fluid. (ii.) Pneumothorax occasionally.

c. Metallic. This is a high-pitched sound, of distinctly metallic quality, not infrequently tinkling or splashing. It is not always easy to distinguish it from the *cracked-pot* sound, and both may be elicited in the same case, according to the force used in percussion, as they depend upon similar physical conditions, namely, a cavity containing air.

d. Cracked-pot or cracked-metal sound—“*Bruit de pot fêlé*.” Also of metallic quality, this has in addition a cracked character, as its name indicates, and gives the impression of air, or sometimes fluid, being driven out through a chink or small aperture. It may be imitated somewhat by clasping the hands loosely together, and striking the back of either of them over the knee, so as to drive out the enclosed air.

Causes. In the chest the cracked-pot sound is caused by air enclosed between two surfaces, the anterior of which is yielding, being suddenly expelled through an orifice, and it may be met with under the following conditions:—(i.) It is most important as a sign of a cavity in the lung, which must be of good size, tolerably superficial, containing air, having one or more bronchi opening into it, and its front wall being more or less yielding. These conditions are rarely fulfilled except by phthisical cavities at the apices of the lungs, and hence the sign is most commonly observed in one or other infra-clavicular region. In order to elicit the cracked-pot sound, the patient should open his mouth and turn towards the operator, and percussion must be made firmly, but rapidly and abruptly, during the act of expiration. (ii.) In children affected with bronchitis, or even when very young infants merely cry, a sound resembling a cracked-pot sound may be brought out in many parts of the chest, but there ought to be no difficulty in distinguishing this sound from that due to a cavity. A similar sound may, however, be occasionally elicited even in subjects ten or twelve years old, who have very soft and yielding chest-walls. (iii.) In rare instances this sign is observed over the front of the upper part of the chest in cases of pleuritic effusion, or of consolidation involving the posterior part of the lung.

(B.) *Change in the extent of pulmonary resonance.*—The area of pulmonary resonance may be:—1. *Increased*, when the lungs are distended with air, especially from emphysema, but also as the result of hypertrophy of one or both of these organs, or of temporary inflation. 2. *Diminished*. It is not easy to separate this deviation from dulness, still it not unfrequently becomes an important sign of a lung being contracted within its usual limits.

(C.) *Effects of inspiration and expiration upon the percussion-sound.*—1. *There may be no extension in area, or increase in amount of resonance, after a full inspiration, either generally or on one side; and no diminution in the same after a deep expiration.* *Causes.* (i.) Extreme distension of the lungs, with loss of elasticity, as in emphysema. (ii.) Some obstruction to the passage of air through the air-tubes, for instance, that due to pressure on a bronchus, considerable bronchitis, or spasmodic asthma. (iii.) Interference with the expansion of the lung, either from external pressure upon it, such as that of pleuritic effusion or adhesions; or from extensive disease in the organ itself. This only affects the results of inspiration. (iv.) Air in the pleural cavity, which cannot be increased or diminished in quantity by the act of breathing.

2. In cases of suspected consolidation at the apex of a lung, where the signs are not marked, it is very important to notice whether there is the *normal difference in the percussion-sound* after a deep inspiration and

a forced expiration respectively, as regards the amount and area of resonance, and alteration in pitch.

(D.) *Difference between superficial and deep percussion.*—This may be of much use in determining the precise physical conditions present in a phthisical lung. For instance, superficial percussion may give rise to hard dulness, showing the presence of much fibroid consolidation; while on deep percussion a cracked-pot sound may be elicited, indicating the existence of a cavity beneath the consolidation.

B. SENSE OF RESISTANCE OR ELASTICITY.

During the act of percussion the sensation which is conveyed to the fingers should always be noted. The information thus obtained in connection with the thorax is mainly useful :—1. In making out the state of the chest-walls, as to the degree of rigidity, elasticity, distension by air, and other conditions. 2. In distinguishing between dulness due to fluid or to some solid material. 3. In determining the amount and actual density of any solid accumulation.

V. PHYSICAL SIGNS OBTAINED BY AUSCULTATION.

A. RESPIRATORY OR BREATH-SOUNDS.

Respiratory Sounds in Health.—In health three typical sounds may be heard during the act of breathing; on listening over different parts of the respiratory apparatus.

1. *Tracheal or Laryngeal.*—Audible on applying the stethoscope immediately over the wind-pipe in the front of the neck, this sound has the following characters :—It is very loud, more or less hollow, and high-pitched; begins simultaneously with the act of inspiration, and continues of the same intensity throughout; presents a marked interval between its inspiratory and expiratory divisions; and the latter is not only well heard, but is rather the longer, louder, and higher pitched of the two. This sound is laryngeal in its origin.

2. *Bronchial.*—This differs from the former in the following particulars :—It is not at all hollow, nor is it so loud or high-pitched; has a harsh quality; is not quite so rapidly evolved; does not present such a distinct interval between inspiration and expiration; and the latter is shorter than in the tracheal sound. Bronchial breathing may be heard normally in many individuals in the interscapular regions; as well as over the upper part of the sternum and contiguous end of the clavicles. This sound is laryngeal in origin, modified by conduction along the larger bronchi.

3. *Pulmonary or Vesicular.*—On listening over the greater part of the chest, a soft breezy sound is usually heard during inspiration, which is gradually developed, but continuous; no interval can be observed between it and the expiratory sound; and the latter, when present, is very much shorter and more feeble than the inspiratory sound, though rather harsher and lower pitched, but not infrequently it is quite inaudible. Some authorities maintain that the pulmonary breath-sound is actually produced in connection with the air-vesicles; others that it is either entirely or in part the laryngeal sound conducted and modified; probably it is both vesicular and laryngeal in its origin.

Several conditions influence the breath-sounds in health, but only age and sex can be here alluded to. In children they are very loud, and expiration is prolonged, this breathing being termed *puerile*. In aged persons the sounds are weak, but the expiratory portion is usually lengthened, owing to degeneration of the lung-tissue. In females they are frequently loud, and may be of a jerky character.

CHANGES IN THE BREATH-SOUNDS OVER THE CHEST DUE TO DISEASE.

(A). *Changes in intensity.*—1. *The breath-sounds may be weakened in various degrees, or completely annulled, either over a limited region; over one side; or over the greater part or the whole of the chest. In some conditions they give the impression of being deep and distant.* Causes. a. Anything interfering with the entrance of air through the air-passages into the lungs, whether due to spasmodic or other form of constriction, internal obstruction, or external pressure. b. Imperfect respiratory movements, on account of pain, paralysis or spasm of the muscles, or any other cause. c. Permanent distension of the lungs, so that little or no air can enter into the vesicles, as in extensive emphysema. d. Any condition which by compressing a lung prevents it from expanding, or which interferes with the transmission of sound, for example, pleuritic accumulations of all kinds, extensive adhesions, abdominal enlargements encroaching upon the chest, or intra-thoracic tumours. e. Very abundant or dense consolidation of the lungs, as in extensive cancer, and certain cases of fibroid or pneumonic consolidation. f. Conditions in which the respiratory sounds are obscured by râles, for instance, capillary bronchitis or pulmonary œdema.

2. *The respiratory sounds may be puerile, being increased in intensity, the expiratory portion becoming then unusually prominent.* Causes. a. If one lung, or any portion of one or both lungs, is called upon to do extra work, in consequence of interference with the functions of the other lung or parts, the respiratory sounds become puerile over the corresponding regions. This is observed, for instance, in cases of pleuritic effusion or adhesions, consolidation of portions of the lungs, or obstruction of a bronchus. b. When a bronchial division is suddenly relieved of spasm or obstruction, the breathing becomes exaggerated over the portion of lung in which it ramifies.

(B) *Changes in rhythm.*—Many deviations in the rhythm of the breath-sound are described, but only two can be readily appreciated, so as to become practically useful.

1. *The breath-sounds may become more or less jerky or wavy, sometimes presenting a distinct cogged-wheel rhythm, especially the inspiratory sound.* This is by no means a reliable sign of disease, especially in females, in whom it is often met with if they are at all nervous or hysterical, while it frequently depends upon excited cardiac action. Causes. Jerky breathing may be observed:—a. In painful affections of the chest, such as early pleurisy or pleurodynia, when the patient often breathes in an interrupted manner. b. In the early stage of phthisical consolidation. c. In connection with pleuritic adhesions.

2. *The most important change in rhythm is a prolongation of the expiratory sound, so that it may become twice or even three or four times the length of that of inspiration, which is often actually shortened.* Prolonged expiration generally accompanies certain alterations in the breath-sounds to be immediately noticed, but it may be the main or the only alteration

observed. *Causes.* *a.* Emphysema, the elasticity of the lungs being more or less diminished. *b.* Obstruction to the exit of air through the respiratory passages.

(C). *Change in the area over which the breath-sounds are heard.*—This may be:—*1. Increased*, from distension of the lungs. *2. Diminished*, owing to their retraction.

(D.) *Changes in quality, along with other characters.*—Some very important abnormal breath-sounds are met with, which differ entirely from those ordinarily heard over the chest, in their quality, pitch, rhythm, and other particulars.

1. *Harsh or rough breathing.*—As its name indicates, this merely implies a harshness of the breath-sound, its soft and breezy character being wanting, which is specially marked during expiration, this portion being unduly lengthened. Harsh breathing is not very reliable as evidence of disease, but is frequently noticed in connection with slight consolidations, bronchial catarrh, the early period of pneumonia, and various other morbid conditions.

2. *Bronchial.*—In its characters bronchial breathing corresponds with the normal sound thus named, but it is heard in unusual regions, or is unusually marked. *Causes.* *a.* Consolidation of the lung-tissue, if moderate in amount and contiguous to the surface, for example, in phthisis, cancer, chronic pneumonia, and some cases of acute pneumonia. Even when the lungs enclose small cavities or dilated bronchi, the breathing is usually merely of a bronchial character. *b.* Condensation of the lung from compression or collapse.

3. *Blowing.*—Although approaching on the one hand to bronchial breathing, and on the other to tubular, this sound has sufficiently distinctive characters to merit recognition. It differs from the former in its markedly “blowing” quality, being much clearer and higher pitched; from the latter in being more diffused, and not hollow, or as if it originated in a localized tube or space. *Causes.* *a.* Diffused pulmonary consolidation, not too abundant, especially in certain parts, as in some cases of phthisis and pneumonia. *b.* Small cavities or dilated bronchi surrounded by solid material. *c.* Occasionally conduction of the sound from a large bronchus to the surface by a solid growth.

4. *Tubular.*—A high-pitched, somewhat hollow and metallic sound; this much resembles the normal tubular breathing heard over the trachea, and gives the impression of being directly conveyed from a tube. It varies in its extent, but is usually limited. *Causes.* *a.* Acute pneumonic consolidation, in which disease the sound often presents the most typical characters, and may be extensively heard. *b.* Certain cavities in the lungs or dilated bronchi. *c.* A solid mass of moderate size intervening between the trachea or a main bronchus and the chest-wall. *d.* Condensation of the lung under certain conditions.

5. *Cavernous.*—This is a clear and distinctly hollow sound, varying in its pitch, which tends to be low, especially during expiration. It is usually only perceived over a limited area, and strikes the ear as being produced in a hollow space, its exact characters varying according to the dimensions and other characters of this space. *Causes.* *a.* A cavity in the lung, of some size, tolerably superficial, and not containing much fluid. *b.* In rare instances, it is said, consolidation around an ordinary-sized bronchus. *c.* A limited pneumothorax possibly.

6. *Amphoric.*—A still more hollow sound, and of peculiar metallic quality, amphoric breathing resembles the sound heard on blowing into

a large empty glass bottle or metallic vessel. *Causes.* For its production it is necessary to have an extensive empty cavity, with firm and smooth walls, into which air enters more or less freely. These conditions are found in :—*a.* Pneumothorax most frequently, air entering the pleura through a communication from the lung. *b.* A large phthisical excavation in the lung very rarely.

The morbid sounds just described may be heard over different parts of the same chest; or they may be traced in succession over the same region as the physical conditions change, there being no marked boundary-line between them, but a gradual transition from one to another. For instance, in phthisis the breathing, which is at first harsh or bronchial, may become blowing, especially in certain regions, and then in succession tubular, cavernous, or even amphoric, as cavities form and increase in size. The hollow sounds, though usually present during inspiration and expiration, may only be heard during the former act. A deep breath usually causes them to become much louder; and frequently a sharp cough enables them to be heard where they did not exist before, owing to the displacement of some obstructing secretion, or the discharge of fluid from a cavity. These sounds may appear to be superficial and loud; or more or less deep and feeble. Care must be taken not to mistake a conducted pharyngeal or laryngeal sound for cavernous respiration.

7. In exceptional instances peculiar respiratory sounds are met with. In connection with some cavities inspiration has a *sucking* or *hissing* character—the *india-rubber-ball sound* (Mitchell Bruce). Sometimes the air appears to be drawn away during inspiration, and puffed back during expiration; this is termed the *souffle* or *veiled puff*.

B. RÂLES OR RHONCHI.

These terms are applied to certain adventitious sounds which are originated within the lungs or the air-tubes. Some writers make a distinction between *râles* and *rhonchi*, which will be sufficiently indicated in the classification given further on. Before proceeding to their consideration it is necessary to mention that they may be simulated by sounds brought out by the act of breathing, and resulting from contraction of the muscles of the chest-walls; subcutaneous oedema or emphysema; hairs on the surface of the thorax; fluid in the mediastinal cellular tissue; or the opening-up of healthy lung-tissue during a deep inspiration.

Râles or rhonchi are generally produced by the passage of air during the act of breathing:—(i.) Through bronchial tubes narrowed by thickening of the mucous membrane; by various deposits upon the surface of this membrane, such as thick secretion or exudation; by organic changes in the walls of the tubes; or by spasm of their muscular fibres. (ii.) Through fluid of different degrees of consistency, contained in normal or enlarged air-tubes or air-vesicles. (iii.) Through fluid contained in cavities in the lungs. (iv.) Through substances originally solid, which are undergoing a process of softening. (v.) Into air-vesicles, either of normal size or enlarged, the walls of which are collapsed or stuck together, thus causing them to open up. In rare instances the action of the heart originates râles, when there is much fluid in contiguous tubes or cavities.

The following points must be noticed with regard to these adventitious sounds:—1. Their characters, namely, whether dry or liquid; large

or small; peculiar quality, such as musical, crackling, crepitant, bubbling, gurgling, whistling, etc.; pitch; whether at all hollow or metallic, and the degree in which this character is present. 2. If they are heard both during inspiration and expiration, or only during one of these divisions of the respiratory act. 3. Their situation and extent. 4. Their amount. 5. Whether they are constant or only heard at intervals; and if they are affected by a full inspiration or cough.

CLASSIFICATION AND SPECIAL CAUSES.—So many different classifications of râles or rhonchi have been invented, and such confusion has prevailed with regard to the meaning of the various terms employed, that it is by no means easy to fix upon any classification. I have, however, adopted the following arrangement:—

(A) *Vibratory or dry musical rhonchi.*—These sounds are produced by air traversing air-tubes narrowed in some of the ways already mentioned. They vary in their precise characters according to the size of the tube affected, and the immediate cause of the narrowing. They are divided as follows:—1. *Sonorous.* This is a deep-toned, low-pitched sound, varying much in its exact quality, which may be snoring, growling, humming, cooing, etc.; it appears to be superficial, is often extensively heard, and generally accompanies both inspiration and expiration, but may be limited to either division, especially expiration. 2. *Sibilant.* This is of much higher pitch, and is often whistling, hissing, or musical; it is not so extensively heard as the sonorous rhonchus; and as a rule accompanies both inspiration and expiration. Both these classes of adventitious sounds are liable to much irregularity, disappearing from time to time, especially after a cough, and they often occur together. *Causes.* a. Bronchitis, especially chronic; but also the acute form in its early stage; and the plastic or fibrinous variety. b. Spasmodic contraction of the bronchial tubes in cases of asthma. c. Narrowing of the tubes from organic disease.

(B.) *Crepitant râles.*—1. *True crepitant râle.* This is a sound met with in the early stage of acute pneumonia, and therefore usually observed towards the base of one lung, but it may be heard over any part of the organ which is the seat of the inflammatory process. It consists of a great number of extremely minute, sharp, crepitant sounds; equal in size; perfectly dry; heard in short puffs during inspiration alone in most cases, and often only towards the termination of this act; and increased in amount by a deep breath. It has been aptly compared to the sound produced by rubbing a lock of hair firmly between the finger and thumb close to the ear; or to the burning of salt in the fire. The theories as to the production of the *true crepitant râle*, presuming that it originates within the lung, are that it is due to the opening-up of air-vesicles stuck together; to air passing through thick exudation in these vesicles; or to minute lacerations of lung-tissue. It must, however, be mentioned that some authorities regard this adventitious sound as pleuritic in origin, being in reality a friction-sound, and my own observations in certain cases of pneumonia have convinced me that in some instances at any rate it is of this nature. 2. *Redux crepitant râle.* Heard in the advanced stage of acute pneumonia, when resolution is taking place, this differs from the râle just considered in that the crepitant sounds are much less abundant; larger and of unequal size; less dry; and perceived during both inspiration and expiration. It gives the impression of air passing through a thick material, which is the pneumonic exudation undergoing a process of softening. A sound of

similar characters is sometimes noticed in phthisis. 3. *A large dry crepitant râle* is said to be observed in some cases of emphysema, not abundant, and resembling the sound produced by inflating a bladder. It is supposed to be due to the opening-up of enlarged vesicles. 4. *Compression or collapse râle*. When the lung is compressed or collapsed from any cause, a râle consisting of a number of small dry crepitations may be slowly evolved at the close of, or immediately after a deep inspiration. 5. *Adhesion râle*. This is a râle associated with pleuritic adhesions, usually of a crepitant character, and due to the retention of secretion within the superficial air-vesicles and small tubes.

(C.) *Crackling or Clicking Râles*.—During the process of softening which the consolidation of phthisis undergoes, certain râles of a crackling or clicking character are developed, such as would be expected from the passage of air through such a material. These are named:—1. *Dry crackling* or *dry crepitation*, which consists of some three or four crackles or clicks, sharp, abrupt, and dry, only heard usually during inspiration. It indicates the commencement of softening. 2. *Moist or humid crackling* or *crepitation*. Crackling in character, this is more abundant than the dry râle, though the crackles are not large or numerous, but they are more moist, as if air were passing through a less consistent substance, and occur both during inspiration and expiration, being most marked usually in the former. It accompanies more advanced softening, and is also met with in connection with small cavities. These râles are chiefly observed at the apices of the lungs.

(D.) *Mucous, Submucous, and Subcrepitant Râles*.—These constitute a very common class of adventitious sounds, the characters of which are readily appreciated. They result from the transmission of air through fluid contained in the air-tubes or vesicles, and the varieties observed depend upon the nature and quantity of the fluid, and its exact situation. Generally they consist of a number of distinct sounds, usually *bubbling* in quality, but sometimes of a *crackling*, *rattling*, or somewhat *gurgling* character. The individual sounds vary in size considerably, as well as in number and pitch. If they are of large or medium size, the râle is called *mucous*; if small, *submucous*; and if very minute, *subcrepitant*, because it then resembles a crepitant sound. These râles accompany both inspiration and expiration, being generally more marked during the former act, and they may be so abundant as completely to mask the breath-sounds. A cough often greatly influences this class of râles, both as to their amount and site, sometimes removing them completely for the time. They are most common and most marked towards the bases of the lungs, but may be heard universally over the chest. In children, and when they originate in the larger tubes, they are apt to have a somewhat metallic or hollow quality. *Causes.* (i.) Bronchitis. (ii.) Edema of the lungs. (iii.) Haemorrhage into the bronchial tubes. (iv.) Rarely fluid from outside the lung emptying itself through the bronchi, such as pleuritic effusion.

(E.) *Hollow Râles*.—The essential feature of these abnormal sounds is that they are more or less hollow in quality, and convey the impression of being originated in a cavity. For their production a hollow space must exist, containing fluid, through which air passes; the size and other conditions of the space will influence their degree of hollowness and their pitch, while the amount and consistence of the fluid will affect the abundance and actual character of the râle. Hence it may be *bubbling*, *crackling*, or *gurgling*; is very variable in size and amount;

and subject to change considerably from time to time. According to their degree of hollowness, pitch, and exact quality, these râles have been subdivided into such varieties as *cavernulous*, *cavernous*, *amphoric*, *ringing*, *metallic*, etc.; and as a class they are often termed *consonating* râles. They are heard generally during inspiration and expiration, but may be limited to either portion of the respiratory act. A cough often causes them to disappear, or renders them more distinct. Ordinary mucous râles occasionally assume a hollow character, if produced near a large cavity. The heart's action sometimes originates cavernous râles, by agitating the fluid in a contiguous cavity. Phthisis is the disease in which these râles are chiefly observed; but they may also be noticed in connection with the effects of pulmonary abscess or gangrene, or with dilated bronchi. When the pleura contains air and fluid, provided a communication with the lung exists below the level of the fluid, metallic or amphoric râles may be elicited during the act of breathing or coughing.

C. PLEURITIC FRICTION OR ATTRITION-SOUNDS.

By the rubbing together of the adjacent surfaces of the pleura, when this structure is the seat of certain morbid changes, or by the movements of adhesions, adventitious sounds are often elicited during the act of breathing, usually termed *friction-sounds*. In examining for this class of physical signs, it may be requisite to investigate every part of the chest, but especially its lower portion laterally and behind, as they may be present over but a very small area; the patient must also be made to breathe deeply, otherwise the requisite rubbing together of the surfaces may not be brought about.

The following are the chief points relating to friction-sounds which need to be noticed:—
 1. *Characters.* As a rule friction-sounds are more or less *rubbing* in quality, varying from a slight *graze* to a loud *grating* sound. They may, however, be *creaking*, *crepitant*, *crackling*, *clicking*, or *rumbling*. In not a few cases a friction-sound closely resembles crepitant, crackling, or even small mucous râles, but is distinguished from these by being unaffected by a cough. *Superficialness* is a prominent character of all these sounds.
 2. *Site and extent.* Friction is usually observed on one side, and towards the lower part of the chest, especially below the angle of the scapula, or in the infra-axillary region. It is generally limited in extent, sometimes not covering an area of more than an inch, but may be heard all over one side, or even over the greater part of both sides.
 3. *Intensity.* This varies from a scarcely perceptible rub, to a sound audible even at a distance from the chest. Generally it is moderately loud.
 4. *Rhythm.* Friction-sound is usually most perceptible during inspiration, but often accompanies expiration also; it may only be heard at the end of a deep inspiration. It is frequently irregular and jerky.
 5. *Causes.* The pathological conditions in connection with the pleura which may give rise to friction-sounds are:—
 a. Dryness of the surface and increased vascularity, with prominence of the vessels, which may cause a slight grazing.
 b. Exudation associated with pleurisy, the characters of the sound depending upon the thickness and density of the material deposited, and the amount of fluid mixed with it.
 c. Certain forms of pleuritic thickening and adhesion.
 d. Tubercular and cancerous formations. It may be mentioned that a cirrhotic liver may originate a sound simulating pleuritic friction.

D. VOCAL AND CRY RESONANCE.

The chief points to be noticed with regard to the *vocal resonance* are :—
 1. Its intensity and degree of clearness. 2. Its quality and pitch. 3. The area over which it can be heard. The following are the deviations from the normal which may be met with :—

1. *The resonance may be more or less weakened to complete extinction, over a variable extent of surface.*—*Causes.* (i.) Air or fluid in the pleura, separating the lung from the chest-wall. (ii.) Very extensive or dense consolidation of the lung, as in cancer, and cases of fibroid phthisis. (iii.) Emphysema in many cases. (iv.) Intra-thoracic tumours; or enlarged abdominal organs or tumours encroaching upon the chest. (v.) Obstruction of a main bronchus, and consequent pulmonary collapse.

2. *It may be increased in intensity or clearness*, this being often associated with *alterations in quality and pitch*. Four varieties of abnormal vocal resonance are recognized, which may be considered under this head, namely :—

(i.) *Bronchophony*.—This term merely implies an increase in the clearness of the vocal resonance, which, however, is generally intensified as well. It is commonly noticed in health in the interscapular regions, especially at their upper part; as well as frequently just below the inner end of the clavicles. *Causes.* a. Any lung-consolidation, provided it is not excessive, as in phthisis or pneumonia; in the latter the bronchophony has often peculiar characters, being *metallic* and *sniffling*. b. Small cavities in the lung, with thickening and consolidation around. c. Condensation of the lung in most cases. d. Occasionally a solid mass intervening between a main bronchus and the chest-wall, provided it is not too large.

(ii.) *Pectoriloquy*.—Here the voice seems to be conducted directly to the ear along the stethoscope, and the words uttered may often be distinctly recognized. The resonance is not uncommonly very intense, and gives a most unpleasant sensation to the listener. *Causes.* a. Certain cavities in the lungs in the great majority of cases. The conditions required are that the cavity is of good size, but not too large, and tolerably smooth; does not contain much fluid; has firm but not too thick walls; lies near or is adherent to the chest-walls; and has one or more bronchi communicating with it, so that air may enter. b. Very rarely a solid mass between the main air-tube or a large bronchus and the chest-wall. c. Occasionally pneumothorax under certain conditions.

A variety of pectoriloquy is described under the term *whispering pectoriloquy*, in which a whisper is clearly heard, and often the separate words can be distinguished. This, however, is not an alteration in the voice, but merely a modified expiratory sound. Typical whispering pectoriloquy is only observed in connection with large and superficial spaces, and is best heard in cases of pneumothorax, but is not infrequently associated with phthisical cavities.

(iii.) *Oegophony*.—The vocal resonance has a peculiar *bleating, nasal*, or “punch-like” quality in some cases of pleuritic effusion, to which the term *oegophony* has been applied. As a rule it is best heard about the angle of the scapula, but may vary with a change in the position of the patient. Some authorities are of opinion that oegophony is due to the presence of a thin layer of fluid between the lung and the chest-wall; others that it is caused by superficial compression of the lung.

(iv.) *Amphoric resonance*.—In certain large cavities with firm walls, the voice may have the characteristic hollow and metallic quality known as *amphoric*. This is only very rarely noticed, either in connection with large phthisical cavities, or in cases of pneumothorax.

3. The area over which vocal resonance can be heard will be influenced by the same conditions as those which affect the extent of the vocal fremitus.

E. TUSSIVE RESONANCE.

The cough may be intensified in connection with consolidations and cavities, and may assume peculiar characters, hence named *bronchial*, *cavernous*, *metallic*, *amphoric*, etc., but these alterations do not add much to the knowledge gained by studying the vocal resonance, though the tussive resonance may be advantageously made use of where the voice is weak, as in females. The uses of cough in the investigation of disease, which can be best turned to practical account, are as follows:—1. During the act adventitious sounds may be elicited, which are not heard during the mere act of breathing, especially in connection with cavities. 2. Various fluid substances which have accumulated in bronchial tubes or cavities may be dispersed and expelled, râles being thus done away with, and the breath-sound rendered louder, so that its characters may be better appreciated. In this way the act of coughing may be the means of distinguishing between friction-sounds and sounds produced within the lung; and in connection with cavities, cavernous or some other breath-sound may sometimes be heard after a cough, where respiration has been previously quite inaudible.

F. PECULIAR SOUNDS HEARD IN CONNECTION WITH LARGE CAVITIES.

1. *Metallic tinkling*.—Resembling the sound produced by striking a hollow glass vessel with a pin, this is a single, clear, high-pitched, ringing sound, heard in connection with large air-containing spaces, in which there is a little fluid. It is supposed to be occasioned by the bursting of a bubble, or the dropping of fluid from the top of the cavity; and may be originated during the act of breathing, speaking, or coughing, or, rarely, by the action of the heart. Large phthisical cavities, and hydro- or pyo-pneumothorax are the conditions in which metallic tinkling occurs, though it is very rare.

2. *Amphoric echo*.—An echo of amphoric character may attend the respiratory sounds, voice, cough, râles, the heart-sounds, or even the act of swallowing. For its production there must be a large hollow space, having a smooth interior, and containing air, such as is met with in pneumothorax, and occasionally in phthisis.

3. *Bell-sound*.—In some cases of pneumothorax, when a coin is placed on the affected side and struck with another coin, a clear and ringing sound, resembling that elicited by striking a bell, may be heard on listening over another part of the same side.

VI. SUCCUSSION-SIGNS.

Succussion is a mode of examination very seldom required, and merely shows the presence of air and fluid in a large space. The signs produced by shaking a patient are:—1. A *splashing sensation* felt by the hand. 2. A *splashing-sound*. They are occasionally present in hydro- or pyo-pneumothorax; and extremely rarely in connection with large phthisical cavities.

CHAPTER V.

GENERAL THERAPEUTICS OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

I HAVE previously intimated my intention of giving in the present edition an introductory outline of the general therapeutics of the more important organs and systems of the body. The respiratory system being the first in connection with which I have deemed this course of procedure necessary, it may be well to explain my purpose once for all. I do not pretend to discuss the subject in any detail, and my main object is to give a summary of the therapeutic groups which are commonly recognized in relation to the system or organ under consideration; of the chief agents belonging to each group; and of their modes of administration and application, when these are in any respect unusual. In this way some idea will be gained of the principles upon which the treatment of the several structures is founded; which can then be rationally applied in dealing practically with their diseases and symptoms.

I. Therapeutic groups.—The following are the groups of therapeutic agents usually recognized in relation to the respiratory system:—

1. *Sternutatories and Errhines.*—These agents are brought into contact with the nasal mucous membrane, either for the purpose of exciting the act of sneezing, or producing a free flow of watery mucus, or for both these effects. Some drugs act thus when introduced into the system, especially iodides, but they are not definitely used with this intention. The chief agents available under this group are direct irritation of the interior of the nose, as by tickling with a feather; snuff; the different peppers; ipecacuanha powder; and inhalation of ammonia, iodine, the pungent products of moistened mustard or horseradish, or various other irritating gases and vapours. Veratrine is a most powerful sternutatory, but is a dangerous drug to use for this purpose.

2. *Anti-sternutatories—Anti-errhines.*—These are also applied locally, being intended to check either excessive or paroxysmal sneezing, or coryza, which may occur under different circumstances. The most important agents are cocaine, morphine, quinine, and bismuth powders.

3. *Pulmonary or Respiratory Stimulants.*—The idea more immediately associated with a pulmonary stimulant is that of exciting the act and function of respiration, thus promoting the oxygenation of the blood, as well as its circulation through the lungs, and other minor effects. It may be extended, however, to the act of coughing, which under various circumstances requires to be encouraged rather than subdued or checked. The medicinal respiratory stimulants which are of practical use include ammonia and its carbonate, both when inhaled and administered internally; alcohol; the various ethers, especially sulphuric; chloroform at first; camphor; nux vomica or strychnine; and perhaps belladonna under certain circumstances. In many conditions where respiration is gravely interfered with, however, these are of little or no service, and recourse must be had without delay to such measures as dashing cold water on the face or chest, in order to excite breathing by reflex

stimulation; inhalation of oxygen; artificial respiration; the employment of electricity; or some suitable operation, such as tracheotomy. In certain cases of this kind it is important to determine at the outset that there is no removable obstruction in connection with the main air-passages.

4. *Pulmonary or Respiratory Sedatives, Depressants, and Antispasmodics.*—This is a somewhat comprehensive group, and the purposes for which the agents that belong to it are employed will differ under different circumstances. As regards respiration, we may aim, in the first place, in merely producing a *sedative* effect upon the act, when it is unduly excited, both in frequency and degree or extent. It must be noted, however, that certain remedies of this class are capable of acting further as *depressants*, bringing the function below what is normal, and in this way they may either be beneficial or dangerous. Another object to be kept in view is indicated by the term *antispasmodic*, which implies the relief of disturbances of breathing, usually paroxysmal, which are supposed to be associated with some spasmodic disorder of muscular structures belonging to the respiratory apparatus. A distinct class of agents which may be included under this group are those which are used to relieve or subdue cough, which may be termed *anti-tussives*. The more important official remedies which produce one or more of the effects mentioned are antimonial preparations, especially tartarated antimony; bromides, some attaching particular value to bromide of ammonium; the fumes of nitre-paper inhaled; hydrocyanic acid; hydrate of chloral and butyl-chloral; ether and chloroform; nitrite of amyl; opium or morphine, and codeine for cough; belladonna, stramonium, hyoscyamus, and tobacco; conium or inhalation of conine; lobelia, especially the ethereal tincture; aconite and veratrum viride; gelsemium; and cocaine locally applied in connection with the throat or upper air-passages. Some milder remedies used for cough will be mentioned in relation to the treatment of that symptom. Various non-official respiratory antispasmodics are much in vogue, but they need not be referred to here.

5. *Agents affecting Expectoration.*—From a therapeutic point of view we have to deal with the *act* of expectoration; and with the *materials* included under the term, commonly known as sputum or phlegm. With regard to the former, it will suffice to point out that it belongs rather to the subject of cough, and to draw attention to the fact that it is by no means always desirable to attempt to prevent the act of expectoration, but, on the contrary, this has often to be encouraged and assisted, in order to get rid of morbid products which would otherwise do harm by accumulating in the air-tubes or lungs. The word *expectorant* is used very vaguely, but the actual effects which may be produced upon the expectoration itself may be indicated as follows:—

a. *Sedative Expectorants.*—These are supposed to act on the vessels of the mucous membrane lining the air-passages, subduing excessive vascular tension, and dilating the vessels; at any rate, the effect they produce is to create a more or less free flow of watery fluid from the membrane, which is easily expelled, thus often relieving unpleasant and even painful symptoms, especially in the early stage of cases in which it is acutely inflamed or congested. The sedative expectorants, as thus defined, include preparations of antimony, the antimonial wine being usually employed for this purpose; ipecacuanha; apomorphine in minute doses; lobelia, especially useful if there is a spasmodic condi-

tion of the bronchial tubes; tincture of aconite; jaborandi and pilocarpine; and iodide of potassium or sodium.

b. Stimulant Expectorants.—There are a large number of drugs commonly included under this category, but it is not always very clear what they really do. They are supposed to increase and modify the expectoration by stimulating the glands of the mucous membrane to secrete, or by stimulating the circulation in the vessels when it is languid; or to excite the muscular tissue of the bronchioles to contract, thus assisting the expulsion of materials from their interior. Without discussing their mode of action, it must suffice to give the following list of the agents usually regarded as stimulant expectorants, namely:—Ammonia, either internally or by inhalation, carbonate and chloride of ammonium; sulphur in certain chronic cases; alcohol and ether; senega, squill, serpentary, cascarilla, and cubeb; certain volatile oils and stearoptenes, especially oil of pine, turpentine, oil of eucalyptus, camphor, menthol, and thymol; ammoniacum, galbanum, asafoetida, and myrrh; balsams, especially balsam of Peru and Tolu, and compound tincture of benzoin, with benzoic acid and benzoate of ammonium; copaiba; tincture of larch bark; carbolic acid, creasote, tar, terebene, and allied substances; and weak inhalations of gases or vapours, such as chlorine, iodine, sulphurous anhydride, or ammonium chloride. Under certain circumstances it may not only be necessary to encourage cough, with the view of getting rid of expectoration, but even to aid its expulsion by means of a sternutatory or emetic.

c. Anti-expectorants.—In many cases one of the chief objects which we have in view in treatment is to diminish and ultimately stop expectoration entirely, by checking the formation of the materials to be discharged. This may sometimes be done by subduing violent or prolonged cough, which itself tends to create a form of sputum in some instances. The agents specially used as anti-expectorants are opium; belladonna; astringents, such as mineral acids, tincture of perchloride of iron, acetate of lead, tannic or gallic acid; and various inhalations having an astringent or antiseptic action, as those of tar, turpentine, oil of pine or eucalyptus, carbolic acid, creasote, and allied substances. Of course care must be taken not to mistake accumulation of expectoration for diminution in its quantity.

d. Alterative Expectorants.—These modify the quality or characters of the expectoration, for instance, making it less viscid and more liquid, so that it is more easily discharged, for which the chief agents are alkalies and their bicarbonates; iodides of potassium or sodium; and chloride of ammonium. In other cases the aim is to change a purulent discharge into a more healthy secretion; and sometimes a distinctly antiseptic effect has to be aimed at, the sputum being offensive or even foetid. For these purposes the more penetrating and volatile antiseptics have to be employed, either by internal administration, or more especially by inhalation. My friend and colleague, Dr. Vivian Poore, speaks very favourably of garlic amongst this group.

II. Methods of application.—In addition to the internal administration of drugs acting upon the respiratory organs, or their introduction into the system by subcutaneous injection, which is very useful when they are required to act rapidly, remedies can be applied by more or less direct methods, which are often highly advantageous. These are: 1. *Sipping or sucking*, agents being thus made to pass slowly over the throat and top of the larynx when swallowed, and more par-

ticularly for the purpose of producing a local soothing effect. Ice, cold water, glycerine, gum or mucilage, lozenges, syrups, oxymels, and tinctures are thus serviceable. 2. *Gargling*, some individuals being able to gargle even the interior of the larynx. 3. *Direct local applications*, by means of throat-brushes or sponges, injections, or special instruments. 4. *Insufflation*, in which powders are either drawn in by inspiration, or blown in through a quill or glass tube, or by means of a special apparatus. 5. *Fumigation*, a smoke being inhaled, derived from smoking a pipe or cigarette, or from burning a paper impregnated with some drug, as nitre-paper, or certain powders or pastilles. 6. *Inhalations*, which may be dry or moist, and either employed by simply inhaling certain volatile substances themselves, by means of a steam-inhaler, or by some kind of "respirator-inhaler." Steam alone is often a useful inhalation. 7. *Sprays*, either emitted from a steam-apparatus (Siegel's) or from the hand-spray instrument. 8. *Direct injection*. In addition to direct applications thus made in connection with the respiratory passages, the practice has been advocated in certain conditions of injecting agents directly into the lung itself. This method of treatment cannot be regarded as really worthy of recommendation or support.

III. Auxiliary therapeutic agents.—The respiratory system affords one of the most striking illustrations of the advantages to be derived in the treatment of its diseases and symptoms from various non-medicinal therapeutic measures and methods; and also from the use of agents which belong to groups not immediately or solely related to this system. These always demand intelligent consideration in every case, but it will be only possible to indicate here their general nature. 1. As regards the patient, much help is often derived from the exercise of voluntary attention and management or control on his part, especially in relation to breathing and cough; and also from teaching him to accommodate himself to the conditions which happen to be present, especially when these are of a chronic and permanent nature. 2. In a large number of instances attention to posture is important; and the matter of rest or exercise of different kinds frequently requires consideration, in many cases absolute rest in bed being demanded. This also ensures general warmth of the body, which is often so essential in respiratory diseases. Physical difficulties affecting the respiratory organs may have to be removed; or the patient may be helped by mechanical means to breathe or cough. 3. The necessity of attending to the personal and immediately surrounding conditions of a patient affected with pulmonary disease is obvious, as regards clothing, place of residence, hygienic surroundings, sun-light, living and bedrooms, ventilation, temperature, and other matters. In acute cases special consideration is required as to the temperature of the sick-room, and the desirability of moistening the air by means of a steam-kettle, or in other ways. 4. The mention of air opens up a wide field in relation to the therapeutics of the respiratory organs, but it must suffice to state here that this element demands attention in every case, in its general as well as its local aspects, as regards temperature, dryness or moisture, purity or the reverse, stillness or prevalence of winds, degree of pressure, and other points. Special kinds of apparatus are also employed for treatment by condensed or rarefied air, and other methods of direct aerotherapeutics. 5. Climate is universally recognized as of essential importance in the treatment of respiratory diseases, which implies not only modifications of atmosphere, but other factors, varying in kind under different

circumstances. The subject will be discussed in connection with particular affections so far as the limits of this work permit, but it may be noted here that it includes far more than a mere change from one country or part of a country to another presenting a more genial climate, such as the comparative advantages of a residence at the sea-side or inland; the question of a sea-voyage; treatment in mountainous regions and high altitudes, in the vicinity of pine-woods, or in other special districts. 6. The amount of blood, and the state of the circulation in the lungs, can be modified considerably by venesection or local removal of blood, by dry-cupping over the chest, and by agents affecting the cardiac action and vascular system. Venesection also directly lowers the respiratory function. By these means certain pulmonary diseases and symptoms can be influenced to a marked degree. 7. In a large number of cases various agents belonging to different groups of a more general character, and not specially associated with the respiratory system, are of the greatest service in the treatment of many of its complaints. Among these the most important are antipyretics, antiphlogistics, nutrients and tonics, certain alteratives, anti-septics, astringents and haemostatics, and anodynes. Moreover, specific methods of treatment are practised in relation to certain morbid conditions of the respiratory organs, especially tubercular disease, which so commonly affects these structures. 8. Local external applications over the chest are of the greatest service in the treatment of respiratory complaints, when judiciously employed. These not only include active measures of various kinds, such as poulticing or blistering the surface, or applying irritating liniments, but the use of strapping or other means for procuring rest, the application of cotton-wool, the employment of friction, and other simple methods. It may be remarked here, also, that systematic deep respiration is in many cases of much advantage, especially combined with friction. The wearing of a respirator may also be alluded to, which is useful in suitable cases, and under certain circumstances. Different classes of agents are applied directly to accessible portions of the air-passages, in the treatment of particular morbid conditions. 9. Various operative procedures are not uncommonly called for in relation to diseases of the respiratory apparatus.

CHAPTER VI.

ON RESPIRATORY SYMPTOMS.

In this chapter the more important symptoms associated with the respiratory organs will be briefly considered.

I. DYSPNÆA.—APNÆA.

Dyspnoea or *difficulty of breathing* is a symptom requiring careful investigation, as it may be made up of several elements which it is important to distinguish; while it is also requisite to determine and localize the cause or causes of the disturbance, which are not necessarily situated in the respiratory organs.

Etiology.—The conditions which give rise to dyspnœa may be thus arranged:—1. *Some impediment to the entrance of air through the air-passages*, owing to internal obstruction; spasmoidic constriction; organic

stricture; or external pressure. This may exist in any part of the respiratory passages, from the mouth and nose down to the bronchi.

2. *Mechanical interference with the expansion of the chest-walls*, from pressure or rigidity; or with the movements of the diaphragm. 3. *Impairment of the muscular inspiratory force*, owing to marked wasting, paralysis, or spasm of the muscles. 4. *Deficient expiratory force*, as the result of loss of elasticity of the lungs; or of rigidity of the chest-walls. 5. *Diminution in the working portion of the lungs*, from actual destruction; temporary or permanent consolidation; liquid accumulation in the air-cells and minute bronchi; collapse or compression; or obliteration of the minute pulmonary vessels. d. Affections of the chest or abdomen which render the movements of respiration painful. 7. *Improper conditions of the air inspired*, such as its being too rarefied or condensed, or containing an admixture of irrespirable gases. 8. *Excess or deficiency of blood in the lungs*, due to some organic or functional derangement of the heart; obstruction in the pulmonary vessels; actual loss of blood; or violent exercise. 9. *Abnormal quality of the blood*, associated with anaemia; imperfect aeration; or the presence of poisonous elements in fevers, renal disease, pyæmia, diabetes, and other affections. 10. *Nervous disturbance*, in connection with hysteria; strong emotion; cerebral injury or disease; brain-poisoning; pressure on the vagus nerves or on certain of their branches; or reflex disturbance.

Characters of dyspnoea.—In studying any case in which there is apparent dyspnoea, it is requisite to observe the following points:—
 1. Whether any subjective sensation of craving for air, or "air-hunger," is experienced, as well as its degree, which may amount to a feeling of impending suffocation. 2. The rapidity of the breathing. 3. Whether respiration is increased in depth and force, or the reverse. 4. If the relative lengths of inspiration and expiration are disturbed. 5. If there are objective signs of great want of air, indicated by the posture of the patient; by the extraordinary muscles of respiration being brought into play; by working of the alæ nasi; or by difficulty or inability to hold the breath or to speak. 6. Whether any noise accompanies the act of breathing, such as stridor or rattling. 7. Whether air enters freely into the lungs or not. Deficient entrance of air is indicated by more or less sinking-in of the lower part of the chest, the epigastrium, and the supra-sternal fossa during inspiration. 8. If there are any signs of imperfect blood-aeration, with their degree. 9. Whether the dyspnoea is constant, paroxysmal, or subject to exacerbations; and if temporary disturbances are traceable to any evident cause, such as effort, emotion, taking food, or inhalation of cold air. "Shortness of breath" on exertion is a very common form of respiratory disorder.

Apnoea or Asphyxia.—The phenomena which accompany interference with the respiratory functions are due partly to overloading of the venous portion of the circulatory system, and deficient supply of blood to the arterial portion; but chiefly to the blood being imperfectly aerated, and therefore overcharged with carbonic anhydride, which acts as a poison, especially upon the nerve-centres. At first excessive efforts are made to breathe, more or less violent according to the cause of the disturbance of respiration, but these diminish and finally cease as the central nervous system becomes more and more affected. The face is turgid, at first being flushed, but soon becoming purple or livid; or under certain conditions it is deadly pale or mottled, accompanied with lividity about the lips, nose, and eyes. Other regions are also blue

or livid, especially the nails and various parts distant from the centre of the circulation. The veins of the head and neck become distended ; and the eyes are prominent, suffused, and watery. The temperature falls, while cold clammy sweats break out. Nervous symptoms soon set in, namely, at first vertigo, disturbance of the special senses, mental confusion and wandering, twitchings, or tremors ; followed by drowsiness and stupor ending in complete coma, with convulsions and subsequently relaxation of the muscles, including the sphincters. The pulse is feeble, frequent, and small, but it continues to beat after respiration has stopped, and the heart may be still acting when the pulse has ceased to be perceptible ; finally this organ also fails, should the termination be fatal.

Post-mortem examination reveals distension of the right side of the heart and of the veins with dark blood ; with intense venous congestion and its consequences, affecting all the organs and tissues of the body.

Treatment.—The main indications applicable to the treatment of different cases of dyspnœa are :—1. To remove or mitigate its cause or causes, if possible. 2. To attend to the posture of the patient, adopting that in which breathing is most easily performed. 3. To avoid all kinds of effort, as well as other causes which are liable to bring on attacks of dyspnœa ; and to instruct patients how to accommodate themselves to conditions with which this symptom is necessarily associated. 4. To assist the patient by mechanical means, when these are available, to make up for impaired respiratory forces. 5. To see that the supply of air is sufficient ; as well as that it is pure and otherwise suitable to the condition of the patient. Inhalation of compressed or rarefied air is useful under certain circumstances. 6. To remove blood in suitable cases, either generally or locally. 7. To administer, either internally or by means of inhalation or subcutaneous injection, remedies which tend to relieve dyspnœa, especially pulmonary sedatives, antispasmodics, or stimulants, as the case may require. 8. To employ local measures, such as the application of sinapisms, fomentations of different kinds, turpentine stypes, or free dry-cupping over the chest. 9. To treat the asphyxial condition. For this purpose the most reliable means are the application of sinapisms over the chest and other parts ; a warm bath, with free cold affusion over the head and shoulders while the patient is in the bath ; slapping the chest with a wet towel ; inhalation of oxygen ; artificial respiration, by Marshall Hall's, Sylvester's, Howard's, or other method ; galvanism along the vagus nerves ; and, when circumstances demand it, the performance of laryngotomy or tracheotomy, or other suitable operation.

II. COUGH.—EXPECTORATION.

Etiology.—The causes of cough may be summed up under the following heads :—1. An irritable condition of the mucous membrane in some part of the air-passages, but especially in the throat and larynx, or at the bifurcation of the trachea. This is particularly observed in connection with inflammatory affections, the sensibility of the membrane being then much exalted. 2. Some source of direct irritation or discomfort in the throat, larynx, trachea, bronchi, or lungs. This may be due to morbid conditions of normal structures, such as the uvula, tonsils, epiglottis, or vocal cords ; to the presence of irritating particles or of larger foreign bodies introduced during inspiration ; to certain conditions of the air inhaled, such

as a very low temperature, or impregnation with irritating gases; or to the collection of secretion or morbid products, for example, serum, mucus, pus, blood, croupous or diphtheritic deposit. At the same time there is frequently increased irritability of the mucous surface. Cough from this cause may be voluntarily excited, but it is often involuntary and irrepressible, especially when the irritation is in the neighbourhood of the glottis. 3. *Reflex cough.* In many cases cough probably depends upon reflex irritation, which may be more or less remote, but before deciding that such is its origin, it is always well to look carefully for some more immediate cause. It is believed that the source of irritation may be associated with the nasal cavities; the lungs or pleuræ; the heart or pericardium; the alimentary canal (dyspepsia, dentition, worms); the liver; the peritoneum; the ear; the female generative organs; or the external surface. 4. An *unhealthy condition of the blood.* This is supposed to give rise to cough by its effect on the nervous system, for instance, the state of the blood associated with gout or rheumatism. Most commonly, however, some local cause can be detected in these cases. 5. *Nervous disturbance,* in connection with hysteria, brain-disease, or direct irritation of the respiratory nerves.

Characters of Cough.—This symptom requires investigation with respect to the following particulars:—1. The frequency of its occurrence; and whether it is constant or paroxysmal. 2. The severity and duration of the fits. 3. The mode of onset, whether the cough is a voluntary act, or involuntary and irrepressible, preceded by a sense of irritation in any part; or if it is brought on by some obvious cause, such as exertion, change of posture, or inhalation of cold air. 4. Its particular quality, and the sounds which are produced during the act, both in inspiration and expiration. The chief varieties of cough are hacking, hoarse, wheezing, barking, ringing, metallic or brassy, croupy, whooping, crepitous, and aphonic. 5. Whether it is dry or attended with expectoration. In the latter case it is necessary to ascertain whether expectoration is effected easily or with difficulty; and also to make a personal examination of the *sputa*, observing:—*a.* Their quantity. *b.* General characters, as to colour; odour; whether in one mass or in separate lumps, with the size and shape of the latter; transparency or opacity; amount of frothiness; consistence, and degree of adhesiveness. *c.* If any special substances are evident to the naked eye, such as blood, fibrinous casts, or calcareous particles. *d.* Microscopical characters. *e.* Chemical composition in some cases. 6. If the cough terminates in vomiting; or is followed by relief of any previous unpleasant symptoms.

Treatment.—It is by no means always desirable to check cough, provided it is not excessive, and that it serves some useful purpose, by getting rid of materials which would otherwise accumulate in the lungs or air-passages; indeed, in some instances the act should rather be encouraged. In order to put a stop to, or to relieve cough, the chief indications are:—1. To instruct the patient *voluntarily* to suppress the act as much as possible. 2. To *remove the cause* of cough, if practicable; and to avoid everything which is likely to excite it. 3. To administer *sedatives*, *expectorants* of various kinds, and other suitable remedies, which will be more particularly pointed out under the several diseases. 4. To employ various *inhalations*, which are very valuable in some cases. 5. To apply *local remedies* to the throat or larynx, when these structures are the seat of morbid conditions exciting cough. It may be remarked here that simple remedies which come into contact

with these parts when slowly swallowed are often most useful in relieving this symptom, such as cold water, ice, glycerine alone or mixed with lemon-juice, honey or oxymel, and demulcent or other lozenges. 6. To limit or check the formation of secretion or morbid products in the lungs or air-tubes, and thus prevent the necessity for the act of coughing; or to alter their characters, so that they may be more easily discharged. When a patient is obliged to cough, the act may often be assisted by mechanical means, such as by applying a bandage around the lower part of the chest and upper part of the abdomen; or directing the patient to hold on to some fixed object, such as a jack-towel fixed on the bed-rail, if he should be confined to bed.

III. HÆMOPTYSIS.

Aetiology.—Hæmoptysis or *spitting of blood* signifies the discharge of blood through the mouth, from any part of the respiratory apparatus below the upper opening of the larynx. The sources of the blood, and the immediate causes of this symptom, may be thus classified:—
1. *Hæmoptysis independent of obvious local disease.* In this group may be included hæmoptysis occurring in high altitudes, or that which results from severe straining or coughing, or from blowing wind-instruments, which is especially apt to be met with in delicate subjects, with weak tissues; vicarious hæmoptysis; that due to the inhalation of irritating substances, or to local injury; and that dependent upon an unhealthy state of the blood, such as scurvy or purpura.
2. *Diseases of the larynx, trachea, or main bronchi,* for example, congestion; inflammation; ulceration; or morbid growths, especially cancer.
3. *Diseases of the lungs,* namely, phthisis, above all, cancer, pulmonary congestion or infarction, bronchitis, especially the plastic variety, acute or chronic pneumonia, abscess, gangrene, hydatids.
4. *Mediastinal tumours* penetrating into the air-passages, including also glandular enlargements.
5. *Cardiac diseases,* namely, mitral disease; hypertrophy of the right ventricle; or a weak and dilated left ventricle.
6. *Disease of the pulmonary vessels.* The late Sir Andrew Clark attributed certain cases of hæmoptysis occurring in elderly persons to structural alterations in the terminal pulmonary blood-vessels, associated with the arthritic diathesis.
7. *Aneurism* opening into the air-passages. It must be remembered that blood sometimes enters the wind-pipe from the throat or nose, and is then expectorated.

The blood in hæmoptysis generally comes from the capillaries; but not infrequently a considerable branch of the pulmonary artery either gives way, or is perforated by erosion. In phthisis minute aneurisms are not uncommonly found upon the branches of this vessel in the interior of cavities, which have ruptured, and thus originated large haemorrhages.

There may be no immediate exciting cause of hæmoptysis; or it is brought on by exertion, coughing, mental emotion, or some other disturbance which stimulates the pulmonary circulation.

Symptoms.—Hæmoptysis may come on without any warning; or is preceded by *premonitory symptoms*, such as weight or fulness about the chest, more or less dyspnoea, a sense of heat, tickling in the throat, or a saltish taste. Usually the blood is brought up by coughing, but it may rise in gulps without any effort, or sometimes comes in a sudden gush, when it may even escape through the nose as well as through the mouth.

Not infrequently vomiting is excited. The quantity of blood varies from a few streaks or a slight admixture in the sputa to an amount sufficient to cause almost instant death. The blood is generally bright and florid, and more or less frothy; but occasionally it is dark and non-aerated, especially when abundant and suddenly discharged. Clots may be observed, but the greater portion is usually liquid. No change in the blood itself is evident as a rule, either as regards its general or microscopic characters. Tubercle bacilli may be present in phthisical cases. The duration of an attack of haemoptysis varies much, but after the more urgent symptoms have subsided, the sputa are generally tinged for some time, or fragments of dark clot may be discharged. Recurrence is a frequent event, and in some cases spitting of blood occurs periodically.

If the blood comes from either lung in any quantity, *râles* of a moist character are generally heard over the corresponding part of the chest.

The effects on the general system will depend upon the amount of blood lost; and the rapidity and duration of its discharge. Death does not often result immediately from haemoptysis, but may happen either from the direct loss of blood, or from its accumulation in the air-passages causing suffocation. Frequently some degree of febrile excitement is associated with haemoptysis, the pulse being full and bounding, but soft. Should any blood remain in the lungs, it is, in my opinion, liable to set up inflammation, or it may form a nidus for tubercle bacilli, and thus phthisis may be originated.

Diagnosis.—Haemoptysis may be simulated by bleeding from the mouth or throat; or by epistaxis. The quantity and characters of the blood discharged; the mode of ejection; and adequate examination of the nose, mouth, and fauces, as well as of the chest, will generally indicate the source of the bleeding in any doubtful case. The part of the respiratory apparatus from which the blood escapes can also usually be ascertained by physical examination; and by observing the local symptoms present. It must be remarked, however, that great care should always be exercised in carrying out the examination, lest the haemorrhage should be increased, or a fresh attack brought on. Erosion of a large branch of the pulmonary artery is characterized by the discharge of a quantity of dark blood. The diagnosis between haemoptysis and haematemesis will be pointed out under the latter symptom. The cause of haemoptysis can only be determined by adequate investigation and consideration of each individual case. In most instances it is then quite obvious.

Treatment.—Haemoptysis must be treated on the principles applicable to haemorrhages in general, but its management will necessarily vary according to its cause. Ordinarily, when the blood escapes from the lungs, the chief indications which require attention are to keep the patient entirely at rest, in a cool room, in the recumbent posture, with the head rather high; to calm any mental excitement or dread; to give low diet; to subdue cough as much as possible; to give ice to suck freely; and to administer *astringents*, with *cardiac sedatives* or *depressants*. Gallic acid in full doses with opium every two or three hours; pyrogallic acid; acetate of lead and opium; dilute or aromatic sulphuric acid with alum; turpentine, internally or by inhalation; ergot; and tincture or liquid extract of hamamelis, are amongst the chief remedies used. The subcutaneous injection of ergotin, ergotinin, or sclerotic acid has deservedly come into much repute in the treatment of haemoptysis. Digitalis

is of great value if the heart is acting excitedly or inefficiently. *Saline aperients* are very useful in plethoric patients, or if there are indications of portal congestion; and some practitioners have recourse to venesection or local abstraction of blood, but this is rarely a desirable plan of treatment. The application of ice to the chest is often exceedingly beneficial, but it must be done carefully, the ice being removed by degrees. Dry-cupping over the chest is serviceable in some cases. It is occasionally useful, when a case does not yield to ordinary treatment, to draw the blood towards the limbs by means of hot foot-baths; or to apply ligatures around the extremities, should the patient be sinking from loss of blood, so as to confine the blood to the head and trunk. In extreme cases it might be necessary to have recourse to transfusion of blood. In haemorrhage vicarious of menstruation, or due to stoppage of bleeding from piles, the application of leeches to the lower extremities, or around the anus, is said to do good. In all cases of haemoptysis to any considerable amount, it is important to keep the patient under observation until any danger likely to result from the presence of blood in the lungs has entirely passed away. If there is any tendency to this symptom, everything likely to bring on an attack must be avoided; while at the same time the condition of the blood is improved by proper dieting, and by the administration of tincture of perchloride of iron or other suitable remedies. In some forms of haemoptysis, as in many cardiac cases, it is not desirable to check the discharge of blood; in others no treatment can be of any avail.

CHAPTER VII.

CATARRH—CORYZA—A COLD.

BEFORE considering the diseases affecting the several parts of the respiratory apparatus, a brief description will be given of the condition which frequently results from taking cold in some way or other, and which has been specially designated *catarrh* or *a cold*. The entire system is affected, but the more characteristic phenomena are due to a catarrhal inflammation, involving mainly the conjunctivæ, and the mucous lining of the upper air-passages, namely, the nose and its communicating sinuses, the throat, and the larynx and trachea. Not uncommonly it extends into the bronchi to a variable extent; and sometimes the mouth, œsophagus, stomach, or intestines are implicated. The complaint most commonly results from exposure to wet and cold, and many persons are liable to repeated attacks, which come on whenever the weather is unfavourable, and especially when it suddenly becomes damp and cold; it may probably also be brought on by irritating fogs. The phenomena very much resemble those which are observed in influenza, and in the early stage of measles; as well as those which arise in some persons from inhaling the emanations from hay, ipecacuanha powder, and certain other vegetable substances, or from the action of iodine upon the system.

Symptoms.—These are both *general* and *local*, and the two classes of phenomena are observed more or less simultaneously. The patient feels chilly and out of sorts, indisposed for any occupation or mental effort, languid and tired, and has a sensation of general aching or soreness of the limbs and body. More or less pyrexia supervenes, and the temperature may rise to 100°, 101°, 102°, or even higher. This is accompanied with a somewhat frequent pulse, usually a dry skin, furred tongue, loss of appetite, constipation, and concentrated high-coloured urine, which deposits urates on standing. Some persons feel exceedingly weak and depressed when suffering from catarrh, and especially if they have been previously debilitated. The *local* symptoms are in accordance with the parts involved in the catarrhal condition. At the outset various subjective sensations are experienced, namely, headache, especially over the forehead and temples, with a feeling of weight and heaviness; pains about the face, chiefly of a neuralgic character, which may be accompanied with tenderness; smarting of the eyelids, and aching in the eyeballs; dryness and heat of the nares; soreness of the throat; and not uncommonly pain and stiffness in the neck. Very soon the eyes become red and begin to water freely; while a running from the nose sets in, which is specially termed *coryza*, the discharge being at first thin and watery, as well as very irritating, so that it makes the parts over which it flows red and sore. Sneezing is often a troublesome symptom. On examination the throat is seen to be more or less red and swollen, and swallowing is painful; while the catarrhal condition of the air-tube gives rise to hoarseness or loss of voice, cough, and pain from speaking or coughing, felt in the course of the larynx or trachea. If it extends into the bronchi, the patient experiences a sense of oppression or tightness across the chest, with more marked cough, wheezing, and other signs of bronchial catarrh. In many cases partial deafness is noticed, owing to the implication of the Eustachian tubes; and the senses of taste and smell are generally impaired or lost. Should the alimentary canal be involved, this may be indicated by soreness along the oesophagus during deglutition; pain and tenderness over the epigastrum; complete anorexia; nausea or vomiting; and diarrhoea in some cases. Occasionally a slight degree of catarrhal jaundice is observed.

Catarrh assumes different degrees of intensity, but the symptoms generally increase in severity for two or three days, and then gradually diminish. The nasal discharge becomes more abundant, being often very profuse, and it alters in its characters, assuming a mucous or muco-purulent appearance. Not uncommonly the mouth becomes sore, and herpes appears about the lips; the nostrils are also often slightly ulcerated. The patient generally feels worse during the night, when the painful sensations increase, and consequently sleep is liable to be much disturbed. Usually complete recovery is established in a few days, once convalescence sets in; but in some instances certain symptoms remain for a variable period, especially general debility, loss of appetite, cough, or impairment of the sense of smell or taste. Moreover, some more serious affection may supervene, particularly bronchitis or other disease of the respiratory organs. A simple cold is especially liable to lead to these results in very young or old persons, in those who are constitutionally feeble and delicate, or in those who are depressed by excessive mental or bodily work.

Diagnosis.—The symptoms of catarrh are readily recognized, but care must be exercised in discriminating between those cases which are

simply due to a cold, and those in which the phenomena are associated with some other disease, especially with measles or epidemic influenza.

Prognosis is generally favourable, and the circumstances which render catarrh more than usually serious have already been indicated. It must be remembered that attacks of this complaint are very liable to be repeated, and even to become habitual at certain seasons.

Treatment.—It is the safest plan for anyone who is suffering from a cold to stay in bed for a day or two at the outset, if this is practicable, or at any rate to stop indoors, in a warm and comfortable room. Undoubtedly its effects may often be alleviated or prevented by immediately exciting free sweating. For this purpose a warm bath or a foot-bath is useful, the patient going immediately afterwards to bed, and having some hot drink, such as gruel, wine-negus, spirit and water, or one of the other drinks ordinarily employed for this purpose. Certain medicines are also useful, of which the most efficient are a saline draught with spirit of nitrous ether; or a full dose of Dover's powder. A vapour, hot-air, or Turkish bath often proves of signal service in checking a cold at its commencement. Local applications have been much employed for this purpose, especially in the form of dry inhalations of iodine and other agents; and of combinations made into snuffs, which are sniffed up into the nostrils. Ferrier recommends a snuff composed of hydrochlorate of morphine gr. ij, nitrate of bismuth 5 vj, and powdered acacia, 3 ij, of which from a quarter to a half may be used in the twenty-four hours. Cocaine has also been found useful in checking coryza, either as a spray, or by inserting into the nasal cavities cotton-wool impregnated with its solution. It has been affirmed that the prolonged mastication and swallowing of a dried leaf or two of the eucalyptus globulus has proved very efficacious in curing a cold.

If the complaint does not yield at the commencement, the patient should certainly remain in bed, and be kept on a light diet. Some practitioners lay special stress on limiting the amount of liquids given, or even withholding them altogether. With regard to medicines, these must be varied according to circumstances. Generally it is sufficient to open the bowels, and to give a *saline* mixture, to which a few drops of ipecacuanha wine may be added if the air-passages are much affected, as well as some *sedative* to relieve cough if this is excessive. Should there be much sickness, an effervescent mixture is useful; and it may become necessary to administer remedies for the purpose of checking diarrhoea. Some agent may be required at night, in order to procure sleep and relieve pain. If there is much debility and depression, quinine is a valuable medicine. As the patient tends towards convalescence, the diet should be improved by degrees, and a little wine may be given with advantage at this time. Complications must be watched for, and treated according to their nature. During convalescence *tonics* are very useful. If recovery is retarded, as well as in cases where attacks of catarrh are of frequent occurrence, a change of air to some genial district or climate is of the utmost benefit.

CHAPTER VIII.

DISEASES OF THE LARYNX AND TRACHEA.

I. ACUTE CONGESTION AND INFLAMMATION.—ACUTE LARYNGITIS AND TRACHEITIS.

THE cases of acute congestion or inflammation affecting the main air-tube differ much in their severity, but they may be arranged into three main groups, namely :—1. *Catarrhal*, which includes congestion and various degrees of catarrhal inflammation of the mucous membrane. 2. *Oedematous*, where there is considerable sub-mucous oedema. 3. *Croupous, diphtheritic, or membranous*, in which a fibrinous deposit, or so-called *false membrane*, forms upon the surface. Before discussing this class of diseases, it will be well to offer a word of explanation regarding the terms *croup* and *croupous*. Without entering into any discussion as to its etymology, it may be stated that the word *croup* was originally employed to indicate merely a particular symptom, namely, *stridulous breathing*. Subsequently it came to be recognized as the name of a supposed disease in children which caused this symptom, and as it was at one time believed that such disease was invariably *membranous laryngitis*, the term *croupous* afterwards acquired a pathological signification, becoming associated with exudations or deposits of a fibrinous character. Then, as knowledge advanced, and it was ascertained that croupy symptoms might arise from other morbid conditions, the form of laryngitis which is characterized by the deposit of fibrinous material was specially named *croupous*, and the term was afterwards extended to croupous pneumonia and other diseases in which this kind of exudation forms. Moreover, when it was found that the phenomena of croup might result from laryngeal spasm, this was named by French writers *false croup*, as distinguished from *true croup*, in which the symptoms were due to inflammation, and later writers have made further divisions, according to their views as to the nature of the morbid conditions upon which croupy symptoms might depend. At present the word *croup* is often employed very indefinitely, as the designation of a group of cases, occurring chiefly in children, which are characterized by laryngeal obstruction, with consequent stridulous breathing and other phenomena, but it must be remembered that these may be due to either of the varieties of laryngitis already mentioned, as well as to laryngeal spasm or so-called *laryngismus stridulus*. It would be well, in accordance with the suggestion of the Committee appointed by the Medico-Chirurgical Society some years ago to investigate the subject, to use the term merely as a *clinical definition*, implying laryngeal obstruction with febrile symptoms, occurring in children.

Aetiology and Pathology.—*Exciting causes.*—The causes by which acute inflammation of the larynx and trachea, varying in kind and degree, is liable to be produced may be arranged as follows :—1. *Direct irritation*, from breathing very cold air, especially if at the same time damp, hot air or steam, acrid vapours, or air containing irritating particles, including fogs; or from swallowing boiling or corrosive liquids.

2. Excessive coughing; or violent exercise of the voice, in speaking, shouting, and singing. 3. Organic diseases affecting the larynx or trachea, such as ulcers or growths. 4. Local injuries or operations. 5. Direct exposure of the front of the neck to a cold draught. 6. General exposure to cold, the larynx being either involved alone, or along with other mucous surfaces. 7. Extension of inflammation from the nose or pharynx, or from the structures of the neck; or occasionally upwards from the bronchi. 8. Certain acute fevers, in which the inflammatory condition occurs either as a part of the disease, or as a complication, especially diphtheria, scarlatina, small-pox, typhoid fever, influenza, erysipelas, measles, and typhus fever. 9. Secondary syphilis.

The aetiology of certain special forms of laryngitis demands separate notice. *Edematous* laryngitis generally follows some previous laryngeal disease, or it may be set up by operative procedures for such disease; sometimes it appears to be due to mere cold. It is also particularly liable to result from swallowing boiling liquids; this usually happens among the children of the poor, who are in the habit of drinking water out of the spout of the tea-kettle. Laryngeal inflammation complicating erysipelas is likewise prone to be attended with œdema; as well as that which spreads from the throat or neck. It may be mentioned also that œdema of the glottis sometimes occurs without any definite inflammation, as the result of septic inhalation, or as a complication of some of the acute specific fevers; it may even be a simple dropsy associated with renal disease, or exceptionally with cardiac or venous obstruction.

The pathology of *croupous* laryngitis is still a matter of controversy. French writers have always regarded it as being identical with *laryngeal diphtheria*, and therefore as invariably resulting from infection; this is also the view now maintained by many authorities in this and other countries. The common belief, however, is that there is a distinct form of croupous laryngitis, which is entirely independent of diphtheria, and results from causes which affect the larynx locally, and especially exposure to cold, particularly to northerly or north-easterly winds, or a general chill of the body. The subject was investigated some years ago by a Committee of the Medico-Chirurgical Society, and the large majority of cases of membranous laryngitis and tracheitis were clearly proved to be of a diphtheritic nature, but in exceptional instances this condition was traceable to other causes acting locally, namely, exposure to cold, the inhalation of hot water or steam, the contact of acids, the presence of a foreign body in the larynx, and a cut-throat. The complaint also occurred occasionally as an accompaniment of measles, scarlatina, or typhoid fever, independent of any ascertained exposure to the special diphtheritic infection. As a complication membranous laryngitis has likewise been described in connection with small-pox, typhus fever, and erysipelas. Probably in most of these cases, however, the material would not be found to contain the true *diphtheria bacillus*. The Committee above-mentioned found that the majority of cases exhibiting croupal symptoms definitely traceable to cold were of the nature of laryngeal catarrh, and this is the common experience.

Predisposing causes.—The different forms of acute inflammation of the larynx and trachea are all predisposed to by certain conditions, namely, a lax, weakly, and ill-nourished state of the system; the gouty state probably; effeminate habits; immoderate wrapping-up of the neck; previous attacks, especially if repeated; and a climate or season

characterized by a cold moist atmosphere, cold winds, or rapid changes of temperature, the complaint being therefore more prevalent during winter and spring. Males suffer more than females. As regards age, simple *laryngeal catarrh* is most common among adults; but the more intense forms of the disease are chiefly met with during childhood, especially from the first to the seventh year, though they may occur at any period of life. Unfavourable sanitary conditions predispose to croup; and children belonging to the poorer classes chiefly suffer from this complaint.

Anatomical Characters.—The appearances in laryngitis and tracheitis will differ according to the nature and products of the morbid changes. The mucous membrane may be only more or less congested. In *catarrhal laryngitis* bright redness is usually observed, with swelling, opacity, and slight softening of the membrane. Spots of epithelial erosion are common, especially at the posterior extremities of the vocal cords, but actual ulceration is very rare. After a time secretion forms, which is sometimes very viscid, containing an abundance of cells. *Oedematous laryngitis* is characterized by the accumulation of serum in the sub-mucous tissue, especially where this tissue is very lax, which gives rise to much translucent swelling, with a sodden, flabby condition of the structures, but the redness is less marked. *Oedema* may be present without any sign of inflammation. Very rarely sero-purulent or purulent fluid infiltrates the tissues—*phlegmonous laryngitis*; or laryngeal perichondritis and its consequences may ensue. In low fevers gangrene may supervene. It may also be mentioned here that a variolous eruption may occur in the larynx, followed by ulceration; and that ulcers are sometimes met with in typhoid fever, pneumonia, Bright's disease, and other affections.

The special anatomical character of *croupous laryngitis* is that the surface of the mucous membrane becomes covered to a variable extent with croupous exudation or so-called *false membrane*, the epithelium being destroyed. In appearance and general structure this cannot be distinguished from diphtheritic material. It may be limited to a small portion of the surface, or to separate patches; or may cover the whole of the larynx and trachea, occasionally extending even into the smaller bronchi. Its main seat is said to be the trachea. In thickness the deposit may range from a mere film to two or three lines or more, and it is sometimes laminated. The consistence varies, but the material is generally tolerably tough, compact, and adherent for a time, finally becoming detached. Its under surface frequently presents little points of extravasated blood. A fresh deposit not uncommonly forms after the membrane is separated, and this may be repeated several times. Under the microscope it is seen to consist of an amorphous or finely-fibrillated substance, in which abundant cells are involved. There is very little swelling of the mucous membrane as a rule; and its intimate structure is but little or not at all affected.

When death results from acute laryngitis, especially the membranous variety, some of the following morbid conditions are usually present, namely, bronchitis; congestion and oedema of the lungs; lobular or lobar pneumonia; localized insufflation and pulmonary collapse in different spots; distension of the heart and venous system with dark blood; venous congestion of the organs generally; and slight serous effusions. The lymphatic glands which are situated beneath the thyroid body on each side of the trachea may be enlarged.

Symptoms.—The clinical history of acute inflammation of the main air-tube differs in the several varieties of this disease, and therefore each form calls for separate consideration.

1. *Acute Catarrhal Laryngitis and Tracheitis. Laryngeal and Tracheal Catarrh. Cynanche Laryngea.*—This variety assumes very different degrees of severity, but the following are the usual symptoms observed in adults :—Unpleasant sensations are experienced over the windpipe, such as dryness, roughness, constriction, soreness, burning, or tickling, which are increased by coughing or speaking. Some of these are chiefly complained of when the upper part of the larynx is involved, but when the trachea is affected much soreness is felt behind the sternum. Swallowing is often rather painful. The voice is husky, and frequently hoarse or cracked, or it may become quite lost. Cough is in many cases a prominent symptom, there being a constant tendency to paroxysmal attacks. It is harsh or hoarse in quality; or may become completely aphonic. The patient is also often disposed to hawk repeatedly. At first there is no expectoration, but after a while a little clear viscid mucus may be expelled with difficulty, this subsequently becoming more abundant and muco-purulent. Respiration is not much interfered with in ordinary cases, but it may be seriously impeded from spasm. In some cases of catarrhal laryngitis there are no general symptoms, but usually more or less pyrexia is observed.

Catarrhal laryngitis occurring in young children is likely to be attended with far more serious symptoms, owing to the small size of the air-tube in such subjects; to the edges of the glottis becoming glued together by viscid secretion; and to the special tendency to laryngeal spasm. There can be no doubt but that this is the condition present in a large proportion of the cases commonly designated *croup*, constituting what has been termed *stridulous laryngitis* or *inflammatory croup*. Therefore it will be convenient to describe here the phenomena characteristic of this class of diseases as they occur in children.

An attack of *idiopathic* or *primary croup* is frequently preceded by some *premonitory* symptoms for a day or two, such as slight harsh cough, hoarseness, and sore-throat; with a little pyrexia and constitutional disturbance. In some cases, however, the complaint comes on suddenly, and without any previous warning. An attack of croup usually sets in during the night, while the child is asleep; and when established, the symptoms are very characteristic.

Local.—The voice is at first harsh and hoarse, or at times cracked and shrill, finally becoming a mere whisper, or being completely lost. Paroxysms of spasmodic “croupy” cough come on, short, sharp, and abrupt in character; dry; of high pitch; and of somewhat metallic, clangy, or brassy quality. The cough is interrupted by a shrill, ringing, whistling, or “crowding” inspiration. Soon it becomes husky and muffled, and at last loses all sound. Respiration is greatly impeded, and presents some peculiar characters. The act is laboured, and attended with more or less violent effort; it is also prolonged, and therefore not frequent; while inspiration is accompanied with a high-pitched, metallic, sibilant, or wheezing stridor, which may be heard at some distance from the patient.

These symptoms are not persistent, there being intervals of complete or comparative ease, especially during the day. In severe cases, however, or in the advanced stage of those tending towards a fatal issue, there may be scarcely any remissions. The paroxysms of dyspnœa are

commonly believed to be partly caused by spasm of the muscles, but Niemeyer maintained that these are paralyzed.

The child often grasps its throat, or puts its hand to its mouth, as if attempting to remove some obstruction, and if old enough may complain of local pain. A little thick viscid mucus is sometimes brought up by coughing. Deglutition is difficult in some cases.

General.—At first the general symptoms are of a febrile character, and the temperature may rise to 102° , 103° , or more; the pulse being frequent, full, and hard. Subsequently, however, the pyrexia abates; and in severe cases the prominent signs are those associated with imperfect aeration of blood and general venous congestion, which are intensified during the paroxysms of dyspnœa. Ultimately in fatal cases gradual or rapid suffocation ensues, attended with the phenomena of apnœa. Pulmonary complications frequently arise, and the danger is thus increased. A good many cases of croup recover, however, if there has only been catarrhal inflammation.

2. *Œdematosus Laryngitis.*—Œdema may supervene very rapidly, and in the course of an apparently slight attack of laryngeal catarrh. It is a highly dangerous condition, and if not relieved, may cause speedy suffocation. The characteristic features of œdematosus laryngitis are a sensation of the presence of a foreign body in the larynx; more marked dysphagia than in the catarrhal form; and urgent dyspnœa of laryngeal characters, inspiration being whistling or hissing, but expiration being comparatively or quite easy. Voice is completely lost; and cough becomes also aphonic. It is usually believed that spasm of the glottis aids in the causation of dyspnœa in cases of œdematosus laryngitis; but some authorities are of opinion that the muscles are paralyzed. Œdema of the glottis from any cause gives rise to similar symptoms.

The general symptoms are indicative of more or less grave interference with the respiratory functions, and consequent deficient blood-aeration, with venous stagnation.

3. *Croupous, Plastic, or Membranous Laryngitis. Membranous Croup. True Croup. Cynanche Trachealis.*—It is scarcely practicable or necessary to give a distinct clinical history of this form of laryngitis. In the large majority of cases it is that already described as belonging to *laryngeal diphtheria*, and in most instances, but not always, diphtheritic deposits may be observed on the throat, the laryngeal condition being either primary or secondary. This disease may occur in adults. When it affects children, or when they are the subject of membranous laryngitis from any other cause, the symptoms are similar to those already described as characteristic of inflammatory croup, but they tend to be more urgent, and the termination is very frequently fatal. Flakes or larger fragments, or even casts of false membrane may be expectorated, and this may be followed by temporary or permanent relief. *Secondary membranous croup*, supervening in the course of febrile exanthemata, will be revealed by more or less severe symptoms indicative of laryngeal obstruction.

Physical Examination.—1. *Examination of the throat*, by inspection and the use of the finger, may reveal the condition of the epiglottis, should it be red and swollen; and also the presence of œdema. 2. *Auscultation* over the windpipe may detect changes in the laryngeal breath-sound, or local mucous râles; or sometimes in membranous croup a peculiar rhonchus, named *tremblotement*, is heard during inspiration and expiration, supposed to be due to the flapping of a piece of false membrane;

probably this sound can be produced by thick mucus. 3. *Laryngoscopy* is often difficult to carry out in acute inflammatory cases, and may be impossible. Should it be practicable, it would probably reveal bright redness, turgidity, swelling, oedema, or alteration in shape of different parts; or thick secretion or membranous deposit might perhaps be visible. If the movements of the vocal cords can be studied, it is often observed that they are imperfectly approximated during phonation, owing to paresis of the *thyro-arytenoidei interni* muscles. In some cases the *arytenoideus* is affected, indicated by the posterior part of the glottis remaining open during phonation, in the form of a triangular space, with the apex directed forwards. 4. *Examination of the chest* frequently indicates more or less interference with the entrance of air into the lungs, particularly in cases of oedematous or croupous laryngitis, and especially when children are affected. The pulmonary sound may be obscured by a loud laryngeal sound; and mucous râles are sometimes heard over the chest. Pulmonary complications give rise to their own special physical signs.

Course, Duration, and Terminations.—The course and duration of cases of *laryngeal catarrh* vary considerably. Recovery is the usual termination, but the affection is very liable to recur, or may become chronic; in young children it sometimes proves fatal. *Oedematous laryngitis* is often fatal, and death may take place very suddenly or with great rapidity. *Croupous laryngitis* in children usually runs a remittent course, exacerbations occurring during the night; occasionally it progresses continuously. Some cases terminate within twenty-four hours, and most end within five days; the duration may, however, be prolonged for ten days or a fortnight. Most cases end fatally, but a certain proportion recover. Death generally results from apnoea, but may be due to asthenia. Improvement is indicated by the subsidence of the local and general symptoms; at the same time the cough becoming looser, with more abundant muco-purulent expectoration, or sometimes a quantity of exudation being expelled, if there has been a membranous deposit.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis between affections of the pharynx and larynx has already been pointed out in relation to the former. In children the different forms of acute laryngitis have to be distinguished from whooping-cough; from bronchial catarrh with a tendency to spasm; as well as from other conditions affecting the larynx itself, namely, *laryngismus stridulus*; acute exacerbations in connection with chronic diseases, such as morbid growths; and conditions resulting from the presence of foreign bodies, or from external injury. Only *laryngismus* need be specially noticed here, but the importance of carrying out a thorough examination in all cases cannot be too strongly insisted upon. *Laryngismus stridulus* is more sudden as regards the onset and cessation of the paroxysms of dyspnoea; and these are often brought on by some obvious cause. The patient is commonly rickety. A history of previous similar attacks can generally be obtained. There may be signs of general convulsions, with turning-in of the thumbs. The characteristic cough of croup is not present, but the child often cries. There is complete restoration between the paroxysms. Pyrexia is absent.

It is necessary to distinguish between the different forms of laryngitis. *Laryngeal catarrh* is most common in adults; it has less severe symptoms, and no croupous cough, but more abundant expectoration; there is but

little pyrexia; and the complaint is often accompanied with much nasal catarrh. *Edematous laryngitis* is rare in children, except as the result of drinking boiling water. It generally supervenes in other cases upon some previous disease of the larynx. Expiration is comparatively easy. Cough soon becomes completely aphonic; and the voice is also lost. The œdematos parts may be seen or felt. It is by no means easy in many cases to recognize the nature of an *inflammatory croupy attack* in children. *Catarrhal laryngitis* may, however, be often distinguished by the fact that the patient is subject to similar attacks in cold seasons; while the symptoms are less severe and more remittent; and the termination is not often fatal. *Diphtheria* involving the larynx may be generally diagnosed from other forms of laryngitis by the following considerations:—1. The complaint may be epidemic, or a history of contagion may be traceable. 2. Premonitory general illness may have been felt for some days, with a tendency to asthenia. 3. Marked throat-symptoms are usually present, preceding the laryngeal symptoms. 4. The glands about the jaw are enlarged. 5. Epistaxis and albuminuria frequently occur. 6. Examination of the throat reveals the diphtheritic deposit; or there may be a nasal discharge. When *laryngeal diphtheria* is primary, and the throat is free from disease, the diagnosis becomes very difficult if no history of diphtheria can be obtained. *Croupous laryngitis* arising from other causes it would be almost impossible to recognize positively, unless false membrane were expelled. Bacteriological examination of the membrane might determine whether it is truly diphtheritic or not. Laryngoscopic examination might afford some aid in the diagnosis of the several forms of laryngeal inflammation.

Prognosis.—All forms of laryngitis are to be regarded as serious. The *œdematos* variety is very grave, especially that form which is due to the swallowing of boiling liquids. *Membranous croup* is a most fatal disease. The prognosis is worse in young infants; and there is more danger in proportion to the severity and persistence of the local symptoms, the degree of interference with respiration, and the signs of deficient blood-aeration. Early treatment gives a decidedly better chance of recovery.

Treatment.—There are certain *general* matters which demand attention in the treatment of all the varieties of acute laryngeal inflammation. The patient should remain in a warm room, the temperature being kept uniformly at from 63° to 65° , and the air rendered moist by means of steam. In the case of children it is advisable to make a tent over the bed, and it may be necessary to raise the temperature of the air considerably. All exposure must be avoided, the throat and chest being warmly covered. Rest to the larynx is imperative, so far as it can be obtained; and patients should be urged to restrain cough as much as possible, if it should be irritable and violent.

In the case of *adults* the assiduous employment of inhalations of steam is one of the chief measures to be adopted, and some tincture of benzoin or hop may be added to the inhaler, or a few drops of chloroform occasionally, should there be much tendency to spasm. The inhalation of conine vapour (B.P.) may also be useful. If the attack results from a cold, it is desirable to excite diaphoresis, by means of warm drinks, a hot or vapour-bath, and external warmth. The diligent employment of hot applications over the front of the neck is useful, such as a sponge dipped in boiling water and then squeezed dry. Some practitioners prefer cold appli-

cations. If the inflammation is advancing, and especially if it has spread from the throat, it has been recommended to apply directly and efficiently a solution of some *astringent*, either with a brush or sponge, or by the aid of an atomizer. Nitrate of silver, alum, tincture of iron, chloride of zinc, and tannin are the substances chiefly employed in this manner, but the desirability of applying such remedies is, in my opinion, very questionable. Cocaine might be useful in some cases. In severe cases an *emetic* of sulphate of zinc or tartar emetic at the outset is sometimes decidedly beneficial. Occasionally it might be advisable to apply a few leeches over the upper part of the sternum.

The bowels should be kept freely opened; and a *diaphoretic saline* mixture may be given. If there is much distressing cough, some *sedative* may be administered with due precautions, such as compound tincture of camphor or small doses of morphine.

The treatment of *children* must be similar, whatever the nature of the inflammation may be, and it is necessary to be exceedingly prompt in attending to the first indications of anything wrong in connection with the wind-pipe in such subjects. A warm bath should be employed immediately, the patient being then dried and wrapped up in blankets, while hot sponges are constantly applied over the larynx. The persistent use of cold compresses has been advocated, and is certainly deserving of more extended trial. If the symptoms are at all severe, unquestionably great relief often follows the action of an *emetic*, though Niemeyer affirmed that "emetics are only indicated where obstructing croup-membranes play a part in producing the dyspnœa, and when the child's efforts at coughing are insufficient to expel them." Tartar emetic and ipecacuanha are preferred by many practitioners, and may be given to robust children; but sulphate of zinc answers best in weakly subjects.

Bleeding has been extensively practised in the treatment of croup, but is seldom indicated. Leeches are often of great service in the case of healthy, plethoric children, when employed at an early period, especially if there are signs of local blood-stasis. They are best applied over the upper piece of the sternum, the number being regulated according to circumstances. I am personally strongly opposed to the administration of calomel, which is advocated by some, except, perhaps, as a purgative at the commencement. The bowels should be kept freely open, and for this purpose enemata answer best. It is difficult to determine what internal remedies are most serviceable in the treatment of laryngeal inflammation in children, but it has appeared to me that most benefit is derived at first from a *saline* mixture, containing solution of acetate of ammonium, combined with small doses of antimonial or ipecacuanha wine. The cough must be rather encouraged than checked, unless it is unduly severe, and therefore *sedatives* are generally contra-indicated. Later on *stimulant expectorants* are required, such as carbonate of ammonium, with spirit of chloroform, and syrup of squill. Alkaline bicarbonates, chlorate of potassium, or iodide of potassium may also be serviceable. Dr. Ringer advocates the administration of drop doses of tincture of aconite at short intervals in the treatment of acute laryngitis.

Attention to *diet* is often of much importance in cases of acute laryngitis. At first the food should consist chiefly of milk, with cooling drinks, but nonrishing soups or meat-juices are required when the vital organs show any signs of failure. Alcoholic stimulants are not usually

needed unless some pulmonary complication supervenes. If nourishment cannot be taken by the mouth, it may be necessary to have recourse to nutrient enemata.

Counter-irritation is not attended with much benefit in croup, but Dr. William Squire considers the application of tincture of iodine to the sides of the neck of some service, especially if covered with water-dressing.

The question of the performance of *tracheotomy* is in many cases one of the greatest moment. It seems to me that if the symptoms increase in gravity in spite of treatment, and if signs of apnoea set in, the operation ought to be performed without delay, as affording the only chance of recovery, due care being taken both in its performance, and in the subsequent treatment. Intubation has not proved successful in my experience.

For *œdematosus laryngitis* the most effectual remedies are *emetics* which act with rapidity; the constant sucking of fragments of ice; and efficient scarification. In case of need tracheotomy must be resorted to.

Secondary croup calls for the administration of *stimulants*, along with abundant nutriment. Tincture of perchloride of iron and mineral acids are the most efficient medicines in this affection.

Complications must be treated as they arise. Signs of apnoea must be combated by the usual measures. It is necessary in cases of recovery to exercise great care during convalescence. As prophylactic measures in those subject to croupy attacks, cold douching of the throat and chest, with dry friction afterwards; the wearing of suitable warm clothing; the avoidance of cold damp winds and night air, and change to a suitable climate, are the chief points to be attended to.

II. CHRONIC ORGANIC DISEASES.

It will be convenient to give a separate account of each of the affections of the larynx and trachea which come under this category; and afterwards to discuss their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment as a whole.

A. CHRONIC LARYNGEAL CONGESTION—CHRONIC LARYNGITIS— CHRONIC LARYNGEAL CATARRH.

Ætiology.—The larynx may remain chronically affected as a sequel of acute laryngitis, but the chief causes of the conditions now under consideration are:—1. *Excessive use of the voice*, in speaking, shouting, or singing. A form of chronic laryngeal catarrh constitutes the chief morbid condition in the so-called *clergyman's sore-throat*. 2. *Extension of irritation from the throat or nose*. 3. *Some local irritation in the larynx*, especially from ulceration or morbid growths; and also *external pressure* upon this tube. Chronic laryngitis is often a part of laryngeal phthisis or syphilitic disease, and frequently aggravates the symptoms in these and other local conditions. 4. *Irritation of the recurrent nerve*. 5. *Habitual inhalation* of irritant particles, smoke, or gases. 6. *Abuse of alcohol, tobacco, or hot condiments, etc.* 7. *Occasionally general plethora*: or a *constitutional condition*, probably gouty, attended with a disposition to chronic congestion or catarrh of mucous surfaces.

Anatomical Characters.—These differ according to the duration, seat, and extent of the affection; and the variety which it assumes.

More or less hyperæmia is generally observed, and the veins may be evidently enlarged, especially on the epiglottis. The mucous membrane tends to become thickened and firm in course of time, as well as the submucous tissue. In some instances certain parts of the larynx are greatly thickened, and this is said to be particularly the case with the epiglottis, the arytaeno-epiglottidean folds, or the false vocal cords. Small warty growths may form, especially on the vocal cords—"chorditis tuberosa" (Türck). Polypoid growths are stated to be not uncommon results of chronic laryngeal catarrh. Sometimes a state of chronic œdema is present. The surface is either dry and shining; or presents small collections of mucus, or more abundant secretion. In one form—*laryngitis sicca*—the secretion tends to dry, and to form adherent scabs or crusts. The canal of the air-tube may be dilated or contracted, and its inner surface uneven. The vocal cords usually present a pinkish, slightly thickened appearance; in some cases chronic laryngitis is limited to one of these cords. Erosions are not uncommon in chronic laryngitis, but never actual ulceration, according to some authorities. Sometimes haemorrhage occurs.

Symptoms.—In many cases of chronic laryngitis unpleasant and irritating sensations are experienced in the larynx, which are worse after speaking, but they are not marked as a rule. Alterations in the voice constitute the most important, and not uncommonly the only symptom of this disease. The voice is more or less weakened to complete aphonia, often hoarse and harsh, deep-toned, or cracked. It is subject to variations, and in the slighter cases frequently improves after the patient has spoken for a time. The changes in the voice may only be noticed during loud talking. Paroxysms of spasmodic cough cause much distress in some cases, but this symptom may be completely absent. Many patients have a short, tickling cough; others hawk frequently, in order to clear away viscid secretion. The cough may be hoarse, cracked, barking, or aphonic; and is sometimes attended with much expectoration. Breathing is only disturbed when there is much thickening of tissues or œdema, with consequent narrowing of the larynx, and under these circumstances there may be considerable obstructive dyspnoea, with stridulous inspiration. Slight dysphagia is sometimes experienced.

The laryngoscope reveals the precise appearances presented in different cases of chronic laryngitis; it may further show that the muscles of the glottis do not act properly, and according to Ziemssen the paresis is most frequently unilateral. Sometimes mucous râles can be heard over the larynx with the stethoscope; and the breath-sound is often modified.

B. TUBERCULOSIS OF THE LARYNX AND TRACHEA— LARYNGEAL AND TRACHEAL PHTHISIS.

Aetiology.—In the large majority of cases in which it occurs, tuberculosis of the main air-tube is a complication of pulmonary consumption. It is then attributed by most writers to infection by tubercle bacilli contained in the sputum, as it passes over the mucous surface, which is in a state of catarrh, or anaemic, or the seat of erosions; but others think that in some cases they may be conveyed from the lungs by the lymphatics or blood-vessels. Although this is denied by some authorities, my experience is certainly in favour of the view that the disease occasionally starts primarily in the larynx, and that it may follow what was originally a simple laryngeal catarrh, which predisposes to the direct action of the

tubercle bacillus. Further, it is probable that in cases of phthisis a catarrhal condition may be set up by the mechanical or chemical irritation of the cough or expectoration.

Tuberculosis of the larynx and trachea is much more common in males than females, even out of proportion to the relative number of cases of phthisis in either sex. On the whole it is most frequent from 20 to 30 years of age; but relatively to the proportion of cases of consumption, it is most prevalent in males between 40 and 50, in females between 30 and 40. The complaint is uncommon in children. Habitual use of the voice does not seem to predispose to laryngeal tuberculosis.

Anatomical Characters.—It is by no means easy to give a comprehensive account of the actual changes associated with laryngeal tuberculosis, as described by different writers, while they vary much in their exact characters and distribution in particular cases. As a premonitory condition many attach considerable importance to a marked pharyngeal and laryngeal anaemia. Dr. Felix Semon lays special stress upon this anaemia as a warning sign of impending tuberculosis, which he states often contrasts strangely with the apparently normal complexion of the patient. The specific tubercular changes are usually manifested by infiltration, accompanied in some parts with a peculiar oedema, which is described as looking denser than ordinary oedema; the formation of miliary tubercles; gradual destruction leading to ulceration; and in severe cases extension of the infiltration and ulceration to the deeper parts, leading to suppurative or adhesive perichondritis, especially of the arytenoid cartilages, which may terminate in necrosis or even extrusion of the cartilages. Any portion of the larynx may be attacked, but the parts most prone, in their order of frequency, are said to be the vocal cords and inter-arytenoid fold in about equal proportions, the ary-epiglottic folds, the epiglottis, and the ventricular bands (Walker and Kidd). Dr. Semon states that the *symmetry* of tubercular disease of the larynx is, as a rule, very marked. The degree of infiltration varies greatly, and in some cases it cannot be definitely seen, owing to the early development of ulceration. Certain parts are liable to become much swollen, especially the epiglottis, arytenoid cartilages, epiglottic folds, and ventricular bands. The epiglottis may become enlarged to several times its natural size, and alters in shape, becoming rounded, or sometimes assuming a "turban-shape" (Morell Mackenzie), in other cases "looking exactly like two semi-transparent sausages lying close to one another" (Semon). The arytenoid eminences may attain two or three times their normal size, becoming changed to round or pyriform bodies, compared by Heinze to rounded sugar-loaves. In some instances the ventricular bands are first affected, becoming so enormously swollen as to completely cover the vocal cords; in others again the latter are earliest implicated, becoming tumefied and rounded, losing their usual lustre, and looking semi-transparent. The inter-arytenoid fold of mucous membrane may be thickened, giving rise to a local bulging or excrescence at the back of the glottis, which Störk regards as very characteristic of tubercular disease; it often presents an irregular papillary margin.

After the infiltration has lasted for a variable time actual tubercles develop in it, but it is a disputed question whether these can be made out with the laryngoscope. Semon believes he has seen them in a few instances, but observes that they would be rarely visible, on account of their brief vitality, the place of the tubercles being quickly taken by shallow ulcers.

Tubercular ulcers are stated by Heinze to be most common on the vocal cords; next come the inter-arytænoid fold, the epiglottis, and the arytænoid cartilages; they are comparatively infrequent on the ventricular bands. In not a few cases many ulcers are seen scattered over the surface of the larynx. The characters of the ulcers vary, as well as the extent and depth of the destructive process. They usually present either a greyish-yellow or pinkish granular base. It is said that those situated near the bases of the arytaenoid cartilages have a peculiar tendency to penetrate deeply into the tissues, and thus to destroy the perichondrium and cause necrosis of the cartilages. The epiglottis is usually only ulcerated on its laryngeal surface, sometimes on its margins, but only rarely does the ulceration spread to its upper surface, whence it may extend to the pharynx or back of the tongue. In most cases when this part is affected a number of small, round, shallow ulcers are seen; but in some instances they run together to form an extensive irregular excavation; or rarely the epiglottis itself is gradually eroded from its edges inwards, with the formation of deep fissures, until finally merely a small stump remains. In some instances the vocal cords are split longitudinally into terrace-like reddish or ulcerated ridges, so that each cord seems to be composed of several individual segments. A frequent appearance in the larynx is described as a number of minute pit-like depressions, arranged more or less longitudinally; when the destruction is more extensive, its inner surface and the laryngeal aspect of the epiglottis present a worm-eaten appearance. In the most advanced stages of tubercular disease the larynx is excavated by large ulcers, and its individual parts can hardly be recognized. An important character appears to be that in connection with tubercular ulceration the mucous membrane is as a rule but slightly reddened, and indeed is usually pale. Generally speaking, a greyish-pink or pale yellowish tint prevails, contrasting often with localized patches of congestion in the vicinity of ulcers or infiltrations (Walker and Kidd). Sometimes, however, there is an appearance of general congestion. Cicatrices of healed ulcers have been found in the larynx by several competent observers in cases of phthisis.

When the cartilages necrose, portions of them occasionally separate, and are discharged in the expectoration; sometimes they present a blackened appearance, owing to exposure to the air.

As regards the trachea, tubercular infiltration is said only to occur in its posterior membranous part. Numerous ulcers may subsequently form.

Dr. Percy Kidd and others have described tubercular tumours in the larynx and trachea in some cases of phthisis, originating from various parts, single or multiple, ranging from a pea to a hazel-nut in size, and generally rounded. Ulcerative changes accompanied these tumours in some instances, but not always. They contained tubercle-bacilli, and were often composed of miliary tubercles.

In addition to the actual tubercular lesions, the larynx in cases of pulmonary phthisis is liable to changes, which Dr. Semon terms *accidental*. Thus there may be chronic laryngeal catarrh or laryngitis; paresis of both vocal cords, due to simple weakness, or to a peculiar waxy degeneration of the muscles, which in rare cases singles out the inter-arytenoid muscle; or actual paralysis of one vocal cord, especially the right, due to the implication of the recurrent nerve in a pleuritic thickening at the apex of the lung. In exceptional cases the left recur-

rent laryngeal or pneumogastric nerve has been pressed upon by an enlarged bronchial gland, paralysis of the left vocal cord being thus produced.

Symptoms.—These are more or less of a similar character to the symptoms mentioned under chronic laryngitis, but they differ much in severity in different cases, according to the exact conditions present. It is unnecessary to describe them here in detail, and will suffice to draw attention to certain special points. At first the symptoms may be very slight, when there is mere anaemia of the larynx. They may come and go, but after a time are permanent, and increase in severity. The sensations are in some cases of the most irritating and distressing character, not only pain being felt, but also constant localized tickling or pricking, which may shoot along the Eustachian tubes to the ear. The larynx becomes tender as the disease progresses. The voice becomes peculiarly hoarse or aphonic; while the cough is similarly altered, or is of a metallic quality, as well as often very irritable and paroxysmal. The expectoration is said to contain more tubercle bacilli than before when laryngeal tuberculosis supervenes in cases of pulmonary phthisis. More or less blood may also be discharged. The breathing is liable to be much obstructed, and distinct fits of suffocative dyspnoea may occur. One of the chief troubles in not a few cases is connected with the act of swallowing, especially when the disease is advanced. This act becomes more and more painful and difficult, both when solids and liquids are taken, and may cause extreme distress, inducing a feeling of suffocation, as well as violent paroxysms of cough, so that patients will not attempt to take food in some instances. I believe that ulcers in the trachea often aggravate the cough, and increase the expectoration in cases of pulmonary phthisis.

The laryngoscope reveals the exact nature of the conditions already described, which may exist in various degrees and combinations in cases of tuberculosis of the main air-tube. The detection of ulcers is, however, not always easy, and they may be quite out of sight. Patches of puriform mucus are also liable to be mistaken for ulceration.

The *general* symptoms usually become aggravated when laryngeal tuberculosis supervenes in the course of pulmonary phthisis, and this complication tends to hasten the progress of the complaint. Some cases with marked laryngeal disease last, however, a long time; and under favourable circumstances much improvement in, or even arrest of the mischief has been effected by treatment.

C. SYPHILITIC DISEASE OF THE LARYNX.

Etiology.—Syphilitic affections of the larynx occur generally as "secondary" and "tertiary" manifestations of the acquired disease; rarely in "inherited syphilis." Most cases are met with between 20 and 40 years of age, but laryngeal lesions may develop much later in life, many years after all traces of syphilitic infection have apparently disappeared. The development of the local mischief is probably predisposed to by irritating causes, such as exposure of the throat to cold, or excessive or abnormal use of the voice.

Anatomical Characters.—Among the earlier manifestations of syphilis in the larynx is a catarrh, which is generally believed to present no characteristic features to distinguish it from other forms of catarrh. Dr. Whistler has described a condition in which there is diffuse redness and swelling. He states that the redness is not so bright as in

other laryngeal catarrhs, and is often more limited in its distribution; while there is a more general puffiness than any great swelling. The occurrence and frequency of mucous patches or flat condylomata in the larynx has been much disputed, but, no doubt, they are met with here. They appear in the form of soft, whitish or yellowish elevations; their most frequent seats are the epiglottis, the false cords, and the posterior wall of the larynx, being only rarely seen on the vocal cords or lower down. Syphilitic gummata develop at a later period, and are not of uncommon occurrence. They are situated chiefly on the epiglottis, the true and false vocal cords, and the posterior wall of the larynx; and appear as rounded elevations, usually from the size of a pin's head to that of a small pea, but sometimes much larger, either distinct or aggregated into groups, and of the same colour as the laryngeal surface. Occasionally they become absorbed. Ulceration is a very common result of syphilis affecting the larynx. Sometimes superficial ulcers are met with in secondary syphilis, which are said to be limited, and to occur in any part. Whistler has described a ragged ulceration in the intermediate periods, due to chronic inflammation, particularly affecting the vocal cords, accompanied with diffuse redness and thickening, and liable to relapse again and again after partial cicatrization. *Tertiary* ulcers exhibit a peculiar tendency to begin on the epiglottis, and not uncommonly the ulceration seems to extend directly from the pharynx, or it may result from the breaking-down of gummata. The ulcers tend to spread rapidly, both in extent and depth, causing great destruction of tissues. Türk states that in some cases they can be at once recognized by their more or less circular form; by their excavated surface coated with a whitish-yellow material; and by their edges, which are sharp, sometimes much raised, and surrounded by an inflammatory areola. Often they present sinuous, irregular, and thickened margins. Perichondritis or necrosis of cartilages may result from the ulceration, but it appears that, in the case of the arytenoid cartilages, necrosis is far less likely to follow deep ulceration in syphilis than in tubercular disease. Frequently cicatrization is taking place at one part of an ulcer, while it is spreading at another. The scars exhibit a great tendency to contract, and thus to narrow the calibre of the larynx, or to cause much puckering, adhesions, or various deformities and distortions of its structures. Occasionally a distinct web is formed between the cords; or papillary growths develop in connection with syphilitic cicatrices.

Symptoms.—More or less of the usual symptoms associated with laryngeal disease may be expected in syphilitic affections. Pain is, however, often entirely absent. The voice is usually more or less affected. Cough is troublesome in many cases, and there may be abundant muco-purulent expectoration if there is extensive ulceration. Blood may also be discharged in considerable quantity, and haemorrhage from a syphilitic ulcer has even proved fatal. Swallowing is not uncommonly difficult and painful, but this may be partly due to implication of the throat. As a consequence of cicatrization more especially, the breathing is liable to be seriously obstructed. The laryngoscope reveals the nature of the morbid changes in the larynx. Other parts of the body almost always present syphilitic lesions. The general condition is usually much less affected in syphilitic than in tubercular disease of the main air-tube. If it leads directly to a fatal result, it is said to do so chiefly by setting up oedematous laryngitis or perichondritis of the larger cartilages; occasionally by purulent matter entering the bronchial tubes and causing pneumonia.

D. MORBID GROWTHS IN THE LARYNX.

The abnormal growths and tumours which may be found in the larynx are either *malignant* or *benign*. A *malignant* growth is occasionally a *sarcoma*, usually of the spindle-celled variety; most frequently an *epithelioma*; rarely *scirrhus* or *encephaloid*. It is seldom observed under 40 years of age. The disease may extend from neighbouring parts; when primary, it generally starts on one of the vocal cords or ventricular bands. Carcinoma begins as a cauliflower or nodular growth, of small dimensions, which spreads gradually, so as to involve the whole of one lateral half or more of the larynx. The corresponding vocal cord is often fixed, as pointed out by Dr. Semon. The tendency is towards ulceration, which may be followed by oedema, haemorrhage, perichondritis, and necrosis of cartilages. The disease tends to spread to neighbouring structures. *Benign* growths in the larynx comprise:—
1. *Papilloma*. 2. *Mucous polypus* or *Fibro-cellular tumour*, either pedunculated or sessile. 3. *Fibroma* or *Fibrous polypus*. 4. *Cystic growth*. 5. *Lipoma*. 6. *Myxoma*. 7. *Angioma*. 8. *Euchondroma*. 9. *Hydatid cysts*. Those last mentioned are of extremely rare occurrence.

Symptoms.—The size, situation, number, and nature of the morbid growths, as well as the size of the larynx, will necessarily influence the local symptoms. Rarely is there any pain in benign cases; but in malignant disease it is said to be very pronounced, being either localized in the larynx, or referred deeply to the pharynx, and the pain is frequently described as radiating to one or other ear. Occasionally a feeling of the presence of a foreign body is experienced; or a sense of obstruction or uneasiness. Dysphagia is sometimes complained of. The voice is often partially or completely lost, or altered in quality, and it is liable to sudden changes. A “prodromal hoarseness” of long duration has been noticed by Ziemssen in malignant disease. More or less dyspnoea is usually felt, while the breathing may be stridulous; this symptom is also subject to rapid variations, and frequent suffocative attacks may come on. When the growth is situated above the glottis, expiration is often quite free. The removal of part of a growth may increase the dyspnoea, in consequence of its position being disturbed, or of inflammation being set up. Cough is present in many cases, varying in its characters, and it is not infrequently voluntarily excited with the view of trying to get rid of the obstruction. In the expectoration, which is usually increased and abnormal, fragments of the growth are sometimes expelled, and the microscopic examination of these fragments may aid in differential diagnosis. When malignant disease ulcerates, an ichorous discharge mixed with blood may be forced out, or copious haemorrhage may take place. The breath is then horribly foetid. Laryngoscopic examination reveals the presence, seat, and characters of any growth. Sometimes it extends through the upper opening of the larynx, so that it is visible on inspection of the throat, or can be felt with the finger; or a malignant growth may ultimately form an obvious tumour in the neck; while the cervical glands are likely to become involved in course of time. Examination of the chest often reveals obstruction to the entrance of air into the lungs.

The mere interference with the function of respiration is liable seriously to affect the general system; and if the growth is malignant the cancerous cachexia is often observed, but infection of the viscera is very rare.

It may be noted in the present connection that the larynx is in rare cases the seat of *lupus* or *leprosy*, associated with similar conditions in external or visible parts. In *lupus*, which is regarded as a mere modification of tuberculosis, small nodules form on the epiglottis, and afterwards on the aryepiglottic folds and other parts, fresh ones being constantly produced. After a time thickening of the mucous membrane occurs, followed by ulceration, but its progress is very slow, there is a marked tendency to cicatrization, as well as less disposition to oedema or perichondritis and its consequences than in syphilitic or true tubercular disease. The disease is very chronic, and symptoms are not definite or pronounced in most cases. *Leprosy* is characterized by nodular thickening, followed by very slow ulceration and cicatrization, which may lead to stenosis.

E. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

Diagnosis.—It may be observed at the outset that when symptoms point to the existence of some chronic disorder in connection with the larynx, the diagnosis has in the first instance to determine whether they are due to:—1. Mere *functional* disturbance. 2. *Pressure* or *irritation*, either affecting the air-tube directly, or indirectly through its nerves. 3. *Organic disease*. Assuming the last-mentioned to be present, it is requisite to determine as accurately as possible its nature, seat, and extent. Certain malformations must also be remembered. The chief points to be taken into consideration are:—*a.* The *personal* and *family history* of the patient, as revealing some constitutional diathesis. *b.* The existing evidence of certain *special diseases*, particularly phthisis, syphilis, or cancer; as well as the presence and character of any *general symptoms*. *c.* The exact nature and degree of the *local symptoms* present. *d.* The conditions revealed on *examination of the chest*, those to be specially looked for being pulmonary phthisis, and morbid conditions which might directly affect the windpipe or its nerves. *e.* The results of *laryngoscopic examination*. It is only by the efficient employment of the laryngoscope that positive and accurate information can be obtained. The descriptions already given of the visible changes associated with the several diseases must be referred to for differential diagnosis, and to an experienced laryngoscopist this does not, as a rule, present much difficulty. It must, however, be noted that, according to the best authorities, different organic diseases of the larynx may be associated in the same case, such as tuberculosis with syphilis or with malignant disease, or one may supervene on the other. *f.* The results of *microscopical examination*. This may be useful in detecting the presence of tubercle bacilli in expectoration; or in determining the nature of growths in the larynx. *g.* The *progress* of the case; and the *effects of treatment*. Some diseases are much more rapid in their progress than others; while the course of events often clears up any doubt as to the exact nature of a particular case. The effects of specific treatment may materially help in determining whether laryngeal disease is syphilitic or not.

Prognosis.—All *organic* laryngeal affections are troublesome, and some are highly dangerous, especially when they lead to extensive ulceration, great thickening of tissues, or destruction of the cartilages; or when certain morbid growths are present, or such growths as cannot be removed. The immediate danger to life is in proportion to the degree of interference with breathing; and the liability to spasm. In many

cases there is no fear of a fatal result, but the prognosis as regards the restoration of the functions of the larynx is unfavourable. Much will depend upon the constitutional condition of the patient. Syphilitic disease may often be rapidly cured under proper treatment. Laryngeal phthisis is very serious and intractable as a rule, but in exceptional cases spontaneous cicatrization seems to occur, and the results of modern treatment give a decidedly more hopeful prognosis as to the temporary arrest of the disease, or in suitable cases at an early stage even of cure. Much, however, will depend upon the state of the lungs and other structures. Implication of the epiglottis and aryepiglottic folds in tubercular disease is of very grave omen. It must be remembered that this lesion may supervene upon what is at first a simple chronic laryngitis. Benign growths in the larynx are rarely dangerous, but I have known attempts to remove such a growth lead to serious symptoms, demanding immediate tracheotomy. Malignant disease is obviously most grave, scirrhus and sarcoma being the least rapid in their progress. Operative procedures have prolonged life considerably in a few early cases.

Treatment.—1. *General management.*—Rest to the larynx as far as possible, or the use of the voice in a natural manner; residence in a dry atmosphere, of warm and uniform temperature; the removal of all causes of local irritation; the checking of any injurious habit, such as excessive smoking or abuse of alcohol; and the wearing of sufficient warm clothing over the neck and chest, are the principal *general* matters requiring attention in the treatment of any organic laryngeal disease. In cases of laryngeal phthisis it may be necessary absolutely to forbid all talking for a lengthened period. In some cases a change of climate is imperative, if it can be obtained; but, at any rate, damp, cold, and especially night-air must be avoided. Patients with advanced laryngeal phthisis should not go to high altitudes. It may be requisite for them to wear a respirator or other protection over the mouth.

2. *Constitutional treatment* is often of great importance, especially for syphilitic and phthisical affections. In many cases of chronic laryngitis *tonics* are useful; or treatment directed to the alimentary canal may be called for. Iodide of potassium is a valuable remedy in some cases of chronic laryngitis which are quite independent of syphilis. Various mineral waters are recommended in obstinate cases of this disease. Treatment suitable for tubercular disease will be often called for, and Dr. Semon is strongly in favour of the administration of creasote in cases of laryngeal tuberculosis. Sometimes deglutition is much affected, owing to the condition of the epiglottis, especially in laryngeal phthisis, and then particular attention is required as regards the feeding of the patient, in order that a sufficient quantity of nutriment may be taken. It is useful in these cases to thicken liquids with corn-flour or arrowroot. Dr. Wolfenden has found the following method helpful when swallowing is very difficult in cases of tubercular ulceration:—"The patient lies on a couch, stomach down, and with the legs elevated, and sucks, by means of an india-rubber tube, fluid from a tumbler held in his hand." In some instances the food must be administered through an œsophageal tube, or by means of nutrient enemata or suppositories.

3. *Local treatment* is, however, in most cases that requiring the chief attention in laryngeal diseases. Remedies are applied by the various methods already indicated. The applications should be made effectually, regularly, and as frequently as each individual case may

require, and the aid of the laryngoscope is often needed. The chief substances thus employed are:—1. *Caustics and astringents*, namely, nitrate of silver; chromic acid; chloride, sulphate, or acetate of zinc; alum and chloride of aluminium; perchloride of iron; sulphate of copper; lactic acid; tannin, kino, or other vegetable astringents. 2. *Volatile or gaseous substances or vapours* by inhalation, as creasote, carbolic acid, oil of pine, oil of eucalyptus, thymol, menthol, conine, tincture of benzoin, ether, chloroform, iodine, sulphurous anhydride, chloride of ammonium, and other agents; intended to act as *antiseptics, stimulants, or sedatives*, as may be required. 3. *Anæsthetics, sedatives, or antiseptics* directly applied. As a *local anæsthetic* in connection with the larynx cocaine stands pre-eminent, and is now universally recognized as an invaluable remedy in many laryngeal conditions, for the purpose of relieving painful or unpleasant sensations, and allaying cough; it is also most useful as an aid to deglutition, being applied directly or as a spray before food is taken. Other agents have been recommended as substitutes for cocaine, such as resorcine and apomorphine, but they are not nearly so efficacious. Morphine, menthol, oil of peppermint, and bromides are useful applications as *sedatives*. Iodoform, iodol, boric acid, and other agents are employed as *local antiseptics*, introduced by insufflation.

The limits of this work forbid me from entering upon any discussion as to the local treatment best adapted for individual diseases of the larynx. Indeed, so many different lines of treatment are advocated, that it is impossible to give even an outline of them. The practitioner must use his own judgment as to the kind of remedies likely to be serviceable in a particular case, according to the conditions present, and they may often be advantageously combined. Personally, I incline very strongly to the opinion of those who deprecate the employment of powerful applications as a routine practice. Of late years active treatment of laryngeal tuberculosis has been strenuously advocated in early and suitable cases, and Dr. Semon speaks highly in favour of such treatment. Some authorities go so far as to recommend energetic scarification or incision of parts in which there is merely infiltration, and then to rub in strong antiseptics. Dr. Semon is opposed to such measures, but when actual ulceration begins he urges the efficient application of lactic acid, as originally introduced by Krause, of Berlin, and for full details of this treatment the reader may be referred to an excellent clinical lecture by this authority in the *Clinical Journal*, January 10th, 1894. It can only be carried out properly and effectually by one thoroughly skilled in laryngology. Dr. Percy Kidd has treated one case successfully by strong lactic acid. Before applying this remedy the practice is adopted in some cases of scraping the base of tubercular ulcers. In the large majority of cases of laryngeal phthisis, as they occur in ordinary practice, *sedative* applications are decidedly required.

As regards morbid growths, it is generally considered that these require removal by operation. *Evulsion* is the chief method of operation usually employed, and various instruments have been invented for carrying it out, but it is needless to enter into any description, as only those who have had considerable practical experience would be likely to undertake such operative interference. *Caustic* applications and the *galvano-cautery* have also been employed in the treatment of laryngeal growths.

Other operations performed in connection with the larynx are catheterism, intubation, or mechanical dilatation; and partial or complete extirpation of the tube. For details on these points reference must, however, be made to special works.

4. Not uncommonly *tracheotomy* is called for, in order to prevent suffocation, in cases of extensive ulceration, morbid growths, or great thickening and contraction of the larynx, and the results are sometimes very satisfactory. It may be necessary to divide the thyroid cartilage in order to remove a morbid growth. Operative interference must be avoided if possible in laryngeal tuberculosis.

5. *Prevention*.—In all cases where there is a liability to chronic laryngeal disease, every precaution must be taken to guard against its development, by avoiding cold, excessive use of the voice, and other causes which are known to affect the air-tube. The front of the neck should also be properly protected. In cases of phthisis the slightest indication of any laryngeal irritation demands prompt attention.

III. FUNCTIONAL OR NERVOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE LARYNX.

1. DISORDERS OF SENSATION.—The larynx may be the seat of hyperesthesia with irritable cough; of neuralgia; of various paraesthesiae; or of more or less diminution in sensibility, which may amount to complete anaesthesia, and very rarely affects only one lateral half. Some of these abnormal sensations may be associated with local organic diseases. Apart from such a cause, they are observed in hysteria and allied conditions, in bulbar paralysis, after diphtheria, or in connection with tumours or other conditions affecting the superior laryngeal nerve or its central origin.

2. LARYNGISMUS STRIDULUS—SPASM OF THE GLOTTIS—SPASMODIC CROUP—FALSE OR SPURIOUS CROUP—CHILD-CROWING.—This condition results from a spasmodic action involving the muscles which close the glottis, the proximate cause being some irritation conveyed by the laryngeal nerves. The irritation may be:—1. *Centric*, originating in the brain, either from some organic mischief, such as hydrocephalus; or from disturbance of its circulation, or of its nutrition. 2. *Direct*, from irritation of either vagus or recurrent nerve by enlarged glands, tumours, or other morbid conditions. Formerly the complaint in children was called *thymic asthma*, on the assumption that it was due to pressure by an enlarged thymus gland. 3. *Reflex*. The reflex irritation may arise in the larynx itself; or may be associated with dentition, improper feeding, especially in the case of infants brought up by hand or nursed by unhealthy mothers, intestinal worms, a cold draught blowing on the skin, and various other reflex disturbances. Of late years special importance has been attached to certain conditions of the nasal cavities as the supposed causes of reflex disturbance setting up laryngismus; and it has also been attributed to an elongated uvula.

Laryngismus stridulus is a very common complaint in children, especially during the first and second years of life. It is most frequent among male children, and among those living in the crowded parts of large towns and cities, especially if brought up by hand, and exposed to unfavourable hygienic conditions. Serofulvous children are said to be more subject than others; and rickets predisposes to the affection in a

remarkable degree. In adults laryngeal spasm is only rarely observed, either in connection with hysteria; as the result of interference with the recurrent laryngeal nerves by aneurisms and other tumours; or from direct irritation of the larynx by foreign bodies, gases, or local disease.

There may or may not be some obvious *exciting cause* of an attack of laryngismus stridulus. Thus it sometimes comes on during the act of swallowing; from tossing up the child in the air; or from severe mental emotion, especially fright or anger.

Symptoms.—In children an attack of laryngismus in most cases comes on at night during sleep, and is very sudden in its onset. The prominent symptom is obstructive, suffocative dyspnœa, more or less intense, attended usually with stridulous crowing inspiration, but the glottis may be for a moment completely closed, so that no air can enter, and respiration ceases entirely. The child struggles for breath, and presents to a greater or less degree the appearances associated with apnoea. Often there are general convulsions, with "carpopedal" contractions, strabismus, and sometimes involuntary discharge of faeces and urine. The attack subsides suddenly or very rapidly, and in many cases the child cries. Restoration is complete; and there is neither alteration in the voice nor cough. Pyrexia is usually absent.

An essential character of this complaint is the great tendency to the recurrence of the attacks. They vary in frequency, duration, and severity, but tend to become more frequent, longer, and more intense as the case progresses. Ultimately death from suffocation may occur during one of the paroxysms, but this event is rare.

Laryngeal spasm met with in adults may give rise to very serious symptoms. Hysterical cough is believed to be sometimes due to a spasmodic tendency in the abductors of the vocal cords during expiration; and the sharp ringing cough which occasionally affects children is supposed to have the same cause, the spasm being reflex (Morell Mackenzie).

Diagnosis.—The only affection likely to be mistaken for laryngismus stridulus is inflammatory croup, and the diagnosis between these affections has already been pointed out.

Prognosis.—Most cases of reflex origin recover, but those due to other causes are very serious. Much will depend upon the state of health of the child, and the severity and frequency of the fits. Laryngeal spasm in adults is often of serious import, on account of its causation.

Treatment.—During a paroxysm of laryngismus in children, measures must be immediately adopted for the relief of the spasm. Slapping or rubbing the back; shaking the child; dashing cold water in the face; fanning; tickling the throat so as to excite vomiting; the use of a warm bath alone, or with cold douching while the patient is in it; and holding ammonia to the nostrils, are the most effectual measures. A rapid emetic is useful if it can be taken; and if the attack persists, enemata containing asafoetida, valerian, or turpentine may be employed, sinapisms being also applied to the chest. Artificial respiration is sometimes serviceable. At the same time it is essential to seek for, and remove any source of reflex irritation; for instance, lancing the gums often gives speedy relief. In prolonged cases inhalation of chloroform may be carefully tried; and sometimes it is necessary to have recourse to tracheotomy, which may be performed even after apparent death.

During the intervals between the attacks of laryngismus it is important to look to the diet; to regulate the state of the alimentary canal; and to

improve the general health, or treat any special constitutional condition, especially rickets. Tonics, change of air, and salt-water bathing often do much good in cases where there is a tendency to laryngismus. Treatment directed to the nasal cavities, by the galvano-cautery and other methods, has been specially advocated for this complaint.

In adults the main indications are to remove the cause of laryngeal spasm, if practicable; to treat the nervous system, if at fault; and to use sedative inhalations.

3. LARYNGEAL PARALYSIS—PARALYSIS OF THE MUSCLES OF THE VOCAL CORDS. Paralysis of the muscles of the larynx may arise:—1. In connection with *local organic mischief*, past or present. 2. From *pressure* upon, or *traction* of the pneumogastric or recurrent laryngeal nerves, one or both, by an aneurism or solid tumour, enlarged glands, goitre, thickening and adhesion at the apex of the lung, pericardial effusion, or other conditions. 3. After *diphtheria*; and, rarely, after certain other *acute specific diseases*. 4. In connection with *hysteria* and allied conditions, especially if there is much debility. 5. From chronic poisoning by *lead* or *arsenic*. 6. Very rarely from *centric disease* affecting the brain or spinal cord, involving the nerve-roots or nerves, as in syphilitic and other forms of intra-cranial disease, or in *tabes dorsalis*. 7. As a consequence of *atrophy* and *degeneration of the muscles*.

Varieties and their Symptoms.—Four chief varieties of laryngeal paralysis are described, namely:—

(i.) *Bilateral paralysis of Adductors—Hysterical or Functional Aphony.*—Voice is lost, usually suddenly, there being complete aphonia; but cough and sneezing are attended with sound. The patient, who is almost always a female, sometimes speaks in a scarcely audible whisper. Efforts to talk may cause slight dyspnoea, due to escape of air through the widely open glottis. The laryngoscope shows that the cords remain apart, either partially or entirely, during attempted phonation; and they may be perfectly motionless. They are normally abducted.

(ii.) *Unilateral paralysis of Adductors.*—This is a very rare condition. Voice is altered, and there may be a permanent falsetto. The sound produced during coughing, sneezing, or laughing is usually much changed and weakened. The laryngoscope reveals that one cord does not act when the patient attempts to speak or cough, and that it is usually congested. This form of paralysis is generally due to some direct cause affecting the supplying nerve.

(iii.) *Bilateral paralysis of Abductors.*—Here the prominent symptom is inspiratory dyspnoea, with noisy, stridulous inspiration, always present more or less, but subject to severe exacerbations, especially after exertion, or on taking a deep breath, and this form of paralysis may cause fatal suffocative attacks. Voice is not much affected, but may be harsh. Laryngoscopy discloses that the cords lie close together near the median line, and do not separate when an inspiration is made. Indeed, a slight movement of adduction is generally observed, which is attributed either to suction, or to a perverted innervation of the unopposed adductors.

(iv.) *Unilateral paralysis of the Abductors* is attended with slight hoarseness and dysphonia; dyspnoea and stridor only occurring on exertion. The affected cord does not move during breathing, but remains near the median line.

In some cases both sets of muscles, abductors and adductors, are involved, and there is a combination of the respective symptoms and laryngoscopic signs of their paralyzed condition. In exceptional

instances the paralysis is limited to special muscles. Thus the cryo-thyroids, or external tensors, are involved when the superior laryngeal nerve is paralyzed, as indicated by roughness and low pitch of the voice, the glottis being represented by a wavy line. In this condition also there is paralysis of the depressors of the epiglottis—the thyro-epiglottic and aryepiglottic muscles, so that this structure lies motionless against the base of the tongue. The internal tensors, or internal thyro-arytenoid muscles may be solely affected, on one or both sides, in hysteria or laryngitis, giving rise to mere hoarseness or aphonia. The vocal cords during phonation are separated by an oval or elliptical space, and present a very thin and narrow appearance. Similar symptoms may also be due to paralysis of the arytenoid muscle; the cords during phonation meeting in front, but presenting posteriorly a triangular gap.

It is desirable to summarize briefly the effects of paralysis of the *superior* and *inferior* or *recurrent laryngeal* nerves respectively. When the *superior laryngeal* nerve is affected, there is anaesthesia of the larynx, with paralysis of the depressors of the epiglottis, and of the cryo-thyroids. Very rarely both *recurrent laryngeal* nerves are involved, giving rise to bilateral paralysis, but this may also result from unilateral pressure which has been attributed by Sir George Johnson to reflex paralysis, but is generally supposed to be due to an ascending irritation setting up secondary changes in the nuclei of origin. The bilateral paralysis is indicated by aphonia, inability to cough, slight stridor, and it may be slight dyspnoea on attempting to speak. The vocal cords lie relaxed and motionless, in a position midway between abduction and adduction. Unilateral paralysis of the *recurrent laryngeal* is most common on the left side, and when complete one cord occupies the position just mentioned, but the healthy one crosses over the median line during phonation, so that the voice is only weak and uncertain, and there is no complete aphonia. It is found, however, that this form of paralysis is in most cases incomplete, and Semon and Rosenbach have shown that the abductor fibres are the first to suffer, while paralysis of the adductors seldom becomes complete. This has been attributed to a greater vulnerability of the abductor nerve-fibres, or to the fact that the abductor muscles themselves are less resistant (Semon).

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis of some forms of paralysis of the larynx is very easy, as when it is associated with hysteria, with certain definite nervous diseases, or with a well-marked aneurism or tumour. In others it can only be made out satisfactorily by careful investigation of the case in all its aspects, including local examination by a competent laryngologist. Not only is it necessary to recognize that paralysis exists, but also to determine its exact nature and significance. Thorough and systematic examination of the chest is often of great importance, with the view of detecting any condition interfering with the *recurrent laryngeal* nerve. Evidence of such interference, as shown by laryngoscopic examination, may, however, it is affirmed, be the only sign of an aneurism. It must be remembered that some forms of laryngeal paralysis may be associated with local organic disease, and the combination must be duly recognized. Abductor paralysis may be simulated by fixation of the cryo-arytenoid joints, or by cicatricial or inflammatory changes in their neighbourhood, preventing their movements.

Prognosis.—This will depend, not only on the nature of the paralysis, but on the conditions with which it is associated. Paralysis of the ab-

ductors may be immediately serious. Hysterical cases often recover suddenly. The prognosis must be guided by a due consideration of all the data presented by any particular case.

Treatment.—The measures to be adopted must again depend upon the circumstances of each case. In some nothing can be done of a curative nature, as it may be impossible to remove the cause of the paralysis; in others little or no treatment is required. General treatment is often indicated for hysteria, anaemia, possibly syphilis, or aneurism. All obvious causes of local irritation must be removed, if possible. Local faradization is the great remedy in paralysis of the adductors, one pole being placed over the thyroid or cricoid cartilage, and the other in contact with the vocal cords. Paralysis of the abductors not uncommonly demands the performance of tracheotomy, in order to avert suffocation. Rest to the voice is often important. Local symptoms may call for the usual remedies for their relief.

CHAPTER IX.

DISEASES OF THE BRONCHI.

I. ACUTE BRONCHITIS — ACUTE BRONCHIAL CATARRH — ACUTE INFLAMMATION OF THE BRONCHI.

ACUTE bronchitis or inflammation of the bronchial tubes is a very common complaint, though it varies much in degree and extent. It is often associated with a similar condition in the main air-tube, from which the inflammation spreads to the bronchi, and which contributes to the symptoms.

Aetiology.—*Exciting causes.*—*a.* In the great majority of cases bronchitis results from *taking cold* in some way or other, such as by exposure to cold and wet, sitting in a draught when perspiring, sudden change of temperature, wearing damp or insufficient clothing, or sleeping in a damp bed. Undoubtedly many children suffer in consequence of the legs and lower part of the body being left unprotected in cold weather. *b.* *Direct irritation* of the bronchial mucous membrane is another frequent cause, set up by very hot or cold air; fogs; irritant gases; mechanical particles in the inspired air, such as cotton, wool, dust, steel; blood; irritating secretions; and morbid growths, for example, tubercle or cancer. The association of bronchial catarrh with hay-fever and allied conditions is probably to be accounted for in this way. *c.* Abnormal conditions of the blood are supposed to account for bronchial catarrh, when it occurs in connection with the acute specific diseases, especially typhoid fever, measles, whooping cough, and influenza; with gout, rheumatism, Bright's disease, or syphilis; after the sudden disappearance of acute or chronic skin-affections, or the suppression of habitual discharges; or during the administration of certain medicines, especially iodine. In connection with some of the specific diseases bronchitis may assume an *epidemic form*.

Predisposing causes.—The causes which predispose to bronchitis are early or advanced age; indulgence in relaxing and enervating

habits; immoderate clothing of children; debility from any cause; the presence of certain constitutional diseases, such as rickets or gout; chronic pulmonary affections, or previous attacks of bronchitis; cardiac diseases causing congestion of the bronchial vessels; a cold and damp climate or season, especially with sudden changes of temperature; occupations involving exposure to cold and wet, rapid changes of temperature, or the breathing of irritating particles; and residence in the poorer and unhealthy districts of large towns.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid appearances directly indicating bronchial catarrh include redness, varying in its hue and arrangement; swelling, opacity, relaxation, and diminution in consistence of the mucous membrane; at first dryness of the surface, soon followed, however, by excessive secretion, which changes in its characters as the case progresses, consisting at first of clear frothy mucus, but afterwards becoming more opaque and viscid, muco-purulent or actually purulent; and often epithelial abrasions, with shedding of cilia, or even slight ulcerations. Occasionally blood is present in the tubes; or fibrinous particles or casts may be visible.

The appearances will necessarily vary considerably according to the extent, severity, and stage of the disease. The redness is most marked towards the upper part of the lungs, and at the bifurcations of the bronchi, but is rarely perceptible beyond their fourth or fifth divisions, and it may disappear after death, owing to the contraction of the muscular and elastic fibres in their walls. The inflammatory products are most abundant towards the bases, and in the dependent parts of the lungs; by their accumulation in the air-cells and minute bronchi they sometimes give rise to yellow spots near the surface, especially in children. Both lungs are usually affected in bronchitis, but to an unequal extent.

The chief complications which may be associated with bronchitis are pulmonary congestion and oedema; lobular or more extensive collapse; acute emphysema or insufflation; lobular or rarely lobar pneumonia; and pleurisy. The right cavities of the heart, and the venous circulation are engorged with dark blood in fatal cases. The bronchial glands are often red, soft, and enlarged.

Symptoms.—It will be necessary to allude to certain varieties which acute bronchitis presents in its clinical history, but in a general way the *local* symptoms may be summed up as:—Unpleasant or painful sensations in the chest; interference with breathing; and cough, with expectoration of the materials formed in the tubes. More or less pyrexia is almost always present, though it is usually comparatively slight; while in some cases there is a tendency to gradual asphyxia, from blocking-up of the bronchial tubes; in others to adynamic symptoms.

1. *Primary or Idiopathic Bronchitis.*—*a. Involving the larger and medium-sized tubes.* When due to a cold, acute bronchitis is usually ushered in by coryza, sore-throat, and some degree of hoarseness; chilliness or slight shivering, alternating with a sense of heat; general pains and languor; drowsiness with restlessness; furred tongue, anorexia, and constipation. Occasionally slight delirium is observed; or in very young and weakly children convulsions may occur. The symptoms of the established disease are *local* and *general*.

Local. Subjective sensations of heat, burning, rawness, soreness, tickling, or actual pain are experienced to a greater or less degree over

the front of the chest, but especially behind the sternum, and often in the supra-sternal notch. These are due to the implication of the trachea, and are increased by a full inspiration; while the act of coughing often gives rise to much tearing pain in this region. There may be tenderness over the sternum. Muscular pains are common as the result of cough, especially about the sides. A sense of oppression, weight, or tightness is felt across the chest. Respiration may be slightly hurried and laborious, but there is no obvious dyspnœa. Cough is a prominent symptom in bronchitis, being due at first to the irritable condition of the lining membrane of the main air-passage, which is especially revealed when a deep breath is taken, but subsequently having for its object the removal of the morbid products formed in the bronchial tubes. It is paroxysmal in character, often irrepressible and violent, especially on lying down and on waking up after sleep. Expectoration soon occurs, the sputa consisting at first of a little clear, thin, frothy mucus; afterwards increasing in quantity, and becoming gradually muco-purulent, more or less opaque, often viscid, and scarcely at all aerated. Sometimes they are very tenacious, and adhesive or ropy, and may form distinct "nummulated" masses. As the case progresses, the expectoration is more easily expelled. Occasionally it is streaked with blood. Under the microscope epithelial cells, numerous young cells, and pus-corpuscles are the chief elements observed, along with abundant granular and molecular matter; sometimes a few blood-discs, fibrinous coagula, or crystals are visible.

General. If the bronchitis is at all extensive, a certain degree of pyrexia is present, but it is never very marked. The patient frequently feels languid and weak. Other mucous membranes are often the seat of catarrh along with that lining the bronchi.

b. Bronchitis extending into the minute tubes—Capillary Bronchitis. In most cases this form of bronchitis is but an extension of that already described, being preceded by the ordinary symptoms, but sometimes the smaller tubes seem to be affected at the same time as the larger, or quite independently, and then well-marked rigors may occur at the outset, with headache and vomiting. The peculiar features of capillary bronchitis are as follows:—1. Pain is often slight or absent, except the muscular pains resulting from cough, which are very severe. 2. Breathing is always greatly disturbed, being accelerated sometimes to 50 or more per minute; it is wheezing or crepitous in character, and attended with effort, as well as with a considerable sense of air-hunger. The pulse-respiration ratio is altered, being in some instances about 2·5 to 1. Urgent dyspnœa is observed in severe cases, either constant or paroxysmal, which may amount to orthopnœa. 3. Cough is exceedingly frequent, and the paroxysms are violent; during the act patients often sit up or bend forward, and hold their sides. 4. Expectoration is very difficult, the sputa being abundant, as well as usually markedly viscid and tenacious, containing also minute fibrinous casts of the tubes. 5. The general symptoms are of an aggravated character, there being at first considerable fever, the temperature occasionally rising to 103° or more, with much exhaustion and weakness. The urine sometimes contains a little albumen, or a trace of sugar. As the case advances, the tendency is to the development of symptoms indicating asphyxia and venous congestion, usually gradual in their onset, occasionally rapid or sudden, owing to the speedy filling-up of the tubes, the cough diminishing, the breathing becoming shallow, and the expired air cool. In some

instances, however, typhoid symptoms set in; or there may be a combination of both classes of phenomena.

Certain individual peculiarities demand special notice. Children are very liable to show signs of deficient blood-aeration, even in the slighter forms of bronchitis, especially if they are feeble and badly nourished or rickety. They usually swallow any materials coughed up, and, therefore, in order to examine the expectoration, it is necessary to wipe the base of the tongue with a handkerchief after a cough. Healthy adults do not suffer nearly so severely as a rule. In aged persons, and in those who are constitutionally weak from any cause, the fever is very apt to assume an adynamic type, even though the bronchitis is not severe. The term *peripneumonia notha*, formerly much employed, was associated more particularly with cases of capillary bronchitis occurring in old or weak subjects after some chronic malady, attended with febrile symptoms at first, signs of adynamia and deficient aeration of blood setting in, however, at an early period.

2. *Secondary Bronchitis*.—This term is applied to bronchitis occurring in connection with acute specific diseases; in the course of such complaints as gout, rheumatism, or Bright's disease; or in cases of chronic pulmonary or cardiac affections. In many of these conditions the complaint is apt to come on very insidiously, without any of the usual symptoms being at all prominent, and it is often a dangerous complication. The expectoration is said sometimes to contain peculiar constituents, for instance, uric acid in cases of gout. When acute bronchitis complicates emphysema and chronic bronchial catarrh, especially if associated with cardiac disease, urgent dyspnoea and signs of apnoea are likely to set in speedily, accompanied with general venous congestion and dropsy; the expectoration is also very abundant and frothy at first in these cases, and subsequently its discharge may be exceedingly difficult. In some emphysematous cases, however, the bronchitis is more of the "dry" type. In cases where there are old chronic changes in the lungs, especially dilated bronchi, an attack of bronchitis is liable to be attended with profuse purulent expectoration, which is sometimes foetid. It may be localized in connection with a limited pleuritic adhesion or old pulmonary lesion.

3. *Mechanical Bronchitis*.—When due to the inhalation of irritant particles, attacks of bronchial catarrh are of frequent occurrence, but comparatively slight in degree, there being no pain or fever, the chief symptom being an irritable cough with but little expectoration, which may contain some of the particles inhaled.

Physical Signs.—1. The chest may be somewhat enlarged temporarily in acute bronchitis, from insufflation of the lungs. 2. Respiratory movements tend to be abnormally frequent and deep; expiration is somewhat prolonged; and if the tubes are extensively filled, the upper part of the chest moves unduly. In children signs of *inspiratory dyspnoea* are very common. 3. *Rhonchal fremitus* is frequently present, varying in its characters, and very changeable. 4. *Percussion* may reveal increase in extent and degree of pulmonary resonance, on account of distension of the lungs; or occasionally some deficiency of resonance at the bases is observed, due to accumulation of secretion, pulmonary congestion and oedema, or collapse. In infants a sound supposed to resemble the cracked-pot sound may be frequently elicited. 5. *Respiratory sounds* are loud and harsh, with prolonged expiration, where the tubes are free; where these are obstructed, they are weak or absent, or may be completely obscured by rhonchi.

6. The various *rhonchi* and *râles* due to the narrowing of the tubes, or to the materials formed within them, constitute the most important physical signs of bronchitis. They may be of sonorous, sibilant, mucous, submucous, or subcrepitant character, according to the exact physical conditions upon which they depend, and these adventitious sounds often co-exist in different parts of the chest. At first the dry rhonchi are only or chiefly heard in an ordinary case; while the moist râles are principally observed towards the bases of both lungs. When fluid collects in the larger tubes, râles may be audible at a distance from the patient. Cough affects these sounds considerably. Occasionally the heart's action originates râles in neighbouring tubes.

Duration and Terminations.—According to its severity, a case of bronchitis may end in three or four days, or be prolonged for two or three weeks or more. There is always the danger of a relapse, or of extension of the inflammation. The *terminations* are:—*a.* In recovery, as a rule, but in severe cases convalescence may be very prolonged, and cough is liable to remain for some time. *b.* In death, either from gradual or sudden apnoea; or from adynamia. Capillary bronchitis generally proves fatal from the sixth to the twelfth day, death occurring earlier in children than in adults as a rule. *c.* By transition into chronic bronchitis, especially after repeated attacks. The chief *sequelæ* include emphysema, pulmonary collapse, deformed thorax in children, and acute or chronic phthisis.

Diagnosis.—As a rule acute bronchitis is easily recognized by its mode of onset; local symptoms; physical signs; and minor degree of general symptoms, as compared with other acute chest-affections with which it is liable to be confounded. The chief diseases from which the complaint has to be distinguished are whooping-cough; croupous and other forms of laryngitis; certain cases of pulmonary congestion; pneumonia, especially catarrhal; and acute phthisis or tuberculosis. It is of importance to recognize any complication occurring during the course of an attack of bronchitis; and also not to mistake it when associated with one of the exanthemata for the sole complaint.

Prognosis.—Bronchitis is often a very dangerous disease, and stands high as a cause of death in this country. The circumstances which increase its gravity are:—Very early or advanced age; a bad state of health, or the existence of some chronic or acute disease of a general character; the presence of chronic morbid changes affecting the chest or its contents, especially marked rigidity of the thoracic walls, advanced emphysema, extensive pleuritic adhesions, or disease of the heart; impaction of the smaller bronchial tubes, with great difficulty of expectoration; signs of accumulation of morbid products in the tubes, with shallow breathing and cessation of cough, or of their extensive obstruction, the latter to be especially looked for in children; urgent dyspnoea, with signs of apnoea; a very high temperature; the presence of adynamic symptoms; the occurrence of dangerous complications; neglect of treatment; and a low epidemic type.

Treatment.—Early attention is required in all cases of bronchitis, but especially when children are affected. Confinement to the house or even to one room is always advisable; and if the case is at all severe, the patient should remain in bed, warmly clad in flannel, especially avoiding exposure of the chest, the room being kept at a temperature of from 62° to 65°, and it may be necessary to moisten the air by means of a steam-kettle. When the attack results from a cold, it is useful at the outset

to induce free perspiration by means of a copious hot drink, aided by a warm foot-bath, to which may be added a little mustard; or a hot-air, vapour, or Turkish bath may be employed, the patient then going to bed, and lying between blankets, covered with abundant bedclothes. A full dose of Dover's powder may be given, or a *saline diaphoretic draught*. A sinapism over the chest is useful; and if the main air-tube is involved, steam-inhalations are of much value. An *emetic* at the outset is in much favour with some practitioners in severe cases of bronchitis, and might occasionally be serviceable in the treatment of children.

Should the symptoms not subside, the indications are:—1. To subdue the inflammation as soon as possible. 2. To promote the discharge or modify the quality of the materials formed in the tubes, and to diminish their quantity if excessive. 3. To relieve unnecessary cough. 4. To allay spasm of the bronchial tubes, if present. 5. To pay attention to the constitutional condition of the patient, and to support the strength if it fails. 6. To treat apnoea, excessive fever, or adynamia, should either of these conditions supervene. 7. To attend to complications.

1. For the purpose of fulfilling the first indication, general or local bleeding, and the administration of tartarated antimony or tincture of aconite are the chief measures advocated. Venesection is very rarely required or admissible in bronchitis, but moderate local bleeding, by means of leeches or cupping, may be occasionally beneficial, though much discrimination is necessary in adopting this measure. The front of the chest and the posterior base are the sites from which blood may be taken with most advantage. The application of two or three leeches sometimes proves highly efficacious in relieving urgent dyspnœa associated with severe bronchitis in plethoric children. Tartarated antimony in small doses is decidedly valuable in the early stage of pronounced cases of this disease, provided the patient is strong and not too old. Antimonial wine may be given in combination with compound tincture of camphor.

2. The next three indications are carried out mainly by the administration, in various combinations, as may be required, of:—*a. Sedative expectorants* at first, as ipecacuanha wine, antimonial wine, or apomorphine; and later on *stimulant expectorants*, the most useful being carbonate and chloride of ammonium; preparations of squill, senega, or serpentine; ammoniacum or galbanum; syrup of Tolu or tincture of benzoin; and terebene. Iodide of potassium is a useful remedy in certain cases. *b. Respiratory sedatives*, especially opium or morphine, compound tincture of camphor, hyoscyamus, conium, hydrocyanic acid, or hydrate of chloral. *c. Antispasmodics*, such as the various ethers, tincture or ethereal tincture of lobelia, or spirit of chloroform. Each case of acute bronchitis must be studied individually, and the remedies just mentioned varied according to its requirements. They may be combined with *demulcents* or *salines*, as solution of acetate of ammonium. Should the tubes be much loaded, and expectoration be difficult, narcotics, particularly opium and chloral, must be avoided, and the patient should lie with the head high, and should be encouraged to cough frequently, not being allowed to sleep for too long a time. It is especially necessary to attend to these matters in the treatment of children and old people. Should there be indications of dangerous accumulation in the bronchi, an emetic of sulphate of zinc is very useful. On the other hand, if there is an irritable cough, it may often be voluntarily repressed by the patient, and sedatives are then most valuable.

Strychnine is of great value for stimulating the respiratory function; and tincture of digitalis or strophantidin to improve the cardiac action, should it be failing. *Inhalations* are frequently beneficial, those of conine, ether, chloroform, hop, or benzoin, for the purpose of relieving cough and checking spasm; later on those of creasote, carbolic acid, oil of eucalyptus or pine, and similar agents, to diminish or modify the expectoration. Inhalation of vapour of chloride of ammonium may be of much service in the later stages of acute bronchitis.

3. *Local treatment* is generally called for in bronchitis. Sinapisms, hot or turpentine fomentations, linseed-meal poultices, and allied applications over the chest are beneficial at first, when judiciously employed. When the acute symptoms have subsided, a blister may occasionally be useful; or, if there is a tendency to chronic bronchial catarrh, some more powerful application may be required, such as the turpentine and acetic acid liniment, compound camphor liniment, or croton oil liniment. Friction with simple camphor liniment, followed by the application of cotton-wool, is often very serviceable. Free dry-cupping frequently relieves troublesome dyspnœa and oppression about the chest, especially when acute bronchitis complicates emphysema with chronic bronchial catarrh. In these cases flying blisters and turpentine stupes are also beneficial.

4. The *constitutional conditions* chiefly requiring attention in cases of acute bronchitis are general debility, rickets, tuberculosis, and gout. Lowering treatment is not borne when either of these is present. When it is associated with specific fevers the measures to be adopted may require some modification. It is quite needless to keep patients on too low a diet, and considerable support is often called for in bad cases. Stimulants are not requisite as a rule, and may do harm, but they must be given if necessary, particularly if signs of adynamia or apnoea set in, their effects being carefully watched. Excessive pyrexia calls for the judicious use of *antipyretics*. Any tendency to asphyxia must be combated by the usual measures; and in dangerous cases venesection may be demanded. Inhalation of oxygen may be of great service.

5. In the treatment of children, one of the best remedies in most cases of bronchitis is ipecacuanha wine in moderate doses, repeated every three or four hours; which in weak or rickety subjects may be combined with small doses of carbonate of ammonium. When it attacks old people or those who are enfeebled from any cause, or when it occurs as a complication of fevers or other lowering diseases, wine or brandy and abundant nourishment are usually required, with *stimulant expectorants*. Capillary bronchitis in the majority of cases demands a stimulating and supporting treatment throughout.

6. Due precautions must be taken until *convalescence* is thoroughly established, especially against cold, damp, and night air: while flannel should be worn next the skin. A change of air to a suitable locality will aid convalescence considerably. *Tonics* are often useful during recovery after bronchitis, such as quinine, mineral acids, or some preparation of iron. Special care must also be taken in the case of those who are subject to this complaint, and for such persons a change to some genial climate during the cold season is very desirable.

II. CHRONIC BRONCHITIS—CHRONIC BRONCHIAL CATARRH.

Aetiology.—As a rule chronic bronchitis follows repeated attacks of the acute disease, but occasionally it remains after one attack, or begins as a chronic affection. It is frequently associated with gout and other constitutional complaints, chronic pulmonary diseases, heart-affections, or alcoholism; or it results from repeated or habitual inhalation of irritant particles. Persons advanced in years are by far most subject to chronic bronchial catarrh; but even children are liable to suffer from the complaint, and it not uncommonly becomes permanently established from neglect in young subjects.

Anatomical Characters.—When chronic bronchitis has been long established, it leads to considerable changes in the bronchial tubes. Their lining membrane becomes dark-coloured, often of a venous hue, or here and there greyish or brownish; and the small vessels are visibly enlarged and varicose. Thickening of tissues, increased firmness amounting in some instances to marked induration, and changes in the calibre of the tubes are observed, with loss of elasticity and hypertrophy of the muscular coat of the bronchi. The cartilages may ultimately calcify. The small tubes are narrowed or closed up; while the larger ones are often dilated, and gape on section. The surface of the mucous lining is uneven, frequently presenting extensive epithelial abrasions, or occasionally follicular ulcers. In some cases there is only a little tenacious mucus in the tubes, but usually they contain more or less abundant muco-purulent or purulent matter, or frothy mucus.

Symptoms.—Cases of chronic bronchitis present much variety as regards the severity and exact characters of their symptoms, depending upon its extent and precise nature; as well as upon its frequent association with other morbid conditions affecting the lungs and pleurae, especially emphysema, dilated bronchi, phthisis, or pleuritic adhesions; with cardiac affections; or with some constitutional diathesis. They may, however, be conveniently classed under three main groups:—

1. *Ordinary Chronic Bronchitis.*—In many instances patients only suffer from this complaint during the cold season, having a “winter-cough;” but after a while the symptoms often become permanent to a greater or less degree, though liable to exacerbations in cold and damp weather. A little uneasiness or soreness may be felt behind the sternum, increased by cough; and a sense of oppression across the chest, with shortness of breath on exertion, is usually complained of in severe cases. Cough is the main symptom, occurring chiefly in paroxysms, varying greatly in severity and frequency; it is often very annoying on first going to bed, and early in the morning. The cough is attended with expectoration, the sputa being frequently abundant and difficult to expel; and consisting of greyish mucus, yellowish or greenish muco-purulent or actually purulent matter—*purulent bronchitis*, or a mixture of these materials, usually running into one mass, but occasionally remaining in separate lumps, which may be nummulated. Being but slightly aerated, the masses not infrequently sink in water. Occasionally blood-streaks are observed. Sometimes a most offensive or even gangrenous odour is given off from the sputa—*fætid bronchitis*, but then dilated bronchi are usually present. The microscope reveals much

granular matter, with imperfect epithelial and pus-cells, and often blood-corpuscles.

Severe cases of chronic bronchitis may be attended with evident wasting and debility, slight evening pyrexia, and night-sweats, but when these symptoms are present, phthisis should always be carefully looked for.

2. *Dry Catarrh—Dry Bronchial Irritation.*—This variety is particularly observed in connection with gout or emphysema; as a result of irritant inhalations; and in seaside places. More or less difficulty of breathing is experienced, with a sense of tightness and oppression across the chest, and wheezing; while very distressing paroxysms of irritable cough come on, either quite dry, or only followed by the expectoration of a small pellet of greyish, pearl-like, tough mucus, compared to boiled starch, or of a little watery fluid.

3. *Bronchorrhœa.*—Most frequent in old people, especially in connection with cardiac diseases, this form is characterized by the expectoration being very abundant, sometimes amounting to as much as four or five pints in the twenty-four hours; in character being either watery and transparent, or glutinous and ropy, resembling a mixture of white of egg and water, and scarcely at all frothy. The cough is paroxysmal and often violent, but may be insignificant compared with the quantity of fluid discharged. Patients frequently obtain relief from dyspnoea and other unpleasant sensations after a spell of coughing. In severe cases there may be loss of flesh, with proportionate weakness.

Physical Signs.—The only signs directly due to chronic bronchial catarrh are:—1. *Rhonchial fremitus.* 2. *Harsh respiratory sounds*, with prolonged expiration. 3. *Sonorous and sibilant rhonchi*, with large mucous râles towards the bases, the latter being rarely abundant, and varying in characters according to the consistence of the contents of the tubes. Other signs are generally present in cases of long duration, but they are indicative of emphysema or other morbid changes accompanying the bronchitic condition.

Diagnosis.—The presence of chronic bronchitis can always be easily recognized by its local symptoms and physical signs. One of the most important points is to determine the conditions with which it is associated, which can only be made out by systematic physical examination. In certain cases of this disease it may be difficult to conclude whether phthisis has supervened, especially where suspicious general symptoms arise, along with much muco-purulent expectoration. Here again physical examination affords much information, aided by investigation of the sputa, and a careful consideration of the case as a whole. The development of dilated bronchi is indicated by special signs, to be presently described.

Prognosis.—When chronic bronchitis is confirmed, only rarely can the complaint be thoroughly cured. In less advanced cases, however, complete restoration may be effected under favourable conditions. Patients suffering from chronic bronchial catarrh often live to a good old age, but lead an uncomfortable existence. The chief dangers to which they are liable are that the disease should become more and more extensive, or should induce emphysema, dilated bronchi, pulmonary collapse, or phthisis; or that an acute attack might supervene, which is frequently highly dangerous under the circumstances.

Treatment.—1. From what has just been stated, it is obvious that all cases of chronic bronchitis ought to be thoroughly attended to at as early

a period as possible. The patient must be removed from every source of irritation, and must observe due precautions against exposure, wearing warm clothing, with flannel next the skin, and in some cases cotton-wool over the front of the chest, or a chest-protector may be worn with advantage. If a suitable climate cannot be obtained, it will be well for the patient to keep indoors during bad weather, or if obliged to go out, a respirator should be worn in appropriate cases, or the mouth and nose covered with some kind of woollen protector.

2. It is very important to look to the state of the *heart*, of the *digestive organs*, and of the *general system*. If cardiac disease is present, infusion or tincture of digitalis is often very useful. By relieving dyspeptic symptoms, and keeping the bowels freely open, much good may also frequently be effected in many cases of chronic bronchitis. Any constitutional diathesis present must be attended to, especially gout, rheumatism, rickets, or tuberculosis; and a plethoric or anaemic state of the blood should be corrected. A great many cases of chronic bronchitis do well under a course of treatment by *tonics* and good diet, with some stimulant, especially if there is abundant expectoration, causing debility and wasting. Quinine, strychnine, preparations of iron, hypophosphites, or mineral acids with bitter infusions, are very often valuable, as well as cod-liver oil.

3. Much discrimination is requisite in cases of chronic bronchitis in the employment of remedies which have a *local* action. The main indications are to limit excessive secretion, or modify the characters of the materials formed; to assist expectoration, should the act be difficult; to allay irritable cough; and to subdue bronchial spasm. These indications are carried out by the internal administration of the various drugs mentioned under the general therapeutics of the respiratory system, in different combinations; and by the employment of suitable inhalations. Among the agents commonly used may be mentioned carbonate and chloride of ammonium, squill, senega, gum-resins, copaiba, balsams, lobelia, stramonium, certain astringents, and different volatile antiseptics. Caution must be observed in the use of narcotics, as in the case of acute bronchitis, should there be a tendency to accumulation of secretion. If the sputa are very viscid, alkaline bicarbonates or solution of potash may prove very beneficial. Iodide of potassium is a useful remedy in many cases. Terpene, terebene, syrup of tar, naphthalin, and other agents of this class are specially recommended in the treatment of certain forms of chronic bronchitis. Sedative inhalations are most valuable should there be much irritable cough.

4. Amongst the *external* methods of treatment suitable for different cases of chronic bronchitis may be mentioned the wearing of some warm plaster over the front of the chest; friction with simple camphor liniment, or with more stimulating or irritant liniments, as those containing ammonia, turpentine, acetic acid, or chloroform; and active counter-irritation, by means of sinapisms, blisters, iodine preparations, or croton-oil liniment. Free dry-cupping may be serviceable under certain circumstances.

5. Change of climate or a sea-voyage proves most beneficial in many cases of chronic bronchitis. All forms require a tolerably warm region, which is not subject to rapid changes of temperature, or exposed to cold winds, and which is situated at a moderate elevation. Dry catarrh needs a soft and relaxing atmosphere, of moderately high temperature. If there is much expectoration a dry, warm, and more or less stimulating

climate answers best. Torquay, Penzance, Falmouth, Bournemouth, Hastings, St. Leonards, Ventnor, Shanklin, Worthing, Grange, Clifton, and Tunbridge Wells in this country; and Cannes, Nice, Monaco, Mentone, San Remo, Bordighera, Egypt, Algiers, Tangiers, Arcachon, Corfu, Madeira, the Canary Isles, the West Indies, and the Cape among foreign parts, are the chief places available for patients suffering from chronic bronchitis. A permanent change of climate is advisable not uncommonly. Some cases are benefited by a course of treatment at certain baths; and alkaline mineral waters are also given internally with advantage. Among special methods of treatment advocated may be mentioned that by the "pneumatic apparatus," by means of which the patient breathes compressed air, or expires into rarefied air; and the so-called milk-cure, whey-cure, and grape-cure.

III. PLASTIC OR CROUPOUS BRONCHITIS.

Aetiology.—Diphtheritic membrane may extend into the bronchi, but the complaint now under consideration is a rare and peculiar one, which is supposed to depend upon some special diathesis, and to be generally associated with a weak constitution, or sometimes with tuberculosis. It may, however, certainly be met with in strong and apparently healthy persons. Young adults suffer most frequently from this affection; and it is said to be rather more common among females.

Anatomical Characters.—A plastic exudation is deposited in the bronchial tubes, forming whitish casts, varying in size according to the tubes affected, as well as in extent; being either hollow or solid; and sometimes presenting concentric layers. It consists of an amorphous or fibrillated substance, enclosing granular matter, oil-globules, and cells, some of which are nucleated. Some pathologists have supposed that the material is merely altered blood, the result of bronchial haemorrhage, but this is certainly not a correct view, the exudation being probably an inflammatory product usually.

Symptoms.—Plastic bronchitis is almost always chronic in its course, but presents acute exacerbations. The affection is characterized by fits of cough and dyspnoea, more or less frequent, severe, and prolonged, being sometimes extremely aggravated; followed and usually relieved by the expectoration of fibrinous masses, which on being unravelled under water exhibit tree-like casts of the tubes. There may be more or less haemoptysis, which occasionally is on a large scale. Sometimes extensive bronchial catarrh or pneumonia is set up; and considerable pyrexia may be observed. In the intervals patients suffering from this complaint often feel perfectly well.

The *physical signs* indicate obstruction of the bronchial tubes, more or less complete and extensive, leading to emphysema or pulmonary collapse. *Dry rhonchi* are often audible on auscultation, especially those of a *sibilant* character, with a few *mucous râles*.

A case came under my notice in which a tolerably healthy-looking young man was affected with plastic bronchitis, bringing up a quantity of casts almost daily, but who scarcely suffered any inconvenience.

Treatment.—During the attacks of dyspnoea and cough associated with plastic bronchitis the chief measures indicated are inhalations; the external application of sinapisms, turpentine fomentations, or a blister to the chest; and the internal administration of *sedatives*, with tartar

emetie or ipecacuanha wine. For the cure of the complaint there is no known remedy. Tonics, cod-liver oil, change to a warm climate, or a long sea-voyage seem to be most beneficial. Tartar emetic, iodide of potassium, alkalies and their carbonates, mercurial preparations, inhalations of iodine, and various other remedies have been tried, but usually without success.

IV. DILATATION OF THE BRONCHI—BRONCHIECTASIS.

Aetiology.—Bronchiectasis generally arises in the course of some chronic lung-disease, especially bronchitis with emphysema, phthisis, or chronic interstitial pneumonia, and the last condition may follow adherent and thickened pleura. Its immediate causes are supposed to be:—
1. *Morbid changes* in the walls of the bronchi, diminishing their resisting power. 2. *Increased pressure of air* from within, either during cough in parts unsupported; or during inspiration, in consequence of obliteration of a number of air-vesicles, the dilatation of the bronchi being then compensatory. 3. *Persistent pressure of stagnant secretion*. 4. *Contraction of lung-tissue*, in connection with chronic interstitial pneumonia, the enclosed bronchi becoming dilated during the process.

Anatomical Characters.—The bronchi may be extensively dilated, and of a fusiform or cylindrical shape; or they present one or more limited globular or sacculated enlargements. Their size varies considerably, and they may form definite cavities as large as a pea or a marble. After a time their inner surface becomes irregular, and occasionally ulcerated; they secrete a muco-purulent or purulent substance, which is often foetid; and are sometimes the seat of gangrene or of haemorrhage. Their contents may ultimately dry up, becoming caseous or even calcareous; and finally the affected tubes may become obliterated. Dilated bronchi, when they exist, are always associated with other pulmonary changes.

Symptoms.—One of the most significant symptoms of dilated bronchi is the occurrence of severe paroxysms of cough at intervals, ending with abundant expectoration, which is discharged with much difficulty, depositing a thick sediment on standing, being often exceedingly foetid, and also containing caseous-looking particles or masses, which are made up of pus-corpuscles, detritus, acicular crystals of palmitic and stearic acids, bacteria, and twisted threads of leptothrix. The expired air has often an extremely foul odour, especially during a strong cough, and it may taint the atmosphere of a large room. Other local symptoms will vary with the condition with which the bronchial dilatation is associated. More or less marked general symptoms are usually present.

Physical Signs.—The signs which may give direct evidence of bronchiectasis are:—1. Tubular *percussion-sound* occasionally. 2. Loud bronchial, blowing, tubular, or even cavernous *breath-sound*, which may perhaps be heard after a cough where previously absent. 3. Various *moist râles*, in some instances of hollow character. 4. Loud *bronchophony* or *pectoriloquy*; or even *whispering pectoriloquy*. These signs are usually noticed about the base, or in the interscapular region; and when present are in most cases associated with evidences of fibrotic lung and adherent pleura, being often unilateral. They may be completely obscured by *emphysematous lung*.

Treatment.—The chief matter requiring attention is to see that the morbid products are not allowed to stagnate in the dilated bronchi, the patient being encouraged to cough, and expectoration being assisted. The sputa may be improved and limited in their amount by means of carbolic acid, creasote, or other *antiseptics*, administered internally and by inhalation. Attempts have been made to empty bronchiectatic cavities by operation, but the results have been anything but satisfactory in most cases.

CHAPTER X.

PULMONARY CONGESTION—ŒDEMA—HÆMORRHAGE.

THESE morbid conditions may be considered together, as they are in many instances more or less associated.

Etiology.—“Congestion of the lungs” is an expression frequently used without any definite meaning, and one that is not uncommonly applied to conditions of an entirely different, and far more serious nature. It must be recognized, however, that pulmonary hyperæmia or congestion is a distinct morbid change, either occurring alone or along with other affections. It may be described under two forms, namely, (1) *Active*; (2) *Passive* or *mechanical*.

Active pulmonary hyperæmia is described by French writers as an independent disease, but cases of this kind are usually regarded as of a pneumonic nature. A congestive stage occurs in the development of pneumonia, and in some instances the morbid change does not go beyond this stage, the disease seeming to abort, but there is hardly sufficient warrant for looking upon it as a separate affection. I have noticed this condition in not a few cases of influenza. The circumstances under which active pulmonary congestion may be more particularly looked for are as follows:—1. From increased action, or possibly hypertrophy of the right ventricle. 2. As the result of inhalation of hot air or irritant gases. 3. Associated with other affections of the lung or pleura. Not only does hyperæmia precede pneumonic consolidation, but is often present as a consequence of collateral fluxion in other parts of one or both lungs in cases of pneumonia, as well as in connection with bronchitis, pleuritic effusion, acute tuberculosis, or pulmonary collapse. Moreover a limited active congestion may occur in the vicinity of morbid formations in the lungs, or of other conditions setting up local irritation. 4. In connection with certain conditions which seriously disturb the relations normally existing between the air in the lungs and the pulmonary circulation. Thus congestion may result from obstruction to the entrance of air into the respiratory organs; alterations in atmospheric pressure; or violent and prolonged fits of coughing, expelling the air out of the lungs. 5. As an effect of exposure to extreme heat or cold, or of violent exertion. An intense and rapidly fatal pulmonary hyperæmia has been attributed to these causes; as well as to the combined effects of alcohol, exposure, and cold.

The causes of *passive* or *mechanical* hyperæmia are:—1. Some cardiac disease in the great majority of cases, interfering with the passage of blood through the left cavities of the heart, especially mitral disease. A dilated heart may also lead to this kind of pulmonary congestion. 2. Rarely a tumour pressing on the pulmonary veins. 3. Low fevers, prolonged illnesses, and other conditions which confine patients to the recumbent posture, at the same time greatly depressing the action of the heart, and impeding the capillary circulation, especially in aged and feeble individuals; this variety is seen chiefly in dependent parts, usually the bases and posterior portions of the lungs, on account of the influence of gravitation, and the congestion is then termed *hypostatic*. 4. Compression of the bases of the lungs by abdominal conditions of various kinds. 5. Cerebral injuries or lesions leading to coma; and sometimes poisons which produce this effect, such as morphine. It is said that in cases of cerebral apoplexy the congestion may be most marked in, or even confined to the lung on the paralyzed side.

Pulmonary œdema is as a rule the result of long-continued or intense congestion from any cause, but especially when this is associated with cardiac disease. It may be but a part of general dropsy, apart from any local congestion, as in chronic Bright's disease.

Hæmorrhage into the lungs may occur under the following circumstances:—1. As a result of congestion. 2. From the lodgment of an embolus in one of the branches of the pulmonary artery. This embolus is usually detached from a clot in the right ventricle, but may be conveyed from a systemic vein. 3. From a diseased condition of branches of the pulmonary artery. This often materially aids in the causation of pulmonary hæmorrhage. 4. As a consequence of injury affecting the lungs. 5. In connection with pulmonary diseases, such as morbid growths, cavities, or ulceration in the lungs, particularly in cases of phthisis or cancer. 6. Owing to some morbid condition of the blood, such as that associated with scurvy, purpura, or malignant fevers.

Anatomical Characters.—Hyperæmia of the lung gives rise to a more or less deep-red colour, which may become bluish, purple, livid, or blackish-red. Both lungs are often affected, especially their bases, but the condition may be limited to one organ, or even to a portion of it. The affected structure is swollen, relaxed, and moist; crepitates imperfectly; and a quantity of aerated bloody fluid escapes from its tissues on section. Pieces of congested lung float in water. In extreme cases the vesicular structure is scarcely apparent, and the tissue breaks down very readily, this condition being termed *splenification*. Hypostatic congestion may end in hypostatic pneumonia.

Œdema is necessarily chiefly observed in dependent parts, and is always present, more or less, when the lungs are congested. When the condition is marked, the lungs are obviously enlarged, tense, and do not collapse when the chest is opened; while they have a peculiar feel, and after pressure retain the impression of the finger for a time. The tissues are very moist, and on section a large quantity of serous fluid escapes, either blood-stained or colourless, and it may or may not be frothy. The lungs are either congested, or pale and anaemic, according to the cause of the œdema.

Hæmorrhage into the lungs is described as occurring under four forms, namely:—1. *Circumscribed* or *nodular*—*Hæmorrhagic infarction* or *pulmonary apoplexy*. 2. *Diffuse* or *true pulmonary hæmorrhage*. 3. *Inter-*

lobular. 4. *Petechial*, in connection with blood-diseases. The last two are very rare, and do not call for further notice.

Hemorrhagic infarction is due to embolism from the right cavities of the heart or the systemic veins, and the blood comes from the capillaries of the pulmonary artery, collecting within, as well as outside the alveoli and minute bronchi, but there is no laceration of tissue. The size of an accumulation varies considerably, depending upon that of the branch of artery obstructed, and it may measure from half an inch to four inches or more in diameter. When situated in the interior of the lung, the infarction is large; when near the surface it is small and wedge-shaped or pyramidal, with the base projecting outwards a little beyond the surface. The most frequent seats of infarction are the interior of the lower lobe, and the vicinity of the root of the lung, but at the same time there may be others more superficial, and they are often numerous. Each haemorrhage is circumscribed and defined, and it may only correspond to a single lobule, but the surrounding tissue is congested and oedematous. A pulmonary infarction feels very firm and hard; a section presents a solid, airless, slightly-granulated, dark-red or blackish appearance; while coagulated blood can often be scraped away, and then the lung-structure may become perceptible.

Apoplectic clots in the lungs are liable to the changes which blood usually undergoes, and it is believed that they may ultimately be completely removed by absorption. In many cases a permanent, blackish, pigmented knot is left. Pneumonia is sometimes excited, or an abscess may form, the clot softening in the centre; or it may undergo caseous or calcareous degeneration, and become subsequently encapsulated. In very exceptional cases an infarct has led to gangrene, which has ruptured into the pleura, and caused pneumothorax.

In the *diffuse* form of pulmonary haemorrhage a vessel of some size gives way, the lung-tissue being lacerated, and an irregular potential cavity being formed, varying in size, and containing a mixture of fluid and clotted blood. The visceral pleura may rupture, the blood consequently escaping into the pleural cavity.

Allusion may be made here to the condition known as *brown induration of the lung*. This follows long-continued pulmonary congestion, especially that due to mitral disease, and is characterized by the accumulation of granular yellowish pigment, probably of the nature of haematoidine, in enlarged epithelial and granular cells, which collect in the alveoli; accompanied with varicose dilatation of the capillaries; and probably thickening of the aveolar walls. The pigment may become black, and in some cases is finally found free. The lungs are increased in bulk, and do not collapse; they feel heavy, compact, and inelastic; and present a yellowish tint, passing into brown or reddish-brown. On section, in addition to the general change in colour, red spots are seen, shading into black, and a brownish fluid may be expressed. Various degrees of the change are observed, and the extent of tissue affected differs much in different cases, while infarctions are often present at the same time.

Symptoms.—The symptoms resulting from pulmonary congestion and its consequences are not easy to define, as, when present, they are usually only exacerbations of previously-existing phenomena, and often there are no definite symptoms of any kind. One of the most important is more or less dyspnoea, either coming on for the first time, or being more intense than before, and sometimes amounting to orthopnoea. A feeling of tightness or oppression may be experienced across the chest,

but pain is generally absent. There may be more or less cough, which in pulmonary œdema is attended with very profuse watery expectoration; and when hæmorrhage takes place, a variable quantity of blood is usually discharged, which may have a dull-brownish or bister-colour, or be almost black. If a clot excites inflammation, pyrexia and other symptoms indicating this complication will supervene.

Those who regard active congestion of the lungs as an independent complaint describe the symptoms as a feeling of chill at the outset, followed by pains in the side, more or less dyspnoea, cough, either moderate or considerable, with viscid expectoration, and some degree of fever, the temperature ranging from 101° to 103° . As already stated, cases of this kind are usually regarded as pneumonic in character.

Physical Signs.—1. *Respiratory movements* are often diminished, where there is extensive pulmonary congestion or œdema. 2. *Percussion-sound* may be at first abnormally clear in pulmonary congestion; but afterwards resonance becomes more or less deficient at the bases. There may be localized dulness in connection with a large hæmorrhage. 3. *Respiratory sounds* are usually weak and harsh; over the seat of pronounced local congestion or hæmorrhage they may be bronchial. 4. Pulmonary congestion may give rise to fine *râles*. Œdema is characterized by abundant, small, liquid, bubbling *râles*. Localized moist râles may also be perceptible over the part of the chest corresponding to pulmonary hæmorrhage, and here signs of pneumonia or abscess may subsequently develop in some instances.

Diagnosis.—The recognition of the conditions discussed in this chapter may be very easy if due attention be paid to the case in all its aspects. It is most important not to include in a careless way under the term "congestion of the lungs," affections which are entirely different, while, on the other hand, recognizing its frequent association with certain of them. In cases where hypostatic congestion is likely to occur, the bases of these organs must be examined frequently, as it often supervenes without any symptoms.

Prognosis.—As a rule the affections now under discussion are serious, and they often increase the gravity of the prognosis considerably, because they complicate other dangerous conditions. Much, however, will depend upon their extent, and upon the circumstances under which they occur.

Treatment.—The measures required must be guided by the exact nature and extent of the morbid changes; and the conditions which produce them, or with which they are associated. Any obvious cause producing pulmonary congestion should be removed, if possible, such as pleuritic effusion or ascites. Sometimes purgatives are beneficial. Free dry-cupping of the chest is often very beneficial in pulmonary congestion, and sometimes local removal of blood is indicated, or even venesection. It is important to attend to posture; and as a preventive measure in certain cases of threatened hypostatic congestion change of posture from time to time is most useful; deep respiration is also required under such circumstances. Good diet and *stimulants* are frequently necessary. Care must be taken in cases of œdema that the fluid be not allowed to accumulate in the lungs, and cough must be encouraged. In diffuse hæmorrhage *astringents* are required. Remedies which act upon the heart are in some cases of much service, especially digitalis.

CHAPTER XI.

ACUTE PNEUMONIA—INFLAMMATION OF THE LUNGS.

ACUTE pneumonia, or inflammation of the actual tissues of the lungs, is usually recognized under two forms, namely:—1. *Croupous* or *Lobar*. 2. *Catarrhal* or *Broncho-pneumonia*. Each of these varieties demands separate consideration, although there certainly is not in practice such an absolute distinction between them as is commonly believed.

I. ACUTE CROUPOUS PNEUMONIA—LOBAR PNEUMONIA.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Acute pneumonia occurs under a variety of circumstances, and amongst others as a *primary* and independent disease, which is familiar in ordinary practice. It is now the fashion to regard this form as an *acute specific fever* or *infective disease*, due to a *specific micro-organism*, which produces its more immediate effects upon the lung, but which also causes constitutional disturbance, and under favouring conditions even sets up secondary lesions in other organs. This or other organisms are also supposed to be the direct cause of pneumonia in other cases, and it will be convenient therefore to consider at the outset the nature of the micro-organisms which have been found in connection with this disease. Those to which most importance is attached are Friedlander's *pneumococcus* or *bacillus*; and Fraenkel's *pneumonia bacillus*, also named *diplococcus lanceolatus* or *Pasteuri*. These are commonly found in the pneumonic lung-tissue and exudation, in the lymphatics, in the sputum, and in fluids aspirated from the lung and pleura. Moreover, they have been cultivated in various ways; and it is maintained that the results of experiments by inoculation, inhalation, and injection into the trachea, prove the causal relations of one or both of these organisms to pneumonia. Friedlander's pneumococcus consists of short oval or oblong cells, arranged singly, in pairs, or in short rows. Fraenkel's bacillus is in the form of a short spindle, partially divided into two halves, each of which is lancet-shaped. The double cells may form short chains. The specific causal connection of these organisms with pneumonia is considered by some eminent pathologists and bacteriologists as by no means proved; while they are also regarded by others as merely belonging to the septicæmic bacteria. Moreover, they are said to be common in healthy buccal and nasal secretions; and to be often found in other inflammatory diseases, as pleurisy, peri- or endocarditis, or peritonitis; while it is affirmed that Fraenkel's bacillus is almost constantly present in epidemic cerebro-spinal meningitis. Staphylococci and streptococci are observed in pneumonic lung in some cases.

Experiments with the view of procuring immunity from, or curing pneumonia, by inoculation, have led to the notion that the pneumococcus produces a poisonous albumen (*pneumotoxin*), which sets up general symptoms, followed by the production in the body of a substance (*anti-*

(*pneumotoxin*), which has the power of neutralizing the former, and destroying its effects. At present any statements founded upon such ideas can only be received with particular caution.

Whether the theory which attributes acute pneumonia to the action of one or more micro-organisms be true or not, the fact must be recognized that it occurs under a variety of circumstances, and the cases of this disease may, from an ætiological point of view, be conveniently grouped under the following heads:—1. *Primary pneumonia* is usually attributed to sudden *chilling of the body*, induced by rapid cooling when the body is heated or perspiring; by exposure to cold or wet; or by sitting in a cold draught. 2. *Direct irritation* not infrequently sets up pneumonia, which may be due to the inhalation of very hot or cold air, or of irritating gases; foreign bodies reaching the bronchi, including food (though some regard the pneumonia then as catarrhal); blood, especially apoplectic clots; or morbid formations, for example, tubercle, cancer, diphtheritic or croupous exudation. 3. *Injury to the chest* often excites local inflammation, such as contusion, fracture of the ribs, or a perforating wound. It has been stated that violent exertion is occasionally a cause of pneumonia, but this is very doubtful. 4. *Pneumonia* is frequently *secondary* to various acute affections, especially low fevers and blood-diseases, such as measles, small-pox, typhus, typhoid, septicæmia or pyæmia, diphtheria, acute rheumatism, and puerperal fever. It is also apt to arise in the course of various chronic affections, such as chronic Bright's disease or diabetes. 5. *Epidemic pneumonia* sometimes occurs, and this form has of late years attracted much attention. It may be observed sometimes in particular houses or towns, but is met with more especially in crowded prisons or garrisons. The complaint may assume an epidemic character in connection with influenza or other infective diseases, especially if there is much over-crowding, with deficient ventilation. It is also said to prevail in malarial districts, but some good observers deny this statement. Epidemic pneumonia, as an independent disease, is generally associated with bad hygienic conditions; but it is also believed to be distinctly infectious, as in the epidemic which prevailed in Middlesbrough and its neighbourhood in 1888, the contagion being conveyed by the breath, and also by means of infected sewer and drain emanations (Ballard). This epidemic was also attributed partly to the consumption of diseased bacon, which contained a special *bacillus*. 6. Intense or long-continued *pulmonary congestion*, particularly if associated with more or less collapse, is very liable to terminate in pneumonia, especially that which results from heart-disease, or the hypostatic congestion which affects dependent parts in old and weak individuals who are confined to bed from any cause—*hypostatic pneumonia*.

Predisposing causes.—1. *Age.* Most cases of acute lobar pneumonia occur between 20 and 30 years of age, but no age is exempt, and the young and old are very liable to suffer; it may even occur in infants. 2. *Sex.* More males are attacked, probably from their greater exposure to the exciting causes. 3. *Social position, habits, and occupation.* Poverty, residence in large towns, intemperance, and occupations involving exposure or over-exertion, predispose to pneumonia. 4. *State of health.* Acute pneumonia is very liable to occur in those who are constitutionally feeble, or who suffer from any lowering chronic or acute disease; as well as during convalescence from the latter. Not uncommonly, however, it

attacks persons in the most robust health. 5. *Previous attacks* increase the liability to the complaint. 6. *Climate and season.* Those characterized by coldness, rapid changes in temperature, much moisture, or the prevalence of northerly and easterly winds, greatly predispose to attacks of pneumonia. 7. *Family or individual predisposition* appears to exist in some cases.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute croupous pneumonia is characterized pathologically by hyperæmia and œdema of the lung-tissue; followed by a fibrinous and cellular exudation in the interior of the air-vesicles and minute bronchi, leading to consolidation, which undergoes certain changes. It is necessary to describe the appearances presented at different stages of the disease.

Dr. Stokes described a *preliminary stage*, characterized by brilliant arterial redness of the pulmonary tissue, with abnormal dryness, but no other alterations. Those usually seen, however, are as follows:—

First or Engorgement-stage.—Colour is dark-red, reddish-brown, violet, or livid; not uniform, but mottled. The lung feels heavy; and the affected part is firmer, more resisting, and less elastic than in health, retaining impressions of the finger, and crepitating imperfectly. On section a quantity of reddish or brown bloody serum escapes, which is more or less aërated, and somewhat viscid. The lung-tissue is still perceptible, and pieces of the organ float in water. Consistence is diminished, the tissue being more easily torn.

Second or Exudation-stage.—*Red hepatization.*—Colour is more uniform and dull-reddish. Weight is remarkably increased; and the lung is sometimes evidently enlarged, being marked by the ribs. The affected part feels solid and firm, absolutely inelastic, and non-crepitant. A section presents a dull reddish-brown colour, with some greyish variegation, and is opaque, but the hue becomes brighter after exposure. Very little fluid escapes, often none except on pressure, what is then obtained being thick, dirty, sanguineous, and non-aërated. A characteristic granular appearance is usually visible, especially on tearing the affected tissue, but it is less marked in children, or when the exudation is of soft consistence, as is the case in low fevers, and when the disease attacks old people. All trace of lung-texture has disappeared, and the tissues are very brittle, breaking down easily under pressure. Fragments of the solidified lung sink in water instantly. The microscope reveals coagulated fibrin, with red blood-corpuscles, leucocytes, epithelium, and micro-organisms.

Third stage.—*Grey hepatization.*—In this stage the colour gradually changes, becoming ultimately grey, combined with a greenish or yellowish tint. The granular appearance on section is less distinct or altogether lost, and the lung-tissue becomes more or less soft or pulpy. A quantity of dirty, greyish, in some cases almost puriform fluid escapes, either spontaneously, or on pressure or scraping. This stage presents various grades, from slight softening to what is termed *purulent infiltration*. The air-vesicles are crowded with leucocytes, while the fibrin and red corpuscles disappear. In favourable cases the morbid products are ultimately either absorbed or expectorated, sometimes very rapidly, and the lung-tissue remains unaltered in its structure.

Such being the ordinary course of a case of pneumonia, other pathological terminations are observed in some instances, namely:—1. Formation of one or more abscesses, which ultimately may either open into the bronchi, the pus being discharged, and a cavity being left; or communi-

cate with the pleura; or become encapsuled, the contents undergoing cheesy or calcareous changes, and the spaces being finally completely closed up. 2. Gangrene very rarely. 3. Caseous degeneration and destruction of lung-tissue, though now this termination would be regarded as an indication of tubercular pneumonia. 4. Chronic fibroid induration or cirrhosis rarely. In exceptional instances the lung remains extensively consolidated for a considerable time, but ultimately clears up.

The *right lower lobe* is the most frequent seat of acute pneumonia, but the left is not uncommonly attacked, and the inflammation may spread through an entire lung, or may involve more or less of both organs. Sometimes it begins in the middle of the upper lobe, or at the apex, and *apical pneumonia* is a condition which should always be borne in mind. The disease may also be quite localized in some cases. In old or cachectic subjects the inflammation often extends from above downwards.

The parts of the lungs which are not pneumonic frequently present a congested and edematous appearance; while more or less bronchitis is often present. Pleuritic exudation is commonly observed, and may be considerable; while in some cases there is a variable amount of fluid-effusion, constituting what is properly termed "pleuro-pneumonia." Sometimes the sub-pleural lymphatics corresponding to the seat of pneumonia are distended with inflammatory products, giving a marbled appearance to the surface. The bronchial glands are enlarged, pinkish-grey, and soft. Occasionally the mediastinum is extensively infiltrated with a gelatinous exudation. The chief complications of pneumonia are pericarditis; endocarditis, especially malignant; and acute meningitis. Among those exceptionally met with may be mentioned peritonitis, croupous colitis, peripheral neuritis, and a form of ulceration of the larynx. The spleen is somewhat enlarged. The kidneys and liver present parenchymatous changes in bad cases. The heart-muscle is liable to be changed, the fibres presenting cloudy swelling, while in severe or prolonged cases actual degeneration may take place. The right cavities of the heart and the general venous system tend to be over-loaded, the various organs being congested; and firm fibrinous coagula are liable to form in the heart, especially on the right side, and in the vessels, the blood being exceedingly rich in fibrinogenous elements, exhibiting the "buffy" coat markedly. Venous thrombosis of the leg may occur in pneumonia; and embolism of an artery is a rare event.

Symptoms.—In some cases an attack of pneumonia is preceded for a short time by *premonitory* symptoms, indicating general indisposition. *Primary* pneumonia usually sets in very suddenly or acutely, the invasion being as a rule attended with a single, severe, and more or less prolonged rigor. There may be great prostration, with pyrexia; severe vomiting; or nervous symptoms, namely, headache, delirium, restlessness, stupor, or in children convulsions. The symptoms of the established disease are *local* and *general*.

Local. Pain in one side is usually complained of, occasionally commencing simultaneously with the rigor, or even preceding it, but as a rule only setting in after a variable interval has elapsed. Its seat is generally about the mammary or axillary region, but I have known it to be referred even to below the ribs. Though considerable in degree, it is not very intense in most cases, at all events for any lengthened period, being tolerably easily relieved; it may, however, be agonizing. In character it is commonly stabbing or piercing, being much increased by a deep breath and by cough. Local tenderness is often observed, and sometimes

hyperæsthesia of the skin. Dyspnoea is an early and prominent symptom, as evidenced by the sensations of the patient; by the rapidity of the breathing, which, however, is usually abrupt and shallow; by the working of the nostrils; and by difficulty in speaking. The pulse-respiration ratio is greatly disturbed, the respirations usually ranging from 30 to 60, or occasionally even reaching 80 per minute. The disturbance of breathing may amount to orthopnoea. Cough also commences very soon. It does not come on in violent paroxysms, but is short and hacking, being often of a spasmodic character and difficult to repress, especially when the patient is made to breathe deeply or to sit up, while the act causes much suffering. Expectoration ensues more or less speedily, the sputa usually soon presenting peculiar characters. Typical pneumonic sputa are scarcely at all frothy, but exceedingly viscid and adhesive, so that they are discharged with much difficulty, often having to be wiped from the mouth, and not falling out when the vessel which receives them is overturned. They present a "rusty" colour, or various tints of red, owing to admixture of blood, but as the disease progresses changes of colour are observed, passing through different shades of yellow, until finally the expectoration becomes merely bronchitic in character. The microscope reveals alveolar epithelium; red blood-corpuscles in various stages of degeneration; leucocytes; sometimes minute ramifying coagula, which may be evident to the naked eye as small structureless masses in the sputa; and micro-organisms, especially pneumococci. These are shown by treating some of the expectoration on a slide with glacial acetic acid, and then dropping on aniline oil and gentian violet, pouring this off, and renewing it two or three times. Later on there may be observed pigment-cells or free pigment; abundant granules and oil-globules; free nuclei; or pus-cells. Chemical examination reveals the presence of mucin; albumen; often a little sugar; salts, especially chlorides; and, it is said, occasionally a special acid. The expired air may be cool, and is deficient in carbonic anhydride.

Such being the ordinary local symptoms of acute pneumonia, it must be borne in mind that considerable deviations may be noticed, dependent upon the age and condition of the patient; the portion and extent of lung-tissue affected; the type and course of the pneumonia; or upon the disease being secondary to certain conditions. Pain and other local symptoms are sometimes very slight or entirely absent—*latent pneumonia*; while the sputa may be absent or merely bronchitic, or in low cases sometimes present the appearance of a dark, offensive, thin fluid, resembling liquorice or prune-juice. Occasionally they are tinged with bile. Well-marked haemoptysis may occur at the outset.

General. These may be summed up as high pyrexia, with a dry skin, and great depression or prostration.

The skin in acute pneumonia soon becomes exceedingly hot and dry, having often a burning acrid feel. Sometimes perspiration breaks out, but the patient experiences no relief. The temperature rises with great rapidity to 102° , 103° , 105° , or even higher. The maximum is generally reached on the second or third day, but the temperature may continue to ascend until near the termination of the case. It has been known to rise to 107° in cases which have recovered; and in fatal cases has attained 109.4° . In a large number of instances the temperature does not go beyond 103° or 104° . The daily variations are usually as follows:—The temperature is lowest in early morning, and begins to rise in the fore-

noon or soon after, attaining its maximum early in the evening; it then falls, but in some cases a slight rise is again observed at midnight, after which a gradual fall takes place. The remission ranges from $\frac{5}{6}^{\circ}$ to $2\cdot5^{\circ}$, but is seldom more than $1\cdot8^{\circ}$. Usually it ceases altogether a day or two before the crisis occurs. In rare instances, when pneumonia is associated with intermittent fever, the temperature becomes quite normal in the morning—*intermittent pneumonia*. An extension of inflammation or a relapse will disturb its normal course. There is usually considerable flushing of the cheeks in pneumonia, which may be more marked on the affected side; sometimes a tendency to duskeness or lividity is noticed; or the face may present a yellowish earthy tint. The expression is either painful and anxious, or heavy and stupid. Herpes is frequently observed on the face, especially around the lips, about the second or third day.

The pulse is usually frequent, being as a rule in proportion to the extent of the pneumonia. It ranges generally from 90 to 120, but may be much above this rate. At first strong, full, and incompressible, it subsequently becomes weak, small, and soft, dicrotic, or sometimes intermittent or irregular.

A prominent symptom of pneumonia in most instances is the great and evident prostration and feebleness of the patient. The position assumed is generally dorsal, with the head rather high, but the patient may prefer to lie on the affected side. Any attempt at sitting up in bed is usually very trying, and should be avoided as much as possible.

The digestive organs present to a marked degree the ordinary symptoms associated with pyrexia. The tongue is usually much furred, and tends to become dry; and the lips frequently become cracked. As occasional and usually unfavourable symptoms there may be dysphagia; severe vomiting; jaundice and enlarged liver; or diarrhoea. The ordinary cerebral symptoms are headache, sleeplessness, and restlessness, often combined with slight nocturnal delirium. The urine, in addition to being highly febrile, frequently contains a little albumen, and chlorides are strikingly deficient or entirely absent.

In some cases of acute pneumonia the symptoms assume an adynamic character, indicated by a dry brown tongue, with sordes on the lips and teeth; and low nervous phenomena, such as delirium, stupor, coma, convulsions, twitching and tremors, and disorder of the special senses—*typhoid pneumonia*. This course of events is particularly apt to occur if the patient is old, very weak, intemperate, or mentally depressed by prolonged over-work or worry; if the disease is secondary to certain acute and chronic affections, or is attended with high pyrexia; or if it terminates in suppuration or gangrene, which causes extreme prostration. In drunkards the symptoms at first often resemble those of delirium tremens, followed by collapse. Occasionally they simulate phenomena indicative of mania or cerebral inflammation. Apical pneumonia is said to be more liable to be accompanied with marked cerebral and adynamic symptoms than other forms, but my experience does not corroborate this statement. The formation of pus is usually attended with severe rigors and increase of pyrexia. If it collects in an abscess, it may be suddenly discharged, along with fragments of lung-tissue. Sometimes signs of cyanosis supervene in pneumonia, with distension of the right side of the heart and of the venous system, and the formation of coagula in the pulmonary vessels.

Cases of acute pneumonia vary much in severity, and there is a *laryal* or *abortive* form, in which the initial symptoms occur, but soon subside, while the pulmonary signs are slight. The complications previously mentioned may materially modify the symptoms and course of the disease in particular cases.

Physical signs.—I. *Stokes's stage*.—At this time the only sign is a harshness and roughness of the breath-sounds over the involved portion of the lung, these being usually exaggerated in intensity. I have had several opportunities of verifying that this stage can be recognized.

II. *Engorgement-stage*.—1. *Respiratory movements* are deficient, chiefly on account of pain. 2. *Vocal fremitus* is often somewhat increased. 3. *Percussion-sound* is usually not much altered, but may be abnormally clear, or slightly deficient in resonance. 4. *Respiratory sounds* are harsh and weak, or occasionally somewhat bronchial. 5. The principal physical sign in this stage is the *true crepitant râle*, which is heard over the affected portion of lung. In abortive cases the physical signs do not go further.

III. *Consolidation-stage*.—1. There may be slight *enlargement* of the side, but this sign is of little practical importance. 2. *Respiratory movements* are greatly impaired, especially expansion. 3. *Vocal fremitus* is in excess. 4. *Percussion* as a rule reveals dulness with increased resistance; sometimes the percussion-note is rather hollow, and of tubular or even amphoric quality. In basic pneumonia a tubular or tympanitic note can sometimes be elicited over the front of the upper part of the chest. 5. The *respiratory sounds* afford one of the most important signs of this stage. Frequently they are typically tubular, dry, high-pitched, whiffing or metallic; sometimes merely blowing or bronchial. 6. *Crepitant râles* are often heard at the confines of the inflamed part. 7. *Vocal* or *cry-resonance* is intensified, high-pitched, sniffling, and metallic. It may be almost ægophonic or pectoriloquous; and occasionally whispering pectoriloquy is audible. 8. There is no *displacement of organs*. 9. The *heart-sounds* are frequently intensified over the affected part.

IV. *Resolution-stage*.—The chief additional physical signs of this stage are *redux crepitant râles*; or *bubbling râles*, either large or small, of ringing or metallic character. The other abnormal signs usually disappear, sometimes with great rapidity, in other cases only slowly and gradually; sometimes they remain permanently. The dulness may subside in patches. Occasionally slight retraction of the chest follows an attack of pneumonia.

The signs just described are most commonly observed at one or both bases; but are noticed over the apex or other parts of the lung which happen to be affected in particular instances. Variations are not uncommonly met with, due to the consolidation becoming extreme, the bronchial tubes, as well as the air-vesicles, being completely blocked up, so that vocal fremitus and auscultatory signs may be quite absent; to the inflamed part lying deep in the lung; or to the association of the inflammation with the remains of previous diseases, or with pleuritic or pericardial effusion. *Diffuse suppuration* gives rise to abundant, liquid, bubbling râles. *Abscess* and *gangrene* are followed by the signs of a cavity. The signs of pulmonary congestion or bronchitis are often present in other parts of the lungs, along with those of pneumonia. In the unaffected portions respiration is exaggerated.

Course, Terminations, and Duration.—1. In the majority of cases acute croupous pneumonia runs a very definite course, and ends in complete recovery by *resolution*. After a certain time a marked *crisis* usually takes place, the temperature falling rapidly to or even below the normal, while the pulse and respirations also diminish in frequency, and the other symptoms speedily abate, convalescence being soon established. This happens as a rule from the third to the eleventh day, being most frequent about the end of the first week, but not necessarily on odd days, as some have supposed. The crisis is attended either with profuse perspiration; with an abundant discharge of urine, which deposits lithates, oxalates, and phosphates, or sometimes contains blood; or occasionally with diarrhoea, epistaxis and other haemorrhages, or the development of a skin-eruption. It may be followed by considerable and even fatal collapse. In some cases defervescence takes place by *lysis*, convalescence being protracted. Recovery may gradually ensue even after the termination in gangrene or abscess. A *relapse* occasionally happens, though this is denied by some. 2. Death may occur from asphyxia; from adynamia or collapse; from failure of the heart; or from hyper-pyrexia. This event may take place even after the crisis, owing to cardiac failure. 3. Now and then pneumonia becomes *chronic*, the exudation remaining unabsorbed, and the lung solid; while the symptoms continue, with irregular fever and loss of flesh. Even then the consolidation may ultimately clear up under suitable treatment, but the tendency is for it to break down and destroy the lung-tissue, a form of phthisis being thus set up. Such a termination, however, is now generally supposed to indicate that the inflammation is tubercular.

Diagnosis.—In typical cases the diagnosis of acute croupous pneumonia is perfectly easy. Its mode of onset, local and general symptoms, physical signs, and course, are quite characteristic, and serve not only to distinguish it from other acute affections of the chest, but also from all other febrile or inflammatory diseases. The complaints associated with the respiratory organs from which it has more especially to be diagnosed are pulmonary congestion, severe bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia, pleurisy with effusion, and acute phthisis. Space will not permit of a discussion of the differential diagnosis between croupous pneumonia and these diseases, but an intelligent acquaintance with the clinical history and phenomena which they severally present, will prevent any mistake being made in the ordinary run of cases. It must be remembered, however, that these acute affections of the respiratory organs may be variously combined, or the heart or pericardium may be implicated as well, and these associated conditions can only be made out by careful physical examination. The presence of pleuritic effusion along with pneumonia can in some instances be readily determined; other cases are doubtful, and then it may be desirable cautiously to use the exploring needle. A case which ends as one of acute phthisis may certainly start like an ordinary pneumonia.

With regard to other diseases, acute pneumonia has, under particular circumstances, to be specially distinguished from certain fevers, septic conditions, cerebral inflammations, or acute alcoholism. It may, however, be associated with, or occur as a complication in many of these states, and the combination of pneumonia with delirium tremens is by no means uncommon. Under these and other circumstances, moreover, pneumonia may come on very insidiously, without any definite symptoms,

and its detection can then only be ensured by frequent examination of the chest in any case in which it is at all likely to supervene, or in an acute illness the nature of which is not evident.

Another point relating to the diagnosis of croupous pneumonia which is apt to be forgotten is that the disease is not always basic, and therefore all parts of the chest must be investigated in any suspicious or doubtful case. Non-typical cases are also met with, which may be very difficult to recognize or to understand clearly. The occurrence of untoward events in the course of an acute pneumonia, such as the formation of an abscess in the lung, or pulmonary gangrene, will probably be evidenced by their characteristic phenomena.

Prognosis.—Different observers have given very conflicting statements as to the rate of mortality in acute pneumonia, and no doubt this varies materially under different circumstances, but it must always be looked upon as a serious affection. In the "Collective Investigation Record" the mortality is given as 18 per cent. in 1,065 cases. The chief circumstances which increase the danger are:—Very early or advanced age; the female sex; pregnancy; debility from any cause, or predisposition to tubercular disease; previous intemperance; the presence of chronic pulmonary, cardiac, or renal disease; extensive adhesions of the pleura or pericardium; the disease being secondary to some serious acute or chronic affection; both lungs being involved, or the whole of one, or its central or upper part; the sputa being very abundant and watery, or like prune-juice, or absent along with signs of accumulation of morbid products in the lungs; the termination in diffuse suppuration, abscess, or gangrene; prolonged high fever or hyper-pyrexia; the development of typhoid and low nervous symptoms, or of those indicating marked collapse; signs of cyanosis or asphyxia; the existence of serious complications; and a low epidemic type. It must not be forgotten that in cases of severe pneumonia the patient may die from collapse during the crisis; or from cardiac failure even after the crisis has occurred, and all danger has apparently passed away. Moreover, the consolidation of the lung does not always clear up satisfactorily, and then the ultimate result is very doubtful.

Treatment.—Very many plans have been advocated for the treatment of acute croupous pneumonia, but it is, in my opinion, most objectionable to adhere to any one routine method, and every case ought to be carefully and intelligently studied, and dealt with on its own merits. Indeed, different indications may need to be carried out at the same time. Further, it must be borne in mind that the treatment may require to be altered or modified at any period during the progress of a case, and therefore its course should be closely watched. I can only point out here the chief methods which have been recommended, and the general principles which should guide us in dealing with this serious complaint.

1. *General management.*—The precautions required in the management of all acute pulmonary diseases must be strictly observed in the case of pneumonia, while it is at the same time of particular importance to attend to the due ventilation of the sick-room, and to see that all hygienic and sanitary arrangements are satisfactory, not only in the apartment itself, but also in and around the house. Constant and efficient nursing is of the utmost necessity in many cases. Patients must not be disturbed more than is absolutely required, and special care should be taken to avoid unnecessary exposure and fatigue when carrying out physical examination of the chest; this must not be done too frequently; and often it has to be

performed while the patient lies on his side, as it is injurious or unsafe to allow him to sit up. Attention to *diet* is always of considerable moment in acute pneumonia. In all cases a good quantity of beef-tea, milk, eggs beaten up, or other forms of suitable nourishment, should be administered at regular intervals, and abundant support is often needed. Cooling drinks are useful; or some saline drink may be freely allowed. The sucking of ice is also often very grateful to the patient.

2. *Expectant treatment.*—According to this plan the patient is merely kept in bed, protected against injurious influences, and properly fed and nursed, while symptoms are relieved, the cure of the disease being left to nature. Unquestionably this method may be carried out successfully in many instances, but to apply it to all cases of pneumonia indiscriminately is most injudicious.

3. *Antiphlogistic treatment.*—Here the intention is to subdue or check the inflammatory process at an early period, and thus to arrest the progress of the disease. The chief agents employed for this purpose are venesection, or local removal of blood; tartarated antimony; calomel and opium; and tincture of aconite or veratrum viride. It has been satisfactorily proved that venesection is rarely required in the treatment of pneumonia, cases in which this measure might be indicated doing just as well without it, and in a great many instances it would be most injurious. The removal of blood may relieve dyspnoea and diminish fever, but only temporarily. Moderate bleeding is occasionally demanded, in order to avert death from apnoea. Local bleeding cannot arrest or subdue the inflammatory process, but it is undoubtedly useful sometimes for the purpose of mitigating symptoms or relieving the pulmonary circulation. Tartarated antimony is decidedly a serviceable drug in some cases of primary pneumonia, when the patient is strong and plethoric, and lives in the country. It should not be given in large doses, from gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ every four hours being quite sufficient for an adult, and it may be combined with compound tincture of camphor and hydrocyanic acid. Of the use in this disease of the other drugs mentioned I have no personal experience, and would never employ them.

4. Many practitioners habitually adopt the *stimulant* treatment of pneumonia, giving large quantities of alcohol, in the form of wine or brandy, along with carbonate of ammonium or aromatic spirit of ammonia, sulphuric ether, camphor, and similar remedies. The routine employment of these agents is to be equally deprecated with those of the opposite class, for they are often unnecessary, and may do serious harm. In many instances, however, alcoholic stimulants are most valuable, the quantity to be given depending upon the nature of the case, and their usefulness or the reverse being judged of by the effects produced. It is a good rule to try them carefully in doubtful cases. The main indications for these agents are the occurrence of delirium, if not associated with vascular excitement; signs of cardiac failure, with a very rapid, weak, or dicrotic pulse; any indications of adynamia or collapse, with low nervous symptoms; the patient being old or feeble; and the pneumonia being secondary to various acute or chronic complaints. In all low forms of the disease the main chance of recovery lies in free stimulation, eight to twenty ounces or more of brandy being often required in the twenty-four hours, and if this quantity is needed there ought to be no hesitation about giving it. At the same time full doses of carbonate of ammonium with tincture of cinchona, spirit of chloroform, ether, camphor, strong

coffee, or other remedies of this class must be administered. In some cases quinine and tincture of perchloride of iron are most useful. In very adynamic conditions oil of turpentine has been recommended, which may be introduced by enema; subcutaneous injection of ether may also be of service in such conditions. Phosphorus has also been specially advocated in low forms of pneumonia. In most instances it is advisable to give a little wine or brandy during and after the crisis, as there is often much exhaustion at this time.

5. *Antipyretic treatment.*—The employment of antipyretic measures has been much advocated of late years in the treatment of pneumonia. Some recommend the application of cold to the surface in various ways. The more usual plan is to administer antipyretic drugs, such as quinine in large doses, salicin or salicylates, phenazone, acetanilid, or phenacetin. When there is any tendency to hyper-pyrexia undoubtedly agents of this class are of great service in cases of pneumonia, especially the employment of cold. It may be mentioned that the drugs belonging to this group are also supposed to act as *antiseptics*, and other remedies of this nature are well spoken of in some forms of pneumonia.

6. *Local treatment.*—The application of cold to the chest has been specially advocated in the treatment of pneumonia, either by means of cold compresses frequently changed, or of ice-bags covered with muslin. Dr. Lees has obtained good results from the local application of ice, which he strongly advocates. Hot fomentations or poultices, either alone or with anodynes; turpentine fomentations; or sinapisms are useful for the relief of pain. Cotton-wool is often an application of much value. Dry-cupping may be serviceable in some cases. Blisters are only needed in the advanced stage of pneumonia as a rule, and not even then if absorption is going on satisfactorily. Friction with some liniment is beneficial in certain cases, to aid absorption.

7. *Symptomatic treatment.*—Particular symptoms often need attention in cases of pneumouia. In the early stage opium, especially in the form of Dover's powder, or morphine subcutaneously, may be required to relieve pain, if it cannot be subdued by simple measures; hypodermic injection of morphine has also been recommended to counteract the initial shock. These agents, or sulphonal, hydrate of chloral, bromides, or other *hypnotics* may be called for to produce sleep and relieve mental excitement, but they must be employed with particular caution, and their effects carefully watched. Distressing cough may need to be relieved; or, on the other hand, expectoration aided by means of alkalies, carbonate or chloride of ammonium, tincture of squill, preparations of senega, or other remedies of this class, especially during the later stages. The inhalation of oxygen gas has been found highly useful in cases of acute pneumonia where respiration is gravely disturbed. The action of the heart must be constantly watched, some *cardiac tonic*, especially digitalis or strychnine, in addition to stimulants, being administered if there are signs of failure. Constipation is a symptom often calling for treatment by salines, castor oil, calomel, or other *purgatives* suitable to different cases; or enemata may be required. Any untoward termination, as well as complications or sequelæ, must be treated on ordinary principles.

8. Much care is necessary during *convalescence* after pneumonia, and the patient should be kept under observation until thoroughly restored to health. Especially is it necessary to guard against any sudden exertion for some time after a severe attack of this disease. *Tonics* are

serviceable at this stage, with good diet; and cod-liver oil proves beneficial in some cases. If pneumonic consolidation does not become properly absorbed, the internal administration of iodide of potassium; counter-irritation over the chest by blisters or iodine applications, or systematic friction with liniments; and the use of some stimulating or antiseptic inhalation, with deep respiration, are the chief measures indicated. Change of air is often needed before convalescence is established.

II. CATARRHAL PNEUMONIA—DISSEMINATED OR LOBULAR PNEUMONIA—BRONCHO-PNEUMONIA.

Aetiology.—*Acute catarrhal pneumonia* occurs in the great majority of cases in the course of bronchitis, being either the result of direct extension of inflammation along the minute bronchi to the air-vesicles; or more commonly being set up in collapsed lobules. The disease is by far most prevalent amongst children, being more especially observed in connection with whooping-cough, measles, scarlet fever, diphtheria, and influenza, but it may be quite independent of these affections. This variety of pneumonia may also supervene in typhoid fever, small-pox, or erysipelas. The complaint is predisposed to by debilitating causes of all kinds; by rickets or chronic diarrhoea in children; by habitually breathing impure air; and by a long-continued recumbent posture. There is reason to believe that the pneumonia occurring in the aged and feeble, and in those dying from various acute or chronic diseases, is not infrequently of a catarrhal nature; and it is said to be the variety which results from the aspiration of food or drink into the air-passages in certain conditions. Catarrhal pneumonia, both as an acute and a chronic disease, is certainly concerned in the phthisical process in many cases, but this form is now generally believed to be directly due to the tubercle bacillus. The disease may also be set up in connection with dilated bronchi.

Pathology and Anatomical Characters.—There is no fibrinous exudation in catarrhal pneumonia, but merely an accumulation of epithelial elements in the alveoli, with a variable number of leucocytes, which become so abundant as to fill and distend these spaces. There is also an interstitial inflammation of the small bronchi and alveolar walls, which present numerous leucocytes and enlarged capillaries. In favourable cases the cells undergo changes which enable them to be absorbed or expectorated. Sometimes abscesses are formed; or caseous degeneration ensues, ultimately leading to destruction of the lung-tissue. Chronic interstitial pneumonia may also be set up. When catarrhal pneumonia follows lobular collapse, the morbid appearances are at first usually confined to isolated lobules, but by their coalescence large tracts of the pulmonary tissue may become involved, especially at the bases and along the posterior borders of the lungs. Generally the pneumonic condition is mixed up with bronchitis; pulmonary congestion and oedema; or collapsed lobules. The inflamed lobules are disseminated irregularly through both lungs, being most abundant towards the bases, along the lower free border, and at the surface. They vary in size considerably, and when superficial have a pyramidal or wedge-like form, with the base directed outwards, projecting somewhat beyond the

surface. They feel like firm solid knots, but are in reality friable, breaking down readily under pressure. A section presents a more or less greyish-yellow colour, gradually fading into surrounding congestion, and it has also generally a granular aspect. A whitish, opaque, non-frothy fluid can be scraped or pressed from the surface, containing abundant cells. Within the affected lobules there are often small dilated bronchi, containing a purulent fluid. The inflamed parts sink instantly in water. The appearances just described are those met with when the inflammatory process is well-established, but gradual transitions are observed from merely collapsed lobules.

When the inflammation is independent of collapse, very numerous, small, ill-defined, whitish-yellow spots are seen scattered through congested and oedematous lung-tissue, only slightly granular, and yielding an opaque milky fluid on pressure. In some parts small spaces are observed, containing a pus-like matter, but many observers are of opinion that this has either gravitated into the minute bronchi or air-vesicles, or has been drawn in during inspiration. In certain cases catarrhal pneumonia may lead to extensive consolidation of the lung, resembling that of croupous pneumonia.

Symptoms and Physical Signs.—Usually occurring in the course of some other complaint, especially bronchitis, the symptoms of acute catarrhal pneumonia may set in very speedily, as in measles; or gradually, as in whooping-cough. Generally they are merely modifications of preceding clinical phenomena. Very rarely is the onset indicated by any rigors or other marked premonitory symptoms. Pyrexia is a most important sign, the temperature rising often to 102° , 103° , 104° , or even 105° ; the remissions, however, are considerable, and irregular as to time; while fresh exacerbations are liable to occur after the temperature has become normal. The skin often perspires freely, and is not pungent or burning to the touch. The pulse increases in frequency, but soon tends to become feeble or irregular. The *local* symptoms, when the complaint follows bronchitis, are increased dyspnoea, the respirations being exceedingly frequent; a change in the characters of the cough, which often becomes short, harsh, hacking, and painful, the child endeavouring to repress the act, and presenting an expression of pain, or crying on account of the suffering produced by the act; and diminished expectoration, the sputa being scarcely ever "rusty." *Physical signs* are in many cases exceedingly uncertain and ill-defined. In the parts corresponding to the consolidated portions of lung there may be increased vocal fremitus; deficient resonance; bronchial breathing; small scattered, crepitant or crackling, or sometimes ringing râles; and bronchophony or bronchial cough. Should a considerable mass of lung become consolidated, the signs would be more pronounced, resembling more or less those of lobar pneumonia.

The *course* of catarrhal pneumonia may be extremely acute and rapid; or sub-acute. In the former class of cases there is generally great restlessness and anxiety; or the patient may soon fall into a stupid and apathetic state. Signs of cyanosis are common. Loss of strength and wasting are prominent symptoms, the latter being especially marked in the less rapid cases. The subsidence of the disease in cases of recovery is usually very gradual and protracted, there being no crisis, but an irregular defervescence by lysis. As already mentioned, catarrhal pneumonia may lead to permanent destructive changes in the lungs,

but tubercle is then usually believed to be the immediate cause of the morbid changes.

Diagnosis.—The description just given will indicate in what respects catarrhal pneumonia differs from ordinary croupous pneumonia, and from simple bronchitis, the complaints with which it is most likely to be confounded. It is most important to be always on the look-out for this condition in severe cases of bronchitis, especially in children. The temperature is of great help in diagnosis, and may serve to distinguish lobular pneumonia from mere collapse in doubtful cases. When the lung is extensively consolidated, it may be impossible to draw any definite line of demarcation between croupous and catarrhal pneumonia. Some cases of acute phthisis apparently begin as a broncho-pneumonia.

Prognosis.—Catarrhal pneumonia is often a serious and fatal disease, especially in children. Its association with tuberculosis, and termination in phthisis, must also be borne in mind in relation to prognosis.

Treatment.—All lowering measures are decidedly to be avoided in cases of catarrhal pneumonia. Ipecacuanha wine is useful, with *salines*, when it is associated with bronchitis; carbonate of ammonium, or aromatic spirit of ammonia, with senega or tincture of cinchona and ether, may be given when stimulating remedies are indicated. Abundant nourishment is required, with alcoholic stimulants in many cases. *Emetics* are sometimes serviceable, to aid in unloading the lungs. The continued application of cold compresses or ice to the chest has been strongly recommended in acute catarrhal pneumonia. Sinapisms are often of much benefit; as well as friction over the chest with stimulant liniments. Great care is required during convalescence; *tonics*, cod-liver oil, good diet, with wine, are indicated at this time. Change of air or a sea-voyage is often of great service.

CHAPTER XII.

CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL PNEUMONIA.—CIRRHOSIS OF THE LUNG.—FIBROID PHthisis.—FIBROID DEGENERATION.—INDURATION WITH DILATED BRONCHI.

Etiology and Pathology.—The acute forms of pneumonia described in the previous chapter may become more or less chronic, but the condition now under consideration is essentially of this character. The affected portion of the lung becomes greatly contracted and indurated, as well as much pigmented, the air-vesicles being more or less obliterated, and the bronchial tubes usually dilated. These changes are generally regarded as being partly due to proliferation of the normal interlobular and sub-pleural connective-tissue, and partly to the formation of a nuclear growth, which develops into extensive tracts of fibroid tissue; but some pathologists look upon them as the result of a chronic inflammatory process, or of a fibroid change affecting the walls of the alveoli themselves.

There can be no doubt but that in the great majority of cases interstitial pneumonia is *secondary* to some previous pulmonary affection, being set up in consequence of long-continued irritation. The conditions

of which it may thus be a sequel are:—1. Acute croupous pneumonia very rarely. 2. Catarrhal pneumonia frequently. 3. Dilatation of the bronchi, though the late Dr. Wilson Fox was of opinion that the fibroid change is then preceded by catarrhal pneumonia. 4. Collapse or compression of the lung from any cause. 5. Pleurisy, either after effusion, or in connection with a form of dry pleurisy. 6. Bronchial irritation from inhalation of mineral and other particles, such as steel, coal or stone dust, or cotton. 7. Various pulmonary lesions, such as phthisis; cancer; syphilitic disease; infarction or abscess; or injury to the lung. In these conditions the morbid process is usually localized, and may really be of a curative or limiting nature.

Some pathologists, however, consider that interstitial pneumonia is in some instances essentially *primary*, being, as some suppose, the result of a chronic inflammation of the interstitial tissue; or, as others believe, a direct fibroid change, degeneration, or substitution in the walls of the alveoli, quite independent of inflammation, which process tends to spread through the lung. No cases bearing out this view have ever come under my own notice. It has also been maintained that fibroid phthisis is always the result of tubercular disease.

As regards the relation of dilated bronchi to chronic interstitial pneumonia, doubtless in many cases the dilatation is secondary to the induration, but probably the former is sometimes the original morbid condition, and gives rise to the fibroid change.

Anatomical Characters.—In the early stage of interstitial pneumonia the pulmonary tissue is congested, but it afterwards becomes paler, and may exhibit extensive tracts of a homogeneous-looking, nucleated material. When the process is advanced the appearances are very characteristic. The lung is contracted and shrunken; while its tissue is hard and dense, cannot be torn, and creaks on being cut. A section is smooth, dry, and pigmented, often presenting a marbled grey aspect; and fibrous bands or masses may be seen traversing the surface, some of the former being probably obliterated and thickened bronchi or blood-vessels. The vesicular tissue is destroyed, but many of the bronchi are usually dilated.

The extent of lung-structure involved varies considerably. The change may be limited at first to the bronchi and the tissue immediately surrounding them; or it may only be visible around morbid deposits or cavities. A peculiar feature of interest is that the condition is usually limited to one lung, which it may affect throughout, or be confined to its base, apex, or middle portion.

The pleura is generally thickened, sometimes extremely so, and its surfaces are adherent. The lobes of the lung are also often united by dense fibrous tissue. Compensatory emphysema is common in unaffected parts of the lungs; and other morbid conditions are frequently seen, of which the chronic pneumonia is a sequel.

Symptoms.—Interstitial pneumonia runs a very chronic course, and its symptoms at first are indefinite, but when fully-established the disease is indicated by well-marked clinical characters. The *local* symptoms include dragging pains about the sides; shortness of breath; and cough, which is often irritable, but at the same time difficult and ineffectual, or it comes on in fits, and may be accompanied with sputum characteristic of dilated bronchi, but in many cases there is little or no expectoration. The complaint is often attended with *general* symptoms, namely, very gradual loss of flesh and strength, anaemia, and sometimes night-sweats;

but pyrexia is absent as a rule, or is but slight. After a time signs of obstructed circulation in connection with the right side of the heart and venous system may supervene.

Physical Signs.—These indicate dense induration and contraction of the lung-tissue; which may be combined with signs of cavities due to enlarged bronchi, or with other conditions. 1. The chest is more or less retracted on the affected side, often to an extreme degree. 2. Movement is markedly deficient or absent. 3. *Vocal fremitus* may be increased, but is usually diminished. 4. *Percussion* gives a hard, wooden, high-pitched sound; with marked sense of resistance. Occasionally the sound is tubular in some parts. 5. *Respiration-sounds* differ in different parts, being weak or absent, bronchial, tubular, or occasionally cavernous, owing to the presence of dilated bronchi or cavities. After a cough the breath-sounds are frequently heard where previously absent. 6. Various *râles* may be audible in dilated bronchi or cavities. 7. *Vocal resonance* is variable, being deficient, bronchophonic, or occasionally pectoriloquous. 8. The heart is often displaced towards the affected side; the opposite lung is enlarged and encroaches in this direction; and the diaphragm, liver, or stomach may be drawn up.

Treatment.—The management of chronic interstitial pneumonia is really that of a chronic form of phthisis. Nourishing diet is necessary, with tonics, iron, and cod-liver oil. Counter-irritation is often useful, especially by means of tincture of iodine. Iodide of potassium has been recommended internally, for the purpose of promoting absorption, but it is of very questionable value. Cough must be alleviated, and expectoration improved, by means of the usual remedies. The patient must be warned against unnecessary exertion if the disease is extensive, as this is sure to bring on shortness of breath.

CHAPTER XIII.

GANGRENE OF THE LUNG.

Etiology.—Gangrene of the pulmonary tissues is immediately due to the action of putrefactive micro-organisms, but it may arise under the following circumstances:—1. As the result of *local causes*, such as acute or chronic pneumonia, phthisis, cancer, hydatids, bronchial dilatation, aneurism, foreign bodies or particles of food in the bronchi, or septic materials inhaled from the mouth, throat, or larynx. 2. From *obstruction* of one or more of the pulmonary vessels by an embolus, especially if derived from a septic focus. 3. In connection with *blood-poisoning*, as in low fevers, pyæmia or septicæmia, glanders, or poisoning by venomous animals. 4. As a consequence of *extreme exhaustion*, arising from want of food and bad hygienic conditions, or from disease. 5. In certain *nervous diseases*, pulmonary gangrene being observed occasionally in cases of dementia, alcoholism, and epilepsy. Here the lesion is probably due generally to the entrance into the bronchi of particles of food. Gangrene of the lung is most likely to occur in those who are old, intemperate, or diabetic.

Anatomical Characters.—Pulmonary gangrene is either *circumscribed* or *diffuse*. In the *circumscribed* variety, which is the usual form, the

part involved is distinctly defined, but its extent varies much. The size generally ranges from that of a hazel-nut to a walnut, but a considerable portion of a lobe may become gangrenous. The lower lobes, and the superficial parts of the lungs, are most liable to be affected. The gangrenous portion soon becomes moist, soft or pulpy, bluish-green, and extremely foetid; or it may have a greenish-black core, with broken-down lung-tissue around, a stinking, irritating liquid escaping on pressure. The products may be discharged through a bronchus, leaving a ragged sloughy cavity, often with inflamed tissue around. Vessels frequently traverse this space, but as the blood contained in them is coagulated, haemorrhage does not take place as a rule. Rarely it communicates with the pleural cavity, or even opens into the sub-cutaneous cellular tissue, in consequence of adhesions having formed between the contiguous surfaces of the pleura. Subsequently in very exceptional cases a fibrous capsule is developed, the sphacelated portion is expelled, and a cavity secreting healthy pus remains, which may ultimately close up and cicatrize.

The *diffuse* form of pulmonary gangrene does not present any line of demarcation, but runs into, or is mixed up with congested, inflamed, or oedematous lung-tissue. A whole lobe or even the greater part of a lung may be implicated, being more or less softened, sometimes in a state of pulpiness; of a greenish or brownish-black or black colour; more or less saturated with a dirty greyish-black liquid; and, in short, in the condition of a moist, stinking, putrid slough.

Symptoms.—The only symptoms which are characteristic of gangrene of the lung are an extremely foetid and peculiar smell of the breath, especially after a cough; with the expectoration of gangrenous matters, emitting a similar foul odour, and in which fragments of lung-tissues can be detected. The former may precede the latter symptom for some days, and it is sometimes only observed at intervals. It must be remembered, however, that the breath may be very offensive in some cases of chronic bronchitis, and in connection with dilated bronchi or certain cavities. On the other hand, if the gangrenous part does not communicate with a bronchus there may be no bad smell. The sputa subsequently become foul and frothy; partly liquid, partly muco-purulent; often dirty-looking, and brownish or blackish in colour; while they contain gangrenous particles, occasionally fat crystals, bacteria, lepto-thrix, and elastic fibres. More or less blood is often present, and death may result from profuse haemorrhage. On standing the sputa separate into layers, and a thick sediment falls. The general symptoms in most cases are those of extreme depression, adynamia, and collapse, accompanied with low nervous phenomena, ending in speedy death. If the gangrenous materials are swallowed, severe diarrhoea, with tympanites, is liable to set in. Emboli may be carried from the lung, which originate septic lesions elsewhere. Occasionally death takes place slowly, preceded by the signs of hectic fever; or very rarely recovery ensues.

Physical Signs.—Gangrene is often preceded by the signs of pneumonic consolidation. If not, there is at first merely indistinct breathing, with moist rales; followed, if the gangrene is circumscribed, by more or less marked signs of a cavity, containing thin fluid. Extensive bronchitis or pleurisy is often set up, with corresponding signs.

Diagnosis.—This is founded upon the smell of the expired air, and the characters of the expectoration, taken along with the circumstances

under which pulmonary gangrene arises. The signs of the development of a cavity under observation aid the diagnosis. The condition has more especially to be distinguished from bronchiectasis. This, however, is a chronic affection, with peculiar characters; and the expectoration contains plugs, which are not seen in gangrenous sputum.

Prognosis is necessarily exceeding grave in cases of pulmonary gangrene, the termination being generally fatal.

Treatment.—The measures to be adopted are to administer abundant nourishment, as well as large quantities of alcoholic stimulants, with ammonia, bark, ether, camphor, mineral acids, or quinine; to use frequent inhalations of creasote, carbolic acid, turpentine, or similar agents; to encourage expectoration in every possible way; and to make the patient gargle freely with some *antiseptic*, especially Condy's fluid, and drink a solution of chlorate of potassium. Various *antiseptics* have been recommended internally, such as carbolic acid or sulpho-carbolates, sulphites, hypochlorites, yeast, or garlic. Should the disease become chronic, as well as during convalescence in those cases in which recovery ensues, *tonics* are needed, with cod-liver oil, change of air, nutritious diet and other measures for improving the general health.

CHAPTER XIV.

EMPHYSEMA OF THE LUNGS.

Two primary forms of pulmonary emphysema are recognized, named respectively **VESICULAR** and **INTERLOBULAR**. *Vesicular* emphysema is characterized by enlargement of air-vesicles, resulting either from their excessive distension, from destruction of the septa, or from both causes combined. *Interlobular* emphysema signifies the presence of air in the sub-pleural and interlobular cellular tissue, which is usually the consequence of rupture of air-vesicles.

I. VESICULAR EMPHYSEMA.

Etiology and Pathology.—Within the compass of vesicular emphysema, as just defined, cases are comprised which differ considerably in their nature, clinical aspects, and importance. They may, however, be conveniently arranged under four groups, though these are frequently more or less associated, namely:—1. *Acute emphysema*, either general or local. 2. *Chronic hypertrophic* or “*large-lunged*” (Jenner). 3. *Chronic limited* or “*lobular*.” 4. *Atrophic* or “*small-lunged*” (Jenner). It will be convenient first to consider their *ætiology* as a whole, and then to indicate the special causation of the several forms.

(A.) *Immediate, direct, or determining causes.*—1. *Inspiratory theory.* According to this view emphysema is the result of excessive or long-continued distension of the air-vesicles during inspiration. Thus it is supposed that general emphysema may arise as a consequence of diminished expiratory force, such as that which accompanies the loss of elasticity in the lungs and chest-walls in old age, the inspiratory force

remaining unimpaired. Hence the lungs are kept constantly distended, the more so in proportion to the vigour with which inspiration is performed. Again, when portions of the lungs are from any cause, such as pleuritic adhesions, collapse, or consolidation, rendered partially or entirely incapable of expansion, the air which ought to enter these unused portions during inspiration passes into other parts, and stretches their vesicles unduly. This is named *vicarious* emphysema. The late Dr. C. J. B. Williams believed that in this way emphysema is originated in bronchitis, the secretions formed or the thickened mucous membrane obstructing some of the bronchi, and preventing the air from entering the corresponding vesicles, whilst those which are adjacent, and have free tubes communicating with them, receive an excessive amount of air. On the other hand, Laennec held the view that the vesicles terminating the obstructed bronchi become themselves dilated, in consequence of air entering during inspiration which cannot be forced out during expiration; emphysema thus produced was termed *substantive*. It has been argued against this theory that expiration is a more powerful act than inspiration; to which it is replied that a forced expiratory effort has very little influence in emptying the air-vesicles, especially if the smaller tubes are obstructed.

2. *Expiratory theory.* Sir William Jenner strongly advocates the theory that emphysema is commonly the result of violent expiratory efforts with partial closure of the glottis, such as are associated with coughing, lifting heavy weights, playing wind-instruments, and various other actions. There are certain parts of the lungs which are much less supported and compressed by the chest-walls and surrounding structures than others, and hence they yield under the pressure of air from within, and become distended. This applies especially to the apices, the anterior margins, and the edges of the bases of these organs, particularly the left. The tendency to the development of emphysema in this way is greater in proportion to the degree in which the lung is inflated; to the obstruction against the escape of air through the air-passages; to the force which is exercised in its attempted expulsion; and to the want of compression and support of the lung-tissue.

Niemeyer laid much stress on the direction of the expiratory force in originating emphysema. He wrote, "in all these acts (*i.e.*, coughing, straining, etc.) contraction of the chest is effected by vigorous upheaval of the diaphragm. The result is the expulsion of a strong current of air from the lower bronchi, the direction of which is obliquely upward, and if the air be prevented from escaping through the larynx, a portion of it, in a compressed state, must be driven into the upper bronchi, whose direction is obliquely downward. By the centrifugal pressure exerted, by the air thus compressed, upon the vesicles of the upper lobes of the lung, and upon the adjacent thoracic wall, the latter become distended as far as it is possible for them to yield."

3. Another view commonly held is that emphysema depends essentially upon a *primary nutritive change in the walls of the air-vesicles*. Villemin describes a "hypertrophy of the elements of the vesicular membrane, causing an extension of this, and an increase in the capacity of the vesicles." Cohnheim thought that there is probably a defect in development of the elastic tissue-fibres, giving rise to a congenital pulmonary weakness. In cases of confirmed emphysema nutritive changes in the pulmonary structures are constantly seen; and should the air-vesicles be impaired in their resisting power, they are far more

liable to become distended by any force acting upon them from within. Hence in old persons one attack of bronchitis will often set up a considerable amount of emphysema; and when chronic bronchitis or pulmonary congestion has existed for a length of time, the resulting alterations in structure render the vesicles much more liable to become distended. Atrophous emphysema is the consequence of a *primary degeneration*, the partitions wasting and disappearing, several vesicles being thus thrown into one. In other forms of the complaint, however, degenerative changes must probably be rather looked upon as *predisposing* or "*permanence securing*" causes of emphysema, as Sir William Jenner terms them, than as actual determining causes. These morbid changes will be further considered under the ANATOMICAL CHARACTERS.

4. The late Dr. Brown-Sequard, on the foundation of certain experiments, concluded that *nervous disturbances* in the pneumogastric play a part in the production of emphysema, along with the mechanical forces of forced inspiration and expiration. Dr. Auld, of Glasgow, as the result of his investigations, which will be presently alluded to, seems inclined to think that there may be a primary tropho-neurosis in cases of idiopathic or substantive emphysema, due to the action of a poison on the nerve-endings in the lungs, or to more obscure causes.

5. Freund's theory is that in some cases there is a *primary chronic enlargement of the chest*, in consequence of *hypertrophy and rigidity of the cartilages*, and that the lungs become distended and emphysematous in order to fill up the increased space.

No exclusive theory as to the mode of production of emphysema can be applicable to all cases; and in many instances undoubtedly more than one of the causes just considered have contributed to the development of the morbid changes.

(B). *Exciting causes*.—1. Emphysema is liable to arise in connection with several respiratory affections, namely, bronchitis, especially chronic dry catarrh; consolidation, collapse, or destruction of portions of the lung from any cause; or extensive pleuritic adhesion or effusion. 2. Whooping-cough is a common cause in children. 3. Croup and other affections which obstruct the main wind-pipe, and excite much cough at the same time, are often followed by emphysema. 4. Cardiac diseases which lead to chronic pulmonary congestion materially aid in its production, by inducing degenerative changes in the walls of the air-vesicles. 5. Emphysema may be directly originated by playing wind-instruments, excessive athletic exercises, lifting heavy weights, straining at stool, climbing hills, and other forms of exertion.

(C). *Predisposing causes*.—Hereditary influence is regarded by some authorities as strongly predisposing to emphysema, especially in those cases in which it comes on during early life, but this is by no means certain. The complaint is by far most frequent in persons advanced in years. Children, however, often suffer, in consequence of their liability to pulmonary affections, and the weakness of their chest-walls, apart from any hereditary tendency; and emphysema is not uncommonly well-marked in young persons. Gouty and obese subjects are decidedly predisposed to emphysema.

(D). *Special aetiology*.—The causation of the several forms of emphysema demands brief consideration. What is termed *acute general emphysema*, which is common in connection with extensive bronchitis, is due to an inability to expel the air out of the lungs, in consequence of obstruction of the bronchi, and it therefore accumulates in the small air-tubes and

air-vesicles, and inflates the lungs. This condition may be conveniently named *insufflation* or *inspiratory expansion*, for there is no actual disease, but merely an inflation of the lungs, which will subside if the obstruction is speedily removed, but if this does not happen permanent emphysema is liable to become established.

The main difficulty lies in determining the mode of production of chronic *hypertrophic emphysema* following chronic bronchial catarrh. It is regarded by many as being *inspiratory* in its origin, but Sir William Jenner considers it to be the result of forcible *expiration*, and explains its general distribution by the fact that as the lungs and chest enlarge, the relative position of the former to the ribs and intercostal spaces becomes constantly changed, so that successive portions of the lung are brought into correspondence with the spaces, and these being less supported than the parts opposite the ribs, they are unduly distended during cough, and thus the lungs ultimately become more or less emphysematous throughout, though the condition is at the same time most marked at the apices and margins, which are least supported of all.

Localized emphysema, whether acute or chronic, is probably as a rule developed during *expiration*. In some instances it is *inspiratory* in its origin, being either *substantive* or *vicarious*.

Ordinary *atrophic emphysema* is merely due to wasting of the septa, which become more or less obliterated, so that the vesicles coalesce in various degrees; in short, it consists in an atrophy of the lung-tissues, usually observed in old age, along with other atrophic and degenerative changes.

Anatomical Characters.—In *acute general emphysema* the lungs are distended throughout; and do not collapse, or may even bulge forwards when the chest is opened. The degree of expansion varies much. The organs appear pale, the capillaries being stretched, and their net-work enlarged. The bronchi will be found to be more or less obstructed.

Chronic hypertrophic emphysema is also attended with enlargement of the lungs, and on opening the thorax these organs are seen to extend beyond their ordinary limits, often covering the pericardium completely, and they may protrude, or collapse only very imperfectly, the degree of distension depending upon the extent of the disease. Though the morbid condition is more or less general, the apices, the anterior borders, and other parts of the lungs which are least supported, present the most marked evidences of the change, and the surface is usually more affected than the deeper parts. The emphysematous portions have a peculiar soft feel, compared to that of a "cushion of down," and they retain the impression of the finger, elasticity being impaired. The so-called crepitant sensation of healthy lung is deficient or absent; and on cutting, a dull creaking sound is often heard. The affected tissue is pale, bloodless, and dry, but presents irregular spots of black pigment, supposed to be derived from altered blood contained in obliterated capillaries. The vesicles are seen to be enlarged more or less, varying usually from a hemp-seed to a pea in size, but often many of them are thrown into one, thus giving rise to irregular spaces of considerable dimensions, which are traversed by slender bands, the septa being either visible as slight ridges, or having disappeared entirely. Contiguous lobules may freely communicate, and ultimately nothing may be left but a coarse network. These appearances are best observed after inflating the lung, drying it, and then making a section.

The nature of the changes which the alveolar walls undergo in emphysema has been much discussed, but there is no reason whatever to suppose that these should be identical in all cases. The violence of the pressure of the air which originates the emphysematous condition may rupture the septa and walls of the air-vesicles directly, but usually their destruction is gradual. They become stretched and atrophied; present perforations varying in size and number; and ultimately only traces of them are seen, or they may disappear altogether. The structural alterations which have been described are the formation of an imperfect fibrous tissue, inducing toughness and thickening, as the result of long-continued congestion (Jeuner); or fatty degeneration (Rainey). Dr. Waters, of Liverpool, considers that there is a primary mal-nutrition of the pulmonary tissue leading to its degeneration, but its exact nature he has been unable to ascertain. The elastic and other elementary tissues finally disappear. The capillaries in the affected part become stretched, narrowed, or obliterated; or some of them may even rupture. Ultimately they are absorbed, and only pigment is left, the remains of the colouring matter of the blood.

Dr. Auld has more recently investigated the morbid anatomy of emphysema, and has arrived at the following results:—In recent cases of partial emphysema he found that the earliest anatomical change consists in enlargement and division of the nuclei in the walls of the air-cells, which he supposes to be reactive in character, and of a compensatory nature, induced by the heightened tension of air. In lobar emphysema, however, he believes that the earliest changes are of a degenerative character, and these speedily follow the formative activity of the mural corpuscles in the other case. The protoplasm becomes highly granular, and all but disappears, and the delicate connective tissue likewise becomes granular and riddled with holes, which enlarge and coalesce. The capillaries only begin to disappear when these destructive alterations are fairly established. No structural alterations can be made out in the elastic fibres until a comparatively advanced stage of the disease, and even then only the finest of these seem affected. The change consists in a finely granular degeneration. Dr. Auld also lays stress upon the occurrence of fibroid changes of a particular character and distribution in emphysematous lungs, especially in those cases in which the condition seems to originate as an independent affection not due to chronic bronchitis. He, moreover, found marked interstitial changes in the nerves in all cases of extensive emphysema, with usually wasting and granularity of many of the fibres.

In the *localized* variety of emphysema the appearances are confined to certain parts, especially the apices, and the anterior and lower edges, being similar to those described as characteristic of the more extensive form, but usually in a less marked degree.

In true *atrophic* emphysema the lungs are diminished in size; shrink into a very small bulk when the chest is opened; and are very light. The divisions between the lobes are unusually vertical. The pulmonary tissue is pale, but much pigmented, dry, and deficient in elasticity. The air-vesicles are enlarged, owing to atrophy of their septa.

Other morbid conditions are usually seen in emphysematous lungs, such as bronchitis, collapse in some parts, not uncommonly dilated bronchi, or even phthisis. Pleuritic adhesions are generally present. The chest-walls are usually more or less rigid. When emphysema is extensive, the contiguous structures are displaced. Different statements have

been made as to the position of the heart. My own observations would lead me to agree with those who describe this organ as lying with the right border more or less horizontally on the diaphragm, and the apex displaced to the left and downwards. Its right cavities tend to become dilated and hypertrophied in course of time, and the tricuspid orifice enlarged and incompetent. Should these changes take place, all the organs of the body become subsequently the seat of venous congestion and its consequences.

Symptoms.—It is only the *chronic hypertrophic* form of emphysema which leads to any prominent symptoms, and these are chiefly of an indirect character. This condition interferes with the due aeration of the blood, while the pulmonary circulation is obstructed from various causes, but especially on account of the destruction of the capillaries; consequently the right side of the heart is affected, in time becoming the seat of dilatation and hypertrophy, with tricuspid regurgitation; the general venous system thus becomes overloaded, the various tissues and organs being then permanently congested, leading to dropsy and important organic changes. The lungs, moreover, are generally the seat of bronchial catarrh or other morbid conditions; and fits of spasmodic asthma or acute attacks of bronchitis are very liable to occur.

Dyspnoea, differing in kind and degree, is the main symptom directly due to emphysema. At first there is merely "shortness of breath" on exertion, especially on going upstairs or up a hill, but ultimately more or less persistent *expiratory dyspnoea* is experienced, accompanied with a sense of discomfort and uneasiness. After a meal the breathing tends to become worse, especially should the patient be dyspeptic, which is often the case. The dyspnoea becomes necessarily much aggravated should bronchitis or asthma supervene. Cough is frequently present, but is usually the result of bronchial catarrh, when it is attended with expectoration; otherwise it is dry. There is no actual pain in the chest directly dependent upon emphysema; but a dragging or even painful sensation may be experienced just below the ensiform cartilage.

Other symptoms which may be observed in cases of emphysema are indirect. Those due to interference with the circulation will be more appropriately described in connection with heart-diseases. As the result of the increased breathing efforts the respiratory muscles often hypertrophy; hence the neck appears to be large. The fat may be absorbed, giving rise to an appearance of wasting, with strongly-marked features; but many emphysematous patients are more or less obese. The symptoms due to imperfect blood-aeration present the usual characters, only that they are gradually produced; and there is generally a feeling of apathy and languor, with a flabby and relaxed state of the muscles, from this cause.

Physical Signs.—These will necessarily differ much, according to the extent and variety of the emphysema; and the morbid conditions with which it is associated. 1. *Shape and size of the chest.* In *general hypertrophic* emphysema the chest is usually more or less enlarged bilaterally, either throughout, or only in its upper or lower part. It may assume a permanent inspiratory form, or even go beyond this, becoming "barrel-shaped" and almost circular. There is often a rounding of the chest in front, and of the back behind, but sometimes this change in contour is chiefly observed on one or other of these aspects. The ribs become more horizontal, and the intercostal spaces wider, in proportion to the enlargement; while the cartilages are frequently quite rigid.

In *localized* emphysema there may be corresponding bulging. *Atrophous* emphysema is associated with a small chest, the ribs being very oblique, the lower ones almost vertical. 2. *Respiratory movements.* Expansion is more or less deficient or absent, and there may be merely a general elevation of the chest. Expiration tends to be prolonged. 3. *Percussion* reveals increased area of the pulmonary sound, especially over the precordium, except in atrophous emphysema. In most cases, also, there is hyper-resonance, with fall in pitch, the percussion-sound tending towards a tympanitic type. If the distension of the lungs is extreme the tone is muffled, with undue resistance. 4. *Respiratory sounds.* The most important changes noticed in pronounced hypertrophous emphysema are weakness of the breath-sounds, and marked prolongation of the expiratory sound. The extent over which they are heard is increased. 5. A *crepitant râle* is sometimes heard in connection with emphysematous vesicles on deep inspiration. Adventitious sounds due to bronchial catarrh are often present, especially *sonorous* and *sibilant rhonchi*. 6. *Vocal fremitus* and *resonance* are impaired, but are quite unreliable. They may be observed over a larger area than usual. 7. There are signs of *displacement of organs* in cases of extensive emphysema, especially of the heart and liver. Epigastric impulse is common. 8. The *veins in the neck* often exhibit signs of obstruction to the circulation, after the right side of the heart has become affected.

Diagnosis.—In a pronounced case chronic hypertrophous emphysema is evident at a glance, or requires but a very cursory examination of the chest to determine its existence. Its lesser degrees can only be made out by more careful investigation, especially by percussion, which indicates extension of the lungs beyond their ordinary limits in early cases. In this way localized emphysema may also often be recognized. It is necessary to distinguish between the different forms of distended lungs commonly included under the term emphysema, and here all the circumstances of the case must be taken into consideration. It may not be practicable, however, to draw an absolute line between what may be regarded as a healthy development of the lungs, and an actual emphysematous condition, especially in persons who have practised athletics to excess. There ought to be no difficulty in distinguishing true emphysema, which is a bilateral disease, from hypertrophy of one lung, due to some interference with the opposite one; and the same remark applies to pneumothorax, which is a condition occurring under special circumstances, usually attended with sudden and more or less urgent symptoms, and presenting peculiar physical signs. It may be noted that in cases of emphysema the distension of the lungs is likely to be temporarily increased during attacks of asthma or bronchitis, and this is a point to be attended to in diagnosis. There is a possibility of mistaking at first sight a case of abundant pleuritic effusion on one side, or a rare form of chronic pneumonia, with enlargement of the opposite lung, for one of emphysema, but proper examination would at once obviate such a mistake. The atrophic variety of emphysema is easily recognized.

Prognosis.—Chronic hypertrophous emphysema is serious in proportion to its extent. It lays the foundation for a very miserable existence in many cases; increases the tendency to bronchial catarrh; and adds greatly to the danger from an acute attack of bronchitis. Once it is thoroughly established, emphysema cannot be cured.

Treatment.—This part of the subject may be very briefly summed up, inasmuch as it is only necessary to notice here the principles or

which the treatment of emphysema must be conducted. 1. Every precaution must be taken against the occurrence of bronchial catarrh, not only on account of its danger, but because each attack tends to increase the emphysematous condition. Other known causes of emphysema must be avoided. 2. It is very important to attend to the alimentary canal, as a deranged state of its functions frequently considerably increases the discomfort attending emphysema. 3. The conditions which may be associated with this complaint must be treated as they arise, especially asthma ; cardiac disease ; venous congestion and its results, including dropsy ; and the pulmonary complications which occur in its course, particularly bronchitis. *Narcotics* must be used with special caution when the lungs are extensively emphysematous. 4. It is often requisite to improve the general health and the condition of the blood, by the aid of *tonics*, iron, and cod-liver oil ; or to treat some constitutional diathesis, especially gout. 5. Whether there is any curative remedy for emphysema is very questionable. The administration of strychnine, the use of galvanism, breathing compressed air, and other measures have been stated to produce some improvement in cases of this disease. A change of climate is often exceedingly beneficial. Usually a mild climate, not too dry, answers best; but it is frequently a matter of personal experience as to the kind of locality which is most suitable. It has been recommended for emphysematous patients to spend the summer in pine-wood regions, where there is a heavy fall of dew.

II. INTERLOBULAR OR INTERSTITIAL EMPHYSEMA.

Aetiology.—This is a very rare condition, resulting usually from rupture of the air-vesicles, as a consequence of excessive pressure upon their interior during forcible expiration, the glottis being at the same time much contracted. Thus it may be induced by violent cough, laughing, or straining during defæcation or parturition. Interlobular emphysema may also occur in cases of croup ; or sometimes as the result of extensive pulmonary collapse. Gangrene or *post-mortem* decomposition may lead to the presence of air in the interstitial tissue of the lung.

Anatomical Characters.—Accumulations of air are visible under the pleura, varying in size, but generally small, and they may form a border of minute vesicles around the lobules. The air can by pressure be displaced along the course of the boundaries of the alveoli. Superficial collections occasionally give way, opening into the pleura, and thus giving rise to pneumothorax ; or into the posterior mediastinum, leading to general subcutaneous emphysema.

Symptoms.—The only symptom which might lead to the suspicion of interstitial emphysema is the sudden onset of severe dyspnoea following one of its causes. It is said that a faint *friction-sound* is sometimes heard. Should pneumothorax or general subcutaneous emphysema be produced, these conditions would be indicated by their usual signs.

Treatment.—This consists in taking every precaution to prevent the mischief from spreading ; and in attending to its consequences. No curative treatment is possible.

CHAPTER XV.

ASTHMA.

THE use of the term *asthma* is ambiguous, and it is associated with various forms of paroxysmal dyspnoea, the chief of which are named:—
1. *Laryngeal*. 2. *Bronchial*. 3. *Diaphragmatic*. 4. *Cardiac*. 5. *Hæmic*.
6. *Renal*. Only *bronchial* and *diaphragmatic* asthma will be considered in the present chapter.

I. BRONCHIAL ASTHMA.—SPASMODIC ASTHMA.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Bronchial asthma is characterized by paroxysms of a special kind of dyspnoea, which are generally regarded as being *spasmodic* in their origin, and due to a tonic spasm of the muscular fibres of the bronchioles, excited by nervous influence, the irritation being either *direct*, *reflex*, or *centric*. According to another view, they depend upon an acute swelling of the bronchial mucous membrane, resulting either from sudden dilatation of the blood-vessels arising from nervous influences, or from a very acute catarrh. The late Sir Andrew Clark was of opinion that a kind of erythematous swelling occurs in patches over the bronchial mucous membrane. Curschmann thinks that there is a special form of inflammation of the smaller bronchioles—*bronchiolitis exudativa*. Berkart also maintains that asthma is essentially inflammatory—plugs of sero-fibrinous or fibrinous exudation being formed, the paroxysmal dyspnoea being due to displacement of these plugs, and their lodgment in other parts of the bronchial tract. He supposes that they cause mechanical obstruction to expiration, and may also set up true bronchial spasm. The paroxysm gives way owing to the free secretion of thin fluid, and the dilatation of the bronchi, which allow of the escape of the impacted plugs. This writer has found a streptococcus in the sputa, which he suggests may be the cause of the complaint.

Whatever may be the exact pathology of bronchial asthma, the circumstances under which it occurs may be thus generally stated:—
1. The complaint may be *idiopathic* or *primary*, there being no obvious cause, and the attacks are then sometimes distinctly periodic. Here the disease is definitely neurotic in origin. 2. *Direct inhalation* of various materials is a frequent cause of asthma, such as fog or smoke; irritating gases and vapours; dust; odoriferous emanations from animals, or from vegetable matters, especially hay, ipecacuanha, fresh coffee, and certain flowers, such as violets. The conditions of the atmosphere breathed often materially influence the occurrence of asthmatic attacks, these being especially liable to be brought on by excessively damp or dry air, or by cold easterly winds. Different asthmatic patients present remarkable peculiarities as to the qualities of the air which suits them best, but as a rule a rather moist and relaxing atmosphere is least injurious, and that of elevated and country districts is worse than that of low districts or of large towns and cities. 3. Asthma is very commonly

associated with *bronchitis*, *bronchial catarrh*, or *emphysema*. It has also been attributed to direct irritation of the bronchial mucous membrane by certain crystals. 4. *Cardiac diseases* may induce true spasmodic asthma, by giving rise to pulmonary congestion. 5. Asthma may be *gastric* in its origin, following more or less speedily the introduction of food into the stomach. In some cases any kind of food will bring on a fit; in others only indigestible or special articles, such as alcoholic stimulants or sweets. Usually this form of asthma is looked upon as being due to reflex irritation, but the late Dr. Hyde Salter was of opinion that it generally depends upon an "offending condition of the blood," brought about by the introduction into the circulation of deleterious matters during digestion. 6. Various *reflex* sources of disturbance are supposed to induce asthma, such as uterine derangements; hardened faeces in the rectum; the sudden application of cold to the skin; cold feet; or boils. At the present time it is a favourite theory that the reflex irritation which excites asthma is often seated in the nasal cavities, being due to chronic nasal catarrh, polypi, or more especially to enlargement of the erectile bodies of one or more turbinated bones. It is also believed that attacks may result from enlarged tonsils, or post-nasal adenoid growths. 7. Occasionally an asthmatic attack is *centric* in its origin, as when it accompanies violent emotion or hysteria; or in those very rare instances where it results from organic disease affecting the roots of the vagus nerves. 8. Irritation of one of the *pneumogastric nerves* in its course may, in exceptional cases, be the cause of asthmatic paroxysms.

Predisposing causes.—In a large number of cases asthma commences within the first ten years of life, but the complaint increases in frequency from 20 to 50 (Salter). Men suffer much more than women. Hereditary predisposition appears to have some influence.

Symptoms.—In some cases *premonitory* indications of the approach of a fit of asthma are observed, especially in connection with the nervous system. Occasionally there is abundant discharge of pale watery urine. There may be gradually increasing dyspnoea and other chest-symptoms for a variable period before the actual attack occurs. In many cases, however, this is quite sudden in its onset, coming on without any warning. It sets in, in the great majority of cases, early in the morning, especially from two to three o'clock; but the taking of meals, a low temperature, exposure to a cold wind or to wet, the recumbent posture, some effort, sleep, or other causes may determine the time of the occurrence of a paroxysm. In many instances a distinctly periodic tendency is noticed, and the interval may be remarkably uniform, the attack being either associated with some evident cause, or being independent of any such cause.

Characters of a paroxysm.—The patient is conscious of an extreme sense of suffocation and want of breath, with tightness and oppression across the chest; loosens every article of clothing; and seizes upon all available means for obtaining fresh air. The position assumed varies in different cases, the patient either sitting, standing, or kneeling, and fixing the hands or elbows on some support; or the attitude may be frequently changed. Violent respiratory efforts are made, every muscle being called into action, while the shoulders are raised, and the head is thrown back, the mouth being kept widely open. In consequence of these exertions the sweat often pours off the upper part of the body. The rate of breathing is frequently not increased, but inspiration is very short, abrupt, and jerky, while expiration is greatly prolonged, often

terminating with a sudden effort at expulsion of the air, and being immediately followed by the inspiratory act. Respiration is noisy and accompanied with wheezing. Soon signs of general venous congestion and of deficient aeration of the blood appear, and they may become very pronounced, the extremities being cold, and the pulse small and quick or sometimes irregular. The duration of the struggle varies greatly in different cases, and it may go on for a long time with remissions or intermissions. The length of the asthmatic fits is often remarkably uniform in any particular case. The attack ends either suddenly or gradually, this depending much upon its duration; and upon whether it is allowed to run its course, or is checked by some powerful therapeutic agent. Generally a cough sets in towards the close, followed by a small amount of expectoration, in the form of little pearl-like grey pellets of mucus. In some cases the expectoration is considerable, and continues for some time, especially if the paroxysm is prolonged, and then the asthma is termed *humid*. Occasionally haemoptysis occurs, usually very slight, but sometimes abundant. In the sputum certain special objects have been described. Yellowish-green or grey-looking particles are said to be usually seen, described by Curschmann, consisting of very small threads of mucus, very tough, and exhibiting a striking spiral twisting under the microscope. They seem to be made up of simple fine or coarse spirally-twisted bands and fibres; with sometimes a fine transparent central fibre. These objects are believed to be casts of the finest bronchioles. Charcot-Leyden crystals are also often seen under the microscope, especially in the spirals, and they may be numerous. When the attack ceases, they rapidly diminish. These "asthma crystals" are pointed and octahedral, and are said to be composed of the phosphate of some peculiar organic base. Crystals of oxalate of lime have also been observed in some instances.

Physical signs.—During a paroxysm of asthma the physical signs are very characteristic, as evidencing narrowing of the bronchial tubes, and interference with the passage of air. 1. The chest is more or less *distended*, the lungs being inflated. 2. *Expansile movements* are greatly deficient or absent; while the intercostal spaces, the supra-sternal and supra-clavicular fossæ, and the epigastrium sink in markedly during inspiration. The *rhythm* of the movements is altered, expiration being much prolonged. 3. *Percussion-sound* is hyper-resonant; and inspiration or expiration produces little or no effect upon it. 4. *Auscultation* discloses feeble or absent breath-sounds where the tubes are constricted, with loud puerile sounds where they are free; along with *dry rhonchi* in every conceivable variety. At the close of the paroxysm some *moist râles* may often be heard, especially at the bases. Important characters presented by these auscultatory signs are that they are frequently limited in their

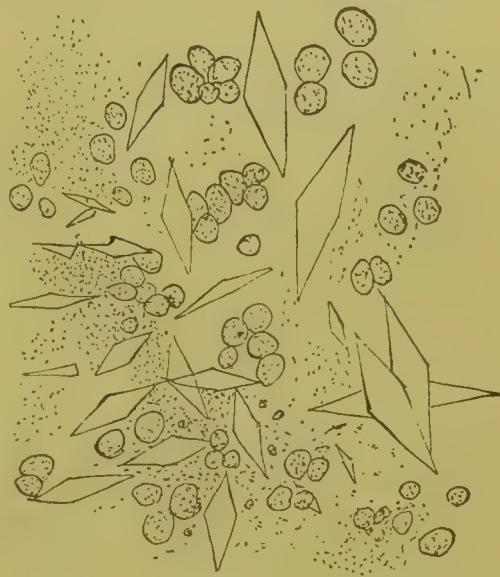


FIG. 23.
Charcot-Leyden crystals (from Wethered's
Medical Microscopy).

extent; and are constantly liable to change their site rapidly. Upon the sudden cessation of bronchial spasm an exaggerated breath-sound may be heard where a moment before no sound was audible. Usually both lungs are affected, but occasionally only or chiefly one of them, and then breathing is excessive on the unaffected side.

State in the intervals.—This will depend upon whether the asthma is or is not associated with some organic disease. Immediately after an attack a feeling of exhaustion is usually experienced, with uncomfortable sensations about the chest; but when these pass off patients generally feel relieved, and enjoy an immunity from further paroxysms for a time. As a case of asthma progresses, the fits tend to become more frequent but less severe.

Hay-asthma.—It will be convenient briefly to allude here to the affection named *hay-asthma* or *hay-fever*. This complaint appears to be due to idiosyncrasy, being only observed in certain individuals, who suffer every hay-season, often without any evident exposure to the exciting cause. It has been specially attributed to the pollen of *anthoxanthum odoratum*; but the same effects may be produced by breathing the powder of ipecacuanha, by the odour of certain flowers, and by emanations from certain animals. The symptoms are those of coryza and bronchial irritation, attended with severe cough; short asthmatic attacks, especially at night; as well as much languor and a sense of depression and want of energy, but no pyrexia. They set in acutely, and last for a variable time.

Diagnosis.—Bronchial asthma is sufficiently characterized by the paroxysmal and usually sudden nature of the attacks; their peculiar characters, severity, limited duration, and often abrupt termination; the physical signs of temporary constriction of the bronchial tubes, with absence of fluid in them; the effects of treatment; and the complete or comparative absence of dyspnœa in the intervals. It has chiefly to be distinguished from emphysema, bronchitis, and cardiac dyspnœa, but it must be remembered that asthma often complicates these conditions. It may also be mistaken for laryngeal or diaphragmatic asthma; or for mere nervous dyspnœa.

Prognosis.—The immediate prognosis in cases of asthma is favourable, death during a paroxysm being a rare event. The prognosis as to recovery is more hopeful if the patient is young; if the attacks only come on at long intervals, and are not severe or prolonged; if between the paroxysms the patient feels well, and there is no organic disease; and if the asthmatic fits are traceable to some obvious cause, which can be avoided. The history of the progress of the case will afford some aid in determining the prognosis.

Treatment.—*1. Prevention of an impending attack.*—In those cases where there are premonitory signs of a fit of asthma, it may be possible to avert this by certain measures, such as drinking strong coffee; removing every source of irritation; heating the body, or in some cases applying cold to the back; smoking stramonium or belladonna; or inhaling some anti-asthmatic fumigation or nitrite of amyl.

2. During a paroxysm.—Any obvious exciting cause of an asthmatic attack must be at once removed, for instance, an emetic or enema being employed should the attack be due to a loaded stomach or rectum: as much fresh, dry, warm air as possible must be obtained; and everything that can obstruct the breathing should be loosened. The position of the

patient needs to be studied : the sitting or kneeling posture is usually the best, with the elbows supported so as to raise the shoulders, but not uncommonly patients must be allowed to choose the position which they find most comfortable and convenient.

The remedies recommended for asthma are exceedingly numerous and diverse. Different cases are relieved by totally different lines of treatment, and in many instances it is at first quite an experiment as to what will answer best, but patients learn by trying different agents what gives them most speedy relief. The chief remedies which may be of service when given internally are depressing *emetics* and *nauseants*, especially ipecacuanha or tartar emetic; tincture of belladonna, conium, hyoscyamus, stramonium or datura tatula ; opium or morphine ; ether, especially compound spirit of ether ; hydrate of chloral ; ethereal tincture of lobelia in full doses, frequently repeated ; cannabis indica ; nitrite of amyl, nitrite of sodium, or nitro-glycerine ; jaborandi or pilocarpine ; bromides ; chloride of ammonium in large doses ; grindelia robusta ; quebracho ; monobromated camphor ; strong hot coffee without milk or sugar, taken on an empty stomach, to which it has been recommended to add 1 to 5 grains of caffeine ; some spirit with boiling water in equal parts ; or fragments of ice rapidly swallowed. Phenazone has been found useful in some cases. *Inhalations* are of great value, when judiciously used, some agents thus employed being directly inspired ; others being smoked, either in a pipe or in the form of a cigarette. The most important remedies for direct inhalation are ether, chloroform, or a mixture of these agents ; nitrite of amyl, which has been strongly recommended by Dr. Talfourd Jones, but must be cautiously employed ; iodide of ethyl ; pyridine ; chloride of ammonium vapour ; and the fumes which arise from ignited nitre-paper, or paper impregnated with both nitre and chlorate of potassium. The principal substances smoked are tobacco, stramonium, datura tatula, and belladonna, either separately or mixed, and considerable relief is often thus obtained, but particular care must be exercised in carrying out this mode of treatment. Coca leaves and eucalyptus have also been thus used. Special *powders*, *pastilles*, and *tablets* are likewise made, which are burnt for the purpose of inhaling the fumes. The powders are of various compositions, but contain more or less of the following ingredients :—nitre, stramonium, datura tatula, tobacco, lobelia, tea, cannabis indica, and eucalyptus oil. The pastilles consist of chlorate and nitrate of potassium. These preparations may be burnt in a room, as well as directly inhaled. The following powder is used at the Brompton Hospital :—R. Pulv. stramonii, $\frac{3}{2}$; Pulv. anisi, Potass. nitratis, $\frac{1}{2}$; Pulv. Tabaci, gr. v. Cigarettes have likewise been employed, made of paper, each containing a minute proportion of morphine, arseniate of sodium, or other powerful drugs. Cigarettes containing cubeb have been favourably spoken of in asthma. Subcutaneous injection of morphine, atropine, pilocarpine, hydrate of chloral, or other agents may be demanded in severe cases ; and cocaine has been specially recommended, administered in this way.

Various other measures prove serviceable in particular instances in the treatment of an asthmatic fit, such as applying cold or heat to the surface of the chest ; ice to the spine ; the use of warm friction or turpentine fomentations over the chest ; sinapisms to various parts ; putting the hands and arms into warm water ; a warm foot-bath with mustard in it, cold water being drunk at the same time ; or a weak galvanic current along

the course of the vagus nerves. The compressed air-bath may give much relief, if it should be available.

3. *During the intervals.*—At this time the main points to be attended to are to study the locality which suits the patient best, as regards the qualities of the air and other conditions; to pay strict attention to the state of the alimentary canal and to the diet; to regulate the functions of the organs generally; and to avoid every cause which is known to bring on an attack of asthma, especially cold and damp. It is remarkable that asthmatic patients are usually better in the impure atmosphere of large towns and cities, but much damp is almost always injurious. The sea-side also does not agree with many of such patients; though a sea-voyage often proves highly beneficial. In many cases the habitual use of some of the remedies already mentioned may ward off asthmatic fits, such as smoking tobacco or stramonium, or inhaling the fumes of nitre-paper or the vapour of chloroform, but these agents must be judiciously employed. The nitrites are also used for this purpose. Any organic or constitutional disease must be treated, such as emphysema, bronchitis, or gout. A course of quinine, strychnine, arsenic, or some metallic tonic is very serviceable in many cases of asthma. Iodide of potassium is also a valuable remedy; or syrup of hydriodic acid has been recommended as a substitute if the iodide is not well-borne. Grindelia robusta and quebracho bark are other agents specially advocated. Galvanism or counter-irritation along the vagus nerves; the inhalation of compressed or rarefied air; and various other measures have been advocated for the cure of asthma. In suitable cases special treatment directed to the nasal cavities or to the throat is called for. In addition to treating particular diseases, the galvano-cautery has been employed to destroy the erectile bodies on the turbinated bones, and it is affirmed with success.

4. With regard to *hay-asthma*, it is necessary to avoid the cause of this complaint, and the sea-side seems to offer the best protection, or if possible a sea-voyage should be taken. During the attack small doses of hydrocyanic acid with tincture of lobelia or other *antispasmodics* may be given at frequent intervals. Iodide of potassium, chloride of ammonium, and belladonna are amongst the numerous remedies advocated for administration in cases of hay-asthma. Weak inhalations of creasote, carbolic acid, or chlorine have also been recommended; and the asthmatic attacks are in some cases relieved by inhaling the fumes of the anti-asthmatic powders already mentioned. Carbolized smelling-salts is also used. Among the local measures advocated may be mentioned injection of quinine into the nostrils; plugging the nostrils with glycerine; the use of snuffs containing salicylic acid, camphor, bismuth, morphine, and other ingredients; and the application of cocaine. As preventive measures, the administration of quinine and iron, arsenic, nux vomica or strychnine, and other *tonics* might be tried, along with cold bathing. Dr. Russell Reynolds has found the systematic inhalation of a few drops of chloroform useful.

II. DIAPHRAGMATIC ASTHMA.

A form of asthma has been specially described as due to spasm of the diaphragm and other muscles of respiration. The respirations are diminished in number, and the difficulty in breathing is limited to expiration, which is greatly prolonged, inspiration being short and abrupt,

while but little air enters the lungs. The abdominal muscles become rigid and hard, and may cause expulsion of the urine and faeces. There is a feeling of great distress, and signs of imminent suffocation may appear. When the spasm subsides, this event is not followed by cough or expectoration. *Physical examination* reveals distension of the lungs, undiminished during expiration. There are no dry rhonchi. I have seen symptoms very similar to those just described brought on by an immoderate fit of laughter. *Treatment* must be conducted on general principles.

CHAPTER XVI.

ATELECTASIS, APNEUMATOSIS, PULMONARY COLLAPSE.—PULMONARY COMPRESSION.

THESE terms all signify a condition in which the lungs are to a greater or less extent merely devoid of air, so that the affected portions are useless for respiratory purposes. *Atelectasis* strictly refers only to lungs which are more or less in their foetal condition, never having expanded properly. The other terms indicate a return to this condition, either from *collapse* in consequence of air being prevented from entering the vesicles through the air-passages; or as the result of external *compression* upon the lung.

Etiology and Pathology.—1. *Collapse*.—The results of experiment and observation show that the ultimate effect of complete and continued obstruction or narrowing of a bronchial tube from any cause is collapse of the air-vesicles which it supplies. The explanation of this fact is as follows:—The bronchi becoming smaller as they divide, the air drawn in during inspiration drives on any obstructing material, so that at last it reaches a point where it causes complete closure, and thus no air can enter the corresponding vesicles. During expiration the obstructing plug is forced out to some extent, and a certain quantity of air escapes, but it again returns with inspiration, acting in fact like a “ball-valve.” Hence, as no fresh supply of air enters the vesicles, and that previously contained in them is gradually expelled, they finally collapse entirely. It is supposed also that some of the imprisoned air may be absorbed. In the great majority of cases the obstruction is associated with bronchitis, either simple, or occurring as a complication of measles, whooping-cough, or croup, especially if its products are very tenacious and viscid, but they need not be of this character. Infants are extremely prone to suffer from pulmonary collapse, and this condition is especially frequent during the first year of life, and in children who are ill-nourished or rickety. Among the chief *predisposing* causes are a yielding condition of the chest-walls, and a weak state of the inspiratory muscles; inability to cough and expectorate; distension of, or pressure upon the abdomen, preventing the movements of the diaphragm; and the previous existence of partial atelectasis.

When a main bronchus is obstructed in any way the whole lung may ultimately become collapsed.

2. The chief causes of direct *compression* of the lung are accumulations of fluid or air in the pleural cavity, or agglutination of its surfaces,

with thickened pleura; great pericardial effusion or cardiac enlargement; an intra-thoracic tumour or aneurism; deformities of the thorax; and abdominal enlargements encroaching upon the chest, such as ascites, an ovarian tumour, an enlarged liver or spleen, or a hydatid tumour.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid appearances in *atelectasis* and *collapse* are very similar. Usually distinct lobules are involved—*lobular collapse*, these being scattered through different parts of the lungs. The margin of the bases, the tongue-like prolongation of the left upper lobe, and the middle lobe of the right lung present collapsed lobules most frequently; and next in order come the posterior parts of the upper and lower lobes on both sides. Superficial lobules are much more commonly affected than those which lie deep in the lung.

The precise characters presented will vary according to the duration of the collapse, and the amount and conditions of the blood in the affected lobules. At first there is congestion, but soon the blood coagulates in the vessels, and then undergoes further changes, becoming decolorized, firm, and contracted, the vessels being finally obliterated. The walls of the alveoli after a time adhere together, and catarrhal pneumonia is frequently set up. As seen on the surface of the lung, the collapsed portions have a well-defined outline, and are usually sunk below the surrounding level, but not always. Their size depends upon that of the bronchus obstructed. The colour varies considerably, ranging from deep purple to light red, but being usually dark-red or of a somewhat violet hue. Whitish streaks are evident on close examination, indicating the division into smaller lobules. A section is quite smooth, but varies in colour, and it shows the collapsed part to be somewhat pyramidal in shape, with the base outwards. The tissue is quite airless and non-crepitant, usually of a tough and firm consistence, and when situated in a thin margin of lung the collapsed portion may be felt between the finger and thumb. Pieces of airless lung sink in water. The affected lobules can usually be inflated to a greater or less degree by means of a blowpipe introduced into the communicating bronchus, and they then enlarge, assume a light red colour, and come to resemble normal lung-tissue, but they soon subside unless the bronchus is tied. In proportion to the degree of congestion will be the depth of colour, bulk, firmness, and difficulty of inflating the collapsed portions. In course of time they become paler, looser, but tough in texture, and cannot be expanded, as the walls of the vesicles adhere. The tubes proceeding to collapsed lobules will usually be found to contain some obstructing secretion. Other parts of the lungs are frequently the seat of emphysema.

Compression drives the air and blood out of the lungs to a variable degree, and the appearances differ accordingly. When the air is alone expelled, while the blood remains, the lung-tissue is dark red, moist, but very firm and dense, and this is the condition known as *carnification*. Finally it becomes grey; anaemic, but pigmented; dry; of a tough leathery consistence; and incapable of insufflation.

Symptoms.—Dyspnœa, with quick and shallow breathing; feeble and ineffectual cough; signs of deficient blood-aeration; and marked wasting and exhaustion are the phenomena attending acute lobular pulmonary collapse, their severity being necessarily in proportion to the extent of the mischief, and the rapidity with which it is set up. Death is a very frequent termination in children, and may take place speedily or gradually. The *physical signs* are:—1. Those of *inspiratory dyspnoea*, the chest falling in more or less during inspiration. 2. *Impaired resonance*

over the affected parts. 3. Weak or bronchial *breath-sounds*. In many cases, however, no definite physical signs whatever can be detected; and they are often obscured by those of emphysema, bronchitis, and other morbid conditions.

Considerable compression of the lung may exist without any symptoms, if it is produced gradually. In this condition a few crepitant râles may sometimes be heard at the close of a deep inspiration—*compression rôle*. The heart is often unduly exposed, owing to retraction of the lung.

Diagnosis.—The presence of extensive collapse or compression of the lung is as a rule clearly indicated by the circumstances under which it occurs, and the physical signs. The lobular form is often difficult to recognize definitely, but it should be always watched for in connection with bronchitis, especially in children, the symptoms being the chief guides.

Prognosis.—Extensive collapse is exceedingly dangerous in very young children, especially if the patient is feeble, and placed in unfavourable hygienic circumstances. This condition adds greatly to the fatality of bronchitis, whooping-cough, measles, and croup.

Treatment.—When pulmonary collapse is suspected during an attack of bronchitis in children, the main objects in treatment are to assist the respiratory efforts, and the discharge of the obstructing secretion. Friction with oil over the chest; artificial respiration; the application of sinapisms; an *emetic* of sulphate of zinc or ipecacuanha; and the administration of *stimulant expectorants*, constitute the chief measures which are available. A warm bath is of service occasionally. The diet must be carefully attended to, and much support is often required, this being adapted to the age of the patient; alcoholic stimulants are also frequently useful. If there are signs of apnoea, the warm bath with cold douche should be tried. As regards the treatment of compression of the lung, the removal of its cause as speedily as possible is the chief indication.

CHAPTER XVII.

PULMONARY PHTHISIS OR CONSUMPTION.

PULMONARY phthisis or consumption includes a very large group of cases, in which the lung-textures become the seat of certain forms of consolidation, followed by destruction or breaking-down, with the formation of ulcerating excavations or cavities; this process being accompanied with general wasting of the blood and tissues, fever, progressive weakness, and other constitutional symptoms. In many cases other organs and structures besides the lungs are involved during the course of the disease, and thus the clinical history is often considerably modified. The subject is a very extensive one, and within the limits of this work it is only possible to give a condensed account of the main facts and theories relating thereto.

Pathology.—Different morbid processes may lead to destruction of the lung-tissues, and the formation of cavities, but pulmonary phthisis, as

usually defined and understood, includes a group of cases in which the pathological changes are of a particular kind, and does not refer to those in which the destructive lesions are associated with syphilitic growths, hydatids, malignant disease, or other special conditions. It will be expedient at the outset to indicate briefly the nature of these changes, and the current views held as to the pathology of phthisis.

1. The view now generally accepted is that pulmonary phthisis is essentially and invariably a *tubercular disease*, and that the lesions in the lungs are primarily due to the formation of tubercle, and the destructive changes connected therewith. Moreover, the development of the tubercle is attributed to the direct action of the *tubercle bacillus* of Koch, which is therefore regarded as the *specific morbific agent* originating pulmonary phthisis. The questions relating to tubercle and its bacillus have been already adequately discussed in the chapter on TUBERCULOSIS, and need not be further considered here. It will suffice to state that all are agreed as to the essential importance of this morbid growth in relation to pulmonary phthisis.

2. The theory of the *inflammatory* origin of a large proportion of cases of phthisis was very widely held not many years since, and is still supported by some authorities. According to this view the destructive changes in the lungs may be primarily due to some form of inflammation involving its tissues, upon which tubercle is usually subsequently engrafted as a secondary lesion. Such inflammation might be of the nature of :—*a. Acute croupous pneumonia* in exceptional instances, either in consequence of the products caseating instead of being absorbed, or of the inflammation terminating in the formation of abscesses or in gangrene. *b. Catarrhal pneumonia*, either *acute* or *chronic*, and set up by various causes, the products also undergoing a caseous change. *c. Peribronchitis* occasionally, in which the inflammatory changes chiefly implicate the walls of the alveoli and the minute bronchioles, with their surrounding tissues. *d. Chronic interstitial pneumonia*, which produces the condition known as *fibroid phthisis*. The late Sir Andrew Clark regarded this as a special variety of phthisis in some cases, the growth of fibroid tissue being primary.

3. *Vascular conditions*.—Occlusion of branches of the pulmonary artery has been regarded as contributing to the destructive process in some cases of phthisis. A variety of phthisis has also been described, originating in embolism of the pulmonary branches, and consequent localized gangrene of the lung. It has been affirmed, moreover, that intensely congested and œdematos lung-tissue may break down and form cavities, thus setting up phthisis; and that haemorrhagic clots may undergo similar changes.

The fact of the occurrence of obvious inflammatory changes in a large number of cases of pulmonary phthisis, at some period during their progress, cannot be disputed; and in some instances the onset of the disease is associated with a more or less definite pneumonic or pleuro-pneumonic attack. In such cases, however, those who maintain the "unity" of phthisis, and its invariably tubercular origin, would affirm that this was a primary tubercular pneumonia, directly set up by tubercle bacilli. The development of broncho-pneumonic lesions in this disease, which unquestionably help in the destructive process, is also attributed to these agents, or to irritation produced by the tubercle itself. Even granting to its fullest extent the truth of the tubercular theory, there is nothing unreasonable in the supposition that the

products of inflammation, originally of a simple character, might form a suitable nidus for the growth and development of the tubercle bacillus, and be thus the starting-point of the phthisical process. The same remark applies to the vascular conditions just alluded to, which might act in a similar way. In this sense, at any rate, a "secondary tuberculosis" is quite possible, in my opinion. Another factor which comes in sooner or later in the large majority of phthisical cases is the occurrence of suppuration. It is a question whether tubercle bacilli can lead to the formation of pus, but probably this is mainly the result of the action of other micro-organisms which usually cause suppuration. With regard to the fibroid change which is so often observed in chronic cases of pulmonary consumption, some are of opinion that this always originates in tubercle, but it seems to me that such an idea is not in accordance with facts, and that the development of fibrosis in this disease is often the outcome of a chronic inflammatory process, intended to arrest the progress of the destructive lesions. Moreover, a lung may certainly become extensively fibrotic without having been previously tubercular. The late Sir Andrew Clark regarded this change as a special variety of phthisis in some instances, in which the growth of fibroid tissue is primary. It will not be out of place to remark here that whatever may be the precise pathology of the changes in any particular case of phthisis, in a large number of instances in actual practice the morbid conditions which can be recognized are of a very complicated nature.

Aetiology.—Under this head it is intended to point out the chief causes which appear directly or indirectly to contribute to the development of phthisis, and these are numerous and varied. Assuming the tubercular nature and bacillary origin of the complaint to be established, most of the causes to be mentioned would be regarded as merely belonging to the *predisposing* class, the bacillus being considered as the only possible exciting cause in every case.

1. *Hereditary or family predisposition.*—This question has already been dealt with in the chapter on TUBERCULOSIS, and it will suffice to say here that there can be no doubt as to the existence of an inherited tendency to phthisis in a considerable proportion of cases, and it is a most dangerous doctrine to ignore or make light of this tendency. 2. *Age.* Most cases of phthisis are met with from 20 to 30 years of age. The disease is not often observed during early childhood or in advanced age, but may come on at any period of life. It is usually more rapid in its progress in young subjects. 3. *Constitutional and general condition.* Persons who are feeble and delicate are chiefly liable to be affected with pulmonary consumption, although the most robust may be attacked. The presence of a pronounced tubercular or scrofulous habit of body may be regarded as predisposing to this disease. 4. *Occupation.* Phthisis is very common among those whose employment exposes them to various inhalations of an irritating nature; to causes originating colds; to the influence of certain unfavourable hygienic conditions; or to habitual working in postures which cramp and impede the movements of the chest. 5. *Habits.* Sedentary habits and want of exercise, intemperance, masturbation, excessive sexual indulgence, and debauchery generally, are the chief causes coming under this head to which phthisis has been attributed. 6. *Diet and digestion.* The mal-nutrition resulting from an imperfect supply of nutriment to the system, to whatever cause this may be due, has a powerful influence in developing phthisis,

especially in the young. Such a condition may be associated with an insufficient amount or improper quality of food; or with a want of power of assimilation, on account of dyspepsia, or of various diseases interfering with digestion. Some writers have laid great stress on a deficiency of fat in the system as a cause of phthisis, either from want of supply of this element, or because it cannot be digested. 7. *Interference with respiratory functions.* Want of ventilation and fresh air, and the consequent breathing of an impure atmosphere, materially assists in the production of phthisis; hence the complaint is common among those whose occupation compels them to remain in a close confined room for many hours during the day, as well as in many instances during the night, such as sempstresses or tailors, especially where gas is burnt constantly or for many hours. It is also frequent in ill-ventilated institutions where many persons are gathered together, especially children, for example, orphan-asylums and prisons. Whether interference with the respiratory movements, due to pressure of stays or to posture, has any effect in the production of phthisis has been disputed, but it seems very reasonable to suppose that such would be the case. The complaint is certainly more liable to develop in lungs which are much interfered with by deformities of the chest. The late Dr. MacCormack attached great importance to "re-breathed air" in relation to the aetiology of consumption. 8. *Climate and locality.* Dampness of soil and abundant moisture in the atmosphere have been proved to be powerful predisposing causes of phthisis. Sir George Buchanan has shown that efficient drainage has materially diminished its prevalence in certain districts. The affection is most prevalent in climates and localities characterized by rapid changes of temperature, or by prolonged cold and damp. Elevated regions are remarkably free from phthisis, while those which are situated at a low level present a large number of cases. It has been stated that malarial districts are comparatively exempt from the disease. It must be remembered that phthisis is very widely spread, and occurs in all kinds of climates. 9. *Mental causes.* Severe mental depression, as from anxiety, grief, worry, or over-study, certainly seems to have considerable influence in some cases in originating phthisis. The complaint is not uncommon among the inmates of lunatic asylums, but here various causes may be at work. 10. *Previous and existing diseases.* Phthisis may follow measles, whooping-cough, croup, typhus, typhoid, scarlatina, and other acute diseases. Repeated attacks of bronchitis greatly favour its development; or it may supervene on chronic bronchial catarrh or bronchitis. Its relation to different forms of pneumonia has already been considered. Pulmonary phthisis also not uncommonly follows pleurisy, not necessarily originally tubercular; and it may be secondary to laryngeal conditions. Among the supposed predisposing causes of this complaint coming under the present heading may be mentioned miscarriages; bad confinements; prolonged lactation; and continued or excessive discharges, or the suppression of such discharges. Phthisis is very liable to set in during the course of diabetes. It may also occur in connection with diseases of the alimentary canal and other parts, which interfere with the consumption or assimilation of food; and cases may be definitely associated with gastric ulcer. Typical tubercular phthisis occasionally develops in syphilitic cases. Dr. James Pollock observed that young women who are anaemic or chlorotic are peculiarly free from phthisis, but the complaint does

sometimes attack such subjects, and may come on very insidiously. It has been stated that the cyanotic condition is antagonistic to phthisis, but the complaint is not uncommon in cases of congenital disease of the pulmonary artery. 11. *Infection.* The questions bearing upon the infectious nature of tubercle have already been considered in the chapter on TUBERCULOSIS, and they are particularly important in relation to pulmonary phthisis. From this point of view the sputum has to be specially considered, as a vehicle for conveying infection by the tubercle bacilli it contains. It is now pretty generally agreed that pulmonary phthisis cannot be communicated by the breath. At the same time the danger of infection is greater in the case of those who are brought into intimate contact with phthisical patients; or when such patients live in the midst of communities where over-crowding and other unfavourable hygienic conditions prevail. It has been affirmed that there is a special danger of conveying phthisis from husband to wife. There is practically no danger of infection in bringing consumptive patients together in hospitals, provided that due precautions are taken. Apartments which have been occupied by such patients may probably be the means of starting the disease in others, if they have not been properly disinfected. The question of infection through food does not apply so much to the lungs, as to the alimentary canal and mesenteric glands. One important point to note is that these organs may be involved as the result of an auto-infection, either in connection with obvious tubercular disease of some other structure, or with some more or less obscure caseous centre, associated with old tubercular glands and like conditions.

The predisposing causes of pulmonary phthisis which are of an accidental character may be separated into two groups as regards their mode of action, the one tending to affect the system generally; the other to act locally upon the respiratory organs. In the great majority of cases it will be found that several causes have been at work in originating the disease, and often there is a combination of both classes. With regard to the immediate origin of phthisis, it may or may not be attributed to some definite cause, such as a cold, or direct injury or irritation of the respiratory organs, produced by a foreign body or in other ways. According to the view now generally held, however, such causes can only produce conditions which render these organs more liable to be attacked by the tubercle bacillus.

Varieties.—Many attempts have been made to classify cases of phthisis in different ways. Thus they have been grouped according to their supposed pathological origin and nature, as *tubercular*, *pneumonic*, *cattarrhal pneumonic*, *tubculo-pneumonic*, and *fibroid*. Certain special forms have also been recognized, founded on an aetiological basis, such as *pleuritic*, *haemorrhagic*, *mechanical* (including miners', colliers', and knife-grinders' phthisis, carbonaceous phthisis, etc.), and *alcoholic*. It is not practicable, however, to adopt any definite arrangement of this kind, and for further consideration it will be sufficient to divide cases of phthisis into *acute* and *chronic*, according to their progress and duration. Some writers make a separate division of *sub-acute* cases, but this seems to me quite unnecessary.

I.—ACUTE PHthisis—GALLOPING CONSUMPTION.

Under this group are included cases of phthisis which begin acutely, and run a more or less rapid course, but the fatal termination may not occur for a few months.

Anatomical Characters.—Now and then the *post-mortem* examination merely reveals, to all appearance, the remains of an *acute croupous pneumonia*, which has ended in destruction of the lung-tissues. More frequently there are evidences of extensive *bronchitis* and *congestion* with *catarrhal pneumonia*, which may invade large tracts of lung-tissue, the products being soft and caseous, and easily breaking down, or irregular cavities of various sizes having formed here and there. With these conditions obvious tubercles are often associated; but even if they are not evident, tubercle bacilli are present in great numbers. Acute phthisis may start in the lower lobes; or in the upper lobes, spreading downwards; or it may assume a disseminated form. Sometimes a whole lobe, or even the greater part of a lung or of both lungs, becomes rapidly destroyed. Signs of more or less extensive pleurisy are also present, generally indicated by deposit of lymph on the pleural surfaces, or by adhesions. In some instances the pulmonary affection is but a part of *acute tuberculosis*, the lungs, in common with other structures, being studded throughout with grey miliary tubercles, at the same time being much congested and oedematous, especially in dependent parts, but not pneumonic. Tubercle bacilli are not only found in connection with miliary tubercles, but are also abundant on the boundaries of cavities and in their contents, and in the infiltrated walls of the small bronchi.

Symptoms.—The clinical history of acute phthisis is that of a febrile disease, which is attended with prominent pulmonary symptoms, and as a rule with signs of consolidation and subsequent destruction of portions of the lungs, either progressively advancing from one part to another, or assuming a disseminated mode of distribution. It may attack a person previously healthy to all appearance, but this is not usually the case. Haemoptysis is sometimes the first symptom noticed. The course is in some instances extremely rapid, but any case of phthisis ending within a few months would be considered acute or sub-acute.

When acute phthisis follows what appears to be a lobar pneumonia, the chest-symptoms and fever continue, with abundant sweats and progressive wasting; while the *physical signs* show persistence of the consolidation, followed by softening and the formation of cavities. In the usual run of cases the local symptoms include pains in different parts of the chest; considerable dyspnoea; frequent and troublesome cough; and abundant expectoration of variable character, which may be "rusty" at first, but soon tends to become muco-purulent or purulent. Tubercle bacilli and elastic tissue may be detected after a time in the sputum. There is considerable pyrexia, especially in the afternoon or at night; usually accompanied with profuse sweating, repeated shivering in many cases, rapid wasting, and great debility. Notwithstanding the fever, the appetite is frequently remarkably good. Occasionally the symptoms tend to assume a "typhoid" character. *Physical signs* at the outset often merely resemble

those of bronchitis or pulmonary congestion. Afterwards there will be indications of consolidation, softening, or excavation in various parts, these being often most marked towards the bases, namely, deficient resonance or dulness; bronchial or hollow breath-sounds; crackling or crepitant râles, followed by large, moist, and often ringing or metallic râles; and increased vocal fremitus and resonance. Pleuritic friction-sound is also heard in many cases; and sometimes there are marked signs of pleuritic effusion.

In acute pulmonary tuberculosis the symptoms are those of very high fever, with marked prostration and adynamia; extremely hurried breathing; and more or less cough; but there are no marked *physical signs* in connection with the lungs, only *râles* indicative of pulmonary congestion and oedema being observed. There may be evidence of the formation of tubercle in other parts.

Diagnosis.—An acute phthisis, commencing as such, or following a sudden hæmoptysis, is as a rule speedily recognized by the local and general symptoms, and the physical signs of rapid and progressive pulmonary consolidation and destruction. When it supervenes upon what appears to be an ordinary acute pneumonia, the recognition of the case as a phthisical one can only be arrived at by watching its progress. Acute pulmonary tuberculosis of the disseminated type may be difficult to diagnose with certainty at first, but the course of events will generally soon clear up any obscurity. This form is more particularly liable to be mistaken for certain fevers, especially typhoid fever, but in typical cases the distinctions are sufficiently obvious. The detection of tubercle bacilli or elastic tissue in the sputum, and the occurrence of tubercle in other parts, may materially assist the diagnosis. Bacilli may not, however, be discovered for some time. It must be mentioned, moreover, that sometimes acute phthisis is very insidious in its progress.

Prognosis.—Acute phthisis is a very grave complaint, and, according to the ordinary definition, invariably ends fatally. At the same time cases do occur in which the clinical phenomena very much resemble those which are observed in acute phthisis, but recovery ensues. Moreover, phthisis may set in as an acute disease, afterwards subsiding into a chronic form of the complaint.

Treatment.—The treatment of cases of acute phthisis is mainly symptomatic, and much discrimination is necessary as to the measures which are adopted, an over-active treatment often doing much harm. All kinds of lowering measures are to be avoided; and a supporting and stimulating plan of treatment is invariably indicated. If there is no special indication a simple effervescent mixture, with a small excess of carbonate of ammonium, may be given. If there is high fever, full doses of quinine or other *antipyretics* may be tried judiciously, and the application of cold carefully employed. Various symptoms, such as pain, cough, dyspnoea, hæmoptysis, sweating, and sickness, often need attention, and these must be dealt with on ordinary principles. Local applications to the chest, in the form of poultices, sinapisms, turpentine fomentations, blisters, or preparations of iodine, are serviceable when properly employed. The internal administration of *antiseptics*, or the employment of *antiseptic inhalations*, might be serviceable in some cases, but these agents must be used with due care. I have occasionally known the progress of what threatened to be a case of acute phthisis distinctly checked by a change to certain of the sea-side health-resorts in this country, to the Engadine in Switzerland, or to Colorado.

II. CHRONIC PHthisis.

Anatomical Characters.—The *post-mortem* appearances observed in the lungs in chronic phthisis present great variety in different cases, according to their duration, the actual nature and extent of the morbid changes, the presence of non-phthisical lesions, and other circumstances. At the same time the processes which take place in these organs in the development of the disease are of a fairly definite character, and it is desirable at the outset to give a brief description of their nature and progress.

The primary morbid condition in the development of chronic phthisis is *consolidation* of some kind, and according to the view now generally accepted, this is always at the outset of a tubercular nature. Miliary tubercles form, which are seen in the form of both grey and white nodules, either separate, or more frequently collected in groups or clusters. There are differences of opinion as to where these tubercles originate, but they appear to develop first in the interstitial tissues, especially the alveolar walls, and the peribronchial, perivascular, and sub-pleural tissues. They subsequently encroach upon the air-vesicles and the channels of the small bronchi. Their structure has been sufficiently discussed in the chapter on TUBERCULOSIS. Rindfleisch holds that the earliest lesion of phthisis is a tubercular infiltration of the angles and projections of the terminal bronchi at their junction with the alveoli. Associated with tubercles, often from an early period, are pneumonic conditions, chiefly of the catarrhal or broncho-pneumonic type, accompanied with accumulation of epithelioid cells in the alveoli and smaller bronchi. In some instances considerable areas of uniform consolidation are evident, presenting a variable appearance, sometimes resembling red hepatization, in other cases appearing as a gelatinous-looking, homogeneous, smooth infiltration. This consolidation is regarded as pneumonic, which surrounds tubercular foci, or is set up by the direct action of the tubercle bacilli.

The tendency in the early phthisical consolidation of the lung, whatever its exact nature may be, is towards caseation and disintegration, either rapidly or more or less gradually. This has been attributed to the direct action of the tubercle bacilli or their products; to crowding of cells in the air-vesicles and minute bronchi; or to obstruction of the blood-supply through the small vessels. As a result of caseation considerable changes in the appearance and characters of the affected parts are produced. They become yellowish-white or yellow, opaque, and more or less soft and friable. The caseous change in miliary tubercles gives rise to the so-called "yellow tubercles;" but a similar appearance may be produced by a section of a bronchus or of alveoli, the contents of which have undergone fatty degeneration. Not uncommonly caseous areas of considerable size are seen scattered in phthisical lungs. When the disease is limited, there can be no doubt but that a caseous nodule or small mass may liquefy, and be subsequently entirely removed by absorption or expectoration, a complete cure being thus ultimately effected, only a scar remaining. In other cases it becomes surrounded by a firm fibrous capsule, which cuts it off from the rest of the lung, and then becomes inspissated and firmer, or may subsequently undergo calcification, a hard calcareous body taking its place, sometimes termed a "lung-

stone," which may be expectorated later on. Around these arrested or cured lesions of phthisis, however, miliary tubercles are not uncommonly observed, firm and sclerosed. Such tubercles are also abundantly disseminated in the lower parts of the lungs in many cases of chronic phthisis, where the upper portions are destroyed more or less extensively.

In the large majority of cases of pulmonary tuberculosis, however, the processes of consolidation and caseation, instead of being arrested, pass on to destructive changes, in which the lung-tissues and morbid products break down, with the formation of *cavities*, *excavations*, or *vomicae*, accompanied by ulceration and suppuration. Pulmonary cavities vary greatly in number, size, form, and other characters. They may be sublobular, lobular, lobar, or even involve the whole of one lung ultimately. They increase in size by the gradual necrosis of their inner wall; by the fusion of adjacent excavations; and by their encroachment upon fresh bronchial territories. When lobular, an excavation is roughly spherical; irregular vomicae may arise from the coalescence of many lobules, simultaneously involved; but the ultimate shape of cavities chiefly depends upon the peculiarities of the bronchial distribution to the district affected. During their active progress their walls are soft, irregular, rough, and ulcerous; subsequently a surrounding fibro-vascular zone forms, the innermost portion constituting a pyogenic layer at first, and subsequently an exfoliating false membrane. A knobbed condition of the internal surface of cavities is not uncommon. Vomicae generally contain muco-purulent or purulent matter, or sometimes a thin, dirty, shreddy, and foetid liquid; blood may also be present. Trabeculae frequently traverse them, consisting of blood-vessels and of collapsed or indurated alveolar tissue. The surrounding structure may be normal alveolar substance, inflamed and thickened tissue, infiltrated with tubercle, or of a fibrous nature. Vomicae above a very small size always open into one or more bronchi, but the communication may be temporarily or permanently closed. These tubes ulcerate at an early period. Often two sets of bronchial orifices may be observed in cavities, the proximal and the distal. They open abruptly, either directly or slantingly, and present circular or oval orifices, indicated by small islets of mucous membrane. With regard to the vessels, the trabeculae always contain vascular branches, either patent or obliterated. Branches of the pulmonary artery also ramify in the walls. The vessels are more resistant than all the other structures, and thus may be completely exposed, even while the circulation through them continues. Moreover, they often become the seat of small aneurisms or "ectasias," which may attain the size of a pea or small bean, or even that of a walnut. As a rule these aneurisms occur simultaneously in different parts of the same lung; they may undergo spontaneous cure if in very small cavities. The vessels are very liable to rupture, either from mere erosion, or at the seat of one of the aneurisms; thus fatal haemorrhage may occur, but a pulmonary aneurism is sometimes cured by the pressure of extravasated blood.

In most cases of chronic phthisis more or less *interstitial pneumonia* is set up, which often materially aids in arresting and repairing the mischief resulting from the disease. As already stated, it arises in the neighbourhood of consolidations and caseous products, sometimes forming dense capsules around them, or originating indurated masses; and also around cavities, which are then said to be *encapsulated*. Such vomicae

may subsequently gradually contract and finally close up, leaving only an indurated pucker'd cicatrix. Complete obliteration, however, is rare. There is also a retraction towards the root of the lung often observed, partly due to inflammatory thickening and clustering of the bronchi. In some very chronic cases of phthisis the affected portions of the lungs may present nothing but fibroid induration, with cavities in various stages of contraction.

Seat of phthisical lesions.—It is a well-known fact that phthisis in the large majority of cases begins in the region of the apex of the lung, and if not arrested advances progressively downwards, until ultimately the whole of the organ becomes involved. In exceptional instances, however, it originates at the base or in some other part. The extension of the disease is partly due to inhalation into the bronchi of morbid materials containing the bacilli.

Dr. Kingston Fowler has studied the progress of pulmonary phthisis from above downwards, and finds that, in the majority of cases, it follows distinct routes. In the upper lobe the primary lesion is not, as a rule, at the extreme apex, but from 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch below, and nearer to the posterior and external borders; here it spreads downwards, and Dr. Fowler says that on this account examination in the supra-spinous fossa will often give evidence of phthisis before signs appear in front. Anteriorly the original mischief corresponds to a spot just below the centre of the clavicle. It extends in front, along a line running about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the inner ends of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd interspaces. A second less common primary site corresponds on the chest-wall with the 1st and 2nd interspaces below the outer third of the clavicle. In the downward extension the outer part of the upper lobe is chiefly involved. On the right side affection of the middle lobe usually follows that of the upper lobe. The first implication of the lower lobe is about 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the posterior extremity of its apex, corresponding on the surface of the chest to a spot opposite the 5th dorsal spine. From this point the lesion spreads downwards and laterally along the line of the interlobular septa, which corresponds to the vertebral border of the scapula when the hand is placed on the opposite scapula and the elbow raised above the level of the shoulder. Extension from one lung to the other does not usually take place until the apex of the lower lobe of the one first affected has been attacked.

In the large majority of cases when death results from chronic phthisis both lungs are involved, though not to the same extent. Moreover, the morbid changes are of a very mixed character, and differ much in different parts of the same organ. Thus it often presents, from above down, cavities in all varieties and stages, with fibrotic changes in the upper region; tubercular, pneumonic, and caseous areas in the middle portion; and abundant miliary tubercles lower down, many of which are firm and sclerosed; while the base may be quite healthy.

With regard to the distribution of *tubercle bacilli*, they are said to be always present in freshly formed pulmonary tubercle, but are often absent in older nodules. In caseous formations their distribution is irregular; where caseation is beginning, or where softening is going on, bacilli are often seen in great numbers, but in old and firm caseous masses none can be found as a rule. As these masses are infective, however, it is supposed that they contain abundant spores. The bacilli are observed in great abundance in the walls of cavities in process of formation, and in their contents, especially when the destructive process is rapid; but are

few or absent in the case of cavities with fibrous walls. In the fibroid material they cannot be detected. Another organism, named *micrococcus tetragenum*, has been described in the walls of tubercular cavities, which is said by Koch to assist in the destructive process.

In addition to the diverse appearances in the lungs resulting from the combination of conditions already described, these are generally further modified by their association with bronchitis, or with tubercular disease or ulceration of the bronchi; dilated bronchi; emphysematous patches; areas of pulmonary collapse; extravasations of blood or their remains; or recent pneumonia. Pleuritic adhesions and thickenings are always evident, especially at the apices, where a dense fibrous cap is often formed, which may be half an inch or more in thickness, but it is not uncommon to find a lung adherent in its whole extent. In these adhesions new vessels are developed by extension from the intercostals, and thus a communication is formed between the latter and the vessels of the lungs. In some cases there is pleuritic effusion or empyema. Pneumothorax or pyo-pneumothorax may be met with as complications.

Other structures besides the lungs and pleurae are generally found to be involved in cases of death from phthisis, but these will be mentioned under its complications.

Symptoms.—Chronic phthisis presents considerable variations in its clinical history, as regards its mode of onset and subsequent course, as well as in its actual symptoms, though these bear a general resemblance in the different cases. The disease may commence quite suddenly, as by an attack of haemoptysis; or may remain after some acute illness; or may come on acutely or subacutely, afterwards becoming chronic; or may set in gradually and insidiously. In the last class of cases the pulmonary symptoms are first observed in some instances, especially those indicative of bronchial catarrh; in others signs of constitutional disturbance, or of derangement of the digestive organs. The symptoms may be described as *local* and *general*.

1. *Local.*—*Pains* in some part of the chest, and about the sides, are common in phthisis, though not usually severe. They seem generally to be either pleuritic or muscular in origin, the latter being often the result of cough. Local pain in the region of one apex is sometimes complained of. Some form of *dyspnoea* is generally present more or less, from various causes, but may be entirely absent. Respirations are usually increased in number, rising somewhat towards evening. Shortness of breath on exertion is very commonly complained of, and it may be the first symptom noticed by the patient. Of course when the lungs are extensively diseased breathing is much affected. *Cough* is an essential symptom of phthisis, and may for some time be the only one that attracts attention. In its severity and characters it differs widely, and that by no means necessarily according to the extent of the disease. It also varies much in the same case at different times. At first it is often short, dry, and hacking. An abnormal condition of the throat or larynx not infrequently gives rise to or aggravates the cough, which in the latter case is generally of hoarse quality. It is usually worse on first lying down at night; after sleep, especially in the morning; and after food. A paroxysm is often terminated by vomiting, especially after a meal. *Expectoration* soon occurs in most cases, but much of the sputa frequently comes from the bronchial tubes, which are the seat of catarrh. Their characters and amount present much variety, and they alter considerably during the course of a case. At first they consist merely of clear

mucus, or sometimes small opaque pellets are discharged; subsequently they become muco-purulent; and when cavities form, irregular, opaque, airless masses are often expectorated, more or less green or greenish-yellow, which when discharged into water present a flocculent or woolly surface, and usually rapidly sink, while on a flat surface they spread out in the form of a coin, hence named "nummulated." This kind of sputum may, however, be observed in mere bronchitis. The masses are mingled with more or less bronchial mucus. In some cases mere pus is expectorated, and occasionally a quantity of matter is suddenly discharged, owing to the opening of a cavity. The sputa often have an unpleasant odour, and they may be extremely offensive, but this is quite exceptional. In favourable cases, even after large cavities have formed, expectoration gradually diminishes, and may ultimately cease altogether. General examination of the sputa may reveal evident caseous or calcareous particles. Microscopical examination may show alveolar epithelium; abundant granular or pus-cells; blood-corpuscles; numerous fat-granules and oil-globules; calcareous granules; micro-organisms, especially tubercle bacilli, but also micrococci, bacteria, or fungi; and in many instances fragments of the lung-tissues, particularly elastic fibres. These are best made out by the method recommended by Dr. S. Fenwick, namely, by boiling the sputum with an equal quantity of a solution of caustic soda (gr. xv to $\frac{5}{3}$ i); pouring the product into a conical glass which is filled with pure water; and carefully examining microscopically the deposit which forms in a very shallow cell. Sometimes, however, they can be recognized by the naked eye in a very thin layer of expectoration pressed between two glasses, and may then be picked out for microscopical examination.

The detection of *tubercle bacilli* in sputum is now regarded as an important factor in the diagnosis of phthisis, and examination for these organisms is commonly adopted as a routine measure. Several methods are recommended for their demonstration, but it must suffice to give here a general outline of the process.

In the first place it is desirable to select the little opaque spots or patches which are usually to be found in phthisical sputum. These are first crushed between two cover-glasses by gentle pressure, the glasses being then separated by sliding them apart, and dried, either spontaneously, or by holding them between the fingers and passing them to and fro above a flame. When quite dry, each glass is held in a forceps with the prepared side upwards, and passed rapidly through the flame of a spirit-lamp or a Bunsen's burner, in order to coagulate the albumen and fix the sputum. The subsequent process consists in floating the specimen on a special staining-solution; washing in dilute nitric or sulphuric acid, and afterwards in distilled water; again floating in another staining-solution, and washing in water; and examining under the microscope, either while still wet, or after mounting and drying. The chief differences in the several methods recommended for detecting tubercle bacilli are in the staining-solutions used. Ehrlich employs as his two solutions either one of methyl-anilin violet, followed by one of eosin or Bismarck-brown; or an aniline-fuchsine solution, followed by one of methylene-blue. Heneage Gibbes recommends a simple and rapid method, which consists in double-staining the cover-glass preparations, by immersing them for five minutes in a special stain containing rosaniline hydrochlorate, methylene blue, and aniline, previously warmed, and then washing in methylated spirit. Neelsen's solution

consists of fuchsine with carbolic acid and alcohol; and for the second solution he uses methylene-blue.

Hæmoptysis in relation to phthisis demands special notice. This symptom is observed to a greater or less degree in the large majority of cases of this disease, but it is by no means essential. Hæmoptysis is sometimes the first indication of the presence of this disease. The amount of blood may range from mere tinging of, or streaks in the sputa, to a quantity sufficient to prove immediately fatal, but death directly due to hæmoptysis is in reality an exceptional event in phthisis. The haemorrhage is more likely to be abundant after cavities have formed, especially if minute aneurisms exist. Sometimes blood is intimately mixed with muco-purulent material. The hæmoptysis is frequently, but not necessarily, brought on by some exciting cause, such as a violent cough, or mental disturbance. In certain cases it tends to be repeated, and may become almost periodic, and to such cases the term *haemorrhagic* has been applied by some writers. When not abundant, the loss of blood seems to afford relief sometimes, but usually the effect of hæmoptysis, if in any quantity, or if frequently recurring, is to make the patient weaker and more anaemic.

2. *General*.—The general symptoms of phthisis, while very definite in their nature, also present great variety in their degree and combinations, not only in different cases, but in the same case at different times. Often the disease can be recognized at a glance in the aspect of the patient; but in many instances the appearance is in no way characteristic; and there may be no general symptoms whatever when a case of chronic phthisis happens to come under observation.

Pyrexia is a most important symptom in cases of phthisis, and one which should always be looked for by the systematic use of the clinical thermometer. This instrument gives valuable aid in detecting an early stage of the disease, and in indicating its degree of activity. As a rule marked daily variations in temperature are observed, the highest point being usually reached in the afternoon between 2 and 6 o'clock, but the pyrexia presents no typical course. At some period of the day it is often quite normal, or even subnormal. Moreover, in cases of even extensive chronic phthisis there may be no increase of temperature whatever, if the complaint is not active. Very low temperatures have been recorded in some cases. During the progress, but especially towards the close of many cases of phthisis, hectic fever in its most typical form is observed; and it is not at all uncommon for patients to have more or less marked febrile paroxysms, sometimes simulating ague. The statement that the temperature is higher over the part of the chest corresponding to a diseased lung than on the opposite side is not borne out by careful observations.

Night-sweats are complained of in the large majority of cases of phthisis during some part of their progress. They tend to come on especially towards early morning, but not infrequently set in as soon as the patient falls asleep, and are not uncommonly so excessive as to saturate even the bed-clothes, causing much distress and exhaustion. Sweating from slight exertion is also often noticed; or it may occur at any time of the day should the patient fall asleep. This excessive perspiration is either the termination of a febrile paroxysm, the result of weakness, or associated with deficient blood-aeration. Sometimes the skin is unnaturally dry, or the palms and soles of the feet burn. *Loss of flesh* is another prominent symptom in pulmonary consumption, being depen-

dent chiefly upon the pyrexia. This must be determined by frequent weighing, and no reliance ought to be placed on the mere statement of the patient. The emaciation is ultimately often extreme, and it is a matter of common observation that it is more marked about the body and limbs, and especially the chest, than in the face. The fat disappears; and the muscles feel flabby and wanting in tone. The chest-muscles are often very irritable on percussion—*myoedema*. More or less *anaemia* is frequently observed, and there may be *œdema* of the legs from this cause. At the same time the “hectic flush” may be evident. In many advanced cases of phthisis the skin becomes dry and scaly. Among other external appearances which may be noticed in some instances are greyness of the hair over the chest; lankiness and falling-off of the hair generally; and bulbousness of the finger ends, with incurved or cracked nails. Ultimately the patient sometimes becomes more or less cyanotic.

Phthisical patients almost always complain of *debility*, varying from mere languor, disinclination for exercise, and easily induced fatigue, to the most absolute helplessness and exhaustion. The pulse is increased in frequency in most cases, sometimes considerably, and tends to be quick, abrupt, and wanting in tone; it may be either full or small.

The *digestive organs* are generally out of order. Impairment or loss of appetite and dyspeptic symptoms are often complained of. Sometimes the mouth, tongue, and throat are red and irritable, this being accompanied with signs of subacute gastritis. The tongue is frequently more or less furred. Thirst may be a prominent symptom. Not only is vomiting common after cough, but now and then the stomach is extremely irritable, retching and vomiting being immediately excited when anything is taken. The breath has in not a few cases of phthisis a very peculiar odour, which is quite characteristic. At the close thrush is not infrequently observed. It has been stated that phthisical patients have a peculiar dislike to, and difficulty in the digestion of, fatty substances, but there is no real foundation for this statement. Constipation is the rule at first, and may continue throughout, but in many cases there is after a time a tendency to diarrhoea, on account of implication of the intestines. A red line along the gums, and transverse cracking of the teeth have been described as significant symptoms of phthisis, but they are frequently absent, and are not at all characteristic.

Consumptive patients are inclined to be irritable and fretful. As a rule they are remarkably hopeful—*spes phthisica*, and even when near the end cannot realize their condition, but imagine that they will recover. It has also been affirmed that certain personal peculiarities become more marked as the disease progresses—patients who are naturally gentle becoming more gentle, those who are rough becoming more rough.

The *urine* is liable to be more or less febrile during the active progress of phthisis in its early stage, and to contain excess of the products of tissue-change. Finally it becomes watery and deficient in solids. Albumin or sugar may be present apart from actual renal disease or diabetes. The *menstrual junctions* are often imperfectly performed, or entirely in abeyance.

Physical Signs.—The *physical signs* which may be met with in cases of pulmonary phthisis are due to:—1. Primary consolidation, either in the form of disseminated or aggregated miliary tubercles, or of a definite pneumonic mass. 2. Softening of this consolidation. 3. Cavities in the

lungs in various conditions. 4. Fibroid change, which produces induration and shrinking of lung-tissue. 5. Associated conditions, especially pleuritic adhesion or sometimes effusion, bronchitis, dilated bronchi, emphysema, pneumonia, haemorrhage into the bronchi, and pneumothorax or pyopneumothorax. It has been customary to divide phthisis into three stages when describing the physical signs, namely, those of *consolidation*, *softening*, and *excavation*, but these are usually more or less combined in the same case, while evidences of curative changes are commonly observed, which may be regarded as a fourth stage. The extent over which the morbid signs are perceived varies considerably, and they are usually present in different stages over different parts of the chest, so that in many instances they are of a very complex nature. As a rule, physical examination reveals that the disease has started in the vicinity of one apex, and it may remain limited to this region for some time, but not uncommonly both apices are affected when the patient first comes under observation. It must not be forgotten, however, that the mischief may commence in some other part of the lung, even at the base, and therefore every part of the chest must be duly investigated if there is any suspicion of the existence of phthisis. In doubtful cases it is very important to examine carefully the whole of the infra-clavicular region and the supra-clavicular fossa in front; as well as the supra-spinous fossa and the interscapular region posteriorly. Fowler states that "in the great majority of cases, when the physical signs of the disease at the apex are sufficiently definite to allow of the diagnosis of phthisis being made, the lower lobe is already affected." In order to determine the progress of the morbid changes, repeated examination at more or less frequent intervals will be required.

It is very difficult to give any definite and comprehensive description of the physical signs of chronic pulmonary phthisis, and certainly they cannot be satisfactorily grouped under the several stages, except so far as the description can be applied to a particular area of the chest. To understand properly any individual case, it is necessary to have a systematic knowledge of the signs which are associated with the several conditions already mentioned, and to utilize this knowledge intelligently in relation to the examination of the thorax as a whole, and of its different regions corresponding to portions of lung in which these conditions are variously combined. Moreover, the state of the superficial coverings must also be taken into account, especially if they are much wasted; as well as that of the chest-wall itself, which tends in chronic cases of phthisis to become more or less rigid and inelastic.

Signs of early phthisis. In an early case of phthisis, beginning in the neighbourhood of the apex of either lung, the signs to be looked for are those of slight or moderate consolidation, both anteriorly and posteriorly, exhibiting a tendency to softening or breaking down. A distinction has been drawn between *tuberculous deposit* and *consolidation* (which have, indeed, by some writers been named the first and second stages respectively), but it is seldom practicable, in my opinion, to recognize such a distinction. The evidences of disease at this time to be carefully studied are:—1. *Depression* in the supra- and infra-clavicular regions. 2. *Deficiency* or *lateness* of *expansion* during deep inspiration, or sometimes even an unusual *sinking-in* above the clavicle. 3. Increase of *vocal* and *tussive fremitus*. 4. *Impairment of resonance*, with *rise in pitch*. This sign may sometimes be brought out more clearly by gentle direct percussion over the clavicle in front, or in

the supra-spinous region posteriorly. At first, however, it may be impossible to recognize any definite change in the percussion-note, but then a difference between the two sides may perhaps be made out when the patient is directed to take a deep breath and hold it. Tenderness on percussion may be of some significance, but cannot be relied on as a rule. 5. Changes in the *respiratory sounds*. The vesicular murmur may be deficient; or there is interrupted, jerky, or wavy breathing, which is sometimes of "cogged-wheel" rhythm; or the respiratory sound is harsh, with prolonged expiration; or, if there is definite consolidation, it becomes distinctly bronchial or blowing. 6. *Adventitious sounds*. Râles may be present from a very early period, due to different causes, usually of small or medium size, dryish, of crepitant or crackling character; becoming more distinct, larger, and more moist or actually liquid as softening takes place, or small cavities form. Occasionally a local *friction-sound* is heard. 7. Increase of *vocal* and *tussive resonance*. A cough also often brings out râles which are not audible during respiration. 8. Unusual conduction of the *heart-sounds*, when the right apex is affected.

In the ordinary run of cases the signs just briefly sketched become more and more distinct, and subsequently those of definite cavities develop, which may pass on to signs of contraction and fibrosis. A similar course of events goes on progressively in other parts of the lung first affected, and often in the opposite one. When both apices are involved at an early period of a case of phthisis, the physical signs may not be so easily recognized, as they are abnormal on both sides, and therefore no comparison can be made between a diseased and a healthy lung. As the changes advance they become more and more pronounced, extensive, and complex. It will be desirable to point out separately the signs which are more or less characteristic of the presence of cavities; and subsequently to give a general summary of the phenomena observed in a well-marked or advanced case of chronic phthisis.

Signs of cavities.—These vary considerably, according to the size, shape, number, and situation of the cavities; as well as with the state of their walls, their contents, the condition of the surrounding tissues, and other circumstances. It will be readily understood that vomicæ in the lungs may exist without any, or with only doubtful evidences of their presence; and, on the other hand, a careless observer might mistake signs which simulate those associated with cavities; but such excavations can generally be detected when once formed, and by careful attention to, and adequate study of the *physical signs*, a tolerably accurate conclusion may be arrived at as to their conditions, while by examination from time to time the progressive changes may be noted, excavations being thus often traced in their formation, enlargement, contraction, and almost complete closure. The following are the important signs of cavities:—

1. *Percussion-sound* may be tubular, metallic, cracked-pot, or very rarely amphoric. A change in the pitch of the percussion-sound, produced on opening the mouth, with change of posture, or on deep inspiration, has been described as a characteristic sign of a cavity. It must be noted, however, that in a large majority of cases of phthisis percussion does not help in the detection of cavities, the sound elicited being more or less dull throughout. 2. *Breath-sounds* are either blowing, or more or less hollow, ranging from tubular to cavernous or amphoric. Inspiration has a peculiar sucking or hissing character sometimes. 3. The chief

significant *adventitious sounds* are large moist râles at the apices, where there are no bronchi of any size; consonating râles, of hollow, metallic, or ringing character, varying in size, amount, and quality, being sometimes actually gurgling; and very rarely metallic tinkling, amphoric echo, or the bell-sound. 4. *Vocal resonance* may have a ringing or metallic character, and is often greatly intensified. Pectoriloquy and whispering pectoriloquy are of frequent occurrence. 5. *Tussive resonance* is often painfully strong and metallic, but cough is chiefly useful in that it may cause the breath-sounds to be better heard, by clearing away morbid products or emptying a cavity; or that characteristic adventitious sounds are brought out during or after the act, which, however, it may require very careful attention to recognize. 6. The *heart-sounds* are sometimes much intensified by transmission through cavities, and may acquire a peculiar hollow quality, or be attended with an echo. The cardiac action occasionally elicits râles in neighbouring cavities. 7. It is said that a *murmur* may be heard in rare instances over a vomica, due to an aneurismal dilatation involving a branch of the pulmonary artery, but I have never met with such a sign.

Signs of advanced phthisis.—Taking a comprehensive view of a pronounced case of chronic phthisis, the following outline will indicate the signs likely to be met with, and will suggest the points to be noted in the physical examination of the chest:—1. The *superficial structures* are usually more or less wasted, and may present extreme emaciation. 2. As regards *shape* and *size*, the thorax may be congenitally small, being either alar or flattened, but in a large proportion of cases it is originally in every respect well-formed, though subsequently it tends to become more or less generally contracted. It also sinks in locally or extensively, and a considerable proportion of one or both sides may ultimately be retracted. There is often a lowering of the corresponding shoulder when one apex is much involved. In prolonged cases a splendid chest may become a complete wreck. The two sides are never symmetrically altered. 3. *Respiratory movements* are more or less deficient, especially that of expansion, often extensively, but not equally on the two sides. 4. *Vocal fremitus* is always modified, generally intensified over the seat of disease, but may be diminished or absent. It often presents marked differences over different parts of the chest. 5. *Percussion* reveals various degrees of deficient resonance, which may culminate in the most absolute hard wooden dulness; with more or less resistance. Over the clavicles the sound is frequently purely osteal. The area of pulmonary resonance is often diminished towards the neck, showing that the apex of the lung is contracted. Percussion-signs of cavity are only exceptionally met with. 6. *Respiratory sounds* differ greatly in different parts, and may be weak to complete extinction; jerky or of "cogged-wheel" rhythm; harsh, with prolonged expiration; bronchial or blowing; or of various "hollow" qualities. Over healthy lung-tissue they are often puerile. 7. The *adventitious sounds* which may be heard are of great variety, and include those indicative of bronchial catarrh or local congestion; collapse-râle in the neighbourhood of consolidation; dry, followed by moist crackling or crepititation, or even by somewhat bubbling râles, significant of softening; or râles associated with definite cavities. 8. *Vocal* and *tussive resonance* are usually exaggerated over phthisical portions of lung; where there is much fibroid tissue, however, they are diminished. 9. Localized *pleuritic friction* or *creaking* is frequently observed. 10. The *heart* may be drawn

up considerably, as well as uncovered by lung, in chronic phthisis affecting the left apex, the pericardium being adherent externally, so that the impulse is extensive and strong, and the sounds are loud and superficial. The conduction of the heart-sounds towards the right infra-clavicular region, and their relation to cavities, has already been alluded to. Rarely the heart is lowered, or it may be displaced laterally, especially towards the right side. 11. A *subclavian murmur* is not uncommon, especially on the left side, due to pressure by thickened pleura on the subclavian artery. 12. The *diaphragm* and *liver* or *stomach* are sometimes drawn up, owing to contraction of either lung, in cases of advanced chronic phthisis.

MECHANICAL PHTHISIS.—It will be convenient to notice here a special class of cases of phthisis, which are due to the inhalation of solid particles of various kinds floating in the air, in connection with certain occupations. To this group of pulmonary complaints thus produced Zenker has proposed to apply the term *pneumonokoniosis*. The chief substances inspired are charcoal or coal-dust; cotton or flax; oxide of iron; and siliceous or clayey materials. As already stated, these forms of phthisis have been specially named, either according to the nature of the occupation—as colliers', miners', stonemasons', knife-grinders', and potters' phthisis; or of the cause of irritation, chiefly including carbonaceous phthisis or *anthrakosis*, cotton-phthisis, iron-phthisis or *siderosis*, and stone-phthisis. In these cases the pulmonary changes at first are merely those of bronchial catarrh, followed by peri-bronchitis, with morbid changes in the bronchial walls, emphysema, chronic catarrhal and interstitial pneumonia, and ultimately the formation of tubercles. The lungs break down, and cavities are produced, the changes almost always progressing gradually from apex to base, and usually one lung being affected before the other. These organs become more or less black, not only in carbonaceous phthisis, but also in other forms, which is attributed to the fact that, owing to the presence of bronchitis, the ciliary action of the mucous membrane is interfered with, and particles of carbon inhaled in dust and smoke are not driven back, but are deposited in the pulmonary tissues. The *symptoms* and *physical signs* are at first merely those of bronchitis and emphysema, and it is generally a long time before those of phthisis become developed, while they vary much according to the conditions present. The course is always very chronic. In the expectoration more or less of the inhaled substances are often present; and in anthrakosis the sputa may be perfectly black.

Complications.—Numerous symptoms and physical signs which occur in the course of pulmonary phthisis are due to the *complications* so often met with, many of which are associated with the development of tubercle in other structures. The chief of these include:—Affections of the larynx and trachea, chiefly tubercular; bronchitis, pneumonia, or pleurisy, simple or tubercular; perforation of the pleura, with consequent pneumothorax or pyo-pneumothorax; pericarditis or endocarditis; tuberculosis of the external absorbent glands, or of those in the chest or abdomen; tubercular peritonitis; tubercular ulceration of the throat or tongue; tubercular disease of the intestines, especially the ileum; fatty liver; albuminoid disease of liver, spleen, intestines, or other organs; fistula in ano; various forms of Bright's disease; tubercular disease of the urinary apparatus, or of the genital organs; diabetes; Addison's disease; tubercular meningitis, tubercle in the brain or spinal cord,

cerebral abscess, or thrombosis of the cerebral sinuses rarely ; thrombosis of the veins of the leg ; and lupus.

Course—Duration—Terminations.—The course and duration of chronic cases of phthisis are subject to much variety. The disease may progress steadily from bad to worse, either rapidly or gradually, but more commonly there are intervals of improvement followed by exacerbations. Some cases remain apparently in the same state for a long time ; whilst others, even when advanced, improve and may ultimately become practically cured. It is sometimes quite astonishing what a length of time consumptive patients live, when apparently almost in a moribund condition. Death may take place from gradual asthenia and hectic fever ; from syncope rarely ; from haemoptysis occasionally ; from different complications, which generally aid in bringing about the fatal result ; from uræmia ; or from some intercurrent attack.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis of chronic phthisis implies not only the recognition of the disease, but also as correct a knowledge as can be obtained of its exact nature and origin ; its seat and extent ; its activity ; the morbid changes in different parts of the lungs ; and the condition of other structures. These questions can only be determined by a careful consideration in each case of the history of the patient ; of the existing symptoms, both local and general ; of the signs revealed by physical examination ; and of the results of the examination of the sputa. The detection of *tubercle bacilli* and of elastic tissue in the expectoration is important, and the constant presence of bacilli in numbers is believed to be a sign of activity, as well as of the existence of cavities. It must be remembered, however, that they cannot always be detected, even when the physical indications of phthisical mischief are obvious enough.

To attempt to discuss the diagnosis of pulmonary phthisis in all its practical aspects is out of the question in a work of this kind. Anyone can recognize the disease when advanced ; in many early cases it requires great experience to detect it ; while it may become well-established even before there is any reason to suspect its presence. Hence it is incumbent on medical practitioners to be always on the look-out for the complaint, and to examine at frequent intervals any patient in whom there is any reason to anticipate its development, or in whom any suspicious symptoms persist. It is especially necessary to guard against diagnosing a case as merely bronchitic when it is in reality phthisical. On the other hand, the mistake must be avoided of regarding every emaciated patient as phthisical.

Prognosis.—The ability to form a reliable prognosis in phthisis can only be acquired by much practice and observation ; and even the most experienced are liable to make frequent mistakes. There is now ample evidence to prove that this disease may in certain cases be completely arrested or cured ; while in a large proportion its progress may be greatly delayed by appropriate treatment, and life rendered fairly comfortable. It is difficult, and does not serve any useful purpose, to lay down any average *duration* or *mortality*, these varying so much under different conditions. In endeavouring to arrive at a prognosis, the chief circumstances to be taken into account are as follows :—1. *The stage, seat, and extent of the disease.* At an early period a hopeful opinion is warranted as a rule, though at the same time it should be a guarded one. When cavities have formed the prognosis is very much worse. If the disease is limited to one apex, even should there be a cavity, its arrest is quite possible. The prognosis is more serious in proportion to the

extent of the mischief, and the number of excavations, especially if both lungs are involved. Basic phthisis seems to be comparatively unfavourable. 2. *The progress of the local lesions.* Signs of rapid progress, either as regards the extension of the disease, or a tendency to softening and destruction of tissues, are very unfavourable; on the other hand, if the disease is chronic or at a standstill, or if, should a cavity have formed, there are indications that it is drying up and contracting, the prognosis is much more hopeful. Signs of considerable local induration from interstitial pneumonia are often favourable, as showing cessation of active disease, and the advance of healing processes. 3. *Origin and nature of the disease.* Distinct primary tubercular phthisis is extremely serious; when the complaint follows bronchial catarrh or other local chronic disease, or is associated with certain obvious external causes, from the influence of which the patient can be removed, there is a far better chance of recovery. 4. *Constitutional condition and hereditary predisposition.* Phthisis is more dangerous if the patient is feeble and delicate, but especially if there are evidences of the existence of a pronounced tubercular or scrofulous diathesis, or if there is a strong hereditary tendency to phthisis. 5. *Local symptoms.* Continued marked dyspnoea; harassing cough; profuse expectoration; and severe or repeated haemoptysis are unfavourable indications. 6. *General symptoms.* Phthisis is more serious in proportion to the degree, continuous type, and prolonged course of pyrexia; rapidity and weakness of pulse; debility and incapacity for exercise; emaciation, and night-sweats. If the general condition shows signs of improvement, the pyrexia ceasing, and flesh and weight being gained, the prospect is much more hopeful. 7. *State of the digestive organs.* Inability to take food or to digest it is a most serious drawback in phthisis. Cases in which vomiting is a prominent symptom are also exceedingly unfavourable. 8. *Diet and hygienic conditions.* Deficient or non-nutritious food, and improper hygienic conditions are most injurious in cases of phthisis. Many inpatients of the Brompton Hospital revive wonderfully, simply as the result of the improvement in their diet and surrounding circumstances. 9. *Complications.* Several conditions belonging to this category seriously increase the gravity of the prognosis in phthisis, and hasten the fatal result, such as intestinal ulceration, laryngeal phthisis, or Bright's disease; and certain complications, for instance, pneumo-thorax, or, rarely, intestinal perforation, may be the immediate cause of death.

The question is often asked in advanced cases of phthisis—How long is the patient likely to last? It is dangerous to attempt to give more than an approximate opinion on this point, as there is so much uncertainty in individual instances. The appearance of thrush in the mouth is generally a sign of the “approach of the end.” Another question refers to the effects of pregnancy. Usually this condition seems to delay the disease for a time, so far as my experience goes; but after parturition it generally advances with increased rapidity, though there are some remarkable exceptions to this rule. Marriage in the case of phthisical persons should certainly be opposed.

Treatment.—The ultimate objects to be kept in view in the treatment of phthisis are:—First, its prevention; secondly, its arrest and cure; or, failing these, thirdly, palliation of symptoms and prolongation of life. Every case requires thoughtful consideration, and it must not be imagined that this is a disease capable of being controlled by any one remedy or class of remedies. An essential part of the treatment, how-

ever, is that which has for its aim the maintenance and promotion of a state of general good health and constitutional vigour. The principles of management, and the chief measures to be adopted, may be conveniently discussed under certain heads.

1. *General hygienic and dietetic treatment.*—This is of the utmost importance, both for the prevention and cure of phthisis, and if it is neglected all other measures are usually unavailing. The chief things required under this head are a healthy residence, on a dry soil, in a suitable climate, elevated, but well-protected from cold winds, with pleasant scenery, and sufficient but not too abundant vegetation; free ventilation, especially as regards the sleeping apartments; fresh air and exercise, so far as the powers of the system will permit; the avoidance of crowded places at night, and of all causes which are likely to excite pulmonary affections; the wearing of warm clothing, with flannel or other suitable material next the skin; the employment of cold or tepid baths, if they can be borne, with friction afterwards; the administration of as nutritious a diet as can be assimilated, which should contain a good proportion of fatty constituents; and the avoidance of all injurious habits, such as intemperance, excessive smoking, or sexual excess. The question of climate will be separately considered. It is often requisite to enquire into the occupation of the patient, and to change this, should it entail either prolonged confinement in a close room, a bent or cramped posture, deficient exercise, or exposure to the exciting causes of lung-diseases. At the same time the patient should, if possible, be relieved from undue mental labour, anxiety, or worry. The amount and character of the exercise to be adopted must vary in different cases, but as a rule such exercises as aid in the expansion of the chest are to be recommended, especially in young patients, though they must be kept within proper limits. Walking and riding are useful, and if these cannot be endured, passive exercise is to be enjoined, the patient being driven out daily when the weather permits, so that at least an adequate supply of fresh air may be obtained. At the same time over-fatigue must be avoided. Certain acts which bring into play the muscles of respiration are often beneficial, such as taking deep inspirations, reading aloud, or moderate singing. Systematic respiratory gymnastics, when properly carried out, are of the greatest service, especially in the prevention of phthisis. Anything that interferes with the freedom of the respiratory movements, as the pressure of tight stays, or a bent position, ought to be forbidden. From this point of view, the wearing of different kinds of apparatus which fix and compress the chest is often highly injurious. Milk is a most valuable article of diet, and asses' or goats' milk has been regarded as especially efficacious in phthisis. Whey has also been well spoken of in this disease. In many cases a little wine, beer, or stout is very beneficial.

2. *Preventive measures.*—In addition to what has been stated under the preceding heading, there are certain points which demand special notice in relation to the prevention of phthisis. In all cases where there is any fear of this complaint being developed, attention should be paid to the slightest indication of pulmonary disorder. Indeed symptoms connected with the respiratory organs should never be neglected, and undoubtedly such neglect is partly to blame for not a few cases of phthisis. Further, any acute exacerbation should receive immediate consideration; but at the same time it is very important in most cases to avoid lowering measures under such circumstances, and to preserve the strength of

the patient as much as possible, rest in bed being temporarily enjoined. Of course everything which is likely to excite direct irritation of the respiratory organs must be strictly guarded against. Phthisical patients should sleep alone, if practicable; and if others must sleep in the same apartment, particular attention should be paid to having a good-sized and well-ventilated bedroom. In any case this should be kept well-aired, and very clean. Consumptives should be warned against swallowing their expectoration; spitting about the streets, on the floor, or into a fire-place or washing-basin; or collecting the sputum in handkerchiefs, if practicable, but if these are used they should be changed daily or more frequently, and scalded before being washed. The sputum ought always to be received into a vessel containing some disinfectant, and due care must be taken as to its subsequent disposal, while the vessel itself is also thoroughly disinfected when emptied. A pocket-flask and other simple vessels have been invented for receiving expectoration, which phthisical patients may carry about with them. Handkerchiefs made of paper and other inexpensive materials are also now commonly employed, which can be burnt after use. Attention is further necessary as regards the disinfection of the hands, clothing or bed-linen, or other articles which have been contaminated by phthisical sputum or other discharges. Apartments which have been occupied by consumptives should be thoroughly cleansed and, so far as is practicable, disinfected; it is desirable to have as little furniture as possible in such apartments. Wet dusters should be used in dusting. The possibility of tuberculosis being conveyed by meat or milk must be borne in mind, and many think that it is safer always to boil milk. An elaborate plan of disinfection and destruction of sputa is now carried on at the Brompton Hospital. The disinfectant used is carbolic acid solution (1 in 20).

3. Before proceeding to the active treatment of any case of phthisis it is of the greatest consequence to look to the state of the *digestive organs*. Unless digestion is carried on properly, all other means are of little or no avail; and here it must be mentioned that regularity of meals, and other rules upon which healthy digestion depends, should receive due consideration. Appetite must be promoted, if necessary; and should any form of dyspepsia be present, the appropriate remedies must be administered. Should there be signs of gastric irritation, a combination of a preparation of bismuth with bicarbonate of sodium and hydrocyanic acid frequently proves very beneficial; effervescent mixtures are also useful in some cases. The bowels are often confined, and some mild *aperient* must then be given, so that they may be opened daily.

4. *Medicinal treatment*.—Various *tonics* and other medicines which improve the appetite, the general health, and the quality of the blood, are very serviceable in different cases of phthisis. Of these the principal are the dilute mineral acids; quinine; different preparations of iron, especially if the patient is anaemic; strychnine; and vegetable bitter infusions or tinctures, such as those of gentian, calumba, chiretta, quassia, or cascara. These may be given in suitable combinations, but must be used with judgment and discretion.

Among the many therapeutic agents specially recommended for phthisis, cod-liver oil demands the first consideration. Almost universal experience has testified to its good effects in this disease, but it is not in any sense a specific, and by-no-means suits every case. There are certain

practical points relating to its administration which may be noticed here. Only a small dose should be given at first, not too often repeated. A teaspoonful once or twice a day is sufficient to commence with, the dose being increased by degrees to a tablespoonful three times daily. It is seldom desirable to exceed this quantity. Most patients take the oil best immediately or soon after a meal, and if it tends to disagree, lying down for a short time after taking it will not infrequently prevent any ill-effects. Some can manage it best when going to bed at night. It is always well to make use of some vehicle for administering the oil, even when it can be taken alone, but the quantity of this should not be large. It may in many cases be given with the mixture ordinarily taken, if this is of a bitter or acid nature; or with steel-wine, or syrup of phosphate or iodide of iron. Milk, orange wine, frothy stout or ale, or a little cold brandy-and-water are among the most suitable vehicles. When the oil repeats or causes sickness, it is often well borne when given with lime-water and milk in equal parts, some of which may also be drunk after it. For children it may be made into an emulsion or mixture according to the following formula, which is employed at the Brompton Hospital:—R Ol. morrhuae 5 vi, Liq. potassae m xl, Liq. ammon. fort. m ij, Ol. cassiae m j, Syrupi 5 ij; dose, two teaspoonfuls. Sometimes it can be conveniently administered in capsules. Small doses of strychnine have been found very useful in preventing the nauseating effects of the oil. It is most important to see to its quality, especially at the outset, otherwise a patient may acquire an unsurmountable antipathy to cod-liver oil. During its administration the diet must be carefully attended to, and should not be of too rich a character. If it appears to disagree with the digestive organs, it may be temporarily stopped, especially during hot weather. The introduction of cod-liver oil by inunction or enema is not to be recommended. Several preparations containing this oil are now made, such as the etherized oil, or a combination with quinine, hypophosphites, or extract of malt. Morrhoul, a substance obtained from cod-liver oil, is now much employed instead of the oil itself. Numerous substitutes have been advocated, but only glycerine and cream are deserving of notice.

Space will only permit the enumeration of some other agents which have obtained a kind of special reputation in the treatment of phthisis, namely, pancreatic emulsion; hypophosphites of calcium, sodium, and iron; phosphate of calcium; extract of malt or maltine; iodide of potassium; iodide of iron; chloride and sulphide of calcium; arsenic; verbasium thapsus or the great mullein plant; and koumiss. Although most of these agents are useful for certain purposes, which they respectively serve, they are in no sense to be looked upon as specific remedies.

5. Local treatment.—Applications to the chest are decidedly useful in many cases of phthisis, either for the relief of symptoms, or possibly for the purpose of influencing certain morbid processes and conditions in the lungs. The most serviceable are sinapisms; small or flying blisters; applications of iodine, more or less powerful and extensive; and irritating liniments containing croton oil, turpentine, acetic acid, chloroform, or ammonia. In acute exacerbations fomentations and poultices are often required. Friction is often decidedly beneficial, and for this purpose camphorated oil may be used. In some cases the application of strapping over parts of the chest, in order to procure

mechanical rest, has a beneficial effect as regards the progress of phthisis, as well as in relieving symptoms.

6. *Symptoms and complications.*—Various symptoms frequently need attention during the course of a case of phthisis, but it is impossible to do more here than suggest indications for their management, most of them being considered in detail in other parts of this work. The control of pyrexia when the temperature is inclined to be high is a matter for serious consideration, but demands much discretion. Quinine in full doses, alone or combined with digitalis; salicine or salicylates; phenazone, acetanilide, phenacetin, and similar agents are usually employed, and are of service in suitable cases. Sponging the skin, or the employment of other methods for applying cold, may prove beneficial in some instances. Debility and wasting will be counteracted by the general treatment already indicated, as well as by subduing the fever. When there is much exhaustion, considerable quantities of alcoholic and other stimulants are required. The chief remedies employed for night-sweats are oxide of zinc, gr. ij-v, in the form of pill or powder given at night, either alone or combined with extract of belladonna or morphine; extract or tincture of belladonna alone, or subcutaneous injection of atropine; a combination of morphine and atropine in pill; a full dose of quinine or gallic acid; ergot, or subcutaneous injection of ergotin; arseniate of iron; picrotoxine, gr. $\frac{1}{60}$ in pill; muscarine ($\frac{m}{v}$ of a one per cent. solution); pilocarpine; and agaricus or agaricin. In some cases I have found that night-sweats were best checked by the administration for a few days of a mixture containing quinine, alum, and dilute sulphuric acid. Sponging the upper part of the body carefully with vinegar and water is sometimes useful. Pains about the chest are often relieved by the local applications already mentioned, or by wearing some anodyne or warm plaster. In a considerable number of cases much pain in the side is complained of from time to time, either muscular or pleuritic, and this is almost invariably relieved by strapping the side more or less extensively; under certain conditions the local application of cotton-wool supported by a bandage is very serviceable. Cough is often a most troublesome symptom in phthisis. It is by no means always desirable to stop it, but its management must be guided by the amount of expectoration, the discharge of which is to be encouraged, or its quantity diminished, by means of the usual remedies. Should cough require to be relieved, it is always advisable first to attend to the state of the throat and larynx. Local applications of tannic acid or chlorate of potassium, or various astringent gargles or lozenges, are often most beneficial. Ice is frequently of much service; as well as simple demulcent lozenges, or oxymel. If the cough is irritable, sedatives are valuable, especially preparations containing opium, morphine, codeine, hydrate of chloral, bromide of ammonium, belladonna, or chlorodyne, some of which may be combined. These are best given in the form of lozenges, syrups, or linctuses, but must always be cautiously used. Among other remedies specially recommended for cough in phthisis are tincture of gelsemium, lactic acid, and prunus virginianus. Sedative and other inhalations are in many cases extremely serviceable in relation to cough, particularly if the larynx is affected. Antiseptic inhalations are also very valuable in certain conditions, and especially if the expectoration is purulent and offensive. Dyspnoea and haemoptysis must be treated according to ordinary principles. Vomiting is sometimes a very

distressing symptom in phthisis; if the ordinary remedies fail, small doses of strychnine should be tried, and its effects are in some cases most satisfactory. Koumiss may also be very useful. Diarrhoea, if due to ulceration of the bowels, is frequently very difficult to check. Carbonate of bismuth, gr. v-x, with Dover's powder, gr. iiij-v, is often a useful combination, or a bismuth and opium mixture may be given; but enemata of starch and opium are most to be relied upon in obstinate cases. Coto bark and its active principles have been specially advocated in the treatment of the diarrhoea of phthisis. *Antiseptics*, such as creasote or glycerine of carbolic acid, may assist in controlling this symptom, or improving the character of the stools. Sulpho-carbolate of sodium has been found beneficial in the treatment of dyspepsia, with much flatulence. Other symptoms and complications must be attended to as they arise.

7. *Change of climate and sea-voyages.*—This is a most important subject in relation to the treatment of phthisis, but for detailed information the reader is referred to special works on the subject. It must be insisted upon, however, at the outset that to order change of climate or a sea-voyage for every patient suffering from this complaint is a grave mistake, and each case demands careful consideration on its own merits. Undoubtedly in many instances "home-treatment" is far preferable. In selecting a suitable climate, the chief points to be attended to are that it is not liable to either extreme of temperature; that the air is pure and not too moist; that the soil is healthy; and that there is no likelihood of sudden changes, of exposure to cold winds, or of continued unfavourable weather. It is always well also as far as possible to choose a place rendered attractive by bright sunshine, pretty scenery, and pleasant company, with suitable recreation and amusements. One most important object to be kept in mind in selecting a climate is that the patient may be enabled to be out in the open air as much as possible. The salutary influence of high altitudes upon phthisis has now been thoroughly established, and in appropriate cases a residence in mountainous health-resorts during the winter proves most beneficial. The aseptic character of the air in these regions is an important element in their usefulness. The exact qualities of the climate suitable for any individual case will depend upon a variety of circumstances, which cannot be discussed here. The principal sea-side places to which phthisical invalids resort are the Isle of Wight, especially Ventnor with Undercliff, and Shanklin, Bournemouth, Torquay, Hastings, St. Leonards, Eastbourne, Seaford, Penzance, Falmouth, Worthing, Sidmouth, Weymouth, Cromer, Southport, Grange, Clevedon, Tenby, and Queenstown in this country; Hyères, Cannes, Nice, Monaco, Mentone, Bordighera, San Remo, Alassio, Palermo, Malaga, Malta, Algiers, Madeira, West Indies, and the Azores, among foreign parts. The Canary Isles have now come into great repute, especially Teneriffe and Las Palmas. Among inland regions, Pau, Pisa, Upper Egypt, Syria, and parts of Australia, New Zealand, or South Africa are chiefly resorted to; or if high altitudes are desired, the Alps, Andes, Himalayas, or the Mexican mountain ranges afford the requisite conditions. Among the places which are especially in favour as winter health-resorts, on account of their mountain-climate, must be mentioned Davos Platz, St. Moritz, and Wiesen. Corsica and Sicily are also favourably spoken of as winter resorts.

Sea-voyages, especially to Australia, New Zealand, or the Cape, or up the Mediterranean, are most useful in suitable cases of phthisis, but they should not be recommended if the disease is too far advanced, and there are many points that require consideration. The purity of the air is doubtless one element in the benefit derived from sea-voyages. In not a few instances, provided the disease is in an early stage, a permanent change of residence to some more genial climate is desirable, such as the Cape, certain parts of the Australian Colonies, New Zealand, or Colorado.

A large number of patients are unable to avail themselves of the benefits to be derived from a change of climate, although, thanks to the various hospitals and sanatoriums established in many sea-side places in this country, these advantages are more widely disseminated at present than they were formerly. If during the winter months patients are prevented by circumstances from residing in a suitable locality, they should keep indoors as much as possible in bad weather and at night, or in some cases entirely; and should avoid every cause of cold. The use of some covering over the mouth and nostrils is often of great service, and a respirator may be required, but these appliances must be employed judiciously. Men suffering from consumption may with advantage allow their beard and moustache to grow.

8. *Special treatment.*—Innumerable special modes of treatment have been advocated for the cure of phthisis, but it need scarcely be said that most of them have no rational foundation whatever. It will suffice to mention without any comment treatment by the “cramming” system, in which large quantities of food are forced into the stomach, either with or without the aid of the stomach-pump; by massage; by mineral waters, especially the sulphur springs of Eaux Bonnes, Cauterets, etc., and the arsenical waters of Mont Dore, Royat, and La Bourboule; by compressed air; by the inhalation of oxygen or nitrogen; and by electricity. The so-called “grape-cure,” “milk-cure,” and “whey-cure” may also be alluded to in this connection, according to which the disease is supposed to be cured by the consumption of large quantities of grapes, milk, or whey respectively.

The *antiseptic* treatment of phthisis deserves separate notice. This plan aims specially at destroying or checking the growth and development of the *tubercle bacilli*, or increasing the resisting power of the pulmonary tissues, and thus arresting or curing the disease. While fully recognizing the great value of antiseptics in cases of phthisis, I have never been able to attribute to them any such definite specific influence, and certainly their employment requires in every case to be carried out with discretion and common-sense, while at the same time other indications must not be neglected. Antiseptics are chiefly administered internally or by inhalation. Other methods advocated are by exposure of the body to antiseptic vapours; rectal injections of gases or other agents; subcutaneous inoculation; intra-laryngeal injections; and injection into the foci of disease in the lungs themselves, or in their vicinity.

The principal *antiseptics* administered internally are creasote, which may be given in capsules, or is sometimes advantageously combined with cod-liver oil or glycerine, beginning with 1 minim three times a day, and gradually increasing the dose, if it agrees, to 8 or 10 minims; guaiacol; carbolic acid or sulpho-carbolates; benzoate of sodium; thymol; tannic acid; terpene; iodoform; garlic; myitol; sulphurous

acid or sulphites; and sulphuretted waters impregnated with carbonic acid. Inhalation may be effected to some degree by merely impregnating more or less the air which the patient breathes with some volatile antiseptic, such as carbolic acid, creasote, tar, turpentine, or iodine. Saucers containing carbolic acid or iodine may be placed in the vicinity of a patient suffering from consumption; or wet cloths impregnated with antiseptics may be suspended; while instruments have also been devised for the purpose of diffusing antiseptic vapours or sprays in rooms or hospital-wards. The benefit supposed to be derived from a residence in districts where there are pine-forests is attributed to the volatile materials diffused in the atmosphere. The more direct methods for bringing antiseptic agents into contact with the respiratory organs are by inhalation with steam; by the use of a spray-inhaler; by inhaling vapours; or by the employment of some form of "respirator-inhaler," so that the agent used may be inhaled for a considerable time, or even continuously. The chief antiseptics thus employed are carbolic acid, creasote, a two to five per cent. solution of benzoate of sodium in spray, thymol, oil of peppermint or menthol, oil of eucalyptus, camphor, oil of pine, turpentine (especially useful where there is excessive secretion or a tendency to haemoptysis), terebene, solution of tar in rectified spirit, iodine, iodoform dissolved in ether, iodide of ethyl, chlorine, tincture of benzoin, sulphurous anhydride derived from burning sulphur, a spray of solution of sulphurous acid, hydrofluoric acid spray, and ozone. Some of these agents may be used in combination, and they may also be advantageously mixed with spirit of chloroform or ether in some cases. Prof. Germain Séé has introduced a special method of treatment, in which he places the patient in a compressed-air cabinet containing fumigations of creasote and eucalyptus, for from three to six hours daily. Menthol mixed with olive oil (1 to 10) has been recommended for intra-laryngeal injection in cases of phthisis. Calomel, biniodide of mercury, and other mercurial preparations have been advocated, both internally and by inhalation of the fumes, as bacillicides in phthisis.

Tuberculin treatment.—Although at the present time this method of specific treatment has practically fallen into disuse, at any rate in relation to pulmonary phthisis, it demands brief notice, if only as an illustration of the irrational ideas which are widely prevalent even in the medical profession as to the cure of this disease. Tuberculin is a glycerine extract of pure cultivations of tubercle-bacilli, which contains a chemical product of these organisms. Its introduction by Koch in 1890, with the excitement associated therewith, and the subsequent disappointment at its failure, are not likely to be speedily forgotten. This substance was injected subcutaneously, in increasing doses as it became more tolerated, judging by the degree of "reaction" produced, until a maximum dose was reached. Koch explained the action of tuberculin, not by destruction of the bacilli, but by its setting up inflammatory and necrotic changes in the surrounding tissues, which rendered these organisms harmless, and arrested their development and further progress. Not only has this method of treatment proved to be useless in the large majority of cases of phthisis, but it may be very dangerous, and, therefore, if employed at all, should be practised with the greatest caution. A substance named *tuberculocidin*, obtained from tuberculin, has been spoken of more favourably, but experience certainly does not at present commend any method of treatment of this

kind. The same may be said of the subcutaneous injection of cantharidate of potassium, goat's blood, dog's serum, and other vaunted "specifics."

9. *Operations.*—The question of emptying and draining pulmonary cavities through the chest-wall by surgical treatment may in exceptional cases be worthy of consideration, but only under special conditions. The actual removal of portions of diseased lung has been practised, but, in my opinion, can hardly be recognized as a legitimate method of treatment under any circumstances.

CHAPTER XVIII.

MORBID GROWTHS IN THE LUNGS.

In this chapter it is proposed to discuss briefly the morbid formations met with in the lungs which have not yet been considered, and they may be taken in the following order:—1. CANCER. 2. SYPHILITIC DISEASE. 3. RARE MORBID FORMATIONS.

I. CANCER OR CARCINOMA—MALIGNANT DISEASE.

Aetiology.—Cancer of the lungs, which is exceedingly rare, is by far most common from 40 to 60 years of age; and more males are affected than females. There may be a hereditary tendency to malignant disease. In the large majority of cases pulmonary cancer is secondary, especially following cancer of the bones or testicles; but it may result from direct extension, or be primary in its origin. The morbid condition generally extends so as to involve neighbouring parts; but is very rarely followed by secondary cancerous formations in other internal organs.

Anatomical Characters.—Cancer in the lungs, in its typical form, is said to be a *cylindrical-celled carcinoma*, growing from the bronchial epithelium; and it is often extremely soft, pulpy, and vascular. A considerable deposit of black pigment is occasionally observed, constituting *melanotic cancer*.

Secondary cancer assumes almost always the nodular form, and affects both lungs; the nodules vary much in size, and when situated at the surface tend to be depressed; by their union a lung may be involved throughout. *Primary* cancer is usually confined to one lung, especially the right, and is often infiltrated. After a time the cancerous material undergoes fatty degeneration and softening, cavities being formed in some cases; and extravasations of blood into the substance of a growth are common. The vessels and bronchi are often either involved in the disease, or obliterated by pressure. The unaffected portions of the lung-tissues may be normal, or various morbid changes may be set up in them. A cancerous lung feels remarkably heavy. The pleura is often involved, and extensive pleuritic adhesions are usually observed. The bronchial and other neighbouring glands are frequently implicated.

Symptoms.—Secondary cancer tends to come on insidiously, without any subjective symptoms. I have seen a case in which the left lung was involved almost throughout, and the right also extensively, the only symptoms being, occasional cough, and shortness of breath on exertion. In primary cancer there is usually localized pain in the chest, which may be extremely severe, of a lancinating character, and accompanied with tenderness. Cough is generally present, attended in some cases with a peculiar expectoration, in the form of a substance resembling "red or black-currant jelly," or occasionally containing cancer-elements. Haemoptysis is very common, which may be profuse. Dyspnoea is generally observed, being especially severe if there are projecting nodules pressing on nerves, or if there is a mediastinal tumour, when other signs of interference with neighbouring structures are observed, such as enlarged superficial veins, œdema, or dysphagia.

The general symptoms are not usually so marked as might be expected. The cancerous cachexia may or may not be evident. Emaciation, fever, night-sweats, and failure of strength are generally present more or less, but they may be comparatively slight, especially in cases of secondary cancer. Wasting is sometimes extremely rapid in its progress when it has once commenced.

Physical Signs.—These will vary according to the form, seat, and amount of the cancerous accumulation; and whether it is associated with a mediastinal tumour or not. Where there are scattered nodules, there may be no signs, or only slight alterations in the percussion and respiratory sounds. If a lung is extensively involved with *nodular* cancer, being ultimately converted into a solid mass, the signs are:—1. Enlargement of the chest on the affected side, with widened and flattened spaces, the surface feeling unusually even, but without any sense of fluctuation. 2. Great deficiency or entire absence of movement. 3. Weakened or annulled vocal fremitus. 4. Absolute dulness, unaltered by position, with great sense of resistance. 5. Feeble or absent breath-sounds over a variable area. 6. Deficient or absent vocal resonance. 7. Displacement of heart or diaphragm; or unusual conduction of the cardiac sounds. In the *infiltrated* form the lung is contracted, and physical examination reveals:—1. Retraction of the side, with depression of the intercostal spaces. 2. Deficient movement, the spaces still acting more or less. 3. Increased, diminished, or absent vocal fremitus, according to the amount of consolidation. 4. Hard, wooden, high-pitched, or tubular percussion, which may extend across the middle line. 5. Bronchial, blowing, or feeble respiratory sounds. 6. Often intensified vocal resonance. 7. Displacement of the heart, either towards the affected or the opposite side, with intensification of the sounds; and drawing-up of the diaphragm. Ultimately there may be signs of cavities. In the non-cancerous parts signs of compensatory emphysema, bronchitis, or collapse are usually present.

Diagnosis.—When the lung becomes involved in secondary cancer in a marked degree, this can, according to my experience, generally be made out readily by physical examination, although the symptoms may be very slight. The signs to a certain extent resemble those of pleuritic effusion, but are really different; moreover, the history of the case, and a due consideration of the symptoms which usually appear in malignant disease, should remove any doubt. The exploring-needle might be used for diagnostic purposes, if required. Cases of primary cancer of the lung are often very insidious in their onset and course, and it may be

some time before the condition can be definitely recognized. When it leads to retraction of the side, it has to be distinguished from the remains of pleurisy, chronic interstitial pneumonia, certain cases of phthisis, and pulmonary collapse from obstruction of a main bronchus. As a rule such cases do not present any real difficulty in differential diagnosis, but occasionally there is more or less uncertainty, especially in the positive diagnosis of cancer. Pressure-symptoms, the occurrence of "currant jelly" expectoration, and the implication of glands in the neck, may materially assist in recognizing the disease.

Prognosis is necessarily fatal in cancer of the lung, death resulting either from local or general causes.

Treatment can only be palliative, the usual remedies being employed for the relief of symptoms as they arise.

II. SYPHILITIC DISEASE.

My own experience has led me to the conclusion that there is an important influence exercised by syphilis in the causation of ordinary phthisis in a certain proportion of cases. Clinical and pathological observations have, however, clearly demonstrated that occasionally the lungs are the seat of specific lesions of a syphilitic nature, which call for brief consideration as constituting one of the varieties of morbid growths found in these organs. They are usually associated with well-marked evidences of the effects of the disease upon other organs and tissues, the clinical results of which are often so prominent that they obscure the pulmonary affection. It has been suggested that a tubercular or scrofulous diathesis may aid in the development of these special manifestations of syphilis in the lungs.

Anatomical Characters.—In new-born or very young infants who are the subjects of congenital syphilis, a morbid condition of lung has been described under various names,—*syphilitic pneumonia, white hepatisation, epithelioma of the lungs*, etc., and attributed to the influence of the syphilitic poison. Its extent is variable, and one or both organs may be involved, but the disease presents a more or less diffuse or infiltrated character. In this condition the organ is distended, and in a state of full expansion, so that its surface may be marked by the ribs. The pleura is generally unaffected. The lung is very heavy, and the involved portion of its tissue is dense, firm, hard, and usually resistant, being of a white or yellowish-white colour, uniform and smooth on section. Little or no fluid can be expressed or scraped from the cut surface. The affected parts become bloodless, and the vessels disappear. On close examination of a section minute bands of fibrous tissue may be seen, running in all directions. Microscopically most observers have detected increase of the epithelial elements, which fill the small tubes and air-vesicles, but Wagner affirms that the epithelial lining is but little affected. All seem agreed that there is considerable thickening of the alveolar walls and minute bronchi, due to an imperfectly fibrillated and nucleated tissue, which undergoes degenerative changes. Prof. Greenfield has described minute bands of highly-vascular fibrous tissue running in all directions, and enclosing groups of alveoli. The walls of the vessels are also thickened, and in course of time their channels become obliterated.

The most characteristic morbid change recognized as being of a syphilitic nature is the presence of *gummata* in the substance of the lungs. They have been found in syphilitic infants, and also in adults, though rarely. There may be but one of these growths, or a variable number may be found scattered through the organs indiscriminately, though they are said to be more common in the deeper parts (Wagner). In size *gummata* in the lungs usually vary from a pea to a walnut, but they may attain the size of a large egg. They are generally rounded, well-defined, and often encapsulated. At first they appear greyish or brownish-red, homogeneous-looking, firm, and dryish. Like other *gummata* growths they tend to undergo degenerative changes, becoming yellow and caseous. Occasionally they soften in the centre, so as to form cavities. Microscopically their structure is found to consist of imperfect fibres, abortive nuclei, and a few fibre-cells, infiltrating the lung-structure, and thickening the alveoli; mixed with degenerative products.

Another condition usually believed to be due to syphilis, but about which there has been much dispute, consists in a *chronic interstitial pneumonia*, leading to fibroid infiltration of the lungs, variously distributed, and causing much induration. The bases and roots of these organs seem to be more affected than the apices. Often the growth starts from the surface, the pleura being in most cases thickened or adherent, and penetrates thence into the interior in the form of fibrous bands. The lung consequently presents superficial puckering and depressions. In other cases the morbid change appears to start from *gummata*, or from a chronic contracting peri-bronchitis, associated with ulcerative inflammation (Pye-Smith). It does not terminate in caseation, but ulceration or gangrene may occur. The involved bronchi become more or less dilated. Anatomically and histologically syphilitic fibroid infiltration cannot be distinguished from other forms of interstitial pneumonia, but probably the tissue is more vascular in the early stages. Dr. Green thinks that its mode of growth is more valuable in determining the nature of the pulmonary induration than its characters, and that it originates mainly around the small interlobular blood-vessels.

The bronchial tubes may be the seat of a fibro-nucleated growth infiltrating their sub-mucous tissue, or sometimes involving their deeper structures. They are also liable to ulcerations, similar in character to those met with in the larynx and trachea, and when these cicatrize, they cause more or less narrowing and thickening of the tubes, or even complete stenosis.

Symptoms.—In most cases syphilitic lesions of the lungs have only been found on *post-mortem* examination, either in newly-born children, or in individuals who have not presented any pulmonary symptoms during life. In some instances they have, however, been recognized clinically, and the data which might lead to the diagnosis of syphilitic disease of the lung would be a history of syphilis, or evidences of constitutional taint or of implication of other organs; accompanied with symptoms of chronic lung-disease, including haemoptysis at an early period; and *physical signs* indicating marked induration of the lung, especially if limited to one side and involving the middle or lower part of the organ. Signs of excavation may also become developed. The progress is very chronic; and there is little or no fever. Treatment may aid the diagnosis, if it should happen that marked improve-

ment follows the administration of anti-syphilitic remedies. If a main bronchus should be obstructed, serious interference with breathing is liable to arise.

Treatment.—This consists either in the employment of a mercurial course, or in the administration freely of iodide of potassium or sodium, the latter being the course of treatment usually indicated. Symptoms connected with the respiratory organs may need to be relieved.

III. RARE MORBID FORMATIONS.

Hydatids are occasionally found in the lungs, and they have been noticed in Australasia in these organs in disproportionately large numbers, as compared with other parts of the world. According to the tables prepared by the late Dr. Davies Thomas, of Adelaide, the ratio of lung to liver cases in Australasia is 1 to 4, while in Europe it is only 1 to $6\frac{1}{2}$. Hydatids may make their way from the liver into the right lung. They present the usual characters of hydatid-cysts, and may rupture and discharge their contents, or become inflamed and suppurate, forming pulmonary cavities. Their presence might be suspected if, along with signs of hydatids in other organs, *physical signs* were observed in connection with the chest, characteristic of localized accumulation of fluid. The expulsion of the hydatid membrane or of echinococci in the expectoration would be the only positive indication of the existence of hydatid disease of the lung, of which I have met with but one example. As the lung-structure becomes destroyed, the symptoms and physical signs assume the characters of pulmonary phthisis. Treatment must be conducted on general principles.

Sarcomata, lympho-sarcomata, enchondromata, osteomata, and myeloid tumours have also been found rarely in the lungs, as well as *haematomata*, but they have only been discovered usually at *post-mortem* examinations. *Actinomycosis* often involves the lung, but this subject has been already discussed in a separate chapter.

CHAPTER XIX.

DISEASES OF THE PLEURA.

I. ACUTE PLEURISY—ACUTE INFLAMMATION OF THE PLEURA—EMPYEMA.

ACUTE pleurisy is a disease of frequent occurrence, but varying much in its extent, in the exact nature of the pathological changes to which it gives rise, and in its effects in particular instances. Speaking generally, however, the cases may be divided into:—1. *Dry, fibrinous, or plastic*, in which there is merely a deposit of exudation upon the pleural surface, usually of very limited extent. 2. *Sero-fibrinous*, which includes the ordinary run of cases, where more or less fluid-effusion collects in the cavity of the pleura. 3. *Purulent*, specially termed *empyema*, in which pus forms and accumulates in this cavity. While recognizing

these divisions, it will be more convenient in this work to discuss acute pleurisy from a general point of view.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Of late years the views relating to the causation of acute pleurisy have undergone considerable modification, and it is now generally supposed to be set up in the large majority of cases by the action of micro-organisms. For practical purposes, however, we must still recognize the fact that it is developed under certain definite circumstances or conditions, which may be indicated as follows:—
1. *Direct injury*, as by a blow or wound from without; fractured ribs; perforation of the lung, with consequent entrance of air or pus; or rupture into the pleura of purulent or other accumulations in the chest or abdomen. 2. *General chilling* of the body, from exposure to cold, getting wet, or other causes. 3. *Local irritation*, or *extension* from neighbouring structures. In this category may be mentioned pleurisy associated with pneumonia, pulmonary abscess, infarction, or gangrene; that which follows pericarditis; and that which is set up by diseased bone, cancerous or other new growths, an aneurism, or neighbouring abscesses external to the chest, as in the neck, axilla, or breast, or sub-diaphragmatic. The relation of pleurisy to tubercle will be separately considered. 4. *Excessive effort*. The late Dr. Anstie believed that pleurisy might be due to “extreme muscular over-exertion and exertion in continuous public speaking,” and this seems to me to be quite possible. Moreover, I have long thought that the “stitch in the side,” which arrests the progress of many youths when they attempt to run, is really due to a limited dry pleurisy, the effects of which may be evident at a later period of life. 5. *Secondary*. Under this head may be included cases of pleurisy which occur in connection with various acute febrile diseases, especially scarlatina, typhoid fever, small-pox, or acute rheumatism; septicaemia or pyæmia, including puerperal fever; Bright’s disease; cirrhosis of the liver; cancer; or alcoholism. 6. *Tubercular*. It is now a very prevalent notion that the majority of cases of primary acute pleurisy are in reality tubercular. With this view I cannot agree, but there is undoubtedly a class of cases in which this affection reveals a tuberculosis, which afterwards speedily involves the lung, or a marked attack of pleurisy with effusion may supervene upon a very limited phthisis. Moreover, an effusion may be definitely associated with extensive miliary tuberculosis of the pleura. A chronic pleuritic change always accompanies chronic phthisis, but this will be considered later on. The conditions often remaining after an attack of pleurisy are very favourable to the development of tuberculosis. It is affirmed that the acute pleurisy which occurs as a secondary, and often terminal, event in chronic affections, such as cirrhosis of the liver, Bright’s disease, and cancer, is very frequently tuberculous (Osler).

Brief allusion must be made to the special circumstances under which *empyema* occurs. 1. It may be the result of a primary acute pleurisy, a sero-fibrinous effusion becoming gradually changed into pus, in some instances without any obvious reason; or the accumulation is more or less purulent from the first, which is probably usually the case in children, in whom empyema is of common occurrence. Aspiration for ordinary effusion may certainly be followed by this condition, unless due care be taken. 2. Pleurisy associated with infective fevers is not uncommonly purulent, especially scarlatina. It may also supervene in Bright’s disease. Pyæmic pleurisy will be necessarily purulent. 3. In relation to local conditions, empyema is likely to follow certain forms

of injury from without; gangrene or malignant disease of the lung; cancer of the oesophagus; and rupture of a vomica, or of any purulent accumulation into the pleura. It is stated that careful observations of late years have shown that many cases come on insidiously in the course of, or during convalescence from pneumonia. 4. A certain proportion of cases of tubercular pleurisy become purulent at an early period.

As regards the micro-organisms associated with pleurisy, pneumococci have been found in many instances in cases of empyema, and these, as a rule, run a favourable course. Streptococci are chiefly met with in secondary cases, associated with septic infection. In a few instances psorosperms have been found in the exudation. Tubercl bacilli are present in more or less abundance in connection with tubercular pleurisy.

Predisposing causes.—But little can be stated definitely on this point. Many would regard most of the causes already mentioned as merely predisposing the pleura to be attacked by micro-organisms. Pleurisy often occurs in persons apparently in excellent health; but it may certainly be predisposed to by debility and other general conditions. It is very common in children, but may occur at any age. Primary pleurisy appears to be most prevalent during the colder seasons of the year.

Anatomical Characters.—As already intimated, the exact morbid changes and products vary in acute pleurisy; while the extent of the disease also differs considerably in different cases.

In a good proportion of cases *dry* or *fibrinous pleurisy* occurs, which is generally limited to a very small patch, this being covered with exudation, an adhesion soon forming; but occasionally attended with extensive formation of lymph, with little or no fluid-effusion.

When acute pleurisy is at all extensive, and runs a regular course, it, like inflammation of other serous membranes, is characterized by the stages of vascularization; lymph-exudation; fluid-effusion; absorption; and adhesion. The costal pleura seems to be first affected as a rule. At the outset the anatomical characters include bright redness from capillary injection, often with spots of extravasation; cryness and loss of polish of the membrane; with thickening, cloudiness, and diminution in consistence. Then lymph-exudation covers the surface more or less extensively, varying in quantity and characters, and being usually stratified. A sero-fibrinous fluid begins to accumulate in the pleural sac, in some cases from a very early period, in which float fibrinous flocculi, its amount varying exceedingly, and it may be so abundant as to fill the sac completely, and distend the side of the chest to a great degree. It is usually of a yellowish colour, and either clear or slightly turbid. In exceptional cases it is dark brown. More or less blood may be present under particular circumstances—*haemorrhagic pleurisy*. Gas may also be found in the pleural cavity, which has not entered from without, being then probably due to decomposition. The epithelial cells of the membrane undergo proliferation, and the newly-formed cells are seen on microscopical examination in the exudation and fluid; leucocytes and red blood-corpuscles may also be present in the effusion in varying numbers. If the termination is favourable, the fluid is absorbed, much of the exudation is also taken up after undergoing degenerative changes, while the remainder becomes organized into adhesions and agglutinations, these also sometimes developing from papillary vascular growths which arise from the sub-epithelial tissue.

The effusion, however, is not always absorbed, or only partially, and persists more or less as a chronic condition; or it may return after removal by operation.

Empyema.—In this condition the pleural cavity contains a more or less sero-purulent or actually purulent fluid, which is either primary, or follows a simple sero-fibrinous effusion. Its quantity also varies greatly. It may present fibrinous flocculi; or be uniformly thick and creamy. Generally it has a sweetish odour, but may be more or less foetid. An empyema may point externally, or burst in various directions. It seems probable that the fluid portion of the pus may be absorbed in course of time. The pleural membrane tends to become greatly thickened in chronic cases; and erosions may be evident on the costal surface. When morbid inflammatory products are left behind in the cavity they are liable to become caseous, or may even calcify; and this particularly applies to the remains of pus.

In cases of marked pleurisy there is generally more or less exudation into the subserous cellular tissue. In exceptional instances pus has been found in the lymph-channels beneath the pulmonary layer of the pleura; external to the parietal layer, infiltrating the intercostal muscles; or in the mediastinal cellular tissue. In most instances the interlobar serous surfaces are involved, which may ultimately lead to agglutination of the lobes of the lung.

When fluid of any kind collects in the pleural cavity it affects neighbouring structures more or less seriously. The lung, if not previously consolidated, is first floated forwards and relaxed, and afterwards compressed, the lower lobe being first affected, until ultimately it becomes completely airless and carnified. If the pressure is soon removed, the lung will expand again; otherwise it is in danger of being rendered permanently useless, or of undergoing further destructive changes.

When there is abundant effusion, the neighbouring organs will be found displaced, especially the heart in cases of left pleurisy. This is partly due to pressure: partly to elastic traction on the part of the lung which is free to act. Dr. Douglas Powell affirms that the axis of the heart can never diverge beyond the vertical line, or only to a very slight degree, so that the apex does not point to the right, which is contradictory of the statements made by other observers. Osler, as the result of his observations, also states that there is no rotation of the apex of the heart, which in no case was to the right of the mid-sternal line; and that the relative position of apex and base is usually maintained. The right side of the heart and general venous system are often overloaded. In right-sided pleurisy with effusion the liver is depressed in various degrees.

There are a few special peculiarities to be noted in relation to the distribution and localization of the morbid changes in pleurisy, which are occasionally met with. It may be mainly or entirely *diaphragmatic*, this being usually a "dry pleurisy," but a circumscribed effusion, sero-fibrinous or purulent, may form on the surface of the diaphragm. *Loculated* or *encysted* pleurisy is also met with in other parts of the pleura sometimes, especially in empyema, the fluid being limited by old adhesions or by recent lymph, and there may be many such accumulations communicating with each other. A collection of fluid sometimes forms between the lobes of a lung. In the large majority of cases pleurisy only affects one side, but occasionally it is *bilateral*.

Pleurisy is not uncommonly associated with other morbid conditions, either in the chest, or in some remote part. Cerebral abscess appears to be not uncommon as a consequence of empyema.

Symptoms.—In all serous inflammations the symptoms observed may be of three kinds, namely, first, those directly due to the affection of the membrane itself, and of the tissues immediately adjoining; secondly, those resulting from the mechanical interference with the neighbouring organs and structures produced by the inflammatory products; and, thirdly, those indicating constitutional disturbance. Much variety is presented in the intensity of the symptoms of pleurisy, and that by no means in proportion to the gravity of the complaint. In those instances where there is merely a localized patch of "dry pleurisy," the one prominent symptom is a painful sensation usually described as a "stitch in the side," which may be very severe, increased by breathing deeply or coughing, as well as often by pressure, the patient being disposed to lean towards the affected side, which is kept as much at rest as possible. There are no general symptoms. Painful or unpleasant rubbing sensations during respiration may also be the only symptoms experienced in extensive dry pleurisy.

A typical case of *acute primary pleurisy with effusion* has the following clinical history. At the outset chills are generally felt, not of a severe character; accompanied or soon followed by certain *local* and *general symptoms*.

Local.—Acute pain is felt, usually in the infra-mammary or infra-axillary region, of a dragging, catching, or stitch-like character, increased by breathing or coughing, and often attended with superficial or deep tenderness. The sharpness of the pain is often evidenced in the expression, posture, and mode of breathing of the patient. Respiration is carried on in a hurried, shallow, and irregular manner, but there is no actual dyspnoea at first, and the number of respirations is rarely above from 30 to 35 per minute. Later on evident dyspnoea is observed, should much fluid be poured out, which varies in its degree, being in some cases very severe or even urgent, and it may amount to orthopnoea. Cough is generally present, though the patient tries to repress it: it is short and hacking, generally dry, or at least unattended with any characteristic expectoration. Sometimes a cough is excited by making the patient sit up or bend forward. At first the patient usually prefers to lie on the affected side, but later on there is no uniformity, for it is not uncommon to see patients with one pleura full of fluid habitually rest on the healthy side.

General.—Pyrexia is observed, but the temperature is not high as a rule, and has no typical course. The pulse is frequent, varying usually from 90 to 120, full and bounding, but very compressible. The pulse-respiration ratio is altered somewhat, but not to any marked degree. There is but little, if any, prostration. Disturbance of the digestive organs, headache, and other symptoms associated with the febrile state are present in various degrees. The urine may be slightly albuminous.

In favourable cases of pleurisy the symptoms subside in a few days, and the effusion becomes more or less speedily absorbed. Should this event not happen, the only remaining symptom in many instances is more or less shortness of breath, even when there is abundant fluid in the pleura. The formation of pus is said to be indicated by repeated rigors, but certainly this is not always the case. Fever, however, is likely to be higher, and more persistent, but irregular; and will probably be

accompanied with sweating, progressive wasting and anaemia, and increasing weakness. Perforation into the bronchi is attended with profuse expectoration of purulent fluid, which may be repeated at intervals.

Varieties.—It is very important to notice that extensive pleuritic effusion may occur without any particular symptoms attracting attention to the chest—*latent pleurisy*; and this event is especially liable to happen in secondary pleurisy, or when the complaint occurs in children, but it may be observed in any case. The occurrence of empyema in young subjects may only be indicated by general symptoms, such as gradual wasting, a peculiar anaemia, an earthy complexion, weakness, irregular fever with sweating, and clubbing of the finger ends. *Bilateral pleurisy* is necessarily a serious condition, and if at all extensive, is likely to be attended with dangerous dyspnoea. *Diaphragmatic pleurisy* gives rise to very severe pain around the lower part of the chest; and also interferes markedly with the act of breathing, which becomes entirely thoracic. It is said that the pain is intensified by pressure at the point of insertion of the diaphragm to the 10th rib. Attacks of severe dyspnoea and of an anginal nature have been described in diaphragmatic pleurisy.

Physical Signs.—In the early stages of pleurisy, or in the *dry* variety, the only reliable physical signs are:—1. *Diminished respiratory movements* on the affected side, on account of pain. 2. *Friction-fremitus*, which is comparatively rare. 3. *Friction-sound*, at first slight and grazing, but becoming much louder when lymph has been deposited. These friction-signs are usually limited, it may be to a small area; but they may be observed more or less extensively over the side.

The signs attending the stage of *fluid-effusion* are usually quite characteristic, being, however, considerably modified by the quantity of the fluid, and its mode of accumulation. As a rule the evidences of effusion are first observed over the lower part of one side of the chest, and they extend upwards more or less rapidly. 1. The side becomes *enlarged* to a variable degree, and the spaces are often specially affected, being either flattened or bulged out. In some instances it may be desirable to use the *cyrtometer*. 2. *Movement* is diminished or almost completely annulled. 3. *Vocal fremitus* is deficient or absent below, in excess above, unless the pleura is full of fluid; there being frequently an abrupt transition from the one condition to the other, particularly in front. 4. *Fluctuation* may occasionally be detected by digital examination. 5. *Percussion-sound* is dull over the area of the fluid. Beginning below, the dulness may ultimately extend over the whole side, and beyond the middle line for some distance. If the patient has assumed the recumbent posture at an early period, dulness is sometimes noticed over the whole of the back, before any alteration in percussion-sound is observed in front. It may possibly be movable with a change of posture of the patient; this is not a reliable sign, and is seldom of much, if any, practical value. In some instances *Skodaic resonance* can be elicited under the clavicle at a certain stage of the effusion, and the transition from dulness to this sound may be quite abrupt; occasionally percussion elicits a kind of cracked-pot sound over this region. 6. *Breath-sounds* are absent or feeble below; exaggerated or even blowing or tubular above. 7. *Friction-sound* may or may not be heard at the margin of the dulness. 8. *Vocal resonance* is diminished or annulled below, increased above, the change from the one to the other being often marked. *Erythrophony* is heard in many cases, especially about the angle of the scapula. Dr. Bacelli has affirmed that,

in cases of pleuritic effusion, if the whispered voice is conducted well through the thickness of the fluid, and is pectoriloquous in character, the effusion is serous; if it is ill-conducted or inaudible, the fluid is purulent. I entirely agree with Dr. Douglas Powell that this sign is by no means pathognomonic. 9. *Displacement of organs*, especially of the heart, is an important evidence of pleuritic effusion. The cardiac movements may be noticed far over on the right side in cases of left pleurisy; while the sounds are very loud in this direction. These movements are, however, connected with the right ventricle. The diaphragm, with the liver, spleen, or stomach, may also be obviously depressed. A basic cardiac murmur may be due to displacement of the heart by pleuritic effusion. 10. Rarely *succussion* gives rise to a splashing sensation or sound, due to the presence of air and fluid in the pleura.

Absorption may be traced by the gradual subsidence of the signs just described, and their restoration to the normal; often accompanied with the development of a loud *redia friction-sound*, and sometimes with *friction-fremitus*. More or less dulness may continue for some time. In favourable cases the lung expands, and the affected side resumes its proper form and dimensions. The heart occasionally remains in its abnormal position, owing to the formation of an adhesion between the pericardium and the adjacent surface; or goes too far in the opposite direction; or lies more or less freely movable in the chest.

In *bilateral pleurisy* the signs of fluid are observed on both sides. On the other hand, they are limited in the *loculated* variety, which exceptionally causes *local bulging*. *Empyema* sometimes makes its way to the surface, and even points like an abscess; or in rare instances it exhibits pulsation when in the neighbourhood of the heart. Should a purulent collection open into the bronchi, râles will be heard over the corresponding lung. In *diaphragmatic* pleurisy there may be no physical signs, except cessation of all abdominal movements during respiration.

In children some important modifications of the ordinary physical signs of pleuritic effusion are noticed. The chest being markedly yielding, is dilated considerably and at a very early period, while the organs are comparatively less interfered with than in adults. Bronchial or tubular breathing and vocal resonance often persist even when there is an extensive accumulation of fluid in the pleural cavity, as judged by the dulness. Sometimes both the percussion-sound and the breathing have a tubular quality. These unusual signs are noticed in adults in exceptional instances.

Old adhesions resulting from previous attacks influence the signs of pleurisy considerably; as well as morbid conditions of the lung or other structure with which it may be associated.

Terminations.—1. *Recovery* takes place in a large proportion of cases of pleurisy, after absorption or removal by operation of any fluid, the lung expanding fairly, but remaining more or less adherent. 2. *Death* is a rare event, unless the pleurisy is bilateral, or is associated with some serious constitutional or local disease. It may happen, however, from the mere mechanical effects of the fluid-effusion, accompanied with pulmonary congestion and oedema; and there is a danger of sudden death should there be urgent dyspnoea, or should the heart be much embarrassed. This untoward termination may be due to syncope, degeneration of the heart-muscle, cardiac thrombosis or embolism of the pulmonary artery, oedema of the lung on the unaffected side, or, it is

affirmed, mechanical interference with the circulation, owing to displacement of the heart or twisting of the great vessels. Sudden death is more frequent in right-sided pleurisies, and the effusion is usually serous. The event is generally due to some movement or effort.
3. Transition into some form of *chronic pleurisy* is not uncommon.

Diagnosis.—Individual cases of acute pleurisy present considerable differences as regards the difficulty of their diagnosis. In many instances the course of events is obvious enough, the mode of onset, symptoms, and physical signs being quite characteristic. When there is initial pleuritic pain in the side, it may be difficult or even impossible at first to distinguish this from pain due to some affection of the chest-walls, to acute pneumonia, or to other conditions, but adequate attention to its characters and intensity, to the nature and progress of other symptoms, and to the physical signs will, as a rule, soon clear up any uncertainty. Latent cases of pleuritic effusion or empyema can only be positively recognized by physical examination, and then they are easily diagnosed as a rule, though difficulties may be met with in children, and also when pleuritic effusion and pneumonic consolidation co-exist. Under these circumstances the use of the exploring needle is of great value; as well as when it is necessary to determine positively the nature of any doubtful fluid-accumulation in the pleura. There ought to be no difficulty as a rule in distinguishing an inflammatory effusion from mere hydrothorax, which will be subsequently described. Very rarely some collection of fluid within the abdomen bursts into the pleura, and then the case must be considered in all its relationships; a hydatid-tumour or an abscess in the liver must be specially remembered in this connection. It must be noted that acute pleurisy may supervene upon some previous chronic thoracic disease, especially phthisis; or that an acute attack may complicate some old pleuritic condition. Under these circumstances the physical signs may be by-no-means easy to interpret. In relation to diagnosis, it must be noted that cases of limited dry pleurisy should not be forgotten or overlooked, and these can only be made out by very careful and systematic examination of the affected side in suspected cases. As special conditions to be distinguished from pleural effusion in particular instances may be mentioned pericardial effusion; malignant disease of the lung or other intra-thoracic tumours; hydatids of the pleura; and subphrenic abscess.

Prognosis.—This involves not only the immediate result of acute pleurisy, but also its ultimate effects. Primary pleurisy ought to terminate favourably in the great majority of cases, if detected at an early period, and properly managed. It is more serious in proportion to the amount of fluid poured out; to the time that it has remained in the pleural cavity; and to its purulent nature. Severe dyspnoea and serious interference with the heart are dangerous indications. The thermometer may be of use in helping towards a prognosis. Pleurisy secondary to low febrile or other diseases is very grave; also when it is tubercular; and when it occurs in advanced cases of chronic alcoholism. Bilateral pleurisy with much effusion is necessarily highly dangerous.

Discharge of an empyema through the lung is generally regarded as a most untoward termination, but I have known cases do remarkably well after this event. It must be remembered that there is a danger of pulmonary phthisis being set up after pleurisy, apart from any original tubercular mischief. The modern treatment of pleurisy has certainly considerably improved the prognosis of this disease.

Treatment.—The measures to be adopted in the management of pleurisy must differ greatly in different cases, and it is most important to avoid following any routine practice. The ultimate objects to be aimed at are not merely to save the patient's life, but to restore the parts affected to as normal a condition as possible.

The principles to be kept in view in the treatment of acute pleurisy are :—1. To subdue the inflammation, and diminish the amount of lymph and fluid poured out. 2. To promote the absorption of these morbid products as rapidly as possible. 3. To remove them in some other way if they cannot be absorbed. 4. To relieve symptoms. 5. To support the strength and maintain the nutrition of the patient. 6. To obviate as much as possible the injurious effects of the pleurisy, especially upon the lung.

1. The first object to be aimed at in the treatment of an acute pleurisy which comes under observation in the early stage, is to keep the structures affected in as complete a state of *rest* as possible. For this purpose I have for a long time advocated the practice of mechanically fixing the side affected, and thus limiting or preventing its movements. The following is the method which I adopt :—Strips of adhesive plaster spread on some thick material, from three to four inches wide and of sufficient length, are applied round the affected side from mid-spine to mid-sternum or a little beyond. These are laid on over a variable extent of the chest, according to the requirements of the case, it being sometimes necessary to include the whole side. It is best to make the application from below upwards, and to fix most of the strips of plaster in an oblique direction rather than horizontally. The patient being directed to expire deeply, a strip is fixed at mid-spine and drawn tightly, firmly, and evenly round the side, in the direction of the ribs, that is, a little obliquely from above downwards and forwards; then another strip is laid on across this, also extending from mid-spine to mid-sternum, but in the opposite direction, that is, obliquely upwards and forwards across the course of the ribs; the third is to follow the direction of the first, over-lapping about half its width, the fourth that of the second, and so on in alternate directions, until the entire side is included if required. Finally, it is well to apply two or three strips horizontally over the whole, so as to form a superficial supporting layer; and one or two may also be passed from behind forwards over the shoulder, these being kept down by another strip fixed round the side across their ends. In my experience the good effects realized by this method of treatment, when efficiently carried out, have been as follows :—(1.) In cases of limited dry pleurisy it gives almost invariably complete and immediate relief, so that patients can breathe and cough comfortably, and are able to follow their occupations without any difficulty, which is particularly important in the case of those who are obliged to work. (2.) It is highly probable that the quantity of inflammatory products poured out will be limited by maintaining the parts in a state of rest. I have every reason to conclude that this result has been attained in several instances of early pleurisy which have come under my notice. (3.) The rest and pressure may also promote absorption, and I have found this mode of treatment decidedly efficacious in aiding the removal of moderate pleuritic effusion. (4.) Occasionally cases of pleurisy come under observation, in which there is extensive exudation of lymph, with little or no fluid, and this remains as a chronic condition, causing palpable fremitus, attended

with most unpleasant sensations to the patient. The only curative end that can be attained is to bring about adhesion of the surfaces of the pleura, and strapping the chest will most certainly effect this purpose.

Venesection is, in my opinion, scarcely ever required in pleurisy; but there may be no objection to the application of a few leeches, if the pain is severe, and the patient in good condition. Calomel is a drug which had better be avoided, except as an aperient. In cases of a sthenic type it might be advisable in the early stage to administer, under proper supervision, *cardio-vascular depressants*, such asaconite, veratrum viride, or tartar emetic in small doses, which may be given in some saline mixture. Opium is most valuable for the purpose of relieving pain and procuring sleep, Dover's powder being a very useful preparation; or morphine may be injected subcutaneously in severe cases. The application of cold to the chest has been advocated in pleurisy, and may possibly be beneficial in some cases.

2. Should there be *effusion* into the pleura—and this is often the condition found when the patient comes under observation—the first point to be determined is whether any measures should be taken with the view of promoting absorption of the fluid? If so, attention to diet is required in the first instance. A dry diet has been specially advocated, the patient avoiding liquids as much as possible, and undoubtedly this plan proves useful in some cases. On the other hand, an exclusive milk-diet has been found of decided value in other instances. Counter-irritation applied more or less extensively over the affected side is, in my opinion, of great service not uncommonly in aiding the absorption of pleuritic effusion. The application of a blister often produces excellent results, and may be repeated, if necessary. Applications of iodine are also employed, but in my experience they are not nearly so efficient, and certainly should not be unduly prolonged. I have met with several instances in which strapping the side, as already described, has certainly appeared to aid absorption when the fluid was not abundant. Another local method of treatment is to employ friction with some stimulating liniment, and this is especially useful during the later period, when most of the fluid has been taken up, but a little still remains. Agents which act on the skin, bowels, or kidneys are usually relied upon as the most efficient means for promoting absorption in cases of pleuritic effusion. The administration of full doses of iodide of potassium, with digitalis, caffeine, or other *diuretics*, is sometimes undoubtedly beneficial. Powerful *purgatives* are of questionable value, and should be employed with caution, if at all; but Osler speaks very favourably of the administration of a concentrated solution of sulphate of magnesium in the morning on the principle advocated by Dr. Matthew Hay in relation to dropsy. Repeated vapour or hot-air baths have proved serviceable in some instances under my care. Jaborandi and pilocarpine have also been employed successfully, on account of their *diaphoretic* action. Tincture of perchloride of iron in full doses has, in my experience, proved a most valuable remedy in many cases of pleuritic effusion.

3. The removal of pleuritic effusion by *paracentesis thoracis* is now almost universally regarded as a most valuable method of treatment in a considerable number of cases. At the same time it should not be thoughtlessly adopted as a routine measure. Unless there are urgent symptoms calling for immediate removal of the fluid, no case of pleuritic effusion, either acute or even, as judged by the history, of a month or

two's duration, should be thus dealt with, until an endeavour has been made to procure absorption, especially if appropriate treatment has not been previously carried out. Several cases have come under my notice in which I fully anticipated that paracentesis would be required, but where the effusion rapidly and completely disappeared under treatment. In certain cases also the removal of a small quantity of serous fluid by means of the hypodermic syringe leads to the absorption of a considerable effusion, even where medicinal treatment has previously failed, and this method is particularly useful in recent cases, where the effusion is small or moderate in amount.

The subject of operative interference in relation to pleuritic effusion, especially when persistent, has now become such an extensive one as regards details, that it is impossible to deal with it fully in this work, and only some of the more general principles can be alluded to. Indeed, in many cases the treatment belongs practically to the domain of surgery.

It is difficult to lay down any strict rules as to the cases in which paracentesis is indicated, but the following seem to me to be the chief circumstances under which this method of treatment is called for :—

1. Whenever there is a large effusion accompanied with dangerous symptoms, namely, severe dyspnoea, and especially orthopnoea; a tendency to cyanosis; or symptoms indicating serious interference with the action of the heart, and threatening syncope. In such cases delay is highly dangerous, as sudden death may occur at any moment, and the relief which follows the removal of the fluid is usually very marked.
2. In cases of considerable effusion, which, after a fair trial, does not yield to treatment, and shows no signs of becoming absorbed. It is not practicable to indicate the exact amount which calls for interference, so much depending upon the age of the patient, the condition of the chest-walls, the effects which the effusion seems to produce, and other circumstances. These are the cases which give most difficulty in forming a judgment as to the proper course to pursue.
3. In cases of double pleurisy, when the total fluid may be said to occupy a space equal to half the united dimensions of the two pleural cavities (Anstie).
4. When the fluid is known or suspected to be purulent. In doubtful cases an exploratory puncture may be first made.
5. When a spontaneous opening has formed towards the upper part of the chest; and in most instances where an empyema has burst into the lung. The existence of high pyrexia, of tuberculosis, or of marked debility, does not contra-indicate paracentesis in pleurisy, and the removal of the fluid often causes marked improvement in the general symptoms.

With regard to the method of operation, as a rule it is best to employ the *aspirateur* in cases of sero-fibrinous effusion, but care must be exercised in using it, the indications for its withdrawal being severe pain and dyspnoea, violent cough, or the escape of blood. Southey's trochar and cannulae have also been found useful in some cases. Failing this, the syphon-trochar has been recommended. Air should be excluded from the pleural cavity; and strict antiseptic precautions must be observed. The operation not uncommonly has to be repeated, and recovery may take place even after several evacuations of the fluid, which becomes gradually less and less in amount. In cases of empyema it is necessary under different circumstances to make a free opening; to remove portions of the ribs; or to empty the pleural cavity by means of drainage-tubes.

In cases of serous effusion it is not necessary to remove the whole of the fluid from the pleura; but if it is purulent, as much as possible should be taken away. Sometimes it happens that, owing to rigidity of the chest-walls, or binding down of the lung, the fluid cannot be expelled without assistance. Under these circumstances special operative measures are recommended. Occasionally in cases of fistulous empyema the practice is adopted of introducing *stimulant* or *antiseptic* injections into the pleural cavity. The plan of washing out this cavity is sometimes resorted to, when the pus is foetid, but Barlow and Parker have pointed out that a double opening dispenses with the need of this painful and sometimes dangerous procedure in a large proportion of cases in children, and they affirm that if it should be required, equal advantages are derived by placing the patient daily in a warm bath, sufficiently high to cover the upper opening, Coudy's fluid or a weak solution of carbolic acid previously prepared with boiling water being added to the bath.

The spot usually selected for making the opening in performing *paracentesis thoracis* is the 6th or 7th space, about the mid-axillary line; it may also be conveniently made just outside the angle of the scapula in the 8th space. In the case of localized effusion the opening must correspond to the centre of maximum dulness; and more than one puncture may be needed where there are separate and distinct purulent collections.

4. The chief *symptom* likely to call for special attention in cases of pleurisy is pain in the side. If not relieved by strapping, the quickest and most efficient plan is to employ a small subcutaneous injection of morphine. The application of leeches, hot fomentations, linseed-meal poultices, or sinapisms are severally indicated in appropriate cases. Urgent dyspnoea, or serious disturbance of the cardiac action, calls for *paracentesis* usually. Cough must be relieved, if troublesome, by *sedative* remedies.

5. Patients suffering from pleurisy need not be kept low as regards *diet*, but *alcoholic stimulants* are not to be given at first. If the strength fails, and especially should the disease tend to become chronic, abundant nutritious food is required, with wine or beer. Quinine, iron, mineral acids, cod-liver oil, and other remedies of this kind are also very useful at this time. The treatment of *secondary pleurisy* must be guided by the condition with which it is associated. Lowering measures are especially to be avoided in this class of cases.

6. It is most important to pay special attention to cases of pleurisy during the period of *convalescence*, with the view of restoring the structures within the thorax to as normal a condition as possible. It is dangerous to leave morbid products in the pleural cavity; and every effort must be made to expand the lung properly, and to make the adhesions which form as loose as possible. For these purposes systematic deep respiration is of great service; or it may be necessary to have recourse to more definite "respiratory gymnastics," to inhalations of compressed air, or to other methods of expanding the lungs. A change to some suitable health-resort at a high altitude is also very beneficial. Patients who have suffered from severe pleurisy should always be particularly careful in guarding against cold; and it is desirable to examine the chest in such cases from time to time as a precautionary measure.

II. CHRONIC PLEURISY.

Chronic pleurisy is an expression often used with no very definite meaning, and it is desirable to point out briefly the main facts of practical importance in relation to this subject. The conditions which may be met with in different cases include:—1. Extensive dry pleurisy, with firm exudation, which in exceptional instances may continue for a long time. 2. Adhesion of the pleural surfaces, more or less extensive, or even universal, sometimes accompanied with much thickening; occasionally calcareous plates are actually formed. 3. Persistent serous effusion, or one recurring again and again after removal by paracentesis. 4. Chronic empyema or its remains; along with which may be mentioned *fistulous empyema*, where there is a permanent discharge externally; and those cases in which a communication with the lung has taken place, pus being coughed up at intervals. Very rarely the matter escapes in some unusual direction, as by the bowel. 5. A combination of two or more of these conditions. Localized effusions are not uncommonly associated with adhesions.

Aetiology.—As regards their mode of origin, cases of chronic pleurisy may be divided into the following groups:—1. They may be the sequel of a definite attack of acute or subacute pleurisy, or of pleuro-pneumonia, leading to the various consequences already described. More or less adhesion must always follow, but if the case ends favourably, and is properly treated, this is of little or no moment. In a large number of instances, however, important changes of this nature do remain after acute pleurisy, interfering with the movements of the lung, and causing retraction of the chest-wall, sometimes to a very marked degree. This is especially liable to happen after empyema. 2. As previously stated, both simple effusion and empyema may accumulate in a latent manner, and some of these cases may be regarded as practically chronic. Recurring sero-fibrinous effusion is essentially chronic, but this occurs chiefly in tubercular cases. 3. There certainly is a chronic primary dry pleurisy, leading to the formation of adhesions, usually local, but which in course of time may become extensive, often not recognized during life, but found at *post-mortem* examinations. I believe that this is common at the apex of the right lung. I have in rare instances met with extensive dry pleurisy, presenting obvious clinical signs of exudation, and quite chronic. In one instance I was obliged to have recourse ultimately to strapping the side, in order to bring about adhesion of the surfaces of the pleura, as the patient suffered so much discomfort on account of the sensations and sounds produced by the act of breathing. As stated in a former chapter, the late Sir Andrew Clark maintained that there is a primitive dry pleurisy which gradually leads to great thickening of the membrane, and ultimately invades the lung, setting up a form of cirrhosis of the organ. 4. Chronic pleurisy is an important condition in relation to pulmonary phthisis, and also in connection with tubercular disease of the pleura itself, or with malignant growths. Adhesion of the lung is of great consequence in many chronic phthisical cases, and should be always looked for in their clinical examination. It may be noted here that any persistent local irritation, such as that caused by an aneurism or a solid tumour, will tend to excite a corresponding chronic pleurisy; and the same result may occur in certain chest-deformities.

Symptoms.—Chronic pleuritic conditions, especially marked adhesions, not uncommonly give rise to painful, dragging, or other unpleasant sensations on the affected side. They also interfere with breathing, helping to cause shortness of breath, and preventing the patient from taking a full and deep inspiration. Cough is made decidedly more difficult and ineffectual in cases presenting extensive and thick adhesions, where morbid products have to be discharged from the lung. I believe further that they may excite an independent cough. Should chronic empyema communicate with the lung, there will be purulent expectoration at intervals, which is usually very offensive. An external discharge from the pleura will be evident on inspection. The implication of different nerves in an adhesion may occasion curious remote symptoms, such as flushing or sweating of one side of the face, dilatation of the pupil, or laryngeal symptoms in certain cases of phthisis with apical adhesion. Paralysis of the arm on the affected side has been known to follow chronic empyema. This condition is also occasionally accompanied with oedema of the corresponding side of the chest.

General symptoms may be entirely absent even in cases of universally adherent and much thickened pleura, with marked retraction of the side. In other instances there is impaired nutrition, with more or less weakness. Should an effusion become chronic, a certain degree of pyrexia often persists, with frequent and weak pulse, as well as wasting and debility. In neglected empyema, or when this discharges through an external fistula or through the lung, the general symptoms are more pronounced, as evidenced by well-marked fever, which may be of a "hectic" type; decided loss of flesh and anaemia; and much weakness. Extreme clubbing of the finger-ends is noticed in exceptional cases; and the hair may become lank and fall off. These symptoms are rarely seen, however, nowadays, thanks to earlier and more effectual treatment. It must be borne in mind that the symptoms in cases of chronic pleurisy may be chiefly due to the condition with which it is associated, such as pulmonary phthisis; and it must never be forgotten that this disease may supervene upon morbid changes affecting the pleura, in my opinion not necessarily tubercular in their origin.

Physical Signs.—These can be only very briefly alluded to. Chronic dry pleurisy is recognized by *friction-fremitus* and *sounds*, the latter being often loud, and creaking or leathery in character. Should there be effusion of any kind, its presence will be indicated by the signs already described. In a pronounced case of universally adherent and thickened pleura on one side, where the lung has been allowed to remain unexpanded, the physical signs to be relied on are:—1. More or less *retraction* of the side, with narrowing of the interspaces and crowding together of the ribs; lowering of the corresponding shoulder; diminution of all the diameters of the lateral half of the thorax; and curvature of the spine, usually to the affected, occasionally to the healthy side. 2. Marked *diminution* or *absence* of *respiratory movements*. 3. *Deficient resonance* or even actual *dulness* in parts. 4. *Feeble* or *absent breath-sounds* over the side generally; or in some parts they may be of *bronchial* quality. 5. Permanent *displacement* of neighbouring structures not uncommonly, especially the *heart*. Many cases of general adhesion of the pleura, without retraction, can be made out by carefully studying the movements of respiration; by the weakness of the breath-sounds; or sometimes by the presence of superficial râles, which I have already described as "adhesion râles." Local adhesions can also not uncommonly

be determined, especially at the apex of the lung, by due attention to shape, respiratory movements, and the signs elicited by percussion and auscultation.

Diagnosis.—The existence of some form of chronic pleurisy is usually obvious enough, when satisfactory physical examination is made, and it must be remembered that conditions coming under this category are of frequent occurrence in practice. This remark applies not only to effusion, but also to adhesions, though of course there are cases in which the latter cannot be positively made out, even when of considerable extent. It is often important to recognize the association of chronic pleuritic changes with lesions affecting the lung itself, especially in phthisis. Cases which present especial difficulty are those in which the conditions in the pleura are of different kinds; or where these are associated with malignant or other growths in the chest. The possibility of confounding an enlarged and solid lung with chronic pleural effusion has been already noticed, and rarely presents any real difficulty. On the other hand, it is necessary to distinguish a retracted side, the result of a simple pleurisy, from that due to chronic interstitial pneumonia or fibroid phthisis, to malignant disease, or to collapse of a lung from obstruction of a bronchus. In exceptional instances hydrothorax or a mere dropsical effusion into the pleura is unilateral, and then it is impossible to draw any absolute distinction between it and a chronic inflammatory effusion.

Treatment.—Nothing very definite can be stated under this head. One of the most important points in treatment is to *prevent* as far as possible the permanent effects of pleurisy from becoming serious or troublesome. Chronic effusion and empyema must be dealt with according to the principles already discussed. The injurious consequences of even marked and extensive adhesions may often be obviated or much diminished by systematic deep respiration, or by "respiratory gymnastics" judiciously carried out. The pain or discomfort resulting from such adhesions may be relieved by friction with liniments, strapping the side, or other measures suitable for different cases. Other local and general symptoms must be treated on ordinary principles. Special care is needed to avoid all causes likely to damage the lung, when it is adherent, and to attend immediately to any cough. Antiseptic inhalations are useful in cases where an empyema has opened into the lung, and there is expectoration of pus at intervals; these cases may, however, be sometimes successfully operated upon. In certain chronic pleuritic conditions a permanent change of climate is indicated.

III. PERIPLEURITIS.

It is desirable to notice briefly a condition thus named by Wunderlich, which is of rare occurrence, characterized by inflammation of the cellular tissue superficial to the costal pleura. It cannot be traced to any definite cause, but is attributed to the action of micrococci. The complaint is chiefly met with in men.

Symptoms and Signs.—Peripleuritis begins definitely with a chill, and runs the course of a febrile disease. There is local pain and tenderness, but no obvious dyspnoea or cough. The *physical signs* are in marked cases very like those of empyema, but the protrusion of the chest-wall is greater; normal lung-tissue containing air can often be demonstrated beneath the enlargement, and the mobility of the lower

border of the lung persists ; the wall of the abscess relaxes on inspiration, and becomes tense on expiration ; and there is no evidence of displacement of neighbouring organs. Spontaneous rupture often takes place externally, very rarely into the pleura. Acute nephritis has been observed in several cases of peripleuritis as a complication.

Treatment.—This is entirely surgical, the abscess being evacuated externally, with antiseptic precautions.

IV. HYDROTHORAX—DROPSY OF THE PLEURA.

Aetiology.—Hydrothorax is almost always a part of general dropsy from cardiac or renal disease. The effusion may be in rare instances of an active kind, associated with the local formation of cancer or tubercle.

Anatomical Characters.—More or less clear serous fluid is found in both pleural sacs usually, compressing the lungs ; occasionally the condition is unilateral. There are no obvious signs of inflammation.

Symptoms.—Dyspnœa, with signs of deficient blood-aération, are the only symptoms of hydrothorax, resulting from mechanical interference with the action of the lungs ; and there is generally much distress, because this condition is added to some previous serious affection, and because both sides are involved. The *physical signs* are those of fluid in both pleuræ usually ; not excessive in amount ; freely movable ; without friction-sound or fremitus ; while there is no displacement of the heart. Rarely the signs of effusion are unilateral, especially when associated with tubercle or cancer.

Diagnosis.—As a rule there is no difficulty in distinguishing hydrothorax from pleurisy, by the circumstances under which it occurs ; its bilateral distribution ; and other points just indicated. When unilateral it may be impossible to determine whether an effusion is merely dropsical or inflammatory.

Treatment.—As a rule this is merely a part of the general treatment for dropsy. Dry-cupping over the chest may be employed with advantage in some instances. In certain cases paracentesis might possibly be indicated, in order to afford temporary relief.

V. HÆMOTHORAX—HÆMORRHAGE INTO THE PLEURA.

Aetiology.—More or less blood may be mixed with pleuritic effusion of inflammatory origin ; or with the ordinary serum, should there be a scorbutic or purpuric condition present. The accumulation of blood in any quantity in the pleura, however, is due to one of the following causes :—1. Rupture of a vessel from injury, or its perforation during operation. 2. Bursting of an aneurism, of which I have seen a most interesting example, in which an aneurism of the aorta between the pillars of the diaphragm ruptured into the left pleural cavity. 3. Carcinoma of the lung giving way into the pleura. 4. Diffuse pulmonary haemorrhage, extending to the surface of the lung. 5. Cancer of the pleura itself. 6. Leucocythaemia in rare cases.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—Dyspnœa is felt, owing to the pressure of the blood upon the lung ; this being accompanied with evidences of loss of blood. Death may occur very speedily. The *physical signs* are merely those of pleuritic accumulation, either liquid or solid, according as the blood remains fluid or coagulates. Possibly a diagnosis might be

arrived at from a consideration of the circumstances under which the haemorrhage occurs; its mode of onset; and the local and general symptoms, with the signs of some accumulation of fluid in the pleural cavity. In grave cases, however, death would probably take place before any opportunity for attempting a diagnosis could be obtained.

Treatment.—In most non-traumatic cases of haemothorax nothing can be done but to keep the patient at rest. Of course if the bleeding is due to injury, it is necessary to try to stop it by surgical means. Paracentesis may possibly be demanded.

VI. PNEUMOTHORAX—HYDRO- AND PYO-PNEUMOTHORAX.

Etiology.—1. Pneumothorax of any clinical importance results in the great majority of cases from *perforation of the lung*, owing to the rupture of a phthisical cavity. In very rare cases the lung gives way in the earlier stages of phthisis, or in connection with emphysema, abscess, an infarct, gangrene, hydatids, or cancer; or the air-vesicles may rupture from violent cough, especially in cases of whooping-cough; or a collection of air or blood under the pulmonary pleura may perforate this membrane. 2. Perforation may take place *from the pleura into the lung*, in connection with empyema or abscess of the chest-walls. 3. Injury may lead to pneumothorax, namely, direct perforation of the lung from without, laceration by fractured ribs, or severe contusion. 4. The *stomach* or *oesophagus* has in very rare instances ruptured into the pleura. It is unnecessary to consider those cases in which gas is present in the pleural cavity owing to the decomposition of fluid.

Anatomical Characters.—The gas in the pleura generally consists of oxygen, carbonic anhydride, and nitrogen in variable proportions; with, under some circumstances, foetid constituents, such as sulphuretted hydrogen. It may fill the pleural sac completely, compressing the lung; or is sometimes limited by adhesions. The gas tends to excite inflammation, the resulting effusion being either serous or purulent, and the conditions are termed respectively *hydro-pneumothorax* and *pyo-pneumothorax*; pus may also escape into the pleura from a cavity in the lung.

Symptoms.—It is only necessary to consider here those symptoms which are indicative of *perforative pneumothorax*. Usually a sudden, very intense pain in the side is experienced; as well as occasionally a sensation of something having given way, and of fluid pouring out; followed by urgent dyspnoea, and signs of shock. These symptoms in many instances immediately follow a violent cough. The dyspnoea may temporarily diminish, or it steadily increases in proportion to the amount of air accumulated, until constant or paroxysmal orthopnoea is established. The voice becomes feeble, in some cases to complete aphonia. Cough is often rendered difficult and ineffectual, and expectoration ceases. Occasionally there is much hyperesthesia of the side. The pulse is frequent, weak, and small, but breathing being hurried out of proportion, the pulse-respiration ratio is altered. The patient generally presents an anxious and distressed aspect, and soon evidences of apnoea become apparent. A common mode of decubility at first is dorsal, with the head raised, and the body inclined to the sound side; or the patient may assume a kneeling posture, supported on the elbows. In

many cases the posture is changed frequently, and when fluid collects there is a tendency to lie on the affected side.

It must be borne in mind that even in severe cases of pneumothorax the symptoms may be by-no-means marked; and when the escape of air is limited by adhesions, they are usually comparatively slight.

Physical Signs.—The amount of air accumulated; the presence and quantity of fluid mixed with it; and the patency or closure, as well as the size of the perforation into the lung, will modify the *physical signs* of pneumothorax. 1. The side is *enlarged*, often to an extreme degree, the intercostal spaces being widened and effaced or even bulged out, so that the surface of the chest feels smooth. 2. *Movements* are deficient or annulled. 3. *Vocal fremitus* is weak or absent. 4. *Percussion* reveals at first increased resonance, the sound being often typically tympanitic, and this may be noticed considerably across the middle line. Sometimes it has an amphoric quality. If the amount of air becomes extreme the percussion-sound is muffled or dull, with much resistance. When effusion of fluid takes place, dulness will be observed in dependent parts, movable with change of posture usually. Occasionally at the line of junction of fluid and air an amphoric note can be elicited, and a quivering sensation is felt by the finger. 5. *Respiratory sounds* may be weak and distant, or almost suppressed; typically amphoric when the fistula is open, with a metallic echo; or alternately one or the other. A whistling inspiration is heard in rare instances, due to the passage of air through a narrow chink into the pleura. 6. *Vocal resonance* may be feeble or absent; or exaggerated, with a metallic or amphoric echo; while the whisper in some cases is very loud, and has a marked metallic or amphoric quality. 7. *Cough* may also have a metallic echo. 8. *Metallic tinkling* is sometimes distinctly produced by breathing, coughing, or speaking; and the *bell-sound* may often be elicited. 9. *Succussion* gives rise to a splashing sensation and sound, if both air and fluid are present in the pleural cavity. 10. *Displacement* of the mediastinum, heart, diaphragm, and abdominal organs is observed to a variable degree. 11. The *heart-sounds* are now and then intensified on the affected side, and accompanied with a metallic echo.

Diagnosis.—In well-marked cases the diagnosis of pneumothorax is readily made, if due attention be paid to the circumstances under which it occurs; the suddenness of onset, perhaps associated with a definite cause, as violent cough; the rapidity of development, and character of the symptoms; and the physical signs. The presence of fluid in the pleura along with air can only be determined by physical examination. One reason why pneumothorax is overlooked is that the possibility of its occurrence is entirely forgotten. Where the lesion is on a limited scale, the pleural cavity being more or less contracted by adhesions, it may be very difficult or even impossible to detect it. On the other hand, a large cavity in the lung may present practically the same physical signs as a pneumothorax. There should be no reason whatever for mistaking it for emphysema of the lungs or other conditions in which one or both of these organs contain excess of air. Pneumothorax has been confounded with pleuritic effusion; diaphragmatic hernia; and subphrenic pneumothorax. Dr. Ewart has recently (*Clinical Journal*, July 25th, 1894) pointed out some differences as regards cardiac and hepatic percussion, which may be of use in the diagnosis between pneumothorax and subphrenic pneumothorax.

Prognosis.—Though a very grave event, pneumothorax is not necessarily fatal, recovery occasionally taking place. It is much less dangerous when localized. In some instances where pneumothorax has occurred in connection with phthisis it seems to have delayed the progress of the lung-disease. I have known it remain as a chronic condition for years. The prognosis in cases where both gas and fluid are present in the pleural cavity, will differ much according to circumstances.

Treatment. I have obtained great relief in some cases of pneumothorax from strapping the side firmly, as described under pleurisy. If the amount of air is considerable, causing urgent dyspnoea, it must be removed by some suitable apparatus, and pressure may be afterwards applied. Dry-cupping of the chest is sometimes useful. *Stimulants* should be given to counteract shock and dyspnoea; and morphine injected subcutaneously to relieve pain. Potain advocates the plan of replacing the contents of the pleura, when evacuated, by sterilized air. The late Dr. Walshe recommended repeated inhalations of small quantities of chloroform to give relief. Any purulent collection calls for surgical interference on ordinary principles.

VII. MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE PLEURA.

It is desirable briefly to allude to cancer involving the pleura. In the large majority of cases the growth is *secondary*, the primary disease being generally in the mammary gland or lung, in the latter case the pleural mischief being usually the result of direct extension. A *diffuse endothelial carcinoma* occurs rarely as a *primary* disease, originating in a proliferation of the endothelial cells of the lymphatics and connective tissue.

Clinically, the implication of the pleura extensively in cases of cancer of the lung gives rise to marked physical signs, and the growth may extend even to the surface of the chest. When the disease begins in the pleura, the clinical history is very indefinite and obscure, resembling that of a chronic pleurisy, but there is usually severe pain. There may be an effusion of fluid in the pleura, giving the usual signs, and even displacing organs. For a long time there is often little or no fever. The course of events may reveal the nature of the disease, especially when characteristic general symptoms supervene. There may be indications of malignant disease in other structures sooner or later. In fluid obtained by exploratory puncture the microscope sometimes reveals the presence of cancerous elements.

Treatment can only be palliative, and must be guided by ordinary principles.

CHAPTER XX.

DISEASES OF THE CIRCULATORY ORGANS.

1. CLINICAL PHENOMENA CONNECTED WITH THE HEART.

THE evidences of disease in connection with the central organ for the circulation of the blood are necessarily not confined to this part alone, but may be more or less apparent throughout the entire system. It is essential to notice, however, at the outset, that most grave organic cardiac mischief may be unattended with any obvious symptoms; and that, on the other hand, apparently serious disturbance of the heart may be entirely of a functional character. Moreover, other diseases are often associated with cardiac affections, especially renal and pulmonary; while these affections also tend to set up secondary structural changes in other organs. The symptoms may thus be greatly modified in particular cases.

1. Various **subjective sensations** are often experienced about the cardiac region, namely, pain, either constant or of a paroxysmal or anginal character, oppression, dragging, sinking, or unpleasant sensations associated with the movements of the heart, such as palpitation, irregularity, jogging, rolling, falling back, jumping into the throat, intermittency, or complete stoppage. These are sometimes attended with extreme distress and dread of death. There may be local tenderness; or, on the other hand, relief may be afforded by pressure.

2. The **action of the heart** is frequently objectively disturbed in various ways, being too frequent or infrequent; feeble almost to extinction, or too powerful; subject to attacks of palpitation or other disorder; irregular or intermittent; embarrassed; or otherwise abnormal.

3. The most common and important symptoms associated with cardiac disease are those due to some **derangement of the circulation of the blood**. These require careful consideration in each individual case, as several of the phenomena may result from different causes affecting the circulation. Without entering into details, it must suffice to state that this class of symptoms may arise from:—(1) *Abnormal action of the heart*, which is either *excessive, deficient, or in some way disordered and inefficient*. (2) *Physical derangement of the circulation*. This derangement is usually associated with some difficulty in connection with the valves or orifices; but under this head may also be mentioned the presence of an abnormal communication between certain cavities of the heart; the formation of thrombi or clots in these cavities; and the blocking of vessels by thrombosis or embolism, consequent upon cardiac disease. Either the *pulmonary* or the *systemic* circulation, or both, may be thus affected, and it will be necessary to discuss briefly the phenomena which may arise accordingly.

With regard to the *pulmonary circulation*, owing to the absence of vaso-motor nerves, and of capillary resistance, mere mechanical influences play a much more important part than they do in relation to the general circulation (Balfour). Should the right ventricle be acting unduly,

active pulmonary congestion might be induced. Any disorder of the cardiac action readily disturbs the circulation through the lungs, and thus symptoms connected with these organs may be suddenly or speedily brought on. Mechanical difficulty affecting this circulation is of very common occurrence, either due to impaired action on the right side of the heart, or to some impediment on the left side, especially in connection with the mitral orifice. Portions of clot formed within the right cavities may be detached, and conveyed into the pulmonary artery, either blocking its trunk or one of its branches.

In consequence of these several conditions there will be more or less imperfect oxygenation of the blood; and the other lesions which may be produced, either directly or indirectly, are bronchial catarrh, pulmonary congestion or oedema, infarction or haemorrhage into the lung, pneumonia, gangrene, or even pneumothorax, as the result of an infarct or gangrenous area rupturing into the pleural cavity. Long-continued congestion will lead to thickening, or atheromatous or calcareous degeneration of the pulmonary vessels; to "brown induration" of the lungs; or to emphysema, owing to changes set up in the pulmonary tissues.

Symptoms associated with the respiratory organs are of common occurrence in heart-diseases, especially disorders of breathing, but there may also be cough, expectoration of different kinds, and haemoptysis. Allusion must be made to a peculiar form of *cardiac dyspnoea*, or so-called *cardiac asthma*. The difficulty of breathing resembles that of exertion, being more or less hurried, panting or gasping, and noisy; accompanied with a marked sensation of "air-hunger." It is subject to much variation, being liable to come on in very severe paroxysms, breathing being quite free and undisturbed in the intervals, the fits occurring particularly after an effort, especially after ascending heights, or when the patient lies down or falls asleep. The act of respiration is not interfered with, hence it is not very frequent, nor is expiration prolonged as in emphysema, while the respiratory movements and sounds are quite free. Of course, if the lungs are involved the characters of the breathing will be modified accordingly, and true bronchial asthma may be observed; while other causes often affect the respiration, such as anaemia, and various complications. A peculiar disturbance of respiration is sometimes observed in certain diseases of the heart—*Cheyne-Stokes respiration*, in which at intervals the act becomes gradually hurried and deeper up to a certain point, and then subsides in the same gradual manner, until at last there is momentary cessation of breathing, with a dead silence, lasting from a quarter to three-quarters of a minute. Involuntary sighing is occasionally noticed in cardiac diseases; or a frequent tendency to draw in a full breath.

As the result of disturbance of the *general circulation*, numerous symptoms are met with in cases of cardiac disease, affecting the system generally, as well as the more important organs. The blood may be driven into the arteries with undue force; or a deficient supply enters these vessels; or an excessive flow into the arteries occurs, immediately followed by a sudden or rapid emptying in various degrees, the blood running back into the left ventricle. The general venous circulation is frequently impeded more or less, and as a consequence the various tissues and organs of the body become mechanically congested, and the usual results of such stagnation follow, namely, serous effusion; permanent enlargement of capillaries and small veins; increase of connective tissue, with thickening and contraction; thrombosis; or rupture of vessels, with

consequent haemorrhage. In this connection it may be noted that the heart itself becomes the seat of venous congestion in cases of mechanical difficulty affecting the circulation, as was first pointed out by Sir William Jenner, and this may ultimately lead to changes in its walls, which are of serious consequence. It is necessary to consider in some detail the symptoms which may follow the different disorders of the general circulation just indicated:—*a.* Patients suffering from heart disease are not uncommonly anaemic. On the other hand, as the result of general venous plethora, they often present a more or less cyanotic appearance, especially about the lips, fingers, and toes: which may be combined with pallor, from deficient supply of arterial blood. In time the face often becomes puffy and bloated, and the features enlarged or thickened; while the finger-ends and toes assume the clubbed appearance. Enlarged venules are frequently seen, especially on the cheeks. The patient feels chilly; and is deficient in vitality and vigour, being disinclined for any exertion, languid, apathetic, and easily fatigued. Coldness and clamminess of the limbs, especially of the hands and feet, are frequent symptoms. Sooner or later *dropsy* sets in, usually beginning in the feet and ankles and extending upwards, ending in general anasarca, with serous effusions. As a rule it is gradual in its onset and progress, and often subsides temporarily under appropriate treatment; in some instances, however, it is rather rapid in its appearance, and then relief may follow as regards chest-symptoms. If general cardiac dropsy comes on rapidly, it is usually more easily got rid of, and less likely to return soon, than when it is gradual in its progress. In rare instances ascites is the earliest form of dropsy observed in certain kinds of heart disease, or it soon becomes unusually prominent. In connection with the venous congestion and dropsy, cutaneous lesions are liable to be set up in the legs, namely, erythema, erysipelas, eczema, rupture of the skin, sloughing, or chronic ulceration. They also sometimes present petechiae; or a peculiar brown discolouration or staining of the skin. In exceptional instances the small superficial veins are extensively enlarged below the knees, forming an obvious network, quite different from ordinary varicose veins. *b.* Some very striking symptoms result from disturbance of the circulation in the central nervous system. Those chiefly to be recognized are dull, heavy headache; a sense of fulness or heat about the head, or rushing of blood, with flushing of the face; throbbing sensations; giddiness and unsteadiness; sleepiness—sleep, however, being disturbed by startings and most unpleasant dreams, or, on the other hand, distressing insomnia; mental obscuration, with irritability, want of resolution and stability, indisposition to mental effort, impairment of the intellectual powers generally, or actual mental derangement; disturbances of vision and hearing, such as flashes and specks before the eyes, noises in the ears, objective changes in connection with the eyes being also ultimately established; and curious sensations or twitchings in the extremities. Attacks of faintness or actual syncope are liable to occur in certain forms of cardiac disease; or they may assume an apoplectic or epileptiform character. True apoplexy may supervene, due to cerebral haemorrhage or embolism. Cases of cardiac disease attended with general venous congestion may terminate by gradual stupor, ending in complete coma. Epistaxis occurs in some instances. *c.* The digestive and assimilative organs frequently suffer in cases of heart disease leading to venous congestion. The tongue may be large, turgid, and marked by the

teeth ; the mouth and throat often at the same time presenting a congested appearance. As the result of congestion or catarrh of the stomach and intestines, there may arise deficient or depraved appetite ; dyspeptic symptoms, especially flatulence ; constipation or diarrhoea ; or possibly haemorrhoids in course of time. The liver is at first congested and enlarged — *metmeg liver* ; and a certain degree of jaundice is often evident, this being partly due to catarrh of the bile-ducts. The bile is also liable to be unhealthy, owing to an admixture of mucus from the gall-bladder ; and probably the pancreatic secretion as well. When jaundice is associated with cyanosis a greenish tint of the skin is produced. Ultimately the liver may become the seat of a fibrotic change. After a time the spleen tends either to become permanently enlarged ; or occasionally very small and firm, with a much thickened capsule. *d.* Undoubtedly the kidneys may be involved, becoming venously congested and finally cirrhotic. The urine may be deficient in quantity ; is often high-coloured, concentrated, and of high specific gravity ; deposits urates abundantly ; and contains more or less albumin, as well as casts in some cases. There may be pain and tenderness over the renal region. Catarrh of the bladder occasionally occurs. *e.* From congestion of the genital organs symptoms not uncommonly arise in females, namely, menorrhagia, metrorrhagia, leucorrhœa, and possibly metritis. In males there may be a diminution in sexual power and inclination : while prostatic enlargement and hydrocele have been attributed to cardiac affections in some instances.

4. Serious symptoms may arise in connection with disease of the heart, from the **formation of clots and other materials** within its cavities. Not only may portions of clots be detached and cause local obstruction of vessels ; but in malignant endocarditis septic products are formed, which give rise to septicæmia and septic embolism.

5. Certain conditions of the heart or pericardium may originate symptoms by causing **pressure** on neighbouring structures. The left lung is not uncommonly considerably compressed, and this adds to the dyspnoea. Dysphagia may also arise from pressure on the oesophagus, but this only occurs practically in cases of extreme pericardial effusion.

6. Cardiac affections will necessarily influence the **pulse**, from which most important information may be gained. The investigation of the pulse will be presently discussed.

7. In rare instances **rupture of the heart** occurs, with consequent escape of blood into the pericardium, necessarily leading to grave symptoms, and in most cases terminating in speedy death.

II. CLINICAL PHENOMENA CONNECTED WITH THE ARTERIES.

1. Occasionally there may be local pain, tenderness, throbbing, a feeling of tension, or other **subjective sensations** associated directly with some diseased condition of an artery. Such sensations are practically limited to cases of aneurism. Diffuse throbbing of arteries is not uncommon.

2. **Pressure** on neighbouring structures gives rise to an important class of symptoms in connection with aneurismal dilatation of arteries. Only aneurisms within the chest or abdomen, however, come specially under the notice of the physician. At present the symptoms due to pressure within the chest will alone be considered. They may result

from the pressure of any mediastinal tumour, and therefore the description here given will apply to all forms of mediastinal enlargement, it being borne in mind that the exact symptoms must necessarily depend upon the situation, shape, size, direction and rate of growth, and other characters of the tumour; that it is rare for the whole of those mentioned to be observed in the same case; and that they are liable to change during its progress. The modes in which pressure contributes to the production of symptoms in connection with the chest may be summed up generally as follows:—*a.* By causing displacement, as of the heart, trachea, or large vessels; and altering the relation of orifices. *b.* By pressing upon hollow tubes or organs, and obstructing them to a greater or less degree, for example, the air-tubes, oesophagus, great vessels, thoracic duct, or heart. *c.* By compressing the substance of organs, and thus preventing them from performing their functions, for instance, the lungs. *d.* By leading to actual destruction of tissues, as of the chest-walls, spinal cord, walls of hollow tubes, pericardium or heart, lungs, or nerves. *e.* By irritating or paralyzing nerves, symptoms being often thus set up at a distance from the seat of mischief. *f.* By exciting local inflammation, ending in exudation, adhesion, or suppuration.

Such being the general effects of pressure, the special symptoms may be considered according as the pressure tends in an outward or *centrifugal*, or an inward or *centripetal* direction.

(i.) *Centrifugal symptoms.*—In addition to obvious physical signs, pressure on the parietes of the thorax is likely to excite pain, either neuralgic; or due to inflammation of various structures; or to destruction of bone, when it tends to be heavy, grinding, or gnawing in character. When neuralgic, the pain often shoots in various directions, as up along the neck or down the arm. There may be merely a sense of weight and oppression, or of heat; or indefinable feelings may be complained of. Tenderness is frequently observed; and sometimes extreme hyperæsthesia of the skin. Actual paralysis of nerves may ultimately be caused. If the vertebral column is eaten through, symptoms associated with the spinal cord are set up, first indicative of irritation, and subsequently of destruction.

(ii.) *Centripetal symptoms.*—*a.* Pressure on the right side of the heart or pulmonary artery will interfere with the supply of blood to the lungs, and thus aid in causing dyspnoea, while it leads to general overloading of the venous system. The action of the heart is very liable to be disturbed when this organ is pressed upon. *b.* Obstruction of a main artery—innominate, carotid, or subclavian—will alter the characters of the corresponding carotid or radial pulse, diminishing its fulness and force, delaying it, or even obliterating it. *c.* Most important symptoms result from pressure on the large systemic veins, usually the superior vena cava, either innominate, or the vena azygos major. Very rarely is the inferior vena cava interfered with by any thoracic condition. Venous congestion, œdema, enlargement of capillaries and veins, the formation of coagula, or actual rupture of vessels may follow, the nature and extent of the symptoms depending upon the vein which happens to be obstructed, these being usually confined to the head, face, neck, chest, and arms, and either bilateral or unilateral. The face, especially about the lips, is often swollen and cyanotic, and may present distended capillaries and venules. The neck may be full, thickened, and tumid-looking, having a peculiar spongy or elastic feel, somewhat resembling that of

erectile tissue. The throat is often congested, and forms abundant secretion. More or less severe cerebral symptoms may result from venous congestion of the brain; and deafness is sometimes complained of. If the vena azygos is pressed upon, there are signs of spinal congestion, namely, sensory and motor disturbances in the limbs and lower part of the body. Should the inferior cava be interfered with, there will be œdema of the legs and abdominal walls, accompanied with ascites and other signs of obstruction involving the abdominal circulation. *d.* Rarely the pulmonary veins are compressed, causing pulmonary congestion and its consequences. *e.* The various morbid conditions set up in connection with the main air-tubes or lungs may cause more or less severe dyspnoea, cough, expectoration, haemoptysis, or alterations in voice. Frequently marked laryngeal or tracheal symptoms are present, either due to direct pressure upon the air-tube; to chronic laryngitis and ulceration, which may be the result of mere irritation of the nerves; or to muscular disorder from interference with nerves. *f.* From œsophageal obstruction dysphagia results; and if food cannot be taken wasting necessarily follows. *g.* Extreme emaciation is one of the consequences of obstruction of the thoracic duct. *h.* Pressure on, or traction of nerves originates numerous clinical phenomena, some of which have been already noticed. Interference with the vagus nerves or pulmonary plexuses disturbs breathing and cardiac action. The recurrent laryngeal nerves, especially the left, are peculiarly liable to be pressed upon or stretched, marked laryngeal symptoms being thus originated. Pressure on the phrenic nerve will affect the action of the diaphragm. Contraction of the pupil of the eye, or, more rarely, dilatation, depends upon more or less disturbance of the sympathetic trunk; this may also affect the temperature and nutrition of one side of the head and face. Some of the nerves forming the brachial plexus are in exceptional instances so pressed upon as to lead to various disorders of sensation, especially pain, or even to paralysis or wasting of the muscles of the arm; and pressure on the intercostal nerves may cause pain in, or paralysis of the corresponding muscles.

3. **Obstruction of an artery** will be followed by symptoms dependent upon the want of a proper supply of arterial blood in the part to which the obstructed vessel normally conveys it. These will vary not only with the organ or part which is thus deprived of blood, but also according to the degree and rapidity of obstruction. If sudden and complete, it will lead to immediate abolition of functions, and thus may induce serious symptoms, as in the case of the brain, in connection with which sudden loss of consciousness and hemiplegia may follow obstruction of an artery; or when the main artery of a limb is blocked up, which is directly followed by local paralysis. If the obstruction is more gradual it causes anaemia, diminution of temperature, depression of functions, and defective nutrition, which may end in softening or actual gangrene. The pulse also is more or less weakened to complete extinction in the divisions or branches of the artery which is obstructed; while in the portion of the obstructed artery nearer the heart there is increased pulsation.

4. Diseased conditions of arteries may originate **emboli** or **septic products**, thus giving rise to symptoms of vascular obstruction in distant parts, or to septicæmia.

5. Serious phenomena, both local and general, will necessarily attend the **rupture** of an artery, if it is of any size.

6. **The Pulse.**—To *feel the pulse* has always been justly looked upon as one of the first duties of a medical practitioner. This gives invaluable information in general diseases, and in various affections connected with other organs which influence the heart and vessels, as well as with regard to special morbid conditions of these structures. The subject will be considered in detail under PHYSICAL EXAMINATION.

III. CLINICAL PHENOMENA CONNECTED WITH THE VEINS.

1. There may be **pain**, **tenderness**, or **superficial redness** in the course of diseased veins.
2. When veins are **obstructed** in any way, the local formation of a clot being the most frequent cause, there will be the signs of venous congestion and its consequences previously described, varying in situation and extent according to the vessel or vessels involved.
3. **Embolii** may originate from clots in veins or venous sinuses, and be conveyed to various parts of the body, especially the lungs. Septic matters may also be formed in these vessels.
4. Certain conditions of veins are at once evident on **objective examination**, especially varicose veins.
5. **Rupture** of a vein is not uncommon, leading either to external or internal haemorrhage, or to subcutaneous extravasation of blood.

IV. PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE CIRCULATORY ORGANS.

The chief modes of physical examination available for the investigation of the circulatory system are similar to those already described in relation to the chest generally. In addition, certain special methods are employed. For observing accurately the difference in time between the movements of different parts of the heart, the plan is adopted of fixing bristles over corresponding parts of the chest, by means of pellets of bees'-wax or in other ways, each bristle carrying a small paper flag. Special instruments are also in use for graphically recording movements, namely, the *cardiograph*, to record those of the heart, and the *sphygmograph*, those of the pulse; Dr. Gowers has invented a combined *cardio-sphygmograph*. Other forms of apparatus, such as the *sphygmomanometer* of Professor von Basch, intended to estimate the blood-pressure in the radial artery, are beyond the province of this work to consider.

The nature of the information afforded by the different modes of examination in connection with the heart and vessels may be thus summarized. *Inspection* reveals:—1. Any alteration in the shape and size of the chest over the cardiac region; or bulging corresponding to an aneurism. 2. Certain points about the impulse of the heart. 3. The amount of visible pulsation in the great arteries of the neck; the existence of abnormal pulsation; and certain conditions of the arteries of the limbs. 4. The state of the superficial veins, as well as of the large veins in the neck, especially the right external jugular. *Palpation* indicates:—1. Any local change in size and shape. 2. The precise characters of the cardiac impulse. 3. The presence of any cardiac thrill or pericardial friction-fremitus. 4. The condition of the large arteries of the neck; the characters of any abnormal pulsation, whether visible or not; and the state of the arteries of the limbs. 5. Certain

signs connected with the veins of the neck. *Mensuration* merely gives more accurate information with regard to form and size. *Percussion* discloses:—1. Any alteration affecting the cardiac dulness; and the amount of resistance felt over this region. 2. Abnormal dulness due to an aneurism. *Auscultation* is mainly useful for the investigation of certain sounds, namely:—*a. Sounds connected with the heart.* (i.) The ordinary *cardiac sounds*. (ii.) Abnormal sounds originating within the heart, named *endocardial murmurs* or *bruits*, usually depending upon some morbid condition in connection with the orifices or valves. (iii.) *Pericardial murmurs* or *friction-sounds*, due to roughness of the surfaces of the pericardium. *b. Arterial sounds and murmurs*, especially associated with the large arteries of the chest and neck, but which may also be heard in the smaller arteries. *c. Venous murmurs.* It may be mentioned that the stethoscope may also prove very serviceable in realizing certain characters of the cardiac impulse or of an aneurismal pulsation, through the sensations thus conveyed to the head. Vocal fremitus and resonance may be made use of with advantage in some cases, as aids in determining the limits of the heart.

I proceed now to consider specially the PHYSICAL EXAMINATION of the several parts of the circulatory system.

A. EXAMINATION OF THE HEART.

Before discussing the several points relating to the physical examination of the heart, attention may be called to the fact that in rare instances the viscera are transposed, and then the signs associated with this organ will be transferred from the left to the right side of the chest.

I. CHANGES IN THE FORM AND SIZE OF THE CARDIAC REGION.

1. Bulging. This varies much in degree, but may extend from the second to the seventh or eighth rib, while the sternum may also be partly involved. The intercostal spaces are either normal or unduly prominent. Measurement shows that there is a greater distance from the nipple to mid-sternum on the left than on the right side. Bulging is most liable to occur, and is most marked, in young persons. *Causes.* (i.) Enlargement of the heart, especially hypertrophy. (ii.) Pericardial effusion.

2. Depression. There may be a general falling-in over the cardiac region; or the spaces are sometimes chiefly affected. *Cause.* Pericardial agglutination, with adhesion of its outer surface to the chest-wall.

II. CARDIAC MOVEMENTS.

The cardiac movements are usually investigated by *inspection* and *palpation*, assisted in some cases by *immediate* or *mediate auscultation*. The instruments already mentioned may be required to give more accurate information, and it will be convenient to offer here a few remarks regarding the *cardiograph*. This consists of an apparatus which registers graphically the movements of the different parts of the heart, either upon a sphygmograph-plate, or on a revolving cylinder. The description of the different instruments employed will be found in physiological works. The tracing is named a *cardiogram*.

Description of Cardiogram.—The accompanying diagram (Fig. 24) represents a normal cardiogram. In the line of ascent two waves are seen; that opposite *a* represents the commencement of the ventricular diastole; that at *b* is due to the auricular systole. From *b* to *d* corresponds to the ventricular impulse; the wave *c* indicating the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves, but it is not always at the extreme summit. In the line of descent *e* corresponds to the closure of the sigmoid valves. The waves between *c* and *d* have been attributed to oscillations originated by the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves; but some observers suppose that they are produced by the cardiograph.



FIG. 24.

A *cardiographic tracing* gives very accurate indications of the absolute and relative duration of the different parts of a cardiac revolution; and also affords information with respect to the force of the ventricular contraction, and as to variations in the force and frequency of the heart's action. Clinically the cardiograph has been found useful in cases of aortic regurgitation, mitral regurgitation or obstruction, adherent pericardium, and reduplication of the heart-sounds. Apart from the heart, the instrument has also been employed to record the movements of pulsating tumours and aneurisms.

Impulse in Health.—In health the cardiac impulse practically corresponds with the apex-beat, which is usually felt in the fifth left interspace, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch below and $\frac{3}{4}$ inch inside the nipple, or about 2 inches from the left margin of the sternum, over an area of about a square inch. It may be a space higher or lower, according to the shape of the chest; and also tends to be raised in children, and depressed in old people. It is single, and systolic in time; slightly heaving and gliding downwards and towards the left; gradual and not abrupt in its development.

Impulse in Disease.—When examining the cardiac impulse for clinical purposes, the chief points to be noticed are:—1. Its exact position, and whether this is constant or varies with different beats of the heart. 2. Its area, as seen and felt; and whether this is well-defined or not. 3. Its force. 4. The characters it presents to the sight and touch. 5. Its rhythm. 6. The effects of change of posture upon it in certain cases.

1. *Position.* The impulse may be displaced by conditions external to the heart; by morbid changes in the pericardium; by alterations in the size of the heart itself; or by a combination of these causes. (i.) *Elevation.* The apex-beat is often raised to the fourth space or higher. *Causes.* *a.* Pushing up of the heart by some abdominal accumulation, such as ascites or an enlarged liver. *b.* Upward traction, owing to contraction of the lung from phthisis involving the left apex, or sometimes the right, with the formation of adhesions. *c.* Pericardial effusion, or adhesions after pericarditis. *d.* Diminution in the size of the heart, from atrophy or great loss of blood. (ii.) *Depression.* The impulse is often lowered, and may reach as low as the seventh or eighth rib. *Causes.* *a.* Cardiac enlargements, especially hypertrophy, either general or affecting the left side. *b.* An aneurism or other tumour above the heart, pushing it down. *c.* Pericardial effusion in some cases. *d.* Weakness of the great vessels, owing to some acute or long-continued illness, allowing the heart to sink down. (iii.) *Lateral displacement,* either to the right or left, is very common,

being often combined with elevation or depression. *Causes.* *a.* Pushing aside of the heart by a collection of fluid or gas in either pleural cavity, especially the left; by an enlarged lung, due to emphysema, hypertrophy, or cancer; or by an aneurism or other tumour. After such displacement the heart may remain permanently adherent in its new position. *b.* Cardiac enlargements. According to the nature of the enlargement, and the part of the heart affected, the impulse will be carried more to one side or the other. As a rule, it may be stated that hypertrophy tends to displace the impulse more towards the left; dilatation towards the right. *c.* Pericardial effusion, which always carries the apex-beat to the left. *d.* Contraction of the lung in cases of chronic phthisis; or as the result of pleurisy. (iv.) Occasionally the impulse *alters its position* with different beats of the heart, when this organ is greatly dilated.

2. *Area, and degree of definition.* (i.) The area of the cardiac impulse is often increased to a variable extent, being either well-defined or the reverse. *Causes.* *a.* Cardiac enlargements, especially if associated with pericardial agglutination. *b.* Excited action of the heart. *c.* Undue contact of the heart with the chest-walls, either from retraction of the left lung; adhesion between the pericardium and costal pleura; pressure on the heart from behind by an enlarged liver or spleen, or a tumour; or falling-in of the chest-walls. *d.* Pericardial effusion, in which the impulse appears to be very extensive and ill-defined. (ii.) *Diminished area* is observed in most of the conditions which weaken the impulse, but it is not of much practical importance.

3. *Force.* This may be:—(i.) *Increased* in various degrees. *Causes.* *a.* Hypertrophy of the heart. *b.* Undue contact with the chest-walls. *c.* Excited action. (ii.) *Diminished*, sometimes to complete extinction. *Causes.* *a.* Functional weak action of the heart from any cause. *b.* Certain cardiac diseases, such as dilatation, fatty degeneration or infiltration, and atrophy. *c.* Fluid or air in the pericardial sac; or, in exceptional cases, pericardial adhesion, the movement of the apex being completely interfered with. *d.* Distension of the lungs, especially the left, from emphysema or hypertrophy, in consequence of which they come between the heart and the chest-walls.

4. *Characters.* The impulse often presents unusual characters, the following being the most important:—(i.) *Undulatory* or *wave-like*. This may be only visible, or felt as well. *Causes.* *a.* Pericardial effusion. *b.* Dilatation of the heart, with thin, weak, and degenerate walls. *c.* Uncovering of the heart, with adhesion of the pericardium to the chest-walls. (ii.) *Heaving* or *pushing*. It is for the purpose of observing this character that the stethoscope is useful, through which the movement becomes often very obvious, both to the auscultator and to bystanders. A distinctly heaving impulse is characteristic of cardiac hypertrophy. (iii.) In dilatation the impulse is often *quick, sharp, and slapping*. (iv.) When the heart is very feeble the action may be *jerk*ing or *fluttering*. (v.) If pericardial agglutination exists along with hypertrophy or dilatation, and with or without valvular disease, the impulse frequently acquires very peculiar characters, differing in different cases, and it may be impossible to say what parts of the movement are systolic, and what diastolic. In some instances a recession or indrawing is observed at the apex after the impulse; and in cases of extensive agglutination, a systolic recession of more or less of the praecordium or of the epigastric region is occasionally noticed.

5. *Rhythm.* (i.) *Irregularity* is often observed, both as regards force and time; or the beat may be *intermittent*. *Causes.* a. Functional disturbance of the heart's action. b. Cardiac diseases, namely, marked dilatation, fatty disease, and some cases of mitral or aortic disease. c. Malformations of the heart. d. Occasionally pericardial effusion or adhesion. (ii.) In pericardial effusion the impulse sometimes seems to *lag behind the ventricular systole*, as if the movement took some time to be conveyed to the surface. (iii.) The systolic impulse may appear to be *double* or even *treble*; or a *diastolic* impulse may likewise be felt. This is observed in some cases of dilatation and hypertrophy with pericardial adhesion.

6. *Effects of change of posture.*—(i.) *Increased mobility* of the apex-beat has been considered a sign of pericardial effusion, but it is not of much importance. (ii.) The fact that the impulse *does not alter in different postures* is sometimes of much aid in determining the existence of adhesions—pericardial and pleuritic.

Basic and Epigastric Impulse.—It is necessary to allude briefly to the impulse not uncommonly seen or felt towards the base of the heart; and to that in the epigastrium. *Basic impulse* is chiefly observed in cases where a cavity in the apex of the left lung has contracted, drawing up the heart and bringing it into close contact with the chest-walls, adhesions probably forming; but it may be due to auricular hypertrophy, or to aneurism of the heart. Of course a pulsation in the neighbourhood of the base of the heart may be associated with the aorta or pulmonary artery. A *diastolic impulse* is felt under certain circumstances over the pulmonary artery, less frequently over the aortic area, due to the closure of the pulmonary and aortic valves respectively. *Epigastric impulse* is generally cardiac in origin; sometimes it is associated with the aorta; or is the result of regurgitation of blood into the inferior vena cava or hepatic vein, which may even give rise to expansile pulsation of the liver. Cardiac epigastric impulse is either due to displacement of the heart, or to temporary distension or permanent enlargement of the right ventricle; or it may be the natural consequence of a short thorax.

III. PECULIAR SENSATIONS FELT OVER THE CARDIAC REGION.

1. *Thrill or purring tremor.* These terms sufficiently indicate the special character of a peculiar vibratory sensation conveyed to the fingers, which is indicative of certain conditions of the orifices and valves of the heart. In order to determine the origin of a thrill, it is necessary to observe its *situation* and *synchronism*. It may be requisite to excite the heart by brisk movement before it can be felt. The different thrills which may be met with are as follows, and more than one may be present in the same case:—(i.) At the left apex—a. Systolic, indicating mitral regurgitation, but rarely felt unless mitral obstruction is also present. b. Præsystolic or diastolic, associated with mitral obstruction, which is by far the most common cardiac thrill. (ii.) Systolic in the second right interspace near the sternum, due to aortic obstruction; or more extensively, especially if the aorta is at the same time diseased and dilated. (iii.) Diastolic occasionally, felt down the sternum mainly, but in exceptional instances extending over a very wide area, associated with aortic regurgitation. (iv.) Systolic over the inner part of the

second left space or opposite the third cartilage, indicative of pulmonary obstruction. (v.) *Præsystolic* in the fourth left space or opposite the fourth cartilage. This is a mere curiosity, but has been said to accompany tricuspid obstruction.

2. *Pericardial friction-fremitus* is very exceptionally perceptible in pericarditis, extending over more or less of the cardiac region. Differing in its characters entirely from a thrill, it gives the impression of being quite superficial and rubbing; is movable, and irregular as regards its site and rhythm, though usually felt chiefly during the systole; and seldom lasts for any length of time. It may be simulated by pleuritic fremitus caused by the action of the heart. A curious sensation is sometimes felt, associated with the morbid changes remaining after an attack of pericarditis.

IV. CARDIAC PERCUSSION.

(A.) **Cardiac dulness.**—This is described as being *superficial* and *deep*. The former corresponds to the part of the heart uncovered by lung, and is triangular in shape, being bounded towards the right by a line along the middle of the sternum from between the fourth cartilages; and towards the left by a line extending obliquely from the same point to the apex. The deep cardiac dulness extends as far as the limits of the heart, but requires much practice in order to mark it out.

Cardiac dulness in disease.—The points requiring to be noticed are:—1. Position. 2. Extent and directions of increase. 3. Shape. 4. Degree and quality. 5. Effects of change of posture.

1. *Position.* This may be entirely abnormal, as, for instance, when the heart is congenitally in a wrong situation, or is displaced by pleuritic effusion.

2. *Extent and directions of increase.* (i.) The area of cardiac dulness may be *increased* more or less, this being usually associated with some change in shape. *Causes.* a. Abnormal contact of the heart with the chest-walls, especially when due to retraction of the lung. b. Enlargements of the heart, the extent and direction of the increased dulness depending upon the part of the heart involved, and the nature of the enlargement. c. Accumulation or clotting of blood within the cavities, or congestion of the walls of the heart, especially as the result of some pulmonary obstruction. d. Any liquid or solid collection within the pericardium, but especially effusion from inflammation, the dulness then increasing chiefly in an upward direction. e. Increase of cardiac dulness may be simulated by conditions external to the heart, for instance, consolidation of the margin of the lung; accumulation of fat; a solid tumour; or aneurism of the aorta. (ii.) *Diminution* of cardiac dulness is not reliable in determining the condition of the heart, but is often most useful in indicating distension of the lungs, especially the left. *Causes.* a. Atrophy of the heart. b. Great loss of blood and consequent emptiness of the cavities. c. Accumulation of air in the pericardium. d. Hypertrophy or emphysema of the lungs.

3. *Shape.* The form of the cardiac dulness often affords important evidence as to the cause of any increase in its extent. In pericardial effusion it tends to be triangular, with the base down and the apex upwards. In hypertrophy it becomes elongated vertically: in dilatation lateral enlargement takes place, especially towards the right, and the outline is more square or circular. The form of dulness, however, will be

modified according to the part of the heart involved, and the degree in which the two kinds of enlargement are combined.

4. *Degree and quality.* The degree of dulness sometimes affords a distinction between pericardial effusion and cardiac enlargement, being more marked in the former. If the pericardium or heart is calcified, the percussion-note may become somewhat osteal in quality.

5. With *change of posture* the dulness due to pericardial effusion may be made to alter in extent and form, but this test is rarely called for, and it may be very dangerous to attempt to carry it out.

(B.) **Resistance.**—The sensations conveyed to the fingers on percussion are not very reliable in the diagnosis of cardiac affections; but the sense of resistance is likely to be more marked in pericardial effusion than in hypertrophy.

V. AUSCULTATION OF THE HEART.

(A.) SOUNDS OF THE HEART.

It is essential to have a clear comprehension of the mode of action of the heart, and of the sounds associated therewith, before auscultation can be of any value in the investigation of the morbid conditions of this organ. With regard to the normal sounds, it is requisite to know the characters of each; how these differ as examination is made over different parts of the thorax; and the mechanism of their production.

During each action of the heart, on listening over the apex-beat, there may be noticed in succession:—1. A systolic sound, synchronous with the contraction of the ventricles. 2. A short silence. 3. A diastolic sound at the moment when the ventricles cease to contract, and the aortic and pulmonary valves close. 4. A longer silence, which is again followed by the systolic sound. As regards duration, they bear about the following proportion to each other, dividing an entire cardiac action into tenths:—

<i>Systolic sound.</i>	<i>1st interval.</i>	<i>Diastolic sound.</i>	<i>2nd interval.</i>
$\frac{4}{10}$	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{2}{10}$	$\frac{3}{10}$

At the *left apex*, that is, just within and below the nipple, the systolic sound is prolonged, well-defined, and accentuated; it seems muffled and somewhat deep; and is of rather low pitch. The diastolic is much shorter, sharper, and more abrupt; clearer; more superficial; and higher-pitched. At the *right apex*, namely, over the base of the ensiform cartilage, both sounds are clearer and higher-pitched than at the left, and the systolic is less accentuated, shorter, and sharper. Comparing the sounds at the *base* and *apex*, it will be found that at the base the diastolic sound becomes relatively the more pronounced, being loud and distinct, well-accentuated, clear and often ringing. At the *right base*, opposite the second right interspace or third cartilage close to the sternum, the sounds seem to be usually louder than at the corresponding point on the left side, especially the diastolic, although Vierordt, as the result of his observations, affirms that the second sound is considerably louder over the pulmonary artery, diminishing up to the age of 40, after which period the aortic second sound becomes slightly the louder. Finally, it must be noticed that the sounds are generally better heard

under the left clavicle and over the left side posteriorly, than over the corresponding regions on the right side.

In auscultating the heart in order to detect abnormal conditions it may be necessary to make the patient stop breathing for a moment; to excite the heart by various kinds of movement; or to examine in different postures.

Heart-sounds in disease.—It is highly important to attend to the ordinary cardiac sounds when examining the heart for clinical purposes, as they frequently afford most valuable information.

1. **Sounds at the left apex.**—The stethoscope should first be applied over the apex-beat; and the following are the deviations from the normal which may be met with:—

1. *Changes in intensity and apparent depth.*—(i.) *Intensity increased.* Causes. (a.) Excited action of the heart. (b.) Approximation of the heart to the chest-walls, when the sounds also appear to be superficial. (c.) Combined hypertrophy and dilatation, particularly if the valves are somewhat hypertrophied at the same time. (d.) Deficient quantity or a watery condition of the blood. (ii.) *Intensity diminished.* Causes. (a.) Feeble action of the heart from any cause. (b.) Certain organic cardiac affections, namely, atrophy; excessive hypertrophy, which muffles the sounds; dilatation, with thinning of the walls; changes in the muscular walls, especially fatty degeneration or infiltration, but also acute softening associated with fevers and other conditions, and fibroid or cancerous infiltration. (c.) Collections of fluid, air, or much solid material in the pericardium. (d.) Distension of the left lung by emphysema or hypertrophy. In the last two conditions the sounds appear to be deep, in consequence of imperfectly-conducting materials intervening between the heart and the parietes of the chest.

2. *Changes in characters.*—The *pitch, quality or tone, and degree of clearness of the systolic sound* may give important information in certain conditions. In marked hypertrophy without dilatation this sound becomes toneless, dull, obscure, muffled, and of very low pitch. In dilated hypertrophy with some thickening of the valves it may be booming, clang ing, or musical. When the heart is merely dilated it is often high-pitched, abrupt, and clicking or slapping. Anæmia frequently causes the systolic sound to become unusually sharp, clear, and high-pitched. The heart-sounds are said to be *impure* when they are wanting in clearness and definition.

3. It is sometimes important to notice the *length of the systolic sound*: and to compare the *relative lengths of the sounds and intervals*. For instance, in dilatation with hypertrophy the systolic sound is very prolonged; there may be hardly any diastolic sound; and the intervals are shortened. In mere dilatation the diastolic sound often becomes the longer one, so as to simulate the systolic, which is much shortened. The first sound at the left apex is also usually remarkably short and abrupt in cases of mitral obstruction.

It may be noted here that various alterations in the cardiac sounds have been described by different writers as among the earliest signs of endocarditis.

II. **Comparison of the sounds in different parts of the chest.**—It is often of advantage to compare the sounds over different parts of the thorax, but especially at the apex and base of the heart; and at the right and left apex or base. As illustrations of the knowledge

thus to be gained the following facts are important :—1. If the sounds, being weak at the apex, are louder at the base, this serves to distinguish pericardial effusion from dilatation or fatty heart. 2. Greater intensity at the right apex than the left shows either displacement or enlargement of the right side of the heart; or that this organ is unusually covered by some imperfectly-conducting material, especially an emphysematous lung. 3. Marked loudness and accentuation of the second aortic sound at the base often indicates obstruction in the general circulation, either due to degenerative changes in the vessels, or to renal disease, especially granular kidney, giving rise to increased arterial tension. This may be associated with a very weak first sound, owing to degeneration of the cardiac walls. A change in the aortic sound may also depend on commencing changes in the valves, a dilated aorta, or aortic aneurism. 4. Markedly louder sounds at the left base than the right, particularly the diastolic, indicate that there is some disease affecting the passage of blood through the mitral orifice, causing abnormal tension in the pulmonary circulation. 5. Any condition, either in connection with the heart itself or external to it, which alters the position of this organ, will correspondingly modify the sounds. For example, in left pleuritic effusion they are most audible on the right side of the chest. 6. The extent and direction of conduction of the cardiac sounds may be useful in determining the presence of disease in other organs. Thus, in consolidation at the apex of the right lung they are very often decidedly louder under the right clavicle than the left. In right basic pneumonia they are frequently very marked over the corresponding part of the chest. On the left side the heart-sounds may be loudly heard posteriorly, on account of compression or consolidation of the lung. Cavities in the lungs may intensify these sounds considerably, or sometimes impart to them unusual characters, such as a peculiar hollowness or a metallic quality.

III.—**Reduplication.**—This term implies a *doubling* of either of the sounds of the heart. The second sound is more often affected than the first, but both may be reduplicated in the same case. The slower the action of the heart, the more easily is the doubling appreciated, and very rapid action may abolish it. This phenomenon has been particularly studied by Dr. James Barr, of Liverpool.

With regard to the cause of reduplication of the *first sound*, it is generally considered to be due to asynchronism in the action of the two sides of the heart. Dr. Barr refers it definitely to “want of synchrony in the closure and tension of the tricuspid and mitral valves, or in the initial stages of contraction of the right and left ventricles.” Other views are, however, entertained, namely, that it is the result of the resolution of the first sound into its component elements; of non-synchronism in the tension of the different segments of the auriculo-ventricular valves, owing to absence of perfect uniformity in the contraction of the papillary muscles (Guttmann); of a double click of the left or right auriculo-ventricular valves (D’Espine); while some maintain that the first part of the reduplicated sound is caused by the auricular systole, when the auricle is hypertrophied and acting energetically—in short, that it is *praesystolic*. The auricle is thus supposed to produce a sound by its own contraction (Johnson); or by the effect of its action upon the valves (Sansom, Guttmann). Doubling of the *second sound* is almost universally regarded as being due to asynchronism in the closure and

tension of the aortic and pulmonary valves; but Guttmann has also attributed this phenomenon to asynchronous closure of the individual segments of the semilunar valves, and to auricular action.

With respect to the causes of the asynchronism on the two sides, which is generally believed to account for reduplication, there is also a difference of opinion. Usually it is supposed that, in the case of the first sound, it is due to excess of blood-pressure in one or other ventricle, retarding the closure of its auriculo-ventricular valve; in the case of the second sound, to excess of blood-pressure in the aorta or pulmonary artery, accelerating the occlusion of the respective valves. Dr. Barr, however, maintains "that relatively greater blood-supply to one or other ventricle does not retard the closure of its auriculo-ventricular valve, but more quickly overcomes the inhibitory action of the vagus, stimulates that ventricle to initiate contraction, and first apply tension to its auriculo-ventricular valve, which perhaps may be more readily affected on account of the hyper-distension of the ventricle, and thus produces the first element of a duplex first-sound." Regarding the second sound, he holds "that duplication does not directly depend on high tension in one or other artery, but is owing to asynchronism at the end of ventricular contraction and the consecutive reaction of the pulmonary artery and aorta, with tension of their respective valves."

Reduplication is often physiological, being observed in health, especially in relation to the act of respiration. Doubling of the first sound occurs at the end of expiration or commencement of inspiration; of the second sound, at the end of inspiration or commencement of expiration. This phenomenon is also present in certain cases of Bright's disease; and doubling of the second sound has been noticed in connection with mitral constriction, aortic stenosis, and certain pulmonary affections which obstruct the circulation.

The exact characters presented by reduplicated sounds vary, and there is sometimes a danger of mistaking them for a murmur. One form of reduplication is that which has been called *bruit de galop* by Potain, who noticed it in cases of hypertrophy of the heart associated with granular kidneys, but it may be present in other conditions. As Dr. Barr rightly observes, this *bruit* is not a galop but a canter.

(B.) ENDOCARDIAL MURMURS.

An *endocardial murmur* or *bruit* is usually associated with one of the cardiac orifices, being either a normal sound altered in its characters, or altogether a new sound. With regard to the immediate cause of a cardiac murmur, it appears that it cannot depend upon the friction of blood against rough or irregular surfaces, as was at one time supposed, for a thin layer of motionless fluid always exists between the blood-current and any such surface. It is due to the passage of the blood through a narrow orifice into a wider space beyond, and has been attributed either to certain "fluid veins" which produce sonorous vibration, or to friction between the fluid particles of the blood. In order to determine the site of production of any murmur, and the morbid condition of which it is a sign, it is necessary to observe:—1. The seat of its greatest intensity. 2. The directions in which it is conducted. 3. Its time, whether systolic, diastolic, praesystolic, or post-diastolic. These being the essential points, it is always advisable—4. To attend to certain other particulars, especially the duration, loudness, quality or character,

and pitch of a murmur; and its effect upon the ordinary cardiac sounds. Thus a tolerably accurate conclusion may be arrived at with regard to the actual cause of a particular murmur, and the conditions of the valves and orifices with which it is associated; the state of the heart's walls, and the manner in which this organ is acting; and the quality of the blood.

General outline of causes of murmurs.—1. In the large majority of cases a cardiac murmur depends upon some morbid condition in connection with one of the orifices, which either causes *obstruction* to the onward passage of the blood, or permits *regurgitation* owing to imperfect closure of the valves. (i.) *Obstruction* may arise from:—*a.* Constriction or stenosis at or about an orifice, its margins being generally thickened at the same time. *b.* Some direct impediment in the course of the circulation, as from much enlarged and nodulated or adherent valves, which cannot fall back at the proper time; or rarely from polypi or other growths. *c.* External pressure by a tumour, fibrous thickening, or other morbid condition. *d.* Twisting of an orifice, with a wrong direction of the current of blood, consequent upon displacement of the heart. (ii.) *Regurgitation* may be due to:—*a.* Mere widening of an orifice, the valves not enlarging in proportion. *b.* Organic lesions of the valves, which prevent them from performing their functions properly, such as actual destruction or rupture, perforation, contraction, thickening and rigidity, or adhesion to the walls of the heart or to each other. *c.* Structural changes in the appendages of the valves, namely, the chordæ tendineæ or musculi papillares, interfering with their closure. *d.* Mere irregular action or altered position of the musculi papillares, which prevents the valves from falling into their places at the proper time or in the proper manner. *e.* Degeneration at the root of either of the great arteries, interfering with the adaptation of its valves. 2. Mere roughness of the endocardium may cause a murmur, especially when due to endocarditis, and particularly if in the vicinity of the orifice. 3. Fibrinous coagula among the columnæ carneæ or upon the surface of the valves occasionally give rise to a bruit. 4. Cardiac murmurs may depend upon certain exceptional morbid conditions, such as sacculated aneurism of the heart; abnormal communications between the cavities of the heart, or between either of these and one of the great vessels; or dilatation of the aorta at its commencement, the orifice being unaltered. 5. Certain abnormal conditions of the blood are liable to cause a murmur, especially anaemia. 6. Excited cardiac action may render the sounds rough and murmurish. Murmurs have been appropriately divided into *organic* and *inorganic*, according as they are associated or not with positive organic mischief. The latter will be presently alluded to separately.

Characters of murmurs at the several orifices.—Theoretically there may be two murmurs in connection with each of the four chief orifices of the heart, one indicating *obstruction*, the other *regurgitation*; but only *mitral* and *aortic* murmurs are commonly met with, those associated with the *tricuspid* and *pulmonary* orifices being comparatively exceptional.

1. **Mitral Murmurs.**—Speaking generally, mitral murmurs may be termed *apical*, their point of maximum intensity being usually over or in the vicinity of the apex-beat on the left side.

1. **Mitral Regurgitant.**—From its point of greatest intensity, a mitral regurgitant murmur is conducted in certain directions, but to a variable

extent according to its loudness and other circumstances. Generally it soon ceases in an inward direction, but may reach as far as or even beyond the middle line. It is audible more or less upwards, but is not often distinct at the base of the heart, and in many cases becomes abruptly fainter on passing the stethoscope in this direction. It is said, however, that a mitral regurgitant murmur is occasionally loudest a little to the outside of the pulmonary area, or may even only be heard here. This has been explained by Naunyn by the fact that the appendix of the left auricle impinges upon the chest at this point, and he attributes it to the better conduction of the murmur along the course of the regurgitating blood, the fluid veins producing sonorous vibrations louder at the point of impingement than at that of origin; and the dilated auricle being closer than usual to the surface of the chest, and therefore nearer to the ear. The regurgitant bruit is commonly well-conducted round the left side, being audible behind in the left vertebral groove, or even sometimes in the right, especially between the sixth and ninth dorsal vertebræ. The exact direction of conduction of this murmur has been said to indicate which flap of the valve is mainly involved, the aortic flap being supposed to be implicated if the murmur takes the direction of the axilla, the outer flap if it is conducted away to the left of the nipple. Sometimes it is so loud as to be heard extensively over the chest. The time of the murmur is *systolic*, and it may either entirely or partially replace the first sound of the heart. It is generally of medium pitch, and not uncommonly distinctly blowing in character. It varies considerably, however, in its exact pitch and qualities.

2. *Mitral Obstructive or Constrictive*.—An obstructive mitral murmur is practically an entirely morbid sound, for nothing corresponding to it can be heard in health. Its intensity is not very great as a rule, but even when loud the extent of its conduction towards the axilla is far less than that of the regurgitant murmur, it being, indeed, often confined to a limited area about the apex, while it is only very exceptionally heard in the back. It seems, however, to be better conducted towards the middle line than the systolic murmur. As regards its time, mitral obstructive murmur is usually termed *post-diastolic* or *präsystolic*, as it is in most cases a short murmur, immediately preceding the first sound, which is peculiarly short and sharp in quality. In some instances, however, the murmur is prolonged, occupying the whole of the diastolic period. Some observers have noticed a separate diastolic murmur in mitral obstructive disease, either existing alone or separated by a very short silence from the präsystolic murmur. Dr. George Balfour describes this as always slightly musical, and as heard either over the mitral area, or where the fourth rib joins the sternum on the left side. Mitral obstructive murmur may only be heard in the recumbent or erect posture respectively, and is often brought out or made more evident by exercise. The pitch of this murmur is low; and the quality almost always harsh, sometimes remarkably so, being vibratory, grating, churning, or grinding in character.

The explanation usually given of the mitral obstructive murmur is as follows:—As soon as the ventricle ceases to contract the mitral valves fall back, and the orifice becomes patent. The blood which has collected in the auricle quietly passes through for a while; but finally the auricle, having become distended, suddenly contracts, and drives the blood with some force through the mitral opening, this being immediately followed by the ventricular systole. It is at the time of this auricular

contraction that the murmur is usually perceived, and hence it has been called "auricular-systolic." It may in some cases, however, be heard during the whole of the period that the blood is passing through the orifice. It must be noted that this explanation is not universally accepted. The late Dr. Barclay maintained that it is really a systolic murmur, produced at the commencement of the contraction of the ventricle; and this view has been since advocated by Dr. Dickinson. It has also been affirmed that a murmur having the characters of mitral obstructive murmur is occasionally heard where there is no actual organic change; and that it may disappear for a time or permanently.

II. **Aortic Murmurs.**—These are often termed *basic*, but the two murmurs differ materially as regards their point of maximum intensity, and directions of conduction.

1. *Aortic Obstructive*.—Most marked at the base of the heart, generally over the sternum and in the contiguous portion of the second right inter-space, an aortic obstructive murmur is conducted mainly upwards and to the right, but also to some extent down the sternum and towards the left apex, though it is seldom heard at this point. Behind it is often audible in the left vertebral groove, usually from about the second or third to the sixth or seventh dorsal vertebra, but sometimes it can be heard all along the dorsal region, and even on the right side. I have met with several instances in which an aortic obstructive murmur was so loud as to be heard over the chest and back extensively, as well as for a considerable distance along the main arteries. It is systolic in rhythm; and its duration depends on that of the ventricular contraction. The murmur is of low or moderate pitch; often rough in quality; occasionally musical; but it may be very harsh or even rasping.

2. *Aortic Regurgitant*.—This murmur is usually loudest over the sternum, opposite the third space or fourth cartilage, being conducted chiefly downwards along the sternum, so that it is often very distinct over its lower end, where it generally abruptly ceases. Towards the right infra-clavicular region it is not nearly so well conducted as the obstructive murmur, and it is rarely heard in the back. In some instances it is transmitted chiefly to the left of the sternum, in the direction of the apex of the heart, where it may be distinctly or even loudly audible. This has been supposed by Sir Walter Foster to indicate that the posterior or mitral segment of the aortic valve is incompetent. Occasionally this bruit is well-heard to the right of the sternum. The rhythm of aortic regurgitant murmur is diastolic, and it more or less obscures, or takes the place of the second sound; it is always prolonged, and may fill the whole period of diastole. Commonly this bruit is of blowing quality, not harsh, and of medium or high pitch; its characters are variable, however, and it may be distinctly musical.

III. **Tricuspid Murmurs.**—These are heard at the right apex, that is, over the junction of the xiphoid cartilage and sternum, being conducted a little upwards and to either side. 1. *Regurgitant*. Regurgitation is common at the tricuspid orifice, but as this is due to mere enlargement of the opening, and as the right ventricle does not act powerfully, a murmur is only heard in comparatively few instances. When present it is systolic; usually faint, but sometimes loud; and of low pitch. 2. *Obstructive*. This is of rare occurrence, but several cases have been described of late years in which a tricuspid obstructive murmur was present. It is praesystolic in time.

IV. Pulmonary Artery Murmurs.—These are chiefly audible at the left base, about the second inter-space and third cartilage or space near the sternum, and are conducted upwards and to the left, so that they are well heard under the left clavicle. As in the case of the aorta, two murmurs may be met with, namely :—1. *Obstructive* or *systolic*, of which I have met with several instances. 2. *Regurgitant* or *diastolic*, which is extremely rare, and is almost always associated with a systolic murmur.

Conditions influencing Cardiac Murmurs.—Without entering into particulars, it must suffice to state that murmurs may be modified as regards their intensity, seat, direction of conduction, or characters by :—
1. Deformities of the chest. 2. Posture. 3. Morbid conditions external to the heart, for example, emphysema, pleuritic effusion, lung-consolidation. 4. The state of the walls and cavities of the heart, as regards hypertrophy, dilatation, or degeneration. 5. The force and regularity of the cardiac action. 6. The presence of two murmurs at the same orifice. 7. The existence of two synchronous murmurs at different orifices. 8. The state of the blood.

Inorganic Murmurs.—A brief summary may be given here of the inorganic cardiac murmurs which may be met with. 1. *Anæmic*. This usually corresponds mainly in position to a pulmonary systolic murmur, and is somewhat blowing or whiffing in quality. An anæmic bruit may, however, be audible over the aorta, as well as at the apex. Excited action of the heart, pressure with the stethoscope, and the erect posture intensify an anæmic cardiac murmur. This murmur has been commonly supposed to be produced at the pulmonary orifice, and to be due either to the watery state of the blood ; to pressure upon the pulmonary artery with the stethoscope ; or to unusual vibration of the walls of the artery or its valves, in consequence of their being in a relaxed condition. Some authorities, however, among them Dr. George Balfour, maintain that the murmur is that of mitral regurgitation, conducted to the left auricular appendix, as already explained, and due to dilatation of the heart associated with the anæmic condition. Certainly in some cases a distinct mitral regurgitant bruit is audible in this state. An aortic systolic murmur is said to be developed late in an anæmic case, and to be due to the large blood-wave sent on by the dilated and hypertrophied heart (Bean). 2. It is generally believed that a murmur may result from *irregular action of the musculi papillares* in the left ventricle ; being of the nature of a slight, or occasionally of a tolerably marked, though inconstant, mitral regurgitant murmur. This is usually associated with chorea, but many attribute the inorganic murmur heard in this complaint to dilatation of the heart, and consequent mitral regurgitation. 3. *Excited cardiac action* or *irregular palpitation*, especially if associated with enlargement of the heart, may cause the first sound to become distinctly rough and murmur-like, particularly over the aortic orifice. 4. *Twisting of the heart* may give rise to a basic systolic murmur. 5. *External pressure* generally leads to an aortic obstructive murmur, but occasionally the murmur is seated at the pulmonary orifice. 6. Murmurs due to *clots in the heart* are usually systolic, and connected with the right orifices.

(C.) PERICARDIAL SOUNDS.

I. Pericardial Murmurs or Friction-Sounds. A pericardial friction-sound depends upon the rubbing together of the opposed surfaces of the pericardium during the cardiac action, when these are the seat of certain morbid changes. It may thus be associated with excessive vascularization; exudation or its remains; coagulated blood; or tubercle or cancer.

Characters.—In the following description of a *pericardial friction-sound*, the differences between this sound and an *endocardial murmur* will be sufficiently indicated, but it must be remembered that both may be present in the same case. 1. Its *seat* and *extent* are very variable, but frequently its point of greatest intensity does not correspond to that of any endocardial murmur; while it is usually abruptly limited even when loud, and is not conducted in the directions characteristic of endocardial sounds. It is more frequently heard towards the base than at the apex. 2. It appears to be distinctly *superficial* as a rule. 3. Great variety is observed as regards the *intensity*, *quality*, and *pitch* of a pericardial friction-sound. Usually it is more or less *rubbing* and *rough* in quality, but may be clicking, creaking, or grating, and the late Dr. Walshe described churning and continuous-rumbling varieties, due to the presence of fluid. It may differ over different parts of the praecordium. 4. The *rhythm* may be systolic, diastolic, or both, but very often it is irregular, not corresponding exactly to either period, and varying with each beat of the heart. A double murmur of maximum intensity at the same spot is considered very characteristic of pericardial origin. In many cases the heart-sounds may be heard quite distinctly through a friction-sound. 5. Pressure with the stethoscope frequently materially modifies a pericardial murmur, by increasing its area or intensity; altering its rhythm; raising its pitch; or rendering it rougher in quality. 6. Bending the body forwards is said to intensify pericardial friction, but this is not reliable. It may disappear in the sitting posture; and a change in position may affect that of the murmur, should fluid be present in the pericardium. 7. A quick inspiration in some cases intensifies friction-sound, and raises its pitch. 8. Rapid changes are liable to take place during the progress of the case, as regards the site, extent, rhythm, and characters of a pericardial murmur.

It is necessary to mention that a pericardial murmur may be simulated by pleuritic friction, modified by the cardiac action. Its situation, which is generally about the left border of the heart; marked irregularity; and cessation when the breath is held, will usually serve to distinguish the latter.

II. A pericardial splashing-sound has been described, developed by *succussion*, and due to the presence of air and fluid in the sac, but it is extremely rare.

B. EXAMINATION OF THE ARTERIES.

In directing physical examination to the arterial system, it is well to attend first to the great vessels of the chest and neck; and afterwards to the arteries of the limbs, especially the brachial and radial. The temporal or facial arteries may also afford useful information.

(A.) **Examination of the Arteries of the Chest and Neck.**—The chief abnormal conditions which may be observed in connection with these vessels may be thus summarized:—

I. **Local bulging**, which may be caused by aneurism.

II. **Changes in the amount and characters of pulsation.** These are usually determined by *inspection* and *palpation*, but the stethoscope gives material aid in certain cases, while the paper-flag apparatus or the cardiograph may be sometimes used with advantage. 1. *Excessive pulsation* may be associated with:—*a.* Excited action of the heart. *b.* Hypertrophy of the left ventricle. *c.* Aortic regurgitation, which is also characterized by an immediate or rapid collapse of the arteries. *d.* An atheromatous condition of the vessels, especially if accompanied with dilatation. *e.* Aneurisms of various kinds, which present a limited impulse, usually *expansile* and *heaving*. 2. In cases of mitral regurgitation there is sometimes almost an entire *absence of pulsation* in the carotids and subclavians, even when the heart is much hypertrophied, and is acting powerfully.

III. **Thrill.** An arterial thrill may depend upon:—1. Anæmia. 2. External pressure. 3. Diseased vessels and aneurism, especially general dilatation accompanied with atheroma or calcification. A thrill may be felt in the suprasternal notch, owing to the aorta being thus affected; or it sometimes extends widely over the upper part of the chest to the right of the sternum.

IV. **Abnormal dulness and resistance.** The only morbid condition of an artery which can give rise to this physical sign is an aneurism.

V. **Sounds and murmurs.** 1. Two sounds are described as usually audible in health over the carotid artery, and often over the subclavian, being conducted from the aortic orifice, though Guttmann attributes the sound accompanying arterial expansion partly to the vibrations in its wall. This sound is also sometimes heard over the abdominal aorta, and the brachial and femoral arteries. Pressure over an artery with the stethoscope will readily produce a murmur at the time of the arterial expansion. This is well observed in connection with the third part of the subclavian artery, especially if the heart is acting forcibly or is hypertrophied, or if there is anæmia. The anæmic murmur is usually very easily produced; of high pitch, and blowing, whiffing, or whizzing quality; and may be heard extensively along the arteries. A double murmur is sometimes produced in anæmia by pressure over the femoral artery. 2. Murmurs in the arteries may be associated with disease affecting the aortic orifice. Aortic murmurs are conducted more or less along the arteries, especially that of obstruction. In aortic incompetence the sudden tension of the arterial walls with each cardiac systole gives rise to a sound, and a double sound or murmur may be sometimes present, or is brought out by pressure over the femoral artery in such cases. 3. Pressure by a tumour,

enlarged glands, or fibrous thickening and adhesion, may cause an arterial murmur. One of the best examples of this mode of causation is the subclavian murmur heard above or below the left clavicle in some cases of phthisis. 4. Arterial murmurs may be associated with morbid conditions affecting the vessels themselves, including—*a.* Roughness of the inner surface of an artery, due to atheroma, calcification, erosion, exudation, or fibrinous coagula. *b.* Change in the form of an artery, namely, aneurism, in which the murmur may be systolic, diastolic, or both; and coarctation. *c.* Abnormal communication between a large artery and vein, such as between the aorta and superior vena cava. *d.* Vascular tumours.

(B.) **Examination of the Arteries of the Limbs.**—The brachial artery, just above the bend of the elbow, usually affords the best indications as to morbid states of the arterial system generally, especially atheroma and calcification. On bending the elbow the vessel becomes distinctly visible and tortuous, presenting a vermicular motion with each pulsation; while it feels more or less hard and rigid, is often large, and rolls like a cord under the finger.

The pulse.—Usually the radial artery at the wrist is made use of for observing the characters of the pulse, but, as already intimated, it is often advantageous to attend to other arteries, such as the brachial, temporal, or carotid, and when investigating local morbid conditions special vessels must of course be examined. The chief methods of examination are by *inspection*, *digital palpation*, and the use of the *sphygmograph*; and the points to be noticed with regard to the pulse include:—*a.* Its *visibility* or *invisibility*. *b.* *Frequency*. *c.* *Quickness* (sharp, abrupt, slow). *d.* *Volume* (large, full, small, thready). *e.* *Force*, and *degree of resistance* or *tension* (strong, weak, extinct; soft, hard; of high or low tension; compressible, incompressible; equal, unequal). *f.* *Rhythm* (regular, irregular, intermittent, lagging behind cardiac systole, continuous). *g.* *Special characters*, both to sight and touch (rigid, tortuous, bounding, hammering, jerky, undulating, with sense of sudden subsidence, vibrating or thrilling, tremulous, dicrotic or reduplicate). The term *dicrotic*, when applied to the pulse as felt by the finger, implies that this has a sensation of being doubled; it possesses a special significance, however, in relation to the sphygmographic tracing. *h.* *Sphygmographic tracings*. *i.* The effects of *change of posture*; of *deep inspiration*; and comparison of the characters of the pulse *on opposite sides*, in particular cases. It is in some instances very useful to notice whether there is any difference in the pulse when the arm is raised vertically.

The Sphygmograph.—For more complete information respecting this instrument reference must be made to physiological works, and to special writings on the subject. Different kinds of sphygmograph are used, and the instrument must be seen in order to be properly understood, but it may be stated here what it essentially consists of. An elastic steel spring, of sufficient strength, is provided on the under surface of one end with a convex piece of ivory, which is placed over the artery, the other end being fixed to the framework of the instrument. By a certain arrangement the movements produced in this spring by the pulsation of the artery are transmitted to a narrow lever moving on a pivot, and long enough to amplify them considerably. At the free extremity of this lever is a little pen, made of flexible metal, which traces the motion, either on a piece of glazed paper by means of ink, or

on smoked glass. This paper or glass is made to travel quickly and steadily in a definite direction, by the aid of an apparatus with clock-work, which is wound up, and the plate can be started or stopped at will by a regulator. As it passes along, the pen traces upon its surface the movements communicated from the pulse through the spring.

A sphygmographic tracing is generally taken over the radial artery, the apparatus being fixed on the front of the fore-arm, with the end of the spring over the artery near the wrist, and being kept in its place by elastic bands passing round the fore-arm, the back of which rests on a pad. It is no easy task at first to fix the instrument so that the pulsations are rendered evident, and to regulate the pressure on the artery so that it shall not be too great or the reverse, and that thus the movements may be made visible in their maximum degree; this regulation is effected by means of a screw, and is a matter of much importance.

Description of a sphygmographic tracing. The entire tracing, of which Fig. 25 is intended to give a general idea, is made up of a series of



FIG. 25.—Sphygmographic Tracing.

curves or pulsations, each of which corresponds with a complete revolution of the heart's action. It is necessary first to study the characters of an individual typical curve. It may be described as consisting of a *systolic* and *diastolic* part, corresponding respectively to the period of contraction and dilatation of the ventricle; or it may be divided into:—
a. Line of ascent; *b. Summit*; *c. Line of descent*, in which may be observed two or sometimes three secondary waves with intervening notches, named, *first* or *distension wave*; *second* or *great wave*, or *true diastole*; and *third wave*, which lies between the other two, but is usually absent. In order to explain these different parts, it is necessary to point out certain facts in the physiology of the circulation, of which

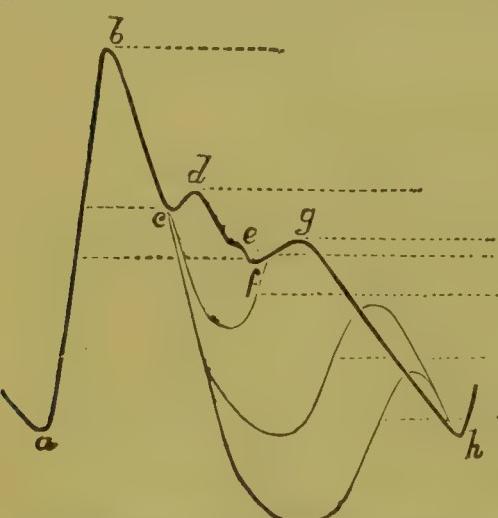


FIG. 26.—Enlarged Sphygmographic Curve.

the sphygmograph has given far more accurate knowledge than was previously possessed; and to indicate their relation to the various parts of a pulse-curve. It will be well to take them in the order in which they occur, illustrating them by Fig. 26.
 1. The left ventricle contracts more or less suddenly, opening the aortic valves, which gives an impulse to the blood in the arteries; thus is produced the *line of ascent*, *summit-wave*, or *percussion-impulse* (*a* to *b*).
 2. After this sudden vibration the arterial walls partially collapse, which is indicated by the first part of the line of descent, ending in the *first notch* (*b* to *c*).
 3. A wave of

blood next passes out of the heart into the aorta, and this gives rise to the *first secondary wave, wave of distension or systolic pressure* (*c to d*). 4. After this there is a reflux of blood towards the heart, by which the aortic valves are closed, which corresponds to the portion of the line of descent from *d* to *f*, ending in the *great or aortic notch* (*f*). 5. During this reflux a vibration may occur, originating the *third secondary wave* (*e*), which is placed as it were in the aortic notch, and which, as already stated, is generally wanting. 6. The aortic valves are then suddenly closed by the pressure of the reflux current of blood, and this accounts for the *great secondary wave or true dicotism* (*f to g*). 7. Finally, the blood flows onward in the vessels, this corresponding to the remainder of the line of descent (*g to h*); after which the ventricle again contracts, and the same series of phenomena is repeated.

It will be evident on studying this description, that the systolic portion of the curve extends from the beginning of the line of ascent to the bottom of the aortic notch (*a to f*), during which the ventricle is either contracting or contracted; the rest of the line of descent corresponding to the diastole.

When observing a sphygmographic pulse-tracing, the following are the particulars to be noted:—1. The number of the pulsations on the tracing, which gives the exact frequency of the pulse. 2. With regard to each curve:—*a*. the length of the line of ascent, and whether it is vertical or more or less oblique; *b*. the shape of the summit, whether acute, rounded, or square; *c*. the number, size, and position of the secondary waves; *d*. the direction and length of the part of the line of descent beyond the aortic wave, and if there are any undulations in it. 3. The relative characters of the curves in a tracing, especially their height and depth, observing whether their summits and bases are on the same level or not, which may be determined by drawing a horizontal line along the top and bottom of the tracing; these being respectively the lines of the greatest and least arterial tension. In this way the regularity or irregularity of the pulse is determined with precision.

The conditions which chiefly modify the sphygmographic tracing are:—1. The rapidity and force of the ventricular contraction. 2. The degree of arterial tension or resistance, which is influenced by the condition of the walls of the vessels; the controlling effect of the nerves upon them; and the degree of difficulty in the onward passage of the blood, either in the distal part of the artery itself, or through the capillary circulation. 3. The quantity of blood sent into the vessels, which is to some extent dependent upon the duration of the interval between the pulsations, as, if this is long, the blood flows onward, and thus the quantity in the arteries is diminished, and the pressure lessened. 4. The volume of the artery. 5. The condition of the aortic valves.

The more rapidly the ventricle contracts, the more vertical will be the line of ascent, while the height of this line is in proportion to the force of contraction. If the ventricle is acting feebly the summit assumes a rounded form. High arterial tension tends to diminish the height of the line of ascent, and to render it more sloping; to make the first secondary wave proportionately more developed, and to raise it until it ultimately becomes blended with the apex, making this round or square; to obliterate all minor waves; to lessen the aortic wave; and, if there is obstruction to the onward passage of the blood, to make the remainder of the line of descent slightly convex upwards, and to shorten it. Low tension produces the opposite effects, and is often

attended with vibratory undulations in the line of descent ; it being only when this condition exists that the third secondary wave is observed.

A healthy pulse-curve presents a line of ascent nearly vertical and of moderate height ; an acute summit ; and a gradual descent, usually only interrupted by the distension and aortic secondary waves. This form of pulsation is sometimes called *tricrotous*, because it has three waves. It must be remembered that physiological variations of the pulse-tracing will arise from taking food or alcohol, over-exertion, external heat, strong emotion, and other causes.

Certain terms are used in describing sphygmographic curves, which it is requisite to notice. When the first secondary wave is absent or nearly so ; the aortic notch deep (owing to the closure of the valves being delayed), so that it is on a level with the base of the curve ; and the aortic wave prominent, the pulse is called *dicrotous*. (See Fig. 26.) It indicates very low arterial tension. A minor degree of this variety is named *hypo-* or *sub-dicrotous*. A greater degree, so that the aortic notch sinks below the level of the curve basis, the aortic wave forming part of the line of ascent of the next pulsation, is termed *hyper-dicrotous*. *Monocrotous* signifies that there is only the primary wave ; and *polycrotous*, that there are a number of undulatory vibrations.

Use of the Sphygmograph in disease. Undoubtedly the sphygmograph gives much more exact and accurate information with regard to the circulation than can be obtained by merely feeling the pulse, especially with respect to the action of the heart, and the degree of arterial tension ; while it reveals irregularities and inequalities which cannot otherwise be detected. The tracing can also be preserved for future reference. The sphygmograph is employed for purposes of diagnosis and prognosis, and for indicating treatment. Its *diagnostic* value has been chiefly noticed in aortic disease, especially regurgitation ; cardiac hypertrophy ; degeneration of arteries ; capillary disease associated with degenerative processes in tissues ; renal disease ; and aneurisms, in connection with which it is necessary to compare the pulses on the two sides. The characteristic differences in the tracings will be pointed out under the several diseases.

For *prognostic* and *therapeutic* indications the tracings obtained by the sphygmograph may be useful in fevers and other acute diseases, such as delirium tremens, pericarditis, or pleurisy, especially by comparing them with the temperature. Among the principal dangerous signs are a marked dicrotous, hyper-dicrotous, or monocrotous pulse ; great inequality and irregularity of the tracings ; or a small curve, the ascent being short and not vertical, with a rounded or square summit.

C. EXAMINATION OF THE VEINS.

The veins, from the examination of which most information may usually be gained, are those of the neck, and the superficial veins of the chest. In many cases it is also useful to observe the superficial veins of other parts, especially those of the abdomen and legs. When examining the veins of the neck, special attention should be paid to the right external jugular, and to the venous sinus at the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular. The following are the important abnormal signs which may be noticed in connection with these vessels :—

1. **Enlargement.** It is necessary to observe the degree of the dilatation ; whether it is permanent or variable ; and if the vessels are

knotted or varicose. *Causes.* 1. Engorgement and dilatation of the right cavities of the heart. 2. Tricuspid regurgitation. 3. Obstruction of the superior vena cava, innominate, or a more local vein, owing to pressure upon it by a tumour or other morbid condition: or internal plugging by a thrombus. 4. An aneurism communicating with a large vein within the thorax.

II. Excessive distension of the veins of the neck after a cough. During the act of coughing the veins of the neck always fill more or less, but when they are dilated and their valves are inefficient, they become much more distended than usual, and the degree of imperfection in the valves may often be thus indicated.

III. Pulsation, and filling from below. Some observers affirm that these characters can be seen in the large veins of the neck even in healthy persons, but at any rate they are then scarcely appreciable. In order to realize them satisfactorily, the patient should assume a recumbent posture, with the head low. Generally pulsation can only be *seen*, but when very powerful it may also be *felt*. Care must be taken not to mistake transmitted arterial impulse for venous pulsation. In order to detect *filling from below*, it is requisite to press upon the *right external jugular vein* near the clavicle, and then draw the finger up the neck along its course, keeping up the pressure; the vein usually fills in jerks.

Causes. 1. When the veins of the neck are distended, a certain degree of pulsatory movement attends the act of respiration, each inspiration diminishing the distension, and each expiration increasing it. 2. When the right cavities of the heart are over-filled, the systole of the ventricle may cause a vibration to be transmitted through the tricuspid valve to the blood in the auricle, and thence to the veins. 3. Tricuspid regurgitation often leads to venous pulsation, but usually this is soon associated with—4. Inefficiency of the valves of the veins, which renders the pulsation more marked, and which must exist before there can be any filling from below. 5. Right hypertrophy considerably intensifies venous pulsation. Pulsation in connection with the liver is occasionally noticed, of an expansile character, and associated with the hepatic vein. Sudden collapse of the jugular veins during the ventricular diastole is said by Friedreich to be a sign of pericardial adhesion.

IV. Venous thrill. A thrill is in very exceptional instances felt in connection with the veins of the neck. It may accompany the pulsation just mentioned; or may be due to extreme anaemia.

V. Venous murmurs. 1. *Venous hum*—“*Bruit du diable.*” This is the only venous murmur which is at all likely to be met with, being often present in health in some degree, but being particularly common and loud in cases of marked anaemia. It is best heard at the junction of the right internal jugular and subclavian veins, especially on twisting the neck a little to the left; this murmur may, however, be extensively diffused along the veins, being audible sometimes over the thorax and over the cranium. It is continuous and uninterrupted, though not uniform in its intensity; and of variable quality, such as humming or musical, buzzing, rushing, or whistling. Inspiration, pressure, and the erect posture intensify the venous hum; while it is loudest during the ventricular systole, being in proportion to the force and rapidity of the current of blood. 2. *Intermittent venous murmurs* have been described, associated with anaemia, tricuspid regurgitation, hypertrophy of the right heart, and other morbid conditions, but they must be extremely exceptional.

CHAPTER XXI.

GENERAL THERAPEUTICS OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

I. Therapeutic groups.—The action of remedies upon the circulatory system is a very complicated subject, and one which it is difficult to discuss within a limited compass. All that can be done here is to indicate the groups which are usually recognized, without any reference to their modes of action; and the important members of each group. Many of the agents act both on the heart and vessels; while not a few have very different effects, according to the doses in which they are given, and the method or duration of their administration. The mutual relation of the heart, the blood-vessels, and the blood to each other is well-known, and must always be borne in mind in connection with the therapeutics of the circulatory system. Moreover, by affecting this system the functions of other important organs are often influenced, and the effects thus produced may again react upon the cardio-vascular apparatus. The several groups may be considered in the following order:—

1. *Cardiac Stimulants*.—These quickly excite the action of the heart, causing it to beat more vigorously, and usually with greater frequency, thus promoting the rapidity and force of the circulation. Many of them at the same time cause dilatation of the arterioles, and thus aid the flow of blood. Cardiac stimulants are either employed for temporary purposes, to rouse the heart into activity when it threatens to fail, as in syncope; or to keep up its strength at intervals during a more or less prolonged illness, as in low febrile or inflammatory diseases. The chief medicinal agents belonging to this group are ammonia and carbonate of ammonium, in all forms, the aromatic spirit being a valuable preparation; alcohol, especially brandy or other spirit, and champagne; the several ethers and chloroform at first; nitrite of amyl by inhalation, which markedly increases the frequency, but only slightly the force of the heart's beats; oil of turpentine; the ordinary volatile oils; camphor; sumbul, valerian, musk, and asafœtida; coca and cocaine; opium in small doses, especially useful when a persistent action is required; belladonna and atropine and allied drugs at first; and strychnine. Digitalis and its group are also used to strengthen the action of the heart, but they are more conveniently included under another class. Tea and coffee are remedies usually at hand which may prove serviceable in some cases. Among local methods for exciting the heart may be mentioned gentle tapping with the finger over the praecordium; the application of heat or rubefacients; and the use of the continuous current. The organ can also be reflexly stimulated by the use of smelling salts, flagellation or flicking the surface with wet towels, and in other ways. Transfusion of blood may be called for under special circumstances.

2. *Cardiac Sedatives and Depressants*.—When the heart is acting excessively, whether in frequency or force, or in both respects, a cardiac

sedative is employed to subdue this over-activity, and to bring it down to the normal state. In some conditions it is necessary to go beyond this point, and to produce a depressant effect upon the organ. The principal measures or agents which may be more definitely used for these purposes are removal of blood, especially by venesection; antimonial preparations, particularly tartarated antimony; aconite; green hellebore; ipecacuanha; colchicum; bromides; hydrocyanic acid; chloral hydrate; opium and morphine; the atropaceous group, especially belladonna and atropine; calabar bean or physostigmine; and ergot. Several other drugs, which have at first an opposite effect, tend to depress the cardiac action at a later period, such as digitalis and its allies, chloroform, nitrite of amyl and other nitrites, and camphor. In certain conditions salts of potassium, especially the nitrate or iodide, are administered with the view of depressing the cardiac action; and also acetate of lead. Other agents which may be employed as cardiac sedatives are swallowing ice rapidly in considerable quantity; and local application of cold or counter-irritation over the praecordial region. Emetics, purgatives, diuretics, and diaphoretics have a more or less depressant effect upon the circulation. The warm bath when prolonged has a powerful action of this kind.

3. *Cardiac Tonics and Regulators.*—The agents belonging to these groups are of most frequent service in dealing with organic diseases of the heart, their effects being usually produced more gradually than is the case with the other groups, and being more persistent. As generally understood, a cardiac tonic is a remedy which exercises a controlling, regulating, or inhibitory, as well as a strengthening influence upon the heart, thus promoting efficiency in its action, and a more perfect circulation. The frequency of its beats is diminished, often considerably, and any tendency to irregularity or intermittency is checked; while the force of the ventricular contractions is markedly increased. At the same time a typical agent of this class stimulates the vaso-motor apparatus, thus promoting arterial tension. When analyzed the total result is that the diastole is lengthened, and the ventricles are well-filled; the ventricular cavities are thoroughly emptied; the arteries are properly filled, and are kept in this state; while the veins are duly relieved of blood. Other agents which may be regarded as tonics to the heart merely improve its muscular nutrition or tone; and thus permanently strengthen its beats. The principal cardiac regulators and tonics are digitalis, which is universally recognized as the typical member of this group, its active principle, digitalin, being also used; strophanthus and strophanthin, now much employed; convallaria; casca bark; squill; senega; cactus grandiflora; caffeine; sparteine; and chloride of barium. Other valuable remedies, acting chiefly as tonics, include nux vomica and strychnine; quinine; preparations of arsenic; and compounds of iron. Local electrical treatment and massage may also be employed as cardiac tonics.

4. *Vascular Stimulants—Vaso-dilators.*—It has been incidentally noted in connection with the cardiac groups that several of the agents belonging to these groups affect the arteries at the same time. There are some, however, which are used more particularly for their effects upon the vessels, and these demand separate notice. Vascular stimulants produce more or less dilatation of the arteries, and thus promote the flow of blood. They may be *general* or *local*. The former include such drugs as solution of acetate or citrate of ammonium, Dover's powder, with

certain alteratives, as sulphur and guaiacum resin. Local vascular stimulation may be effected by heat, or heat and moisture; friction, especially with stimulant liniments; mild irritants; or douching. There is a remarkable class of agents now much employed for definite purposes, which cause very rapid or even instantaneous dilatation of the arteries all over the body, and these may be specially termed *vaso-dilators*. They include chiefly the nitrites, especially nitrite of amyl and nitro-glycerine, and to a less degree spirit of nitrous ether and nitrite of sodium. Belladonna and atropine have also a marked effect in relaxing the peripheral vessels. Digitalis, in the later stages of its action, dilates the arteries.

5. *Vascular Sedatives—Vaso-contractors.*—These produce the opposite effect, causing diminution in the calibre of the arteries, and consequently subduing the activity of the circulation. Many astringents act thus, both generally and locally; but the more prominent vaso-contractors are ergot and ergotin, hamamelis, and nux vomica or strychnine. Cold is a valuable local agent of this class.

II. **Methods of Administration.**—In an ordinary way remedies employed to affect the circulatory system are administered by the mouth. Some of them act in a reflex manner from the stomach; but as a rule they are quickly absorbed, and so speedily influence the heart and vessels. When patients cannot swallow, as well as under special circumstances, these remedies can be introduced *per rectum*, and rapid effects may be thus produced. Certain agents act mainly and most speedily upon the circulatory system when inhaled, as is well-exemplified by nitrite of amyl. Subcutaneous injection is another most valuable method of administration in relation to this system, especially in sudden or grave cases; and it may even be desirable, under exceptional circumstances, to inject remedies directly into a vein.

III. **Auxiliary Therapeutic agents.**—The more important effects which can be produced in connection with the heart and vessels through the blood have been already alluded to; but it may be further noted that the circulation can be locally influenced by dry-cupping and other methods which modify its distribution. Among the factors which more or less influence the circulatory functions, and which in a large number of instances require careful consideration in relation to the treatment of cardiac affections, must be specially mentioned rest and exercise; posture; food and digestion; the conditions of the air inhaled; the habits of the patient, as regards alcohol, tobacco, tea, drugs, and other injurious articles in common use; and causes acting through the nervous system, such as want of sleep, mental excitement or overwork, worry or anxiety, and the like. While, as pointed out in relation to the respiratory system, pulmonary affections may be influenced through the heart, so, on the other hand, may the heart be not uncommonly materially helped by relieving certain conditions of the respiratory organs. Finally, it must be noted that the removal of any physical difficulty which embarrasses the cardiac movements is a most important indication in treatment, if this is practicable, such as that due to pleuritic effusion, pneumothorax, ascites, or an abdominal tumour. There is one irremovable physical condition, however, which often materially interferes with the action of remedies upon the heart, and which is very apt to be overlooked when present, namely, pericardial adhesion.

CHAPTER XXII.

ON CERTAIN SYMPTOMS AND FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS CONNECTED WITH THE HEART.

I. DISORDERED CARDIAC ACTION.—PALPITATION.

THE cardiac action is liable to numerous disorders, and special terms are now in common use to designate certain of these derangements. Without entering into details, it must suffice to say that the action of the heart may be excessive, the organ beating too powerfully, and at the same time in most cases too frequently; irritable; tumultuous and laboured; feeble, even almost to extinction; irregular, unequal, intermittent, or otherwise abnormal in rhythm—a group of disorders included under the term *arrhythmia*, culminating in the extreme form of irregularity called *delirium cordis*; remarkably rapid, in some instances attaining extreme frequency—*tachycardia*; or, on the other hand, peculiarly slow—*brachycardia* or *bradycardia*. The word *palpitation* is often used very indefinitely. It really implies that the patient is conscious of cardiac disturbance which is actually present, in the direction of excess or irregularity. It is important to bear in mind, however, that the heart's action may be seriously affected, and yet the patient be altogether unaware of the fact; while, on the other hand, the sensations complained of are in some instances entirely subjective, the organ beating quite normally. Cardiac disorders are often merely temporary and accidental; in other cases they are more or less paroxysmal; while in others again they are persistent, though generally liable to exacerbations.

Etiology.—It must be borne in mind that abnormal action of the heart may be *physiological*—that is, it is peculiar to the individual, or may even run in families, and cannot be referred to any discoverable morbid condition. This applies even to apparently serious disturbances, such as habitual irregularity, intermittence, or remarkable rapidity or slowness of the beats. The chief pathological causes of cardiac disorder may be thus arranged:—1. *Acute or chronic organic diseases of the heart or pericardium.* These may disturb the cardiac action either by embarrassing the organ, as in the case of pericardial effusion; implicating its muscular tissue, vessels, or nerves; or interfering with the circulation at one or more of the orifices. When palpitation is associated with a hypertrophied heart, it may indicate that the hypertrophy is insufficiently compensatory, or that there is commencing degeneration. 2. *Physical interference with the cardiac movements*, as from tight-lacing; distorted chest; pleuritic accumulations; or abdominal distension. 3. *Obstruction in the vessels*, either from a diseased condition of their walls; or high arterial tension, in connection with vascular spasm, atheroma or calcification, or Bright's disease. 4. *Acute or chronic affections of the lungs which interfere with the pulmonary circulation*, such as pneumonia, or bronchitis with emphysema. 5. *Abnormal states of the blood*, either as regards its quantity or quality, for example, plethora, anaemia, or cyanosis; or the

condition associated with gout, rheumatism, jaundice, renal disease, or the febrile state. 6. *Causes acting through the nervous system.* The chief of these are powerful or prolonged cerebral excitement, or undue mental labour; sleeplessness; strong emotion, as from sudden joy, fright, and various other familiar disturbances of this nature; nervous disorders, such as hysteria or epilepsy; the abuse of tea, coffee, alcohol, or tobacco; certain drugs, as aconite, digitalis, belladonna, lead, etc.; and reflex abdominal disturbance, especially originating in the alimentary canal, the urinary apparatus, or the genital organs. Palpitation is a prominent symptom in exophthalmic goitre. Under this head it may be also noticed that abnormal cardiac action may be associated with organic disease of the central nervous system; with some lesion directly affecting the vagus nerve, the sympathetic trunk, or the cardiac plexus; or with mental derangements. The disturbances of the heart observed during convalescence from acute febrile and inflammatory diseases, well-exemplified in diphtheria, as the result of sunstroke, or after prolonged exhaustion from any cause, also probably belong to this category.

7. *Miscellaneous.* Violent exertion is an important cause to be mentioned under this group. It is familiar to all that exercise increases the action of the heart, but when severe or prolonged it may be the starting-point of a definite morbid disturbance of this organ, which lasts a variable time. The influence of high altitudes in originating cardiac disorder may also be noticed here, especially when combined with over-exertion.

Special Etiology.—Space will not permit of any lengthy consideration of the special causes of particular forms of cardiac disorder, but a few of the more prominent points may be noticed.

Irregularity of the heart's action is frequently a serious indication of deficient heart-power. Thus it is often, but by no means necessarily, associated with grave organic disease, such as dilatation, fatty degeneration, or mitral disease, especially mitral stenosis; or with low conditions of the system, as in malignant fevers. In some persons the heart is more or less habitually irregular for no definite reason, or it becomes thus disordered from very slight causes, the disturbance being functional.

Intermittency signifies that there is a complete arrest in the ventricular contractions, until two or sometimes more auricular contractions have occurred, which seem to be required before sufficient blood is sent into the ventricle to rouse it into activity. The conditions with which it is chiefly associated are fatty degeneration of the heart; aortic disease; hypertrophy with dilatation, or dilatation alone; irritation of the vagus nerve, either at its root from cerebral disease, or in its course from pressure upon it by a tumour; the advanced stages of severe fevers; diseases of the lungs causing great obstruction to the circulation; or mere nervous disorder of the heart. Intermittency may even be brought on voluntarily, by holding the breath.

The *irritable heart* was first described by Da Costa as occurring in soldiers during the American Wars, and brought on by hard field service, diarrhoea, fevers, and other depressing causes, especially acting upon persons of nervous temperament under circumstances of intense excitement. Similar cases have been recognized in our own army; and also in civil life, induced more particularly by over-work, combined with worry and anxiety. Cardiac disturbances originating in high altitudes may also assume the irritable form.

Changes in the mere rapidity of the heart's action may be due to various causes. There is one peculiar class of cases, named *paroxysmal tachycardia* or "heart-hurry," which is regarded as idiopathic or

essential, and has been attributed to discharging lesions affecting the accelerator centres.

Predisposing causes.—Occupation, mode of living, habits, and various other circumstances predispose to cardiac disorders. The individuals most frequently affected are young adults, and persons beyond middle age; females; nervous or neurotic subjects; gouty people; and fat, flabby individuals, who live highly, and are habitually dyspeptic and flatulent. An attack of palpitation is often brought on by some evident cause; and exertion of any kind predisposes to such disturbance under a variety of circumstances.

Symptoms.—An attack of palpitation is generally accompanied with increased frequency and abruptness of the heart's beats, as well as with augmented force, especially when the paroxysm is severe. The action may be quite regular; or attended with various forms of irregularity, or with intermittency. There is also frequently more or less inequality in the force of the cardiac pulsations. Various unpleasant subjective sensations are usually experienced over the cardiac region, the patient being conscious of the heart's action, and this may be accompanied with a sense of rolling, jogging, sudden falling back, jumping into the throat, or other indefinable feelings—*praecordial distress* or *anxiety*. There is occasionally considerable pain, which may be almost anginal, and this is relieved in some cases by pressure. Severe paroxysms of cardiac disorder are often attended with very serious symptoms, such as faintness, occasionally ending in actual syncope, especially in cases of palpitation due to nervous exhaustion; dyspnoea, with hurried breathing, and inability to "catch the breath"; flushing of the face, with a sense of heat; headache, giddiness, disturbed vision, and noises in the ears; profuse perspiration; and cold, clammy extremities. Sometimes there is much anxiety and fear of dissolution. The radial pulse usually corresponds to the heart's beats, but not always; it varies in its characters, but is not uncommonly small and weak, even when the heart is acting violently, and the large arteries throb powerfully.

The *duration* and *severity* of a fit of palpitation vary greatly, the symptoms being usually more serious when there is irregularity of the heart's action. The paroxysm is often terminated by profuse diuresis of light-coloured urine; or a sense of much exhaustion follows, which calls for a prolonged sleep. The palpitation induced by drinking strong tea is sometimes of a very distressing character.

The "irritable heart" is characterized by a variable degree of palpitation, often brought on by exertion, or occurring when the patient is in bed, especially when lying on the left side, and frequently attended with much distress; a small and rapid pulse, easily compressible, and much influenced by posture; often pain about the cardiac region and left shoulder; embarrassed breathing; and various nervous phenomena. It is often very intractable.

In *paroxysmal tachycardia* the onset is sudden, and the beats of the heart may speedily reach 200 or even 230 per minute. The acceleration of the cardiac action appears to be due to shortening of the diastole. Subjective disturbance is by-no-means always experienced. The attacks may be short or prolonged; and they come on at more or less definite intervals. The condition is rarely cured; and a fatal result may ultimately take place.

Irregularity of the heart is often attended with very unpleasant sensations; and these are usually still worse if there is *intermittency*,

when there may be an intense dread of impending death. In some cases, however, the patient is not conscious of these disorders, even when they are pronounced.

Physical Signs.—Physical examination reveals the actual nature of any cardiac disorder, and some forms can only be thus made out. The signs will of course depend upon whether the heart is organically affected or not, and the nature of any lesions present. Those which may be associated with fits of palpitation are as follows:—1. *Impulse* is too extensive; often strong, but not heaving; or it may be irregular in rhythm and force, jogging, fluttering, or intermittent. 2. *Cardiac dulness* is occasionally increased towards the right in prolonged cases, from over-distension of the right cavities with blood. 3. *Heart-sounds* are often louder than natural, with a marked tendency to reduplication; or they may reveal irregularity or inequality of action, or intermittency. 4. Occasionally a temporary *systolic murmur* may be heard at the base of the heart, or at the left apex, the latter being attributed to irregular action of the musculi papillares.

Diagnosis.—The first point as regards diagnosis is to determine the nature of the disturbance of the heart's action with which we have to deal in the case under observation. Then we must endeavour to find out its cause or causes; and to ascertain whether it is associated with any organic disease. Often a satisfactory conclusion can only be arrived at by making a thorough physical examination; and by taking into consideration all the circumstances of the particular case. The impulse of an excited heart differs from that of hypertrophy in not being heaving in quality, however strong it may be.

Prognosis.—This will depend greatly upon the cause of the disturbed action, and especially upon the presence and nature of any organic disease. It must not be thought, however, that simple palpitation is of little moment, for it may prove very serious. Irregularity or even intermittency is by no means a certain sign of organic disease, as both these disorders may be merely functional, but they must never be made light of. Cases of irritable heart and paroxysmal heart-hurry are usually very difficult to cure, and may give occasion for much anxiety.

Treatment.—1. *During a paroxysm* of palpitation the chief measures which may be required in any particular case are to get rid of every source of reflex irritation, or of any other obvious cause of disturbance; to enjoin perfect quiet, and calm the patient as much as possible: to administer *antispasmodics*, *sedatives*, or *stimulants*, as may be indicated, such as brandy, ether, ammonia, opium or morphine, hydrocyanic acid, bromide of potassium, tincture of henbane, camphor, tincture of lavender, galbanum, or asafoetida, as well as medicines which act more directly upon the heart, especially digitalis; and to apply dry heat or sinapisms over the praecordial region, with heat to the extremities, if required. The application of ice is beneficial in some cases.

2. *During the intervals*, as well as in *chronic* cases, it is necessary to look to the state of the heart, digitalis being often most valuable for improving its action when there is muscular failure; to avert every possible cause of fits of palpitation, by removing mechanical pressure, getting rid of reflex irritation, attending to the diet and digestive organs, and regulating the habits generally, especially prohibiting excess in the use of alcohol, tobacco, tea, or coffee, as well as over-study and other forms of mental disturbance, and venereal excess or masturbation; to treat any general condition or local complaint, such as obesity, gout,

or renal disease; and, if requisite, to improve the condition of the system generally, but especially that of the nervous system and blood, by the administration of mineral tonics, dilute mineral acids, arsenic, quinine, strychnine or tincture of nux vomica, or various preparations of iron; aided by the judicious employment of cold or tepid baths, douches with friction, a proper amount of exercise, and change of air and surroundings. A mixture containing tincture of perchloride of iron, nux vomica, and digitalis is often most beneficial. A belladonna plaster may be worn from time to time over the cardiac region. Oertel's method of treatment, which will be described later on, is often of great advantage in dealing with functional disorders of the heart.

The principles of treatment applicable to the other forms of cardiac disturbance are similar to those just indicated.

II. SYNCOPE.—FAINTING.

Pathology and Aetiology.—The phenomena associated with syncope are due primarily to failure in the action of the heart; which is speedily followed by symptoms resulting from anaemia of the nervous centres; these being succeeded by failing pulmonary functions.

Exciting causes.—Some of the causes to be now mentioned seem to lead to a condition allied to "shock," in which the three chief systems appear to be almost simultaneously affected, though probably the nervous centres are first disturbed; and it is not always easy to determine whether a case should be regarded as one of syncope or shock. They may be arranged under the following heads:—1. *Want of blood in the cavities of the heart*, from rupture of its walls or of a large vessel, or any form of severe haemorrhage; obstruction in the principal veins; or sudden removal of pressure from the great vessels, as when syncope follows tapping for ascites. 2. *Inadequate supply of blood to the cardiac walls*, as from obstruction of the coronary arteries; or a supply of impure blood, as in low fevers, or when a syncopal attack comes on in a hot and crowded room. 3. *Partial or complete paralysis of the muscular tissue of the heart*, either from some organic change; or from nervous disturbance, either centric, reflex, or intrinsic in origin. Numerous causes of syncope act in this way, such as fatty and other degenerations of the heart, fatty infiltration, flabby dilatation, or a weak or atrophic state of this organ in certain chronic diseases, for example, cancer or phthisis; sudden reflux of blood in aortic regurgitation; various poisonous substances, such as aconite, tobacco, prussic acid, antimony; strong or depressing emotions, under which may be mentioned the sight of blood, or of an injury to or operation upon an individual; severe cerebral lesions; long continuance in a warm bath; reflex disturbance from bad smells or unpleasant sounds; pain of any kind; extensive burns; the passage of a catheter; a shock to the sympathetic trunk, as from a blow in the epigastrium; drinking cold water when the body is heated; indigestible food, or over-eating after fasting. Lightning sometimes kills in this way. 4. *Continued spasmoid contraction of the heart*. 5. *Mechanical pressure upon or embarrassment of the heart from without*, as in some cases of pericardial effusion, or extensive left pleuritic effusion or pneumothorax.

The chief *predisposing causes* of syncope are early adult age; the female sex; a nervous temperament; and general weakness, with an impoverished condition of the blood.

Anatomical Characters.—The state of the heart varies considerably according to the cause of the syncope. After great loss of blood it is usually contracted and empty. When the walls are paralyzed, the cavities are dilated, and contain more or less fluid or coagulated blood. The lungs are usually anaemic; and the nervous centres markedly so.

Symptoms.—Syncope may come on quite suddenly, or may even cause instantaneous death. In many cases, however, it is gradual in its onset, there being *premonitory* symptoms, differing in different cases, before actual insensibility occurs. These are a sense of faintness, giddiness, and trembling, with sinking in the epigastrium, nausea, or sometimes vomiting; pallor, especially of the face, with drawn features; chilliness and shivering, or in some cases a sense of heat, there being at the same time cold, clammy perspiration; a very rapid, small, and weak pulse, tending to become irregular and slow, though the large arteries may throb; hurried, irregular, or gasping breathing, often attended with sighing; great restlessness, and occasionally slight convulsive movements; mental confusion; and disturbance of the senses of sight and hearing, indicated by more or less dim vision, extreme sensibility to light, and noises in the ears. When the syncopal state is established the symptoms are absolute insensibility, with dilatation of the pupils; death-like pallor, with cold and clammy sweats; a slow and extremely weak, irregular, or actually imperceptible pulse infrequent and irregular respiration, which may ultimately cease altogether. Not uncommonly convulsive movements are observed; and the sphincters may be relaxed, with involuntary discharge of faeces and urine. Examination of the heart reveals feebleness or complete absence of the cardiac impulse and sounds, especially the systolic sound.

The syncopal condition lasts a variable time, and either ends in death or recovery. In the latter case very uncomfortable sensations are usually experienced during the restoration of the patient to consciousness, this being often attended with palpitation, vomiting, or convulsive movements.

Treatment.—1. Any obvious reflex cause of syncope should be at once removed. 2. It is most important to attend to the posture of the patient, which should usually be horizontal, with the head low. Fainting may not uncommonly be prevented, when threatened, by bending the body forwards, and hanging the head down between the knees as far as possible. 3. All clothing should be loosened about the neck and chest, and abundance of fresh air admitted. The sufferer should be removed from a hot or stuffy room, and officious persons must be prevented from crowding around. 4. The application of smelling-salts to the nostrils; dashing cold water in the face; or friction along the limbs and over the heart, either with the hand alone or with some stimulating liniment, will often restore vitality. 5. The internal administration of *stimulants*, such as brandy, wine, aromatic spirit of ammonia, or ether, is most useful, and if these agents cannot be swallowed, and there is evident danger, stimulant enemata should be employed, or in grave cases ether must be injected subcutaneously. In some cases hypodermic injection of digitalin and strychnine may be called for. 6. Attempts may be made to confine the blood to the central organs, by making pressure on the arteries of the limbs by the aid of the fingers or of tourniquets, warmth being maintained in the parts thus deprived of blood by means of hot bottles and friction. 7. Sinapisms or turpentine stupes over the

præcordium should be employed, if necessary ; and in dangerous cases of syncope the judicious employment of galvanism, artificial respiration, and transfusion are the most potent remedial means available. The last is particularly called for if the syncope is due to great loss of blood. Gentle tapping over the cardiac region has been found useful in rousing the heart to activity in cases of fainting.

III. ANGINA PECTORIS—STENOCARDIA—SUFFOCATIVE BREAST-PANG.

Pathology and Aetiology.—There has always been much difference of opinion as to the explanation of the symptoms which characterize an attack of angina pectoris, and as to the condition of the heart during the paroxysm. Formerly the complaint was generally regarded as *neurotic*, originating in some disturbance of the cardiac plexus, and leading, according to one view, to spasm or cramp, according to another view, to paralysis of the walls of the heart. That some cases of angina are due to such disturbance is unquestionable, and this is borne out by experiment, as well as by clinical and pathological observation. It may thus arise from intrinsic cardiac disorder; direct irritation of the cardiac branches of the vagus; or reflex excitement, especially originating in certain of the abdominal organs. Another view is that it is a mere *neuralgia*, which may be correct in certain cases. The pathology of most cases of true angina pectoris is at present, however, usually explained in an entirely different way. It is believed that the condition arises from general *vaso-motor spasm*, due to increased stimulation of the vaso-motor nerve-centres, which leads to spasmodic contraction of the arteries and arterioles, and this causes acute distension of the left cavities of the heart, which are consequently embarrassed and act with difficulty, being unable to empty themselves perfectly. During a paroxysm there is in some instances a marked rise in blood-pressure, with increased arterial tension. Should an attack prove fatal, the heart will stop acting in a state of full distension, and at *post-mortem* examinations it is generally found flaccid rather than rigidly contracted. Dr. Gairdner has suggested that the condition is aggravated by *cardiac anaemia*, due to vaso-motor spasm of the smaller arteries in the walls of the heart itself.

In the large majority of cases angina pectoris is associated with organic disease of the heart or pericardium, and some change in the nutrition of the organ has always been found in fatal cases. The morbid conditions which have been most commonly observed are extensive atheroma or calcification of the aorta and coronary arteries; aortic regurgitation; fatty degeneration of the heart; and flabby dilatation. Anginal attacks do, however, no doubt occur in cases in which the heart seems to be structurally healthy, and these are the cases where there is comparatively little danger, the organ being capable of recovery from the sudden distension to which it is subjected; the danger increases in proportion to the degree and extent of dilatation or degeneration of the cardiac walls. In fatal cases the coronary arteries or their orifices are almost invariably found to be affected. Changes have been described in the cardiac nerves, but their relation to angina is not in any way definite.

With regard to the *exciting causes* of angina pectoris, the first attack can seldom be attributed to any obvious cause, except undue bodily exertion. It has been described as usually occurring while the patient

is walking up a hill, against the wind, after a meal, and especially after breakfast. Not uncommonly subsequent attacks come on after the first sleep at night. Sudden or powerful agitation, and various forms of emotion, may bring on a paroxysm. Exposure to external cold is not an uncommon cause, which probably acts by producing contraction of the cutaneous vessels. Anginal seizures may also arise from reflex disturbance in connection with the abdominal organs, as after heavy meals, indigestible food, or dyspepsia and flatulent distension. One form may depend upon direct irritation of the cardiac nerves by growths.

Certain distinct *predisposing causes* of angina pectoris have been made out, namely, the male sex; advanced life, true angina being rarely observed under 45 to 50 years of age; and a high social position. Several eminent men have died from this complaint. It is believed to be connected with the gouty diathesis, and imperfect anginal attacks are frequently observed in gouty persons, also occurring comparatively early in life in individuals whose fathers have died of angina (Fothergill).

Symptoms.—An attack of angina pectoris comes on as a rule with abrupt suddenness, but warnings of its approach are occasionally present, in the way of curious sensations or slight pain about the cardiac region.

The chief symptom is an intense pain in some part of the praecordial region, generally referred to mid-sternum, which may amount to the most excruciating torture. In character it is described as shooting, plunging, tearing, aching, gnawing, sickening, or burning, but it is often indescribable. At the same time a feeling of oppression or constriction is experienced across the chest, as if it were being forcibly compressed and could not be expanded, attended with a sense of suffocation and inability to breathe, though this act is not really interfered with, and there is not the least indication of cyanosis. If a deep breath can be taken and held, this may relieve the pain. Usually no tenderness is felt, but pressure rather gives relief, though occasionally tenderness over the sternum and adjoining spaces is complained of. In most cases painful sensations shoot from the cardiac region in various directions, especially down the left arm, or, in exceptional instances, the right, even to the fingers, in which there may be sensations of tingling or numbness; upwards along the left side of the neck; directly backwards; or round the side. This is explained by the anatomical connections of the cardiac nerves.

The symptoms just described are accompanied with signs of grave general disturbance. The face becomes pale, sunken, and covered with cold sweat; while the expression is indicative of the intense anxiety, alarm, and dread of impending death which the patient feels. In most cases the pulse tends to become feeble, and even fluttering or irregular if the attack is prolonged, though at first there is often increased tension. The general surface is commonly pale, cold, and dry; and the patient may feel chilly, this being accompanied with shivering and chattering of the teeth. Much will depend on the condition of the heart with which the angina is associated, which also necessarily influences the *physical signs*. Occasionally vomiting and eructations accompany the attack. The patient is quite conscious at first, but in prolonged or fatal cases may fall into a state of syncope, and spasmodic movements or even general convulsions may be observed.

Usually an entire attack of angina is made up of several brief paroxysms with intermissions, but there may be only one; the morbid

sensations generally cease suddenly, this being attended with a sense of extreme relief, though a feeling of exhaustion is afterwards experienced, which may last for some time. Very rarely does the first attack prove fatal, but it may thus terminate, either suddenly or gradually. Probably some cases of sudden death are due to angina. A marked feature of the complaint is its great tendency to recur under the influence of very slight exciting causes.

In this connection an affection may be alluded to, named *pseudo-angina pectoris*, which is probably of a neurotic character, and is met with mainly among young persons, being characterized by sudden pain, a feeling of distension, or other unpleasant sensations about the heart, palpitation, disturbance of breathing, faintness and giddiness, pallor of the face, and feeble pulse. The condition of the patient may appear to be really serious, but a fatal termination never happens. Often, however, there is much agitation and active movement, and the case is obviously free from danger. This complaint is chiefly observed in connection with anaemia; various nervous disorders, especially hysteria; or blood-diseases, such as gout. Females are most commonly affected, and it is not infrequent in connection with the menopause. Attacks may be periodical, and are often nocturnal. A pseudo-anginal paroxysm may arise from undue exercise after a full meal. Frequently there is no obvious cause.

Prognosis.—True angina pectoris is a very dangerous affection, but the false variety is not, therefore it becomes important to distinguish between them. The presence and nature of any organic cardiac or vascular lesions will necessarily influence the prognosis materially, and these can only be determined by physical examination. Age has also an important bearing on the prognosis, the complaint being more serious the older the patient happens to be.

Treatment.—1. In order to *prevent attacks*, anyone who is subject to angina pectoris should avoid every possible exciting cause, and it may be desirable in severe cases that some remedy should be carried in the pocket, especially nitrite of amyl, nitro-glycerine, tincture of opium, or brandy, so that it may be made use of immediately, should there be the least indication of the approach of a paroxysm. At the same time these remedies must always be used with the strictest caution; as patients are very prone to get into the habit of taking them too freely, and thus injure themselves seriously.

2. *During an attack* any obvious source of reflex disturbance, such as indigestible food or flatulence, must be at once got rid of. The internal remedies indicated for the relief of the symptoms of angina pectoris differ in different cases. In some *sedatives*, *antispasmodics*, or *stimulants* are called for, especially opium and morphine in full doses, hydrate of chloral, the various ethers, chloroform, aromatic spirit of ammonia, camphor, and hot brandy-and-water. Digitalis and belladonna are very useful in some instances, when the cardiac action is much disturbed. Inhalations of chloroform or ether are serviceable in certain cases. Nitrite of amyl, especially administered by inhalation, is now recognized universally as one of the most valuable agents in angina pectoris, giving marked relief, and speedily cutting short a paroxysm. The internal administration of nitro-glycerine in minute doses, in the form of tablets or solution, is also very serviceable; and nitrite of sodium has been likewise employed. Subcutaneous injection of morphine is of great benefit in some cases. Cocaine has been found useful, especially combined with

inhalation of oxygen. *Local applications*, such as dry heat with friction, sinapisms, or friction with chloroform or belladonna liniment, may at the same time be employed. The use of the constant current has also been recommended. Dr. Gairdner advocates warm mustard pediluvia, with heat applied to the arms and thorax. Hot applications are particularly indicated if cold has induced an anginal attack. In a gouty person the joints of the feet should be irritated.

3. During the intervals the treatment indicated is that which applies to cardio-vascular affections in general, in the way of regulating the diet and digestive organs; attending to the general and constitutional condition, as well as to the heart and vessels, and the state of the blood; and to all hygienic matters. The gouty state must be especially borne in mind. The continued administration of full doses of iodide of potassium or sodium has been advocated for the cure of angina pectoris, especially if there is a history of syphilis. Cocaine has also been recommended to prevent the recurrence of the paroxysms. Tepid or cold baths, followed by friction, and change of air and scene, are often beneficial. A belladonna plaster may be worn from time to time over the cardiac region.

For *pseudo-angina pectoris* similar remedies are indicated during a paroxysm, but they need not be so powerful. At other times the treatment must be directed to the cause of the complaint, and to the condition of the patient.

CHAPTER XXIII.

DISEASES OF THE PERICARDIUM.

I. ACUTE PERICARDITIS—INFLAMMATION OF THE PERICARDIUM.

Aetiology.—1. Acute pericarditis is, in the large majority of cases, secondary to, or associated with some other disease, or a local lesion, and it may occur under the following circumstances:—*a*. In connection with certain *general diseases*, or those which affect the *blood*, especially rheumatic fever and Bright's disease; being met with much less frequently in pyæmic or septicæmic conditions, including also puerperal fever and acute necrosis of bones; in certain of the acute specific diseases, chiefly scarlatina, measles, or small-pox, rarely typhus or typhoid fever, or diphtheria; in gout, scurvy, purpura, or diabetes; or exceptionally in cases of remote carcinoma. Rheumatic pericarditis stands out as the most prominent variety, and in children it is often associated with endocarditis. Dr. Sturges (*Lumleian Lectures*, 1894) applies the terms *periendocarditis* or *carditis* to the combination, and affirms that "the rheumatic heart inflammation of children when pericardial is always endocardial as well, and when endocardial is extremely likely, with the recurrence of rheumatism, to involve the pericardium also." It must be remembered that rheumatic pericarditis may develop without any obvious implication of the joints, or these may

be but slightly affected. *b.* From *injury*, due to a direct wound of the pericardium; laceration by fractured ribs; or a foreign body penetrating it from the oesophagus, as a needle or fish-bone—*traumatic pericarditis*. *c.* From *perforation*, for example, a neighbouring abscess, or one in the cardiac walls, opening into the pericardium—*perforative pericarditis*. Rarely some abdominal accumulation finds its way into the pericardial sac. *d.* From *extension* of adjoining inflammation, or *irritation* set up by neighbouring disease, as pleurisy or pleuro-pneumonia; ulcerative endocarditis; chronic cardiac disease, especially aortic; aneurism of the aorta; abscess in the vicinity; carious ribs, vertebrae, or sternum; oesophageal disease; enlarged bronchial glands or tumours. *e.* From *irritation* excited by some new formation in the pericardium, as cancer or tubercle. Tubercular pericarditis is now regarded as an important variety, which may occur either as a primary disease, as part of a general implication of the serous membranes, or as a complication of pulmonary phthisis.

2. *Idiopathic* or *primary* pericarditis has been described, resulting from "cold"; but probably cases thus designated are in reality of a rheumatic nature.

No doubt different micro-organisms are concerned in setting up pericarditis in many instances, but it is impossible to discuss here any details on this point.

Predisposing causes.—Pericarditis is of most frequent occurrence during early or middle life, but it may occur at any age. Males suffer rather more than females. Climate and season have a decided predisposing influence, more particularly in relation to rheumatic pericarditis.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid changes in pericarditis are similar to those observed in other serous inflammations. There is a form of *dry* or *plastic* pericarditis, with little or no fluid-effusion, and, according to Dr. Sturges' observations, this may rapidly terminate in extensive adhesion in children. In most instances there is more or less effusion. Fibrinous exudation is generally deposited on both surfaces, but is usually most abundant on the visceral portion of the pericardium; it is rarely observed over the whole extent of the sac, being generally in patches, and it may be confined to a small area, especially about the great vessels. The thickness and mode of deposit are very variable, the lymph being either stratified, or presenting little elevations, ridges, bands, masses, and numerous other arrangements. Usually the material is tolerably consistent, and sometimes quite tough, adhering fairly to the surface. In low conditions it may be soft and granular. Fluid effusion is generally sero-fibrinous, with floeculi floating in it. In exceptional cases it may contain an admixture of blood, as in purpura or scurvy; or of pus, being in rare instances actually purulent, especially in pyæmic and perforative cases. The quantity is not usually above from eight to twelve ounces, but may range from an ounce or two to three pints or more. Gas is sometimes present, arising from decomposition of the fluid. Sloughing of the pericardium is said to occur in exceptional instances.

Absorption of any effusion into the pericardium follows in favourable cases, and its surfaces become more or less adherent. The adhesions may be merely in the form of loose bands; but usually there is more or less extensive agglutination of the two surfaces. When seated about the great vessels, the lymph often leads to their adhesion to each other; or it may remain as a hard mass of fibroid tissue of considerable thickness.

Adhesions also form in cases of dry pericarditis, where there has been no obvious effusion.

In some instances the external surface of the pericardium becomes inflamed, either along with its internal surface or independently. This condition has been termed *external pericarditis*, *mediastino-pericarditis*, or *pleuro-pericarditis* when the neighbouring pleura is also involved. This form is seldom acute, and is said to be chiefly met with as a result of tubercular pleurisy. It leads to *exo-pericardial adhesions*.

Symptoms.—It is in the course of acute rheumatism or Bright's disease that pericarditis comes under observation in the large majority of cases, and it should be particularly looked for in these affections. Pericarditis may set in, or may even run through its course, without any evident symptoms, but this is not usually the case, though the clinical phenomena observed will be modified considerably by the circumstances under which the disease occurs; as well as by its association with other forms of cardiac inflammation, or with pleurisy or pneumonia.

At the outset *local* symptoms are generally present, namely, pain and tenderness, or other sensations; and disturbed action of the heart. The pain is generally felt over a part or the whole of the praecordial region, occasionally in the epigastrium, while sometimes it shoots in different directions; its severity and characters vary widely, it being described as mere uneasiness, or dull aching, shooting, stabbing, burning, or tearing, and it may amount to the most intense suffering. On the other hand, pain may be entirely absent from first to last. Tenderness is brought out as a rule by pressure over the corresponding intercostal spaces, as well as in some instances when upward pressure is made over the epigastrium. There may be a feeling of oppression, and inability to draw a breath. The cardiac disturbance is indicated by increased frequency of the beats, with tumultuous action, sometimes violent.

An attack of pericarditis may be ushered in with slight rigors, followed by pyrexia. When it occurs in connection with acute rheumatism, however, such phenomena are commonly absent, there being no increase of previously existing fever. The temperature in pericarditis rarely goes above 102° or 103° , and it may be practically normal throughout, or soon falls. The pulse is hurried in proportion to the frequency of the cardiac action; and at first is strong and of good tension.

When fluid accumulates in the pericardium the pain generally subsides, but the action of the heart is interfered with, as well as the functions of neighbouring structures, in proportion to the quantity of the effusion, and the rapidity with which it collects. Hence serious symptoms are liable to arise, indicating either a tendency to syncope; overloading of the right heart and venous system; interference with the respiratory functions, including those of the larynx in rare instances; dysphagia occasionally; or grave nervous disturbance. The pulse often becomes very frequent, feeble, small, and in bad cases irregular; sometimes it is slow and laboured; in cases of large effusion into the pericardium the *pulsus paradoxus* has been noticed. Dyspnoea is present, and may be extremely severe, even amounting to constant or paroxysmal orthopnoea, and accompanied with a sense of great oppression across the chest. A dry, irritable, spasmodic cough is not uncommonly observed. In grave cases the face assumes a very anxious and distressed expression, and becomes pale or more or less cyanotic; the expired air is cool; and the extremities feel cold. The mode of decumbency is generally on the back, with the head high; some patients prefer

lying on the left side, others on the right; while occasionally they are obliged to be propped up, or even to bend forwards. Frequently there is much restlessness if the patient is able to move. Headache and sleeplessness are common symptoms, and among occasional serious nervous phenomena may be mentioned delirium, sometimes almost maniacal; stupor; subsultus tendinum and jactitation; clonic or tonic spasms; and choreiform or epileptiform disorders. In most cases, however, these phenomena probably depend rather on the general condition with which the pericarditis is associated, or upon the state of the nervous system. Vomiting is sometimes a prominent symptom. Should death take place, it usually results either from gradual failure of the heart's action; sudden syncope, which may especially occur from making the patient assume a sitting posture when the pericardium is very full of fluid; interference with the aeration of the blood and with the circulation, the lungs becoming oedematous, and -dropsy setting in; or nervous disturbance.

Dr. Sturges describes in children a very fatal form of pericarditis, with little or no effusion, but with exudation leading to rapid adhesion, and he attributes the grave symptoms in these cases—restlessness, dyspncea, delirium, prostration, and vomiting—to the nervous system.

Physical Signs.—The onset of pericarditis might be suspected from the presence of *excited action* of the heart. The more definite signs to be looked for, however, are those indicating exudation on the pericardial surfaces, namely:—1. Pericardial *friction-fremitus*, which is extremely rare. 2. Pericardial *friction-sound*. It must be mentioned, however, that friction-sound may be absent, either on account of the soft consistence of the lymph; or in consequence of its being deposited only on one surface, or at the back of the heart.

When effusion takes place, the physical signs are more or less marked in proportion to the quantity of the fluid, being of the following nature:—1. There is usually *bulging* of the cardiac region, especially in young subjects. This may extend from the 2nd to the 6th or 7th cartilage, the spaces being widened and flattened, or even protruded, and sometimes the left edge of the sternum is pushed forwards. Local measurements are increased. 2. The *impulse* presents several important changes. *a.* It is displaced, usually upwards and to the left, but sometimes downwards; while its position alters with change of posture. It is a disputed point whether the raised impulse is the actual apex-beat, or merely a higher part of the ventricle, successive portions of which become covered with the fluid as it accumulates. *b.* Its force is much diminished, and the impulse may be visible when not perceptible to the touch. Often it can be felt in the erect or sitting posture, when absent in the lying posture. There is sometimes marked inequality in its force. *c.* In rhythm the impulse tends to be delayed slightly after the systole; it may also be irregular, sometimes extremely so. *d.* The character of the movement is undulatory when there is much fluid, this being observed over a variable area, and being modified by position; the undulations usually appear to pass from below upwards and from left to right, but they may have a horizontal direction. 3. *Cardiac dulness* is materially altered in extent, degree, and shape. It increases first about the base of the heart, extending upwards and then laterally. Usually it does not pass below the 6th rib, but in extreme cases may reach considerably lower than this, the fluid pushing down the diaphragm, and causing protrusion of the epigastrium. In an up-

ward direction it may extend as high as, or even above the clavicle ; and transversely from or even beyond the right border of the sternum, in the right 5th interspace, to outside the left nipple. A very important character may be observed when the fluid is abundant, namely, that dulness extends to the left beyond the impulse. The shape of the dulness is more or less triangular, with the apex upwards. Its intensity is usually marked. Change of posture will modify the dulness; its area is larger in the lying than the sitting position, but if the amount of fluid is not very great, it extends higher in the latter posture. 4. The *heart-sounds* are more or less feeble at the apex, and appear to be deep and distant ; but on moving the stethoscope upwards towards the base, they become louder and more superficial. Change of posture may modify the sounds more or less. 5. It is said that a *basic systolic murmur* is heard occasionally, due to pressure of pericardial effusion on the aorta. 6. *Friction-phenomena* often persist for a variable time while the fluid is accumulating, becoming by degrees less marked, or being only observed in certain positions. 7. Pericardial effusion, when abundant, must necessarily affect *neighbouring organs*, especially the lungs. Vocal fremitus and resonance, as well as breath-sounds, are diminished in area over the cardiac region ; ægophony is occasionally heard above and to the left, while vocal resonance is intensified at the borders of the dulness. Impaired resonance at the base of the left lung may possibly be observed, indicative of partial collapse, the result of pressure by the distended pericardial sac on the bronchus or lung. The liver and spleen are in some cases depressed, along with the diaphragm. 8. It is important to note that not uncommonly the signs of effusion *alter from day to day*, in consequence of variation in its quantity.

When absorption takes place, the signs become gradually normal in favourable cases, and it is only requisite to notice that the *dulness* diminishes from above and laterally ; and the *friction-signs* return, usually in an increased degree, the friction-sound also assuming more of the "churning" and "clicking" characters. The phenomena indicating the formation of adhesions will be considered later on. According to Dr. Sturges' observations, an exocardial friction-sound may be audible in children even when the pericardium is firmly adherent.

Terminations.—Pericarditis may end in practical recovery, generally, however, more or less extensive adhesions remaining behind ; in death ; or by becoming chronic, either the effusion remaining, and in rare instances becoming purulent, or even pointing and opening externally ; or extensive agglutination taking place between the adjacent surfaces of the pericardium. In cases where the external surface of the pericardium is also inflamed, adhesions form with neighbouring parts.

Diagnosis.—In a well-marked case of acute pericarditis, developing under observation in the course of acute rheumatism, the diagnosis is easy enough, it may be even from the symptoms, but more especially from the physical signs, and these must be carefully watched for by frequent examination in any case in which the disease is likely to develop. It must be remembered, however, that pericarditis occurs in patients who do not present any definite rheumatic symptoms, as well as under other circumstances : while it may supervene as a complication of other inflammation affections within the chest. Physical examination can alone be relied upon under these conditions.

As regards the diagnosis between pericarditis and endocarditis, but little importance can be attached to symptoms as a rule, though severe

local pain would be in favour of the former. The early distinction between these diseases is mainly founded upon the different morbid sounds which they produce, and, as a matter of fact, though much has been written to the contrary, an experienced auscultator will seldom have much difficulty in distinguishing between a pericardial friction-sound and an endocardial murmur. The presence of friction-fremitus would help the diagnosis. The progress of events will in the large majority of cases speedily clear up any uncertainty in diagnosis between the two complaints. The possibility of their co-existence in the same case must never be forgotten, especially in young subjects. Pericardial friction may certainly be mistaken for neighbouring pleuritic friction or cardiac rhythm; or for a sound produced in the mediastinal cellular tissue in cases of exo-pericardial inflammation.

Pericardial effusion can only be recognized by its physical signs. When it supervenes in the course of obvious acute pericarditis, there is no difficulty; but when one comes upon an unknown case, in which an effusion is actually present, the diagnosis may require careful consideration. The condition has been more especially mistaken for marked dilatation of the heart, especially if associated with universal pericardial adhesion, but such an error in diagnosis should rarely be possible. The signs of variation in the quantity of fluid from day to day may be of use in difficult cases. There may certainly be more or less difficulty in distinguishing between pericardial and pleuritic effusion under certain circumstances; and it must be remembered that both may be present in the same case. Pericardial effusion may also be simulated by neighbouring conditions causing increased dulness. The differences between inflammatory effusion and hydro-pericardium will be pointed out in relation to the latter condition.

The determination of the nature of the fluid in cases of pericardial effusion can usually be arrived at by a consideration of the circumstances under which it occurs, and of the general symptoms. In doubtful cases the question can only be decided by aspiration.

Prognosis.—The immediate prognosis of acute pericarditis will depend upon the condition with which it is associated, the complaint being, for instance, extremely dangerous in Bright's disease; the amount and nature of the effusion; the previous condition of the heart; the state of the pulse; whether the disease is complicated with endocarditis, myocarditis, or inflammation of the lungs or pleurae; and the severity and character of the symptoms. Marked nervous symptoms are of very serious import. The ultimate prognosis must be entirely governed by the conditions left after the attack. Extensive agglutination, and permanent displacement of the heart as a consequence of adhesions, are untoward events.

Treatment.—The principles of treatment in pericarditis are similar to those applicable to other serous inflammations, but as it occurs almost always in the course of some other complaint, its management must be modified accordingly. When it supervenes in connection with acute rheumatism, the treatment for this affection may be continued, but caution is necessary in the administration of salicylates under these circumstances. Venesection and mercurialization are never admissible, in my opinion. A few leeches may sometimes be applied over the cardiac region with advantage in robust subjects, but, as a rule, the persistent application of heat and moisture over this region, by means of linseed-meal poultices or fomentations, is the most serviceable local

treatment in the early stage. These applications must be frequently changed; special care being taken that the chest is not unduly exposed or chilled. The application of a blister over the praecordial region has appeared to me distinctly to check the progress of the inflammation in some cases of acute pericarditis which have come under treatment in an early stage. The local use of cold is strongly recommended by some writers, by means of the ice-bag or Leiter's coil, but it certainly should only be tried very cautiously, in my opinion.

The general management of cases of acute pericarditis demands careful attention. The patient must be kept at rest in bed, and the posture studied according to the conditions and symptoms present. Physical examination must be conducted with due precautions, and it is especially necessary to guard against making the patient sit up, or moving him about to study variations in the physical signs, if there is any danger of syncope. The chest must be properly covered. As a rule a good quantity of liquid nourishment is required, and in many cases more or less alcoholic stimulant is indicated; should there be much depression, with signs of threatening cardiac failure, a considerable amount of brandy or champagne may be given with advantage. Due attention must be paid to the bowels and urinary secretion. Particular symptoms may call for treatment, but these must be dealt with on general principles.

The employment of drugs which act upon the heart is always a matter for anxious consideration in cases of acute pericarditis. In the early stage of rheumatic cases I have observed favourable results from the judicious administration of opium or morphine, with the view of calming excited action, and at the same time relieving pain and restlessness. Neither of these is admissible, however, if the complaint is associated with Bright's disease or any low febrile condition; if the respiratory organs are affected at the same time; or if there be any tendency to cyanosis. Tartarated antimony, aconite, and green hellebore have been advocated in acute pericarditis as *cardiac sedatives*, but they are very dangerous drugs in this disease. Some authorities give digitalis even at an early period, but in my opinion this remedy is rather indicated later on, as a *cardiac tonic*, when strychnine may also be of much service.

For the removal of effusion, if this is not readily absorbed, the application of blisters or strong iodine may be tried; with the internal administration of diuretics and iodide of potassium. The more active measures usually employed to promote the absorption of inflammatory serous accumulation are not admissible in pericarditis. Tincture of perchloride of iron in full doses is decidedly a valuable drug to aid absorption in some cases of pericardial effusion; and other tonics are often useful.

Paracentesis is called for in exceptional instances, in order to relieve dangerous symptoms, or to remove purulent fluid. Some advocate early recourse to this operation, but, for obvious reasons, it ought not to be rashly practised. The fluid is best removed by means of the aspirateur or a small trochar. It is recommended to puncture in the fourth left interspace, about an inch from the margin of the sternum; or in the fifth space, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the same line. The pericardium has also been perforated with success in the fifth right interspace. In cases of pyo-pericarditis treatment by incision and free drainage is indicated; or resection of one or more ribs may be required.

With regard to the formation of adhesions after pericarditis, Dr. Cantlie has drawn attention to the desirability of encouraging exercise

after an attack of this complaint in young patients, provided there is no valvular disease, in order to excite the cardiac action, and thus make the adhesions loose and filamentous, instead of firm and fibrous. Within due limits, and under proper medical supervision, this suggestion is certainly worthy of attention.

II. CHRONIC PERICARDITIS—ADHERENT PERICARDIUM.

Pathology and Anatomical Characters.—The conditions which may be included under chronic pericarditis either remain after an acute attack, or are sometimes chronic from the outset. In this connection may be mentioned the so-called *white patches* sometimes observed on the pericardium. As a rule these are probably merely the result of constant friction; but they may be the sequel of local inflammation. Loose or limited pericardial adhesions are not uncommonly present; or the adjacent surfaces may be united universally by a connective tissue, with little or no thickening. In exceptional instances a chronic effusion or pyopericardium remains. By far the most important condition which may be regarded as chronic pericarditis, however, is the presence of a firm and extensive or universal adhesion, with more or less thickening, the surfaces of the membrane being sometimes agglutinated throughout, and calcareous material may even be deposited in the adhesion. Further, the outer surface of the pericardium may unite with the chest-wall or pleura, or occasionally becomes intimately matted with the mediastinal structures. Marked thickening and calcification are chiefly observed after purulent pericarditis, or in chronic tubercular cases, and in extreme instances the heart is completely enclosed in a calcified shell. As regards the effects of these conditions upon the organ, they may lead, under different circumstances, to hypertrophy, dilatation, atrophy, or fatty or fibroid degeneration.

Symptoms.—Subjective symptoms are often absent in cases of chronic pericarditis, but there may be uneasy sensations, or even a dull pain over the cardiac region, and, in exceptional cases, anginal attacks have been noticed. Disturbed action of the heart; palpitation easily induced; and shortness of breath on exertion are the chief symptoms complained of, if any. From the effects of extensive adhesions upon the heart, and the changes they produce in the organ, grave interference with its action and with the circulation may ultimately arise. In some cases of this kind ascites is a prominent symptom, coming on before, or being quite out of proportion to, anasarca of the legs. An agglutinated pericardium will seriously increase the danger from an attack of any pulmonary inflammation.

Physical examination will reveal the presence of fluid in the pericardium in cases of chronic effusion. The chief point to be considered here is how far physical methods will enable us to detect pericardial adhesions. In many cases, undoubtedly, such adhesions cannot be recognized by physical examination; but if looked for systematically, they can be made out much more frequently than is commonly supposed. The signs are usually associated with those of different cardiac changes, either of independent origin, or the sequelæ of the pericardial condition. Those to be sought for as evidence of agglutination of the pericardial surfaces, especially when associated with exo-pericardial adhesions, are more or less of the following character:—1. Depression of the praecordial region, with narrowing of the spaces; or, on the other hand, bulging, if there is cardiac enlargement. 2. Increase in extent, or permanent

displacement of the *impulse*, especially elevation, there being no other obvious cause for this change of position; the apex-beat being unaltered by change of posture, and the impulse unmodified by a deep inspiration; or the cardiac movement having altogether unusual characters, being markedly undulatory over the praecordium, or attended with systolic recession of some of the spaces or of the epigastrum or ensiform cartilage, or an irregular jogging movement being noticed, both systolic and diastolic. The diastolic shock of the pulmonary or aortic valves is sometimes distinctly felt. An indrawing of the region over the apex of the heart may be noticed with or after the beat in some cases; while in others there is no impulse at all. 3. Usually increased area of *dulness*, especially in an upward direction, even to the second rib, which is not altered after a deep inspiration, there being other signs that the lungs do not expand over the cardiac region, should exo-pericardial adhesions exist. When there is extensive calcification, the percussion-sound is said occasionally to have an osteal character. 4. Loudness and superficialness of the *cardiac sounds* over the praecordial region, especially the second sounds; or unusual conduction of the sounds posteriorly on the left side, if the pericardium is adherent at the back. 5. A rough *friction-sound* audible over some part of the cardiac region, where adhesion has not taken place, but the surfaces are roughened. 6. A peculiar movement observed in the arteries at the base of the neck, as if an ineffectual effort were made by the heart to fill them; and a marked *pulsus paradoxus*. 7. Sudden collapse of the *jugular veins* during the ventricular diastole, according to Friedreich.

Treatment.—Chronic effusion in the pericardium must be treated on ordinary principles. Nothing can be done for pericardial adhesions when once formed; and the management of the case must be determined by the actual conditions present, according to the indications to be hereafter discussed in relation to chronic cardiac diseases. When the heart is extensively adherent, it must be remembered that the organ cannot respond to drugs to the same degree as in its normal state.

III. HYDROPERICARDIUM—PERICARDIAL DROPSY.

The important facts relating to dropsy of the pericardium may be thus summed up, and it will at once be seen in what respects it differs from inflammatory effusion:—1. In the great majority of cases this condition is a part of chronic general dropsy; it may set in acutely in Bright's disease; and rare instances have been met with in which it owned a mechanical origin, having resulted from the pressure of an aneurism or other mediastinal tumour, disease or thrombosis of the cardiac veins, or sudden extreme pneumothorax. 2. There are no severe initiatory symptoms; pyrexia is absent; and there is no marked disturbance of the heart's action. 3. The effusion, which is simply serous as a rule, rarely chylo-serous, is never abundant. Hence there is no bulging; the physical signs indicative of fluid are less marked than in pericarditis; and the dulness is more liable to be altered by posture. 4. Friction-signs are absent throughout. 5. Hydropericardium generally follows hydrothorax, and hence it is preceded by the symptoms and physical signs of the latter condition, the effects of which it necessarily tends to aggravate, and death often speedily follows.

Treatment.—This is merely a part of the ordinary treatment for dropsy. Paracentesis might possibly be called for in extreme cases.

IV. PERICARDIAL HÆMORRHAGE.

Blood may be found in the pericardium as the result of:—1. *Spontaneous rupture*, either of the heart or a cardiac aneurism; of an intra-pericardial aortic aneurism; of one of the coronary vessels; or of vessels in cancerous deposits. 2. *Injury*. 3. *Pericarditis*, the effusion being more or less haemorrhagic. 4. *Diseased conditions of the blood*, as in scurvy, purpura, and splenic leucocythaemia.

Symptoms.—The symptoms are generally grave in connection with actual haemorrhage into the pericardium, indicating loss of blood, and interference with the heart's action; but they will necessarily vary with the amount of blood present, and the rapidity of its accumulation. Sudden death may be due to this cause. The *physical signs* are those of an accumulation of fluid in the pericardial sac.

Treatment.—Nothing definite can be said on this point. Either no treatment is required, or it is impossible to do anything. Stimulants and cardiac remedies may possibly be of service in exceptional cases.

V. PNEUMO-PERICARDIUM.

Gas is occasionally found in the pericardium, either having entered from without, as a consequence of perforation; or derived from decomposition of pus in its cavity. It might give rise to *tympanitic resonance* over the cardiac region, modified by movement, if gas and fluid are present together; and to *succussion-splash*, under the same conditions. Curious *auscultation-sounds* may also be audible. Symptoms are very grave in cases of perforation, and they usually soon terminate fatally. *Treatment* must be surgical, if anything can be done.

CHAPTER XXIV.

ACUTE DISEASES AND SUDDEN LESIONS OF THE HEART.

I. ACUTE ENDOCARDITIS—INFLAMMATION OF THE ENDOCARDIUM.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Acute endocarditis is now usually described under two forms, namely, *simple* or *benign*; and *ulcerative, infective*, or *malignant*. There appears, however, to be no essential anatomical difference between them, as all gradations can be traced, and they represent but different degrees of intensity of the same process (Osler). In connection with this disease, especially the ulcerative variety, micro-organisms are found, not only in the lesions themselves, but also in the blood, which are supposed to have a causative relation, but this is at least very doubtful with regard to simple endocarditis. These organisms are chiefly of a pyogenic nature, the most common

being staphylococcus pyogenes aureus and streptococcus pyogenes. In some instances pneumococci have been observed, where the complaint has followed pneumonia. Tubercle bacilli and other varieties have also been met with in connection with the lesions of ulcerative endocarditis.

With regard to the aetiology of acute endocarditis, exceptional instances do occur in which it cannot be traced to any distinct cause, and it has then been regarded as *primary* or *idiopathic*, but the reality of such cases is very doubtful. Almost invariably it is *secondary* to some other complaint; or results from some definite *local lesion* or *injury*. In the large majority of cases acute endocarditis is associated with acute or subacute rheumatism, chorea, or a combination of both; and the fact must again be emphasized that it may develop in rheumatic cases of all grades of severity, or even without any obvious implication of the joints, as well as in connection with rheumatic tonsillitis. Other diseases or conditions which endocarditis may complicate are certain acute specific affections, especially scarlet fever and small-pox, exceptionally typhoid fever, measles, erysipelas, chicken-pox, and diphtheria; pneumonia; pyæmia or septicæmia of all kinds; tuberculosis or pulmonary phthisis; puerperal fever; gonorrhœa; syphilis; dysentery; ague, it is said, though Osler in a large experience of malarial fever never met with an instance; acute or chronic Bright's disease; gout; and affections accompanied with loss of flesh and progressive weakness, as cancer, or diabetes.

The chief *local* causes of acute endocarditis are traumatic injury, such as the rupture of a valve or of one of the chordæ tendineæ; irritation by a growth or fibrinous concretion; abscess in the myocardium; and previous valvular lesions. The recurring form, which affects valves thickened and sclerosed by former attacks, or which are the seat of primary chronic changes, is very important. It is affirmed that local endocarditis may be set up by the passage of currents of blood through abnormal openings.

A little consideration will show which of the causes just mentioned, being of a septic nature, are likely to give rise to the malignant form of endocarditis by an infective process. There may be a definite lesion originating this disease, such as acute necrosis, a suppurating wound, or puerperal mischief. It is important to notice, however, that it is said to have been met with as a primary affection; while it occurs occasionally in connection with rheumatism; and frequently supervenes upon previous chronic disease of the cardiac valves. The late Dr. Moxon found that ulcerative endocarditis might result from friction of a fibrinous concretion on the surface of the endocardium. Pneumonia stands high as a cause of malignant endocarditis. It is very rare in tuberculosis, typhoid fever, diphtheria, scarlet fever, or small-pox.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute endocarditis is always a limited disease, and never attacks the lining membrane of the heart extensively. As ordinarily met with, in the large majority of cases it is confined to the left cavities, and especially affects the valves, constituting an *acute valvulitis*. The mitral valve and orifice are more frequently involved than the aortic, but both may be attacked in the same case. Sometimes the chordæ tendineæ are affected along with the mitral valves, rarely alone. Endocarditis may be met with over limited areas of the general surface of the membrane, but this is chiefly observed in the malignant variety. During foetal life it is the right side of the heart which is

chiefly implicated; and ulcerative endocarditis also not uncommonly involves the tricuspid or pulmonary valves.

Coming to the actual changes which characterize ordinary acute endocarditis, it is extremely rare to meet with redness, due to vascular dilatation. Proliferation of the subendothelial connective-tissue elements takes place in the affected part, leading to its infiltration with numerous young cells, but it is rare to recognize any definite swelling of the endocardium. The superficial elements undergo a process of coagulation-necrosis; and fibrin is then deposited from the blood, often presenting a stratified arrangement. Hence the most striking *post-mortem* evidence of acute endocarditis is the presence of these fibrinous deposits, which are usually known as "vegetations." In simple endocarditis they are generally minute, and present an irregular or fissured surface, giving them a warty or cauliflower-like appearance. By continued additions they may ultimately attain a considerable size. These vegetations are often attached by narrow pedicles. Practically a vegetation is a small area of granulation-tissue capped with fibrin (Osler). Micro-organisms have been detected in the fibrin. In the case of the valves the deposits take place chiefly on the surface which is opposed to the current of the blood, that is, on the auricular aspect of the mitral, and the ventricular surface of the aortic. Moreover, the changes associated with acute endocarditis do not involve their very edge or rim, but the lines of chief contact just within the edge; on the aortic segments they follow the margin of the lunated spaces. At first a frill of small bead-like granulations is seen, each of which gets capped with fibrin. In fatal cases of chorea bead-like vegetations are usually found on the valves. With regard to the subsequent course of events, it is believed that in many instances small vegetations are absorbed, but little injury to the valve remaining beyond slight nodular thickening. The tendency is, however, for slow changes to take place in the affected tissues, which ultimately lead to serious damage. Proliferation and subsequent organization proceed gradually, a firm, fibroid tissue being formed, which contracts; and this may ultimately be followed by fatty and calcareous degeneration, which increases the mischief. This is one of the conditions known as *chronic endocarditis*, but the affection may be chronic from the outset. The ultimate changes are similar in both cases, and the chief morbid conditions which may result therefrom are as follows:—1. Thickening, induration, and puckering of some part of the general tract of the endocardium. 2. Thickening of the valves, with opacity, rigidity, and more or less shrinking, by which they may be greatly narrowed and rendered incompetent, or even altogether destroyed. 3. Adhesion of the tongues of a valve to each other, or to the interior of the heart. 4. Thickening, induration, and contraction of the chordæ tendineæ or musculi papillares. 5. Narrowing or stenosis of an orifice, usually accompanied with irregularity, roughness, and hardening. 6. Formation of firm warty growths, either sessile or pedunculated.

Malignant endocarditis is a grave variety of the disease, and, as described by Osler, may be either *vegetative*, *ulcerative*, or *suppurative*, these forms occurring separately or in combination. The vegetations attain a considerable size, and are always associated with distinct necrosis and loss of the endocardial substance. They may present a remarkable greenish-gray or greenish-yellow colour, or may become crusted with lime-salts. They consist of a granular and fibrillated fibrin, abundant micro-organisms, and distinct granulation-tissue at the

base, while the subjacent endocardial layers show infiltration and proliferation. Ulceration is most commonly observed, either as a superficial erosion involving only the endocardium; or as deep and well-marked ulcers, which may lead to perforation, rupture, or extensive destruction of a valve, erosion or rupture of one or more chordæ tendineæ, perforation of a septum or even of the heart itself, or the formation of an acute valvular or cardiac aneurism. In connection with the valves, ulcers may be observed on their margins or surfaces, either in small spots or extensive patches, irregular in outline, and often fringed with vegetations. The destruction of tissue results from a gradual extension of the necrotic process more and more deeply. In the suppurative form of malignant endocarditis the deeper tissues of a valve appear to be first involved, and small abscesses are formed at the bases of vegetations. Collections of pus may also form in other parts, ultimately opening into the interior of the heart. Apart from the valves, the localities most liable to be affected in this disease are the upper part of the septum of the left ventricle; and the postero-external wall of the left auricle. The changes may extend to the aorta, producing extensive endarteritis, with the formation of multiple acute aneurisms.

Embolism is a very important morbid change which is met with in many cases of acute endocarditis, owing to the detachment of fragments from the vegetations. It is especially likely to occur when these form on old sclerotic valves, and in the malignant variety; but sometimes in fatal cases even of marked ulcerative endocarditis there is no trace of emboli in any part. Their effects vary according to their nature, and they are often infective. They are chiefly met with in the spleen and kidneys; but may be numerous in the brain, or in the intestines. In right-sided endocarditis the emboli lodge in the lungs. In many cases there are innumerable miliary abscesses. Acute suppurative meningitis is not uncommon, especially in cases of malignant endocarditis following pneumonia; and parotitis may also occur. Dr. Ainslie Hollis has described certain renal conditions associated with malignant endocarditis, in which there are scattered groups of readily-stained nuclear bodies in the areolar tissue.

Symptoms.—It must be acknowledged that the symptoms of acute simple endocarditis are very indefinite, and may be entirely latent from first to last. A large proportion of cases are only revealed by *physical examination*, and even this may yield very uncertain signs. *Local* symptoms are seldom prominent, there being little or no pain or tenderness, but increased frequency of cardiac action is frequently noticed, or occasionally slight irregularity; and there may be marked palpitation. The characters of the pulse vary considerably, according to the conditions present; at first it is usually frequent, full, and excited; afterwards it may become feeble, small, and irregular in force and rhythm. Increased pyrexia may accompany endocarditis associated with rheumatic fever; and the temperature also becomes raised in cases of recurrent endocarditis. The occurrence of embolism may give rise to its own special symptoms associated with the affected organs.

Malignant endocarditis is attended with grave symptoms, but as a rule these are general rather than local, or are associated with other organs than the heart, as they depend mainly upon septicæmia, or upon the lesions set up by emboli, which are generally infective. They vary much in intensity and character in different cases, according to the conditions under which the disease occurs, and other circumstances; but

certain types are usually recognized, especially the *septic* or *pyæmic*, and the *typhoid*. These varieties, however, are often associated, and there is no definite line of demarcation between them.

The onset of malignant endocarditis is in many cases like that of any other severe febrile illness, being attended with headache, pains in the limbs and back, languor, and other symptoms; or there may be a definite initial rigor. The more prominent and characteristic phenomena of this disease are repeated rigors; high fever, with its usual accompaniments, of an intermittent or remittent type, usually irregular, but sometimes presenting remarkable regularity, the temperature ranging from 103° to 106° at the highest point; sweating, often profuse; progressive emaciation and anaemia; rapid pulse, from 100 to 140 or more; hurried respiration; enlargement and tenderness of the spleen; often diarrhoea, with yellow stools, which may very much resemble those of typhoid fever; tendency to tympanitic distension of the abdomen; albuminuria not uncommonly; more or less rapid failure of strength; and delirium or other nervous phenomena. In the *septic* type repeated rigors are prominent; during which the temperature may rise to 105° or 106°, while it falls to or even below the normal in the intervals. This variety is most commonly associated with some definite source of infection, altogether away from the heart; and it is in septic cases that endocarditis on the right side is chiefly met with. The *typhoid* cases exhibit a tendency to rapid prostration; with a dry, brown, and cracked or glazed tongue; cutaneous petechiae or other rashes; sometimes other forms of haemorrhage, as epistaxis, haemoptysis, or haematuria; low delirium, with other nervous symptoms; and occasionally parotitis. A *cardiac* group has been made to include cases in which endocarditis, with marked fever, supervenes upon old chronic valvular disease. Such cases not uncommonly present septic or pyæmic symptoms; and may run a very acute course. Others belonging to this group are less severe and more prolonged, being characterized by an irregular septic fever, which may continue for a long period, becoming practically chronic. Cardiac symptoms are likely to be prominent throughout in this class of cases, such as a feeling of oppression, disturbed action of the heart, and dyspnoea. Occasionally malignant endocarditis assumes a *cerebral* character, being attended with acute delirium or unconsciousness, simulating meningitis or even cerebro-spinal meningitis. The temperature is not always remittent or intermittent, but may keep continuously high; on the other hand, some cases closely simulate a quotidian or tertian ague. Jaundice occasionally occurs.

As regards the embolic phenomena, these assume a pronounced character when a large artery is obstructed in the brain or a limb; but more frequently the smaller vessels in the viscera and other structures are affected. The emboli may give rise to inflammatory lesions; suppuration in serous membranes, organs, or other parts; or even gangrene, and the local symptoms vary accordingly. Embolism of the retinal vessels may occur, leading to haemorrhages, impaired vision, and optic neuritis.

The *course* and *duration* of malignant endocarditis vary greatly. It is said to have proved fatal within two days, but may go on for many months. Apart from the cases in which it supervenes upon chronic cardiac disease, the duration is rarely beyond five or six weeks. The fatal termination is usually preceded by increasing apathy, stupor, and ultimate coma. It is believed that in rare instances recovery takes place.

Physical Signs.—When acute endocarditis attacks a previously healthy heart, the early signs are very indefinite; but as the disease progresses they usually become fairly characteristic. In cases of malignant endocarditis, however, there may be no positive signs from first to last. When the disease supervenes upon chronic valvular lesions and their effects, the corresponding signs will necessarily be present; and it is often impossible to determine under such circumstances what phenomena, if any, are actually produced by the recent mischief. The *cardiac action* may be quickened, forcible, tumultuous, or uneven and changeful in rhythm, but no reliance can be placed on such disturbances as evidence of acute endocarditis. Changes in the *heart-sounds* are generally regarded as the most important early indications of the disease, and by carefully studying these sounds it may be possible to suspect its onset, though authorities are by-no-means agreed as to the abnormal characters to be recognized. The changes chiefly observed are accentuation or prolongation and roughening of the first sound; progressive obscurity, muffling, or dulness of one or both sounds; and reduplication, especially of the second sound. *Endocardial murmurs* constitute the only positive physical signs of endocarditis, due to its effects upon the valves and orifices, and these have to be watched for by frequent examination in suspected cases, or when the complaint is likely to supervene, as in acute rheumatism or chorea. A mitral systolic murmur is decidedly the most common, and it may develop quickly at an early period, or more gradually and at a later stage. At first slight and of soft quality, and, it may be, inconstant, it becomes more and more pronounced and persistent, assuming all the characters of a well-defined mitral regurgitant murmur. An aortic systolic murmur is not uncommon; and one indicative of aortic regurgitation may develop while a case is under observation. Although the foundation for mitral obstruction is usually laid during an attack of acute endocarditis, the signs of this lesion only appear when the case becomes really chronic, and they may be rather regarded as evidences of the remote effects of the inflammation. In cases of malignant endocarditis both mitral and aortic murmurs may be present; and it is in these cases that murmurs connected with the tricuspid and pulmonary orifices are likely to be met with. It is affirmed that murmurs due to endocarditis may entirely disappear, but there must always remain a doubt whether these were truly organic, and not merely associated with anaemia or abnormal action of the heart.

Diagnosis.—Many questions bearing upon the diagnosis of acute endocarditis may arise in individual cases, but they can only be briefly alluded to here. The simple form of the disease can only be positively recognized by physical examination, and, as already stated, it must be specially watched for when its advent is probable. Care must be taken not to mistake old valvular lesions for the effects of recent inflammation. The distinctions between pericarditis and endocarditis have already been explained, but it must again be noted that both are not uncommonly present in the same case. The diagnosis between simple and pronounced malignant endocarditis is usually clearly indicated by the general symptoms, but they merge into one another. The malignant variety is in well-marked cases easily recognized, especially when it supervenes upon old valvular disease; but its development in the course of pneumonia may be by-no-means evident. It is most likely to be confounded with typhoid fever, and the diagnosis may be very difficult or impossible. Between malignant endocarditis and pyæmia or septicæmia of other kinds

there may be practically no difference. It has also been mistaken for typhus fever, cerebro-spinal meningitis, haemorrhagic small-pox, acute miliary tuberculosis, and ague. In the last case examination of the blood for the characteristic micro-organisms might be of service. Physical examination of the heart; the signs of embolism in different structures; marked anaemia; and the presence of retinal haemorrhages or optic neuritis, assist the diagnosis in doubtful cases.

Prognosis.—Acute endocarditis must always be looked upon as a serious disease. In the simple form the prognosis is chiefly important in relation to its remote effects, and these can only be determined by watching the progress of events. Unfortunately it lays the foundation for a large number of permanent valvular lesions, with their consequences. When both the mitral and aortic orifices are affected, the future prognosis is decidedly worse; and also when endocarditis is associated with pericarditis. Some writers state that many cases recover, but this conclusion is only founded on the disappearance of a murmur, which, moreover, may return later on. Simple and uncomplicated endocarditis is not often immediately fatal.

Malignant endocarditis is a most grave complaint, and in its more pronounced forms is almost invariably fatal, usually very rapidly. Cases in which it supervenes on chronic valvular disease may probably recover for the time, but fresh attacks are likely to occur.

Treatment.—The treatment of simple endocarditis is mainly that of the disease in the course of which it occurs, and no direct remedies can influence this complaint. Salicylates may be given in rheumatic cases, with due care. Rest is to be strictly enjoined, being also a most valuable preventive in cases where the complaint is likely to supervene. Such measures as bleeding, mercurialization, and the local application of cold are decidedly to be deprecated, in my opinion; nor can a blister be of any real service. Good nursing is essential; and as a rule *alcoholic stimulants* are required, in some cases in large quantities, along with abundant nutriment. Digitalis is indicated, should the heart's action be failing; and some give aconite if it is acting excessively. Symptoms must be treated as they arise. It is exceedingly important, after an attack of acute endocarditis in which the valves are involved, to keep the patient in bed for some days, and afterwards at rest and under observation for a considerable time, so as to maintain the heart in a state of quiescence, and not to throw any strain on the diseased structures, thus enabling them to recover as far as possible, and endeavouring to obviate further changes.

Malignant endocarditis must be treated like other forms of septic disease, and as a rule but little can be done. If there is any accessible source of infection, this must be dealt with antiseptically. The chief medicines recommended are quinine with mineral acids; salicylates; sulpho-carbolates; and benzoate of sodium. Stimulants must be given freely.

II. ACUTE MYOCARDITIS.

Aetiology.—Inflammation of the heart-substance is liable to be set up in the layers contiguous to an inflamed endocardium or pericardium, and extends more or less deeply. Myocarditis has been stated to have arisen independently in a few instances, either as a diffuse or localized inflammation, due to acute rheumatism, cold, injury, or other causes.

Pyæmia and septicæmia frequently lead to myocarditis, which is then of embolic origin.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute myocarditis is characterized by discolouration and softening of the heart-substance, which becomes infiltrated with a sero-sanguineous fluid, a fibrinous exudation, or sometimes with pus. One or more abscesses may form, especially in pyæmic cases, when they may be miliary, being preceded by infarcts. Microscopically the muscular fibres are found to be swollen, and their striae indistinct; while leucocytes and red corpuscles are visible between them. This disease occasionally leads to the formation of a cardiac aneurism: or to rupture into a ventricle, or into the pericardium, with subsequent pericarditis, should the lesion not prove immediately fatal.

Symptoms.—The clinical signs of myocarditis are very obscure. It tends to render the cardiac action extremely rapid, weak, and irregular, and to cause much praecordial distress, and when these are prominent features in the course of a case of peri- or endocarditis, or both, implication of the heart-substance may be suspected. Restlessness and anxiety are often conspicuous symptoms; with marked dyspnoea, and pallor of the face or cyanosis. The general symptoms are pyrexia of an adynamic type; with signs of blood-poisoning, followed by those of collapse or asthenia. The fatal issue is often preceded by delirium. Sudden death is apt to occur.

Treatment.—The only hope lies in free stimulation; and the administration of *cardiac tonics*.

III. ACUTE DEGENERATIONS.

Under this head attention may be briefly directed to the following morbid changes which affect the heart:—

1. *Parenchymatous degeneration.* This is liable to occur in the course of certain acute febrile affections, especially typhoid, typhus, diphtheria, small-pox, and septicæmia. It is believed to be due either to the direct effects of the several morbid poisons, or to prolonged or excessive febrile temperature. By some the change is regarded as of an inflammatory nature, and hence termed "parenchymatous inflammation." It has also been called "granular degeneration," and "cloudy swelling." The whole heart becomes exceedingly soft, flabby, and friable; and of a dirty greyish-red colour. The muscular fibres are seen under the microscope to be indistinct in their striae, and dull, swollen, granular, or ruptured. Acetic acid dissolves many of the granules which resist the action of ether; and shows a few fatty globules, as well as often an increase of pigment-particles.

2. The *hyaline degeneration* of Zenker sometimes affects the heart in prolonged fevers. The affected fibres become swollen, homogenous, and translucent; while the striae are very faint, or altogether disappear.

3. *Anemic necrosis.* This condition may be noticed here, as it may lead to sudden death or rupture of the heart. It results from blocking of a terminal branch of one of the coronary arteries. The affected part presents a yellowish-white colour, or sometimes a greyish-red tint, and a turbid appearance. It may be somewhat wedge-shaped, but is usually irregular, and projects above the surface. Sometimes a firm white patch of hyaline degeneration is evident in the centre of the area. Micro-

scopical examination shows that the muscular fibres present a homogeneous, hyaline appearance; while the nuclei have disappeared, and fragmentation is observed. The left ventricle and septum are most commonly affected.

Symptoms.—Acute degeneration of the heart may be indicated or suspected when, in the course of the diseases mentioned, great prostration occurs, with symptoms and physical signs of progressive cardiac failure. Anæmic necrosis is usually quite latent, until it leads to sudden death or rupture of the heart.

Treatment.—Acute degeneration of the heart calls for energetic stimulation. Digitalis or strychnine might be of use.

IV. RUPTURE OF THE HEART.

Aetiology.—This rare lesion is generally the result of some chronic structural change in the cardiac walls, and probably even in traumatic cases they are never quite healthy. The more important morbid conditions affecting the heart which have been observed are fatty disease, especially degeneration; anæmic necrosis; great dilatation; cardiac aneurism; abscess or gangrene; ulcerative endocarditis; haemorrhage into the cardiac walls; calcification; and parasitic formations. Rupture of the heart may occur in connection with aortic aneurism or coarctation, but then its walls are probably always diseased as well. The lesion almost invariably results from some obvious *exciting cause*, being rarely spontaneous; while it is by far most frequent in males and old persons.

Anatomical Characters.—The size, shape, and other characters of a rupture of the heart vary considerably. On the whole it is much more frequent in the left ventricle, but traumatic rupture is more common on the right side. The direction of the laceration is generally parallel to the chief fibres of the heart.

Symptoms.—These vary according to the mode in which the rupture takes place, and its dimensions. Death may be instantaneous, or very rapid, after sudden insensibility preceded by a shriek. If this does not happen, the important symptoms are sudden extreme pain in the cardiac region; a sense of great oppression and dyspnoea; signs of intense shock and collapse; and indications of grave interference with the cardiac action. Patients occasionally rally, and there may be repeated attacks, supposed to indicate rupture of successive layers of the heart's fibres. It is even stated that recovery has taken place.

Treatment.—Stimulants may be administered, but in the large majority of cases no treatment can be of any avail.

CHAPTER XXV.

CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE HEART.

In the present chapter it is proposed first to give an account of the several chronic organic diseases to which the heart is liable; and then to discuss comprehensively their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment.

I. AFFECTIONS OF THE VALVES AND ORIFICES.

General Aetiology and Pathology.—The various conditions which may give rise to *cardiac murmurs* have been previously pointed out, and the characters of the several murmurs described. Attention will now be directed to those cases in which there is some definite *organic* mischief, affecting the valves or their appendages, or the orifices of the heart, which interferes with the circulation, either by causing *obstruction*, or by permitting *regurgitation*. In the first place it will be well to give a general summary of the pathological modes of origin of these derangements. They may arise from :—1. *Acute endocarditis* and its consequences, especially in connection with acute rheumatism. 2. *Chronic endocarditis* or *valvulitis*, which in many cases appears to be merely a process of fibroid degeneration, the structures implicated being very liable to undergo further degenerative changes, in the direction of atheroma and calcification. This is observed as a rule in persons advanced in years, especially in gouty subjects, or in those suffering from chronic renal disease; it often occurs, however, in younger individuals, who are subject to violent physical strain, in consequence of which great pressure of blood is thrown upon the aortic valves, for example, strikers, colliers, athletes, gymnasts, or boat-racers. Chronic changes in the valves may also be associated with syphilis, chronic alcoholism, and probably other conditions. 3. *Laceration* of a valve or of one of the *chordæ tendineæ*, due to injury. 4. *Chronic myocarditis*, involving the *musculi papillares*, which consequently become contracted and fibroid, thus preventing the valves from closing. 5. *Atrophy of the valves*, or, as some suppose, *congenital insufficiency*, rendering them inefficient, or giving rise to so-called “*reticulation*”, or more or less extensive perforation. 6. *Enlargement* of the *carities* of the heart, involving the orifices without proportionate increase in the valves, which are therefore rendered incompetent; or altering the normal relations of the valves and their appendages to the orifices. 7. *Changes in the aorta*, interfering with the proper closure of its valves. 8. *Congenital malformations*, which are believed to result mainly from endocarditis occurring during intra-uterine life. 9. *Tumours* very rarely. It may be mentioned that an aneurismal dilatation of a valve occurs in exceptional cases, but until this ruptures, and thus permits regurgitation, the condition does not give rise to any definite signs.

It is important to remember that obstruction and regurgitation are often met with at the same orifice; that more than one orifice may be affected from the same cause; and that disease at one orifice tends subse-

quently to set up mischief in others, either by direct extension, by throwing an extra-strain upon the valves and thus inducing chronic valvulitis, or by enlarging the corresponding cavities of the heart.

Special Valvular Diseases.—Having given this general outline, the main facts connected with each orifice will now be specially considered in detail, under the following headings:—1. *Aëtiology.* 2. *Anatomical characters.* 3. *Clinical phenomena*, including the signs immediately connected with the lesion; its direct effects upon the circulation, and the symptoms resulting therefrom; and its remote effects upon the heart. It may be remarked once for all at the outset, that *local symptoms* in cases of valvular disease are very uncertain and unreliable. Uneasiness or pain over the cardiac region may be complained of, but is absent in the majority of cases; it is most frequent in connection with aortic disease. Palpitation and dyspnoea are common symptoms, and not uncommonly render the patient incapable of much exertion.

A. MITRAL REGURGITATION.

Aëtiology.—1. Acute endocarditis is the usual primary cause of this condition, the subsequent chronic changes increasing the mischief and rendering it permanent. 2. Cases are occasionally met with in which no history can be obtained of acute endocarditis, and the affection seems to have been chronic and gradual in its progress from the first, being either due to chronic inflammatory changes or to degeneration. 3. Mitral regurgitation is liable to supervene upon aortic disease, being produced in one or more of the ways already indicated. 4. It may result from mere dilatation of the left cavities, causing enlargement of the orifice, or displacing the musculi papillares; or from changes in the muscular walls, preventing co-aptaion of the valves—*muscular incompetency*.

Anatomical Characters.—The chief morbid conditions observed in different cases of mitral regurgitation are more or less contraction and narrowing of the tongues of the valve, with irregularity, thickening, and rigidity, there being in some instances scarcely any appearance of a valve; atheroma or calcification; laceration of one of the valve-tongues; adhesion of one or more of them to the inner surface of the ventricle, or to each other; rupture of chordæ tendineæ; shortening, thickening, induration, or adhesion of these structures, the smaller ones having often entirely disappeared; contraction and hardening of the musculi papillares; and fibrinous deposits, sometimes in considerable abundance.

Clinical Phenomena.—*Immediate signs.* These are:—1. A *systolic thrill* at the left apex, present in only a small proportion of cases, and then usually only when there is mitral obstruction as well. 2. *Mitral systolic murmur.* 3. *Intensification of the pulmonary second sound*, which is not uncommonly decidedly louder than the aortic.

Effects upon the circulation.—The arterial system will be insufficiently and irregularly supplied with blood; hence the pulse tends to be small, weak, and often unequal in force and fulness, as well as in some cases irregular in rhythm. These characters are shown in the sphygmographic tracing. Two striking phenomena are sometimes observed in connection with mitral regurgitation, namely, that the patient presents a markedly anaemic appearance; and that, although the heart may be acting vigorously, and the great arteries at the root of the neck may even appear to throb, the movement does not extend upwards along the carotids, and scarcely any pulsation is felt in these vessels. Through the

"back-working" of mitral regurgitation, the pulmonary circulation becomes necessarily overloaded more or less speedily, the symptoms and ultimate consequences of which have been already described. Emboli may also be carried from clots in the right heart, giving rise to pulmonary infarctions. In time the right side of the heart and the general venous system become involved, leading to venous stagnation and its results, often to an extreme degree.

Effects upon the heart.—The left auricle first becomes the seat of dilatation with hypertrophy, and afterwards the right ventricle, which is often greatly enlarged, and as a consequence tricuspid regurgitation follows. A moderate degree of hypertrophy with dilatation of the left ventricle is generally observed in course of time, and it may become very considerable. Degeneration of the heart-structure is liable to be set up ultimately; and the endocardial lining of the left auricle tends to become thickened, opaque, and atheromatous.

B. MITRAL OBSTRUCTION.

Aetiology.—Mitral obstructive disease is usually directly traceable to acute rheumatic endocarditis and its consequences. Sometimes it cannot be referred definitely to this cause, and then has been regarded as congenital, and as due either to endocarditis occurring during foetal life, or to malformation. It is highly probable, however, that in many of these cases the lesion is in reality the result of inflammation associated with rheumatism or other diseases occurring in early life, which has not been recognized.

Anatomical Characters.—Mitral obstruction is often due to the orifice being more or less in a state of constriction or *stenosis*; its margins being also rough, irregular, and thickened. One or other of these conditions predominates. The tongues of the valve also not uncommonly adhere together by their edges, so as to form a diaphragm stretching across the orifice—*diaphragmatic valve*; or more rarely the opening is reduced to a mere chink, by the welding of the valves and general thickening—*button-hole valve*. A *funnel-shaped* variety is also described, in which there is adhesion of the edges of the mitral valves without much thickening, but the chordæ tendineæ are thickened, the whole presenting a cone-like appearance from the auricular side. Abundant vegetations on the valves or about the orifice cause mitral obstruction in exceptional instances; and very rarely a tumour.

Clinical Phenomena.—The phenomena of simple mitral obstruction differ from those accompanying mitral regurgitation in the following particulars:—1. *Thrill* is much more frequently felt, and is *præsystolic*, being followed by a peculiar sharp impulse. 2. The murmur may be either simply *præsystolic*, or may be audible throughout the entire diastole up to the systole. A separate *diastolic* murmur is said to be heard occasionally, with a distinct interval between it and the *præsystolic*. The bruit is followed by the abrupt and clear first sound, which is of peculiarly valvular quality, strongly suggesting its association with the closure of the mitral valves. Many think, however, that it is a modified sound produced by the muscular wall, and connected with the altered conditions of the chordæ tendineæ and musculi papillares. 3. The second sound at the base is often markedly and persistently *reduplicated*. 4. With regard to the *pulse*, in my experience of a considerable number of cases of simple mitral obstructive

disease, it continued regular for a long period, but irregularity of the pulse is generally looked upon as an important sign of this disease, and in advanced cases such irregularity is very common. Dr. George Balfour states that the irregularity is extreme, and he attributes it to defective nutrition of the cardiac trunk and ganglia, leading to irregular action. 5. The *left ventricle* is small, and disposed to become atrophied, rather than enlarged; but the left auricle is much more liable to become affected than in mitral regurgitant disease, and in time may be observed to pulsate above the fourth rib to the left of the sternum. The effects on the circulation are similar in both cases, but they are less marked and more slowly produced in simple mitral obstruction.

In many instances *mitral regurgitation* and *obstruction* exist together in various degrees. The interference with the circulation, and the changes in the cavities of the heart, are necessarily more readily induced under these circumstances. A double thrill may be felt. Frequently there are two distinct murmurs, but there may be but one, and it may be purely systolic, but Dr. Balfour states that the murmur is often preceded by a more or less evident thump, and that it ceases at or about the middle of the infra-axillary space. It is in these cases of double mitral disease that the cardiac action and pulse tend to become extremely irregular, according to my observation. Mitral disease is common in young persons. Mitral obstruction is much more common in women than in men.

C. AORTIC OBSTRUCTION.

Aetiology.—1. As a rule chronic valvulitis, ending in atheroma and calcification, originates aortic obstruction, the morbid process gradually progressing: hence this affection is very frequent in old people. It is this valve also which becomes involved in those individuals who undergo severe muscular strain. 2. Cases are not uncommonly observed, however, in which aortic obstruction can be distinctly traced to acute endocarditis associated with rheumatic fever.

Anatomical Characters.—In most cases aortic obstruction depends upon the valves, which may be adherent, but are usually rigid, thickened, irregular, contracted, atheromatous or calcareous, so that they cannot be pressed back by the blood, but remain constantly more or less in the current of the circulation. Often they are covered with considerable fibrinous masses, and the opening of the artery may thus be almost completely closed. Occasionally constriction at or about the aortic orifice is the pathological condition giving rise to obstruction.

Clinical Phenomena.—*Immediate signs.* The only positive signs of aortic obstruction are:—1. *Systolic thrill* at the right base occasionally. 2. *Aortic systolic murmur.* If there is no regurgitation the aortic second sound is often altered, being either weakened, or, on the other hand, accentuated, but this depends rather upon the condition of the aorta, and the degree of general arterial tension. In some cases the second sound is reduplicated.

Effects upon the circulation.—Should the arteries be imperfectly filled, there will be pallor, with a tendency to symptoms of cerebral anaemia. The pulse is small, regular, and compressible, but is generally modified by cardiac hypertrophy or degeneration, and under the influence of the latter change it may become irregular or intermittent. A sphygmographic tracing shows a difficult and very oblique ascent; a rounded

summit; and the secondary waves absent or slight. There is no evidence of obstruction to the pulmonary circulation, unless the mitral orifice becomes involved, so as to permit regurgitation. Particles of fibrin are liable to be detached from the aortic valves, giving rise to embolism, especially in connection with the brain.

Effects upon the heart.—The tendency of simple aortic obstruction is to produce pure hypertrophy of the left ventricle, which compensates for the obstruction, so long as there is no degeneration of the muscular wall, or dilatation of the cavity. In course of time mitral regurgitation is apt to be developed.

D. AORTIC REGURGITATION.

Aetiology.—1. This disease is chiefly the result of progressive chronic changes in the valves, and is especially frequent in those who undergo prolonged or severe strain. 2. In many cases it originates in acute endocarditis. 3. There may be a sudden rupture or laceration of one of the valves, the result of strain, or of ulceration. 4. Regurgitation may take place through perforations in one of the segments, due to atrophy or congenital insufficiency. Other forms of congenital malformation have also been described, causing incompetence, especially fusion of two segments, most commonly those behind which the coronary arteries are given off (Osler). 5. In rare instances the aortic orifice is dilated, and the valves are therefore incompetent to close it properly; or an aneurism just above the aortic ring may cause relative insufficiency. 6. Degenerative changes at the root of the aorta not uncommonly lead to the imperfect adaptation of the valves, and thus give rise to regurgitation.

Anatomical Characters.—The ordinary state of the valves is that described under aortic obstruction, and they are often so shrunken, deformed, and rigid, that they permit regurgitation, as well as cause obstruction. Sometimes they adhere to the walls of the vessel; or a tongue of the valve is found lacerated or ruptured, or having a considerable perforation in it; or there may be scarcely any remnant of the valve.

Clinical Phenomena.—It will be sufficient to point out the important characters which distinguish aortic regurgitation from obstruction. 1. Very rarely is there any *thrill*, but in exceptional cases a marked diastolic thrill is felt, conducted down the sternum, or occasionally perceptible over a large area. 2. A well-marked *diastolic murmur* is generally audible, presenting the usual characters, but varying in loudness and exact quality. 3. The *arterial pulse* is quite characteristic in cases of well-marked aortic regurgitation, owing to the blood being forced into the arteries under unusual pressure by the hypertrophied left ventricle, thus causing their excessive distension; while they afterwards rapidly subside, on account of the blood flowing back into the heart through the unclosed orifice. These phenomena can be observed in all the visible arteries, and have even been seen in the vessels of the eye by the aid of the ophthalmoscope. They become prominent, tortuous, and elongated with each systole of the heart, presenting a vermicular movement; while the pulse has a jerky, abrupt, hard and tense feel, succeeded by a rapid collapse or "fall-back," being usually known as Corrigan's, or the "water-hammer" pulse. The sensation in marked cases has been well described as resembling "balls of blood shot under the finger." When

the arm is raised vertically, the pulse continues to exhibit the same characters, which may even be intensified. There is no irregularity so long as the heart-tissue continues healthy. The important characters of the sphygmographic tracing are that the line of descent falls suddenly; and that the aortic wave is more or less indistinct or absolutely wanting. By observing the latter character, the degree of regurgitation may be determined. The line of ascent is usually long and vertical, with a sharp summit, but this may be square or convex if obstruction also exists. The distension-wave is raised, and the notch preceding it is exaggerated, while unusual vibratory-waves are not uncommon. Murmurs are often heard in the arteries. In course of time these vessels are very prone to become dilated and the seat of degenerative changes, owing to the repeated strain to which they are subjected. 4. *Pallor* is in some cases a very conspicuous symptom in aortic regurgitation; and *capillary pulsation* is not uncommonly observed. It may be noticed under the nails, on the cheeks, or over the forehead, especially when the skin is irritated, alternate blushing and pallor being then evident. 5. The principal morbid change developed in connection with the heart consists in hypertrophy with dilatation of the left ventricle, which tends to become extreme. The hypertrophy is at first usually in excess of what is required for compensation, which accounts for the great distension of the arteries. Degeneration of the enlarged heart is, however, likely to supervene in course of time. The mitral orifice is very liable to become involved in cases of aortic regurgitation, with the usual remote effects, should the patient live long enough. This orifice is in the majority of such cases dilated, so that the valves become relatively incompetent. A presystolic murmur has been described as sometimes audible at the apex of the heart in cases of aortic regurgitation, which was attributed by the late Dr. Austin Flint to the extreme dilatation of the ventricle preventing the mitral segments from being forced back against the wall during diastole, so that they remain in the blood-current.

As a matter of experience, it is found that aortic obstruction and incompetence commonly exist together, and then a double "see-saw" murmur is generally heard, the two portions differing in quality and pitch, while the other phenomena are more or less modified and intensified.

E. TRICUSPID REGURGITATION.

Aetiology.—Practically this condition is either associated with dilatation of the right cavities of the heart, consequent upon some obstruction to the circulation in the lungs, especially that resulting from prolonged emphysema and bronchitis; or it follows mitral disease, being then partly due in some cases to actual disease of the tricuspid valves, set up by continued extra-pressure of the blood upon them. Very rarely tricuspid regurgitation is a sequence of disease at the pulmonary orifice.

Anatomical Characters.—The tricuspid orifice is often simply dilated, the valves being thus rendered incompetent, but being free from disease; or the valves, especially the fixed tongue, with the chordæ tendineæ, are occasionally contracted and deformed. Abundant vegetations are, in my experience, not uncommon upon the ventricular surface of the tricuspid valves.

Clinical Phenomena.—*Immediate signs.* 1. It is stated that a systolic thrill has been felt in the epigastrium in cases of tricuspid

regurgitation, but I have never met with this sign. 2. The characteristic *systolic murmur* is more frequently absent than present, and usually requires an experienced auscultator to detect it. In exceptional instances, however, it is well-marked.

Effects upon the circulation.—The general venous system becomes speedily and seriously obstructed in connection with pronounced and permanent tricuspid regurgitation, and all the symptoms resulting therefrom are likely to follow, including extensive and incurable dropsy. The abdominal circulation is affected very early, on account of the deficiency of valves in the veins of this region. In addition, some important *physical signs* are thus originated, namely:—1. Distension and varicosity of the cervical veins, especially of the right external jugular; and sometimes of the veins over the chest, either with or without cough. 2. Venous pulsation in the neck, and exceptionally in the inferior vena cava and hepatic vein, causing pulsation of the liver. 3. Filling of the external jugular vein from below, after it has been emptied by pressure. The pulmonary circulation is relieved, and thus pulmonary symptoms are often temporarily diminished when tricuspid regurgitation supervenes in cases of mitral disease.

Effects upon the heart.—Tricuspid regurgitation tends to increase hypertrophy of the right ventricle; and to cause chiefly dilatation of the corresponding auricle. If considerable, it may diminish the intensity of murmurs on the left side of the heart.

F. TRICUSPID OBSTRUCTION.

This disease is of extremely rare occurrence as an independent condition, and is almost always associated with other valvular lesions. It may be congenital or acquired. In the former case early death usually occurs. Acquired tricuspid stenosis is in the large majority of instances secondary to mitral disease. It is by far most frequent in women, and in adults. The signs and effects of this condition are similar to those of regurgitation, except that the murmur is *præsystolic*, and a *præsystolic thrill* is said to be not uncommonly felt.

G. PULMONARY OBSTRUCTION AND REGURGITATION.

A very few observations will suffice for the affections of the pulmonary orifice. They are of comparatively rare occurrence, especially *regurgitation*. In the great majority of cases *pulmonary obstruction* is due to congenital constriction at the orifice, which may be extreme; sometimes the valves are much thickened, atheromatous, or calcareous. This disease originates a *systolic thrill* and *murmur* at the left base. The pulse is not affected, and this constitutes an important distinction from aortic disease. Signs of right hypertrophy and dilatation, with tricuspid regurgitation, often appear in course of time; followed by overloading of the systemic veins. *Pulmonary regurgitation* will give rise to a *diastolic murmur* at the left base. It particularly results from fusion of two segments during foetal life. I have only met with one instance of congenital disease in which marked constriction and regurgitation at the pulmonary orifice existed together, accompanied with a loud double murmur. Pulmonary regurgitation may result from malignant endocarditis.

II. ENLARGEMENT OF THE HEART.

Eulargement of the heart may be due to:—1. *Hypertrophy* of its muscular walls. 2. *Dilatation* of its cavities. In most instances there is a combination of these conditions, though in very different degrees, but the varieties met with are sufficiently indicated in the following classification:—1. *Simple hypertrophy*. 2. *Eccentric hypertrophy*, or *hypertrophy with dilatation*, the former being in excess. 3. *Dilatation with hypertrophy*, the dilatation being the more marked. 4. *Dilatation with attenuation of the walls*, or *simple dilatation*. A form has been described as *concentric hypertrophy*, in which the cavities are contracted, but in reality this appearance is merely due to *post-mortem* contraction of the walls of a hypertrophied heart.

It will be convenient to consider hypertrophy and dilatation together, any special facts relating severally to these morbid conditions being indicated as occasion arises.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The numerous causes of cardiac enlargement may be ranged under certain heads.

1. *Direct obstruction*, either in connection with the orifices of the heart or with the vessels, which interferes with the passaye of the blood. Cardiac obstruction is usually seated at the aortic or mitral orifice, very rarely at the pulmonary or tricuspid opening. The *aorta* may be obstructed from extensive atheroma or calcification; aneurism; congenital constriction or coarctation; or external pressure upon the vessel by a neighbouring aneurism or other tumour. In connection with the *general circulation*, the chief conditions giving rise to cardiac enlargement are extensive atheroma or calcification of the arteries; and changes in the arterioles and capillaries accompanying chronic renal disease. In the *pulmonary circulation* obstruction may arise from congenital constriction of, or external pressure upon, the pulmonary artery; chronic pulmonary diseases, especially chronic bronchitis with emphysema, extensive pleuritic adhesions with contracted lung, and interstitial pneumonia; or atheroma of the pulmonary vessels.

Obstruction tends more especially to lead to hypertrophy, but if it is brought about suddenly, a primary dilatation ensues; when, however, obstruction affecting the left ventricle is gradual in its progress, the cardiac hypertrophy is often of the most pure type.

2. *Distension of the walls of the heart during diastole, under increased pressure.* This is a most important cause of cardiac enlargement, being chiefly exemplified by the effects of aortic and mitral regurgitation, and to a less degree by those of tricuspid regurgitation. In these conditions there are two currents of blood entering the cavity into which regurgitation takes place, often under excessive pressure. At first dilatation is produced, but in most cases hypertrophy is soon superadded, their relative proportions depending upon various circumstances. The heart may ultimately assume enormous dimensions.

3. *Embarrassed action of the heart, in consequence of which the contraction of this organ is impeded, and it has to work under physical constraint.* Displacement of the heart from any cause; a deformed thorax; and pericardial agglutination are the most important causes of enlargement coming under this head. The relation of pericardial adhesions to

cardiac enlargement has been much disputed, but unquestionably they are capable of originating hypertrophy, dilatation, or both conditions, under different circumstances.

4. It is probable that mere *excessive cardiac action*, such as is observed in severe palpitation, either constant or paroxysmal, may induce hypertrophy. Some authorities would explain this effect by affirming that an obstacle is set up in the arterial circulation, owing to vaso-motor contraction, and that this leads to compensatory hypertrophy. Exophthalmic goitre may be mentioned here as a possible condition giving rise to cardiac enlargement.

5. Dilatation may result from some *temporary loss of resisting power in the walls of the heart*, associated with cardiac degeneration in low fevers; myocarditis; anaemia; or mere want of muscular tone, due to excessive smoking or venery, alcoholism, or other causes. In this class of cases permanent enlargement may undoubtedly be set up, but usually the distended cavity ultimately resumes its normal dimensions, provided the cause can be removed.

6. I have deemed it best to notice separately that important class of cases, in which cardiac enlargement is the result of *repeated violent effort, especially with the arms*, such as is carried on in connection with certain laborious occupations (hammermen, colliers, etc.), gymnastic exercises, rowing, climbing mountains, and similar exertions. The enlargement is principally due to the obstruction to the circulation which is produced by the muscles crossing the arteries, these muscles also, owing to their rigid condition, opposing the passage of blood through their own vessels; and, after a time, to the aortic and general arterial changes which the violent exertions originate. The excessive action of the heart which these exertions produce must not, however, be overlooked as probably aiding in bringing about the morbid condition. Enlargement of the right cavities is very liable to be developed in runners, swimmers, divers, and those who tax their breathing powers unduly from time to time.

7. A *plethoric state of the system*, resulting from over-eating, especially of nitrogenized food, and abuse of alcohol, has been regarded as a cause of hypertrophy of the heart, but this condition is then probably associated with lithæmia or the gouty state. At the same time the importance of chronic alcoholism as a factor in the development of not a few cases of enlarged heart must never be overlooked.

8. Cases of hypertrophied heart now and then come under observation in which no cause can be traced, and then the hypertrophy is supposed to be *idiopathic and primary*.

With regard to *dilatation*, this condition is more liable to supervene, and is more marked, in those conditions which give rise to great internal pressure upon the cardiac walls during diastole; when obstruction is rapidly produced; and when the muscular fibres of the heart are deficient in resisting power from any cause, as after an acute or long-continued chronic illness, or when they are the seat of congestion, inflammation, or degenerative changes, especially acute parenchymatous, and chronic fatty or fibroid degeneration.

Anatomical Characters.—The alterations produced in various degrees in the heart by hypertrophy and dilatation are chiefly of the following nature:—1. *Increase in bulk*, this being mainly in proportion to the dilatation. 2. *Increase in weight*, which is in the ratio of the hypertrophy. In extreme cases, the heart may be four or five times heavier

than normal, and enormously increased in size. It is then called the *cor bovinum* or *cor taurinum*. 3. *Change in shape.* In general dilated hypertrophy the heart tends to become more or less globular, the apex being rounded or obliterated. If the left cavities are alone involved, and especially merely hypertrophied, the heart is elongated and more conical than usual, the apex of the left ventricle extending downwards some distance beyond the right. When the right side is solely affected there is a tendency to roundness of outline and increase in breadth, the right ventricle lying forwards so as to overlap the left, and to form the apex of the heart. 4. *Alteration in position and axis.* As a rule the heart is lowered, and its apex is displaced to the left, while the right border becomes more horizontal, especially in enlargement of the right side, which may also extend the heart's limit in an upward direction. 5. *Changes in the thickness of the walls, and in the size and shape of the cavities.* There are generally obvious alterations in these respects, but they vary considerably, according to both the absolute and relative amount of hypertrophy and dilatation. The walls of the left ventricle may measure from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches in thickness; those of the right from 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The septum is usually involved, and tends to bulge towards that cavity which is least implicated. It must be remembered that there may be considerable hypertrophy with little or no thickening of the walls, when it is accompanied with much dilatation. In simple dilatation the walls of an auricle may become so thin as to consist of scarcely anything but pericardium and endocardium, and to be almost transparent. 6. *Physical characters of the heart-tissue.* In hypertrophy of a healthy type the myocardium appears either of normal colour, or of an unusually bright-red tint, while the tissue feels firm and resistant. Fatty degeneration may, however, give rise to various tints, as well as to diminution in consistence. The heart generally feels soft and flabby in proportion to the degree of dilatation. 7. *Structural changes.* In the form of cardiac hypertrophy now under consideration the muscular tissue is increased; and this is probably due to a new formation, the fibres being augmented in number, and arranged more closely together. Fatty degeneration frequently follows hypertrophy, and it has been supposed that the recently-formed fibres are more liable to undergo this change. The coronary vessels become enlarged, and some observers affirm that the nerves and nerve-ganglia are also increased in size; others believe that there is only a hyperplasia of the connective tissue associated with these structures.

According to the circumstances under which it arises, enlargement of the heart may be general; limited to the left, or less commonly to the right side; to one cavity, especially a ventricle; or even to particular portions of a cavity. Speaking generally, it may be affirmed that the left side of the heart is more liable to hypertrophy; the right to dilatation. The auricles are probably never solely hypertrophied, being always dilated as well. There is a class of cases in which hypertrophy of the heart is largely due to increase of the connective tissue, but these will be separately considered.

Symptoms.—It is for obvious reasons difficult to indicate precisely what symptoms are directly due to hypertrophy or dilatation of the heart in any particular case, and on this part of the subject it must suffice to offer the following general statements.

1. *Pure hypertrophy*, provided it is strictly compensatory and no more, may be unattended with any symptoms whatever.

2. In many cases, however, cardiac hypertrophy is *excessive*, and hence gives rise to sensations due to the increased action, both in connection with the heart and the arteries; as well as to signs of active congestion of the systemic circulation, especially that of the brain, of the pulmonary circulation, or of both, according as the hypertrophy is left, right, or general; these symptoms being aggravated by any cause which tends to excite the heart. The undue distension of, and strain upon, the main arteries resulting from ventricular hypertrophy ultimately leads to their degeneration; and it may even give rise to rupture of one of the cerebral vessels. It is believed that the pulmonary vessels may undergo degeneration from the same cause, and that they may also finally give way.

3. If the hypertrophy is *insufficient*, or is complicated with *dilatation* or *degeneration*, so that compensation fails more or less, then the symptoms become proportionately more marked; under these circumstances there may be noticed palpitation; feeble, irregular, or intermittent cardiac action and pulse; shortness of breath and disturbance of the heart on exertion; actual dyspnœa of various kinds; or even a tendency to syncope. The special phenomena of dilatation will be separately considered.

4. In proportion to the degree of *dilatation* will the functions of the heart be disturbed, and its force be impaired and inefficient, so that it becomes more and more difficult to carry on the circulation, which is retarded and rendered languid, and thus the mass of the blood is insufficiently aerated, while the capillaries and veins become overloaded, and the arteries are imperfectly filled. Most uncomfortable sensations are often experienced over the cardiac region, which may amount to intense anginal pains. Palpitation, irregularity, or intermittency are either constantly present, or are liable to be brought on by slight causes, especially by exertion or flatulence. Dyspnœa is also persistent to a greater or less degree, being easily intensified, and often amounting to orthopnœa; while all the consequences of pulmonary congestion are very liable to arise. The symptoms indicative of general venous stagnation are developed to their fullest extent, when there is much dilatation of the right cavities of the heart. It is important to notice that while in hypertrophy the urine is unaltered, in proportion to the degree of dilatation it becomes more and more scanty and concentrated, and then usually contains albumin, which may amount to one-eighth or one-sixth of its bulk.

Physical Signs.—In the following description an attempt is made to indicate the chief variations in the *physical signs* which may be met with in cases of cardiac enlargement.

1. *Bulging* over the cardiac region is often observed, being in proportion to the degree of hypertrophy; to its duration; and to the youth of the patient. Its seat and extent depend upon those of the hypertrophy. The intercostal spaces may be widened, but are not protruded. Dilatation does not cause bulging.

2. The *impulse* is always more or less altered. In hypertrophy it is chiefly displaced downwards and towards the left; somewhat increased in area, though well-defined; forcible, in some instances being extremely powerful; slow, impulsive, heaving or pushing in a downward and forward direction; and regular. Dilatation tends rather to enlarge the impulse transversely, especially towards the right, but does not

materially lower it; it becomes extensive, diffused, and ill-defined; liable to change its place with different beats of the heart; more or less feeble, being sometimes seen when not felt, or perceptible neither to touch nor sight; of jerking or slapping quality, or occasionally almost undulatory; unequal in force; and irregular in rhythm or even intermittent. Sometimes a diastolic impulse is felt. A peculiar sensation has been described in marked dilatation, perceptible by auscultation, as of a diffused tumble of the heart against the chest-walls, with rolling over, followed by a pause. According to the degree in which hypertrophy and dilatation are combined, will the impulse partake more of the characters significant of one or other of these conditions; while it is naturally influenced by the part of the heart involved. In marked hypertrophy with dilatation of the left ventricle the beat may be felt as low as the seventh or eighth rib, and three inches or more outside the left nipple. When the right ventricle is affected, the chief impulse lies behind and to the right of the sternum and ensiform cartilage, or in the epigastrium, and is obviously superficial; while the true apex-beat may be concealed by the dilated right cavity. Hypertrophy of the left auricle may cause a pulsation above the fourth rib to the left of the sternum.

3. *Cardiac dulness.* In all forms of cardiac enlargement the area of dulness necessarily tends to be increased, but this is often more or less obscured by emphysematous lungs. It is important to notice in what direction any increase of dulness takes place, as well as its shape. Hypertrophy generally enlarges it downwards and to the left, and causes it to assume a vertically-elongated form. Dilatation extends it transversely, especially towards the right, rendering it somewhat square or circular, but does not lower it materially. General hypertrophy with dilatation gives rise to the greatest extension, both laterally and downwards, the shape being more or less square. Enlargement of one or other side of the heart will cause the dulness to increase in a corresponding direction; while localized enlargement will give rise to localized dulness.

4. *Cardiac sounds.* In marked hypertrophy of the left ventricle the first sound at the apex becomes obscure, muffled, low-pitched, and somewhat prolonged. In some cases there can scarcely be said to be an actual sound, but rather a sensation conveyed to the head through the stethoscope; occasionally a sound as of the heart knocking against the chest-wall is heard. At the base the first sound may be much clearer and more valvular. The second sound is often accentuated. In dilatation the first sound tends to be feeble, but clear, short, sharp, and valvular; it becomes weaker towards the base, but the second sound may be well-accentuated in this situation. In pronounced cases the "fœtal heart-rhythm" may be met with; or the typical "gallop-rhythm". Combined hypertrophy and dilatation may cause the first sound to become extremely loud, full, prolonged, accentuated, and extensively audible; it may then have a clanging quality. The sounds will be unusually distinct towards the right or left, if either side of the heart is particularly affected; and right hypertrophy may be attended with increased accentuation of the pulmonary second sound. Reduplication of the sounds is common in enlargement of the heart.

5. *Murmurs* occasionally result from enlargement of the cardiac cavities, as already explained. Hypertrophy alone or with dilatation

will intensify murmurs due to valvular diseases. Simple dilatation tends to weaken murmurs.

6. An enlarged heart may affect *neighbouring structures*, displacing or compressing them, and thus originating physical signs. The left lung often presents signs of more or less compression. The diaphragm, liver, and stomach may also be pushed down, as revealed by examination of the abdomen.

7. *The pulse.* In hypertrophy involving the left ventricle the larger arteries are generally seen to throb more or less violently, and sometimes the smaller vessels also. The pulse is disposed to be less frequent, slow and prolonged, full, powerful, of high tension, and regular. A sphygmographic curve presents a more or less square summit. In proportion to the amount of dilatation the pulse tends to become more feeble, small, compressible, lagging, and irregular or intermittent. When the right side is alone involved the radial pulse is not affected, or only to a minor degree, and this may be of assistance in diagnosis. The pulse is often influenced by valvular diseases, changes in the vessels themselves, and other causes upon which the cardiac enlargement depends, or with which it happens to be associated.

III. ATROPHY OF THE HEART.

Aetiology.—Atrophy of the heart may be met with under the following circumstances :—1. As a *congenital condition*, especially in females. 2. In connection with *general wasting* from old age, starvation, low fevers, phthisis, cancer, and other affections inducing marasmus. 3. From *pressure upon the heart* by pericardial agglutination or effusion ; or excessive accumulation of fat. This cause acts partly by interfering with the supply of blood through the coronary vessels. 4. As a result of *disease or obstruction of the coronary arteries*, the heart being on this account imperfectly nourished ; atrophy is then generally accompanied with degenerative changes.

Anatomical Characters.—Diminution in weight is the characteristic feature of cardiac atrophy, and the heart may be reduced in weight to $3\frac{1}{4}$ ozs. or even less. As a rule the organ is small, and its cavities are contracted, the shape being normal. An *eccentric form* is described, however, in which there is dilatation as well as atrophy. The muscular tissue is usually wanting in tone ; and fatty degeneration is not uncommon.

Symptoms.—Feebleness of the circulation is the only symptom which can be attributed directly to cardiac atrophy. When it follows pressure upon the heart, or interference with its supply of blood, severe symptoms are often present, such as palpitation, dyspnoea, and general venous congestion ; but these are not the immediate consequences of the atrophy. The *physical signs*, if any, are :—1. A feeble and limited *impulse*, which may be raised. 2. Diminished area of *dulness*. 3. Weak or sometimes almost inaudible *cardiac sounds*. 4. A small, feeble, but regular *pulse*.

IV. FATTY DISEASE OF THE HEART.

There are two distinct pathological conditions associated with the heart to which the term *fatty disease* is applied, each of which requires separate consideration.

1. FATTY INFILTRATION.

Etiology.—Fatty infiltration is observed :—1. As a part of *general obesity*, especially in elderly persons. 2. In some individuals who suffer from cancer, phthisis, and other *wasting affections*. 3. In connection with *chronic alcoholism*.

Anatomical Characters.—The connective-tissue cells around and in the substance of the heart become infiltrated with fat, leading to a *fatty hypertrophy*. This commences under the pericardium, but the fat penetrates inwards between the muscular fibres, causing their degeneration and absorption, so that finally the affected portions of the cardiac walls may be almost or entirely composed of adipose tissue. The ventricles are chiefly affected, especially the right, and there is a particular tendency to the accumulation of fat along the sulci, and about the base and apex of the heart. The organ is necessarily pale, soft, flabby, and lacerable.

Symptoms.—Fatty infiltration of the heart may generally be suspected when it exists, but in many cases it cannot be made out by positive signs. If considerable in amount, it is likely to be accompanied with uncomfortable sensations in the cardiac region; palpitation or other cardiac disturbance on exertion; shortness of breath; and a weak and languid circulation, leading to incapacity for any effort, chilliness of the extremities, and a tendency to giddiness or faintness. *Physical examination* only reveals a feeble or imperceptible impulse, with corresponding sounds; and a weak compressible pulse. Often, however, there is so much fat over the chest that no satisfactory examination of the heart can be made. Ultimately in extreme cases fatty infiltration of this organ may lead to all the effects of pulmonary and general venous stagnation.

2. FATTY DEGENERATION OR METAMORPHOSIS.

Etiology.—The pathological modes of origin of fatty degeneration of the cardiac walls are as follows :—1. In the large majority of cases it results from *mal-nutrition*, owing to some direct interference with the supply of blood through the *coronary arteries*. This may arise from atheroma or calcification of the vessels themselves; embolic obstruction; or external compression, especially by pericardial thickening. A hypertrophied heart is very liable to degenerate, chiefly in consequence of inadequate blood-supply. 2. Cardiac degeneration is sometimes a manifestation of the so-called *fatty diathesis*, similar changes being observed in the kidneys, lungs, blood-vessels, cells of the cornea, and other structures. These changes may be set up without any evident cause; or in connection with senile decay, alcoholism, gout, acute or chronic anaemia, especially pernicious anaemia, renal disease probably, and wasting affections, such as phthisis or cancer. 3. More or less fatty degeneration

accompanies *fatty infiltration*; or it may be associated with *myocarditis* or *parenchymatous degeneration*. 4. The heart has been found in a state of fatty degeneration in cases of *poisoning by phosphorus*, as well as by phosphoric and several other acids. 5. It has been suggested that *primary disease of the cardiac ganglia and nerves* may lead to fatty degeneration of the muscular tissue.

Predisposing causes.—The most important of these are age, fatty degeneration of the heart being very uncommon in the young, and increasing in frequency after middle life to about the sixty-third year (Watson), after which it gradually becomes less common; the male sex; sedentary and indolent habits, especially when combined with over-eating and drinking, this disease being therefore more common among the well-to-do classes, and in those whose occupations lead to such habits, such as publicans or butlers; and the presence of gout or Bright's disease.

Allusion may here be made to the so-called "gouty heart." This is really merely a condition of hypertrophy followed by fatty degeneration of the cardiac walls, associated with vascular and renal changes, and occurring in connection with lithæmia. Chronic changes affecting the valves are not uncommonly set up in gout.

Anatomical Characters.—Fatty metamorphosis may be observed in a heart of normal size, or in one enlarged or atrophied. The ventricles are by far most frequently affected, especially the left; and the change may be seen over a considerable area, or is limited to certain spots, if due to localized vascular obstruction. It may commence primarily at either surface, or deep in the walls.

Certain alterations in *physical characters* are marked if the degeneration is advanced. The colour is paler than normal and dull, either brownish-red, pale brown, or presenting various "faded-leaf" tints, being sometimes actually yellow. These colours may be seen throughout, or merely in streaks, constituting the "tabby-cat" appearance. The consistence is diminished, the tissue tearing and breaking down readily under pressure, and the cardiac walls occasionally resembling mere "wet brown paper." There may be a greasy feel; oil being also yielded on pressure, or to the knife, blotting-paper, or ether.

The *microscopical changes* are characteristic, and may be observed before there are any alterations evident to the naked eye. At first the *striæ* of the muscular fibres are merely rendered indistinct by the presence of fat-granules and oil-globules, being again brought into view by the action of ether. Gradually they become more and more obscured, until finally they disappear altogether, the fibres being made up entirely of fat-granules.

Symptoms.—Undoubtedly fatty degeneration of the heart may be entirely or practically latent. Sudden death has not infrequently occurred from this disease, when there had been no previous suspicion of any cardiac mischief. Cases, however, do come under observation in which the diagnosis may be made with tolerable certainty. As a rule the progress of the disease is very gradual and insidious. Most of the symptoms are attributable to the feeble action of the heart.

Unpleasant sensations are frequently complained of over the cardiac region, and anginal attacks are very liable to arise. Palpitation is often felt during the progress of the degeneration, not, however, directly associated with the diseased fibres, but with those which are unaffected, these being insufficient for the requirements of the circulation. The

principal disturbances of the cardiac action observed in different combinations are infrequency, the beats being reduced to 50, 40, 30, 25, 20, or even fewer in a minute; feebleness; irregularity; and intermittency. Any exertion tends to increase the frequency of the action, and to render it more irregular.

The appearance of the patient may afford evidence of the disease, in a sallow earthy tint, combined with anaemia, or with lividity about the lips and enlarged capillaries on the cheeks, of which appearances I have met with well-marked examples. The tissues are generally flabby and wanting in tone. There are frequently evidences of degeneration of the vessels and other structures. Among these the *arcus senilis* has been considered of material diagnostic importance, especially when it is yellow, ill-defined, and passes into a cloudy cornea; but this supposition is very questionable, to say the least.

The patient feels weak, languid, and deficient in vitality; is subject to chilliness; and may be incapacitated for any exertion, which brings on shortness of breath, faintness, or actual syncope. Involuntary sighing is sometimes a prominent symptom in fatty heart; and also Cheyne-Stokes respiration.

Owing to the inadequate supply of blood to the nerve-centres important symptoms are liable to arise. The chief of these are habitual depression of spirits; irritability and moroseness; various sensations in the head; disturbances of vision; feebleness of intellect, with failure of memory, and inaptitude for thought; tremulousness and an unsteady gait; a tendency to sudden attacks of giddiness, which make the patient cling to the nearest object; restless and disturbed sleep, attended with sudden startings, which may be due to a feeling of impending suffocation; and unusual sensations in the limbs. Sudden cerebral anaemia is very liable to occur, indicated by syncope; apoplectiform or epileptiform attacks; or a combination of these conditions. These attacks are, however, soon recovered from as a rule, and do not leave any permanent ill-effects behind.

The digestive organs are generally out of order. A sensation of sinking at the epigastrium is often complained of. Sexual inclination and power are frequently notably deficient.

It must be borne in mind that fatty degeneration may set in in connection with a hypertrophied or dilated heart, or with valvular disease, and it will then modify the symptoms, as well as the physical signs accompanying these conditions, especially adding to the difficulty in carrying on the circulation.

Physical Signs.—The only positive signs of simple fatty degeneration of the heart are the following:—1. The *impulse* is feeble or absent, but if perceptible it is well-defined. 2. The *sounds* are weak, especially the first, which may be almost inaudible, particularly at the base, where it is weaker than at the apex. The second sound may be fairly accentuated. In extreme cases no sounds whatever can be heard. 3. The *pulse* is very feeble, small, and compressible; often infrequent, there being sometimes but one pulsation to two ventricular contractions; while it tends to be irregular, and may become hurried paroxysmally, so as to be almost uncountable from its frequency and irregularity (Walshe).

Course and Termination.—Patients suffering from fatty disease of the heart may go on for years, but death is to be feared at any moment if the lesion is advanced. The fatal termination may occur quite

suddenly from syncope, usually after some effort; from rupture of the heart, either sudden or gradual; or from progressive cardiac failure, which may be attended with dropsy. This symptom, however, is often absent from first to last, even in extreme cases, and it is a question whether fatty disease of the heart alone can give rise to dropsy, although it may assist materially in its development.

V. CONNECTIVE-TISSUE HYPERTROPHY AND FIBROID DISEASE.

The walls of the heart may become the seat of morbid changes of a chronic nature, in which the normal connective-tissue is increased in amount, or a definite fibroid material is formed, and these conditions may be conveniently considered together.

Pathology and Aetiology.—An increased formation of connective tissue between the muscular fibres of the heart, of general distribution, may result from prolonged venous congestion, in connection with the different conditions which cause obstruction of the venous circulation, as pointed out by Sir William Jenner; rarely it follows some local interference with the coronary veins. Sir Richard Quain maintains, however, that there is a distinct form of connective-tissue hypertrophy—a simple hyperplasia—the origin of which cannot be fully explained, but which seems to be associated with excessive feeding. This tissue interferes with the freedom of the muscular fibres, and is thus supposed to set up increased action in these fibres, with consequent hypertrophy of the muscular tissue, the two processes going on simultaneously.

Fibroid disease only affects a limited area of the cardiac wall. It may probably be either of inflammatory or degenerative origin. Thus fibrosis may occur as a gradual process after acute myocarditis; and it is believed that occasionally a chronic myocarditis develops by extension from a similar change affecting the pericardium or endocardium, associated with rheumatism. In certain cases the fibrotic condition is probably due to syphilis, but this will be separately noticed. In others it is of a degenerative nature, arising as a consequence of vascular changes, infarction, or renal disease. Not uncommonly it cannot be traced to any definite cause.

Anatomical Characters.—Diffuse hyperplasia of the connective-tissue of the cardiac walls tends to make them more or less abnormally firm and tough, and in pronounced cases they are markedly indurated, or of a leathery consistence. When cut into, the cavities do not collapse, but the section remains stiff and prominent, presenting a smooth and homogeneous appearance. The colour varies from a pale buff to deep purple, according to the amount of connective-tissue, and of blood in the vessels. In one class of cases the heart is more or less uniformly enlarged—*false hypertrophy*, and may weigh as much as forty ounces (Quain); but the enlargement is partly due to increase in the muscular fibres, some of which may be in a state of granular, fatty, or pigmentary degeneration. This change in the cardiac walls favours dilatation, and helps to render it permanent. Microscopical examination reveals the hyperplasia of the cellular tissue, as well as numerous cells, in various stages of development, from the round and spindle-shaped cell to the complete fibrilla.

As regards the more limited fibrotic changes, these differ in different cases. Sometimes there is a mere local thickening of fibrous tissue

beneath an opacity of the endocardium or pericardium, from which processes or septa pass between the muscular bundles. One of the most important and frequent conditions, however, is a complete fibroid patch, which occupies the whole thickness of the cardiac wall, and consists of dense fibrous tissue, the muscular element having entirely disappeared. It may be fibro-cartilaginous or almost cartilaginous in consistence. Such a patch is usually observed near the apex, and varies in extent, in some cases a considerable area of a ventricle being involved. At the same time smaller patches, nodules, scars, or streaks may be found in the deeper parts of the myocardium, which cause puckering or irregularity of the endocardial surface. Sometimes the fibroid change is limited to the musculi papillares, especially in connection with chronic valvular disease. In rare instances this lesion causes annular constriction of the conus arteriosus, leading to so-called *cardiac sténosis*. The fibrotic change in the wall of the heart may originate irregular dilatation of a cavity, or a cardiac aneurism.

Symptoms and Physical Signs.—The clinical recognition of the conditions now under consideration must, for obvious reasons, be as a rule very difficult, and in many cases impossible. Symptoms are frequently absent, and are in no way peculiar. Extensive fibrosis of a ventricle would lead to embarrassment and inefficiency of the cardiac action, evident on examination, with the usual consequences; accompanied with praecordial distress or perhaps pain, and attacks of conscious palpitation or dyspnoea. Sudden death may occur, most commonly without any previous symptoms. Physical examination would reveal enlargement of the heart in cases of general connective-tissue hypertrophy. Fibrosis of the musculi papillares might originate a murmur due to incomplete valvular closure of the corresponding orifice. The secondary effects of the fibrotic change would probably be revealed by their own special signs. From a diagnostic point of view, it is always well in any chronic cardiac case to bear this change in mind, as a possible condition associated with other more obvious lesions, and contributing to the general result; or as one explaining symptoms where nothing definite can be made out by physical examination.

VI. PECULIAR DEGENERATIONS.

In addition to the forms of degeneration affecting the heart already described, the following require brief notice:—1. PIGMENTARY—BROWN ATROPHY. This change occurs not uncommonly in cases of chronic valvular disease; and in the senile heart. When marked, the colour of the muscular tissue is dark red-brown; and the consistence is usually increased. There is an accumulation of yellow-brown pigment in the fibres, chiefly about the nuclei. Pigment-granules, presenting a yellow, shining appearance, are almost always found in the muscular tissue of the heart in cases of chronic disease of this organ. 2. CALCIFICATION. In addition to calcification of pericardial adhesions, and of valves or orifices within the heart, calcareous particles are sometimes found within or around the muscular fibres. 3. ALBUMINOID DEGENERATION. This may possibly occur in the heart, but is of no practical importance.

VII. NEW GROWTHS.

New growths in connection with the heart are not of common occurrence, and as a rule cannot be regarded as of much clinical importance, as they are seldom recognized, so that it will only be necessary to deal with them here very briefly.

1. **SYPHILITIC DISEASE.** The heart may be involved both in acquired and hereditary syphilis. The lesions may be revealed either in the form of distinct gummata, in various stages; as fibroid patches or irregular masses of indurated fibroid tissue in the walls; or as a fibrous capsule surrounding a caseous or fibrinous mass. Possibly local symptoms or physical signs may be met with in particular instances. In some cases praecordial uneasiness, syncopal attacks, and remarkable infrequency of the pulse have been noticed. The diagnosis, if ever practicable, can only be founded on the presence of well-marked indications of constitutional syphilis, and the absence of other causes of cardiac disease. Sudden death may result from syphilitic lesions of the heart.

2. **MALIGNANT DISEASE.** Very rarely the heart is affected with malignant disease, which is almost always secondary, or the result of extension. Encephaloid is the most common variety, and epithelioma the most rare. Scirrhous, colloid, melanotic cancer, and sarcoma have all been met with. The growth generally affects one or other surface chiefly, and may excite pericarditis or endocarditis. Usually there are multiple growths. It is almost impossible to recognize this condition clinically.

3. **CYSTS.** Various cysts have been described in the heart, among which may be specially mentioned hydatid-cysts, and the cysticercus cellulosæ. Hydatids are usually associated with similar formations in other structures. They tend to rupture into the pericardium, or into the interior of the heart. In several cases sudden death has occurred. A diagnosis is practically impossible.

4. **MISCELLANEOUS.** It will suffice to mention, as growths which may be met with in the heart, tubercle; lymphoma or lymphadenoma; myoma; lipoma; and fibrous polypi projecting from the endocardial surface. These are merely of pathological interest.

VIII. CARDIAC ANEURISM.

Anatomical Characters.—Cardiac aneurism signifies a localized dilatation or protrusion of the walls of the heart. It may involve the entire thickness; or the endocardium and contiguous muscular strata are destroyed. The size and form of the aneurism vary much, but there are the two types, namely, a general and equable dilatation of a portion of the parietes; and the sacculated variety, the latter communicating with the heart by a wide or narrow orifice. More or less stratified fibrin or coagulated blood is usually found in the sac, and it may thus be completely obliterated, the aneurism being cured. The left ventricle is the part almost invariably affected, usually near the apex; and more than one aneurism may be present.

Etiology and Pathology.—Cardiac aneurism is almost always the consequence of some previous structural lesion in the ventricular wall, especially the fatty or fibroid change; acute inflammation; softening

from any cause; rarely ulceration or rupture of the endocardium; or haemorrhage into the myocardium. As a rule it is formed gradually, but may be developed suddenly from violent strain. Fibroid and other degenerative changes are likely to be increased, or to be subsequently set up at the seat of an aneurism involving the wall of the heart.

Symptoms.—There are no reliable symptoms or physical signs of aneurism of the heart. Sometimes a localized pulsating prominence is observed, over which a single or double murmur may be heard. Hypertrophy and dilatation are developed in course of time. Death may take place suddenly from rupture of the aneurism.

IX. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

I. DIAGNOSIS.

In making a diagnosis with regard to chronic affections of the heart, it is necessary to determine:—1. Whether there is any actual organic mischief, or merely functional disturbance, or both. 2. The nature, exact seat, and extent of any organic lesions present, the main conditions to be borne in mind being:—*a.* Diseases of the valves and orifices. *b.* Alterations in the size or capacity of the heart. *c.* Changes in its walls. *d.* Interference with its supply of blood. *e.* Pericardial effusion or adhesion. It must be remembered that these lesions are often variously combined, and an endeavour should be made to determine as nearly as possible the precise state of the structures in every particular just mentioned. 3. The pathological cause or causes of any existing morbid conditions, if these can be discovered.

A separate account of the diagnosis of each disease would involve unnecessary repetition, and it will be sufficient to indicate the data on which this should be founded, namely:—1. The *previous history* of the patient, special enquiry being made with regard to *acute rheumatism*, *violent exertion or prolonged strain*, and *alcoholism*. It may also be of some help to note whether there is any family predisposition to cardiac disease. 2. The *age, sex, and general condition*, particular attention being paid to signs of degeneration. 3. The *symptoms* present, especially noting any disturbance of the circulation, and the phenomena resulting therefrom. 4. The *physical signs* discovered on examination. Physical examination is the only possible and reliable means by which cardiac diseases can be properly diagnosed, and daily experience enforces the importance of adequate investigation of the heart in any case which comes under observation for the first time, and especially when examining for life insurance. The points to be attended to in this examination are:—(i.) Whether there is any change in the shape or size of the chest over the cardiac region. (ii.) The characters of the impulse in every particular. (iii.) Whether any thrill or pericardial fremitus can be felt. (iv.) The situation, form, directions of increase, and extent of the cardiac dulness. (v.) The characters of the heart-sounds, these being compared over different parts of the cardiac region. (vi.) Whether any pericardial or endocardial murmur can be detected, with the characters of such murmur. It is also requisite to examine carefully the arteries and veins, making use of the sphygmograph when necessary, and observing whether the vessels present evidences of degeneration. 5. The condition of other organs, especially of the *lungs* and *kidneys*.

It is important to draw attention to the following facts:—1. The heart may be displaced by extrinsic conditions, thus presenting abnormal physical signs when it is not itself actually diseased; while signs of organic mischief may be obscured or modified by the state of contiguous structures. 2. Murmurs may belong to the inorganic class; or may be merely due to roughness of the endocardium, which is unattended with any danger. 3. The bulging and dulness indicative of pericardial effusion or cardiac enlargement may be simulated by excessive temporary distension of the right cavities of the heart; aneurism of the aorta; tumour, abscess, or accumulation of fat in the mediastinum; localized pleuritic effusion; and consolidation or retraction of the anterior edges of the lungs, especially the left. 4. Organic disease of the heart, even of a serious nature, is not infrequently unaccompanied with any symptoms whatever; and there may be no distinctive physical signs, particularly in cases of fatty degeneration. 5. Severe cardiac symptoms may be complained of, and there may even be marked objective disturbance of the heart's action, amounting to irregularity or intermittency, in connection with mere functional disorder. Much stress has been laid on certain points in determining whether local cardiac symptoms are due to organic mischief or not, namely, that mere functional disturbance is not increased by effort; is inconstant; and is usually brought on by some obvious exciting cause. My own experience would lead me to avoid placing much reliance on such distinctions, except that grave disorder of the cardiac action following slight exertion may be a useful indication of degeneration, when other signs are wanting.

II. PROGNOSIS.

Any organic affection of the heart should be regarded as more or less serious, but numerous circumstances influence the prognosis, and each individual case has to be considered in several aspects before a satisfactory opinion on this matter can be given. It must be premised that great care should be taken not to mistake mere functional disorder for organic disease, and *vice versâ*, which might lead to a wrong prognosis in either direction, and it is therefore highly improper to attempt to found any conclusion on mere subjective symptoms associated with this organ.

The questions which have to be considered in relation to the prognosis of a case of heart-disease are mainly these:—1. Whether there is any danger of sudden death? 2. What are the events likely to arise in its progress, and the dangers to be feared? 3. What will be the probable duration? 4. Whether a cure is possible? In the following remarks an endeavour will be made to indicate the chief data upon which an intelligent conclusion on these questions can be founded; and to state the principal facts which experience has established.

1. The prognosis must necessarily be guided by the *nature, seat, and extent* of the disease or diseases present, the knowledge of these points being of course derived from a satisfactory physical examination. Any organic affection in connection with either orifice, inducing obstruction or regurgitation, is serious, but the dangers differ greatly in degree and character at the different orifices, and depend further upon the cause of the lesion, and the exact conditions present. In estimating the probable evils, moreover, the effects of the various lesions upon the circulation must be borne in mind, as well as the secondary changes which they are

likely to originate in the heart. It is a fact familiar to all experienced practitioners that patients suffering from valvular disease of the heart, as determined by physical examination, may live for many years, even without any symptoms, but this fact was brought into special prominence by the late Sir Andrew Clark in a paper read before the British Medical Association in 1886, in which he brought together a large number of cases where valvular disease was known to have existed for over five years without causing serious symptoms. As the result of his observations this eminent physician remarked :—"It will conclusively appear that there exist multitudes of persons with chronic valvular disease of the heart, who not only suffer no inconvenience therefrom, but are also capable of discharging the duties and enjoying the pleasures of life."

With regard to *sudden death*, *aortic regurgitation* is the only form of valvular disease in which this event is probable, but it is said to have occurred in exceptional cases of *mitral regurgitation*. *Obstructive disease* in connection with the left orifices is mainly injurious by its "back-working," and by its consequent effects on the heart itself, the lungs, and ultimately on the general venous circulation. *Aortic obstruction* often lasts a long time without producing any particular harm ; and cases of simple *mitral stenosis* also frequently go on without any change for a considerable period. *Mitral disease* is more immediately dangerous on account of its effects on the lungs. *Tricuspid disease*, especially *regurgitation*, is one of the most serious affections connected with the orifices, on account of the distressing symptoms by which it is certain to be followed in course of time, and often very speedily, through over-loading of the venous circulation ; but the progress of the case is frequently slow and tedious, the patient leading a miserable existence. *Pulmonary constriction* or *regurgitation* produces the same effects, but less rapidly. It will be readily understood that extensive or double disease at an orifice increases the gravity of the prognosis. As a rule also it is worse when two or more orifices are involved ; but secondary implication of an opening sometimes gives temporary relief, as in the case of tricuspid regurgitation following mitral disease, which diminishes the severity of the pulmonary symptoms.

With respect to the question whether valvular disease is ever curable, I certainly have met with cases in which marked mitral murmurs have disappeared entirely in young persons ; and, though complete restoration to the normal condition is probably not possible, it is not unlikely that fibrinous deposits may be partly removed in course of time.

Hypertrophy of the heart in the majority of cases is decidedly a preservative or compensatory lesion, and cannot under such circumstances be looked upon as of evil import. It is dangerous only when excessive, as it may then lead to rupture of vessels, especially if these are diseased, a condition which it tends itself to produce through constant over-distension ; when on the right side it may be further injurious through keeping up a persistent state of active congestion of the lungs. It is probable that a moderate amount of hypertrophy may subside if the cause which has induced it can be removed.

Dilatation is a highly dangerous condition, and in proportion to its degree, and to its excess over hypertrophy, does the prognosis become more and more grave. Sudden death may occur in connection with a weak, flabby, greatly dilated heart ; while dilatation always materially augments any difficulty in carrying on the circulation, thus contributing to the development of dropsy and other serious symptoms.

Degeneration of the cardiac walls is another very grave lesion. This is one of the changes which makes the prognosis so much worse in cases of compensatory hypertrophy. Extensive fatty degeneration is one of the most frequent causes of sudden death from cardiac disease. Fatty infiltration is also a dangerous condition, and may terminate in a similar way.

Pericardial agglutination adds much to the evils of other cardiac diseases, and also tends to originate changes in the heart itself. I have met with some cases of pneumonia in which this condition seemed to have considerable influence in bringing about a fatal termination.

In the majority of cases the cardiac affections just alluded to are variously combined, and the prognosis has then to be determined from a careful consideration of the exact lesions present.

2. The existing *symptoms* will influence the prognosis considerably. Severe anginal attacks; great irregularity or intermittency of the cardiac action; or a tendency to syncope, or to apoplectiform or epileptiform attacks, increase the danger of a case of organic cardiac disease very materially. When the general venous circulation becomes much interfered with, and dropsy sets in, the duration is not likely to be very prolonged; it is impossible, however, to make any definite statement on this matter, as patients often linger on for a considerable time, and even improve remarkably under appropriate treatment. It is important to notice further that acute pulmonary complications may arise, and cause very serious symptoms, at the same time materially increasing the dropsy, so that the case appears to be approaching a speedy termination; but, on the subsidence of these complications, great improvement may take place, the symptoms disappearing, the patient rallying, and sometimes even feeling better than before.

3. The *cause* of any cardiac organic disease will influence the prognosis, as well as the possibility of removing such cause. For instance, improvement in valvular disease can only be hoped for when it results from acute inflammation; if induced by chronic and degenerative changes, matters always tend to become worse. After a sudden injury to a valve, the lesion is not likely to increase, but usually remains stationary; whereas after valvulitis progressive changes are likely to take place, which derange more and more the functions of the structures connected with the affected orifice. As already stated, it is probable that a certain degree of hypertrophy, or even of dilatation, may be recovered from if the cause can be removed.

4. The *state of other organs and structures*, especially of the arteries, lungs, kidneys, and liver, will considerably modify the prognosis in any given case of heart-disease, and hence their condition ought to be carefully investigated. If the vessels are much diseased, the muscular tissue of the heart is likely to undergo speedy degeneration; or grave consequences may result at any time from obstruction of the coronary arteries.

5. Among *general matters* affecting the prognosis are the age of the patient; the family history, as indicating a tendency to death from heart-disease at any particular period of life; and the social position and habits. It is only in young persons that curative changes can be expected. Those who are so circumstanced that they are able to live quietly, without either the anxiety or the labour arising from having to provide day by day for themselves and their families, and who can procure a suitable diet, have a much better chance of length of life than

those not so fortunately placed. Laborious occupations are especially hurtful. Persistent indulgence in injurious habits, such as intemperance or debauchery, will necessarily render the prognosis much more unfavourable. The prognosis of cardiac disease with reference to marriage, parturition, and suckling is of much importance, and those who are interested in the subject will find valuable information in the work by the late Dr. Angus Macdonald on "Heart Disease during Pregnancy."

III. TREATMENT.

Very seldom can any hope be entertained of curing a chronic cardiac affection, but undoubtedly much may be done in the way of prolonging life; averting further mischief in the heart itself, and in other structures; warding off unpleasant or dangerous symptoms; and relieving such symptoms when they arise. After any acute affection involving the heart, the patient should be kept strictly under observation until this organ has been restored to as normal a condition as possible; while any chronic case ought to be kept more or less under medical supervision, though this by-no-means implies that medicines must be persistently given. Different forms of heart-disease require particular modifications in their management; but there are certain principles which apply to all cases more or less, which I now proceed to discuss, calling attention, as occasion requires, to any special details of treatment which need to be commented upon in connection with individual affections.

1. *General management* is always of essential importance. A patient suffering from heart-disease should, if possible, give up any laborious employment, especially if this has evidently originated and is increasing the mischief. At the same time all forms of severe exercise should as a rule be prohibited, particularly those which involve sudden effort; and it is well to give explicit instructions against running or walking hurriedly, especially uphill, or straining at stool. In some instances complete rest should be enforced for a time, which often produces a marked improvement in the state of the heart. Many cases, however, are benefited by more or less active exercise, or at all events by being in the open air during some portion of the day, and carriage-driving is often useful, but undue fatigue or exhaustion must be avoided. Many patients are able to go about their usual avocations without any harm resulting therefrom, provided these are of a satisfactory character. The question of the amount of exercise to be permitted must be determined by the actual conditions present, and the effects which follow it; it may be stated generally that in proportion to the degree of dilatation or degeneration present is the capacity for physical exertion diminished. These lesions, if extensive, as well as aortic regurgitation, imperatively forbid any great effort.

In this connection it will be convenient to notice the plan of treating certain forms of cardiac disease by "graduated exercise," as advocated by Oertel, and now practised as the "mountain-cure" in various parts on the Continent. In carrying out this treatment the patient is made to walk up paths of gradual ascent, the amount of exercise being progressively increased, as the patient is able to bear it. Where such treatment is impracticable, a substitute for it has been introduced, in the form of certain "gymnastic exercises," carefully conducted. Treatment by special exercises and baths is carried out at Nauheim. Massage is also now

employed in cases of heart-disease; and it has been practised locally over the praecordial region. In properly-selected cases these modes of treatment may be undoubtedly efficacious, but they must always be very cautiously tried, and only carried out under the most thorough medical supervision, while for many forms of cardiac disease they are absolutely inadmissible. High mountainous regions are decidedly unfavourable as a rule for affections of the heart.

It is very important to guard against all causes of mental disturbance in cases of cardiac disease. Anxiety, worry, mental strain or excitement, in connection with pecuniary matters, business, public life, politics, or excessive study, as well as everything which is likely to rouse strong emotion, must be as far as possible avoided; and a proper amount of sleep should be habitually obtained. Warm clothing is requisite, but there must be no pressure or constriction about the chest or neck. Cold or tepid sponging of the skin is often useful, if it is well borne, but the question of baths must be determined by the circumstances of each individual case. All injurious habits which depress the nervous energy of the heart must be prohibited, such as abuse of alcohol, tobacco, tea or coffee, late hours, or venereal excesses; and close enquiry may be necessary with regard to various matters in order to detect such habits. Change of air to a moderately warm and rather bracing climate frequently proves beneficial in cases of chronic cardiac disease.

2. It is most needful to attend to the *diet* in every particular, and to the state of the *digestive organs*. When there is degeneration of the heart a very nutritious diet is indicated, which should contain abundant protein elements, if these can be digested, but everything indigestible must be avoided. Milk and cream are exceedingly useful articles of food in many cases, if they agree. With regard to alcoholic stimulants, no rule can be laid down, but a moderate amount is generally beneficial, and there are not infrequently symptomatic indications calling for considerable quantities. The bowels should be kept acting regularly and comfortably. Remedies for improving digestion, and relieving dyspeptic symptoms, especially flatulence, are frequently very serviceable.

3. If there is any *constitutional diathesis*, such as gout or syphilis, treatment directed against such a condition is often beneficial. One of the most essential matters in many cases of cardiac disease is to look to the state of the *blood*, and should there be any indication of anaemia, to give some suitable preparation of iron. Indeed, apart from the anaemic condition, this remedy is frequently of considerable value, especially in the form of tincture of perchloride of iron. Other *tonics* are useful in many cases, such as quinine and mineral acids, strychnine, or tincture of *nux vomica*.

4. The question of the administration of *medicinal agents* which act upon the heart and vessels demands intelligent consideration in every case of chronic cardiac disease. Often they are not required at all, and the routine use of digitalis or allied drugs in such cases, which is by-no-means an uncommon practice, cannot be too strongly condemned. On the other hand, different cardiac agents are in most instances called for at some period or other of their progress, and when judiciously used they are of the greatest service. Reference may be made to the therapeutic groups belonging to the circulatory system already considered; but it is impossible to lay down any definite rules for the employment of individual remedies, this being determined by the particular circumstances of each case. Digitalis being, however, a drug very commonly

administered in chronic cardiac cases, it is desirable to consider the main practical points bearing upon its therapeutic uses in such cases. A few of the other more important remedies may also be briefly alluded to.

(i.) In all cases in which digitalis is given, its effects should be carefully watched, especially as regards the cardiac action; the state of the pulse; the urine; and any dropsy which may be present. When the action of the heart is rapid, irregular, ineffective, or embarrassed, with weak pulse, the good results of its administration are seen in that it produces a calmative effect, and makes the organ act regularly and more vigorously, often relieving unpleasant local sensations; while the pulse is correspondingly improved. Intermittency has been considered by some as contra-indicating digitalis, but though more than usual caution is required under such circumstances, it may often be given with excellent results. If it appears to cause irregularity or intermittency, with feebleness of pulse, digitalis should be discontinued. The urine is often much increased in quantity by its use, but only if dropsy is present (Ringer). Should it become diminished, this is considered an indication for stopping the drug. The influence of digitalis on cardiac dropsy is often very striking, but not invariably. As signs which suggest the discontinuance of digitalis may be mentioned exaggeration of unpleasant sensations about the heart, if evidently due to the drug; tendency to faintness; noises in the head; and persistent vomiting. It has been supposed to have a cumulative action, and thus to give rise to sudden symptoms of poisoning, but many doubt whether there is any real foundation for this notion. Its ultimate effect as a poison is to arrest the heart in diastole, and death occurs by general circulatory failure.

(ii.) Digitalis is given chiefly in the form of the tincture or infusion. If the remedy is required to act rapidly upon the heart, and especially to diminish dropsy, the freshly-made infusion is the preferable preparation; but the tincture is very useful for continuous administration. The powder of the leaves is also recommended, when it is required to keep up the action for some time. If digitalis cannot be taken internally, external applications of poultices of the leaves or fomentations of the infusion may possibly act beneficially, especially in promoting the flow of urine and diminishing dropsy. Infusion of digitalis may be administered by enema, if the stomach will not bear the drug. Digitalin is also used, either internally or by subcutaneous injection, but it is necessary to ascertain what is really being administered under this name. It is generally advisable to begin with a small dose (5ss - 5i of infusion, or mVx of tincture three or four times daily), and gradually increase the quantity, as well as the frequency of administration, according to circumstances; sometimes, however, full doses are called for, at shorter intervals, especially in the treatment of cardiac dropsy. Digitalis is often advantageously combined with other medicines, especially preparations of iron, various *tonics*, and *dinretics*. It may be necessary to continue the medicine for a long period, even for years; but in many instances it is preferable to intermit its administration from time to time, and in the less advanced cases it can frequently be left off for considerable periods, being resumed when signs of disturbed cardiac action return. In very advanced cases attended with general dropsy digitalis may lose its power, and the dose has often to be increased considerably in order to produce any effect, which is a bad omen. In not a few cases it is important to keep the patient at rest during the administration of this drug.

(iii.) The cases in which digitalis is indicated or the reverse may now be noticed. It is not suitable as a rule where there is marked hypertrophy, unless this should be insufficiently compensatory, and its effects must then be closely watched. In proportion to the degree of dilatation, with consequent inefficiency of the cardiac action, the remedy generally becomes more and more valuable, much larger doses being also required and being well-borne. It is of conspicuous service in dealing with mitral disease and its consequences, especially where there is great irregularity; and Ringer believes that the drug causes the musculi papillares to act more regularly, thus checking regurgitation which depends upon their disturbed action. Many object to the use of digitalis when the aortic orifice is involved, especially if there is regurgitation. I quite agree with those, however, who do not look upon this condition as a contraindication, provided the state of the ventricle is such as to require the drug, having frequently seen marked benefit follow its administration, but aortic cases must be watched with more than usual care. The conditions associated with enlargement of the right heart and tricuspid regurgitation, directly resulting from obstruction to the pulmonary circulation, are not as a rule materially improved by digitalis, unless there is irregularity in the cardiac action, and the drug may even do harm; when these morbid changes follow mitral disease, however, much good may often be effected by its use.

Fatty degeneration of the heart is also looked upon by many as contraindicating the use of digitalis; but, with due precautions, it may be given with undoubted benefit when this condition is present, unless it be very advanced. Extensive arterial atheroma calls for more than usual caution in the employment of the drug. Attacks of bronchitis or pulmonary congestion associated with heart-disease are often much relieved by the use of digitalis, should there be palpitation, irregularity, or other signs of cardiac embarrassment and want of power.

Strophanthus, and its active principle strophanthin, are now much employed for the same purposes as digitalis. The tincture is given in doses of m iii-v, or more, but experience has proved that this is an uncertain preparation as regards its strength, which explains the different effects produced by the drug. It certainly is a very valuable *cardiac tonic* in some cases, and the advantages claimed for it over digitalis are that it is more powerful and rapid in its effects upon the heart; has less action upon the vessels; and does not cause so much gastric disturbance. Strophanthin is the more reliable preparation. Other allied drugs, such as caffeine, casca, convallaria, sparteine, or chloride of barium, might be suitable for some cases. Adonis vernalis and adonidine, coronilla varia and coronilline, and cactus grandiflora are among the cardiac tonics introduced within recent years. Nux vomica and strychnine are most valuable agents in many forms of chronic cardiac disease.

As regards other cardiac groups, these are as a rule only required for temporary purposes, to influence the action of the heart. Possibly aconite or some other *cardiac sedative* might be called for to diminish the action of a greatly hypertrophied heart.

5. Various *symptoms* requiring treatment often arise in the course of a case of chronic heart-disease. Those more immediately connected with the organ itself are pain and other unusual sensations; disturbed action; attacks of angina pectoris; and faintness or syncope. Abnormal sensations are often much relieved by a belladonna plaster, and many patients are never comfortable except when they wear one. Sometimes bella-

donna liniment is very useful. The treatment of the other symptoms has already been separately discussed. With regard to serious palpitation accompanied with dyspnoea, this is in some instances much quieted by the subcutaneous injection of a small quantity (gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{6}$) of morphine, which may in certain cases be usefully combined with atropine or digitalin. Aconite in minute doses may also prove of considerable benefit. Pulmonary symptoms must be treated by the usual remedies, if required, but they are often greatly relieved by digitalis. Needless cough should decidedly be subdued, though it is frequently necessary to promote expectoration. Cardiac dyspnoea is in many cases relieved by digitalis, or may require various *sedatives* and *antispasmodics*. Nitro-glycerine is said to give much relief in some instances, especially where the pulse-tension is high. Any obvious cause giving rise to this symptom, such as flatulence, should be got rid of at once, if possible; and it is generally diminished by propping the patient up in bed, thus removing any pressure on the diaphragm from below. In some cases the patient cannot remain in bed, and must then be allowed to sit propped up in a suitable chair, which may be fitted with a rest upon which he can lean forward. Haemoptysis occurring in heart-disease should not be rashly stopped, provided there is not sufficient loss of blood to injure the patient, as it may afford considerable relief.

6. *Local remedies* are often serviceable in the treatment of cardiac and pulmonary symptoms, such as dry-cupping, hot or turpentine fomentations, and sinapisms. In cases where the symptoms are severe, and where there is evidence that the right cavities of the heart are greatly over-distended, removal of blood may prove decidedly beneficial for the time, either by venesection (in exceptional instances even the external jugular vein being opened), local cupping, or the application of leeches; but it must be remembered that this measure tends to induce anaemia, and to impair the nutrition of the heart, and thus may ultimately do more harm than good, so that all the conditions present should be carefully considered in every instance before proceeding to carry it out.

Dropsy is a symptom which sooner or later supervenes in a large proportion of cases of heart-disease. For a fuller discussion of its treatment reference must be made to the chapter dealing with this symptom. Rest and position are of great service in treating this form of dropsy. Those *diuretics* are most beneficial which act through the heart and arteries, increasing the arterial tension, especially digitalis and strophanthus. Caffeine is also a valuable diuretic in these cases, and it is recommended to be given alone when the blood-pressure is fairly normal, but combined with digitalis when the pressure is low. Sparteine, asparagin, and calomel are also of service in suitable cases. Well-diluted gin, hollands, and whisky often prove useful as diuretics in cardiac dropsy. Vapour, hot-air, or even Turkish baths are beneficial as *diaphoretics* when they can be borne, and with due precautions they may be persevered in for some time. I have frequently found much benefit from the employment of local baths, by wrapping up the legs in warm fomentations along their whole extent, and covering them with mackintosh. It has also been recommended to excite the skin into activity by surrounding the patient with hot-water bottles while in bed. The use of *purgatives* is often attended with beneficial results, but this mode of treatment requires much care, on account of the depression which may thus be induced. Frequently it is not desirable to check diarrhoea in cases of cardiac dropsy, as it helps to unload the vessels; and it may be allowed to

continue, provided the patient is not evidently depressed from its excessive amount, or otherwise injured. *Tonics* and *nutrients* are of much benefit in some instances. With respect to operations for the removal of dropsy associated with heart-disease, if anasarca is considerable in amount, and does not soon yield to proper treatment, acupuncture or the use of Southey's trocharis should decidedly be resorted to; in certain cases remarkable benefit results from free scarification or incision. Of course due regard must be paid to position, cleanliness, and antiseptic precautions. Paracentesis of the chest or abdomen may also be required for dropsical accumulations. A time comes in many cases of cardiac disease when dropsy cannot be relieved except by operation, and when medicines administered for the purpose of promoting its absorption do more harm than good.

Much difficulty is frequently experienced with regard to *sleeplessness* or *disturbed sleep* in cardiac cases. Stimulants may then be useful; and spirit of chloroform or ether, compound spirit of ether, and spirit of camphor are also of service in some cases. Opiates, hydrate of chloral, bromides, and other remedies of this class are frequently dangerous. Paraldehyde, sulphonal, chloralamid, and urethane will be found useful as hypnotics in different instances. Not uncommonly it becomes necessary to have recourse to subcutaneous injections of morphine, which may be combined with atropine. Attention to posture is a great help in many instances, the patient being able to obtain more or less sleep when propped up in some suitable chair. Should consciousness become impaired, the bladder must be attended to, and regularly emptied.

7. It is necessary to attend to the state of the other principal organs of the body, when the heart is affected, and as far as possible to prevent them from becoming involved, especially the lungs, kidneys, liver, and digestive organs generally. Every source of cold should be particularly avoided and guarded against; and the slightest pulmonary complaint must be treated without delay. An occasional dose of some remedy which acts upon the liver and portal circulation is very useful in certain forms of cardiac disease. When any important organ becomes affected, it must be treated accordingly. Nausea and vomiting are sometimes obstinate and serious symptoms in chronic cardiac disease, and demand very careful treatment.

CHAPTER XXVI.

CONGENITAL MALPOSITIONS AND MALFORMATIONS OF THE HEART AND GREAT VESSELS.

Pathology.—The congenital abnormal conditions presented by the heart and great vessels result either from some error in development: or from endocarditis occurring during intra-uterine existence. Malpositions are necessarily due to the former cause: but with regard to the origin of certain of the malformations there has been much dispute, and it is probable that not uncommonly both causes have contributed to their production, a sclerotic change supervening upon a developmental error. Foetal endocarditis is far more common on the right side of the heart

than the left; but Rauchfuss maintains that this is due to the fact that the valves on this side are most frequently the seat of errors of development. Endocarditis occurring during foetal life almost always leads to chronic sclerotic changes, and is rarely of the warty variety.

General Summary.—Many of the congenital abnormalities affecting the heart and great vessels are of no clinical interest, some being incompatible with extra-uterine existence, or life being only possible for a very short period; while others do not lead to any obvious signs or symptoms. In a work of this kind, therefore, it will only be necessary to indicate the more prominent of these conditions, and especially to draw attention to such malformations as are likely to come under observation in actual patients.

1. **MALPOSITIONS.**—It is important to remember that the heart may be transposed to the right side of the chest—*dextrocardia*, either with or without general transposition of the viscera. The organ is either well-formed; or may be very imperfectly developed. As a rule there are corresponding abnormalities of the aorta and of the branches arising from its arch, but not always. Another kind of misplacement is named *mesocardia*, in which the heart occupies a more median position than usual. Several instances have been recorded in which, owing to a defect in the pericardium, the organ lies in the left pleural cavity, in contact with the lung. External malpositions of the heart—*ectopia cordis* or *ectocardia*—are of rare occurrence. In most instances this is due to more or less deficiency of the sternum, so that the organ comes to be quite superficial, lying in front of the chest—*Ectopia pectoralis*. In another form the heart passes through an opening in the diaphragm, and either occupies the abdominal cavity, or is placed in a sac in the praecordia—*Ectopia abdominalis*. In a third variety it is situated at the root of the neck—*Ectopia cephalica*. These external displacements are usually only compatible with life of very short duration, but in exceptional instances individuals in whom they have existed have lived to adult or even advanced age.

2. **MALFORMATIONS.**—Before describing the malformations connected with the heart and great vessels which are of importance from a clinical point of view, the following conditions may be mentioned:—*a.* Owing to extensive deficiencies of the septa, the heart may present three, or even but two chambers; or there may be scarcely any separation between either of the cavities. *b.* The great arteries may be transposed, the aorta coming from the right ventricle, the pulmonary artery from the left; or both spring either entirely or partially from the same ventricle; or very rarely there is but one arterial trunk, originating from a single ventricle, and then dividing into two branches. *c.* Numerical anomalies and fenestrations of the semilunar valves are not infrequent, which do not give rise to any disturbance. They are much less common in the auriculo-ventricular valves. *d.* A valvular slit in, or cribriform perforations of the membrane closing the foramen ovale, are often met with, but are of no clinical significance.

The more important individual malformations may be indicated as follows:—*a.* *Patent foramen ovale*, in extreme degrees there being not a trace of a closing membrane, so that there is a free communication between the two auricles. This lesion may exist alone. *b.* *Deficiency of the ventricular septum*. In most cases this is limited to its upper portion, the defect being either in the membranous area, which is known as the “ undefended space,” or just in front of this. *c.* Lesions of the

pulmonary orifice or artery, and of the *right conus arteriosus*. These are by far the most frequent and important of all the anomalies now under consideration. According to the late Dr. Peacock, in 86 per cent. of patients with congenital cardiac disease who live beyond the 12th year, the lesion is at the pulmonary orifice. The conditions to be chiefly recognized are usually stenosis at the orifice, with union of the valve-segments, and sometimes vegetations; occasionally complete obliteration or *atresia*; and narrowing or contraction of the *conus arteriosus*, which is present in many cases of pulmonary obstruction. In an interesting case which came under my observation many years ago, only the right branch of the pulmonary artery was developed, this being quite pervious, but the valves were extensively diseased and calcified, while the left lung was completely collapsed and disorganized. The bicuspid condition of the valves, in which two have united together, only occurred at the pulmonary orifice in two cases out of 21 observed by Osler. *d.* Lesions of the *aortic orifice or aorta*, and of the *left conus arteriosus*. These are of rare occurrence as congenital affections, but they are of a similar nature to the lesions associated with the pulmonary orifice. Osler found the bicuspid condition most frequent in the aortic valves, and regards it as an important congenital defect, owing to the liability of the combined valve to sclerotic changes. *e.* Lesions at the *auriculo-ventricular orifices*. There may be congenital obstruction or regurgitation at the tricuspid orifice, owing to stenosis, or to union of the valves, with sclerotic changes, and thickening and shortening of the *chordæ tendineæ*. Similar conditions may probably be congenital in connection with the mitral orifice. *f.* Persistent and *patent ductus arteriosus*.

Such being the individual congenital lesions of the heart and vessels, it is to be further noted that certain of them are often, or in some cases necessarily, associated together. Thus narrowing of the pulmonary orifice or right *conus arteriosus* is very frequently combined with defect in the ventricular septum. In *atresia* of this orifice there is necessarily a *patent foramen ovale*, with an imperfect ventricular septum, and a persistent *ductus arteriosus*. Stenosis of the *conus arteriosus* is also accompanied with an imperfect ventricular septum, usually a *patent foramen ovale*, and a *pervious ductus arteriosus*. If the *aortic orifice* is closed, the *foramen ovale* and *ductus arteriosus* also remain open, the blood being conducted by the latter channel from the pulmonary artery into the *aorta*.

Symptoms and Physical Signs.—As already intimated, certain congenital affections of the heart and vessels do not give rise to any clinical signs; while others are incompatible with extra-uterine life for any length of time. Even a *patent foramen ovale*, when existing alone, may be unattended with any disturbance whatever, having in several cases been only discovered at *post-mortem* examinations. Displacements of the heart are only likely to produce symptoms when the organ is at the same time defective; or when it lies outside the thoracic cavity.

As regards congenital malformations, their most frequent and pronounced clinical indication is *cyanosis*, which is said to occur in more than 90 per cent. of the cases, and the terms "*morbus cœruleus*" and "*blue-disease*" are often used as synonymous with congenital heart-disease. This condition, with its accompanying phenomena, has already been described. The colour of the surface may be blue, leaden, purple, livid, or of a claret hue, often mottled, and it is very marked in the lips, ears, fingers, and toes. It is intensified by any act which tends to increase the difficulty in carrying on the circulation, such as

erying or coughing. The cause of this discoloration in congenital heart-affections has been much discussed, but it is probably the combined result of intermixture of venous and arterial blood; general venous congestion or stagnation; and imperfect arterialization of the blood, owing to diminished respiratory function. The lesions most frequently associated with the cyanotic state are closure of the pulmonary artery, combined with patent foramen ovale, and imperfection of the ventricular septum. Clubbing of the fingers and toes becomes in many cases very marked. Fits of palpitation are common, being often attended with extreme irregularity, and a disposition to syncope or coma. Dyspnoea, cough, and other pulmonary symptoms are also of frequent occurrence. It must be noted, however, that cases of congenital heart-disease may be met with, easily recognized by physical examination, in which there are no symptoms whatever, at any rate for some time.

The *physical signs* in congenital heart-conditions vary considerably, and it is impossible to do more here than to draw attention to a few general points. The possibility of finding the heart on the right, instead of the left side of the chest, from congenital displacement, must always be borne in mind in physical examination. Any external protrusion is at once evident. In the case of malformations, a murmur or murmurs are usually present, generally systolic, but differing according to the orifices affected, and to the other lesions with which they may be associated. A pulmonary systolic thrill and murmur are very common. I have once met with a double murmur, but usually the pulmonary second sound is weak. Sometimes the heart-sounds are normal, even in complicated congenital lesions. Loud murmurs heard over the auricles or extensively over the praecordial region, without thrill, are said to be due to defects of the septum. A loud systolic murmur over the upper third of the sternum, without evidence of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, is believed to be associated with a previous ductus arteriosus. Hypertrophy and dilatation give rise to their own special signs, and their localization may help the diagnosis of congenital lesions.

Course and Duration.—In a majority of cases of congenital heart-disease cyanosis appears early, often within the first week of life; in other instances, however, symptoms do not declare themselves for a considerable time. Their course and duration vary greatly, and even in pronounced cases patients sometimes linger on for a long time, apparently becoming accustomed to their semi-asphyxiated condition. Ultimately indications of failing compensation may arise; or pulmonary or other complications set in. When cases are watched for a prolonged period, remarkable changes in, and new developments of physical signs are sometimes observed. Death is never sudden, and is usually a very gradual termination, unless some acute complication should hasten the fatal issue.

Treatment.—All that can be done in the class of cases now under consideration is to attend carefully to the general health, and to hygienic conditions; to promote bodily warmth and activity of the circulation, by suitable clothing, with flannel next the skin, baths with friction, and such exercise as circumstances permit; to give plenty of good food, especially of a hydro-carbonaceous kind, with a small quantity of some alcoholic stimulant; and to treat any condition or symptom calling for special attention. Iron and other *tonics*, with cod-liver oil, are often beneficial. A dry warm climate is desirable; and every source of cold must be avoided.

CHAPTER XXVII.

DISEASES OF THE ARTERIES.

1. ACUTE ARTERITIS has been described as occurring in connection with the aorta—*aortitis*, in the course of blood-diseases; and characterized anatomically by injection of the *vasa vasorum*, thickening and softening of the coats of the artery, with cloudiness and loss of polish of the inner surface, which also becomes rough from fibrinous deposit. This vessel may be specially involved in cases of malignant endocarditis. In a case reported by the late Dr. Moxon, inflammation of the first part of the aorta resulted from the impact of a hard, freely-moving vegetation on one of the segments of the aortic valve. He also called attention to a condition which he termed *inflammatory mollities*, and which he attributed to a peculiar general state, where there is softening and swelling of the arterial coats in circumscribed spots, which may bulge out and form aneurisms. Local acute arterial inflammation may follow the lodgment of an embolus.

Symptoms.—The symptoms which have been attributed to aortitis are pain over the vessel, sometimes extreme, accompanied with much tenderness or superficial hyperæsthesia; a sense of heat and throbbing; severe constitutional disturbance and restlessness; sometimes a tendency to syncope; and dread of death. The *physical signs* are objective pulsation; and occasionally a thrill and murmur synchronous with the cardiac systole. In the smaller arteries inflammation may lead to complete plugging and obstruction of the local circulation, with the usual consequences.

2. ATHEROMA.—ENDARTERITIS DEFORMANS.—This is the most frequent chronic morbid change affecting the arteries, and its effects are of great importance both pathologically and clinically.

Pathology and Aetiology.—There are differences of opinion as to the exact nature of atheroma, and its seat of origin in the arterial coats. It is usually regarded as a chronic parenchymatous inflammation, commencing in the inner coat, ultimately leading to degenerative changes, and involving the other coats. Some think that it is often at the outset a mere hyperplasia of the tunica intima. According to others the earliest changes consist in mesarteritis and periarteritis. Thoma maintains that the primary lesion is a weakening or atrophy of the middle coat.

The circumstances under which atheroma occurs may be thus indicated:—1. As a senile change, being the natural result of the wear and tear to which the arteries have been necessarily exposed, and occurring in different subjects or families at different ages. 2. As a result of repeated or prolonged strain upon the arteries, from excessive muscular work, athletic or gymnastic exercises, or cardiac hypertrophy. 3. From over-eating and abuse of alcohol. 4. In connection with gout, rheumatism, syphilis, or lead-poisoning. In cases of chronic Bright's disease, Undoubtedly over-strain acting upon the vessels is the great cause of

atheroma, but space will not permit of any discussion here of points of controversy relating to the pathology of this condition. Most of the other causes mentioned are regarded by many authorities as merely predisposing; and some question the effect of syphilis. It may be noted that atheroma of the pulmonary artery may result from hypertrophy of the right ventricle; and that a similar condition of the renal arteries is often associated with the cirrhotic form of Bright's disease.

Anatomical Characters.—As already stated, the atheromatous process is usually described as commencing in the tunica intima, the deeper layers of which become infiltrated with new cells, softened, relaxed, and thickened. These are mainly derived from proliferation; but some are round cells, which have escaped from the vasa vasorum. As the result of these changes thickened patches or more extensive tracts are observed over the inner surface of the artery, and two kinds of patches are described, supposed by some to be merely stages of the same process, namely, those which are soft, jelly-like, moist, and pale-reddish; and firmer, semi-cartilaginous or horny, raised patches, translucent, but more opaque in the deeper layers. The endothelium is unaffected, and can be stripped off. More or less fatty degeneration sets in; which in some cases takes place very speedily, and a yellowish, soft, pultaceous substance is formed, like a greasy paste, giving rise to a kind of pseudo-abscess or *atheromatous pustule*, which may ultimately burst into the artery; at first merely a small hole is formed in the inner coat, through which the soft contents escape, being then carried away by the blood, but finally an *atheromatous ulcer* is formed, varying in size and depth, sometimes extending down to or even involving the middle coat. In other cases, where the degenerative process is slower, the substance is firmer and more caseous; and in others more chronic still, partial organization takes place, leading to fibroid thickening, but this is always accompanied with some degree of fatty degeneration. Ultimately calcification is very likely to happen; hard, bony-looking, depressed plates being thus originated, sometimes of considerable extent; or the smaller arteries being involved in their entire circumference, so that they are surrounded by calcified rings, or converted into rigid tubes. The calcareous plates are at first covered by the superficial portion of the lining membrane, but this is liable to give way, leaving a rough surface exposed, upon which fibrin is then very apt to be deposited, or sharp spicula may project into the vessel.

In some instances the atheromatous changes are limited to the intima; but frequently the other coats become implicated as well, and, as already intimated, some pathologists are of opinion that the change begins here. The middle coat becomes the seat of round-celled infiltration, thickening, induration, fatty degeneration, and calcification; the external coat may also be thickened by the formation of connective tissue.

The vessels affected, as well as the extent over which the atheromatous changes are observed, vary widely, and different stages of the process are usually seen in the same case. They are most marked in those parts of the vessels which are subject to the greatest strain, especially the ascending and transverse portions of the arch of the aorta, and around the openings of arteries which come off laterally, such as the intercostals. As a rule atheroma is more advanced in the aorta than in the arteries generally, but not always. This vessel may be extensively involved, while the smaller arteries continue healthy; but sometimes the coronary, cerebral, temporal, and other arteries are affected,

while the great vessels escape. In other cases all the arteries are more or less implicated in the atheromatous change.

3. PERIARTERITIS.—In some instances the outer coat of the arteries is specially the seat of a chronic inflammatory process. It may be involved by extension from adjoining inflammation, leading to thickening and induration of the affected artery. This condition is of most importance in relation to the cerebral vessels, as described by Charcot and Bouchard, the inflammatory process beginning in the perivascular sheath, then gradually extending to all the coats of the vessels, and giving rise to miliary aneurisms, which these authorities have considered to be the common cause of cerebral haemorrhage.

4. FATTY DEGENERATION.—Primary fatty degeneration of arteries is an entirely distinct process from that constituting atheroma. It begins generally in the superficial layer of the inner coat, but may extend into the middle coat, or may even implicate this originally. The epithelial and connective-tissue cells of the inner coat are directly changed, becoming more or less filled with fat-granules, while in the middle coat the muscular fibres undergo degeneration. This degeneration is usually characterized by small, scattered, irregular, opaque, yellowish-white patches, which are quite superficial, only very slightly projecting, and easily removed, leaving normal tissue underneath. As the deeper layers become involved, the patches appear more opaque and irregular, and are less easily stripped off. In course of time complete destruction and softening may take place, nothing but fat-granules remaining, which are carried away by the blood-current, leaving irregular superficial erosions. Finally calcification may be set up. The capillaries are also liable to become the seat of this fatty degeneration.

5. CALCIFICATION.—As already stated, calcification frequently follows atheroma and fatty degeneration, but it may also take place primarily in the coats of the arteries, especially in the middle coat of the middle-sized arteries, where muscular fibres are abundant.

6. CHANGES IN RENAL DISEASE.—In certain forms of chronic renal disease the arterioles become contracted and thickened. According to one view, the thickening is due to hypertrophy, especially of the muscular coat; according to another it results from a hyalin-fibroid change, chiefly involving the external coat. The capillaries are also similarly affected, the condition being generally known as *arterio-capillary fibrosis*. Here may also be mentioned the condition termed *endarteritis obliterans*, in which the channel of the small vessels is narrowed by thickening of the inner coat. It is most commonly noticed in connection with the cirrhotic kidney. This subject will be more fully discussed in relation to Bright's disease.

7. ATROPHY.—Occasionally a large artery, especially the aorta, undergoes simple atrophy, the walls becoming gradually thinned.

8. ALTERATIONS IN CALIBRE.—An artery may be the seat of *dilatation* in its entire circumference; or, on the other hand, of *contraction* or *coccygation*, which may end in its complete closure.

9. ALBUMINOID DEGENERATION.—This change commences in the small arteries of certain organs, especially the spleen and kidneys. It does not affect the larger arteries.

10. HYALINE DEGENERATION.—This is said to occur either in the form of diffuse thickening, leading to ultimate occlusion; or as separate masses, lying chiefly between the inner and middle coats.

11. SYPHILITIC DISEASE.—Changes of a syphilitic nature have been described in the arteries by Heubner, Davidson, Hughlings Jackson,

Wilks, and others; but the existence of specific lesions of this nature is denied by other pathologists. It is stated that the cerebral arteries present gummatous infiltration in some cases, giving rise to nodose swelling, with great thickening of the coats, and narrowing of their calibre, which may lead to thrombosis and cerebral softening.

12. ARTERIAL CHANGES IN INSANITY.—These have been specially described as affecting the cerebral arteries, but they seem to be similar to other chronic degenerative changes affecting arteries.

13. ANEURISM.—This is one of the most important morbid conditions affecting arteries. Aneurisms, however, come more especially under the care of the surgeon, and therefore for a full consideration of the subject reference must be made to surgical treatises. Small miliary aneurisms are important in medical practice, especially in connection with the cerebral and pulmonary arteries. With regard to the larger aneurisms, those situated within the thorax and abdomen will be dealt with in this work, more particularly aortic aneurisms.

Symptoms and Effects.—The consequences of the chief chronic changes in the arteries just described are very similar, and they are of considerable importance, often giving rise to prominent symptoms connected with various organs, and leading to serious structural lesions. Here it need only be indicated in a general way what these effects are, and they may be thus stated:—1. The elasticity of the arteries is more or less diminished, until finally it is completely lost; their resistance is increased; and they are ultimately converted into rigid tubes, at the same time their calibre being diminished. Hence an obstacle to the circulation arises, which leads to hypertrophy of the left ventricle, this, however, tending to be more or less speedily followed by fatty degeneration. The circulation in the different organs is impeded, and among the most frequent symptoms resulting therefrom are those indicating disturbances of the cerebral circulation, especially giddiness and disorders of the special senses. Owing to the impairment of circulation and consequently of nutrition, structures are very liable to undergo wasting or degeneration, and to become inflamed from slight causes. 2. When the vessels are roughened on their inner surface, fibrin is often deposited from the blood, which may ultimately cause their complete obstruction. As a consequence softening or death of a part may ensue, which is well-exemplified by chronic softening of the brain, and by dry gangrene of the lower extremities. 3. A limited portion of an artery, especially after the formation of an atheromatous ulcer, is very prone to yield gradually, an aneurism being thus originated. 4. The affected vessels become brittle, particularly when calcified, and thus they are more easily ruptured, giving rise to cerebral apoplexy most commonly; miliary aneurisms are also very liable to rupture. 5. Fragments of the degenerate structures or of fibrinous deposits may be detached, carried away by the blood-current, and lodged in vessels of smaller size as emboli. 6. *Physical examination* of the arteries reveals that they are visible, tortuous, and locomotive; and that they feel more or less hard, full, incompressible, rigid, or cord-like. A sphygmographic tracing is characterized by the large dimensions of its curves; the approximation of the secondary waves to the summit; and the great size of the first secondary wave as compared with the aortic, the latter being much diminished. Murmurs may be audible over diseased arteries.

When the arch of the aorta is extensively atheromatous, and especially calcified, an *impulse* may be observed to the right of or above the sternum; occasionally a *systolic thrill* is felt, which may be very pronounced; while a rough *systolic murmur* is sometimes heard along the course of the vessel, or a cardiac basic murmur may be intensified in this direction. The artery is often somewhat dilated at the same time, and this will increase the signs just mentioned, and render them more diffuse.

Diagnosis.—Degeneration of arteries should always be looked for in persons at all advanced in years, and it should be kept in mind as a probable cause of many symptoms of which they complain: the condition may, however, be met with in persons who are comparatively or actually young. Examination of the vessels is the only satisfactory means of diagnosis, and if the arteries generally are affected, probably the aorta will be in the same state. The temporal, brachial, and radial are the arteries most readily and conveniently investigated. The aorta may, however, exhibit signs of degeneration while these vessels are apparently quite healthy. Some writers attach considerable importance to the sphygmographic tracing as revealing an early stage of atheroma.

Prognosis.—This merely involves a knowledge of the dangers which accompany arterial degeneration, so that they may be guarded against. Many persons live to a good old age whose vessels are much diseased, but at any moment there is a liability to dangerous lesions, or to sudden death in certain cases. The earlier the degeneration sets in, the more serious is the prognosis.

Treatment.—All that can be done is to avoid everything which is likely to throw a strain upon the diseased vessels; and to maintain the nutritive activity of the system as much as possible, by means of good diet, *tonics*, and cod-liver oil, the last being often decidedly useful. Any constitutional diathesis must be attended to; and all injurious habits checked. The treatment applicable to particular organs, when their vessels are the seat of degeneration, is dealt with in other parts of this work; as well as that of certain of its effects.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

INTERNAL ANEURISMS.

In the present chapter attention will be directed to aneurism as it occurs in the thoracic and abdominal cavities, but more especially when the condition is associated with the aorta. In the first instance there are certain points to be noticed which apply to aneurism in both regions.

Etiology.—Aneurism of the aorta almost always results primarily from some morbid change in the walls of the artery, especially chronic endarteritis and the atheromatous changes connected therewith, but sometimes mere fatty degeneration or simple atrophy. Many cases appear to be due to circumscribed weakness of the internal and middle coats; and there is often laceration of the middle coat, or occa-

sionally even of the intima. The determining cause of the aneurism is generally some more or less violent exertion, which throws a sudden or frequent strain upon the weak portion of the vessel. It may be developed in this manner either suddenly or more or less gradually.

Aneurism is much more common among males, especially those who are strong and muscular, and whose occupation entails more or less violent efforts; and about the middle period of life. It is comparatively extremely frequent in the army, and this has been attributed to the combined effects of great exertion; tight clothing, which compresses the neck and chest, and obstructs the circulation; and heavy accoutrements. The diseases which predispose to changes in the vessels, such as syphilis, gout, and rheumatism, may be regarded as *predisposing causes* of aneurism, especially syphilis. It has been stated to be occasionally hereditary, but this is probably only true as regards changes in the vessels.

Anatomical Characters.—The following varieties of aortic aneurism are met with:—1. There may be a more or less extensive *general dilatation*, involving the whole circumference, and either cylindrical, fusiform, or, very rarely, globular in shape. 2. *Sacculated aneurism* is the most important variety, in which there is a lateral bulging or sacculation of a portion of the circumference of the artery, the coats being either entire—*simple or true aneurism*; or more or less of the inner and middle coats being destroyed—*compound or false aneurism*. Sometimes all the coats give way, and the aneurism is bounded only by surrounding structures—*diffuse aneurism*. 3. In extremely exceptional cases a *dissecting aneurism* is observed, the blood finding its way between the coats of the vessel. 4. A *varicose aneurism* rarely forms, in consequence of an aneurism of the aortic arch opening into the superior vena cava. The ascending portion of the arch is the most frequent seat of aneurism, especially on its convex side, where the aorta is most exposed to strain; the condition may exist, however, on any part of this vessel, even between the pillars of the diaphragm. Great varieties are presented as to size, exact shape, contents, and other characters.

Thoracic and abdominal aneurisms will be further dealt with separately.

I. THORACIC ANEURISM.

The aorta is by far the most common seat of aneurism within the chest, but the innominate, the commencement of the left carotid or subclavian, or the pulmonary artery may be severally involved.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of aneurism of the thoracic aorta are far from uniform, being chiefly those due to pressure on surrounding structures, and therefore influenced by its situation, size, form, rapidity of formation, and direction of growth; while they are also liable to alter considerably during its progress. Moreover, they are by no means in proportion to the external physical evidences of the disease; indeed, the reverse is often true, because the more an aneurism tends in an inward direction, the more severe the symptoms are likely to be, and they may be extremely aggravated when it is impossible to detect any external physical sign. In some cases there are no symptoms or physical signs from first to last. Abnormal local sensations are usually present, such as pain, varying in characters and intensity, heat, fulness and weight, or throbbing; while tenderness or cutaneous hyperesthesia is common. If the aneurism passes backwards, the pain may be deep

and gnawing or grinding, owing to destruction of the vertebrae. *Pressure-symptoms*, which have been fully described in a previous chapter, are of special importance in relation to thoracic aneurism, and the most frequent are those indicating interference with the main air-tube, which in many cases first attract attention. Enlargement of veins is also common. The general system often suffers markedly, even when there are no particular local symptoms or signs; and I have sometimes observed a very striking appearance of illness, combined with anaemia or a sallow cachectic look, and an anxious, distressed, or irritable expression, but without any particular emaciation, which has led me to suspect internal aneurism when there was no evident cause to account for these phenomena. The posture assumed by patients suffering from thoracic aneurism depends upon its situation and other circumstances; in certain cases they cannot lie down, but keep the head raised, and some patients have a tendency towards a prone position, so as to take off pressure from the structures behind; bending the head forward and then throwing it back suddenly, has been regarded as a movement suspicious of aneurism. The digestive organs frequently suffer. Head-symptoms are also common, with disturbed sleep. The urine is not altered. Aortic aneurism may give rise to embolism in some distant organ, especially in the brain.

Physical Signs.—The following include the physical signs which are to be looked for as indicative of aneurism, but not uncommonly they are very obscure:—1. *Local bulging* may be detected, its site depending upon the part of the aorta involved. If the arch is affected in its ascending or transverse portion, the prominence will be in front, opposite or to the right or left of the upper part of the sternum, the exact situation and extent differing much in different cases. Aneurism of the remainder of the arch, or of the descending aorta, may give rise to bulging posteriorly, generally to the left of the spine, occasionally to the right, and it is sometimes very extensive. In shape the swelling tends to be rounded or conical; and it involves the ribs and spaces equally. 2. *Pulsation* over any swelling, or even without any obvious enlargement, is an important sign of aneurism, this being usually synchronous with the ventricular systole, but sometimes double, or it may be mainly diastolic, a distinct "diastolic shock" being felt. The systolic pulsation is usually expansile, heaving, and throbbing; sometimes it is markedly undulatory. In exceptional instances a thrill is felt. It is important to observe that the stethoscope or direct auscultation may aid materially in recognizing slight pulsation, when it cannot be detected by the fingers. The cardiograph may be employed to record the pulsations of an aneurism. 3. *Tracheal tugging* may be a useful sign of deep-seated aneurism, as originally described by Surgeon-Major Porter. The patient is made to sit up, with the head inclined forward. The cricoid cartilage is then grasped between the index-finger and thumb, and the trachea put upon the stretch by upward pressure. Should an aneurism be attached to it, or adherent in its immediate vicinity, a well-marked and characteristic tugging sensation is felt. 4. *Dulness* corresponding to any bulging may be elicited over an aneurism, or frequently extending beyond this to a variable degree, and across the middle line, or being observed when there is no actual prominence; it is of a dull, dead, putty-like character; and is accompanied with increased resistance. When the aneurism presses firmly against the sternum, the dulness may extend upwards and downwards along this bone even beyond the actual site

of the tumour. 5. Auscultation gives extremely variable results. There may be nothing whatever heard, or only indefinite sounds. The most important auscultatory sign of aortic aneurism, however, is the presence of a rough murmur, usually systolic, occasionally double, or very exceptionally only diastolic. In some cases a remarkably accentuated and ringing diastolic sound is noticed over the aneurism. Occasionally a systolic murmur is heard over the trachea, or even at the patient's mouth, when opened (Drummond). 6. There may be signs of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, but in most cases in which the heart is involved, this organ is merely displaced downwards and to the left. If the aneurism lies behind, the heart may be so pushed forward that the chief impulse is observed at the base. It must be remembered that cardiac disease may be present along with aneurism, and the aortic valves are often affected. 7. Examination of the respiratory organs might reveal functional disorder of, or organic mischief in the larynx; displacement or compression of, or interference with the entrance of air into one or both lungs; consolidation or destructive changes in these organs; bronchial catarrh on one or both sides; or bronchiectasis. 8. The radial pulse often affords important signs of aortic aneurism. The chief characters are that the pulse is delayed on one side; or that it differs in fulness and force on the two sides, being sometimes completely obliterated in one radial artery. The sphygmograph reveals even a slight difference in the two pulses, but this is very marked in some cases. The dicroticism is often influenced also, and when the descending aorta is involved, this may be much increased, especially on the right side. An aneurism is capable of influencing the pulse, not only by its own direct effect upon the circulation, but also by obstructing the main arteries, as a result of pressure, closure of their orifices by a clot, or torsion. A large aneurism of the descending aorta may lead to complete absence of any pulsation in the abdominal aorta, femoral arteries, and peripheral arteries of the legs (Osler).

Modes of Termination.—Death is the usual termination of aneurism of the thoracic aorta, and it may be immediately due to:—1. Gradual asthenia. 2. Effects of pressure. 3. Rupture of the aneurism and consequent haemorrhage—which may take place into the pericardium, heart, neighbouring great vessels, pleura, mediastinum, trachea or either bronchus, lung, oesophagus, or spinal canal; or externally. 4. Independent affections, either acute or chronic. Occasionally a temporary or even permanent cure is brought about by treatment.

Diagnosis.—In relation to the diagnosis of thoracic aneurism, it is not only necessary to determine the presence of this morbid condition, but also its seat, variety, size, and other characters as accurately as possible. In some cases the signs are so evident that there is but little difficulty in making out all that is required; but the following classes of difficulties are principally met with, namely:—1. An aneurism may be absolutely latent until some serious event occurs, such as internal rupture, with fatal haemorrhage. This is particularly liable to happen in the case of aneurisms situated at the commencement of the ascending portion of the arch, just above the sinuses of Valsalva, which are very prone to burst into the pericardium, causing instant death. 2. There may only be symptoms indicating more or less pressure within the thorax; or sometimes merely localized pain, or obscure and ill-defined sensations, with constitutional disturbance, but no external signs. 3. An

aneurism may give rise to the physical signs of a tumour, but without any pulsation or auscultatory phenomena. 4. Other pulsating prominences are occasionally observed besides aneurism, the pulsation being usually transmitted from the heart or aorta.

The chief morbid conditions which aortic aneurism in the thorax is likely to simulate, or *vice versa*, are a solid mediastinal tumour or abscess, the latter occasionally presenting pulsation; pulsating empyema; phthisical consolidation of the left apex, with subclavian or pulmonary murmur; swelling over the sternum from chronic periostitis or abscess; a tumour or suppuration in other parts of the chest-wall; pericardial effusion; innominate aneurism; or cardiac disease. Among very rare conditions may be mentioned coarctation of the aorta; varicose aneurism; and aneurism of the pulmonary artery.

The chief points to be taken into account in making a diagnosis are as follows:—1. The age and sex of the patient; previous history, especially with regard to occupation and former diseases; family history; and the account given of the origin and progress of the complaint. 2. The presence or absence, and exact nature of pressure-signs. 3. The other symptoms observed, particularly noting whether there is general dropsy or albuminuria, which point to cardiac disease. 4. The exact situation of any prominence. 5. The precise site, extent, rhythm, and characters of any pulsation, especially noting whether it is heaving and expansile, double, or attended with thrill; and if it is distinct from the cardiac pulsation. 6. The seat and extent of dulness, particularly observing whether it is in the course of the aorta, or crosses the middle line; and if it corresponds mainly to any evident pulsation. 7. The presence and characters of murmurs, care being taken, however, not to mistake these for conducted cardiac murmurs; or a loud and ringing diastolic sound. 8. The characters and differences of the radial pulse, especially as revealed by the sphygmograph; and also the effects of pressure upon the great arteries in the neck. 9. Tracheal tuggering may help in the diagnosis of an obscure aneurism; and the discovery on examination of the larynx of paralysis of one abductor may also draw attention to the presence of an unsuspected tumour of this kind.

The distinctions between aneurism and a *solid tumour* will be hereafter considered. The chief difficulties arising in the diagnosis of aneurism from *cardiac diseases* are, that aneurism may be simulated by enlargement of this organ accompanying valvular disease, especially if the aorta is atheromatous; or that an aneurism with very thin walls and fluid contents, pushing the heart downwards and to the left, may be mistaken for mere cardiac enlargement. The principal circumstances in favour of cardiac disease are there being but one centre of impulse; the physical signs corresponding to the region of the heart, or being most marked over this region; the absence of pressure-symptoms; and the presence of *general dropsy or albuminuria*.

As regards the *form* of an aneurism, the signs in favour of general fusiform dilatation are more diffuse pulsation, both above and below the clavicle; well-marked thrill; rough, prolonged, rasping, whizzing, or whirring murmur, which is systolic, audible along the arch, or louder there than over the aortic orifice; and absence or slight degree of pressure-signs.

The *part of the vessel affected* must be determined by the locality of the physical signs, and the exact pressure-phenomena observed; com-

parison of the radial pulses, especially as revealed by the sphygmograph, may afford some aid.

In distinguishing *innominate aneurism* from *aortic* the following considerations have weight:—The physical signs correspond in situation to the innominate artery; the prominence appears early, and it may displace the clavicle; it is said that dysphagia and dyspnoea from the pressure of an innominate aneurism are rare, but I have known both these symptoms extremely severe; there are often signs of pressure on the nerves of the right brachial plexus, and on the right bronchus; the right radial pulse is always modified; and pressure on the carotid and subclavian arteries on the same side diminishes the pulsation.

There is one special event which may be mentioned in relation to diagnosis, as its occurrence would be likely to prove very puzzling, namely, the opening of an aneurism of the arch of the aorta into the superior vena cava, and the formation of a varicose aneurism. This is indicated by the sudden or rapid development of cyanosis of the face and upper part of the body, and the arms, with œdema, and great enlargement of veins; a marked thrill; and a loud, rushing or whizzing murmur, continuous, but intensified during the cardiac systole. In a case of this kind which came under my observation, the patient lived for some weeks.

Treatment.—The first object in the treatment of an aneurism should be to endeavour to bring about its cure, by promoting gradual coagulation within the sac, but such a result can only be aimed at in connection with the sacculated variety of aortic aneurism. Failing this, it is necessary to protect the aneurism; to retard its development as much as possible; and to treat the symptoms and complications which so frequently arise.

1. If it is proposed in any case to attempt to cure a thoracic aneurism, it is absolutely essential to keep the patient *at rest in the recumbent posture* for a considerable time, and to avoid every source of physical or mental disturbance. Formerly it was the custom to have recourse to starvation and repeated venesection; but at the present day this has been with good reason modified into a *careful regulation of diet*, a definite quantity of solids and liquids being administered at stated intervals, according to Mr. Tufnell's method. The exact amounts allowed must depend upon each individual case, but everything should be strictly weighed or measured, the object being to support life with as little food and drink as possible, without inducing nervous irritability. Excess of fluid must be particularly avoided, and all stimulants are to be prohibited. In some instances it may be advisable to remove a little blood from time to time, but it is very important to avoid inducing an anaemic condition.

The objects of this attention to rest and diet are to calm the circulation as much as possible, and to render the condition of the blood more favourable for coagulation, and undoubtedly some cases do improve remarkably under this treatment alone. *Medicinal agents*, however, may be employed with benefit at the same time, namely, those which subdue or regulate the heart's action, such as digitalis, aconite, or belladonna; and those which contract the arteries or promote coagulation of the blood, principally gallic or tannic acid, tincture of perchloride of iron, acetate of lead, ergot, and iodide of potassium. The use of iodide of potassium has been particularly advocated by Sir William Roberts and Dr. George Balfour, when given in large doses, even as much as from 15 to 30 grains thrice daily, and continued for a long period. I have found this drug of

decided value in some cases. Subcutaneous injection of ergotin has also been recommended in the treatment of aortic aneurism.

2. It must suffice merely to mention certain operative procedures which have been resorted to with the view of curing aortic aneurism. These are :—*a.* Injection of perchloride of iron, ergotin, or other coagulating agents into the sac. *b.* Manipulation of the sac externally. *c.* Galvano-puncture or electrolysis. *d.* Introduction through a cannula of a quantity of fine iron or steel wire, horsehair, or carbolized catgut. *e.* A combination of the introduction of wire with galvano-puncture. *f.* Ligature of the right carotid and subclavian arteries.

3. It would occupy too much space even to mention the various *symptoms* and *complications* which may require attention in the progress of a case of thoracic aneurism, and only a few practical points can be alluded to here. It is always well to keep the aneurism covered with cotton-wool, and should it be decidedly prominent, some kind of protecting shield might be worn. For relieving pain and procuring sleep the chief internal remedies are opium, morphine, hyoscyamus, extract of lettuce, hydrate of chloral, bromide of potassium, and conium in full doses. Subcutaneous injection of morphine is most valuable in severe cases. External applications are frequently useful, such as belladonna or opium plaster; belladonna or aconite liniment; cold poultices of linseed-meal and vinegar, conium, digitalis, or oak-bark (Walshe); ice, ether-spray, or chloroform cautiously applied; and counter-irritation by means of flying blisters or iodine, which sometimes gives marked relief. Galvano-puncture may greatly alleviate pain. If there are severe laryngeal symptoms, evidently due to interference with the recurrent nerve, it is decidedly justifiable to perform tracheotomy, and allow the patient to wear a tube in the trachea permanently. It has been suggested that in certain cases the sterno-clavicular ligaments might be divided with advantage, in order to allow displacement of the clavicle forwards, and thus take off pressure from behind.

II. ABDOMINAL ANEURISM.

The most important form of abdominal aneurism which comes under the notice of the physician is that which is connected with the aorta, but an aneurism may be found on the cæliac axis or one of its branches, especially the hepatic; on either of the mesenteric or renal arteries; or on one of the iliac vessels.

Symptoms and Signs.—In many cases the only clinical indications of abdominal aneurism consist in the detection of a *tumour*, presenting the usual *physical characters* of this condition. Often, however, there are in addition signs of pressure on surrounding structures; local morbid sensations; and evidences of serious constitutional disturbance. In some instances such phenomena are alone present, there being no physical signs of an aneurism, or only such as are very obscure. The *physical characters* of an abdominal aneurismal tumour are as follows:—1. It is usually seated in some part of the course of the aorta, but frequently projects more to one side than the other, especially towards the left. Of course an aneurism may occupy other regions, corresponding to the particular vessel affected. 2. As a rule the shape is more or less rounded: the surface is smooth; and the tumour yields somewhat on being compressed. 3. Almost always the aneurism is quite fixed and immovable, being unaffected by respiratory movements, though if it is very large it

may interfere with these movements. 4. One of the most important signs is the presence of more or less *pulsation*, synchronous with the cardiac systole usually, but sometimes also diastolic; distinctly expansile; tending laterally as well as forwards, and not uncommonly more towards one side than the other; and occasionally attended with a thrill. 5. Percussion reveals *dulness*, if the aneurism is of sufficient size, corresponding to the extent of the tumour; with a sense of much *resistance*. 6. In many cases there is a *systolic murmur*, which is sometimes very loud and harsh, but it is by no means always heard, or may be very slight, or more like an arterial sound; and occasionally a murmur is seated beyond the aneurism. There is never any diastolic bruit. The murmur is often influenced considerably by posture and pressure.

There are a few points of practical importance which demand notice. 1. The signs of an abdominal aneurism may be most evident in the back, and it is always essential to make careful examination from this aspect should the disease be suspected. Sometimes there is no obvious sign, except a murmur in this region. 2. There is no relation between the size of an aneurism and the degree of pulsation, or the loudness of a murmur. 3. Occasionally the tumour is movable; and not uncommonly both pulsation and murmur are considerably influenced by posture, so that on this account it is necessary to examine the patient in different positions. It is important to observe that the impulse does not disappear when the patient is placed in a kneeling attitude, supported by the hands. 4. The physical signs may change considerably during the progress of any particular case of abdominal aneurism.

The *pressure-symptoms* will vary with the situation of the aneurism. Among the most common are neuralgic pains, sometimes extremely severe, and shooting in different directions, originating in pressure upon nerves, such pressure also occasionally causing permanent contraction of the flexors of the hip-joint; deep gnawing pain, from erosion of the vertebrae; and oedema of one or both legs, with distension of the superficial veins, due to pressure on one of the iliac veins or on the vena cava inferior. In some cases micturition is affected at times; and albuminuria may be induced as the result of pressure on the renal veins. Wasting of the testes has been noticed, in consequence of obliteration of the spermatic artery. Aneurism of the *hepatic artery* must be borne in mind as a possible cause of jaundice and ascites, by pressing upon the neighbouring bile-duct and portal vein.

In some instances abdominal aneurism is accompanied with a subjective feeling of uncomfortable pulsation. The alimentary canal is often out of order, and I have known obstinate constipation to be the one prominent symptom complained of in a case of aneurism of the abdominal aorta. Patients suffering from this disease frequently look well, and their general condition is often satisfactory; but sometimes they present a very peculiar aspect, indicating profound illness with anaemia, even when there are no distinct physical signs of the aneurism.

Diagnosis.—The chief conditions which may simulate abdominal aneurism are:—1. Simple aortic pulsation. 2. The pancreas or a solid tumour transmitting an impulse from the aorta; or giving rise to a murmur by pressing upon the vessel. 3. A fluid-accumulation, such as hepatic abscess or hydatid tumour, receiving and communicating an impulse from the aorta. The differential diagnosis must be founded on a careful consideration of the case in all its details, as regards history,

symptoms, and physical signs; but it is important to notice that in all the conditions just mentioned which simulate aneurism, the pulsation is but rarely expansile, while both it and any murmur which may be audible generally disappear if the patient is placed in a kneeling attitude, supported on the hands. The diagnosis from mere *aortic pulsation* requires a few words of special comment. The chief facts in favour of this condition are as follows:—1. The pulsation is generally seated in the epigastrum. 2. It is observed most commonly either in highly nervous and anaemic persons, especially women; in very thin individuals; or in those who suffer much from chronic dyspepsia. Aortic pulsation may also be associated with evident atheromatous degeneration. 3. There are no signs of pressure; nor is there any pain or tenderness as a rule. 4. The pulsation is scarcely ever expansile and lateral, but merely tends in a forward direction, and is never attended with a thrill; there is no increase in dulness, or any evident tumour; and if a murmur is present, it is soft and blowing or whiffing in quality, but never harsh or loud. Some cases are difficult to diagnose with certainty, and then their progress must be watched, and the effects of treatment observed.

It must not be forgotten that an abdominal aneurism may exist without giving rise to any physical signs. Occasionally also it exhibits the characters of a solid tumour, presenting neither pulsation nor bruit. If obscure abdominal symptoms are complained of, particularly deep pain near the spine; and especially if there are at the same time indications that the constitution is gravely disturbed, aneurism should be thought of, and careful *physical examination* carried out repeatedly, over the back as well as through the anterior wall of the abdomen.

Treatment.—The treatment of abdominal aortic aneurism must be conducted on the principles already pointed out in relation to thoracic aneurism. Tufnell's method and the administration of iodide of potassium have proved decidedly efficacious in some cases. The introduction of wire into the aneurismal sac has also been attended with success. It is necessary to allude to a special method intended for the cure of aneurism of the abdominal aorta, namely, the *rapid-pressure* treatment, first employed by Dr. William Murray, of Newcastle-on-Tyne. This plan consists in keeping the patient well under chloroform, applying a tourniquet over the aorta above the tumour, and maintaining steady and constant pressure until all pulsation has ceased in the aneurism on removing the tourniquet. The blood coagulates in the sac, and afterwards collateral circulation is established. The results of this treatment have certainly been such as to commend its adoption in appropriate cases, if other measures do not appear to be followed by good effects. If the aneurism is situated high up, distal pressure might possibly be of service.

Pain is a symptom often calling for interference in cases of abdominal aneurism, and it is best relieved by subcutaneous injection of morphine. Posture may influence considerably the severity of the pain. It is highly important to attend to the state of the digestive organs; and to keep the bowels acting regularly by means of mild *aperients*. A belladonna plaster may be worn constantly over the aneurism.

CHAPTER XXIX.

ON CERTAIN FORMS OF THROMBOSIS.

THROMBOSIS has been discussed from a general point of view in a previous chapter, and its association with important organs is also referred to in other parts of this work. There are, however, particular forms of thrombosis which it is desirable to discuss separately.

I. CARDIAC THROMBOSIS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Coagula may form in the heart after death; immediately before this event; or at some previous period more or less remote. These are distinguished from each other by their colour; consistence; mode of arrangement with regard to, and degree of adhesion with the cardiac walls; whether they are laminated or not; and whether they have undergone changes, either in the direction of organization or softening. Coagulation occurring shortly before death is probably often a dangerous event, and one which aids materially in bringing about a fatal result. It is observed in connection with organic diseases of the heart which obstruct the circulation, or which roughen the endocardial surface; but is most important in certain acute diseases, being then due to a condition of the blood favourable to coagulation, combined with a gradual loss of power in the cardiac contractions, in consequence of which the blood is not properly expelled out of the cavities of the heart, but is partially whipped up and its fibrin deposited. Obstruction in the lungs frequently contributes to the clotting process. Among the most important diseases in which it has been observed are croup, diphtheria, endocarditis, pneumonia, peritonitis, the puerperal state, erysipelas, rheumatic fever, pyæmia and allied conditions. Cardiac thrombosis is much more common, as well as more dangerous, in the right cavities than the left, but may occur on both sides of the heart. Usually the clots are decolorized, being pale or yellowish, but not uniform throughout; firm and fibrinous; often laminated, and fibrillated or granular; entangled among the muscular bands and tendinous cords; and somewhat adherent to the surface, but separable without injuring the endocardium. Occasionally they soften in the centre. A clot may extend for a variable distance into the pulmonary artery or aorta, these portions frequently presenting marks of the valves, but they can be readily removed.

Symptoms and Signs.—The effects of cardiac thrombosis will vary with the rapidity of its production, its seat, and its extent. The dangers arising from this condition are that it causes obstruction to the circulation, and interference with the heart's action; that large portions may become detached, and lodged either in one of the main orifices or in an arterial trunk; or that smaller particles may be separated, and conveyed to the smaller vessels as emboli. Probably also the products of

the softening of a clot may poison the whole blood. Sudden extensive clotting is characterized by great disturbance of the cardiac action, which becomes irregular and very hurried, the pulse being extremely weak and small; a tendency to syncope; urgent dyspnoea; intense restlessness and anxiety; followed by signs of obstruction, either in the pulmonary or venous circulation or both, according to the situation of the clot. In the less rapid cases obstructive symptoms are chiefly observed, combined with more or less cardiac distress. Plugging of one of the cardiac orifices or a great vessel by a clot may cause instantaneons death. The *physical signs* are tumultuous action of the heart, or great irregularity in the rhythm and force of the impulse; increased cardiac dulness, especially towards the right; obscurity and irregularity of the sounds, particularly the first sound; and alteration in murmurs, or the production of a new murmur, especially a pulmonary systolic bruit.

Treatment.—The general measures required for cardiac thrombosis are absolute rest in the recumbent posture: the administration of *stimulants*, especially if there is a syncopal tendency, with as much liquid nourishment as the patient can take comfortably; the application of heat to the extremities; and free dry-cupping over the chest. Sir B. W. Richardson has advocated the use of liquor ammoniae (ml x in iced water every hour) with iodide of potassium (gr. iii to gr. v every alternate hour). In some instances digitalis or digitalin, with strychnine, might perhaps be of use, either by internal administration or subcutaneously; or gentle galvanism might be tried. All lowering measures are injurious; and opiates must be avoided.

II. THROMBOSIS OF THE PULMONARY ARTERY.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Much discussion has been carried on relative to pulmonary thrombosis, especially as it occurs in women after parturition. Occasionally such persons die suddenly, and after death extensive clots are found in the pulmonary artery and its divisions, which some authorities believe to have been the cause of death, and to have formed there primarily and independently; while others think that they are the result of embolism, fragments having become detached from clots in the veins or heart, and lodged in the pulmonary vessels as centres for coagulation; and still others regard the fatal result as being due to syncope, and the clot to be merely of *post-mortem* formation. The probability is that in most instances at all events embolism is concerned with the phenomena observed; and it is possible that a large mass may be sometimes carried into the pulmonary artery, so as to obstruct this vessel more or less completely.

Clots may be found only in the main pulmonary trunk and its larger divisions; in the smaller branches; or more or less throughout. According to the extent involved, and to the rapidity of coagulation, will the clinical phenomena vary. In some instances, as already stated, sudden death is believed to occur, preceded by a cry, this event following some effort after parturition. When only the smaller branches are affected there are no symptoms. If the clotting is more extensive, the symptoms are more or less dyspnoea and sense of want of air, with a feeling of oppression across the chest; evidences of cardiac embarrassment; faintness or actual syncope; and much general distress and anxiety; followed by signs of overloading of the right heart, and general venous

stagnation. These symptoms may temporarily subside, and then recur. It is highly probable that coagulation in the pulmonary vessels often adds to the danger of various diseases of the lungs, and of certain general diseases, and that it prolongs the duration of the former group.

Treatment is similar to that indicated for cardiac thrombosis.

III. THROMBOSIS OF THE SYSTEMIC VEINS.—PHLEGMASIA DOLENS.

The formation of clots in the systemic veins is by-no-means an uncommon occurrence, resulting from pressure, obstruction, feeble circulation, altered blood, and other causes; but it is most important in connection with the affection named *phlegmasia dolens*, in which as a rule the lower extremity is involved, the external iliac or femoral vein being obstructed on one or both sides, or sometimes the common iliac; occasionally the arm is affected. I have met with exceptional cases of extreme anaemia, in which venous thrombosis occurred extensively in different parts of the limbs, as well as probably in internal veins. The formation of clots in the venous sinuses of the dura mater is also a very serious matter, which may supervene as the result of injury or disease affecting the cranial bones.

Phlegmasia dolens is most frequently associated with the puerperal state, coming on at a variable period after delivery; but it may also occur as a sequela of acute febrile diseases, especially typhus or typhoid fever, pleurisy, and pneumonia; and in the advanced stages of various chronic diseases, particularly phthisis, and malignant uterine disease. Different views are held as to the pathology of this affection. Some regard inflammation of the veins—*phlebitis*—as the primary lesion after parturition, this having extended from the uterine veins; others consider that the plugging is the first event, thrombosis resulting from unhealthy blood or embolism, the emboli frequently coming from thrombi in the pulmonary vessels, and that the inflammation is secondary. Certainly in the cases which have fallen under my observation, where phlegmasia has arisen apart from parturition, coagulation has appeared to be the primary morbid condition, and it has sometimes been brought about by a sudden effort, especially when this was accompanied with temporary obstruction of the venous circulation, due to posture.

Anatomical Characters.—A thrombus in a vein varies in its characters, according to its age and mode of formation. If a vessel is suddenly plugged, the clot is at first uniform throughout, soft and red; but if this is gradually formed, it presents a stratified appearance, and the strata may consist of alternate layers of fibrin and white corpuscles. The thrombus increases in extent after its first formation, the degree of extension depending chiefly on the force of the circulation, and on the size and situation of the collateral branches. The thrombus undergoes the usual changes in colour and consistence; becomes adherent to the vessel, in which it frequently excites inflammation; and organization often follows, so that ultimately a fibrous cord alone remains, the vein being obliterated—*adhesive phlebitis*. Occasionally calcification takes place, a “phlebolith” being produced. In some instances the clot undergoes partial or complete softening or liquefaction, beginning in the centre, and a puriform fluid may result, consisting either of granules and molecules derived from the fibrin, with broken-down corpuscles;

or, as some believe, of actual pus, resulting from proliferation of white corpuscles. This is probably the pathology of so-called *suppurative phlebitis*. In this way the clot may be completely removed, or *canalization* takes place; but in some instances infective substances are formed, containing micrococci, which poison the system. Rarely the thrombus becomes converted into a stinking, yellow-red, and highly irritating fluid, due to the entrance of the *bacterium termo* from a foul or gangrenous surface.

In *phlegmasia dolens* the smaller veins and lymphatics also become speedily involved, and more or less inflammation is in many cases set up in the skin and subcutaneous tissue, or even in the deeper structures.

Symptoms and Effects.—The symptoms which may be associated with venous thrombosis are those due to:—1. Local irritation by the clot. 2. Obstruction of the vein, and consequent interference with the circulation, followed by oedema. 3. Detachment of embolic fragments. 4. Constitutional disturbance, which is especially liable to result from the formation of septic products, and contamination of the blood. In *phlegmasia dolens* pain and tenderness along the veins and lymphatics of the thigh or leg are usually complained of to a variable degree. One case which came under my notice, where the disease followed typhus fever, commenced with a sudden intense pain at the moment of coagulation of the blood, which afterwards became most exruciating, being deeply situated in the course of the femoral vein, and of an aching or somewhat neuralgic character. In phthisis, also, venous thrombosis may be the cause of much distress. The veins are in a short time felt to be thickened and firm, or cord-like; and the lymphatics become visible as superficial red lines. Soon there may be signs of venous congestion, but this is speedily followed by a deadly whiteness of the limb—*white leg*, which swells from below upwards, chiefly on account of oedema, sometimes attaining an enormous size, and becoming tense or elastic, with a most uncomfortable subjective feeling of tightness. In course of time the superficial veins become enlarged and varicose, if the obstruction is not removed, and the leg often remains swollen for many months, or even permanently, the tissues being thickened and indurated. Rigors may be experienced at the outset, followed by pyrexia and much prostration. In cases of disseminated venous thrombosis associated with anaemia, there is extensive dropsy of corresponding distribution.

Treatment.—In *phlegmasia dolens* the most efficient treatment is to support the patient by nourishing food and *stimulants*; to keep the leg perfectly at rest in a horizontal posture, or even a little raised; to apply hot opiate or belladonna fomentations assiduously, or glycerine or extract of belladonna covered with cotton wool; and to give *anodynes* for the purpose of relieving pain, if required. Subsequently *tonics*, especially iron and quinine, good diet, and change of air, are most beneficial; with douching, friction, and shampooing of the limb, this being either carefully bandaged, or an elastic stocking being worn. Great improvement may be effected even after a long interval. Anæmic cases must be treated in relation to the condition upon which the thrombosis depends.

IV. THROMBOSIS OF THE ARTERIES.

This form of thrombosis is almost always associated either with a diseased condition of the walls of the vessel; or with embolism. Its symptoms are merely those indicative of local obstruction of the artery involved. In the case of the arteries of the limbs thrombosis is important as a cause of senile gangrene. In medical practice the condition is of most consequence in connection with the brain, and will be more particularly considered in relation to this organ.

CHAPTER XXX.

RAYNAUD'S DISEASE—LOCAL SYNCOPES AND ASPHYXIA — SYMMETRICAL GANGRENE OF THE EXTREMITIES.

As the disease thus named is associated with the vascular system, it may be conveniently considered in the present connection.

Aetiology and Pathology.—This complaint was first described by Raynaud in 1862, but during recent years has attracted the attention of many observers. It consists in different degrees of local obstruction of the arterial circulation, which tends to be symmetrical, and is attributed to a spasmodic contraction of the arteries, varying in degree and duration, as well as in the extent of the area affected. It is believed that the spasm commences in the smallest arterioles, and extends thence to those of larger size. Further, this condition is supposed to be of central nervous origin, and to be the result of influences sent forth from the vaso-motor centres; it may be brought on by emotional disturbance. The complaint, however, seems to be markedly influenced by cold affecting the surface of the body; it occurs chiefly, or in some cases only during the colder seasons, while attacks are often definitely traceable to exposure to cold, and can be prevented by warmth. Females suffer considerably more than males. Raynaud's disease is said to begin most frequently between 15 and 30 years of age, but may start in childhood, or during the later periods of life. Patients suffering from the affection may have been previously in excellent health, but in most cases they are delicate, anaemic, nervous, or hysterical.

Symptoms.—Raynaud's disease presents different objective phenomena in different cases, according to its degree, accompanied with various subjective sensations. In the least marked form (*local syncope*) the affected parts simply become temporarily white, bloodless, cold, and anaesthetic—what is commonly termed “dead”—during cold weather, or from the direct local effect of cold. In more pronounced cases they become dusky, bluish, or purple, and sometimes mottled (*local asphyxia*), this appearance being preceded in some instances by the condition just described. It may last for hours or days, and complete temporary restoration generally ensues, but occasionally in certain situations the congested appearance is more or less permanent, accompanied with cold-

ness. In a still further degree portions of the involved structures become gangrenous, assuming a black and shrivelled aspect, and ultimately being thrown off. This may occur over small areas of the general surface, or may involve more or less of the fingers or toes, the hand or foot, or the nose or ears. Skin-eruptions are not uncommon, resembling erythema papulatum or urticaria, and being also very like chilblains, but said to differ from these by occurring at times when chilblains are not prevalent, being differently distributed, and observed in those who are not subject to chilblains. Sometimes blebs containing bloody fluid are formed, which may be followed by intractable sores. In some cases the tissues are much swollen, the surface mottled dusky-red, and uneven or tuberculated from persistent eruptions, vesicles or blebs forming from time to time, leading to excoriation and scabbing. In exceptional instances nutritive changes of an atrophic character take place, indicated by the surface becoming smooth and shiny, resembling scleroderma or the so-called "glossy skin"; with obvious wasting of structures, which may implicate the nails, or even the bones.

The sensations which are associated with the objective appearances just sketched also vary in their character and degree. Thus there may be only temporary coldness and numbness, followed by tingling and aching as the circulation becomes restored. In more severe cases there may be a permanent feeling of coldness, discomfort, impaired sensibility, numbness, tingling, itching, tenderness, aching, burning, or even excruciating agony. In the more persistent but less acute cases the local sensations are usually less severe.

The parts affected in Raynaud's disease differ in different cases, but those chiefly involved are the fingers or toes, hands or feet, or other parts of the extremities, and the ears or nose. As already stated, there is a marked tendency to symmetrical distribution of the lesions. In many cases the complaint is characterized by a remarkable periodicity, attacks of short duration sometimes occurring every day, or even several times a day; while in other instances they only supervene at longer and irregular intervals, and may be obviously brought on by definite exposure to cold. An attack may be ushered in with general chilliness, shivering, yawning, or irritability and fretfulness in children. Gangrene and its consequences are likely to be attended with more or less severe constitutional symptoms. In chronic cases the general health is often not materially affected.

In some cases of characteristic Raynaud's disease paroxysmal haemoglobinuria has been noticed, of short duration, and usually accompanied with abdominal uneasiness or pain. In one instance Raynaud observed contraction of the retinal arteries, attended with impairment of vision. A peculiar marbling of the skin, disappearing under pressure, met with in locomotor ataxy sometimes, and due to small and rounded anaemic areas, surrounded by a network of healthy coloured skin, has been regarded as of the same nature as Raynaud's disease; as well as certain forms of purpura.

Treatment.—Persons suffering from Raynaud's disease should be very warmly clad, with flannel next the skin; and must avoid exposure to cold weather, winds, or draughts. The hands and feet must be especially protected by thick woollen gloves and socks. During an attack it may be well to keep the patient in bed. Warm baths, with friction and shampooing, are very beneficial. Temporary removal to some warm climate, or even permanent residence there, may be necessary in severe cases.

Regular daily exercise should be taken ; and the diet must be nutritious. Tonics may be of service in some instances. Medicines which act as *vaso-dilators*, such as belladonna, nitrite of amyl, or nitro-glycerine, have been recommended. The continuous galvanic current, either passed through the spine to the affected region, or applied locally, has been found very useful during an attack ; and its persistent use may be of service in the treatment of patients who are subject to frequent attacks. Raynaud's disease has been successfully treated by thyroid extract. Gangrene and other effects of the complaint must be treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER XXXI.

DISEASES OF THE MEDIASTINUM.

THE morbid conditions coming under this category form a somewhat ill-defined group, and the chief diseases which are associated with the contents of the mediastinum, such as aortic aneurism, affections of the bronchial glands, and those involving the oesophagus or air-tubes, are dealt with in other parts of this work. In the present chapter it is only intended to allude briefly to mediastinal conditions not referred to elsewhere ; and to give a concise account of solid tumours occupying this region.

1. **MEDIASTINITIS—MEDIASTINAL ABSCESS.**—Inflammation of the mediastinal cellular tissue occasionally occurs, either acute or chronic. The latter may lead to much thickening, and adhesion or matting together of different structures, as in the condition termed *mediastino-pericarditis*. Mediastinitis is of chief importance as leading to the formation of abscess, which is most frequent in the anterior mediastinum. Acute abscess is generally of traumatic origin, but may occur as a complication of erysipelas or of certain other acute specific fevers. Other cases, and more particularly those of chronic abscess, are tubercular in origin. The collection of pus may either make its way externally through an intercostal space, or by eroding the sternum ; or burst into the trachea or oesophagus ; or burrow into the abdomen ; or become inspissated and caseous or calcified. The *symptoms* and *signs* of mediastinal abscess are very uncertain, but there may be chills, fever, and sweating ; with pain behind the sternum, sometimes of a throbbing character ; possibly obstructive dyspnoea ; and occasionally a swelling appears at the edge of or over the sternum, which may present fluctuation and pulsation, but the latter is non-expansile, and there is no murmur. It may be permissible to use an exploring needle carefully for diagnostic purposes. *Treatment* must be conducted on ordinary principles.

2. **MEDIASTINAL EMPHYSEMA.**—This condition is characterized by the presence of an accumulation of air in the cellular tissue of the mediastinum. It is chiefly due to injuries, and is said to be a frequent occurrence after tracheotomy. Occasionally it is met with in fatal cases of diphtheria and whooping-cough. The condition may be associated with pneumothorax or subcutaneous emphysema. It might possibly be

detected during life by the percussion-sound, and the adventitious sounds heard on auscultation. No treatment is practicable.

3. MEDIASTINAL GROWTHS AND TUMOURS.—Apart from aortic aneurism, and simple or tubercular enlargement of absorbent glands, the following varieties of mediastinal tumour may be met with, namely :—Carcinoma; lymphadenoma; sarcoma or osteosarcoma; enchondroma; fibro-cellular, fibrous, or fibro-fatty tumours; syphilitic gummata embedded in dense fibrous material; hydatid-cysts rarely; and very rarely “dermoid cysts”, containing hair, bone, or even teeth, and fat. A mediastinal growth most commonly originates in the lymphatic glands, but it may start from the cellular tissue, the oesophagus, the root of either lung, or the thymus or thyroid gland.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of mediastinal tumour are mainly those indicative of pressure, and they accordingly present the usual variations in different cases. A growth in this region is very liable to press upon the superior vena cava or one of the innominate veins. Various kinds of dyspnoea, and paroxysmal cough are of frequent occurrence. “Currant-jelly” expectoration is said to be common in cancer. A tumour in the mediastinum may also lead to displacement or destruction of neighbouring structures, and may thus make its way externally. The *physical signs* of a solid tumour are also widely different, but the following list will suggest those which are to be sought for :—1. *Local bulging*, especially in front, of variable extent, often irregular, not pulsating, except in rare instances, and then the pulsation is not expansile. 2. Deficiency or absence of *respiratory movements* over the seat of the growth, or in some instances over the whole of one side, from pressure on a bronchus. 3. Altered *percussion-sound*, often over a considerable area, it being either dull and toneless; hard, wooden, and high-pitched; or occasionally tubular or amphoric; there being also marked *resistance*. 4. *Respiratory sounds* weak or absent, blowing, tubular, or even amphoric, according to the size of the growth, and its relation to the main air-tubes. 5. *Vocal fremitus* usually absent; and *vocal resonance* either deficient, bronchophonic, or pectoriloquous. 6. *Dry and moist râles* in the bronchi, either general, unilateral, or local, which are not infrequent. 7. *Displacement* of the heart and other structures; increased conduction of the heart-sounds; and occasionally a murmur, resulting from pressure on a great vessel.

Diagnosis.—Mediastinal tumour has in the first place to be distinguished from other morbid conditions within the chest, especially chronic interstitial pneumonia; pleuritic effusion, though this condition is frequently associated with a growth in the mediastinum; pericardial effusion; and enlargement of the heart. Careful consideration of the history of the case, as well as of its symptoms, physical signs, and progress, will rarely leave much doubt as to the diagnosis thus far. It is much more difficult, however, to determine the *nature* of any mediastinal enlargement. In the diagnosis between *aneurism* and a *solid tumour*, when this is at all doubtful, the following considerations may be of assistance :—1. The facts that the patient is a female, and under 25 years of age, are in favour of a solid tumour (Walshe); the family history may be suggestive of cancer; or the occupation may be in favour of aneurism. 2. As regards *symptoms*, dysphagia and severe pain, especially posteriorly, are more common in aneurism; oedema of the arm and chest; and frequent haemoptysis, or currant-jelly expectoration, are more characteristic of tumour. Occasionally cancer-elements

are discharged in the sputa. 3. The *physical signs* are of much value. The limitation of such signs to the region of the aorta; the presence of any thrill; a marked diastolic shock, perceptible on palpation and auscultation; and gradual approach of any pulsation to the surface, are suggestive of aneurism. Great superficial extent of dulness; absence of any heaving character in the pulsation, should this sign be present; and the want of accordance between it and the maximum dulness, are in favour of a solid tumour. 4. Careful examination may reveal cancer in other parts; or there may be constitutional indications of its presence. 5. The duration and progress of the case, and the effects of treatment, may be very significant in diagnosis.

With regard to the distinction between *different solid enlargements*, all that can be stated is that cancer is the most common; there may be signs of the cancerous cachexia or of cancer in other parts; while abundant haemoptysis is by far most frequent in this form of tumour; or cancer-cells may be expectorated. It also tends to grow outwards, and has a rapid progress. Lymphadenomatous growths must, however, be borne in mind, and they may be accompanied with similar growths in other parts.

Treatment.—All that can be done in a case of mediastinal tumour or enlargement is to treat it on general principles, and to relieve symptoms as they arise.

CHAPTER XXXII.

CLINICAL EXAMINATION OF THE ABDOMEN.

BEFORE proceeding to the consideration of the diseases of the abdomen and its viscera, it is desirable to point out the various physical and other methods of examination which may be required in their investigation; and to indicate the kind of information which they severally afford.

In the first place this region is examined from without, through the abdominal walls, by methods similar to those employed in the exploration of the chest. When carrying out these methods the abdomen should be adequately exposed, though in the case of females it need not always be actually uncovered; and the patient must be placed in an appropriate position. The best posture ordinarily is on the back, with the head and shoulders more or less raised, and the knees and thighs bent, so that the abdominal muscles may be relaxed; however, it is requisite in many cases to make the patient assume other positions, such as lying on either side or on the face, or kneeling supported on the hands. The patient should be desired to breathe deeply, or the attention may be occupied with conversation, so that a state of contraction and tension of the abdominal muscles may be avoided, which is very apt to be produced. The examination should be carried out carefully and thoroughly; and not uncommonly it has to be made on more than one occasion, before a satisfactory conclusion can be arrived at.

I. Inspection.—This method is of value in studying:—1. The state of the superficial parts, namely, the integuments, superficial veins, and umbilicus. 2. The general shape and size of the abdomen; as well as any

local alterations in these respects. 3. The characters of the abdominal respiratory movements. 4. The presence of any visible pulsation. 5. Certain movements, such as those due to flatus; to fluid, when the position of the patient is altered; or to the presence of a foetus.

II. Application of the hands, Palpation, or Manipulation.—If properly carried out, this becomes one of the most valuable methods of examination applicable to the abdomen; but it requires considerable practice, and manipulation has to be employed in different ways in different cases. *Palpation* reveals:—1. The condition of the abdominal walls, as regards amount of fat, œdema, and the state of the muscles. 2. The shape and size of the abdomen more accurately than inspection. 3. The sensations conveyed as regards mobility of the abdomen as a whole, degree of resistance, consistence, fluctuation, regularity and smoothness or the reverse, over the surface generally, and over its different parts. 4. The existence of any enlarged organ or tumour, as well as its position and characters. 5. The extent of the respiratory movements, and their influence upon any tumour which may be present. 6. The exact situation and characters of any pulsation. 7. The presence of friction-fremitus developed during the act of breathing. 8. Any movements set up within the abdomen, such as those due to accumulation of gas in the stomach or intestines, or foetal movements.

III. Mensuration or Measurement.—Merely an ordinary single and double measuring tape of sufficient length are required for measurement of the abdomen, which affords more exact information as to its size and shape; and as to the diaphragmatic respiratory movements. It is particularly valuable for the purpose of indicating the progress of many cases, with the effects of treatment. The measurements ordinarily required are:—1. *Circular* in different parts, but especially a little above and below the umbilicus. 2. *Semicircular*, so as to compare the two sides. 3. *Local*, namely, from the umbilicus to the ensiform cartilage; to the pubes; and to the anterior superior spine of the ilium on each side.

IV. Percussion.—*Mediate* percussion should usually be practised over the abdomen. A modification of this method is employed in the production of what is termed *hydatid-fremitus* or *vibration*, which is elicited by applying three fingers of the left hand firmly over certain cystic tumours, and striking the middle finger suddenly with the point of the right middle finger. Another method consists in applying the fingers of one hand over one side of the abdomen, and tapping or filliping the opposite side with those of the other hand, which is the usual procedure adopted for producing *fluctuation*.

The objects for which percussion of the abdomen is practised are:—1. To bring out certain sounds. 2. To realize tactile sensations, especially the *degree of resistance*: *hydatid-fremitus*; and *fluctuation*. The sounds elicited may be grouped under the terms *dulness* and *tympanitic sound*, these necessarily varying in their exact characters. In the normal state they are both met with over different parts of the abdomen, according to the organ which corresponds to the region percussed, and by this mode of examination the exact position and limits of some of the viscera can be marked out. The deviations from health, as regards the percussion-sound, which may be observed, are:—(i.) Excess in the intensity, fulness, clearness, or extent of the *tympanitic sound*. (ii.) *Dulness*, either too extensive, or in unusual positions. This is the deviation which requires most attention, and when

abnormal dulness is detected over any part of the abdomen, it is necessary to make out carefully :—*a.* Its site, exact limits, shape, and degree. *b.* Whether it differs according as superficial or deep percussion is made. *c.* If it is influenced by posture; the act of breathing; pressure; or manipulation. In some doubtful cases it may be requisite to observe the effects upon the percussion-sound of taking food or drink; the act of vomiting; the use of an enema; or the removal of urine by the catheter. With respect to *resistance*, by noticing its degree an accumulation of fluid may be distinguished from a solid mass, and the actual density of the latter can to a great extent be realized; the sensations on percussion are likewise useful in separating flatulent distension of the abdomen from enlargement due to the presence of fluid.

Hydatid-fremitus is a peculiar vibratory or trembling sensation, produced in the manner already described, and formerly supposed to be characteristic of hydatid tumours, but it can be brought out in connection with any large cyst which has thin and tight walls, and which contains a fluid of watery consistence, and may even be simulated by localized collections of fluid in the peritoneum.

Fluctuation indicates the presence of fluid within the cavity of the abdomen, and it is needful to observe the degree of facility of its production, and its distinctness; the part of the abdomen over which it is felt; and whether it is influenced by change of posture. Information is thus obtained as to the quantity of fluid, its freedom or limitation by cysts or adhesions, and its consistence. It must be borne in mind that a relaxed or very fat condition of the abdominal walls may give rise to a sensation simulating fluctuation.

V. **Auscultation.**—This is not nearly so useful a mode of examination in connection with the abdomen as in the case of the chest, and it need scarcely be mentioned that the intervention of a stethoscope is always desirable when practising it. Auscultation generally only gives negative information, except in cases of pregnancy, but sometimes by its aid certain positive signs are detected, namely :—1. Friction-sound, produced by the respiratory movements, and due to exudation on the peritoneum, or to roughness of the surface of certain organs. 2. Murmurs in connection with aneurism, with regard to which it is requisite to notice their site, intensity, extent of conduction, synchronism, pitch, and other characters; as well as any effects produced upon them by pressure, or by change of position. 3. A murmur over the aorta, or over one of the common iliac arteries, due to pressure, such as that of a tumour. 4. Unusual conduction of the heart-sounds over the abdomen. 5. Sounds due to the movement of flatus in the stomach or intestines; or to the falling of food or liquid into the stomach, when swallowed. 6. Fluctuation or splashing-sound, elicited by shaking the patient, and indicating the presence of both air and fluid. 7. Murmurs and sounds heard in connection with the pregnant uterus.

The methods of examination thus far considered are usually sufficient for establishing a diagnosis in cases of abdominal disease; but there are others which are required under particular circumstances. At present it must suffice to explain their general nature, as it will be more convenient to consider certain of them in detail later on, in their appropriate connections, and illustrations of their practical application will also be given in future chapters.

VI. Examination directed to special organs.—Certain of the abdominal viscera can be investigated by particular methods, differing in each case, namely, the stomach and intestines; the bladder; and the female generative organs. Of course, examination of the urine is of essential importance in relation to the diagnosis of diseases of the kidneys and other parts of the urinary apparatus. Digital examination *per rectum*, or *per vaginam*, is often of service in determining the conditions of neighbouring structures. Bearing in mind the frequency of an accumulation of faeces in the intestine, it is well in any doubtful case to take measures to empty the bowel before making an examination through the abdominal wall.

VII. Operative procedures.—Different methods coming under this head are now frequently practised to clear up the diagnosis in doubtful cases of abdominal disease. The most simple is the use of the exploratory trochar or aspirator, for the purpose of determining the presence and nature of fluid within the abdomen. In certain cases abdominal section is called for as a mode of clinical examination, in order to explore the cavity generally; or to investigate some particular organ.

VIII. Administration of an anæsthetic.—This procedure is not uncommonly required as an aid in carrying out other methods of examination; while it at once reveals the nature of the so-called *phantom-tumour* of the abdomen.

Summary.—Physical examination of the abdomen is chiefly useful in the investigation of the following abnormal conditions:—1. General enlargements. 2. General retraction or depression. 3. Local enlargements, or so-called *tumours*; including enlargements of organs. 4. Diminution in the size of organs; as well as certain changes in their physical characters, either with or without alteration in dimensions, for instance, cirrhosis of the liver. 5. Pulsation, associated or not with any tumour. 6. Interference with the abdominal respiratory movements from various causes.

General and local abdominal enlargements are of very common occurrence, and, therefore, although this will involve some repetition, it may perhaps be of service to indicate specially the course of investigation to be pursued, and the points to be observed, in conducting physical examination with the view of arriving at a diagnosis as to the cause of any such enlargement.

I. General enlargements.—1. Examine as to the state of the abdominal walls, by inspection and palpation, paying particular attention to the characters of the umbilicus. 2. Ascertain the degree of enlargement, and its exact form, by inspection, palpation, and measurement. 3. Note the extent of the abdominal respiratory movements, by the same methods; and observe whether they give rise to any sensation of fremitus. 4. Manipulate thoroughly over every part of the abdomen, in order to determine the sensations conveyed as to smoothness and regularity, amount of resistance, consistence, gurgling, etc. 5. Observe specially if there is any fluctuation-wave, as well as its seat, extent, and facility of production. 6. Percuss carefully, noting the sounds elicited over the abdomen in different parts, and the sensations conveyed to the fingers during the act. Sometimes it is requisite to examine specially for hydatid-fremitus. 7. Apply the stethoscope, chiefly to ascertain whether any kind of friction-sound can be heard during the act of breathing; if there are any of the sounds usually observed in connection with a pregnant uterus; or if a pressure-murmur is audible over either iliac artery. 8. Having examined thus far as the patient is

lying in the ordinary position, it may then be necessary to observe the effects of various changes of posture, especially as regards the shape of the abdomen; the percussion-sounds; and any fluctuation which may be present. 9. If after this a satisfactory diagnosis cannot be made, it will be requisite to have recourse to other methods of examination, particularly examination by the rectum or vagina; and the use of the aspirateur or exploratory trochar. Of course the urine should always be thoroughly tested.

II. Local enlargements.—Manipulation is by far the most important mode of examination which can be employed in the investigation of localized abdominal enlargements, and therefore it is specially necessary to educate the sense of touch for these cases. 1. Any local change in the skin, limited oedema, or enlargement of veins must be noted. 2. A cursory examination is desirable, in order to determine if there is but one tumour or more; and, in the latter case, whether they are separate or connected. The further remarks will apply to each enlargement, should there be more than one. 3. Ascertain the precise situation of the tumour, paying particular attention to the following points:—
a. Whether it extends into the pelvis. *b.* If it is median, or occupies one or other side, and to what extent. *c.* If it can be traced within the margin of the thorax; and if it enlarges the lower part of this cavity, or alters the intercostal spaces in any way. *d.* Whether it corresponds to, or can be made out to be part of either of the organs. *e.* Its depth, noting whether it lies in the abdominal walls; within the cavity of the abdomen near the surface; or deep down near the spine. 4. Determine by palpation the dimensions and shape as nearly as possible, noting particularly the form of the margin; if this is well or ill-defined; and if the outline corresponds to that of any abdominal organ. 5. Feel carefully over the surface and margins, in order to determine whether they are smooth, granular, nodular, or lobular, noticing the characters of any prominences which may exist; and at the same time try to realize the consistence, which may be more or less hard and firm, elastic, doughy, fluctuating, etc. It is important to observe whether the sensations are uniform or not over the enlargement; and if any change is produced by pressure and manipulation, or any gurgling or grating is thus elicited. 6. Ascertain whether the tumour is movable or fixed, as well as the degree of mobility, by manipulation, and in connection with the respiratory movements. 7. Should there be any pulsation or thrill, the exact seat and characters of each must be noted. 8. Percussion is, of course, most valuable in bringing out sounds and tactile sensations, and in many cases the precise limits and characters of an enlargement can only be made out in this way. It is important to notice whether the results of percussion are uniform over its entire surface or not. 9. Auscultation is sometimes useful, especially in order to investigate murmurs, which may be associated with the tumour itself, or are the consequence of its pressure upon an artery. 10. The posture must be altered, as in the case of general enlargements, and the effects observed, as regards the site of the tumour; its percussion-sound; or any changes affecting fluctuation, pulsation, or murmur, should either of these signs be present. 11. Without again recapitulating the more unusual methods of examination, it may be stated that either or all of them may be called for in doubtful cases, and under any circumstances it is most desirable that the bowels should be thoroughly emptied by the use of purgatives and enemata, as collections of faeces may cause much obscurity, and not uncommonly simulate tumours of a very serious nature.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

DISEASES OF THE PERITONEUM.

THE peritoneum is a structure of great importance from a pathological and clinical point of view, and it has of late years attracted much attention. In this work, however, it will only be practicable to give a concise account of its morbid conditions, more especially as they occur in medical practice. An interesting summary of the peculiarities of the peritoneum is given by Mr. Frederick Treves, in his valuable *Lectures* for 1894, to which I am indebted for much that immediately follows.

I. ACUTE PERITONITIS—ACUTE INFLAMMATION OF THE PERITONEUM.

Pathology and Aetiology.—It is now generally believed that acute peritonitis is in the large majority of cases due to *infective* processes, which act either directly or indirectly. Many maintain that this is invariably the case; but some are of opinion that there is a *non-infective* form, which may be produced by mechanical, thermal, or chemical irritants, and certain other causes. Treves evidently inclines to the former view, and in his ætiological classification refers the cases mainly to infection from the intestine, and infection from without. Such infection is associated usually with definite micro-organisms, but it is supposed that there may be a “chemical peritonitis,” due to the action of the chemical products of these organisms. The disease depends in the great majority of instances upon “continuity infection,” which spreads to the peritoneum from a neighbouring tissue. The chief organism which comes from the intestine is the bacterium coli commune, and it is often the only one present. Other infective agents of this kind include streptococcus pyogenes and staphylococci, which come from without; pneumococcus rarely; and amabæ coli in cases associated with dysentery. Tubercle bacilli are present in tubercular peritonitis.

In many cases of acute peritonitis, the inflammation is obviously associated with the presence in the peritoneal cavity of various gross materials, such as ascitic fluid, blood, faecal matters, bile, or foreign bodies. According to the infective theory these do not set up the process by simple irritation, but they either directly introduce micro-organisms or their products into this cavity; or determine their passage from the intestinal canal; or afford favourable conditions for the development of any microbes which may gain access into the peritoneum.

Whatever be the exact view taken of the pathology of acute peritonitis, it is still practicable to divide the cases into certain groups, according to their more evident modes of origin and causation, and they may be thus classified:—1. *Traumatic*. This form may arise from mere external injury to the abdomen; penetrating wounds; rupture by violence of internal organs; or operative procedures. 2. *Perforative*. The special causes of this important group of cases of peritonitis will be

separately considered later on. 3. *Peritonitis from direct irritation or extension.* Under this category would come peritonitis associated with various diseases of abdominal viscera; hernia or intestinal obstruction; ulceration of the stomach or bowels, including typhoid; morbid deposits, especially acute miliary tuberculosis; inflammation and abscess of the absorbent glands; and that due to extension through the diaphragm in cases of pleurisy, pneumonia, or pericarditis. 4. *Secondary.* This term may be conveniently associated with cases in which peritonitis occurs as a local manifestation or complication of some general disease or condition. Thus it may be met with in the course of small-pox, septicaemia, pyæmia, erysipelas, glanders, or anthrax. Secondary peritonitis has also been attributed to rheumatism, gout, Bright's disease, gonorrhœa, syphilis, and alcoholism, but the occurrence of these varieties is very questionable, except in so far as these conditions may be favourable to bacterial growth, or the complaint may be traceable to extension from parts already inflamed. 5. *Primary or idiopathic.* Under this head are included cases of peritonitis which cannot be referred to any definite ætiological group, but which are attributed to cold, over-eating or drinking, and other injurious influences. Their reality is very doubtful. 6. *Puerperal and other forms of peritonitis originating in the female generative apparatus.* Puerperal peritonitis is really a septic variety; but the complaint may be also associated with many injuries and diseases of the generative apparatus, and is not uncommonly due to direct extension along the Fallopian tube. 7. *Contagious.* Some cases of peritonitis are produced by contagion, being directly conveyed from one individual to another. This may especially happen with the puerperal variety. It may be mentioned here that peritonitis has also been attributed to the effects of sewer gas. 8. *Peritonitis in new-born infants.* This class of cases has been found to be comparatively frequent, and may result from infection from the mother; extension from an inflamed, erysipelatous, or gangrenous umbilicus, or an umbilical hernia; or rupture of the bowel. It may be mentioned that, except at this early period of life, peritonitis is very uncommon in children.

With regard to the pathology of the grave symptoms associated with cases which are classed under the head of acute peritonitis, and especially when they end fatally, an important view held, with which Treves agrees, is that they are due, not to the inflammation of the serous membrane, but to toxæmia, caused by micro-organisms or their products. In many instances the amount of inflammation found after death is so slight as to be out of all proportion to the preceding phenomena; and Treves states that the cases in which suppuration is the most pronounced are amongst the most favourable examples of peritonitis, whilst the most acute and unfavourable cases are those which show the least inflammatory changes. Another view entertained is that the phenomena are due to nervous disturbance, and this is the opinion advocated by Dr. John Malcolm. Others attach importance to the serious interference with important abdominal viscera which the peritonitis involves.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute peritonitis is characterized in a general way by similar morbid changes to those which occur in other serous inflammations, but the exact conditions met with in different cases vary very widely in their degree and nature, as well as in their extent. Taking a comprehensive survey, it may be stated that peritonitis often presents the following special features:—The vascularization is frequently very intense, and is most marked where the coils of intestines touch.

The subserous tissue and the muscular coat of the alimentary canal are often much sodden, infiltrated, and softened. The lymph, though in some instances tolerably firm, matting together the coils of intestine, is frequently of a soft non-organizable nature, and fibrinous flakes are always detached in abundance, or even gelatinous-looking masses of considerable size may be observed. In some instances it presents a greasy appearance. The effusion is as a rule comparatively small in quantity, being probably prevented from accumulating by the pressure of the abdominal contents. It appears also that its situation is not affected by gravity: while it may be limited by adhesions. Occasionally, however, a very large inflammatory effusion collects rapidly in the peritoneum. The fluid is always more or less flaky and turbid, and not uncommonly presents a greenish and almost purulent appearance, or is actually purulent in certain cases, being then often offensive. Sometimes there is an admixture of blood. Much foetid gas is frequently present in the peritoneal sac; and in certain cases foreign materials of different kinds are found there. Gangrene is occasionally observed.

Treves states that the exudation associated with the *bacterium coli commune* is often characteristic. "The fluid is at first clear and greenish-looking. It then becomes greenish-yellow, thin, semi-opaque, and foul smelling. If it pass on to suppuration, the pus has no especial characters except that it is frequently offensive."

According to the extent of the inflammation, cases of peritonitis have been divided into *general* and *local*. General peritonitis merely implies that the disease is extensive, for the membrane is rarely involved in its entire extent. Local peritonitis may merely lead to a limited exudation; to a fluid-effusion bounded by lymph or adhesions; or to a purulent collection. It may subsequently become general. In relation to this point it is interesting to note that different parts of the peritoneum are found to present different degrees of vulnerability; and the following important facts were brought forward by Treves:—The part which is apparently most sensitive to infection, and which is most prone to rapidly spreading and diffuse inflammation, is that which covers the small intestine. The parietal peritoneum is not so susceptible, and is not so apt to assume the diffuse and low form of inflammation. The morbid changes in peritonitis are more marked and more advanced on the visceral layers and omentum than upon the parietal part of the membrane. Localized peritonitis and encysted exudations are comparatively uncommon in the area occupied by the small intestine; and are found chiefly in the subphrenic district between the dome of the diaphragm above and the transverse colon below, in the region of the cæcum, especially at its outer side, and in the pelvis. Localized purulent collections are uncommon except in these situations. Over the liver the effect of irritation of the peritoneum is comparatively feeble: and lesions of this organ or of the bile-passages are often followed by a peritonitis which is slow and moderate, the inflammation being of a wholesome type, and tending to the formation of substantial adhesions. Local forms of peritonitis have received special names, according to the portion of the membrane or the region affected, such as *parietal*, *omental*, *subphrenic* or *subdiaphragmatic*, *hepatic*, and *pelvic*. Most of the cases usually included under the term *perityphlitis* are now known to be due to a local peritonitis.

When recovery takes place after acute peritonitis, thickenings, bands of adhesion, or more extensive agglutinations form, which subsequently are likely to prove a source of trouble or danger.

It may be noted that special care should always be taken in making a *post-mortem* examination in fatal cases of acute peritonitis, as well as in performing operations when this disease is present, as the morbid products are often highly septic and infectious.

Symptoms.—The clinical history of acute peritonitis presents considerable variations in different cases, and, as already intimated, the gravity of the symptoms is in many instances quite out of proportion to the amount of inflammation, or to the inflammatory changes found after death. It will be impossible to do more here than to give a comprehensive description of the disease, and to point out certain important peculiarities which individual cases may present.

The *mode of onset* of acute peritonitis depends very much on the circumstances under which it occurs. Thus it may start from a condition of shock or collapse, as after perforation, from which the patient never rallies. In other cases the invasion is definite and marked, as indicated by distinct, and it may be severe or repeated rigors, speedily followed or even accompanied by local abdominal symptoms. Or, again, the local symptoms appear first in not a few instances, followed by constitutional disturbance. The actual phenomena of the disease may be conveniently described as *local* and *general*.

Local.—Abdominal pain is in most cases a prominent symptom in acute peritonitis, accompanied with marked tenderness and superficial hyperæsthesia. The internal pain has the peculiarity that it is not, as a rule, to be localized at first, but is commonly referred to the great abdominal nerve-centres (Treves). Subsequently it often spreads over the entire surface, though it is frequently more marked in some particular region, when there is definite local trouble. Its intensity and characters vary much, but it is generally very severe, sometimes agonizing; and hot, burning, shooting, or darting in character. Any disturbance increases the pain considerably, such as that induced by change of posture, a deep breath, coughing, vomiting, defæcation, or even the movement of flatus in the intestine. The tenderness of the abdomen is a striking symptom in peritonitis; it appears to depend mainly upon actual hyperæsthesia of the surface, though there is also a deeper tenderness, which may be most marked in some limited region. The superficial hyperæsthesia is not uncommonly so extreme that the slightest touch, or even the weight of the bedclothes, cannot be borne. At first there is often complete rigidity of the abdominal walls; while the diaphragmatic respiratory movements are greatly limited or entirely arrested. In certain cases retraction of the abdomen occurs, and it is said that this may be extreme. Usually, however, and in most cases within a short period, tympanites becomes a prominent symptom, and is often excessive. Other phenomena associated with the alimentary canal are complete loss of appetite, with great thirst; nausea and vomiting; and usually constipation, which may be absolute. The tongue tends to be contracted, irritable, red, slightly furred, and dry. Vomiting in various degrees seems to be one of the most frequent symptoms of acute peritonitis. As a rule it is only excited when anything is taken into the stomach. The act of micturition is sometimes very frequent; or there may be a tendency to paralysis of the bladder, with retention of urine.

General.—The appearance of the patient in acute peritonitis is often highly characteristic. The face presents an expression of evident suffering and grave constitutional disorder, combined with anxiety, the

features being drawn and pinched. There is much prostration, with general uneasiness and restlessness, but though the arms may be thrown about, the patient keeps the body perfectly still, from dread of pain, and instinctively assumes a characteristic posture, with the view of relaxing the abdominal muscles, namely, lying on the back, with the head and shoulders raised, the thighs bent, and the knees drawn up and flexed.

Pyrexia is usually, but not always, present to a marked degree in acute peritonitis; but there is no characteristic type of temperature, and it varies much in different cases. Sometimes it is subnormal for days, which is a grave state of things. The pulse is increased in frequency, ranging from 100 to 150 or more, small, sharp, often hard, and wiry or thready; in bad cases it tends to become extremely frequent, feeble, and irregular. Respiration is hurried, but shallow; while persistent hiccup causes much distress in some cases. The urine is markedly febrile, and not uncommonly contains albumin; it may be very deficient or almost suppressed. As a rule no particular cerebral symptoms are observed, except headache and sleeplessness; in bad cases, however, low muttering delirium may set in, or it is sometimes of a wild type.

Physical examination of the abdomen will reveal the conditions present in acute peritonitis, such as retraction of the walls, or more commonly tympanitic distension, often extreme; cessation of abdominal respiratory movements; occasionally friction-fremitus or sound, if the patient can be made to breathe deeply, especially over the liver, due to the presence of lymph; and often signs of a certain amount of fluid in the peritoneal cavity. Sometimes there is abundant effusion. The conditions with which the peritonitis happens to be associated often modify more or less the physical signs observed.

Course and Terminations.—Peritonitis is a very fatal disease, death being usually preceded by progressive prostration and collapse, as indicated by the aspect of the features; cold, clammy sweats; coldness of the extremities; and an extremely rapid, feeble, and irregular pulse. The pain in the abdomen often ceases, sometimes suddenly; and the tympanites may disappear. Sometimes large quantities of a dark fluid containing altered blood are expelled from the stomach and bowels, without any effort. Low nervous symptoms frequently set in, but the intellect may remain clear almost to the last. Occasionally death seems to result from asphyxia or coma. Should recovery take place, there is a gradual subsidence of the symptoms, and among the chief signs of improvement are a favourable change in the expression; increase in the force and fulness of the pulse; relief of constipation; and increase in the quantity of urine. Peritonitis is said to terminate occasionally by *crisis*, with critical discharges, but this must be an extremely rare event.

Varieties.—The description just given applies to the ordinary run of cases of more or less general peritonitis. It happens, however, not uncommonly that one or more of the local symptoms may be entirely absent. Thus in certain forms there may be no vomiting whatever; while constipation is in some instances easily overcome, or there is actual diarrhoea. Sometimes cases of acute peritonitis are absolutely *latent* from first to last, which may be due to the mental condition of the patient, but not invariably. In other instances it runs an extremely rapid course, the symptoms being evidently of a septic nature; or those indicative of the "typhoid state" may speedily develop. Special varieties,

as the *perforative* and *puerperal*, present their own peculiar features. In *local* peritonitis the pain and tenderness tend to be correspondingly limited; other abdominal symptoms are not likely to be so pronounced; the phenomena of inflammatory fever are common when the peritonitis is of a plastic nature, or when it leads to a localized collection of pus; and physical signs of these conditions may be detected. A peritonitis which begins locally may, however, subsequently become general. It may be mentioned here that pneumonia or pleurisy not uncommonly occur as complications of acute peritonitis, and these will modify the clinical history.

Diagnosis.—It is important to bear in mind the possibility of acute peritonitis being *latent*, should there be any condition present likely to originate this disease. In some instances it cannot be distinguished from any other septic condition, except by the circumstances under which it occurs. The principal affections presenting abdominal symptoms from which it has to be distinguished are cramp or colic; muscular rheumatism of the abdominal walls; enteritis; enteralgia and other neuralgic painful affections within the abdomen; the passage of a gall-stone or renal calculus; and certain cases of hysteria, attended with tympanites and other local symptoms closely simulating peritonitis. The diagnosis is founded on:—1. The *history* of the case, as to the exciting cause and mode of onset. 2. The *aspect* of the patient, which usually suggests grave constitutional disturbance in peritonitis, while there is no evidence of hysteria. 3. The *posture* of the patient, and state of absolute rest as regards the body. 4. The *local symptoms*, especially the severity and characters of the pain; marked superficial hyperæsthesia and tenderness; vomiting; and constipation. 5. The *physical signs*, as evidencing much tympanites, with perhaps a certain amount of fluid, and possibly the presence of lymph. 6. The existence of more or less *pyrexia*, often accompanied with special characters of the pulse, tongue, and urine. 7. The *progress* of the case. Local peritonitis is usually readily diagnosed by the associated symptoms and objective signs.

Prognosis.—Acute peritonitis is always a highly dangerous affection, but its gravity differs materially according to its cause. *Perforative* peritonitis is extremely fatal; and next in order of danger come the *puerperal* variety, and those cases which are associated with pyæmia and other forms of blood-poisoning. *Traumatic* and *local* varieties are much less serious. Among the unsavourable symptoms may be mentioned those indicative of septicæmia; of the typhoid state, with low nervous phenomena: and great dyspnoea. The condition of the pulse will be a guide in determining the prognosis. The duration of fatal cases may vary from twenty-four or forty-eight hours to three or four weeks, but they do not often extend beyond a week.

Treatment.—No exact rules for the treatment of acute peritonitis can be laid down, as the management of this disease has to be materially modified under different circumstances, and it will only be practicable to give general instructions on the subject. It must be premised that any cause which is setting up or intensifying peritonitis must be at once removed, if possible, and should be carefully sought for in doubtful cases. The main indications for treatment are to procure rest for the affected parts; to subdue the inflammatory process, and promote the absorption of the inflammatory products; to sustain the strength of the patient, and treat symptoms; and to have recourse to operative measures

in appropriate cases. These indications are carried out by the following agents and methods :

1. The patient must be kept absolutely at rest in the recumbent posture, and the knees may be flexed over a pillow. It is often desirable to employ a cradle or other apparatus to take off the weight of the bedclothes from the abdomen. A woollen jacket might be worn, and the hands covered, so that the patient may be able to keep his arms outside the bed, and move them about as he likes. The *diet* requires the most careful attention in cases of acute peritonitis. The general rule to be followed is to give as little food as possible by the mouth. In many instances it is best to support the patient entirely by nutrient enemata, not only when it is essential to obtain rest for the stomach, but also because this organ is often unable to retain or to digest any kind of food. *Alcoholic stimulants*, which are frequently needed, it may be in considerable quantities, can be introduced in a similar way. In some cases small quantities of iced milk and soda-water, or of beef-tea or meat-juices, may be given with advantage at more or less frequent intervals. The judicious administration of small pieces of ice is also of much service to relieve thirst. Some patients prefer something warm, and then Treves recommends a few spoonfuls of hot water, or of weak tea made hot, or of beef-tea at a like temperature. He also states that "very often great relief is given by allowing a fairly copious draught of fluid, which is soon rejected, and which—as it were, by washing out the stomach—leaves the patient for awhile infinitely comforted." Injections of fluid into the rectum may be useful in relieving thirst. When diarrhoea is present, or the bowels are acting freely, rectal feeding cannot be adopted; but in these cases the stomach is, as a rule, not so irritable, so that nutriment and stimulants can, with due care, be administered by the mouth, as they may in other cases where vomiting is not present. Attention should always be paid to the mouth, to see that it is properly cleansed, and the tongue kept moist.

2. The *removal of blood* by venesection, or by the application of a large number of leeches over the abdomen, is a measure which has been very commonly adopted in the treatment of peritonitis, in order to check or subdue the inflammatory process, and certainly it seems to be more serviceable in this than in other serous inflammations; but, on the other hand, there are cases in which bleeding is absolutely contra-indicated, so that all the circumstances of each individual case must be carefully considered before having recourse to this treatment. It is when a plastic or localized peritonitis occurs in a healthy, strong, and plethoric subject that withdrawal of blood is indicated, and then only in the early stages. When the disease is of a septic nature; if the patient is weak, either constitutionally or from any pre-existing illness; or if the inflammatory process is advanced, it is decidedly injurious to take away any blood. The balance of evidence is opposed to bleeding in puerperal peritonitis. The application of leeches is, in my opinion, much preferable to venesection, the number employed varying from 6 to 10, 20, 30, or even more in appropriate cases.

Mercurialization, by means of calomel administered with opium, is another very common mode of treatment adopted in cases of peritonitis, but it appears to me to be as useless, or even injurious, in this as in other serous inflammations. Opium has generally been regarded as a remedy of great value in acute peritonitis, for various purposes; and is usually given in the form of pill—gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ -ij, repeated every two, three, or

four hours, according to circumstances. The present tendency, however, is against the use of this drug, and Treves advises to give as little as possible. Hypodermic injection of morphine is often decidedly useful, to avert death from shock in the early stages of certain cases, but more particularly to relieve pain, but it must also be employed with discretion. In the really septic forms but very little morphine is called for, and often none at all (Treves). Quinine in full doses has been recommended in low forms of peritonitis. Aconite, veratrum viride, and digitalis have also been employed in some varieties of the disease, with the view of checking the progress of the inflammation, but these are dangerous drugs in such cases.

3. *Local applications* over the abdomen are often of decided value in peritonitis, such as hot linseed-meal poultices, anodyne or turpentine fomentations, spongio-piline, or sinapisms. The application of cold to the abdomen, by means of compresses frequently changed; flannels dipped in iced water; or the ice-bag, has been recommended by different writers. In the more advanced stages a blister might be beneficial in some cases, for the purpose of aiding the absorption of inflammatory products, especially when localized.

4. The chief *symptoms* requiring attention in acute peritonitis are pain; thirst; vomiting; tympanites; constipation or diarrhoea; dyspnœa; and those indicative of septicaemia, adynamia, or the typhoid state. Thirst has been already sufficiently alluded to. Sickness might possibly be controlled by small quantities of an effervescent mixture with hydrocyanic acid and morphine; or by creasote in drop doses. Tympanites is best relieved usually by enemata of turpentine, or by the passage of a long tube *per rectum*; washing out the stomach has been found useful in some instances. Puncture of the colon with a minute trochar may be had recourse to in extreme cases, if other measures fail. With regard to the action of the bowels, the rule has for a long period been generally recognized that aperients are to be absolutely avoided in acute peritonitis, although at one time they were employed in the routine treatment of this disease. Lawson Tait has, however, revived the use of these agents under particular circumstances, and is supported by Treves, the object being to empty the intestines of micro-organisms and their products, as well as of other chemical substances which are liable to cause general septic intoxication. They are, therefore, really intended rather for the treatment of certain conditions with which peritonitis happens to be associated. As Treves states, aperients are of no avail in established general peritonitis; they are useless in septic peritonitis, and dangerous in true perforative peritonitis. Should diarrhoea demand any treatment, it would be best to give a starch and opium enema. The other symptoms mentioned must be dealt with on ordinary principles.

5. The questions relating to *operative procedures* in cases of acute peritonitis have now come into conspicuous prominence. They belong, however, entirely to the domain of surgery, and for most valuable information on this part of the subject reference may be made to Mr. Treves's lectures.

II. CHRONIC PERITONITIS.

Aëtiology.—Limited adhesions in connection with the peritoneum are not uncommon, for which there is no obvious cause. Chronic peritonitis, as a definite morbid condition, may be met with:—1. As a sequel of one or more acute attacks. 2. After repeated paracentesis for ascites. 3. In connection with chronic diseases of abdominal organs, such as cirrhosis or cancer of the liver, or chronic ulcer of the stomach or intestines; or with abdominal tumours. 4. Associated with the formation of morbid growths in the peritoneum, especially cancer or tubercle. 5. In cases of chronic alcoholism, Bright's disease, rheumatism, gout, and other conditions possibly.

Anatomical Characters.—These necessarily vary greatly in different cases, both in their nature and extent. In a general way they may be described as thickening of the peritoneum, sometimes carried to an extreme degree; adhesions, in the form of bands, or of more or less extensive matting together of the organs; accumulation of a variable amount of fluid, which ranges from mere serum to actual pus, or contains an admixture of blood, and is usually confined within loculi limited by the adhesions. In some cases large masses of organized lymph are seen; and much pigment is often present. The evidences of chronic peritonitis may be associated with morbid growths, especially cancer or tubercle.

Symptoms.—In some cases there are no clinical signs of chronic peritonitis whatever, or only such as are very obscure; in others merely *physical signs* are observed. When present the symptoms include various subjective sensations in the abdomen; disturbance of the alimentary canal; sometimes evidences of pressure; with generally more or less constitutional disorder. Abdominal uneasiness or more or less actual pain may be experienced, which, however, is never severe, liable to come and go, often colicky, and increased by shaking the body. Sometimes there is a sense of local soreness or heat. Tenderness is common, being frequently more marked in particular spots. The digestive organs are generally disturbed, but it is often difficult to say how far this is due to the peritoneal condition or to other causes. Chronic peritonitis does, however, tend to give rise to constipation; and bands of adhesion may lead to absolute intestinal obstruction. In chronic tubercular peritonitis diarrhoea is common, owing to intestinal ulceration. Occasionally jaundice, ascites, or anasarca of the legs are observed, as the result of pressure. More or less emaciation; a dry and harsh skin; occasional pyrexia, tending towards a hectic type; and other general symptoms often indicate constitutional disturbance. It is probable, however, that these are in most cases chiefly due to the condition with which the peritonitis is associated.

Physical examination is, as a rule, of little or no service in detecting limited adhesions, but it often yields important information in cases of pronounced and more or less general chronic peritonitis. 1. The abdomen is liable to be *enlarged*, and this may have first attracted the patient's attention. The enlargement is seldom very great; it is usually regular in shape, though not always quite symmetrical, and there may be an appearance of flattening in front. 2. The *tactile sensations* are seldom uniform over the entire surface. Fluctuation may be detected in parts,

but only indistinctly; while it is often very limited, or is felt in unusual situations, owing to the fluid being enclosed in locular spaces. In other regions there may be a more firm and solid sensation, or even distinct growths are felt sometimes. The abdomen may be curiously movable as a whole. 3. *Dulness* is frequently very extensive, owing to the arrangement of the fluid, and it may lie chiefly in front. In some instances tympanitic and dull sounds are heard over contiguous and irregular spots. There may be a sense of much *resistance* on percussion. 4. *Friction-fremitus* and *friction-sound* can sometimes be detected during breathing. 5. *Change of posture* frequently produces little or no effect, on account of the fluid being loculated.

Treatment.—The main indication in most cases is to treat the *constitutional state* with which chronic peritonitis is associated, by means of cod-liver oil, *tonics*, mild ferruginous preparations, light nutritious diet, a suitable climate, and proper hygienic conditions. Iodide of potassium or iodide of iron may be tried internally, with the view of removing the inflammatory products; as well as local counter-irritation over the abdomen, especially by means of iodine liniment or ointment. This region should be covered with cotton-wool and well bandaged. I have known considerable benefit follow in simple cases from systematic pressure, obtained by carefully bandaging the abdomen. Pain and constipation must be relieved by the usual means, but caution must be exercised in giving opium, and also in administering strong purgatives. Hot-air or vapour baths may be useful if the peritoneum contains much fluid. It may become necessary to have recourse to paracentesis; and in tubercular peritonitis *laparotomy* is now not uncommonly practised, often aided by washing out the cavity of the peritoneum with *antiseptics*, or by drainage.

III. MORBID GROWTHS IN THE PERITONEUM.

The most important morbid formations met with in the peritoneum are *tubercle* and *cancer*. *Hydatids* are occasionally found; and very rarely tumours of other kinds. The folds of the peritoneum, especially the omentum, frequently enclose a great quantity of fat.

Tubercle occurs in the peritoneum, either over limited patches corresponding to intestinal ulcers; as a part of acute miliary tuberculosis; or extensively, secondary to tubercle in other parts.

Cancer is met with in the form of scirrhus, encephaloid, or colloid, the omentum being a comparatively frequent seat of the last-mentioned variety. Usually the peritoneum is involved secondarily, by extension from one of the abdominal organs, but in rare instances it is affected primarily and solely.

These morbid growths tend to originate ascites, or acute or chronic peritonitis, and it is to these conditions that their local symptoms are mainly due. Sometimes fluid collects with extreme rapidity in cancer. There will also probably be more or less general symptoms. In cases of chronic tuberculosis, the omentum is often drawn up into a firm, flattened mass, lying across the upper part of the abdomen, which can be felt through the abdominal walls.

Colloid in the omentum yields the following physical signs:—1. The enlargement of the abdomen may be very great, but is wanting in uniformity; the umbilicus appears stretched, but not everted usually, although it may be pushed out considerably. 2. Firm irregular masses

can generally be felt, and even if fluid is present, fluctuation is very indistinct. 3. Dulness is usually elicited extensively over the front of the abdomen. 4. Change of posture produces no effect, unless there is much fluid present. 5. The aspirateur or exploratory trochar may bring away a slimy gelatinous fluid; and a similar fluid is occasionally discharged by vomiting, or *per rectum*.

IV. ABDOMINAL PERFORATIONS AND RUPTURES.

Apart from the effects of traumatic injury, *perforations* and *ruptures* are liable to take place in connection with the abdominal contents, and in order to avoid repetition, it will be convenient to indicate the chief facts pertaining to this subject in the present chapter, as the peritoneum so commonly suffers in these cases.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The principal structures which are liable to give way, and the pathological conditions which cause these lesions, may be thus summarized:—1. Perforation of the stomach or intestines from within, especially in connection with ulceration or the resulting cicatrices; gangrene; cancer very rarely; the action of corrosive poisons, especially on the stomach; or mechanical irritation and destruction, particularly by foreign bodies introduced from without, but sometimes merely by hardened faeces, worms, or gall-stones. The appendix vermiciformis must be specially borne in mind as a frequent seat of perforation. 2. Rupture of an abscess, hydatid-cyst, or soft cancer in the liver. 3. Perforation of the gall-bladder, either by gall-stones which have caused ulceration; by the distoma hepaticum; or as a result of cancer. 4. Rupture of the spleen, from extreme general enlargement and softening, a broken down infarct, or an abscess. 5. Various ruptures in connection with the uterus and its appendages. 6. Bursting of any accumulation in the pelvis of the kidney; of an abscess or cyst in this organ; or of the bladder from over-distension. 7. Bursting of an abscess unconnected with any organ; or of enlarged and softened absorbent glands. 8. Rupture of an aneurism. 9. Perforation of a hollow viscus from without, owing to the destruction of its coats by some solid tumour. 10. Bursting of a localized peritoneal accumulation. 11. Very exceptionally perforation of the diaphragm, with escape of some fluid-collection from the chest into the abdominal cavity. 12. Rupture of a greatly dilated receptaculum chyli, as an extremely rare event.

These lesions usually occur without any immediate *exciting cause*, but certain of them may be brought on by some mechanical disturbance, such as vomiting, coughing, or laughing; straining at stool; or, in the case of ulceration of the alimentary canal, by indulging in excess of irritating articles of food, or in such articles as cause much flatulent distension.

Anatomical Characters.—The perforation or rupture may take place into different parts, and the pathological consequences will vary accordingly. 1. Most frequently the opening communicates with the peritoneum, into which foreign matters are poured more or less freely, exciting *perforative peritonitis*, severe and rapid in proportion to the quantity and irritant or septic nature of the materials thus introduced into the sac; the perforation may, however, be on a limited scale, and the results are correspondingly localized. 2. Sometimes the opening takes place into the cellular tissue in certain parts within the abdomen, local inflammation, ending in the formation of an abscess, being set up in this

structure. 3. Not uncommonly one hollow organ forms an adhesion with another, and when perforation occurs, a communication is established between the two viscera; or it may unite with a solid organ, and when perforation is completed, this organ may make up for the deficiency, and thus prevent serious consequences. 4. Union may be set up with the abdominal wall, so that ultimately an opening is formed on the external surface.

Symptoms.—From the facts just stated it will be evident that the symptoms indicating abdominal perforation must differ considerably, and there may be none at all, or death may take place almost instantaneously, as from rupture of an aneurism. As a rule there have been previous clinical evidences of some morbid condition in connection with which the lesion occurs. Presuming the perforation to be sudden and of any extent, and that the communication takes place into the peritoneal cavity, this event is usually indicated by a sudden intense pain at the seat of rupture, often of a burning character, which spreads rapidly over the abdomen, being sometimes attended with a feeling as if something were pouring out; while at the same time there are the ordinary signs of more or less collapse or shock, and death may speedily ensue from this cause, or from haemorrhage. The abdomen rapidly swells up, and gas collects in the peritoneum, causing extreme tympanites, with other peculiar signs. Should the patient rally, acute peritonitis will probably be speedily set up, the course of which is usually very rapid, and the termination fatal in the large majority of cases, though recent experience has proved that operative interference gives a more hopeful prospect under certain circumstances. If the perforation takes place into the cellular tissue, there will be signs of local inflammation, followed by abscess; with general pyrexia. The attacks of sudden pain and collapse may be repeated, this probably indicating either extension of the perforation, or the occurrence of fresh lesions.

Diagnosis.—If any morbid condition is known to exist which might lead to abdominal perforation, the sudden occurrence of the local and general symptoms just indicated would justify the diagnosis of this untoward event, and the subsequent course of the case would probably soon clear up any doubt. Should there have been no previous evidence or knowledge of such a condition, however, there is often much obscurity, but perforation must always be borne in mind when urgent abdominal symptoms set in, accompanied with signs of collapse or shock.

Prognosis.—This is always exceedingly grave, but the termination is not invariably fatal. Much will depend upon the condition of the patient; the cause of the perforation; the structure into which it takes place; its seat and extent; the treatment adopted; and other circumstances.

Treatment.—In any case of abdominal perforation the patient must be kept *absolutely at rest*, and this applies still more emphatically to the organ which is the seat of the lesion. In the case of the stomach or bowels, there should be complete abstinence from food by the mouth, and only small nutrient enemata administered, or nutrient suppositories might be used. Opium or subcutaneous injection of morphine are the great remedies for counteracting shock, relieving pain, and checking peristaltic action. Collapse must also be treated by free administration of *stimulants*, which, if the alimentary canal is affected, must be given by enemata; the application of heat to the extremities; and the use of sinapisms. Hot fomentations may be applied over the abdomen.

Should peritonitis or other form of inflammation be set up, appropriate treatment must be adopted. After perforation of the stomach or intestine it is extremely important to avoid giving anything by the mouth for some time; and to refrain from any attempt to act upon the bowels by means of aperients. Operative interference is called for in suitable cases, and has recently given promising results.

V. ASCITES.—DROPSY OF THE PERITONEUM.

Aetiology.—Ascites is merely a localized dropsy of the peritoneum, and the chief causes from which it may result are:—1. Pressure upon the branches of the portal vein within the liver, especially from cirrhosis and other forms of chronic contraction; or from infiltrated cancer. 2. Pressure upon the portal trunk in the fissure outside the liver. It is from this cause that ascites is most frequently associated with many diseases of the liver, such as cancer, albuminoid disease, hydatids, or abscess; either projections from the organ pressing on the vein, or the glands in the portal fissure being simultaneously affected. Inflammatory thickening from peri-hepatitis; any tumour in the vicinity; or an aneurism may also cause pressure on the portal trunk. 3. Internal obstruction of the portal vein by a thrombus. 4. Pressure upon the inferior vena cava, after it receives the hepatic trunk. 5. Cardiac or pulmonary diseases obstructing the venous circulation, which in time originate organic changes in the liver. 6. Renal disease. 7. Chronic peritonitis; or morbid formations in the peritoneum, these probably originating dropsy chiefly by causing pressure upon the smaller vessels, or even upon veins of some size. 8. Exposure to cold; suppression of discharges or of chronic skin-diseases; and other causes which may lead to internal active congestion. The reality of this class of causes is very questionable; but cases of ascites have been attributed to them. Not uncommonly more than one cause is accountable for this condition.

Anatomical Characters.—The quantity of dropsical fluid which may collect in the peritoneum varies extremely, but it not infrequently amounts to two gallons or more. It distends and macerates the tissues in proportion to its amount. In characters it is usually in the main watery in consistence; clear and transparent; colourless or faintly yellow; and alkaline in reaction, or very rarely neutral or acid. It may be yellow, milky or chylous, turbid, dirty-looking, stained with bile or blood, gelatinous, or mixed with soft fibrinous masses. The composition of ascitic fluid is far from uniform, but generally it contains much albumin; occasionally it yields fibrin, urea, or cholesterol. Ascites tends to displace or compress the abdominal structures, as well as those within the chest. The heart may be considerably raised.

Symptoms.—The only symptoms directly due to ascites are those dependent upon the physical effects of the fluid. There is more or less discomfort and sense of fulness, in proportion to its quantity; or aching may be felt in the loins. Digestive disturbances are common, flatulence and constipation being often prominent symptoms, and sometimes vomiting takes place. Owing to interference with the diaphragm, dyspnoea is likely to be complained of, and may be urgent, being much increased often by flatulence, and by the recumbent posture. The heart's action may also be disturbed, as evidenced by palpitation, irregularity, or sometimes a tendency to syncope. Anasarca of the legs is liable to follow ascites, resulting from pressure by the fluid on the

inferior vena cava. Sooner or later the veins of the abdominal wall become enlarged. When ascites is caused by direct pressure on this vein, of course anasarca of the legs is observed simultaneously with, or even before the peritoneal dropsy. Albuminuria may be induced by pressure on the renal veins, the urine being also concentrated and deficient in quantity. The skin is often dry and harsh.

Physical Signs.—These require careful consideration, and in the majority of cases they are sufficiently characteristic, but necessarily depend upon the quantity of fluid present. 1. The skin usually appears stretched and thinned to a variable degree, smooth, shining, or presenting *lineæ albicantes*; the superficial veins are often enlarged; and the umbilicus is stretched, everted or pouched out, or finally obliterated. 2. The abdomen is more or less enlarged, in some cases enormously; quite symmetrical; and of a rounded form, though it tends to bulge in the flanks or in the hypogastric and iliac regions, according to the position of the patient. The greatest circumference is about the level of the umbilicus, which is the highest point of the abdomen; the thorax appears small and depressed, and its lower margin may be everted, or the ensiform cartilage is sometimes bent sharply up. Usually a history can be obtained that the enlargement commenced below; and that it increased steadily, though slowly in most cases. 3. Abdominal respiratory movements are frequently either deficient or absent; and breathing is generally hurried and shallow. 4. The surface of the abdomen feels quite regular and uniform; and fluctuation is generally readily elicited from side to side, or in other directions. 5. Dulness is observed first towards the lumbar regions, if the patient lies in the supine position; then in the lower part of the abdomen; and it extends by degrees towards the front and upwards, until finally it may be elicited over the whole surface. The umbilical region is the last to retain the tympanitic sound, and it is often excessive for a time in this locality. When the patient sits up, the prominence in front between the recti becomes tympanitic. 6. Auscultation affords negative signs. 7. Change of posture gives important signs, namely, that the fluid can occasionally be seen moving as the position is altered; the form of the abdomen is modified, bulging being observed in the most dependent part; while the seat of dulness and fluctuation is changed. 8. Examination *per rectum* reveals the sensation of the resistance of fluid. 9. Examination *per vaginam* indicates that the vagina is short, and the uterus pushed down or flexed; occasionally a pouch projects through the vulva. 10. Any fluid which is removed by tapping usually consists of mere serum, containing generally a considerable amount of albumin. 11. The heart may be obviously displaced upwards and to the left, occasionally a basic murmur being thus originated.

Diagnosis.—There are two chief points to be attended to in the diagnosis of ascites, namely:—1. To determine whether fluid is present; and to distinguish enlargement due to this cause from that dependent upon other morbid conditions. 2. To make out the pathological cause of the dropsy. The chief *general abdominal enlargements* which may simulate ascites are those associated with great obesity, with much fat in the omentum; a flabby relaxed state of the abdominal walls, with flatulence; considerable subcutaneous œdema; tympanites from any cause; peritonitis, especially chronic; colloid cancer in the omentum; a greatly dilated stomach; an ovarian tumour; distension of the uterus with fluid, or a pregnant uterus; an extremely distended bladder; a large hydatid

tumour in connection with the liver or any other structure, or numerous hydatids in the peritoneum ; an enormous cyst or tumour of the kidney ; and a phantom tumour.

It is by *physical examination* that ascites is mainly distinguished from the conditions just enumerated, but it is important to observe that its ordinary signs may be modified or obscured by the co-existence of certain of these conditions ; by the association of the dropsy with a tumour, morbid growth, or enlarged organ ; by the fluid being either very small in quantity, or on the other hand extremely abundant ; by the mesentery being so short as not to allow the intestines to come forward ; or by the existence of adhesions limiting the fluid. When ascites is associated with any solid enlargement, the latter may frequently be recognized by "dipping" or making sudden firm pressure with the fingers, by which the fluid is pushed aside and the firm mass reached ; or in doubtful cases the fluid can be removed, and satisfactory examination then carried out.

Important aid in the diagnosis of ascites may also be derived from :—
1. A careful *general history* of the case ; and the conditions of the patient with respect to *age* and *general appearance*. 2. The *history of the enlargement*, as to whether it has been more or less acute or chronic in its progress, and whether it has fluctuated or steadily progressed ; as well as its seat of origin, and directions of increase. 3. The accompanying *symptoms* ; and the condition of the *main organs*, which should all be thoroughly examined. 4. The *results of treatment*, not forgetting the use of the aspirateur or trochar ; of the catheter ; and of measures for clearing out the alimentary canal.

The characters of most of the enlargements mentioned above are described in other parts of this work, to which descriptions reference must be made for individual diagnosis. It is necessary, however, to point out specially the characters distinguishing *cystic tumour of the ovary* from *ascites*. 1. *Physical signs of ovarian tumour.* (i.) The umbilicus is often thinned and flattened out, but not everted or pouched out. (ii.) The enlargement is not so globular in shape : projects anteriorly ; does not bulge in dependent parts ; and is frequently not quite symmetrical, this being accurately determined by semicircular measurements, or by comparing the distance from the umbilicus to the anterior superior iliac spine on each side. The greatest circumference is said to be about an inch below the umbilicus, in the recumbent posture ; and the measurement from the ensiform cartilage to the umbilicus is generally shortened. (iii.) As a rule fluctuation is indistinct ; the enlargement feels more or less firm and resistant, or even nodulated ; while the sensations are not uniform over the entire surface. Frequently on deep pressure greater resistance or tension is felt on one side than the other. (iv.) Percussion reveals dulness, chiefly in front of the abdomen, even in the umbilical region, while the flanks are tympanitic, and the dulness often extends more towards one side than the other. The prominence between the recti in the sitting posture is dull. There is usually a sense of considerable resistance on percussion. (v.) Auscultation may detect a pressure-murmur over one iliac artery. (vi.) Change of posture does not produce the alterations observed in ascites. (vii.) Examination *per rectum* detects a firm resistance. (viii.) The vagina is long and narrow above, the uterus being raised. (ix.) An exploratory trochar may bring away a thick, glutinous, or coloured fluid, which sometimes contains cholesterol : and after this has

been removed solid portions of the tumour may be felt more readily. 2. There is no history of any cause, or evidence of any organic disease likely to originate ascites. 3. Frequently the patient has observed that the enlargement commenced below, but from one side. 4. Symptoms which often accompany ascites are absent; while oedema of the legs is commonly an early symptom of ovarian tumour, owing to pressure on the veins, which may be entirely or chiefly confined to one side.

With regard to the diagnosis of the *cause* of ascites, this can generally be made out by a satisfactory investigation as regards the history, symptoms, and physical signs, directed to the liver, heart, and kidneys. The distinctive characters referable to the ascites itself have already been pointed out in the chapter on DROPSY. Obscure causes can only be determined by exclusion; and by a thorough consideration of all the circumstances bearing upon the individual case.

Treatment.—The measures adopted in the treatment of dropsy generally are applicable for cases of ascites, but the medicinal remedies which affect it most powerfully are *hydragogue purgatives*, though these often fail. Copaiba and its resin have been found decidedly efficacious in some instances, acting as *diuretics*. Calomel and digitalis have also been specially recommended. Faradisation of the abdominal walls has been said to have had considerable influence in curing or temporarily relieving ascites. There are two measures which demand special notice in relation to peritoneal dropsy, namely, *paracentesis abdominis*, and the employment of *pressure*. It has been the custom to look upon paracentesis as an operation which should only be performed as a last resource, when the fluid has become so abundant as to cause urgent symptoms. When the ascites is a part of general dropsy from cardiac or renal disease, the amount of fluid is not often so great as to need its removal by operation, nor could this really serve any beneficial purpose as a rule, except in affording temporary relief, although occasionally ascites from cardiac disease has been cured by this method in my experience. Temporary improvement can only be expected also in certain cases in which it is merely a local dropsy, as when ascites is associated with cancer of the liver; but there is one class of cases in which paracentesis may not uncommonly be performed as a curative measure, so far as the ascites is concerned, namely, when it is dependent upon *cirrhosis of the liver*. In such cases I have for many years had recourse to *paracentesis* as a systematic method of treatment. In some instances one such operation has sufficed for a cure; usually it has to be repeated, and I maintain that the fluid may with advantage be taken away again and again should it reaccumulate, due care being of course exercised in the performance of the operation, and in the subsequent management of the case. My own results have been highly satisfactory, and other observers have also recorded favourable results from this operation; therefore, without entering into any discussion here as to how the beneficial effects are produced, it appears to me justifiable to insist upon the employment of *paracentesis abdominis as a means of cure*, in connection with ascites from uncomplicated cirrhosis of the liver, should the fluid be at all abundant, and show no signs of being got rid of by other methods of treatment. I am fully aware that recovery does sometimes follow merely general tonic and other modes of treatment, but this is such a rare event that sole reliance cannot be placed on these measures, though they may aid materially the treatment by operation, and some of them may be adopted as adjuncts after paracentesis. With

regard to the method of operation, a suitable trochar and cannula, the aspirateur, or Southey's tubes may be employed. In cases where ascites rapidly returns after paracentesis, permanent drainage has been recommended and practised with success. Pressure is also often of much service, the abdomen being tightly bound by a broad flannel roller, as soon as all danger of undue irritation has ceased. I may state that seldom has any injurious consequence followed paracentesis in my experience; and in some almost hopeless cases permanent recovery has been brought about. The employment of poultices of digitalis leaves, along with pressure, has appeared to me to do good in some instances.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

DISEASES OF THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES.

CLINICAL CHARACTERS AND INVESTIGATION.

SYMPTOMS referable to the alimentary canal are of such common occurrence, that it has properly become a matter of routine in the examination of a patient to make enquiry concerning certain of them. The following general sketch will indicate the clinical phenomena which may be met with, and the course to be pursued in their investigation.

1. **Morbid sensations** are very commonly experienced over some part of the abdomen, the principal being pain or tenderness: heat or burning in the epigastrium: a sense of sinking, dragging, or tightness: discomfort, weight, and fulness after food, or, on the other hand, a feeling of emptiness even after a full meal, with constant craving for food: and abnormal movements within the abdomen. *Cardialgia* or *heartburn* are terms applied to a peculiar sensation of heat or burning in the epigastrium, which extends upwards, as if along the oesophagus, to the throat; or which in some cases spreads more or less over the chest. With regard to *pain*, it is very important not only to investigate this symptom carefully in all the usual particulars, but also in many cases to ascertain whether and in what way it is influenced by food or drink in general, or by special articles of diet: by vomiting and eructation: by defecation or the passage of flatus: by posture or movement: by coughing or deep inspiration: by mental disturbance: or, in certain instances, by the periods of menstruation. In determining whether there is tenderness, it is well to take off the patient's attention, and its site and extent, degree, and apparent depth must be made out as accurately as possible; while it must be noted whether it appears to be connected with any evident morbid condition, such as a tumour. These remarks apply to all kinds of abdominal pain or tenderness. When the stomach is affected, uncomfortable or painful sensations are often referred to the back, between the shoulders; to the front of the chest: or round the sides, especially the left.

2. The sensations as regards inclination for **food** and **drink** are often altered. Appetite may be deficient or lost—*anorexia*—in some cases the

feeling amounting to complete disgust for food; excessive, both as to quantity and frequency—*bulimia*; attended with a desire or dislike for special articles; or altogether depraved—*pica*. Thirst is a frequent symptom, and there may be a particular inclination for certain drinks; on the other hand, an antipathy to fluids is sometimes observed.

3. The process of **digestion** is frequently abnormal in various ways. Hence decomposition or fermentation is set up in the contents of the alimentary canal, leading to the production of gases, especially carbonic anhydride, hydrogen, hydric sulphide, and marsh-gas; occasionally of alcohol; of different acids (lactic, butyric, acetic, etc.), or acrid substances; or of vegetable growths (*sarcinae ventriculi* and *torulae*). Great discomfort may thus arise from flatulent distension, either gastric, intestinal, or both; abdominal gurgling or rumbling—*borborygmi*; gaseous eructations; or acidity and its accompaniments. Acidity may also arise from excessive secretion or hyperacidity of the gastric juice. Poisonous ptomaines and other substances are formed in the intestines, which may probably give rise to local symptoms. What influence micro-organisms in the alimentary canal have in originating symptoms associated with the digestive process, cannot at present be definitely determined, but it is probable that they not uncommonly partly account for certain of them.

4. **Expulsive acts** are often excited in connection with the stomach, with the view of getting rid of offending materials, namely, **vomiting** and **retching**, which may or may not be attended with a feeling of nausea; **regurgitation** of food; or **eructation** of gases, liquids, or other substances. With regard to the mechanism of these acts, vomiting is not only attended with contraction of the muscular coat of the stomach, but also of the abdominal and thoracic muscles, while the cardiac end of the oesophagus is relaxed. Retching is the same act, but ineffectual, merely air being expelled, either because the stomach is empty, or because the lower part of the oesophagus is spasmodically closed. Regurgitation and eructation are simply due to contraction of the stomach, and some individuals can regurgitate their food at will. In infants the act of vomiting appears to be much of this character. A special form of eructation or regurgitation has been named *pyrosis* or *water-brash*, in which, often after painful sensations in the epigastrium, especially a sense of burning, a quantity of clear watery fluid rises into the mouth, generally tasteless and neutral, but in some cases sour or acrid and acid in reaction. This fluid has been supposed by some to be mainly saliva; others have considered it to be pancreatic juice; but probably most of it comes from the stomach itself.

5. Blood may be poured out into the alimentary canal, and either rejected from the stomach—**haematemesis**; or passed by the bowel—**melæna**.

6. The bowels are very commonly irregular in their action, either in the direction of **constipation** or **diarrhoea**. It is frequently desirable to make particular enquiry into this matter, as patients offer general statements which may easily mislead. The chief points to be ascertained are the frequency of the act of defaecation; whether it is attended by any straining; whether any unusual sensations precede, accompany, or follow the action of the bowels; and the quantity and characters of the materials discharged.

7. The **tongue** gives important information as to the state of the digestive organs, the particulars to be noted being:—*a.* Its size and

shape, and whether it is marked by the teeth. *b.* The colour of its mucous covering, especially at the tip and edges. *c.* Its condition as to dryness or moistness. *d.* The state of the surface, whether smooth, glazed, fissured, furrowed, etc. *e.* The size, shape, and colour of the various papillæ. *f.* The presence, extent, and characters of any fur over the dorsum. It may also be mentioned here that the mouth and throat are frequently affected when the alimentary canal is out of order; while a slimy, bitter, or otherwise disagreeable taste is often experienced; and the breath has an unpleasant odour.

8. In some cases abnormal sensations are referred to the lower part of the **rectum** or **anus**, such as pain, either constant, or only felt before, during, or after the act of defaecation; fulness, weight, heat or burning, itching, constriction, dragging, or frequent inclination to go to stool, with straining. Certain of these sensations are included under the term *tenesmus*. Hæmorrhoids are also of frequent occurrence.

9. It will readily be understood that any derangement of the digestive organs is very likely to affect the **general system** in various ways. Amongst other causes, the absorption of peptones formed in the process of digestion, or of ptomaines or other toxins, may produce general symptoms. These symptoms are numerous, and vary much in their exact nature in different cases. The most important include wasting, often accompanied with a sallow or anaemic aspect; a sense of debility, general discomfort, languor, malaise, and fatigue, with incapacity for effort, especially in the mornings and after meals; more or less pyrexia, with a dry and harsh skin, or, on the other hand, depression of temperature, with cold extremities and sweats; nervous symptoms, namely, congestive or neuralgic headache, or a feeling of weight and oppression in the head, giddiness, irritability and petulance, depression of spirits and apathy, inaptitude for any mental effort, confusion of ideas and failure in intellectual vigour, hypochondriasis, wakefulness, or drowsiness, with restless and unrefreshing sleep attended with disagreeable dreams, timidity and nervousness, pains in the limbs and back, chilliness or even rigors, especially in the evenings, creeping sensations over the body, or convulsions in children; disturbance of the heart's action, in the way of palpitation or irregularity, feebleness, sometimes accompanied with faintness or actual syncope, as well as with uncomfortable sensations in the cardiac region, the pulse being weak; dyspnœa, hiccup, or asthmatic attacks; oppression across the chest, and cough; changes in the urine, especially indicated by excess of lithates or sometimes of phosphates or oxalates, excessive or deficient acidity, and deficiency of chlorides; menstrual derangements; and skin-eruptions, such as urticaria, erythema, acne, or psoriasis.

10. A tumour or solid accumulation in connection with the stomach or intestines may cause **pressure** on neighbouring structures, and thus originate different symptoms.

11. **Physical examination** and other special methods are of great importance in relation to the clinical investigation of the alimentary canal. They may be summarized as follows:—*a.* Examination through the abdominal wall, by ordinary physical methods. *b.* The employment of means for *emptying the stomach or intestines*, in order to determine whether any changes are thus produced upon the signs observed in this way. This is of especial importance in relation to the intestines, as faecal accumulations are of very frequent occurrence. *c.* The *introduction of different materials* into the stomach or intestines, noting the effects

resulting therefrom. The details of the chief measures coming under this head will be more conveniently considered in relation to the conditions for the diagnosis of which they are severally intended. *d. Examination of materials discharged from the stomach by vomiting, eructation, or regurgitation;* as well as those evacuated from the bowel. Under particular circumstances, or for special purposes, it is requisite to employ measures for obtaining the contents of the stomach or bowels for investigation by artificial means, when they are not discharged spontaneously. In the case of the stomach, this is done with the view of determining the composition of the gastric juice; or of studying the digestion of different kinds of food, or of food at different stages of the digestive process. The nature and degree of the examination required will depend upon the circumstances of the case, but it should be a rule always to make a personal examination of vomited matters, at least so far as to observe their quantity and general characters; chemical or microscopical investigation is needed under special circumstances. Not uncommonly also an inspection of the stools is of much service in diagnosis, and should never be neglected if it is likely to afford useful information. Further details on these points will be given in their appropriate connections. It may be noted that gases discharged from the stomach or *per anum* sometimes require to be investigated. *e. Direct examination of accessible parts of the alimentary canal.* In the case of the stomach this is done usually by the passage of a bougie or other instrument along the oesophagus into this organ, a procedure only called for under exceptional circumstances. The inspection of its interior by the aid of the electric light is as yet scarcely practicable. The examination of the anus and lower bowel by various direct methods also comes under this category, and is much more frequently required. These parts can be inspected as well as felt, and for this purpose various specula and artificial illumination are employed. Digital investigation *per vaginam* may prove of much assistance in exploring the rectum. *f. Exploratory operations.* The alimentary canal affords some of the most frequent illustrations of the value of opening the abdomen, and exploring its contents for diagnostic purposes.

The chief abnormal conditions connected with the alimentary canal which are studied by the methods just indicated are gaseous collections, culminating in tympanitic distension; permanent dilatation of the stomach or of any part of the intestines; solid or fluid accumulations in their interior; the presence of inflammatory products in certain regions, or of thickening and adhesions resulting from inflammation; tumours or growths of various kinds; and displacement, spasmodic movements, or obstruction affecting any part of the alimentary tube. Obstruction at either of the orifices of the stomach is highly important, especially the pyloric, and the condition can usually be made out by physical and other methods of examination.

CHAPTER XXXV.

GENERAL THERAPEUTICS OF THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES.

1. Therapeutic Groups.—The purposes for which therapeutic agents may be used in relation to the alimentary canal are numerous, but at the same time definite, and it is very important for practical treatment in connection with this apparatus to have an intelligent and systematic knowledge of the several groups under which these agents are conveniently arranged. Those which influence the salivary secretion have already been referred to, and in the present connection it is only intended to deal with the therapeutics of the stomach and intestines. It must be noted, however, that many drugs which affect the gastric functions increase the flow of saliva as well, and may thus have an important influence upon the process of digestion in the stomach. It may also be mentioned that a considerable number of agents have more than one action upon this organ.

1. Gastric and Intestinal Stimulants.—Carminatives.—These agents stimulate temporarily the normal muscular movements of the stomach and intestines, especially the upper portion of the small bowel; and at the same time control or regulate them, allaying any tendency to irregular or spasmodic action, thus becoming not uncommonly valuable *antispasmodics*, and promoting the efficient movements of the walls of these viscera. In the case of the stomach, it is also believed that they may at the same time cause relaxation of the cardiac sphincter or lower end of the oesophagus, or sometimes of the pylorus. This class of remedies undoubtedly aid the digestive function; and they are also beneficially combined with other drugs which are likely to disturb the muscular action of the alimentary canal unduly, such as strong purgatives. Their most obvious and useful purpose, however, is to expel any undue accumulation of gas, thus relieving flatulent distension, and the uncomfortable or painful sensations associated therewith. The chief agents belonging to this group are solution of ammonia, carbonate of ammonium, and aromatic or foetid spirit of ammonia; alcohol, especially in the form of spirit; the various ethers, the compound spirit of ether being a very efficient preparation; condiments, especially mustard, horseradish, ginger, and capsicum; the aromatic volatile oils, and preparations containing them, such as oil of cinnamon, caraway, clove, peppermint, lavender, or cajeput, the waters prepared from certain umbelliferous fruits and other sources, the official spirits and essences containing volatile oils, and compound tincture of lavender; myrrh, asafoetida, ammoniacum, and galbanum; cardamoms, valerian, sumbul, and musk.

2. Gastric Sedatives.—The agents coming under this division may affect sensations connected with the stomach; its movements; or both. Practically the objects for which they are employed may be summed up as the relief of pain associated with this organ—*gastric analgesics*; the arrest of vomiting or nausea—*anti-emetics*; or the control of undue muscular

irritability of the stomach, in consequence of which the food is driven through the pylorus into the duodenum either in an undigested state, or before it has undergone proper gastric digestion. Of course the exact agents to be used for one or other of these purposes vary considerably under different circumstances, and the selection has to be made from the following list:—Solution of potash or soda in a diluted form; effervescent draughts, made with bicarbonate of sodium or potassium and tartaric or citric acid or lemon-juice; solution of lime; preparations of bismuth; oxalate of cerium; chloroform; chloral hydrate; hydrocyanic acid, or cherry-laurel water, which contains a definite proportion of this acid; creasote, carbolic acid, or sulpho-carbolate of sodium; opium or morphine; belladonna or atropine; and nitrate or oxide of silver in certain chronic cases. For the purpose of checking vomiting various special remedies may be serviceable under different circumstances, such as small doses of ipecacuanha wine, minute doses of strychnine, cocaine, phenazone and allied agents, and inhalation of nitrite of amyl. Some of these are used more particularly for sea-sickness.

3. *Gastric Tonics.*—The effects of these remedies are usually intended to be gradually produced, and more or less permanent, though some of them may also be employed for temporary purposes in relation to one particular object. Gastric tonics are given to improve the appetite, and create a sense of hunger; as well as to promote the muscular tone of the stomach, when this is impaired or lost. It is highly probable that many of them affect also the mucous membrane, bracing it up when relaxed, and influencing its vascular supply and nutrition, thus by degrees promoting the normal secretion of gastric juice, when this is deficient, and preventing undue formation of unhealthy muens. The chief gastric tonics are the dilute mineral acids; the simple vegetable bitters and aromatic bitters, namely, chiretta, gentian, calumba, taraxacum, cusparia, cascarilla, canella alba, quassia, chamomile, hop, orange and lemon peel; cinchona and quinine; nux vomica and strychnine; arsenic; and rhubarb or aloes in small doses.

4. *Agents influencing the Gastric Secretion.*—It is often desirable to stimulate directly the secretion of gastric juice, when this is deficient, and the agents which are employed for this purpose are named *peptogens*. They include carbonate of ammonium, and aromatic or foetid spirit of ammonia; alcohol in the form of some spirit or wine; alkalies and their bicarbonates, bicarbonate of sodium being generally given; condiments; the bitters and aromatic bitters, as well as cinchona and nux vomica; arsenic; antimony in minute doses; and ipecacuanha in doses of $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 grain. The opposite group may be termed *anti-peptogens*, the object of which is to check the flow of gastric juice when it is excessive; as well as of mucus and other fluids which come from the mucous lining of the stomach. The chief are the dilute mineral acids given before meals; preparations of bismuth; various astringents; and opium in certain cases. The compound kimo powder was highly recommended by the late Dr. Wilson Fox as a remedy for pyrosis.

5. *Emetics.*—This is a familiar group, which produce the abnormal action of the stomach known as vomiting, often accompanied with the feeling of nausea and other phenomena. It is necessary to allude to emetics in this connection, although they are commonly used for other purposes besides the mere emptying of the organ. The act of vomiting may sometimes be excited for therapeutic purposes by reflex irritation, especially in connection with the throat; or the stomach can be

mechanically emptied by means of the stomach-pump. The agents more definitely used as emetics, however, are lukewarm water in large quantity; chloride of sodium; sulphate of zinc; sulphate of copper; alum; carbonate of ammonium; tartarated antimony; mustard; infusion of chamomile; ipecacuanha; and apomorphine administered subcutaneously. Some of these are more or less depressant, and must, therefore, be employed with due caution.

6. *Artificial Digestants*.—The employment of substitutes for the normal digestive fluids, when these are deficient, as well as the artificial digestion of food by certain agents before its introduction into the system, are now firmly established as methods of practice, chiefly as the outcome of the experiments and observations of Sir William Roberts. These artificial digestants are used not only to do the work of the gastric juice, but also that of the salivary and pancreatic secretions. The only official remedies belonging to this group are pepsine, with hydrochloric and laetic acids; but numerous preparations are now in common use, such as liquor pepticus and liquor pancreaticus (Benger), pancreatic emulsion, zymine or purified pancreatic extract (Fairchild), pancreatin, ingluvin, lactopeptine, papayine, and maltine or malt extract. They are either taken along with or after the food; or this may be more or less digested or "peptonized" beforehand. Moreover, materials employed as nutrient enemata may be digested before administration; or liquor pancreatiens or other artificial digestant may be merely mixed with them, and digestion allowed to take place in the rectum. Suppositories made of artificially digested meat are also employed with advantage in many cases. A large number of peptonized foods are now much used, and in suitable cases are of great service in treatment.

7. *Purgatives or Cathartics*.—This is a well-known group, the purpose of which is to act upon the bowels, and produce a more or less pronounced purgative effect. Although there is no definite line of demarcation between the different agents, they are sub-divided into certain classes, under which it will be convenient to enumerate them, namely:—*a. Laxatives or mild aperients*, including sulphur; the magnesias and their carbonates, as well as the solutions of carbonate and citrate of magnesium; phosphate and effervescent phosphate of sodium; effervescent citro-tartrate of sodium; castor-oil; certain fruits, as figs, prunes, tamarinds, and cassia pulp; saccharine substances, as sugar, treacle, honey, and manna; and glycerine. *b. Simple purges*, often termed *aperients*, which have a well-marked but not violent purgative action, and to which belong grey powder, blue-pill, and calomel in moderate doses; aloes and aloin; senna; rhubarb; rhamnus frangula; and rhamnus purshianus or so-called cascara sagrada. *c. Saline aperients*, under which are usually classed the salts of the alkalies and of magnesium which have a pronounced action of this kind, and produce watery stools, namely, sulphate and effervescent sulphate of sodium; tartrate and acid tartrate of sodium; tartarated soda (Rochelle salt), generally given in the form of seidlitz powder; sulphate and effervescent sulphate of magnesium. It may be mentioned that it is to certain of these and other salts having a similar action that the aperient mineral waters owe their efficacy, their strength varying according to the nature and proportions of the active constituents. *d. Hydragogue purgatives*. These are used specially for the purpose of producing abundant watery stools, and the drugs or preparations chiefly employed for this object are full doses of certain saline aperients in concentrated solution, especially sul-

phate of magnesium or sodium, and cream of tartar; compound jalap powder; claterium or claterin; and gamboge, which is also somewhat drastic. *e. Drastic purgatives.* Under this head come the more powerful vegetable purgative agents, which tend to cause much spasmodic disturbance of the intestinal muscular coat, with corresponding griping pains, and also to irritate the mucous membrane. They may thus bring on severe diarrhoea, or set up inflammation of the intestinal mucous tract, and must, therefore, be used with due caution. Some of the agents, however, belonging to this sub-division are often employed in small or moderate doses as ordinary aperients, but they have all a more or less drastic tendency. They include jalap and resin of jalap; scammony and scammony resin; resin of podophyllum; colocynth; and croton oil. *f. Cholagogue purgatives.* These act as aperients by increasing the quantity of bile in the intestines. Many of the drugs belonging to other sub-divisions have also a cholagogue action; while other remedies which have no direct purgative effect increase the biliary secretion. It will, therefore, be more convenient to consider this class of agents in relation to the hepatic system.

8. *Intestinal Sedatives and Anti-spasmodics.*—Under this head may be mentioned certain agents which control the muscular movements of the intestines, subduing them when they are excessive, regulating them when spasmodically disturbed, and inducing intestinal paralysis under special circumstances. Many of the carminatives come partially under this group, but the drugs deserving particular mention are opium and belladonna, with their alkaloids morphine and atropine. Diarrhoea is often partly treated by this class of agents.

9. *Agents for diminishing Intestinal Fluids.*—An important object to be kept in view not uncommonly is to check excessive flow of various secretions into the intestinal canal, as well as of serous or watery fluid from the blood-vessels. This is another purpose to be aimed at in treating many cases of diarrhoea. The agents include a number of astringents, which will be more conveniently pointed out in relation to that symptom; and opium. Ipecacuanha in full doses is used as a specific remedy in the treatment of acute dysentery.

10. *Miscellaneous agents.*—The accessibility of the alimentary canal affords the opportunity for using numerous agents belonging to groups not specially associated with this system, and which are either brought into direct contact with the mucous surface, thus influencing its diseases, or act upon the contents of the stomach or intestines. Under this category anthelmintics properly come, which are employed in the treatment of intestinal worms and certain other parasites; and the other principal groups, some of which have already been incidentally alluded to, include antidotes to poisons; antacids; demulcents; absorbent powders; astringents and haemostatics; and antiseptics or disinfectants. Bichromate of potassium in minute doses has recently been specially recommended by Prof. Fraser, of Edinburgh, in the treatment of certain gastric cases.

II. **Methods of administration.**—Remedies intended to act upon the alimentary canal are obviously in the large majority of cases best administered by the mouth, thus gaining access directly into the stomach. It is often of great importance to pay attention to the kind of preparation which is most suitable, the quantity of any draught which is given, and the times of administration in relation to meals. For certain purposes, or under particular circumstances, therapeutic

agents are introduced into the lower bowel through the anus, either in the form of enema or suppository; or occasionally gaseous substances are thus injected. Subcutaneous injection is of great help in the employment of some agents which affect the alimentary canal, especially when rapidity of action is required, or when there is any contra-indication to their internal administration.

III. Auxiliary and special methods of treatment. It need scarcely be said that the treatment of affections and symptoms connected with the alimentary canal implies much more than the administration of the agents thus far considered, but it must suffice here to offer a few general remarks on this part of the subject. 1. Obviously *diet* and everything connected therewith is of prime importance, and always demands careful consideration. 2. *General hygiene* is often of great consequence, as regards occupation, exercise, habits of life, and various other matters. 3. Attention to *habit* and *regularity* is of much help in relation to the functions of the alimentary canal, and this principle is of frequent application in treatment, as in many cases of indigestion or constipation. 4. *Eternal applications*, and other methods of treatment practised through the abdominal wall, are of conspicuous service under a variety of circumstances. Heat and cold, counter-irritation, mechanical support, manipulation, kneading or massage, and electricity are prominent examples of the agents thus employed. 5. Among *special methods* for treating the alimentary canal may be mentioned the systematic consumption of a quantity of hot water; washing out the stomach, or *lavage*; and the injection of air or fluid into the lower bowel for certain purposes, or irrigation of this part. 6. *Operative treatment* is of great importance, especially in relation to the intestine, and is called for under a variety of circumstances. The kind of operation required will depend upon the nature of the case.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ON CERTAIN GASTRIC SYMPTOMS AND FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS.

It will be expedient to discuss briefly the chief symptoms connected with the stomach, and certain functional derangements, before dealing with its more definite disorders and diseases.

I. GASTRODYNIA—GASTRALGIA.

Aetiology.—The terms *gastrodynia* and *gastralgia* are often applied to a variety of painful gastric sensations, but more strictly they are associated with a neuralgic affection of the stomach, which was fully dealt with by Dr. Clifford Allbutt in the *Goulstonian Lectures* for 1884. This complaint is chiefly met with among females, especially about the time of puberty, or when the menstrual functions are declining. The conditions with which the complaint is mainly associated are physical exhaustion and debility; anaemia; hysteria; hypochondriasis; nervous

exhaustion from various causes; gout or rheumatism; and uterine or ovarian derangements, including pregnancy. Sedentary habits; habitual constipation; and excessive use of hot tea may help in originating this affection. Occasionally it is one of the effects of malaria; and in rare instances depends on central nervous disease. The "gastric crises" in locomotor ataxy are of a gastralgie nature.

Symptoms.—The prominent symptom of gastralgie is epigastric pain, varying much in its severity and characters, usually paroxysmal, and coming on either at regular or irregular intervals, though in many cases there is never complete relief. The attacks are not infrequently nocturnal. During the paroxysms the suffering may be extreme, especially in cases of hysteria or gout. Food frequently gives decided relief, the pain returning as the stomach becomes empty. Some patients, however, suffer intensely when they take anything, or after particular articles, such as hot tea, and the suffering after food may be so great as to lead to abstinence from, and subsequently to distaste for and aversion to food—*anorexia nervosa*. Pressure generally relieves, especially when made firmly and continuously, but there may be much superficial tenderness or hyperesthesia. The pain often radiates along the spinal nerves. Various curious sensations may be complained of in the epigastrium, such as sinking and the like. Symptoms usually regarded as dyspeptic are habitually present in most cases, such as acid or gaseous eructations, voluminous flatulence, borborygmi, heartburn, or pyrosis; Allbutt, however, looks upon these phenomena as frequently of a neurotic character. In certain cases chronic vomiting may be a distressing symptom; and not uncommonly a morbid craving is felt for improper and indigestible articles of food. Vomiting is sometimes a climax-symptom in gastralgie, and may remain after this complaint has passed away. The bowels are generally very constipated. Frequently other neurotic disturbances are observed, such as migraine, asthma, cardiac disorder, or pseudo-angina pectoris. In some instances there is considerable emaciation, especially if food is not taken; but it is remarkable what a slight degree of wasting may attend the chronic vomiting of hysterical cases. Aortic pulsation is often present.

Diagnosis.—This complaint has to be distinguished chiefly from painful forms of dyspepsia, and from gastric ulcer. It is often impossible to draw a line between the former group of cases and those of gastralgie. The characteristic features of ulcer of the stomach will be pointed out in relation to that disease. It is important to avoid mistaking *gastric crises* occurring in locomotor ataxy for mere gastralgie.

Prognosis.—Gastralgie is frequently very difficult to cure, and may prove serious, especially in elderly persons, on account of the severity of the pain, and because this interferes with the taking of food.

Treatment.—General treatment is usually of chief importance in gastralgie, with the view of improving the nutrition, the quality of the blood, and the state of the nervous system. Arsenic and strychnine are useful drugs. The patient must be encouraged to take food; and too strict dieting frequently does more harm than good. Gastric sedatives must be employed cautiously, but the judicious use of certain of them may afford relief. Constipation frequently needs attention. A belladonna plaster worn over the epigastrium is beneficial in some instances.

II. SPASM OR CRAMP OF THE STOMACH.

Aetiology.—This is an acute affection, attended with painful spasmoid contraction of the walls of the stomach. It may be excited by indigestible or irritating food or drink, or in some individuals by particular articles of diet, ordinarily quite harmless; drinking cold water, or indulging too freely in ices, especially when the stomach is empty; acrid secretions in the stomach; flatulent distension; mental emotion; and gout.

Symptoms.—There is intense pain, which comes on suddenly in a series of paroxysms with remissions, being of a griping character. It is most marked near the pylorus, but may be felt across the epigastrium, or even up along the oesophagus. Pressure or rubbing gives marked relief, the patient either sitting up and pressing firmly over the stomach, lying upon the abdomen, or tossing and rolling about. Often a feeling of sickness is experienced, and the pain may be eased by vomiting. More or less prostration is frequently observed; and occasionally even severe collapse, with cold and clammy sweats, a very feeble and slow pulse, and fluttering of the heart, which condition may actually terminate in death. Sometimes the spasmoid movements of the stomach can be seen or felt through the abdominal wall. If they persist a certain degree of soreness and tenderness remains, but these sensations soon pass off.

Treatment.—Should there be any irritating materials in the stomach, an emetic of sulphate of zinc or mustard, with plenty of lukewarm water, should be given immediately. A combination of bicarbonate of sodium or carbonate of magnesium, with aromatic spirit of ammonia, spirit of chloroform, and some carminative, will generally relieve the pain. A little spirit with hot water is often beneficial. Sometimes opium or morphine is required. The continuous external application of dry heat over the abdomen is most soothing. After the attack it may be well to clear out the alimentary canal by means of a brisk *purgative*.

III. VOMITING—EMESIS.

Aetiology.—The act of vomiting is excited either through some reflex irritation; or by a direct disturbance of the vomiting-centre in the brain. Its numerous causes may be thus arranged:—1. *Those immediately acting upon the stomach*, namely, gastralgic attacks; irritating materials in its interior, whether introduced from without or formed there; organic diseases; obstruction at the cardiae or pyloric orifice; external pressure upon the organ; or its displacement, as in the case of a hernia of the stomach through the diaphragm. 2. *Reflex irritation from other sources*, particularly the throat; the intestines; the peritoneum; the female genital organs (especially in connection with pregnancy); and the testicles. Reflex vomiting may also accompany the passage of a gall-stone or renal calculus, as well as other complaints attended with severe pain. It may be induced in susceptible persons by any unpleasant smell, taste, or sight; or even by a sudden light. The vomiting which follows severe fits of coughing, especially in phthisis, comes mainly under this head, but is partly mechanical. 3. *Centric or cerebral vomiting*. The chief causes coming within this category are injury to, or

disease of the brain or its membranes, especially meningitis; cerebral anaemia or congestion; a poisoned state of the blood, the poison being either introduced from without, or generated within the body, as in various febrile disorders, uræmia, or in the form of vomiting resulting from breathing a hot and tainted atmosphere; mere nervous shock or fright; hysteria and other functional nervous derangements; and the thought of unpleasant things. With regard to *sea-sickness* and allied forms of vomiting, such as that brought on by swinging, these certainly come mainly within the *cerebral* class, but several theories have been propounded to explain the occurrence of this symptom under such circumstances. The peculiar movements, the appearance of objects in motion, and the unpleasant odours and sights usually present, probably all aid in inducing sea-sickness, though some authorities regard it as entirely due to a peculiar disturbance of the cerebral circulation. Vomiting is a prominent symptom in migraine or sick-headache. Morning sickness is often associated with chronic alcoholism, being partly the result of the presence of deleterious materials in the blood; partly of catarrh of the throat and stomach, the former giving rise to fits of cough. It must not be forgotten that malingers can sometimes excite vomiting at will.

Clinical Investigation and Characters.—It is frequently requisite to make a thorough investigation with regard to vomiting, in order to arrive at a correct diagnosis as to its cause, the following particulars being noted:—1. The *times* and *frequency* of its occurrence. 2. The *circumstances* under which it takes place, whether spontaneously; only when the stomach is empty; after any food or drink, or only after certain articles or meals, it being important also to ascertain sometimes the quantity necessary to induce vomiting, and how soon it follows the introduction of the materials which excite the act; in connection with some obvious reflex or centric cause, such as cough, irritation in the throat, severe pain, a bad smell or taste, smoking, drinking, or mental disturbance; in certain positions, or on change of posture. It must not be forgotten that many poisons excite vomiting, and suspicious cases might come under observation needing complete and cautious investigation as to substances which had been taken into the stomach, or some of these might be required for chemical examination. 3. The *sensations preceding and accompanying the act*, especially noting if there is any feeling of nausea, as well as its degree; giddiness; prostration; or pain. 4. The *manner in which the act is performed*, this being determined by personal inspection, if possible, especially remarking if it appears to be originated voluntarily; and whether it is performed easily, or with more or less straining and retching. 5. The *after-effects*, particularly as regards the relief of gastric pain or its intensification; and the influence upon cerebral symptoms. It may be mentioned here that the mere violence of vomiting may occasion serious lesions, such as rupture of the stomach or of a blood-vessel, cerebral apoplexy, or hernia, and it often leaves a sense of soreness over the abdomen. 6. *Examination of the vomited matters.* This is of the utmost importance, and ought never to be neglected, and the same remark applies to materials discharged by regurgitation or eructation, or brought up by the stomach-pump. The chief points to be noticed are:—*a.* The *quantity rejected*. *b.* The *taste*, as perceived by the patient. *c.* *Odour*. *d.* *General physical characters*, as to colour, and as to the materials of which the vomited matters consist, whether of different kinds of food,

unaltered or in various stages of digestion, decomposition, or fermentation; unusual substances introduced from without; blood or altered blood; gastric juice; watery fluid; mucus; biliary matters; faeces; or morbid materials, such as calculi, worms, hydatids, portions of growths, or pus. It is also desirable to observe whether the vomit is frothy or yeasty-looking.

e. *Chemical characters.* The reaction should always be taken; and in certain cases it might be desirable to make a chemical analysis, in order to determine the presence of products of digestion or fermentation, various gases, bile, sugar, urinary compounds, or inorganic or organic poisons. Of course in any case of suspected poisoning a complete analysis of this kind must be performed.

f. *Microscopical characters.* The chief microscopic elements to be looked for in vomited matters are blood-corpuscles, pus-cells, cancer-cells, echinococci, and sarcinae or torulae. The microscope is also of use in detecting certain poisonous substances. *Sarcina* (Fig. 27) are vegetable organisms, and appear as little oblong rectangular bodies, in shape resembling minute wool-packs, being divided into four equal parts by cross lines which correspond to dissepiments, these being again subdivided by fainter lines, so that in all they make up 64 divisions, each ultimate particle consisting of an elementary square cell. They are only found in acid vomit, which usually presents well-marked signs of fermentation, and are most frequently observed in connection with pyloric obstruction.

Treatment.—Vomiting occurs under such a variety of circumstances that little more can be done here than to indicate the general principles upon which its treatment should be conducted. 1. The *cause* must be sought out, and removed if possible. Thus an *emetic* is not uncommonly one of the best remedies, in order to clear out the stomach of irritant matters. Any reflex excitement must also be subdued. Patients should be told to aid voluntarily in suppressing vomiting as much as they can: being also warned against bringing it on by coughing or any such act. 2. Attention to *diet* is all important. By withdrawing food altogether, or only giving very small quantities of cool or iced liquids, especially milk with lime-water or soda-water, or brandy with weak beef-tea or beef-juice, sickness may often be effectually stopped. It is particularly necessary to enquire into the feeding of children, as vomiting in these subjects is so commonly due merely to errors in this respect. Koumiss is of unquestionable service in some cases of vomiting; and butter-milk in others. The administration of artificially digested food frequently proves of great benefit. In hysterical vomiting forced feeding is sometimes required. 3. It may be useful in treating vomiting to attend to certain *general matters*, such as position, rest, and free ventilation. Especially is this the case with regard to cerebral vomiting and seasickness, against which absolute rest in the horizontal posture, with a free supply of fresh air, may afford some protection. Pressure by means of a girdle across the abdomen has been recommended to prevent sea-sickness. 4. The chief *direct remedies* for the relief of vomiting are the sucking of small lumps of ice; effervescent draughts with hydrocyanic acid, or the latter with a small quantity of mucilage or iced water; iced champagne or brandy with soda-water; opium, either in the form of pill, as the tincture or liquor opii sedativus along with other



FIG. 27.
Sarcinae.

remedies, or in an enema with starch; morphine in pill or solution, or by hypodermic injection; chloroform; creasote in drop doses in the form of pill; sulphurous acid, sulphite or hyposulphite of sodium, carbolic acid or sulpho-carbolates; and nux vomica or minute doses of strychnine. Salts of bismuth, magnesia, solution of potash or soda, bicarbonate of sodium, or oxalate of cerium, are also valuable under certain conditions. Dr. Ringer recommends in many forms of vomiting drop doses of ipecacuanha wine, every hour, or three times a day according to circumstances; in others he finds arsenic useful. In some varieties of chronic vomiting oxide or nitrate of silver in minute doses may prove beneficial. Innumerable remedies have been recommended for sea-sickness, including cocaine, phenazone, and nitrite of amyl. It is desirable to make all draughts intended to relieve vomiting as small and as agreeable to the taste as possible. 5. *External applications* over the epigastrium are sometimes beneficial in treating sickness, especially sinapisms, a small blister, cold by means of the ice-bag, friction with chloroform or belladonna liniment, or the endermic application of morphine.

IV. HÆMATEMESIS.

Etiology.—Blood may find its way into the stomach under a variety of circumstances. As a rule it comes from the vessels of this organ, being usually capillary in its origin, but sometimes due to the erosion or rupture of a large vessel; the blood may, however, be derived from other sources. The causes of hæmatemesis may be thus classified:—
 1. *Traumatic*, from external violence over the epigastrium. 2. *Diseased conditions of the blood*, especially in yellow fever. 3. *Vicarious*, particularly in connection with deficient menstruation. 4. *Injury* by foreign bodies or destructive chemical agents which have gained access into the stomach. 5. *Abnormal conditions affecting the stomach itself*. Thus hæmorrhage may be the result of violent vomiting and retching; congestion from any cause; inflammation; ulceration; cancer; or rarely atheroma of the vessels, embolism or thrombosis, or varicose veins in the stomach. 6. *Diseases of other organs and structures*, especially those in the vicinity of the stomach. These chiefly act by inducing extreme mechanical congestion, which may follow any great obstruction of the portal circulation, but especially that due to cirrhosis of the liver, thrombosis of the portal vein or its branches, pressure upon the portal trunk or vena cava inferior, and long-continued cardiac or pulmonary affections. Acute atrophy of the liver is often attended with hæmatemesis, which is then mainly due to the state of the blood. Splenic disease may originate this symptom in both ways. Sometimes a neighbouring disease, such as cancer of the pancreas, destroys the coats of the stomach, and thus opens its vessels. Occasionally an abdominal or thoracic aneurism bursts into this organ, or more commonly a thoracic aneurism opens into the oesophagus. It is stated that an omental hernia may drag the stomach downwards, and thus cause hæmorrhage by lacerating the mucous membrane. 7. It must not be forgotten that blood may be *swallowed*, coming either from the oesophagus, mouth, throat, nose, or respiratory organs. The blood of animals is also purposely swallowed sometimes, either by hysterical girls or by malingers, being afterwards rejected by vomiting.

Symptoms.—Haemorrhage into the stomach may not be attended with any external indications, either because the blood is poured out so abundantly as to kill instantly; or, on the other hand, because it is in very small quantity. In the majority of cases, but not always, there is either some obvious cause of the haemorrhage; or it is preceded by symptoms referable to the stomach, or by signs of organic disease in its vicinity. Usually the blood is rejected, either by a mere act of regurgitation, or in most cases by more or less violent vomiting, though it must be remembered that this act may be the cause of the bleeding. The quantity of blood discharged necessarily varies much, and it is generally more or less mixed with food and other materials. Its characters are in the majority of cases very distinctive, it being non-aerated; brown or black in colour; grumous, often resembling "coffee-grounds," soot, or tar; and acid in reaction. Should the blood be coagulated, the clots are broken up, irregular, firm, and heavy. On microscopical examination the red corpuscles are seen to be much altered in shape or destroyed, and pigment granules are abundant. Most of these characters depend upon the action of the gastric juice on the blood. If the blood is discharged immediately or soon after its escape into the stomach, it may be quite bright and unaltered, or only slightly changed. Commonly some of it passes on into the bowels, giving rise to tarry stools. The general symptoms indicating loss of blood will of course be present in proportion to the extent of the haemorrhage.

Diagnosis.—The most important matter is to distinguish between *haematemesis* and *haemoptysis*, which can usually be done by a consideration of the following points, but it must be remembered that they may occur together:—1. The *age of the patient*, haematemesis being more frequent later in life than haemoptysis, except in the case of young women who are the subjects of perforating ulcer. 2. The *previous and existing symptoms*, as indicating some condition likely to give rise to one or other form of haemorrhage; and also the symptoms immediately premonitory to the attack, in the one case pointing generally to the stomach, in the other to the lungs. 3. The *mode of discharge of the blood*, whether by vomiting or coughing. It must be remembered, however, that vomiting may be excited by the cough in haemoptysis; or some of the blood may be swallowed, and afterwards rejected from the stomach. 4. The *characters of the blood*, as already described, with reference to colour, aeration, general aspect, reaction, and microscopical appearances. 5. In haemoptysis some blood usually continues to be discharged in the expectoration for a certain time after the main bulk has been expelled; which is not the case in haematemesis. 6. Along with haematemesis altered blood is usually seen in the stools. 7. Careful *physical examination* will often reveal some organic cause likely to give rise either to gastric or pulmonary haemorrhage; and, in connection with the latter, there may be *râles* indicating the presence of blood in the bronchial tubes.

As regards the *cause of haematemesis*, this can only be made out by a thorough consideration of the case in all its details. Blood coming from the throat or nose may be usually detected by local examination of these parts. It is necessary to warn against mistaking the colour due to altered bile or iron for that of blood.

Treatment.—The principles of treatment in haematemesis are the same as for other haemorrhages. In addition to bodily rest, the stomach must be kept in a state of absolute repose in severe cases, nutriment

being administered only by the rectum; in less dangerous cases very small quantities of cool or iced liquids being alone permitted. The patient should swallow small lumps of ice at frequent intervals. The most efficient *haemostatics* are tannic or gallic acid or acetate of lead in full doses, combined with opium; pyrogallic acid; hamamelis; oil of turpentine; tincture of perchloride of iron; and ergotin, ergotinin, or sclerotonin acid administered subcutaneously. It is necessary to warn against giving any medicines by the stomach if they are not actually required, or if they seem to cause irritation. Ice may be applied carefully over the epigastrium. It is very important to check any violent efforts at vomiting, by means of hydrocyanic acid with mucilage, morphine internally or by subcutaneous injection, or an enema containing tincture of opium; at the same time a sinapism being applied over the epigastrium. In cases of capillary haemorrhage, dependent on congestion of the stomach from portal obstruction, a saline purgative is useful, or an aperient enema. Should stimulants be required, they are best administered by enemata. Vicarious haemorrhage must be treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

DYSPEPSIA—INDIGESTION.

DIFFICULTY and imperfection in the digestive process arise under a great variety of circumstances, either in connection with the stomach, the intestines, or both; and affecting all articles of diet alike, or only special elements of food. In ordinary language the terms *dyspepsia* and *indigestion* have a very indefinite meaning, but are usually associated with a group of symptoms depending upon interference with the *gastric* digestion, and in this sense the subject will at present be mainly considered. In many instances such symptoms are merely due to *functional* disturbance of the stomach, or at all events no obvious organic disease can be detected, and it is to this class of cases that the above expressions are supposed to be limited; similar symptoms, however, are commonly associated with different forms of *organic* mischief, and in the subsequent remarks on the subject these structural lesions must necessarily be alluded to. It will thus be obvious that *dyspepsia* is not an independent disease, and every case in which digestive disorders are complained of demands careful study and investigation.

Aetiology.—The causes of dyspepsia in general may be conveniently grouped under certain heads, according to the following arrangement:

1. *Disorders connected with the diet*, namely, excessive eating; too rapid eating; insufficient mastication and ensalivation, this being especially associated with the habit of "bolting" food, or being due to absence or irregularity of teeth, particularly in old people; irregularity in meals, or too frequent feeding or the reverse; and improper quality of food. The last may depend upon the nature of the food itself; the manner in which it is cooked; or upon its having undergone fermenta-

tion or decomposition. Liquids not uncommonly cause indigestion, and special mention must be made of the habit of taking much soup; of drinking large quantities of cold water or other fluid with meals, by which the gastric juice is much diluted; of excessive indulgence in tea, or sometimes in coffee; and of abuse of alcohol, particularly when spirits are taken at frequent intervals, strong or but little diluted. The injudicious use of strong condiments with food sometimes originates dyspepsia. Idiosynerasy causes some individuals to suffer after special articles of diet, which are usually easily digestible, such as milk or eggs.

2. *Alterations in the gastric juice.* This secretion may be in excess; deficient, even to complete suppression; or of abnormal quality. The principal changes in quality are the presence of excess of acid; deficiency or absence of hydrochloric acid, pepsin, or both; admixture with abundant mucus secreted by the stomach, which may even render the gastric juice alkaline; and the presence of unusual constituents. These alterations result from:—*a. Organic affections of the stomach*, especially mechanical congestion; gastric catarrh or inflammation; degeneration and atrophy of the secreting glands; degeneration of the vessels; ulceration; and cancer. *b. Morbid conditions of the blood*, as in renal disease, diabetes, pyrexial conditions, gout, anaemia. *c. General want of tone, with debility.* *d. Nervous disturbance.* Dr. Clifford Allbutt considers that many cases of so-called dyspepsia are neurotic, the neurosis causing disordered work and secretions in connection with the stomach.

3. *Changes affecting the movements of the stomach.* The expulsive power of the stomach may be interfered with, in consequence of want of muscular or nervous tone, dilatation, or pyloric obstruction; or its movements are inefficient or irregular; or the food passes into the duodenum too speedily, before it is properly digested, either in consequence of undue excitability of the muscular wall of the stomach, or of imperfection at the pyloric orifice.

It is by influencing the *secretory* and *motor functions* of the stomach that many of the recognized causes induce dyspepsia, such as sedentary habits; undue exertion either just before or after a meal; habitual constipation; abuse of narcotics, tobacco, tea, or alcohol; excessive study, emotional disturbance, or any form of mental shock; and venereal excesses. Most important is it to bear in mind also that dyspeptic symptoms may be entirely due to disease of some other organ than the stomach; and in any case not yielding to proper treatment, the condition of the principal organs should be thoroughly ascertained.

Symptoms.—In the first instance it will be well to give a general outline of the clinical phenomena which are, in different combinations, observed in cases of dyspepsia; and then to indicate the special characters presented by the main varieties of the complaint.

Uncomfortable or painful sensations are experienced over the epigastrium, chiefly after meals, either due to the state of the stomach itself, or to its being irritated or distended by the materials formed as the result of the imperfect digestion. Not uncommonly these sensations are also complained of over the front of the chest, or between the shoulders. There is little or no tenderness as a rule. In the great majority of cases appetite is impaired or lost; some patients, however, have an inclination for food, but can take very little, or they are obliged to confine themselves to certain articles of diet; while others, on account of the discomfort which is produced, are soon satisfied. Thirst is

generally absent, but may be a prominent symptom. From the decomposition and fermentation of food result flatulent distension, with a sense of fulness and weight in the epigastrium, acidity, heartburn, and eructations. It is very important to ascertain the characters of the eructations. They consist of gases, various liquids, and undigested food. The gases are either tasteless and odourless, resulting from fermentation; or they have some peculiar smell and taste, of which the chief are those resembling fish or rotten eggs, both being associated either with deficiency or arrest of secretion, and the last being directly due to decomposition of food, and the formation of hydric sulphide. The principal liquid eructations include the watery fluid of pyrosis; and matters having an acid, acrid, rancid, or bitter taste. Acid eructations indicate either that gastric juice has accumulated in the stomach; or more commonly that the contents of the stomach have undergone acid fermentation. Butyric acid imparts the rancid characters. Bitter eructations are probably due to the presence of bile. Nausea is felt in many cases of dyspepsia, but vomiting is not a frequent symptom, though some patients endeavour to excite the act after taking food, in order to relieve their discomfort. The bowels are usually disturbed in their functions, as indicated by constipation, or in some instances by diarrhoea; colicky pains; flatulence and borborygmi; and the passage of foetid gas. The tongue, mouth, and throat are generally in an abnormal state, but they present different appearances in the different varieties of indigestion. The breath is also frequently offensive.

The *general* and *remote* symptoms previously described as being associated with disorders of the alimentary canal are often present in different combinations in dyspeptic cases.

It will be convenient in this connection to draw attention to certain points relating to the process of gastric digestion, and to the methods which have been introduced for its clinical study. Investigations as regards the acid constituents have shown that in the digestion of an ordinary meal at first only lactic acid is present, derived from the fermentation of carbo-hydrates, or directly from the *injesta*. Later on hydrochloric acid appears and increases in quantity, until at the end of the process it is the only acid that can be detected. Hence in particular cases it is thought desirable to examine the contents of the stomach at a time when digestion is at the height of its activity. For this purpose a "trial meal" is given; Ewald preferring a light breakfast, Leube and others a "trial dinner." After a definite time the products of digestion are withdrawn by means of the stomach-pump or syphon-tube, and filtered; the filtrate being then subjected to a systematic examination. The reaction is first taken; then free hydrochloric is tested for, and its quantity estimated, which are the most important points to determine. Other acids are also tested for; as well as pepsin and pepsinogen; curdling ferment and its zymogen; and the condition of the albuminoids and starch. The details of this procedure are quite beyond the province of this work, but it may be stated that the most delicate test for free hydrochloric acid is that of Günzburg, which consists of a mixture of phloroglucine, 2 parts; vanilin, 1 part; and absolute alcohol, 30 parts. This will give a deep-crimson crystalline deposit if free hydrochloric acid be present; or a splinter of wood soaked in this solution, and heated, will change to a red colour when brought into contact with the acid. Lactic, butyric, and other acids are detected by their usual tests. The proportion of free hydrochloric acid is determined by neutralization

with a standard-solution of caustic soda. This acid is deficient in various conditions in which the process of digestion is impaired, as well as in some gastric neuroses, and in chronic gastric catarrh; while it is absent in most cases of cancer of the stomach, and in atrophy or degeneration of the gastric mucous membrane. Increase in its quantity may be due to hyper-secretion of gastric juice when food is taken; or to its accumulation during the intervals, as in some nervous diseases, such as hysteria and locomotor ataxy. Gastric acidity, however, is generally due to excess of lactic and other acids, the products of fermentation.

In order to determine the rapidity of gastric digestion with some approach to exactness, as representing the activity of the gastric juice, and of the movements of the stomach, the plan is advocated of introducing materials into this organ, and then determining the earliest period at which they can be detected in certain secretions. For instance, salol is not decomposed into salicylic acid until it reaches the intestine, and this acid can then be immediately recognized in the urine. The time which elapses after salol is given before the acid can be detected, is supposed to indicate how long it has remained in the stomach. Capsules containing iodide of potassium, tied down with threads of fibrin, are also employed in a similar way. When this drug is administered in the ordinary way, the iodine can be detected in the saliva in from six and a half to eleven minutes. Any additional time before it appears is supposed to represent that which is required to dissolve the threads of fibrin by the gastric juice. It cannot be said that these and similar methods of investigation are of much practical use up to the present time.

Varieties.—Many attempts have been made to classify cases of dyspepsia, but for practical purposes it will be sufficient to adopt the following arrangement:—

I. ACUTE DYSPEPSIA.—This may come on in an individual habitually quite free from dyspeptic symptoms; or it may be merely an exacerbation of a previously existing morbid state. It is difficult to determine precisely what the morbid condition is in many cases of so-called acute dyspepsia, but unquestionably in a good number of such cases there is *gastric catarrh*; while others are merely instances of *migraine* or *sick-headache*. Some cases are, however, true examples of *simple dyspepsia*, arising either from some error in diet; or as the result of interference with the secretion of gastric juice, owing to nervous disturbance from emotion, over-exertion, or other causes.

The symptoms differ much in intensity and duration, but are liable to be particularly severe in children. They come on shortly after a meal, usually in about three or four hours, and are more or less of the following nature:—Uneasiness or pain in the epigastrium, with a feeling of heaviness and fulness, or sometimes cramp-like sensations, but no tenderness; complete distaste for food; thirst; nausea, or vomiting of undigested food and other matters, such as mucus, acids, or bile, which affords relief; eructation of gases, either tasteless and odourless, or like rotten eggs, as well as of acids; heartburn; a large and moist tongue, covered with a thick white or yellow film, and sometimes presenting enlarged and red papillæ; disagreeable taste and breath; constipation usually, but occasionally diarrhoea with colicky pains. The general symptoms are usually very pronounced, and there is not uncommonly a sense of marked illness and depression, with a

certain degree of pyrexia, the skin being dry. Herpes about the face or general urticaria may break out. The urine is generally concentrated, and deposits lithates; occasionally there is slight albuminuria. In infants there may be high fever or convulsions.

Treatment.—The treatment of acute dyspepsia is similar to that of the slighter cases of acute gastric catarrh, which will be presently described. It is important to remove speedily all irritant matters from the alimentary canal, by means of *emetics* or *aperients*.

II. CHRONIC DYSPEPSIA.—1. *Atonic*.—Most of the ordinary cases of dyspepsia belong to this variety, and the symptoms depend more immediately upon *atonyn* of the stomach, the muscular activity of the organ being impaired. The gastric juice is also often deficient; and the glands may be atrophied. The sensations in the epigastrium are mainly those of weight, fulness, and discomfort after food, without actual pain or tenderness, pressure often affording relief. Not uncommonly there is in the intervals a constant sense of sinking in the epigastrium. Occasionally œsophagismus is experienced. There is a disinclination for food, and also not infrequently for drink. Digestion is much delayed, and different gases are formed in excess, as well as acids and rancid matters, there being hence much flatulence, with various eructations. The tongue is large and marked with the teeth, pale, flabby, moist, and usually more or less furred, but it may be quite clean. The mouth and throat are also often pallid, flabby, and relaxed; and the breath is generally disagreeable. As a rule there is habitual and obstinate constipation, the stools being firm, pale, deficient in bile, and offensive. The *general* symptoms are well-marked usually, the pulse being feeble, wanting in tone, and easily hurried; the skin cool, soft, and clammy, with a tendency to coldness of the feet and hands; and the urine often abundant and watery. The nervous symptoms incline chiefly to languor, apathy, and indisposition for any effort. Oppression across the chest, shortness of breath, cough, and palpitation are often complained of.

2. *Irritative*.—Probably in the form of dyspepsia thus named a condition of *chronic gastritis* is often present to a slight degree. Actual pain or a sense of burning is experienced in the epigastrium, increased by food, and generally accompanied with a little tenderness. Heartburn and acidity are also common symptoms. Appetite is impaired; but thirst is usually felt, especially for cool drinks. Occasionally vomiting takes place, or it is excited in order to relieve symptoms; while nausea is often felt. Eructations are frequent, but are not offensive as a rule. The tongue tends to be contracted and red, especially at the tip and edges, with enlarged papillæ; it may either be furred or clean. The throat also is frequently in an irritable condition, being reddened and granular, or sometimes presenting follicular ulcers. Though constipation is the rule, from time to time diarrhoea with colicky pains is apt to set in. The skin tends to be hot and dry, the palms and soles having a burning sensation; and sometimes a cutaneous eruption breaks out. The pulse is frequent. The urine is also concentrated and deficient in quantity, depositing lithates on standing. The nervous disturbance is chiefly in the direction of irritability and petulance, with restlessness. There may be considerable emaciation.

3. *Nervous*.—A variety of dyspepsia has been described by this term, observed chiefly in young women, in which the prominent symptom is pain after food. It seems to be merely a form of *gastralgia*; and may either exist alone, or associated with other symptoms of dyspepsia.

4. One form of *imperfect digestion* deserves special notice, which is by no means uncommonly met with, in which there is an excellent appetite, and no particularly unpleasant sensations are felt after meals, but almost as soon as food is taken it seems to pass out of the stomach, either owing to undue irritability of the muscular coat of this organ, or to incompetency of the pylorus; then rapidly traverses the intestines, giving rise to borborygmi and colicky pains; and is speedily followed by diarrhoea, the stools consisting chiefly of undigested food. Hence there is a constant craving for food, and a sense of considerable exhaustion or prostration is often experienced after the bowels have acted. In many instances this course of events only occurs the first thing in the morning; in others it follows every meal, and may thus cause serious loss of flesh and weakness. In some cases of this kind which have come under my notice the symptoms have been apparently due to the habit of excessive smoking; to over-indulgence in hot tea; or to abuse of alcohol. They may also have a nervous origin.

Diagnosis.—Many cases come under observation in practice, which obviously belong to the class of *chronic dyspeptics*. It is then necessary to determine what *form* of dyspepsia is present, and what the condition really signifies; and to what *causes* it is due. The two chief varieties, namely, the *atonic* and *irritative*, are mainly separated from each other by the difference in the intensity and characters of the sensations in the epigastrium; the conditions of the tongue, mouth, and throat; the absence of thirst in the atonic form; and the differences in the degree and character of the general disturbance. Further, diarrhoea is not uncommonly present in the irritative form; while in atonic dyspepsia constipation is generally a prominent symptom. With regard to the *causes* of any dyspeptic symptoms, these can only be ascertained by a satisfactory enquiry into the history and habits of the patient; and a thorough investigation as to the condition of the various organs, as well as of the general system. It is particularly necessary to recollect that such symptoms may depend upon a state of gastric catarrh kept up by portal congestion, or upon some general or remote disease; or that they may mark the early stage of some serious organic affection of the stomach. The examination of the contents of the stomach, as already described, may serve to show what is actually going on during the process of digestion in a particular case.

It is frequently difficult to diagnose between mere *functional dyspepsia* and the less serious *organic affections*, namely, glandular degeneration, chronic gastric catarrh or gastritis, and simple dilatation. I have already expressed the opinion that many cases of so-called irritative dyspepsia are merely those of chronic gastritis, and it is scarcely practicable to draw any positive distinction between them. The more serious diseases of the stomach are as a rule definitely recognized by their characteristic symptoms and signs, which will be described in relation to each.

Prognosis.—The prognosis in any case of *chronic dyspepsia* will depend mainly on the time the symptoms have lasted; their causes, and whether these can be removed; and the ability and willingness on the part of the patient to submit to appropriate treatment. When indigestion has become established, the complaint is frequently very difficult to cure, especially if it is associated with permanent organic changes in the coats and glands of the stomach, with conditions keeping up venous congestion, or with some general disease; or if the patient persists in pernicious habits. Most cases may, however, be restored to health if properly

attended to, or at all events they may be much improved. If there is reason to believe that the mucous coat of the stomach, with its glands, has undergone serious morbid changes, especially as a consequence of abuse of alcohol, the condition is much more serious. Persistent dyspepsia occurring in the course of various chronic diseases often materially increases the gravity of their prognosis.

Treatment.—The principles of dealing with the alimentary canal from a therapeutic point of view having already been pointed out, it will be convenient in the present connection to discuss more in detail some of these principles, so far as they are applicable to chronic disorders of digestion, which are met with in the more serious diseases of the stomach, as well as in cases of mere dyspepsia.

1. Regulation of the *diet* obviously demands the first consideration in all cases. This involves not merely directions as to what kinds of food should be taken, but also with regard to quantities, intervals between meals, proper mastication, and other matters. In many cases of dyspepsia this regulation of diet is the chief thing needing attention, without which all other means are unavailing. It is impossible to point out all the modifications required in different forms of gastric derangement; but there are certain broad rules which may be laid down. In all cases substances which are known to be indigestible, such as pastry, cheese, many fruits and vegetables, fresh bread, and most made-dishes, must be avoided, plain food only being taken. Meat is decidedly beneficial in atonic dyspepsia, fresh beef and mutton, not overdone, being the kinds of meat which are most suitable. Pork, veal, and salted meats must be forbidden. In proportion to the degree of irritation present, and especially should there be indications of chronic gastritis, does it become requisite to order a more bland and easily digestible diet. In such cases white fish, light soups, chicken, game, calves' feet, sweetbread, tripe, the yolk of eggs, milk-puddings, jellies, and articles of this kind answer best; and it is often more advantageous to give food in small proportions at rather frequent intervals, than in any considerable quantity at a time. Hot condiments had better be avoided, or must be used very sparingly.

The question of *drink* calls for special notice. Many patients suffer from abuse of tea, and it is frequently desirable to forbid this beverage absolutely, and order cocoa or milk instead, the latter being in some cases advantageously mixed with lime-water or soda-water. Instructions must also be given against taking large quantities of cold water, especially during meals. It is a modern fashion to drink a quantity of very hot water, with food or at other times. Some dyspeptic patients are much benefited by avoiding liquids altogether, and only taking a dry diet. Any abuse of alcoholic drinks must of course at once be put a stop to. A glass of good bitter ale or stout with one meal daily is often beneficial in atonic dyspepsia, provided it does not cause flatulence; a moderate amount of wine may also be useful, just before and with food, especially dry sherry, champagne, claret, or hock. In some cases a small quantity of good brandy or whisky answers best, well-diluted with some table-water. When there is an irritable condition of the stomach, the use of stimulants demands special care.

In certain gastric cases attended with *severe pain after food*, of course excluding the more serious painful diseases, it is sometimes requisite to insist upon patients taking their meals properly, as they will otherwise go without food, and are thus only aggravating the

mischief ; minutely divided or pounded undone meat is beneficial in many of these cases. It may even be necessary to have recourse to forcible feeding. Where mastication is impracticable, food must be artificially divided before it is taken ; and in the case of old people and others who have lost their teeth, as well as in some instances where individuals have very irregular teeth, it is often extremely beneficial to their digestion to provide them with an artificial set.

In some gastric cases it is requisite to be particular as to the *elements of food* which are permitted. Thus, if there is much tendency to acid fermentation, starchy substances are contra-indicated. The value of *artificial digestion*, or *peptonizing* the food partially or entirely before administration, must also be specially noticed in this connection.

2. The next matter requiring attention is *general hygienic management*. Many cases of dyspepsia and other gastric affections are greatly benefited by attention to various matters coming under this head, such as the taking of a due amount of exercise, though not immediately before or after a meal ; avoidance of excessive mental work, harassing anxiety, and brooding over symptoms ; mingling in cheerful society ; change of air and scene ; abstinence from injurious habits, such as intemperance or excessive smoking ; promotion of the action of the skin by cold bathing or douching, if this agrees, or by an occasional warm bath or Turkish bath ; and the wearing of warm clothing, with flannel next the skin. Courses of treatment at different Spas are often of great service in dyspeptic cases.

3. The *medicinal agents* which directly affect the stomach and the process of digestion have already been discussed, and it will be sufficient to mention here that they have to be employed in various combinations, according to the indications and requirements of each particular case. They belong to the groups of *carminatives* ; *gastric sedatives* ; *gastric tonics* ; *peptogens* or *anti-peptogens* ; and *artificial digestants*, or substitutes for the digestive fluids. These agents must not be given indiscriminately, and much care is required in their administration. Those usually employed in dyspeptic conditions of an atonic nature include alkalies, namely, the solutions or bicarbonates of the fixed alkalies ; carbonate of ammonium or aromatic spirit of ammonia ; diluted mineral acids, especially hydrochloric, nitric, nitro-hydrochloric, and phosphoric ; tincture or extract of nux vomica, or strychnine ; cinchona or quinine ; vegetable and aromatic bitters ; with different carminatives. When giving the vegetable bitters it is desirable to begin with a moderate dose, as they are sometimes apt to disagree at first. Medicines intended to promote gastric secretion are best administered shortly before or during meals, especially alkalies. Acids may be used to check excessive secretion, when given just before meals.

When there are signs of much gastric irritation most benefit is usually derived from *sedatives*, such as some preparation of bismuth, with an alkali and hydrocyanic acid, to which small doses of solution of morphine may be added, should there be much pain. Sometimes, however, mineral acids act well in this condition ; and occasionally strychnine is useful. Nervous dyspepsia is best treated like gastralgia. In that variety of mal-digestion in which the food passes immediately out of the stomach, I have found most benefit from the administration of full doses of a salt of bismuth shortly before meals, combined with tincture of opium (mijj-vi).

4. *Symptomatic treatment* frequently demands attention in cases where digestion is at fault, whether associated or not with actual organic

disease of the stomach. The chief symptoms which may call for interference are want of appetite; pain; nausea or vomiting sometimes; heartburn and acidity; flatulence; eructations; pyrosis; and constipation or diarrhoea. The treatment of several of these conditions is separately considered in other parts of this work. It must be borne in mind that gastric symptoms are often relieved by remedies acting upon the contents of the stomach. Pain may be alleviated by opium, morphine, hydrocyanic acid, belladonna, or spirit of chloroform internally: with external applications over the epigastrium, namely, dry or moist heat; cold in some cases; anodyne fomentations; turpentine stapes; sinapisms: or, if the pain is continuous, a small blister, which may be dressed with morphine, or a belladonna or opium plaster. Frequently painful sensations are associated with flatulence or acidity, being relieved on removing these conditions. Flatulence and eructations are usually much diminished by the use of the medicines already considered, as well as by agents which prevent fermentation or decomposition of food. Charcoal alone, or a combination of bismuth with freshly-prepared charcoal, given after meals, is often efficacious in preventing or relieving flatulence; as well as such remedies as asafoetida, galbanum, musk, valerian, sumbul, aromatic or foetid spirit of ammonia, oil of rue or cajeput, and peppermint. Creasote, carbolic acid, sulpho-carbolate of sodium, or sulphite or hyposulphite of sodium may be given in many cases with benefit. Acidity and heartburn are more immediately relieved by the neutralizing effect of bicarbonate of sodium or potassium, or of magnesia or carbonate of magnesium; or either of these may be given before meals. Sir William Roberts recommends for gastric acidity a lozenge to be sucked, containing 10 grains of bicarbonate of sodium, with one grain of chloride of sodium, the latter to act as a sialogogue. Frequent acid eructations are often an indication for mineral acids, to check the secretion of gastric juice; in many cases, however, they are due to fermentation of food from deficiency of this secretion, and the consequent formation of lactic and other organic acids. Pyrosis is usually checked by some preparation of bismuth in full doses, combined with alkalies; or compound kino powder may be employed with advantage in some cases. Recently Prof. Fraser has recommended bichromate of potassium as a valuable remedy in dyspepsia, a drug previously used by Vulpian and others. He gives it in doses of gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{6}$, in pill or solution, three times a day, on an empty stomach.

Aperients are often required in dyspeptic cases, but should there be habitual constipation, it is very important to avoid the too frequent employment of strong purgatives. Vichy, Seltzer, Friedrichschall, Hunyadi Janos, Æsculap, Rubinat, and other aperient mineral waters are often very serviceable for relieving this symptom in dyspeptic cases.

5. It must not be forgotten that the state of the *general system*, as well as that of the main *organs*, needs due consideration in all cases of dyspepsia. Many of the remedies already alluded to act as *general tonics*, and thus aid in improving digestion. Among the conditions requiring particular notice are anaemia, which must be treated by mild ferruginous preparations; hepatic derangements, calling for an occasional dose of some mercurial preparation, podophyllin, or other suitable drugs; gout; hysteria; the malarial cachexia; and renal disease. Gastric neuroses are often much benefited by the administration of iron, strychnine, arsenic, and other *nervine tonics*. The judicious employment of hydropathic treatment, massage, or electricity may be of great service in such cases; as well as in various dyspeptic conditions.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ACUTE GASTRITIS—ACUTE GASTRIC CATARRH.

Aetiology.—*Exciting causes.*—1. The ordinary exciting cause of acute inflammation of the stomach is some *direct irritation* of its mucous surface, either mechanical or chemical, and set up by food or drink, foreign bodies, or poisons. Food may excite inflammation in any of the ways mentioned under acute dyspepsia. Certain irritants require special notice, namely, very hot or cold substances; alcoholic liquids, either taken in excess or insufficiently diluted; strong condiments; tartar emetic or other preparations of antimony; and arsenic. It must not be forgotten that the poisons last mentioned may be administered intentionally; and that arsenic may be inhaled from certain papers used for papering rooms. 2. More or less gastric catarrh commonly supervenes in the course of *other diseases*, especially in many of the exanthemata, cholera, and yellow fever; and sometimes in diphtheria, pneumonia, puerperal fever, gout, acute rheumatism, and other febrile complaints. 3. The membrane lining the stomach may be affected, along with other mucous surfaces, as the result of *taking cold*. 4. Drinking a large quantity of *cold water while the body is heated* has been regarded as a cause of gastric catarrh. 5. It has been stated that this affection occurs occasionally as an *epidemic*, attended with pyrexia. 6. Gastritis arises in connection with *starvation*, but is then probably set up indirectly.

As regards *predisposing causes*, it may be stated that children, elderly or feeble persons, and those who habitually suffer from a disordered stomach, are more liable than other individuals to attacks of gastritis from errors in diet and other slight causes.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute gastritis presents very different degrees of intensity, and special forms are described, under the names *catarrhal*, *erythematous*, and *phlegmonous* gastritis. The following is a brief account of the changes which may be met with in different degrees and combinations. Hyperæmia of the membrane has been observed during life in cases of gastritis where a fistulous opening into the stomach existed, but it may completely disappear after death. The redness is punctiform or capillary, and usually in isolated patches; in cases of irritant poisoning, however, intense redness may be seen over the entire surface, though generally more marked on the top of the rugæ. Small extravasations are not uncommon. There is the usual cloudiness or opacity which is observed in mucous inflammations, with swelling and thickening of the membrane, and diminution in consistence. Superficial erosions or ulcerations, and follicular ulcers are visible in many cases. In exceptional instances, when the inflammation is very intense, sloughs form, or suppuration is set up in the submucous tissue. Very rarely a croupous or diphtheritic deposit has been observed. The secreting structures undergo important changes. The cells and nuclei of the tubuli become enlarged and multiplied, while numerous granules and fat-globules form, so that the tubuli are distended. The solitary and lenticular glands are

much increased in size. Gastric juice is not properly secreted, but the surface of the membrane is usually covered with a thick ropy mucus, alkaline in reaction, and containing a large number of young cells. Between the glands also there is a multiplication of cells, the lymphatic tissue being increased.

It will be readily understood that the appearances vary greatly, according to the intensity and cause of the inflammation. When gastritis is the result of irritant poisoning, it often presents special characters, and deposits of the poisonous substance may be observed, or actual destruction of the coats of the stomach may take place. For a description of the appearances characteristic of the several poisons reference must be made to toxicological works.

Symptoms.—The symptoms attending acute inflammation of the stomach are usually *local* and *general*, but they exhibit wide differences in their intensity and gravity in different cases. The morbid change may vary from a slight superficial catarrh of the mucous lining to an extensive and violent inflammation, and the clinical phenomena present corresponding variations in degree.

Local.—Epigastric pain is almost invariable; and may be very intense. In character it is often hot and burning, or it shoots in different directions, especially towards the back. In some cases there is merely a sense of aching and soreness, or uneasiness and weight. These sensations are increased by food, by the act of coughing, or by a deep inspiration. They are often relieved by vomiting, but in some cases this act aggravates the suffering, especially if accompanied with violent retching. When the pain is very intense there may be spasm of the abdominal muscles. Tenderness is always present, even when pain is not complained of spontaneously, or there may be a sense of soreness. Nausea, vomiting, and retching are prominent symptoms, anything that is swallowed being usually rejected at once in severe cases. The vomited matters contain altered gastric juice, mucus, saliva, often bile, and not uncommonly a little blood or "coffee-ground" material. There is complete anorexia; with urgent thirst in marked gastritis, particularly for cool drinks. The tongue is frequently small, red, and irritable, especially at the tip and margins; or it may be furred in the centre, and smooth, with a tendency to dryness; or large, moist, and covered with a white fur, the papillæ being enlarged. The mouth is slimy, and tends to dryness; and there is an unpleasant taste. Constipation or diarrhoea may be present, according to the state of the intestines. The lips are sometimes the seat of herpes.

General.—In some forms of gastritis premonitory symptoms are observed, such as chills or slight rigors, feverishness, and general malaise. During the attack pyrexia is frequently present, though seldom to a marked degree, except in children, with restlessness, headache, nervous depression, and sleeplessness. In severe cases, and especially when the inflammation is the result of poisoning, there is often great prostration and collapse, with a cold and clammy skin, pinched and anxious features, and a very rapid, weak, and small pulse. Hiccup is sometimes a most troublesome symptom; and the breathing may be much hurried.

Diagnosis.—The symptoms above described, if present to any marked degree, are quite characteristic of gastritis; but in mild cases, or when mere gastric catarrh occurs as a complication of febrile diseases, it may be difficult to diagnose this affection positively. The tongue often gives useful indications under these circumstances. When there is much

pyrexia, constituting one form of so-called *gastric fever*, typhoid fever may be simulated at first. An important matter bearing upon the diagnosis of gastritis is the determination of its *cause* in any particular case. When the characteristic symptoms of this complaint are present in an intense degree, it must always be specially borne in mind that they may be due to the action of some irritant poison, either accidentally introduced into the stomach, or intentionally taken or administered.

Prognosis.—Generally this is favourable, except when the gastritis is the result of poisoning; or when it assumes a severe type, and attacks persons who are weak, very old or young, or suffering from acute febrile diseases. In some cases an acute or subacute gastric catarrh tends to become chronic.

Treatment.—1. If there is anything in the stomach causing irritation, the first thing to be done is to get rid of the irritant, by means of an *emetic* of sulphate of zinc, mustard, or ipecacuanha, with plenty of lukewarm water; or by the stomach-pump, if necessary. A *purgative* at the outset is often useful, such as blue-pill or calomel followed by a black draught, castor-oil, or a draught containing sulphate and carbonate of magnesium; or in some cases an enema may be given, and repeated from time to time, if required.

2. The patient should be kept in bed, in cases of any severity; and it is most important to *allow the stomach to remain in a state of rest*, either complete or partial, according to the severity of the attack. In dangerous cases no food should be given by the mouth, but nutrient enemata or suppositories administered. If food is permitted, it must be entirely of a liquid character, or only thickened with some farinaceous substance, and given in small quantities at regular intervals. Milk diluted with lime-water or soda-water, or mixed with a little arrow-root or corn-flour, weak beef-tea, or mutton or chicken-broth, are the most suitable articles of diet. Peptonized articles of food are often of the greatest value; or the different meat-juices now in use may prove serviceable. The patient must be prevented from drinking large quantities of water, which is usually much craved for, but may suck small lumps of ice at frequent intervals, and this gives much relief. As a rule *alcoholic stimulants* are not required, but sometimes brandy in small quantities, well-diluted, or mixed with soda-water, milk, or beef-tea, seems to be decidedly beneficial; or a little iced-champagne with soda-water may be given. Should there be much prostration, considerable quantities of alcoholic stimulants may be called for, and if the stomach will not bear them, they must be administered by enema.

3. The prominent *symptoms* in gastritis are most effectually alleviated by the administration of *antacids*, and *gastric sedatives* or *anodynies*. Among the most serviceable remedies may be mentioned a combination of some preparations of bismuth with hydrocyanic acid and opium or morphine; iced effervescent draughts, with hydrocyanic acid and tincture of cardamoms; opium or morphine alone; hydrocyanic acid, m iij-v , with a little mucilage or iced water; magnesia, solution of potash or soda, or one of the alkaline bicarbonates, alone or in combination with some of the other remedies mentioned. One or other of these combinations should be given at intervals of from two to four hours, according to circumstances, and it is desirable to make each dose of the medicine as small in quantity as possible. The alternation of an effervescent mixture with a pill containing opium or morphine is frequently attended with excellent results. In treating children of

course due caution must be exercised in employing the powerful drugs just mentioned. In severe cases, attended with much pain and vomiting, it will be best not to give any medicine by the stomach, and then subcutaneous injection of morphine may be of the greatest service.

4. *Local treatment.*—In cases of severe gastritis it might be advisable to apply a few leeches to the epigastrium. The constant application of heat and moisture over this region, by means of poultices, fomentations, or spongio-piline, is highly beneficial, and to these applications *anodynés* may be added. Cold is preferred by some practitioners. Sinapisms are sometimes of use, but more severe forms of counter-irritation are of doubtful efficacy, though a small blister applied to the epigastrium may be serviceable for relieving symptoms in some cases. When gastritis arises from retrocedent gout, an attempt should be made to excite inflammation in the joints.

5. Much care is needed during *convalescence* after gastritis, as regards diet, hygienic management, and medicinal treatment. Various remedies recommended for the more chronic gastric complaints are of much service if given judiciously, such as the vegetable bitters, alkalies, acids, pepsine, and preparations of iron. The state of the bowels must be attended to, and mild *aperients* administered if required. Vichy and Seltzer waters are often beneficial, when taken in moderation.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE STOMACH.

In this chapter it is intended first to give an account of each of the chief chronic diseases which affect the stomach; and then to discuss generally their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment.

I. CHRONIC GASTRITIS—CHRONIC GASTRIC CATARRH— FIBROID DISEASE OF THE STOMACH.

Different pathological conditions are included under these terms. Thus there may be merely *mechanical congestion* of the stomach and its consequences; or a *catarrhal inflammation*, which is of very common occurrence; or in some instances probably an *erythematous* condition exists, though some regard this as an acute change supervening on catarrhal gastritis. For practical purposes these different states may be conveniently discussed together. Mention may also be made here of the *fibroid* or *cirrhotic* change in the walls of the stomach which is sometimes met with, being occasionally of considerable extent, but usually localized.

Etiology.—In its more or less chronic form gastritis is met with:—1. Occasionally as the *sequel of an acute attack*. 2. As the result of *constant or repeated irritation of the stomach*, particularly by indigestible or unassimilated food, too frequent meals, abuse of tea, alcoholic excess, purgatives, stimulant and bitter medicines, hot condiments, and arsenic.

3. In connection with other *chronic organic diseases of the stomach*, especially cancer, ulceration, and albuminoid disease. 4. From *interference with the portal circulation*, the result of cardiac or hepatic disease, which leads to persistent mechanical congestion of the stomach and its consequences. 5. Associated with *constitutional or general disorders*, particularly plthisis, renal disease, gout, syphilis, or menstrual disorders. The fibroid change has been sometimes attributed to injury.

Anatomical Characters.—The mucous lining of the stomach shows increased vascularity, and the vessels may be permanently distended; frequently portions of the surface are seen to be grey, slate-coloured, or almost black, from altered blood-pigment. Small hemorrhagic erosions are not uncommon. The surface is often covered with a thick tenacious mucus. One of the most important changes is a thickening of the mucous membrane, accompanied with increased firmness and toughness, sometimes so marked that it has a leathery feel. More or less opacity is also observed, some spots appearing quite opaque and white. Mammillation is a common appearance in the vicinity of the pylorus; and rarely small polypoid formations are met with. The intimate changes which occur in chronic gastritis have been described by the late Wilson Fox, S. Fenwick, Handfield Jones, and other observers as an increase in the interstitial tissue, including the lymphatic elements; distension of the solitary glands; alterations in the gland-structures here and there, in the way of fatty degeneration and destruction of their epithelium, thickening of their membrane, contraction and puckering, formation of minute cysts, or atrophy; and sometimes fatty degeneration of the entire membrane in spots, including the small vessels. The fibroid change in the stomach, as a pronounced disease, may be limited to the vicinity of the pylorus, or extends to a variable distance beyond this part, producing a tough, leathery condition of the coats, and leading to more or less pyloric obstruction. Rarely the whole organ is affected; the coats being greatly thickened, but especially towards the pylorus, and the cavity of the stomach contracted. The submucous tissue is chiefly thickened, but all the coats are involved except the mucous membrane, which appears to be generally healthy, but it may be thrown into folds or ulcerated. This condition of the stomach is almost always accompanied with indications of acute or chronic peritonitis.

Symptoms.—The local symptoms which may point to chronic gastritis are considerable uneasiness over the stomach, amounting in some cases to actual pain, though this is never severe, generally increased soon after meals, especially after taking hot or spiced articles; a certain degree of epigastric tenderness; a sense of heat and burning, sometimes extending over the chest; frequent heartburn with acidity, and acid or gaseous eructations; impaired appetite, the patient being soon satisfied, though there may be a feeling of emptiness and longing for food; thirst, especially for cool drinks, often most marked between meals and in the evenings; a small, bright-red, raw-looking, and sore tongue, with enlarged and red papillæ, or the last condition alone, there being usually more or less fur as well, though in some cases the tongue seems abnormally clean; an irritable or catarrhal condition of the lips, mouth, and throat, sometimes accompanied with aphthæ or follicular ulceration; hot and disagreeable breath; intestinal disturbances, in the way either of constipation with pale and dry stools, or of diarrhoea with lienteric stools, as well as flatulence, and colicky pains. There is often a feeling

of sickness, but actual vomiting is only common in certain forms of gastric catarrh, namely, when it is associated with chronic alcoholism, renal disease, or portal congestion, sickness being then frequently a prominent symptom in the mornings and after meals. In some cases a large amount of alkaline mucus is brought up, when the affection is termed *gastrorrhœa*. The amount of hydrochloric acid produced during gastric digestion is diminished in cases of chronic gastric catarrh.

The *general system* suffers more or less as a rule, there being the various nervous and reflex symptoms previously described, often accompanied with loss of flesh and debility; sallowness or a tinge of jaundice; slight pyrexia, especially in the evenings, and after food or stimulants, accompanied with a dry and harsh skin, a sense of burning in the palms and soles, and flushing of the face. The urine is frequently abnormal, depositing urates abundantly, or in some cases phosphates or oxalates. Cutaneous eruptions are not uncommon.

In cases of extensive fibrosis of the stomach a *tumour* is formed, usually situated in the epigastrium, occasionally in either hypochondrium. It is smooth; more or less tender; usually movable from side to side; not absolutely dull on percussion, and when the patient drinks freely of soda-water, the note becomes more tympanitic (Fenwick). Vomiting is usually present; and in advanced cases hæmatemesis is not uncommon.

II. ATROPHY AND DEGENERATION.

It must suffice to draw attention to the fact that more or less *atrophy* of the mucous membrane of the stomach, and of its glands, is often met with, and it is a condition to be borne in mind in persons advancing in years; and also as an accompaniment of other diseases of this organ, especially cancer. It is the prominent change in some cases of "idiopathic anaemia," and has then probably resulted from fatty degeneration. *Albuminoid disease* is very common in the stomach, when other structures are affected, and may lead to tubular gastritis, haemorrhage, superficial ulceration, and dilatation of the organ. Free hydrochloric acid is generally absent from the gastric secretion.

III. ULCERATION OF THE STOMACH.

Apart from the effects of gastritis or corrosive poisoning, *acute ulceration of the stomach* is met with in exceptional cases, as the result of infective conditions, such as typhoid fever, pyæmia, and erysipelas; after severe burns, being then associated with duodenal ulcer; and in the later stages of heart-disease, especially when intense congestion of the portal system is produced. It seems to start from a local haemorrhage. These conditions are usually revealed clinically by persistent vomiting of mucus or bloody mucus; or by the occurrence of sudden haemorrhage, or of perforation and its consequences.

Gastric ulceration may be associated with albuminoid disease; and extremely rarely it is of a tubercular nature.

Setting aside the conditions just indicated, gastric ulcer is an important independent lesion, usually running a more or less chronic course, though occasionally acute, to which attention will now be directed. It is practically convenient to distinguish two forms, namely (*a*) the *perforating ulcer*, characterized by its tendency to perforation; and (*b*) the *chronic ulcer*, which is attended with much thickening of tissues.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Females are more subject to gastric ulcer than males, in the proportion of about three to one, but chiefly at the beginning and cessation of menstruation. The lesion is most common between 18 and 25 or 30 years of age; and in advanced life. The *perforating* ulcer is most frequent in *young females*; the *chronic* in *old males*. Gastric ulceration has been attributed to intemperance, bad living, a strain, mental anxiety, and numerous other causes, but generally on no adequate grounds. As a rule the morbid condition cannot be traced to any definite cause. One or more ulcers may follow dilatation of the stomach from pyloric obstruction. The condition may be associated with other diseases, such as cirrhosis of the liver, cardiac disease, granular kidney, phthisis, or syphilis. Rarely gastric ulcer is due to local pressure by a tumour; or to the bursting of an abscess.

With respect to the *pathology* of gastric ulcer there is much doubt, but it is considered by most authorities to originate in an interference with the supply of blood to a portion of the mucous membrane of the stomach, the vitality of which becomes thus impaired, so that it is acted upon by the gastric juice and destroyed, the deeper tissues being subsequently involved; in fact, a local self-digestion of the stomach takes place, especially if the gastric secretion is too acid, as, according to some observers, it is said always to be; and Reigel maintains that chronic ulceration is due to hyper-acidity alone. Imperfect vascular supply may result from embolism or thrombosis; degeneration or narrowing of the small arteries; or, it is affirmed, local spasm of a vessel. Obstruction to the portal system, causing venous obstruction, may probably help in the production of gastric ulcer. Local injury to the mucous membrane, a limited haemorrhage, or sub-mucous suppuration may be the starting point in exceptional cases. Some pathologists regard ulceration of the stomach as being invariably the consequence of inflammation. Others lay much stress upon degenerative or other changes in the tissues of the mucous membrane, and in certain cases they have no doubt much influence. Gastric ulcer has also been attributed to the action of micro-cocci, which have been found in its margins.

Anatomical Characters.—The *perforating ulcer*, or the *early stage of ulceration*, may be seen in various stages of destruction of the coats of the stomach, beginning with the mucous membrane, and extending towards the peritoneum. Its edges are even and clean-cut, as if punched out, without any thickening, and as each subsequent coat is destroyed over a smaller area than that above it, the ulcer has a somewhat conical shape, the apex being next the peritoneum, and the margin of each layer being well-defined. The floor is smooth, but may be sloughy or covered with extravasated blood.

After a gastric ulcer has existed for some time, its margins and floor become progressively more and more thickened and indurated, owing to the formation of a nucleated and granular substance, which subsequently develops into imperfect fibrous tissue. The different layers become matted together over a variable extent, but the ulcer remains distinctly conical or funnel-shaped, the mucous membrane being inverted. Grandulations are sometimes seen on its surface. It is important to notice that in this stage of the ulcer firm adhesions tend to form between the stomach and neighbouring organs, by which the evils of perforation are prevented.

The superficial shape of gastric ulcer is usually circular or oval at first, but it may become irregular, either from extension or from the coales-

cence of two or more ulcers. The size generally varies from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to 1 or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter, but it may reach as much as 5 or 6 inches in length, or, on the other hand, is so minute that it has to be carefully sought for. Usually there is only one ulcer, but two or more are sometimes found, or cicatrices of former ulcers may be observed.

The most frequent seats of gastric ulcer are the posterior surface, the neighbourhood of the smaller curvature, and the vicinity of the pylorus; it is rare on the anterior surface, near the greater curvature, or at the cardiac end. Old chronic ulcers are most frequent near the pylorus. When two ulcers are present, it is not uncommon to find them opposed to one another.

The mucous membrane around the ulcer may be quite healthy; or it presents signs of haemorrhage and extravasation of blood, polypoid vegetations, or acute or chronic catarrh. Microscopically in recent cases Fenwick has generally found the tubes healthy; and there is never any extensive atrophy of the secreting structures of the stomach.

Cicatrization frequently occurs, generally by granulation, and the cicatrix may be either smooth or puckered. Occasionally it gives rise to much thickening and contraction, in some instances leading to stricture, especially at the pyloric end, or causing the stomach to assume various distorted shapes. Sometimes a gastric ulcer does not completely cicatrize; or it heals at one part, while extending in another direction.

Perforation is very liable to happen if there is no thickening or adhesion, especially when the ulcer is so situated that it is subject to much disturbance by movement and distension of the stomach, or where adhesions cannot easily form, as in the anterior wall or near the smaller curvature. When perforation takes place, the peritoneum usually forms a small slough, and then gives way by a small sharply-defined or slightly torn opening. If adhesions have formed, the coats of the stomach may be destroyed completely without any immediate harm resulting, and ultimately even considerable portions of contiguous organs, such as the pancreas, may be eaten away. In some cases the thickened peritoneum becomes distended in the form of a pouch.

Symptoms.—Occasionally a gastric ulcer does not give rise to any characteristic symptoms, until its existence is revealed by some sudden serious lesion, such as perforation, or the opening of a large vessel and consequent severe or fatal hæmatemesis. In many instances the clinical phenomena are for a time ill-defined and obscure. The symptoms which are suggestive of ulcer may be thus summarized:—1. Marked localized pain in the epigastrium, of aching, gnawing, or burning character, or attended with a feeling of sickness or prostration; persistent, but increased after food, especially after certain articles, such as hot tea. Dr. Fenwick has recommended the administration of one or two teaspoonfuls of common salt in half a tumblerful of water in the early morning, to test for local pain due to ulcer. 2. Corresponding local tenderness on pressure. 3. Vomiting, particularly after food or drink, the act not being attended with much nausea or retching as a rule, and generally affording relief to the pain: while the vomited matters sometimes contain *sarcinae ventriculi*, or fragments of the gastric tissues. 4. Hæmatemesis, either due to capillary rupture or to the opening of a large vessel, and generally followed by melæna. 5. More or less general wasting and debility, which may be accompanied with a dull, earthy, cachectic aspect; or in young females marked anaemia or chlorosis, the menstrual functions being at the same time usually much disturbed. Various dyspeptic

symptoms may be present, such as flatulence, eructations, pyrosis, deranged appetite, and constipation or occasionally diarrhoea. Appetite is, however, often very good in cases of gastric ulcer, but patients are afraid to eat, from dread of pain.

There are some points of practical importance which require comment. The exact site of the pain will vary with that of the ulcer, but it is most commonly felt a little to the right of the epigastrium : if the ulcer is on the posterior surface, the pain may be referred to the back, on one side of the spine. Movement and posture often influence the degree of suffering; and it is frequently aggravated by mental emotion, or in females during the menstrual periods. In the chronic form of gastric ulcer with much thickening pressure not uncommonly gives marked relief, and hence some patients voluntarily press against the epigastrium. Occasionally food also diminishes instead of increasing the pain. Vomiting is chiefly observed when an orifice or its vicinity is affected, especially the pyloric. It is sometimes voluntarily excited, in order to relieve pain. The interval which elapses between the taking of food and the subsequent occurrence of sickness or aggravation of suffering, will often indicate the situation of the ulcer. Thus, if it is near the cardiac opening, which is rare, these effects are produced immediately ; if in the vicinity of the pylorus, they only follow after a considerable interval. In some instances the pyloric orifice is obstructed, and the stomach becomes consequently dilated. When there is much thickening and induration about an ulcer, this may occasionally be made out by careful manipulation, but there is no definite tumour. The tongue is often abnormal in gastric ulcer, but has no special characters. Salivation is said to occur sometimes, the saliva being deficient in sulphocyanide of potassium.

The character and severity of the *general* symptoms will depend mainly on the intensity of the pain ; the degree of interference with digestion and nutrition ; and the amount and frequency of hemorrhage. In exceptional instances of perforating ulcer pyrexia has been noticed.

The *course* and *duration* of cases of gastric ulcer are very variable. As a rule the complaint is chronic, but occasionally the perforating variety is rather acute in its progress. Many cases terminate in cicatrization and recovery ; but death is also not an uncommon event, taking place either suddenly or rapidly from perforation or haemorrhage, or gradually from asthenia, or from the effects of cicatrization.

IV. CANCER OF THE STOMACH.

Etiology.—Among *general predisposing causes* of gastric cancer age is the most important. The majority of cases occur between 40 and 70 years of age, the greatest liability to the disease being from 60 to 70. It is rare under 35, but may occur as early as 25 years of age, or even earlier ; or it may begin after 70. The male sex ; hereditary tendency ; and mental anxiety or worry are also believed to predispose to gastric cancer. It is not favoured by poor living or intemperance. As *local causes* leading to the development of the disease have been mentioned long-continued pressure over the epigastrium ; local injury ; and the repeated action of irritants upon the stomach, such as hot spices or strong spirits. It seems certain that cancer occasionally supervenes upon a chronic ulcer of the stomach.

Anatomical Characters.—All forms of cancer are met with in the stomach, but *scirrhus* is by far the most common. It is in this organ, however, that the *colloid* variety is usually observed, though chiefly associated with *scirrhus*; and *villous* cancer has been met with in rare instances. *Epithelioma* may occur under two forms. The growth may also be of the nature of a *sarcoma*. The pyloric orifice and its vicinity is the part of the stomach generally involved, but the cardiac end, curvatures, fundus, or body may be attacked. The cancer may be very limited in extent, especially *scirrhus*; or widely-spread, implicating a great portion of the walls, which is especially the case with *colloid*, and when the body of the stomach is implicated. In some cases it passes from the stomach to the oesophagus, but shows no tendency to invade the duodenum. The submucous tissue is usually the primary seat of the formation, and it subsequently involves the deeper coats, as well as the mucous membrane partially. *Colloid*, however, according to the late Dr. Wilson Fox, seems to begin in the glandular structures. In most cases the morbid growth infiltrates the coats of the stomach, but *encephaloid* cancer is prone to form nodular masses in the submucous tissue.

The actual characters of the cancerous part will necessarily vary with the nature and amount of the growth. In most instances it will be found hard, dense, thickened, contracted, and whitish on section; but each variety presents its own peculiar characters. Not infrequently the mucous membrane becomes destroyed, and an ulcer forms, but there may be extensive cancer without any ulceration. The ulcer has thick ragged margins, and an uneven floor, which presents cancerous masses. Adhesions often form with other organs, which may further become involved by extension; or occasionally perforation takes place into one of the hollow viscera or other parts.

The seat of the cancer influences materially the shape and size of the stomach, and the condition of its walls. When the disease involves the pylorus, the organ becomes much dilated, and its walls hypertrophied. On the other hand, it is contracted, shrunken, and small when the cardiac orifice is affected. If the middle of the body of the stomach is alone implicated, the cavity is greatly constricted at this part, so that the organ assumes an hour-glass form. Cancer along the curvatures distorts the stomach in various ways by its contraction, often drawing the orifices near together. In some instances the organ is displaced considerably, owing to a mass at the pyloric end having fallen in the abdominal cavity by its own weight, and subsequently become adherent in its abnormal position. Such a mass may press on various structures, and thus lead to other morbid conditions, for instance, on the portal vein, causing ascites.

Acute or chronic gastritis and glandular degeneration are generally associated with gastric cancer, to a greater or less extent. Dr. Fenwick lays particular stress on the extent of the degeneration of the gastric glands in connection with cancer. The muscular tissue is also more or less altered in its characters.

Cancer of the stomach is almost always *primary*, but it tends to involve other abdominal organs and structures, either by extension or by originating secondary deposits, the latter being particularly common in the liver and neighbouring glands. Rarely perforation takes place into the colon or peritoneum. Quite exceptionally a communication is established with the abdominal walls.

Symptoms.—For some time, and in some cases to the last, the symptoms of gastric cancer are merely those of dyspepsia, with wasting; or the disease may be entirely latent. As a rule, however, there are prominent *local* and *general* symptoms.

Local.—Pain is generally present in some part of the epigastrium, varying with the seat of the cancer, and though at first amounting merely to a sense of weight and uneasiness, it usually becomes marked. It may be continuous or intermittent, and is often paroxysmally increased. Food aggravates the pain as a rule, but not so distinctly as in cases of gastric ulcer, and it may even be relieved by food, while it is present when the stomach is empty. In character it is frequently described as aching, burning, gnawing, or lancinating, shooting towards the hypochondria, back, or shoulders. Local tenderness is almost invariable, even when there is no spontaneous pain, but it is said not to be so limited or so severe as in gastric ulcer. The tenderness may be associated with some evident tumour or thickening.

Nausea and vomiting are rarely altogether absent in gastric cancer, usually becoming more frequent and distressing as the disease progresses. Vomiting is particularly observed if either of the orifices is involved, or if there is ulceration, and the time of its occurrence with reference to the taking of food varies according to the seat of the cancer, in the same manner as has been described in relation to ulcer of the stomach. The rejected matters not uncommonly contain numerous *sarcinae ventriculi* and *torulae*, as well as occasionally cancerous elements; when there is ulceration they may be very offensive. Sometimes the fluids vomited in gastric cancer become quite solid when boiled with liquor potassæ, and this is said to be useful in diagnosis.

Hæmatemesis is a very frequent and early symptom of gastric cancer, but usually to a small amount. Large hæmorrhages are stated only to occur in the later stages, and not to be so common as in connection with ulcer, but the former statement is certainly not always true, according to my experience. Melæna is often observed at the same time, and may occur even when there is no hæmatemesis.

Appetite varies, but tends to become deficient or lost from an early period, and some authorities lay great stress on loss of appetite as an indication of gastric cancer; it may, however, be excellent throughout. The tongue has no constant characters. Among other not uncommon symptoms may be mentioned flatulence; gaseous eructations, at first odourless, afterwards often foetid; acidity; gastrorrhœa; obstinate constipation; and hiccup.

Physical examination may reveal one or more of the following conditions, and it should in all suspected cases be carefully and repeatedly made, especially when the stomach is empty:—1. A sensation of *fullness* and *resistance* over the epigastrium, perhaps not uniform, detected by manipulation and percussion, the sound produced by the latter method being somewhat dull and muffled. This indicates extensive infiltration of the walls. 2. A *distinct tumour*, especially in connection with scirrhus of the pylorus. It is usually situated in the right hypochondrium or epigastrium, but may be felt in the iliac fossa owing to displacement of the stomach, or in females near the umbilicus. The tumour is small, circumscribed, dense, hard, and irregular. Not usually movable on manipulation, it sometimes alters its position with change of posture, and with varying degrees of distension of the stomach. There is dulness on percussion over the tumour, often, however, modified by the

stomach-sound. Aortie pulsation may be transmitted through it. Occasionally a distinct tumour is felt towards the left hypochondrium. It is said that a cancerous tumour of the stomach may disappear completely by sloughing or ulceration. 3. *Dilatation of the stomach*, due to pyloric obstruction. 4. *Retraction of the abdomen*, which may even assume a concave form, due to contraction of the stomach and emptiness of the intestines; and when this condition is present, a tumour can be more easily detected, and may even be visible. 5. On the other hand, *abdominal enlargement* in exceptional instances, due to ascites, in consequence of a pyloric tumour pressing on the portal vein. Materials removed from the stomach during the process of digestion in cases of gastric cancer, show great diminution or entire absence of hydrochloric acid.

General.—The constitutional symptoms are as a rule very pronounced in gastric cancer, namely, early and rapidly-progressing emaciation and debility, ultimately often becoming extreme; signs of the cancerous cachexia, the skin being dry and harsh, with a dirty, sallow, or earthy hue, and the features sunken and pinched; marked anaemia, especially if much blood has been lost, with a tendency to oedema of the legs, or sometimes to venous thrombosis; great weakness of the heart and pulse; lowness of spirits, with a melancholic and anxious expression, or irritability and moroseness; and disturbed sleep. Occasionally jaundice is observed, owing to interference with the common bile-duct. In the later stages the temperature is now and then a little elevated, but pyrexia is absent as a rule. The urine has been found to contain excess of indican, and also peptones in some cases of cancer of the stomach.

The course and duration of gastric cancer are subject to certain variations. Generally the progress is continuous and rapid; sometimes there are slight or even marked remissions in the symptoms, but these seldom last for any length of time. Cases rarely extend beyond two years from the first appearance of symptoms; and the average duration is said to be a little over a year.

V. PYLORIC OBSTRUCTION—DILATATION OF THE STOMACH—PYLORIC INCOMPETENCE.

Aetiology.—The pylorus may be obstructed either from some morbid condition of the stomach itself, inducing stricture or stenosis; or from external pressure. The following list includes the main causes:—
1. *Cancer of the pylorus*, especially scirrhus, which is by far the most frequent cause. 2. *Cicatrization of an ulcer*. 3. *Corrosive poisoning* and its results. 4. *Hypertrophy of the coats*, with thickening of the submucous tissue, and fibroid changes involving the walls. 5. *Spasmodic contraction* of the muscular coat, due to an ulcer in the vicinity. 6. *External pressure* by—*a*, tumour of the pancreas; *b*, cancerous masses projecting from the liver; *c*, enlarged glands in the vicinity; *d*, very rarely a tumour connected with the gall-bladder; *e*, it is said a movable kidney. 7. *Displacement* of the stomach by adhesions, and dragging down of the pylorus.

Pyloric obstruction causes the stomach to become dilated, while its walls hypertrophy, especially the muscular coat, in the endeavour to overcome the interference with the passage of the food, the intestines at the same time tending to become contracted.

Chronic dilatation of the stomach in the large majority of cases follows pyloric obstruction; but it may also result from a difficulty in the duodenum, or from the irritation produced by an ulcer just beyond the pylorus; very rarely from constriction of the upper part of the jejunum. A certain degree of distension is due sometimes to deficient tone or actual paresis of the muscular coat of the organ, from weakness, want of proper innervation, or chronic catarrh. It may thus occur in anaemia, after an acute illness, or in cases of debility from any cause. Gastric dilatation is not uncommon in cases of diabetes. It may also arise from habitual over-distension of the stomach with food and drink, especially certain kinds of food containing much starch, which gives rise to a large amount of gas, such as potatoes and macaroni. As exceptional causes have been mentioned paralysis of the gastric walls, interfering with the expulsion of food, due to injury to the splanchnic nerves, or to a fibroid change in the muscular coat; hernia of the stomach through the diaphragm, or its displacement by an omental hernia; and accumulations of foreign substances in its interior, such as hair. An *acute* form of gastric dilatation is met with in exceptional instances, to which the late Dr. Fagge applied the term "acute paralytic distension," and he attributed the condition to the development of a further morbid state upon one of catarrhal inflammation; it has also been said to have been produced by drinking a large quantity of effervescent liquid.

Probably a condition of *pyloric incompetence* is sometimes present, in consequence of which the food passes too readily out of the stomach, either immediately after its entrance, or before it is properly digested. This incompetence may be due to destruction of the tissues about the pylorus by malignant disease or ulceration; or to paralysis of the sphincter.

Symptoms.—In cases of pyloric obstruction there may be evidences of some organic disease of the stomach about the pylorus, or of some morbid condition in its vicinity causing pressure. The development of chronic dilatation is attended with various gastric symptoms, but the only positive clinical indications of this condition are derived from the *characters of the vomiting*, and of the *matters rejected*; accompanied with the physical signs of a *dilated stomach*. The vomiting comes on several hours after food, or may only occur at intervals of a few days, an enormous quantity being then discharged. The patient feels more and more uncomfortable and distended, and may be conscious of a sensation of fermentation, great relief being obtained when the stomach is evacuated. The organ is, however, seldom quite emptied, its contents being apparently only partially pumped out by the action of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles. The vomit is usually more or less dark-brown; extremely sour and scalding; strongly acid, from the presence of various acids produced by fermentation and decomposition; contains numerous *sarcinae* and *torula*; and readily ferments, being consequently frothy. On standing a thick scum forms, and a brown sediment is deposited. Haematemesis is exceptional. There is rarely any bile in the vomit. Among common symptoms are distressing eructations; acidity and heartburn; thirst; and excessive secretion of saliva. The patient may be conscious of food passing too low in the abdomen. General symptoms are often prominent; and in dilated stomach Kussmaul has sometimes noticed painful cramps in the flexors of the arms, the calves, and the abdominal muscles, which he attributes to abnormal dryness of the muscular tissue. The bowels are much

constipated, and the stools hard. The urine is small in quantity, and may be neutral or alkaline, but is usually acid, and often deposits urates abundantly.

The stomach is more or less enlarged, occasionally so much so as to cause general distension of the abdomen. The *physical signs* of this enlargement are as follows:—(i.) The abdomen is *unsymmetrical*, and the *shape of the stomach* may be made out by careful examination; while movements of the organ can sometimes be seen or felt, or are excited by manipulation, cold, or galvanism. As regards the exact shape, the upper curvature of the stomach stretches across obliquely from left to right, being movable with respiration; the epigastrium is hollow; and there is much more fulness towards the left than the right side of the abdomen. (ii.) On *succussion* a splashing-sensation is often experienced, when the stomach contains liquid. (iii.) *Percussion* reveals extension of the stomach-note upwards, as well as downwards, if the organ is empty. If it contains food or fluid, however, there is dulness below, as after taking a good draught of water; and this dulness may be made to alter its position by changing the posture of the patient. By lowering the head, and elevating the hips and legs, a clear sound is elicited at the lower boundary of the stomach, where previously there was dulness. (iv.) If a *bougie* or similar instrument is passed by the oesophagus, it may reach the bottom of the stomach, and be then felt through the abdominal walls. (v.) Emptying the stomach by means of the *stomach-pump* or other apparatus may afford some aid in diagnosis. (vi.) The introduction of substances into the stomach which *effervesce*, and produce carbonic anhydride gas, is sometimes useful to indicate the limits of a dilated stomach. Also some material which is easily recognized by its appearance may be given, such as charcoal, to see whether it can get through the pylorus, and appear in the faeces. The administration of salol has been recommended by Ewald and Sievers as a test of the rapidity with which materials pass out of the stomach. This substance is converted into salicylic acid as soon as it passes into the duodenum, which can be detected in the urine, but it either remains in, or is absorbed by the stomach unchanged. A modified method by Huber consists in giving 1 grammie of salol, the salicylic acid derived from this quantity being normally excreted within 24 hours. Extension of this time indicates gastric feebleness or dilatation. (vii.) *Auscultation* may reveal a splashing-sound on succussion; the sound of food or liquid falling into the stomach, when swallowed; or loud heart-sounds reverberating through the space. If there is any real difficulty in recognizing dilatation of the stomach, it has been recommended by Dr. S. Fenwick to introduce the stomach-pump after the patient has abstained from food for 12 hours, and examine what is removed with the microscope.

In *acute gastric dilatation* the abdomen enlarges rapidly, and the physical signs of the dilated stomach are discovered on examination. There is usually severe and abundant vomiting; with symptoms of collapse, which may terminate fatally.

Pyloric incompetence leads to digestive disorders in the intestinal canal, usually accompanied with diarrhoea, undigested food being passed in the stools; while the general nutrition is liable to become much impaired. This condition may be recognized by the plan of introducing into the stomach substances which cause effervescence, and the formation of gas; or by administering charcoal or salol.

VI. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT OF CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE STOMACH.

1. **DIAGNOSIS.**—It cannot be too strongly insisted upon that it is of the highest importance to detect organic disease of the stomach at as early a period as possible; and to endeavour to determine what changes are actually present. The practice of regarding cases attended with gastric symptoms as being merely those of "dyspepsia" or "indigestion," without making proper investigation, is often disastrous, and cannot be too emphatically condemned. Not uncommonly a very simple or even casual abdominal examination is the means of discovering serious disease; or it may be necessary to have recourse to more or less elaborate methods of investigation, though these should be employed with discretion. The recognition of the slighter forms of organic mischief may be difficult, but the symptoms and concomitant circumstances often clearly reveal their presence, thus explaining dyspeptic conditions. It must be remembered that extensive organic disease of the stomach may exist, even cancer involving a considerable portion of the gastric walls, without any, or with only slight and indefinite local phenomena, and the diagnosis has then to be chiefly founded on the general symptoms. The following are the main practical points relating to the diagnosis of chronic gastric affections which may be specially referred to:—

a. Young women not infrequently complain of *severe gastric pain*, in whom it is difficult to determine with certainty whether they are suffering from mere *gastralgia* or *nervous dyspepsia*, or from *perforating ulcer*. In any really doubtful case it is safer to diagnose the latter affection. The chief distinctions are that in gastric ulcer the pain is usually more localized, and is almost always much increased by food; there is a sense of soreness and deep tenderness, but often less superficial hyperæsthesia than in the other affections; vomiting occurs after food, usually affording relief, and there may be haematemesis; wasting is generally well-marked; while there are none of the neuralgic pains in other parts, or signs of hysteria, so commonly associated with gastralgia or nervous dyspepsia.

b. In persons advanced in years more especially, but occasionally in younger individuals, symptoms are not uncommonly present which render the diagnosis between mere *functional disorder* and *grave organic disease* of the stomach—either *chronic ulcer* or *cancer*—for a time very doubtful. Persistent disturbance of digestion without any evident cause, and not yielding to treatment, should lead to the suspicion of the existence of serious organic disease, though it must be remembered that the symptoms may be due to glandular degeneration and atrophy. The diagnosis would be rendered more positive by the presence of marked pain in the epigastrium, increased by food; localized tenderness; vomiting; haematemesis; and progressive emaciation. Some of these symptoms, however, especially pain, may be very intense in connection with mere functional disorder in females and gouty subjects. With regard to haemorrhage, it is important to observe that the blood, if in small quantity, is sometimes not vomited, but is passed entirely by the stools, and therefore in any doubtful case it is desirable to examine the faeces.

Repeated physical examination of the abdomen at short intervals will often clear up any obscurity in the diagnosis.

c. The diagnosis of *chronic ulcer* from *cancer* is frequently difficult at first. The circumstances in favour of the latter are:—the patient being a male and advanced in years; hereditary history of cancer; pain more constant, and less influenced by food and vomiting; haemorrhage not occurring in the earlier stages, but late in the case, and being on a small scale; marked and early digestive disturbances, appetite being much impaired; considerable and rapid wasting and anaemia, especially if independent of vomiting or loss of blood; and evidences of the cancerous cachexia. Later on, the discovery of a tumour, especially near the pylorus; signs of obstruction of the pyloric orifice, with dilatation of the stomach; inefficiency of treatment; the almost continuous and speedy progress of the case; and perhaps signs of cancer in other parts, usually serve to render the diagnosis certain. A cancerous tumour may be simulated by fibroid disease of the stomach.

With regard to the *part of the stomach* involved, this can often be made out by noting the exact seat of pain and tenderness; the relation of pain and vomiting to food and posture; the condition of the organ as regards contraction or dilatation; and the locality of any physical signs which may be discovered.

Dilatation of the stomach is as a rule readily made out by the symptoms and physical signs already described. It is important to determine whether it is primary, or secondary to obstruction.

d. Affections of the stomach may simulate *neighbouring diseases*, or vice versa, especially disease of the duodenum or head of the pancreas; cancer in the small or large omentum; hepatic affections; gall-stones; splenic enlargement; disease of the absorbent glands; affections of the transverse colon; and painful or other conditions of the abdominal walls. A contracted rectus abdominis may simulate a tumour connected with the stomach. In any doubtful case a correct diagnosis can only be arrived at by a careful consideration of all its details.

e. Occasionally *rare conditions* in connection with the stomach give rise to much difficulty in explaining symptoms associated with this organ. Of such which have come under my own notice I may mention a hernial protrusion of this organ through the diaphragm; and displacement, with fixation by adhesions. Other special cases also to be borne in mind are those in which solid materials have collected in the stomach, and formed a tumour.

2. PROGNOSIS.—The prognosis of cases of gastric organic disease must depend on their nature, extent, and a variety of other circumstances. Many of the less serious forms can be completely cured by proper treatment. Others cannot be materially affected, but patients may go on fairly well with judicious management. Dilated stomach can often be markedly benefited by treatment.

Gastric ulcer is obviously a dangerous lesion. The variety which occurs in young women is the more immediately grave, on account of its tendency to perforation and haemorrhage. A large proportion of presumed cases of perforating ulcer recover, however, the ulcer being supposed to cicatrize. The chronic ulcer shows much less disposition to heal, but is much less likely to lead to a speedily fatal issue, death usually taking place slowly by asthenia. In proportion to the severity of the stomach-symptoms—pain, vomiting, and haemorrhage—is the prognosis more grave. The effects of cicatrization may also prove

serious at some time or other. It must not be forgotten that cancer may develop on chronic ulcer.

Cancer is necessarily a fatal disease, and the question can merely be one of duration. This must be determined in each particular case by the character of the symptoms; and the progress of the malady. Rarely does the duration extend beyond two years, and generally it is much shorter than this period. In certain cases it may be prolonged by operative procedures.

3. TREATMENT.—The general principles of treatment applicable to organic diseases of the stomach are in the main similar to those already discussed in relation to digestive disorders, to which reference may be made. Cases of chronic gastric catarrh are, as a rule, practically dealt with in the same way as those of certain forms of dyspepsia: but in some cases, where much mucus forms and collects in the stomach, washing out the organ is of great service. If there are indications of advanced glandular atrophy, it is of no use to give agents to promote the secretion of gastric juice, but *artificial digestants* are then chiefly indicated. The more practical points relating to the treatment of the graver forms of organic disease of the stomach will now be briefly dealt with.

a. In treating *gastric ulcer*, especially the perforating variety, *diet* is all-important. In order to promote the healing process, and to guard against untoward events, one main indication is to keep the stomach in as complete a condition of rest as possible. Hence anything which is in the least degree liable to irritate this organ, or to give rise to flatulent distension, must be absolutely forbidden. Further, the food should consist of liquids or pulpy materials, such as thick soups, pounded underdone meats, or meat-extracts; milk, either alone or thickened with corn-flour or arrowroot; and the yolk of eggs beaten up or soft-boiled; and even these must be given only in small and regulated quantities, at stated intervals. In the curative treatment of *perforating ulcer* it is a common and useful practice to keep the patient in bed for some weeks, so that less nutriment may be required. Some have even gone so far as to advocate that the system should be supported entirely by nutrient enemata, but this is rarely required, unless serious symptoms should supervene, such as uncontrollable sickness or haematemesis.

As regards *cancer* no definite rules can be laid down, but as digestible and nutritious food as possible must be given, each case being managed on its own merits. When the stomach is *dilated*, particular care is required with regard to the food and drink, as to its nature, quantity, and times of administration. It may be worth while to note that in cancer, ulcer, and dilatation of the stomach the position assumed during or after the taking of food has sometimes a decided influence, in the way of preventing or relieving pain and other symptoms.

b. The *medicinal treatment* of gastric ulcer or cancer is almost entirely symptomatic. Agents which act upon the stomach or its contents are often indicated, but they must always be employed with particular care and discretion. With regard to medicines which directly promote the *healing of an ulcer*, subnitrate and carbonate of bismuth are supposed to act thus (gr. x every four or six hours), and also nitrate or oxide of silver; either of these may be combined with opium or morphine. Prof. Fraser has found bichromate of potassium useful in the treatment of cases of chronic ulcer. There is no known remedy which has the least direct influence upon cancer of the stomach, although certain agents

have been vaunted for this purpose. For the relief of pain subcutaneous injection of morphine may be required.

c. In cases of *dilated stomach* an elastic abdominal support should be worn; and an endeavour may be made to produce contraction of the muscular fibres, and to improve their tone, by massage and faradization through the abdominal walls. *Nux vomica* or strychnine may also be given. The practice now generally adopted, however, and usually with great advantage, in cases of gastric dilatation, is that introduced by Kussmaul, of washing out the stomach, or *lavage*, as it is termed. For this purpose a syphon-apparatus is now generally employed, with a soft, flexible catheter or stomach-tube, and a funnel. Various fluids are used, as luke-warm water; 1 per cent. solution of salt; 3 to 5 per cent. solution of bicarbonate of sodium; 3 per cent. solution of boric acid or borax, or other *antiseptics*. The effects attributed to lavage are that it increases peristaltic action and improves the tone of the muscular coat; removes stagnating and fermenting gastric contents; clears away mucus, and prevents its excessive formation; and stimulates the activity of the gastric glands. Under its employment not only are the symptoms associated with dilatation of the stomach often greatly benefited; but the organ also diminishes in size, sometimes to a marked degree.

d. Untoward events are liable to occur in cases of gastric ulcer, cancer, or dilatation, which require special treatment. Those requiring special mention are severe haemorrhage and perforation. They must be dealt with on ordinary principles. In cases of perforation from gastric ulcer the abdomen has been opened, and the lesion successfully treated by surgical measures.

e. In addition to what has just been stated, it must suffice to refer very briefly to other *operations* in relation to certain diseases of the stomach. In suitable cases of pyloric cancer pylorectomy, gastro-enterostomy, and enterostomy have been severally practised. Mechanical dilatation of the pylorus has also been advocated by Loreta as a method of treatment for obstruction of this orifice, an incision being made into the stomach, and a finger of each hand introduced into the pylorus, which is then forcibly stretched. The cardiac orifice may sometimes be dilated from above; but it has also been recommended to open the stomach, and stretch it from below.

CHAPTER XL.

ON INTESTINAL SYMPTOMS AND FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS.

I. ENTERALGIA.

Aetiology.—Enteralgia is one of the recognized forms of visceral neuralgia, and is defined by the late Dr. Wardell as “a painful affection of the intestines, of neuralgic character, generally accompanied with constipation and flatus.” Dr. Clifford Allbutt, in his *Goulstonian Lectures*, also speaks of this malady as “one of singular character and marked identity”; but he further remarks, “as a matter of speculation I hesitate to place the seat of enteralgia in the bowel at all.” The *disposing* and *exciting causes* of the complaint are in the main similar

to those which originate gastralgia. Local causes, such as flatulence, undigested food, accumulated faeces, etc., are mentioned by Wardell and other writers, but it certainly appears that in the painful attacks thus produced there is an element of intestinal colic, as well as in those resulting from lead-poisoning. Enteralgia occurs both in males and females, but there are differences of opinion as to its relative frequency.

Symptoms. The essential symptom of enteralgia is abdominal pain, coming on in paroxysms, usually sudden, in some instances more gradual. The attacks are generally irregular in their onset, sometimes distinctly periodic. The pain is said to begin in the majority of cases in the umbilical region, or in the right flank, but it moves about to other parts of the abdomen. It varies in its character, being described as sharp, shooting, piercing, twisting, drawing or tightening, rolling, aching, etc.; and in some instances it has been of the most agonizing intensity. In the severer cases more or less collapse and subsequent prostration remain. Wardell states that enteralgia is frequently accompanied with constipation, accumulation of faeces, and flatulence; but Allbutt regards the complaint in typical cases as being uncomplicated with any intestinal derangement. Diarrhoea is occasionally observed; and also vomiting in rare instances. There may be other associated visceral neuroses; as well as neuralgia affecting the spinal nerves.

Treatment.—The immediate treatment of enteralgia consists in relieving the painful paroxysms by means of *anodynes*, with the application of heat and other local measures which alleviate pain. During the intervals the alimentary canal and digestive functions must be attended to; and the general treatment suitable for neurotics carried out, with change of air, and *tonics*. Dr. Allbutt recommends quinine and belladonna; arsenic is not so useful as in gastralgia.

II. INTESTINAL COLIC.

Aetiology.—Intestinal colic is a painful affection, attended with irregular spasmodic contractions of the muscular coat of the bowel. Its causes are:—1. *Direct irritation of the bowel* by improper or undigested food; cold drinks or ices; irritant, acrid, or poisonous substances; excessive or morbid secretions, especially bile; retained faeces, colic being often associated with constipation and flatulence; and foreign bodies, such as fruit-stones, gall-stones, or worms. 2. *Organic diseases of the intestines*; and the different forms of *intestinal obstruction*. 3. *Reflex irritation*, as from ovarian and uterine affections; or during the passage of a renal or hepatic calculus. 4. *Morbid conditions of the blood*, especially in gout, and perhaps rheumatism. 5. *Lead-poisoning*. 6. *Disorders of the nervous system*, particularly in connection with hysteria, or as the result of strong emotion. 7. Occasionally *exposure to cold*, either generally or locally.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of intestinal colic are usually quite characteristic. Paroxysmal pain is felt in the abdomen, often coming on quite suddenly, and presenting remissions or intermissions. It generally begins and is most severe about the umbilical region, but may spread over the entire abdomen, and is liable to change its site constantly. As a rule the pain is of considerable intensity, being sometimes most excruciating during the exacerbations, while in character it is more or less twisting, pinching, or constricting, what is commonly termed

griping. Pressure almost always gives marked relief, the patient either bending forwards and pressing with the hands, or lying upon the abdomen; at the same time being very restless, rolling and tossing about more or less constantly. Should the spasm continue for a long time, a little soreness may be left. Ordinarily the bowels are constipated, and distended with flatus; diarrhoea may be present, however, in some conditions. Occasionally vomiting takes place, but then probably the stomach is affected. *Physical examination* generally reveals flatulent distension, except in lead-colic, when the abdomen is usually more or less retracted; while the spasmodic movements of the bowels, and rolling about of flatus, can often be seen or felt. The abdominal muscles are also commonly in a state of rigid contraction, or they may be knotted here and there.

The patient presents an expression of suffering, and if the pain is very severe and prolonged, there may be signs of more or less collapse. Pyrexia is absent. The attack lasts a variable time, and usually ends abruptly, being followed by a feeling of great relief and comfort.

Treatment. The first thing to be attended to is to find out the cause of an attack of intestinal colic, and to get rid of this. A copious *aperient enema* is generally useful, to which may be added some turpentine or asafœtida, if there is much flatulence; or a brisk *purgative* may be given by the mouth in less urgent cases, such as a full dose of castor oil, either alone or preceded by calomel, a black draught, or one containing sulphate and carbonate of magnesium with peppermint-water. Opium is the chief remedy for the relief of pain and spasm; it is best given in the form of tincture or liquor opii sedativus, which may be combined with spirit of chloroform and tincture of cardamoms. In severe cases subcutaneous injection of morphine may be employed. Warm *carminative* drinks are also beneficial; or a little hot spirit and water may be given. Should the attack be associated with hysteria, a draught containing tincture of valerian or asafœtida is indicated. The patient should be kept warm; and the assiduous application of dry heat over the abdomen, with friction, will usually afford great relief. In some cases hot fomentations answer best. Any signs of collapse must be combated by *stimulants*. It may be remarked that infants probably often suffer from intestinal colic, on account of improper feeding. This may usually be prevented by careful nursing, and attention to the state of the bowels; but should it arise, some *carminative water* may be given, such as dill-water, along with magnesia or a little castor oil, and heat applied over the abdomen.

III. DISORDERS OF THE BOWELS.

The chief irregularities in the action of the bowels are usually summed up under the terms *constipation* and *diarrhoea*. It must be understood, however, that it is often necessary to make careful investigation as to what is really meant by these expressions, and it cannot be too strongly enforced that a personal examination of the evacuations is demanded in a considerable number of cases. In this examination the chief points to be noticed are their amount; colour; general appearance; consistence; the form and size of any solid faeces; odour; if there are any signs of fermentation or aeration; and general composition. The materials to be specially looked for, in addition to ordinary faeces, include various articles of food, either unaltered or more or less digested;

foreign bodies introduced from without; calculi, especially hepatic; intestinal worms or hydatids; blood or altered blood; mucus or pus; fatty matters; fibrinous floeculi or casts; epithelial shreds; vegetable, animal, or mineral poisons; or, rarely, sloughs or detached portions of the intestines. Occasionally a chemical and microscopical examination of the faeces is necessary, especially for the detection of poisonous substances and parasites, or even merely to determine their composition. It will now be expedient to discuss constipation and diarrhoea separately.

A. CONSTIPATION.

Etiology.—The immediate causes of this very common symptom may be summed up as:—1. *Mechanical obstruction* in some part of the alimentary canal, directly interfering with the passage of the faeces. 2. *Deficient peristaltic action* of the intestinal muscular coat, especially that of the large bowel, due to a condition of atony, or impaired nervous stimulus; or *want of expulsive power*. 3. *Deficiency of secretions*, particularly of the intestinal secretion and bile, or, as some believe, their *too rapid absorption*; the faeces being consequently unusually solid, while at the same time the peristaltic action of the bowel is diminished. Constipation is usually very marked in cases of pyloric obstruction, owing to deficiency of fluids in the intestinal canal.

The first group of cases will be separately considered. The other two classes may be associated with *organic diseases*, but are very frequently the consequence of mere *functional disturbance*. This may arise from a great variety of causes, of which the chief are habitual neglect of the act of defaecation, either from carelessness, want of time, or undue modesty; indulgence in astringent articles of diet; habitual use of opium; excessive smoking; a sedentary life, especially if combined with much mental work; enervating habits, particularly lying in bed to a late hour in the morning; anaemia, debility, and want of tone from any cause; hepatic derangements; most acute febrile diseases; various chronic affections, especially those connected with the nervous system; uterine and ovarian derangements; and the presence of lead in the system.

Undoubtedly some individuals are predisposed to constipation, particularly those who are of a slow, languid, or lethargic temperament. This disorder is more common among females than males; and is more liable to arise as age advances, though it is of very frequent occurrence in young women.

Symptoms.—Constipation simply means that the stools are not passed with sufficient frequency, being at the same time generally deficient in quantity, as well as abnormally dry and firm, or even solid. In many instances it is a mere temporary derangement; but in others the bowels are habitually confined. Some individuals state that their bowels are regular, simply because they go to the closet every day, but in reality they suffer from habitual constipation, as they only pass small lumps of hard faeces; hence the necessity for making close enquiry in any doubtful case. The degree of constipation varies much, but it is not uncommon to meet with patients, especially females, whose bowels are only moved once or twice a week; and sometimes the intervals are even longer than this, being in exceptional cases quite extraordinary. Hence faeces may accumulate to an enormous amount in the intestines,

distending them greatly; and when discharged, they are firm, often extremely hard, dry, in the form of scybalous lumps or large masses, frequently pale, and unusually foetid. Hard excrement may cause irritation of the intestinal mucous membrane, a kind of spurious diarrhoea being thus set up, attended with the discharge of mucus or pus, which may easily mislead as to the actual conditions present, the faeces being in reality retained. Its passage also often gives rise to a great deal of pain about the anus, with straining, and sometimes discharge of blood; and it may unquestionably originate piles. When retained, excrement is very liable to undergo decomposition, thus giving rise to much painful flatulence; the secretions are also more and more interfered with, as well as the motor functions of the bowels, and dyspepsia, usually of an atonic kind, is set up. The mechanical effects of accumulated faeces are often very serious, and they not uncommonly cause complete intestinal obstruction, or may even lead to ulceration and perforation. Not infrequently an accumulation can be detected by *physical examination* of the abdomen, and it may simulate various abdominal tumours. As a rule tumours due to accumulation of faeces correspond in position and shape to the caecum, or to some part of the colon; they often have a doughy feel, yielding to pressure, by which they are sometimes much altered; and percussion over the corresponding part of the abdomen generally elicits a combination of dulness and tympanitic sound. In some cases, however, faecal collections produce extensive, irregular, solid enlargements, greatly resembling masses of cancer. Therefore the possibility of any doubtful abdominal tumour being due to this cause should always be borne in mind, and the effects observed of a thorough clearing-out of the bowels, by means of aperients and enemata, or in other ways, before a positive opinion is given. Sometimes a collection of faeces is associated with other morbid conditions within the abdomen.

Upon the general system the effects of habitual constipation are frequently very marked. It produces a state of nervous depression or hypochondriasis, with headache, giddiness, disorders of sleep, or other phenomena; and by interfering with digestion and nutrition, as well as in other ways, may cause much wasting and anaemia.

Treatment.—The chief remedies employed in the treatment of constipation have already been indicated, and from these a selection has to be made suitable for each particular case, when the symptom is accidental and temporary. A few special remarks are demanded regarding the management of habitual constipation. 1. It is most important to impress upon patients the necessity of attending to the *habit* of going to stool daily, at the same hour, and of having a proper evacuation, because, if this is neglected for a long period, it becomes extremely difficult to restore the bowels to their normal activity. 2. Attention to *diet* and *general hygiene* often assists in removing constipation. The late Sir Andrew Clark advocated plenty of solid and fluid digestible food. Astringent articles of diet must be avoided. Bran-bread, oatmeal cakes, and porridge certainly prove efficacious in not a few cases; and figs or somewhat acid fruits are useful in other instances. Any injurious habits which tend to confine the bowels must be checked; and a proper amount of daily exercise should be taken. Cold bathing, with touching of the abdominal walls, is often beneficial; as well as local manipulation or massage. The plan of wearing an efficient bandage or elastic support round the abdomen is exceedingly serviceable in some cases, especially in women with relaxed abdominal walls. 3. It must

not be forgotten that the inactivity of the bowels may be due to a general want of tone, and hence *tonics* are frequently useful, particularly those which improve the condition of the alimentary canal. The most beneficial are the non-astringent preparations of iron; mineral acids with bitter infusions or tinctures; strychnine, or extract or tincture of nux vomica. Should there be any lead in the system giving rise to constipation, iodide of potassium is the essential remedy. 4. Various *aperient* medicines have usually to be employed, but it is highly desirable to avoid falling into the habit of relying upon these agents, if possible, especially the stronger purgatives, and, therefore, as soon as the desired effect has been produced in any case, and the bowels have been properly emptied, purgatives should be stopped, and the patient impressed with the importance of trying to keep up a regular action by attention to the matters already indicated. Among the most efficacious *aperients* in these cases are confection of senna or sulphur, or sulphur lozenges, taken early in the morning; castor-oil or olive-oil; glycerine or equal parts of glycerine and castor-oil; compound rhubarb pill; sulphate of magnesium, gr. xx to 5*i* three times a day, which is often beneficially combined with sulphate of iron; sulphate of sodium; Seidlitz powders; phosphate of sodium, particularly recommended for children; aloes or aloin, especially valuable if the colon is torpid; the extracts of rhamnus frangula or rhamnus purshianus (*cascara sagrada*); and extract of belladonna in doses of gr. $\frac{1}{6}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ once daily, gradually increased, as recommended by Troussseau. The last-mentioned drug is deservedly in high repute, and in combination with aloes and extract of nux vomica it is also very serviceable in some cases. Powdered ipecacuanha in small doses is a useful addition in certain conditions, by causing increased intestinal secretion. Cascara sagrada is now an established remedy in the treatment of habitual constipation, and in many cases it proves of signal service. In the more obstinate forms it becomes necessary to use the stronger purgatives from time to time, such as extract of colocynth, blue pill, calomel, jalap or its resin, or gamboge. If the bile appears to be deficient, some mercurial preparation, podophyllin, euonymin, or other *cholagogues* are valuable now and then; or purified ox-gall may be employed as a substitute. Some of these remedies may be given in different combinations with advantage, made up into pills with extract of gentian or extract of hyoscyamus. It is best to administer them just before or during a meal. Various *aperient mineral waters* are often serviceable in habitual constipation, such as Friedrichschall, Hunyadi Janos, Aesculap, Rubinat, Vichy, or Seltzer waters; or Carlsbad salts.

The employment of *simple enemata* in cases of habitual constipation is very useful. A morning injection of water, soap and water, a solution of salt, or olive oil, will often prove highly efficacious; if necessary a little castor-oil may be added. Small enemata of glycerine are of great service, and are now much employed, as well as glycerine suppositories. Abdominal massage is a most valuable method of treatment in many cases of habitual constipation; and the use of electricity in connection with the abdominal walls may be serviceable in obstinate cases.

Occasionally, as the result of long-continued accumulation, the rectum becomes greatly distended with solid and dry excrement, which has to be mechanically scooped out. Enemata may be used for the purpose of aiding in softening this hardened faeces, and breaking it down.

B. DIARRHEA.

Etiology.—Diarrhoea results either from increased peristaltic action of the intestines; from an unusually liquid state of their contents, especially when this depends on excessive secretion; or, most commonly, from a combination of these conditions. The *exciting causes* may be thus arranged:—1. *Irritation of the intestines* by food, either taken in excess, of improper quality, undigested, or having undergone decomposition; impure water or other liquids; purgative medicines and irritant poisons generally; excessive or unhealthy secretions, especially bile; worms, trichinæ, and other parasites, possibly vegetable as well as animal; retained faeces; or ptomaines and other toxic products. 2. *Mechanical congestion of the intestinal vessels*, owing to some obstruction in the portal circulation. 3. *Organic affections of the intestines*, namely, enteritis, either acute or chronic; albuminoid disease; and ulceration, especially tubercular. 4. Occasionally mere *nervous disturbance*, such as strong mental emotion; or reflex irritation in connection with dentition. 5. Certain special *diseases* in which diarrhoea is a prominent symptom, particularly cholera, typhoid fever, and dysentery. By many it is then regarded as *eliminatory* in its nature, serving to carry off poisonous materials; and the same theory is applied to its occurrence in renal disease, gout, pyæmia, and various fevers; or when it takes place as a *critical discharge* at the close of pyrexial affections. Colliquative diarrhoea not infrequently sets in during the course of certain wasting chronic affections, especially towards their termination, aiding in bringing about a fatal result, especially in phthisis, cancer, splenic or supra-renal disease, and Hodgkin's disease. 6. The rapid suppression of discharges, or absorption of dropsical fluid, when the diarrhoea is termed *vicarious*. 7. Causes of a more *general character*, namely, exposure to changes of temperature, or to excessive cold or heat; foul air, overcrowding, and other anti-hygienic conditions; excessive fatigue; emanations from decomposing animal matter; and malarial influence. The combined action of certain of these causes, along with improper diet, gives rise to the *summer* and *autumn diarrhoea*, or so-called *English cholera*, so prevalent during these seasons. 8. Very rarely the *escape of some fluid accumulation* into the intestines, such as the contents of an abscess, peritoneal effusion, or the fluid portion of a hydatid tumour.

Characters.—In all cases of diarrhoea it is requisite to ascertain its duration; the number of stools passed within the twenty-four hours; and their relation to the introduction of food, if any; and also to inspect specimens of the excreta, if practicable, as frequently as may be needed. The principal varieties of loose stools are faecal; lienteric, when they contain obvious fragments of food, in some cases scarcely at all changed; bilious; serous or watery, also called *flue*; mucous or gelatinous; bloody; fatty; purulent; chronic or white flux. As a rule the materials are more or less mixed, and by an examination of the characters presented by the stools the cause of the diarrhoea may often be determined. Various other digestive disturbances are usually associated with this symptom, indicated by griping or other pains in the abdomen, sickness, borborygmi, straining at stool, or an abnormal state of the tongue. The stools may irritate the anus considerably, especially when the

diarrhoea is long-continued and of a watery kind. It must be remarked that patients sometimes state that they are suffering from looseness of the bowels, when on investigation it will be found that there is only some local discharge, especially in connection with *fistula in ano*. The association of mucous discharge with retained faeces has already been alluded to.

If diarrhoea is considerable or of long duration, it necessarily causes more or less debility and wasting, in some instances reducing the patient very rapidly and markedly.

Treatment.—The first matter relating to the treatment of diarrhoea is to determine whether it should be checked or not. In some instances this is not desirable, provided it is not excessive, the discharge by the bowels being preservative and beneficial, as, for instance, in connection with Bright's disease or portal congestion. Some even go so far as to promote diarrhoea in certain special diseases, such as cholera and typhoid. As a rule it is necessary to check this symptom either entirely or partially. For this end the *diet* must be strictly regulated, and this may be the only thing needed, especially in the case of children. Milk with farinaceous articles, especially arrowroot and corn-flour; weak beef-tea, thickened with these materials; and milk-puddings, constitute the best articles of diet. Milk with lime-water, if administered in small quantities, and at proper intervals, will often speedily put a stop to the diarrhoea of children. In some cases a little brandy-and-water, or a mixture of brandy with port wine, is beneficial. Not uncommonly an *aperient* is indicated at the outset, with the view of getting rid of irritant materials from the alimentary canal. Castor oil, calomel, a saline draught or Seidlitz powder, or a full dose of tincture of rhubarb act best in these cases, and they are often advantageously combined with a little opium. *Antacids*, such as bicarbonate of sodium or magnesium, are beneficial to neutralize irritating secretions in the bowels, which set up diarrhoea.

Among the *direct remedies* used for combating diarrhoea opium holds the first place, given either alone or with other medicines, in various forms. The enema of opium is often of great value. The other principal medicines usually administered are prepared chalk in various compounds, catechu, kino, logwood, krameria, bael-fruit, alum, dilute mineral acids, especially sulphuric, tannic and gallie acids, acetate of lead, preparations of bismuth, hydrate of chloral, and chlorodyne; and in certain chronic cases solution or tincture of perchloride or solution of pernitrate of iron, sulphate of copper, or nitrate of silver. Ipecacuanha is invaluable in certain forms of diarrhoea. Coto bark and cannabis indica are also recommended. Among the most efficient combinations will be found chalk mixture with tincture of catechu and opium; aromatic powder of chalk, with or without opium; compound kino powder; decoction of logwood with lime-water, particularly valuable for children; dilute or aromatic sulphuric acid with laudanum; Dover's powder, alone or with carbonate of bismuth; the lead and opium pill; and, in obstinate chronic cases, a pill containing sulphate of copper or nitrate of silver combined with opium.

Creasote, carbolic acid, minute doses of perchloride of mercurry, naphthalin, and other *antiseptics* have been employed with advantage in certain forms of diarrhoea. The idea of administering *antagonists* to poisonous ptomaines has been advanced, but at present with no definite results.

Local applications to the abdomen are frequently very beneficial for diarrhoea, in the form of poultices, fomentations, or dry heat. A flannel bandage worn round the abdomen is useful in some chronic cases. Occasionally a patient may by voluntary effort to some extent suppress diarrhoea, especially when this is due to emotional disturbance.

IV. MELAENA—INTESTINAL HÆMORRHAGE.

Aetiology.—Most of the causes of melæna are similar to those which give rise to haematemesis, and it will be sufficient briefly to enumerate them as follows :—1. *Traumatic injury.* 2. *Diseased conditions of the blood.* 3. *Vicarious.* 4. *Mechanical and chemical irritation or injury to the bowel,* especially by violent purgatives, cantharides, turpentine, various irritant poisons, hardened faeces, and rough calculi. 5. *Organic diseases,* namely, enteritis, ulceration, especially in typhoid fever and dysentery, cancer, invagination, piles, prolapsus, fissures or fistulæ about the anus. 6. *Extreme mechanical congestion,* from portal obstruction or chronic heart or lung disease. 7. *A tumour* eating its way through the wall of the intestine ; or an *aneurism* bursting into its interior. 8. *Passage of blood from the stomach into the bowels,* following hæmorrhage into this organ.

Characters.—When blood appears in the stools, it is generally much altered in its characters, but this will depend upon its amount and source, and upon the rapidity with which it escapes. When in small quantity, coming from the upper part of the bowel, and being slowly discharged, it is usually more or less dark, being often quite black, and presenting a tarry or sooty aspect; occasionally it resembles coffee-ground. If originating from the same source, being at the same time copious and speedily expelled, it may be but little altered, though it is usually of a very dark colour. When coming from the large intestine, especially near the anus, it is generally quite bright and unchanged. The quantity varies much, ranging from mere streaks in the faeces to an amount sufficient to cause speedy death. By attending to the quantity and appearances of the blood, its seat of origin may generally be determined; the diagnosis being further aided by the general history of the case, and by a consideration of the symptoms and physical signs referable to the abdomen, not forgetting to make an examination of the anus and its vicinity, should this be required. Care must be taken not to mistake the dark colour due to bile or iron for that depending on the presence of blood in the stools.

Treatment.—The same remedies are useful in the treatment of melæna as have been mentioned for haematemesis. Oil of turpentine is in much repute. Enemata of iced water are sometimes serviceable; as well as the application of ice-bags to the abdomen. Astringent enemata may also be indicated in some cases. If there is any morbid condition about the anus giving rise to hæmorrhage, such as piles or fistula, as well as in certain forms of internal disease, for example, cancer of the intestine, surgical interference may be required.

CHAPTER XLI.

INFLAMMATION OF THE INTESTINES—
ENTERITIS—INTESTINAL OR ENTERIC CATARRH—
DUODENITIS—COLITIS.

INFLAMMATION of the bowels presents considerable varieties as regards the coats involved; the seat of the mischief, and extent of the intestinal tract implicated; and the results of the inflammatory process. The term *enteritis* has also been used very vaguely, and by some writers is limited to inflammation of the small intestine. Hence it is very difficult to give a comprehensive account of the subject. The bowel is the seat of special lesions in connection with typhoid fever, dysentery, and cholera: while it may be affected in diphtheria, anthrax, and actinomycosis. These conditions are discussed elsewhere, and do not come within the scope of the present chapter. The cases in which inflammation of the intestines occurs as an independent disease may be conveniently divided into those of:—1. *Acute enteric catarrh* or *muko-enteritis*, in which the mucous membrane is extensively affected, the entire tract being sometimes involved, but as a rule more particularly the small intestine. 2. *Chronic enteric catarrh*. 3. *Phlegmonous enteritis*, which involves a limited portion of the bowel, and implicates all the coats. 4. *Local varieties*, only two of which need be specially alluded to here, namely, *duodenitis* and *colitis*. The important conditions named *appendicitis*, *typhlitis*, and *peri-typhlitis* will be dealt with in a separate chapter. Such varieties as *jejunitis*, *ileitis*, and *proctitis* do not call for any special comment.

Aetiology.—Before considering the more obvious causes of intestinal inflammation, it may be noted that micro-organisms have of late years been found in great abundance in the intestinal contents from a very early period after birth, including chiefly various micrococci, and several bacilli, especially the *bacillus lactis aerogenes*, and the *bacillus coli commune*, which is most abundant in the colon. Other bacilli and various spirilla are met with in the stools of patients suffering from different forms of enteritis, and it is believed by many that either these organisms or their products are concerned in the causation of the disease, or that the ptomaines thus formed are absorbed, and account for some of the symptoms. As regards infantile diarrhoea, many kinds of bacilli are said to be concerned in its production, but it is supposed that they act rather by their effects on the food and intestinal contents, and the consequent formation of deleterious products, than by any direct irritation of the intestinal wall. The usual streptococci and staphylococci may be associated with phlegmonous inflammation of the bowel.

Acute enteric catarrh or *muko-enteritis* may be due to the following causes:—a. Some direct irritation of the interior of the bowel by improper, badly-cooked, or undigested food; excess of or unripe fruit; irritating or toxic products of the digestive process; or various irritant poisons, some of which act without necessarily being introduced into the alimentary canal itself, and these agents are likely to produce a very

intense form of inflammation. The complaint is also sometimes attributed to excessive flow of bile ; or, on the other hand, to deficiency of bile, which favours decomposition. Worms, foreign bodies, hard faeces, or other irritants may also set up intestinal catarrh. *b.* Cold, excessive heat of summer or of tropical climates, or rapid changes of temperature. *c.* Certain acute infective and inflammatory diseases, in addition to those already mentioned, as septicaemia, pyæmia, scarlatina, or pneumonia. *d.* Local diseases of the intestine, of which intestinal catarrh is often a complication. *e.* Extension from neighbouring inflammation. *f.* Cachetic diseases, of which it may be the terminal event, as Bright's disease, scurvy, Addison's disease, cancer, or pernicious anaemia. Among *pre-disposing causes* must be mentioned age, intestinal catarrh or inflammation being extremely common in infants and young children, especially during the period of dentition ; climate and season, the complaint being most frequent during a hot summer and early autumn, especially when there is much moisture, or a great difference between day and night temperature ; conditions of general ill-health and marasmus ; and certain mental or emotional states.

Chronic enteric catarrh sometimes remains after the acute disease, especially if certain causes of irritation persist for some time, or are frequently repeated. In other instances it results from long-continued congestion of the intestinal canal, as the result of hepatic or cardiac disease ; or is associated with chronic organic changes in the intestines, such as albuminoid or tubercular disease. Occasionally it accompanies chronic Bright's disease. Persistent intestinal catarrh may also be a consequence of prolonged residence in tropical climates.

With regard to the *aetiology* of the *local* varieties of enteritis, it will be sufficient to note the following points. *Phlegmonous enteritis* is usually associated with some form of obstruction of the bowels, either acute or chronic. Rarely it is secondary to ulceration ; or it may be impossible to detect any definite cause. It may be noted in this connection that, apart from obstructive cases, gangrene of more or less of the intestine occurs in exceptional instances, resulting from embolism of the superior mesenteric vein, venous thrombosis, pressure by hard faeces or other solid bodies, or detachment of the mesentery ; and this condition may be followed by severe inflammation. *Duodenitis*, as a limited disease, may be due to extension from the stomach ; or to local irritation by food or acrid bile. It is also commonly believed to be peculiarly liable to supervene after extensive burns and scalds, and then to lead to ulceration, but this belief has been called in question. Phlegmonous inflammation is said to be most frequently associated with the duodenum, apart from obstructive cases. *Colitis* has no definite recognizable cause, unless it be hard faeces. One form resembles some cases of amœbic dysentery very closely (Osler). It is most frequently met with in men beyond the middle period of life. Another form (*mucous colitis*) is by far most frequent in nervous or hysterical women ; but also occurs in neurasthenic men.

Anatomical Characters.—In the milder forms of intestinal catarrh the appearances resemble those observed in catarrh of other mucous surfaces. The entire mucous tract is seldom, and perhaps never affected ; but the complaint may involve the whole of the small or large intestine, or is confined to areas of different lengths. The secretions are excessive, and often very irritating, being sometimes mixed with blood ; and there is some degree of serous exudation, with desquamation of the

epithelium. In more marked inflammation there is obvious increased vascularity, sometimes intense; with striking changes in the epithelium and gland-structures, oedema of the intestinal walls, infiltration with leucocytes, and a discharge of glairy mucus or pus from the surface. Superficial erosions or slight ulcerations are not uncommonly observed. Occasionally a croupous or membranous deposit is formed over the surface more or less extensively, which indicates considerable intensity of the inflammatory process, and may be associated with pyæmia, pneumonia, certain forms of poisoning, or some chronic diseases.

Phlegmonous enteritis is confined to a limited extent of the gut, implicating its entire thickness. The colour is extremely deep-red, sometimes purple or almost black, being accompanied with spots of extravasation; all the coats are thickened and softened, and generally infiltrated with serum, or occasionally with exudation or pus; while the intestinal contents are often mixed with blood. Gangrene occurs in some cases. The peritoneum may be involved by extension, exhibiting patches of lymph corresponding to the inflamed bowel.

Duodenitis has no special features, except that the inflammation is sometimes of the phlegmonous type, leading to suppuration in the sub-mucous tissue and the formation of abscess.

As regards the special forms of colitis, the *mucous* variety is characterized by the production of a very tenacious adherent mucus, which may form a complete membranous tube, but can be separated without causing any lesion of the surface. It is supposed to be the result of some unknown change in the mucous glands. *Simple ulcerative colitis* is believed to be distinct from dysentery, the inflammation beginning in the sub-mucous tissue, but soon causing extensive destruction of the mucous membrane and ulceration. The ulcers are often large, irregular, and confluent, and extend to the muscular coat: sloughs may adhere to the surface; and the intervening mucous membrane is red, swollen, or pigmented. Occasionally perforation takes place. The small intestine may be similarly affected in the same case.

When intestinal catarrh becomes *chronic*, there are the usual changes in colour, the membrane being often dark or even black from pigment: with thickening and induration of tissues; and atrophy of, or degenerative changes in the gland-structures. Chronic catarrh may give rise to ulceration; or, on the other hand, it may be the result of this condition, or is associated with some other organic change in the bowel.

Symptoms.—1. Cases of *acute enteric catarrh* are generally characterized by uneasiness over the abdomen, with colicky and griping pains, especially about the umbilicus, where there may be a little tenderness, though pressure sometimes gives relief; formation of much gas in the intestines, causing gurgling and borborygmi; and diarrhoea, especially after taking any food or drink, the stools becoming in some cases very numerous, being at first faeculent, but soon assuming a watery, irritating character. These may be the only symptoms, but as the stomach is often implicated at the same time, this is indicated by a red, furred, and dryish tongue, impaired appetite, thirst, and a tendency to nausea or vomiting. If severe diarrhoea has persisted for any length of time, the stools are apt to become somewhat dysenteric in character, containing mucus and blood, especially if the large intestines are mainly implicated, when there may also be much tenesmus and straining during defaecation.

The symptoms are more marked in proportion to the intensity of the inflammation, especially the pain and tenderness, and they are par-

ticularly severe in connection with *irritant poisoning*. Should there be any membranous deposit upon the mucous surface, shreds, larger patches, or even intestinal casts of this material may be expelled with the stools.

General symptoms are in some cases entirely absent in enteric catarrh, except, perhaps, some degree of exhaustion from excessive diarrhoea. In the more severe form of muco-enteritis, however, pyrexia is observed, with languor, general depression, and headache. In children there is frequently high fever, accompanied with much prostration, a greatly distended abdomen, and aphthous stomatitis. Sometimes convulsions or coma set in, and death may result from these causes, or from exhaustion. In cases of irritant poisoning the general symptoms are grave, there being often a tendency to collapse; and a similar condition is occasionally observed in severe enteric catarrh from other causes, especially in persons constitutionally weak, or who are the subjects of some chronic lowering disease.

2. In limited *phlegmonous enteritis* the symptoms are essentially different from those just described. Here the affected portion of the intestine, which is at first the seat of spasm, soon becomes paralyzed, so that the contents cannot pass along the tube, but accumulate in the part above the seat of mischief, and the phenomena are really those of intestinal obstruction with peritonitis. The early symptoms include much localized pain, with tenderness, often referred to the umbilical region, and increased by movement; general colicky pains and tortina; obstinate constipation; persistent nausea and vomiting; much thirst; a furred tongue; and pyrexia, preceded by rigors, the patient presenting a distressed and anxious expression. In a short time, if there is no relief, tympanites sets in; while the painful sensations subside more or less, in some cases ceasing completely; the vomiting gradually becomes stercoraceous, at last the materials coming up without any effort; the tongue assumes typhoid characters; and signs of collapse set in, with a pinched countenance, and an extremely feeble and irregular pulse, the brain being either unaffected to the last, or death being preceded by low nervous symptoms. The urine becomes much diminished or suppressed. Hiccup is often a distressing symptom.

3. *Chronic intestinal catarrh* is frequently attended with no other symptom than chronic diarrhoea, the stools being more or less liquid, pale, fermented, and often very offensive or lienteric, varying much in number and quantity. In many cases uneasy griping sensations, with gurgling, are experienced from time to time; or there may be some degree of soreness over the abdomen. Gastric symptoms are generally present; and the tongue often presents abnormal characters. Owing to interference with digestion and nutrition, more or less wasting is commonly observed; as well as slight pyrexia in some cases, especially towards evening.

4. In *duodenitis* or *duodenal catarrh* jaundice is frequently observed, owing to the closure of the common bile-duct by the swollen membrane; and if the duodenum is solely involved, there is corresponding localized pain and tenderness, with sometimes a feeling of fulness, and constipation instead of diarrhoea. Occipital headache is also said to be common in duodenitis.

5. In *colitis* the symptoms are associated with the large bowel. The *mucus* form presents various degrees, from the passage with the stools of a slimy mucus, like frog-spawn, or fragments or strings of tenacious

material, to the discharge of complete tubular casts, which may be a foot or more in length. Even the firmest of these casts merely consists of dense, opaque, transformed mucus. *Ulcerative colitis* is attended with pain and diarrhoea. The stools are not typically dysenteric, but contain blood not mixed with the faeces, and only occasionally a little mucus, or sometimes shreds or sloughs. The general symptoms are wasting and debility, with sallowness of the skin. Death may occur from exhaustion or perforation.

Diagnosis.—The chief affections for which the various forms of *acute intestinal inflammation* are liable to be mistaken are simple diarrhoea: certain diseases attended with this symptom, especially typhoid fever and dysentery; intestinal colic; peritonitis; and painful affections of the abdominal walls.

There can be no doubt but that many ordinary cases of diarrhoea are the result of enteric catarrh, and it is often impossible to separate them. The characteristic symptoms of typhoid fever and dysentery are usually sufficiently distinctive. Ordinary intestinal colic is recognized by the characters of the pain; the absence of fever; and the presence of constipation. Peritonitis is readily separated from mere enteric catarrh by the intensity of the pain and tenderness, presence of constipation, great constitutional disturbance, and other symptoms; but as regards severe localized enteritis, it is by no means easy to distinguish between the two diseases. Indeed, in most instances the peritoneum is involved along with the other intestinal coats; and this is more apparent if the pain and tenderness are marked, superficial, and extensive. Colicky pains are suggestive of inflammation of the more internal portion of the wall of the bowel. It is important to bear in mind *duodenal catarrh* as a not uncommon cause of jaundice.

In cases of *chronic intestinal catarrh* the main point to be determined is whether this is of a simple nature; or if it is associated with ulceration, particularly tubercular, or albuminoid disease. The special characters of intestinal ulceration will be presently indicated. Lardaceous disease of the bowel is almost always preceded by distinct clinical evidences that other organs are affected; while it is associated with one of the known causes of this morbid state.

Prognosis.—Ordinary *enteric catarrh* usually ends favourably, but it may become chronic. If intense, however, or if it occurs in children, in very weak subjects, or as a complication of certain acute or chronic diseases, it may become highly dangerous and end fatally. The severe form of *enteritis* is extremely grave. *Chronic intestinal catarrh*, especially if long-established, is often very difficult to cure, and may itself ultimately prove fatal; while it adds to the gravity of other chronic diseases, by interfering with the nutrition of the patient. *Colitis* is also often very obstinate.

Treatment.—The remarks made with respect to *diet* in the case of gastric disorders apply with almost equal force to those affecting the intestines. In *acute catarrh* of the bowels, if there is anything causing irritation, it is desirable to get rid of this by means of a dose of tincture of rhubarb, castor oil, or other simple *aperient*, or by an enema. As regards internal remedies, the most serviceable combination in my experience consists of some preparation of bismuth, with an alkali, and small doses of tincture of opium. An enema containing laudanum is also very useful after all irritant matters have been evacuated; and the various other remedies recommended for diarrhoea may be had recourse

to, if required. In duodenal catarrh it is desirable to give small doses of some *saline aperient*, such as sulphate with carbonate of magnesium, which may be preceded by a dose of calomel. *External applications* over the abdomen, especially heat and moisture, are often beneficial. Ordinarily there is certainly no necessity for removal of blood, but in the early stage of the more serious forms of intestinal inflammation it may be permissible to apply a few leeches over the abdomen, provided the patient is in a fit state. When inflammation is associated with obstruction of the bowel, the treatment is really that of the obstruction. The different forms of colitis might demand local treatment by means of enemata or irrigation, as described in relation to dysentery.

Chronic enteritis will probably require some of the more powerful *astringents* mentioned under diarrhœa. Powders containing carbonate of bismuth, gr. v-xx, with Dover's powder, gr. iij-vi, act very beneficially in some cases. Tincture of perchloride of iron is also a valuable drug in this complaint, when given in full doses— $\text{m}\text{xx-xxx}$. In obstinate cases *counter-irritation* over some part of the abdomen, especially over the right iliac fossa, by means of blisters, liniment of iodine, or croton-oil liniment, may prove of service.

CHAPTER XLII.

PERITYPHLITIS—TYPHLITIS—APPENDICITIS —APPENDICULAR COLIC.

THE conditions thus named may be considered together, but there is much difference of opinion among writers on the subject as to which term is most suitable for general adoption, and which should be discarded. *Perityphlitis* is now recognized as a localized peritonitis in the region of the cæcum, and it is the term favoured by Allchin and Treves (*Quain's Dictionary of Medicine*, 2nd Edition) for the whole group of cases of inflammation in this region. *Typhlitis* signifies inflammation of the cæcum itself, but its separate existence is doubted by most authorities. *Appendicitis* implies inflammation of the appendix vermicularis, which is described as *catarrhal*, *ulcerative*, and *perforative*. Another term—*paratyphlitis*—was formerly in use, to indicate inflammation of the connective tissue in the neighbourhood of the cæcum, but it is not now employed. Mr. Jessop, of Leeds (*British Medical Journal*, March 24th, 1894) is in favour of the expression *appendicular colic*, introduced by Talamon, as applied to symptoms indicative of incomplete obstruction of the vermicular appendix, and concludes that “the time has arrived when such misleading names as typhlitis, perityphlitis, cæcal and pericæcal abscess should no longer be applied to diseases having their origin in the vermicular appendix, seeing that appendicular colic, appendicitis, and appendicular abscess more correctly and quite as euphoniously and concisely describe the conditions in each case referred to.”

Aetiology and Pathology.—The careful investigations carried out of late years by numerous observers, have served to clear up much of the confusion and uncertainty which formerly existed as to the causation

and pathological origin of the cases now under consideration, by whatever name they may be known.

The large majority of cases usually classed as typhlitis or perityphlitis are primarily due to various morbid conditions of the vermiform appendix, and as already intimated, some writers think that this structure is almost always, if not always, the original source of mischief. The "appendicular colic" already spoken of is attributed to various impediments to the free escape of the appendix contents, which therefore accumulate, and then follows a true colic of the appendix, a painful spasmodic contraction of the distended organ forcing its contents through the partially blocked passage (Jessop). Some of the obstructing causes are permanent, others transient; and the colic is liable to recurrence. The difficulty may result from congenital malformation. As regards the more definite changes and lesions associated with the appendix, this structure may become the seat of twisting or torsion, due to contraction of the mesentery or adhesion, and leading to occlusion of its lumen, followed by accumulation of mucus behind the obstruction, with consequent distension and thickening, which may terminate in the formation of a firm swelling of considerable size. Further, suppuration and perforation may take place in the distended appendix. In other cases, owing to compression of the vessels, it becomes gangrenous. Severe perityphlitis may be met with in cases in which the appendix has not given way, and in which no pus has been produced within its lumen (Treves). In a certain proportion of instances a foreign body which has gained access into the appendix is the primary cause of the trouble, such as grape-seeds, apple-pips, cherry-stones, fragments of bone, shot, pins, or minute gall-stones. Much more commonly, it is said in about a third of the cases of perityphlitis, a concretion or enterolith is found, resembling a date-stone in appearance, which is often formed on a minute foreign body as a nucleus. It consists of layers of condensed faeces, inspissated mucus, and lime-salts deposited from this secretion; and its formation is attributed to some disturbance of the blood-supply, and consequent chronic catarrh. These foreign bodies and concretions may set up acute inflammation; or lead to ulceration and perforation of the appendix. Among the rarer forms of disease of this organ which may cause surrounding inflammation are typhoid ulceration, tubercular ulceration, and actinomycosis. It has been suggested that some cases of peritonitis which recover in typhoid fever are due to perforation of the appendix (Fitz). As a result of repeated attacks of inflammation, the appendix may be entirely obliterated; and partial or complete obliteration has been not uncommonly found *post-mortem*, where no history could be obtained of any definite symptoms in the cæcal region. Micro-organisms have been found in most cases of inflammation starting from the appendix, especially the bacillus coli commune; streptococci and staphylococci may also be present.

With regard to the cæcum, many deny that the mischief ever starts in this structure, but although it is far less commonly affected than was formerly supposed, there is every reason to believe that it is sometimes primarily involved. Thus in exceptional instances ulceration of the mucous membrane of this part of the bowel appears to have been induced by impacted faeces or a foreign body, which has led to inflammation around. Perforation of the cæcum has also rarely occurred, from tubercular, dysenteric, or typhoid ulceration; or from epithelioma. It is now considered by most competent observers that there is no such complaint

as typhilitis from irritation produced by faecal accumulation; and Jessop regards the cases supposed to be of this nature as due to "appendicular colic." Some writers, however, still maintain that there is a true *stercoral typhlitis*.

Whatever may be the exact explanation of the occurrence of an acute attack in the neighbourhood of the cæcum and vermiform appendix, it is not infrequently attributed more immediately to such causes as exposure to cold; violent effort or strain, as from lifting a heavy weight; a local injury, as from a fall or blow; indiscretions in diet or indigestible food; or marked constipation. In recurring appendicitis over-eating is a very important factor, and attacks may directly follow the consumption of a large amount of improper food. Perityphlitis has in exceptional instances been observed in association with rheumatism, though some writers dispute the connection. Dr. Haig has expressed the opinion that gouty perityphlitis is extremely common, that in fact nearly all perityphlitis owns this origin, and that if all cases were at once treated by salicylates further trouble requiring surgical procedures would be rare.

As regards *predisposing causes*, age and sex demand special notice. The large majority of the cases now under discussion occur in childhood and early adult life, especially from 11 to 30 years of age; they are rarely met with before the 3rd year. Males are far more commonly affected than females on the whole, but in the milder cases associated with extreme constipation this preponderance is not so marked (Allechin and Treves).

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid conditions which may be associated with the appendix vermicularis have already been sufficiently indicated, and it is only necessary to offer a few additional remarks in relation to this structure. In cases of catarrhal appendicitis it may be found much enlarged and thickened in all its coats, and its mucous membrane covered with a tenacious mucus. The lumen may be much narrowed, especially towards the cæcal end, with consequent accumulation and distension. The appendix is sometimes as large as the index-finger or thumb. Ulceration and perforation usually occur at the extremity of its lower third. As regards its effects on neighbouring structures, there may be a limited adhesive peritonitis, if no perforation takes place. On the other hand, severe inflammation and its consequences may be observed without any perforation, or even without suppuration in the appendix. When perforation occurs, in rare instances it takes place directly into the peritoneal cavity, no adhesions having formed, thus setting up violent general peritonitis. In the large majority of cases the ulcerated appendix excites a localized peritonitis, ending in an adhesion; then perforation leads to a circumscribed intra-peritoneal abscess, varying in size and situation. The abscess may be very small, and has sometimes only been found *post-mortem*, when death has occurred from other causes. On the other hand, it may set up further diffuse inflammation in the peritoneum; or the abscess may break down the adhesions, and burst into this cavity. In exceptional instances the vermiform appendix passes behind the cæcum and colon, and perforates into the retro-peritoneal tissue, where it may form a perinephritic abscess. Rarely it forms a communication with the cæcum, bladder, or rectum.

Perityphlitis is, as already stated, a localized peritonitis, and if it goes on to suppuration, an encysted abscess is formed, the centre of which is

generally behind the cæcum. The pus has usually a distinctly fæcal odour; although it is only in the minority of cases that there is an actual admixture of faeces. The abscess generally makes its way towards the anterior abdominal wall; not uncommonly it bursts into the cæcum; less frequently into the peritoneal cavity; exceptionally into the ileum, bladder, or rectum. In some cases it extends upwards behind or along the ascending colon, and may thus reach the thorax, producing an empyema. Or, again, the abscess may make its way into the pelvis, and appear in the glutal region or perineum; or it even extends down the thigh. Rarely it produces multiple abscesses of the scrotum; or opens into the hip-joint. Suppurative pyle-phlebitis is occasionally associated with perityphlitis from a perforated appendix, which has been attributed to implication of the neighbouring mesenteric veins. Profuse or even fatal haemorrhage has occurred in exceptional instances, from the opening of an artery. The iliac vein is sometimes obstructed by pressure; or thrombosis may take place.

Symptoms and Signs.—The clinical history of the cases included within the group now under consideration presents much variety in several respects, and it is by-no-means always clear what the conditions are upon which the symptoms actually depend, especially in the milder cases which recover. Allchin and Treves divide them into three main groups, to one or other of which they state most cases can be referred, but there is no absolute line of demarcation between them.

In the *first* group the phenomena are really those of sudden intestinal perforation, with little or no previous warning. The pain is by-no-means necessarily felt in the region of the cæcum, but is often referred to the neighbourhood of the umbilicus. Death follows in from a few hours to two days.

In the *second* group the symptoms also, as a rule, come on without any previous history of intestinal trouble or discomfort, and are usually well-marked from the first, but this is not always the case. A chill or rigor often marks the onset; with acute abdominal pain, which may be general, or specially referred to the umbilical or cæcal region; and some degree of collapse. The pain becomes paroxysmal, and radiates in various directions; and there is much tenderness, which may be distinctly limited to the right iliac region. The abdomen becomes distended and tympanitic; while the symptoms of localized peritonitis quickly assume a more pronounced and definite character. Sometimes a slightly increased resistance is felt over the cæcum, attributed partly to muscular rigidity, partly to accumulation of faeces in the cæcum, or inflammatory exudation around. Other symptoms are constipation; more or less vomiting; and often severe tenesmus. The tongue is thickly coated, or dry, brown, and cracked, with sordes on the teeth. An abundant flow of urine, containing excess of indican; and frequency of micturition, have been noted. In two or three days evidences of general peritonitis may supervene, which almost invariably terminates fatally in a few days. Or the inflammation assumes a distinctly suppurative character, an encysted peritoneal abscess forming, indicated by increasing fulness and resistance in the cæcal region, with pain and tenderness. In some cases the abscess is best made out by rectal or vaginal examination; or the appendix, or thickening around this structure, may be felt through the rectum in other instances. It extends, and may burst in one or other of the directions already indicated, unless previously opened by the surgeon. When it comes to the surface fluctuation may

be felt. The *general* symptoms in cases belonging to this group are severe from the outset. There is more or less fever, and the temperature may rise even to 104° or 105° ; the pulse is frequent and thready; breathing is hurried; and the patient looks seriously ill. Their further progress will depend upon the course of events in the particular case.

The *third* class of cases are those most commonly met with, and they are much less severe but more prolonged, generally ending in recovery. Females are more frequently affected than males in this group. As a rule there is a previous history of obstinate constipation, which is not uncommonly aggravated before the attack. In some cases this is definitely brought on by an error in diet. *Local* symptoms in the region of the caecum are prominent from the outset, namely, pain and tenderness; with a resistant fulness or swelling, which is more or less dull on pereussion. Constipation continues; while nausea and vomiting are frequent but not severe symptoms. The patient commonly lies with the right leg drawn up, and flexed across the opposite thigh, so as to relax the pressure of the abdominal wall. The pain is of a dull and aching character, with exacerbations, and it often spreads across the lower part of the abdomen, or passes down the inner and anterior part of the thigh, owing to pressure on the genito-crural nerve. Sometimes oedema of the right leg supervenes, from thrombosis of the iliac vein. The *general* symptoms are those of moderate fever, with very irregular rise of temperature, rarely exceeding 103° ; and a soft, quick pulse. Cases of this type vary much in duration and severity, and the symptoms often fluctuate from day to day, the extent of the swelling and dulness frequently changing. A small proportion of cases go on to suppuration, with the formation of a circumscribed abscess, but the large majority end in resolution and complete cure, without the formation of pus. Those who believe in a *stercoral typhlitis* are of opinion that some of the cases belonging to the group now under consideration are of this nature, and they regard the swelling as partly due to thickened wall of the inflamed caecum, with perhaps some degree of peritonitis, but chiefly to retained faeces. Jessop, however, would look upon them as being always the result of appendicular colic.

A striking feature of many of the cases now under consideration is their tendency to *relapse* or *recurrence*. This is often explained by the condition of the appendix, which renders it a constant source of trouble or danger, and these recurrences are liable to happen even when every care has been taken, and to become increasingly severe. In other cases errors in diet, or neglect of the bowels, appear to be the immediate causes of the relapse.

Diagnosis.—Space will not permit of a full discussion of the diagnosis of perityphlitis or appendicular affections, but it may be stated that some cases are easy of recognition, while others are very difficult or impossible to make out definitely, especially to determine what are the exact conditions present, even when symptoms point clearly to the region of the caecum and appendix as the seat of mischief. In doubtful instances examination through the rectum and vagina must not be neglected; or it may be desirable to investigate while the patient is under the influence of an anaesthetic. The chief conditions which are most likely to be confounded with perityphlitis are intus-susception or other forms of acute intestinal obstruction; certain cases of typhoid fever, with constipation; tubercular disease possibly; and other forms of abscess in the neighbourhood, connected with the ovaries or Fallopian tubes, peri-

nephritic, or retro-peritoneal from disease of bone. Some cases of perforation of the cæcum or appendix cannot be distinguished from a similar lesion in other parts. Operative measures may be demanded to clear up the diagnosis. The symptoms associated with floating kidney in neurotic subjects have been mistaken for appendicitis.

Prognosis.—No disturbance in the vicinity of the cæcum or appendix can be regarded as free from danger, and the outlook in cases indicating serious lesions or morbid conditions is often very grave. In each instance, however, the prognosis must be determined by a due consideration of all the circumstances of the case. In severe cases the mortality is estimated as about 30 per cent. in adults, and even higher in children. In the large majority of fatal cases death occurs within eight days. The development of general peritonitis is almost always a hopeless indication. As regards abscess, when it opens into the bowel recovery often follows; and the prognosis is still more favourable when it bursts externally. Modern surgical treatment has materially diminished the dangers from the class of lesions now under consideration. The subsequent effects of perityphlitis must be borne in mind, from which patients may suffer for a long time. The liability to relapse is also an important point to be remembered in prognosis.

Treatment.—In all the cases now under discussion rest is essential, and the posture of the patient should be studied. If there is an obvious accumulation of faeces in the cæcum, judicious means may be employed to remove it, especially moderate enemata of warm water or soap and water, administered every day or every other day. Gentle manipulation may assist in some instances. Any powerful purgative must be absolutely avoided, but some authorities recommend small doses—20 grains—of sulphate of magnesium or sodium, with the view of softening the faeces. Opium may be given in quantities varying according to the requirements of each case, or morphine may be injected subcutaneously, but these agents must not be pushed too far. Diet should be restricted, and entirely liquid. Sucking of ice in moderation is often useful. The local measures which may be indicated in different cases are the application of three or four leeches; simple hot fomentations, poppy fomentations, or glycerine of belladonna, the part being then covered with a fomentation or with cotton-wool; or an ice-bag. In the milder cases which recover, great care must be taken to keep the patients in bed for some time after the symptoms have subsided; and to prevent them from incurring any danger from dietetic errors.

The graver forms of perityphlitis or perforative appendicitis must be treated like those of perforative peritonitis, and it may be permissible or desirable to perform abdominal section. And this leads to the observation that a large proportion of the cases now under discussion, whatever be their exact nature, come under the treatment of the surgeon. It is impossible to deal here in detail with the operations which may be required, and the indications for carrying them out, and it must suffice to state that merely an incision may be needed to let out pus; but that the more important operation now commonly advocated and practised is the removal of the vermiciform appendix, which is also specially recommended in relapsing or recurring cases. For the full discussion of the operative treatment, reference must be made to surgical works, or to special treatises or articles on the subject.

CHAPTER XLIII.

INTESTINAL NEW FORMATIONS AND ULCERATIONS.

It is desirable to give a summary of the morbid conditions which come under the above headings, with some general remarks on their clinical features; and to consider individually the more important of these conditions not yet noticed. *New formations* and *ulcerations* may be conveniently discussed together, as the former often originate the latter.

I. GENERAL SUMMARY.

A. New Formations.—In addition to the changes associated with typhoid fever, albuminoid disease, dysentery, and degenerative processes, the following new formations connected with the intestines may be mentioned :—1. *Cancer*. 2. *Tubercle*. 3. *Syphilitic formations*. 4. Rarely *villous growths*, *mucous polypi*, *fibromata*, *lipomata*, *myomata*, *vascular tumours*, *sarcomata*, *cysts*, and *lymphoid growths*. The local symptoms due to either of these formations, should any be present, are either indicative of obstruction of the bowel; or of irritation and catarrh of its mucous membrane. Local pain or tenderness may or may not be complained of. Frequently there are constitutional symptoms, or symptoms associated with other organs, which aid in determining the nature of the disease. In some cases *physical examination* may detect a growth.

B. Ulcerations.—Intestinal ulcers may be thus arranged :—

I. Non-Specific.—These comprise :—1. Ulcers due to *direct injury* of the mucous surface by foreign bodies, calculi, hardened faeces, and chemical destructive agents, including probably acrid secretions. 2. Those originating in *inflammation*. Simple enteric catarrh, especially if it be of long duration, may end in ulceration, either catarrhal or follicular. The separation of croupous or diphtheritic deposit may also originate an ulcer. Rarely this lesion results from submucous suppuration or gangrene. A peculiar form of ulceration is met with in colitis. 3. *Perforating ulcer*. An ulcer similar to the gastric variety is now and then observed in the duodenum, and it may lead to perforation. The form associated with burns and scalds may also be mentioned here. 4. Ulceration due to some *morbid condition outside the bowel* making its way into the interior, which is very rare.

II. Specific.—These comprehend :—1. *Typhoid*. 2. *Tubercular*. 3. *Dysenteric*. 4. *Cancerous*. 5. *Syphilitic* probably. 6. Ulcers following *albuminoid disease*.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—The *local* symptoms suggestive of ulceration of the bowels are frequent colicky pains; localized pain or tenderness, especially if the lesion is extensive, or if the large intestine is involved; and persistent or troublesome diarrhoea, the stools often presenting very unhealthy characters, sometimes resembling pea-soup or gruel, and being unusually foetid, or containing

blood, mucus, or pus. Cases are not uncommon, however, in which constipation is a conspicuous symptom. If the disease is limited to the small intestines, especially their upper part, diarrhoea is of a simple kind; and it is usually only in such a case that constipation is observed. If the large bowel is much implicated, especially the rectum, the symptoms tend to assume a dysenteric character. The diarrhoea is chiefly due to enteric catarrh set up by the ulceration. The circumstances under which intestinal ulceration occurs will generally aid materially in its diagnosis, as in typhoid fever, dysentery, or phthisis. When *chronic*, it is in some instances very difficult to make out positively that there is actual ulceration, and to distinguish this lesion from mere chronic catarrh; but it may be strongly suspected should there be diarrhoea, either constant or easily excited, or not amenable to treatment, especially if the stools are of a very unhealthy character. The constitutional condition often helps the diagnosis. Intestinal ulceration itself tends to excite more or less pyrexia, which in chronic cases is frequently of a hectic type; and it also leads to impaired nutrition, consequently inducing emaciation, debility, and anaemia. It may cause peritonitis, perforation, or serious haemorrhage; or stricture may result from cicatrization of an ulcer.

Treatment.—It need scarcely be remarked that attention to *diet* is all-important in treating ulceration of the bowels. At the same time it must be so regulated as to promote the nutrition of the patient; and to be adapted for any morbid diathesis present. Rest of the body is highly beneficial; and of course the affected part should be kept as quiet as possible. This object is best gained by administering opium in some form, if this drug is admissible; if not, other *sedatives* may be given, especially belladonna. Diarrhoea must be controlled by the various *astringents*, along with opium. The chief remedies which are believed directly to promote the healing of intestinal ulcers are nitrate of silver, sulphate of copper, acetate of lead, oxide of zinc, and bismuth salts. Much benefit often follows the use of carbonate of bismuth with Dover's powder in the ulceration which occurs during phthisis; as well as in other forms. It is not desirable to encourage long-continued constipation, but should this symptom be present, much care is necessary in the employment of *aperients*, which must be of the mildest kind: simple enemata are very useful under these circumstances. *Tonics* are often indicated, especially preparations of iron. It will be well for the patient to wear a well-fitting and comfortable bandage or belt round the abdomen. *Local applications* may be required from time to time: an occasional blister over the right iliac fossa, or other forms of counter-irritation, may be beneficial in certain cases.

II. CANCER OF THE INTESTINES.

Anatomical Characters.—*Primary cancer* of the intestines is very rare, and when the bowel is involved, which is not a common event, it is generally by extension of the disease, especially from the peritoneum and sub-peritoneal tissue, though even then the muscular and mucous coats often escape. The large intestines, particularly the rectum and sigmoid flexure, are far more frequently attacked than the small, of which the duodenum is the part usually implicated. All varieties of cancer are met with, even *melanosis*, but *scirrhous* is the ordinary form. *Epithelioma* has in rare instances invaded the rectum by extension from

the uterus and vagina. Sometimes *encephaloid* grows on a basis of scirrhus, when the latter reaches the interior of the bowel.

The usual variations are presented as to the characters, arrangement, and extent of the cancerous growth. It may be limited to one spot, occasionally forming a round or lobulated tumour; widely spread; or disposed in scattered nodules, which are often secondary to some more localized and extensive deposit. In the progress of the disease the coats become matted together, and ultimately, should the mucous membrane be implicated, ulceration or sloughing ensues, the ulcer being either smooth and excavated, with thickened, indurated, and tolerably regular edges; or presenting an irregular aspect, with fungous growths over the floor and margins, which are often very vascular, and liable to bleed freely. Perforation may take place, not uncommonly a communication being thus established with some adjacent hollow organ. Frequently the affected part of the intestine is much constricted; while the part above is dilated, and its muscular coat hypertrophied, the portion beyond being contracted.

Symptoms.—The following are the clinical phenomena to be looked for as indicative of cancer of the bowels:—1. Localized pain in some part of the abdomen, either constant or paroxysmal in character, dull and aching or lancinating, and accompanied with local tenderness. 2. Persistent constipation, with abnormal shape and size of the stools, ultimately culminating in complete obstruction. 3. The *physical signs* of a limited tumour, situated deep in the abdomen; hard and irregular; tender on pressure; at first movable, but afterwards becoming fixed. 4. Marked and rapid wasting and loss of strength, often accompanied with signs of the cancerous cachexia, or of cancer in other parts. In some instances there is diarrhoea, especially after ulceration has set in, when the stools become extremely offensive; and occasionally symptoms of obstruction disappear, owing to a mass of cancer sloughing or ulcerating away. When the rectum is affected, the pain is referred to the sacral region, shooting thence towards the thighs and back, and being often extremely severe. There may likewise be intolerable irritation and itching within the anus. Symptoms of a dysenteric character are also generally complained of. Examination *per rectum* will usually reveal the disease. Intestinal cancer is liable to give rise to profuse haemorrhage; or it may lead to perforation, or to extensive destruction of neighbouring organs. Death occurs gradually as a rule, but may be hastened by complete intestinal obstruction; perforation; peritonitis; or haemorrhage.

Treatment.—In the large majority of cases of intestinal cancer all that can be done is to treat symptoms. In some instances life may be prolonged, and symptoms greatly relieved, by making an artificial opening into the bowel above the seat of the disease, should this be low down. When the rectum is involved, operative measures for the removal of the growth may be called for in appropriate cases.

III. TUBERCLE OF THE INTESTINES—TUBERCULAR ULCERATION—INTESTINAL PHTHISIS.

Etiology and Pathology.—As a *primary disease* intestinal tuberculosis is usually met with in children, associated with a similar condition of the mesenteric glands—*tuberculosis mesenterica*, or with tubercular peritonitis. It is often difficult to determine which structure was first involved. The introduction of *tubercle bacilli* with the food has already

been discussed, and is supposed to be an important mode in which these cases are originated. In adults tubercular disease of the bowels is rarely a primary disease, but commonly occurs as a complication of pulmonary phthisis, and the intestinal lesion has then been attributed to swallowing sputum containing tubercle bacilli. It must be remembered, however, that it may be primary; and occasionally tuberculosis begins in the caecum or appendix vermiciformis. Another class of cases are those in which the intestines become involved by extension from the peritoneum, the female generative organs, or the urinary system.

Anatomical Characters.—In the great majority of cases the solitary and Peyer's glands are chiefly implicated in tubercular disease, and hence the morbid appearances are observed in the ileum, especially its lower portion, or they are most advanced in this part, while they gradually cease towards the jejunum. Occasionally they extend into this portion of the bowel, or very rarely even to the duodenum. Not uncommonly the caecum, appendix vermiciformis, and colon are involved, and the disease is sometimes chiefly or even entirely limited to these parts. The area affected varies greatly, and generally the morbid changes are visible in different stages in different parts. At first little firm, grey, projecting nodules are seen, which become yellow, soften and break down, producing small circular ulcers. The ulcers soon become larger, however, either by infiltration and destruction around, this process invading tissues far beyond the glands; or by coalescence. In course of time they come to present special characters, in which condition they are generally seen at *post-mortem* examinations. These characters include more or less irregularity in shape; a transverse direction as regards the bowel, the ulcer spreading mainly in the course of the vessels, and sometimes completely surrounding the gut with a band of ulceration from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch or more in width; thickening, irregularity, and induration of the margins and floor, the latter presenting tubercular nodules; and but little proneness to heal. Imperfect or partial cicatrization is, however, often observed, with the formation of a dense tissue, sometimes pigmented, the edges of the ulcer being drawn together, contraction and irregularity of the gut being thus produced, or in rare instances even complete stricture. Occasionally an extensive area of the intestinal mucous surface is destroyed by ulceration.

During the process of ulceration *local peritonitis* is set up, giving rise to thickening and adhesion, and thus all the coats of the bowel are frequently destroyed without the occurrence of any symptoms of perforation, or sometimes a communication is formed between two portions of the intestines. *Tubercles* are often observed in the affected portion of the peritoneum, which may spread along the lymphatics to the mesentery. The floor of a tubercular ulcer not uncommonly presents evidences of haemorrhage.

Symptoms.—Tubercular disease of the bowels is indicated in early life by the persistent or frequent occurrence of diarrhoea and other symptoms of intestinal irritation, catarrh, or ulceration: associated with the general signs of tuberculosis, marked wasting, and retarded development. In the adult ulceration may be suspected, if in the course of phthisis the symptoms characteristic of this lesion should arise; especially if diarrhoea sets in, which will not yield to treatment, or recurs from slight causes, and if there is localized tenderness. It is in this class of cases, however, that constipation is most frequently observed; while, on the other hand, it must be remembered that

diarrhoea may be dependent upon other causes in such cases. Primary cases of intestinal tuberculosis in adults are indicated by irregular diarrhoea, with colicky pains, and more or less fever, with wasting; or haemorrhage may be the first symptom. Occasionally they commence as cases of perityphlitis.

Treatment.—The local treatment of intestinal tuberculosis must be conducted on similar principles to that of other forms of ulceration, while the general management suitable for tubercular disease is also carried out. Great attention is needed as regards diet; and symptoms must be combated by suitable remedies. In some cases *antiseptics* are of much service, mainly for their effects upon the intestinal contents.

IV. ALBUMINOID DISEASE.

Anatomical Characters.—In the intestines the albuminoid change begins in the small vessels of the villi, and thence spreads to the larger vessels; in course of time it involves the glands, the entire villi, and ultimately the whole of the mucous membrane, or even the submucous and muscular coats. Extensive atrophy of the villi may follow. The morbid material is liable to undergo disintegration, being changed into a yellow substance; and finally small ulcers are sometimes formed, corresponding to the glands. It is very difficult in the early stages to recognize albuminoid disease of the intestines. The mucous surface appears pale, anaemic, and glistening or shining; but the iodine-test is necessary to reveal the change, which shows that it affects the villi and small vessels. In more advanced cases the appearances are more characteristic, and enlarged glands or ulcers are seen, especially corresponding to Peyer's or the solitary glands. Peyer's patches sometimes present a reticulated aspect.

Symptoms.—Should there be signs of albuminoid disease of other organs, implication of the intestinal canal may be fairly diagnosed should obstinate diarrhoea set in, with liquid, unhealthy stools. Haemorrhage is liable to occur in the later stages, and it may be quite independent of ulceration. When the alimentary canal is affected with albuminoid disease, the general nutrition is gravely interfered with.

Treatment.—The treatment is that indicated for albuminoid disease in general; and for intestinal catarrh or ulceration.

CHAPTER XLIV.

INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION.

INTESTINAL obstruction belongs chiefly to the domain of surgery, and it is only proposed in this work to give a general account of the subject.

Etiology and Pathology.—The numerous causes of obstruction of the bowels may be ranged under certain heads, namely:—

1. *Accumulations in their interior*, including hard faeces; indigestible matters taken as food, such as oat-cakes, rice, seeds or stones of fruits; foreign bodies or substances swallowed purposely, especially by hysterical girls and children, for example, string, hair, dirt, sand; certain medicines which are apt to form concretions (*enteroliths*) if taken for

some time in considerable quantity, namely, magnesia and peroxide of iron; masses of worms; large or numerous and agglomerated gall-stones; or, in exceptional cases, concretions of phosphate or carbonate of lime. Gall-stones usually lodge high up in the small intestines.

2. *Stricture*, resulting from morbid changes in the coats of the bowel, including:—*a. Congenital constriction*, usually situated about the anus, rarely in the duodenum. *b. Cicatrization of an ulcer*, especially if this has passed round the gut, or has been very extensive. *c. Fibroid infiltration* of the walls. *d. Cancer*. This class of causes is by far most common in connection with the large intestine.

3. *Compression, Constriction, or Traction*, due to morbid conditions external to the intestines. The late Dr. Fagge drew particular attention to some of these conditions, which include pressure by displaced or enlarged organs and tumours of various kinds, particularly in connection with the uterus and ovaries; by growths or accumulations in the intestine itself; or by adhesions, agglutinations, or morbid formations in the peritoneum, sometimes after simple peritonitis, but more frequently associated with tubercle or cancer. The last-mentioned set of causes may lead to distinct constriction, or may produce a sudden bend or twist in the intestines; but usually they merely impede the peristaltic action, either by compressing the bowel somewhat for a considerable extent, binding it down, exerting traction upon it, or matting together several of its coils. Hence materials collect above the seat of difficulty, which press upon the portion below, ultimately inducing complete obstruction; this being frequently aided by a certain degree of spasm. These causes mainly affect the small intestine.

4. *Strangulation or Incarceration*, either *external* or *internal*. Under this group come the different forms of *strangulated hernia*, the rarer varieties of which must not be forgotten. *Internal strangulation* results in rare instances from the passage of a portion of intestine into some normal opening, especially the foramen of Winslow; or into a perforation in one of the folds of the peritoneum, for example, the omentum or mesentery. Generally, however, it is due to peritoneal bands of adhesion passing between different parts; or to the vermiform appendix, or diverticula connected with the ileum, becoming adherent at their free ends. Very exceptionally one portion of the bowel is strangulated by another portion; by the mesentery; or by its entrance into a rupture in the intestine or some other hollow viscus.

5. *Altered relation* of a portion of the bowel, or of the intestinal coats. The most important form of obstruction coming under this head is that named *intus-susception* or *invagination*, in which one portion of the intestine is prolapsed into that next below. Another variety is named *volvulus, torsion, or rotation*, in which the bowel with its attached mesentery is twisted, though Dr. Bristowe considers that this twisting is in many cases not the cause of the obstruction, but the effect of enteritis, which has been the primary mischief. *Prolapsus ani* also falls within this group, though it scarcely ever leads to complete obstruction. As very rare conditions have been mentioned *sacculation* of a part of the bowel; and *hernia of the mucous membrane* through the other coats.

6. *Spasm or Paralysis* of the muscular coat. Either of these conditions of the intestinal wall may aid in inducing obstruction; or now and then it may possibly be the sole cause.

A few remarks are necessary with regard to the *determining cause* of intus-susception. This condition depends upon the peristaltic action of the intestines, and is supposed to be chiefly the consequence

of undue dilatation of a portion of bowel towards which the wave of contraction is advancing, from accumulation of gas or any other cause; and to this portion being fixed, so that the part above is driven into it by the force of its own contraction. In many cases some violent exertion, in which the muscles of the abdominal walls partake, determines the occurrence of intus-susception. It has also been attributed to worms or polypi; and to chronic diarrhoea. Once it has started, the invagination increases by a continuance of the peristaltic action, by which more bowel is driven in from above, at the same time the outer tube of intestine being inverted. Some of the other forms of sudden obstruction may also be immediately caused by violent effort.

Sex and age require notice as constituting important *predisposing causes* of certain varieties of intestinal obstruction. That resulting from impaction of gall-stones usually occurs late in life, and in females. Strictures are more common in males, and after middle life. Internal strangulation does not often happen under 30 years of age, except that form due to adhesion of the appendix vermiciformis or of diverticula, which is observed in young persons most frequently, and chiefly in males. Ileo-cæcal intus-susception is remarkable for its frequency in children, but when it affects the ileum or jejunum it is almost limited to adults; on the whole, intus-susception is twice more common among males than females.

Anatomical Characters.—The appearances met with after death in cases of intestinal obstruction necessarily vary much according to the condition upon which it depends. *Intus-susception* is the only form which calls for special description here. By far the most common form of invagination is that in which the *ileo-cæcal orifice descends into the cæcum*, and then passes on into the colon, bringing down more and more of the ileum. The condition is not very uncommon in the ileum or colon, but is rarely observed in the jejunum or rectum. Very exceptionally the end of the ileum passes *through* the ileo-cæcal opening, the lips of the latter not being displaced. The portion of intestine which is the seat of invagination presents three layers, arranged concentrically in the following manner (Fig. 28):—The most internal layer is the part which has descended, or the *intus-suspected portion*; the outer one is the *sheath* or *intus-suscipiens*; and the middle layer unites these two portions, being derived from the continued involution of the sheath, and its surfaces are necessarily reversed, so that its serous coat is in contact with that of the internal layer, and its mucous coat with that of the external, while the mesentery is drawn in, and lies between the middle and internal layers. This exercises unilateral traction, whereby the intus-suspected portion is curved, with the concavity towards the involved mesentery, while its lower opening looks towards some part of the wall of the outer tube, being elongated and fissure-like. The intus-suspected portion of the intestine is more or less convoluted or twisted, especially the middle layer.

The extent of the invagination varies considerably, ranging from an inch or two to three or four feet, or even a much greater length than this, especially in the ileo-cæcal variety. Not uncommonly short intus-susceptions are found in the small intestine after death, which are easily reduced, and which have given rise to no symptoms during life; it is probable that these are originated during the act of

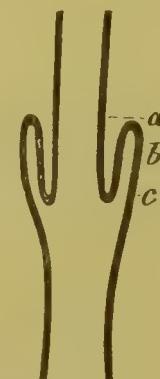


FIG. 28.

Diagram of Intus-susception:—
a. Intus-suspected portion; b Middle layer; c. Sheath.

dying, or even *post-mortem*. In the great majority of cases, whatever the length of the intus-suscepted portion may be, its lower end continues the same as at the commencement of the process. Ultimately it may reach the anus, or even protrude through this opening.

Certain important events are liable to happen in connection with the invaginated portion of intestine. 1. Of course the inner layers are more or less *compressed* by the outer tube, especially at the entrance or neck of the invagination; the canal of the bowel is therefore narrowed, though not usually completely closed at first. 2. The return of blood is interfered with, and hence *mechanical congestion* is induced, often intense, followed by *œdema* of the tissues, or even the escape of blood between the mucous surfaces or into the intestinal canal, where it is mixed with serum; with consequent thickening and swelling, which increase the obstruction. 3. Soon *peritonitis* is set up in the contiguous layers of the serous coat, with exudation of lymph, and this may spread and become general; or the formation of adhesions may prevent any further descent of the intestine. 4. Violent *enteritis* is excited, and ultimately, owing to this condition being added to the congestion, *gangrene* not uncommonly results. 5. In some cases the mortified portion becomes *detached*, either completely or in part, and either in one mass or in fragments, and is *expelled per anum*. The dangers of this separation may be prevented by adhesions having formed between the top of the outer tube and the intestine above; but if these are not sufficiently firm, the structures give way, and the intestinal contents escape into the peritoneum. If the bowel is expelled and adhesions are complete, recovery may follow, but there is still a further danger of a stricture forming at the point of union; or sometimes only a part of the invaginated bowel comes away, while the upper portion remains and becomes adherent to the surrounding tube, and thus more or less permanent obstruction is established. The rapidity with which the changes just described are set up depends on the force of the compression, and therefore upon the part of the bowel which is involved. They are much more rapid in connection with the small intestines than the large, but are peculiarly speedy when the ileum passes directly through the ileo-cæcal orifice.

The portion of intestine above that which is intus-suscepted acts with undue vigour, and thus aggravates the mischief, while at the same time it drives on some of the contents of the bowel. For a time also the affected part itself contracts. By the pressure of its lower end against the wall of the outer sheath, ulceration of the mucous surface is often set up. In very rare instances double intus-susception has been observed.

Any sudden or acute intestinal constriction will necessarily lead to severe congestion of the bowel and its consequences; then to inflammation, involving also the peritoneum; and ultimately to gangrene, and probably perforation, if the constriction is not relieved. In prolonged and chronic cases the part of intestine above an obstruction becomes much dilated, elongated, and hypertrophied, though these appearances are not always most marked directly above the impediment; while faeces and other materials accumulate, giving rise to catarrh or ulceration. The distal portion becomes contracted, empty, and atrophied.

Symptoms.--The direct clinical phenomena which in the first instance indicate complete obstruction of the bowel, from whatever cause, may be stated generally as absolute constipation, usually accompanied with colicky pains, often severe; increased peristaltic or spasmodic movements

of the intestines; abundant formation and accumulation of gas, leading to tympanites and borborygmi; nausea and vomiting, the latter ultimately becoming stereoraceous or faecal. Not uncommonly *physical examination* of the abdomen and rectum reveals some abnormal condition. In many cases symptoms indicative of severe enteritis, peritonitis, or perforation are subsequently developed.

There are certain circumstances which have an important influence on the clinical history of intestinal obstruction, the most important being the pathological condition to which it is due; and its seat. Practically cases may be divided for clinical purposes into two classes, namely: - 1. Those in which the obstruction is established *gradually*. 2. Those in which it occurs *suddenly* and *acutely*. In the former class of cases there will be a history of constipation, sometimes alternating with diarrhoea, and often accompanied with alteration in the shape and size of the solid stools; colicky pains; nausea and vomiting from time to time, with other digestive disturbances; and perhaps occasional signs indicating complete temporary closure of the bowel. *Physical examination* may reveal some mechanical obstruction. These cases either terminate slowly by asthenia; or they culminate in a sudden attack of absolute stoppage of the bowel. The pain associated with intestinal obstruction is at first of a gripping character, in some forms being sudden and severe, frequently starting from about the umbilicus, but it may radiate from some other locality, not necessarily corresponding with the seat of the mischief; after a time peritonitic pain not uncommonly supervenes. Absolute constipation is not an invariable symptom, for when the small intestine is implicated, its liquid contents are able to pass along the canal unless there is complete closure, and the same thing may happen when intus-susception affects the large intestine; further, faeces contained in the bowel below an obstruction are often expelled. Occasionally blood and mucus are discharged, especially in cases of invagination of the large bowel. Vomiting is more easily excited, and is more severe, the nearer the stoppage approaches to the stomach. At first it is sympathetic in most cases, but soon the rejected matters have a distinctly faecal odour; and present an appearance like pea-soup, consisting of materials which have either flowed back into the stomach from the bowels, or been forced through the pylorus by anti-peristaltic action, or by external pressure. In some instances there is more or less suppression of urine, especially if the obstruction is situated high up, this being most probably a sympathetic derangement. Indican is present in the urine in abundance when the obstruction involves the small intestine.

Diagnosis.—The further elucidation of the clinical history of cases of intestinal obstruction will be best aided by considering the data on which their diagnosis is founded. This has to determine, first, the fact of the *existence* of an obstruction; secondly, its *cause*; and, thirdly, its *situation*.

In conducting the examination of any particular case the following course may be adopted:—1. The *age* and *sex* should be noted, their influence as predisposing causes of different varieties of obstruction being borne in mind. 2. Certain matters in the *past history* of the patient should be specially enquired into, namely, whether articles have been taken, either in the food or in any other way, which might form concretions in the intestines; the habitual state of the bowels; and if there is any history of previous intestinal ulceration, peritonitis, the passage of gall-stones, uterine displacement or any other condition which might give rise to pressure. 3. Any peculiar *constitutional con-*

dition must be observed, and this may afford some aid, as, for instance, by indicating the cancerous cachexia ; or the existence of phthisis, which is liable to be attended with ulceration and its consequences, or with tubercular peritonitis ; of chronic dysentery ; or of hysteria, in connection with which accumulations of faeces are common, and intestinal paralysis might possibly occur. 4. As regards the *history of the attack* itself, it should be first ascertained whether the obstruction has been gradual or sudden in its onset ; and how long it has lasted. If it has been chronic, enquiry must be made as to what the habitual state of the bowels has been ; if any peculiar alterations in the stools have been observed ; or if there have been previous attacks of complete obstruction, which have yielded to treatment. Should the obstruction be acute, it must be ascertained whether the attack can be traced to anything having been swallowed, or to sudden effort or other physical cause ; and if it has commenced with severe localized pain. 5. The precise *local and general symptoms* must of course be carefully noted, whether as indicating simple obstruction, partial or complete ; or, in addition, enteritis or peritonitis. The rapidity with which stercoaceous vomiting sets in is also important. 6. Thorough *physical examination* is essential, in conducting which attention should be paid to the following particulars :—*a.* All forms of *hernia* must be carefully searched for. *b.* Any *contraction or distension of the abdomen*, either general or local, must be noted, a view being also taken from behind ; in the early stages this may help materially in fixing upon the seat of any obstruction. *c.* The situation may also be partly determined in some cases by observing the locality of any *violent peristaltic movements* of the intestines. *d.* Among the more important conditions discoverable by satisfactory exploration of the abdomen, which may also point to the situation of a stricture, are *accumulations*, not forgetting impacted gall-stones, the onward progress of which can occasionally be traced ; *tumours* of various kinds, either external to, or associated with the intestines ; and *intus-susception*. It must be remarked, however, that even when these conditions exist, it is for many reasons frequently difficult or impossible to detect them. *e.* *Examination per rectum*, by means of the finger, hand, or bougie, is often most serviceable. The amount of fluid or air which can be injected *per anum* may aid materially in fixing upon the seat of any stoppage, but this must be by no means implicitly relied upon. It has also been suggested in certain cases to practise auscultation along the colon while an enema is administered. *f.* Of course, should anything be *vomited* or *passed by stool*, the materials thus discharged must be thoroughly examined. 7. In any doubtful case, it is necessary to *watch its progress*, as regards its clinical course, rapidity, and termination, which may speedily afford considerable assistance in diagnosis ; to observe the effects of treatment ; or, when called for, to have recourse to abdominal section for diagnostic purposes.

Having given this general outline of the method of investigation to be pursued, it will be well to add a brief summary of the more characteristic clinical features presented by each class of cases of intestinal obstruction.

1. *Accumulations* in the bowels are generally gradual in their progress, but in some instances, especially when due to gall-stones, the symptoms come on very acutely. The physical signs and consequences of most of these collections have been already considered ; and here it need only be remarked that impacted gall-stones are particularly liable to set up

violent enteritis, while the course of these cases is usually rapidly fatal; though, on the other hand, they may terminate very favourably.

2. *Strictures and compressions* of the bowel may be considered together. They are usually chronic in their progress, complete obstruction being preceded by gradually increasing constipation, sometimes interrupted by attacks of diarrhoea; diminution in the size, and change in the shape of the stools, should a stricture be seated near the lower end of the intestines; liability to colicky pains, sickness, and other disturbances of the alimentary canal; and interference with nutrition. From time to time also there may be signs of temporary complete obstruction. There may be a history of a definite cause of stricture or compression; or *physical signs* may be detected, indicating some morbid condition likely to give rise to either of these difficulties. Commonly these cases linger on for a long while, even after absolute closure of the bowel has been established. Now and then, however, signs of obstruction come on suddenly, without any particular previous symptoms, these being followed by enteritis or peritonitis. Possibly some accumulation above the stricture may under such circumstances be the immediate cause of the symptoms.

3. *Strangulations* give rise to rapid and absolute obstruction; followed speedily by signs of severe enteritis, or even of gangrene of the intestines, perforation, and peritonitis. If not relieved, their issue is quickly fatal. Many cases belonging to the class of intestinal strangulations can only be determined by exclusion, and frequently they can merely be guessed at. A previous history of peritonitis may help the diagnosis; while the immediate attack is often due to some violent exertion.

4. *Intus-susception* is also sudden in its onset as a rule, beginning with griping pain, more or less violent, usually referred to the umbilical region. Subsequently colicky pains occur from time to time, and the ordinary signs of obstruction set in, followed by those of enteritis or peritonitis. The other important diagnostic evidences of invagination are the *passage of blood per anum*, in some cases mixed with mucus or decomposed tissues; the detection of a *sausage-shaped tumour* in the abdomen, corresponding to some part of the intestine, presenting peristaltic movements, and altering during the progress of the case as regards its direction, extent, and shape; and the *end of the intus-suspected portion* being felt or seen on examination through the anus, or more or less of it being discharged in a gangrenous condition. In the latter case sudden perforation and its consequences may supervene. There are generally some important distinctions between invagination of the *small* and *large* intestines, namely, that in the former the symptoms are far more severe and acute in their progress; haemorrhage is much more abundant, blood being also sometimes vomited; while in the case of the large bowel there is generally much tenesmus, with dysenteric stools. *Physical examination* may afford some aid in localizing the mischief. The presence of indican in the urine has been said to distinguish obstruction of the small from that of the large bowel. A large proportion of the cases of intus-susception end fatally, those in which the large intestine is involved sometimes becoming chronic, and lasting for many weeks or months. The several events which may happen in their course have been indicated in the account of the *morbid anatomy*.

5. It is scarcely practicable to indicate the characters of obstruction from *spasm* or *paralysis* of the muscular coat. The occurrence of chronic constipation in a hysterical female, ending in complete obstruc-

tion, might suggest paralysis, though probably the previous accumulation of faeces actually originates the obstruction. It generally yields to treatment.

Prognosis.—It will be evident that all forms of obstruction of the bowels are dangerous, but the prognosis of individual cases will differ very much. The cases most speedily fatal are those due to strangulation or intus-susception. The chronic varieties are liable at any moment to end in complete closure. Accumulations may often be got rid of, and thus recovery be brought about.

Treatment.—The treatment must be separately considered, according as intestinal obstruction is *chronic* and *gradual* in its progress; or *sudden* and attended with *acute* symptoms.

1.—In *chronic* cases the main principles are to regulate the diet strictly, allowing only liquid or pultaceous, highly digestible, and nutritious articles of food, in moderate quantities: to endeavour to keep the bowels acting comfortably, for which purpose mild enemata answer best, at the same time avoiding the use of strong purgatives; to remove, if possible, anything causing compression, as well as any accumulation; to support the strength of the patient, and improve the general condition: to treat troublesome symptoms referable to the digestive organs; and, in appropriate cases, to have recourse to certain operations.

Should there be a *stricture in the rectum*, it may often be dilated successfully by the cautious use of the *bougie*. In certain instances also it is desirable to make an artificial opening above an obstruction, as described in surgical works, which may prolong life considerably, at the same time giving marked relief to the symptoms.

2. In cases of *acute* obstruction, from whatever cause, a matter of prime importance is not on any account to excite the intestines by giving purgatives. It is allowable to use enemata cautiously, so as to clear out the bowel below the seat of obstruction. Of course little or no food should be taken by the mouth, and very soon the smallest quantity is immediately rejected; therefore all the necessary support, including *stimulants* when required, must be administered *per rectum*, and frequently considerable quantities of the latter are needed. The patient may be permitted to suck ice judiciously. The most important internal remedies are opium in full doses, and belladonna, which are often given in combination; or their alkaloids, morphine and atropine, may be administered subcutaneously. In certain cases careful manipulation, kneading, or massage of the abdomen is serviceable; and Mr. Hutchinson has advocated energetic abdominal taxis with copious enemata in early cases of acute obstruction. Electricity is sometimes useful in faecal impaction. *External applications* over the abdomen, of dry heat, poultices, fomentations, turpentine stupes, sinapisms, or sometimes cold are very serviceable. Vomiting and other symptoms require the usual remedies. Lavage of the stomach may be useful in faecal vomiting. In the treatment of intus-susception, the methods which have afforded the best results are the gradual injection of a large quantity of warm water *per anum*, or, still better, inflation of the bowel with air, which may be aided by carefully kneading the abdomen. When the invaginated portion has reached the rectum, it has occasionally been replaced by the introduction of a gum elastic bougie.

The question of an *operation* presents itself in many cases of intestinal obstruction. Of course if there is any evident or suspected hernia, surgical interference is necessary. Without any comment, I will only mention that the other operative procedures which are advocated, and

may be called for in suitable cases, are abdominal section, sometimes followed by enterotomy; puncture of a distended coil of intestine by a trochar and cannula; and colotomy. The reduction of an intussusception after opening the abdomen is an important method of treating this condition, but its results are not very satisfactory.

CHAPTER XLV.

INTESTINAL WORMS—HELMINTHIASIS.

In the present chapter it is intended to give a brief account of the main facts relating to the animal parasites which infest the alimentary canal of human beings; but it will be convenient, in noticing their life-history, to allude to another phase of their existence, which they pass in other organs of the body.

The more important intestinal worms include:—**1. Cestodes or tape-worms.** *a. Taenia medio-canellata.* *b. Taenia solium.* *c. Bothriocephalus latus.* **2. Nematodes.** *a. Ascaris lumbricoides (round-worm).* *b. Oxyuris vermicularis (thread-worm or seat-worm).* *c. Trichocephalus dispar (hair-headed or whip-worm).* *d. Anchyllostomum duodenale or Dochmias duodenalis.* Among rare varieties are mentioned *taenia nana* or *egyptica*, *elliptica*, and *flavo-punctata*; *bothriocephalus cordatus*; *ascaris mystax*; *distoma crassum* and *heterophyes*.

Aetiology and Development.—It seems tolerably certain that no intestinal worm is ever developed in the bowel directly from an ovum deposited there by a previous tenant, but that this must be first discharged with the faeces and undergo metamorphosis, being afterwards conveyed by some means through the mouth into the alimentary canal in a certain stage of development, and when it reaches its peculiar habitat it grows into the adult animal. As regards the development of the *nematodes*, an embryo forms in each ovum after its discharge in the stools, or, in the case of the thread-worm, even while it is in the intestines; no further change occurs so long as the ovum is outside the body, though it may retain its vitality for a long period. In this condition it is supposed to be introduced into the alimentary canal in various ways, such as along with impure water, vegetables, fruit, or starchy substances. The ova of thread-worms are also probably carried to the mouth by the fingers or nails of a person already infected, as a result of scratching the anus. It has been suggested that the embryos of round-worms are taken up by some other animals, such as a small worm, or an insect or its larva, and then swallowed along with vegetable and other articles of diet. Hellier's observations, however, are in favour of the view that this worm completes its cycle of existence without having to pass through the body of any intermediary animal bearer. This was the opinion strongly held by the late Dr. Cobbold.

The development of *tape-worms* is better known. Segments of these worms, containing abundant ripe ova, separate and are discharged *per anum*, or even break up within the bowel; the ova escape and are scattered about in various ways; they are then swallowed by different animals, specially by pigs, oxen, and sheep, mixed with their food. In the alimentary canal of these animals the shell of the ovum ruptures, and then the embryo (*proscolex*) escapes, attaches itself to the mucous surface, and

works its way into the tissues, until it reaches a suitable spot, where it settles down and undergoes further changes, presenting a head and neck with appendages like those of a tape-worm (*scolex*), from which a vesicular appendage or bladder hangs down. In this stage the worm is named a *cysticercus* or *bladder-worm*, such as is seen in the muscles, liver, brain, and other organs and tissues of different animals, sometimes in human beings. Each tape-worm has a special form of cysticercus : that of the *tænia solium* is named the *cysticercus cellulosæ*; that of the *tænia medio-canellata* the *cysticercus medio-canellata*. This cysticercus may remain for some years, or may finally perish ; if, however, it in any way reaches the alimentary canal of the particular class of animal which it infests in the adult condition, it becomes attached by the head, the vesicle falls off, and then a succession of segments form, constituting the ordinary tape-worm. The usual way in which these larvæ reach the stomach is in consequence of an individual eating the raw or imperfectly-cooked flesh of the animals which they severally infest. Thus the *tænia solium* comes from pig's flesh (measly pork) ; the *tænia medio-canellata* from beef ; while the *bothriocephalus latus* is believed to be conveyed by fish or molluses.

Different varieties of tape-worm are found in different parts of the world. In this country the *tænia solium* and *medio-canellata* are the forms met with, the latter quite as frequently as, if not more frequently than, the former. *Bothriocephalus latus* is prevalent in Eastern Europe as far as the Vistula, and in Switzerland, especially along sea-coasts and rivers. Tape-worm is by far most frequent in those countries where much pig's flesh is consumed, and individuals who do not eat this kind of food, such as Jews,

are particularly exempt from the complaint. It is frequently observed among those who, in connection with their occupation, are in the habit of putting knives used for cutting raw meat into their mouths, such as butchers, cooks, etc. ; and also among those who indulge in raw or very underdone meat, or in sausages and similar articles, as then the parasites are not destroyed. It must be remembered that in this country tape-worm is often conveyed by beef. The *bothriocephalus* is supposed to be taken along with drinking-water. Women suffer from tape-worm more frequently than men ; and usually the persons affected are between 16 and 40 years of age.

Round- and thread-worms are principally found in children, especially if they are in bad health, or improperly fed and dirty. Round-worms are very prevalent in some parts of the world, namely, in the Southern States of America, Greenland, Iceland, Brazil, and in some parts of Holland, Germany, and France, especially in low and damp districts. They are common enough in this country. It is presumed that an unhealthy condition of the enteric mucous membrane, leading to the formation of much viscid mucus, favours the development of worms.

* Fig. 29.—*Cysticercus cellulosæ*, from the human brain, of its natural size, and with a retracted anterior extremity (*b*).

† Fig. 30.—The same *cysticercus* extruded ; *a*. The caudal vesicle of the cysticercus, which is nothing but the *receptaculum scolicis* (or hinder end of a tænoid embryo), distended into a vesicle by the accumulation of water. *c*. The transversely-wrinkled anterior extremity of the cysticercus. *d*. Its head and neck, which conjointly form the tænoid *scolex*. *Von Siebold.*)



FIG. 29.*



FIG. 30.†

Description.—It will only be practicable to describe here the main characters of the principal worms, by which they can be recognized when they come under observation in patients.

1. **Tape-worms.**—A complete tape-worm is now regarded as a “peculiar animal colony, consisting of more or less numerous individuals temporarily connected together for the common advantage, but capable of leading separate, and quite independent existences.”—(*Darwin Thomas*). In the adult form (*strobila*) tape-worms are elongated, narrow, flattened, or tape-like in form, consisting of a head, a neck, and a series of thin, flat, quadrilateral segments or links (*proglottides*), varying in number according to the length of the worm, united by a softer and more transparent tissue. The links grow from behind the neck by a process of budding, and then pass on, making room for those more recently formed, so that the oldest are the most distant from the head. At first they are very small, but enlarge considerably as they become more mature, at the same time altering in form somewhat, and presenting a more complicated organization. Tape-worms are parenchymatous in structure, consisting of a soft, whitish, or yellowish-white contractile tissue; having no mouth or alimentary canal; but presenting a water-vascular system communicating between the segments, and well-developed sexual organs. These are not evident in the most recent links. The female apparatus appears first as a median tube with lateral branches, subsequently becoming more divided and developing ova, which almost completely fill the terminal links, rendering them opaque, and in these segments embryos may be visible. The male organs consist of tortuous seminiferous tubes, and a penis. Each segment is hermaphrodite, and the sexual orifice is either single or double, opening either laterally or on one of the surfaces. All the varieties of tape-worm inhabit the small intestines ordinarily; rarely one may enter the large bowel or the stomach. As a rule only a single worm is present; occasionally there are two or more.

1. *Tenia Solium*.—Length varies from a yard to 100 or 150 feet or more, but the average is stated by different authorities at from 5 or 7 to 20 or 30 feet. Head very small, somewhat globular or bulbous, with a slightly prominent conical snout or *rostellum* in front, surrounded by a double row of curved siliceous hooks, from 12 to 15 in each row; and further back 4 suckers, symmetrically arranged. Neck extremely slender; from $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch to nearly an inch long; transversely marked. Segments in their earliest stage very small, and much broader than long; gradually become more flattened and altered in the relation of their diameters, so as to be first square, and afterwards oblong, being much longer than broad, with the ends narrowed, especially the anterior extremity. Mature links measure about



FIG. 31.*

* Fig. 31.—*Tenia solium armata* (of the natural size). Fragments taken at certain distances between the head and the posterior rings, in order to show the successive form of these rings; the order of the letters indicates their arrangement from before backwards.—(*Daraine*.)

$\frac{1}{2}$ an inch long, and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch broad. *Male* and *female* organs open by one orifice, which is situated laterally in a little projection, now on one side, now on the other, but not regularly alternating.

2.—*Tenia Medio-canellata*.—Has a general resemblance to *Tenia solium*, with the following differences:—*Length* usually greater. *Head* larger, has neither snout nor hooks, being flattened in front, but its four suckers are very prominent and powerful. Leuckart describes a fifth smaller one between them. *Links* more numerous, broader, thicker, and firmer. *Sexual organs* more developed and divided; and orifice situated near the posterior border.

3. *Bothriocephalus Latus*.—*Length* very considerable. *Head* obtuse or club-shaped, having no hooks or prominences, but merely two longitudinal slits or grooved suckers, one on each side. *Neck* very short. *Segments* exceedingly numerous; not distinctly visible for a little

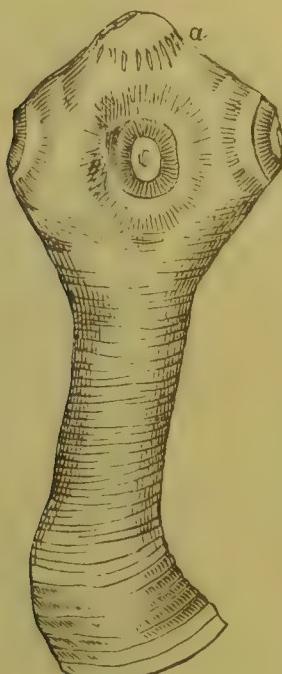


FIG. 32.
Head and neck of *Tenia solium* magnified.
a. Circle of hooks.

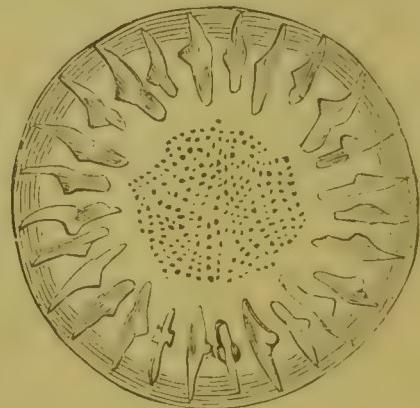


FIG. 33.
Circle of hooks, more highly magnified.
(Leuckart.)

distance from the head; at first nearly equal in diameters, but soon much broader than long; have a slightly brownish colour. *Sexual openings* in the middle of one surface of each segment, near its posterior border, and not lateral; they are distinct, that of the male apparatus being anterior. *Ova* of a brown colour.

2. **Nematodes**.—The main characters of the chief *nematodes* are indicated in the following description:—

1. *Ascaris Lumbricoides*.—Form elongated and cylindrical, but tapering towards the ends, especially the anterior. *Length* from 6 to 12 or 16 inches; and diameter 2 to 3 lines. Appears reddish, greyish-red, or yellowish-white, semi-transparent, firm and



FIG. 34.
Head of *Taenia medico-canellata*, highly magnified.
(After Tritsch.)

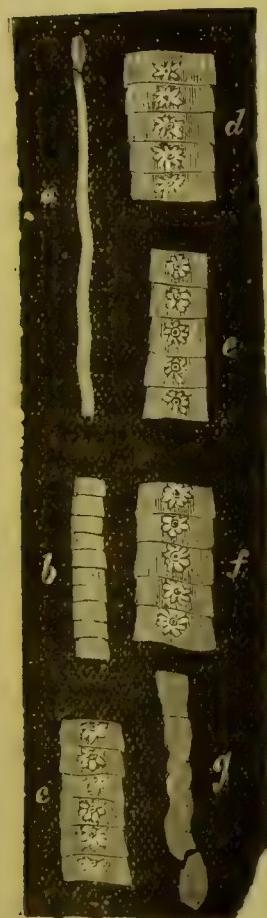


FIG. 36.†

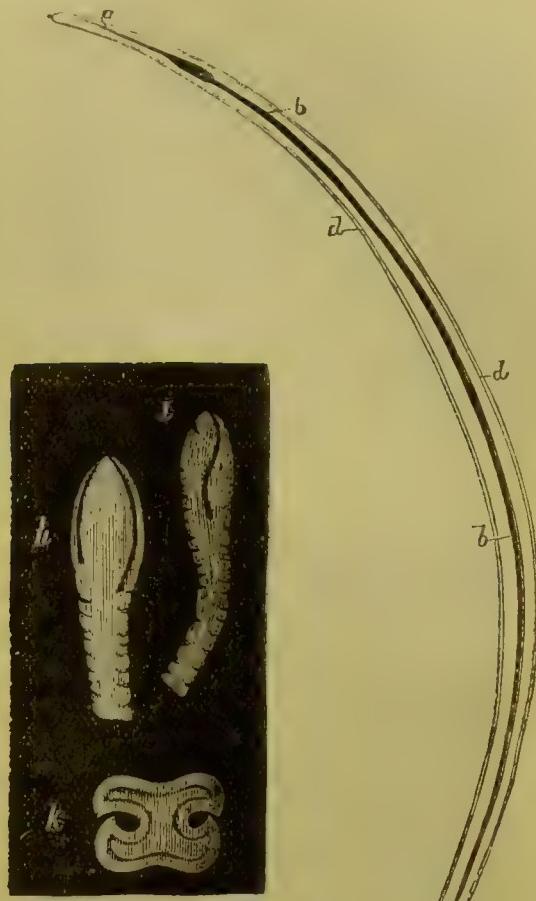


FIG. 35.*



FIG. 37.‡

* Fig. 35.—*i* and *h*. Head of the *Bothriocephalus latus*, enlarged six times and seen in two different positions. *k*. Transverse section of the head of the bothriocephalus found in the turbot, magnified twelve times; this is introduced into the figure for the purpose of showing the arrangement of the lateral suckers.—(Davaine.)

† Fig. 36.—The *Bothriocephalus latus*, of the natural size, the fragments being taken at certain distances; the order of the letters indicates their relative situation, from the head to the posterior extremity; in *e*, *d*, *e*, *f*, the genital pore is visible; *g*, some of the terminal rings shrivelled up, after the deposition of the ova.—(Davaine.)

‡ Fig. 37.—Male of *Ascaris lumbricoides*, of the natural size. *a*. Esophagus; *b*. Intestinal canal; *c*. Spermatic ducts; *d*. Lateral longitudinal line.—(Küchenmeister.)

elastic. *Head* has three small prominences, with the mouth between them lined with numerous teeth. A circular depression separates it from the body. *Body* presents fine transverse markings. *Sexes* are distinct. *Male* shorter, and curved posteriorly, where the sexual organs are placed. *Female* straighter, and thicker at the hinder extremity; has the sexual opening about the end of the anterior third.

Habitat small intestines, but often migrate into the large bowel, and out through the anus; or rarely to the stomach, œsophagus, mouth, nares, frontal sinuses, windpipe, bile and pancreatic ducts or gall-bladder, peritoneum, vagina, urinary organs, and various other parts.

Number usually several; may be hundreds; sometimes only one.

2. *Oxyuris vermicularis*.—Very small and delicate; fusiform; *males* measuring from 1 to 2 lines long; *females* about 5 lines. Whitish and semi-transparent; surface presents fine transverse striae. *Head* has a terminal mouth, with 3 scarcely evident lips, and a wing-like expansion on the dorsal and ventral aspects. *Male* is rolled up posteriorly, where the sexual organs are placed. *Female* is straight or but slightly bent, and has the vulva about the junction of the anterior and middle thirds.

Habitat the cæcum, but migrate to the lower part of colon and rectum. Often migrate around the anus, into the vagina, urethra, or under the prepuce. Have been seen in the small intestines and stomach.

Number usually very great; hundreds or thousands.

3. *Trichocephalus dispar* (fig. 39).—Thread-like in form, being from 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ or 2 inches long. Posterior end thicker than anterior, which is hair-like, and ends in a simple terminal mouth. *Male* is the smaller, and is spirally coiled posteriorly. *Female* is larger and thicker, only slightly curved; the uterus contains an immense number of ova.

FIG. 38.
Female *Oxyuris vermicularis*: 1. Four oxyurides of the natural size. 2. The cephalic end magnified; the œsophagus and stomach are shown. 3. The caudal extremity magnified. 4. The head greatly enlarged; *a*, the mouth furnished with three lips; *b b*, the lateral expansions of the integument.—(Darame)

Habitat usually the cæcum, rarely the colon, very rarely the ileum. The head is generally imbedded in the mucous membrane, while the body moves freely.

Number usually not great, but may be hundreds.

4. *Anchylostomum duodenale*.—Griesinger first discovered in 1854 that the complaint known as "Egyptian chlorosis" was due to this worm, and it was subsequently traced as the cause of similar symptoms in many of the Italian labourers employed in making the St. Gothard tunnel (hence sometimes called the *tunnel-worm*), as well as among brick-workers in Germany who work in wet clay-pits, and drink impure muddy water, and under various other circumstances in hot climates. It is said to be very common in Brazil.

The form of "beri-beri" met with in Ceylon has also been attributed by Dr. Kynsey to the anchylostomum.

Description.—A small round worm, with a stiff body, and a head bent nearly at right angles. *Cephalic end* presents a bell-shaped suctorial mouth, provided with two small teeth on its dorsal edge, and four large curved teeth on its ventral edge. *Female* about $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch in length; *male* rather more than half as long. *Colour* red, owing to the digestive canal containing blood sucked from the intestinal mucous membrane. *Ova* numerous, oval, with a thin transparent shell.

Habitat.—Upper portion of small intestine, especially the duodenum. The body commonly hangs free, but sometimes the worm bores into the inner part of the mucous coat, and lies rolled up in a hollow space in immediate contact with the muscular coat.

Number often very large; may be single.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—The ordinary worms frequently exist in the alimentary canal without setting up any evident symptoms. When present these are usually indicative of (1) *local irritation*; (2) *reflex disturbance*; and (3) more or less *constitutional disorder*. Occasionally intestinal worms lead to local congestion, inflammation, superficial erosion of the mucous surface, or even slight ulceration; in exceptional cases they may cause obstruction of the bowels; or, by migrating into the stomach, bile-ducts, liver, larynx, peritoneum, and other parts, may originate dangerous symptoms referable to either of these structures. It may be stated as a general rule that the symptoms are more marked in delicate and weakly persons, or in those whose nervous system is highly susceptible; and that they are proportionate to the number and size of the worms.

The *local symptoms* which may be produced by *tape-* and *round-worms* are uneasiness, curious sensations, or actual griping pains in the abdomen, especially about the umbilicus; sometimes attacks of severe colic, attended with vomiting or retching, and faintness; capricious and variable appetite, often with craving for special and indigestible articles of food; furred tongue, and foul breath; nausea or vomiting; irregularity of the bowels, constipation and slight diarrhoea alternating from time to time, the stools sometimes containing mucus; and flatulence, with distended abdomen. The main *reflex phenomena* attributed to worms include itching at mucous orifices, which causes the patient to scratch the anus, or pick the nose; salivation; grinding of the teeth during sleep, which is uneasy and disturbed; dull frontal headache, with giddiness; noises in the ears; squinting, dilated pupils, oedema of eyelids, flashes and specks before the eyes; twitchings of the limbs or facial muscles, or even violent general convulsions ending fatally; choreic, hysterical, epileptic, or maniacal attacks; deranged menstruation; palpitation; and a feeling of constriction in the throat. Among the *general symptoms*



FIG. 39.

The *Trichocephalus dispar*: 1. The male, of the natural size. 2. The female, of the natural size. 3. The head magnified. 4. The tail, also greatly enlarged.—(Dawaine.)

which may be observed are more or less wasting; pallor; a feeling of debility and languor; pains in the limbs; fretfulness and depression of spirits. A form of pernicious anaemia has been attributed to the *bothriocephalus latus*.

From a diagnostic point of view these symptoms are by-no-means characteristic of intestinal worms, and it is often a question how far they are originated by their agency; still when such phenomena are present, especially in children, this class of causes should always be thought of. The diagnosis may be verified by the passage *per anum* of fragments of a tape-worm, or of entire round-worms; and, if necessary, remedies may be given with the view of aiding their expulsion. Microscopic examination of the stools, for the purpose of discovering ova, is recommended in suspected cases. Portions of tape-worm sometimes escape spontaneously as the patient is walking along.

Thread-worms are very common in weakly and dirty children, and as they are often extremely numerous, they give rise to much local irritation, causing severe itching and tickling about the anus, which leads to constant scratching; the itching is especially intense towards night, and may gravely interfere with sleep. I have also met with cases in which thread-worms caused in this way much annoyance in adults, both male and female. Occasionally they excite considerable dysenteric symptoms; and not uncommonly originate *prolapsus ani*. They also frequently pass into the vagina, causing much irritation in this part, and inducing catarrh, undue sexual excitement and masturbation, or now and then severe haemorrhage. By getting under the prepuce, thread-worms tend to promote the habit of masturbation in males. On examination they may often be seen moving in the vicinity of the anus: as well as in abundance in the stools. Various reflex symptoms are often attributed to thread-worms, but with doubtful propriety.

The *trichocephalus dispar* does not give rise to any definite symptoms.

With regard to the *anchylostomum duodenale*, this worm differs from the others in that it feeds by sucking the blood from the mucous membrane, the spot where it attaches itself being indicated by a small ecchymosis; probably also it shifts its position from time to time, and the punctures left may go on bleeding, the intestine being sometimes found filled with blood in fatal cases. Digestive disorders and a cutting pain in the abdomen have been described among the symptoms, but the most important is the anaemic state supposed to be produced by the loss of blood, although haemorrhage *per anum* is seldom, if ever, observed during life. The anaemia may prove fatal in a few weeks, or remain as a chronic state. Death may ultimately occur from dysentery, or from some intercurrent acute disease. In relation to diagnosis, it is important to bear in mind the *anchylostomum* as a possible cause of anaemia under certain circumstances, and to search for the worm or its ova in the stools, after the administration of a brisk purgative.

Prognosis.—Most intestinal worms can be readily got rid of, if properly treated. *Tape-worms* are sometimes difficult to remove completely, but with systematic management a cure may almost always be effected. It is the safest plan to see that the head of a tape-worm is discharged, else if this remains a further growth will probably take place: however, it is affirmed that if only the head and a small portion of the neck is left, the worm will die; and, further, the nearer the head any portion which is detached comes, the more easily will the rest be got rid of. Worms may now and then prove highly dangerous by their

migrations, or by causing obstruction of the bowel; death may also occur in children from reflex convulsions excited by their agency. The progressive anaemia due to certain worms may prove very grave.

Treatment.—I. If worms are present in the intestines, of course the first object in treatment is to get them destroyed or expelled. The remedies for these purposes are named respectively *vermicides* and *vermifuges*, and the particular agent to be employed varies with the nature of the parasite. For *tape-worm* the following plan of treatment is usually efficacious:—To make the patient take only liquids, such as milk and beef-tea, for a day; then to administer a full dose of castor-oil in the evening; and, finally, early on the following morning, if the oil has acted well, to give a draught containing the liquid extract of male fern, the dose ordered in the B.P. being from m 15 to 30. The draught may be made up with sugar, mucilage, and milk; or with the yolk of an egg and cinnamon water. The object of this plan is to clear out the bowels so as to expose the worm, and then the male fern acts upon it and kills it. Sometimes it is desirable to follow up the draught with another dose of castor-oil, but generally this is not needed, as the drug itself acts as a purgative. Some authorities prefer giving the extract in smaller doses, frequently repeated; others employ the powdered fern. In order to see whether the head of the worm is discharged, each stool must be received into a separate vessel, then mixed with water, and filtered through coarse muslin.

Other *anthelmintics* employed for the destruction of tape-worm are kousso, followed by a cathartic; kamala powder (Si to Sij in treacle or syrup); decoction of the bark of the root of pomegranate (Sij in Oj, boiled down to Oss); powdered areca nut; oil of turpentine (Si to Sss); and petroleum (m xx to xxx). If the worm projects through the anus, it has been recommended to roll it gradually round a piece of stick, and thus draw it out; or to apply some poisonous agent to the protruded portion.

For *round-worms* the most efficient remedy is santonin. It is well before administering this drug to give an *aperient*, such as compound scammony powder; and to limit the diet to liquids for a day. Santonin may be employed alone, gr. 2 to 6 every morning, for two or three days, mixed with sugar or syrup, or in the form of the lozenges, or with gingerbread. It seems to be more efficacious when mixed with castor-oil, and Küchenmeister advises that from gr. ij-iv be dissolved in Si of the oil, and Si taken every hour until it acts. Other preparations used containing santonin are an ethereal extract of santonica, and santonate of sodium. Some practitioners rely in the treatment of round-worm merely upon certain *purgatives*, which act as *vermifuges*, such as calomel, jalap, and scammony; the compound scammony powder is a useful preparation for this purpose.

Santonin is also useful internally in the treatment of *thread-worms*, but these are decidedly most effectually got rid of by means of *cennata*, of which many kinds have been employed. Any of the following will usually answer well, namely:—Common salt or other alkaline salts dissolved in water or gruel (Si to Oj); santonin with castor-oil; infusion of quassia; infusion or decoction of wormwood; tincture of perchloride of iron (Si to Oj of water or infusion of quassia); olive oil; lime-water; decoction of aloes; decoction of rue; turpentine with gruel; or even mere water, if employed freely for a few days. Cleanliness is of great importance. In some cases thread-worms resist every kind of treatment.

The *tricocephalus* requires no special treatment.

The *ankylostomum duodenale* may be treated by anthelmintics, especially santonin and male-fern, aided by the action of purgatives and enemata. Thymol has also been specially recommended. Its effects must be attended to, especially the anaemic condition.

2. In all cases of intestinal worms it is essential to look to the state of the *general health*, and to improve this by means of preparations of iron and other *tonics*, with cod-liver oil if required ; as well as by regulation of the diet, and attention to hygienic measures. The *alimentary canal* must also be attended to, and the bowels kept acting freely, so as to prevent accumulation of unhealthy mucus. Scammony, jalap, rhubarb, and castor-oil are the best aperients in these cases, and either of the powders may be advantageously combined with carbonate of sodium or magnesium.

3. The *prevention* of intestinal worms is a matter of considerable importance in some parts of the world, especially as regards tape-worms, and this can only be effected by taking every precaution against those habits mentioned under the *aetiology*, by which the ova are conveyed into the stomach, such as eating raw or partially cooked meat ; putting knives into the mouth ; or drinking impure water. Stools known to contain worms of any kind or their ova should be immediately destroyed. Of course meat that is measly ought on no account to be taken as food. In the case of children, important prophylactic measures against the development of worms consist in the maintenance of sound health ; the preservation of the digestive organs in a satisfactory condition ; and attention to cleanliness.

CHAPTER XLVI.

DISEASES OF THE LIVER AND ITS APPENDAGES.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

THE liver is an organ which performs many functions highly important in the animal economy. The most obvious of these is the formation of bile, which is not only useful for purposes connected with digestion, but is also undoubtedly excretory. Consequently biliary derangements have always occupied a prominent place, both with the profession and the public, in accounting for a large number of ailments. The liver has also a glycogenic function. Moreover, it appears that this organ is concerned in certain metabolic processes, ending in the formation of urea and uric acid ; and in the destruction of red corpuscles, of peptones or ptomaines formed during digestion, which are poisonous if directly introduced into the general circulation, and of organic poisons introduced from without. A variety of morbid conditions and symptoms are attributed to functional derangements of the liver, not only associated with the alimentary canal, but also with remote organs, and with the general system, including lithæmia. In the following summary of the clinical phenomena connected with hepatic affections, only those will be referred to which are obviously associated with the liver, and

which are met with more or less when this organ is the seat of organic disease, or when its biliary function is interfered with in various ways.

1. **Morbid sensations** connected with the hepatic apparatus are referred mainly to the right hypochondrium, but may extend across the epigastrium to the opposite side, or may shoot in various directions. They include different kinds of pain, with or without tenderness; or merely a sense of uneasiness, fulness, weight and heaviness. Sympathetic pains in the right shoulder are supposed to have a frequent relation to the liver. Gall-stones are an important cause of pain in the hepatic region.

2. Some prominent symptoms result from **disturbance of the biliary functions**, the chief being those associated with *jaundice*, which will be specially discussed. Bile may also be secreted *in excess*, thus acting as an irritant, and causing bilious diarrhoea and perhaps vomiting. It may further be *deficient in quantity* or of *improper quality*, hence originating signs of deranged digestion in the intestinal canal.

3. **Obstruction of the portal circulation** leads to mechanical congestion of its tributary veins. The obvious clinical phenomena which may result therefrom are those indicating gastro-intestinal catarrh and its consequences; haemorrhage into the alimentary canal, giving rise to haematemesis or melæna; ascites; enlargement of the spleen; distension of the superficial abdominal veins after a time; haemorrhoids; and sometimes congestion of the female generative organs. After death the retro-peritoneal veins are often found much enlarged and varicose, and those of the lower end of the oesophagus, the stomach, and the intestine may be in a similar condition; while the spleen and pancreas present the usual morbid changes which result from long-continued venous congestion. Haemorrhage may take place into the peritoneum.

4. If the liver is much enlarged, it sometimes originates symptoms by **pressing upon neighbouring structures**, such as the diaphragm, thoracic organs, inferior vena cava, or duodenum.

5. **Physical examination** of the liver may demonstrate either displacement; enlargement; contraction; alteration in shape; changes in its physical characters; or pulsation. The general characters of *hepatic enlargement* are as follows:—(i.) Its site corresponds mainly to that of the liver, occupying the upper part of the abdomen, chiefly on the right side, or there is a history of its having grown from this direction; it does not descend into the pelvis, but can be traced within the margin of the thorax, and appears to be superficial; sometimes there is distinctly visible fulness, or even bulging of the lower part of the right chest. (ii.) Though the dimensions may be very great, yet as a rule the normal general outline of the liver can be traced more or less distinctly; while the sensations it yields on palpation are usually sufficiently characteristic. (iii.) The organ is somewhat movable on manipulation, but not to any marked extent. (iv.) On percussion there is absolute dulness, with considerable sense of resistance generally; the dulness can be traced upwards towards the chest, and may have the curved outline regarded as characteristic of the liver; it is, however, influenced by different degrees of distension of the stomach and bowels. (v.) The movements of the diaphragm are often interfered with, especially on the right side; but the liver is generally a little altered in position by deep breathing. (vi.) Posture may also affect the situation of the organ in some degree, for it tends to be more prominent and lower in the abdomen when the patient is in the erect position.

6. Occasionally the **gall-bladder** presents an enlargement, which has the following general characters:—(i.) It usually occupies the right hypochondrium, and can be felt as a superficial swelling projecting from underneath the margin of the liver; occasionally, however, it is so much enlarged as to extend down to the crest of the ileum. (ii.) As a rule the shape is pyriform, with the base downwards and forwards. (iii.) The surface is generally smooth, and the enlarged organ has in the great majority of cases an elastic or fluctuating feel, but it may be irregular and firm, or yields the peculiar sensation of gall-stones. (iv.) Almost always the tumour is very movable from side to side, turning on a fixed point, which lies under the liver; even a change of posture may alter its position considerably. Now and then it is fixed by adhesions.

II. GENERAL THERAPEUTICS.

I. Therapeutic groups.—It is probable that many drugs act upon the liver in different ways, in relation to the several functions which it is now known to possess. From a therapeutic point of view it is necessary to take into consideration the entire hepatic apparatus, and the agents may be practically arranged under the following groups:—

1. *Cholagogues*.—These constitute a familiar class of agents, the general purpose of which is to promote the flow of bile, and to increase its quantity in the stools. The well-known experiments of Prof. Rutherford served to clear away much that was traditional on this subject, and gave us more definite knowledge, while they added many new remedies to the list. Cholagogues are now recognized under two distinct sub-divisions, as follows:—*a. Indirect cholagogues or Bile-expellents*. These merely excite muscular movements by which bile already formed is expelled from the gall-bladder and ducts into the intestines, along with any mucus present; or by which it is driven along the alimentary canal, and discharged with the evacuations before it can be re-absorbed. In this way the biliary function is indirectly promoted. They include the mercurial preparations which from time immemorial have been credited with an action upon the liver, especially blue-pill, grey-powder, and calomel: as well as various active cathartics. *b. Direct cholagogues or Hepatic stimulants*. As the terms indicate, agents belonging to this sub-division directly stimulate the biliary function of the liver, thus increasing the amount of bile actually produced. Some of them are more or less powerful purgatives, but others have no action of this kind. The most efficient direct cholagogues are resin of podophyllum, if the dose be not too large; aloes, jalap, and colocynth; colchicum; ipecacuanha; diluted nitro-hydrochloric acid; perchloride of mercury, either alone or combined with calomel; certain alkaline salts, namely, sulphate of sodium or potassium, phosphate of sodium or ammonium, benzoate of sodium or ammonium, and salicylate of sodium; and dry extract of euonymus, commonly known as euonymin. Among the less powerful hepatic stimulants are rhubarb, which is very useful for this purpose; guaiacum resin; and hydrastis, used in the form of liquid extract or tincture. Other non-official remedies were found efficacious by Rutherford, and are still employed, such as sanguinarin, juglandin, inulin, and iridin. At the bottom of the list stand croton oil, tartarated soda, senna, scammony, and taraxacum, the drug last-mentioned not having maintained its reputation for acting upon the liver as a cholagogue, except to a very

slight degree. It may be mentioned here that purified ox-gall is sometimes used as a substitute for bile, when this secretion is deficient.

2. *Anti-cholagogues*.—There can be no doubt that certain drugs diminish the secretion of bile. The most striking of these are opium and morphine; acetate of lead; and intestinal irritants. It is very doubtful, however, whether any agents can ever be definitely used for this purpose in actual treatment.

3. *Portal Depletants*.—The state of the portal circulation has an important influence upon the functions of the liver, and in certain cases it is desirable to administer remedies which have what may be fairly regarded as a depletant effect upon this circulation. They include mainly saline aperients, and other more powerful purgatives of a hydragogue character, which drain more or less watery fluid from the vessels contributing to form the portal vein. Under certain circumstances the practice is recommended of applying leeches around the anus, on the supposition that this measure directly relieves the portal circulation. It may be mentioned here also that Dr. George Harley has advocated certain operative procedures in relation to the liver, namely, "hepatic phlebotomy," blood being drawn directly from the organ by means of a small trochar and cannula; and "puncturing the liver capsule," with the view of allowing fluids to escape, and relieving tension of the liver substance. Cases in which such measures would be indicated or permissible must be very rare and exceptional.

4. *Hepatic Alteratives*.—Under this head may be included a miscellaneous group of drugs, which are believed to affect the metabolic or other functions of the liver, besides the biliary, though how far most of them are really useful for this purpose is very doubtful. Chloride of ammonium is one of the most important, and is said to increase the amount of urea formed, as well as to act as a hepatic stimulant; while it influences the condition of the mucous membrane of the gall-bladder and ducts. Without discussing their action, it must suffice to mention further phosphorus, arsenic, antimony, and iron, as probably promoting the metabolic function of the liver. With regard to its glycogenic function, this will be more conveniently discussed in relation to diabetes.

II. Auxiliary Therapeutic Agents.—Without entering into any details at present, it may be mentioned that diet, drink, exercise, fresh air, and change of climate are among the most important general matters that require attention in dealing with affections of the hepatic system. The habits of life often demand a complete change. It is obviously desirable in all cases to keep the alimentary canal in as normal a state as possible. Promotion of the action of the skin and kidneys materially helps the hepatic functions. Constitutional treatment is of essential service in syphilitic disease of the liver; and *alteratives* may be useful under other circumstances. Operative measures are called for in certain cases; and in this connection hydatid disease and gall-stones must be particularly mentioned.

CHAPTER XLVII.

ON HEPATIC SYMPTOMS.

I. HEPATALGIA.

THE occurrence of intermittent attacks of severe pain deep in the region of the liver has been attributed to a simple neuralgia in some instances. Dr. Allbutt recognizes hepatalgia, but regards it "as a pain aroused by the coincidence of an impressionable or neurotic habit, with the presence of gall-stones at rest in the bladder." This affection is but a part of a general nervous condition, attended with similar pains in other parts, as well as with deep mental depression. The attacks are not accompanied with vomiting, but it is said that there may be jaundice. The main difficulty in diagnosis lies in separating the pain of simple hepatalgia from that due to gall-stones.

II. JAUNDICE—ICTERUS.

Jaundice is one of those symptoms which has been dignified by being described as a special disease. Essentially it merely signifies the peculiar discolouration of the skin and other structures which is observed when the bile-pigments accumulate in the blood.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Cases of jaundice have long been divided into :—1. Those in which there is a mechanical obstruction preventing the escape of the bile through the ducts—*Obstructive jaundice*. 2. Those in which no such obstruction exists—*Non-obstructive jaundice*.

1. *Obstructive jaundice*.—This may be due to :—(i.) *Impaction of some foreign material* in the hepatic or common bile-duct, namely, a gall-stone; thickened or gritty bile; inspissated mucus; rarely parasites, either formed in the liver or its duct (*distoma hepaticum** and *hydatids*), or having entered from the intestine (*round-worm*); very rarely fruit-stones or other bodies which have passed into the duct from the bowel. (ii.) *Catarrh of the mucous membrane* of the duct, or of the duodenum about the orifice, causing narrowing of its canal—*catarrhal jaundice*. (iii.) *Organic changes* in the walls of the duct or at the orifice, leading to more or less *stricture*, or even to complete *obliteration*, namely, congenital constriction or closure; thickening of the walls from inflammatory changes; perihepatitis; or cicatrization of an ulcer, either in the duct or duodenum. (iv.) *Pressure upon the duct, invasion of its canal, or closure of its opening*, by tumours or growths, especially by projecting growths from the liver; enlarged glands in the portal fissure, or pancreatic disease implicating the duodenum; rarely by a pyloric tumour; growths in or behind the peritoneum; hepatic aneurism:

* The *distoma hepaticum* or *liver-fluke* is a small trematode worm, often found in sheep, very rarely in the human being, occupying either the gall-bladder or bile-ducts. It is of a flattened, elongated, oval form; soft; and brownish or yellowish in colour.

fæcal accumulation in the colon; uterine and ovarian enlargements, including pregnancy; or a renal tumour or displaced kidney.

As regards its pathology, obstructive jaundice is now generally regarded as being due to *excessive absorption* of bile by the veins and lymphatics of the ducts, after its formation. Such absorption is always going on normally, but the bile thus taken up is speedily changed in connection with the nutritive processes which take place in the system. When there is any obstruction to its escape, the intensity of the jaundice will be in proportion to the rapidity with which the biliary secretion is formed, and to the slowness of its decomposition in the blood.

2. *Non-obstructive jaundice*.—The conditions under which this variety is supposed to occur are:—(i.) In certain *specific fevers*, namely, yellow, remittent, intermittent, and relapsing fevers; very rarely in typhus, typhoid, or scarlatina. (ii.) In certain forms of *blood-poisoning*, especially in connection with pyæmia; snake-bite; poisoning by phosphorus, mercury, copper, or antimony; and inhalation of chloroform or ether. (iii.) In *acute or chronic atrophy* of the liver; or after *destruction of its tissue* from any cause. (iv.) In cases of marked *congestion* of the liver. (v.) From *disturbed innervation*, especially as a consequence of sudden intense mental emotion. (vi.) When the blood is *insufficiently aerated*, as in cases of pneumonia, in new-born infants, or as the result of overcrowding and bad ventilation. (vii.) Where bile is formed in *great excess*. (viii.) In cases of *habitual or long-continued constipation*. (ix.) In certain states of the *portal circulation*, as when the veins contain abundant pigment-granules; or when they are unusually empty after profuse hæmorrhage from the alimentary canal.

It is highly probable that not a few of the cases classed under the head of non-obstructive jaundice are really due, in part at any rate, to an obstructive condition, arising from pressure upon the smaller ducts within the liver; from catarrh of the main ducts; or from the formation of plugs of mucus. The chief views suggested as to the pathology of the different forms of actual non-obstructive jaundice are that it is dependent upon:—1. *Suppression of secretion*. 2. *Increased absorption*, so that more bile enters the blood than can undergo decomposition, either from excessive secretion; undue retention of bile in the intestines, owing to constipation; or diminution of pressure in the portal vessels. 3. *Impaired or delayed metamorphosis* of the bile-elements in the blood, some being of opinion that the bile-acids are converted in this fluid into bile-pigments, owing to imperfect oxidation. 4. *Changes in the blood itself*. According to one theory hæmatine is directly converted into bile-pigments. Another view is that in some cases the red corpuscles are destroyed by a poison, and hæmoglobin liberated. This is conveyed to the liver, and increases the quantity of bilirubin, which is out of proportion to the bile-acids. The bile soon becomes thick, viscid, and tenacious; and the pressure in the ducts is thus increased, the bile is absorbed, and jaundice results. With regard to the influence of the nervous system in producing jaundice, it is presumed that disturbance of this system may affect the activity of the secretion; the condition of the portal circulation; or the rapidity of the changes in the blood.

Jaundice has been divided into *hepatogenous* and *haemogenous*, but the distinction is in many instances by no means definite. Speaking generally, obstructive jaundice is hepatogenous, while non-obstructive is haemogenous.

Epidemic jaundice is a variety which demands brief separate notice. It occurs under different circumstances, and several outbreaks have been recently reported. Its real nature and causation have been much disputed, and some writers have attributed it to influenza. Jaundice is a prominent symptom in the epidemics of Weil's disease. Probably in all cases where it assumes an epidemic form, the jaundice itself is due to obstruction of the duct, either as the result of catarrh, or by a plug of inspissated mucus.

Jaundice occurs sometimes in new-born infants—*icterus neonatorum*. This form is generally believed to be due to some temporary obstruction of the bile-duct. It has also been suggested that probably during the first few days of extra-uterine life a comparatively large amount of bile is secreted, which cannot be got rid of. Other views are that diminished pressure in the portal vessels favours absorption from bile-capillaries; that some of the portal blood containing bile flows through the ductus venosus into the systemic circulation; or that the jaundice is due to destruction of large numbers of red corpuscles in the blood. In exceptional cases deep and persistent jaundice results from congenital stenosis or even entire absence of the main bile-duct, and these cases soon terminate fatally. It may also be due to syphilitic hepatitis; or to septic poisoning associated with phlebitis of the umbilical veins.

Jaundice is by-no-means a necessary accompaniment of even grave organic disease of the liver itself, and in such cases, when it is marked, it is generally owing to some projection from this organ interfering with the main duct; or to the glands in the portal fissure being involved. It may, however, be due to destruction of the hepatic tissue; or to the ducts in the substance of the liver being obstructed by some direct pressure upon them, or by distended vessels.

Anatomical Characters.—In marked jaundice not only are the skin and conjunctivæ more or less stained with bile-pigment, but likewise most of the tissues, organs, and fluids of the body, as well as morbid exudations and effusions. In the skin the pigment accumulates chiefly in the rete mucosum, at the same time involving the sweat-glands considerably. The nerve-tissues are but slightly affected; and the mucous membranes generally, with their secretion, still less. The bile-pigments are found in the clot and serum of the blood, but not the bile-acids; in prolonged cases coagulation is imperfect, and the corpuscles are altered in their characters; while not uncommonly extravasations of blood are found. In cases of obstructive jaundice the liver itself becomes at first enlarged uniformly, without any alteration in shape, and mottled of a more or less deep yellow tint, or in some cases it presents an olive-green colour; its ducts are distended; and in time numerous particles of pigment collect in the hepatic cells. Should the obstruction impinge the common duct, the gall-bladder will be distended. If the obstruction is persistent, the liver undergoes degeneration, becoming atrophied, very dark or sometimes almost black, and softened, many of its cells being destroyed, leaving only a granular detritus, which is visible under the microscope. The kidneys are also much changed in prolonged cases of obstructive jaundice, being deeply coloured, their tubules containing a black or brown deposit, and the epithelium cells presenting granules of pigment, or ultimately breaking down and undergoing destruction. These changes in the liver and kidneys have been attributed more especially to the action of the bile-salts.

Symptoms.—The most obvious clinical phenomena associated with jaundice are those derived from the *external discolouration*; the characters of the *urine*: and the consequences of *absence of bile from the alimentary canal*. Usually the earliest signs are afforded by the urine; next by the conjunctivæ; and lastly by the skin. The conjunctivæ are more or less deeply tinged of a yellow colour. The skin may present a variety of tints, from a faint yellow to a brownish- or blackish-green. The colour is deepest where the epidermis is thin; and varies with age, complexion, amount of fat, and other circumstances. If the lips or gums are pressed, so as to expel the blood, a yellowish hue is often observed. The urine exhibits a colour ranging from a light saffron-yellow to one resembling mahogany or porter; on standing it usually becomes greenish. Its froth is yellow; and it will tinge white linen or blotting-paper dipped into it, while it often stains the under-clothing. Chemical examination is most important, as indicating the presence of *bile-pigments*; and, as some believe, of *bile-acids*. The former are usually tested for by nitric acid; the latter by sulphuric acid and sugar. (See EXAMINATION OF URINE.) Dr. George Harley affirms that the bile-acids are only present in the urine in cases of *obstructive jaundice*, and not in that due to *suppression of secretion*; also that they may disappear in prolonged cases of the former variety, owing to the destruction of the hepatic tissue. This statement is, however, not confirmed by other authorities. Another important character presented by the urine is that it often contains *leucine* and *tyrosine*, crystals of which may be seen under the microscope, after careful evaporation of some of the excretion to a syrupy consistence. In some cases the quantity of urine is below the normal at first; the reaction is acid; the proportion of urea and uric acid varies, and these constituents may be in excess. In prolonged cases of jaundice sugar sometimes appears. Renal epithelium or casts tinged with biliary colouring matters are occasionally observed.

When the bile does not reach the intestines, the consequences are constipation, with unhealthy stools, these being deficient in colouring matters, often pale drab or clay-coloured, dry, and offensive, also containing excess of fat; and the formation of much foul gas from decomposition of the intestinal contents, with consequent flatulence and the passage of foetid flatus. Some bile may, however, gain access into the bowel, and the faeces be therefore more or less coloured, even in cases of obstructive jaundice. Occasionally diarrhoea is observed from time to time; or dysenteric symptoms set in. There is usually a disinclination for food, especially for fatty matters; and eructations are common, which may have a bitter taste.

Evidence is often afforded of the presence of bile in the sweat, milk, saliva, and tears. From the accumulation of bile-acids in the blood result not uncommonly cutaneous itching, which may be very distressing; slowness of the heart's action and pulse, which may fall to 50, 40, 30, or even 20 per minute; and sensations of languor, depression, debility, lowness of spirits, incapacity for exertion, irritability, and drowsiness. The symptoms last-mentioned are also partly due to the wasting and impaired nutrition which usually soon become apparent, in prolonged cases being very marked. In some instances urticaria, lichen, boils, carbuncles, or petechiae are observed. Yellow vision (*eanthropsy*) is an extremely rare phenomenon in jaundice, and its cause is very uncertain.

Jaundice, especially the non-obstructive variety, may be accompanied with symptoms of the "typhoid state;" with prominent nervous

phenomena, as delirium, convulsions, or coma; or with petechiae and dangerous haemorrhages, particularly from the stomach and bowels, ending speedily in death—*pernicious jaundice*. These phenomena are, however, often quite out of proportion to the intensity of the jaundice. They have been attributed to the accumulation in the blood of the bile-elements, especially the colouring matters and the bile-salts, of cholesterin, of products resulting from the decomposition of bile-acids or their formative elements, or of some noxious substance formed in the cells of the liver—*cholema*; of toxic materials which normally are converted into bile—*acholia*; or of substances resulting from imperfect metabolism, intermediate deleterious products being formed, instead of urea and other compounds which are capable of being excreted by the kidneys. Interference with the destructive power which the liver normally exercises upon peptones and ptomaines may also have more or less influence. Probably in some cases the grave symptoms just mentioned are independent of the liver, and result either from some general morbid state, or from an abnormal condition of the kidneys, which leads to blood-poisoning. The structural condition of these organs, and their functional activity, are important factors as regards the danger of cases of jaundice. If they fail in excreting a due proportion of the biliary salts and colouring matters, or if their secreting cells become destroyed, the outlook becomes very grave.

Physical examination will probably in cases of obstructive jaundice reveal in a short time enlargement of the liver, not marked, and quite regular in outline. If the common duct is obstructed, the gall-bladder may also present a fluctuating swelling. In prolonged cases the liver may ultimately exhibit the physical signs characteristic of atrophy.

The course, duration, and intensity of jaundice vary greatly according to its cause. It may be merely a slight temporary disturbance; an acute condition of a pronounced character, which may prove very dangerous or even fatal; or a chronic and permanent disorder, which in some cases becomes extreme.

Diagnosis.—The first matter in diagnosis is to be certain that jaundice is present. The discolouration of the skin might possibly be simulated by the tint associated with chlorosis or pernicious anaemia; by the cachexia of chronic lead-poisoning, malaria, or cancer; by the pigmentation of Addison's disease; or by bronzing from exposure to the sun. The conjunctivæ and urine should always be particularly examined. The yellowness due to a collection of fat under the conjunctiva may, however, be mistaken for that of jaundice. Pigments also sometimes form in the urine, which render it very dark; and now and then malingeringers purposely stain the skin, and add colouring matter to the urine.

It may be difficult to determine whether jaundice is of the *obstructive* or *non-obstructive* variety, but the latter, as well as its particular causes, may be generally recognized:—1. By the circumstances under which it occurs; and the collateral symptoms. 2. By the discolouration being less marked. 3. By the presence of more or less bile in the stools. 4. By examination of the urine. According to Dr. George Harley, this gives indications of the presence of bile-acids only in the obstructive form of jaundice; in the non-obstructive variety it often yields leucine and tyrosine.

The precise cause of *obstructive* jaundice is determined by:—1. The age, sex, habits, and general history of the patient. 2. The past and present symptoms, both local and general. 3. The rapidity with which

the jaundice has set in; and its intensity. 4. Careful *physical examination* of the abdomen. 5. The course and progress of the case; and the effects of treatment. Intelligent attention to these points will generally lead to a correct opinion. The more rare causes can only be made out by exclusion, and are often merely guessed at. The fact of the gall-bladder being enlarged or not will, as a rule, show whether any obstruction involves the common bile-duct or the hepatic duct respectively.

Prognosis.—In most cases the prognosis of jaundice depends rather upon the morbid condition with which it is associated, than upon this particular symptom. As a rule, therefore, it may be stated that *non-obstructive* jaundice is much the more grave. Typhoid and low nervous symptoms are highly dangerous; as also are haemorrhages, and signs of interference with the renal secretion. In *obstructive* cases not only will the prognosis vary with the cause of the jaundice, but further with the rapidity with which it comes on; its intensity; and its mode of progress. In every case a cautious prognosis should be given, as it is never certain how matters may turn out, and this is particularly true when jaundice sets in rapidly, and becomes speedily intense. Catarrhal jaundice generally soon disappears, but it may continue for some time. Of course when this symptom is due to obstructive organic disease, especially cancer, there is but little hope of its removal; but it is astonishing to what an extreme degree the discolouration may attain in some instances, without any proportionate general disturbance to support the idea that bile acts as a poison. Jaundice in connection with pregnancy is considered to be highly dangerous.

Treatment.—In general terms the management of cases of jaundice may be summed up thus:—1. To treat the condition upon which it depends; and to remove any obstruction to the flow of bile, if practicable. 2. To promote secretion or discharge of bile, if necessary, by suitable *cholagogues*; or, on the other hand, to limit its formation. 3. To attend carefully to the diet, especially avoiding fatty and oily substances, as well as much starch, sugar, or alcoholic stimulants. 4. To treat the symptoms due to the absence of bile from the alimentary canal, especially constipation and flatulence; or to supply a substitute for this secretion, in the form of purified ox-gall. 5. To promote the renal and cutaneous excretions. 6. To attend to the general condition, giving quinine, iron, and other *tonics*, as well as adopting hygienic measures for improving the health, in chronic cases; treating adynamic symptoms by *stimulants*; combating low nervous symptoms by encouraging free elimination by the bowels, kidneys, and skin; and checking haemorrhages by *astrin-gents*. Intestinal irrigation has been specially recommended in the treatment of catarrhal jaundice. In certain cases of permanent obstruction, an opening may be made into the gall-bladder. The irritation of the skin associated with jaundice may demand measures for its relief; alkalies with opiates or morphine internally, or the latter administered hypodermically, and warm or alkaline baths, are most serviceable for this purpose. It must not be forgotten that the colour of jaundice remains for a time after any cause of obstruction has been got rid of; and if this has been effected, it is not necessary to continue further active measures. The elimination of the bile from the system may be promoted by occasional *alkaline baths*, *aperients*, and certain *mineral waters*; while convalescence is hastened by attention to hygienic and other measures which tend to improve the general health.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

CONGESTION OR HYPERÆMIA OF THE LIVER.

Aetiology.—*Active* congestion of the liver occurs to some degree during every period of digestion. It may also be associated with local injury; morbid deposits in the liver; or the early stage of inflammation. As a definite morbid condition it is met with:—1. In consequence of *errors in diet*, particularly in persons who take but little exercise, especially habitual excess in eating, or indulgence in rich articles of food: and abuse of alcohol or hot condiments. 2. As the result of continued *exposure to excessive heat* in tropical climates; or of a *sudden chill* while heated. 3. In connection with malarial, yellow, relapsing, and other *fevers*. 4. As a *vicarious* condition, taking the place of menstruation: or, it is said, of habitual discharges, such as bleeding from piles.

Mechanical congestion affecting the liver is generally due to some condition of the heart or lungs which interferes with the general venous circulation; very rarely to local obstruction of the hepatic vein or termination of the inferior vena cava. Portal sluggishness or congestion is also said to follow habitual constipation.

Anatomical Characters.—It is only the *mechanical* form of congestion of the liver that is generally seen after death. The organ is enlarged more or less, quite uniformly, its surface being smooth, and its capsule perhaps stretched. It often feels unusually firm. On section an excessive quantity of blood flows; the colour of the surface is unusually dark, sometimes even purple; and the vessels appear abnormally filled, becoming in time permanently dilated. The dark colour is rarely uniform, but is evident chiefly in connection with the intralobular branches of the hepatic veins, constituting the so-called *hepatic* congestion. *Portal* congestion is the term employed when the vessels at the circumference of, and between the lobules, are most distended, but this is rarely seen. The ultimate effects of long-continued mechanical congestion will be described in a subsequent chapter, but allusion may be made here to what is termed the *nutmeg liver*, which has been thus named because a section of the organ presents a variegated appearance, resembling that of a nutmeg, there being a mixture of red, white, and yellow tints. It is observed after congestion from cardiac obstruction has lasted for some time, and depends essentially on the following pathological changes. The branches of the hepatic vein are distended and over-loaded, of a deep red colour, and well-defined: the circumference of the lobules, corresponding to the portal branches, is anaemic, and becomes the seat of fatty changes, being consequently pale and opaque; while the bile is stagnant in many of the smaller bile-duets, which accounts for the yellow tint.

Symptoms.—Locally hepatic congestion tends to produce a sense of uncomfortable tension, fulness, and weight over the liver, especially after meals, and when the patient lies on the left side; sometimes there is a little tenderness. There may be pain in the right shoulder. Slight jaundice is often present, but the stools contain bile. The spleen may become

enlarged in cases of marked and persistent mechanical congestion. Commonly the alimentary canal is deranged, as evidenced by impaired appetite, thickly furred tongue, constipation or diarrhoea, and flatulence; but these symptoms are often the result of the same cause as that which originates the hepatic congestion, though they may be partly due to deficiency or unhealthy quality of the bile. Some degree of general disturbance often accompanies congestion of the liver. The urine is frequently deficient and concentrated, depositing abundant urates; it also commonly contains biliary pigments.

The *physical signs* of congested liver are moderate enlargement, liable to some variation; regularity and uniformity in shape and outline; with frequently somewhat increased firmness of the organ. In certain cases of great obstruction to the circulation in the right side of the heart, more or less marked hepatic pulsation is felt or even seen, due to regurgitation of blood into the inferior vena cava and the hepatic vein and its tributaries, which may be considerably dilated.

Treatment.—For *acute hepatic congestion* the measures to be adopted are to remove its exciting cause, an *emetic* being useful if it is due to irritating articles of food; to restrict the diet to small quantities of beef-tea, milk, and such articles; to apply warm poultices, fomentations, or sinapisms over the hepatic region, to dry-cup freely, or in some cases even to remove a little blood by leeching or cupping this region, or by applying a few leeches around the anus; and to give a dose of calomel or blue-pill, followed by a *saline aperient*, such as citrate of magnesium, sulphate with carbonate of magnesium, sulphate of sodium, or cream of tartar. After the acute symptoms have subsided alkalies with bitter infusions are useful, as well as *alkaline* and *saline mineral waters*. Subsequently the principles of treatment must be similar to those to be described hereafter as applicable to chronic hepatic diseases. These must also be followed in the management of cases of *mechanical congestion*. Probably in some cases of congestion of the liver Dr. George Harley would advocate hepatic phlebotomy, or puncturing the liver capsule.

CHAPTER XLIX.

ACUTE INFLAMMATORY DISEASES OF THE LIVER.

INFLAMMATION of the liver is a somewhat indefinite expression. It will be expedient to describe separately the more important forms of disease which may be included under this term; and then to discuss generally their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment. Before proceeding to their consideration, attention may be drawn to the fact that an *acute interstitial hepatitis* has been specially described by Klein in scarlatina, which has already been dealt with in relation to that disease. Similar changes may be associated with other specific fevers. Dr. Michell Clarke has also described an *acute diffuse cirrhosis* in children, with rapid destruction of the liver cells, and widely spread endarteritis, with proliferation of the endothelium, which he considers is partly the cause of the cell-destruction.

I. SUPPURATIVE INFLAMMATION OF THE LIVER—HEPATIC ABSCESS—SUPPURATIVE PYLE-PHLEBITIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The usual form of acute inflammation of the liver-tissue is that which ends in suppuration, and even this is rare, except in tropical climates. The cases of hepatic abscess met with in this country occur principally among sailors and others who have come from these regions. Murchison distinguished two forms of hepatic abscess, the *tropical* and the *pyemic*, the latter occurring in temperate climates.

The causes of acute hepatic inflammation leading to abscess may be stated generally as follows:—1. Occasionally *direct injury* to the liver itself, or over the hepatic region. 2. Convection of *septic emboli* or other products, containing micro-organisms, from various parts of the body, either internal or external, in connection with wounds, operations, abscesses, ulceration, or gangrene. Hepatic abscess from this cause is especially liable to follow suppurative inflammation, ulceration, or gangrene of the stomach or bowels; operations affecting the alimentary canal; ulceration or suppurative inflammation associated with the bile-ducts or gall-bladder; and splenic abscess. In this connection *suppurative pyle-phlebitis* may be alluded to, as it cannot be distinguished clinically from pyæmic abscesses. This is a purulent inflammation of the portal vein and its branches, and some authorities believe that in the class of cases now under consideration the hepatic suppuration is due to direct extension along these vessels, or to the formation of a thrombus in the inflamed vein, which undergoes purulent softening, particles becoming detached and being then conveyed to the liver. Suppurative pyle-phlebitis is said to result most commonly from perityphlitic abscess. A form is met with in new-born infants, due to extension of septic inflammation along the umbilical vein from the navel. It has also arisen very rarely from penetration of a vein by a foreign body swallowed, such as a pin, needle, or fish-bone. 3. Rarely some *direct irritation* in the substance of the liver, associated, for example, with a suppurating hydatid-cyst; tubercle; gall-stones; round-worms which have entered through the bile-duct; very rarely the liver-fluke; or foreign bodies. 4. The aetiology of *tropical abscess* requires special notice. It has been regarded by Budd and others as being invariably the result of previous dysentery. In some instances no doubt this is the true pathology, but by-no-means in all, according to reliable authorities, for often no sign whatever of dysentery can be discovered. There are two views as to the *exciting cause* of the hepatic inflammation in such cases:—*a.* That it is the direct consequence of *continued intense heat*, often combined with *malarial influence*. *b.* That in addition to these causes, which induce a *predisposing condition* of the system, there must be a *sudden chill* acting upon the body. Careful observations seem to have proved the definite aetiological association of the *ameba coli* with tropical hepatic abscess; and in some cases these organisms have been found in the stools without any marked symptoms of dysentery, and even when the faeces were well-formed. Intemperance, excessive eating, and indolent and luxurious habits generally, are said to act as powerful *predisposing causes* of hepatic abscess.

Anatomical Characters.—The *post-mortem* examination in cases of acute hepatitis generally reveals that suppuration has been established. The disease is supposed to commence with active hyperæmia; followed by effusion of lymph and degeneration of the hepatic cells, causing the affected part to become swollen or prominent, paler, yellowish, and softened; then suppuration begins in points in the centre of the lobules, which gradually coalesce, forming abscesses of various sizes, the pus-cells being derived from leucocytes. The situation, number, size, and exact shape of hepatic abscesses vary widely; as well as the nature and amount of their contents; and the condition of the surrounding tissue. The quantity of pus contained in an abscess may be very large. The right lobe is much more frequently affected than the left. Important differences as to number and size are stated to characterize *tropical* and *pyæmic* abscesses respectively. In the former variety there is generally one large abscess, and rarely does the number exceed three; in the latter the separate accumulations of pus are very numerous and small, not often exceeding a hen's egg in size. My own limited experience of hepatic abscess would lead me to the conclusion that there are at least exceptions to this rule.

Originally hepatic abscesses are more or less rounded, but by coalescence and extension they often become very irregular. The contents generally resemble healthy pus at first, but in time they may become sanguineous, or altered by admixture of bile, or more or less fetid and decomposed. In tropical abscess *amebae coli* are often present; and other micro-organisms are to be found in the pyæmic varieties. At first the walls consist of liver-tissue, usually congested or infiltrated, softened, and ragged; subsequently the boundary may become converted into a smooth firm capsule.

The progress and termination of these abscesses are also variable. When large, and especially when of the tropical variety, they advance towards the surface of the liver, finally bursting, if not opened by the surgeon, either externally, or into the peritoneum, intestines, stomach, gall-bladder, hepatic duct, hepatic or portal vein, inferior vena cava, or pelvis of the right kidney; or, in rare instances, opening through the diaphragm into the pleura, lung, or pericardium. After the discharge of the pus cicatrization may take place, causing contraction and depression of the surface of the liver. In some cases an hepatic abscess remains dormant for a considerable period, and then rapidly extends. It is also believed that the fluid portion of the pus may be absorbed, the contents subsequently becoming first caseous, then putty-like, and finally calcareous, the tissue around forming a dense cicatrix.

The gall-bladder is sometimes inflamed in cases of hepatic abscess, and may be full of pus. The bile contained in it is frequently unhealthy, but presents no special characters. The consequences of the rupture of an abscess into various structures are described in other parts of this work.

With regard to *suppurative pyle-phlebitis*, this condition generally begins in the hepatic branches of the portal vein, or in its tributaries, and then extends to the main trunk. The walls of the vessel are thickened, while the surrounding connective tissue is often infiltrated with pus-cells, and presents minute ecchymoses. The intima of the vein is opaque, and frequently superficially ulcerated. A thrombus occupies its channel, which is usually in a state of softening or suppuration, so that an offensive purulent or bloody fluid flows out when the

vessel is cut. Detachment of particles from this thrombus may originate abscesses, not only in the liver, but also in other structures, especially the lungs, brain, kidneys, and joints. Suppurative pyelophlebitis may also cause general peritonitis.

Symptoms.—As a rule the symptoms of hepatic inflammation are pronounced; but they may be very obscure or quite latent. They are both *local* and *general*.

Local.—Pain and tenderness are generally complained of over some part of the hepatic region, often preceded by mere uneasiness. The pain differs much in its severity and characters; in most cases it is at first dull, aching, and tense, but usually increases when suppuration sets in, and may then assume a throbbing character; it is more marked when the inflammation is near the surface. Sympathetic pains about the right shoulder and scapula are occasionally present, but, it is affirmed, only when the upper surface of the right lobe is affected. In this event also a deep breath or cough aggravates the pain: while the breathing is hurried, short, and chiefly upper costal: and there is in many cases a short dry cough. Jaundice is very uncommon in connection with tropical abscess, but is often present in some degree in pyæmic cases. Ascites is extremely rare. More or less disturbance of the alimentary canal is almost always observed, such as loss of appetite, furred and irritable tongue, thirst, nausea or vomiting, constipation or diarrhoea. The urine is at first markedly febrile; after suppuration has been established it often becomes pale, copious, and deficient in urea.

Physical signs.—The liver is at first uniformly and moderately enlarged. Should any abscesses formed be small and deeply seated, nothing further can be observed; but if one or more of them become large and superficial, the following characters are presented:—1. The general enlargement increases considerably, and in addition a *bulging prominence* presents in some particular direction, or occasionally more than one. This is generally observed in the epigastrium or right hypochondrium: sometimes it causes distension of the lower part of the chest, with flattening of the spaces. 2. The general surface and margins of the liver usually feel *smooth* and *regular*, but occasionally, from the projection of several small abscesses, or on account of peri-hepatitis, they are *undulated* and *irregular*. 3. The local bulging soon yields a sensation of *elasticity*, and afterwards of *fluctuation*, gradually extending and becoming more perceptible, surrounded often by a ring of inflammatory induration. Nothing like *hydatid-fremitus* can be elicited. 4. The *hepatic dulness* is altered in outline as well as increased in area, and when the abscess advances towards the thorax, this is often one of the chief signs noticed. 5. Auscultation may reveal *friction-sound* over an abscess, due to peritonitis. It may also indicate encroachment upon the limits of the chest by the liver; and interference with the expansion of the right lung. 6. By means of the *aspirateur* pus may be obtained, and this is highly important as a means of diagnosis in doubtful cases. I may mention from personal experience that marked *pulsation* may be observed in connection with an hepatic abscess presenting in the epigastrium, conducted from the aorta, and simulating an aneurism. The spleen may be enlarged, but this is chiefly observed in pyæmic cases, and is seldom the direct result of the hepatic disease.

General.—Chills or rigors often usher in an attack of acute hepatitis, followed by more or less pyrexia, with considerable constitutional disturbance. Suppuration is usually indicated by repeated rigors; fever

of a hectic type, not uncommonly remittent or intermittent, attended with abundant sweats; and much prostration and wasting. Ultimately typhoid symptoms are very liable to supervene, ending in low nervous disturbance and death. The constitutional symptoms are as a rule more severe in pyæmic than in tropical cases of hepatic abscess.

Course and Terminations.—The ultimate course of events in hepatic abscess will depend upon the progress of the disease. The symptoms may subside, and the abscess undergo retrograde changes, ending in a cure. Almost always, however, it tends to open in one or other of the directions already mentioned, and a little consideration will suggest the corresponding symptoms. Should a liver-abscess open into the lung, the pus discharged has an anchovy-sauce-like colour, and may contain amœbæ. When it approaches the surface of the body the abscess causes redness, œdema, and other signs of superficial suppuration, before it bursts or is opened. Many cases of hepatic abscess prove fatal and are rapid in their progress, but tropical cases may last for six months or more; the pyæmic form is much the more fatal and speedy in its termination. Some cases go on for a long period, and ultimately recover, the abscess discharging its contents and cicatrizing. The improvements in the operative treatment of hepatic abscess during recent years have considerably modified its progress, and aided towards a favourable termination.

The clinical history of *suppurative pyle-phlebitis* is in some cases significant, but often very indefinite. The chief symptoms are epigastric pain, radiating downwards or laterally; usually jaundice; vomiting, and generally diarrhoea; enlargement of the spleen; peritoneal effusion, owing to the portal obstruction; sometimes intestinal haemorrhage; and signs of general septic infection, with high, irregular fever. The liver is not perceptibly enlarged unless it is the seat of abscesses. The urine is deficient in quantity, and urea is much diminished. This complaint generally runs an acute course, averaging about a fortnight, and is always fatal in its termination.

II. PERIHEPATITIS.

This term is applied to inflammation of the *covering of the liver* and of *Glisson's capsule*, which may occur as an acute affection, associated with peritonitis or organic diseases of the liver; or resulting from injury, or from extension of inflammation from neighbouring parts. It is also said to arise from a chill. It leads to exudation, with consequent thickening, opacity, and adhesions: while occasionally pus is formed. Perihepatitis may also be chronic or repeated, especially in connection with syphilis or chronic heart-disease.

Symptoms.—The symptoms are pain over the liver, sometimes sharp, increased by cough and deep breathing, with superficial tenderness: but no particular derangement of the hepatic functions, or alterations in the physical characters of the liver. There is usually more or less pyrexia. If the affection is chronic, signs of obstruction of the portal vein or bile-duct, or of atrophy of the liver, may be established.

III. INFLAMMATION OF THE BILE-DUCTS.

Catarrh of the bile-ducts is by no means an uncommon affection, being especially met with in children, and in old gouty persons. Its chief causes are extension of catarrh from the duodenum; hepatic congestion

irritation of the mucous membrane by gall-stones, parasites, foreign bodies, and perhaps by unhealthy bile, which may cause considerable inflammation; extension from suppurative pyle-phlebitis; and blood-poisoning in connection with fevers and other affections. The morbid appearances are similar to those of other forms of catarrh. Occasionally diphtheritic inflammation is observed in the bile-duets.

Symptoms.—Cases of catarrh of the bile-duets are characterized by catarrhal jaundice, generally preceded by signs of gastro-duodenal catarrh. There is often local pain and tenderness; with some degree of pyrexia. The duration and course of these cases vary, but generally they soon recover.

IV. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. DIAGNOSIS.—The occurrence of acute local symptoms connected with the liver, accompanied with constitutional disturbance, should lead to the suspicion of inflammation of this organ, especially in tropical climates, or if there is any obvious cause of pyæmia. At first there may be considerable difficulty in distinguishing inflammation from mere active congestion; and also in separating the different kinds of inflammation from each other. When an abscess forms, this is generally revealed by evident *physical signs*; as well as by increased constitutional disturbance. Commonly, however, distinct objective indications of pyæmic abscesses are wanting. The differences between *pyæmic* and *tropical* abscess have already been alluded to. The chief conditions which may be mistaken for abscess in the liver are inflammation and suppuration of the gall-bladder; a suppurating hydatid-cyst; and abscess in the abdominal parietes. In tropical climates hepatic abscess may be confounded with malarial fever. Intermittent fever associated with gall-stones has been mistaken for suppuration in the liver. Local peritonitis may simulate hepatitis; and sub-diaphragmatic abscess must be specially borne in mind, although it is comparatively rare. A liver-abscess may also be mistaken for empyema, especially when it opens into the pleura. If it perforates the lung, the peculiar characters of the expectoration will indicate its source.

2. PROGNOSIS.—In the milder forms of hepatic inflammation the prognosis is generally favourable, but when suppuration occurs it is very serious. It will then depend mainly on the size and probable number of the abscesses; the direction in which they open. Dr. Maclean stating as his experience that the largest number of recoveries follows bursting into the lung, and then into the intestine, and that the prognosis is much more favourable when the abscess points at the ensiform cartilage than in an intercostal space; the general condition of the patient; and whether the liver-affection is or is not associated with some other morbid state, such as dysentery. The advancements made in the surgical treatment of hepatic abscess of late years have materially diminished the dangers from this complaint. *Pyæmic* abscesses and suppurative pyle-phlebitis may be regarded as practically hopeless.

3. TREATMENT.—The slighter forms of hepatitis may be treated in the same manner as active congestion. Much difference of opinion is held as to the management of *tropical abscess* in its early stage. The usual measures recommended are venesection, or local bleeding by leeches or cupping; constant poulticing or fomentations; the use of *saline purgatives*; and the administration of calomel. Dr. Maclean, who strongly

opposes bleeding and mercury, advocates the free employment of ipecacuanha, as in dysentery. With regard to *pyæmic abscess*, there can be no question but that severe lowering measures are most injurious in this form of the disease. When suppuration occurs, poultices and fomentations must be assiduously applied. The question of *opening abscesses* connected with the liver is one which is also much discussed. Most authorities seem to be in favour of operating; some prefer leaving the abscess to take its own course. If there is satisfactory evidence of the existence of a single abscess it appears to me certainly advisable to evacuate the pus, and I have seen excellent results follow this mode of treatment; while even in doubtful cases the aspirateur may be advantageously employed. When there are several collections of pus, as in pyæmia, operative interference is contra-indicated. If an abscess is being emptied through the lung, provided the general condition is satisfactory, and hectic fever is not marked, operative measures may be deferred. The different modes of evacuation advocated are by means of the aspirateur or a small trochar and cannula; by free incision; or by the application of caustic potash to the abdominal wall, so as to produce a slough, this being also supposed to cause adhesions. Of course *antiseptic* precautions must be thoroughly carried out. In the case of a moderate-sized abscess, it seems best to let out all the pus at once, and to leave a cannula or draining-tube in; when very large, it may be emptied gradually by successive operations. Large poultices should be afterwards applied, being very frequently changed, and *antiseptics* must be freely used, the patient lying as much as possible in that position most favourable for the escape of the pus. It may be useful in some cases to wash out the abscess with weak carbolic acid. In the early period of the disease the *diet* should consist of milk, beef-tea, and such articles; when suppuration is set up it should be as nourishing as possible, while *stimulants* are called for at this time, as well as quinine, mineral acids, and tincture of perchloride of iron. *Hypnotics* are often required; and various symptoms demand attention in many cases. The general treatment applicable to pyæmia is indicated in *pyæmic abscess*.

CHAPTER L.

ACUTE YELLOW ATROPHY.

Aetiology and Pathology.—This is a very rare disease, in which the liver undergoes an acute fatty degeneration. Exceptionally it supervenes upon other hepatic affections. A similar morbid condition is also a striking feature in phosphorus poisoning. Its *aetiology* as a *primary* complaint is very uncertain. Most cases occur in connection with pregnancy; but the disease has also been attributed to severe nervous disturbance from depressing emotions; to blood-poisoning in certain fevers and septicaemia; to malarial influence; or to the development within the body of some special poison, the product of faulty digestion or assimilation. Micrococci have been described in the vessels of the liver in cases of acute yellow atrophy. The chief *predisposing causes* are age, this disease being almost always observed before 40, but never in childhood; the female sex; intemperance; venereal excesses; and syphilis.

As regards its *pathology*, most authorities consider that acute atrophy of the liver is the consequence of *diffuse parenchymatous inflammation*, excited by some kind of poison. It has also been attributed to obstruction of the smaller bile-ducts; or to excessive formation of bile within these ducts, causing pressure upon the surrounding structures.

Anatomical Characters.—The obvious characters presented by the liver in acute atrophy are marked diminution in its size and weight; relaxation and softening of tissue; change in colour to a dull yellow, yellowish-brown, or yellowish-red; and disappearance of all traces of lobular divisions. The organ may be reduced to half its ordinary bulk, or even less, being especially diminished in thickness, so that it becomes flattened, and it lies out of sight at the back of the abdomen, shrunken and flaccid, with its capsule wrinkled and often thrown into folds. In parts where the disease is less advanced, hyperæmia and a greyish exudation have been described. Microscopical examination reveals fatty degeneration and destruction of the gland-cells, until ultimately nothing remains but a granular detritus, oil-globules, and pigment. There is only a little mucus in the gall-bladder and bile-ducts as a rule. Extravasations of blood in the alimentary canal and other parts, with ecchymoses, are not uncommon. The spleen is generally enlarged. The kidneys exhibit degeneration of, and deposits of pigment in, the epithelium-cells. Leucine and tyrosine are found in the blood; as well as in the tissues of the liver, spleen, and kidneys.

Symptoms.—There may or may not be *premonitory* symptoms indicative of gastro-enteric catarrh, or general uneasiness and painful sensations may be experienced, but there is nothing characteristic about these phenomena, and grave symptoms may set in with great rapidity. Jaundice is usually soon observed, and afterwards increases, but seldom becomes intense, and it may be limited to the upper part of the body. It has been attributed to blocking up of the smaller ducts by the *débris* of the hepatic cells. Among the ordinary symptoms of acute atrophy of the liver are pain and tenderness over the epigastrium and right hypochondrium, vomiting, and constipation. There is little or no pyrexia as a rule; but the pulse is often hurried, and is liable to much variation; while the temperature is considerably raised in some cases, especially towards the close.

The most striking clinical phenomena in acute yellow atrophy of the liver, however, may be summed up as:—1. Those significant of the *typhoid state*, with prominent nervous symptoms. 2. Great diminution or complete disappearance of the hepatic dulness. 3. Enlargement of the spleen. 4. Peculiar changes in the urine. 5. Hæmorrhages into various parts. The nervous symptoms consist at first of headache, great depression, languor, irritability, and restlessness; speedily followed by low delirium, stupor, coma, muscular twitchings, and convulsions, with involuntary discharge of faeces and urine. At the same time the tongue becomes brown and dry, with sordes on the teeth. The urine is normal in quantity or slightly diminished; its specific gravity is somewhat increased; it yields considerable quantities of leucine and tyrosine; while urea, uric acid, and salts are much diminished, being sometimes almost entirely absent; some bile-pigment is usually present, and often a little albumin or blood. Hæmorrhage takes place most frequently into the stomach and bowels; cutaneous petechiae and vibices are not uncommon; and in rare instances uterine hæmorrhage or epistaxis occurs. The course of acute atrophy of the liver is generally very rapid;

and the *termination* almost invariably fatal. When the disease arises in the course of pregnancy it leads to miscarriage or abortion.

Diagnosis.—At first it is difficult or impossible to diagnose acute atrophy of the liver, but once the symptoms are fully developed, and the physical signs indicative of diminution in the size of the organ become evident, the nature of the disease is plainly revealed.

Prognosis is very grave, the disease almost always ending fatally.

Treatment.—Free purgation; promotion of the action of the skin by hot-air or vapour baths; the administration of *diuretics*; blistering and leeching the head; and the use of cold douches, are the chief measures recommended in the treatment of acute atrophy of the liver, but they are of little service when the disease is established. Haemorrhages and other symptoms must be treated on ordinary principles.

CHAPTER LI.

CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE LIVER.

I. HYPERTROPHY AND ATROPHY.

SIMPLE *hypertrophy* of the hepatic tissue is said to be observed in some cases of leucocythaemia; very rarely in diabetes; and as the result of prolonged residence in hot climates. Clinically it is indicated by a slow, moderate, and uniform enlargement of the liver: without any evident symptoms, either local or general.

On the other hand, *atrophy* generally occurs in old age; or it may result from starvation; or from pressure upon the surface of the organ by tight stays, peritoneal adhesions, and other conditions.

II. FATTY LIVER—HEPAR ADIPOSUM.

Etiology.—This affection belongs mainly to the *fatty infiltrations*, the secreting cells of the liver becoming filled with fatty or oily material. The conditions under which it is usually met with are:—1. In connection with *wasting diseases*, such as phthisis and cancer, gastric ulcer, or chronic dysentery; and certain forms of anaemia. 2. In *chronic lung- and heart-affections*, which lead to imperfect aeration of blood and consequent deficient oxygenation. 3. In *general obesity*, due to over-feeding and other causes; and as the result of *abuse of alcohol*, particularly in the form of ardent spirits. Deficient exercise and indolent habits aid greatly in the development of the disease under these circumstances. *Fatty degeneration* of the hepatic cells may be set up in connection with other morbid conditions of the liver, such as albuminoid disease or cirrhosis.

Anatomical Characters.—In well-marked fatty liver the morbid characters include enlargement and increase in weight, though the specific gravity is diminished, the margins of the organ being thickened and rounded, and the surface quite smooth; a more or less yellow colour, with opacity, both externally and on section, this being generally mottled with red; softening of the tissue, which has a doughy, inelastic feel, pits on pressure, and readily breaks down or tears; deficiency of

blood, but little escaping from the cut surface; loss of distinctness of outline of the lobules; and evidence of the presence of much fat, obtained either by the knife, by blotting-paper, or by ether. The liver may yield as much as from 43 to 45 per cent. of oily matters, which consist of olein and margarin, with traces of cholesterol. Microscopical examination shows enlargement of the cells, which also become spherical, and are more or less loaded with fat. In the less advanced cases the change is only revealed by the aid of the microscope. It is found that the morbid process extends from the circumference of the lobules towards their centre.

Symptoms.—There are no definite symptoms connected with the liver in simple fatty disease. Dyspeptic disturbances are common. *Physical examination* is the only positive means of diagnosing the condition, but not uncommonly it cannot be made out even in this way. 1. There may be enlargement of the liver in a downward direction, slow in its progress, and usually moderate in degree, the organ never attaining any great size. 2. The shape is quite normal; and the surface and margins feel smooth and regular, the latter being rounded. 3. Palpation often reveals a soft, doughy consistence of the liver. The *general* symptoms are those usually associated with fatty changes, namely, want of tone; inaptitude for exertion; pallor and pastiness of the skin. In some cases there is more or less obesity. Signs of fatty changes in other organs and tissues, such as the heart, vessels, and kidneys, may be observed.

III. ALBUMINOID, LARDACEOUS, OR WAXY LIVER.

The *etiology* and *pathology* of this morbid condition have already been fully considered, and need not be discussed here. The liver is one of the most common seats of albuminoid disease.

Anatomical Characters.—Commonly the size and weight of the liver are considerably increased in lardaceous liver, as well as its specific gravity. The shape is scarcely altered, but the organ may be somewhat flattened, with rounded edges. The surface and margins are quite smooth; the peritoneum is stretched; and the tissue feels very firm and resistant. On section the usual pale, anaemic, dry, greyish, and glistening aspect characteristic of lardaceous disease is observed; often the surface is quite homogeneous, without any trace of lobules, or these may appear to be enlarged. The ordinary chemical tests characteristic of the albuminoid material are yielded; and microscopical examination reveals its presence in connection with the vessels and cells. It is first observed in the middle zone of the lobules, where the branches of the hepatic artery are distributed. Commonly other organs are involved at the same time.

Symptoms.—As a rule hepatic symptoms are not prominent in albuminoid liver. Local sensations, if any, rarely amount to more than a feeling of weight, tension, and discomfort. Jaundice and signs of obstruction of the portal circulation are also very uncommon, and when present are due either to pressure by enlarged glands in the portal fissure, or by thickenings in connection with local inflammatory changes. Ascites may result from chronic peritonitis. The *physical signs* of albuminoid disease of the liver are:—1. Enlargement, chiefly in a downward direction; gradual in its progress, the organ frequently attaining great dimensions at last, so that it presents a visible prominent

tumour. 2. No perceptible alteration in form, the surface being smooth and uniform, with rounding of the margin. 3. Consistency dense and resistant, often extremely hard. There are the usual *general* symptoms indicative of albuminoid disease; with, in most cases, signs of implication of other organs; as well as of the existence of some disease with which the change is associated.

IV. HYDATID TUMOUR OF THE LIVER—ECHINOCOCCUS HOMINIS—ACEPHALOCYST.*

Aetiology and Pathology.—The best illustration of the morbid conditions resulting from the development of the embryo of a tape-worm in the human body is afforded by the complaint now under consideration; and although the parasite may be met with in almost every organ and tissue in the body, yet the liver is by far its most frequent seat, so that the subject may be discussed once for all in the present chapter. A *hydatid tumour* is derived from the development of embryos of the *tænia echinococcus*, each of which produces a *scolex*, named *echinococcus hominis*; and these scolices become enclosed in cysts. This variety of tape-worm infests dogs and wolves, and it is supposed that fragments are evacuated in their excreta, the ova of which are subsequently set free, become mixed with water or food, and are thus introduced into the alimentary canal of a human being. When the embryos are liberated, they bore the walls of the stomach with their hooks, and then migrate, usually settling in the liver, and there developing into scolices. The *echinococcus* also infests sheep, and it is in consequence of eating their organs, which are the seat of this parasite, that dogs become the subjects of the corresponding tape-worm.

Hydatid disease is especially prevalent in Iceland. It is also very common in some parts of Australia. In this country it is only very exceptionally met with, and usually in persons who have been abroad. Most cases occur during middle life; and among the poorer classes.

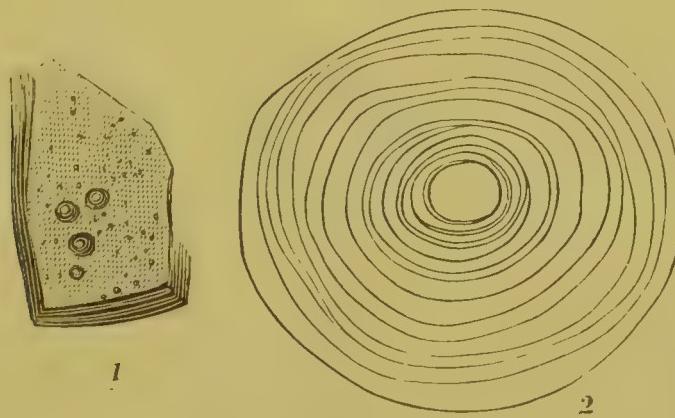


FIG. 40.

Hydatid found in man. 1. A fragment of the natural size; at its edge are shown the layers of which it is composed; on the external surface are several hydatid germs of different periods of development. 2. One of the germs flattened and magnified forty times, showing the stratified layers.

* For a detailed account of the most important and interesting facts relating to "Hydatid Disease," the reader is referred to the writings of the late Dr. J. Davies Thomas of Adelaide.

Anatomical Characters.—In the first place it will be well to describe the various structures which ordinarily enter into the formation of a typical *hydatid tumour*:—1. Externally there is in the great majority of cases a firm, whitish or yellowish, fibrous, vascular capsule, derived from the connective tissue of the organ which harbours the echinococcus, and due to irritation, which is adherent to the surrounding structures. This covering is not, however, an essential part of a hydatid tumour. 2. Within it, moulded as it were to its interior, but easily separated, is a cyst or bladder, *mother-cyst*, *sac*, or *vesicle*, of very variable thickness, which increases with advancing age. This consists of two distinct structures. (a) The outer portion (*ectocyst* of Huxley) is tough, elastic, greyish, semi-transparent or gelatinous in aspect, and compared to boiled white of egg. Under the microscope it is seen to consist of several concentric layers, a section presenting a characteristic laminated appearance; under the highest powers it presents a nearly hyaline, or at most a faintly granular appearance. (Fig. 40.) (b) The most internal layer (*germinal* or *embryonic membrane*, *endocyst* of Huxley, *parenchymatous layer* of Leuckart) is extremely delicate; and has a cellular structure, with coarsely-granular, highly-refractive bodies, and calcareous corpuscles. The inner surface is said by Naunyn to be provided with cilia. 3. A quantity of fluid is contained within the cyst, usually completely filling it, perfectly colourless, transparent, and watery as a rule, occasionally slightly opalescent; of low specific gravity—1007 to 1015; generally neutral in reaction, but occasionally faintly alkaline or acid; and consisting mainly of a strong solution of chloride of sodium, without any, or with only traces of albumin or other organic substance, but said to contain succinate of sodium. 4. Floating in this fluid, or attached to the inner surface of the mother-cyst when small, are numerous *secondary* or *daughter-cysts*; in some instances these amount to hundreds or thousands, and completely fill the space, so that there is little or no fluid,

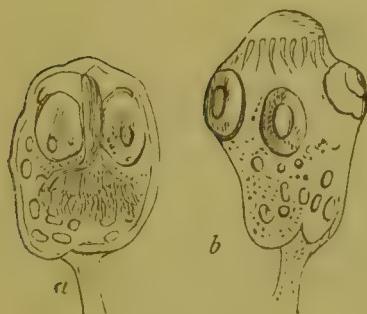


FIG. 41.

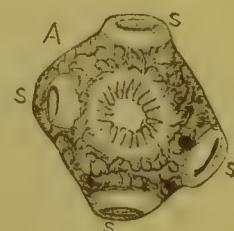


FIG. 42.

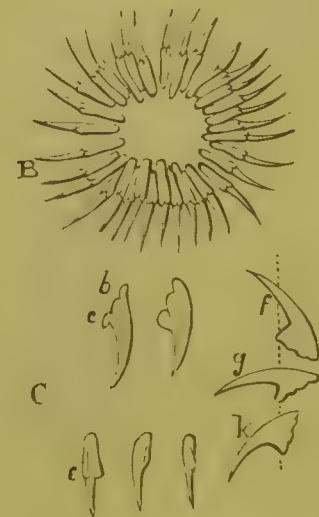


FIG. 43.

FIG. 41.—Two *Echinococci* from a hydatid tumour. The one (a) has the head retracted within the vesicle; the other (b) has the head extruded.

FIG. 42.—(A.) An *Echinococcus* viewed transversely, the head being directed towards the observer. 's, suctorial discs.

FIG. 43.—(B.) The circle of hooklets seen upon its under surface; thirty-four in number, seventeen long and seventeen short. (C.) b, c. Lateral views of the separate hooklets—b, the base; c, the central extremity or bifid process of the base; e, hooklets viewed upon the concave or inferior border; f, g, k, a diagram illustrating the movements and position of the hooklets.

and they become flattened by mutual pressure; each daughter-cyst has precisely the same structure as the mother-sac. Within the larger of them there may be a third generation, and, rarely, a fourth is observed—*grand-daughter-cysts*. 5. When the walls of the sacs are examined carefully, little whitish opaque spots are visible on their inner surface, which are the scolices of the *echinococcus* in various stages of development, usually arranged in groups or clusters, but occasionally single. These may also be free in the fluid, rendering it somewhat opaque. The echinococci are produced within delicate sacs, named *brood-capsules*, and they may be found enclosed in these capsules or free. Each scolex is very minute, measuring from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{5}$ of a line in length, but the length and form vary, according as the head is retracted into the body or extruded. (Fig. 41.) The head (Fig. 42) presents a proboscis, four suckers, with a double circle of characteristic curved hooklets, which are movable and of unequal length (Fig. 43); a constriction separates it from the body, the latter being striated longitudinally and transversely, and presenting posteriorly a depression with a pedicle, by which the animal is fixed to the sac in its early condition. Numerous round and oval calcareous particles are embedded in the tissue.

In most cases there is but a single tumour as above described, but sometimes two or more are found, though one generally predominates over the others. The size varies extremely, and a hydatid growth may attain such dimensions as completely to fill the abdomen, and even to encroach upon the chest. The daughter-cysts usually range from a millet-seed to an egg in size, but subsequent generations are very minute. Originally the shape tends to be spherical. The right lobe of the liver is the most frequent seat of hydatid tumour, but it may occupy any part of the organ, being either deep in its substance or superficial. If the hydatids are numerous, large, or superficial, they necessarily alter more or less the dimensions and form of the liver, giving rise to prominences. The surrounding hepatic tissue is often atrophied and compressed; sometimes the healthy portion becomes hypertrophied. Peritonitis may be excited over the tumour, giving rise to thickening and adhesions.

The events which are liable to happen in the course of hydatid disease are important, and may be summed up as follows:—1. The tumour enlarges, displacing adjoining structures and interfering with their functions, until it finally bursts spontaneously in some direction, or is ruptured by violence, or in some other way. The opening may take place externally through the abdominal or lower thoracic wall; into either pleura or lung, especially the right, which is the most common direction; the pericardium rarely; the peritoneum; the stomach or intestines; the gall-bladder or one of the bile-ducts; the hepatic vein or inferior vena cava. 2. Inflammation and suppuration sometimes occur, either spontaneously from rapid growth; from injury or operation; or from the entrance of bile. 3. If the hydatid is slow in its progress, it not uncommonly undergoes degenerative processes as it advances in age, and these may ultimately bring about a spontaneous cure. The entrance of bile is supposed sometimes to induce this result. The outer capsule becomes then much thickened, firm, irregular, opaque, and ultimately calcified partially or completely. This impedes further growth, and the contained hydatids compress each other, shrivel and dry up, and finally die. The fluid also thickens and becomes opaque; and, in short, fatty and calcareous degeneration take place throughout,

until there only remains a putty-like *débris*, in which shreds of the vesicles and hooklets of the echinococci are embedded, revealing the nature of the mass. Haematoxin crystals are often found in it, as well as usually much cholesterol. A cicatrix-like depression may finally be left. 4. Occasionally cysts are found in which there are no echinococci. The name *acephalocyst* has been applied to this condition, and it has been regarded as an abortive or sterile form of the parasite, in which development is arrested; or as an earlier stage of its growth.

Allusion may be briefly made here to a very rare form of this disease, named *multilocular hydatid-cyst*. The liver is found occupied by a mass, in some cases as large as a child's head or even larger, consisting of a stroma of cellular tissue, usually altered considerably by fatty degeneration, in which are embedded cells or alveoli of various sizes, enclosing a gelatinous substance, in which microscopical examination reveals fragments of the laminated membrane of hydatids, hooklets, or occasionally even perfect scolices, as well as abundant calcareous particles. The centre of this mass is very liable to undergo suppuration, thus altering its characters considerably. This arrangement of the tumour has been attributed to the embryos having been deposited in the lymphatics, blood-vessels, or ducts of the liver; or to the absence or early rupture of the external fibrous cyst, so that the parasites are able to grow and migrate in various directions, and may thus enter the different vessels.

Other organs and tissues are not uncommonly the seat of hydatid cysts along with the liver.

Symptoms.—In general terms the ordinary clinical history of hydatid tumour of the liver may be summed up in the absence of morbid sensations referable to this organ, of any interference with its functions, or of constitutional disturbance; while the liver presents a peculiar form of enlargement. The disease may, however, be latent from first to last. Should the growth attain a great size, a sense of local fulness and tension is often felt; and in rare cases jaundice or signs of portal obstruction arise, in consequence of pressure upon the bile-duets or portal vein, or because these channels become blocked up by hydatids. Neighbouring structures may also be interfered with, especially the diaphragm and respiratory organs. Should the cyst rupture, the consequent symptoms depend on the direction in which this lesion takes place, being in many instances very grave. If the opening takes place externally or into the lungs, characteristic structures may be discharged. The occurrence of suppuration is indicated by the ordinary local and constitutional signs of hepatic abscess.

The *physical signs* of hydatid tumour demand particular attention. 1. The liver is increased in size, and this is generally the first thing which attracts notice. The growth is, as a rule, very chronic and imperceptible in its progress, but finally the tumour may attain enormous dimensions, so as to give rise to a general enlargement of the abdomen, or it may encroach upon the chest, causing the right side to bulge. 2. The form of the liver is altered, as evidenced by palpation and percussion; while there is often an evident tumour in some part, especially the epigastrum or right hypochondrium. Smaller prominences are sometimes felt along the margins or surface of the organ, causing lobulation and irregularity. When a hydatid cyst in the right lobe extends up into the thorax, the upper limit of dulness is said by Frerichs to present a curved line, the maximum of which is in the

scapular region. 3. Any prominent hydatid tumour generally feels quite smooth, and more or less elastic or fluctuating. 4. Hydatid-fremitus is elicited very clearly in some instances, but cannot be detected in the large majority of cases. 5. In any doubtful case it is justifiable to make an exploratory puncture with a small trochar or the aspirateur, and thus to remove some of the fluid, the physical and chemical characters of which are quite peculiar. Perhaps some of the microscopic structures might come away at the same time.

It must be remarked that the signs above described are modified considerably by the degenerative and other changes which are liable to occur in a hydatid-cyst. The outer wall may feel hard and bony. If a case only comes under observation when the abdomen presents a general enlargement, it is by no means easy in many instances, except by the history, to make out where the growth originated.

The *multilocular cyst* is said to be distinguished by being nodulated, hard, and tender; by jaundice, ascites, and enlargement of the spleen being usually present; and by the tendency in the tumour to inflame and suppurate. This variety may run a very rapid course.

V. MALIGNANT DISEASE.

Aetiology.—The liver is one of the most frequent seats of internal cancer. In the large majority of cases it is *secondary*, being rare as a *primary* disease. It is especially frequent after gastric cancer. In some cases the liver is infected from the gall-bladder or ducts, and here gall-stones are not uncommonly present, and are believed to have a causative relation. Hepatic cancer has sometimes been attributed to injury. Most cases are met with between 40 and 60 years of age, the affection being extremely rare before adult life, but it has been met with even in children. In some patients there is a hereditary taint. Hepatic cancer is more common among males, according to general experience, but some writers state that it is more frequent in females, on account of their liability to uterine cancer. It is said to be comparatively uncommon in the tropics.

Anatomical Characters.—Ordinary hepatic cancer assumes the form of distinct *nodules* or *tuberous masses*. There is a wide variation as to number and size, the nodules being small at first, and gradually enlarging until they may ultimately reach the dimensions of a child's head, or even attain a larger size than this. Commonly several growths are found, unequal in size, and by their coalescence considerable tracts of the organ are sometimes involved. Originally the shape is spherical, but when the masses reach the surface they become flattened or even depressed in the centre, so as to present shallow concavities or *umbilications*. As a rule they are not separated from the surrounding tissue by any definite structure, but occasionally a distinct cyst exists around a cancerous mass. Generally the consistence is moderately firm, but it may range from that of a soft, brain-like, semi-fluctuating substance, to that of a hard, cartilaginous tissue, and the amount of cancer-juice which can be expressed will vary accordingly. The colour of a section is in most cases white or yellowish-white, but more or less dotted and streaked with red, on account of the vessels present; it may, however, be extremely vascular and dark-red, resembling "fungus haematoxides."

The liver is usually enlarged in proportion to the number and size of the growths, being often extremely large and heavy, as well as irregular

in shape, which varies much in different cases. The anterior edge of the organ is usually irregular and nodulated. The normal tissues are more or less destroyed and compressed; the vessels and ducts are encroached upon or obliterated; and as a consequence jaundice and signs of obstructed portal circulation are also present. Sometimes thrombosis occurs in the portal branches or trunk. New vessels are developed, originating in the hepatic artery. Some observers describe the cancer as beginning in the centre of the lobules; others in the interlobular tissue. When a mass reaches the surface it excites localized peritonitis, with consequent thickening and adhesion. Neighbouring tissues may be involved by extension; and the lymphatic glands in the portal fissure are often implicated. When cancer has started from the gall-bladder or bile-duct, or has extended from the portal fissure, the growth is most marked in that locality, or may be limited to it.

The growth of hepatic cancer is sometimes extremely rapid, especially when it is of soft consistence. Certain changes are liable to occur during its progress. The vessels of the softer varieties often give way, leading to extravasations of blood into their interior, which subsequently alter in colour, thus giving rise to unusual appearances. Very pulpy accumulations have been known to burst into the peritoneum in rare instances. Degenerative changes are frequently set up in the less rapid forms, in the way of caseation; or of atrophy with contraction, induration, and the formation of a firm cicatrix. A section often presents a reticulated appearance, owing to fatty degeneration having taken place.

When cancer of the liver is *primary*, it may occur in the form of a uniform mass of large size, abruptly outlined from the contiguous liver substance; in scattered nodules, the organ seldom reaching a large size; or as a diffuse infiltration, or a growth confined to the interlobular connective tissue.

With regard to the nature of malignant growths in the liver, the *primary* cancers are said to be *epitheliomata* of the alveolar and trabecular type, the character of the cells varying greatly, and they are sometimes cylindrical. The *secondary* form is determined to a certain extent by the nature of the primary growth, and is usually either an *alveolar* or *cylindrical carcinoma*. It may be melanotic. Colloid is very rare. Spindle-celled sarcoma, cysto-sarcoma, and melano-sarcoma have been occasionally met with in the liver.

Symptoms.—Hepatic cancer is in the great majority of cases characterized by marked local disturbances, but the disease may be latent. At first merely a sense of discomfort and weight is experienced, soon, however, increasing to distinct pain and tenderness, these local sensations frequently becoming very severe, especially if the growth of the cancer is rapid, or if peritonitis is excited. The pain is often lancinating in character, shooting either towards the back or shoulders, or over the abdomen. Jaundice and ascites are also common symptoms, being usually the result of obstruction of the main ducts and vessels, in consequence of pressure exerted upon them by projections from the liver, or by glands in the portal fissure; ascites may, moreover, be associated with chronic peritonitis. Once jaundice sets in, it is usually persistent, and often becomes intense, but it may be temporary from catarrh of the ducts. The spleen is but rarely enlarged. The superficial abdominal veins are sometimes distended. Sir William Jenner has drawn attention to the association of cancerous nodules about the umbilicus with hepatic cancer.

The *physical characters* of the liver usually indicative of cancer are :—
1. Enlargement, frequently very great, rapid in its progress, and chiefly increasing in a downward direction. 2. Alteration in shape and irregularity of outline, nodules or larger masses being felt or sometimes even seen along the surface and margins, which are not uncommonly umbilicated. 3. As a rule considerable firmness and resistance of the projections, though they occasionally have a soft elastic feel, or even yield a sensation of obscure fluctuation. 4. Occasionally friction-fremitus and friction-sound during deep breathing, these signs being chiefly due to peritonitis. It must be remembered that this description does not apply to all cases, and that cancerous livers may be met with which are but little, if at all enlarged, and not irregular in shape.

Digestive derangements are present in most cases of hepatic cancer, and they frequently first attract attention. The cancerous cachexia is usually well-marked, being accompanied with rapid wasting, debility, and anaemia. There may be pyrexia from time to time, which is sometimes considerable when the progress of the disease is rapid. The urine may contain excess of indican. Cancer is in the large majority of cases present in other organs, usually as a primary, rarely as a secondary formation, especially in connection with the alimentary canal.

The *progress* of hepatic cancer is generally very rapid, and the disease is rarely prolonged beyond a year.

VI. CIRRHOSIS OF THE LIVER.

Etiology and Pathology.—Cirrhotic changes in the liver occur under several conditions, which will be presently noted. As an independent disease two distinct forms of cirrhosis are now commonly recognized, namely, the *atrophic* and the *hypertrophic*, but there is no absolute distinction between them. *Atrophic cirrhosis*, which is the ordinary form, is usually regarded as resulting from a *chronic interstitial inflammation*, extending into the minutest portal canals, and leading to proliferation of cellular tissue between the lobules; or to the formation of an exudation, which undergoes organization and then contracts, with consequent pressure upon and obliteration of the vessels, and atrophy of the secreting elements. Some authorities have attributed cirrhosis to a *constitutional diathesis*, characterized by the formation of a fibroid tissue in different organs and structures of the body, of which the morbid change in the liver constitutes but a local development; while still others have regarded the disease as commencing in *degeneration and destruction of the secreting cells*, the ducts, vessels, and connective tissue remaining, this process being followed or not by proliferation of the last-mentioned tissue. The important *exciting cause* of ordinary cirrhosis is *abuse of alcohol*, and especially habitual indulgence in ardent spirits on an empty stomach—*alcoholic cirrhosis*—hence the common name *gin-drinker's liver*. The complaint, however, is certainly occasionally met with where there is no history of intemperance, and it has then been attributed to the influence of malaria or prolonged heat; to the abuse of hot condiments and various articles of diet; to the circulation of ptomaines, alkaloids, or other products of faulty digestion; or to the extension of a localized peritoneal inflammation. The complaint is chiefly met with between 30 and 50 years of age, being rare in youth, and not common in advanced life. It is now a familiar fact, however, that cirrhosis of the liver may be met with even in young children. Such cases may be due to alcohol

or syphilis, but when these causes cannot be traced, it has been suggested that the condition may be the result of an acute interstitial hepatitis, associated with scarlatina or other acute infectious disease. Males suffer more frequently from cirrhosis than females; and also those persons who, from their occupation or in any other way, are more exposed to the ordinary exciting cause of the disease.

With regard to *hypertrophic cirrhosis*, it has been affirmed that there is no distinct ætiological relation between this complaint and abuse of alcohol. The cases which have come under my notice, however, have been clearly traceable to this cause.

Anatomical Characters.—In the advanced stage of *atrophic cirrhosis* the morbid appearances are very characteristic. The liver is greatly contracted, wasted, and diminished in weight, being sometimes reduced even to $\frac{2}{3}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ the normal, the left lobe and edge being especially affected, the latter being often merely a thin fibrous rim. At the same time the organ is heavy in proportion to its size. The general form is frequently somewhat rounded. The surface is very pale, and is covered more or less with roundish prominences, varying in size from minute granules to projections or knobs measuring $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch or even more in diameter, like hob-nails—hence the names *granular* and *hobnailed liver*. They may be tolerably uniform in size, but are more commonly unequal. Local puckering or depressions are also often observed. The capsule is thickened, opaque, and inseparable; while local peritoneal adhesions to the diaphragm and other structures, as well as fibrous thickenings, are almost constant. The consistence is remarkably dense, firm, tough, and leathery as a rule, which is best realized on making a section. This exhibits the same granular appearance as the surface, and sometimes in a much more marked degree. The colour is generally a mixture of dirty-white or greyish and yellow; the former being arranged in lines or bands of different widths, sometimes extending over considerable tracts; the latter, which varies in exact tint, being in some specimens bright yellow, in others almost brownish, corresponding to the granulations. The name *cirrhosis* is derived from this yellow appearance. In extreme cases, however, but little of this colour is evident.

The intimate changes in structure, and the microscopical appearances in cirrhosis of the liver must now be considered. The *white tissue* is generally supposed to be made up mainly either of fully-developed fibrous tissue; or of young connective-tissue elements or embryonic tissue in process of development, and chiefly resulting from proliferation. It has, however, been described as consisting in some instances of the remains of the vessels, ducts, and other tissues which have not undergone destruction. The fibrous tissue infiltrates the liver, occupying chiefly the capsule of Glisson surrounding the smaller branches of the portal vein, and the vaginal veins, and extending thence more or less into the interlobular spaces. Generally this material presents numerous new vessels running through it, which are stated by Frérichs to be derived from the hepatic artery; and although they have some communication with the portal vein, they seem to be chiefly intended for the nutrition of the liver and the secretion of bile. The *yellow nodules* correspond to lobules or groups of lobules which have not yet completely disappeared. The colour is chiefly due to stasis of bile, owing to pressure upon the minute ducts; it partly results, however, from fatty degeneration of the cells. A large proportion of these cells have become wholly destroyed, and most of those which remain are

greatly altered, appearing shrunken or fatty, or containing pigment-granules. The degeneration begins at the circumference of the lobules, and extends towards their interior. The fibroid change rarely involves the hepatic lobules themselves, but the changes in them are due to the gradual compression to which they are exposed by the contracting tissue. The vessels present important changes. Many of the smaller branches of the portal vein are compressed or obliterated, and its capillaries are destroyed, so that injection of them from the main trunk is impossible. This trunk and the larger branches are often dilated, and may be occupied by thrombi. Sometimes a considerable branch of the vein is compressed. The hepatic artery is also commonly dilated, and new capillaries form in the fibrous tissue; frequently black pigment is found in its branches. The chief divisions of the hepatic vein are not altered, but many of its capillary tributaries are obliterated, and the communications between this vessel and the portal system are more or less destroyed. The remaining capillaries are commonly in a state of fatty degeneration.

The degree to which the changes just described are observed necessarily differs considerably according to the stage of the disease. In the earliest period no doubt the liver is enlarged, and it may continue so for a long time. At this time the granular appearance is absent or but slightly marked; while the entire organ is congested, and is described as being occupied by a succulent, vascular, greyish material, consisting of young connective-tissue elements.

In some instances a liver which is the seat of atrophic cirrhosis is actually enlarged, owing to the co-existence of fatty or lardaceous disease. Indeed a form of *fatty cirrhosis* is described by some writers, which is smooth or but slightly granular, anaemic, yellowish-white, firm, and resistant to the knife, the microscope showing a great increase of connective-tissue. It is chiefly met with in beer-drinkers.

Hypertrophic cirrhosis presents different characters from those of the atrophic form. The liver is enlarged throughout, and may reach twice or three times its natural size, being also much increased in weight. It retains its normal shape and outline, and is tolerably smooth, but may be more or less irregular or somewhat hobnailed. The organ is very dense. On section it is seen that either embryonic tissue or fibroid tissue infiltrates it in a diffused manner. In some parts only dense fibrous tissue may be seen; in others remnants of the hepatic parenchyma are visible, sometimes considerable, scattered irregularly, and of a colour varying from orange-yellow to green. Hypertrophic cirrhosis is said to differ from the atrophic form in that the change begins, not in the blood-vessels, but in connection with the interlobular branches of the bile-ducts, and the branches occupying the peripheral parts of the lobules, from which it extends, and only involves the portal vessels at a late period; it also tends to implicate the lobules themselves. The bile-ducts become greatly dilated, and their epithelium increases to an extent sufficient to block up the smaller ducts. The hepatic cells become atrophied, fatty, and more or less filled with bile-pigment.

The effects of cirrhosis outside the liver are highly important, and are visible on *post-mortem* examination, being mainly those already mentioned as resulting from obstruction of the portal circulation. Considerable anastomoses form in course of time between the hemorrhoidal veins; and also between the superficial branches of the portal vein in

the liver and the veins of the diaphragm and abdominal walls, through peritoneal adhesions, and along the suspensory ligament.

Changes similar to those observed in cirrhosis of the liver are not infrequently met with in other structures at the same time.

A brief account will now be given of certain other forms of *cirrhosis* or *chronic atrophy* of the liver:—

1. As the result of long-continued *mechanical congestion from heart-disease*, the liver contracts and presents characters much resembling those of true cirrhosis, but there is an important difference, and the atrophy is rarely so marked as in the latter disease. The changes are due to pressure exerted by the distended tributaries of the hepatic vein upon the contiguous cells, causing their degeneration; hence the *centre* of the lobules becomes first wasted and depressed, while the circumference remains and forms granulations. Ultimately extensive depressions are produced, and more or less proliferation of connective tissue occurs. Attacks of *chronic peri-hepatitis* are also common, which increase the tendency towards atrophy of the organ.

2. Dr. Murchison described a form of *granular atrophy*, generally independent of intemperance, in which the fibrous tissue is not increased, and the liver is softer than in health.

3. Atrophy of the liver may result from *adhesive pylonephritis*, in consequence of which the trunk or some of the branches of the portal vein are obliterated. Cicatricial retractions are observed on the surface, with corresponding induration.

4. Another form of contracted liver is that due to chronic or repeated attacks of *peri-hepatitis*, which leads to thickening of the capsule, or causes pressure upon the vessels, while fibrous bands pass into the interior, but there is no granular appearance.

5. Syphilis may lead to atrophy of the liver, either by exciting *peri-hepatitis* or simple *interstitial hepatitis*; or as the result of changes in *gummatoous deposits*. This variety will be specially described.

6. The last variety is named *red atrophy* by Rokitansky, or *chronic atrophy* by Frerichs. It may be associated with the deposit of pigment in the minute vessels of the liver, especially after prolonged or repeated attacks of malarial fever; or it sometimes follows ulceration affecting the alimentary canal. The entire organ is wasted, but the condition differs from ordinary cirrhosis in the absence of any granulations on the surface; in a section being dark-brown or bluish-red and homogeneous, there being little or no indication of lobules; and in the consistence being less firm. The hepatic cells are often diminished in size, and filled with brown pigment-gramules. The ramifications of the portal vein are destroyed, its branches ending in caecal club-shaped extremities.

Symptoms.—In all the different forms of contracted liver just described, the chief diagnostic clinical indications are derived from the evidences of interference with the portal circulation; and from the signs afforded on *physical examination*. There are, however, additional symptoms resulting from derangement of the secretory function of the liver; and others evidencing more or less marked constitutional disturbance.

In the *early stage* of *atrophic cirrhosis* it is customary to describe a train of symptoms which set in insidiously as a rule, but in reality they are merely those of congestion of the liver with gastro-enteric disorder, such as local discomfort or uneasiness; dyspeptic disturbances; sickness or retching, especially in the morning; and constipation or diarrhoea.

Although it might be suspected that cirrhosis was being set up, should such symptoms arise in association with abuse of alcohol, there is nothing characteristic about them. Occasionally the disease begins with severe local symptoms, indicating acute hepatic congestion, catarrh of the bile-ducts, and gastro-enteritis, accompanied with pyrexia. For a time there are *physical signs* of enlargement of the liver. As the case advances more or less of the consequences of *portal obstruction* are observed, namely, ascites, often extreme in amount; enlargement of the superficial veins of the upper part of the abdomen, especially on the right side; gastro-enteric congestion and catarrh; occasionally haemorrhage from the stomach or intestines; haemorrhoids; and enlargement of the spleen. Digestive disturbances are usually prominent, being due both to the state of the alimentary canal, and to deficiency or unhealthy quality of the bile. Although painful sensations over the hepatic region are sometimes present in the early stages, when the disease is advanced there is rarely much uneasiness, if any; there may be local tenderness, which is chiefly due to peritonitis or peri-hepatitis. Jaundice also is but seldom a prominent symptom, being often entirely absent, but more or less yellow discolouration is observed in many cases from time to time, especially at the early period, mainly due to hepatic congestion, catarrh of the ducts, or pressure of enlarged glands in the portal fissure upon the main duct. Extreme jaundice occasionally results from peri-hepatitis; or it appears towards the termination of a case of cirrhosis, where there is no obstruction. The stools almost always contain more or less bile.

Hypertrophic cirrhosis is said to differ clinically from the atrophic form in that jaundice is an early and marked symptom, often becoming very intense, and being persistent, though variable in degree; while the signs of portal obstruction are either absent, or only come on at a late period, and even then the ascites is slight. Cerebral and other toxæmic symptoms are also prominent. The spleen is generally enlarged. In my experience of cases of hypertrophic cirrhosis the distinctions just mentioned have been by-no-means constant, but they are in some instances well-marked.

Physical signs.—The signs of *atrophic* cirrhosis are:—1. Diminution in area of hepatic dulness, in proportion to the degree of contraction. 2. Granulation or nodulation of the surface of the liver, with a feeling of hardness; in short, the tactile characters described under the morbid anatomy. Sometimes the edge of the liver can be grasped between the thumb and fingers, and the changes thus readily recognized. 3. Occasionally friction-sound on deep respiration. Ascites often obscures the examination, but under such circumstances the organ can frequently be easily felt after paracentesis; or even by suddenly "dipping" down upon it. It must be remembered that in some instances the liver is not materially altered in dimensions, or that it may even be somewhat increased in size, but the nodulated surface can then generally be readily recognized. In the *hypertrophic* form of cirrhosis the liver is found by palpation and percussion to be more or less enlarged, sometimes enormously; regular in form, with a sharp anterior margin; and very hard.

The *constitutional* symptoms are frequently very marked in advanced cases of cirrhosis, there being considerable emaciation and weakness; a peculiar sallow, earthy complexion, often accompanied with enlargement of the facial venules; a dry harsh skin; and general flabbiness of tissues. Purpuric spots and blotches on the skin are sometimes

visible, and there may be extensive ecchymoses ; or haemorrhages from mucous surfaces may take place. The urine often yields sediments of uric acid and urates, and uroerythrin is present in some cases.

Course and Terminations.—The progress of cirrhosis is generally very chronic, but it may run a tolerably rapid course from the first appearance of distinctive symptoms. Sometimes, even after serious symptoms have appeared, great improvement may take place, so that the patient may feel as if almost or quite restored to health, and may live for many years if he exercises proper care. In most cases, however, cirrhosis leads to a fatal issue. The chief modes of death are from gradual asthenia and exhaustion ; jaundice with typhoid and cerebral symptoms ; lung-complications ; acute peritonitis ; or haemorrhage from the alimentary canal. It must be remembered that the more serious of these events are liable to occur at any time.

The other forms of contracted liver only differ clinically from atrophic cirrhosis in the circumstances under which they arise ; and in the *physical characters* presented by the liver on palpation, if the organ can be felt. In the variety due to *peri-hepatitis*, considerable pain and tenderness are generally complained of from time to time.

VII. SYPHILITIC DISEASE.

The morbid conditions of the liver which may result from syphilis are :—1. *Albuminoid disease*. 2. *Peri-hepatitis* and its consequences. 3. *Simple interstitial hepatitis*, leading to general atrophy and induration. 4. *Gummatous hepatitis*, in which syphilitic gummata are formed more or less extensively, undergoing degenerative changes, and becoming surrounded by a dense fibroid tissue, from which processes extend towards the surface of the organ in various directions. These growths are rounded or irregular in form ; usually numerous, and often grouped in clusters ; of variable size, from a pin's head to a chestnut ; opaque and buff-coloured ; and very tough. They may soften in the centre, or become calcified or absorbed. The liver-tissue is more or less extensively destroyed ; and deep cicatrical depressions or furrows are seen on the surface of the organ, giving rise to a lobulated appearance. During life the characters of the liver may often be determined by *physical examination*, in the gummatous form the organ becoming enlarged slowly, until it may ultimately reach an enormous size ; at the same time being irregular in form. Pain is frequently experienced, with tenderness ; and sometimes signs of obstruction of the bile-ducts and portal vein appear. There may be such marked wasting accompanied with cachectic symptoms that, taken with a much enlarged and nodular liver, cancer may be simulated. The progress is usually very chronic.

VIII. MISCELLANEOUS AFFECTIONS.

It will suffice to mention the following morbid conditions which may affect the liver :—1. **TUBERCULOSIS.**—Tubercle is usually observed in the liver only in connection with general *acute miliary tuberculosis*. Occasionally it is secondary to chronic tubercular disease in other parts, and is accompanied with cirrhotic changes. The tubercle may break down and form small cavities. Clinically the disease cannot be recognized with any certainty. The liver is usually enlarged. 2. **RICKETY LIVER.**—Enlargement of the liver associated with rickets has been sufficiently

discussed under that disease. 3. NEW GROWTHS.—In addition to growths in the liver already discussed, the following may be met with:—Non-parasitic cysts, single or multiple; dermoid cysts; erectile tumour or angioma; lymphatic formations; adenoma, fibroma, myxoma, or glioma. These cannot be detected during life.

IX. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT OF CHRONIC HEPATIC AFFECTIONS.

I. DIAGNOSIS.—The main factors which assist in the diagnosis of chronic hepatic diseases, both from other affections and from each other, are as follows:—1. The *general history* of the patient may reveal some known cause of certain liver-complaints, especially abuse of alcohol; over-eating, with deficient exercise and general luxurious habits; prolonged residence in tropical climates or in malarial districts; the previous occurrence of dysentery or ague; or syphilitic infection. *Family history* may afford some aid in diagnosis, especially if indicating a cancerous taint; while in some cases the *age* and *sex* of the patient also deserve consideration. 2. The *constitutional condition* is highly important. Thus there may be some disease with which lardaceous or fatty liver is likely to be associated; or signs of the cancerous cachexia, of syphilis, or of cirrhosis may be evident. On the other hand, the absence of any constitutional disorder is sometimes serviceable in diagnosis. 3. The presence or absence of *symptoms* referable to the *hepatic system*, as well as their nature, intensity, and the history of their progress, deserve careful attention, especially as regards pain and tenderness; jaundice; and ascites or other evidences of portal obstruction. 4. *Physical examination* is, of course, of essential value. This will be presently more fully alluded to. 5. The *state of other organs* may afford much aid in diagnosis, especially by revealing local manifestations of some constitutional disease, for instance, cancer of the stomach, or waxy kidney; or of some morbid condition with which hepatic changes are likely to be associated, especially ulceration in some part of the alimentary canal, gastro-enteric catarrh, or disease of the heart obstructing the circulation. 6. The *rapidity of the progress* of the case up to the time when it is first seen; its subsequent *course*; and the results of *treatment*, are to be taken into account in doubtful cases.

Physical examination demands special attention, particularly in detecting and making out the characters of enlargements or contractions of the liver; and of enlargements of the gall-bladder. For differential diagnosis of *hepatic enlargements* the following points must be noted, and in the description of each individual disease an endeavour has been made to arrange the characters in the same order:—*a*. The extent, direction, and rapidity of growth. *b*. Whether the liver is normal in shape and outline; or if it presents prominent outgrowths or irregularities. *c*. The conditions of the surface and margins, as to smoothness, nodulation, etc. *d*. The degree of resistance and other sensations afforded by the liver generally, as well as by any special prominences, including fluctuation and hydatid-fremitus. *e*. Whether there is any evidence of local peritonitis, indicated by friction-fremitus or sound, or by adhesion of the liver with the abdominal wall. *f*. Now and then it is requisite to use the exploratory trochar or aspirateur for diagnostic purposes. The characters to be observed in connection with *contractions*

of the liver, and abnormal conditions of the *gall-bladder*, have been sufficiently indicated in their respective descriptions. It is necessary to add with regard to the gall-bladder, that it should always be noticed whether this is altered alone or along with the liver, and *vice versâ*.

It may be useful to enumerate here the causes of *enlarged liver*. The ordinary forms are due to:—1. Congestion, especially mechanical. 2. Accumulation of bile and its consequences. 3. Albuminoid disease. 4. Fatty infiltration. 5. Hydatid disease. 6. Malignant or other growths. 7. Acute hepatitis, especially when ending in suppuration. 8. Cirrhosis in its early stage: and the hypertrophic form. As rare causes may be mentioned:—9. Simple hypertrophy. 10. Syphilitic gummatous hepatitis. 11. Tubercular disease. 12. Lymphatic formations. 13. A peculiar enlargement associated with vitiligoidea. 14. Rickets. It must be remembered that the liver may be enlarged by a combination of certain of the conditions just mentioned.

The chief practical difficulties in arriving at a diagnosis which have come under my notice are as follows:—1. Hepatic enlargement, and sometimes even changes in shape and other characters of the liver, may be simulated by the normally large size of the organ in children; congenital malformation; the effects of pressure by a rickety or otherwise deformed thorax, or as the result of tight-lacing; depression by various morbid conditions within the chest, especially pleuritic effusion, and tumours or other causes of downward displacement, which may be acute; or elevation towards the chest by abnormal conditions within the abdomen. On the other hand, morbid changes affecting the liver may be obscured by distension of the stomach or colon with gas, which may even give rise to signs simulating atrophy of the organ. The liver is also occasionally displaced in such a way that its edge comes directly forwards, so that atrophy is simulated. In rare instances this organ is very movable, being felt in the lower part of the abdomen, and its position being altered by manipulation and change of posture. 2. Morbid states of other structures often give rise to signs of hepatic mischief; or, on the contrary, they may put these in the background. Thus, enlargement of the liver may be simulated by a rigid and contracted state of the right rectus abdominis muscle; inflammation and suppuration in the abdominal walls; accumulation of faeces in the colon; or by a tumour in connection with the right kidney, supra-renal capsule, or peritoneum, especially the great omentum. Again, a neighbouring disease, particularly scirrhus of the head of the pancreas, often interferes with the escape of bile from the liver, and thus leads to its enlargement, accompanied with jaundice. The co-existence of ascites, or of chronic peritonitis with effusion, frequently renders physical examination unsatisfactory. The use of the aspirateur is then most serviceable, in order to remove the fluid; and also the plan of making sudden pressure over the liver. Not uncommonly disease of the liver is obscured by symptoms referable to a morbid state of some other organ, for example, cancer of the stomach: and it often itself gives rise to serious disturbance of the alimentary canal. Again, the liver is often affected along with other organs and structures in the abdomen, particularly in cases of cancer, and then it is frequently impossible to make out distinctly what parts are actually involved. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish between an enlarged liver or hepatic tumour and pleuritic effusion or a tumour in the chest; and these conditions may exist together.

3. Sometimes the liver becomes so enormous, especially as the result of hydatid disease, that it fills the abdomen, and hence it becomes impossible to determine exactly where the enlargement commenced. In such cases the history of its growth, as regards the region from which it started; and perhaps the greater prominence of the enlargement over the hepatic region, may clear up the difficulty. 4. In some instances the liver is the seat of two or more distinct morbid conditions, the signs being modified accordingly, such as cirrhosis with fatty or albuminoid disease. 5. With regard to individual diseases of this organ, it may be mentioned that *hydatid tumour* is liable to be confounded with a distended gall-bladder; soft cancer; right pleuritic effusion; hepatic abscess which has become chronic; aneurism; cystic disease of the kidney; hydatids outside the liver; or peritoneal effusion limited by adhesions. *Cancer* may be simulated by syphilitic disease; waxy liver, especially if combined with cirrhosis, or if some parts of the liver are more affected than others, so as to give rise to local projections; other forms of cirrhosis attended with enlargement; or multilocular hydatid disease.

It will be convenient to make a few remarks here with regard to *pain* referred to the hepatic region. It must not be rashly concluded that this is connected with the liver. It may be associated with painful affections of the superficial structures, either muscular or neuralgic; gastric and duodenal disorders, either functional or organic; intestinal colic; accumulation of faeces in the colon; aneurismal, pancreatic, and other tumours pressing on the nerves; the passage of a renal calculus; pleurisy; the pain met with in hypochondriasis; or local peritonitis. Pain associated with gall-stones will be separately dealt with later on. Simple *hepatalgia* is difficult to make out positively.

II. PROGNOSIS.—The prognosis in the case of a chronic hepatic disease depends mainly upon the nature of the complaint; the degree to which the functions of the liver are interfered with, the escape of its secretion prevented, or its circulation impeded; the constitutional condition of the patient; the state of other organs; the possibility of removing any causes which may be keeping up the disease; and the results of treatment. *Fatty* and *lardaceous* disease are very slow in their progress, and in many cases do not seem to hasten the fatal issue materially, though they are but little amenable to treatment. *Cancer* is necessarily fatal, and is frequently very rapid in its course, especially when of the softer kind. *Hydatid disease* is markedly chronic, and usually unattended with danger; while it may be cured in many cases by appropriate treatment. It occasionally proves serious in consequence of the cyst rupturing, or becoming inflamed and suppurating; or through some of its contents being discharged into the bile-ducts, blocking them up. *Syphilitic liver* can frequently be much improved by early and suitable treatment. The different forms of *contracted liver* are generally serious as regards their ultimate prognosis, though usually slow in their progress. I desire, however, again to draw attention to the fact, that in cases of cirrhosis, if the ascites can be permanently got rid of, a result which may not uncommonly be attained, the patient may be restored to comparatively good health, and may live for many years, taking part in the ordinary avocations of daily life, even in cases which appear to be almost hopeless. It must be remembered that serious and sometimes rapidly fatal haemorrhage from the alimentary canal is liable to occur in cirrhosis of the liver.

III. TREATMENT.—The management of cases of chronic hepatic diseases is based upon very simple and obvious principles.

1. The *diet* needs careful supervision. It often has to be adapted to some constitutional condition, and therefore of a nutritious character, containing abundant protein elements; but it should always be as simple and easily digested as possible, and particular caution is requisite in the use of alcohol or hot condiments, of fatty, amylaceous, and saccharine substances, and of rich articles of diet generally. In certain conditions it is important to limit the consumption of nitrogenous elements. In many cases it is imperative to forbid all alcoholic stimulants, or only to allow light wines, and if spirits are ever needed, they should be given much diluted, and in restricted quantities. Anyone who is accustomed to indulge in excess of alcohol, and particularly in ardent spirits, must be impressed with the absolute necessity of relinquishing this habit. It is desirable to recommend the patient to take an abundance of salt with food. Sipping fluids is said to increase the formation of bile, and also to raise the pressure under which it is secreted.

2. *Hygienic management* is of much consequence in some cases of hepatic disease. In addition to the ordinary measures for improving the general health, the points which claim special notice are removal from a tropical climate, or from a malarial district; cessation of sedentary and luxurious habits generally, a sufficient amount of exercise in the open air being taken daily; and the maintenance of free cutaneous excretion, by the aid of baths. The movements of the diaphragm, especially in forced respiration, aid in the expulsion of bile from the liver, hence brisk exercise, as in riding, rowing, climbing, lawn-tennis, etc., is particularly useful in certain hepatic affections. Massage is of decided service in some cases.

3. Treatment directed against some *constitutional condition* often proves highly serviceable, and it may have a direct effect upon the liver, which applies particularly to *fatty*, *lardaceous*, and *syphilitic* disease. General *tonic* treatment, as well as the use of remedies for improving the quality of the blood, are beneficial in many cases, such as the various preparations of iron, strychnine or *nux vomica*, or mineral acids with vegetable bitters. Of course mercury and iodide of potassium are the remedies indicated for syphilitic disease.

4. The employment of agents acting more especially upon the hepatic apparatus, particularly *cholagogues*, must be guided by the circumstances of each case, but in many organic affections of the liver they are not required, and it is a great mistake to administer these agents simply because this organ happens to be diseased. On the other hand, in suitable cases they may be of much value, when judiciously given. Mercurial preparations are still much employed, both in functional disorders and actual diseases of the hepatic apparatus, and not uncommonly with decided advantage. The best plan of administering mercury, in the case of an adult, is to give occasionally a tolerably full dose of calomel or blue-pill, either alone, or combined with the compound rhubarb or colocynth pill and extract of henbane. A combination of calomel and extract of conium has also been found very useful. For children grey powder answers best. It is certainly injurious to fall into the habit of constantly taking these medicines. A dose of resin of *podophyllum* now and then is in many cases very serviceable. A combination of nitro-muriatic acid with extract of *taraxacum* enjoys considerable repute, especially in the treatment of

congestion of the liver, and of the earlier stages of cirrhosis. Sir Ranald Martin recommended the nitro-muriatic acid bath ($\frac{5}{6}$ of strong nitric, and $\frac{5}{6}$ ij of hydrochloric acid to a gallon of water at 90° to 98° F.), in which the feet are placed, and then the inside of the upper and lower extremities, as well as the abdomen, are sponged over freely. This bath seems to be of much benefit to those who come from tropical climates, suffering from disordered liver. Rutherford found euonymin and iridin very efficient remedies in the treatment of "biliaryness" and functional hepatic derangement. Chloride of ammonium is a remedy in much repute in the treatment of certain chronic hepatic affections, especially those which have originated in tropical climates.

5. Symptoms referable to the *alimentary canal* commonly call for treatment in connection with liver-diseases, such as those due to gastric or enteric catarrh, constipation, flatulence, or haemorrhage; or there may be co-existing organic disease affecting the stomach or intestines, such as cancer. These conditions must be treated by the usual remedies, especially by alkalies and their carbonates, citrates, tartrates, or other vegetable salts; different bitter infusions or tinctures; *saline aperients*; and *saline mineral waters*, either English or Continental. It is very desirable to keep the bowels acting as regularly as possible, though the frequent use of strong purgatives must be avoided. It is often a good plan to combine an aperient with a hepatic stimulant when this has no such action, or to administer one subsequently, in order to expel the bile formed. Should there be haemorrhoids, confection of senna or of sulphur are valuable aperients.

6. The two prominent symptoms so frequently requiring treatment in liver-affections, namely, *jaundice* and *ascites*, have already been fully considered. I must, however, again insist upon the importance of early and repeated removal of the fluid by paracentesis, in many cases of ascites associated with cirrhosis, with the object of curing this condition.

7. *Local applications* are often of service in chronic hepatic affections, especially to relieve pain and congestion. They include chiefly dry heat; poultices and fomentations, to which *anodynés* may be added; sinapisms; anodyne plasters; dry-cupping; or the removal of a little blood by leeches or cupping. Dr. George Harley would advocate hepatic phlebotomy, or puncturing the liver capsule, in certain cases.

8. It is desirable to look to the condition of *other organs*, and treat them if required, particularly the heart, a diseased state of which is often the immediate cause of hepatic symptoms. The kidneys also demand special attention.

9. The treatment of *hydatid tumour* requires separate consideration. For the cure of this complaint operative interference is needed, no known drug having any influence upon the parasite, and a spontaneous cure being extremely rare. It is only, however, when the growth attains some size, and becomes a source of trouble, that such a method of treatment is indicated, though it should not be delayed for too long a period. There is much difference of opinion as to the most efficient plan of operation. The principal methods advocated are:—1. Evacuation of the fluid by the aspirateur, or by means of a trochar and cannula. 2. Puncture and subsequent injection of the cyst with some irritating liquid, such as bile or tincture of iodine, with the view of exciting inflammation. 3. Removal of the contents through a large incision. 4. Gradual opening of the cyst, by the repeated application of

caustic potash to the abdominal wall, over the most prominent part of the tumour. This plan has been adopted with the view of causing adhesions to form with the abdominal wall, and thus preventing the escape of fluid into the peritoneum; and it has also been resorted to for the same object previous to puncture with the trochar. 5. Acupuncture and electrolysis, the tumour being punctured with needles, and a series of electric shocks transmitted through it. Some authorities assert that all that is necessary is to evacuate the fluid, and then the parasite will die. Others consider that it is requisite to excite inflammation. The balance of evidence seems to be certainly in favour of the more simple methods. Some recommend the employment of a very small trochar, others of a large one; again, there is a difference of opinion as to whether it is necessary to remove the whole of the fluid or not, some even using an exhausting syringe to draw this off. Murchison advocated the employment of a very fine trochar, and advised that the cannula should be removed before the whole of the fluid has been drawn off, or as soon as it ceases to flow in a full stream, first passing a wire through the tube to ascertain that it is not stopped up by a hydatid vesicle. The object of this plan is to prevent the entrance of air, which is one of the main dangers, as it tends to set up suppuration. Another danger is the escape of fluid into the peritoneum; and in order to prevent this mishap, pressure should be made over the punctured portion of the abdomen during the removal of the cannula. The opening should be made over the most prominent part of the tumour. The administration of chloroform is not advisable, but local anaesthesia may be induced. After the operation the opening is to be closed with lint steeped in collodion, over which a compress and bandage should be applied. Absolute rest is necessary for two or three days; and an opiate should be given at once, and repeated if necessary. The fluid may collect again, and it may be requisite to repeat the operation. Murchison, however, cautions against doing this too soon, as the enlargement may be due to inflammatory effusion. In cases which are ultimately successful, a considerable degree of fulness may remain for some months. Should the tumour be very large, its walls are likely to be thicker and less elastic, and then it appears desirable to use a large trochar. A free incision is rarely indicated except when suppuration has taken place: the whole of the contents of the hydatid tumour being then evacuated. It is also recommended to use a large trochar under such circumstances, and to leave an elastic tube in, the cyst being washed out with carbolic acid solution or other antiseptic. The different events which may happen in connection with hydatid tumour must be treated on ordinary principles.

In those countries where hydatid disease is prevalent, *prophylactic* measures are necessary, namely, to prevent dogs from feeding on the offal of sheep; to exclude them from slaughter-houses; to give them meat thoroughly boiled; to destroy their excreta which contain tape-worms; and to physic them periodically (Murchison).

CHAPTER LII.

AFFECTIONS OF THE GALL-BLADDER.

General Description.—The morbid conditions to which the gall-bladder is liable need only be briefly discussed. Most of them cause enlargement of the organ, and it is important to be able to recognize the distinctive clinical characters of each form of enlargement.

1. DISTENSION WITH BILE.—When anything obstructs the common bile-duct, such as a gall-stone, the gall-bladder becomes filled with bile, and may attain enormous dimensions. There will then be the usual signs of obstructive jaundice, with enlargement of the liver; while the gall-bladder is perceptible as a fluctuating tumour, sometimes reaching nearly to the iliac crest, and being generally somewhat tender.

2. ACUTE INFLAMMATION AND SUPPURATION.—The mucous membrane of the gall-bladder is liable to simple catarrh, or to croupous or diphtheritic inflammation, like other mucous surfaces; but the most important form of *acute* inflammation is that which is attended with the formation of pus in its interior, which particularly results from irritation of its mucous membrane by gall-stones, or from obstruction of the cystic duct by these bodies. The condition is clinically indicated by a very painful and tender fluctuating enlargement of the gall-bladder, which may ultimately assume the characters of an abscess, or may even burst; accompanied with marked rigors and pyrexia, the latter tending to become of a hectic type. The inflammation is often preceded by signs of gall-stones; but there is neither jaundice nor hepatic enlargement as a rule.

3. CHRONIC INFLAMMATION—HYDROPS VESICÆ FELLEÆ—DROPSY OF THE GALL-BLADDER.—If the cystic duct is obstructed for a long period, the gall-bladder may become gradually dilated, owing to the accumulation of a clear, serous or synovial-like fluid, the product of unhealthy secretion from the mucous surface, probably partly the result of chronic catarrh; while its walls become much thinned and atrophied. The organ is more or less distended, and often attains an extreme size; but there is little or no pain or fever; while jaundice is absent; and the liver is not enlarged. Occasionally the course of events is different. The liquid portion of the contents of the gall-bladder becomes absorbed, leaving an inspissated substance, in which calcareous salts are deposited; the walls undergo thickening and contraction from chronic inflammation; and ultimately a firm puckered mass is left, enclosing a chalky pulp.

4. ACCUMULATION OF GALL-STONES.—Gall-stones are often present in the gall-bladder, without affording any clinical evidence of their existence. In some instances, however, and especially when they are very numerous and large, they cause local uneasy or painful sensations, which are increased after food, or after much exertion or jolting; as well as reflex disturbance of the stomach and other parts; and sometimes much general discomfort and depression. Occasionally also they give rise to

severe symptoms from time to time, by attempting to enter the cystic duct, and subsequently falling back into the gall-bladder. They may further excite inflammation or ulceration of the mucous surface, the latter ending sometimes in perforation, or giving rise to pyæmia. In rare instances such a number of calculi collect, that they form a tumour, even of considerable size, having the general characters of an enlarged gall-bladder, as regards position, shape, and mobility, but presenting the following distinctive characters:—*a.* The tumour feels hard and sometimes nodulated. *b.* On palpation a peculiar sensation is experienced, owing to the rubbing together of the calculi, compared to that produced by grasping a bag containing nuts or pebbles. *c.* A corresponding sound may be heard on auscultation; and occasionally loud rattling is perceptible on shaking or moving the patient. Now and then local peritonitis is excited in cases of this kind, so that the gall-bladder becomes adherent and fixed. When a tumour due to gall-stones exists, there are necessarily more marked subjective sensations, such as weight and uneasiness, especially on moving from side to side. The progress of these cases, as well as the growth of the enlargement, is very slow and gradual.

5 CANCER.—The signs of this rare disease of the gall-bladder are:—
a. Lancinating pains, with much tenderness, in the region of the gall-bladder. *b.* A tumour, having more or less of the characters of enlarged gall-bladder, but usually feeling firm, resistant, irregular and nodulated, without the peculiar sensation of gall-stones; being adherent and fixed; and growing rapidly. There are always evidences of cancer in other parts; with well-marked cancerous cachexia. The liver may be involved by extension. A fistulous communication with the intestines is often established. Gall-stones are usually present in the gall-bladder. Jaundice and vomiting are common symptoms.

Diagnosis.—Local pain or other sensations may draw attention to the gall-bladder, but the conditions just described can only be positively made out by physical examination, if at all. In all cases of jaundice from obstruction it is important to determine whether there is any accumulation of bile in this organ.

Treatment.—Inflammation involving the gall-bladder, from whatever cause, requires the application of poultices and fomentations. If pus forms, or if in chronic cases much fluid collects, it is sometimes requisite to puncture the distended organ, and allow the fluid to escape, either leaving an external fistula afterwards, or closing up the wound. Any obstruction interfering with the escape of the contents of the gall-bladder must, if possible, be removed. Bile-expellents are useful to empty the organ. *Cholecystotomy* is now a recognized operation for the removal of gall-stones retained in the gall-bladder, or impacted in the cystic duct. Under certain special circumstances *cholecystectomy*, or entire removal of the gall-bladder, is practised.

CHAPTER LIII.

GALL-STONES—BILIARY CALCULI—CHOLELITHIASIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—There is considerable uncertainty as to the mode of origin of gall-stones. The chief views may be thus stated:—1. That they are merely the result of *inspissation* and *concentration of bile*. 2. That they depend upon certain *biliary ingredients being in excess*, especially cholesterin and colouring matters. 3. That the bile has some *abnormal chemical composition*, either when first formed, or as the consequence of subsequent changes, which prevents it from holding some of its elements in solution, and hence they are deposited. Thus calculi have been attributed to deficiency of soda, with excessive acidity of the bile; excess of lime, causing a separation of pigments; decomposition of the salts of sodium with the biliary acids; or decomposition of the biliary acids themselves, with consequent precipitation of cholesterin and pigments. 4. That they originate in *plugs of mucus, epithelium, or foreign bodies*, upon which the ingredients of the bile are afterwards deposited as a nucleus. It is highly probable that each of these views is correct in different cases, and when once the formation of a gall-stone has commenced, its increase may be due to some other cause than that which originated it in the first instance. There can be no doubt but that a catarrhal state of the gall-bladder and ducts favours the production of calculi, either by inducing stagnation of bile; or, as some believe, by the mucus then formed favouring decomposition of this secretion, or impregnating it with carbonate of lime. This decomposition has also been attributed by Thudichum to the absorption of some ferment from the intestines.

There are some important *predisposing causes* of gall-stones, namely, advanced age; the female sex; sedentary habits; habitual constipation; over-indulgence in animal food, in starchy or saccharine elements, and in alcoholic stimulants; depressing mental influences; and organic diseases of the liver, gall-bladder, or bile-ducts, interfering with the escape of bile. Many patients suffering from cholelithiasis are more or less obese. Tight-lacing and repeated pregnancies have been mentioned as predisposing causes. Biliary calculi have been attributed to drinking water containing excess of lime, but on no adequate grounds.

Anatomical Characters.—By far the most frequent *original seat* of biliary calculi is the *gall-bladder*, but they may also be formed in any portion of the bile-ducts, or even in the liver itself. The number varies from one to hundreds or thousands; usually several are found. There is also a wide range as to size, this being in an inverse ratio to the number; several are sometimes cemented together, so as to form a large concretion. Originally most of the calculi are round or oval, but when numerous, owing to mutual friction they become worn and angular, presenting flat or concave facets, or occasionally actual articulations. When formed in the ducts they exhibit curious shapes, being branched or coral-like. As a rule gall-stones have a brownish or greenish-yellow colour, and are opaque, but they present an endless variety of tints,

ranging from white to black, blue, green, red, and other colours, according to their composition; occasionally they are somewhat translucent. They frequently have a greasy or saponaceous feel, with a waxy, brittle consistence, being readily cut or crushed; sometimes they are very firm. Most of them sink in water when recent, but some float, and most gall-stones will do so after having been dried. The structure is rarely homogeneous and uniform. In the majority of cases, after a calculus has existed for some time a section reveals distinctly three parts, named from within out—the *nucleus*, of which there may be more than one; the *body*, which is often made up of concentric layers, or presents a radiated appearance; and the *cortex* or *crust*, this being usually smooth externally, but occasionally wrinkled, rough, or even tuberculated and warty. As a rule the layers become lighter in colour from the centre towards the circumference, but not always. Sometimes a fractured hepatic calculus presents a crystalline aspect. The *chemical composition* is very variable, but the most common ingredients are cholesterol and bile-pigments, with a little lime or magnesia. To these may be added biliary and fatty acids, generally combined with lime; modified bile-pigments; phosphates; carbonates; salts of sodium or potassium in small proportions; and metals (iron, copper, and manganese). The nucleus is often made up of mucus and epithelium, and the former material may also unite the different parts. The appearances differ according to the composition, which is not necessarily uniform even in the same layer. It is quite impossible to describe the characters corresponding to the various ingredients, but it may be stated generally that, in proportion to the amount of cholesterol which a calculus contains, it is whiter, more transparent, more crystalline or radiated and lamellar, and of lighter specific gravity.

Biliary sand or *gravel* is not uncommonly met with, consisting either of cholesterol, bile-pigment, or black pigmentary matter.

The morbid conditions which are liable to be set up by gall-stones may be stated as follows:—1. Irritation, inflammation, suppuration, or ulceration, with consequent pyæmia or perforation, affecting either the gall-bladder or ducts. Perforation takes place in different directions, but especially into the stomach, duodenum, or peritoneum, or externally through the abdominal wall; rarely into the colon, portal vein, pleura, pelvis of the right kidney, or vagina. Permanent fistulae may be left. 2. Inflammation and abscesses in the liver, if the calculi are lodged there; or the formation of a cyst around them. 3. Obstruction of some of the ducts in the liver, or of the hepatic, cystic, or common bile-duct, with the usual consequences. 4. Obstruction of the intestines by a large calculus or an agglomeration of gall-stones, this having probably entered through a fistulous communication from the gall-bladder. 5. Inflammation, ulceration, or gangrene of the bowel, with consequent peritonitis or perforation.

Symptoms.—It is a well-known fact that in a large number of cases gall-stones give rise to no symptoms whatever, being found in the gall-bladder at the *post-mortem* examination. Those usually met with, and which need special description, are the symptoms indicating the passage of a gall-stone along the bile-duct to the intestine—*biliary* or *hepatic colic*—these being usually severe, but not always. An attack of hepatic colic begins with a sudden intense pain in the right hypochondrium, which is in some cases most excreting, often coming on just after a meal or after effort. It is described as constricting, gripping, tearing, burning, or boring, and shoots over the abdomen,

round the side to the back, or towards the right shoulder. The patient is doubled up and rolls about just as in ordinary colic, groaning or screaming, and pressing upon the abdomen, which gives some relief, there being generally no tenderness at first. The pain may subside, leaving a dull aching, but urgent paroxysms recur at intervals. The attacks are accompanied with much exhaustion; signs of collapse, which may be extremely grave and accompanied with rigors; a distressed and anxious expression of countenance; faintness, which may end in actual syncope; and cramps of the abdominal muscles. There is no pyrexia usually, but occasionally a sharp febrile paroxysm occurs, and the temperature may ultimately reach a considerable height, and be followed by profuse sweating. Sympathetic vomiting is frequently present; and sometimes hiccup is a distressing symptom. Among occasional symptoms observed are spasmodic tremors or actual convulsions, and severe rigors. In the course of a day or two, or even sooner, should the gall-stone reach the common duct, the usual signs of obstructive jaundice are developed as a rule, which may become intense, the duration of the jaundice depending upon that of the obstruction. When the calculus reaches the duodenum the suffering generally subsides suddenly, with a feeling of intense relief, and then the jaundice gradually disappears. In the great majority of cases biliary calculi pass along the intestinal canal, and are discharged in the faeces, sometimes in great numbers, without producing any further mischief, and they may be detected by washing the stools through a sieve or through muslin. Very rarely they pass into the stomach, and are vomited.

There are a few points of practical importance which require comment. The intensity of the pain is by no means necessarily in proportion to the size of a gall-stone, but depends rather upon its angular shape. It usually diminishes when the concretion reaches the common duct, because this is larger than the cystic duct, but it increases again as the orifice into the duodenum is approached. Jaundice is not a necessary accompaniment, or it may be but slight, because when the calculus is angular in form it leaves room for the bile to flow by, or its passage is sometimes too rapid to allow of the appearance of jaundice; on the other hand, this symptom may become persistent and extreme, owing to the permanent impaction of a gall-stone. It is very important to look for biliary calculi in the stools, as by their shape, number, and size an opinion can often be arrived at as to whether any remain behind in the gall-bladder, while at the same time their characters are recognized. After one large gall-stone has escaped, other smaller ones often follow without causing any particular disturbance. Sometimes the pain subsides, but no calculus is passed, because it returns to the gall-bladder. Pain and soreness may remain after the escape of a concretion into the duodenum, owing to nervous irritability on the part of the patient, or to local irritation of the nerves; or inflammation may be excited, indicated by pain and tenderness, with fever. The symptoms of hepatic colic are occasionally merely due to the passage of gritty or inspissated bile. An attack may end fatally, from the mere intensity of the pain and collapse, quite irrespective of the serious morbid changes which a gall-stone is liable to set up, any one of which may cause death.

Another class of cases which require brief notice are those of obstruction by a gall-stone, accompanied with *catarrhal cholangitis*. They may continue for months or years, and are characterized by recurring aueg-

like paroxysms, with chills, fever, the temperature sometimes reaching 103° or 105° , and sweating; jaundice of varying intensity, increasing after each paroxysm; and usually pains in the hepatic region at the time of the attack, with gastric disturbance. These paroxysms have been attributed to the production of a ferment in the bile-passage, a bacillus having also been found in several instances; or to local irritation of the mucous membrane, with consequent nervous fever. As a rule the general health does not suffer; in the intervals the temperature is normal; and recovery may ultimately take place. When suppuration supervenes the symptoms are more septicæmic; the fever is more remittent; jaundice is less marked, and does not increase with the paroxysm; the liver is more enlarged; and the progress is more rapid and fatal.

Diagnosis.—Gall-stones must always be borne in mind when investigating the hepatic apparatus. In many instances their presence and the effects they produce are obvious enough; in other cases they cannot be recognized, or can only be suspected. Attacks of hepatic colic due to gall-stones are generally clearly indicated by the individuals in whom they occur; the past history; the accompanying symptoms; and especially the rapid development of marked jaundice, and the discovery of one or more calculi in the stools. Other conditions to which they may give rise must also receive due consideration; and it must be remembered that gall-stones are not uncommonly associated with organic diseases of the liver or gall-bladder.

Prognosis.—Gall-stones may give rise to many dangers, or they are the cause of much suffering in not a few cases. The prognosis in any individual instance must depend on many circumstances. Examination of any calculi passed in the stools, as to number, size, and shape, will aid in determining whether others remain in the gall-bladder; and whether attacks of hepatic colic are likely to occur.

Treatment.—1. During the passage of a gall-stone the chief measures to be carried out are:—*a.* To administer *narcotics* and *anodynes*, especially opium or morphine in full doses; belladonna or atropine; or chloroform and ether, either internally or by inhalation. Subcutaneous injection of morphine and atropine is often demanded. *b.* To treat certain symptoms, especially vomiting and collapse. *c.* To apply dry heat, hot fomentations, poultices, or anodyne applications constantly over the hepatic region; or to put the patient into a warm bath. *Emetics*, which were formerly much employed, partly with the view of mechanically expelling the calculus, as well as strong *purgatives*, ought certainly to be avoided, in my opinion. Much good is effected in some cases by the treatment recommended by Dr. Prout, of making the patient drink a considerable quantity of warm solution of bicarbonate of sodium ($\frac{5}{i}$ or $\frac{5}{ij}$ to Oj). Large warm enemata may also prove beneficial. The application of a few leeches over the hepatic region seems to be useful in prolonged cases, especially if there is much tenderness.

2. For the *prevention* of gall-stones attention to diet and hygiene is most essential. The judicious use of remedies which improve the condition of the alimentary canal, promote regularity of the bowels, or act upon the liver, is also often of much service. It has been affirmed that hepatic calculi can be dissolved after their formation, by the administration of olive oil in large doses, a mixture of turpentine and ether, chloroform, alkalies, or certain mineral waters, especially Carlsbad waters. It is extremely doubtful whether either of these agents has

any such effect, but alkalis and mineral waters often do a great deal of good in other ways in cases of gall-stone. When calculi accumulate in the gall-bladder, the method of pressing them out by careful manipulation has been specially advocated by Dr. George Harley. The various consequences which may result from gall-stones must be treated on ordinary principles. Operative treatment for hepatic calculi or their effects has already been alluded to in relation to the gall-bladder. In addition to *cholecystotomy*, *cholelitholity* may be practised sometimes, a calculus being broken up in various ways. *Cholecystenterostomy* is advocated under exceptional circumstances.

CHAPTER LIV.

DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

1. THE spleen is often diseased without giving rise to any local **morbid sensations**. When it becomes much enlarged it may cause a sense of fulness and tension, chiefly felt about the left hypochondrium. Occasionally more or less pain and tenderness are associated with splenic diseases.

2. A most important indication of splenic disease is derived from the **general symptoms and state of the blood**. In prolonged chronic cases a state known as *splenic cachexia* is developed. This is characterized by extreme anaemia, the mucous membranes being pale and bloodless, and the face presenting a waxy, or sometimes an earthy and sallow aspect; great debility or prostration; wasting, but not usually rapid; shortness of breath on any exertion, with hurried breathing, chiefly due to the anaemia; a tendency to haemorrhages, especially in the form of epistaxis, bleeding from the gums, and petechiae under the skin; and oedema of the legs and eyelids, or even general dropsy. In certain forms of splenic disease the blood presents peculiar changes, which will be subsequently described.

3. Symptoms may arise from **pressure** by an enlarged spleen on neighbouring structures, especially on the diaphragm and left lung, dyspnoea being thus increased, or even pulmonary congestion and catarrh induced. Vomiting may also be excited by pressure on the stomach; and constipation is common.

4. The chief aid in the diagnosis of morbid conditions of the spleen is derived from **physical examination**. The characters of *splenic enlargement* or *tumour* are as follows:—*a.* In *position* it is extra-pelvic, and occupies mainly the left hypochondrium, being usually felt to come from beneath the margin of the thorax on that side, but in exceptional cases the organ is displaced downwards as well as enlarged, so that it does not pass under the ribs, and the fingers can then be inserted above its upper end. In its growth an enlarged spleen tends towards the front of the abdomen, as well as downwards and to the right, so that ultimately

it extends into other regions and comes to be very superficial, while it can generally be separated posteriorly from the mass of the dorsal muscles. Percussion often shows increase in area of *splenic dulness* upwards towards the thorax, or backwards, but it rarely reaches above the fifth rib, and does not extend as far back as the spine. There is also an undue sense of resistance on percussion; with deficient elasticity of the ribs. *b.* The *form* is usually very characteristic, being more or less that of the normal spleen exaggerated. The anterior border can be felt to be directed obliquely downwards and towards the right, being sharp and thin, and often presenting one or more notches or shallow excavations. The posterior edge and lower end are rounded. The outline of an enlarged spleen may occasionally actually be visible. *c.* As regards *consistence*, a splenic tumour generally feels firm and solid; now and then it gives a sensation of elasticity, but fluctuation is extremely rare. The surface is almost always smooth, but may be irregular. *d.* Another important character of a splenic tumour is its great *mobility*. As a rule it can be readily moved in all directions by manipulation; and it is more influenced by the act of respiration than any other tumour, being often felt below the ribs after a deep inspiration, when previously imperceptible. Change of posture may also affect it markedly. *e.* Occasionally a *splenic murmur* is said to be audible over an enlarged spleen.

Some of the difficulties which are met with in recognizing enlargement of the spleen require notice. 1. The organ is often not sufficiently large to come below the margin of the thorax, and can then only be made out by percussion. 2. Even when of some size, it may be kept up by the costo-colic fold of peritoneum, or by adhesions at its upper end. 3. Adhesions may also prevent any mobility, and cause the tumour to become fixed. 4. The enlargement is sometimes so great as to obscure altogether the outline of the spleen, and the characters of its anterior margin, the latter then assuming a vertical direction. 5. Enlargement of other organs may conceal a splenic tumour. 6. Accumulation of flatus in the colon may interfere with its detection. 7. The principal morbid conditions for which enlarged spleen is likely to be mistaken, or vice versa, are cancer about the cardiac end of the stomach; enlarged left lobe of the liver; a tumour of the omentum; a tumour or a large calculus in connection with the left kidney; or a growth originating in the supra-renal capsule.

II. SPECIAL DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.

A. CONGESTION OR HYPERÆMIA.

Etiology.—The spleen readily becomes congested, on account of its great vascularity, and the yielding nature of its capsule. After every meal it is more or less overloaded with blood. *Active* hyperæmia is commonly observed in acute febrile diseases, especially in typhoid, relapsing, and intermittent fevers; and to a less degree in typhus, scarlatina, small-pox, erysipelas, septicæmia or pyæmia, puerperal fever, and acute tuberculosis. The enlargement associated with malignant endocarditis is partly due to congestion. The condition is said to be occasionally vicarious of menstruation. Injury or morbid deposits may also cause it. *Mechanical* congestion of the spleen follows any obstruction affecting the portal circulation, either direct or secondary to chronic heart- and lung-affections.

Anatomical Characters.—The morbid characters presented by a recently congested spleen are enlargement, often considerable, the capsule being stretched and smooth; increase in weight; intense redness, of a dark hue; and diminution in consistence, the substance of the organ in some instances being quite pulpy or almost fluid. The amount of blood is much increased; red blood-cells are extremely abundant; and the splenic tissue appears to be augmented in some cases. After long-continued or repeated hyperæmia the spleen becomes permanently enlarged, hardened, and hypertrophied.

Symptoms.—The only clinical sign of a congested spleen usually observed is that the organ is enlarged, but not as a rule to any great degree, and the size is liable to vary considerably. Occasionally it feels soft, but is generally tolerably firm. There is no spontaneous pain in most cases, but tenderness is common, and may be marked in acute congestion. Temporary general anaemia has been stated to be associated with extreme splenic congestion.

B. HÆMORRHAGIC INFARCTION—SPLENITIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The spleen is one of the organs in which emboli most frequently lodge, giving rise to *haemorrhagic infarctions*. Some pathologists are of opinion that these infarctions may also arise from the formation of local thrombi within the vessels of the organ. Occasionally considerable inflammatory action is excited, especially when the emboli have septic properties, as in cases of typhus fever, pyæmia, or ulcerative endocarditis, and this is the most frequent cause of *splenitis*. In rare cases inflammation of the spleen results from injury; and it has also been stated to arise from malaria, especially in certain tropical climates; or as an idiopathic affection.

Anatomical Characters.—Infarctions in the spleen, as seen on section of the organ, are usually in the form of wedge-shaped masses with their bases towards the surface, often projecting somewhat; when situated deeper in the organ they are more or less rounded. They vary considerably in number and size. Originally each infarction is dark and firm, and is surrounded by a zone of congestion; in time, however, the ordinary changes take place, the colouring matter becoming altered and absorbed, until the mass assumes a yellowish-white colour. Frequently caseous degeneration with ultimate absorption follows, a depressed cicatrix remaining; or calcification may take place. In pyæmia and allied affections the infarctions rapidly break down into a purulent fluid, at the same time the spleen being more or less inflamed and congested throughout. *Idiopathic* inflammation cannot at first be distinguished from mere congestion, the spleen being enlarged, very dark, and softened. One or more abscesses may form, which sometimes finally involve the entire organ, this being converted into a mere bag of pus. A splenic abscess occasionally bursts externally; or into the peritoneum, stomach, or thorax. Rarely it becomes encapsulated, and undergoes curative changes, its fluid portion being absorbed, so that finally only a caseous material remains, which may calcify. The peritoneum corresponding to the affected part is often inflamed.

Symptoms.—Only occasionally can splenic embolism and its consequences be positively recognized during life, but it may be fairly suspected if, along with some obvious source of embolism, there should be rigors and pyrexia, with *local* signs connected with the spleen, namely,

sudden pain and tenderness in the left hypochondrium; and enlargement of the organ. Vomiting occurs in many cases. A splenic abscess is scarcely ever diagnosed; it may possibly give rise to a fluctuating enlargement, or even burst externally. The process of suppuration is attended with hectic fever and rapid wasting. Should the abscess rupture internally, the usual indications of such an event will be observed.

C. HYPERSTROPHY.

Aetiology and Pathology.—By far the most important form of enlarged spleen is that which is due to *hypertrophy* of its tissues. This condition occurs mainly in three classes of cases, namely:—1. Those of *malarial* origin, where the hypertrophy results from long-continued or repeated active congestion, in connection with ague, or even after mere exposure to malarial influence. 2. Those in which it follows *chronic portal obstruction*, with consequent mechanical congestion of the spleen. 3. Those in which it is part of the special disease termed *leucocythaemia* or *leukaemia*. Sometimes the cause cannot be definitely made out. When splenic hypertrophy follows congestion, it is supposed to be chiefly due to interference with the escape of the corpuscles out of the organ. Leucocythaemia will be separately discussed.

Anatomical Characters.—In hypertrophy from hyperæmia the spleen is increased in size and weight, sometimes to a great degree, but retains its normal form; its consistence is abnormally firm; and a section appears pale and dry, sometimes grey, or presents black spots or patches due to pigment. The tissue is quite normal, but is increased in amount and condensed, the trabeculae being also thickened and firm, appearing as white traversing lines.

Symptoms.—Hypertrophy of the spleen may exist for a long time, and to a marked degree, without producing any evident disturbance, either local or general. In many instances, indeed, it can only be recognized by *physical examination*, which usually distinctly reveals the enlarged organ, and it may thus be accidentally discovered, the patient being unaware of its presence. Pressure-symptoms may be produced if the spleen attains a large size. In advanced cases, or in those of malarial origin, signs of more or less splenic cachexia are observed, and these may become very prominent, or the condition may end in true leucocythaemia.

D. LEUCOCYTHÆMIA—LEUKÆMIA.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Although it is convenient to discuss leucocythaemia in connection with affections of the spleen, it must not be regarded as merely a disease of this organ, although it is usually seriously implicated. One of the most prominent features of this complaint consists in certain changes in the blood, especially the presence of great excess of white corpuscles or leucocytes—hence the term *leucocythaemia*. Moreover, the lymphatic glands are not uncommonly affected; lymphatic deposits are sometimes found in various organs, as well as in connection with serous and mucous membranes; and morbid changes are often observed in the marrow of bones. Different forms of leucocythaemia are accordingly described, namely:—1. *Splenic leucocythaemia*, in which the spleen is primarily affected, but the absorbent glands and

other structures may become secondarily involved. 2. *Lymphatic leucocythaemia*, where there is a primary enlargement of the glands, this being the complaint known as *lymphadenoma* or *Hodgkin's disease*, under which heading it will be subsequently described. 3. *Lymphatico-splenic leucocythaemia*, where the glands become implicated at an early period after the spleen, these cases being regarded as of a composite nature. 4. *Myelogenous leucocythaemia*, in which the marrow of bones is primarily involved, a rare but probable variety of the disease.

But little can be said definitely as to the *causation* of leucocythaemia. It has been regarded as the result of a special diathesis. Dr. Gowers found that in one-fourth of the cases analyzed by him there was a history either of ague or of residence in an ague district. The interval between the malarial affection and the development of the disease varied from a few months to thirty years. This observer also states that in women the sexual processes appear to have a distinct influence. The complaint is most frequent in them during the climacteric decade (40 to 50), and practically ceases when the menstrual epoch is over. In some cases it has commenced during pregnancy; in a larger number it has succeeded pregnancy. Among other causes to which leucocythaemia has been attributed in individual cases may be mentioned injury to the spleen; depressing influences, such as want of food, over-exertion, and especially depressing mental emotion; and previous diseases, particularly small-pox, typhoid fever, acute rheumatism, pneumonia, and syphilis. With regard to *predisposing causes*, age and sex seem alone important. Leucocythaemia may occur at any age, but it is most common between 30 and 40. The disease is twice as frequent in men as in women (Gowers). Hereditary influence has only been traced in one or two instances.

The *pathology* of leucocythaemia has been much disputed. It has been regarded as a primary disease of the blood, attended with the formation of excess of white blood-corpuscles, which afterwards accumulate in the spleen; but this theory is not borne out by facts. It seems probable that in most cases there is a primary change in the spleen. According to modern researches it appears that the red blood-corpuscles are the products of the development of the smaller lymphoid cells (globulins, haematoblasts). These are probably partly produced in the splenic pulp and in the marrow of bones, from pre-existing cells, and from the protoplasmic trabeculae of the tissues; partly from the lymphatic glands and other true lymphatic structures. It is further supposed that the transformation of the lymphoid cells takes place largely in the splenic pulp and in the medulla of bones. In ordinary *splenic leucocythaemia* it is believed that, owing to a diseased condition of the pulp, this transformation does not take place, but the haematoblasts are changed into white corpuscles or leucocytes, which in part accumulate in the spleen, helping to enlarge it and to further alter its structure, in part pass into the circulation. The Malpighian follicles in the spleen are said not to be affected at the outset, but may become involved secondarily, along with the lymphatic glands, and with other organs in which lymphatic tissue is developed. This secondary change is partly attributed to the accumulation of leucocytes. The marrow of bones is usually only affected secondarily, if at all, and is very rarely primarily involved. In *lymphatic leucocythaemia* the morbid change begins in the glands, and may also implicate the Malpighian follicles of the spleen from an early period. In *lymphatico-splenic leucocythaemia* both the splenic pulp and the Malpighian follicles are involved. Part of the

increase of white corpuscles in the blood has been attributed to their proliferation, or to a new formation by the walls of the vessels.

Anatomical Characters.—The spleen in leucocythaemia is more or less enlarged; ultimately it may attain enormous dimensions, and may weigh as much as 15 pounds. The organ generally retains its normal outline, the enlargement being uniform, but if it is very great the shape tends to become more or less altered. As a rule it is abnormally firm, but not invariably, and it may be softened. Usually the capsule of the spleen is thickened, yellowish, and opaque in patches, due to local peritonitis; adhesions also frequently form with the diaphragm and other neighbouring structures. A section of the organ is smooth, and yields comparatively little blood. The appearance of the cut surface varies according to the variety of the disease. It is usually brownish-red or brownish-yellow, but presenting whitish lines, due to thickened trabeculae; the Malpighian follicles are not then conspicuous, and they may not even be discoverable with the microscope. In other cases these structures are enlarged, and may form distinct growths, of some size, which rarely become softened. Haemorrhagic infarctions or their remains are not uncommonly evident. Microscopically it is found that there is an increase in the splenic pulp, the trabeculae being augmented, as well as the retiform tissue of nucleated fibres and cells, among which the lymphoid corpuscles lie. The Malpighian follicles may present signs of fatty or albuminoid degeneration. Minute octohedral crystals are found in abundance after death in many cases, of unknown nature. Chemically the spleen yields glutin, glycocoll, hypoxanthine, xanthine, leucin, and tyrosin.

When the lymphatic glands are affected they become more or less enlarged, in some cases forming considerable tumours by their aggregation. As a rule, however, in cases of primary splenic leucocythaemia, the enlargement of individual glands is not great, these rarely exceeding a walnut in size. The affection of the glands is only exceptionally general, but different groups are involved in different cases, the mesenteric and cervical being the most frequent. They resemble in appearance and structure normal absorbent glands, being of a soft consistence, and presenting on section a smooth uniform surface, from which a turbid fluid can be expressed. The colour is grey or reddish-white. Rarely caseating or suppurating spots are seen, or extravasations of blood. The cortical portion of the glands is much thickened; and a microscopical examination only reveals that the normal elements of the gland-tissues are in excess.

With regard to *other organs and structures*, the most important changes associated with leucocythaemia are the presence of an adenoid or lymphoid growth in various parts, and distension of the capillaries with leucocytes. These changes have been found in connection with the liver, alimentary canal, kidneys, lungs and air-passages, heart, thymus and thyroid glands, tonsils, supra-renal capsules, skin, serous membranes, as the peritoneum, pleura, and cerebral membranes, and the retina. The liver is enlarged in the majority of cases, and may attain a very great size. It may be merely congested or fatty, but often presents disseminated lymphoid growths, greyish-white, generally interlobular, often surrounding branches of the portal vein. The kidneys may be the seat of granular or marked fatty degeneration; and similar changes may be observed in the heart. In connection with the alimentary canal, the gums are sometimes swollen or ulcerated; but the chief seats of the lymphoid growths are the tonsils and the follicles of the tongue, with

Peyer's and the solitary glands in the intestines, which may ulcerate. In the lungs adenoid collections occasionally break down and form cavities; haemorrhagic infarcts may also be produced. Effusions into the pleuræ, pericardium, and peritoneum are not uncommon in leucocythaemia. Haemorrhages may also occur, as in the brain, retina, serous cavities, or other structures.

The changes in the blood in leucocythaemia are highly important. When seen in bulk it is paler than normal, and may become pink or greyish-red. In advanced cases it coagulates imperfectly, forming a grumous chocolate-coloured mass; or it may separate into three layers, an irregular lymphatic stratum forming between the red clot and the buffy coat. The specific gravity is much lowered, owing to an increase in the water, the average being 1042. The most important microscopic change in the blood in leucocythaemia, as determined by the *haemacytometer*, is a marked, persistent, and progressive increase in the number of white corpuscles or leucocytes. Ultimately the number of white corpuscles may equal, or even exceed, that of the red. Smaller cells are also often visible, regarded as globulins or haematoblasts, especially when the lymphatic glands are involved, and Virchow distinguishes the splenic and lymphatic forms of leucocythaemia by the predominance respectively of white corpuscles or small uninucleated corpuscles, but others maintain that such a distinction is not real. The white corpuscles are either of natural size, or some of them are considerably enlarged; they appear granular, but on the addition of water swell up, and exhibit from one to four nuclei. Some of them have undergone fatty degeneration. The red corpuscles are diminished in number, and hence the number of white corpuscles may appear greater than it really is. The total number of corpuscles is always below the normal, sometimes very considerably. Nucleated red corpuscles have been described, regarded as intermediate elements between white and red corpuscles. Cornil and Ravier state that many white corpuscles, particularly the largest, contain very small spherical granules of an amber yellow colour, grouped round the nuclei; this appearance they explain by destruction of the red corpuscles, and absorption of the particles by the white corpuscles. It is said that the proportion of white corpuscles differs in blood taken from different parts of the body, being highest in that of the splenic vein. Usually the red corpuscles are normal in appearance, but sometimes they are pale, being deficient in haemoglobin. Microcytes, poikilocytes, and Charcot's crystals may be visible under the microscope. The proportion of iron in the blood is necessarily diminished. Other changes noticed are increase in fat and fibrin, the latter sometimes presenting a peculiar granular appearance; and in some instances the presence of abnormal ingredients, namely, albukalin, mucin, hypoxanthin, lactic, formic, and acetic acids. After death in cases of leucocythaemia soft yellow clots are often found in the heart and great vessels, sometimes presenting an almost puriform appearance. Cohnheim applied the term *pseudo-leukæmia* to cases in which there are apparently the same organic lesions as in the genuine disease, with but little if any increase in the number of white corpuscles in the blood.

The changes in the bones which have been described in cases of leucocythaemia demand brief notice. Lymphatic growths may be found in these structures, even forming considerable masses. The medulla is grey or reddish-grey, and presents blood-corpuscles, lymphoid cells, or sometimes cells intermediate between white and red corpuscles. The vessels are diminished in number. All the bones may be thus affected,

but especially those which have most spongy tissue, as the ribs or vertebræ. They may be normal in size, or enlarged. The compact osseous substance is sometimes thinned, or may even be perforated.

Symptoms.—The essential clinical phenomena in leucocythaemia may be summed up as:—1. More or less intense *splenic cachexia*, which often attains a high grade. 2. In the majority of cases the *physical signs of enlarged spleen*, in some instances the organ being hypertrophied to such a degree as to lead to general enlargement of the abdomen. 3. In a certain proportion of cases *enlarged lymphatic glands*, either external, within the cavities of the body, or in both situations; and occasionally signs of *enlarged liver*. 4. Sometimes evidences of *pressure* by the spleen on neighbouring structures, especially the diaphragm, heart, and stomach. 5. Peculiar changes in the *blood*. It is quite sufficient to prick the finger, so as to get just a drop of this fluid, and examine it microscopically, in order to observe the principal changes already described. The patient becomes weak and pale, presenting the usual symptoms of anaemia in a marked degree, and oedema may supervene. Haemorrhages from various parts are common, epistaxis being often an early symptom, and bleeding may also occur from the alimentary canal, lungs, or other parts; while slight operations or injuries are liable to be followed by grave or fatal haemorrhage. Among other prominent symptoms may be mentioned palpitation, dyspnoea of various kinds, cough, and different nervous phenomena, with disorders of the special senses. There may be signs of serous effusions, or of haemorrhages into serous cavities. Changes in the gums may be noticed, and a "leukæmic stomatitis" has been described. Jaundice is rare, but a yellowish tint of the skin is not uncommon, or it may be pigmented. As a rule no subjective sensations are complained of in the abdomen, except a sense of weight and fulness, but tenderness or transitory pains may be felt. Digestive derangements are of frequent occurrence; and vomiting and diarrhoea are often prominent symptoms. Usually pyrexia is absent in the earlier stages of leucocythaemia, but there may be some irregular febrile disturbance, and later on the temperature is often raised persistently. As a rule it is highest in cases which run a rapid course. The temperature may reach from 101° to 104° in the evening, and there is generally a greater or less morning fall. Sometimes considerable pyrexia occurs at irregular periods. Excessive sweating is common. The urine is usually strongly acid, and of high specific gravity; uric acid is in excess; and hypoxanthin, formic, and lactic acids have been found in the excretion. Albuminuria is rarely present, except with renal disease. Menstruation is generally stopped, but in some cases menorrhagia or metrorrhagia occurs. The ophthalmoscope may reveal changes in the retina, especially haemorrhages; and yellowish or white spots, due to collections of lymphoid cells. Leucocythaemia is generally a chronic disease, but its duration is said to range from six months to seven years. Remarkable remissions are sometimes observed in its course. Death may take place gradually from asthenia and exhaustion, frequently preceded by delirium, stupor, and coma, or by syncope; or more speedily as the result of haemorrhage, diarrhoea, or complications. The most frequent form of fatal haemorrhage is epistaxis. Internal haemorrhages may also cause death, especially cerebral. The most important complications are pleural or pericardial effusions; pneumonia or bronchitis; venous thrombosis, which, it is said, may even take place in the penis, and lead to persistent erections; renal disease; erysipelas; and boils.

E. MISCELLANEOUS MORBID CONDITIONS.

1. **ALBUMINOID DISEASE.**—For the *etiology*, *morbid anatomy*, and *constitutional symptoms* of this condition reference must be made to the general account already given. All that need be said here is that the albuminoid deposit in the spleen is in some cases limited to the Malpighian follicles, producing the appearance known as the *sago-spleen*, in which translucent granules are observed, resembling boiled sago. *Clinically* enlargement of the spleen from albuminoid disease is recognized by its very hard and dense consistence; and by its steady growth, the organ finally reaching large dimensions in some cases. Other organs are always involved; while there is some condition present to which the albuminoid disease is secondary.

2. **SYPHILITIC DISEASE.**—In congenital syphilis the spleen is sometimes much enlarged and firm. In one case which came under my notice the organ reached nearly to the crest of the ilium; presented a firm and sharp margin; and was freely movable. Syphilitic gummata are rare in the spleen.

3. **CANCER** of the spleen is very rare. It occurs in the form of nodules or masses of encephaloid, and is always secondary. During life the enlargement may possibly be recognized by its irregular form, and nodular character; but it is frequently not detected. Usually pain and tenderness are complained of. Other organs are always implicated.

4. **HYDATID TUMOUR** has been met with in exceptional instances in the spleen, the liver being affected at the same time. It may give rise to a prominent tumour, having the usual semi-globular shape and fluctuating sensation of a hydatid-cyst.

5. **TUBERCLE** in the spleen occurs chiefly as a part of acute miliary tuberculosis. In rare instances it has been observed in cases of chronic phthisis. This condition cannot be recognized clinically.

6. **RICKETS** is believed by some to produce special changes in the spleen, as described under that complaint.

7. Peculiar changes are observed in the spleen in cases of **PERNICIOUS ANÆMIA**, which will be considered in relation to that disease in the following chapter.

8. **ATROPHY** of the spleen is often met with, but this condition does not lead to any obvious ill-effects. The organ not uncommonly becomes firm and contracted as the result of long-continued congestion from cardiac disease.

III. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. **Diagnosis.**—Practically it is only by *physical examination* that diseases of the spleen can usually be positively recognized. The chief difficulties in the diagnosis of splenic enlargement have already been indicated. The *general symptoms* aid the diagnosis materially in advanced cases. The *previous history* also helps in many instances, especially if it reveals exposure to malarial influence, or the occurrence of repeated attacks of ague. Should there be persistent portal obstruction, more or less enlargement of the spleen is a necessary consequence.

Systematic examination of the blood is of essential importance in the diagnosis of leucocythaemia, which must be repeated again and again in

doubtful cases. This examination will also help to determine whether a case is one of true leucocythaemia or of Hodgkin's disease, when enlargement of the glands occurs at an early period along with enlarged spleen. In order to detect early stages of the complaint, Ehrlich makes use of the selective properties of the "granules" present in the protoplasm of the leucocytes towards eosin.

2. **Prognosis.**—*Acute* affections of the spleen are rarely dangerous in themselves, unless an abscess forms, or the organ becomes extremely distended and pulpy, under which circumstances it may rupture, and thus lead to grave consequences. *Chronic* affections are usually slow in their progress, except in the case of malignant disease, and if there is mere hypertrophy the health is often not disturbed for a long time. Treatment has usually but little effect in reducing this condition, except in the case of malarial spleen. *Leucocythaemia* has been generally regarded as an incurable disease, but experience has proved that it may be greatly benefited if a case comes under treatment at an early period. The prognosis is worse if there are signs of marked organic changes in the blood-forming organs; and it is the more serious in proportion to the increase of white corpuscles, and the diminution of red corpuscles in the blood.

3. **Treatment.**—No special interference is needed in *acute* forms of splenic disease, unless an abscess should form and be recognized, which must be treated in the usual way. A case has been recorded in which $8\frac{1}{2}$ ounces of a dark grumous fluid were removed by aspiration from a spleen which was the seat of softening from acute inflammation. Quinine has a marked influence in reducing *malarial congestion* and its consequences, even after it has existed for some time, and such a condition ought to receive as early attention as possible, and be treated persistently, so as to prevent future ill-effects. When there is *mechanical congestion*, any impediment in connection with the portal circulation must be removed, if possible; but if this is not practicable, *saline purgatives* act beneficially, by relieving the vessels. In *chronic enlargement* of the spleen, one of the chief objects of treatment is to improve the general health, and the condition of the blood, by the administration of iron, mineral acids, quinine, arsenic, and similar remedies; as well as by a nutritious diet, change of air, and attention to hygienic measures. Iodides and bromides, as well as mercurials, have been supposed to reduce the size of the spleen, but in my experience they have been of no use whatever. Cases of *leucocythaemia* have been decidedly benefited by the administration of phosphorus. This drug tends, however, to produce fatty changes in organs, and other untoward effects. In other instances arsenic in large doses has proved serviceable. Cod-liver oil is sometimes useful. Galvanism is strongly recommended by Dr. Gowers, who affirms that it contracts the spleen, expels retained leucocytes, and perhaps stimulates directly its functional action. Other methods advocated are friction with iodide of mercury ointment; the application of the ice-bag, or cold douching; inhalation of oxygen; and injection of ergotin. As a last resource, extirpation of the spleen has been practised. This may be permissible in cases of simple enlarged spleen, but in leucocythaemia it has proved almost invariably fatal, on account of haemorrhage. Various symptoms must be treated as they arise.

CHAPTER LV.

IDIOPATHIC, PROGRESSIVE, OR PERNICIOUS ANÆMIA.

THE peculiar disease to which these and other names have been applied needs special consideration, and its discussion may now be conveniently taken up. It was first described by Addison, afterwards by Gusseow and Quincke, and during recent years the complaint has attracted the attention of many observers and investigators.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Pernicious anaemia has in many cases been associated with the puerperal state or with repeated pregnancies. In other instances it has been attributed to gastro-intestinal disease or disorder; prolonged bad nourishment or privation; unhealthy sanitary conditions; mental shock, fright, worry, or anxiety; or to a previous haemorrhage on a large scale. A special group of cases have been traced to the effects produced in the intestines by the *anchylostomum duodenale*; and progressive anaemia has also been said to result from a tape-worm—the *bothriocephalus latus*. (See INTESTINAL WORMS.) It may follow malarial or yellow fever; and has occasionally been referred to congenital syphilis. Frequently no definite cause can be fixed upon, and the complaint is then specially called *idiopathic*, *primary*, or *essential*. It occurs chiefly in adults, but may be occasionally met with in young subjects. In females it prevails chiefly from 20 to 40, in males from 40 to 60 years of age. On the whole males and females appear to be affected in about equal proportions.

Before discussing the pathology of pernicious anaemia, it will be desirable to point out the morbid changes which have been found *post-mortem*, and the character presented by the blood and urine respectively. The body is rarely emaciated, there being generally a layer of subcutaneous fat, often of a canary-yellow colour. Sometimes cutaneous haemorrhages are observed; as well as haemorrhages into serous cavities. One of the most striking features of the disease is the extreme fatty degeneration of the heart often met with, which has a “tabby-cat” appearance. In connection with the alimentary canal there have been noticed various forms and degrees of gastritis; degeneration and atrophy of the gastric glands; degenerative changes in the nerve-plexuses of the intestines; and the intestinal worms already alluded to. An abundant deposit of iron is found in the liver, especially in the peripheral zones of the lobules; and also in the spleen and kidneys to a less extent (Quincke). In the spleen it is found mainly in the walls of the pulp sinuses; while in the kidney it is confined to the epithelium of the convoluted tubes (Russell). The spleen has been noticed to be of a rich purple colour. Fatty degeneration of various structures besides the heart has been met with, namely, of the intima of arteries, the liver, and the kidneys. The marrow of bones not uncommonly presents marked changes, being of a reddish-purple colour, and containing a large number of nucleated red corpuscles, while the fat-cells are in great part or entirely destroyed.

As regards the blood, its specific gravity is much below that of health; the red corpuscles are greatly reduced in number, sometimes being as low as ten per cent. of the normal, or even less; being also altered in shape and size, microcytes, macrocytes, and poikilocytes being often present in large numbers. The essential feature of the disease, however, is the presence of large nucleated red corpuscles—"gigantoblasts" (Ehrlich). The haemoglobin is never deficient to the same degree as the corpuscles, and this is regarded as an important distinction between pernicious anaemia and chlorosis.

The urine in pernicious anaemia often presents an extremely high colour, without any diminution in quantity, and at the same time the specific gravity may be comparatively low. The urinary pigments are in large excess; and urobilin may be recognized by the spectroscope. Another important character is a large increase in the quantity of iron excreted. Dr. William Hunter found certain peculiar ptomaines in the urine, for the formation of which the action of specific micro-organisms is necessary.

Pernicious anaemia is now generally supposed to be the result of an excessive destruction of the red corpuscles (*haemolysis* or *haemophthisis*), though some believe that there is defective formation. The characters presented by the liver, spleen, and kidneys, as well as by the urine and blood, support the haemolytic view. The change in the marrow of bones is supposed to indicate an attempt on the part of this structure to make up for the destruction of red corpuscles, by taking on an excessive formation. Dr. Hunter is of opinion that this destruction takes place in the portal circulation in the liver; but others believe that it also occurs in the spleen and kidneys. He further maintains that it is due to the immediate action of specific poisons absorbed from the intestinal tract; the formation of which he has attributed to "the presence, under certain favourable conditions, of organisms of specific nature within the gastro-intestinal tract." Micro-organisms are said to have been discovered in the blood by Klebs and Frankenhäuser. It may be conceived that the blood corpuscles in the portal circulation undergo dissolution, causing a deposition of free iron in the liver, with the escape into the blood of an iron-free pigment, which leaves the body in the urine in the form of urobilin. Especially does this seem to be the case inasmuch as during the pyrexial period the blood-corpuscles greatly diminish in number, and the urine is high-coloured (Mott). Dr. Delépine is of opinion that the liver has a ferrogenic function, and suggests that in pernicious anaemia there may be an exaggeration of this physiological process.

Symptoms.—Pernicious anaemia comes on very slowly and insidiously. At first it is merely indicated by the appearance of the patient, and by the other symptoms characteristic of anaemia generally; these, however, do not yield to treatment, but progressively increase, becoming at last extreme. The tint of the skin is usually somewhat yellowish or lemon-coloured. As the disease advances the patient becomes less and less capable of exertion, and finally extremely weak, exhausted, and prostrated. There may be wasting, but in many instances this is not the case, and the subcutaneous fat is sometimes abundant, but the general frame is very flabby. The pulse is often large, but remarkably soft and compressible, and occasionally jerky. The heart is very easily disturbed, and faintness, palpitation, and breathlessness may be produced by the slightest effort or emotion. Hæmic murmurs are

loudly audible. Disorder of the alimentary canal is usually prominent, evidenced by dryness of the mouth, loss of appetite, flatulent distension, sinking sensations at the epigastrium, nausea or vomiting, and constipation or sometimes diarrhoea. The breath is offensive, and is said to have a cadaveric odour in some cases. Irregular febrile paroxysms occur, and the temperature may rise to 101° or 102° or more; while anasarca, serous effusions, and haemorrhages beneath the skin, from mucous surfaces, into the retina, or into internal organs often supervene. Retinal haemorrhages are considered of great diagnostic importance, being usually flame-shaped, and situated all round the disc. The gums may be spongy or bleeding, and the teeth loose. The bones are often tender on pressure or percussion. The pupils are usually dilated. The more striking characters of the blood and urine, already described, are most important from a clinical point of view. In addition the urine is very acid, clear, and free from albumin or sugar; it may contain indican. The spleen can in some cases be felt during life to be enlarged, or its dulness is increased.

In its course pernicious anaemia may present signs of temporary improvement, or exacerbations may occur from time to time. Dr. Hunter has described a case in which there were peculiar exacerbations, usually more or less sudden in their onset, indicated by increased weakness and exhaustion, often intense, exaggeration of the lemon-tint, drowsiness, slight rise of temperature, flushing of head with perspiration, and contraction of pupils; and followed by several free motions rich in pigments, and the passage of very high-coloured urine, extremely acid, with renal cells and casts containing granules of blood-pigment. In the large majority of cases the complaint is ultimately fatal, death occurring in from six to twelve or fifteen months usually, either from asthenia, haemorrhage, hyperpyrexia, or cerebral haemorrhage. Before the close there may be more or less wandering delirium. Sometimes the temperature becomes subnormal.

Treatment.—The medicines usually given for anaemia are of little service in the pernicious form, but arsenic, introduced by Dr. Byrom Bramwell, has proved most useful in many cases, affording at least temporary benefit, and a few appear to have been permanently cured. This drug should be given in increasing doses. If it cannot be tolerated by the stomach, Hayem administers arsenic subcutaneously. Among other methods of treatment recommended are the administration of dried fowl's blood; subcutaneous injection of certain ferruginous preparations; inhalation of oxygen; and intravenous injection of salt solutions. According to Dr. Hunter, the indications in the treatment of pernicious anaemia are:—1. To remove the cause, with the attendant gastro-intestinal conditions favouring its operation. 2. To combat the symptoms. In relation to the first indication he suggests free movement of the bowels in the earlier stages of the disease; washing out the stomach in suitable cases; and the administration of antiseptics, especially β -naphthol, in doses of five grains thrice daily, suspended in mucilage. For combating the excessive destruction of blood, he believes that good results may be expected from a more exclusively farinaceous diet. Transfusion of blood has been practised in several cases of pernicious anaemia, sometimes with apparent success. Recently Prof. Fraser has successfully treated this complaint by the administration of ox bone-marrow. Salol has also been used.

CHAPTER LVI.

DISEASES OF THE PANCREAS.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

1. PANCREATIC affections are frequently attended with **painful sensations**, which are described as lying deep in the abdomen, just below the epigastrium. The pain may shoot to the back or shoulder, or in other directions, and occasionally comes on in violent paroxysms, resembling those of hepatic colic. In some cases there is deep tenderness.

2. Important symptoms are believed to arise from changes in the quantity or quality of the **pancreatic secretion**. When formed *in excess*, being at the same time usually of an irritating quality, this secretion is supposed by some to be the cause of a form of pyrosis, attended with the discharge of a viscid, slimy fluid; as well as of diarrhoea, the stools containing a tenacious material, or sometimes presenting dysenteric characters. On the other hand, *deficiency* or *absence* of pancreatic juice from the alimentary canal, whether arising from changes in the gland-tissue, or obstruction in connection with the duct; and *abnormal quality* of the secretion, are now generally believed to give rise to a characteristic phenomenon, namely, the passage of a large amount of fatty or oily matter in the stools, which separates from the general mass of the faeces. Disorders of intestinal digestion are also attributed to these causes, especially flatulence, and either constipation or diarrhoea. For a discussion of this subject reference may be made to the *Bradshaw Lecture* for 1891, on "Duodenal Indigestion," by Dr. Allchin. Dr. Walker, of Peterborough, has advanced the opinion that the colouring matter of the faeces is only formed by the co-operation of the pancreatic secretion with the bile, and affirms that the absence of the former from the bowel causes the stools to be clay-coloured, even though the bile is normally excreted.

3. **Pressure** upon or **irritation** of neighbouring structures is often a cause of prominent symptoms in pancreatic disease, especially jaundice; vomiting, eructations, gaseous distension, and other gastric disturbances; and constipation. The neighbouring veins are sometimes obstructed, especially the portal, with ascites and other consequences. Pain is also partly or entirely due to this cause in certain cases, resulting from pressure on the nerves in the vicinity, or on the vertebrae, the latter being occasionally eroded.

4. **Changes in the urine.**—In some cases of disease of the pancreas fat has been present in the urine, either in the form of oil-globules, or of a greasy substance, which becomes like butter on cooling. Glycosuria has also been found associated with various morbid conditions of the organ, but this subject will be more conveniently discussed in relation to diabetes.

5. **Physical examination** sometimes reveals certain morbid conditions of the pancreas, but it requires to be performed very thoroughly, and in many cases repeatedly, the stomach and colon being empty, before a satisfactory conclusion can be arrived at. Only palpation can be said to be of any positive service as a rule. The healthy pancreas can now and then be felt on making deep pressure, in very thin persons with loose abdominal walls, especially if the spine is somewhat curved forwards; this is more frequently the case when the organ is enlarged and hardened. It is, however, in the detection of a *tumour of the head of the pancreas* that physical examination is of most value. This is distinguished by the following characters:—*a*. It is situated deeply at the back of the abdomen, in the region of the pancreas. *b*. The dimensions are always small; and the shape is generally more or less rounded. *c*. The tumour is quite fixed. *d*. It feels dense and hard. It must be mentioned that marked pulsation and bruit may result from pressure of the pancreas upon the aorta. In exceptional instances a *pancreatic cyst* attains such a size as to afford definite signs on physical examination, but this condition will need separate consideration.

6. Pancreatic disease is often attended with **general symptoms**, namely, marked or even extreme emaciation, anaemia, debility, and mental depression, due to interference with nutrition and other causes.

II. SPECIAL DISEASES.

The more important diseases of the pancreas will now be briefly described, but some of them only require enumeration.

1. **ACUTE PANCREATITIS.**—This complaint has come into more prominence during recent years. It presents different varieties, namely, *simple*, *haemorrhagic*, *suppurative*, and *gangrenous*. The disease has been attributed to injury, abuse of alcohol, and other causes. The view has been advanced that what was regarded as "influenza" was really "epidemic pancreatitis" (Garden). Acute pancreatitis may be secondary to typhoid fever, pyæmia or septicaemia, acute tuberculosis, or other febrile affections. The haemorrhagic variety may supervene upon previous chronic changes in the organ (fat necrosis). Simple pancreatitis is characterized anatomically by hyperæmia; swelling; induration or softening; and exudation into the cellular tissue and upon the surface. Suppuration may either end in purulent infiltration, with numerous small collections of pus; or in the formation of one or more large abscesses, which may burst. Gangrene is extremely rare. In the haemorrhagic variety the pancreas is enlarged, and infiltrated with blood or clots; sometimes the neighbouring structures are also involved. In the more severe forms of acute pancreatitis the peritoneum is often inflamed; and the solar plexus and semilunar ganglia may be implicated. The *symptoms* in ordinary cases are described as dull, deep-seated pain in the region of the pancreas; nausea and vomiting; thirst; constipation; and some degree of pyrexia. Acute haemorrhagic pancreatitis is characterized by sudden, severe pain, with much tenderness, and muscular tension; followed speedily by gastric symptoms, tympanites, and other phenomena indicating grave abdominal disease; and it almost always terminates fatally, with signs of collapse. Glycosuria sometimes occurs in acute pancreatitis. Rupture of a pancreatic abscess may give rise to serious symptoms.

2. The following morbid conditions may be mentioned together, namely :—(a.) ANAEMIA or HYPERAEMIA. (b.) HYPERTROPHY, which generally involves the entire gland, and is probably not a true hypertrophy, but due to increase of the interstitial tissue. (c.) ATROPHY, usually associated either with senile changes; some kind of cachexia; local disease of vessels; or pressure upon the organ as the result of surrounding disease. (d.) INDURATION or SOFTENING, with or without hypertrophy or atrophy. (e.) FATTY INFILTRATION and DEGENERATION. If these conditions give rise to any symptoms at all, they are those indicative of deficiency or abnormal quality of the pancreatic secretion. A hypertrophied pancreas may be felt in some cases; and occasionally it gives rise to pressure-symptoms. (f.) Not uncommonly CALCULI form in the pancreatic duct, which may be in large numbers and of some size. They interfere with the escape of the secretion. I am not aware that their passage causes any symptoms.

3. CHRONIC PANCREATITIS—CIRRHOSIS OF THE PANCREAS.—The pancreas is liable to chronic inflammatory changes, either generally or in parts, the head being often affected. It becomes more or less cirrhotic or fibroid, there being an increase in the interstitial connective-tissue, with wasting of the glandular substance. The organ is unduly firm and tough, and may be granular or irregular. This condition usually results from prolonged venous congestion; abuse of alcohol, especially strong spirits; retention of pancreatic secretion, with dilatation of the ducts; irritation by morbid growths; or from the effects of neighbouring disease. The late Dr. Tylden described two forms of cirrhosis of the pancreas, one of which he found often associated with chronic granular kidney. It is probable that in some instances a chronic parenchymatous inflammation takes place. *Clinically* chronic pancreatitis cannot usually be recognized with any degree of certainty. It may possibly give rise to the symptoms attributed to deficiency of pancreatic secretion: with deep-seated epigastric pain and tenderness; and glycosuria or diabetes. When neighbouring structures are involved, corresponding symptoms are likely to be present. It very rarely happens that a cirrhotic pancreas can be felt through the abdominal wall. The disease may be attended with more or less general wasting.

4. MORBID GROWTHS.—*Cancer* is by far the most important disease of the pancreas. Usually it is secondary, but occurs as a primary growth in rare instances, and then appears to start generally in the epithelium of the pancreatic duct. Pancreatic cancer is rare under 40, but I have met with it at 23 years of age. The disease is decidedly more frequent in males than females. When primary, it has sometimes been attributed to local injury. Nothing definite, however, is known of the causation of primary cancer of the pancreas.

Malignant disease of the pancreas is in the large majority of cases of the *scirrhus* type, rarely of an *encephaloid*, *colloid*, *melanotic*, or *sarcomatous* nature. As a rule the head is first implicated, and the disease often remains limited to this part. Exceptionally the body or tail is originally affected; or the growth may spread to the entire organ, or form separate deposits. A cancerous mass in the head of the pancreas varies in size, but does not attain large dimensions; it is more or less rounded in form, but somewhat irregular or nodular; and has an extremely hard and dense consistence, and a whitish section. It frequently becomes adherent to or even involves the duodenum, which may be ulcerated and greatly narrowed. It may also form adhesions with

other structures, to which the disease may subsequently extend. The pancreatic and common bile-duets as a rule become obstructed. If the body of the pancreas is not cancerous, it may be the seat of atrophy, chronic inflammation, or dilatation of the ducts; while calculi may also be present. Now and then serious disorganization of neighbouring parts is produced, leading to erosion of the vertebræ, perforation of the diaphragm, or the opening of a large vessel. Pancreatic cancer usually shows under the microscope a large amount of fibrous stroma. Often the structure is that of a *cylindroma* or *duct-cancer*, but sometimes it is of the ordinary *glandiform* type.

Symptoms.—The clinical history of pancreatic cancer is decidedly indefinite and uncertain. In general terms the clinical phenomena may be described as deep pain in the region of the pancreas, aching, gnawing, or lancinating in character, or sometimes attended with a sense of burning or tightness, in some cases markedly increased paroxysmally, and also frequently intensified by food, coughing, deep breathing, movement, or the supine position; corresponding deep tenderness; nausea and vomiting, in some cases of a severe character; various digestive disturbances, the tongue, however, being often quite clean; jaundice, frequently intense; the passage of much fat in the stools, the bowels being usually constipated; the presence of a tumour having the characters already described; accompanied with great general wasting, anaemia, debility, and lowness of spirits. As showing the irregular and ill-defined clinical history of cases of this disease, I may state from my own observation that there may be no pain or tenderness from first to last; that symptoms due to biliary obstruction may be the only prominent phenomena throughout; that it may be impossible to detect any tumour; and certainly that excess of fat in the stools is by-no-means always observed.

Among exceedingly rare morbid formations which have been found in the pancreas are mentioned *lymphoma* or *lympho-sarcoma*, *tubercle*, and *syphilitic gummatæ*.

5. PANCREATIC CYSTS.—These sometimes gain a considerable size, so that they can be recognized during life. In such cases a history of definite local injury can often be traced, but different views are held as to their mode of origin. The walls of a pancreatic cyst may become more or less thick and firm. *Clinically*, when sufficiently large, it may be recognized as a deep-seated tumour in the upper region of the abdomen, tending more towards the left side; rounded or globular in shape; and smooth on the surface. It moves to some degree with respiration, but is not influenced by manipulation. The tumour generally feels firm and tense, or elastic, but not distinctly fluctuating. It may be accompanied with pain, jaundice, and wasting. By careful aspiration it may be possible to obtain some of the contained fluid from the cyst. This has a sp. gr. of 1010 to 1020; is usually turbid; and greenish or brownish in colour, but occasionally clear and limpid, or opalescent and white; and alkaline in reaction. It contains albumin; usually mucin and a sugar-ferment; and sometimes tyrosin, blood-pigment, and a trace of urea. It is free from succinic acid. The fluid may be capable of emulsifying fats. Serious or fatal haemorrhage may take place into the interior of a pancreatic cyst; or in rare instances it has ruptured into the stomach or duodenum.

6. HEMORRHAGE.—A sudden haemorrhagic infiltration of the pancreas and certain neighbouring structures is of rare occurrence, and

is chiefly important from a medico-legal point of view. It takes place in a healthy person, and without any obvious cause. The symptoms are severe and increasing pain in the upper part of the abdomen, with tenderness; marked gastric disturbance; tympanites sometimes; increasing restlessness, anxiety, and depression; and speedy collapse. The temperature is usually normal or subnormal. Death may take place suddenly.

Diagnosis.—It must be acknowledged that the diagnosis of diseases of the pancreas is in the large majority of cases very difficult, and often impossible. The *acute* affections are seldom positively recognized, though they may be suspected. The conditions of the faces and urine may also indicate the probable presence of some *chronic* lesion, particularly the cirrhotic change. The disease of the pancreas most likely to be diagnosed, however, is cancer. The chief diseases for which this condition is liable to be mistaken are affections of the stomach, especially in the vicinity of the pylorus; of the duodenum; or of the liver. The paroxysms of pain may closely resemble those associated with the passage of a gall-stone. Occasionally, by pressing on the abdominal aorta, scirrhous of the pancreas gives rise to pulsation and bruit, simulating an aneurism. Whenever any of the symptoms mentioned are complained of, and especially jaundice coming on without any obvious cause, pancreatic disease should always be borne in mind. I believe that it not uncommonly escapes recognition simply because it is never thought of. An important step towards a definite and positive diagnosis consists in excluding as far as possible affections of all neighbouring structures. It must be remembered that the liver is liable to be enlarged, as the result of obstruction of the bile-duct associated with pancreatic disease. *Physical examination* is of essential value in diagnosis, and in doubtful and obscure cases it should be thoroughly carried out again and again, by which means a satisfactory conclusion may in some instances be arrived at in course of time. A *pancreatic cyst* may possibly be recognized by physical examination, and by testing the action of the fluid removed by aspiration.

Prognosis is always serious if there is any ground for believing that the pancreas is organically affected. The acute lesions are very grave as a rule. Malignant disease is necessarily fatal, and seldom of long duration. Pancreatic cyst has been cured by surgical treatment in several cases.

Treatment is generally *symptomatic* in cases of pancreatic disease, directed especially against pain, vomiting, constipation, jaundice, loss of flesh and strength, anaemia, and debility. In *acute* cases hot fomentations or poultices, applications of ice, or a few leeches may be of service. The administration of sweetbreads as an article of diet, of pancreatic emulsion or extract, or of liquor pancreatins or pancreatin, as artificial digestants, may be very useful in pancreatic diseases, or where the secretion is deficient. Pancreatized foods are also valuable. A *pancreatic cyst* is generally treated by abdominal section and drainage.

CHAPTER LVII.

DISEASE OF THE SUPRA-RENAL CAPSULES—
ADDISON'S DISEASE.

Etiology and Pathology.—Dr. Addison first drew attention to a series of symptoms which he believed were associated with disease of the supra-renal bodies, one of the most prominent being a peculiar discoloration or *bronzing of the skin*. Since his time the subject has been investigated by the late Dr. Greenhow and many other observers.

The first question to be determined is, whether any relation exists between the phenomena of so-called *Addison's disease* and any morbid condition of the *supra-renal capsules*? Greenhow maintained that there is such a relationship, but others deny this. With regard to the *bronzing of the skin*, which, however, is by-no-means the most important or even an essential symptom of Addison's disease, this has been described as being present in cases where there was no supra-renal mischief; but Greenhow affirmed that the discoloration in such instances is different from true bronzing. On the other hand, supra-renal disease has been frequently noticed where there was no bronzing, which might be accounted for in some instances by the fact that this symptom appears at a comparatively late period, and that the progress of the complaint may be so rapid as to terminate in death before the discoloration could be developed. But, further, this leads to the question of the *nature* of the lesion of the supra-renal capsules in Addison's disease. Some suppose that its phenomena may be due to any morbid condition of these organs; but Greenhow held that they are only observed in connection with a *special* lesion, which will be presently described. As to the *mode* in which disease of the supra-renal capsules produces these effects, the view generally held is that it is through the implication of certain important nerves and ganglia, and not from interference with or abolition of the functions of these organs. They have themselves a large supply of nerves, which are intimately connected with the trunk of the sympathetic in the abdomen, as well as with the phrenic and pneumogastric nerves. The morbid changes which affect the supra-renal capsules also tend to involve the nerves in their vicinity, and may even extend so far as to implicate the semilunar ganglia and solar plexus. The nerve-lesions are of the nature of perineuritis, atrophy, and pigmentation. It is affirmed that bronzing of the skin has been found in connection with enlargement of the retro-peritoneal absorbent glands, which surrounded and compressed the solar plexus, the supra-renal capsules being perfectly healthy. The nerve-lesions have been considered by some observers as arising *primarily*, and as being altogether independent of supra-renal mischief.

Another view is that the phenomena of Addison's disease are actually due to the destruction of the supra-renal bodies. Dr. MacMunn, as the result of his spectroscopic observations on the blood and urine, has advanced the opinion that the function of these organs is to separate

effete pigments and their accompanying proteids. Foa and Pellicani have found that the adrenals contain a very active poison, and MacMunn suggests that this may be the proteid part of the pigment molecule which it is the function of these bodies to pick out and metamorphose into a harmless body. When they are diseased, the effete pigments and proteids circulate in the blood; the former, or their incomplete metabolites, producing pigmentation of the skin and mucous membranes, and appearing often in the urine as uro-hæmato-porphyrin: the latter producing toxic effects, and leading to further deterioration of blood, with its consequences.

With respect to the *exciting cause* of the special supra-renal lesion, Greenhow maintained that it is frequently due to the extension of inflammation from diseased or injured adjacent parts. It has also been referred in some instances to a severe strain, blow, or physical shock, usually affecting the back; to over-exertion; to nervous shock, grief, or anxiety; and to intermittent fever. Individual cases have been met with associated with syphilis and leprosy, phthisis, diabetes mellitus, and exophthalmic goitre.

There are some important *predisposing causes* of Addison's disease. It is much more frequent among males than females; is found chiefly in those employed in active manual labour, and especially in connection with those occupations which entail exposure to bodily injury from accident or over-exertion; and is almost confined to the laborious periods of life, though it may occur even in childhood. There may be a predisposing *constitutional condition* in some instances.

Anatomical Characters.—The supra-renal bodies may be the seat of the following morbid changes:—1. *Acute inflammation*, ending in suppuration. 2. *Tubercle*. 3. *Cancer*, always secondary, and usually of the soft variety. 4. *Albuminous disease*. 5. *Fibroid degeneration*, with hardening. 6. *Fatty degeneration*. 7. *Atrophy*. 8. *Haemorrhage*. 9. *Peculiar alterations associated with Addison's disease*. These were formerly believed to be the result of a *chronic inflammatory process*, affecting both supra-renal capsules; the morbid condition is now generally regarded as being of a *tubercular* nature, and tubercle bacilli have been found in some cases. The affected organs are usually enlarged, firm, and nodulated; though in rare cases they are normal or diminished in size. In the early stage of the disease they are invaded by a softish, semi-translucent, greyish or greenish-grey, apparently homogeneous substance, which on exposure to the air assumes a pinkish hue. This becomes firmer, and undergoes caseous degeneration, giving rise to yellowish, opaque, cheesy nodules; or, not uncommonly, forming a creamy or purulent-looking fluid, varying in thickness, and occupying either one large cavity in the centre of the capsule, or, more frequently, several small cavities. Sometimes calcification follows, cretaceous granules or small masses being formed, or a putty-like material, or finally a dry chalky mass. The grey material and the products of degeneration are always found associated together, though in very variable proportions, and gradations may be seen from one to the other. Under the microscope the former is observed to consist of a fibrillated stroma containing numerous lymphoid corpuscles; while the caseous masses are made up of altered cells, nuclei, granular matter, and fat. In many cases there is great thickening of the covering of the capsules, with extensive proliferation of the surrounding cellular tissue, and the formation of firm adhesions to adjacent parts: the nerves become thus

invested in a dense indurated tissue, and their fibrous investment has also been found hypertrophied.

Other morbid appearances have been described in individual cases of Addison's disease, including enlargement of the neighbouring absorbent glands, which are either normal in structure, or firm, glistening, pale, and in process of caseation; enlargement of the solitary glands of the small intestines, and sometimes of the large; mammillation, small ecchymoses, superficial erosions, or small ulcers in the stomach; atrophy of the mucous coat of the alimentary canal, with degeneration of its glands; and enlargement of the spleen, which may be considerable, the organ being usually dark-coloured and soft.

Symptoms.—One of the most prominent clinical phenomena of Addison's disease consists in a *peculiar cachexia*, which sets in gradually and indefinitely without any obvious cause, characterized by increasing muscular debility, languor, and indisposition for any bodily or mental effort, at last amounting to extreme prostration; an aspect of listlessness and depression; marked anaemia, the sclerotics being pearly-white; wasting, but not to any degree, nor is it always observed, while there is in some cases a peculiar tendency to the formation of adipose tissue, the subcutaneous fat being very abundant; remarkable feebleness of the heart's action, the pulse becoming very soft, weak, and compressible, there being also a tendency to giddiness and faintness, sometimes amounting to prolonged attacks of syncope, and to palpitation on exertion, with breathlessness. Another characteristic feature is a gradual *discoloration of the skin*, which assumes the so-called *bronzed* appearance. This appears at very variable periods in different cases, and is due mainly to the presence of yellowish-brown pigment-granules in the *rete mucosum*, or occasionally of pigment-cells. Traces of pigment may also be found in the superficial layers of the epidermis, with pigment-granules here and there in the cutis. The exact hue varies, and it becomes darker by degrees. It often resembles that of the mulatto, but may be simply dingy or smoky-brown, yellowish-brown, greenish-brown, greyish-black, or almost black. It extends all over the body, but is never uniform throughout, usually commencing and being most marked over exposed parts, such as the face and neck; on the upper extremities; in the axillæ; and about the penis, scrotum, and navel. It shades off gradually, but where the skin has been injured or irritated, this part becomes much darker and presents defined margins. The palms and soles sometimes exhibit spots of pigment. The *mucous membranes* are also discoloured, the lips in some instances assuming a mulberry hue; or irregular and ill-defined spots and patches of pigment being observed upon them, as well as on the inside of the cheeks and on the gums, with dark streaks opposite the angles of the mouth. A peculiar pigment has also been described in the *structures of the eye*, as seen with the ophthalmoscope, but the conjunctiva always remain normal. In addition to these symptoms there is usually more or less *pain in the epigastrium*, which is in some cases extremely severe; and *irritability of the stomach*, with nausea, retching, or vomiting, which may be urgent and irrepressible. Other digestive disorders are also common, appetite being lost; and obstinate diarrhoea sometimes sets in without any obvious cause, though constipation is the rule. The tongue is usually red and moist. Pain in the loins is often complained of. Frequently one or both hypochondria feel tender; and Dr. Greenhow noticed sometimes a rigidity of the abdominal muscles, as if they were instinctively contracted to protect deep-seated parts from pressure.

The course of Addison's disease is slow and chronic as a rule, but it is often subject to remarkable remissions, with improvement in the symptoms, and subsequent exacerbations. In exceptional instances the progress is acute and rapid; or the disease may be latent for a long time, and then run a very rapid course. Death generally results from gradual asthenia, there being towards the close frequent sighing or yawning, with persistent hiccup. The mind is in many cases clear to the last, but the patient may be drowsy or semi-comatose, or grave nervous phenomena may supervene. The temperature is usually low throughout, but towards the close it falls considerably, the skin being cool or cold; and the patient feels cold. The urine is often diminished; of low specific gravity; and deficient in solids.

Diagnosis.—Should symptoms of progressively failing health and general cachexia appear, without any evident organic mischief to account for them, Addison's disease ought always to be borne in mind. When under such circumstances the bronzing appears, there should be no doubt respecting the nature of the complaint. It may be mentioned that pigmentation of the skin, which might possibly be mistaken for that of Addison's disease, may be associated with pregnancy, syphilis, exophthalmic goitre rarely, other chronic wasting diseases, hepatic conditions, and uterine disorders. The effects of exposure, or of vermin on the skin, must also not be forgotten. In rare instances melanotic cancer may simulate Addison's disease.

Prognosis is very grave, the disease always ending fatally, but the duration may be very prolonged.

Treatment.—All that can be done in Addison's disease is to promote the general health and strength by means of a highly nutritious diet; by the administration of tonics, especially quinine, arsenic, tincture of perchloride or syrup of the phosphate of iron, strychnine, and cod-liver oil; by attention to hygienic measures; and by maintaining the alimentary canal in good order. Rest, and the avoidance of all bodily and mental excitement, are also important elements in treatment. Some patients do best on a milk diet. Symptoms must be attended to as they arise, especially sickness and diarrhoea.

CHAPTER LVIII.

DISEASES OF THE URINARY ORGANS.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA.

1. **THE morbid sensations** connected with the urinary organs may be referred to one or both lumbar regions; to the ureters; to the hypogastrium; or to the perinaeum or some other part in the course of the urethra. They chiefly include different kinds of pain, tenderness, uneasiness, a sense of fulness or tension, heat or burning along the urethra, and itching or tickling at the end of the penis. With respect to pain, it is important to ascertain whether it is increased by movement of the body, especially by sudden jolts, as after walking, jumping, riding, or driving; if it is affected by the act of micturition, being either relieved or intensified, or even only complained of during or after this act; and

if it is influenced by any special articles of food or drink. Not uncommonly a sympathetic pain is felt running along the spermatic cord to the testis; and this organ may be retracted in certain attacks connected with the kidney.

2. The **act of micturition** is often affected. The principal deviations from the normal are *irritability*, indicated by a too frequent or almost constant desire to pass water, sometimes coming on suddenly, so that the patient cannot retain the urine for an instant, or, on the other hand, being associated with more or less dysuria or strangury; simple *dysuria*, or difficulty of micturition, even to complete retention; and *incontinence*, the urine coming away involuntarily, either constantly or only at times, and especially at night during sleep—*nocturnal incontinence*. The stream of urine may present abnormal characters. The amount passed may also vary greatly from the standard of health, being either diminished more or less to actual suppression—*oliguria*, *anuria*, or *ischuria*; or increased—*polyuria*.

3. Important symptoms frequently associated with certain urinary affections result from the **abnormal state of the blood** which they induce, of which the most prominent are *anaemia* and *dropsy*; and the phenomena grouped under the term *uremia*, which will be presently discussed in detail. Other general symptoms may arise in connection with these complaints, such as pyrexia, septicæmia, wasting, or collapse; and they may also cause sympathetic disturbance of remote organs.

4. When the kidney is enlarged, it occasionally gives rise to symptoms by causing **pressure** upon adjoining structures.

5. **Rupture** of any portion of the urinary apparatus will occasion serious consequences, especially when this event is followed by extravasation of urine.

II. SPECIAL EXAMINATION.

Special examination in connection with the urinary organs includes :—
I. **Examination of the Urine.** II. **Investigation for Renal Tumour.**
III. **Examination directed to the Bladder and Urethra**, by external methods; by the use of the catheter, sound, or endoscope; and through the rectum or vagina. For an account of the special examination of the bladder and urethra reference must be made to surgical treatises, but it will be desirable to point out in this work the physical signs of a distended bladder. It should also be mentioned that in certain cases of renal disease it is very important to examine the *heart* and *arteries*; and to make use of the *ophthalmoscope*.

A. EXAMINATION OF THE URINE.

Examination of the urine is of the greatest importance, and is even at the present day but too much neglected as a routine practice. It gives valuable information in other affections besides those directly associated with the urinary organs, and in the following pages an attempt is made to give a concise outline of the clinical investigation of this excretion. It need scarcely be remarked that a previous knowledge is requisite of the characters of the urine in health, as well as of its chemical composition, with the average proportion of its chief constituents, and the main physiological variations to which they are liable; the changes which the urine undergoes on standing after its discharge must also be remembered and taken into account.

1. General Examination.

The first thing to be done with any specimen of urine is to observe its *physical characters*, including colour and general aspect; degree of clearness or turbidity; consistence; characters of the froth on shaking; odour; specific gravity; and presence or absence of any deposit. It is often of much importance to measure the quantity passed in the twenty-four hours; and in making quantitative analyses, a specimen from a mixture of the whole of this urine should be employed. Then the *reaction* should be taken, this being done as a rule as soon as possible after the urine has been passed, by means of turmeric, and blue or violet-tinted litmus papers. Should the urine be alkaline, it is requisite to determine whether this reaction is due to fixed alkali or to ammonia, by drying the test-paper in the open-air, when, if the alkalinity depends on ammonia, it is restored to its original colour. Further, it is very important, should the urine be ammoniacal, to ascertain whether it is discharged in this condition, or if the ammonia results from subsequent decomposition, and how soon this substance is produced. The *specific gravity* is usually ascertained by means of the *urinometer*. Dr. Oliver employs marked *urinometer beads* for this purpose.

2. Chemical Examination.

This is carried out with a view of determining:—*a*. The presence and proportion of certain *normal constituents* of urine, especially urea, uric acid, chlorides, phosphates, sulphates, and colouring matters. *b*. The presence and quantity of *abnormal organic ingredients*, chiefly bile, albumin, sugar, pus, and fat. *c*. The nature of any *deposit*. *d*. The admixture of various poisons or other substances *introduced from without*, such as lead or arsenic, or different vegetable agents.

1. UREA.—The usual **qualitative** test for urea consists in adding pure nitric acid to some urine carefully concentrated by evaporation in a water-bath, when a crystalline precipitate of nitrate of urea is thrown down, the crystals of which appear under the microscope as flat rhombic or hexagonal plates. When urea is present in large quantity, the mere addition of nitric acid to urine in a test-tube will cause a crystalline precipitate to form. **Quantitative estimation.**—An approximate knowledge of the amount of urea excreted daily, sufficient for ordinary clinical purposes, is obtained by collecting the whole of the urine passed in the twenty-four hours, and taking the specific gravity of a mixed specimen, provided it does not contain sugar or albumin. For accurate determination the *volumetric method* of Liebig is that generally employed. It depends upon the fact that urea forms with mercuric nitrate a precipitate of definite composition. For this process three solutions are required, namely:—1. One consisting of a volume of cold saturated solution of barytic nitrate with two volumes of saturated baryta-water. 2. A standard solution of mercuric nitrate. 3. A solution of carbonate of sodium, about gr. xx to $\frac{5}{3}$ i. A measured quantity of the urine is first mixed with half its bulk of the baryta solution, in order to precipitate the sulphates and phosphates, which are then separated by filtration, a drop or two of the filtrate being further tested in order to see that these ingredients are entirely removed, and if they

are not, more baryta solution must be added. A certain quantity of the filtrate is then taken, and the mercurial solution very cautiously dropped into it from a graduated burette, until it begins to become turbid, the amount required to produce this effect being noted. No precipitate falls until all the chloride of sodium present has been decomposed, and the quantity required for this purpose must be subtracted in the subsequent calculations from the total volume added. As soon as a precipitate forms, the mercurial solution is to be allowed to flow in freely at first, and afterwards again gradually, the mixture being stirred with a glass rod. In order to ascertain when the whole of the urea has been precipitated, a little of the carbonate of sodium solution is placed on a white porcelain surface, and a drop of the precipitated mixture added to it by the aid of a glass rod; as soon as a yellow tinge is produced, it indicates that the whole of the urea has been thrown down. The matter then becomes merely one of calculation, the mercurial solution being of such a strength that each cubic centimeter used *after the decomposition of the chlorides* corresponds to 0·01 gramme of urea.

Another mode of estimating urea quantitatively is founded upon the decomposition of this substance, and the liberation of nitrogen. The volume of this gas is then measured, and the proportion of urea present is calculated therefrom. The decomposition is effected by means of hydrobromite of sodium, or solution of chlorinated soda, and various forms of apparatus are used, but for a description of these reference must be made to special works.

2. URIC ACID.—The chief test for the presence of uric acid is to place a small quantity of the substance supposed to contain it on a porcelain dish; add a little nitric acid; evaporate over a spirit-lamp until a yellowish-red residue is left; and finally touch this residue when cold with a glass rod dipped in solution of caustic ammonia. A characteristic bright violet colour is immediately brought out, due to the production of *murexid*. To obtain the acid from urine, it is requisite to add excess of strong hydrochloric or acetic acid to a specimen of this fluid, and to let it stand for twenty-four hours. The uric acid is then precipitated in a crystalline form, and may be tested as above. This is also the method usually followed for its **quantitative estimation**, though it is not very accurate, a measured quantity of urine being taken, and the precipitate collected on a weighed filter, which is afterwards dried and again weighed.

3. INORGANIC ACIDS.—With regard to the inorganic acids, it must suffice to state that phosphoric acid is best recognized by the ammonio-magnesium test; hydrochloric acid by argentic nitrate; and sulphuric acid by barytic nitrate. The **quantitative estimation** of these substances presents so many practical difficulties, and their proportion is liable to so many variations from different causes, that its consideration would be quite beyond the province of this work.

4. COLOURING MATTERS.—The precise nature and number of the normal colouring matters of the urine are still uncertain. In an ordinary way their amount is determined by the appearance of the urine, which is described as "pale," "normal," "high-coloured," etc. The proportion of the normal pigments in different specimens is influenced by various physiological and pathological conditions; while abnormal colouring matters are not uncommonly present, which will now be briefly noticed.

In one class of cases the appearance of the urine is modified by the presence of some definite *colouring material*. Blood and bile-pigments

are often present in this fluid, but they will be specially considered. Certain drugs are also liable to affect the colour of the urine. Thus rhubarb and senna impart a deep brownish-yellow colour, due to chrysophanic acid, which becomes bright-red on the addition of an alkali; this colour disappears when an acid is added. *Hematoxylum* gives a red tinge; and *santonin* may make the urine bright-yellow or greenish, which changes to orange-colour, cherry-red, or purple when ammonia is added, these colours being discharged by an acid. Carbolic acid and creasote, even when absorbed after their local application, are liable to cause the urine to assume a dark greenish-brown or almost black colour, due to the presence of oxidation-products of hydrochinon and other substances. *Gamboge* may also colour the urine yellow. During the administration of iodide or bromide of potassium, the addition of nitric acid may darken the urine, owing to the liberation of free iodine or bromine.

In another class of cases *abnormal pigments* are found in the urine, which are formed within the body under certain pathological conditions. Of these the most important are *febrile* or *pathological urobilin* (MacMunn), derived from bile-pigments and haematin, and said by this observer to be indistinguishable from *stercobilin*; *uroerythrin* or *purpurin*, which is the colouring matter associated with pink urates; and *hematoporphyrin*, produced entirely from haematin. Dr. Archibald Garrod has found that traces of the last-mentioned pigment are extremely common in the urine in both health and disease, and that it is frequently present in fair amount without producing any special coloration in the urine.

A third group of cases are those in which the urine contains *chromogens*, which do not at once colour it, but from which a colour is developed, either after standing for a time, or on the addition of oxidizing agents. Thus there is a chromogen of *febro-urobilin*, recognized in the febrile urine by the addition of nitric acid; and another occasionally present in anaemia, the pale urine yielding a deep-red colour with nitric acid. *Melanin* also belongs to this group, which is a black pigment developed from a chromogen, after exposure or by the addition of nitric acid, in patients suffering from melanotic sarcoma. One of the most important is *indican*, which is the chromogen of *indigo-blue*. It is derived from indol, which is formed by pancreatic digestion of albumen in the intestine, and indican will appear in abundance in the urine when this substance is injected subcutaneously. It is present in small quantity in healthy urine; when in excess the urine is dark-yellow, and yields indigo-blue to certain processes. This change may occur spontaneously during decomposition of urine, a glistening dark-blue film forming on its surface. In most instances, but not always, the addition of nitric acid develops the colour of indigo, as dark violet, dark greenish-blue, or almost black. The most reliable test seems to be to add an equal quantity of fuming hydrochloric acid to some urine in a test-tube, and then a concentrated solution of chloride of lime drop by drop, until the blue colour is fully developed. If this mixture be shaken up with chloroform, the latter dissolves the indigo, and sinks to the bottom of the test-tube. The supernatant liquid remains reddish or purplish, probably from the presence of indigo-red. Excess of indican seems to be most important clinically as an indication of obstruction of the small intestine, and is said to help to distinguish this condition from obstruction of the large bowel. It has been noticed also in hepatic and gastric cancer,

Addison's disease, lymphadenoma, phthisis, tabes mesenterica, and cholera. Indican is said to be present in considerable quantity in the urine in tropical climates; and to be increased by turpentine, oil of bitter almonds, and *nux vomica*.

5. ALBUMENS—PROTEIDS.—Of late years the detection of proteid bodies in the urine has become somewhat complicated, and for fuller details the reader is referred to Dr. Sidney Martin's writings on the subject. He divides them into:—1, *Albumin* (serum-albumin, egg-albumin); 2, *Globulin* (paraglobulin, serum-globulin, fibrino-plastin); 3, *Albumoses* (hemialbumose, propepton); 4, *Peptones*. Here it will only be practicable to consider the chief tests for albumins; and to refer briefly to the other substances mentioned.

The two tests usually employed for the detection of albuminuria are *heat* and *nitric acid*.

a. The **heat-test** is best performed by placing some urine in a test-tube, and heating its upper portion by means of the spirit-lamp, this portion being then compared with the lower part, and thus the slightest opalescence can be detected. There are some important precautions to be observed. 1. It is essential to see that the urine is duly acidulated. Sir William Roberts gives the following directions on this point:—"A test-tube is charged with about three drachms (10 c.c.) of urine, and to this is added a single drop of acetic acid (B.P.). If the urine be alkaline, it should first be carefully neutralized by adding successive drops of acetic acid until the litmus-paper shows a distinct but slight acidity, and then the final single drop of acid is added before boiling. By using this small and definite quantity of acid the precipitation of mucin is almost entirely avoided; and also the risk of preventing the precipitation of albumin by the use of too much acid." 2. The portion of urine employed should be quite transparent and clear, and if there is any permanent turbidity, the urine ought to be filtered; when this is due to urates, however, all that is necessary is to pass the tube a few times along the flame, when the urates are immediately dissolved, and then the upper part may be further heated. 3. The portion which is being tested must be boiled, because, should the proportion of albumin be small, it is only then that cloudiness is observed. The rapidity of coagulation is in proportion to the quantity of albumin present. 4. After heating, it is well to add a drop or two of nitric acid, because, if the urine is only faintly acid, earthy phosphates may be precipitated, and thus give rise to turbidity. These salts, however, are immediately dissolved by the acid.

b. The addition of **nitric acid** to cold urine by the *contact-method* of Heller, is, with certain precautions, a very delicate test for albumin, and Sir William Roberts regards it as that best adapted for clinical work. In performing this test the usual plan is to place some urine in a test-tube, incline the latter, and gradually pour strong nitric acid down along its inner surface, so that, owing to its higher specific gravity, the acid may sink to the bottom of the tube without mixing with the urine. Or some of the acid may be placed in the tube, and the urine poured upon it. In order to perform this test delicately, however, the acid should be introduced by means of a pipette. Near the junction of the two liquids more or less turbidity is observed, which gradually spreads upwards through the stratum of urine. When a urine containing both albumin and mucin is tested by this method, the albumin is thrown down just above the line of junction of the two fluids, while

the mucin is brought into view towards the upper part of the column of urine, where it gradually forms a diffused haze, quite distinct from the opalescent zone at the line of junction (W. Roberts). The chief fallacies relating to the nitric acid test are as follows:—1. If only a very little acid is added to the urine, the albumin may not be precipitated at all; and, on the other hand, if a considerable quantity is suddenly mixed with it, the same result may follow, even though there is much albumin present. The solubility in excess of nitric acid applies only to serum-albumin, from which egg-albumin is distinguished by the coagulum being insoluble in excess. 2. Cloudiness may not be observed at once if the proportion of albumin is very small, and therefore it is desirable to wait in doubtful cases for a few minutes—from 15 to 30 at the most—for a possible reaction to take place. 3. If the urine is highly concentrated, the addition of nitric acid is liable to cause precipitation of urates; in this case, however, the cloudiness begins *at the surface* of the urine, and extends downwards, while heat at once dissolves the precipitate. 4. When there is great excess of urea, nitric acid may cause its precipitation, but this usually occurs very slowly, and the deposit is crystalline. 5. Opalescence of urine may be due to the patient taking cubeb or copaiba, and this is sometimes increased by adding nitric acid. These ingredients, however, are recognized by their odour; and by the effects of heat, which diminishes the opalescence, and prevents any turbidity with nitric acid.

Sir William Roberts has suggested a modification of the nitric acid test, a mixture being used consisting of one volume of strong nitric acid with five volumes of a saturated solution of sulphate of magnesium. Amongst other advantages, this mixture does not fume, or stain, or burn the fingers or garments; and can be carried about in a corked bottle with much less risk.

c. **Picric Acid** is regarded by Sir George Johnson as the most trustworthy and sensitive test for albumin, being a most delicate albumin-precipitant. It may be used either as a saturated solution, or as a powder or crystals. When unmixed with other agents, he affirms that picric acid gives no reaction with mucin. The only precipitates which it may produce are urates, peptones, and vegetable alkaloids, but these are readily and completely redissolved by heat. Dr. Oliver recommends a mixture of citric acid in the picric solution (5ij dissolved in 5i).

d. It must suffice to enumerate the other principal tests employed for detecting albuminuria, namely:—a saturated solution of *potassium ferrocyanide*, the urine being freely acidulated by *citric acid* (Pavy); *acidulated brine* (W. Roberts); a standard solution of *potassio-mercuric iodide*, the urine being strongly acidified with *acetic* or *citric acid*; *sodium tungstate*; and *metaphosphoric acid*, which is a very complete precipitant of albumin.

Portable Tests.—The introduction of portable tests for the urine has proved of much clinical value. For the detection of albumin Sir George Johnson employs the powder of picric acid in this way. Dr. Pavy uses *test-pellets*, composed of sodium ferrocyanide and citric acid. Dr. Oliver, of Harrogate, some years ago introduced *test-papers*. These are made with potassio-mercuric iodide, sodium tungstate, potassium ferrocyanide, and picric acid respectively. He also makes use of separate papers of citric acid; and compound papers, containing this ingredient with some of the others just mentioned. For full instructions respecting

the employment of these tests the reader is referred to Dr. Oliver's work "On Bedside Urine Testing."

Quantitative examination.—For ordinary clinical purposes, a sufficiently exact estimation of the amount of albumin present in a specimen of urine may be obtained by adding a little acetic acid to some of it in a test-tube, boiling, and then setting aside until the coagulated particles have all subsided, when the depth of the deposit can be compared with that of the urine, the proportion being expressed as "almost solid," $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, etc., or as mere "cloudiness" or "a trace." Sometimes the precipitate from a measured quantity of the urine is collected on a weighed filter, which is then washed, dried, and again weighed.

Another method of estimating the amount of albumin in urine is the *dilution method* of Sir William Roberts. It consists in diluting the albuminous urine with water, until it gives a faint but distinct reaction with nitric acid in between half and three-quarters of a minute after the contact of the acid. Each dilution with an equal volume of water is counted as a "degree of albumen," and such degree corresponds to 0·0034 per cent. or 0·0148 grain per fluid ounce: from this the total amount of albumin may be calculated. The operation is a delicate one, and should be performed in daylight.

Oliver employs his test-papers for the quantitative estimation of albumin in urine, and he thinks the potassio-mercuric iodide is the most suitable. Another method is by Esbach's *albuminometer*, in which a mixture of picric and citric acid is used to precipitate the albumin. The effect of albumin on the *polarization of light* has also been made use of to determine its quantity in urine.

Before estimating the amount of urea and other urinary constituents, it is requisite to remove any albumin present, by carefully acidulating with acetic acid, heating *just to the boiling point*, and filtering.

VARIETIES OF PROTEIDS.—The tests thus far discussed apply more particularly to *serum-albumin*, which is the kind usually present in urine. A few remarks will now be offered with regard to the other proteid bodies. *Egg-albumin*, which is precipitated by heat and nitric acid, is distinguished from serum-albumin by the addition of ether, which coagulates it. Martin, however, states that before this test is applied, certain proteids ought to be separated from the urine, by saturating it with neutral ammonium sulphate, by which albumins, paraglobulin, and albumoses are completely precipitated, while peptones remain in solution. The precipitate, which rises to the surface, is removed by filtration, and redissolved in a small quantity of distilled water. This solution can then be tested for the several proteids which may be present; and the peptones are to be looked for in the filtrate. The tests for the several substances not yet considered will now be briefly indicated.

Paraglobulin is distinguished by the following tests:—1. It is precipitated on acidulating and boiling, the precipitate being insoluble in excess of acid. 2. Saturation with magnesium sulphate produces a white flocculent precipitate. 3. Add a drop of a 1 per cent. solution of sulphate of copper, and then an excess of liquor potassæ. A violet colour is produced (ordinary proteid reaction).

Albumoses.—These are bodies formed during peptic digestion, and regarded as intermediate between globulin and albumin on the one hand, and peptone on the other. Those derived from globulin have been termed "globuloses." Three kinds are recognized, namely, hetero-,

proto-, and deutero-albumose. Hetero-albumose is probably identical with Bence Jones's albumin, and Kulme's hemialbumose. This is the only kind which can usually be definitely found in urine, proto-albumose not having yet been met with, and deutero-albumose is generally classed with "peptonuria." The characteristic tests of hetero-albumose in urine are as follows:—1. Heat, *without the addition of acid*, precipitates it, but at a lower temperature than albumin or paraglobulin, namely, between 109·4° and 122° F., and it re-dissolves on boiling. 2. If to the *cold* urine nitric acid be added drop by drop, a precipitate is formed, which dissolves on heating, is re-precipitated on cooling, re-dissolves on again heating, and so on. This is a very characteristic test. Deutero-albumose only gives a precipitate with nitric acid after the addition of chloride of sodium. 3. A precipitate is formed with acetic acid and ferrocyanide of potassium. 4. With copper sulphate and excess of liquor potassæ a pink colour is produced (biuret reaction).

Peptones.—These give no precipitate with heat, nitric acid, or the ferrocyanic test. A precipitate is formed with picric acid, which is re-dissolved on heating. Dr. Martin recommends that peptones should be looked for in the filtrate after the removal of the other proteids by saturation with neutral ammonium sulphate. If they are present, the filtrate will give the following characteristic reactions:—1. The "biuret reaction," namely, a pinkish-red colour on addition of a drop of dilute solution of sulphate of copper and excess of liquor potassæ. 2. Add two or three drops of nitric acid, boil, and add liquor ammoniae after cooling; a brownish colour is produced. Another method of separating peptones is to concentrate the urine, and filter it into a large excess of alcohol. They are then thrown down, and may be collected on a filter and dissolved in water.

6. SUGAR.—*Glycose* or *grape-sugar* is the variety usually met with in urine. Pavy and others maintain that it is present in healthy urine, but usually the proportion of sugar is so minute as to be practically of no importance from a clinical point of view. *Inosit* or *muscle-sugar* is said to be found in some cases of renal disease and diabetes insipidus.

Before proceeding to test for grape-sugar, it is necessary to ascertain that there is no albumin present in the urine, and should there be any, it must first be got rid of. It has been recommended to filter urine thoroughly through animal charcoal before testing for sugar, and especially before estimating its quantity.

Qualitative tests.—(1). **Reduction-tests.** These are by far the most reliable, and depend upon the power which grape-sugar possesses of reducing certain metallic oxides to a lower degree of oxidation, or to the metallic state. A salt of *copper* is usually employed, *cupric oxide* being reduced to *cuprous oxide*, which falls as a precipitate. There are two chief modifications of this test, namely, *Trommer's* and *Fehling's*. *a. Trommer's.* A drop or two of a weak solution of *cupric sulphate* is added to some of the urine in a test-tube, and then about half its bulk of *liquor potassæ*, care being taken that sufficient of the latter is added to dissolve all the copper salt. On boiling this mixture, which should be quite clear and free from any precipitate, and of a bluish or bluish-green colour, an orange-red precipitate of cuprous oxide falls, which subsequently changes to reddish-brown. This method is for several reasons unsatisfactory, and *Fehling's* is much more reliable. *b. Fehling's.* Here a standard solution is made use of, composed of *cupric sulphate* (40 grammes); *potassic tartrate* (160

grammes); *liquor sode*, of sp. gr. 1·12 (750 grammes); with distilled water to 1154·5 cubic centimetres. This solution is very prone to decompose, racemic acid being produced from the tartaric, which also possesses the power of reducing cupric oxide, and therefore the test-liquid should be always kept in completely-filled and thoroughly-stopped bottles, in a cool and dark place. The proper mode of using this test-solution is as follows:—A drachm or two is placed in a tube, and heated over the spirit-lamp until it boils; if any decomposition has taken place, a precipitate of cuprous oxide will be thrown down in one or two minutes, and should this happen, the test-solution is unsatisfactory, and it is best to prepare a fresh specimen. When the solution is satisfactory, if the urine is supposed to contain a *considerable amount* of sugar, a drop or two of it is to be added while the solution is boiling, when a brick-red precipitate of cuprous oxide falls immediately, and if more urine is added the deposit becomes yellow. Care must be taken under these circumstances not to add too much urine, as great excess of sugar will cause the precipitate to be re-dissolved, producing a clear yellow solution. If there is only a *small proportion* of sugar present, the urine must be poured in until nearly as much as the quantity of test-solution employed has been added, but on no account must the quantity exceed an equal bulk. This mixture is again to be boiled, when, if a small quantity of sugar is present, it assumes an intense opaque yellowish-green appearance, and slowly a bright yellow deposit subsides. If there is no immediate precipitation, the mixture must be set aside in a warm place to cool gradually, when, if only a very minute proportion of sugar is present, the liquid by degrees loses its transparency, and assumes a light-greenish opacity or milkiness, which is quite characteristic (W. Roberts). It is highly important to avoid boiling for any length of time, as this is quite unnecessary, while uric acid, hippuric acid, and creatinine have the power of reducing cupric oxide after prolonged boiling.

Dr. Pavy employs a modification of Fehling's solution, which is more stable, and which contains the following ingredients:—*Sulphate of copper*, 320 grains; *potassic tartrate*, 640 grains; *caustic potash*, 1,280 grains; *distilled water*, 20 fluid ounces. He has *test-pellets* also made, which contain similar ingredients.

Dr. Walter Smith, of Dublin, speaks highly of Böttger's *bismuth-test*, and gives the following formula for the test-solution:—*Subnitrate of bismuth*, 15 grammes, dissolve in *pure glycerine*, 30 grammes, and *solution of sodium hydrate* (sp. gr. 1·34) 60-70 c.c.; dilute with water, 150-164 c.c. Heat to 212° Fahr. In employing this solution a little of it is added to the urine, which is then boiled for a few seconds. If sugar be present, the liquid first becomes brownish, then the white precipitate of hydrate of bismuth becomes grey, and rapidly deepens in tint, until the reduction precipitate is perfectly black. One fallacy to which this test is liable is the possible formation of a black precipitate of sulphide of bismuth in presence of sulphuretted organic compounds.

(2) **Moore's test.**—This test consists in mixing equal quantities of the suspected urine and of *liquor potassae* in a test-tube, and boiling the upper portion. A change of colour is observed to a more or less deep brown; or, if there is much sugar present, it may even become almost black. This is by no means a reliable test, for it cannot detect small quantities of sugar; while urine which is concentrated and high-coloured, or which contains excess of phosphates or much albumin, will become

darkened on boiling with liquor potassæ, and this is particularly the case with markedly albuminous urine, if the liquor potassæ should have become impregnated with lead from having been kept in glass bottles. Under certain circumstances, however, Moore's test may be found of decided service, and should not be entirely ignored.

(3) **Fermentation-test.**—A small quantity of German yeast is placed in a test-tube, which is then quite filled with the urine, inverted over a shallow dish or saucer containing some of the same liquid, and set aside in a warm place for some hours. If sugar is present fermentation goes on, and carbonic anhydride is set free, which collects at the top of the tube, gradually expelling the urine. The gas may be tested by a lighted taper. This is not a delicate test. Sir William Roberts makes use of the *loss of specific gravity* in the urine after having undergone this process, both for indicating the presence of sugar, and its amount.

(4) **Hassall's test.**—The late Dr. Hassall considered the growth of the yeast-plant (*tornula cerevisiae*) in urine, visible on microscopic examination, as certain evidence of the presence of sugar. There are several reasons why this test is not very practicable.

(5) **Johnson's test.**—Sir George Johnson speaks very highly of a test for sugar in the urine, which was first discovered by Braun in 1865, and which depends on the fact that when *picroic acid* and *liquor potassæ* are boiled with glucose, the acid is reduced to *picramic acid*, and a deep red colour is thus developed. He employs grain lumps of caustic potash along with picroic acid powder, in his portable apparatus for testing urine.

(6) **Indigo-carmine test.**—When carmine of indigo is heated with carbonate of sodium and saccharine urine, the blue colour is changed gradually into green, then into red, and finally into yellow. This test in an aqueous form does not seem to be reliable, but Dr. Oliver has prepared *test-papers* charged with the same definite quantity of the constituents, and of these he speaks very highly. When heat is applied to the test-papers in water, a fine blue solution is obtained. A characteristic series of changes of colour is observed when this is boiled with saccharine urine, the solution finally becoming of a straw colour.

(7) **Phenyl-hydrazine test.**—This test is very delicate, but takes some time to perform. It is carried out by boiling about 2 grains of phenyl-hydrazine hydrochlorate, and 3 or 4 grains of sodium acetate, with a drachm of urine in a test-tube for 20 or 30 minutes or more; and then cooling by immersion in cold water. A yellow deposit forms, presenting under the microscope clusters of fine crystalline needles.

Some of the fallacies connected with testing for sugar have already been pointed out, but a substance named *glycuronic acid* must be particularly referred to. It reacts to Fehling's and Böttger's tests, and is dextro-rotatory with the polariscope. It does not, however, yield the fermentation-test; and gives a brownish amorphous deposit with the phenyl-hydrazine test.

Quantitative estimation.—As regards diabetic urine, where a large quantity of sugar is passed daily, the specific gravity will give an approximate idea of the proportion discharged. For accurate analysis, however, the following are the chief methods adopted. 1. *Volumetric analysis.*—10 c.c. of Fehling's solution are placed in a flask and boiled, and some of the urine, either alone or diluted with a certain proportion of water, according to the amount of sugar present, is added by degrees from a graduated burette, until the blue colour has entirely disappeared,

which can be observed by holding the flask between the eye and the light after each addition, allowing it to stand for a minute, so that the sediment may subside. The above amount of the test-solution is decomposed by 1 grain of sugar, and from this the whole quantity of sugar excreted may be determined. 2. *Differential-density method.*—The loss of density in the urine after fermentation is considered by Sir William Roberts as giving very accurate information as to the quantity of sugar present. Each degree of density lost corresponds to 1 grain of sugar in every fluid ounce of urine. 3. The *polariscope* is sometimes employed to estimate the quantity of sugar, as well as its presence, provided the urine is transparent, this being determined by the degree to which the plane of polarization is rotated to the right (*dextrose*). 4. Sir George Johnson employs *picric acid* and *liquor potassie* to estimate sugar in urine quantitatively by means of his *Picro-saccharimeter*. 5. Dr. Oliver affirms that his *indigo-carmine test-papers* are available for this purpose.

7. **BILE.**—The following are the chief tests which are practised for the detection of bile in the urine:—

Gmelin's test.—This is employed for the purpose of indicating the presence of *bile-pigments*. It consists in bringing *strong nitric acid* into contact with the urine, when, if bile be present, a play of colours is developed, from green to violet, blue, and finally to red, which soon disappears. These changes in colour are due to the gradual oxidation of the biliary pigments. The green colour is the most characteristic, being dependent upon the formation of biliverdin, and it must be remembered that a reddish tint is brought out by nitric acid in most specimens of urine, while, if much indican is present, a blue or violet or even a green colour may be developed.

Gmelin's test may be performed either by placing a drop or two of the urine and acid separately on a white porcelain surface, and then causing them to come into contact; or by pouring a little nitric acid into a test-tube, and, holding this in an oblique position, allowing the urine to run gently down its interior, so that it may fall on to the surface of the acid. The succession of colours is observed at the junction of the two liquids. The urine may be placed in the tube first, and the acid poured in gradually, so that it sinks to the bottom.

Other agents have been employed for the purpose of bringing out the green colour in urine containing bile-pigments. Thus it may be developed by careful contact with tincture of iodine; or by mixing equal parts of urine and dilute solution of caustic potash, and adding a little hydrochloric acid. Huppert's test is said to be very delicate and reliable. An equal quantity of milk of lime is added, which carries down the bile-pigments. The supernatant fluid is decanted, and to the sediment alcohol, with which a small quantity of sulphuric acid has been mixed, is added. On gently warming the test-tube the precipitate is decolorised, and the fluid takes on a green tint.

Pettenkofer's test.—By this test the *bile-acids* are detected. It depends upon the development of a deep purple colour when these acids are acted upon by *cane sugar* and *strong sulphuric acid*. This reaction is, however, for several reasons most unreliable when applied to urine, and it has been affirmed that the bile-acids cannot be detected except when the two fluids have been purposely mixed.

A solution of commercial *peptone* has been used by Dr. Oliver to detect bile-salts in the urine, a precipitate forming, which, according to Halliburton, is due to a reaction between the bile-salts and albumose.

8. ACETONE.—It has been stated that traces of acetone may be present in normal urine. It is increased in certain conditions, but has especially to be looked for in cases of diabetic coma. The tests for this substance are as follows:—*a.* With perchloride of iron it gives a Burgundy-red colour. *b. Lieber's test.*—This is the most reliable, and consists in pouring the suspected urine upon a solution of iodide of potassium (gr. xx), in liquor potassæ (5*i.*), boiled together. Phosphates are precipitated, and if acetone be present, the deposit afterwards becomes yellow, from the formation of iodoform, which also falls in the form of yellow granules.

3. Microscopical Examination.

The objects which may be discovered in urine by the aid of the microscope include:—*a. Extraneous materials*, such as fragments of cotton-wool or flax, hairs, woody fibres, starch-granules, or oil-globules. *b. Unorganized particles*, crystalline or amorphous, including chiefly uric acid and urates, oxalate of lime, phosphates, fatty particles, cystine, xanthine, leucine, and tyrosine. *c. Organized bodies*, namely, renal or other epithelium, casts of various kinds, blood-corpuscles, pus-cells, cancer-cells, fragments of hydatids or other morbid growths, pigment, fat, spermatozoa, or micro-organisms, including vibriones, mould-fungus, torulæ, bacteria, bacilli, micrococci, spirilla, ova of bilharzia, and sarcinæ. In order to examine urinary deposits microscopically, a quantity of the urine must be set aside in a conical or cylindrical glass, the supernatant fluid being poured off after standing for two or three hours, and a drop of the sediment then placed on a glass slide, or this may be taken up by means of the pipette. Not uncommonly the microscope is also employed to examine deposits formed during chemical reactions; and, on the other hand, the effects of chemical reagents on objects observed under the microscope sometimes give valuable information.

4. Examination of Urinary Deposits.

It will be expedient now to consider deposits in urine separately, and to describe the chief characters by which those ordinarily met with are recognized. In examining such deposits, certain *general characters* must first be noticed, namely, their amount; colour and general aspect; mode of aggregation and deposition, whether amorphous, crystalline, or flocculent; and their apparent density and manner of precipitation, which may be observed by shaking up some of the specimen, and then allowing it to stand. Next they must be submitted to the action of *heat*; of *nitric* and *acetic acids*; and of *liquor potasse*, in order to test whether they are dissolved by these agents. Finally some of the sediment must be examined *microscopically*, with or without staining. The principal urinary deposits, with their main characters, are as follows:—

1. **Uric acid.**—Urine which deposits this substance is always very acid. Generally the uric acid is mixed with urates, and forms some time after the discharge of the urine. To the naked eye it is presented as more or less brown or brownish-red crystals, either forming a superficial film, adhering to the sides of the vessel, or falling as a heavy reddish deposit like brick-dust. The crystals are not soluble by heat or dilute acids, but they are dissolved by strong alkalies. Chemically

they may be recognized by the *murecid-test*. Microscopically they are distinguished by their colour and form, the latter being primarily that of a rhombic prism or lozenge with pointed ends, but the crystals present numerous diversities in shape, becoming ovoid or oval tablets, barrel-shaped, quadrangular, cubes, hexagonal, rod-like, stellate, rosette-like, etc. (Fig. 44.) If a drop of *liquor potassæ* is added, they are dissolved at once, but may be reprecipitated as hexagonal plates by adding a drop of *acetic acid*.

2. Urates.—These are very common urinary deposits, even in health. As a rule they appear as *amorphous urates*, which consist of the salts of potassium, sodium, ammonium, and lime, in variable proportions. The conditions favourable to their deposit are a high specific gravity, and very acid reaction of the urine; and a low temperature of the air. They form more or less speedily after the discharge of the urine. The precipitate is quite amorphous, pulverulent, and loose; sinks with tolerable rapidity; and presents a variable colour, such as milky, fawn, orange, pink, deep-red, or purplish, owing to the urates carrying down the urinary pigments. A film forms on the surface and sides of the containing glass. Heat dissolves the precipitate very speedily and completely, and *liquor potassæ* produces the same effect. Microscopically it appears as minute amorphous granules, of variable size, and more or less dark and opaque. (Fig. 45, a.) Urates of sodium and ammonium are occasionally deposited in a *crystalline* form, the former as a



FIG. 44.
Uric acid crystals.*

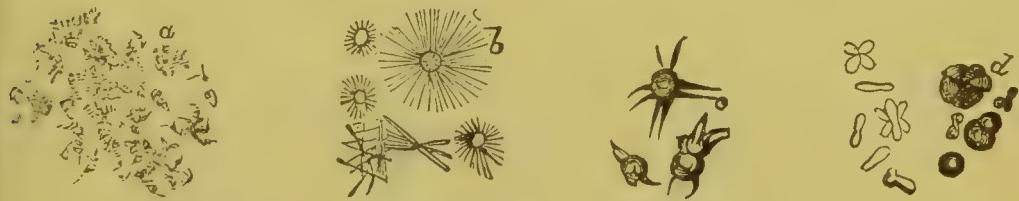


FIG. 45.

a. Amorphous urates. b. Crystals of urate of sodium. c. Hedgehog crystals of urate of sodium. d. Urate of ammonium.

whitish or yellowish sediment which sinks rapidly, and usually forms in the bladder; the latter generally as a dense white precipitate, in urine which has decomposed and become strongly ammoniacal. They appear under the microscope as globular, dark, opaque particles, from which project spiny crystals, straight or curved. (Fig. 45, b. c.) Urate of ammonium also occurs in the form of minute dumb-bells. (Fig. 45, d.)

* Figs. 44, 46b, and 48, are from Legg's "Examination of the Urine," 7th edition, by Dr. Lewis Jones. (Lewis).

3. Oxalate of lime.—This forms but a very slight, colourless deposit, usually in high-coloured and acid urine. It crystallizes in fine lines on the interior of the containing glass; while the sediment is described by Sir William Roberts as consisting of two parts—a soft, pale-grey, mucous-like portion at the bottom; and overlying this a snow-white, denser layer, with an undulating but sharply-limited surface. Oxalate of lime is not dissolved by *heat*, *acetic acid*, or *liquor potassae*; but is speedily soluble in *mineral acids*. It crystallizes either in the form of minute octahedra, very short in one axis, or of pyramids; or as biconcave, circular or oval discs, with rounded margins. Under the microscope the former vary in appearance according to their position, but commonly they present a characteristic envelope-like appearance,

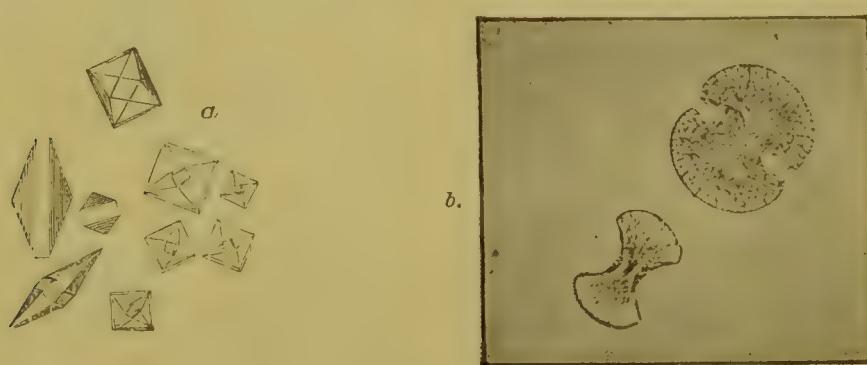


FIG. 46.

Oxalate of lime.—*a.* Octahedra and pyramids. *b.* Dumb-bells of oxalate of lime.

exhibiting a square surface crossed diagonally by two lines. (Fig. 46, *a.*) The latter are presented as dumb-bells, (Fig. 46, *b.*) or as ovoids and circles.

4. Phosphates.—These are deposited in alkaline urine as a rule, but occasionally in that which is neutral or faintly acid. They are *not dissolved by boiling*, which even increases the precipitate, giving rise to

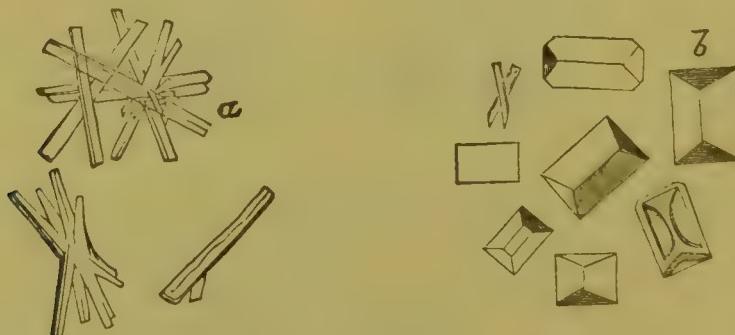


FIG. 47.

a. Stellar phosphates. *b.* Triple phosphates.

turbidity, and causing the phosphates to fall in flakes. A drop of *nitric acid* dissolves them instantly. Three varieties of phosphates are met with as urinary deposits:—*a.* *Amorphous phosphate of lime*—*Bone-earth*. This occurs as a whitish, light, flocculent sediment; accompanied with

a superficial iridescent film. Microscopically it presents irregular groups or patches of minute pale granules. *b. Crystallized phosphate of lime—Stellar phosphate.* Of rare occurrence, the crystals assume very various forms, but most of them resemble crystalline rods or needles, either distinct or grouped in various ways. (Fig. 47, *a.*) *c. Phosphate of ammonium and magnesium—Triple phosphate.* This is the most common form of phosphatic deposit, being generally mixed with the amorphous phosphate. The precipitate is quite white; while brilliant colourless crystals are seen forming a film on the surface of the urine, and studding the sides of the glass. Under the microscope the crystals are usually very characteristic, appearing as triangular prisms with bevelled ends, but the primary form is liable to numerous variations. (Fig. 47, *b.*)

5. Carbonate of lime occasionally falls as an amorphous deposit in urine, along with phosphates; and it is said to be now and then presented in the form of crystals.

6. Cystin.—The urine in which this rare substance is found is turbid when passed, of a yellowish-green colour, having an oily aspect, and a peculiar odour like sweet-briar. It is faintly acid, but very prone to decomposition, becoming green and evolving hydric sulphide. The deposit which forms on standing appears to be abundant and light, but it weighs very little. This deposit is *not dissolved by heat or acetic acid*, the latter, on the contrary, causing increased precipitation; but it is soluble in *mineral acids* and *caustic ammonia*, being deposited from the latter solution after spontaneous evaporation. Microscopically the crystals appear as brilliant, colourless, hexagonal tablets, having a pearly lustre, often overlapping each other, or being arranged in the form of rosettes. Cystin also crystallizes in square prisms. (Fig. 48.)

7. Leucin—Tyrosin.—These substances are stated to form a greenish-yellow sediment, tyrosin appearing under the microscope as delicate needles, grouped in globular masses or bundles; leucin as dark globules, resembling those of fat.

8. Fat.—The chief condition in which a deposit of fat is observed is the so-called *chylous urine*. It causes the liquid to assume a whitish, opaque, and milky aspect, which disappears on the addition of ether, the urine then becoming transparent and clear. On standing the fat collects on the surface as a creamy layer. Under the microscope it appears in the form of extremely fine molecules. Fat is also present in the urine in some cases of pancreatic disease.

The material name *kiesteine* may also be alluded to here. This is a peculiar whitish pellicle, which sometimes forms on the surface of urine after it has stood for a few days, and was formerly supposed to be a characteristic sign of pregnancy, but it is now known that such is not the case. It consists of abundant fat-globules, crystals of phosphates, and the mould fungus.

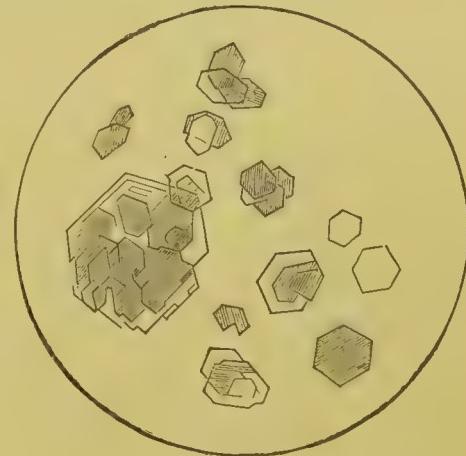


FIG. 48.

Cystin.

9. Mucus and Epithelium.—All urines contain a small quantity of these elements, the epithelium being shed from the genito-urinary passages. A light cloud subsides on standing, and the cells may be seen on microscopical examination, differing in character according to the part whence they are derived. In some cases mucus is present in considerable quantity. Mucin is precipitated by both organic and mineral acids. Its distinctions from albumin have already been pointed out. Mucus does not become ropy on adding *liquor potassae*, and thus differs from pus. Moreover, in order to distinguish mucus from pus, the urine may be filtered; if it contains pus the filtrate will give the tests for albumin; if mucus is present, after acidulating the filtrate with acetic acid a precipitate of mucin forms in the cold. In connection with certain diseased conditions the epithelium of the bladder, ureters, pelvis of the kidney, or renal tubules may be present in the urine. The *extra-renal* cells (Fig. 49, b) present such varied and curious shapes that they have been mistaken for cancer-cells. *Renal* epithelium-cells (Fig. 49, c) may be separate or in patches, and healthy in appearance, atrophied, granular, fatty, or entirely disintegrated. Usually they are associated with *casts*.

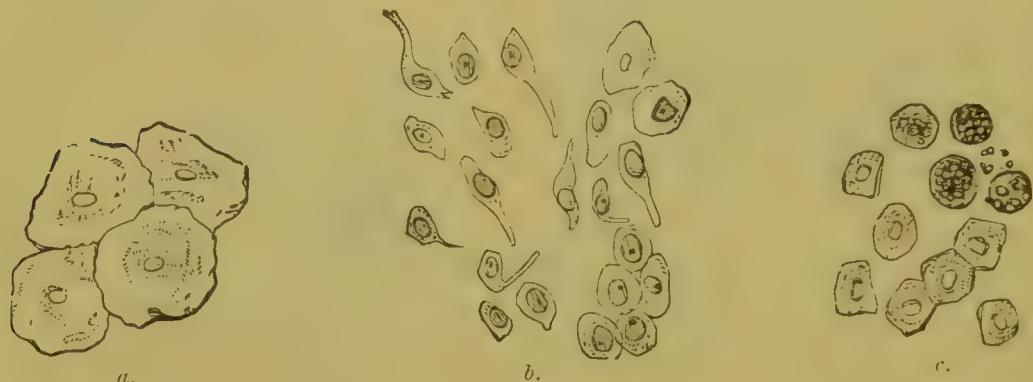


FIG. 49.

- a. Vaginal epithelium. b. Epithelium from the bladder, ureter, and pelvis of the kidney.
c. Renal epithelium, healthy and fatty.

10. Pus.—If pus is present in any quantity, the urine containing it is turbid on being passed, and does not become clear when boiled. A yellowish-white sediment forms; and if the urine is ammoniacal, or if *solution of potash* or *ammonia* be added, the pus assumes the characters of a ropy, viscid, tenacious material, which can be drawn out into strings. There is necessarily some albumin present, but it is never abundant when due to pus alone. Under the microscope pus-cells (Fig. 50) are visible, but they are frequently much altered in their characters in decomposed urine.

11. Blood.—Urine containing only a small quantity of blood may not give any indication of its presence to the naked eye, but it often presents a characteristic smoky appearance, or may be of a dirty reddish-brown colour, of varying depth; when more abundant, the fluid has a more or less deep pink or red colour, until in extreme cases it may

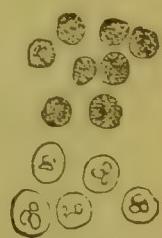


FIG. 50.
Pus-cells in urine,
unaltered, and af-
fected by acetic acid.

look almost like pure blood. Occasionally the urine resembles porter. Sometimes the blood is separate from the general mass of urine, and it may be in distinct clots, or these may form on standing. A brownish, grumous, flocculent deposit falls after a time. The urine is necessarily albuminous. Red corpuscles (Fig. 51) are visible on microscopical examination, but if the urine is very dilute, they are liable to be distended and thus lose their normal characters; or, if it is ammoniacal, they speedily alter in shape, and may even break up. Minute vermiform coagula or blood-casts may also be seen under the microscope. In certain conditions the urine contains more or less of the colouring matter of the blood, with albumin, but without corpuscles or fibrin. The colouring matter of the blood in urine may be detected either by the *spectroscope*; or by the *guaiacum-test*. In performing this test a little of the urine is placed in a small test-tube, a drop of freshly prepared tincture of guaiacum and a few drops of ozonized ether being then added. The tube is agitated, and the ether allowed to collect at the top. If blood-pigment is present, the ether acquires a blue colour, leaving the urine below colourless. Salines and iodine must be absent from the urine. *Heller's test* is also useful, the urine being mixed with an equal quantity of *liquor potassie* and heated. A precipitate of phosphates is formed, which carries down with it black pigment, derived from that of the blood.

12. Renal casts.—In certain morbid conditions of the kidneys minute moulds form in the renal tubules, technically termed *casts*. Their origin in the kidney has been disputed, but of this there can be no doubt, as they have been seen in the convoluted and the straight tubules. These casts are washed away by the urine, in their course outwards being broken up into smaller fragments, and they are visible on microscopical examination, affording information as to the state of the kidneys of the highest importance both for diagnosis and prognosis. As a rule these casts form but a slight cloudy sediment in urine, if any, but sometimes a considerable white deposit falls. Microscopical examination can alone positively reveal the presence of casts, and it is advisable to make a few observations at intervals before coming to any positive conclusion, and also to repeat the examination frequently during the progress of the case. In some instances the examination has to be conducted with the greatest care before casts can be detected, and it may be desirable to introduce a little magenta or carmine staining-fluid beneath the cover-glass; it has also been recommended to add acetic acid to the urine, in order to precipitate uric acid, which will carry down the casts along with it.

Renal casts are generally cylindrical, often bent to a certain degree, and they vary in diameter usually from $\frac{1}{100}$ to $\frac{1}{50}$ of an inch. Occasionally a minute cast seems to be imbedded in a larger one. Care must be taken not to mistake shreds of mucus or other microscopic objects for casts. Certain varieties are met with, but they all consist of a more or less solid basis, in most cases associated with microscopic elements which characterize the several forms. The basis, which is usually transparent or very faintly granular, but occasionally fibrillated, was formerly considered to be coagulated fibrin, derived from blood-plasma of escaped blood, or which had exuded through the walls of the vessels. Undoubt-



FIG. 51.
Blood-corpuscles in
urine.

edly it is in many instances of this nature, but in others it has a different origin and composition, but observers are by no means agreed on this matter. Thus it has been supposed that the material is sometimes inspissated albumin, but on no sufficient grounds. The view most in favour is that it is derived in some way from the renal epithelium-cells. Thus it has been attributed to colloid degeneration of these cells: to a substance secreted by them; or to the material which in health forms the substance of the epithelial cells. In disease this substance, perhaps somewhat altered or not perfectly formed, collects in the tubes and becomes inspissated. (Beale.)

The chief recognized varieties of casts are as follows, two or more kinds being commonly observed together:—*a. Blood-casts* (Fig. 52, *a*), consisting either of accumulations of blood-corpuscles; or of fibrinous casts studded with these elements. Sir George Johnson has described "white cell casts," or "exudation cell casts," which he thinks are leucocytes. *b. Epithelial casts* (Fig. 52, *b*), usually of some size, and presenting renal epithelium-cells on the surface or imbedded in their substance, frequently somewhat changed from their normal condition. *c. Granular casts* (Fig. 52, *c*), usually of moderate size, and characterized by being more or less granular and opaque in appearance, the granules being either coarse or fine, and consisting of protein or fat; these are generally mixed to a variable degree with other elements, such as altered epithelium or crystals of oxalates; and also with free granules. On the addition of acetic acid to the specimen under the microscope, if the granules consist of protein they disappear, if they are of a fatty nature they become more evident. Granular casts are divided by some authorities into *large* and *small*. *d. Fatty casts* (Fig. 52, *d*), which exhibit scattered oil-globules; or collections of these in the form of dark, botryoidal masses. *e. Hyaline, transparent, or waxy casts* (Fig. 52, *e*), varying considerably in diameter, and therefore divided into *large* and *small*. These have either a perfectly clear, transparent, and glassy aspect; or

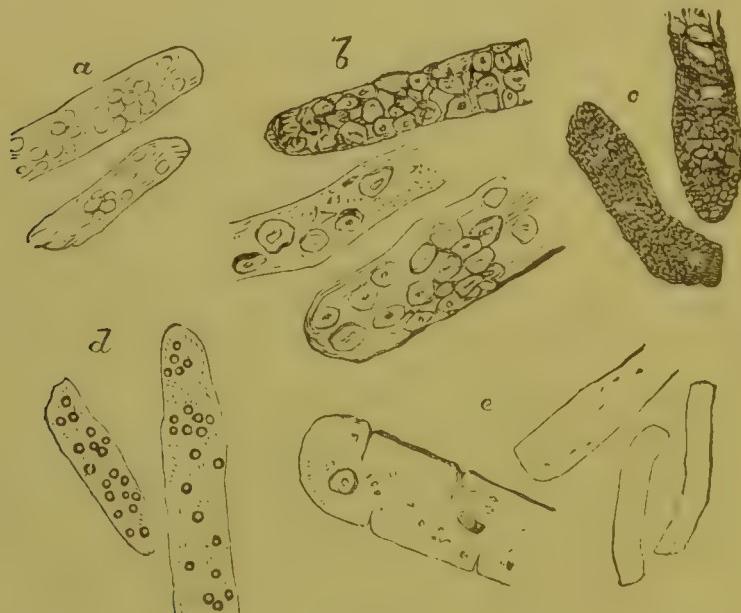


FIG. 52.

a. Blood casts. b. Epithelial casts. c. Granular casts. d. Fatty casts. e. Hyaline casts.

present faint markings on the surface, or a dimly molecular appearance. Sometimes a few nuclei or epithelium scales are visible upon the hyaline casts. In some cases they can only be seen after the addition of *iodine* or *magenta solution*. *f. Pus-casts*, composed of moulded accumulations of pus-corpuscles, which are extremely rare.

It is in connection with certain forms of *Bright's disease of the kidneys* that casts are of so much importance, and valuable diagnostic conclusions may be arrived at as a general rule from studying their characters. 1. If they consist chiefly of the *blood* or *epithelial* varieties, they indicate an early stage of disease, and the condition of the renal epithelium may be gathered from the characters of the cells on the casts. 2. *Fine hyaline casts* are supposed to come from tubules still covered with epithelium, and when they follow the varieties just mentioned, they show that the disease is subsiding. 3. *Large hyaline casts* are believed to be formed in tubules deprived of their epithelium, and therefore to indicate grave organic changes in the kidney. 4. Abundant *granular casts* also point to advanced disease, and they are frequently mixed with free granules. 5. *Fatty casts* are of very serious import, as proving the existence of fatty degeneration, with destruction of the renal epithelium.

13. Organisms.—The chief organisms which may be observed in the urine are *bacteria* and *vibriones*; forms of *torula*; *sarcina urinæ*; *tubercle bacilli*; certain entozoa or their ova, especially the *bilharzia hematobia*, and *filaria sanguinis hominis*; and fragments or hooklets of *echinococci*, in connection with hydatid disease. The *sarcina urinæ* is smaller than the gastric variety. Some suppose that it is always developed after the urine has been voided, but others think that a colony of *sarcinæ* establishes itself in the bladder. Sir William Roberts has described a form of *bacteruria* or *septic bacilluria*, in which the urine at the moment of emission is loaded with bacteria. The urine has the peculiar grey opalescence indicative of commencing decomposition; and a heavy disagreeable odour, like that of stale fish. The reaction is acid, and on keeping the urine shows no tendency to pass into the ammoniacal fermentation. The organism corresponds in its microscopic characters to the common putrefactive bacterium (*Bacterium termo*), and appears as micrococci, and as actively moving short rods composed of molecules, often joined together in zig-zags. Sir W. Roberts supposes that a colony of bacteria is established in the bladder, and that the proliferation of the organism, and perhaps certain products of its action as a ferment, give rise to irritation in the bladder, of which symptoms are usually present.

B. RENAL TUMOUR.—DISPLACEMENTS AND MALFORMATIONS.

A tumour connected with the kidney occupying its normal position has the following general characters:—1. It is *extra-pelvic*, occupying mainly one or other *lumbar region*, and it cannot be separated from the mass of muscles behind. It, however, increases, in a forward direction to a variable degree, sometimes attaining an enormous size, and giving rise to general enlargement of the abdomen. 2. The *shape* is often more or less that of the kidney, the borders being rounded, but irregularity is not unfrequently observed in this respect, and there may be merely a rounded swelling. 3. As a rule the *consistence* is firm; in certain cases there is a feeling of elasticity or softness, or even distinct fluctuation may be detected. A large calculus in the kidney is occasionally felt as

a hard mass. 4. The tumour is almost or quite *fixed*, not being altered by manipulation or by respiratory movements. 5. *Percussion* reveals dulness extending back to the spine, with tympanitic note in front, due to the colon, unless the tumour becomes extremely large. 6. In some cases it is necessary to use the *aspirateur* or *exploratory trochar* in the diagnosis of renal tumour; or even to perform more serious operations.

It will be convenient in this connection to allude to certain peculiarities observed in some instances in the *position* and *shape* of the kidneys, which may give rise to forms of abdominal tumour.

1. **Movable or Floating kidney.** Normally the kidneys are nearly fixed, but occasionally one or both, especially the right, are displaced and become more or less freely mobile, floating about in the cavity of the abdomen. This condition has been by far most frequently observed in females, chiefly after repeated or difficult parturition. It has also been attributed to congenital looseness of the attachments of the kidney; sudden or repeated violent effort; pressure by tight-lacing; rapid absorption of the renal investing adipose tissue in fat people; increase of weight of the kidney during the menstrual periods, resulting from congestion, with a consequent tendency to gravitation downwards; or to this organ being dragged down by a hernia. The movable kidney is felt as a tumour, having the exact form and feel of the healthy organ; and usually lying, when the patient stands erect, in an oblique position, directed upwards and outwards, about midway between the margin of the thorax and the umbilicus. It is mobile in different directions by change of posture, manipulation, and respiratory movements. In some cases the organ may be grasped in the hand, the pressure causing the patient to experience a peculiar sickening sensation. Percussion generally yields a muffled tympanitic sound. On examining the corresponding lumbar region it will be found flattened or depressed, as well as resonant on percussion, owing to the absence of the kidney. In some instances the displaced organ becomes enlarged and painful from time to time, this event being attributed to pressure on its own duct, leading to retention of urine and its consequences. As a result of repeated attacks of this kind the kidney may become permanently fixed by adhesions. Among the most frequent *symptoms* accompanying the floating kidney are mentioned a sense of uneasiness or dragging pain, increased by walking or standing; neuralgic pains; disturbances of the alimentary canal; and other disorders due to compression or irritation. The urine is generally normal, but micturition may be frequent or painful. During the inflammatory attacks severe symptoms may be experienced.

2. Now and then the kidney is fixed in some **abnormal position**, this condition being either *congenital* or *acquired*. The displaced organ is recognized by presenting the characters of the normal kidney, though the shape is usually somewhat altered; and by the signs of its absence from its proper situation.

3. **Horse-shoe kidney.** In this condition the two organs are united by an isthmus passing across between their lower ends. The horse-shoe kidney might possibly be felt in very thin persons with loose abdominal walls, and might thus be mistaken for a tumour. I have never met with it except at *post-mortem* examinations or in the dissecting-room.

C. DISTENDED BLADDER.

A distended bladder is liable to be met with in medical practice, and it may simulate a tumour or general enlargement of the abdomen. Its characters are as follows:—1. It occupies mainly the *hypogastrum*, extending upwards and laterally to a variable extent, and being quite symmetrical. 2. The *shape* is conical, the apex being directed upwards. 3. *Fluctuation* is usually perceptible. 4. There is *dulness* corresponding to the enlargement in position and shape; while laterally and at the upper part of the abdomen a tympanitic sound can be elicited. 5. By examination *per rectum* the distended bladder may be felt. 6. The use of the *catheter* must never be forgotten; or, if this cannot be passed, a small *trochar* or the *aspirateur* may be inserted above the pubes.

CHAPTER LIX.

GENERAL THERAPEUTICS OF THE URINARY SYSTEM.

I. Therapeutic Groups.—In relation to the therapeutics of the urinary system, we have to deal not only with agents affecting the secretion or characters of the urine, but also with those influencing the mucous surface of the bladder and urinary passages; those acting upon deposits or calculi which are so liable to form in connection with this system; and those affecting the bladder as a muscular organ, or the act of micturition. They may be grouped as follows:—

1. *Diuretics*.—These promote the functions of the kidneys, increasing the quantity of urine passed, many of them at the same time causing an abnormal discharge of certain of the normal urinary constituents. Some of the agents belonging to this group tend to irritate the kidneys, and therefore must be used with due caution. Before enumerating the recognized diuretics, it is important to note that the renal functions are promoted by cool surroundings; by drinking freely of water or demulcent drinks; by the removal of any intra-abdominal pressure, interfering with the renal veins, such as ascites; or, under suitable circumstances, by local treatment in connection with the loins, namely, leeching, dry-cupping, the application of heat and moisture, or mild counter-irritation by sinapisms. Further, a brisk purgative is not uncommonly helpful, by clearing away an accumulation in the lower bowel, or perhaps acting in other ways. The chief agents more definitely classed as diuretics include solution of acetate or citrate of ammonium; solution of the fixed alkalies and most of their salts, those commonly used being the bicarbonates, nitrate of potassium, iodides of potassium or sodium, acetate and citrate of potassium, acid tartrate of potassium in small doses, and salts of lithium; calomel in small doses; alcohol, especially in the form of gin or hollands; spirit of nitrous ether and other nitrites; digitalis, strophantus, squill, senega, and citrate of caffeine; scoparium and sparteine (non-official), colchicum, buchu, uva ursi, and pareira; mustard and horseradish; various umbelliferae; hop, juniper and its

oil, oil of turpentine, copaiba or its oil or resin, cubebes or its oil or oleoresin, the balsams, and benzoic acid or benzoates; and tincture of cantharides in small doses. Urea has been employed as a diuretic; and new drugs for this purpose are being added from time to time, a substance named diuretin being one of the most recent.

2. *Anti-diuretics*.—In certain conditions there is an excessive flow of urine, and the object of treatment is to diminish its amount. This object is materially promoted by diminishing the quantity of fluid taken into the system; and by acting freely upon the skin. The chief drugs used as anti-diuretics are certain astringents; belladonna; opium, or its alkaloids morphine and codeine; and ergot. The treatment of diabetes mellitus, of which excessive flow of urine is one of the symptoms, will be separately considered.

3. *Agents affecting the Urinary Mucous Membrane*.—The urine, as it passes over the surface of the urinary tract, on its way outwards from the pelvis of the kidney to the urethral orifice, exercises a material influence upon the mucous membrane with which it comes into contact. In the first place its degree of concentration is important from this point of view, and the mere fact of making the urine more watery by the use of *diluents* may be of service in treatment. Or, again, its reaction not uncommonly demands attention, for excessive acidity may cause the urine to be very irritating to the mucous lining, *alkalies* being then called for; while, on the other hand, *acids* may be required for alkaline, and especially for ammoniacal urine. The mere prevention of decomposition of this excretion by means of various *antiseptics* which, when administered, pass out of the system by the kidneys, is another object to be kept in view in relation to the group of agents now under consideration, for decomposed urine is very injurious to the surface over which it passes. Certain *astringents* are also eliminated with the urine, and may thus be of service for their effects upon the mucous membrane. The agents which are more particularly recognized as having a specific effect upon the urinary mucous lining are pareira; uva ursi; buchu; triticum repens; the several balsams; benzoic acid and benzoate of ammonium; copaiba and its oil; cubebes, with its oil and oleoresin; oil of turpentine; and oil of sandal wood.

4. *Lithontriptics*.—These are the agents which are intended to prevent the deposition of urinary constituents likely to form gravel or calculi; or to dissolve such concretions after their formation. Here, again, the importance of keeping the urine in a diluted state must be borne in mind; and it is often useful to recommend a patient to drink water freely, especially during fasting, as well as the last thing at night and early in the morning. For dissolving uric acid and urates alkaline salts are administered in large doses, especially acetate and citrate of potassium, and salts of lithium. Piperazine is also specially advocated for this purpose. Acids are employed when dealing with phosphatic deposits, especially benzoic and salicylic acid; benzoate of ammonium may also be of service.

5. *Agents affecting the Bladder and Micturition*.—In this connection we have to deal with irritability of the bladder and frequent micturition; deficient power in this organ, leading to more or less retention of urine; or incontinence, especially nocturnal incontinence. In relation to these disorders, it must be remembered in the first instance that the quantity and characters of the urine may have to be modified; while retention of urine may depend upon the fact that it has been allowed to accumu-

late in the bladder under certain circumstances, until the organ has become temporarily paralyzed, or this condition is often due to some physical difficulty preventing the escape of the urine. Here the use of the catheter or other suitable instrument is obviously indicated. Hot fomentations or a warm hip-bath help micturition in certain cases, or may relieve undue irritability. The chief medicinal *vesical sedatives* are demulcent drinks, bromides, opium and morphine, hyoscyamus, and belladonna or atropine. Pareira, buchu, and uva ursi are also classed under this group, but they probably act by affecting some condition of the mucous membrane which is the cause of the irritability. Belladonna is the most important drug in cases of nocturnal incontinence. Nux vomica or strychnine, and electrical treatment are mainly employed as *vesical tonics*.

II. Methods of Application.—Medicines intended to act upon the urinary apparatus are usually given by the stomach, and it is often important to study the best preparations of a particular drug to be administered for the purpose, the time in relation to food, the dose, and other matters. Therapeutic agents are often brought directly into contact with the interior of the urethra and bladder, especially by means of injections or soluble bougies; and the bladder can be washed out, or its contents acted upon for various purposes. The morbid sensations connected with this organ, or with the act of micturition, are frequently most effectually relieved by introducing remedies into the rectum, in the form of small enemata or suppositories.

III. Auxiliary Therapeutic Agents.—The use of external methods of treatment in relation to the urinary apparatus has already been alluded to, and it will suffice further to call attention to the fact that they are often of great service, and that, in addition to those mentioned, local friction, abdominal support, massage, anodyne applications, and counter-irritation may afford much help in suitable cases. Matters relating to diet and drink are often of essential importance; and in some cases the question of rest or exercise requires careful consideration. Warm clothing is frequently needed; and a change of climate or surroundings may be of great consequence under certain circumstances. Baths of different kinds are frequently of use in renal diseases; and treatment by certain mineral waters, or at different Spas, may be of much benefit. *Alteratives, tonics, haematinics, astringents, antiseptics, and anodynies* are among the classes of agents which may be called for under particular circumstances, in dealing with urinary affections; in some cases remedies affecting the heart or arteries are required. Special drugs or methods of treatment are often indicated for particular conditions of the urine, such as albuminuria, glycosuria, haemoglobinuria, or chyluria, but these will be dealt with separately. Operative measures of various kinds are of the greatest value in connection with the urinary apparatus, and not uncommonly constitute the essential and only treatment which is likely to lead to beneficial results.

CHAPTER LX.

ON CERTAIN ABNORMAL CONDITIONS OF THE URINE.

I. ALBUMINURIA.

Etiology and Pathology.—Allusion will only be made here to *egg-albumin* and *serum-albumin*. Egg-albumin, if present in the blood, passes through the vessels of the kidneys in their normal condition; serum-albumin is not secreted by the healthy kidney, and before it can reach the urine, there must be some change, either in the renal circulation, or in the structure of the organ. Albuminuria is not uncommonly met with in apparently healthy persons—*physiological* or *functional albuminuria*; or it may be produced artificially in certain ways. Thus it may be caused by the use of a highly-albuminous diet, especially one consisting entirely of eggs, according to most authorities, or by large enemata of eggs; by abstinence from salt; or sometimes by a cold bath. In animals albuminuria has also been produced experimentally by ligation of the renal vein; varnishing the skin; injecting egg-albumin subcutaneously or into the circulation; or by introducing a large quantity of water into the veins.

Taking a comprehensive view of albuminuria from a clinical aspect, the chief conditions with which it may be associated may be thus stated:—1. *Admixture of albuminous fluids*, namely, blood or some of its elements; chyle or lymph; pus from any source; or semen. 2. *Venous congestion of the kidneys*, particularly that due to cardiac diseases, to chronic or acute lung-affections, to interference with respiration, or to pressure upon the renal veins or the inferior vena cava by a tumour, a pregnant uterus, or a collection of fluid. 3. *Acute febrile and inflammatory diseases*, for example, the exanthemata, cholera, diphtheria, pyæmia, ague, pneumonia, serous inflammations, rheumatic fever; and also the *pyrexial condition* which arises in the course of chronic diseases, such as phthisis. 4. Certain conditions attended with *an unhealthy state of the blood*, such as purpura, scurvy, malaria, gout, anaemia, diabetes, leukæmia, syphilis, or jaundice. 5. *Pregnancy*. 6. *Acute Bright's disease*. 7. *Chronic renal diseases* of various kinds, apart from those causing suppuration, such as the different forms of chronic Bright's disease; lardaceous disease; and new growths or parasites. 8. *Temporary obstruction of the ureters*. 9. *Poisoning* by lead, mercury, or phosphorus; or by inhalation of arseniuretted hydrogen or carbonic anhydride. 10. Some forms of *dyspepsia* or *hepatic disorder*—*digestive* or *hepatic albuminuria*. 11. *Disordered innervation*, affecting the renal vessels—*neurotic albuminuria*. This may be due to exposure to cold, mental causes; injury to the head; or certain nervous diseases or disorders, as apoplexy, convulsions, epilepsy, tetanus, or exophthalmic goitre. Albuminuria in adolescents, especially when associated with masturbation, is also attributed to this cause.

Such are the principal circumstances under which albuminuria may be met with. The subject has of late years attracted much atten-

tion, especially with regard to the different forms of *functional albuminuria*, which, according to Sir Grainger Stewart's definition, includes all cases "where exercise or exertion, diet, exposure to cold, mental emotion, and obscure psychic influences account for the symptom." This authority calls one variety *simple persistent albuminuria*.

With regard to the immediate *pathology* of albuminuria, excluding those cases in which it is due to admixture of albuminous fluids, the condition may result from changes in the blood, as regards its specific gravity, or the presence in it of certain toxic agents; alteration in the renal epithelium, in connection with structural diseases; or increased blood-pressure in the Malpighian vessels of the kidneys. It is a disputed point whether albumin escapes through the glomerular tufts in health. According to one view it filters through with the water, but is afterwards absorbed by the cells lining the renal tubules; according to another, the epithelial covering prevents the passage of albumin, while allowing the water to transude.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—The local and general symptoms, as well as the characters of the urine in cases of albuminuria, will depend upon its cause, and they present considerable diversity. The presence, amount, and variety of albumin are determined by the tests already described. (See EXAMINATION OF URINE.) The drain of albumin from the blood may itself cause serious disorder of the general system, such as anaemia and its consequences, wasting, debility, and ultimately fatty degeneration of structures. It must be remembered, however, that in a number of cases albuminuria is of little or no significance, and there is often no other symptom whatever. The *diagnosis* of its *cause* must be determined by the general history of the case; the characters of the urine; the accompanying general and local symptoms; and the condition of the several organs. It is important to recognize the facts that considerable variations in the degree of albuminuria may be observed in the same case at different times, and under different conditions; that it is sometimes *intermittent*, *paroxysmal*, or even *cyclic*; and that this symptom may be entirely absent in grave forms of renal disease. Intermittent albuminuria is not infrequent in persons who have been exposed to malaria; and Sir Richard Quain has noticed that a similar condition in youth is frequently associated with masturbation.

Treatment.—Albuminuria does not usually call for any direct treatment, and the chief measures to be adopted are those which have for their object the prevention or removal of the cause of the morbid condition, if this is practicable, such as regulation of diet, improvement of the renal circulation, or the cure of any organic disease. Medicines are sometimes employed with the view of checking the discharge of albumin, of which the principal are tincture of perchloride of iron, tannic or gallic acid, mineral acids, alum, and iodide of potassium. It is very questionable, however, whether either of these drugs is really useful for this purpose. The effects upon the system of the loss of albumin may be made up for in some cases by nutritious food, and the administration of iron.

II. ALBUMOSURIA—PEPTONURIA.

It is desirable to allude briefly to the presence of albumoses and peptones in the urine. These are never found in health, and their discharge has therefore always some pathological signification. They are

either absorbed from the gastro-intestinal canal; or are formed in the tissues and blood in connection with certain pathological conditions. The cases in which albumosuria and peptonuria have been met with are of various kinds, but they may be arranged under the following groups:—
 1. Chronic dyspepsia, with dilated stomach. 2. Diseases of bones, especially osteo-malacia, in which hetero-albumose (Bence Jones's albumin) has been specially found. 3. Various conditions attended with formation of pus, such as acute or chronic abscesses, empyema, and purulent peritonitis. 4. Some cases of chronic nephritis, where they are supposed to be formed in connection with the renal cells, and may alternate or be associated with albuminuria. 5. A miscellaneous group, including glycosuria, phthisis, pneumonia, cerebro-spinal meningitis, cancer and other malignant growths, acute infectious diseases, especially measles and typhoid fever, scurvy, hepatic diseases, the puerperal state, poisoning by phosphorus, inflammatory skin-eruptions, pemphigus, urticaria, nervous diseases, as hemiplegia, and mental derangements.

Urine containing albumoses or peptones does not usually present any obvious abnormal characters, but they are detected by the tests already described. Sometimes it froths on shaking. Kuhne found albumose in a white deposit in one case; and Bence Jones observed casts in another. It is doubtful whether these substances produce clinically any symptoms by their presence in the system, but when injected into the blood they cause reduction of blood-pressure, fever, coma, and death, while the blood remains uncoagulable.

III. PYURIA—PURULENT URINE.

Aetiology.—The sources of pus in the urine are:—1. *Abscess in the kidney.* 2. *Pyelitis.* 3. *Cystitis.* 4. *Urethral inflammation,* especially *gonorrhœa.* 5. *Leucorrhœa* in females. 6. The rupture of any neighbouring *abscess* into the bladder or urinary passages.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—Pyuria is recognized by the general characters of the urine; by chemical examination, which reveals the presence of albumin, and the peculiar ropiness with alkalies; and by microscopical investigation, when pus-corpuscles or, rarely, pus-casts may be visible. The amount of pus discharged varies considerably; and it often differs in the same case from time to time. The urine may be highly offensive or ammoniacal. With regard to *diagnosis*, one of the chief difficulties is to determine whether pyuria results from pyelitis, or from chronic inflammation of the bladder and lower urinary passages, especially when these conditions are associated together. The presence of epithelium-cells from the pelvis and infundibula of the kidneys is very important at an early period in revealing pyelitis, but these elements disappear in course of time; if the complaint exists alone, however, the local symptoms, and the discharge of acid urine containing much pus, especially if combined with a history of some obvious cause of pyelitis, are sufficiently distinctive. When pus comes from the bladder, it is frequentlyropy and tenacious, on account of the urine being ammoniacal; while it is also discharged mainly towards the end of the act of micturition. When disease of the lower passages and bladder has existed for a length of time, it becomes highly probable that the kidneys are likewise involved. When pus originates in urethral inflammation, there are the local signs of this condition; while pus escapes before the urine, and can be pressed out independently. In

doubtful cases where there is leucorrhœa, it has been recommended to pass a catheter, and thus to remove some of the urine directly from the bladder for examination.

Treatment.—Should pyuria require special treatment, the principles are:—1. To remove any obvious cause of the suppuration, if possible. 2. To administer remedies to check the formation of pus, the chief being alum; astringent preparations of iron; mineral acids; *vegetable astringents*, particularly tannic or gallic acid, or decoction of *uva ursi*; *buehu*; *metallic astringents* in obstinate cases; *copaiba*; and oil of turpentine. If the bladder is affected, it may be necessary to wash out this organ with warm water, or with *antiseptic* or *astringent* solutions, which must be used with due care. 3. To support the general health; and to treat the constitutional state by good diet, change of air, sea-bathing, *tonics*, and cod-liver oil. 4. To have recourse to *operative measures* in appropriate cases.

IV. CHYLOUS URINE—CHYLURIA—FILARIA SANGUINIS HOMINIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—There has been much discussion as to the cause of the peculiar condition of the urine, termed *chyluria* originally by Prout; but the investigations carried on for several years seem to have clearly demonstrated the fact that, at any rate in most cases, it is in some way related to the presence of the embryos of a peculiar entozoon in the system, termed the *Filaria sanguinis hominis*, and it will be expedient in this connection to give at the outset a brief account of this entozoon and its pathological relations.

The embryos of the filaria were first discovered by the late Dr. Timothy Lewis, of Calcutta, in the urine and blood in connection with chyluria. Since then they have been studied by several observers, and the mature worm was found by Dr. Bancroft, of Brisbane, in 1876, in a lymphatic abscess in the arm, and subsequently in a hydrocele of the cord. Hence it has been named *Filaria Bancrofti*. Two living specimens were also found by Dr. Lewis in 1877, a male and a female. The worm has been observed by Dr. Manson *in situ* in a lymph channel.

Dr. Manson has discovered that there are two other species of *Filaria sanguinis hominis*, besides that described by Lewis, and on account of certain peculiarities of habit, he proposes to name the three varieties respectively:—1. *Diurna*, which appears in the blood during the day only. 2. *Nocturna*, which is only found during the night. 3. *Persans*, which is present in the circulation both during the day and during the night. The first two species possess a sheath; the last-named has no sheath. The filariae belong to the nematoid worms, and their embryos are haematozoic. The mature worm of the nocturnal species is the *Filaria Bancrofti* already mentioned; that of the diurnal variety is uncertain, but is believed by Manson to be the *Filaria Loa* which lives in the connective tissues, and sometimes shows itself underneath the conjunctiva in negroes.

The embryo filaria is very minute, long, slender, colourless, and snake-shaped, averaging about $\frac{1}{6}$ inch in length, and about $\frac{1}{3300}$ inch in breadth. It has a rounded anterior end, a pointed tail, with slightly granular contents, and no definitely differentiated organs. It is enclosed in a tubular sac—the sheath, delicate and transparent, but

coarser in the nocturnal variety than in the diurnal, within which it can be seen to alternately contract and elongate itself. The sac may sometimes be seen collapsed and folded like a ribbon; and after death the



FIG. 53.

a. *Filaria sanguinis hominis*. $\times 250$. (After Lewis.)
b. Ovum. $\times 250$. (After Cobbold.)

worm may be so contracted as to leave the tube empty at one or both ends. The embryos have a wriggling, but no locomotive, movement. The mature female worm of the nocturnal species measures from three to four inches in length, and is about as thick as a hair; the male is smaller. A male and female live together. The ovum measures

about $\frac{1}{60}$ to $\frac{1}{50}$ inch in diameter, the embryo appearing to be simply the ovum stretched out; it is oval in form, and thin-walled.

To demonstrate the sheath, shape, and structure of the filaria, it is only necessary to spread a very thin film of blood containing it on a glass slide. This is then inverted over a glass dish containing a little acetic acid, until the film is dry. It is now immersed in a 5 per cent. solution of eosin for two minutes, washed, dried slowly, and mounted in Canada balsam. The filaria and red blood-cells will appear nearly white; while the white corpuscles are deeply stained by the eosin. If, however, dried specimens of the blood are immersed in a 5 per cent. solution of eosin for two hours, washed and mounted in Farrant's solution, the filaria and white blood-corpuscles are stained; the colour of the red corpuscles being discharged (Manson).

If freshly prepared specimens of blood containing *Filaria sanguinis hominis nocturna* be placed in a cold place for 10-12 hours, the filaria will cast their sheaths, escaping from the sheath in every instance through a rupture at the extreme cephalic end of the sheath, the head emerging first (Manson).

The *Filaria perstans* differs in several respects from the other varieties, but need not be described here, as its pathological relations are at present uncertain.

With regard to the habitat and dissemination of the *Filaria nocturna*, Dr. Manson states that the parents inhabit the lymphatic trunks for the most part, where they may live and procreate for years, if undisturbed. They are viviparous, and discharge their young in large numbers into the lymphatics. The embryo filariae in the blood are almost invariably totally absent during the day: they begin to make their appearance about six or seven o'clock in the evening: then rapidly increase: and generally again disappear about eight or nine o'clock in the morning. Dr. Manson's observations seem to show that they are taken along with the blood into the stomach of a certain form of mosquito, in which they undergo developmental changes, and it is supposed that they are discharged into water with the larva of this insect, and are by this medium conveyed into the human system, through drinking the water. The embryos are then believed to bore their way into a lymphatic vessel, and passing against the current of lymph, become finally located in a distant lymphatic vessel. Dr. Stephen Mackenzie has, however, found that by reversing the habits of a patient under his observation,

and turning night into day, the filariae were found during the daytime, and disappeared at night.



FIG. 54.*

Filaria sanguinis hominis diurna., $\times 160$.

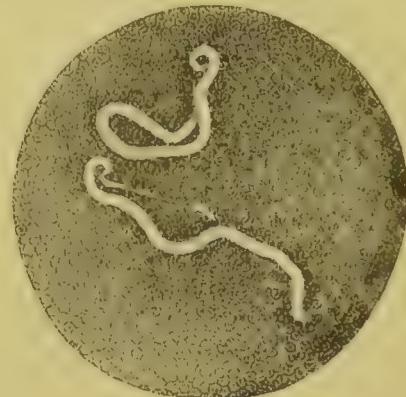


FIG. 55.*

Filaria sanguinis hominis nocturna.,
 $\times 160$.



FIG. 56.*

Filaria sanguinis hominis perstans.,
 $\times 160$.

A few remarks may now be offered as to the pathological relations of the filaria and its embryo. Different species of filaria are found in abundance in many of the lower animals; and in many parts of the world, especially in tropical and sub-tropical countries, human beings are in large proportion infested by the filaria sanguinis hominis. It is only under certain circumstances that they give rise to pathological conditions, for the active and minute embryos pass readily along the lymphatics and through the glands into the thoracic duct, and thence into the blood. Dr. Manson believes that they occasionally abort, and that unhatched ova are discharged, which are too large to pass through the glands, but block them up as emboli. Once this has occurred, it is apt to occur frequently, and thus tends, sooner or later, to cause more or less serious and widespread obstruction of lymphatics. He supposes that in this way disease may be set up; or by inflammatory or other changes caused by the parasite. The conditions which have thus been specially referred to filaria are chyluria, chylous dropsy of the tunica vaginalis, varicose and indurated inguinal glands, chylous ascites, recurring orchitis, certain kinds of abscess in the limbs, especially in the

* Figs. 54, 55, and 56, from micro-photographs by Mr. Andrew Pringle, are taken by permission from Dr. A. Davidson's "Hygiene and Diseases of Warm Climates" (Pentland).

thighs and groins, lymphangitis, lymphatic fever, lymphorrhagia, elephantiasis lymphangiectodes, and true elephantiasis. Nothing definite is known as to the pathological relations of the mature worm. In a case of chyluria and filarial disease observed by Dr. Stephen Mackenzie, the thoracic duct was found after death to be impervious, and lost in a mass of inflammatory material about the middle of its course; the part below, with the abdominal lymphatics and those connected with the kidneys, being enormously dilated. There were no filariae. These had disappeared from the blood three months before death, when double pleurisy and empyema came on, and after death acute cystitis and suppurative nephritis were also found. It was believed that the parent worms had been lodged in the thoracic duct; had caused inflammation and obstruction, followed by general dilatation of the lymphatics; and that the chyluria was connected with the dilated lymph-channels in the kidneys.

It now remains to discuss briefly the aetiology and pathology of chyluria. The complaint is met with almost exclusively in tropical and sub-tropical climates, but exceptional instances have been recorded in which it originated in Europe.

The principal views entertained as to the pathology of chyluria are as follows:—1. That it is but a symptom of *piarhæmia* or fatty blood, which is merely the normal condition of the blood after food, aggravated and made permanent by derangement of the digestive organs, especially the liver (Bernard, Robin). 2. That there is a direct communication between the lymphatics and the urinary tract, and consequent leakage of chyle (Vandyke Carter). 3. That there may be a hypertrophy of the lymphatic channels in some part of the urinary tract, which subsequently acquire the properties of glands (W. Roberts). 4. That chyluria depends upon the *Filaria sanguinis hominis*. This view was originally advanced by Dr. Lewis, and it has since received much support. The filariae are found in abundance in the urine and blood in cases of chyluria, and also in chylo-lymphous discharges; and they have been detected shortly before the condition has manifested itself. How they act has not been determined. It may be that they cause the delicate walls of the lymphatics to rupture; and Sir W. Roberts suggests that aggregations of filariae may lead to this result. Another notion is that they give rise to derangements of the liver and other organs, which lead to *piarhæmia*. Dr. Lewis further suggested that they may in some way tend to the production of minute secreting structures, along the urinary tract or in other situations, which might permit of the filtration of the ordinary nutritive fluids of the body in a more or less modified condition.

So far as can be determined from the present state of knowledge, it seems that chyluria is certainly connected in some way with the filariae in many cases, but that in some instances it is independent of any parasite. It may be affirmed that the condition does not depend on any structural disease of the kidney or other organ. Chyluria occurs at all periods of life, from childhood to extreme old age; and rather more frequently in females than males (Lewis).

Symptoms.—Chyluria presents an extremely varied clinical history, and the descriptions given of individual cases are most diverse. Its course is marked by an irregularity and capriciousness which cannot be explained. The only constant symptom is the presence of so-called *chyloous* urine. This fluid usually presents a peculiar whitish, opaque, milky ap-

pearance, which disappears when it is shaken up with ether. Sometimes the urine is not chylous, but lymphous. In some instances it is of a pink colour, from the presence of blood, but more commonly, at least in India, the blood, when present, is seen forming an adherent coagulum at the bottom of the vessel (Lewis). In some countries, however, and occasionally in India, haematuria is the prominent feature in connection with filaria, but in these cases it is probable that the *Bilharzia haematobia* is also present. Chylous urine gives out a strong milky or whey-like odour, which is increased by heat. A semi-solid tremulous coagulum forms speedily after standing, resembling blanc-mange. This soon breaks down, and forms a creamy scum; while the urine rapidly decomposes. The specific gravity varies greatly, even in the same individual at different times; and the appearance of the urine also differs at different periods of the day, and in relation to food. Chylous urine contains the constituents of chyle or lymph, namely, fibrin, albumin, and fat, which are indicated by the ordinary tests. Their relative proportion varies much; and it does not correspond to that of either of the nutritive fluids of the body, but appears to be nearest to that of lymph. As a rule all the constituents are scanty in the morning before meals, unless the circulation has been quickened by exercise or in other ways, when the albumin is increased, but not the fat. This element is usually most abundant shortly after meals; occasionally it is chiefly observed in the morning. Microscopical examination of chylous urine reveals fat in the molecular form, leucocytes, and red corpuscles in some cases; it seldom, if ever, presents any casts. Filariae are also often present. The ordinary urinary constituents are generally deficient in proportion to the amount of urine passed.

The discharge of chylous urine usually occurs very suddenly; it may be constant, but more frequently is intermittent; and after its occurrence may cease for years or permanently. In most cases symptoms referable to the urinary organs are noticed, such as uneasiness across the loins, over the hypogastrium, along the urethra, and especially towards the perineum in males. Occasionally chylous urine coagulates in the bladder, causing more or less discomfort in micturition, or not uncommonly suddenly stopping the flow of urine during the discharge of the clots, which become visible after their escape. Patients suffering from chyluria may enjoy good health, but generally there is marked debility and wasting, with mental depression, owing to the continuous drain of the nutritive fluid. The blood seems to vary in its composition, according to the analysis of different observers, and it often contains filariae in abundance. The serum and corpuscles do not present any abnormality indicative of the presence of fatty matter in any form (Lewis). Occasionally chyluria is associated with chyo-serous discharges from various parts of the body; with elephantiasis lymphangiectodes; or with true elephantiasis. Chyluria and haematuria are occasionally co-endemic.

Chyluria usually runs a very chronic course. Occasionally patients apparently in fair health have been known to die very unexpectedly from no recognized acute disorder. After apparent recovery, the complaint will probably return again and again, even after a complete change of climate and avocation (Lewis).

Diagnosis.—Cases of chyluria present no difficulty in diagnosis, but the condition must not be confounded with phosphaturia, cystitis, pyelitis, or rupture of an abscess into the urinary tract.

Treatment.—Medicine seems to have but little effect on chyluria, but the complaint is sometimes cured spontaneously. The chief drugs which have been employed or recommended in its treatment are tincture of iron; *astringents*, especially large doses of gallic acid; large doses of iodide of potassium; and picronitrate of potassium. Sir William Roberts quotes a case which was benefited by decoction of mangrove bark, which has a reputation in Guiana. Salt water baths may be used; and it seems best to restrict animal diet, at the same time giving nutritious food. Rest may be of service in the treatment of chyluria. As preventive measures against the entrance of the filaria into the system, it is important that water used for drinking and cooking purposes should be boiled, and that raw vegetables are thoroughly cleansed before being eaten.

V. HÆMATURIA.

Aetiology.—The blood in hæmaturia may come from the kidneys; from their pelvis or infundibula, or the ureters; from the bladder; from the urethra; or, in females, it may be connected with uterine or vaginal haemorrhage, including ordinary menstruation. Excluding the latter, the causes of hæmaturia may be arranged thus:—1. *Traumatic*, including external injury affecting any part of the urinary apparatus: severe exertion and straining; injury by instruments; and laceration of the mucous membrane of the pelvis of the kidney, ureter, bladder, or urethra by a calculus. 2. *Renal affections*, namely, congestion, including the active hyperæmia induced by certain articles of diet or drugs, especially turpentine and cantharides; acute Bright's disease; suppurative nephritis; cancer; tubercle; renal embolism; minute calculi in the tubules; hydatids and other parasites. 3. *Affections of either pelvis or ureter*, including cancer, tubercle, and parasitic diseases. 4. *Affections of the bladder*, namely, congestion; acute cystitis; cancer, especially if of a villous or fungous nature; and varicose veins. 5. *Gonorrhœa* and other *urethral inflammations*. 6. *Endemic*. This is a form of hæmaturia observed in certain hot climates, especially the Mauritius, due to a small parasite—*Bilharzia hematobia*—affecting the mucous membrane of the pelvis of the kidney and of the bladder. In other cases hæmaturia depends on the *filaria sanguinis hominis*; or possibly upon other parasites. 7. *Abnormal conditions of the blood*, particularly in connection with purpura and scurvy; but also in malignant fevers, especially malarial, cholera, and other affections. 8. *Vicarious*, chiefly of the menstrual discharge.

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—For purposes of diagnosis it is highly important to notice whether blood present in urine is passed constantly, or only at intervals, or under particular circumstances, as after riding, jolting, or taking certain articles of food; the mode of its discharge, whether before or after the urine, or along with it, and also if it escapes independently of micturition; its amount; and the degree in which the urine and blood are mingled, whether they are intimately mixed, or more or less separate, or if the blood forms distinct coagula.

The general characters of hæmaturia have already been indicated, and its special features in connection with most of the local lesions mentioned above will be hereafter pointed out. At present all that need be said is, that in *renal hæmaturia* the blood and urine are intimately mixed, the colour being frequently smoky, while under the microscope

minute moulded coagula or blood-casts are usually visible, being in some cases numerous and decolorized, and accompanied with other renal structures; in bleeding from the *renal pelvis* or *ureter* there is also an intimate admixture, and moulded vermiform coagula of considerable length may be discharged; in *vesical* haemorrhage the blood is expelled chiefly or only towards the end of the act of micturition; while in the *urethral* variety it may escape or be pressed out apart from micturition, and when urine is passed, blood precedes it or colours the first portion, and then the urine may become quite clear, blood again appearing at the close of the act. It may, however, flow back into the bladder from the urethra, thus colouring the urine contained in this organ. Blood is sometimes purposely mixed with urine by hysterical patients and malingerers.

The *diagnosis* of haematuria is further determined by a consideration of the history of the case, and of the previous symptoms, which might reveal some definite cause, such as a calculus; the nature and seat of local urinary symptoms, whether pointing to the kidney, bladder, or urethra; the results of thorough examination by physical and other methods; and the general symptoms present.

Treatment.—This must be conducted on similar principles to those followed in the treatment of other haemorrhages. The most valuable internal *astringents* in haematuria are gallic or tannic acid, pyrogallic acid, oil of turpentine, acetate of lead, hamamelis, persalts of iron, alum, or full doses of dilute sulphuric acid combined with opium. The subcutaneous injection of ergotin may be serviceable. The local use of *cold* is also highly beneficial in suitable cases, in the form of ice applied to the loins, hypogastrium, or perineum, or of cold injections into the bladder. *Astringent* injections are permissible in some forms of vesical haemorrhage. Dry-cupping over the lumbar regions is frequently very useful when the blood comes from the kidneys; and occasionally local removal of blood by leeching or cupping is desirable. Pressure can be applied in the case of urethral haemorrhage, and for this purpose it may be necessary to pass a catheter or sound. After the occurrence of renal haematuria it is important to watch the case for some time, as coagula may remain in the tubules, and thus set up serious mischief.

VI. HÆMOGLOBINURIA.— PAROXYSMAL HÆMOGLOBINURIA.

Ætiology and Pathology.—The urine occasionally contains more or less of the colouring matter and albumins of the blood, but few or no corpuscles or fibrin, and to this condition the term *haemoglobinuria* is now applied; it was formerly called *haematinuria*. It has been observed in connection with septic and malignant fevers; occasionally in purpura haemorrhagica and scurvy; in poisoning by arseniuretted hydrogen or carbonic anhydride; as a result of excessive administration of chlorate of potassium or pyrogallic acid; and as a distinct affection, named *paroxysmal* or *intermittent haemoglobinuria*.

Paroxysmal haemoglobinuria is much more frequent in males than females. It occurs chiefly in young adults, but has been met with from 2 to 54 years of age. In the large majority of cases this complaint results from exposure to cold or a draught, with consequent chill; but it has in some instances been attributed to injury over the renal region, or to prolonged and excessive muscular effort or strain. The affection

seems to have some aetiological relation with malaria more especially; and to a less degree with syphilis, rheumatism, and Raynaud's disease. In exceptional cases hereditary predisposition has been observed. It is said that once the disease is established, paroxysms of haemoglobinuria may arise from mental causes.

With regard to the *pathology* of paroxysmal haemoglobinuria there is much uncertainty. The blood in some cases shows that haemoglobin is dissolved in the serum, which presents a tint varying from straw to ruby-red; while the red corpuscles are paler than normal, some devoid of contour, others altered in shape, and they do not run into rouleaux. In others the serum is not coloured, and only an increase in the number of white corpuscles is observed. Blood-flakes have also been noticed occasionally. In the kidneys a form of "haemoglobinuric glomerulonephritis" has been described, which may eventually pass into an interstitial nephritis in chronic cases, but these changes are secondary, the haemoglobin being eliminated by the glomeruli, and setting up irritation. Fatty changes have also been described in the liver-cells in some instances. Dr. Ralfe concludes that paroxysmal haemoglobinuria exists under two forms:—(1) in which the haemoglobin is simply dissolved out of the blood-corpuscles, the dissolution, in each attack, taking place chiefly in parts exposed to cold: (2) a more severe form, in which the dissolution is general, and probably attended with some destruction of the red corpuscles in the liver, spleen, and even in the kidneys. The general opinion seems to be that the attacks are due to some nervous disturbance, which causes vaso-motor disorder, and it is supposed that there is an exaggerated sensibility of the reflex nervous system. It has been suggested that peripheral irritation causes irritation of the vaso-motor centre, and this in turn causes local asphyxia in the part stimulated, under which condition the red corpuscles part with the haemoglobin. Murri holds the essence of the disease to be due to an increased irritability of the vaso-motor reflex centre, and the formation, owing to disorder of the blood-forming organs, of corpuscles unable to withstand the influence of cold or of carbonic acid (Ralfe). The paroxysms have also been attributed to an intense congestion and dilatation of the vessels of the glomeruli of the kidneys, due to vaso-motor disturbance, with consequent escape of some of their contents.

Symptoms.—*Intermittent haemoglobinuria* comes on in sudden and usually irregular paroxysms, varying much in their frequency in different cases, only occurring during the day, and generally lasting from three to twelve hours; being preceded for a brief period by chills or rigors, languor, a sense of weight or dull pain over the kidneys, with some degree of tenderness over the renal region, colicky pains in the abdomen, severe aching pains or stiffness in the legs, occasionally retraction of the testicles, and nausea or vomiting. Amongst other initial symptoms noticed have been drowsiness, immoderate yawning and stretching of the limbs, headache, and great thirst. The attacks are usually clearly traceable to exposure to cold, and may come on during such exposure, but it may be very slight. The symptoms may, however, be very severe, there being a marked rigor, the patient feeling extremely cold, presenting pallor or duskiness, and the pains being very pronounced. Sometimes urticaria has been noticed on exposed parts of the skin. As a rule there is no pyrexia, and the temperature often falls below the normal at first, as much as 2° or 3° . The urine becomes in a short time very dark, resembling porter or port wine; usually turbid; generally faintly acid; of variable specific gravity; and highly albuminous, con-

taining serum-globulin as well as serum-albumin; while it deposits an abundant chocolate-coloured, grumous sediment, which microscopically is seen to consist chiefly of epithelium, pigments, granular matter, sometimes mixed with rounded reddish-yellow drops of haemoglobin, or with haematin crystals, and often with a few dark granular and pigmented or hyaline casts, and crystals of oxalate of lime and uric acid. Sometimes the colouring matter is not deposited, but remains in solution. Spectroscopic examination shows two absorption bands between the orange and green portions of the spectrum, characteristic of the presence of oxy-haemoglobin; and Drs. Forrest and Finlayson of Glasgow have reported cases in which they noticed in addition "a third, somewhat narrow, absorption band about the middle of the red in the spectrum," which they regard as due to the presence of meta-haemoglobin. When the urine comes to present its abnormal characters, the general symptoms rapidly abate, and the patient feels quite well in a few hours. There may be a slight rise of temperature. An icteric tint of the skin is common, which generally becomes more marked as the paroxysm passes off. In the intervals the urine seems to be quite natural usually; and the change to the healthy condition may be equally sudden with the onset of the paroxysm, but it is generally gradual. If the paroxysms are very frequent, the urine has not time to become clear in the intervals, but its discolouration is less marked. Occasionally a trace of albumin remains for a long time. The urine may remain dark between the paroxysms, from a tendency to deposit orange-brown amorphous urates. In one case observed by Dr. Ralfe it was distinctly chylous. While generally irregular, the paroxysms sometimes present a marked periodicity. They may come on once or twice a day, once or twice a week, or less frequently; and may cease altogether in warm weather. If they are frequent, the patient tends to become weak and anaemic, but there may be no marked deterioration of the general health even in prolonged cases of paroxysmal haemoglobinuria.

Treatment.—Full doses of quinine and tincture of iron have been found of most service in the treatment of paroxysmal haemoglobinuria. Other remedies employed are arsenic, gallic acid, acetate of lead, digitalis, ergot, and iodide of potassium if there is a syphilitic history. The diet should be light and easily digestible, chiefly farinaceous. The patient should wear warm clothing, with flannel next the skin; protect the loins and feet especially; and avoid every cause of cold. During the paroxysm he should be kept warm in bed.

CHAPTER LXI.

URÆMIA—OBSTRUCTIVE SUPPRESSION OF URINE.

Aetiology and Pathology.—*Uremia* is the term applied to a group of symptoms which occur as the result of grave interference with the urinary functions. The conditions under which they are liable to arise may be stated generally as follows:—1. *Diseases of the kidneys*, especially acute or chronic Bright's disease: or nervous and vascular derangement of these organs, which prevents them from performing their excretory work satisfactorily. 2. *Obstruction of both ureters*, so that the urine which is formed cannot escape into the bladder; or obstruction of one ureter by

a calculus, when the opposite kidney has been excised or is in any way disorganized, though it is a remarkable fact that the symptoms are by-no-means characteristic in these cases. 3. *Retention of urine in the bladder* from any cause, when the uræmic state is supposed to be partly due to re-absorption of the urinary constituents.

Most authorities regard the phenomena of uræmia as due to the accumulation of toxic substances in the blood, and their circulation through the nervous and muscular systems. Formerly they were attributed to non-excretion of urea, or to the decomposition of this substance, and the consequent formation of carbonate of ammonia - *ammonæmia* (Frerichs), but this view is now discarded by most authorities. The general opinion is that the chief toxic agents consist of materials resulting from imperfect metabolism, which in the normal course of events should be further converted into urea and uric acid, and then excreted. Other views which have been advanced are that the symptoms are due to an increase of the potash salts in the blood; or to the formation of alkaline ptomaines. Another theory is that the phenomena of an uræmic attack depend upon œdema of the brain, brought about by increased pressure acting on diluted and watery blood-serum (Traube). Ralfe is of opinion that uræmic symptoms are due to a "general condition of the whole system," there being a general accumulation of the excretory products in the tissues of the body, and he lays some stress upon retention of acid in the system, and diminished alkalinity of the blood, this condition reacting on the tissues already overcharged with the products of arrested metabolism. The variable character of the symptoms of uræmia suggests that there may be different poisons producing this condition, and this idea is borne out by researches indicating that the several constituents of the urine have different toxic effects.

Symptoms.—The clinical phenomena which may be met with indicative of uræmia are headache, sometimes fixed behind the neck or at the back of the orbits, or a sense of weight and pressure over the forehead or vertex; vertigo; intense neuralgia, especially occipito-cervical, and visceral neuroses; increased irritability of the voluntary muscles, evidenced by muscular twitchings, or fits of epileptiform convulsions (*uræmic convulsions* or *eclampsia*), in the latter the face being pale, and the pupils dilated, several fits sometimes occurring in rapid succession, with more or less stupor in the intervals, though consciousness is often partially restored; cerebral disturbance, usually in the direction of drowsiness, heaviness, and confusion of ideas, culminating in stupor or profound coma, delirium being much less common; disturbance of vision, in the way of dimness of sight from time to time, or actual temporary blindness (*uræmic amaurosis*), there being no necessary organic changes revealed by the ophthalmoscope; deafness in rare instances; vomiting and diarrhoea, the matters discharged containing a quantity of ammonia, which may be perceptible to the smell; occasionally an urinous or ammoniacal odour of the breath and sweat; and in exceptional cases paroxysmal dyspnoea, which may resemble spasmodic asthma, and come on at night, or in rare instances is attended with stridulous breathing, simulating laryngeal or tracheal obstruction. The exact combination of symptoms in any individual case varies considerably, as well as the mode and rapidity of their onset and progress. Cases of uræmia have been divided into *acute* and *chronic*. As a rule the symptoms come on gradually, beginning with headache and vomiting.

Occasionally uræmia is revealed abruptly by an apoplectiform or epileptiform attack; by sudden blindness; or by severe vomiting. It is always a grave condition, but recovery ensues in a good number of cases, especially when the uræmia is associated with some acute or temporary renal affection.

The symptoms in cases of *obstructive suppression of urine* present certain peculiarities, and in marked cases are strikingly different from those of ordinary uræmia. No urine may be passed, or only small quantities at long intervals, the excretion being clear, watery, of very low specific gravity, and containing an extremely minute proportion of urea or other solids; there is no albumin, if the urine is free from admixture of blood or pus. At first there are no obvious symptoms. Soon, however, muscular power is diminished, although appetite may be good; and the patient becomes sleepless. In five or six days muscular twitchings or jerkings set in, affecting the arms, legs, or trunk. The pupils are contracted; respiration is slow, panting, and laborious; and there is great thirst, with dryness of the mouth and tongue. Subsequently the patient becomes indifferent, drowsy, and restless, but neither coma nor convulsions occur. Death follows as a rule in from nine to eleven days, if the obstruction is not removed.

Diagnosis.—Certain cases of uræmia are particularly liable to be mistaken for apoplexy, epilepsy, or opium-poisoning. The diagnostic features by which it is distinguished from these conditions will be considered in a future chapter; and at present I would only draw attention to the great importance of testing the urine in all cases of sudden or unexplained insensibility. Cases of belladonna-poisoning may also simulate uræmia. The possibility of headache or giddiness, neuralgia, disturbances of sight or hearing, vomiting or diarrhœa, or dyspnœa being due to this cause, must not be forgotten.

Treatment.—In the uræmic state the main indications are to remove any cause of urinary obstruction or retention, if possible; to use measures for promoting excretion of urine, provided the kidneys are capable of performing their functions, especially free dry-cupping, or the application of heat and moisture over the loins; to encourage the action of the skin by the aid of warm, vapour, or hot-air baths; to act freely upon the bowels by brisk hydragogue purgatives, such as compound jalap powder or elaterin; and to treat symptoms, or endeavour to antagonize the poison or poisons causing the uræmic phenomena. Hydrate of chloral, inhalation of chloroform, nitrite of amyl, nitro-glycerine, ammonia, ether, subcutaneous injection of morphine, benzoate of sodium, and inhalation of ozonic ether or oxygen, are among the most useful agents recommended for counteracting the effects of uræmia in different cases. Venesection is often employed, and may be of the greatest service, but is said not to be admissible should there be advanced disease of the kidneys; I have known this measure, however, bring back a patient from a state of profound uræmic coma associated with granular kidneys. On the other hand, transfusion of blood has been practised in some cases with success. Sinapisms may be applied to the nape of the neck and limbs. Vomiting must be treated on ordinary principles, but it may be impossible to control this symptom. It is not advisable to check diarrhœa. For a full discussion of the prevention and treatment of uræmia reference may be made to the "Bradshawe Lecture" for 1888, by Dr. William Carter.

CHAPTER LXII.

DIABETES.

Two distinct complaints are included under this term, namely:—
1. *Diabetes Mellitus*, in which an excessive quantity of urine is passed, generally of high specific gravity, and containing more or less grape-sugar. 2. *Diabetes Insipidus*, in which there is also an abundant flow of urine, but it is of low specific gravity, and does not contain sugar. The pathology of these affections is by-no-means settled, and it is difficult to determine where to place them, but in the present edition I have thought it most convenient to return to the original arrangement in this work, and to discuss them in relation to the urinary system.

I. DIABETES MELLITUS—SACCHARINE DIABETES—GLYCOSURIA.

Pathology.—A knowledge of the pathology of glycosuria and diabetes mellitus must be founded partly upon the teaching of physiological experiments and researches, partly upon clinical and *post-mortem* observations, and upon the results of experimental pathology. It is quite impossible at the present day to attempt any detailed discussion of the subject in a work of this kind, and I can only aim at giving a summary of the main conclusions which have been arrived at, and of the more important views which are held. In this connection special attention must be drawn to the valuable researches carried on by Dr. Pavy for so many years, the results of which he has recently given to the profession in the *Croonian Lectures* for 1894, and in his work on "The Physiology of the Carbohydrates."

The urine is generally believed to be perfectly free from sugar in the normal state. Pavy, however, affirms that when sufficiently delicate tests are employed, it can be shown that healthy urine always does contain sugar in minute quantity; that a sufficiency to give a slight reaction under ordinary testing is not uncommon; and that sometimes as much as 5 to 8 parts per 1,000 may be present as an incidental occurrence. Consequently, he maintains that there is no abrupt line of demarcation, or distinction of an absolute kind, between the urine of health and that of diabetes; and that the difference, as regards the urine, is one of degree and not of kind. The chief circumstances under which temporary *glycosuria* may occur, so that the presence of sugar can be appreciated by the ordinary tests, are after taking food containing much sugar or starch; after the administration of chloroform; in poisoning by strychnine or curare; in various conditions which interfere with respiration, such as during paroxysms of asthma or whooping-cough; in connection with certain diseases affecting the nervous system, for example, epilepsy, tetanus, or apoplexy; and as the result of injuries affecting this system, the liver, and other parts. Glycosuria can also be induced experimentally in several ways.

The pathology of saccharine diabetes and glycosuria has long been closely associated with the so-called *glycogenic theory*. The distinguished physiologist, Claude Bernard, discovered that in health a peculiar substance is formed in the cells of the liver and stored up, derived from the sugar which is absorbed by the blood-vessels from the alimentary canal, and conveyed by the portal vein into the liver. This substance is of an amyloid nature, and is capable of being readily converted into grape-sugar; it has received various names, the chief being *glycogen*, *amyloid substance*, *zounglin* (which Pavy thinks is most appropriate), and *animal or hepatic dectrine or starch*. Further, a peculiar ferment is supposed to be present in the blood, which has the power of converting the glycogen into grape-sugar. According to Bernard and his followers, this conversion is being constantly carried on in the liver in the normal state, the sugar being thence conveyed by the hepatic vein into the general circulation, and gradually undergoing combustion in the peripheral capillaries, especially in those of the muscles, being converted into water and carbonic acid, and contributing to force-production. Some observers maintain that the muscles also form glycogen, and that this material is converted into sugar in these structures, as well as in the liver.

With reference to the presence of sugar in the urine in apparent health, according to the glycogenic theory this represents the excess of the saccharine element which is not destroyed in the system, whether in consequence of excessive ingestion, or of undue production from glycogen, and which is therefore eliminated by the kidneys. The supporters of this view hold that only exceptionally, and under particular circumstances, does the urine give evidence of the presence of sugar within the limits of health. Pronounced saccharine diabetes, according to this theory, is believed to be the result of *increased formation of sugar in the liver from glycogen, in excess of what normally takes place*; hence it accumulates in the blood, and is excreted by the kidneys. A modification of this view is that there is *diminished destruction of sugar in the system, either with or without excessive production*.

Dr. Pavy's views are entirely opposed to those just indicated. He maintains that when carbo-hydrates are taken into the system, important changes are wrought upon them by the agency of living protoplasm, which are, in the main, transmutation into glycogen in the liver chiefly, but also in other parts of the body; application to the production of proteid, by the incorporation of carbo-hydrate with nitrogenous matter, which has been abundantly confirmed by other workers; and transformation into fat. The last two processes take place to a large extent in the intestinal villi; and in the formation of fat from carbo-hydrates the proteids are regarded as intermediary. As regards glycogen, Pavy's theory is that the liver is a *sugar-assimilating* and not a *sugar-forming* organ; and that one of its functions is to detain and appropriate the sugar which passes through it, changing it into a substance which can be afterwards used up in the economy, in the ways above indicated, and preventing it from passing into the general circulation as sugar, which is incapable of utilization. He denies that the glycogen is normally converted into sugar; and affirms that when sugar is present in the blood in health, this is mainly either the excess of the ingested sugar which has not been appropriated by the liver, and has thus been permitted to reach the general circulation; or that it is

derived from an unnatural change in the amyloid substance, which possesses a strong tendency to pass into sugar under the influence of contact with bodies of the nature of ferment. As already stated, Pavy affirms that sugar is always present in minute quantity in the urine, corresponding to the amount existing in the blood; and he denies that it represents any excess over what is destroyed, or that sugar is specially eliminated by the kidneys, but merely passes through the vessels of these organs by a process of diffusion, as it does through all the vessels of the body, and thus appears in the urine.

With regard to diabetes, Pavy's theory is that "the disease essentially consists of a loss, or more or less impairment, of the power which naturally disposes of ingested carbo-hydrate matter, and prevents its reaching the circulation in the form of free sugar." "Through the defective power existing in diabetes, sugar finds its way into the blood of the general system, and in proportion as it does so, places it in an unnatural state, the effect of which is to interfere with the performance of nutritive action, and of the process of life generally in a healthy manner." The deviation from the natural state depends, as regards degree, in the first place, upon the extent to which the impairment of the power of stoppage (in the intestinal villi and liver) exists, and, in the next, upon the amount of carbo-hydrate ingested. Animal as well as vegetable food contains a certain amount of free carbo-hydrates, and this in part accounts for the passage of sugar in severe cases, even on a purely animal diet. But Pavy further maintains that sugar may originate from proteid cleavage, which normally occurs in the process of digestion; and he believes that it is thus susceptible of being derived from the tissues of the body, which are wrongly split up under the influence of a ferment. This is what, in his opinion, happens in severe cases of diabetes, in addition to the loss or impairment of the power of disposing of ingested carbo-hydrates.

The relation of the *nervous system* to glycosuria and diabetes is now generally acknowledged, and some lesion or disorder of this system is looked upon as an important factor, or as the primary condition, in many cases. This conclusion is supported by experimental investigations, as well as by clinical observation, and the results of *post-mortem* examinations. In exceptional instances there is gross organic disease, such as a tumour involving the medulla or pons, or pressing upon the sympathetic trunk. Dr. Dickinson has described peculiar microscopical changes in various parts of the nerve-centres in cases of diabetes, especially about the medulla and pons, in the way of dilatation of the arteries, followed by degeneration and destruction of the nerve-elements around these vessels, leading to the formation of excavations. Others, however, have failed to find these changes in typical instances, or have disputed their significance.

The influence of the nervous system in the production of glycosuria is generally believed to be exercised through the vessels going to the liver, paralysis of their walls being induced, with consequent dilatation; but some physiologists are of opinion that the nerves directly affect the amount of glycogen formed, and the rapidity of its conversion into sugar. With regard to the effect of the vascular paralysis, most authorities consider that it merely leads to a state of hyperæmia of the liver, in consequence of which a more intimate and speedy contact of the glycogen and ferment is brought about, and Schiff believed that a special ferment was developed under these circumstances. Pavy, how-

ever, maintains from his observations that a state of vaso-motor paralysis of the vessels of the chylo-poietic viscera is induced, which permits the blood to reach the liver through the portal vein without being properly de-arterialized, and it is the presence of oxygenated blood in this vein which causes the glycosuria, either by interfering with the formation of amyloid substance, and thus allowing the sugar to pass through the liver unchanged, or by facilitating the reconversion of the amyloid substance into sugar. Payy inclines to the opinion that some kind of textural change in the brain stands at the foundation of diabetes, and considers that this disease may arise in either of two ways, namely, from a lesion affecting or involving a loss of power in vaso-motor centres, with consequent direct paralysis of the muscular coat of the vessels; or a lesion in some part or other of the cerebro-spinal system, leading to an inhibitory influence being exerted upon these centres.

Seegen believes that there is a normal sugar-forming function of the liver, at the expense of albuminates and fats, and that this is not directly influenced by the carbo-hydrates of the food. This writer has applied the term *hepatogenous* to cases of diabetes depending upon disturbances of the glycogenic function of the liver, and regards them as due to inhibition of the functional activity of the hepatic cells devoted to the formation of glycogen. He considers that they only include the milder forms of the disease, and that in the grave cases the glycogenic function has no share, but that the "whole organism, or a more or less considerable part of its elements, has lost the faculty of destroying the sugar of the blood." This is practically the view held by several other writers in relation to many cases of diabetes. Ebstein affirms that carbonic acid naturally inhibits the diastatic ferments in their action upon glycogen; hence, if carbonic acid is absent, glycogen is freely converted into sugar all over the body. He attributes diabetes to a fault in the protoplasm, by which too little carbonic acid is formed.

Pancreatic Diabetes.—The experimental investigations of Von Mering and Minkowski, Vaughan Harley, and others have shown that complete removal or destruction of the pancreas in different animals is followed by all the phenomena of diabetes in a severe form; and diabetes also occurs after complete ligation of the blood-vessels and lymphatics connected with this organ. Glycosuria or actual diabetes has, moreover, been found associated with various morbid conditions of the pancreas, namely, acute abscess, haemorrhagic pancreatitis, chronic cirrhosis, atrophy, fatty degeneration, obstruction of the pancreatic duct by calculi, malignant disease, and pancreatic cysts. Hence a view now commonly entertained is that many diabetic cases met with in practice are of *pancreatic* origin. Lepine and Barral, with whom Vaughan Harley agrees, believe that the disease is then due to a want of a glycolytic ferment, which normally is being continually formed by the pancreas, and poured along with the lymph-stream into the blood, there to destroy the sugar present. It must be remarked, however, that some authorities do not believe in the reality of *pancreatic* diabetes, and affirm that the disease is due, when the pancreas is affected, to implication of the solar and cæliac plexuses and semilunar ganglia, or to other causes. The late Dr. Tylden, in a paper read before the Royal Medico-Chirurgical Society in January, 1892, maintained that in the experimental investigations mentioned the glycosuria was the result of some lesion incidental to the operation for removal of the pancreas; and that there is no relation between diabetes mellitus and a cirrhotic pancreas. As regards the grave general

symptoms supposed to be associated with pancreatic diabetes. Vaughan Harley attributes them to "non-assimilation, consequent upon a form of auto-intoxication arising from the substances normally secreted by the pancreas being retained in the organism, and there forming leucomaines, whose toxic effects lead to tissue-waste and muscular weakness."

Etiology.—*Exciting causes.*—The exciting causes of diabetes in individual cases are usually by-no-means evident. Among those to which the disease has been mainly attributed are exposure to wet and cold; drinking cold water when the body is heated; excessive consumption of alcohol, sugar, and starchy substances, especially if associated with sedentary habits, which it is believed may be the actual and sole cause of diabetes in some instances; powerful emotional disturbance, or excessive mental work; injuries to the head, spine, and various other parts, or general concussion of the body; and organic diseases affecting certain parts of the nerve-centres or the sympathetic trunk. In some cases the disease seems to have followed the prolonged action of depressing mental causes, combined with influences which tend to impair the health, as, for instance, grief and anxiety connected with long-continued watching over the sick; or worry and close confinement in business. Occasionally diabetes has appeared to be a sequel of some acute febrile disease or of malarial fever; and in some instances it is associated with gout, rheumatism, syphilis, or exophthalmic goitre.

Predisposing causes.—As regards predisposing causes, saccharine diabetes is most common in adults, from 25 to 65 years of age, especially during the period of development and activity of the sexual functions; in males, in the proportion of 2 to 1, after the period of puberty; in fair individuals; in persons residing in cities and manufacturing districts; and amongst the well-to-do classes. In some instances there is a decided hereditary predisposition; or the disease tends to run in families. Diabetes is said to be particularly prevalent in certain countries, as India, Ceylon, and Italy; and Jews seem to be very liable to the complaint. It prevails more in the eastern than in the western counties of England.

Anatomical Characters.—There are no morbid appearances peculiar to saccharine diabetes. The conditions which may be met with in connection with the nervous system have been already referred to. Peripheral neuritis sometimes occurs as a secondary change. Most authorities deny that there is any special morbid condition of the liver, though some observers have described peculiar changes in its general or microscopical characters; it is said to contain less glycogen than a healthy liver. The pancreas may present in a certain proportion of cases one or other of the lesions already mentioned. The kidneys are often diseased, but this is a secondary result of the diabetes, the most frequent morbid state being some form of Bright's disease. Various microscopical changes have been described in the epithelium of the tubes. The bladder is often hypertrophied. The lungs are also frequently affected, the lesion being usually of a phthisical nature; but occasionally acute pneumonia of a low type, or gangrene supervenes. In cases dying from diabetic coma the lungs are congested and œdematosus. The heart is generally small, and wanting in tone. There is a tendency to serous inflammations of a low character; and also to inflammation of other structures, ending in suppuration or gangrene. The stomach is generally dilated, while its mucous coat is thickened and softened, and its muscular coat sometimes hypertrophied. In some cases of diabetes the blood has been found black and tarry; in others pink and creamy.

Symptoms.—Clinically cases of diabetes mellitus differ remarkably in their severity, one class presenting but slight symptoms; another group being accompanied with marked local and constitutional disturbances. In a typical example of the disease the symptoms may be arranged under the following heads:—

1. *Urinary organs and urine.*—Micturition becomes more and more frequent; and the urine is increased in quantity. This fluid is also irritating in quality, and hence often causes in the male a sense of heat or burning along the urethra, or sets up slight inflammation, excoriation, or even ulceration about its orifice; while in the female the vagina and vulva are frequently much irritated, and may be the seat of troublesome itching, or of erythema or eczema. These conditions may induce the habit of masturbation. Pain and tenderness are often felt over the region of the kidneys, but these sensations are probably muscular. The quantity of urine may amount to 8, 12, 20, or even 30 pints in the 24 hours. It is usually very pale, clear or glistening, and watery, the more so in proportion to its quantity; possesses a sweet taste, and occasionally a sweetish odour; has a high specific gravity as a rule, this being generally from 1030 to 1040, but it may range from 1015 to 1060 or more; ferments rapidly if kept in a warm place, with the formation of torulæ, at the same time becoming opalescent or depositing a sediment; while it yields more or less sugar to the usual tests. (*See EXAMINATION OF URINE.*) Flies are sometimes attracted to diabetic urine in large numbers; and if the quantity of sugar present is large, it may become deposited on the clothing. Many different statements have been made as to the proportion of urea and uric acid present in this kind of urine; probably these constituents are as a rule absolutely increased, but relatively to the water they are diminished. The quantity of water is generally about equal to that taken in the system. The amount of sugar discharged is greater after food has been taken, especially after such articles as contain much sugar or starch, being considerably less when the diet is restricted to animal food. In any pyrexial condition it becomes greatly diminished, or may even disappear altogether. Its quantity is also influenced by various other circumstances. The proportion of sugar usually present ranges from 8 to 12 per cent., and from 15 to 25 ounces are discharged daily on the average; but the quantity may vary from less than an ounce to two pounds or more. The urine may contain albumin, or occasionally a little blood; it also yields fat sometimes, or resembles chylous urine in its characters.

2. *Digestive organs.*—A very frequent, though not invariable symptom of diabetes is insatiable thirst, attended with a dry, parched, or clammy condition of the mouth and throat, due to the presence of abundant sugar in the blood, which creates a demand for much liquid. In many cases also there is excessive appetite, which may be voracious, but disinclination for food is not uncommonly observed. The tongue generally presents a peculiar irritable, red, clean, raw, cracked, or "beefy" appearance, being also dry; it may, however, be moist and coated. Sponginess of the gums, with a tendency to bleeding, and rapid destruction of the teeth, are frequently noticed. The saliva contains sugar, and is said to be very acid sometimes, owing to the conversion of this sugar into lactic acid. The patient is often conscious of a sweet taste. The breath has in some cases a distinctly sweet or ale-like odour; in most cases which end fatally with nervous symptoms it yields a smell resembling that of stale vinegar or stale beer (Foster). Dyspeptic symptoms are of common occurrence, such as epigastric ful-

ness or a sense of sinking, flatulence, heartburn, and gaseous or acid eructations; but the digestion may be excellent. As a rule the bowels are constipated, with pale, dry, and spongy stools; but there may be diarrhoea or dysenteric symptoms, especially towards the close of a case of diabetes.

3. *General symptoms.*—The aspect of the patient is in many instances strikingly characteristic of diabetes, the prominent features being emaciation, often extreme, involving not only the fat but also the muscles, which feel flabby and soft; a peculiar dry, harsh, scurfy condition of the skin; and a distressed, worn, and suffering expression of countenance. The patient feels very weak and languid, is often chilly, and is indisposed for any bodily or mental effort, at the same time complaining of pains and soreness or aching in the limbs, and these sensations are sometimes very prominent. Slight oedema of the legs is frequently observed; and occasionally dropsy affects other parts. Sometimes the temperature is markedly reduced, and in any pyrexial condition it does not become nearly so much raised as it would otherwise be. Sexual inclination and power are commonly greatly diminished or lost. The mental condition and disposition become usually much altered in established cases of diabetes, as evidenced by failure of mental vigour; disposition to lassitude or drowsiness; lowness of spirits; petulance and irritability; or decline in firmness of character and moral tone. Temporary dimness of vision is not an infrequent phenomenon; or amblyopia, or defects of accommodation may occur, sometimes suddenly. Diabetic patients are very liable to various forms of neuralgia. The patellar-reflex is often impaired or lost. Sugar can be detected in the various secretions.

4. *Complications.*—Most of the complications of diabetes have been already alluded to in the account of its morbid anatomy, the most frequent symptoms coming under this head being those indicative of pulmonary phthisis. This is usually very rapid in its progress, both lungs being affected, and the disease spreading from apex to base. Ultimately tubercle bacilli have been found in the sputum. Under this head may also be mentioned the not uncommon occurrence of boils and carbuncles; chronic skin-affections, such as eczema, psoriasis, or lichen, and exceptionally a form of xanthoma; gradual permanent blindness, from atrophy of the optic nerve; retinitis, somewhat like that of Bright's disease, with white spots and haemorrhages; and cataract, this being almost always of the soft kind, and attributed to the imbibition of sugar, which, it is said, has been detected in the lens. Peripheral neuritis is an important condition in connection with diabetes, of which I have met with marked examples. Cerebral haemorrhage may occur as an accidental complication.

Varieties, Course, and Terminations.—The precise clinical history of diabetes varies much in different cases, as regards the intensity and exact combination of the symptoms just described, and the rapidity of the progress of the disease. Ordinarily the complaint is essentially chronic, the symptoms setting in very insidiously, and becoming gradually but progressively worse. It may happen that for a considerable time the advent of diabetes is only indicated by slight general symptoms, such as debility, languor, and some loss of flesh; while there is a distinct class of diabetic patients who are well-nourished or even corpulent. Occasionally the disease runs an acute course; in other instances it exhibits remissions from time to time; and it may be often

materially influenced in its progress by treatment, in some cases a cure being effected. Dujardin-Beaumetz has divided diabetics into three groups, according to the results of repeated examination of the urine, namely, *slight*, *moderate*, and *grave*. It is frequently observed that the symptoms are more intense at the early stage than subsequently. Most cases ultimately prove fatal, and towards the close the phenomena often change considerably in their characters, the urine and sugar diminishing in quantity; albuminuria setting in; there being complete disgust for food, or persistent vomiting; and hectic or colliquative diarrhoea supervening. The fatal result usually arises either from gradual exhaustion; from blood-poisoning, leading to collapse or stupor ending in complete coma, or occasionally to delirium or convulsions; or from complications. Now and then death takes place quite suddenly, or with great rapidity.

Diabetic coma is said to be preceded by epigastric pain, obstinate constipation, panting respiration (*air-hunger*), and restless delirium; absence of the knee-jerk has also been stated to indicate its approach. The pathological cause of this condition is a matter of dispute. It has been attributed to uræmia; to some affection of the nervous or respiratory system; to thickening of the blood, so that it cannot circulate; to lipæmia—fatty or milky blood, and fat emboli in the brain; and to the chemical transformation of sugar within the body, leading to the production of poisonous compounds. Sir Walter Foster and Kussmaul think that *acetonæmia* is the actual cause of the comatose condition. Foster is of opinion that all patients who are seriously diabetic have probably a small quantity of acetone formed in their economy, and under certain circumstances this rapidly undergoes great increase, and gives rise to the acute symptoms which lead to sudden death. He thinks it highly probable that alcohol is also formed in the system. Diabetic coma has again been attributed to the accumulation of certain acids in the system—"acid-intoxication;" and Dr. Ralfe concludes that the main cause of this condition depends on dealkalization of the blood, either by the excessive formation of acid within the body, or arrested elimination. According to the researches of Stadelmann and others the toxic agent is β -oxybutyric acid. In one case terminating fatally by diabetic coma which came under my notice, the result was clearly traceable to suddenly cutting off the supply of drinking water; in other cases it has been attributed to fatigue, excitement, fright, or a sudden change from anti-diabetic to ordinary diet or *vice versa*.

Diagnosis.—When diabetes is well-established, there ought to be no difficulty in recognizing the disease. The urinary symptoms and characters of the urine; the symptoms referable to the alimentary canal; and the general condition are highly characteristic. The rule of always examining the urine carefully when the health is persistently out of order, and especially if there are the slightest symptoms suggestive of this complaint, will often lead to a diagnosis at an early period. If a patient complains of languor and debility, or of pains in the limbs, or is losing flesh without any obvious cause; if much irritation is experienced about the external genital organs, or if these parts are affected with erythema or eczema; or if a child, or even an older person is detected masturbating, diabetes should always be borne in mind. Care must be taken, however, not to mistake temporary glycosuria for diabetes. The sugar must be in some quantity, persistent, and attended with polyuria.

It is also important to remember that urine of normal or low specific gravity may be associated with glycosuria, or even with confirmed diabetes. Seldom can any definite diagnosis be made of the exact morbid condition upon which diabetes depends. The possibility of a comatose condition being due to diabetes must be borne in mind in any case of unconsciousness of which the cause is not evident. The peculiar characters of diabetic coma, the smell of the breath, and examination of the urine ought to clear up any obscurity in the diagnosis under such circumstances.

Prognosis.—Confirmed diabetes is a very serious disease, a large proportion of cases ending fatally, and their average duration is stated to be about from one to three years. In many instances, however, much improvement may be effected by appropriate treatment, life being prolonged for many years; and in some cases recovery can be brought about. The chief circumstances which influence the prognosis are age, the prospect being worse in young than in old persons; the general condition of the patient, the disease being much less serious in stout individuals; the cause of the complaint; the amount of sugar and urine passed; the severity of the general symptoms; the presence or absence of complications, and their nature; the duration and progress of the case; and the results of treatment, as well as whether this is properly and intelligently carried out by the patient. Any person suffering from diabetes should be particularly cautioned against exposure to wet and cold, and other ordinary recognized causes of disease.

Treatment.—Cases of diabetes must necessarily call for much diversity in their management, and no case ought to be subjected to treatment until its nature and the conditions present have been ascertained as fully as possible; there are, however, certain broad and general principles to be followed, to which attention will now be directed. At the outset it is most important to impress upon patients that they must be prepared to place themselves under strict discipline and guidance, and that much of the success of treatment will depend upon their own conduct.

1. The first indication almost universally recognized in the treatment of diabetes is *regulation of the diet*. The objects aimed at are to prohibit, or to restrict within proper limits, the consumption of such articles as contain sugar or starch (carbo-hydrates); and to replace them by albuminates and fats. The articles which are more especially to be avoided include ordinary bread or flour; sugar in any form; honey; vegetables and fruits containing much starch or sugar, namely, potatoes, peas, beans, carrots, turnips, parsnips, strawberries, raspberries, plums, gooseberries, currants, apples, pears, etc.; rice; prepared varieties of starch, such as arrowroot, sago, macaroni, tapioca, and vermicelli; shell-fish, and the soft parts of crabs and lobsters. Animal food, including meat, poultry, game, and fish, should be the main diet, with the exception of liver. Dr. Lauder Brunton has suggested the use of raw meat, finely chopped, and mixed with pepper and salt. Sardines in oil, cod's roe, caviare, paté de foie gras, and such articles may be permitted, if they agree with the patient. The chief substitutes for bread which are employed include bran-cake or biscuits, gluten bread, almond rusk and biscuits, soya bread and biscuits, or very thin slices of bread toasted until they are thoroughly browned or almost black—*torrified bread*. Eggs, cream, butter, cheese, broths, soups, blanc-mangues, custards, and jellies are admissible; also vegetables containing little or no sugar or starch,

such as green cabbage, Brussels sprouts, green lettuce, cress, mustard, spinach, cucumber, and celery. Some physicians allow small quantities of French beans, asparagus, onions, and leeks; as well as a moderate amount of fresh acidulous fruit, as gooseberries, currants, or apples. Saccharin is now largely used as a substitute for sugar in cases of diabetes, but it does not always agree with the stomach.

The question of *drink* is one of much moment. Milk is theoretically contra-indicated in diabetes, because it contains a quantity of sugar, but it has been found in some instances that when given in moderate quantities this article of diet is not injurious, and may even prove highly beneficial. Therefore it is allowable to try the effects of a regulated amount of milk in any individual case, being guided accordingly as to its subsequent administration. The milk may be mixed with lime-water or soda-water. Cream may be given in abundance, if it agrees with the patient. Dr. Scott Donkin has advocated the treatment of diabetes entirely by skimmed milk, given in quantities of from six to eight or even twelve pints daily, and continued for several weeks if necessary, no other food or medicine being allowed. My experience of this treatment is anything but favourable in cases of confirmed diabetes, but I have found much benefit result from giving a considerable quantity of skimmed milk daily, as much as three or four pints, along with other food. It might, perhaps, be suitable for fat gouty, and over-fed glycosurics. Dr. Lauder Brunton has recommended the use of butter-milk. Koumiss is of service in some cases. The balance of evidence is decidedly against the consumption of *alcoholic stimulants* to any considerable extent in diabetes. A small quantity is frequently serviceable, those forms of stimulant being employed which are most free from sugar, namely, dry sherry, bitter ale, brandy or whisky well-diluted, claret, and burgundy. Tea and coffee without sugar may be allowed; and also cocoa made from the nibs, provided it agrees. It is not desirable to restrict the quantity of liquid too much, but it must be moderated so far as the feelings of the patient will permit. Most injurious is it to cut off the supply of liquid suddenly; and I have known a rapidly fatal issue result from this cause. Thirst may be relieved by ice or iced water; by acid drinks, of which a solution of phosphoric acid has been much recommended; or by a weak solution of cream of tartar. Prout affirmed that tepid liquids relieve thirst better than cold. The Bristol Hotwells, Carlsbad, Vichy, Vals, Bourboule, Neuenahr, Contrexeville, and Bethesda waters have been much advocated in the treatment of diabetes, and are severally useful in suitable cases.

It is highly important to attend to the following points in regulating the diet in diabetes:—1. The change should be brought about gradually and not suddenly. 2. Frequent variations in the food should be made amongst those articles which are permissible. 3. In many cases it is necessary to watch carefully that the regimen laid down is strictly adhered to, especially during the early period of treatment, and in dealing with ignorant patients. 4. Every individual case must be studied for itself, and the advisability of persevering with the restricted diet or not judged by the results. In some instances, where there is much loathing for food, a little ordinary bread is often of great service; indeed, some eminent authorities always allow a small quantity or a little potato meal. Again, if a fair trial of the recognized diet does not seem to lead to any improvement, or if the general condition is becoming worse, as may especially happen when the disease is far advanced, it

may be desirable to let the patient follow his own inclinations, guided by intelligence and common sense; sometimes also patients cannot possibly take the prescribed food, and then a mixed diet must be permitted.

2. *General hygienic management* is highly important in diabetes. The patient should be completely clad in flannel or other warm material; and should have two or three warm baths every week, with an occasional Turkish bath, or a vapour-bath, followed by the tepid douche. The use of air-douches over the cervical and upper dorsal spine has also been specially recommended in diabetes. Change of air, especially to the sea-side, with sea-bathing, is useful in some cases; while in others a course of treatment at Carlsbad or other suitable Spa does good. Regular and sustained active exercise in moderation is often of great service; and gymnastic exercises have been advocated in some cases. Massage may also be beneficial.

3. *Therapeutic treatment*.—Numerous medicines have been brought forward, which are supposed to have a direct curative influence upon diabetes, especially in limiting the amount of urine and sugar discharged. The principal of these include opium, given in gradually increasing doses up to gr. vi-xx daily; codeine, in doses of from gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to gr. iij; morphine; belladonna; alkaline bicarbonates or other salts; pepsin; rennet; arsenic, in the form of Fowler's solution, arseniate of sodium, arsenite of bromine, or arsenicated lithia-water; iodine or iodide of potassium, in cases supposed to have a syphilitic origin; bromide of potassium; conine; cannabis indica; lactic acid or lactate of sodium; glycerine; quinine; salicylic acid or salicylates; salol or benzozol; phenazone and allied drugs; ergot; ether; valerian; permanganate of potassium; peroxide of hydrogen; oxygenated water or inhalation of oxygen; and jambul seeds. These are supposed to act through their influence upon the nervous system; by promoting the decomposition and combustion of sugar; by supplying a readily combustible substance in its place; and in various other ways. Opium and its alkaloids are of most value in the majority of diabetic cases. Dr. Mitchell Bruce and Prof. Fraser have found morphine most beneficial; others prefer codeine. Dr. Bruce found that the effect upon the excretion of sugar was greater when the morphine was taken by the stomach than injected subcutaneously. Ralfe has noticed that different patients tolerate one preparation better than another, and such has also been my experience. A combination of opium and belladonna has been found useful in some cases. The application of the continuous current along the vagus nerve has been advocated for diabetes. In the treatment of cases of supposed pancreatic diabetes pilocarpine, to stimulate the secretion, and pancreatic extracts have been administered, but at present nothing positive can be stated as to the results.

4. *Symptomatic treatment* often calls for attention in diabetes, this being especially directed to symptoms connected with the digestive organs; to the general condition and state of the blood; to nervous disturbance, in the way of sleeplessness and restlessness; and to the various complications. These conditions must be managed on ordinary principles. Iron, especially in the form of tincture of perchloride, quinine, strychnine, and other tonics, are often of much service. Cod-liver oil is also valuable in many cases. It must be borne in mind that complications may call for considerable modifications in the treatment of

eases of diabetes. For diabetic coma the chief measures which have been advocated are transfusion; inhalation of oxygen; the administration of *antizymotics*, such as carbolic acid, salicylic acid or its salts, or thymol; free action upon the bowels; the use of repeated vapour-baths; the administration of alkalies and stimulants by enemata; and intravenous injection of a saline solution of carbonate of sodium.

II. DIABETES INSIPIDUS—POLYURIA—POLYDIPSIA.

Pathology and Aetiology.—The aetiology of diabetes insipidus is very obscure, but the complaint seems to be allied to diabetes mellitus. The probable immediate cause of the excessive flow of urine, which is one of the chief characteristics of the complaint, consists in dilatation of the renal vessels, due to paralysis of their muscular coat, resulting from deranged innervation. The condition can be induced experimentally by irritating a spot in the floor of the fourth ventricle immediately above the auditory nuclei; by section of the great splanchnic nerve; by section of the sympathetic trunk in the chest above the origin of the splanchnic nerves; and by section of the vagus nerve and electrification of its peripheral end. It has also been attributed to injury of the nervous centres, especially resulting from blows inflicted on the front of the skull, by which the posterior part of the brain was injured; to injuries affecting the sympathetic trunk; to organic diseases of the brain and cord, such as grey degeneration of the floor of the fourth ventricle, meningitis, and growths in the brain; to pressure upon the splanchnic nerves, the solar plexus, or the pneumogastric nerves, by tumours or aneurisms; to depressing emotions; and to hysteria, neuralgia, and other nervous disorders. The lesions in the brain have nearly always been found in the cerebello-medullary region. Among other alleged causes of polyuria should be mentioned exposure to cold; drinking cold water when the body is heated; abuse of alcoholic stimulants; violent effort and muscular strain; and previous febrile or inflammatory attacks. The complaint is much more common in children than adults. It is occasionally hereditary; or diabetes mellitus may have existed in the parent.

Symptoms.—Diabetes insipidus is characterized by great thirst; with an increased flow of urine, which is watery and usually of low specific gravity, but does not contain any sugar or other abnormal ingredient. The quantity of urine discharged may be enormous, sometimes exceeding considerably the amount of fluid taken into the system; and the proportion of solids discharged in the twenty-four hours may be normal, excessive, or below par. Usually they are in excess, especially the urea, and occasionally *azoturia* is present. Frequent micturition is generally a prominent symptom. Patients suffering from diabetes insipidus have been sometimes known to drink their own urine, if their drink was restricted. Occasionally they enjoy excellent health, but more commonly present more or less of the symptoms which are noticed in diabetes mellitus, especially a dry and harsh skin, loss of flesh, weakness, sensitiveness to cold, and dryness of the mouth. In most cases the appetite is not excessive, but sometimes it is voracious. Epigastric pain and constipation are often complained of. As a rule diabetes insipidus is chronic in its onset and course; occasionally it sets in suddenly. Recovery is extremely exceptional, but death usually results

from some organic complication. Occasionally the fatal termination is preceded by progressive wasting and exhaustion, total anorexia, diarrhoea, and vomiting.

Treatment.—Opium, valerian, camphor, nitrate of potassium, preparations of iron, ergot, iodide of potassium, arsenic, belladonna, bromide of potassium, salicylate of sodium, phenazone, dilute nitric acid, and pilocarpine by subcutaneous injection, are the chief medicines which have been recommended in the treatment of diabetes insipidus. Withdrawal of liquids from the diet has not proved successful. The use of the constant galvanic current, applied over the hypochondrium, or to the neck and spinal column, has been advocated. The general health and the digestive functions must be attended to; and symptoms treated as they arise.

CHAPTER LXIII.

RENAL CONGESTION—EMBOLISM—INFARCTION.

Aetiology.—Congestion of the kidneys may be *active* or *mechanical*. Active renal congestion, also named *catarrhal nephritis* in some cases, may result from :—1. Any pyrexial condition, but especially that accompanying the exanthemata. 2. Exposure to cold and wet. 3. The use of certain medicines in excess, namely, cantharides, turpentine, nitre, cubeb, or copaiba. 4. Irritating urine in connection with diabetes. 5. Morbid formations in the kidney; or infarcts. 6. Active dilatation of the vessels, as in cases of hysteria. Mechanical hyperæmia is a common consequence of :—1. Some cardiac or pulmonary disease interfering with the general venous circulation. 2. Pressure upon one or both renal veins, or upon the inferior vena cava above their point of junction, by fluid in the peritoneum, an abdominal tumour, a pregnant uterus, or other conditions.

Anatomical Characters.—At first the kidneys present the characters ordinarily accompanying congestion, namely, enlargement and increase in weight; increased redness, with points of vascularity, especially corresponding to the Malpighian bodies; and sometimes minute ecchymoses. In many forms of active hyperæmia there is a catarrhal state of the ducts of the pyramids, with shedding of their epithelium. After mechanical congestion has lasted for some time the usual pathological changes are set up in the kidneys, leading ultimately to grave disorganization of their structure, these organs becoming contracted, indurated, and sometimes granular or irregular, while their cortical substance undergoes more or less atrophy. Microscopical examination reveals alteration in the shape of the tubes, with thickening of their walls; changes in the epithelium, which is often destroyed; increase in the intertubular connective tissue; and permanent distension of the minute vessels. By some pathologists this condition is looked upon as a form of chronic Bright's disease.

Embolii not infrequently lodge in the kidneys, and give rise to *infarctions*, which are almost invariably confined to the cortical portion; differ in size; and are usually well-defined and wedge-shaped, with the base towards the surface. At first they present a dark-red colour, but

become decolorized from the centre towards the circumference, leaving yellow masses, which may be ultimately absorbed, depressed cicatrices alone remaining. Rarely an infarction softens and breaks down, forming a pseudo-abscess; or actual pus may be produced if the embolus is of an infective character. In very exceptional instances it is of sufficient size to block one of the larger renal arteries, and to cause necrosis of the kidney.

Symptoms.—Congestion of the kidneys is ordinarily indicated by the urine becoming diminished in quantity, high-coloured, and concentrated, and depositing urates abundantly on standing; while it afterwards may contain some albumin, occasionally a little blood or clear fibrinous casts, with a few renal epithelium-cells. In some forms of *active* hyperaemia, however, a copious flow of pale and watery urine takes place, which is of low specific gravity. There may be a sense of fulness about the loins, or even a certain degree of heavy pain, and tenderness is frequently complained of. If the congestion subsides, the urine assumes its normal characters; but if it continues and leads to organic changes in the kidneys, this fluid presents more marked and permanent changes, which will be hereafter considered. As a rule there are no definite symptoms of *renal embolism*. If the embolus is large, its lodgment may cause a sudden severe pain in the renal region, shooting towards the pelvis; followed by albuminuria or haematuria. Should an abscess form in the kidney after embolism, in connection with an infarct, the symptoms indicative of this event will be pointed out in the next chapter.

Treatment.—If renal congestion calls for any interference, the main indication is to remove its cause, especially in the *mechanical* form. Rest in the recumbent posture; free dry-cupping, or the application of heat and moisture over the loins, or in some cases the local removal of a small quantity of blood; the use of the warm bath; and the employment of *purgatives*, are the chief active measures which may be required. The judicious administration of *diluents* would be serviceable in some instances.

CHAPTER LXIV.

SUPPURATIVE INFLAMMATION IN CONNECTION WITH THE KIDNEYS.

I. SUPPURATIVE NEPHRITIS—RENAL ABSCESS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Under this general heading are included all cases of inflammation of the substance of the kidney, ending in the formation of one or more distinct abscesses. It may be due to the following causes:—1. *Injury* from without. 2. Some *direct irritation* in the substance of the kidney, especially from a calculus or an infarct. 3. *Suppuration in the renal pelvis, bladder, or urinary passages.* 4. *Pyemic* or *septicemic*, especially in connection with ulcerative endocarditis. In the last two groups of cases the suppurative inflammation is directly due to infective micro-organisms, either conveyed from some distant part; or from the urinary organs, through the medium of the lymphatic channels, or directly along the ureter.

Anatomical Characters.—Whatever may be the origin of the suppurative inflammation, the alterations in the kidney are similar at first, namely, enlargement; hyperæmia, much blood flowing on section; and diminution in consistence. It is supposed that an interstitial exudation then forms. Suppuration usually commences in separate points, which extend and coalesce so as to form one or more abscesses, these varying much in size. In most forms of the disease only one kidney is usually involved, and there is finally but a single abscess, which may attain large dimensions. If not opened, it generally bursts, either into the pelvis of the kidney; externally in the loin; into the peritoneum or sub-peritoneal tissue; into the intestines; or into the thorax. Occasionally inspissation of the contents takes place, followed by caseation and calcification, a cure being thus effected. In pyæmia very numerous scattered abscesses of small size are usually observed, especially in the cortex; and nearly always both kidneys are affected. They appear as small yellowish-white patches, often somewhat pyramidal in form, and surrounded by a zone of intense hyperæmia. The walls of the abscesses are ragged, and composed of round cells mingled with red corpuscles, whilst the tubular structure is infiltrated with inflammatory cells. The usual micro-organisms are always found in pyæmic abscesses.

Symptoms.—Acute suppurative nephritis is generally accompanied with local pain in the corresponding lumbar region, often severe, increased by movement, and frequently shooting towards the bladder, testis, or thigh; as well as with tenderness. The testis may be drawn up. The urine is diminished in quantity and concentrated, or it may even be actually suppressed; it frequently contains some blood or merely a little albumin, but these elements may be quite absent. As a rule distinct rigors usher in the complaint, followed by marked pyrexia, which has a great tendency to assume the typhoid type, especially when suppuration commences, this being accompanied with repeated shivering. Sympathetic vomiting is not uncommon. Uræmic symptoms are also liable to arise. Should a large abscess form, it presents as an elastic or fluctuating fulness or tumour, usually in the lumbar region, where it may afterwards burst. If it opens into the pelvis of the kidney, a copious discharge of pus takes place along with the urine, and this may afterwards continue, either persistently or at intervals. Various symptoms may result from the bursting of a renal abscess into other parts. When the kidneys are involved in pyæmia there are no prominent local signs; and such is often the case when renal suppuration follows some morbid condition of the urinary passages, when it also frequently runs a somewhat chronic course.

II. PYELITIS—INFLAMMATION OF THE PELVIS OF THE KIDNEY—PYO-NEPHROSIS—PYELO-NEPHRITIS—CONSECUTIVE NEPHRITIS—SURGICAL KIDNEY.

Etiology.—*Pyelitis* signifies inflammation involving the mucous lining of the pelvis and infundibula of the kidney. Its important causes are:—1. *Direct irritation* by foreign matters lodged in the renal pelvis, especially a calculus or gravel, parasites, and blood-clots. 2. *Morbid formations* in the membrane, namely, cancer or tubercle. 3. *Extension* of inflammation from the bladder along the ureter. 4. Irritation by *accumulated urine*, resulting from closure of the ureter owing to pressure or internal obstruction, especially if this urine has become decomposed.

5. In rare instances pyelitis seems to be set up as an *idiopathic* affection, from exposure to cold and wet, or other injurious influences.
6. A certain degree of catarrh of the renal pelvis and infundibula may also arise in the course of *other diseases*, especially various febrile complaints, organic affections of the kidneys, and diabetes; or from the use of certain *drugs*, such as turpentine or cantharides.

Pyo-nephrosis is the term applied to the condition when, owing to some obstruction in the ureter, an accumulation of pus mixed with urine takes place, distending the renal pelvis more or less. *Pyelo-nephritis* signifies a form of interstitial inflammation of the kidney, with scattered points of suppuration, frequently associated with pyelitis, and almost always following disease of the lower urinary organs, being the result of a local infective process. The morbid changes resulting from such disease have been designated *consecutive nephritis* by the late Marcus Beck, and were attributed by this eminent authority to increased urinary pressure; reflex irritation of the kidneys; or the presence of septic matters. An acute attack of pyelo-nephrosis generally supervenes upon previous chronic interstitial inflammation, and in most cases the presence of decomposing urine in the pelvis of the kidney is its immediate exciting cause. Beck supposed that the pelvis and straight tubules are filled with this irritating fluid under some degree of pressure, that it damages the epithelium and causes its desquamation, and that the septic matter then passes into the inter-tubular lymph-spaces of the kidney, and excites diffuse inflammation, which spreads rapidly towards the cortex and between the tubules. The condition may, however, arise without any continuity in cases of suppurative inflammation of the bladder, and it is then believed that the infective organisms either spread upwards directly to the tubules of the kidney, or reach this organ through the lymph-spaces and lymph-channels. Pyelo-nephritis is often set up by catheterism, or by other operations performed on any portion of the lower urinary tract. It has also been found that it not infrequently follows on operations on the internal genital organs (Doran), having then either a reflex or septic origin probably. Ralfe states that if obstructive inflammatory disease of the lower urinary passages exists, any slight disturbing influence may start the secondary renal mischief, such as a chill, or enforced retention of urine during a railway journey.

Anatomical Characters.—Pyelitis may be *acute* or *chronic*, and the appearances vary accordingly. The *acute* form, in which the inflammation is usually *catarrhal*, is characterized by injection of the lining membrane, occasionally with slight ecchymoses or extravasations of blood; relaxation and softening; shedding of epithelium; and the subsequent discharge of a purulent mucus, or of actual pus. Rarely diphtheritic inflammation is observed in the renal pelvis. The *chronic* variety may either follow the acute form, or commence independently. The membrane is then pale, though some of its veins may be permanently distended; often grey or slate-coloured from pigment; much thickened; and unusually firm. Pus is constantly formed, and if there is no obstruction it flows away with the urine; should there, however, be an impediment to its escape, the pus accumulates in the pelvis of the kidney, and *pyo-nephrosis* results, but it is commonly mixed with other materials, such as urine, which is usually decomposed and ammoniacal, deposits or incrustations of uric acid and urates or phosphates, calculi, or blood. By degrees the substance of the kidney is compressed and invaded upon, until ultimately the organ may be completely destroyed, a

mere sac remaining, containing pus and other matters; or it may simply shrivel up and become atrophied. The accumulation may burst in any of the directions which renal abscess takes; or occasionally ulceration of the mucous membrane is set up by some foreign body, and perforation occurs before the pelvis is much distended. In some cases the pus becomes inspissated, and abundant calcareous deposits are formed, the cavity contracting and shrivelling up.

In *pyelos-nephritis* the kidney presents a combination of chronic interstitial inflammation with more or less acute diffuse inflammation, and scattered points of suppuration. The organ is somewhat enlarged and softened; the capsule strips off easily, except in some parts; and scattered over the surface are seen yellow spots, either very soft or actually purulent, surrounded by a red zone. The intermediate substance is palish-yellow, mottled with red. On section yellow streaks are seen to extend for some distance from the superficial abscesses into the cortex, somewhat wedge-shaped, indicating purulent softening, with often distinct centres of suppuration, and surrounded by a slight zone of hyperæmia. Similar lines are also observed extending from the papillæ to the bases of the pyramids, in the direction of the uriniferous tubes. On microscopical examination areas of interstitial inflammation, in various stages, will be found in the cortical and pyramidal portions of the kidneys; and micrococci may generally be discovered, either disseminated or grouped into colonies, but they are not observed in the glomeruli or other vessels. Should the acute process subside, the *cicatricial kidney* is produced, the organ becoming shrunken, tough, and irregular; and sometimes cicatrices are visible on the surface. Other acute attacks may occur, however, so that chronic and acute changes may be found variously combined.

Symptoms.—In the majority of cases pyelitis is preceded by, or accompanied with, symptoms due to its cause, for instance, those of calculus or disease of the bladder. The *local* clinical phenomena associated with this complaint are uneasiness or pain over one or both lumbar regions, often of an aching character, or shooting downwards; tenderness; a sense of local weakness; generally frequent micturition; changes in the urine; and in some instances the presence of a renal enlargement. The alterations in the urine may be the only deviation from health. This fluid is often increased in quantity; generally acid; and at first contains a little blood intimately mixed with mucus and the variously-shaped epithelium-cells, detached from the pelvis and infundibula; gradually it becomes mixed more and more with pus, until finally this morbid product may be present in large quantity, and it comes away persistently so long as no obstruction exists to prevent its escape. Albumin is only observed in proportion to the admixture of blood and pus. Some important differences are noticed in the characters of the urine under certain circumstances. If the flow of pus along the ureter is impeded in any way, as by the lodgment of a calculus, the urine may become quite natural, provided only one kidney is involved; if both are implicated, or if the closure of the ureter is incomplete, the quantity of pus is merely lessened. Should the obstruction be removed, a copious flow of purulent urine again takes place suddenly; this course of events may be repeated from time to time, or the obstruction may remain permanently. Further, if the urine is retained in the renal pelvis, it tends to decompose, and is then frequently discharged in an ammoniacal state. Should the different fluids accumulate in this

part, a fulness or tumour is produced, having the general characters of a renal enlargement, but presenting an elastic or fluctuating feel. This fulness will increase in size from time to time should the ureter become obstructed, being then also more painful and tender; and it suddenly subsides when the impediment is removed. Occasionally the enlargement attains very great dimensions.

The *general* symptoms are those of pyrexia in the acute form of pyelitis, preceded by rigors. When suppuration is set up, there are commonly repeated rigors, in some cases recurring at regular intervals; and in prolonged cases signs of hectic fever appear. The bowels are often disturbed, there being either diarrhoea or obstinate constipation, and the latter may result from pressure on the colon. In some cases recovery takes place, provided only one kidney is affected, and the cause of the complaint can be removed, though often with complete destruction of the involved organ. Most commonly, however, death ultimately ensues from gradual exhaustion. This event may also result from perforation or rupture of the distended pelvis, the symptoms differing according to the direction in which the opening takes place, and the structure with which the purulent collection communicates.

When *pyelo-nephritis* supervenes on disease of the lower urinary organs, marked rigors usually occur; and there may be pain in the loins, especially on pressure, but it is rarely severe. The urine, in addition to being purulent, is almost always alkaline and ammoniacal, and deposits abundant epithelium, renal and vesical, with occasionally hyaline and granular casts, and sometimes pus-casts. The quantity is not usually diminished, but urea is below the normal. There may be nausea, urgent vomiting, and diarrhoea; and slight jaundice is often developed at an early period. The *general* symptoms are rapid wasting, profuse sweating, and prostration, culminating in the "typhoid state." There may be more or less drowsiness and heaviness, but uræmic convulsions or coma are usually absent. Death most frequently occurs within a few days, and before this event happens the temperature may become sub-normal; sometimes, however, cases linger on for some time, and recovery occasionally takes place.

III. PERINEPHRITIS.—PERINEPHRITIC ABSCESS.

In *perinephritis* the cellular tissue surrounding the kidney becomes the seat of inflammation, the process usually terminating in suppuration. It may be caused by injury; exposure to cold; or previous suppurative nephritis or pyelitis. Abscess following perforation of the appendix vermiciformis occasionally becomes perinephritic in site. *Clinically* perinephritis presents a history very much like that of the diseases just described, but is distinguished from these affections by the absence of any marked disturbance of the renal functions, or of any changes in the urine. There may also be a greater intensity and superficialness of the pain and tenderness, with more marked exacerbation on movement; and subcutaneous œdema over one lumbar region may be observed. Perinephritic abscess generally opens posteriorly, but may rupture in various other directions.

IV. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—The inflammatory affections just described are generally attended with much pain referred to the renal region; functional disturbance of the kidneys, except in the case of perinephritis; and pyrexia. They can in most instances be distinguished by the circumstances under which they severally occur; and by the characters of the urine. Acute Bright's disease is diagnosed from these affections by the dropsy and other prominent symptoms which accompany it; as well as by the characters of the urine. In *pyelitis* the presence in the urine of epithelium from the pelvis and infundibula is highly important; while later on pus appears. *Suppurative nephritis* may give rise to the physical signs of an abscess in the renal region. Insidious cases of *pyelo-nephritis* may be mistaken for pyæmia, ague, typhoid fever, or septic peritonitis. *Perinephritis* is, as a rule, but not invariably, distinguished by the absence of any morbid characters of the urine. *Active renal congestion* might possibly be mistaken at first for some of the inflammatory affections, but the milder character of the symptoms, and their speedy subsidence, sufficiently characterize this condition. *Acute cystitis* sometimes simulates renal inflammation.

2. Prognosis.—Suppurative inflammatory diseases in connection with the kidney are very dangerous, on account of their interference with the renal functions; the constitutional disturbance which they occasion; and the dangers incident to the rupture of any purulent accumulation. *Pyelitis* differs much in its gravity according to its duration; its cause; and whether it is single or double. When confirmed, this complaint is always serious, but even after complete destruction of the kidney recovery may follow, provided only one organ is involved. Calculous *pyelitis* is much more favourable than that which follows chronic disease in the lower urinary passages; or that which is associated with tubercle or cancer. *Pyelo-nephritis* is very grave.

3. Treatment.—The general measures applicable at the outset in all the forms of *acute renal inflammation* are to keep the patient in bed, completely at rest; to remove blood locally, by leeching or cupping the loins, to the extent of from 6 to 10 or 12 ounces, if the case is favourable, or otherwise to dry-cup freely; to apply hot poultices or fomentations constantly over the lumbar region; to give low diet, with abundance of diluent drinks; and to act freely upon the bowels. In *suppurative nephritis* or *perinephritis*, should signs of an abscess appear, this should be encouraged towards the surface, and the pus evacuated when the proper time arrives, for which purpose the *aspirateur* is most serviceable, but a free incision may be needed. At this time abundant support, along with *alcoholic stimulants*, may be required, especially if typhoid symptoms should set in. In *pyelitis* it is very important to remove the cause of the disease if possible; and when the complaint is due to a calculus, a considerable amount of opium, or free subcutaneous injection of morphine is often needed, in order to relieve the pain. In the treatment of *pyelo-nephritis*, in addition to attending to the lower urinary apparatus, the indications are to support the patient; to administer *antiseptics*; and to treat symptoms. Boric acid is highly recommended as an antiseptic in this disease. The measures requisite for the treatment of purulent discharge in the urine have already been considered.

CHAPTER LXV.

BRIGHT'S DISEASE.

NUMEROUS and diverse have been the classifications adopted by different authors of the morbid conditions included under the term *Bright's disease*. It is commonly employed as a comprehensive expression signifying any structural disease of the kidneys accompanied with albuminuria and dropsy, but these symptoms are by no means essential. Primarily Bright's disease is divided into *acute* and *chronic* forms, under which divisions its several varieties may be conveniently discussed.

I. ACUTE BRIGHT'S DISEASE—ACUTE TUBAL OR DESQUAMATIVE NEPHRITIS — ACUTE INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS—GLOMERULO-NEPHRITIS.

Aetiology.—In the large majority of cases acute Bright's disease is associated with scarlatina; or results from exposure to cold and wet, damp air being an important factor in this class of cases. It may follow a bout of excessive drinking. Occasionally it is set up in the course of other exanthemata besides scarlet fever, for example, measles, typhus or typhoid fever, or small-pox; in diphtheria; in acute rheumatism; in the collapse-stage of cholera; after ague or exposure to malaria, it is affirmed; or during pregnancy. This complaint may also arise from extensive cutaneous lesions, as in connection with burns or scalds, acute general dermatitis, or psoriasis. There is good reason for believing that the *pathological* cause in many of these conditions consists in an undue call being made upon the functional activity of the kidneys, these organs having to excrete materials which are either formed in excess or of an unusual character, or such as are normally removed by the skin. The chief *predisposing* causes of acute Bright's disease are the early period of life; the male sex; family predisposition; want of cleanliness of the skin; intemperate habits; and occupations which involve exposure to wet and cold. In some cases this affection probably exists in a chronic form without giving rise to any evident symptoms, until one of the above causes leads to an acute exacerbation.

Anatomical Characters.—Acute Bright's disease is usually of the nature of *tubal* or *desquamative nephritis*, the morbid changes taking place in connection with the renal tubules and their epithelium; but in some cases, when the inflammation is less intense, *interstitial nephritis* or *glomerulo-nephritis* is primarily set up, the tubules being involved later on. At present, however, the general opinion is that there is no actual distinction between these forms of inflammation, and they are often found more or less associated together. The process occurs in various degrees of intensity, and may be sub-acute rather than acute. Both kidneys present obvious changes. They are enlarged and increased in weight, in most cases considerably. At first they are deeply congested, the surface presenting a deep dusky-red colour, with distended veins; while the cortical portion is seen on section to have a reddish-

brown or chocolate hue, and the pyramidal portion is intensely congested, with darker spots corresponding to the Malpighian corpuscles or to minute hemorrhages; and a quantity of bloody fluid or blood escapes on section. The surface is quite smooth, and the capsule is easily separated. The enlargement is mainly due to increase in the cortical substance, which is found to be much thickened, softened, lacerable, and friable. The renal pelvis and infundibula are also injected, and a bloody liquid is often found here. In a more advanced stage the colour of the cortical portion changes, usually in a short time, becoming either more or less white, yellowish-white, or pale buff, as well as opaque and dotted, or presenting a mottled surface of red and white; while the pyramids remain dark-red and striated, red lines radiating in a fan-like manner from their bases. If the inflammatory process subsides quickly in the early stage, the kidneys may completely recover, the inflammatory products being either removed with the urine or absorbed.

Microscopical examination reveals distension of the small blood-vessels; and the presence of fibrinous exudation within the tubules of the kidney, along with red blood-corpuscles, and extremely abundant epithelium-cells, which become detached, rapidly increase in number, and accumulate in the tubules, many of which appear crammed full of cells, while some of them are dilated. Most of the epithelial particles are altered in their characters, presenting the condition known as "cloudy swelling," being enlarged, cloudy or opaque, or more or less granular from the presence of protein granules or sometimes of fat; or they may be quite disintegrated, there being nothing left but a granular débris. Abundant new cells are also present, resulting from proliferation. They accumulate more and more as the disease advances, which mainly accounts for the pale colour, this also partly resulting from compression of the vessels. In some tubules the epithelium may be completely removed, only hyaline fibrinous moulds remaining. These changes are much more evident in the cortical than in the pyramidal portion of the kidneys.

In *interstitial nephritis* the inter-tubular connective tissue usually presents an albuminous appearance, and encloses numerous small round cells, with inflammatory corpuscles and sometimes fatty granules; in some instances the inter-tubular spaces are filled with blood.

The special characters of the changes in the kidney in connection with scarlatina—*scarlatinal nephritis*—have already been referred to under scarlatina; and also the condition named *glomerulo-nephritis* by Klebs. Peculiar appearances have been described in cases of fatal puerperal eclampsia by the late Dr. Angus Maedonald and Prof. Hamilton, the epithelium-cells being small, and their nuclei abnormally distinct; while many tubes were blocked with a peculiar hyaline or colloid material.

In fatal cases of acute Bright's disease morbid appearances due to complications are commonly observed, especially serous inflammations; endocarditis; and pneumonia or bronchitis. Dropsy and its consequences are also generally present. In some cases the heart is hypertrophied. As a result of the grave interference with the renal functions which the disease entails, the blood becomes overloaded with excrementitious matters, as well as unusually watery, and in time very deficient in albumen and red corpuscles.

Symptoms.—As a rule the onset of acute Bright's disease is definite and marked. Frequently the complaint sets in with chilliness or rigors, general pains, headache, and nausea or severe vomiting; in other cases

dropsy rapidly extending is the earliest symptom observed; and occasionally uræmic phenomena first attract attention. When the disease is established, the characteristic clinical signs include peculiar changes in the urine; more or less general anasarca, frequently accompanied with effusion into serous cavities and œdema of organs; extreme pallor, puffiness, and dryness of the skin; a tendency to uræmia, serous inflammations, endocarditis, pneumonia, or bronchitis; and pyrexia. Generally some degree of dull pain, with tenderness, is experienced over the renal regions, but these sensations are not prominent; micturition also is in most cases too frequent, especially at night, though the quantity of urine passed is greatly diminished, and sometimes this excretion is almost or quite suppressed. The urine which is discharged has the following characters:—It is dark in colour, from excess of pigment, and from the presence of blood, the latter often causing the urine to assume a smoky, brown, or dark-red tint; the specific gravity is high—1025 to 1030, 1040, or more; the reaction is almost always acid; the normal odour is replaced by one compared to that of beef-tea, or the washings of flesh, or whey; an abundant sediment forms, brown and flocculent; while urates are frequently deposited. Chemical examination reveals a large amount of albumin, the urine sometimes becoming almost solid on boiling. The excretion of urea and inorganic salts is greatly diminished, but uric acid is about normal. Under the microscope the deposit is seen to consist of red blood-corpuscles, in some cases much altered in their characters; renal epithelium-cells, usually more or less swollen, cloudy or granular, or partially disintegrated; remnants of these cells, in the form of nuclei or granular matter; extra-renal epithelium; amorphous particles of fibrin; and numerous casts, chiefly of the *blood* and *epithelial* varieties at first, and of medium size, with a few large or small *hyaline*, and some opaque *granular* casts. The casts change during the progress of a case of acute Bright's disease, and it is very important to study these alterations; not uncommonly a little fat appears in connection with the casts and with the epithelium, which disappears as the disease subsides. The presence of "white cell casts" has been regarded by Sir George Johnson as a sign of *glomerulo-nephritis*.

Dropsy often comes on with great rapidity in acute Bright's disease, in some cases rendering a patient unrecognizable in a few hours; while the face assumes a characteristic blanched, pasty, and puffy aspect. Hydrothorax, ascites, and œdema of the lungs are common; while œdema glottidis sometimes proves highly dangerous. The patient generally feels dull and heavy, or complains of headache, distinct uræmic symptoms being also liable to supervene at any time. Inflammatory complications will be indicated by their special signs, those chiefly to be borne in mind being pericarditis, pleurisy, peritonitis, endocarditis, bronchitis, and pneumonia. Fever is often high, with a full hard pulse; while there is complete loss of appetite, great thirst, and usually constipation. The blood is hyperinotic.

The late Dr. Sibson drew special attention to certain signs in connection with the heart and vessels in cases of Bright's disease, and in the acute form he frequently noticed the following phenomena:—Tension and hardness of the radial artery; a second beat over the aorta in the first and second right intercostal spaces; an intensified metallic second sound and muffled first sound over the aorta; reduplication of the first sound, variously distributed, but usually best heard over the septum ventriculorum; and in most cases a doubled second sound.

The left ventricle was hypertrophied in many instances, but in others this effect of Bright's disease was prevented by the co-existence of some wasting and exhausting complaint. The correctness of these observations has been abundantly confirmed, and the signs in connection with the cardio-vascular system in cases of acute Bright's disease are now generally regarded as of considerable importance.

Course, Duration, and Terminations.—Acute Bright's disease presents considerable variations in these respects. *Recovery* follows in not a few instances, either speedily or gradually. Complete restoration is indicated by disappearance of the dropsy; by subsidence of pyrexia, and return of the functional activity of the skin; and by the urine becoming abundant, clear, and of normal or low specific gravity, while blood, albumin, and casts disappear, many of the latter assuming the *hyaline* character during the progress towards convalescence. Some fatty changes may be noticed, but they disappear in a favourable case. As a rule the dropsy subsides before the albuminuria, and the latter may hold on for a considerable time. Not uncommonly acute Bright's disease passes into a *chronic* form. *Death* may result from dropsy affecting important parts, such as the glottis; from inflammatory complications, as pneumonia or pleurisy; from uræmia; or from erysipelas or gangrene of dropsical parts.

Diagnosis.—The circumstances under which it occurs; the peculiar train of symptoms; and the characters presented by the urine, in most cases render the diagnosis of acute Bright's disease quite easy. When the affection sets in insidiously, as with uræmic symptoms, there may be much obscurity at first. It must be remembered that *acute* Bright's disease may occur as an exacerbation of the *chronic* form, and an important matter bearing upon diagnosis is to determine whether such is the case, or whether the complaint is actually recent. This conclusion is founded upon the past history; the presence or absence of any sufficient and obvious cause of the acute attack; the characters of the urine; and the condition of the heart and vessels. Should much blood and renal epithelium be discharged, and should the microscopic elements in the urine not exhibit signs of degenerative changes, the disease is probably recent and entirely acute.

Prognosis.—Any organic disease of the kidneys is serious, especially if it is extensive, and if both organs are involved. Hence acute Bright's disease is a grave affection. However, a large number of patients affected with this complaint recover completely; but there is always a danger lest it should lapse into the chronic state, and therefore it is necessary to watch the urine carefully for a long time before giving a final prognosis. If, along with the subsidence of the symptoms, the albumin and other abnormal urinary ingredients steadily diminish, and the urine is gradually restored to its normal characters and composition, the prognosis is favourable. Even should slight albuminuria hold on for some time, accompanied with a few casts, the case may end in ultimate recovery. If albumin continues to be discharged in abundance for a length of time, the prognosis becomes more serious; much will depend also on the presence and characters of the casts, whether these show that the disease is subsiding, or that it is becoming confirmed, and that the epithelium is undergoing degenerative changes and destruction. Recovery cannot be considered satisfactory until every trace of albumin has permanently disappeared. The immediate prognosis is more grave if the urine becomes very scanty; and if it contains a large quantity of

albumin, blood, and casts. The chief signs of proximate danger are the supervention of uræmic symptoms; œdema of the glottis or lungs; abundant pleuritic or pericardial effusion; severe erysipelas or gangrene affecting dropsical parts; and the development of acute inflammatory complications.

Treatment.—A patient suffering from acute Bright's disease should be kept completely at rest in bed, in a warm and comfortable room, well-protected from draughts. The activity of the measures to be adopted must vary with the severity of the case, but it is necessary to guard against a too energetic treatment. In some cases it might be advisable at the outset to leech or cup over the loins to the extent of from 6 to 12 ounces; but removal of blood requires particular caution in this affection, on account of the tendency to anaemia, and it should be omitted if the patient is at all weak, and especially if chronic renal disease has previously existed. Free dry-cupping is often of great service, and may be resorted to when abstraction of blood is not permissible. The *diet* must consist chiefly of milk and farinaceous articles, nitrogenous substances being given only in very small quantity, or even absolutely forbidden in severe cases; abundance of diluent drinks may be allowed, but *alcoholic stimulants* must be avoided. Such fruits as grapes or oranges may be permitted in moderation.

One of the most important objects in the treatment of acute Bright's disease is to endeavour to get the skin to act freely. This is best effected by clothing the patient in flannel; placing him between blankets; and employing warm, hot-air, or vapour baths, repeated daily or less frequently, as circumstances indicate. Sir William Roberts recommends the warm "blanket-bath." Internally full doses of citrate or acetate of potassium, or of solution of acetate or citrate of ammonium, may be given, freely diluted. Some authorities highly recommend small doses of tartarated antimony or antimonial wine. Jaborandi and subcutaneous injection of pilocarpine are most valuable agents, and sometimes produce remarkable results. There is much difference of opinion as to the use of *diuretics*. Experience has proved, however, that certain of these agents may often be given with great benefit. In the first place, the patient should drink water freely, for the purpose of eliminating and washing away the urinary solids and other materials which tend to accumulate in the renal tubules. In addition to the vegetable salts of potassium already mentioned, cream of tartar, digitalis, squill, citrate of caffeine, and infusion of fresh broom-tops have been beneficially employed as diuretics in combating the dropsy of acute Bright's disease. The bowels should be acted upon freely by means of a dose of compound jalap powder, given every morning or on alternate mornings. Later on elaterium or elaterin, or other powerful *hydragogue purgatives* may be required, if the dropsy does not subside. In cases of extensive dropsy which does not yield to treatment, it will be necessary to have recourse to the removal of the fluid by operation.

In addition to dropsy, various other *symptoms* frequently call for attention during the course of acute Bright's disease, especially vomiting and other uræmic phenomena. The management of inflammatory complications, particularly those within the chest, is often a matter of much difficulty. Lowering treatment is decidedly not admissible, and mercury must not be given in such conditions. The application of blisters or of turpentine likewise requires great care, as they tend to irritate the kidneys. Opium and morphine must also be avoided, or only given

very cautiously; chloral hydrate is generally a safe drug, and hyoscine has been particularly recommended as a *hypnotic* in acute Bright's disease. Sinapisms, warm fomentations or poultices, and chloroform epithems over the loins are the best local applications, and they are frequently of much service, especially for the relief of pain.

Special remedies have been recommended in the treatment of acute Bright's disease, such as fuchsine, tannin, tannate or benzoate of sodium, and nitro-glycerine. Quinine is an important drug in cases which are of malarial origin.

After the more acute symptoms have subsided, the use of the *diaphoretic*, *diuretic*, and *purgative* remedies must be moderated, and at this time the most valuable medicine is iron. Care is needed in commencing the administration of this drug, which should be given at first in a mild form and in small doses, its effects being carefully watched. The tincture of the perchloride, syrup of phosphate, ammonio-citrate, or reduced iron are the best preparations, and if the first is tolerated in full doses, excellent results are frequently brought about. Quinine may be combined with the iron, and this remedy is particularly recommended after scarlatina. The diet should be gradually improved, being also made nutritious and digestible; and during convalescence a little wine may be given, provided it agrees with the patient. The adoption of an absolute milk-diet for some weeks or months, or even for a year or two, has been found very successful during recovery from acute Bright's disease, in aiding towards bringing about a permanent cure. The greatest care is necessary at this time to guard against a relapse. The patient should always wear flannel or woollen clothing all over the body, and avoid every possible exposure; indeed, it is often advisable to enforce confinement to the bedroom until the albumin has quite disappeared, and for some time special precautions are needed. Afterwards a change of air to a warm and well-protected region, with a bracing air and dry sub-soil, is very beneficial. Baths should be employed from time to time, in order to promote the action of the skin.

II. CHRONIC BRIGHT'S DISEASE.

General Pathology and Aetiology.—The pathology of the cases grouped under the term chronic Bright's disease has been the subject of much controversy. Most writers recognize different forms or varieties of the complaint, but others limit the term to certain morbid changes produced by chronic inflammation of the renal structures. Moreover, the inflammatory process is usually regarded as of two kinds, the one *parenchymatous*, the other *interstitial*, each giving rise to distinctive changes in the kidney; but some pathologists refer all the varieties met with to a *diffused nephritis*, the effects of which will depend upon its intensity and duration, and they strongly maintain the "unity" of Bright's disease. For clinical purposes, at any rate, I still consider it desirable to discuss chronic Bright's disease under certain distinct forms, as cases present themselves in practice. Taking a comprehensive view of these cases, the circumstances under which they occur, and the causes to which they are attributed, may be indicated as follows:—
1. As a sequela of one or more attacks of acute or subacute Bright's disease.
2. From constant or frequent exposure to cold or wet, or to sudden changes of temperature.
3. From abuse of alcohol, particularly

of ardent spirits. 4. In connection with some constitutional diathesis or form of blood-poisoning, especially gout, syphilis, tubercular disease, chronic saturnism, and the fatty diathesis. 5. As a consequence of chronic disease of the pelvis of the kidney, bladder, urethra, or prostate gland. 6. Associated with pregnancy. 7. As the result of prolonged indigestion probably.

Predisposing causes.—Chronic Bright's disease is more prevalent among males, probably from their more frequent exposure to its exciting causes; in adults; in those whose occupation involves exposure to cold or wet, or to sudden changes of temperature (as cabmen, labourers, puddlers, workers in glass), or greater temptations to intemperance; and among the poor. Want of cleanliness of the skin is decidedly a predisposing cause, and this is often associated with exposure and intemperance, the combination of these three factors being peculiarly effective in producing chronic renal disease.

General Clinical History.—In general terms the symptoms of chronic Bright's disease comprehend morbid conditions of the urine, especially albuminuria, the presence of casts and renal epithelium or sometimes of blood, and diminution in the excretion of urea and other normal urinary ingredients; frequent micturition, particularly by night; dropsical accumulations, liable to come and go, or to alter their seat rapidly; deficient action of the skin, which is almost always dry, and often rough and harsh; and changes in the blood, which becomes hydramic and deficient in albumen and red corpuscles, with consequent pallor or sallowness of the skin, shortness of breath, and other symptoms, while materials which should be excreted by the urine tend to accumulate in it. Sometimes uneasiness or tenderness is experienced over the region of the kidneys. Headache and giddiness are frequently complained of; and serious uræmic symptoms are liable to arise at any moment. Serous inflammations, endocarditis, bronchitis, and pneumonia are also apt to supervene. Derangements of the digestive organs are very common, in the way of loss or impairment of appetite, dyspeptic symptoms, nausea or vomiting, flatulence, and irregularities of the bowels. Other *complications* liable to be met with are phthisis; cardiac disorder or disease; morbid conditions of the vessels; and hepatic affections. In certain forms of Bright's disease apoplexy is of frequent occurrence. The signs in connection with the heart and vessels described under acute Bright's disease are also noticed in many cases of the different chronic forms, which further tend to originate hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and other cardiac and vascular changes.

As regards the *mode of onset*, chronic Bright's disease not uncommonly remains after an acute attack; in most cases, however, it sets in gradually, and the affection may be quite latent until some grave uræmic or other symptoms reveal the serious condition present. In other instances there may only be albuminuria or slight dropsy. The disease is generally subject to remissions and subacute or acute exacerbations, the latter often coming on from a slight, or even without any obvious cause. The *duration* is very variable, some cases lasting for many years, and it differs in the several forms. Death is usually hastened at the close by uræmia; serous inflammations; pneumonia or bronchitis; dropsy, either on account of its dangerous situation, or from its being complicated with erysipelas or gangrene; cardio-vascular changes; or apoplexy. A few cases terminate gradually by asthenia; in others death results from independent complications, such as phthisis.

Recovery may possibly ensue even after the disease has existed for a considerable time.

It is requisite to draw special attention to certain changes which may be observed in connection with the eye. The occurrence of temporary attacks of disturbance of vision associated with uræmia has already been alluded to. Dr. Gowers has noticed on ophthalmoscopic examination that the arteries of the retina are sometimes distinctly lessened in size; and considers that this depends on their contraction, and is as a rule in direct proportion to the tension of the arterial blood, as measured by the incompressibility of the radial pulse. The most important condition, however, which is met with in cases of chronic Bright's disease is a form of amaurosis, attended with definite morbid changes in the retina, as observed with the ophthalmoscope, namely, *albuminuric retinitis* and *haemorrhages*. The loss of sight under these circumstances creeps on slowly, and is permanent, though usually liable to sudden increase from various causes, with subsequent improvement. At first the appearances noticed are increased vascularity, with enlargement and tortuosity of the retinal veins, but shrinking of the arteries; and slight swelling around the disc, the margin of which becomes indistinct, while it assumes a suffused and dark-red appearance, a grey filmy exudation afterwards forming. The more characteristic appearances, however, are noticed later on, being due to the presence of numerous whitish or yellowish-white brilliant-looking spots or patches around the disc: with haemorrhagic extravasations into the retina in the same locality. By the increase and union of the patches the disc is often surrounded with a zone, "the inner line of which is irregularly circular, or melts into the grey interval and the disc itself, while the outer presents salient angles, which correspond to the course of the larger vessels" (Allbutt). Whitish streaks are also seen radiating outwards along the vessels and nerve-fibres. In course of time the disc itself is invaded by the spots and haemorrhages. Some observers affirm that the white spots always result from changes in blood-clots, but probably most of them are the result of independent exudation. Ultimately these may be absorbed, many of the vessels being obliterated or removed, causing retinal anaemia; while it is then seen that the choroid has also undergone marked changes, and that it presents yellow patches. Important structural changes are set up in the retina, choroid, and vitreous body. Both eyes are always involved, but not to the same degree.

These ocular changes are unquestionably found most frequently and distinctly in connection with the *granular contracted kidney*, but they have also been noticed in other forms. As to their immediate cause, they have been attributed to hypertrophy of the heart accompanying the renal disease; to some constitutional condition attended with changes in the vessels generally; to alterations in the blood, namely, uræmia or deficiency of albumin; or to extension of disease along the optic nerve from the brain.

Having given this general outline of Bright's disease, the prominent characters of the several varieties will now be pointed out.

I. LARGE, WHITE, SMOOTH KIDNEY—CHRONIC PARENCHYMATOUS, DESQUAMATIVE, OR TUBAL NEPHRITIS.

Aëtiology and Pathology.—This form is most frequently a sequel of acute or subacute Bright's disease. It may, however, come on gradually from taking cold; as the result of repeated pregnancies; or

in the course of phthisis. It is chiefly met with in comparatively young persons.

The generally accepted view of the pathology of the large white kidney is that it is the result of *parenchymatous* or *tubal nephritis*, attended with great increase and desquamation of the epithelium, the cells of which gradually undergo changes, ending in their complete fatty transformation and destruction. Some writers maintain that the glomeruli and interstitial tissue are also involved. More or less loss of tissue, with consequent atrophy and contraction of the kidneys, may follow in course of time.

Anatomical Characters.—The kidneys are enlarged and heavy, their surface being smooth and pale, but variegated with vessels; the capsule is readily separated, being unaltered or somewhat opaque. A section shows great thickening of the cortical substance, which is white or yellowish-white and opaque, often presenting also numerous small yellow spots or streaks, due to fatty degeneration—*granular fatty kidney* (Johnson). The consistence is diminished. The pyramids retain their normal colour, and contrast markedly with the cortex, though they are also affected to a less degree. Microscopical examination reveals enlargement of many of the tubes, which contain a great number of epithelium-cells, with exudation. The cells are always much altered, being swollen, clouded, and more or less granular; also frequently containing fat or oil-globules; or they may be quite disintegrated, so that only a granular débris remains, with masses of fat and oil-globules. Some tubules may be quite denuded and empty, or only present hyaline fibrinous moulds. The inter-tubular connective tissue is said to be thickened, either from increase in the connective-tissue elements, albuminous exudation, or the presence of leucocytes. Changes in the glomeruli are also described, varying in their degree, especially the formation of nuclear masses between the capsule of the Malpighian corpuscles and the glomeruli, thickening of this capsule, and hyaline degeneration of the intima, with thickening of the coats of the minute arteries.

It is now generally conceded that in very chronic cases this form of kidney may gradually contract and waste, and it may ultimately become markedly small and irregularly atrophied—*small granular fatty kidney*. How this change is brought about is, however, not positively determined. Some authorities maintain that it results from an interstitial inflammation, as in the cirrhotic kidney (especially in the region of the capsule and the Malpighian bodies); others that it is entirely due to changes within the tubules. In this condition of kidney the capsule is more or less thickened, opaque, and adherent at parts; superficial depressions form, causing a somewhat granular appearance; while there is some increase in the interstitial tissue, with thickening of the blood-vessels. These changes are, however, not so marked as in the cirrhotic kidney, and they are mainly noticed in those regions where the tubular changes are most evident, and where blocked tubules are seen in all stages of destruction.

Symptoms.—Either remaining after an acute attack, as frequently happens, or being chronic from the outset, this variety of Bright's disease presents the following clinical features:—The urine is usually deficient in quantity; pale and often somewhat turbid, depositing a whitish sediment, or from time to time being smoky or tinged with blood; of normal or rather high specific gravity; while it contains a considerable quantity of albumin, as well as various casts, with renal epithelium or its remains. The microscopic elements are not nearly so abundant as in

the acute disease. The chief casts met with are *epithelial*, the epithelium-cells being always more or less altered; *granular*; *large or small hyaline*; and *fatty*, as the renal structures undergo fatty changes. By studying their prevailing characters much information may be gained as to the exact state of the kidneys. Anasarca is generally a prominent symptom; while serous effusions are not uncommon, and may be very abundant. The general surface, but more especially the face, presents a characteristic dull-white, puffy, and pasty aspect, being often also smooth and glossy, these appearances becoming more marked as fatty degeneration proceeds; puffiness of the eye-lids often first attracts attention to the existence of this form of Bright's disease. There is considerable tendency to uræmia and to the occurrence of serous inflammations: but uræmic convulsions are said to be rare, and also albuminuric retinitis. There is much less liability to changes in the vascular system than in the case of the granular kidney, though in course of time they often become well-marked. Sir George Johnson states that mucous haemorrhages are frequent in the advanced stages, especially epistaxis. Exacerbations are very liable to occur from time to time.

2. GRANULAR CONTRACTED, OR CIRRHOTIC KIDNEY—CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS.

Aetiology.—In this variety the onset is always very chronic and insidious, being independent of any obvious immediate exciting cause. The contracted kidney is chiefly associated with gout or lithæmia; chronic lead-poisoning; chronic alcoholism; a tendency to general degenerative changes; chronic dyspepsia, with frequent deposits of oxalates and urates in the urine; or, it is said, with repeated exposure to cold. The subjects of this form of renal disease are usually advanced in years, but it is not uncommon about middle age, and may be met with in young adults. Hereditary predisposition has been observed in some instances. It must be noted that cirrhotic changes in the kidney may follow chronic pyelitis or cystitis; and also long-continued venous congestion from cardiac disease.

Anatomical Characters.—The prominent changes presented by the cirrhotic kidney are gradual contraction and atrophy, until the organ may ultimately weigh only an ounce or two; granulation of the surface, the granules ranging from the size of a pin's head to that of a pea or more, there being also irregular depressions, giving rise to a lobular appearance; thickening, opacity, and adhesion of the capsule, which cannot be separated and sinks into the depressions; with increased resistance and toughness of the renal tissue. These changes are observed in very different degrees of advancement in different cases. On making a section of the kidney it is seen that the cortical substance is chiefly wasted, having in some instances almost completely disappeared, what remains being of a red or brownish-red colour, and coarsely granular; the Malpighian bodies stand out as red points. There may be signs of fatty degeneration. According to its colour, the granular kidney has been described as "red," "white," "yellow," and "mixed." Cysts are frequently observed, varying in size from very minute points to spaces as large as a nut, or even larger, and containing an albuminous fluid. In the gouty kidney a white uratic deposit forms in connection with the tubules. Calcareous deposits are also sometimes visible as white streaks between the tubes of the pyramids.

The intimate changes usually consist in an increase of the inter-tubular connective tissue; with more or less alterations in the tubules, glomeruli, and vessels. Many of the tubules are denuded of their epithelium, contracted, or obliterated; others are blocked up with disintegrated epithelium-cells; while still others contain clear fibrinous moulds. Fat-granules and oil-globules are often visible. The Malpighian bodies appear shrunken and abnormally close together, their enclosed glomeruli being more or less compressed by fibrous tissue. Many vessels are obliterated, and the walls of the smaller arteries are thickened, so that it is difficult to inject the kidney through its main artery. The thickening of the arteries has been attributed to muscular hypertrophy, and to increase in the external fibrous coat. The cysts so frequently seen are probably due to obstruction or constriction of the ducts at intervals, with distension of the intervening portions. The late Dr. Mahomed held that in the *red* granular kidney the changes are chiefly vascular, namely, thickened vessels, thickened Malpighian corpuscles, and fibro-hyaline intertubular thickenings; and that the *yellow* or *mixed* granular kidneys have, in addition to these changes, interstitial small-celled growths and epithelial proliferation.

Pathology.—It is in connection with the *cirrhotic kidney* that important differences of opinion have arisen regarding pathological questions. With respect to its *nature* and *mode of origin*, many German authorities consider it as being merely a later stage of the large white kidney, which, if it only lasts long enough, will become atrophied and granular; and some of their pathologists describe several stages in the progress of the morbid changes. Though recognizing the fact that this variety of kidney may in course of time become contracted and granular, yet most English writers are of opinion that the true cirrhotic kidney does not so originate, but that it is the result of a *chronic interstitial nephritis*, attended with a cellular infiltration of the intertubular connective tissue, the new growth being gradually transformed into a fibrillated structure, which contracts, and compresses the renal structures. Some pathologists maintain that the process begins in the glomeruli, being similar to what takes place in glomerulo-nephritis, only much more chronic in its development; and that it may subsequently spread more or less into the intertubular tissue, but not necessarily, the contraction being mainly due to atrophy of the renal structures in the most typical form of the disease. Sir George Johnson, however, considers that the *epithelial cells* are first affected, undergoing degeneration in consequence of having to perform unusual excretory work. Dr. Dickinson believes that the disease begins superficially, immediately under the capsule, and gradually extends inwards.

Before alluding to an important view held as to the pathology of the cirrhotic kidney, it will be convenient to consider more particularly the morbid conditions of the heart and vessels which may be induced by Bright's disease, and which are found with special frequency associated with the contracted kidney. It must be borne in mind that the heart may be primarily diseased, and by inducing mechanical congestion may lead to organic changes in the kidneys, ending in contraction and atrophy. Again, independent affections of the cardiac valves may co-exist with renal lesions; or they may be the consequence of endocarditis complicating Bright's disease. The special condition to which attention needs to be directed, however, is cardiac hypertrophy, especially involving the left ventricle, which is believed to be the direct secondary result of the renal disease. There can be no doubt but that this condition of the heart does

arise in many cases of chronic Bright's disease, and the question is how is it originated? Formerly it was attributed entirely to the unhealthy state of the blood, which was supposed to disturb the action of the heart, or to increase the arterial tension, the small vessels resisting its passage. Sir George Johnson made the important discovery that the walls of the small arteries, not only in the kidneys, but also in various other structures throughout the body, become greatly thickened. This eminent observer maintains that the arteries contract, and oppose the passage into the tissues of the unhealthy blood associated with Bright's disease, with consequent rise in arterial tension; and that this is followed by hypertrophy of their muscular coat, which is the cause of the thickening of their walls. Dr. Gowers thinks that his ophthalmoscopic observations as to the contraction of the retinal vessels afford a direct proof in favour of the first part of this theory. Owing to the condition of the arteries it is believed that the walls of the heart become also hypertrophied, in order to overcome the resistance thus offered.

The late Sir William Gull and Dr. Sutton denied that the thickening of the small arteries is due to muscular hypertrophy: and their observations led them to the conclusion that these vessels, as well as the capillaries throughout the body, become the seat of a peculiar *hyalin-fibroid* change, which leads to thickening of their walls, with loss of elasticity, and they attributed the cardiac hypertrophy to this *arterio-capillary fibrosis*, as it is termed. On these observations they founded another view as to the pathology of the granular kidney, namely, that it is but a part of a *general morbid condition*, beginning in the smaller vessels and affecting these vessels throughout the body, which leads to atrophy of the tissues. According to this view the vascular changes outside the kidneys are not the secondary result of the renal disease, but merely a part of the general disorder.

Symptoms.—The contracted kidney may be clinically latent for a very long period. As regards the urine, this is as a rule abundant, being in some cases very copious; of light colour and low specific gravity; while it contains comparatively little albumin, or even none at all at times; there being also but few or no casts, these, when present, being chiefly *hyaline* or *granular*, with but little epithelium or fat. At the close the urine often becomes very scanty or suppressed. Micturition is frequent in many cases, especially at night. Dipsy is absent in a considerable number of cases from first to last, and generally is but slight, or is only observed at intervals, or in the later stages of the disease. The skin is dry and harsh, but does not exhibit the peculiar pale and pasty aspect of the large white kidney; while the face has often a sallow and pinched appearance. In most cases there is marked languor and debility, with constitutional cachexia, and patients are often mentally depressed. Digestive disturbances are frequently very prominent. Cardiac hypertrophy, with changes in the vessels, are specially liable to occur in connection with the granular kidney, while in time the heart is likely to gradually fail from degeneration; the pulse is of high tension; and palpitation is often a prominent symptom. An artery may give way, and cause cerebral apoplexy. Uræmic phenomena are of common occurrence, such as headache, giddiness, twitchings of muscles, disorders of vision, severe neuralgia, or asthmatic attacks; and uræmic convulsions often supervene. Haemorrhages frequently take place, such as epistaxis, or haematemesis, and there may be abundant haematuria. Retinal haemorrhages and albuminuric retinitis are often present; but amaurosis

may occur without any obvious ophthalmoscopic changes. Such complications as pleurisy, pneumonia, bronchitis, or pericarditis may supervene, and cause a fatal termination, but these are said by some authorities to be less frequent in connection with the granular than with the large white kidney.

3. FATTY KIDNEY.

Fatty changes are observed in connection with all forms of Bright's disease, but it is affirmed that the kidney may become primarily the seat of a *fatty infiltration*, the renal cells being loaded with fat, the liver being in most cases affected at the same time. Sir George Johnson applies the terms *simple fat kidney* or *general fatty infiltration of the kidney* to this condition. It is stated that it may be associated with any of the usual causes of fatty infiltration. The kidneys are frequently enlarged, their cortical substance being uniformly pale or mottled with red, and occasionally haemorrhagic spots are observed. The consistence is diminished, the kidney having often an œdematosus feel and appearance. The microscope shows uniform distension of the renal cells with oil. There may be albuminuria and other symptoms of renal disease, but generally no obvious signs of functional derangement of the kidneys are observed (Johnson).

4. LARDACEOUS OR ALBUMINOID KIDNEY.

Many writers classify the *lardaceous kidney* as a form of Bright's disease, but others object to this arrangement, and discuss it as an independent affection. It will be convenient, however, to consider the morbid change in the present connection. Its *aetiology* and *pathology* are those of the general disease as a rule; but rare instances have been met with in which the condition is limited to one kidney, which has been the seat of calculous pyelitis.

Anatomical Characters.—There is by-no-means an agreement in the descriptions given by different writers as to the appearances presented by albuminoid kidneys. Sir Grainger Stewart recognizes three stages of the disease, in the first stage the vessels only being affected; in the second the renal tissues being infiltrated with the albuminoid material, and many of the tubules blocked with it; and in the third the organ being atrophied and contracted. Dr. Dickinson describes a somewhat analogous course of morbid changes. When the disease is marked, the kidneys are enlarged and pale, and their surface is smooth, the capsule separating readily. The consistence is very tough and firm. A section is sharp-cut, and shows the cortical substance to be pale, anaemic, waxy, and translucent, often dotted over with glistening spots, which correspond to the infiltrated Malpighian bodies, in which the deposit first occurs. The pyramids seem natural generally. The usual chemical reactions characteristic of albuminoid material are yielded. The renal cells are often cloudy, withered, or fatty, but it is stated that they do not afford the tests of this material. Transparent hyaline moulds are found in some of the tubules. In the advanced stage the affected organs may become much atrophied and irregular. In a case observed by Sir Grainger Stewart the kidneys were found after death to weigh two and a half ounces each; the tubes were wasted, the Malpighian bodies were large

and waxy, and closely grouped together, the fibrous tissue was relatively more abundant than in the healthy organ, but the capsules were at all points readily separable, and the organs did not present the appearances characteristic of cirrhosis. Some writers deny, however, that such marked contraction can take place in cases of simple albuminoid disease of the kidney, but that it is due to a simultaneous or previously existing cirrhotic process. With rare exceptions, both kidneys are involved in lardaceous disease. Lardacein has been obtained from the affected structures.

Symptoms.—There is also much difference of opinion as to the clinical signs of albuminoid disease implicating the kidneys, and some writers maintain that they are very variable in different cases. Sir Grainger Stewart affirms that when the disease is simple and uncomplicated, he has invariably found the symptoms distinct and uniform throughout. There is polyuria, the urine being very copious, pale, and watery : and of low specific gravity, varying from 1005 to 1012 or 1015. The reaction is said to be nearly neutral. At first albumin is either absent altogether, or is present only in very small quantity : later on it increases, and often becomes exceedingly abundant ; the amount passed on successive days may be very variable. Paraglobulin often exceeds the serum-albumin. Cases have been described in which there was no albuminuria throughout, and Sir Grainger Stewart states that this happens in rare instances. The urine presents little or no sediment, but there may be a fine white deposit. Very few casts are present, consisting mainly of the *small hyaline* and *finely granular* varieties ; there may be some epithelial scales upon them, or these may be separate, being usually wasted, or containing oil-globules. The epithelial particles occasionally yield the reactions of albuminoid material. Dropsy is absent, or almost completely absent, throughout. Cardiac changes are also wanting or comparatively slight ; and uræmic phenomena are rare. Owing, however, to the frequent association of albuminoid disease with other renal changes, the symptoms are liable to be much modified. If chronic inflammatory lesions set in, the urine becomes much diminished in quantity, and its specific gravity raised ; while there may be much sediment, with numerous *large hyaline* and *granular casts*. Dropsy also supervenes, and may be very considerable, this symptom likewise occurring in cases in which albuminoid disease is grafted upon previous inflammatory disease. There will usually be evidences that this condition affects other organs ; and its general symptoms will also be present, often to a marked degree.

5. MIXED FORMS.

It need only be remarked here that kidneys are sometimes met with presenting different combinations of the morbid changes just described. Thus, there may be an evident combination of the *interstitial* and *tubal* forms of disease ; or of *lardaceous disease* with either of these varieties. As already stated, *fatty* changes are common in all forms of Bright's disease.

GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. **Diagnosis.**—The existence of one or other form of chronic Bright's disease is often quite evident from the *history* of the case; and from the *symptoms* present, the characters of the *urine* being especially important. Albuminuria may be the only sign of renal mischief, and therefore it is most desirable to adopt a routine practice of examining the urine, especially if an individual is persistently out of health without any obvious cause, or suffers habitually from dyspeptic symptoms, from headache or giddiness, from severe neuralgia, or from cardiac disturbance. Of course it must be remembered that albuminuria may be due to other causes besides renal disease, and especially to cardiac disease obstructing the venous circulation, or to admixture of albuminous fluids; and also that this symptom may be absent in serious forms of kidney mischief. Careful microscopical examination is necessary, in order to discover casts or renal epithelium, when these elements are present. The ophthalmoscope is highly important in diagnosis in some cases, and its employment has not infrequently been the means of revealing Bright's disease where it was previously unsuspected. The pulse also, or the signs revealed on examination of the heart, often draw attention to the existence of renal disease.

The diagnosis between the different *varieties* of chronic Bright's disease is founded upon the conditions under which they severally arise; and upon their special symptoms and pathological effects, which have already been pointed out. The stage of degeneration of the kidneys, and the actual changes which are going on, can often be determined with much accuracy by a careful observation of the microscopic elements in the urine. The development of an acute inflammatory affection, or of uraemic symptoms, in the course of chronic Bright's disease not previously known to exist, may prove very puzzling. The rule of always examining the urine will generally lead to the detection of the renal affection under such circumstances.

2. **Prognosis.**—The prognosis in chronic Bright's disease, while always more or less unfavourable, differs much in different cases. The termination is most rapid in connection with the large white kidney, but much will depend on the exact nature and extent of the changes in the kidneys, as revealed by the urine. Patients suffering from this affection may live for many years, and may even enjoy comparatively good health. The circumstances which render the prognosis more unfavourable are a prolonged duration of the disease; steady diminution in the quantity of the urine, without corresponding increase in density; excessive albuminuria, with abundant granular and fatty casts or oil-globules; extensive dropsy, with serous effusions; obstinate dryness of the skin; marked cardiac hypertrophy and vascular changes; persistent dyspepsia or disturbances of the bowels; and constant pyrexia. It is remarkable, however, how much improvement in symptoms may be brought about in some apparently hopeless cases. There is always more or less danger of the supervention of uremia; of an acute exacerbation of the kidney disease; or of inflammatory complications, the last-mentioned being very easily set up, and being much more grave than in

healthy persons. Patients suffering from Bright's disease are extremely unfavourable subjects for injuries or operations.

3. Treatment.—Chronic Bright's disease requires very careful and varied management, and it is difficult to indicate any definite line of treatment that shall be applicable to all its forms. At the same time there are certain broad and general principles to be followed, to which attention will now be directed.

a. It is very important to find out the *cause* of the disease, and to avoid or remove this if possible, such as abuse of alcohol, constant exposure, or suppuration setting up albuminoid disease. *b.* *Hygienic* and *dietetic* management demands careful and constant attention. In those cases in which there is merely albuminuria this is often all that is needed. The patient must be completely clad in flannel or woollen material, and avoid exposure, especially to cold and wet, as well as every cause likely to produce a chill; and should take moderate exercise daily, but any undue fatigue or exertion should be avoided, as well as much mental work, excitement, or worry. If possible, a residence in a tolerably warm, equable, and sheltered district is advisable; or a temporary change to such a locality should be recommended, especially during the colder season. A sea-voyage is sometimes highly beneficial in cases of chronic Bright's disease not too far advanced. It is very necessary to keep up a free action of the skin, by means of warm baths with friction, or it may even be advisable to employ occasionally a hot-air or Turkish bath. The diet requires careful supervision, and should be of a simple but nutritious and digestible kind, though it is usually necessary to restrict more or less the consumption of nitrogenous elements of food, and in some cases the dietary should be almost entirely vegetarian. The quantity of food taken should also be limited to the actual needs of the patient. Every case, however, must be watched and dealt with on its own merits, and when the cardio-vascular system shows signs of advancing degeneration, the diet needs to be more generous, with a fair amount of meat. Milk may usually be taken in large quantities; and skinned-milk has been specially recommended in the treatment of chronic Bright's disease. I am acquainted with more than one case in which remarkable benefit was derived from the prolonged use of an absolute milk diet. Dr. Embleton found that some of the milk may be taken as curds and whey. It is best to begin with skinned-milk, as this is more likely to agree, and gradually to replace it with unskinned-milk. Alcoholic stimulants had better be avoided, as a rule, but light wines in moderation, or a glass of good bitter ale, do good in some cases. Tea and coffee are usually injurious, and must be given up. The bowels must be kept well-opened daily; and the digestive functions maintained in good order. *c.* Treatment directed to the *constitutional condition*, and the *state of the blood*, is of the utmost value. The administration of iron, regularly and perseveringly carried out, often produces the most beneficial results, in the way of improving the condition of the blood and general system. If it can be taken, the tincture of perchloride is the best preparation, but the saccharated carbonate, reduced iron, syrup of iodide or phosphate, ammonio-citrate, tincture of acetate, or citrate of iron and quinine are also very useful. Among other conditions affecting the constitution which require special attention in chronic Bright's disease are phthisis; albuminoid disease; gout; and saturnism. *d.* Some authorities consider it desirable to diminish the amount of *albumin*.

discharged in cases of Bright's disease, by means of the agents previously mentioned. *e.* Dropsy is one of the principal *symptoms* calling for interference in a large proportion of cases of chronic Bright's disease. *Purgatives* and *baths* are to be chiefly relied upon for its removal. Among the former, compound jalap powder, elaterium or elaterin, and gamboge are the most serviceable. Jaborandi or subcutaneous injection of pilocarpine may also be of the greatest use as *diaphoretics*. Some practitioners give solution of acetate of ammonium freely with iron, to act upon the skin; others recommend James's or Dover's powder. Opinions are much divided with regard to *diuretics*, both as to the propriety of giving them, and as to those which are most efficacious. In my experience they certainly have not proved of much use as a rule, and may do considerable harm. Copaiba or its resin, and caffeine have been used with advantage in some cases. Dr. Leech has found the best results from *saline diuretics*, especially tartrate, bitartrate, and acetate of potassium. From iodide of potassium he has obtained no definite effects. Digitalis and caffeine he found much less useful than in cardiac dropsy. The inhalation of oil of juniper appeared to give better results than its administration by the mouth. In extreme dropsy acupuncture, the use of Southey's trochar, or free incisions into the skin of the legs or scrotum may be required. Great care is necessary when carrying out these measures, in order to guard against erysipelas, which may be prevented by frequently changed *antiseptic* applications; and by sponging the parts thoroughly before each application is made. Particular care is needed to avoid pressure upon dropsical parts, or their irritation by the contact of urine. It may become necessary to empty serous cavities by paracentesis. Among other symptoms which are likely to require treatment in the course of chronic Bright's disease are those of dyspepsia: vomiting; derangement of the bowels; cardiac and vascular disturbances; haemorrhages; headache, vertigo, or neuralgia; and uræmic phenomena. Nitro-glycerine has been specially recommended to relieve arterial tension in chronic renal disease. Iodide of potassium has been also given, with the view of diminishing the cardiac action, and checking hyperplasia of the interstitial tissue in the granular kidney. Bichloride of mercury in minute doses, and double chloride of gold and sodium, have been advocated for the latter purpose. Haemorrhages may prove very troublesome, and loss of blood from severe epistaxis may necessitate transfusion. The remarks made under acute Bright's disease with reference to inflammatory complications apply equally to the chronic forms of the disease. *f.* It is necessary to warn patients suffering from chronic Bright's disease against the dangers to which they are exposed; and to impress upon them the necessity of paying strict attention to the hygienic matters already mentioned. Should cardiac hypertrophy be set up, with changes in the vessels, the special danger of the occurrence of cerebral haemorrhage should be borne in mind.

CHAPTER LXVI.

ON CERTAIN RARE DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS.

I. CANCEROUS AND OTHER GROWTHS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Of rare occurrence, renal cancer may be *primary* or *secondary*. It is most frequent in very young children, or in elderly people; and in males. The variety met with is in the large majority of cases *encephaloid*; in exceptional cases *schirrus* and *colloid* have been noticed, or *papilloma* or *epithelioma* in connection with the mucous membrane of the renal pelvis, the last-mentioned being very rare. Mixed growths are sometimes observed, the most frequent being a combination of *encephaloid* with *sarcoma*. Fatty cancer (*carcinoma lipomatousum*) has been described in rare instances. A malignant growth in the kidney is always in the nodular form when secondary; but when primary it may be either nodular or infiltrated. Secondary cancer does not attain any large size; but primary cancer frequently grows to enormous dimensions, usually giving rise to an irregular tumour. The consistence varies considerably, being sometimes very soft and almost fluctuating, while it is rarely uniform throughout. Haemorrhage, softening, degeneration, or suppuration are liable to occur in the growth. The part of the kidney which is not implicated is generally atrophied from pressure, or otherwise altered. Thickening of the capsule, and adhesions to neighbouring parts are generally observed; while adjoining structures are frequently compressed, displaced, or destroyed by pressure, the colon always lying in front of the tumour. The pelvis of the kidney and the ureter are often involved. In the great majority of cases only one kidney is affected, especially the left. Secondary deposits are common, especially in the neighbouring glands; and the growth may invade the vena azygos or inferior vena cava, portions of it being thus conveyed into the general circulation.

Symptoms.—The important clinical signs of renal cancer are severe pain in the lumbar region, generally shooting towards the hypochondrium and thigh or in some other direction, and subject to remissions or intermissions; marked tenderness; haematuria, in many cases profuse and irregularly intermittent, occurring without any obvious cause; and the presence of a *renal tumour*. The special characters of this tumour are the rapidity of its growth, and the great size which it may attain, especially in children; its absolute immobility; as a rule its irregularly lobular feel; and its more or less firm though unequal consistence. Occasionally there is an obscure sense of fluctuation over portions of the tumour. In some cases the superficial veins over it are much enlarged; and it has been known to present pulsation. Symptoms may arise from the interference of the growth with surrounding structures. Acute intestinal obstruction may result from pressure; and dilatation of the stomach has followed compression of the duodenum. The detection of cancer-cells in the urine has been considered important in diagnosis, but several excel-

lent observers deny the possibility of recognizing these structures. Marked emaciation and debility, with signs of the cancerous cachexia, are frequently observed; and there may be evidences of cancer in other parts of the body. The course of the disease is very rapid in children, but comparatively chronic in adults. There may be no symptoms in secondary cases.

Many of the growths formerly recognized as cancerous are now referred to the class of *sarcomata*, and amongst the varieties described are *adeno-sarcoma*, *glioma*, *myo-sarcoma*, and *melanotic sarcoma*. They have been classed as congenital and adult; and are either extra-renal, spreading to the kidney from without, or sub-capsular, originating immediately beneath the capsule. Other growths very exceptionally found in the kidneys are osseous tumours; fibroma; lipoma; enchondroma; adenoma and lymphadenoma; and syphilitic gummata. Some of these may form an evident tumour.

II. TUBERCULAR DISEASE—SCROFULOUS KIDNEY.

Aetiology and Pathology.—There are three classes of cases in which tubercle is found in connection with the urinary apparatus, namely:—
1. As a part of *acute miliary tuberculosis*, the kidneys being studded with grey granulations. 2. *Secondary* to tubercular disease of the lungs or other organs, when it does not usually give rise to any prominent local symptoms. 3. As a *primary* formation, generally involving the kidneys, their pelvis and ureters, the bladder, and sometimes the urethra; and being not uncommonly associated in the male with tubercle in the prostate gland, testes, or vesiculae seminales. The last constitutes much the most important group of cases. In the kidneys tubercle is seen at first in the form of grey or yellow nodules, occupying the cortex, which afterwards coalesce, become caseous, and break down, forming irregular abscess-like cavities, which burst into the urinary passages, discharging disintegrated tuberculous matter and pus. Generally both kidneys are implicated; and they are frequently extensively or completely destroyed. In the renal pelvis and ureter the growth starts in the submucous tissue, where it forms granules, and ultimately inflammation of the overlying membrane is excited, ending often in extensive ulceration and destruction. Occasionally one ureter becomes completely rigid, and its canal is blocked up, leading to pyo-nephrosis. Tubercle bacilli have been detected in connection with the tubercular lesions.

Symptoms.—During the early period *primary renal tuberculosis* may be indicated by a dull pain in the region of the kidneys, with frequent micturition. The important symptoms, however, are those of chronic pyelitis or pyo-nephrosis, often associated with symptoms of cystitis; great wasting, debility, and hectic fever; and in time signs of implication of the lungs, intestines, or other organs. The urine is almost always deficient; slightly acid; and contains abundance of pus, frequently a little blood, but not any large quantity, extra-renal epithelium cells, much granular detritus, and in some cases connective tissue or elastic fibres. Tubercle bacilli have also been found in the discharges. If the ureter is blocked up, a painful fluctuating tumour forms in the corresponding renal region, which may subside, with coincident appearance of abundant pus in the urine, should the obstruction be removed. Uraemia is liable to arise if both kidneys are affected with tubercular disease.

III. PARASITIC GROWTHS.

1. Occasionally one kidney, especially the left, is the seat of a *hydatid tumour*, which may ultimately attain a great size. It tends to burst more particularly into the renal passages, its contents escaping with the urine; very rarely it opens in some other direction; or it may undergo any of the changes to which hydatid-cysts are liable.

Symptoms.—There may be none throughout. The most prominent sign of hydatid disease of the kidney is the existence of a renal tumour; rounded in form, though often somewhat irregular and lobulated; having an elastic or more or less fluctuating feel; and occasionally yielding hydatid-fremitus. As a rule there are no renal symptoms. Should the cyst burst into the urinary passages, important symptoms generally arise, namely, those of one, or more commonly of several intermittent attacks of *nephritic colic*, due to the escape of the vesicles by the ureters; preceded by a sharp pain in the renal region, and occasionally by a sense of something having burst: and followed by signs of the passage of the hydatids along the urethra, that is, by great pain to the end of the penis, and constant desire to pass urine, with more or less retention; and finally by the appearance of the vesicles or their remains in the urine, frequently accompanied by some blood or pus. Occasionally a cyst blocks the ureter, and thus leads to hydro-nephrosis. Inflammatory symptoms arise should a hydatid tumour become inflamed; or various phenomena may occur from its rupture in different directions.

2. The *cysticercus cellulosæ* has been found in the kidneys.

3. The following *entozoa* are met with occasionally in connection with the urinary organs:—*a. Bilharzia humatobia*. This worm is found in some other structures, but is most injurious in connection with the bladder, ureter, and pelvis of the kidney, being deposited in the minute veins of the mucous membrane lining these parts. It belongs to the *trematoda*, being about 3 or 4 lines long, of soft texture, and bisexual. The morbid effects which it may occasion are haematuria, it being, as previously stated, regarded as the cause of the *endemic haematuria* of certain hot countries; the formation of raised, injected, and eehymotic patches on the mucous membrane; local inflammation ending in suppuration; obstruction of the ureters, with consequent hydronephrosis or pyonephrosis; and the formation of calculi, owing to the masses of ova forming a nucleus for urinary deposits. *b. Strongylus gigas*. This is a *nematoid* worm, resembling in general characters the *ascaris lumbricoides*, but being much larger, having a reddish colour, and presenting six nodular papillæ about the mouth. It is found in the kidney and urinary passages, and necessarily tends to give rise to considerable local disturbance, but of no definite character. *c. Pentastoma denticulatum*. Supposed to be the larva of a worm, this appears as a very minute encysted parasite, $1\frac{1}{2}$ lines long, club-shaped, with a double pair of hooks, and devoid of sexual organs. *d. Filaria sanguinis hominis*. This parasite has already been fully considered, in its relation to chyluria and haematuria.

IV. CYSTIC DISEASE.

Sir William Roberts describes the following varieties of cysts which may be met with in connection with the kidney :—1. Scattered cysts in kidneys otherwise healthy, which now and then attain a great size, so as to form a fluctuating tumour. 2. Disseminated cysts in the atrophic form of chronic Bright's disease. 3. Congenital cystic degeneration. 4. General cystic degeneration in adults. The last-mentioned condition affects both organs, but to different degrees. They become much enlarged, and are converted into a mass of closely aggregated but distinct cysts, lodged in an abundant matrix of connective tissue ; varying much in size ; and containing either a limpid yellowish or reddish serum, or a gelatinous substance, which yields albumen but not urinary ingredients ; subsequently other materials are often added. The renal tissue is partially or almost completely destroyed. The cysts do not as a rule open into the pelvis, which, with the ureter and bladder, is usually quite healthy. As to the *origin* of these cysts, they have been attributed to dilatation of the Malpighian capsules ; or to distension of limited portions of the tubules, which have become obstructed at each end. During life this cystic degeneration may give rise to a renal tumour, which is sometimes extremely large. The urine is occasionally increased in quantity, and is generally of low specific gravity. The fatal termination is often preceded by uræmic symptoms.

V. HYDRONEPHROSIS—DROPSY OF THE KIDNEY.

Hydronephrosis may result from any condition obstructing the ureter. It is frequently congenital. Subsequently it may arise from rupture of the ureter due to injury ; impaction of a calculus or other body in its interior ; organic changes in its walls leading to stricture, such as ulceration followed by cicatrization ; or external pressure upon it by a tumour. As the result of this obstruction, the renal pelvis and the portion of the ureter above the impediment become dilated from accumulation of urine ; this collection subsequently causes flattening of the papillæ, and gradual compression and atrophy of the pyramids of the kidney, followed by wasting of the cortex, with distension of the capsule, until ultimately nothing may be left but a membranous sac containing fluid, either single or divided into chambers, and sometimes attaining an enormous size. The fluid consists usually of altered urine, this being much more watery than the normal secretion, almost always a little albuminous, and sometimes presenting an admixture of blood, pus, or epithelium. As a rule only one kidney is affected, while the healthy organ becomes hypertrophied.

Symptoms.—Evidence of the existence of some cause likely to give rise to obstruction of the ureter may help in the recognition of hydronephrosis. The only positive sign, however, is the development of a painless, soft, and more or less fluctuating renal tumour, which sometimes feels lobulated ; unaccompanied with any unusual characters of the urine. Occasionally the obstruction is removed, and the tumour suddenly subsides, with simultaneous copious discharge of urine, which is highly characteristic ; the sac may afterwards shrivel up. It may be

necessary for diagnostic purposes to use an exploratory trochar or the aspirateur. The tumour may occasion symptoms by pressing on surrounding structures. It is a curious fact that in cases of double hydronephrosis uræmic symptoms do not arise for a considerable time, and they are then of an indefinite kind. Most cases ultimately terminate fatally in various ways. In extremely rare instances the sac ruptures spontaneously.

VI. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—In most of the rare affections just considered, the chief matter in diagnosis is to determine the nature of *a renal enlargement or tumour*. It will be well, therefore, to enumerate all the conditions to which such enlargement might be due, and they include *renal abscess*; *pyonephrosis*; *perinephritis*; *hydronephrosis*; *a cancerous or other growth*; *hydatid disease*; or *cystic degeneration of the kidney*. The distinctive features of these morbid conditions have been sufficiently pointed out in their several descriptions, the characters of the enlargement, as well as those of the urine, being important elements in diagnosis. It may be requisite to employ an exploratory trochar or the aspirateur before any positive conclusion can be arrived at. The tumour may become so large as to fill the abdomen, so that it becomes impossible, except by the history, to recognize its origin: and when due to an accumulation of fluid, it may come to simulate ascites. A very large renal calculus may occasionally be felt through the abdominal wall. A renal tumour may be mistaken for one associated with the ovary, uterus, supra-renal capsule, liver, spleen, or absorbent glands; for a growth springing from the bony framework; or for an accumulation of faeces in the intestines.

2. Prognosis.—The prognosis of most of the diseases described in this chapter is very unfavourable. Cancer is necessarily fatal. Accumulations of fluid in connection with the kidneys, especially if of a purulent nature, are exceedingly dangerous, owing to their effects upon the renal structure; the constitutional disturbance which they often set up; and the dangers of the supervention of uræmia, or of the discharge of the fluid into the abdominal cavity.

3. Treatment.—If anything can be done for the rarer forms of kidney disease now under consideration, some *surgical* measure is generally called for. In *hydronephrosis* the first principle is to endeavour to remove any obstruction which causes the retention of urine, and frequent manipulation or shampooing over the renal region has sometimes been found effectual for this purpose. If this does not succeed, and there are indications of danger, tapping must be resorted to, by means of the aspirateur or a small trochar, and the operation should be repeated if necessary. *Hydatid tumour* must be treated in the same manner as hydatid disease of the liver. The removal of the kidney for *cancer* or other solid tumour has been performed. *Tubercular pyelitis* requires similar treatment to that of other forms of this disease, the constitutional condition being attended to at the same time, and local symptoms dealt with according to their nature. How far operative interference is justified must be determined by the circumstances of each particular case.

CHAPTER LXVII.

URINARY CALCULUS AND GRAVEL.

THE full consideration of this subject comes more appropriately within the scope of surgical works, and here it is only intended to give a brief outline of its main facts. By *gravel* is meant very small concretions, which are often passed in the urine in large numbers.

Varieties and Characters of Urinary Calculi.—1. *Uric acid.*—This is very common, both in the form of calculi and gravel, being especially associated with the gouty diathesis, and hence occurring mainly in elderly persons, and among the well-to-do classes. The concretions are formed in very acid, high-coloured, concentrated urine. They are hard; heavy; minutely tubercular or smooth on the surface; generally oval and compressed; as a rule small or of moderate size; and variously coloured by urinary pigments. There may be several uric acid calculi. 2. *Urates*, chiefly consisting of urate of ammonium or sodium. These form soft, irregular concretions, which are deposited from acid urine, almost always in the kidneys, and nearly limited to young children. They are soluble in hot water. 3. *Oxalate of lime* or *Mulberry calculus.*—This variety is characterized by the surface being rough and tuberculated, like a mulberry. The calculus is of moderate size; generally spherical; very hard; and dark brown or almost black in colour. 4. *Phosphatic calculi.*—The important variety is the *fusible calculus*, consisting of a mixture of calcic and ammonio-magnesic phosphates. It is almost always formed in the bladder, and on a nucleus of some other material. There is no limit to the size to which it may attain. The texture is loose and friable, easily breaking down, and presenting a chalky or earthy appearance. Crystals of triple phosphate often stud the surface. By heating with the blow-pipe, this calculus fuses into an enamel-like material. Another rare variety is the *basic phosphate of lime* or *bone-earth calculus*, which is very white, chalky-looking, and soft. The exceptional urinary calculi include:—5. *Carbonate of lime.* 6. *Cystine*, usually ovate; yellow, but changing to pale green on long exposure to light; lustrous; mammillated on the surface; friable and soft. 7. *Xanthine.* 8. *Fatty or saponaceous concretions*—*urostealith.* 9. *Fibrinous and blood-concretions.* 10. *Alternating*, consisting of alternate layers of two or more primary deposits. 11. *Indigo*, once found by Dr. Ord.

Pathology and Anatomical Characters.—Most of the calculi mentioned are of *urinal* origin, being derived from a deposit from the urine as it is first excreted, and being formed either within the tubules of the kidney, in its pelvis, or in the infundibula. Such concretions are termed *primary calculi*, and the theories as to the cause of their formation are:—1. The presence of excess of certain normal ingredients in the urine (uric acid, oxalates, etc.), or of some sparingly-soluble abnormal ingredient (cystine, xanthine). 2. Certain conditions of the urine diminishing its solvent power over some of its constituents, such as

excessive acidity, or deficiency of chloride of sodium and alkaline phosphates, diminishing the solubility of uric acid and urates; or alkalinity from fixed alkali leading to a deposit of bone-earth phosphate, or of carbonate of lime. 3. The presence of some body likely to form a nucleus for deposits, for example, a clot of blood, ova of entozoa, or little clumps of urate of sodium. 4. The presence of mucus or other colloid substance in some part of the renal apparatus, causing precipitation of urates or oxalate of lime in a globular form, intimately mixed with the animal matter, and thus forming a nucleus for further deposit. The *mixed phosphatic calculus* is almost always formed in the *bladder*, and results from decomposition of the urine, which becomes ammoniacal, this condition being, as already explained, favourable for the deposition of earthy phosphates, which are often mixed with a little urate of ammonium and carbonate of lime. Hence it is described as a *secondary calculus*, and the deposit always takes place on some nucleus, this being generally itself a calculus which has passed into the bladder. Should the urine be retained in the renal pelvis until it becomes ammoniacal, a phosphatic calculus may form there.

In structure a urinary calculus usually consists of a *central nucleus*, surrounded by the *body*, and outside all there may be a phosphatic *crust*. The nucleus may or may not be of the same composition as the rest of the stone; or sometimes it consists of some foreign body, or of mucus or blood. A section generally shows a stratified arrangement, but it may be partly or entirely radiated. Blended into the structure of urinary calculi there is always a little organic matter, including mucus, epithelium, pus, or pigment.

The morbid effects liable to be produced by renal calculus are:—
 1. *Hemorrhage*, from direct injury to some part of the urinary apparatus. 2. *Renal congestion*; or *inflammation* ending in *abscess*. 3. *Pylelitis* or *pyonephrosis*. 4. *Hydronephrosis* and *renal atrophy*, as the result of impaction in the ureter. 5. *Cystitis*. Occasionally urinary calculi become lodged in cysts or pouches, and give rise to no further trouble. It sometimes happens that one ureter is already occluded, and a stone lodges in the previous one, leading to complete suppression of urine, with consequent *uraemia*. Very rarely a calculus makes its way out of the renal apparatus into other parts, such as into the peritoneum or the intestine.

Symptoms.—The clinical signs of urinary calculus are chiefly the consequence of the effects above mentioned, and need not be described here. It is only requisite to point out what symptoms are suggestive of the lodgment of a stone in the kidney or its pelvis; and to describe those which are characteristic of its passage along the ureter to the bladder.

The symptoms of *calculus in the kidney* are pain over either renal region, of a dull, aching character, but also frequently shooting towards the testis and thigh; pain at the end of the penis; frequent micturition; and the presence in the urine of blood, pus, epithelium from the renal pelvis and infundibula, or of abundant unorganized sediments, such as uric acid or oxalates. These phenomena are usually aggravated by anything which disturbs the position of the calculus, especially by violent exercise or jolting, after which the symptoms often assume the characters of *nephritic colic*, this in its typical form being due to the passage of a calculus along the ureter to the bladder. A large calculus in connection with the kidney can occasionally be felt through the

abdominal wall. *Nephritic colic* is characterized by sudden excruciating pain in one renal region, shooting in various directions, but especially towards the hypogastrium, testis, end of the penis, and inside of the thigh; great restlessness, the patient tossing about in all directions in order to try to obtain relief; constant desire to micturate, the urine, however, being very scanty or almost suppressed, any that may be passed being high-coloured, often bloody, and discharged in drops with much burning pain; retraction of the testicles; rigors, collapse and faintness, with cold clammy sweats, and a very feeble pulse; generally distressing nausea and vomiting; great anxiety; and sometimes spasmodic movements of certain muscles, or general convulsions. The attack lasts a variable time, there being commonly temporary remissions, and if the calculus reaches the bladder, the symptoms usually subside with equal suddenness, affording a sense of intense relief, and the patient may be conscious of a feeling as if something had fallen into the bladder. If the attack lasts for some time, more or less pyrexia is liable to be set up.

Diagnosis.—Patients often complain of pain in the renal region, and imagine that they are suffering from gravel or stone, but such pain is commonly due to extra-renal conditions, such as myalgia, neuralgia, accumulations in the colon, or other causes. Should there be reason to suspect the existence of a *renal calculus*, careful and repeated examination of the urine must be made, particularly for uric acid and oxalates, for epithelium from the urinary passages, or for traces of blood or pus; and it may be well to do this after the patient has taken some severe exercise. In some cases the indications of its presence are clear enough. As a rule *nephritic colic* is easy to diagnose, but the same symptoms may result from the transit of a blood-clot or of a hydatid vesicle. An attack may also be simulated by the passage of a gall-stone; by severe neuralgia; or by intestinal colic. When a stone reaches the bladder, it can usually be discovered by surgical examination. If there is good reason to believe that a renal calculus exists, it may, under certain circumstances, be permissible or even desirable to make an exploratory incision to clear up the diagnosis.

Prognosis.—Urinary calculus may be attended with a good many dangers. It may produce extensive disorganization of the kidney: or its passage to the bladder may prove fatal. If a stone is very large, or if there are several calculi, the prognosis is more grave. Urinary calculus is a disease very liable to recur.

Treatment.—The treatment of urinary calculus is very important. 1. In the first place measures should be taken to prevent its formation, if the urine gives indications that there is any danger of the occurrence of this event; or if there has been a previous history of stone. The chief general measures requisite for this purpose are to instruct the patient to drink water freely, so as to maintain the urine in a dilated state; not to allow too long intervals between meals, but to take four or five light meals during the day; and not to remain too much in the recumbent posture, the hours of sleep being moderate. Calculi of uric acid and urates are further guarded against by strict regulation of diet, which must be mainly farinaceous, all heavy meals, as well as much meat and rich wines, being avoided; and by administering moderate quantities of bicarbonate or citrate of potassium or citrate of lithium. A large dose of citrate of potassium taken the last thing at night is recommended by Sir W. Roberts. Piperazine is now much

employed to prevent deposition of urates. Certain mineral waters may be of much service, especially those of Vichy, Ems, Contrexeville, or Evian. Oxalate of lime calculus is prevented by keeping the urine very dilute; maintaining the activity of the skin; avoiding certain vegetables rich in oxalates, especially rhubarb and sorrel, and also calcareous waters; and giving alkaline bicarbonates. Phosphatic calculus is obviated by careful attention to the bladder, if this organ is diseased; and by endeavouring to change the characters of the urine. Should this excretion be ammoniacal, benzoic acid or benzoate of ammonium may be useful; or it may be desirable to wash out the bladder with dilute acids. 2. Some authorities believe it possible to *dissolve* calculi after their formation—those of uric acid in the kidneys by administering acetate or citrate of potassium freely, in large and frequently repeated doses, continued for a long time, or by piperazine; phosphatic calculi by dilute acid injections into the bladder. 3. For *nephritic colic* the chief remedies are the free administration of opium by the mouth or rectum, or subcutaneous injection of morphine; belladonna or atropine, if opium is not admissible; warm baths, with fomentations or poultices over the loins; and the abundant use of warm demulcent drinks. It may be necessary to cup or dry-cup over the loins. Change of posture, and manipulation along the ureter, have been said to aid in the passage of a calculus. If the pain is extreme, it may be desirable to administer chloroform. Vomiting, collapse, or other symptoms must be attended to. 4. *Surgical treatment* is of course usually required when a stone reaches the bladder; and *nephrotomy* or even *nephrectomy* are now recognized operations for suitable cases of calculus in the kidney. The treatment of the pathological conditions which may be induced by renal calculus has already been sufficiently considered in their respective connections.

CHAPTER LXVIII.

CYSTITIS—VESICAL CATARRH.

DISEASES of the bladder are mainly surgical, but it is necessary to allude to cystitis, as this complaint is not uncommon in medical practice. It may be *acute* or *chronic* in its onset and course.

Aetiology.—The causes of vesical catarrh are:—1. *Direct irritation*, especially by calculi and morbid growths; or resulting from certain conditions of the urine, as after taking excess of cantharides, copaiba, beer or spirits, but particularly when this fluid decomposes and becomes ammoniacal, either as the result of retention from some impediment to its escape, or from paralysis of the bladder in consequence of spinal disease. 2. *Extension of inflammation* in the vicinity, especially gonorrhœa. 3. *Exposure to cold and wet.* 4. *Acute ecanthomatous* occasionally.

Anatomical Characters.—*Acute* cystitis is characterized by redness, swelling, and softening of the mucous membrane; with the formation of excess of mucus, and the detachment of epithelium with abundant new cells. In the *chronic* form the colour becomes often dirty-grey or brown; and there is thickening of the tissues, with, in time, hyper-

trophy of the muscular coat of the bladder, the walls becoming much thickened and tough. Abundant muco-purulent or purulent matter forms in the bladder, and the surface may ulcerate or even become gangrenous, or suppuration between the coats may take place, ending in extensive destruction and marked structural changes. The urine is generally decomposed and ammoniacal. This has been supposed to be the result in some cases of an alkaline fermentation set up by the mucus formed in the bladder, but it is more probably due to the repeated use of dirty catheters, by which septic organisms are introduced into the bladder.

Symptoms.—The prominent symptoms of *acute cystitis* are uneasiness and a sense of heat over the bladder, in the perineum, and along the urethra; in some cases tenderness over the hypogastrium; constant inclination to micturate, and a difficulty in retaining the urine, a few drops being passed, causing great pain and a sense of burning; and the presence of more or less mucus in the urine. There may be some degree of pyrexia. The chief indication of *chronic cystitis* is derived from the characters of the urine, which contains much mucus and epithelium, or pus, or sometimes blood; and if the urine is ammoniacal, the pus is converted into a gelatinous, ropy, adhesive substance, which can only be poured with difficulty from one vessel into another, and may be drawn out into strings. After a while much constitutional disturbance is often excited, with a tendency to hectic fever; and if extensive suppuration or gangrene should be set up, low typhoid symptoms are liable to arise, or those indicative of peritonitis may supervene.

Treatment.—In the first place the cause of cystitis must be removed, if possible, especially when this takes the form of a local irritant. In acute cases warm baths, and hot fomentations or poultices over the hypogastrium, to which opium may be added, are of service. In some instances removal of blood, by means of a few leeches, is advisable. The bowels should be kept well-opened, for which purpose enemata may be employed. Suppositories of opium or belladonna are valuable for relieving the local sensations. Barley-water and similar drinks should be allowed freely; and citrate of potassium administered, well-diluted, along with tincture of henbane or opium.

In *chronic cystitis* it is important to see that the bladder is properly emptied, and should a catheter be required, care must be taken that this instrument is quite clean and aseptic. If there is irritability of the bladder, solution of potash, or the bicarbonate or a vegetable salt of potassium should be given, freely diluted, and the salts may be combined with tincture of hyoscyamus. Repeated warm baths are serviceable, or local fomentations may be employed. Alcoholic stimulants must be avoided, and diluent drinks given freely. Should there be a catarrhal condition of the bladder, attended with the formation of much mucus or pus, it may be desirable to wash out this organ with warm injections containing some *antiseptic*, or with very dilute *astringent* or *acid* injections. Under these circumstances the best internal remedies are diluted nitric acid, with decoction of pareira, buchu, uva ursi, or triticium repens, and tincture of henbane; benzoic acid or benzoate of ammonium; or copaiba with liquor potassæ.

CHAPTER LXIX.

DISEASES OF THE ABSORBENT SYSTEM.

THE absorbent system is now recognized as holding a prominent place in relation to several important pathological processes and conditions; but in the present chapter it is only intended to deal briefly with the more obvious local affections of its vessels and glands.

I. CLINICAL PHENOMENA AND INVESTIGATION.

The phenomena to be sought for as indicating disease of the absorbent vessels and glands are:—1. **Morbid sensations** in these structures, especially pain, tenderness, and often a feeling of stiffness about the glands. 2. **Objective changes**.—The superficial lymphatic vessels can be seen or even felt in certain conditions, and may be evidently dilated. The glands are also often enlarged, this being generally accompanied with some change in consistence. The enlargement may be limited, or may affect the glands extensively throughout the body, not uncommonly giving rise to considerable tumours. The superficial glands are either separate and distinct; or form nodular, irregular, firm masses, owing to a number of glands being aggregated together; or are involved in a series, forming a chain. Those of the neck, axilla, and groin are most commonly affected. In the chest they may give rise to the *physical signs* of a mediastinal tumour. Enlarged glands can in certain cases be felt in the abdomen by making steady deep pressure, or by grasping portions of the abdominal walls, either as separate nodules, or as a distinct tumour. The latter is deeply situated, nodular, and fixed, being usually not very large. 3. **Interference with the passage of lymph and chyle**.—It is probable that obstruction to the passage of lymph may lead to its coagulation, and to the production of a kind of solid oedema. Interference with the progress of the chyle will gravely affect the nutrition of the body, thus inducing more or less emaciation. 4. **Escape of lymph or chyle**.—This may take place from the vessels or glands, and may also lead to serious consequences. 5. **Evidences of pressure upon, irritation, or destruction of neighbouring structures**.—These phenomena can only result from enlarged glands, and will of course vary with their situation. Neuralgic pains and localized oedema are not infrequent symptoms, owing to contiguous nerves and veins being interfered with. Venous thrombosis may also be caused by obstruction of the circulation. In connection with the chest and abdomen more or less pressure-signs may be present, as in the case of other tumours. By the irritation of the glands, inflammation of serous membranes and other structures may also be excited. They are further liable to undergo destructive changes, which may implicate neighbouring parts, thus tending to cause more or less serious mischief. For instance, they often suppurate and destroy the cutaneous structures; in the chest they may lead to destruction of portions of the lungs, or to perforation of air-

tubes or vessels; in the abdomen to peritonitis, or to perforation of the bowels. 6. **General symptoms.**—These are of much importance, necessarily differing in their characters according to the nature of the morbid condition. They may depend upon the disease of the lymphatic system itself, which, for example, may induce pyrexia or septicæmia; or such disease may be but a part of some constitutional affection, which also accounts for the general symptoms.

II. SPECIAL DISEASES.

1. ACUTE INFLAMMATION—LYMPHANGITIS—ANGEIOLEUCITIS—ADENITIS.—The lymphatic vessels may be alone inflamed—*lymphangitis* or *angeioleucitis*; or merely the glands—*adenitis*; or both sets of structures may be implicated. Usually the affection is limited to some particular part of the body; but in the septic forms of inflammation the absorbent system is extensively involved.

Aetiology.—This class of affections are more immediately attributed to different micro-organisms. As regards their obvious causes, they may be of *traumatic* origin, being due to various forms of injury, such as a wound, contusion, or strain; or they result from various kinds of *irritation*, such as that induced by neighbouring inflammation, suppuration, ulceration, or disease of joints. External irritation, as, for instance, the strong heat of the sun, may induce superficial lymphangitis. Special forms of inflammation of the absorbent system are set up by particular kinds of virus, such as that of gonorrhœa or syphilis, or by various septic poisons. The lymphatics connected with any internal organ are often inflamed when it is the seat of a similar condition. Pus has been found in the neighbouring lymphatics in cases of purulent pleurisy. Some forms of pelvic cellulitis have also been regarded as being due to lymphangitis. Inflammation may be directly excited in the vessels, and then travel along to the glands; or the irritation may be conveyed by the current of lymph to a more or less distant part, the intervening channels being unaffected; or the glands may be implicated by extension from the surrounding cellular tissue. Lymphangitis may set in very rapidly.

Anatomical Characters.—*Lymphangitis* is distinguished as *reticular* or *tubular*, according as the fine capillary network or the trunks of the vessels are involved. In the former case the skin and its capillaries are usually implicated. In the latter variety the vessels become dilated, and their walls are thickened; the endothelium often disappears; and the internal coat becomes opaque and uneven. The lymph coagulates in their interior, blocking up their channels, and the clot may become organized, obliterating the vessels permanently; or occasionally it softens and suppurates in the centre, and the pus may find its way into the circulation, leading to septicæmia or pyæmia. Exudation also takes place, while the surrounding cellular tissue becomes thickened. Lymphangitis may lead to inflammation in joints, which may be of a purulent character.

In *adenitis* the affected glands become congested and swollen, as well as the seat of exudation, while the passage of the lymph through them is impeded. Resolution may take place after a time, but not uncommonly the inflammation terminates in suppuration, this beginning in the centre, the cavities of the glands becoming filled with pus, and the surrounding cellular tissue being also

ultimately involved. In other cases the glands remain more or less indurated, and they may form adhesions to the surrounding structures, especially if the irritation is repeated several times.

Symptoms.—When the superficial lymphatic vessels or glands are inflamed, this condition is evidenced by objective signs. Lymphangitis is indicated by wavy or straight red lines, running towards the glands : or sometimes there are isolated red patches, the skin and its capillaries being involved along with the lymphatics. The larger vessels may be felt as firm and knotted cords. If the glands are affected, these can be felt or even seen to be more or less enlarged and swollen, at first having a firm consistence. At the same time pain is experienced, often very acute, with sensations of heat, stiffness, and tenderness. When the affected structures are deeply situated there are no red lines, and even redness is not always present. There is induration of the part, more like that of oedema than inflammation. The inflammation may, however, pass through the intervening tissues from the deep to the superficial lymphatics, and *vice versa*. Owing to the interference with the passage of the lymph, more or less swelling from lymphatic oedema is often present, of a firm character, and a limb may be much enlarged from this cause. Should suppuration take place in glands, this will be evidenced by the ordinary signs characteristic of an abscess. There is more or less pyrexia, in proportion to the extent and intensity of the inflammation. In septic forms of lymphangitis signs of general septicæmia are likely to arise.

2. CHRONIC ADENITIS.—The lymphatic glands are liable to chronic inflammation, which either remains after one or more acute or subacute attacks, or comes on gradually. The affected glands are enlarged and indurated, and may be a little painful. They may subsequently suppurate, or undergo a caseous degenerative change, but often remain unaltered for a considerable time. This condition of the glands interferes with the passage of the lymph through them ; and also renders them more liable to attacks of acute inflammation from slight causes.

3. OBSTRUCTION OF THE ABSORBENT VESSELS.—This condition may involve the lymphatic capillaries ; their main trunks ; or the thoracic duct itself. It either results from the blocking-up of their channels by coagulated lymph ; from inflammation of the walls of the vessels ; or from external pressure. Thus the thoracic duct may be more or less obstructed, or even completely obliterated, by the pressure of enlarged glands in the thorax, or of an aneurism. The lymphatic trunks in the limbs may also be compressed by glands, aneurisms, and other morbid conditions ; and even the capillaries are subject to pressure in connection with inflammation of the surrounding cellular tissue. Obstruction of the thoracic duct is said to arise from disease of its valves. It may be remarked, further, that a certain degree of obstruction to the flow of the lymph and chyle may be due to marked interference with the venous circulation, as the result of cardiac disease or direct obstruction of the principal veins.

If the thoracic duct is obliterated, grave general symptoms follow, namely, marked wasting and anaemia, tending towards a fatal issue, if the chyle is unable to reach the venous system by the establishment of a collateral circulation. Various degrees of obstruction of this channel have, however, been found in different cases at *post-mortem* examinations, in which no symptoms had been observed during life. The most obvious direct effects of obstruction involving the absorbents are dilatation of

the vessels behind the impediment, in the course of the circulation; and the development of lymphatic oedema. These conditions necessarily vary much in their extent and degree, according to the situation and character of the obstruction. The dilatation may ultimately lead to rupture of the vessels.

4. LYMPHATIC DILATATION—LYMPHANGIECTASIS.—Dilatation sometimes affects the capillary network of the lymphatics; more commonly the large trunks; or occasionally the thoracic duct or the receptaculum chyli. It presents various degrees, and assumes different forms. Thus there may be merely a localized reticular dilatation of the lymphatic capillaries; or more frequently varicose, saccular, tubular, fusiform, or cirroid dilatation of the trunks; or the enlarged vessels may form a distinct growth, named *lymphangioma* or *lymphangiectodes*, which has been divided by Wagner into the three varieties—(a) *simple*; (b) *cavernous*; and (c) *cystoid*, in which cysts are developed. Moreover, enlarged lymphatics constitute an important element in the structure of elephantiasis and other growths, especially *elephantiasis lymphangiectodes*. The thoracic duct and receptaculum chyli may be enormously dilated, the former in extreme cases reaching the size of the little finger, or even attaining larger dimensions. The deep lymphatics and the lacteals are liable to dilatation, as well as those on the surface.

Lymphangiectasis is in many cases *congenital*, and it has been supposed that this may be due to a want of specialization in the lymphatic system of certain parts. The condition is attributed to different causes. Thus it may follow lymphangitis, in consequence of which the larger tubes are blocked, and the afferent vessels become therefore dilated. In other cases it is not preceded by marked inflammation of the lymphatics, but there is considerable hypertrophy of the cellular tissue, and the vessels enlarge, forming a very free anastomosing network. Again, it is supposed that dilatation may arise from mere hypertrophy of lymphatic plexuses; or from paralysis of the coats of the vessels. Any obstruction from internal plugging or external pressure may lead to enlargement of the absorbent vessels, the circulation through which is thus impeded; and probably the obstruction may be occasionally seated in the glands. Elephantiasis lymphangiectodes has been attributed in some cases to the *filaria sanguinis hominis*, as has been already pointed out. Lymphatic dilatation is most frequently met with in warm and moist climates.

When lymphangiectasis occurs on the surface of the body, it can be recognized by objective examination. Dilatation of the superficial lymphatics is generally observed on the inner side of the thigh, the sides of the belly, the scrotum, and the penis. It is characterized by vesicles like grains of sago, grouped regularly or irregularly (Curnow). Sometimes only ampullæ are found, which are generally soft and painless. The vessels may rupture subcutaneously, forming vesicles containing a clear or milky fluid. They are also liable to rupture externally, or into various internal parts when situated internally, and it is only in this way that the latter class of cases can be at all recognized clinically, the escaped chyle or lymph appearing in the stools or urine. Even superficial dilatation of the lymphatics has been not uncommonly mistaken for other conditions, such as hernia, abscesses, and strumous enlargement. The discharge of lymph confirms the diagnosis. If inflammation attacks dilated lymphatics it tends to spread rapidly, and may prove fatal. The clinical characters of lymphatic growths and tumours do not call for consideration here. Congenital cystic forma-

tions connected with the lymphatics occur chiefly on the tongue, upper lip, and neck.

5. LYMPHORRHEA—LYMPHORRHAGIA.—By these terms is signified the discharge of lymph or chyle from the vessels or glands, either on the surface of the body or into some internal part, the amount varying much in different cases. This is sometimes of *traumatic* origin, and in rare cases it may occur from slight wounds, especially in the neighbourhood of joints, which has been attributed to a constitutional defect—a *lymphorrhagic diathesis*. Usually traumatic lymphorrhœa results from wounds of the thoracic duct, of the larger lymphatic trunks, or of the glands. *Idiopathic* lymphorrhagia is generally due to previous dilatation of the vessels, which ultimately rupture. A most interesting case has been reported by Dr. Cayley, in which the receptaculum chyli gave way spontaneously as the result of previous extreme dilatation, and fatal peritonitis ensued. Lymphorrhagia may be associated with chyluria, and is then believed to be due to the *filaria sanguinis hominis*.

When lymphorrhagia occurs on the surface of the body, the discharge of the lymph is the clinical sign of the condition. The amount of fluid which escapes varies considerably, ranging from an ounce to five or even ten pounds during the twenty-four hours. It also differs at different times, and the flow has even been known to assume a periodic character, increasing during digestion. The fluid which escapes after injury may be clear and limpid lymph, or mixed with inflammatory products or blood. That which comes away in cases of rupture from dilatation of the vessels is more or less white and milky, like chyle, and it contains a variable quantity of fat. The proportion of fibrin present varies much, and therefore the power of spontaneous coagulation of the fluid. When lymphorrhagia takes place internally, it can only be recognized by the presence of the fluid in the urine or faeces respectively; in the former case giving rise to chyluria, in the latter to fatty stools. The late Mr. Messenger Bradley first called attention to the probable origin of certain cases of hydrocele, hydrocephalus, pleuritic effusion, and ascites from a lymphorrhagia into the respective serous cavities. I have met with a case of ascites which seemed at any rate to be partly due to this cause. As proved by Dr. Cayley's case, the escape of chyle into the peritoneum may set up fatal inflammation. The general condition is more or less affected in cases of lymphorrhagia, in proportion to the amount of fluid lost.

6. LYMPHADENOMA—LYMPHOMA—HODGKIN'S DISEASE—MALIGNANT LYMPHO-SARCOMA—PSEUDO-LEUKEMIA LYMPHATICA—ADENIE.—Hypertrophy of the absorbent glands is an important morbid condition, which occurs, as has already been pointed out, in one form of leucocythaemia, but which constitutes the main anatomical change in the affection known as *Hodgkin's disease*, and to which the other names mentioned above have also been given.

Etiology and Pathology.—Very little is positively known on this matter, but it is assumed that Hodgkin's disease is a primary affection of the lymphatic system, depending upon some special constitutional condition or diathesis, which has been named *lymphadenosis*. By some pathologists it is regarded as malignant, and is placed by Wilks between cancer and tubercle. In many cases the disease seems to begin without any obvious cause, but in others it evidently starts from some local irritation, and such irritation has probably been present in other instances where it has been too slight to attract attention. This com-

plaint is said to be common among French soldiers, and has been attributed to the irritation of the stiff military stock. It may be associated with a distinctly serofulous habit. As regards *predisposing causes*, Hodgkin's disease is most common in early and late adult life; in males; and amongst the poor, its development being aided by bad food, insufficient clothing, cold and damp, and unfavourable hygienic conditions.

Anatomical Characters.—The lymphatic glands more or less throughout the body present various degrees of enlargement. This is first observed usually in the neck, and especially in the sub-maxillary glands, but in most cases other groups are involved in succession, especially the axillary, inguinal, and mediastinal. The disease may, however, begin in other parts, even in internal glands, to which it may be mainly or almost entirely limited. The glands increase until they often attain a very large size, forming considerable masses or tumours. At first they are distinct, but gradually contiguous glands become fused into one growth. In exceptional cases they involve the skin. These glandular enlargements usually show no disposition whatever to suppurate, or to undergo degeneration. Rarely caseous degeneration does take place, but this is attributed to an associated tubercular condition. On section the enlarged glands are seen to be whitish or yellowish-grey. The consistence varies considerably, and the glands may be very soft, yielding a juice on pressure; or firm and dry. The distinction between their cortical and medullary portion becomes lost. Microscopical examination reveals that the enlargement is due to hypertrophy of the glandular tissue, the whole structure being converted gradually into lymph-cells, with a fine network of cellular tissue. In the firmer varieties there is more fibrous tissue.

In addition to the hypertrophy of the lymphatic glands just described, other organs in course of time present growths of a similar nature, especially the spleen, and less commonly the tonsils, liver, lungs, kidneys, and alimentary canal. Even the canals of the bones may be filled with lymphoid cells. The heart is sometimes atrophied and fatty. Signs of inflammatory and other complications may be met with at the *post-mortem* examination.

Symptoms.—When the affected glands in Hodgkin's disease are superficial, their enlargement is evident on objective examination, and their extension and growth can be watched. In the large majority of cases there is neither pain nor tenderness, but if the enlargement is very acute and rapid, sharp shooting pains may be complained of. When situated in internal cavities, the existence of lymphadenomatous growths can generally be made out by *physical examination*. Some of the most important symptoms result from irritation and pressure produced by the enlarged glands, these necessarily varying according to their position, and their relation to adjoining structures. Obstructive dyspnœa is often a marked symptom when the growth is situated within the chest. Along with the local signs of this disease, the constitution is obviously affected as a rule. This may occur before any local phenomena appear, but usually the general symptoms are gradually developed as the glands progressively enlarge, including emaciation; anaemia and its attendant phenomena, in some cases combined with an appearance of serious illness; marked muscular weakness, the patient often tottering and trembling; and feeble circulation. More or less pyrexia is present in most cases, especially in young patients. Free perspirations are common, and the skin is pale and usually moist. Oedema of the legs is a frequent symptom. The blood

does not present any excess of white corpuscles usually, but is often very watery and wanting in its normal colour, the red corpuscles being markedly deficient. The patient is much depressed and low-spirited; and attacks of syncope are not uncommon. Bronzing of the skin has been said to arise from enlarged retro-peritoneal glands surrounding and compressing the solar plexus.

Unless death should occur from the local effects of the enlarged glands, the course of Hodgkin's disease is generally chronic and progressive. Occasionally it is very acute, attended with high fever, profuse perspiration, vomiting and purging, and mental wandering at times. The termination is generally fatal, and in most cases death occurs within two years, either from gradual asthenia and exhaustion; from the effects of pressure; rarely from haemorrhage, owing to perforation of a blood-vessel; or from some intercurrent complication, such as pneumonia, pleurisy, erysipelas, or Bright's disease. It must be remembered, however, that cases of extensive lymphadenoma may go on for many years, the system being apparently but little affected, and the patient enjoying fair or even good health. In some instances the glands may be much reduced in size by appropriate treatment; while in others they remain enlarged, but show no tendency to progressive increase.

7. SCROFULOUS OR TUBERCULAR DISEASE.—In scrofulous subjects, especially children, one of the prominent clinical phenomena in many cases consists in chronic enlargement of the external lymphatic glands, especially those of the neck, there being a tendency to subsequent degeneration and breaking down of their structure, with unhealthy suppuration or caseation. In other cases the glands within the abdomen and chest are more or less extensively affected. The morbid changes are now generally regarded as being of a tubercular nature, and tubercle bacilli have been found in the affected glands. They have a very low vitality, and are liable to become speedily disorganized and caseous; they may finally dry up and calcify, but usually go on to unhealthy suppuration, forming chronic abscesses, which subsequently burst or destroy neighbouring tissues. When the diseased glands are superficial, they are easily recognized. In the chest they constitute the disease named *bronchial phthisis*; and, in addition to giving rise to the signs of a mediastinal tumour, the glands are liable to soften and to form excavations, ultimately involving the lungs, or opening into the trachea or a bronchus, into the pleura, or into one of the great vessels. If they communicate with the air-passages, there is abundant expectoration of muco-purulent or purulent matter, as well as in many cases of blood, caseous matter, or calcareous particles. When the mesenteric glands are implicated—*tubes mesenterica*—they may be felt separately or as an agglomerated mass, and often give rise to symptoms of peritoneal irritation or inflammation; as well as to flatulence, colicky pains, and various digestive disturbances. Owing to the accumulation of flatus, the abdomen is generally much distended. Appetite may be excessive, deficient or lost, or capricious. The bowels are frequently irregular, being either constipated or relaxed, the stools being also unhealthy. Uncontrollable diarrhoea is likely to be present if the intestines are ulcerated. In exceptional instances the softened glands rupture into the peritoneum or intestines. This variety of glandular disease is usually attended with considerable constitutional disorder, indicated by emaciation, anaemia, debility, and fever tending towards a hectic type. The loss of flesh is frequently extreme when the lacteal glands are involved;

and it is also very marked in bronchial phthisis, if the glands break down. In children, in whom this complaint is much the most common, there is in many cases no evidence of tubercle in other organs; but in adults the lungs or other structures are generally implicated. Recovery may be brought about even when the glands throughout the body have been extensively affected, many of them perhaps remaining as calcified masses.

8. ALBUMINOID DISEASE.—The absorbent glands are often the seat of albuminoid disease. They are then very firm and small; on section presenting the characteristic pale, homogeneous, waxy appearance. In the abdomen they can be felt as little hard nodules, separate, and readily movable. The constitutional symptoms are those of the general disease.

9. CANCER.—As a secondary deposit, cancer is very liable to implicate the absorbent glands in the neighbourhood of any structure which happens to be affected with this disease. It may also commence in them primarily. All varieties are met with; and large, hard, nodulated tumours are often formed. The clinical phenomena are mainly those due to the presence of the tumour; with evidences of the cancerous cachexia. The affected glands are generally very painful and tender.

10. RICKETS.—In this disease the superficial glands often become hard and shotty; and the mesenteric glands may be enlarged.

III. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. **Diagnosis.**—As regards the *lymphatics*, sufficient has been already said to indicate the data upon which the diagnosis of their several affections is founded. In forming a diagnosis of *glandular diseases*, special attention must be paid to the constitutional condition; and to the physical characters presented by the glands. The main difficulty lies in determining the existence of disease of the glands in internal cavities; and in making out their exact condition. Diseases of the absorbent system must always be borne in mind as a prominent cause of wasting in children, and especially affections of the mesenteric or bronchial glands.

2. **Prognosis.**—This will depend on the nature and cause of the existing disease; the state of the constitution; the situation and extent of any glands which are affected; and the changes which they undergo. Acute inflammatory affections of the absorbent system may prove very serious. In internal cavities enlarged glands, by their mere pressure or destructive effects, are liable to give rise to serious mischief. Extensive glandular disease in children, particularly when the mesenteric or bronchial glands are involved, is very dangerous. Cases of Hodgkin's disease differ greatly in their gravity; in some instances it is obviously of a hopeless and malignant type.

3. **Treatment.**—*a.* In *acute lymphangitis* and *adenitis* the principles of early treatment are to remove any cause of the inflammation; to keep the affected part at rest; and to use warm fomentations and poultices freely. Sometimes leeches may be applied with advantage. Should suppuration be set up, this must be managed on ordinary principles, and efficient surgical treatment is often demanded. *b.* In *chronic* affections connected with the absorbent system, constitutional treatment is often of the first importance, especially when the glands are involved. This must be adapted to the nature of the disease, but the measures which are generally serviceable include the administration of good

nutritious diet, with plenty of milk; attention to all hygienic matters, with change of air, especially to the sea-side, sea-bathing being often very beneficial; regulation of the digestive functions; and the use of cod-liver oil, quinine, iron in some form, especially syrup of the iodide or phosphate, arsenic, and other *tonics* or *alteratives*. Iodide of potassium and solution of potash are supposed to reduce the size of enlarged glands. It is the custom to use various external applications over such glands, to aid absorption, especially ointments of iodine or iodide of potassium or lead; tincture or liniment of iodine painted over the skin; liniment of iodide of potassium; spirit lotions, or those containing nitrate or chloride of ammonium; or sea-weed poultices or fomentations. In many instances undoubtedly much good may be thus effected, but certainly it is necessary to be cautious in employing strong applications, such as those of iodine, and also in practising violent friction, as injurious irritation and inflammation may be thus induced. Gentle friction with some simple oleaginous substance is frequently beneficial. Should abscesses form, they must be treated by poulticing and incisions, or other suitable operative procedures. Symptoms due to enlarged glands in internal cavities must be attended to as they arise. Some practitioners recommend *irritant injections* into the substance of chronically enlarged glands. Extirpation of serofulous or tubercular glands is now extensively practised. Arsenic is the most valuable drug in Hodgkin's disease, and arseniate of sodium may succeed when arsenical solution cannot be tolerated. Phosphorus has an effect in diminishing the size of the glands, but may do harm in other respects. The administration of thyroid extract has been advocated for Hodgkin's disease. The constant current has been employed in some cases with success. For the chronic conditions connected with lymphatic vessels, such as dilatation or lymphorrhagia, careful bandaging is useful, or elastic pressure may be employed; kneading may help to remove lymphatic œdema.

CHAPTER LXX.

BRONCHOCELE—GOITRE—EXOPHTHALMIC GOITRE.

Goitre is a term applied to certain forms of enlargement of the thyroid gland, and the cases which come under observation in medical practice arrange themselves under two groups, which will now be considered.

1. BRONCHOCELE or GOITRE prevails as an endemic disease in certain districts. It is particularly observed at the base of high mountains. In this country goitre occurs especially in Derbyshire—hence named “Derbyshire neck;” and in certain parts of Yorkshire, Sussex, Hants, and Nottinghamshire. It has been attributed to various meteorological and other causes, but the mass of evidence goes to prove distinctly that it is due to impregnation of drinking water with excess of lime and magnesia salts, these salts having been dissolved in the percolation of the water through the geological strata containing them. The disease is observed most commonly in females; and is rare before puberty, though it has been known to be congenital.

Anatomical Characters.—The degree of enlargement of the thyroid varies considerably, and the gland may attain very great dimensions. It begins in the isthmus, or in one lobe, especially the right, but ultimately usually involves the entire organ. The shape of the gland is generally altered, distinction of its several parts being lost, but this is not always the case. At first the tumour is soft, but gradually becomes firmer, and may ultimately be exceedingly hard. In the early stage there is simple hypertrophy of the gland—*simple bronchocele*—with the formation of a glutinous,ropy, colloid fluid in its cells; afterwards the blood-vessels increase in number and become dilated, while numerous cysts form—*cystic bronchocele*—containing either the gelatinous material or a bloody-looking fluid. Ultimately calcareous matter is deposited, and the gland may be converted into a calcified capsule, enclosing cysts, various kinds of fluid, and calcareous aggregations. Inflammation and suppuration or ulceration may supervene, altering materially the characters of the enlargement.

Symptoms.—The thyroid gland presents an obvious swelling, varying in its size and other characters; and the whole or part of the gland being involved. It may compress the neighbouring structures, and lead to serious dyspnœa, dysphagia, or interference with the circulation in the neck. By pressure upon the sympathetic trunk it is said that a simple goitre may cause dilatation of the pupil, paralysis of accommodation, slight exophthalmos, and depression of the temperature in the external meatus. The general system is usually below par, there being often much debility and anaemia. In some valley-districts bronchocele is associated with *cretinism*, a condition characterized by marked mental deficiency, with atrophy of the brain; as well as by bodily deformity.

Treatment.—In this form of bronchocele the principles of treatment are to change the residence; to avoid drinking the impregnated water; to employ iodine both internally and externally; and to improve the condition of the blood by means of iron. Iodine has gained the reputation of being almost a specific for goitre, and the best mode of administration is to give the tincture in small doses with iodide of potassium, freely diluted. Iodide of iron is also very useful. Externally applications of tincture or liniment of iodine, iodine ointment, or ointment of iodide of mercury are chiefly employed. The combined employment of ointment of biniodide of mercury, and exposure to a tropical sun or to the heat of a strong fire, has been specially recommended. Pressure may be beneficial in reducing the enlargement. If this treatment is unsuccessful, surgical interference is advocated, especially injection of the gland with some irritant, such as diluted iodine or tincture of perchloride of iron; the passage of a seton or wire through the tumour; ligature of the thyroid arteries; or, as a final resource, extirpation of the enlarged organ or a portion of it. Possibly the administration of thyroid extract might be useful in some cases of goitre not too advanced.

2. EXOPHTHALMIC GOITRE—GRAVES' OR BASEDOW'S DISEASE.—This is a highly interesting complaint, characterized by palpitation of the heart; marked pulsation in the vessels of the neck and head; enlargement and usually pulsation of the thyroid gland; and prominence of the eyeballs or *exophthalmos*. It is observed by far most commonly in young women from 20 to 30 years of age; but may be met with in males, who are usually somewhat advanced in life, though one of the most marked cases I have ever seen was in a young man, about 20 years of age. The complaint has been observed even in very young children, and as late as 60

years of age. Almost always, but not invariably, the condition is associated in females with marked anaemia or chlorosis, and menstrual derangement. The patients are often hysterical or neurotic, or there is a family tendency to nervous affections; and the complaint may be directly traceable to some powerful nervous disturbance, such as severe mental shock or emotion, or injury to the head. It is also said to be often associated with rheumatism. Pathologically exophthalmic goitre is generally believed to be the result of paralysis of the vaso-motor nerves supplying the vessels of the thyroid gland, and of the head and neck; and of undue stimulation of the accelerating nerves of the heart. The enlargement of the thyroid, which is not usually very great, is due mainly to dilatation of its vessels, partly to serous infiltration of its tissues, and after a time to hypertrophy; very rarely do cysts form. The exophthalmos is supposed to result either from the eyes being pushed forward, owing to the dilated vessels, and increased vascularity, oedema, and probably hyperplasia of the fat behind them; to contraction of the muscular tissue in the membrane which covers the sphenomaxillary fissure; or to a combination of these causes.

A prominent theory of the pathology of exophthalmic goitre is that which attributes its phenomena to morbid changes in the lower cervical ganglia of the sympathetic. An over-growth of their fibrous capsule, with or without increase of the connective tissue, has been described, rendering the ganglia hard and tough; and in some instances atrophy or other changes affecting the nerve-cells have been observed. Other views entertained are that the complaint is originated by some centric disturbance affecting the spinal cord, medulla oblongata, or cerebrum. Dr. Hale White is of opinion that exophthalmic goitre is due to a functional disturbance of the central nervous system, in the neighbourhood of the floor of the fourth ventricle. He has also called attention to the persistence of the thymus gland, and to changes in Peyer's patches in some cases.

Another view advanced as to the pathology of exophthalmic goitre is that the thyroid gland itself is the origin of the disease, or at any rate is accountable for some of its symptoms. It has even been attributed to hyper-secretion on the part of this gland.

Symptoms.—As a rule the subjects of exophthalmic goitre have a frightened look, are very anaemic or chlorotic, and they often become low-spirited or irritable before the actual symptoms appear. Palpitation is usually noticed for some time before the other characteristic phenomena, and these generally come on very gradually. The enlarged thyroid feels soft and elastic, while it pulsates or presents a peculiar thrilly sensation; and frequently a haemis murmur is heard over it. The degree of enlargement varies in different cases, but it may be so great as to press on the trachea, and the size may alter under different circumstances; the gland is usually unequally affected. The voice may be squeaky. The pulsation is in some cases visible at a distance. The degree of exophthalmos varies much, but it may become so great that the eye-balls project considerably, so that the eyelids cannot cover them; hence grave destructive changes are liable to be set up in these organs, due to inflammation and ulceration. Their movements may be much impaired, and often a certain degree of impairment of the co-ordination between their movements and those of the eyelids is observed, so that when the eyes are quickly cast down the eyelids do not follow them, and the sclerotic is visible below the upper eyelid—*von Graefe's symptom*.

Vision is generally unaffected. The exophthalmos is sometimes preceded by a spasmoid contraction of the levatores palpebrarum, which is said to be very characteristic. It is usually equal on the two sides, but sometimes is more marked or begins earlier on one side than the other, and may be unilateral in rare instances. The palpebral aperture is wider than in health, owing to retraction or spasm of upper eyelid—*Stellwag's sign*. The pupils are generally dilated. A dilated and tortuous condition of the retinal veins has been seen with the ophthalmoscope. The cardiac action is often extremely rapid, and may be irregular. It is said that the cardiac dulness is not increased. A basic murmur is not uncommon, due to the excited cardiac action, and the anaemic condition of the blood. The carotid arteries are frequently seen to throb violently; and they are sometimes dilated. A murmur may be audible in them and in the subclavians. The increased pulsation is evident even in the smaller arteries. Uncomfortable sensations of throbbing and fulness in the head, giddiness, and headache are often complained of; while the face is liable to flush. Patients suffering from exophthalmic goitre often feel weak, and may be much wasted; they are liable to free perspirations; and their temperature is frequently raised. They not uncommonly suffer from dyspeptic symptoms, especially flatulence and constipation, but the appetite may be voracious, and there is sometimes nervous diarrhoea. The urine may be excessive and watery; or sometimes it is albuminous, and in rare cases glycosuria is met with. Various skin-affections have been observed in individual cases, such as urticaria, leucoderma, and pigmentation. Among other phenomena noticed may be difficulty of breathing, hoarseness, or aphonia, due to the enlarged thyroid; cramps, chronic spasms, impaired patellar reflex, hyperæsthesia, various psychoses, and a sensation of fulness and throbbing in the throat. Sleeplessness, irritability of temper, failure of memory, and epistaxis have been mentioned as symptoms in particular instances; and *tâches cérébrales* may be sometimes obtained. Attacks of acute mania may occur. Amenorrhœa and leucorrhœa are not uncommon; and it is said that the mammary glands may be enlarged. The spleen may be swollen. A very fine tremor involving the hands has been noted in some cases of exophthalmic goitre. The characteristic symptoms are usually much increased by exertion and emotion.

The course and duration of exophthalmic goitre are very variable. Many cases improve up to a certain point, and then remain stationary; or recovery may take place under proper treatment. Death may result from the consequences of gradual dilatation and weakening of the heart, leading to mitral regurgitation, or sudden cardiac failure; from general wasting; from interference with respiration; or from intercurrent disease.

Treatment.—In cases of exophthalmic goitre the treatment must be mainly directed to the general state, the administration of iron, quinine, arsenic, and other tonics, with nutritious digestible food, careful attention to hygienic conditions, especially as regards fresh air, and moderate exercise, being the chief measures required. Removal from home-worries and excitements is of importance. Digitalis and strophantus may be useful in some cases, on account of their action upon the heart; and belladonna is also sometimes decidedly efficacious in combination with a preparation of iron. Ergot, bromides, aconite, and iodide of potassium are among the remedies which have been recommended for exophthalmic goitre. The constant application of cold by means of ice;

caterization of the turbinate bones; the use of electricity; and prolonged residence at the sea-side, or in high altitudes, have been advocated as special methods of treatment. In employing electricity, the constant current is applied, with the cathode on the cervical spine, and the anode over the sympathetic in the neck, or over the thyroid body. The administration of thyroid gland or extract has been recently tried in cases of exophthalmic goitre, and some remarkable cures have been reported, but in other instances it has had no effect or even done harm. Care must be taken to prevent the eyes from becoming injured by exposure, and with this object a shade may be worn; or the eyelids may be closed by means of a light bandage, if necessary.

CHAPTER LXXI.

MYXŒDEMA.

THIS is a peculiar disease, originally described by the late Sir W. Gull as a *cretinoid* condition, but subsequently named *myxœdema* by Dr. Ord. It is attended with a form of dropsy, the fluid having a jelly-like consistence, and with overgrowth and degeneration of the cellular tissue; there being no albuminuria or other signs of primary disease of the kidneys.

Aëtiology and Pathology.—Myxœdema is on the whole decidedly more frequent in women than men. The symptoms appear in most cases between 30 and 50; but in exceptional instances they have commenced in very early or in advanced life. The poor suffer most. The *aëtiology* of the complaint is very indefinite. Some degree of heredity has been noticed; as well as the occurrence of phthisis and neuroses in near relatives. Myxœdema has occasionally followed repeated pregnancies, injuries, severe haemorrhage, or mental disorder. With regard to the *pathology* of myxœdema, the condition of the thyroid body in this disease, the results of experimental removal of this body by Victor Horsley, and the remarkable observations of Prof. Kocher, of Berne, on the effects produced by extirpation of the thyroid gland for goitre, point to atrophy of this gland being in some way the cause of myxœdema, and to the existence of an important relationship between this complaint and the cretinoid state. Kocher's description is the description of myxœdema, although he knew nothing of the disease. The condition of the thyroid body varies considerably in different cases prior to the development of myxœdema. Sometimes it is preceded by exophthalmic goitre; or this complaint may supervene on myxœdema. Dr. Payv has advanced the doctrine that the condition may be due to an imperfect performance of proteid-cleavage and liberation of fat, owing to a want of or deficiency of the proper ferment for splitting off fat from proteid. Hence there is an undue accumulation of connective tissue, conspicuously infiltrated with a redundancy of its proteid accompaniment—mucin.

Anatomical Characters.—In myxœdema the connective tissue in all parts of the body presents a remarkable overgrowth, with a kind of

retrograde degeneration. Its fibres are increased, and unnaturally defined; the corpuscles are enlarged and multiplied; and the interstitial material is enormously augmented. The skin presents some nuclear proliferation, with increase of connective tissue in the neighbourhood of the sweat-glands, sebaceous glands, and hair-follicles. Gelatinous and œdematos skin has been recorded in a few instances. The mucous membranes, glands, muscles, and central ganglia of the nervous system are affected; and the outer coat of the arteries seems to be involved to a great degree. The thyroid gland is the organ mainly implicated. At first there seems to be a small-celled infiltration of the walls of the vesicles, and epithelial proliferation within them. Subsequently the gland consists chiefly of fibrous tissue, with scattered groups of cells, the remnants of the vesicles; and ultimately nothing but dense fibrous tissue is left. The thyroid is always smaller than normal; pale, yellowish-white, or buff-coloured; tough or indurated; and either fibrous or structureless. The condition of the kidneys which may supervene in myxœdema closely simulates subacute interstitial nephritis. The proper structural elements of the different tissues are gradually absorbed, by the effects of the pressure of the new material. The increase in the neuroglia in the nerve-centres is often very marked, leading to destruction of their elements. In some cases the heart has been found hypertrophied.

Symptoms.—Those who are the subjects of well-marked myxœdema present a peculiar and characteristic appearance. The face is universally swollen, all the features being equally and uniformly involved, without reference to gravitation, becoming broadened and flattened. Thus the lips are enlarged; the alæ nasi are thick and broad; the ridges of expression are blurred and coarsened, or the lines obliterated. The eyes appear unduly wide apart, and the connective tissue below them is loose and folded. The tongue is enlarged, and this may interfere with articulation. The connective tissue under the jaws and in the neck is heavy, thick, and thrown into folds. The skin is peculiarly waxy-looking and anaemic, yellow or sallow; but the cheeks are overspread with a dull pink flush, in vivid contrast, and abruptly limited towards the orbits. The lips may be deep-red or almost livid. The body generally becomes similarly swollen; and the hands lose all shapeliness, being described by the late Sir W. Gull as "spade-like;" the feet are similarly affected. The œdema is resilient, and does not pit on pressure; acupuncture does not bring out any serum. The skin throughout is thickened, translucent, dry, rough, and scaly, there being little or no perspiration. As myxœdema advances, ordinary anasarca often supervenes. The temperature is almost always lower than normal, and may fall to 94° or even below this point. Generally the patients complain of constant chilliness; and the hands and feet are often cold and blue. The mucous membranes which can be seen and felt present similar characters to the skin. A peculiar appearance results from a diminution in the size, or almost complete disappearance of the thyroid body; and a correlated tumefaction, with marked resilience of the skin, in the lower triangle of the neck, above the clavicle. The hair is often scanty on the head; or there may be complete baldness of the scalp, eyebrows, and eyelids. The eyebrows may be arched. The nails are stunted, brittle, and ridged. The teeth decay early, or become loose; and their extraction may be followed by severe haemorrhage.

Another characteristic group of symptoms in myxœdema are those connected with the nervous system. They are indicative of progressive hebetude, involving the intellectual faculties, sensation, and voluntary motion; and ultimately mental disorder often supervenes, terminating in coma. The expression of the face becomes fixed, heavy, apathetic, and very sad. Thought and volition are slow, but lead to correct results. Patients are markedly or even painfully conscious of a want of normal activity in performing the ordinary actions of daily life. They have a difficulty in collecting their thoughts; ideas come slowly and deliberately, and are tardily expressed in conversation; while to write a letter takes a long time. The language is, however, correct; and the writing is unchanged. There is usually a condition of lethargic good temper, but irritability is not infrequent. Later on memory becomes defective. Articulation is slow and laboured, as well as thick or blurred; and the voice monotonous and of leathery quality. The movements of the body are slow and languid; and the maintenance of fixed attitudes requires much effort. There is no loss of muscular power, but a tardiness of co-ordination, and a torpidity of muscular sense; and it appears as if the muscles were toneless and excessively relaxed during rest, so that a considerable initial contraction is necessary before they bear on their attachments. While the patient is at rest, laxity of the muscles in some instances gives rise to drooping of the head on the chest. In walking the balance of the body is maintained with difficulty, its weight being thrown on each leg in succession; and a quiver often runs through the body when the foot is raised from the ground. Moreover, sudden falls are not uncommon; and these have led to fracture of the patella. Sensation is also slow, but ultimately sure. The special senses are similarly affected; and two particular symptoms are often noticed, namely, a persistent unpleasant taste, sweet, bitter, or of other characters; and a persistent unpleasant smell.

In the early stage of myxœdema there are no evidences of organic disease of either of the viscera, but these are ultimately affected. The urine is at first usually increased in quantity; of low specific gravity; deficient in urea; but contains no abnormal ingredients. In the last stage it generally becomes albuminous. The pulse is weak or slow. The bowels are constipated.

The course of myxœdema is very chronic. Ultimately, if a case progresses towards a fatal termination, there is great general debility: while mental symptoms supervene, such as fretfulness, irritability, and moroseness or suspicion, often delusions and hallucinations, sometimes convulsions, and speedy coma at the close. Death may result from coma, uræmia, general or nervous exhaustion, or intercurrent disease. Modern treatment has greatly affected the course of myxœdema, and many cases are now arrested in their progress, if not actually cured.

Treatment.—Myxœdema has hitherto been regarded as incurable, the treatment followed being purely empirical, such as tonics, assiduous frictions, vapour-baths, tincture of jaborandi, and protection from cold. The modern rational treatment, based on the pathology of the disease, of the internal oral administration of the thyroid gland of the sheep, has been attended by the most satisfactory results, but as yet no definite statements can be made as to the permanence or otherwise of the

beneficial effects so obtained. Whether administered as fresh thyroid gland, or in the form of tabloids, powder, or glycerine extract, it should be remembered that we are using a powerful therapeutic agent. The initial dose should always be small, and the patient is best kept in bed, especially if the subject of any heart-trouble. Unpleasant effects sometimes follow the thyroid treatment, such as palpitation, giddiness, pyrexia, depression, and dyspnoea. It may be mentioned that this plan of treatment has also produced remarkable results in cases of cretinism. Other methods of carrying it out are by thyroid-grafting; and by hypodermic injection of thyroid-extract, which Dr. George Murray, of Newcastle, was one of the first to practise in this country.

CHAPTER LXXII.

* DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

I. CLINICAL CHARACTERS.

THE clinical investigation of nervous affections is frequently very difficult, and there is no class of diseases in connection with which a definite and systematic plan of examination is more requisite. Further, it is highly important to have a clear knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the nervous system, particularly as to the functions of the different parts of the central organs, and the distribution and functions of the nerves. The clinical phenomena which may be associated with the nervous system will now only be briefly sketched, but some of the more important of these phenomena will be discussed in detail later on. They may be indicated as follows:—

1. **Morbid sensations in the head**, including pain or headache, tenderness, sense of weight or heaviness, throbbing, heat, vertigo, or dizziness.

2. **Morbid sensations connected with the spine**, chiefly pain, tenderness, burning, or a peculiar sense of tightness round the body, as if it were encircled by a tight cord extending from the spine—*girdle-pain*. As regards spinal pain, it is important to notice whether it is felt all along the spine or is localized; if it is constant or paroxysmal; if it shoots in any direction; and in some cases how far it is influenced by walking, by movements of the spinal column, by percussion or kneading along the spine, by concussion of the heels, and by the passage of ice or of a hot sponge along the vertebræ.

* This subject is now so extensive, that it has become increasingly difficult to do justice to it in a general treatise. Amongst the more important works which may be referred to are "Diseases of the Nervous System" by Dr. Gowers; "Paralyses, Cerebral, Bulbar, and Spinal" by Dr. Bastian; the various articles in "Quain's Dictionary of Medicine;" and the "Treatise" and "Handbook" on Diseases of the Nervous System by the late Dr. James Ross, of Manchester. The writings of the late Prof. Charcot are, it need scarcely be said, of the highest value.

3. Mental disturbance.—It is impossible to indicate here all the numerous derangements coming under this head, especially as observed in cases of insanity, but their general character may be gathered from the following summary:—*a.* Impaired consciousness, from mere stupor to absolute coma. *b.* Disorder of the intellectual faculties, including perception and apprehension, thought, reasoning, judgment, and memory. Under this would come the various forms of delirium, mental confusion, delusions, illusions, and hallucinations; or there may be mere failure or complete loss of one or all of the mental powers. In some cases the mental faculties are unnaturally acute. *c.* Alterations in the moral feelings and actions, manner of behaviour, disposition, affections, spirits, and temper. *d.* Emotional disorder, as evidenced by the emotions being unduly excitable or the reverse. *e.* Disturbance of speech as an intellectual act—*aphasia*. *f.* Disorders affecting sleep, including somnolence, insomnia, uneasy sleep with unpleasant dreams, somnambulism, and somniloquism.

4. Subjective disturbances of the special senses.—*a. Vision.* The chief derangements of vision are photophobia or undue sensibility to light; photopsia or subjective sensations of flashes of light, of iridic colours, sparks, muscæ volitantes or spectra; defective sight, either dimness of vision to complete blindness or amaurosis, double vision or diplopia, hemiopia, part of the field of vision being lost, or altered perception of colours. *b. Hearing* may be affected, as shown by intolerance of sound; different degrees of deafness; or tinnitus aurium. *c. Smell* or *taste* may also be impaired or lost; unduly sensitive; or perverted.

5. Alterations in general sensation and tactile sensibility.—These comprehend:—*a.* Hyperæsthesia, or undue sensibility to touch; and dysæsthesia or hyperalgesia, or undue sensibility to pain. *b.* The opposite conditions of hypæsthesia, anaesthesia, or analgesia. There may be a sensation of something intervening between the skin and any object touched; or inability to distinguish the characters of the surface, or the form of an object. *c.* Various kinds of pain or tenderness felt in different parts of the body. *d.* Paræsthesiæ or perverted sensations, such as numbness, tickling, itching, formication or creeping of ants, heat or cold, pricking, tingling, or the aura epileptica. *e.* Thermo-anaesthesia; and thermo-hyperæsthesia. *f.* Diminished rapidity of conduction to the brain, and of consequent perception of tactile or painful sensations.

6. Impairment of the muscular sense.—This deviation exists in certain forms of disease, and is evidenced by a difficulty in realizing weight and resistance, or in performing certain muscular acts without looking at and paying direct attention to them; or by a want of consciousness as to whether different muscles are contracted or not, or whether joints are being passively moved.

7. Alterations affecting posture and motility.—These are of the greatest importance, and comprise:—*a.* General restlessness and jactitation. *b.* Abnormal attitudes or movements while lying, sitting, standing, or moving, such as being coiled up; boring the head into the pillow; a disposition to stagger or fall, to advance irresistibly or run, to rotate on an axis, or to move in a circle. *c.* Evidences of muscular weakness, in the way of general trembling; local tremors; or unsteadiness of a limb when raised. *d.* Signs of undue muscular irritability, namely, fibrillar quivering; twitchings; subsultus tendinum; rigidity; clonic or tonic spasms; convulsive movements; cramps or painful spasms; and tetanus.

As varieties of symptoms due to spasmodic movements should be specially mentioned strabismus or squint; rolling about of the eyes, or the condition termed *nystagmus*, in which the eye-ball presents continuous oscillatory and rotatory movements, which cannot be voluntarily controlled, or only occurring on voluntary movement; champing of the jaws; grinding of the teeth; and trismus or lock-jaw. *e.* Paralysis, either general, hemiplegic, paraplegic, or local. *f.* Impairment or loss of power in co-ordinating muscles for the performance of various acts. *g.* Automatic involuntary movements, such as those observed in chorea. *h.* Deficient or excessive reflex irritability. *i.* Cataleptic fixity of a limb; or slow purposeless movements of flexion and extension, as in the condition termed *athetosis*.

8. Changes in vascular supply, nutrition, and secretion.—The influence of the nervous system on these processes is well known, and it will suffice to mention here, as illustrations, the changes in temperature, and the wasting, with tendency to bed-sores, often observed in paralyzed parts; the disorders of nutrition and secretion which frequently accompany neuralgia; and the influence of nervous affections on the secretion of tears, saliva, or urine.

9. There are some important **extrinsic** symptoms often associated with nervous diseases, namely, those referable to the stomach, bowels, bladder, and sexual organs, many of them being due to paralysis. They include nausea and vomiting; obstinate constipation, accumulation of faeces in the rectum, and involuntary or unconscious defaecation; irritability of the bladder, retention or incontinence of urine, or involuntary micturition; diminution or loss of sexual inclination or power, undue sexual excitability, or constant priapism.

II. PHYSICAL AND SKILLED EXAMINATION.

Objective and special modes of examination are highly important in the investigation of nervous diseases, and the following outline may serve to indicate the nature and scope of the information to be thus obtained:—

A. Examination of the head, as to size and shape; state of the fontanelles; signs of tumour; or localized pain or tenderness on pressure or percussion.

B. Examination of the spinal column, as to shape, signs of tumour, or evidences of displacement or projection of the spinous processes due to dislocation or caries; or as to the sensations of the patient on palpation, percussion, or the application of heat or cold.

C. Tests of sensation.—In testing sensation it must be remembered that there are really several kinds of sensation, each of which it may be necessary to investigate. These include:—(1) *Ordinary cutaneous sensibility*. (2) *Painful sensations*. (3) *Tactile sensations*, or those of touch, which realize (a) pressure; (b) temperature; (c) locality. (4) *Muscular sense*. In many cases much care and tact are necessary in testing these different kinds of sensation, and in discriminating between them. Without entering into details, it must suffice to give the following summary:—*Cutaneous sensibility* is tested by noting the effects of a slight touch or pressure, or of tickling the surface; *painful sensations* by pricking or pinching the skin. The sense of *pressure* is best tested by

applying different weights over the part to be examined. The recognition of *temperature* may be determined by applying to the skin two test-tubes, one containing cold, the other hot water. The knowledge of *locality* can be tested by pinching or pricking the skin while the patient is not looking, or has his eyes shut, and making him state the seat of the irritation. Special instruments are also employed, such as Weber's, Jaecoud's, or Sieveking's *aesthesiometer*. Weber's instrument consists essentially of a pair of compasses, the points of which are covered with sealing-wax, and it is noted what is the shortest distance apart at which these can be recognized as separate points of touch, an approximate idea being thus gained as to the degree of sensibility of a particular part. The *muscular sense* is tested by making the patient lift weights suspended in a towel or handkerchief, and noticing the smallest weight which can be recognized, or the smallest difference between two weights which can be appreciated; by directing him, his eyes being closed, to perform certain acts, such as to point to or touch the nose or ear, or the great toe, or to place his legs in particular postures; or by placing the legs in different positions, and ascertaining whether the patient can, without looking, state what positions they occupy.

D. Tests applied to muscles.—*a.* When any muscles are supposed to be paralyzed, the patient should be desired to attempt to perform various movements or actions, which would bring the affected muscles into play, and thus it can be observed whether they are really paralyzed, and to what degree; it being noted whether these actions can be performed at all, or if they are merely slowly produced and deficient in power. In this connection the act of walking and the gait often demand careful attention. An instrument named the *dynamometer* has been invented by Duchenne, for the purpose of measuring and recording accurately the strength of the hand-grasp; and also of measuring the force of traction which can be exerted by other groups of muscles. *b.* When there is impairment or loss of co-ordinating power, the involved muscles should also be properly tested; thus the patient may be made to balance the body in an erect position with the eyes shut, or to walk along a straight line without looking at the ground. *c.* A matter of frequent importance is to determine whether muscular irritability is retained or lost, as well as the degree of facility with which it is excited, and the force with which the muscles act when thus irritated. This is accomplished by employing some direct mechanical irritation, such as pressure, percussion, or drawing the finger along the muscles; but especially by electricity. In many cases also the reflex excitability of muscles has to be tested, but this subject must be separately discussed.

E. Examination of reflexes.—For several years past certain phenomena have come to assume an important position in relation to nervous diseases, which are known by the general term *spinal reflexes*. These are tested as to their presence; their absence or abolition; or their exaggeration or impairment. They are divided into two primary groups, namely:—1. *Superficial or skin-reflexes.* 2. *Deep or tendon-reflexes.*

Superficial reflexes depend on impressions conveyed by the ordinary afferent or sensory nerves, when certain parts of the skin are irritated. *Tendon-reflexes* are elicited by a sudden impulse or blow applied to the tendon or aponeurosis belonging to a muscle.

The modes of production, and the indications afforded by these reflexes, are conveniently arranged by Dr. Bastian, in "Quain's Dictionary of Medicine," according to the following tables:—

1. SUPERFICIAL REFLEXES.

Name of Reflex.	Mode of Excitation.	Nature of Result.	Level of Cord upon which Reflex depends.
<i>Plantar reflex.</i>	Tickling sole of foot.	Movement of toes; of these and foot; or of these and leg.	First, second, and third sacral nerves (lower part of lumbar enlargement).
<i>Gluteal reflex.</i>	Irritation of skin of buttock.	Contraction of glutæi.	Fourth and fifth lumbar nerves.
<i>Cremasteric reflex.</i>	Irritation of skin of upper and inner part of thigh.	Drawing up of testicle.	First and second lumbar nerves.
<i>Abdominal reflex.</i>	Irritation of skin of abdomen along edge of ribs, and above Poupart's ligament.	Contraction of upper or of lower part of abdominal muscles.	Eighth to twelfth dorsal nerves.
<i>Epigastric reflex.</i>	Stroking side of chest over sixth and fifth intercostal spaces.	A dimpling of corresponding side of epigastric region (contraction of highest fibres of rectus abdominis).	Fourth to sixth or seventh dorsal nerves.
<i>Scapular reflex.</i>	Irritation of skin in interscapular region.	Contraction of posterior axillary fold (teres), or of several of scapular muscles.	Sixth or seventh cervical to second or third dorsal nerves.

2. DEEP REFLEXES.

Name of Reflex.	Mode of Excitation.	Nature of Result.	Level of Cord upon which Reflex depends.
<i>Knee jerk.</i>	By striking patella tendon with edge of hand or with percussion hammer, whilst leg hangs loosely over fellow, or over forearm of operator. Also by striking quadriceps tendon above patella.	A single upward jerk of the leg and foot, slight or distinct.	Second and third lumbar nerves.
<i>Ankle clonus.</i>	With knee extended or very slightly flexed, by pressing quickly and firmly against anterior part of sole of foot (so as to stretch calf-muscles) and then keeping up the pressure.	A series of clonic contractions at the ankle-joint, continuing as long as the pressure is maintained, and instantly ceasing when it is relaxed. If the condition is very highly marked it may spread to the whole limb, or even to that of the opposite side.	First to third sacral nerves (lower part of lumbar enlargement).

A modification of the ankle-clonus has been described under the term *front-tap contraction*. It is obtained by tapping on the muscles of the front of the leg during passive flexion of the ankle. Deep reflexes can also occasionally be produced in the upper limb, though not present in health, as, for instance, percussion of the lower end of the radius produces flexion of the elbow, and in some cases percussion of the lower end of the ulna produces extension of the elbow; they are said to indicate

secondary descending degeneration after brain-lesions. Eulenbergs indicates the movements of tendon-reflexes by *graphic representation*.

*E.** **Uses of Electricity.**—Electricity is of use for the diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment of diseases, especially of the nervous and muscular systems. It is used in three forms, namely:—

1. Electricity produced by *friction*, otherwise known as *static* or *Franklin electricity*, requiring for its application rotating cylinders or discs of glass, Leyden jars, insulating stools, etc. This form is so difficult to manage, and the apparatus is so cumbersome, that it is now rarely used, although the late Professor Charcot employed it to a considerable extent, especially in the treatment of so-called "hysterical" neuroses.

2. Electricity induced by *magnets* or neighbouring currents of electricity. This is called the *induced current*, the *Faradic current*, the *magnetoelectric current*, or the *interrupted current*. Its most common form is that in which a coil is made to rotate between the poles of a horseshoe magnet. The best form is that in which a coil of coarse wire having a core of soft iron in its middle is connected with the two plates of a galvanic element. Over this primary coil another coil of finer wire is made to slide. The current of the primary coil being automatically made and broken with very great rapidity by means of a spring hammer, currents of electricity are induced in the coil which slides over the primary coil, and the strength of such induced currents can be graduated with very great delicacy by the extent to which the outer coil covers the inner.

3. Electricity produced by *chemical action* in cells, such cells being technically known as "elements." This is called *Galvanic* or *Voltaic electricity*, and is sometimes spoken of as the *constant current*. The elements must be "constant" in their action, and none are better than those which are known as the Leclanché elements (of which there are many imitations), and which are now in common use for a variety of purposes. A medical galvanic battery should be composed of small cells, not less than twenty in number and united in *series*, that is, the *zinc* plate of one element joined to the *carbon* plate of the next, and so on. In such a battery the current flows from the last carbon plate through the connecting wire to the first zinc plate. The wire connected with the carbon is spoken of as the *positive pole*, and that with the zinc as the *negative pole*, and it must be remembered that the current always flows from positive to negative. The negative pole is more stimulating and irritating than the positive.

The use of electricity as a source of light, and as a source of heat, is daily becoming of more and more importance in medicine, but scarcely needs more than a passing allusion in this place.

In *diagnosis* electricity is used to test the *irritability* of nerves (motor and sensory), and of muscles. The best form of battery for testing is a combined Faradic and Galvanic, the latter with 20 to 40 cells, and so arranged that the same electrodes or sponges can be used for either current by simply altering a switch. Great care is required in the employment of electricity for such a purpose, and we shall best explain the method to be used by giving directions for testing a particular group of muscles, say, those of the hand. This is most readily done by comparing

* The following observations on the "Uses of Electricity" have been chiefly written by my friend and colleague, Dr. Vivian Poore, who has also kindly revised them for this edition.

the irritability of a muscle on the right side with the corresponding muscle on the left. We must be sure in the first instance that the muscles are in perfect repose, and it is often impossible to get this condition fulfilled without the intelligent help of the patient. Let the patient, stripped to the waist, sit in a comfortable chair with both hands arranged symmetrically in front of him, and resting in perfect repose on a small table of suitable height, or on the back of a chair. Next we must be sure that the current passes through equal lengths of the body to the muscles on either side; this is most certainly effected by fastening one pole to the middle line of the body (say the nape of the neck). If telegraph wire conductors be used (and they are the best) it will be found a good plan to place a small toilet sponge moistened with salt and water over the lower cervical vertebrae, and over this to fasten the bright copper wire of the conductor by means of a strip of bandage tied round the neck. Next we must be sure that the skin over the muscles to be tested is equally pervious (if we may use the expression) to electricity, and this is best effected by thoroughly moistening the skin with *hot salt and water*. Having fastened a sponge-holder or rheophore of suitable shape to the other conductor of the battery, sit facing the patient, and proceed to test the muscles and compare the irritability of one side with the other. It is well to begin with the side which is presumably healthy. Let your current be at zero to begin with, and gradually increase its strength until a distinct movement of the muscle is obtained. This done, apply the same current in a precisely similar way to the opposite side and compare the results. We may find that the irritability is lost, lessened, or heightened, or that a muscle which gives no response to faradism contracts more or less readily to galvanism.

Irritability to both forms of current is *lost* if the muscle be so extremely wasted that no appreciable amount of fibre remains. It is *lessened* in all cases in which muscles have been disused for some time, as when limbs have long been kept in splints or immovable apparatus, and in old cases of hemiplegia and hysterical paralysis. Irritability when lessened from these causes is usually quickly recovered after a few applications of the current. It is often lessened in diphtheritic paralysis, in moderately severe cases of lead-paralysis, and in cases of nerve-injury which are recovering. Irritability is lessened to both forms of current when muscles have been over-used, as in writers' cramp, and in some cases of chorea. In cases of locomotor ataxy it is sometimes found that the muscles of the affected limbs vary in their irritability, some showing excess and others diminution. After an injury to a nerve which completely stops its conducting power, it is common to find that the irritability to faradism and galvanism of muscles supplied by the injured nerve undergoes a gradual diminution, until at the end of seven or eight days the irritability to faradism is completely lost, while the irritability to galvanism revives and ultimately becomes excessive.

Irritability to both currents may be apparently lessened in cases where the skin is very dry and harsh, and the current finds great resistance to its transit through it.

Irritability of muscles to faradism or galvanism may be *heightened* in some cases of *slight* nerve-injuries, in which the nerve is bruised or tender. It is apparently heightened in emaciated and anaemic subjects.

It is noteworthy that in some forms of progressive muscular atrophy the irritability to both forms of current continues normal as long as there is any muscle remaining.

Sometimes in the early stages of hemiplegia muscular irritability is heightened; and in cases of paraplegia from a limited lesion leading to degeneration of the lateral column of the cord a similar condition of things is found.

Degenerative Reactions.—In the conditions thus named it is found that muscles give no response to faradism, but respond readily, or too readily, to galvanism. When a motor nerve is divided or obliterated by pressure, or when the motor cells in the cord or brain from which it emanates are destroyed, degeneration travels down the nerve, and ultimately reaches the terminal fibres and end-plates distributed among the muscular fibrillæ, leaving the muscle practically without any nerve at all. Muscles in such a state give no response to faradism (for this current acts mainly on the intra-muscular nerves), but as long as any muscular fibres remain they can be made to contract, by virtue of their own inherent irritability, by the galvanic current slowly interrupted. Sometimes muscles in this condition respond too readily to galvanism: but why this should be so it is difficult to say.

Degenerative reactions are found in cases of paralysis due to damage to a nerve-trunk (as in facial palsy and other forms of nerve-injury); as well as in cases of paralysis due to destruction of the motor cells in the spinal cord (anterior polio-myelitis, infantile paralysis, adult spinal paralysis), and of course in those more extensive lesions of the cord, such as acute myelitis, which involve the motor cells in a common ruin. Degenerative reactions are also found in extreme forms of lead-palsy. In cases of paraplegia from a local injury, in which the motor cells below the injury retain their functional vitality, the degenerative reactions are not found, so that the following rules may be laid down:—

1. As long as a muscle is connected by a healthy nerve with healthy motor cells in its nerve-centre, it will not give degenerative reactions, even though it be absolutely paralyzed to the will. Neither will a muscle in such a condition undergo rapid or extensive wasting.

2. When a muscle is cut off from the influence of its motor cells, by damage to the cells themselves, or to the motor nerve which emanates from them, it gives degenerative reactions as soon as the degeneration of the nerve to its end is complete; and a muscle in such a state wastes very rapidly.

The essential point in the "reaction of degeneration" is the want of irritability for the faradic current, while the galvanic current is still able to provoke a contraction of the muscles. The reaction of the degenerated muscle to galvanism is, however, often not that of health. In health the muscle contracts most readily when the negative pole (cathode) is applied to the muscle and the circuit is closed. This (normal reaction) is called *Cathodal Closure Contraction* (C.C.C.). In some cases of degeneration the contraction of the muscle is most easily provoked when the positive pole (anode) is applied to the muscle, and the circuit is opened. This is called *Anodal Opening Contraction* (A.O.C.). In health the cathodal closure contraction is more readily provoked than the anodal opening contraction, but in the degenerated muscle this order is reversed, and we get "reaction of degeneration," with the anodal opening contraction greater than the cathodal closure contraction, a fact which may be shortly recorded thus:—R.D : A.O.C. > C.C.C.

It must be borne in mind that a muscle may be hopelessly paralyzed and yet respond to electricity quite normally.

The irritability of motor nerves may be tested by applying the rheophore exactly over the nerve we wish to test; and all that has been said with regard to the muscles may be equally applied to the nerves.

Electricity is of some use also in testing the sensibility of sensory nerves.

Electricity is often of service in *prognosis*, and it will be convenient to offer here a few remarks on this subject. 1. A correct prognosis must depend upon an exact diagnosis. Thus a muscle or limb is paralyzed, and by the aid of electricity (combined with other indications) we are helped to a knowledge of the exact seat of the paralyzing lesion, whether psychical, cerebral, spinal, or in the peripheral nerves; and on the exactness of this knowledge depends the accuracy of prognosis. 2. Electrical reactions, when considered in conjunction with the element of time, are often a great aid to prognosis. Thus, let us take an ordinary case of facial paralysis, from a (rheumatic?) thickening of the sheath of the facial nerve after it leaves the stylo-mastoid foramen. The tendency of such a case is to recover completely in ten days or a fortnight, and the degenerative reactions will be scarcely appreciable. If the degenerative reactions are well-marked, we may infer that the degeneration of the motor nerve is complete to its very end, and we may feel sure that recovery will be delayed for some weeks. If the degenerative reactions persist after many months, the chances of ultimate recovery lessen. Directly, however, a muscle which has given degenerative reactions begins to respond to faradism our prognosis becomes more hopeful. Prognosis must depend not only upon the exactness of the diagnosis, but also upon our knowledge of the natural history of the disease with which we have to deal. Electricity is a valuable aid to prognosis, but it is not an infallible touchstone, and if it be used in combination with ignorance it is almost certain to mislead.

G. When a limb is paralyzed, the **state of nutrition** of its tissues must be noted, especially that of the muscles, by feeling them, and by making circular measurements, for which a special apparatus has been invented by Dr. Russell Reynolds. It should also be observed whether there is any local change in **temperature**; or in the characters of the **pulse**.

H. **Examination directed to the Special Senses.**—It may be requisite to test the sense of hearing, taste, or smell; but the most important matter coming under this head is examination directed to the eyes and to vision. This comprehends:—(i.) *Examination of the position and movements of the eye-balls*, for paralysis or spasm of one eye only, or for conjugate deviation of both eyes in one direction. (ii.) *Examination of the pupils*, observing whether both are contracted or dilated, or rapidly alternate from one to the other condition; if they are equal or unequal; and if they act properly under light, and to accommodation. (iii.) *Testing the sight* in various ways, particular attention being paid to the *field of vision* in all directions; and also to the *perception of colours*. (iv.) *Examination with the ophthalmoscope*. Ophthalmoscopic examination is now adopted as a routine practice in the investigation of diseases of the nervous system. For a full account of this subject, and of the various kinds of apparatus employed, with the methods of using them, reference must be made to special treatises. It is, however, by practical demonstration that the use of the ophthalmoscope is best learnt, and

considerable personal experience with the instrument is required before it can be satisfactorily employed. In the succeeding remarks a brief description will be given of the morbid appearances which may be presented, the structures to which attention has to be particularly directed in the examination being the optic disc, blood-vessels, retina, and choroid. At the outset it must be remarked that the normal amount of vascularity is subject to great variations, and therefore but little importance should be attached to slight alterations in this respect, unless they are changing or unilateral.

a. *Hyperæmia*.—This may be limited to the vessels of the disc or retina, or may involve both sets. It is characterized by more or less increased redness, with enlargement of the vessels and apparent increase in their number, many radiating from the disc, and some appearing to be tortuous or varicose, there being in some cases minute dark red spots, due to little "kinks," in the vessels. Pulsation in the arteries is sometimes seen, especially on lightly pressing the eye-ball. Slight œdema of the disc may follow, dimming the edge, and veiling its surface. There may be subjective symptoms of dimness of vision, heaviness about the eyes, flashes of light, or iridic colours. The encephalic conditions with which hyperæmia may be associated are congestion; acute or chronic inflammation, especially meningeal; and tumours. It may remain as such; but is more frequently the first stage of an acute inflammation, especially when due to a tumour. β. *Anæmia*.—This condition may be persistent, as in general anæmia; or transitory, as in vascular spasm. As a rule the disc, retina, and choroid are affected. There is pallor, with emptiness and shrinking of the vessels. It may be attended with temporary blindness, flashes of light or muscæ volitantes, and general weakness of vision. The local causes are vascular spasm and embolism. Anæmia has been noticed in epilepsy and acute uræmia.

γ. *Œdema of the disc*.—Most frequently accompanying other conditions, namely, hyperæmia, ischaemia, but especially neuritis, in rare instances œdema of the disc exists alone. δ. *Ischaemia of the disc—Choked disc* (Allbutt).—There is still much doubt and discussion as to the real significance of the condition thus named. By one set of authorities it is regarded as originating in congestion, in consequence of some increased intra-cranial pressure, which obstructs and prevents the return of the blood from the eye through the ophthalmic vein to the cavernous sinus. von Graefe advanced the view that ischaemia is due to "obstruction at the cavernous sinus, with concurrent action of the sclerotic ring." It has also been attributed to the pressure of fluid driven down into the subvaginal space around the optic nerve, and compressing the latter at the terminal *cul-de-sac*, so that the return of venous blood is impeded. This space is continuous with the sub-arachnoid space around the brain, and any increase of intra-cranial pressure or of sub-arachnoid fluid causes distension of the sheath around the nerve. Manz has endeavoured to prove this by experiments on animals. On the other hand, several of the highest authorities in ophthalmoscopy deny that this is the mode of origin of ischaemia, and consider that it is really a form of neuritis. Dr. Hughlings Jackson and others maintain that this is set up in a reflex manner, as the result of some irritation in the brain, and this reflex influence has been supposed to be conveyed through the vaso-motor nerves. Schmidt found experimentally that the liquid in the sheath around the optic nerve passes into lymph-spaces in the nerve at the lamina cribrosa, and he suggested that neuritis is set up by the influence,

perhaps irritation, of fluid driven in by intra-cranial pressure. Others hold that the so-called ischaemia is always a descending neuritis, the inflammation being propagated directly from the brain along the trunk of the optic nerve. When advanced, the appearances in ischaemia are those of intense congestion and inflammation, with haemorrhages. The disc is much swollen and prominent, generally rising steeply on one side and sinking gradually on the other, while the margin is obscured by infiltration and excessive vascularity, the latter giving it a mossy look, owing to the great increase in the number of capillaries. The colour may be deep-red, but is often a mixture of dirty grey and red, from the mixing of exudation with distended capillaries and minute extravasations. The nerve-fibres are somewhat swollen, and less transparent than in health, so that the papillary region looks more coarsely fibrous. Cell and nuclear proliferation takes place in the connective tissue between the bundles of nerve-fibres and around the vessels. The retina is only altered immediately around the disc, being opaque, and its veins being enlarged, sometimes with streaks of exudation along the larger of them. Some nerve-fibres are disintegrated. The trunk of the optic nerve is unaffected. This state frequently exists to a marked degree without any disturbance of central vision. The causes of ischaemia are meningitis, tumours, hydrocephalus, and caries of the sphenoid bone.

ε. Descending optic neuritis.—This signifies inflammation extending along the optic nerve from within the cranium, the extension probably taking place chiefly along its connective tissue. Hence the optic trunk itself is involved, and the morbid ophthalmoscopic appearances are chiefly confined to the disc, occasionally involving the adjacent retina. The ophthalmoscopic distinctions from ischaemia are thus described:—The disc is swollen, and does not present the steep, one-sided elevation; the main trunks of the vessels are chiefly enlarged and tortuous, and there is not the great increase in number of the minute branches and capillaries observed in ischaemia; the colour is less intense and more uniform, with more opacity, and these appearances extend further into the retina; there is often a "woolly" aspect, probably due to oedema. Numerous small haemorrhages frequently occur, which leave white spots. The intimate changes chiefly affect the connective tissue, which undergoes proliferation, the nerve-fibres being subsequently disintegrated and wasted. A variety has been described as *perineuritis*, in which the outer neurilemma is most affected, the appearances being visible mainly in the margin of the papilla, and extending more widely into the retina.

ζ. Chronic optic neuritis.—Here there is an early stage of redness of the disc, with in some cases haemorrhages and slight effusions, followed by consecutive atrophy, the vessels gradually contracting and disappearing.

η. Retinitis.—Very rarely resulting from cerebral disease, this is characterized at first by hyperæmia of the disc and retina, followed by silvery patches of exudation upon the latter. The entire retina is probably never affected from cerebral disease. The intra-cranial causes of all the varieties of optic neuritis are meningitis and cerebritis, in whatever way these may have been set up. The inflammation must be contiguous to the nerve, and the latter is more likely to be affected if the morbid process is severe or prolonged. Tumours and other morbid conditions may give rise to neuritis, but only indirectly, by first exciting inflammation of the cerebral structures. Chronic neuritis is said to be associated with abuse of tobacco, general paralysis, and locomotor ataxy.

θ. Atrophy of the disc.—Two forms of atrophy are recognized,

the *simple*, *progressive*, or *primary*; and the *consecutive*, which is secondary to ischaemia or neuritis. Dr. Hughlings Jackson distinguishes between them by the raggedness of the edges, and blurring of the outline in the consecutive form; by the clean-cut even rim, and more brilliant appearance in the primary form. Dr. Allbutt, however, considers that the condition described as simple atrophy often succeeds chronic neuritis, and that the ragged and irregular form is only transitional, gradual changes taking place in the products of inflammation, which are finally entirely removed. True primary atrophy may result from destruction of the fibres in the course of the optic nerve, so as to sever their distal ends from their central attachment, as by pressure of a tumour or inflammatory exudation; disease at the root of the nerve in the centres of vision; progressive sclerosis extending along its trunk; or failure of nutrition from degeneration of arteries or embolism. The ultimate appearances observed in atrophy are that the disc becomes white, glistening, and more or less cupped; the smaller vessels fade away; the connective-tissue is increased; and the nerve-elements disappear. *i.* In exceptional cases minute *tubercles* are visible in the eye with the aid of the ophthalmoscope.

I. There is a peculiar tendency among **malingers** to sham nervous affections, and it sometimes requires considerable ingenuity to detect the imposture. In any case where anomalous nervous symptoms are complained of, without any objective signs, malingering should be suspected, and the patient should be closely watched, without letting it appear that this is being done. The tests to be applied will, of course, vary in different cases, but as illustrations of such tests may be mentioned the use of an anaesthetic; various methods of detecting shammed fits, as by putting snuff under the nose, applying heat or cold suddenly, or pressing with the nail under the matrix of the thumb-nail; supporting a supposed paralyzed limb in an extended position, and letting it fall suddenly; pricking unexpectedly a part stated to be anaesthetic, while the patient is not looking; and the use of a strong electric current.

J. In all cases of nervous disease, especially cerebral, it is of great importance to examine carefully the **heart** and **vessels**; and also to **test the urine**. It may further be requisite to investigate particularly certain acts, especially micturition. In some cases local temperatures need to be taken and compared. Attention may also be directed here to the red blotches of cutaneous congestion, named *tâches cérébrales* by Troussseau. These may be observed scattered over the skin in certain conditions, without any artificial irritation; but in other cases the skin has to be irritated in order to bring them out, by drawing a pencil or the finger-nail along it.

CHAPTER LXXIII.

GENERAL THERAPEUTICS OF THE NERVOUS AND MUSCULAR SYSTEMS.

FROM a clinical and therapeutic point of view the nervous and muscular systems are so intimately associated that they must be considered together in the present chapter. The classification of the numerous agents which affect these systems is decidedly difficult and complicated, and it will be impossible to do more within the limits of this work than to present a very general outline of the subject.

I. Therapeutic Groups.—Many of the agents which are used to influence the nervous and muscular systems produce different, it may be opposite effects, according to the dose given, the mode and frequency of administration, and other circumstances. Further, a large number of them affect more than one portion of the nervous system, and thus their results are often more or less complex. The recognized groups may be arranged as follows:—

1. *Cerebral Stimulants*.—These agents primarily stimulate the brain, causing exalted consciousness, and increased mental activity, with more or less exhilaration or excitement, which may culminate in a state of inebriation, or even in delirium. This is speedily followed by stimulation of the circulatory and respiratory functions. The effects are transient, and are liable to be succeeded by depression. The chief agents belonging to this group include alcohol; ether and chloroform; tea, coffee, coca, and guarana; camphor; cannabis indica; opium in small or gradually-increasing doses; belladonna, hyoscyamus, stramonium, and tobacco, the last-mentioned drug being also used as snuff. Under certain circumstances it is necessary to rouse the cerebral functions when in abeyance, or when there is a tendency to loss of consciousness, by physical methods, such as shaking the patient, making him walk about, flicking the face or chest with a towel, or douching with cold water; by the application of *irritants* to different parts of the surface of the body; by artificial respiration; by the use of electricity; or by blistering the shaven scalp.

2. *Cerebral Depressants*.—It is convenient to bring under this comprehensive group certain important classes of therapeutic agents, which act mainly upon the brain, though their effects in many instances are partly produced through other portions of the nervous system. The sub-divisions may be thus arranged:—*a. Cerebral Sedatives*. These subdue and calm any abnormal cerebral excitement, or general irritability of the nervous system, as indicated by mental disquietude of different kinds, actual delirium or mania, general restlessness, certain morbid sensations, or other phenomena. *b. Soporifics or Hypnotics*; and *Narcotics*. The purpose which is intended when employing therapeutically any agent belonging to these divisions is to procure sleep by some direct effect upon the brain. Some drugs cannot go further than this, merely causing natural sleep, their use being,

therefore, practically unattended with any danger; and these are called more particularly *soporifics* or *hypnotics*. Others, however, named *narcotics*, if given beyond a certain point, produce a condition of stupor, narcosis, or coma, from which it may be impossible to rouse the individual, and which often terminates fatally. Consequently they have to be administered with far greater caution than the less powerful hypnotics. There is, however, no absolute line of demarcation between them.

c. *General Anodynes*. These are agents which are introduced into the system in various ways, for the purpose of relieving pain. Many of them do not merely act upon the brain, but also affect other parts of the nervous system; while some appear to have a special influence upon particular nerves.

d. *General Anaesthetics*. A well-defined group come under this head, which, when inhaled in the form of gas or vapour, produce various degrees of impairment or loss of consciousness, as well as of the power of perception of painful or other sensory impressions. Some of them cause at first more or less cerebral excitement; while general muscular paralysis accompanies the advanced stage of the condition produced by the more powerful anaesthetics.

The several groups just indicated are obviously allied, and in not a few cases the aim of treatment is to procure two or more of the objects indicated, some drugs being capable of acting as sedatives or hypnotics, and at the same time as anodynes. In enumerating the agents, an attempt will be made to classify them according to the effects for which they are practically employed in treatment, but it will be impossible to go into any lengthy details.

There is a group of powerful drugs which may be used as *cerebral* or *nervous sedatives* or *hypnotics*, as well as for the *relief of pain*. They include preparations of poppy-capsules, opium, and morphine; hydrate of chloral (though some question its anodyne effect), and butyl-chloral; alcohol, ether, and chloroform; cannabis indica; belladonna and atropine. These have all ultimately *narcotic* effects, or may be dangerous in other ways, and must therefore always be employed with special caution. Bromides are of great value as *nervous sedatives*, as well as for their *soporific* effect, but they are of little or no use as *anodynes*. Hydrocyanic acid is used to relieve certain forms of pain, and is a powerful nervous sedative, but is not given for this purpose. Agents employed more particularly as *hypnotics*, differing in their degree of activity and danger, include hop and lupulin; extract of lettuce; hyoscyamus, and hyoscine (non-official); paraldehyde; sulphonal; tobacco-smoking; and digitalis, or strychnine, under particular circumstances. Many non-official drugs for procuring sleep are also in common use, as hypnone, urethane, chloralamid, and various others. Among drugs given specially as *anodynes* in neuralgic cases may be mentioned ammonium chloride, aconite, quinine, gelsemium, phenazone, acetanilide, phenacetin, and exalgine (non-official). It may be observed that some of the agents just enumerated are often advantageously administered in combination, and pharmacists have made different preparations on this principle, to which particular names are applied, such as nepenthe, bromidia, and the like. The only *general anaesthetics* officially recognized are chloroform, pure ether, and nitrous oxide gas. A mixture of alcohol, chloroform, and ether is in common use. Several other substances have been introduced, but they are of doubtful value. In medical practice the important uses of these agents are to relieve severe pain which cannot be alleviated in other ways; and to bring patients who are suffering

from intense cerebral excitement, and whose violence is beyond control by milder measures, into a state of temporary unconsciousness, as in cases of *delirium tremens* or *acute mania*.

3. *Agents affecting the Spinal Cord.*—It will suffice to indicate under this head the agents which affect the motor functions of the cord. Some of them act also upon motor nerves or nerve-endings, so that their effects are of complex origin. They are divided into two classes:—

a. Spinal Stimulants or Excito-Motors. These increase the reflex excitability of the cord, cause exaggeration of tendon-reflexes, and tend to produce spasmodic movements, which in some instances culminate in powerful tetanic contractions, and hence they are named *tetanizers*. The typical agent of this group, and the only one that is used therapeutically, is strychnine, either employed separately, or in one of the preparations of *nux vomica*. Opium, ergot, ammonia, and other drugs have some degree of action of this kind at first, but they are of no practical value for the purpose. *b. Spinal Sedatives or Depresso-Motors.* This group depress the functional activity of the cord, lessening and ultimately arresting all reflex irritability, and causing muscular weakness, or eventually actual paralysis. They are far more numerous, and of more frequent application than the preceding group. Indeed, a very large number of drugs have, when given to excess, a depressant action on the cord, but it will only be necessary to mention here those that are actually used for this purpose, namely, bromides; hydrate of chloral; hydrocyanic acid; camphor; nitrite of amyl and other nitrites; opium and morphine; calabar bean and physostigmine; conium (which mainly affects the motor nerve-endings); ergot, at last; nicotine; and curare (non-official).

4. *Nervine Tonics.*—It will be convenient to notice in the next place a class of remedies which are supposed to act gradually upon the entire nervous system, either improving its nutrition, or in some other way producing a tonic effect, which is manifested by increased physical and mental vigour, and in various other ways. They are especially employed in the treatment of certain so-called functional nervous disorders. They include preparations of arsenic; phosphorus and hypophosphites; quinine; *nux vomica* and strychnine; preparations of zinc, especially the sulphate and valerianate; oxide and nitrate of silver; sulphate of copper; and chloride of barium and gold (non-official).

5. *Local Sedatives, Anodynes, and Anaesthetics.*—A large number of local applications or other therapeutic measures can be employed for their *sedative* or *anodyne* effect, and a few agents are capable of thus producing absolute *anaesthesia* or loss of sensation, either in connection with the skin, or with certain mucous surfaces. These classes of remedies are fully dealt with in their appropriate relations in other parts of this work, and it will suffice to mention here some of the more important local anodyne applications or methods, namely, heat or cold, applied in different ways; pressure or support; counter-irritation; menthol, thymol, or a mixture of hydrate of chloral and camphor; chloroform; ether in the form of spray; poppy-fomentations, and certain preparations of opium, belladonna, aconite, or conium; and powerful alkaloids, namely, morphine, aconitine, atropine, veratrine, and cocaine. Various measures employed for the treatment of neuralgic forms of pain will be pointed out when discussing that subject. *Local sedatives* belong more particularly to the department of skin-affections.

6. *Local Stimulants and Tonics.*—Nerves and muscles can be stimulated temporarily, or their nutrition and tone permanently improved, by various local measures. Medicinal agents are of little or no use for these purposes, except that irritants may be employed as stimulants to nerves. Such methods as applying heat or cold, friction, active or passive movements, douching, massage, and electricity, are those which are mainly relied upon for carrying out these objects.

7. *Antispasmodics.*—The relief of spasmodic disturbances of different kinds, affecting the voluntary muscles more or less extensively, or associated with the involuntary muscular tissue present in particular organs or structures, is a frequent and important indication in treatment, under a variety of circumstances. It would be quite out of place to attempt any general discussion of this complex subject, the several relations of which are dealt with in other parts of this work; and it must suffice to state that the following are the chief drugs which are administered as *antispasmodics* under different circumstances, namely, preparations containing ammonia or carbonate of ammonium; bromides; alcohol, ether, and chloroform, in various combinations, or by inhalation; hydrate of chloral; hydrocyanic acid; nitrite of amyl and its allies; essential oils of peppermint, lavender, cajeput, rue, and the like; oil of turpentine; camphor; menthol; asafœtida, ammoniacum, galbanum, myrrh; valerian, sumbul, musk; opium or morphine; cannabis indica; belladonna or atropine, stramonium, and other atropaceous drugs; calabar bean; conium; lobelia; and the group of nervine tonics, which produce their effects gradually. Local applications and other special methods are of great service in the treatment of limited spasmodic disturbances.

II. **Methods of Administration.**—Remedies intended to act upon the nervous system are usually given by the mouth. In some cases enemata or suppositories answer best. Subcutaneous injection is a mode of administration which is frequently of the greatest service, especially when a rapid effect is desired, or when the mental condition of the patient will not permit of the adoption of other modes. Certain agents which act upon the nervous system are inhaled, especially anaesthetics. In using remedies topically for their effects on nerves, almost all the recognized local methods of application may be available in different cases.

III. **Auxiliary Therapeutic Agents.**—In the preceding remarks some of the measures which are of use in relation to the nervous system, apart from drugs, have been incidentally alluded to. In dealing with this system from a therapeutic point of view, various matters of a general nature have to be frequently borne in mind, and the intelligent and judicious employment of non-medicinal agents is in many instances the most essential part of treatment. It is impossible to discuss this part of the subject at any length here, but as illustrations of general points in treatment may be mentioned the necessity of avoiding various causes of mental disturbance; attending to and regulating hygienic conditions, the immediate surroundings in mental cases, diet and digestive functions, and the amount and kind of rest and exercise; checking injurious habits, such as over-indulgence in tea or coffee, tobacco, or alcohol, or excessive venery; employing baths or other kinds of hydrotherapeutic treatment in suitable cases; and insisting upon change of climate, a sea-voyage, or removal from familiar scenes and surroundings, when required. Among special methods or agents in frequent use in relation to the nervous and

muscular systems come the application of powerful cold or heat to the head or spine in various ways, or of counter-irritation; active or passive movements, and different kinds of physical exercises, or other mechanical methods; massage, either alone, or as part of the "Weir-Mitchell" treatment; suspension of the body; and electricity, which is of the greatest service for a variety of purposes, when carried out in a systematic manner, and on scientific principles, by a competent person. With regard to hypnotism and allied methods, these must be practised with the greatest caution, if at all. Medicinal agents belonging to groups not immediately connected with the nervous system are seldom of any direct service in dealing with its diseases, with the exception of certain *alteratives*, especially iodides and mercurials, which in particular cases are of essential value. In some conditions the free use of *purgatives* or *diuretics* has a beneficial effect upon nervous symptoms or morbid conditions. Venesection or local removal of blood may be called for in certain cases. Symptoms connected with the nervous system are often present in general diseases, such as fevers, or acute inflammations, or in those affecting different organs, as the heart, kidneys, or digestive apparatus, and have then to be dealt with according to the circumstances of each case. Local methods of treatment, such as counter-irritation, are often of great service in the treatment of certain nervous diseases or symptoms. Operative procedures are now frequently carried out in relation to the nervous system, not only in connection with nerves, but also with the nerve-centres under special circumstances.

CHAPTER LXXIV.

ON CERTAIN HEAD-SYMPOTOMS.

I. HEADACHE OR CEPHALALGIA.

Aetiology.—The causes of headache are very numerous, and terms are often prefixed indicating its supposed mode of origin, such as congestive, plethoric, anaemic, organic, nervous or idiopathic, neuralgic, dyspeptic, or bilious. The *pathological conditions* which may give rise to this symptom are:—1. Disturbance in connection with the *cerebral circulation*, including congestion, especially that due to general plethora, increased cardiac action, vaso-motor paralysis of the cerebral vessels (by inducing which many remote causes excite headache), or venous obstruction; deficiency of blood; or an abnormal condition of this fluid, particularly when it is hydramic, imperfectly aerated, or impregnated with various deleterious ingredients. 2. *Injuries or organic diseases of the brain or its membranes*, such as meningitis, cerebritis, abscess, tumour, softening. 3. *Disease of the cranial bones* or their sinuses; or of the structures forming the *scalp*. 4. *Neuralgia*, affecting the nerves either within or outside the skull. The chief *remote causes* which may excite headache, by giving rise to certain of the conditions mentioned above, include all those which induce general plethora or anaemia; cardiac or pulmonary diseases, or severe fits of coughing; affections of the stomach, bowels, and liver; renal and

cutaneous diseases; fevers and acute inflammations; ague or mere malarial exposure; gout and rheumatism; uterine disorders; hysteria; various causes which exhaust or depress the nervous and vital energy, such as sedentary habits, deficient ventilation, over-work in confined rooms, undue mental exertion, depressing emotions, exposure to the hot sun, particularly when fatigued, loss of sleep, over-lactation, venereal excesses and masturbation, and abuse of coffee, tea, alcohol, tobacco, opium and various other drugs which affect the brain. Some individuals are much more subject to headache than others, and especially delicate females of a nervous temperament.

Characters.—The points concerning which it may be necessary to enquire with reference to headache are:—*a.* Its mode of onset; and if it is brought on by any obvious cause. *b.* Whether it is constant, or only felt at intervals. *c.* Its exact situation, whether general, unilateral, frontal, occipital, over the vertex, or localized to a particular spot; and also if it seems to be superficial or deep. *d.* Its characters, the chief varieties being heavy, dull, aching; throbbing; shooting or darting; boring; oppressive; accompanied with a sense of fulness, as if the head were going to burst; or with a feeling of great heat. *e.* Its intensity, and if this is variable or not. *f.* The effects of movements and change of posture, especially of moving or hanging down the head; of muscular exertion; of coughing; of light or sound; of firm pressure over the whole head or any part of it; of taking food or stimulants: or of pressure on the carotid vessels. *g.* If it is accompanied with soreness and tenderness, either over the scalp generally, or over any particular spot.

II. VERTIGO—GIDDINESS—MENIÈRE'S DISEASE.

General Description.—There are two distinct forms of giddiness, so far as the sensations of the patient are concerned. In the one the feeling is that of confusion and instability, or of motion of the body, and as if it were impelled in different directions, accompanied with a tendency to fall and unsteadiness of gait; in the other extraneous objects appear to move and to assume abnormal positions; both may, however, be combined in the same case. The sensation is often described as “dizziness” or “swimmings.” It varies much in intensity, from an uncomfortable feeling of oscillation, to a condition in which the patient reels or staggers and has to grasp some object to prevent him from falling, or in which he actually falls. The feeling may be momentary, constant, or paroxysmal. In many cases it is only or chiefly felt on movement or in certain positions, especially on bending the head downwards. It may be worse in the sitting, standing, or recumbent posture in different cases; while closing the eyes, or staring fixedly for a time at an object, has often a marked influence on vertigo, either aggravating or relieving the sensation. Occasionally an attack comes on during sleep, awakening the patient. Commonly other head-symptoms are present; as well as disturbances of the special senses.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Modern experimental researches and clinical observations have shown that vertigo is not such a simple phenomenon as was formerly supposed. The normal equilibrium of the body is maintained by a somewhat complicated mechanism, consisting of (1) an afferent or sensory apparatus, tactile, visual, and auditory; which conducts impressions to (2) a co-ordinating

centre, believed to be the cerebellum ; and this governs (3) the motor apparatus, efferent impulses being transmitted to the muscles, especially those of the head, neck, and spine. Any portion of this mechanism may be deranged, so as to lead to vertigo, the power of adjustment being disturbed. The term should, strictly speaking, be confined to the sensation which is felt, and should not include the movements which may be associated with it. It has been defined as the "consciousness of disturbed locomotor co-ordination—a rudimentary disorder of co-ordination of locomotive movements" (Hughlings Jackson).

The causes of vertigo are very numerous, and most of them act through the circulation, by influencing the quantity or quality of the blood. In many cases the central circulation is affected. Some causes act in a reflex manner. They may be divided into *centric* and *eccentric*, and among the most important are injury to, or organic disease of the brain or its membranes; degenerative changes in the cerebral vessels or arterio-sclerosis; certain functional nervous disorders, as epilepsy and migraine; certain movements, such as swinging or waltzing, or the movements of a ship at sea; febrile conditions; exposure to paludal and other emanations; tobacco-smoking; abuse of alcohol or narcotics, as well as excess of certain drugs, such as quinine, salicine, or salicylic acid; renal disease; gout; suppression of chronic cutaneous diseases, haemorrhages, or discharges; anaemia; nervous exhaustion and depression from excessive mental and bodily work, especially if combined with close confinement, anxiety and worry, excitement, and poor or irregular living; digestive derangements; organic or functional diseases of the heart affecting the circulation, especially a weak or fatty heart and aortic regurgitation; disease of nerve-trunks or of the spinal cord, interfering with conduction from the periphery to the brain; and disorders of the special senses. With regard to the *special senses*, these have an important causative relation to giddiness. *Auditory vertigo* will be separately discussed. With reference to *vision*, vertigo may be associated with strabismus, nystagmus, the effect of a sudden strong light, disorders of sight or accommodation, or actual disease of the eye. The *tactile apparatus* may also be diseased; or the nerve-trunks or spinal cord may be so affected that they do not conduct impressions properly. Giddiness has, moreover, been attributed to unpleasant and powerful *odours*. The disorders of the special senses are supposed to cause vertigo by giving to the co-ordinating centre either no information at all, or wrong information. Ferrier states that loss or perversion of visual or tactile sensations may be compensated for, if the two remaining sensory processes continue intact, but nothing compensates for entire loss of labyrinthine impressions.

Varieties.—Numerous varieties of vertigo have been named, and different classifications have been made by different writers, mainly founded on an aetiological basis. It will only be practicable to offer here some further remarks about the gastric form; and to describe auditory vertigo.

Gastric vertigo is described as occurring either in severe acute paroxysms, coming on quite suddenly, being often due to an undigested meal, and sometimes assuming a grave character, accompanied almost with loss of consciousness; or as a milder chronic complaint, either constant or occurring in frequent attacks. Dyspeptic symptoms are not prominent in most of these cases. The vertigo is of both kinds, but

consists chiefly of apparent movement of external objects. The chronic form is rendered worse by fasting, and is often relieved by a moderate meal or by a little stimulant, as well as by shutting the eyes, or gazing fixedly at some object. Gastric vertigo is often associated with slight dyspeptic complaints, but there may be well-marked organic disease. It is not uncommonly accompanied with various other symptoms; and an attack may be brought on by very slight causes, or without any obvious reason. In many instances relief is afforded by the recumbent posture.

Auditory or Aural Vertigo—Menière's disease.—The relation of the semi-circular canals to equilibration has been proved to be of great importance; and it has been shown that definite locomotive disturbance follows injury to each canal. The sensory impressions produced in these canals are associated with varying tension of the endolymph, which affects the vestibular branch of the auditory nerve. This nerve is closely related with the pneumogastric at its origin in the medulla oblongata; and filaments also pass from the inferior cervical ganglion along the vertebral artery, from which the labyrinth receives its blood-supply. Hence the frequent association of vertigo with disorders of the stomach, heart, and other organs.

Some of the causes of vertigo already mentioned produce their effects partly by influencing the labyrinthine tension. This may be modified by changes in the position of the head; variations of tension in the labyrinthine vessels; differences of pressure in the tympanic cavity; or actual disease of the ear. Certain cases in which vertigo is associated with perversion or abeyance of the labyrinthine function are grouped under the term *Menière's disease*; and, according to the strict definition of this class of cases, there is always a simultaneous affection of the semi-circular canal and cochlea, as indicated by deafness, tinnitus aurium, and vertigo. There is deafness in nearly all cases of Menière's disease, due to the internal ear being involved, and it is found that hearing through the bones of the skull is deficient or absent, as well as conduction of sound through the air; thus a tuning-fork placed on the teeth is not heard in the affected ear, and this test is a diagnostic point for disease of the internal ear. Auditory vertigo may be induced by syringing the ears, especially when the membrana tympani is perforated. It may also be caused by disease of the labyrinth itself; or by conditions of other parts of the ear which affect this portion of the apparatus indirectly, such as accumulation of wax or a foreign body in the auditory meatus, tympanic disease, obstruction of the Eustachian tube, or spasm or paralysis of the small muscles. The labyrinthine disease may be either irritative or destructive, and the effects as regards the tendency to movement on the part of the patient will be exactly opposite in the two classes of cases. To account for the attacks of auditory vertigo Dr. Gowers is of opinion that labyrinthine disease brings the centre for equilibration into a state of instability, and that some irritation determines a sudden derangement.

Menière's disease is characterized by attacks of giddiness, associated with noises in the ear and deafness. The attack begins with a loud noise in one ear, or an exaggeration of habitual tinnitus, variable in its character. The feeling of giddiness quickly follows, and it may be almost or quite simultaneous. It is usually very marked and accompanied with a tendency to certain movements, or such movements actually take place; sometimes the patient suddenly falls, or is thrown more or less violently to the ground, generally either forwards or to one

side, and in most cases he falls towards the same side as that on which the deafness is felt. In rare instances there is loss of consciousness, or there may be more or less mental obscurity, but in the great majority of cases the mind is unaffected. Frequently nausea or vomiting and faintness occur, the face being pale, and the skin cold and clammy. In some instances oscillatory movements of the eyes are observed. The attack gradually passes off, but vomiting and giddiness may persist for several hours or days, brought on or aggravated by rising from the recumbent posture. More or less deafness and tinnitus are often persistent; and there may be a feeling of constant vertigo, easily increased by digestive disorders. In severe cases the attacks are liable to become more and more frequent, and ultimately permanent distressing vertigo is established, with paroxysmal exacerbations. Even in such cases, however, ultimate recovery may take place, either when complete deafness supervenes, or from the effects of appropriate treatment. On the other hand, it is said that death has occurred, no cause having been found except disease of the semi-circular canals. Menière's disease has to be particularly diagnosed from *petit mal*, or from epilepsy beginning with auditory vertigo.

III.- TREATMENT OF HEADACHE AND VERTIGO.

In order to relieve either of the head-symptoms just considered, a point of primary and essential importance is to find out its *cause* or *causes*, against which treatment has in most cases to be directed, and must be varied accordingly. In persons subject to headache or vertigo, attention to, and modification of their diet, occupation, habits, and mode of life is frequently imperative. Any constitutional disease, such as syphilis or gout, must be treated accordingly. The various organs of the body must also be looked to, particularly the special senses, digestive apparatus, vascular system, and kidneys. In many cases a course of *vegetable* or *mineral tonics* is highly serviceable; and arsenic proves very beneficial sometimes, as well as quinine in full doses. When headache is merely temporary, associated with depressed nervous energy, some *stimulant* will often relieve it, such as a little weak brandy and water, aromatic spirit of ammonia or spirit of chloroform, or a cup of strong coffee. Among *local* remedies which may be useful under various circumstances may be mentioned the use of cold, warm, or anodyne applications to the head; cold or warm affusion; sustained pressure around the head; the application of sinapisms or blisters to the nape of the neck or to some other part; and local removal of blood. Attention to posture may also be of much importance in relieving headache or giddiness. In *Menière's disease* the ears should always be carefully examined, and treated so far as this is practicable. The application of blisters or other irritants behind the ears may be useful. The chief medicines recommended are sulphate of quinine in doses increasing from gr. ij to x three times a day; bromide of potassium; and salicylate of sodium. In some forms of vertigo, especially where there is arterial tension with degenerated arteries, small doses of nitro-glycerine have proved useful.

CHAPTER LXXV.

DISORDERS OF CONSCIOUSNESS.

CONSCIOUSNESS may be more or less exalted, the mental faculties being unusually keen and active; impaired in various degrees to absolute insensibility; or perverted in different ways. It is impossible to discuss in this work all the phenomena which may result from these disorders, but some of the most striking will now be considered.

I. DELIRIUM.

This symptom implies an acute and temporary disorder of the mental faculties, which generally reveals itself in the language or actions of the patient. It varies in degree, from slight wandering and incoherence, to the most complete and thorough derangement of the mental faculties. Frequently the patient has one or more fixed delusions. When the delirium is but slight, the patient can often be roused temporarily, so as to become tolerably coherent. It may be constant, but commonly tends to be worse by night, or may only come on at this time. In character the delirium may be mild and quiet; more or less wild and violent, the patient shouting furiously, or attempting to get out of bed, or to injure himself or others; talkative and cheerful; surly; suspicious; or low and muttering, when it is often attended with picking at the bed-clothes or *carphology*, and floccitation. In many cases delirium is associated with more or less stupor.

Aëtiology.—Delirium may arise either from excitement or depression of the cerebral functions, being accordingly either *active* or *passive*. The grey matter covering the cerebral hemispheres is specially affected when this symptom occurs. The causes of delirium are:—1. *Organic diseases* of the brain or its membranes, especially meningitis. 2. *Reflex disturbance* in connection with remote organs, such as the stomach, bowels, or uterus, particularly if attended with severe pain. 3. A poisoned condition of the *blood*, as in delirium tremens; acute febrile and inflammatory diseases; imperfect aeration of the blood; poisoning by belladonna and other substances. 4. *Nervous exhaustion*, as in delirium tremens partly; after excessive venery; or from undue mental exertion. 5. *Acute mania*. Some individuals are much more liable to delirium than others, particularly children and nervous persons.

Treatment.—In the treatment of delirium, if it is of the active kind, and attended with much vascular excitement, the measures which may be needed are to shave the head; to apply cold assiduously; to use cold affusion; or to remove blood. In other cases the aim of treatment should be to endeavour to procure sleep, by means of some more or less powerful *hypnotic*. Opium, sometimes usefully combined with tartarated antimony or some stimulant; morphine subcutaneously; hydrate of chloral; or full doses of bromide of potassium, often prove most serviceable. When delirium is of the low type, it is commonly an indication for the free use of *stimulants*. Warm affusion over the head is

frequently of much value in these cases. An important object to be always borne in mind is the removal from the system of any deleterious materials which may be causing delirium. Of course due precautions must be taken, when necessary, to prevent the patient from injuring himself or others. All external sources of disturbance must be removed, and the patient kept as quiet as possible. Under certain circumstances an *anesthetic* has to be used temporarily.

II. INSENSIBILITY—STUPOR—COMA.

These terms imply various degrees of suspension of consciousness, depending immediately upon some condition of the brain, complete coma being attended with absolute loss of sensation and perception, of the power of expression, and of voluntary motion; in short, with total abolition of all the ordinary cerebral functions. In investigating this symptom it is important to take into consideration :—1. Its mode of onset, whether sudden or gradual, and if it is due to any obvious cause. 2. Its degree, noting whether any signs of sensibility can be elicited, as by touching the conjunctiva; the condition and reaction of the pupils to light; and also whether the patient can be roused temporarily or permanently. 3. Whether the insensibility is transitory or persistent.

Aetiology.—Pathologically loss of consciousness may result from injury to, or compression of the brain-substance; from extreme cerebral congestion or anaemia; or from the circulation through the brain of poisoned blood, or of blood which is inadequate to maintain its functions. The causes of insensibility are very numerous, and it will be expedient to give a complete list of them here, it being borne in mind, however, that coma implies loss of consciousness directly due to some cerebral disorder, and must be distinguished from asphyxia, syncope, and shock. They may be arranged thus :—1. *Local injury* to the head and its consequences, such as cerebral concussion; fracture of the skull; or compression of the brain. 2. *General shock to the system*, as from injury; rupture of an internal organ; or intense mental emotion. 3. Certain *functional nervous disorders*, namely, epilepsy, hysteria, convulsions. 4. *Morbid conditions of the brain or its membranes*, especially marked congestion; haemorrhage; effusion in connection with the membranes or ventricles; cerebritis and abscess; embolism or thrombosis; chronic softening; and some cases of tumour. 5. *Blood-poisoning* from morbid conditions within the system, as uræmia, diabetes, certain cases of jaundice, and low fevers. 6. *Introduction of poisons from without*, especially alcohol, opium and other narcotics, or prussic acid; and also the *inhalation* of certain gases and vapours, such as carbonic oxide or anhydride, hydric sulphide, chloroform, or ether. 7. *Syncope* from any cause. 8. Conditions inducing *asphyxia*. 9. As special forms of unconsciousness may be mentioned that which follows prolonged *exposure to cold*; *sun-stroke*; a *lightning-stroke*; or *starvation*. 10. It must not be forgotten that insensibility is a favourite form of *malingering*.

It will be convenient in this connection to make a few observations with regard to the term *apoplexy*. Originally this word merely implied an attack of sudden coma without convulsions, corresponding to what is now called an *apoplectic seizure, fit, or stroke*; such a seizure, however, was found to be most commonly due to cerebral haemorrhage, and hence apoplexy came to be employed as indicative of this particular pathologi-

cal condition. Subsequently the meaning of the word was extended so as to denote haemorrhage into any organ, for example, *pulmonary apoplexy*. Strictly this use of the term is quite incorrect, and it is highly important to bear in mind that apoplexy and cerebral haemorrhage are not synonymous expressions, for the former may be due to other causes, and the latter does not always give rise to an apoplectic seizure. The comatose state characteristic of apoplexy is usually accompanied by other phenomena, such as an alteration in the colour of the face; slow, laboured, or stertorous breathing; abnormal states of the pupils; changes in the pulse; or paralysis. These are extremely variable and inconstant, however, and therefore cannot properly enter into its clinical definition.

The ordinary causes of an apoplectic seizure are:—1. *Cerebral congestion*—*Congestive apoplexy*. 2. *Cerebral or meningeal hemorrhage*—*Sanguineous apoplexy*. 3. *Sudden anaemia of the brain*, due to embolism or thrombosis of a main vessel; cardiac failure, especially from fatty disease; or probably vaso-motor disturbance, leading to spasmoid contraction of the cerebral arteries. Rarely an apoplectiform attack is associated with: 4. *Uraemia* and other forms of *blood-poisoning*. 5. *Sun-stroke*. 6. *Organic affections of the brain or its membranes*, such as meningitis, abscess, chronic softening, tumours. 7. It is said, sudden *serous effusion into the ventricles*—*Serous apoplexy*. The last-mentioned cause is, however, very doubtful, and the cases in which it is supposed to have occurred were probably those either of uræmic poisoning or of cerebral atrophy, though it must be added that some authorities believe that uræmia may lead to cerebral symptoms by causing rapid effusion of serum. 8. In extremely rare instances a fatal apoplectic attack has occurred where no morbid condition whatever could be detected at the *post-mortem* examination—*Simple apoplexy*. The immediate condition of the brain upon which an apoplectic seizure depends is a matter of dispute. Probably it may be due to a want of proper supply of arterial blood, whether the result of interference with its entrance, of venous engorgement, or of a poisoned condition of the blood; of compression or actual destruction of the nerve-elements of the brain; or of shock.

Treatment.—The measures to be adopted when a person is insensible differ so materially, according to the cause of this condition, that no uniform plan of treatment can be laid down. A few general hints may, however, be given regarding the management of the comatose state. The patient should be placed comfortably in the recumbent posture, with the head a little raised, all articles of clothing about the neck and chest being loosened, and abundance of fresh air admitted. If it is known or suspected that the coma is due to poison, or even if there is a reasonable doubt as to the cause of this condition, there ought to be no hesitation about using the stomach-pump, as this instrument does no harm if properly employed, and may prove most serviceable. If the insensibility depends upon blood-poisoning, as from uræmia, means for promoting elimination of the deleterious materials, particularly by acting upon the skin, are highly valuable. In cases due to an obvious cerebral lesion it is well not to interfere too actively at the outset. The chief measures which it may be necessary to have recourse to, in order to rouse the patient, are shaking and calling loudly; dashing cold water over the face and chest, or cold affusion; the application of sinapisms to the nape of the neck, and to various other parts of the body; the use of elec-

tricity; the administration of *stimulants*, especially by enemata; and artificial respiration. In certain cases it may be requisite to remove blood locally or by venesection. It is important in cases of prolonged unconsciousness to see that the limbs are kept warm; that the bladder and bowels are properly evacuated; and that the system is maintained by adequate nourishment, which may be administered by enemata.

CHAPTER LXXVI.

DISORDERS AFFECTING SLEEP.

SLEEP is a rest of the brain and subordinate nerve-centres, and the condition has been attributed to anaemia and to congestion of the cerebral circulation respectively, but the facts are in favour of normal sleep being associated with the former state.

The disorders in connection with sleep which may be met with are chiefly of three kinds, namely :—1. *Somnolence* or undue sleepiness. 2. *Insomnia* or sleeplessness; or where the sleep is restless and disturbed. 3. *Somnambulism* and *somniloquism*, or sleep-walking and sleep-talking, with allied states. Each of these requires brief consideration.

1. **SOMNOLENCE.**—This implies either that there is an increased disposition to sleep; or a condition of profound sleep, which may last for considerable periods, and from which it is very difficult or even impossible to rouse the individual, this condition culminating in a state of *trance*. Abnormal sleepiness or drowsiness is mainly observed under the following circumstances :—*a.* In certain subjects who are naturally of a *lethargic temperament*, and who will fall asleep at any time if allowed to remain quiet. *b.* As a result of the effects of considerable *external heat* or *cold* upon the general system. *c.* In consequence of *over-eating*, and in cases of *dyspepsia*. *d.* From *blood-poisoning*, in connection with renal disease; the advanced stage of fevers; some cases of jaundice; indulgence in excess of alcohol; or the introduction of narcotizing agents into the system. *e.* Owing to *imperfect aeration of the blood*, as, for instance, from being in over-crowded and badly ventilated rooms; or as the result of diseases interfering with the respiratory process. *f.* In connection either with a *plethoric* or an *anaemic* state of the system. *g.* From *imperfect nutrition of the brain-substance*, such as that due to disease of its vessels, when the drowsy condition may be premonitory of apoplexy. *h.* In some cases of *disease of the brain or its membranes*. *i.* As the result of *starvation*.

Remarkable cases of prolonged sleep have been occasionally observed, having no evident cause. Others are associated with hysteria, or with marked anaemia. Some individuals are able, after a long period of mental labour with deficient sleep, to indulge in sleep of considerable duration, and thus to make up for that which they have lost.

2. **INSOMNIA.**—This is often a serious condition, and one which gives much trouble to the practitioner. It may be that the patient feels no inclination to sleep, or wakes up after a short rest; or that the desire for repose is experienced, and may even be urgent, but there is a dread of going to sleep; or slumber is very restless and much disturbed, perhaps only uneasy dozes of short duration being obtained, from which

the patient wakes up in a state of agitation or terror. Rest is often interfered with in consequence of unpleasant dreams; or it may be prevented by bodily or mental suffering, respiratory or cardiac disorders, cough, or other causes. The effects of prolonged want of sleep are very grave; it is a prominent cause of insanity, while it often gives rise to great distress in cases which come under observation in ordinary practice. In times past forcible prevention of sleep was resorted to as a means of torture. At the same time it may be remarked that under certain circumstances many individuals can do with very little sleep for a considerable period.

The most important conditions with which insomnia may be associated are as follows:—*a. Insanity*, of which sleeplessness is also often a marked premonitory symptom. *b. A state of cerebral excitement or exhaustion*, or of *mental disquietude*, resulting from undue intellectual effort or excessive study, especially if sleep has been neglected; mental anxiety or worry in connection with business or other matters; exciting passions; or other causes. *c. Acute febrile diseases*, particularly at their early stage. *d. Dyspepsia* in a considerable number of cases. *e. Chronic alcoholism* and *delirium tremens*. *f. After taking strong tea or coffee*. *g. Conditions accompanied with great bodily pain*, or other forms of suffering. *h. Some cases of disease of the brain or its membranes*, especially meningitis in its early stage. *i. Certain peculiar affections implicating the nervous system*, such as tetanus or hydrophobia. *j. Disease of the heart*, in which want of sleep is often a serious symptom; and also *disease of the great vessels* occasionally. *k. Abnormal blood-conditions*, such as anaemia in some cases, lithæmia, or sometimes the presence of bile in the blood. *l. Pregnancy*, and the condition following parturition, especially in nervous and excitable women.

3. SOMNAMBULISM—SOMNILOQUISM.—These conditions have been regarded as being due to an incomplete sleep or partial waking, but it is more probable that they are associated with a state of abnormally profound and heavy sleep. In this state dreams exercise an unusual influence, and excite motor acts of various kinds, of which somnambulism is the most remarkable. When an individual is in either of these conditions, he is perfectly unconscious of his actions, knowing nothing about them on waking from sleep, and it is usually difficult to rouse him fully. Somnambulists will go to the most dangerous places, and perform strange and complicated acts; they may also sleep for very prolonged periods. Their general health is often quite satisfactory. These disorders of sleep occasionally assume a periodic character.

Somnambulism and allied states usually commence during youth or at puberty. They generally originate from some definite cause, such as over-loading the stomach, violent mental emotion, or over-study, but once established they may continue independently of any such exciting cause. Occasionally hereditary influence has been traced. Sleeping on soft luxurious beds, and with the head low, may act as predisposing causes of these conditions.

Treatment.—In the management of cases in which any disorder affecting sleep occurs, the first object in treatment must be to endeavour to find out its *cause*, and, if possible, to remove or counteract this. Regulation of the diet, especially of meals taken late in the day, and of the general habits; avoidance of an undue quantity of tea, coffee, alcohol, or even entire abstinence from these articles in some cases: the taking of a proper amount of exercise daily; avoidance of excessive mental labour, excitement, or worry; and attention to the conditions of

the bedroom and bed, will often prove of much service. The apartment must be properly ventilated, and the bed should have a firm mattress and pillows, without too many bed-clothes, the head being well-raised. Then the condition of the blood must be improved, if necessary; and any organ attended to, a diseased condition of which happens to be the cause of disturbed sleep, as well as any special disease with which it is associated. Treatment directed to the alimentary canal, and to the improvement of digestion, is often of the greatest service. In cases of insomnia due to mental conditions, entire cessation from occupation, and a change of air and scene, are frequently of the highest value. Pain or cough, or other special causes which prevent sleep, must be treated by appropriate remedies. The direct measures employed for procuring sleep are the administration of *cerebral sedatives* or *hypnotics*, either internally, by enema or suppository, or by subcutaneous injection, such as opium or morphine, hydrate of chloral, bromides, cannabis indica, hyoscyamus or hyoscine, conium, hop, belladonna or atropine, nepenthe, chlorodyne, paraldehyde, urethan, methylal, hypnone, sulphonal, or chloralamid; the use of *local applications* to the head, for instance, a wet bandage, cold or warm douching, or the ice-bag; hydropathic treatment; and mesmerism, braidism, hypnotism, or similar agencies. In some cases a glass of stout, of wine-negus, or of some spirit-and-water, taken just before going to bed, is decidedly useful for procuring sleep. Moderate smoking may also be helpful. Fixing the eyes steadily upon some point, counting to a hundred, being read to, and various other devices are resorted to with the view of obviating sleeplessness, and they sometimes succeed. The treatment of insomnia in particular diseases, or in those connected with special organs, is discussed in the appropriate chapters.

In cases of somnambulism and similar conditions, it may be desirable to try to break off the habit by waking the patient once or twice during the night. Somnambulists must, however, on no account be suddenly wakened when they are in the act of walking, even apart from their being in dangerous places, as this may cause a fright which may lead to very serious consequences. Bromides are often useful in these cases.

CHAPTER LXXVII.

MOTOR DISORDERS.

A SUMMARY of the various disorders affecting motility has already been given, when indicating the clinical characters of nervous diseases. In the present chapter it is intended mainly to discuss the chief phenomena indicating undue muscular irritability; and the principal forms of paralysis. It must be mentioned, however, that these two classes of phenomena are not uncommonly associated in various degrees and forms in the same case, though they more frequently occur separately. A few remarks will also be offered concerning superficial and deep reflexes.

I. SPASMS—CONVULSIONS—ECLAMPSIA.

Spasms may be defined as involuntary contractions of the muscles, varying widely as regards their intensity and extent, and being either intermittent and interrupted, with intervals of relaxation, the move-

ments being often of a jerky character—*clonic spasms*; or more or less continuous and persistent—*tonic spasms*, these in their extreme form culminating in permanent *rigidity*. If spasms are accompanied with severe pain, they constitute the condition known as *cramp*. The violent and extensive tonic contractions observed in tetanus and strychnine-poisoning are named *tetanic*. There is not, however, any marked line of demarcation between these different forms of motor disorder.

Spasm of muscles may be a local phenomenon, affecting, for instance, those supplied by a particular nerve, or even only a single muscle, and the spasm may then be either clonic or tonic. Thus it may be met with in connection with the elevator of the upper eyelid, causing this part to be persistently drawn up; or occasionally it affects the internal or external rectus of the eye, leading to forms of strabismus. *Nystagmus* has already been mentioned as a symptom due to clonic spasm, or to inco-ordination of the eyeball-muscles. One form of *wry-neck* is also of spasmodic origin. In *histrionic spasm* the face is affected. In *writer's cramp* and allied affections, muscles which are much used and overtaxed become the seat of spasmodic movements when brought into action. Internal muscular organs are also liable to spasm and cramp. Local spasms may sometimes be excited or arrested by pressing certain parts.

The spasmodic movements implied by the term *convulsions* vary considerably in their severity and extent; and also as to the parts of the body which they involve. Thus they may be slight and localized; unilateral; or more or less general. Some writers include under convulsions all forms of motor disorder in which there are unusual involuntary movements, such as fibrillar trembling of muscles, muscular flickerings, various kinds of tremor, and choreic movements. Ordinarily, however, the term implies more or less marked spasmodic movements, and these may be so violent as actually to rupture the muscles. *Eclampsia* is a word which is now often used to characterize all forms of powerful convulsions of a more or less epileptiform type, whatever their cause may be. According to the extent and localization of the convulsions, we are frequently able to refer their origin to some special part of the nervous system, as will be hereafter pointed out. Not uncommonly convulsions are accompanied or followed by partial or complete loss of consciousness. They are of much importance in children, in whom a series of *convulsive fits* are liable to occur from very slight causes—*infantile convulsions*. They are frequently preceded by premonitory indications of nervous disturbance, such as twitchings, grinding of the teeth, restlessness or peevishness, which in children should always be looked upon as warnings. It is unnecessary to describe the distortion of the features, and the varied movements of the limbs and body which may result from convulsive spasms, these being usually a combination of the clonic and tonic varieties, the former predominating. The chief dangers in connection with convulsions arise from implication of the respiratory muscles or glottis, leading to grave interference with breathing; from obstruction to the return of blood from the brain; and from the exhaustion which the extreme violence or frequent repetition of the fits may cause, especially if they prevent sleep for a long period. Serious sequelae may follow as direct consequences of convulsions, such as hemiplegia or local paralysis of the part affected by the disorder; strabismus; loss of sight, smell, or hearing; defect of speech; or impairment of the mental faculties.

Aetiology.—All the forms of motor disorder now under consideration are referable to some kind of irritation, acting upon some portion or other of the nervous system. Convulsions have been immediately attributed to “an abnormal discharge of unstable grey matter” (Hughlings Jackson). They originate in some irritation or *discharging lesion*, either direct or indirect, affecting this grey matter. The main causes may be arranged thus:—
1. *Centric.* a. *Injuries* to the head, especially fracture of the skull, with irritation of the grey matter by spicula of bone. b. Various *organic diseases* of the brain and cord or their membranes, namely, all forms of meningitis, hydrocephalus, cerebral haemorrhage, rupture of an aneurism, embolism, softening, tumour. c. *Idiopathic, dynamic, or essential.* Here the convulsions are independent of any obvious organic mischief, but are supposed to result from some vascular or nutritive disturbance in the brain, as in some cases of epilepsy, hysteria, or the convulsions induced by strong emotions. d. Circulation of *abnormal blood* through the central nervous system, as exemplified by the convulsions which in children sometimes usher in, or occur during the course of acute specific fevers or inflammatory diseases; uræmic convulsions; and those which may be associated with imperfect aëration of the blood, or, it is said, with rheumatic fever, jaundice, syphilis, tuberculosis, and rickets. In the two conditions last-mentioned, however, the nervous system is probably highly susceptible, and convulsive movements may be excited by very slight reflex disturbance.
2. *Eccentric, reflex, or sympathetic.* In this class of cases the convulsions are due to some *reflex irritation*, particularly in connection with dentition; digestive disorders; intestinal worms; or the passage of a gall-stone or a renal calculus. Occasionally they result from direct irritation of some local nerve; the pricking of a pin in the clothes of a child; the application of a blister; or a burn of the skin. *Puerperal* convulsions are either uræmic or reflex in their origin.

The most favourable periods of life for the occurrence of general convulsions, apart from organic disease, are childhood, especially during the period of dentition; puberty; when cutting the wisdom-teeth; and at the change of life. In children the ordinary causes are reflex irritation; the onset of some acute fever or inflammation; tubercular meningitis; or the presence of some chronic constitutional illness. Later in life they are most frequently associated with epilepsy; with organic affections of the nerve-centres; or with uræmia.

Treatment.—In treating spasmodic movements, if they should call for special interference, and especially if they are of the nature of general convulsions, the indications are:—1. To look for any *reflex irritation*, and remove this if possible, particular attention being paid in the case of children to the teeth and alimentary canal, the gums being lanced, or an *aperient* or *emetic* given, if required; at the same time regulating the feeding. It is also well to examine the clothes for any source of irritation. 2. To treat any *disease* or *morbid condition* with which the convulsions may be associated, such as rickets, tuberculosis, epilepsy, central organic disease, or blood-poisoning. 3. To mitigate or check the *spasmodic movements*. During a paroxysm of convulsions the recumbent posture; freedom from every disturbance; relaxation of the clothing about the neck and chest; and a free current of cool fresh air, are needed. It is not advisable to restrain the movements, except in so far as to prevent injury to the patient. Water may be sprinkled over the face and chest. If the convulsions continue, a warm bath containing

mustard; the application of ice to the head; a warm foot-bath; cold or warm affusion; and the application of sinapisms to the nape of the neck, epigastrium, or extremities, are the chief remedial measures which may be ordinarily employed. Some practitioners resort at once to the application of leeches to the temples or back of the neck, or to venesection, especially in the case of robust children; but in most cases this is needless or injurious, and as a rule removal of blood is only indicated when there are signs of serious interference with the respiratory functions. The principal medicinal remedies available are *sedatives* and *antispasmodics*, especially bromides: hyoscyamus in full doses; opium or morphine; hydrate of chloral; chloroform by inhalation; and asafoetida by enema. Of course most of these drugs need due caution in their administration. It is of the greatest importance to endeavour to procure sleep if this is seriously interfered with, particularly should there be much exhaustion. The milder forms of spasm and cramp may often be considerably mitigated by friction, dry heat, judicious restraint, and other local measures. 4. To treat the *consequences* of convulsions. The chief dangers are from suffocation and exhaustion. To obviate the former, removal of blood and artificial respiration are indicated. To prevent or counteract exhaustion, it is extremely important to administer abundant liquid nourishment, especially in the case of weakly or badly fed children, and if it cannot be taken by the mouth, nutrient enemata must be employed. *Alcoholic stimulants* are also most useful in many cases, where there is failure of the heart's action, being sometimes required in considerable quantities, along with *medicinal stimulants*, such as ammonia, ether, camphor, or musk. The administration of food and stimulants often promotes sleep most efficiently in convulsive conditions.

II. MOTOR PARALYSIS OR PALSY—PARESIS.

Motor paralysis is a symptom of the greatest importance in nervous diseases. Some of the main points to be noted with regard to it have already been indicated when discussing the systematic examination of the nervous system, and it is only needful further to remark that particular attention must be paid to its mode of onset, whether sudden or gradual; its exact extent and distribution; its degree; whether it is permanent or temporary, constant or variable, or influenced materially by volition, emotion, or other causes; as well as to its subsequent progress, observing whether the paralysis tends to become worse, to improve, or to invade other muscles; and if any additional phenomena supervene in the affected part, especially involuntary reflex movements, clonic or tonic spasms, rigidity, or permanent flexion of joints. The tendency in many forms of persistent paralysis is towards imperfect nutrition of the tissues from mere want of exercise, as evidenced by softness or flabbiness of the muscles and other structures, wasting and diminution in the circumference of the limb, with dryness and scurfiness of the skin; and to feebleness of the circulation, the local pulse becoming small and weak, the skin pale or bluish and congested, and the temperature lowered, while the affected part is much more influenced by the temperature of the surrounding medium than in health, and oedema supervenes in some instances. Under certain conditions serious trophic lesions occur in paralyzed parts with great rapidity, such as acute bed-sores, as will be hereafter pointed out. Occasionally an extraordinary growth of hair is observed over a paralyzed limb.

Varieties.—There are certain important varieties of paralysis, designated according to its mode of distribution in the body, the chief of which it will now be requisite to consider briefly. They include:—
 1. GENERAL PARALYSIS, which does not necessarily imply that every muscle in the body is affected, but the term is applied to that condition in which both arms and legs are paralyzed, along with more or less of the trunk. 2. HEMIPLEGIA or unilateral paralysis. 3. PARAPLEGIA or paralysis of the lower extremities; the lower part of the trunk, with the bladder and rectum, being usually involved at the same time. 4. DISSEMINATED OR IRREGULAR PARALYSIS. 5. LOCAL, where the palsy is limited to one limb or a part of it; to certain muscles which are supplied by a special nerve, as the facial, or which are associated in their action for a particular function; or even to a single muscle.

1. GENERAL PARALYSIS is met with:—(i.) Rarely in *cerebral diseases*, namely, temporarily in congestion; in haemorrhage into certain parts, as into the pons, both ventricles, or the meninges; and in some cases of tumour, extensive softening, or meningitis. (ii.) In conjunction with *disease or injury of the upper part of the spinal cord*. In this case of course the face is not affected, and the condition has been termed *cervical paraplegia*. Usually both motion and sensation are then involved, and the upper limbs are more affected than the lower. (iii.) In the early stage of *essential paralysis* of children, and allied conditions. (iv.) In extreme cases of *diphtheritic paralysis*. (v.) In certain cases of rapid and almost universal paralysis, of doubtful pathology, but which Dr. Buzzard thinks is dependent upon *syphilis*. (vi.) In extreme *progressive muscular atrophy*. (vii.) In *general paralysis of the insane*. In this disease the paralysis begins in the tongue, as shown by impaired articulation, with tremulous movements of the organ, and a difficulty in its protrusion. Next the muscles of the face quiver on voluntary movement, especially those of the lips; while the pupils are often unequal. Then follows weakness of the limbs, with unsteadiness of gait, the patient stumbling and staggering on turning round suddenly, the ability to perform various ordinary actions being also impaired. When the muscles are put into action they are tremulous. More or less speedily, and usually by interrupted grades, the paralysis extends and increases until the patient becomes utterly helpless, and is unable to swallow, food passing into the larynx; while the pupils are unequally dilated; and urine and faeces escape involuntarily. Automatic and reflex movements also cease. The muscles do not waste much as a rule, and they retain their electric irritability. During the progress of the paralysis twitchings and spasms are common. Mental derangement usually precedes the paralysis; it may assume various types, but in most cases there is a brief period of melancholia, followed by a marked change in character, then incoherence, with delusions as to personal importance and greatness, the patient imagining himself to be extremely strong, wealthy, of high birth, or possessed of wonderful sexual powers. The ultimate condition is one of absolute dementia, the mind becoming a complete wreck.

2. HEMIPLEGIA.—In the majority of cases of one-sided paralysis only the muscles of the arm, leg, lower part of the face, and tongue are involved in various degrees. In some cases there is a difficulty in wrinkling the forehead or closing the eye; or, on the other hand, the upper eyelid may drop slightly. Speech is often affected, but usually only in cases of right hemiplegia. Deglutition is rarely interfered with. The

3rd, 4th, and 6th nerves almost always escape, while the motor branch of the 5th is also usually but little, if at all, affected. The signs of paralysis of the several cranial nerves will be pointed out when they are individually discussed. It may be noticed that they are more liable to be involved if the lesion is situated in the crus cerebri or pons varolii. The reason why the muscles supplied by these nerves escape may be due to the circumstance that the fibres proceeding from the cortex to their nuclei lie outside the track of the lesion, and, therefore, beyond its influence; but the fact has also been attributed by Broadbent and others to the more intimate connection of the nuclei of the nerves which escape with the corresponding nuclei on the opposite side of the medulla and pons, so that they are more influenced by impulses which start from these healthy nuclei, and can, therefore, be acted on by impulses proceeding from the healthy hemisphere. The arm and leg are most affected in hemiplegia, and if the paralysis is complete the limbs on one side are quite helpless, in the recumbent posture the leg tending to rest on its outer side, with the toes everted. If it is partial, but still well-marked, the gait is usually very characteristic. The patient leans towards the sound side, lifting up the opposite shoulder, and while the arm often hangs helplessly, the leg during progression is carried forward by describing a kind of outward swing or sweep, while the toes are directed downwards towards the ground. In less-marked instances the leg merely drags, the toes, however, pointing downwards; while the arm cannot be moved well, and the power of squeezing is diminished. In exceptional cases the leg is affected more than the arm, and the arm recovers first. As regards the muscles of the neck and body, these are as a rule but little affected, and if they are implicated at first, they generally speedily recover their power.

Not uncommonly partial restoration is effected after hemiplegia, which almost always commences in the leg, beginning above and extending downwards, the muscles on the front of the leg being the last to recover power. The arm may remain for a long time, or even permanently disabled; if it improves, recovery takes place from the proximal towards the distal part of the limb, as in the leg. The most complicated movements are the last to return. Generally there is no limitation of the reflex movements of respiration on the affected side; further, the superficial reflexes may be readily excited in some cases, sometimes even more easily than in health, but as a rule they are impaired; while the paralyzed muscles of expression can in some instances be brought into play under the influence of strong emotion. The knee-jerk generally becomes exalted; and ankle-clonus is developed. The muscles do not in the large majority of cases show any tendency to waste, except to such a degree as can be accounted for by mere disuse and inactivity. Moreover, electric irritability is not impaired, and may even be increased at first; after prolonged disuse of the muscles it may become somewhat diminished, but can be speedily restored. Under certain circumstances, however, rapid wasting and loss of contractility occur. The temperature is at the outset generally raised on the paralyzed side, but afterwards falls below the normal, it may be as much as 1° or more. "Late rigidity" or "contracture" not uncommonly sets in in the affected limbs, especially in the arm. It involves the flexors more particularly; is variable in degree; and is at first remittent and capable of being overcome by passive movement, but by degrees becomes permanent and more and more marked, until at last the limb is completely flexed and

rigid. The cause of this "late rigidity" has been much disputed. Probably it is due to descending sclerosis involving the motor tracts of the crus, pons, medulla, and spinal cord. Hughlings Jackson regards the condition as a species of tonic distortion, caused by the cessation of cerebral influence over the muscles which in health the cerebrum chiefly innervates, and consequent unantagonized action of the cerebellar centres, and unimpeded cerebellar influx. Duret is inclined to attribute late rigidity exclusively to reflex irritation, owing to the irritation extending to sensory tracts. Ferrier thinks it is possible that in some cases reflex contracture may be superadded to that due to sclerosis. The condition has also been attributed to a cirrhotic change in the affected muscles; or to the unrestrained action of one set of muscles, their opponents being paralyzed.

Aetiology.—(i.) Hemiplegia is in the large majority of cases a sign of *organic cerebral disease*, the paralysis being on the side opposite to that of the lesion. By far most commonly it results from some lesion affecting the corpus striatum or the neighbouring white substance (the internal capsule) either directly or indirectly, and causing actual destruction, compression, hyperæmia, or anaemia; it may, however, be immediately associated with injury or disease of a certain portion of the cerebral convolutions, or of other parts of the brain, as will be pointed out in a subsequent chapter. The morbid conditions which may thus give rise to hemiplegia are:—*a.* Rarely congestion, it being then merely temporary. *b.* Haemorrhage most commonly. *c.* Embolism or thrombosis of a considerable artery. *d.* Acute cerebritis or softening and abscess. *e.* Chronic softening from any cause. *f.* Cerebral tumour. *g.* Unilateral meningitis. (ii.) In very exceptional instances hemiplegia results from *unilateral disease of the spinal cord*. Of course there is then no facial paralysis; and the tongue is unaffected. (iii.) Occasionally this form of paralysis is observed in connection with certain *functional nervous diseases*, apart from any evident organic lesion, namely, chorea, epilepsy, and hysteria. It may also be associated with pregnancy or parturition.

3. PARAPLEGIA.—This form of paralysis varies much in degree, and comes on either gradually, rapidly, or suddenly. When it is complete, the utter helplessness of the legs, as the patient lies in the recumbent posture, or attempts to stand supported on each side, is very striking; in less advanced cases there is more or less weakness and difficulty in movement, with unsteadiness of gait, dragging of the feet, and stumbling while walking. Reflex movements are usually very easily excited. The condition of electric irritability varies in different cases, according as the motor cells in the anterior cornua of the spinal cord are affected or not. The height to which the paralysis extends up the trunk will depend upon the seat of the lesion in the spinal cord; and when it involves the upper part all the limbs are affected, constituting the condition termed *cervical paraplegia*, which has already been alluded to.

Aetiology.—(i.) Paraplegia is in the large majority of cases the result of *injury to, or disease of, the spinal cord*. Thus it may be due to:—*a.* Fracture or dislocation of the spinal column; or a wound or violent concussion of the cord. *b.* Compression of the cord from without by a tumour. *c.* Caries of the spine and its consequences. *d.* Spinal congestion, when the paralysis is usually partial; or spinal anaemia. *e.* Spinal meningitis. *f.* Acute myelitis. *g.* Chronic softening or sclerosis. *h.* Haemorrhage in connection with the cord. *i.* Morbid growths or

parasites inside the spinal canal. (ii.) Sometimes paraplegia is a purely *junctional disorder*, and the varieties belonging to this category which have been specially recognized are :—*a. Hysterical.* *b. Paraplegia* depending upon *ilea.* *c. Emotional.* *d. Reflex*, in connection especially with uterine affections, or those of the bladder or urethra; but also associated with pregnancy, dentition, worms, or, it is said, exposure to cold and wet. The late Brown-Séquard was of opinion that reflex paralysis is due to anaemia of the cord, produced by reflex spasmotic contraction of the vessels, through vaso-motor influence. *e. Malarial*, as the result of exposure to malaria.

4. DISSEMINATED OR IRREGULAR.—In this form the paralysis is distributed in various parts of the body, for instance, in the arm or leg on opposite sides, or in the limbs on one side, and the face or eye on the other. It either depends upon corresponding irregular distribution of some lesion of the nerve-centres or nerves; or upon disease of a particular portion of these centres, namely, the pons varolii and medulla oblongata, then constituting what is termed *bulbar paralysis*. It is in connection with diseases of this part of the central nervous system that so-called *cross paralysis* is observed, in which the limbs are paralyzed on the side opposite to the disease, and the face on the same side.

5. LOCAL AND SPÉCIAL PARALYSSES.—It is not intended here to describe the numerous varieties of local paralysis which may come under observation in practice, but merely to point out their general causes, and to consider the chief facts relating to paralysis of certain special motor nerves.

Local palsy may be an indication of slight or commencing central disease; but in the majority of cases the cause is *peripheral*, either directly affecting one or more nerves, or certain muscles. This *peripheral* paralysis may be due to :—(i.) Destruction of a nerve from injury. (ii.) Pressure upon it by a tumour, aneurism, inflammatory thickening, or an external foreign body, as in “crutch-paralysis”; or mere temporary compression, as from prolonged sitting, or lying on the arm. (iii.) Changes induced in the nerve itself, probably mostly inflammatory, from neighbouring irritation, such as that set up by necrosed bone or ulceration; exposure to cold; syphilis; rheumatism or gout. (iv.) The effects of certain poisons introduced into the system, especially lead and alcohol; or, it is said, of malarial poison. (v.) Changes in the muscles, either atrophic or degenerative, as in some forms of progressive muscular atrophy. Local paralysis may be a sequela of diphtheria, or more rarely of other febrile affections. It may also result from local embolism. When paralysis is the consequence of disease of a nerve or of its nucleus of origin, it is limited to the muscles supplied by that particular nerve; tends speedily to become complete; and is very liable to be followed by rapid wasting, with loss of electric irritability.

a. Facial paralysis—Bell's palsy.—Paralysis of either facial nerve, and consequently of one side of the face, is the most important local variety that comes under observation in practice, the entire nerve being then usually involved. The signs are as follows:—There is complete absence of expression on the affected side of the face, which appears flattened and smooth, the features being blank and meaningless. The corresponding half of the mouth seems broader than the opposite half, while the angle falls. Sometimes saliva flows from the mouth. The ala of the nose falls in, and consequently the nasal aperture is diminished in size. The healthy side of the face seems to be, or is actually drawn

away, and the angle of the mouth on this side appears to be raised. The eyelids on the paralyzed side are unusually apart, the lower one dropping down, and as they cannot be closed the tears tend to trickle down the cheek, the corresponding nostril is dry, and the constant exposure of the eyeball soon leads to irritation of the conjunctiva, which is liable to be followed by serious injury to the deeper structures. It is, however, on attempting to bring the affected muscles into play that the most evident signs of facial paralysis are observed. The patient cannot smile, weep, wrinkle the forehead, elevate the eyebrow, frown, close the eyelids, knit the brows, or expose the teeth on the paralyzed side. Articulation of labial sounds is impaired, as well as the ability to whistle; while if the patient is directed to blow out the cheeks, the affected one flaps loosely. During mastication the food tends to collect between the cheek and gums, while fluids often run out of the mouth; the power of spitting is also impaired. If the facial nerve is implicated in a certain part of its course, other less obvious signs are said to be observed, dependent upon some of its branches being distributed to the tongue and salivary glands, namely, perversion of taste on the anterior part of one side, and occasionally slight drawing of the tongue towards the same side; and deficient secretion of saliva.

Aetiology.—It is of considerable importance to recognize in what part of its course the facial nerve is implicated, and to determine the cause of the mischief. The causes of facial paralysis may be summarized thus:—
(i.) Organic changes in the pons and medulla, involving the nucleus or root of the nerve. (ii.) Pressure upon the nerve, within the skull, after it has emerged from the brain, especially by various kinds of tumour, or by meningeal exudation or thickening. (iii.) Injury or disease involving the nerve in its course through the temporal bone, chiefly from necrosis of the petrous portion of this bone, or diseases of the ear, or from gunshot injury. (iv.) Causes affecting the trunk or branches of the nerve after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen, namely, injury, as from a cut or contusion; pressure by parotid and other tumours or enlarged glands; direct exposure of the side of the face to a cold draught of air, as in travelling by train with the window open; general exposure to cold and wet; gout, rheumatism, or syphilis; or, it is said, malarial influence.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis of the origin of facial paralysis rests on:—
1. The history of the case, as revealing some of the causes just enumerated; and also the mode of onset of the paralysis, whether sudden or gradual. 2. The accompanying symptoms. Thus, when the paralysis is due to cerebral mischief, there are generally evident signs of this lesion, such as hemiplegia and mental disturbance; if there is some intra-cranial pressure outside the brain, headache and other local symptoms are commonly complained of, while other cranial nerves are frequently involved, and sometimes paralysis of the limbs is observed on the opposite side. If the temporal bone is diseased, deafness and otorrhœa are usually present. If the nerve is implicated outside the skull, some cause of pressure may be obvious; there may be no symptoms whatever except the paralysis; or the sensory nerves of the face are sometimes affected as well, in the direction of neuralgia or anaesthesia. 3. The extent of the nerve involved. When facial paralysis arises from cerebral causes situated higher up than the nucleus of the nerve, it is only the lower part of the face which is in most cases prominently affected, the muscles of the eyelids and forehead either acting normally, or being only slightly

weakened. In all the other forms the whole side of the face is paralyzed.

4. The *degree of electric irritability*. In cerebral paralysis electric irritability is retained, unless the disease lies at the origin of the nerve from its nucleus; in all other forms it is impaired or lost temporarily or permanently to both faradic and galvanic currents, whilst the muscles react too rapidly to a slowly interrupted constant current, but not to the faradic.

5. The *progress of the case*; and the *effects of treatment*. For instance, when due to tumour, injury, or bone disease, the paralysis is generally persistent; when originated by cold, rheumatism, or syphilis, it may often be cured by appropriate treatment.

In very exceptional instances *double facial paralysis* is observed, but it is difficult to recognize. It may be due to centric disease, especially haemorrhage into the pons; or, in rare cases, to bilateral disease of the nerves from exposure to cold, rheumatism, or syphilis.

b. **Paralysis in connection with the eye.**—The nerves to be considered here are the *third, fourth, and sixth*. When either of these nerves is involved, this is indicated by some variety of strabismus, with double vision, the relative position of the images seen by the two eyes varying in each case. Complete paralysis of the *third* nerve is characterized by ptosis or dropping of the upper eyelid, with inability to raise it, though an attempt to overcome the drooping is made by contraction of the frontalis muscle; permanent external strabismus; dilatation and immobility of the pupil, which is usually directed a little downwards; and a difficulty in adapting the eye to vision at different distances, owing to paralysis of the ciliary muscle. The only movement possible is outwards and downwards, and at the end of the downward movement there is a rotation of the eye-ball around its antero-posterior axis inwards, due to the action of the superior oblique. The different branches of the nerve may be attacked singly. In some cases only ptosis is observed, when the paralysis is peripheral in its origin. The cause may be centric disease; pressure upon the nerve in its course; exposure to cold; or rheumatism. When the *fourth* nerve is paralyzed, the superior oblique muscle cannot act. This is shown by upward strabismus; displacement of the false image downwards; and when the eye-ball is depressed, the pupil is seen to move in a curved line directed downwards and towards the opposite side, the false image being tilted towards this side, when the pupil is below the horizontal line. Paralysis of the *fourth* nerve is difficult to recognize, but it is of importance, as it is very liable to be associated with headache and giddiness. Paralysis of the *sixth* nerve is evidenced by persistent internal strabismus; and displacement of the false image towards the side opposite to the paralysis. Permanent paralysis of muscles is followed by contraction of the opposing non-paralyzed muscle or muscles, exaggerating the deviation. These forms of paralysis are generally associated with some pressure in the course of the several nerves, especially by a tumour or meningeal exudation. Sometimes all the nerves of the eye are simultaneously affected. Ocular paralysis is often observed in locomotor ataxy, syphilitic disease, and after diphtheria. There are also certain peculiar cases described by Mr. Hutchinson under the terms *ophthalmoplegia interna* and *externa*, in the former there being progressive and more or less symmetrical paralysis of the internal muscles of the eyes; in the latter, progressive and more or less symmetrical paralysis of the muscles which move the eye-balls and raise the eyelids. Besides this there may be paralysis of the parallel movements of both eyes, either upwards, downwards, or

to the right or left, due to lesion of the centre governing these movements.

c. **Paralysis of the tongue.**—As a rule unilateral paralysis of the tongue, dependent upon implication of the *hypoglossal* nerve, is a part of hemiplegia. The signs are a widening of the tongue on the affected side; difficulty in its movements and protrusion; deviation of the organ to the sound side when in the mouth, to the paralyzed side when protruded; and impaired articulation. The entire tongue may be paralyzed, so that it cannot be put out or even moved, rendering articulation impossible, and deglutition very difficult. Such bilateral paralysis is a symptom of glosso-labial paralysis.

d. **Paralysis of the pharynx** is mainly indicated by great difficulty or impossibility of swallowing; and more or less thickness of speech, which assumes a guttural quality, or may be quite unintelligible. It usually results either from some centric disease, affecting the nuclei of the nerves supplying the pharynx, as in glosso-pharyngeal paralysis; or as a sequela of diphtheria. Other parts are also generally implicated, either simultaneously or in succession.

e. **Paralysis of the inferior maxillary nerve** is evidenced by impaired power of mastication on the affected side, and certain derangements of the muscular movements concerned in this act. When the jaws are firmly closed, the temporal and masseter muscles on the paralyzed side remain flaccid, and do not harden. On moving the lower jaw forwards or backwards it assumes an oblique position, in the former case the inclination being towards the paralyzed side, especially noticeable when the patient opens his mouth widely; in the latter case towards the unaffected side. Usually motor paralysis of this branch of the fifth nerve is accompanied with impairment of sensation in the face; and the other branches are in most cases involved. The condition generally depends upon some local disease.

Treatment.—The objects to be aimed at in treating motor paralysis of any part are to restore the muscles to their normal activity as speedily as possible, if this is practicable; and to counteract the tendency to the atrophic and other changes to which the structures are liable. Of course the measures to be adopted must first of all have reference to the *cause* of the paralysis, and by getting rid of this, restoration is often rapidly and completely effected. As illustrations may be mentioned the use of iodide of potassium in the treatment of paralysis due to syphilitic disease or lead-poisoning. In many forms of paralysis *time* is a most important element in treatment, and much harm may be done in not a few instances by interfering too actively or too soon. It is requisite to see that a paralyzed part is properly covered with warm clothing; that it is kept clean; and that it is not unduly pressed upon. The chief local measures employed to restore power to the muscles are systematic passive motion of joints, which may be combined with efforts at voluntary active movements; various baths and douches, either hot or cold; friction, either with the hand alone, with flesh-brushes or gloves, or with some stimulant liniment; shampooing or massage; and electricity, which may also be beneficially combined with voluntary attempts to move the affected muscles.

The employment of *electricity* in the treatment of paralysis demands special notice, and it will be convenient here to give a brief summary of the main facts pertaining to this subject. Much discrimination and caution are needed in resorting to this therapeutic agent, as it is very

powerful for evil as well as for good. The beneficial results which electricity is capable of effecting in paralysis are as follows :—1. Restoration of the functions of a muscle or nerve when its activity is impaired, and thus possibly restoration of voluntary movement. 2. Prevention of wasting of the muscles, and consequent arrest of the progress of the disease. 3. Increase in the vascularity of a part, thus removing coldness, blueness, and other signs of feeble circulation. 4. Improvement in the nutrition of the muscles, nerves, and other structures, should they be atrophied or ill-nourished. 5. Prevention, retardation, or removal of spasmodic contractions and rigidity. 6. Probably the long-continued use of electricity may improve the nutrition of the part of the nerve-centre from which the nerve or nerves which supply the affected muscles originate. The kind of electricity required varies in different cases, but it may be stated generally that for promoting the action of muscles faradization and the interrupted galvanic current are most useful, though franklinic electricity is occasionally more beneficial than either, and in some forms of muscular wasting will evoke a contraction of the muscles when all other methods fail ; that for improving the circulation and nutrition, the continuous galvanic current, or faradization by means of a metallic brush, answers best ; whilst to oppose the excessive action associated with spasmodic movements and rigidity (and this applies to these conditions under all circumstances), a weak constant galvanic current, or very rapidly-interrupted faradization may be applied to the affected muscles ; or in certain conditions of rigidity the use of faradization or interrupted galvanism to the antagonistic muscles is most efficacious.

Some general hints as to the employment of electricity in treating paralysis will now be given. Care must be taken not to frighten the patient at the outset. The current used must not be so strong as to cause pain ; or, on the other hand, so weak as to be useless ; and the application should be brief, so as not to tire the patient or the muscles. It may be repeated twice a day, daily, or every other day, according to circumstances. In employing galvanism, one handle, containing a sponge of sufficient size and well-wetted, must be kept fixed on one spot, such as over the shoulder or in the bend of the elbow in the case of the upper extremity, and the other drawn slowly along the muscles in succession. With faradization the two poles must be kept near together, and it is almost always best to hold both in one hand and draw them along each muscle ; or it may be advisable to place one rheophore over a neutral part of the body (such as the back) and apply the other (which should be pointed and of small surface) over the so-called "motor point" of the muscle, *i.e.*, the spot where the motor nerve supplying the muscle is most accessible. A map of the "motor points" may be found in any modern treatise on Electro-Therapeutics. In treating paralysis of a special nerve, one handle must be placed over the trunk of the nerve, and the other moved about over the muscles or not, according as galvanism or faradization is employed.

A few observations will now be offered on the uses of electricity in the chief varieties of paralysis.

(1.) *Cerebral*.—In cases of sudden cerebral paralysis electricity must on no account be used for some time, even for purposes of diagnosis or prognosis, and the greatest care is necessary in its employment for a long period. Even if the paralysis has been gradual in its onset, caution is needful should there be head-symptoms, such as headache, a sense of weight, or giddiness. Much improvement may be effected in

other cases in the various directions already indicated ; but, so far as the paralysis itself is concerned, the value of electricity will depend on the degree of contractility shown by the muscles on its first application. If this is normal or nearly so, the power of voluntary movement can be but slightly, if at all, increased by its application. If it is much diminished from want of use, much good may be done by reviving the contractility of the muscles, but once this has become normal, no further improvement as regards voluntary motion can be effected ; and it is generally found that in cerebral cases a very few applications effect all the improvement possible.

(2.) *Spinal*.—If the muscles act readily under electricity in cases of complete spinal paralysis, the power of voluntary movement in the limbs cannot be increased by its use, but sometimes the functions of the bladder, rectum, or sexual organs may be much improved by its local application to the anus or perineum. If the paralysis is partial and contractility is impaired, much good may be effected up to the point of restoring the contractility ; electricity must not, however, be employed in acute cases of this kind, but it is of the greatest value in those which have set in slowly. If there is atrophy of the limbs, galvanism is most efficacious ; if none, faradization. Should there be the complete "spinal paralysis" of Marshall Hall, electricity cannot improve the power of movement, and if no sign of contractility is observed after a few applications, it is useless to proceed with it ; if the contractility is merely impaired, much improvement may often be brought about. In cases of infantile paralysis due to spinal disease, the use of the slowly-interrupted galvanic current frequently proves very serviceable for a time when other forms of electricity fail, but as the muscles improve in their action faradization becomes most efficacious.

(3.) *Local*.—Should a nerve be completely destroyed in its course, and electric contractility be quite extinguished, no improvement can be effected by electricity. In some cases, however, the morbid changes in the nerve disappear, but more or less paralysis persists from want of use. Here electricity is of great service, and it will be well in such cases to continue its application for some time, provided any contraction can be excited. In certain cases of local paralysis from lead, cold, and other causes, the use of a slow galvanic current has most effect upon the muscles. Under such circumstances, therefore, this current should be used at first, and a gradual change made to faradization as improvement is perceived.

A few special remarks are needed with reference to the treatment of *facial paralysis* from exposure to cold. The local application of heat and moisture constantly, leeching, and steaming are the measures which are most useful at first ; followed by blistering, friction with stimulating liniments, and the employment of the slow galvanic current. Iodide of potassium, quinine, or strychnine act beneficially in some cases, when given internally.

III. SUPERFICIAL AND DEEP REFLEXES.

The several *superficial reflexes* correspond to certain definite portions of the spinal cord, the stimulus being conducted by the afferent or posterior root of the nerve, traversing the grey matter, and passing out by the afferent or anterior root, thus giving rise to muscular contractions. As reflex actions can be produced which have their respective centres in

almost every part of the cord, their absence, presence, or exaggeration gives important information as to the conditions of particular portions of this nerve-centre, and of the corresponding nerves.

The *tendon-reflexes* have been studied by a large number of observers. Erb, who originally investigated them, regarded them as ordinary reflex phenomena. Westphal attributed them to the immediate contraction of the suddenly-stretched muscles. They can only be evoked in muscles which are in a state of passive tension; and Gowers suggests "that the tension excites, by a reflex influence, a state of extreme irritability of local stimulation." Hence he terms them "myotatic phenomena." They are now generally held to be direct muscular contractions, requiring the existence of a muscular tone, dependent upon the integrity of the reflex arc.

With regard to the *pathological relations* of the tendon-reflexes, it will only be practicable to allude here to the *patellar-reflex* and *ankle-clonus*. The patellar-reflex is almost invariably present in health, and it is stated that it is only absent in about one per cent. of individuals examined. Its persistence "almost always signifies that the nervous arc is not seriously interrupted in that part of the spinal cord which gives origin to the lumbar plexus" (Buzzard). It may be *lost* either from a "fault" in the muscle itself (as in pseudo-hypertrophic paralysis); a lesion of the anterior root of the spinal nerve; atrophy of the large ganglion cells in the anterior horn, as in infantile paralysis or adult spinal paralysis; or a lesion in the sensory tract, as in locomotor ataxy, which is the most important disease in which the knee-reflex is lost, and this may be observed before its more striking symptoms have become developed. There are exceptional cases of locomotor ataxy associated with lateral sclerosis, termed "ataxic paraplegia" by Gowers, in which it persists, and is generally exaggerated. The patellar-reflex is also absent whenever the lumbar portion of the spinal cord is greatly disorganized, as by acute myelitis or softening. Eulenberg has shown that tendon-reflexes are diminished by several anodynes and sedatives, sometimes after a preceding augmentation.

Attention will now be directed to *increase* of deep reflexes, or their development in disease. *Ankle-clonus* cannot be produced in health, and its occurrence is always a morbid sign. Gowers considers the *front-tap contraction* a very delicate test of morbid irritability, and states that it can often be obtained when the ankle-clonus cannot. The *patellar-* or *knee-reflex* is also exaggerated in some forms of disease, a blow that in health would cause only a very slight movement of the foot producing a jerk upwards of several inches; or a much lighter blow than will cause any effect in health may even produce a very decided kick. This may be associated with the development of ankle-clonus, and the exaggeration of these reflexes in anything like a marked form "signifies that from some cause the inhibitory influence of the higher centres is no longer being normally excited" (Buzzard). This writer considers it probable that the restraining influence which is continually and unconsciously exerted over certain spinal reflexes in a state of health is conveyed to the ganglion-cells of the anterior horns by the antero-lateral columns of the cord. It is when these columns are most extensively invaded by sclerosis that the most marked ankle-clonus is obtained, and this sign is considered valuable evidence of sclerosis of the lateral column. It may also follow hemiplegia from cerebral disease; and may be observed to a moderate degree in hysterical paraplegia, as well as in

spastic paraplegia. There seems to be some difference of opinion as to the diagnostic value of exaggerated knee-jerk, and the development of ankle-clonus, and Bastian states that the latter may exist to a well-marked extent when the antero-lateral columns of the cord are pressed upon at a certain level, even though no lateral sclerosis has been developed. The production of deep reflexes in the upper limb needs no special comment. Eulenbergh has found that subcutaneous injection of strychnine increases tendon-reflexes, and may under certain circumstances be used to render the completely absent tendon-reflex temporarily perceptible and graphically demonstrable. The tendon-reflexes are usually increased, and ankle-clonus can be obtained for a few minutes, after an epileptic fit. Persistent exaggeration of the deep reflexes is generally accompanied or followed by "contracture."

CHAPTER LXXVIII.

DISORDERS OF SENSATION.

ALL forms of sensation may be either more or less impaired or lost ; exalted ; or perverted. In the present chapter it is only intended to consider the more important deviations noticed in connection with ordinary sensation.

I. SENSORY PARALYSIS—HYPÆSTHESIA—ANÆSTHESIA.

Sensation may be more or less impaired—*hypæsthesia* ; or completely lost—*anæsthesia*. Generally the abnormal feeling involves the whole thickness of the tissues of the part affected, but may be confined either to the skin or to the muscles. Anæsthesia may be gradually established, sensation becoming more and more impaired ; or it may occur suddenly. When this condition exists, the patient is wholly insensible as regards tactile sensations, and may be pinched, pricked, cut, or injured in any other way without being aware of it. The term *analgesia* is used to denote the loss of painful impressions made on the skin. In hypæsthesia the sense of touch is more or less indistinct, and the patient feels as if a thick layer of some soft and yielding material, such as cotton-wool or flannel, intervened between the skin and anything brought into contact with it. This is especially noticed in connection with the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, when the patient grasps any object or stands. In this condition also, as well as during the development of anæsthesia, various unusual sensations or *paresthesie* are often experienced, such as *numbness*, *formication*, *tingling*, or *pins and needles*. In some cases even of complete anæsthesia to objective impressions, neuralgic pains of a subjective character are complained of in the affected part. It is a curious fact that in exceptional cases, although tactile sensation is lost, the power is retained of distinguishing differences in temperature, or of feeling painful impressions. Occasionally, in connection with marked hypæsthesia, the impression of anything brought into contact with the

affected surface seems to be delayed in its passage to the nerve-centre, so that it may be some seconds before the patient is conscious of it. There is often in this condition great difficulty in distinguishing different sensations from each other. With regard to muscular sensibility, when this is lost there is almost always loss of sensibility of the skin, but in exceptional instances this is unimpaired. In cases of cutaneous anaesthesia reflex irritability may be destroyed, normal, or increased, according to the cause of the loss of sensibility.

The distribution of *sensory paralysis* presents the same variations as in the case of motor paralysis. Thus it may be:—1. **General.** 2. **Unilateral—Hemianæsthesia.** 3. **Bilateral**, but affecting only the legs and the lower part of the body—**Sensory paraplegia.** 4. **Disseminated.** 5. **Local.** The aetiology of the two kinds of paralysis is also very similar, and it will only be necessary to allude briefly to the more frequent varieties of sensory paralysis, but it may be remarked that all forms are not uncommonly associated with functional diseases, especially *hysteria*.

1. **Hemianæsthesia**, when present, is usually the result of some cerebral lesion, but in a large number of cases of hemiplegia from this cause sensation is intact; or it may be impaired at first, but is speedily restored. It usually affects the *whole half* of the body opposite to the cerebral lesion, including the head, trunk, and limbs, and the mucous membranes as well as the skin. The lesion which causes it generally implicates the optic thalamus or the posterior part of the internal capsule. In rare instances hemianæsthesia results from disease of one lateral half of the spinal cord, the loss of sensation being on the side opposite the lesion. *Complete hemianæsthesia* is frequently met with in hysterical cases.

2. **Bilateral anæsthesia**, involving the legs and lower part of the body, is almost invariably associated with paraplegia, and is due to disease of, or injury to, the spinal cord. Sensation is, however, more or less retained in many cases where the power of motion is completely lost.

3. **Local anæsthesia** is generally due to disease of some special nerve, or of its nucleus of origin, its seat varying accordingly. When a particular nerve is paralyzed, if it is a compound one sensation and motion will be equally impaired. One of the best illustrations of paralysis of a purely sensory nerve is that of the *superior maxillary*, or of its continuation, the *infra-orbital*; sensation is then lost in the parts to which this nerve is distributed, and when the patient attempts to drink out of a glass or cup, a very curious feeling is experienced, as if the vessel were broken opposite the middle of the upper lip. Nutrition and secretion are frequently seriously interfered with when sensory nerves are paralyzed.

Treatment.—The general remarks made as to the treatment of paralysis of motion apply equally to that of sensation. Local warmth, friction, and electricity are often useful. The latter must not be resorted to for some time in cases of anaesthesia or hypæsthesia from cerebral causes, and even then only very cautiously; it does not lead to much improvement in most of these cases. Faradization with a brush acts best. Electricity is often very beneficial in various forms of sensory paralysis met with in hysteria, either faradization or franklinic electricity being employed, the latter by directing sparks on to the affected part; charging this part and then drawing sparks from it; or applying a

small charge from a Leyden-phial. If sensibility is lost locally from destruction of a nerve, no benefit can be anticipated from electricity. When motor and sensory paralysis are combined, electrical treatment directed to the former may improve the latter at the same time. Particular care is necessary in cases of sensory paralysis as regards cleanliness, and avoidance of local pressure.

II. HYPERÆSTHESIA—DYSÆSTHESIA.

Hyperæsthesia signifies increased or exalted sensibility, *dysæsthesia* increased sensibility to painful impressions, but they are almost always associated. These deviations from the normal state are usually *local*, but occasionally *unilateral* or *disseminated*. They are of course frequently met with in diseases of the skin and other affections, but as regards nervous diseases, they are generally associated either with hysteria or general nervousness, or with acute inflammation involving the nerve-centres or special nerves. When one leg is paralyzed from spinal disease, its sensibility frequently becomes painfully acute.

III. REFERRED PAINS—TENDER SPOTS.

Recently Head and Mackenzie, especially the former, have developed the views of Ross—that points of cutaneous tenderness are indications of the seat of visceral disease. This may be explained by the anatomical association of different sensory fibres in a given root. The spinal segment with which the root is connected receives, therefore, a most distinct impression by fibres from a definite cutaneous area, and indistinct ones by fibres from the viscera. Should, however, the viscera be diseased, the *referred* pain and the tenderness are in the corresponding cutaneous area. Head has mapped out the whole cutaneous surface of the body in relation to the several viscera.

IV. NEURALGIA.

Neuralgia or nervous pain is a comprehensive term applied to certain painful affections occurring in different parts of the body, the pain appearing to follow the distribution of particular nerves, and having special characters. It will be convenient first to consider the general aetiology, pathology, and clinical features of the complaint; and then to allude briefly to its principal varieties.

Aetiology and Pathology.—In a large proportion of cases neuralgia is distinctly dependent upon some *general* or *constitutional* condition. The causes which may give rise to such a condition are:—1. Exposure to malaria. 2. The presence of certain metallic poisons in the system, as lead, mercury, or copper. 3. Whatever tends to induce anaemia, or general mal-nutrition and debility. 4. Various causes which lead to depression and loss of tone of the nervous system, such as prolonged worry and anxiety; undue mental effort; strong emotion; general concussion of the nervous system, as from a railway collision; hysteria; excessive fatigue; exposure to heat; ennui and luxurious habits; or excessive venery. 5. Degenerative changes associated with the decay of life. 6. Rheumatism, gout, syphilis, or exposure to cold and wet. In the case last-mentioned, however, neuralgia is probably mostly the result of inflammatory and other changes in the nerve itself; or of

pressure by surrounding thickening of fibrous membranes, or by morbid deposits.

An important group of causes of neuralgia are *local* in their action, including:—1. *Injury* to a nerve in some part of its course, as from contusion; wound by a needle; partial section; the lodgment of a foreign body, such as a piece of glass, when the pain may be felt in some distant part. When a nerve is completely cut across, either itself or some other nerve related to it now and then becomes subsequently the seat of neuralgia. 2. *Pressure* upon a nerve, for example, by foreign bodies, such as a bullet; cicatricial thickening or old adhesions; neuro-mata; tumours, aneurisms, or enlarged glands; callus uniting a fractured bone; congested veins; or as the result of prolonged sitting, tight boots, or hanging the arm over a chair. 3. *Irritation* of a nerve by necrosed bone, especially when it passes through a foramen or canal in this condition; by carious teeth; by surrounding inflammation or ulceration; or by direct exposure to a cold draught. Even when neuralgia is local in its origin, its occurrence is greatly influenced by the general state of the system, and Anstie went so far as to affirm, "it is universally the case that the existing condition of the patient at the time of the first onset of the disease is one of debility, either general or special." Among the chief *predisposing causes* of neuralgic affections may be mentioned the female sex; certain periods of life, especially that of sexual development, and about or beyond middle age; hereditary tendency to nervous affections; and a neurotic temperament. An acute attack is predisposed to or intensified by fatigue or any other depressing influence. It may come on quite spontaneously; or be brought about by mental disturbances, pressure, cold, heat, over-exercise, and numerous other causes.

Pathologically neuralgia may be connected with some evident morbid change in the affected nerve or in the nerve-centre, but as a rule no such obvious change can be detected. Probably in most cases the nerve is more or less congested or inflamed. Marked atrophy with degeneration of a nerve has been found in connection with neuralgia from pressure, occasionally so advanced as to render sensation almost extinct. Anstie remarked: "I think it most probable that in *all* cases of neuralgia there is either atrophy, or a tendency to it, in the posterior or sensory root of the painful nerve, or in the central grey matter with which it comes in closest connection."

Symptoms.—*Pain* is the essential symptom of neuralgia. The important characters of this pain are as follows:—1. It is almost invariably unilateral. 2. In recent cases it is distinctly intermittent, coming on in more or less sudden paroxysms, usually at irregular intervals, but occasionally at regular periods, especially in malarial cases: later on it is only more or less remittent. 3. The pain during the paroxysms is generally severe, in some cases most excruciating, being described by such terms as stabbing, piercing, boring, burning, or screwing, at the same time shooting out from a point along some of the branches of the nerve affected, but rarely along all of them: the darts, twinges, or "ties" in some instances come on with the suddenness of an electric shock, giving rise to intolerable agony. The pain may extend to contiguous or even to distant nerves. Frequently strong pressure over the chief joint affords relief; in other cases gentle friction has the same effect; in others, however, there is exquisite tenderness. The paroxysmal pain often ends as abruptly as it commenced, with a sense of ex-

treme relief and comfort. The pain in the intervals is much less severe, and of dull or aching character. In the superficial neuralgias circumscribed points of tenderness are noticed—*points douloureux*, corresponding to the exit of branches of the nerve through bony foramina, or through openings in fibrous membranes, though they appear to the patient to be diffused beyond these spots, in some cases giving the sensation of tolerably extensive contusions. It is not practicable in a treatise like this to indicate the seat of all the tender spots noticed in the different local neuralgias, but a knowledge of the distribution of the nerve affected, and of the points at which its branches become superficial, will enable their situations to be recognized.

There are certain general facts relating to neuralgia to which it is desirable to allude. When the complaint is *local* in its origin, the pain usually sets in more gradually; is more constant; and is less capable of relief. In advanced age neuralgia is commonly very severe and intractable, the points of tenderness being often intensely painful. Gouty neuralgia is also sometimes extremely severe. Once an attack has happened, there is always a liability to its recurrence, and the paroxysms may be repeated at regular periods. An individual may have had neuralgia when young, and then be quite free from it for many years, but be again subject to the complaint at a later period of life. Different nerves may be implicated in different attacks, or even during the same attack.

Some interesting complications are also associated with neuralgia, affecting either sensation or motion; the state of the vessels; or nutrition and secretion. The chief of these which have been noticed include local hyperesthesia, hypesthesia, or paraesthesiae, such as numbness, tingling, or formication; disturbances of the special senses, especially that of sight; spasmodic twitchings, tonic spasms, convulsive movements, or even local paralysis; pallor, followed by redness of the skin, pulsation of the arteries, increase in temperature, and swelling of the affected part, with subcutaneous oedema; hypertrophy or atrophy of the tissues in prolonged cases, or increase of adipose tissue; increased firmness, falling-off, or whitening of the hair; the breaking out of skin-eruptions, such as herpes zoster or acne; increased vascularity of the conjunctiva, conjunctivitis, iritis, and other morbid conditions of the eye; periostitis; swelling or unilateral furring of the tongue; erysipelatoid inflammation of the tissues to which the affected nerve is distributed; impaired gastric secretion; increased flow of saliva or tears; and local increase of perspiration.

Varieties.—Neuralgias are primarily divided into:—I. VISCERAL, including:—1. *Cardiac*. 2. *Hepatalgia*. 3. *Gastric* or *gastralgia*. 4. *Intestinal* or *enteralgia*. 5. *Peri-uterine* and *Ovarian*. 6. *Testicular*. 7. *Renal*. II. SUPERFICIAL, namely—1. *Tic-dououreux*. 2. *Cervico-occipital*. 3. *Cervico-brachial*. 4. *Intercostal*. 5. *Mastodynia* or *Irritable breast*. 6. *Lumbo-abdominal*. 7. *Sciatica*. 8. *Crural*. The visceral group will not be further alluded to, the most important of these affections having been already considered under their respective organs. The names applied to the several forms of *superficial* neuralgia will indicate their respective localities, but a few need special comment.

1. **TIC-DOULOUREUX**—**TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA**—**PROSOPALGIA**.—This is one of the most common forms of neuralgia, the *fifth* or *trigeminal nerve* being involved. The seat of pain may be in any of the three divisions of the nerve. Rarely are all the divisions implicated, and it is the

ophthalmic branch which is most frequently affected, the pain, therefore, being chiefly felt above the orbit and about the temple. Owing to the frequency with which malaria is associated with neuralgia of this division of the fifth nerve, it has been popularly termed "brow-ague." Numerous points of tenderness are described, but the most important are the *supra-orbital* and *parietal*, the latter being situated just above the parietal eminence, and corresponding to the inosculation of several branches of the fifth with occipital branches from the cervical. A variety of this neuralgia is named *clavus hystericus*, in which there is extreme pain, in character as if a nail were being driven into one or more spots, usually corresponding to the supra-orbital or parietal points.

When the superior maxillary division is affected there is tenderness at the point of its emergence from the infra-orbital canal; and when the third division is involved the pain often extends over a large area, occupying the parietal eminence and the temple, the ear, lower jaw, and tongue, the painful points being *inferior dental*, *temporo-massillary*, and *auriculo-temporal*.

2. INTERCOSTAL NEURALGIA.—In this variety the pain is felt along the course of one or more intercostal nerves. Those on the left side, especially from the 6th to the 9th, are most frequently affected. There is a constant pain, mostly corresponding to the point of exit of a lateral cutaneous nerve, and increased by a deep inspiration or cough, or sometimes by moving the arm. Shooting pains are also experienced at intervals, extending from the spine along the intercostal spaces, or from the lateral point backwards and forwards. Three very distinct "*points douloureux*" can generally be detected, namely :—*a. Vertebral*, close to the spine. *b. Lateral*, opposite the lateral cutaneous branch. *c. Sternal or epigastric*, where the anterior cutaneous nerve perforates. This variety of neuralgia is very common in anaemic and chlorotic females. It also frequently precedes herpes zoster, and a very severe and obstinate form is liable to follow this affection in old people. For the diagnosis of the pain of intercostal neuralgia from that of pleurodynia or pleurisy, the condition of the patient; the want of connection of the pain with any excessive or prolonged exercise of the local muscles, of any marked exacerbation from their use, or of relief from rest; its characters, with the definite points of tenderness; and the results of physical examination, are generally quite satisfactory. The appearance of an eruption of herpes is pathognomonic.

3. SCIATICA or HIP-GOUT are the names applied to neuralgia in the course of the branches of the sciatic and other nerves about the hip. Generally the pain is mainly seated in the buttock and posterior and outer part of the thigh, but it may affect various parts of the lower extremity, even down to the leg or foot. There is generally a persistent and deep pain near the tuberosity of the ischium, which is increased paroxysmally, shooting upwards or downwards, either without any cause, or as the consequence of pressure, movement, especially a sudden jerk, or even the act of coughing; and also great tenderness to pressure over the popliteal space. The patient is often obliged to walk very carefully, or may be unable to move at all. Local anomalies of sensation; spasmoid movements or cramps; and partial paralysis are very common in sciatica. Many cases of this affection are exceedingly severe, and will not yield to treatment. The limb may waste from want of use.

The *local causes* which most frequently give rise to sciatica are long-continued sitting; direct exposure of the buttock to a cold draught, as

in using windy privies; and sitting on a cold or damp surface. Not infrequently this complaint is associated with gout or rheumatism.

Treatment.—The general principles applicable to, and the chief remedies employed in the treatment of all forms of superficial neuralgia, will now be briefly considered. 1. Any *local cause* of irritation must be removed. In regard to this point a word of caution is necessary respecting *tie-douloureux*. This complaint is often attributed to decayed teeth, and not infrequently these are extracted one after another without any improvement resulting, for the simple reason that the neuralgia is not dependent upon this cause at all. 2. It is highly important that those who are subject to neuralgia should adopt measures to *prevent* attacks, by attending to diet and hygiene; wearing warm clothing; acting upon the skin by baths; regulating the state of the alimentary canal; and, in short, promoting a condition of good general health in every possible way, while at the same time avoiding every cause which is likely to bring on a paroxysm. 3. Treatment directed to the *general state* of the system, or to some *constitutional diathesis*, is in a large proportion of cases of neuralgia of the utmost consequence. Fatty elements have been found of great benefit in this complaint, when nutrition is impaired, especially cod-liver oil or Devonshire cream. Iron in anaemic subjects; quinine in full doses, especially in malarial neuralgias; arsenic in the form of Fowler's solution; strychnine or *nux vomica*, are among the most valuable remedies for neuralgia. In some instances valerianate and other salts of zinc or nitrate of silver prove serviceable. Phosphorus has been found highly beneficial in many cases. Should the neuralgia be associated with gout, rheumatism, syphilis, or the presence of some metallic poison in the system, treatment appropriate for these several conditions is essential. 4. An important class of remedies employed in the treatment of neuralgia are those which have a direct *sedative* or *anodyne* effect, including mainly opium or morphine; belladonna or atropine; cannabis indica; hydrate of chloral; butyl-chloral; bromides; conium; tincture of aconite; and ammonium chloride in full doses. Other drugs found to be efficacious in different cases are oil of eucalyptus; tincture of gelsemium; nitrite of amyl; nitro-glycerine; tonga; phenazone or phenacetin; and cocaine. These medicines are given by the mouth; some are applied to the affected part in the form of plasters, liniments, ointments, oleates, or tinctures; or, above all, certain of them are introduced by subcutaneous injection, particularly morphine and atropine, which may be administered in combination. They are not merely to be used for the temporary relief of pain, but are in many instances most important agents in bringing about a cure, if employed systematically and regularly every day for such a period as each case may require. In using subcutaneous injections, it is best to begin with a very small dose—gr. $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{6}$ of morphine, increasing it as occasion requires, some cases needing large quantities after a time. As a rule the injection need not be made at the seat of pain, but Austie recommended that this should be done in advanced cases, where there is much hyperesthesia, and where there is reason to believe that much thickening and hypertrophy exist about the nerve. If necessary, the sensibility may be first blunted by the ether spray. Hypodermic injection of morphine or other powerful drugs must only be employed under strict medical supervision, and stopped as soon as possible. The use of hot water in this way sometimes gives relief. Cocaine has been employed subcutaneously; and a 10 to 20 per cent. solution in oil of

cloves, rubbed into the part, is said to give almost immediate relief in cases of supra-orbital neuralgia. Exalgine is one of the most recently-introduced remedies for the relief of neuralgic pain. The use of alcohol demands brief notice. There can be no doubt but that the pain of neuralgia may often be temporarily lulled by the use of alcoholic stimulants, but experience has convinced me that we should hesitate in recommending them, as there is in this complaint a strong tendency on the part of the patient to be taking stimulants at frequent intervals and in increasing quantities, so that the foundation may be laid for confirmed habits of intemperance. It must also be remembered that due caution should be observed in the use of narcotics, lest the patient should become so habituated to them that he cannot do without them. 5. Certain *anodyne local applications* have already been alluded to above, the most useful being liniment or plaster of belladonna or opium; tincture or liniment of aconite; ointment of aconitine, atropine, or veratrine; and a liniment containing oil of eucalyptus. Among other local remedies which may be serviceable are dry heat, or heat with moisture; chloroform liniment; menthol; sinapisms; flying blisters; and light linear cauterization. In obstinate cases blistering and even stronger forms of counter-irritation may be required. Cold is useful in some cases, in the form of ice or evaporating lotions, and I have in more than one instance found much benefit follow the application of the ether-spray over the seat of pain for a few minutes three or four times daily. Massage has proved of great service in neuralgia. Another most valuable local method of treatment is that by electricity. The constant galvanic current is decidedly the best as a rule, but sometimes faradization acts beneficially, or merely charging the patient from a friction-machine, and afterwards drawing a spark from the seat of pain. In employing galvanism, it is necessary to use only a weak current, especially about the head, carefully guarding against giving rise to unpleasant head-symptoms; to apply it by well-wetted sponges in the direction of the nerve, the positive pole being placed over the seat of pain; and not to make the application for too long a time, but with frequent repetitions. Surgical interference is advocated and practised in very obstinate cases of neuralgia, the affected nerve being exposed and forcibly stretched, or divided, or even a piece cut out. Another plan is to forcibly flex a limb, and thus stretch the affected nerve. Temporary improvement generally follows these methods of treatment, and sometimes a cure is thus effected. In chronic cases of sciatica a course of Turkish baths, with a strong cold douche to the back of the thigh, will sometimes effect a cure.

CHAPTER LXXIX.

APHASIA—APHEMIA—AMNESIA.

DISORDERS relating to speech and the use of articulate language, as well as to reading and writing, constitute important clinical phenomena, which in modern times have been much studied in nervous diseases, and the terms given above are used to express the chief deviations from the normal state which are observed with respect to spoken and written language as an intellectual act. Exclusive of stammering, there are two classes of causes which interfere with the proper employment of articulate language, which are not recognized under these terms, and

which must be excluded at the outset:—1. There may be complete mental incapacity and loss of intellectual power, so that no ideas are originated in the mind which the individual wishes to convey, as in the case of idiots. 2. There may be merely a difficulty or even an impossibility of performing the mechanical act of articulation, owing to more or less paralysis of the parts necessary for this act, namely, the tongue, lips, and palate; the power of thought, and also of expression, as evidenced by the ability to write sensibly, being perfectly natural. This variety, called *anarthria*, is observed in certain cases of hemiplegia, general paralysis of the insane, glosso-labio-laryngeal paralysis, locomotor ataxy, chorea, and other affections. The exact form of the deviation differs in the several conditions, and it must be remembered that paralysis of articulation may accompany true aphasia.

Coming now to the consideration of the various phenomena presented by cases grouped under the term *aphasia*, it may be remarked that, although as a rule the mental condition is more or less impaired, it is not affected to such a degree as to prevent the formation of ideas, but the patient cannot recollect words or their meaning, and thus is unable to express his thoughts; or has lost the power of co-ordinating and arranging them in a proper manner, for purposes of articulate or written language. In its strict signification aphasia merely refers to disorders of *speech*, but it is at present usually employed in a general sense, to include all the different forms of derangement which come under the group now under consideration, and the special use of the other terms mentioned will be presently indicated. It must be remarked that in all forms of aphasia, phonation or the power of producing vocal sounds is retained more or less.

Pathology.—The conditions recognized as aphasia are in the large majority of cases associated with *right* hemiplegia, and are due to some lesion in the left cerebral hemisphere, involving the region which the left middle cerebral artery supplies. They are more particularly connected with *embolism* of this artery, as was first pointed out by Dr. Hughlings Jackson; but they may depend upon haemorrhage, softening, cerebral tumour, and other lesions, and I have known them arise temporarily, apparently from mere vaso-motor disturbance. With regard to the exact localization of the mischief, some writers maintain that there must be an injury to some part of the corpus striatum, or of certain motor nuclei or inter-communicating fibres in its neighbourhood. Niemeyer partly attributed the frequency of aphasia in connection with diseases in the region above indicated, to the fact that pressure acting on one side in this region is readily propagated to the opposite one, so that the brain becomes bilaterally disordered. Most authorities now, however, agree with Broca, in regarding the third left frontal convolution as being the seat of the faculty of articulate language, and in referring the disorders met with in most cases of aphasia to some lesion affecting specially the posterior third of this convolution. When both sides are involved, paralysis of articulation may be observed along with aphasia, as in a case reported by Dr. Barlow. There is one form of aphasia, named *aphemia*, in which the patient is quite speechless, which is supposed to depend upon disorder of a special co-ordinating centre, situated somewhere in or below the corpus striatum, whose assumed function is to regulate or combine the groups of movements necessary for the production of elementary articulate sounds, it being so placed as to receive the communications from the intellectual centre of language above, and to transmit them to the nuclei of origin of the motor nerves.

below, by which they are conducted to the muscles of articulation. Any lesion affecting this centre, or cutting off its communication either above or below, may, it is presumed, lead to speechlessness. No special morbid condition, however, has been definitely associated with this form of aphasia.

Symptoms.—The phenomena included under the term *aphasia* are somewhat variable, and it is necessary to point out briefly the chief diversities observed in different cases in actual practice.

In one rare group, to which Bastian would limit the term *aphemia*, the patient is more or less speechless, even after having regained the use of every other faculty which has any relation to speech. He is able to write, and retains all his mental faculties; while there is no paralysis of the muscles of articulation, for these can be used perfectly for all other movements. Aphemia has been noticed after epileptic or apoplectic fits. Several years ago I had under my observation a case which was probably of this kind. The patient was a young girl who, after a sudden fit of insensibility, was found on recovering consciousness to be suffering from right hemiplegia and complete mutism. She recovered the use of the leg entirely, but the arm remained permanently paralyzed, and even at the end of some years there was no sign of returning speech. The case was supposed to be one of embolism.

In another class of cases there is a loss of memory of words or even of letters, this condition being termed *amnesia*. It is almost always accompanied with impaired power of recalling facts, and of conducting mental operations; but there is no necessary relation between these defects, and amnesic patients are often quick in perception and intelligence, obviously understanding everything said to them, and they can frequently speak and write fluently. The amnesic condition is evidenced in the speech, reading, and writing; and presents the widest differences in the degrees of its manifestations, though the power of articulation and of writing are perfectly retained. In true *aphasia* the person is deprived of articulate speech and of the power of writing (*agraphia*), he understands words spoken to him, and sometimes written language, but he is unable to repeat words. In some cases he can write but cannot speak. With regard to speech, as examples of the disorders to which this act is liable may be mentioned the use of only one or two inarticulate sounds, words, or phrases, or of a few words or expressions, which the patient tends to repeat; the use of wrong words in sentences, and loss of memory as regards the names of things and persons, which are wrongly applied; forgetfulness of the names of letters; the occasional misuse or omission of certain words or letters; the employment of wrong endings or beginnings of words; or the transposition of syllables or letters. The patient may repeat words which have been uttered immediately before, but speedily forgets them. Individuals who are almost completely aphasic may utter words or expressions under the influence of powerful emotions. Some of these disorders are often recognized when the patient attempts to read. With respect to writing, though this act can be done from a copy, provided the patient is not suffering from right hemiplegia, he generally cannot write correctly out of his own head or from dictation. Those who can write, occasionally write sense, frequently nonsense, but more frequently either unintelligible characters, or distinct but unconnected words (Reynolds). They may copy from printed matter, and yet not have the slightest idea of the names or meaning of the letters or words. Occasionally they can write down figures from dicta-

tion when they cannot put down words, and may even be able to do simple arithmetical sums.

A form of aphasia is described as *word-blindness*, in which the patient cannot read or understand written questions, although he may be able to understand what is said to him. He can often copy writing and designs, and can sometimes pronounce and recognize letters, but he cannot understand written sentences. He can usually speak, and express words in writing, and write from dictation. The lesion is considered to be in the left angular gyrus, and to cut off the commissural fibres between the speech-centre and the visual-centre.

Another form is *word-deafness*, where the patient can hear sounds and music, but he cannot understand spoken words; he can speak, read, and write fairly well, and can understand written commands, but not oral commands. The lesion is considered to be in the left superior temporo-sphenoidal convolution, and to sever the commissural fibres between the centres of hearing and speech.

In some cases of aphasia there is a combination of amnesia and aphemia. These conditions may also be associated with actual paralysis of the muscles of articulation.

Treatment.—There is no special treatment for the various aphasic conditions, and this must be directed to the disease with which they are associated. In cases of aphemia, it may be possible to teach lip-speech, according to the manner in which deaf-mutes are instructed.

CHAPTER LXXX.

ON SECONDARY AND TROPHIC LESIONS IN NERVOUS DISEASES.

FOR several years much attention has been paid to the study of the lesions which arise in the course of organic cerebro-spinal nervous diseases, both in the nervous structures themselves, and also in various other tissues of the body. This subject will now be briefly considered, although it will be hereafter further illustrated in connection with particular diseases. For our knowledge respecting these lesions we are greatly indebted to the late Dr. Charcot. The conclusions arrived at have been determined by experiments on animals; as well as by clinical and pathological investigation and observation.

1. With regard to the *nervous system* itself, secondary degenerative changes are liable to follow various localized lesions affecting either the centres or the nerves, and extending upwards, downwards, or horizontally, hence named *ascending*, *descending*, and *collateral* lesions. Various additional symptoms are consequently developed in the course of nervous diseases. When haemorrhage takes place into one of the cerebral hemispheres, especially involving the corpus striatum and internal capsule, the motor tract proceeding therefrom is liable to undergo degeneration in a descending direction, involving in succession the crus cerebri, anterior pyramid, thence passing to the opposite side of the spinal cord, and finally proceeding downwards chiefly along the posterior part of the lateral white column. The same result may follow other lesions. As

has been already mentioned, this probably accounts for the "late rigidity" observed in certain cases of hemiplegia. In the spinal cord, if a lesion occurs in some part of its length, it may extend both upwards and downwards, the ascending degeneration being confined to the posterior column, the descending to the lateral column. When the lower end is involved, the changes are liable to extend in an upward direction along the posterior columns, especially those portions which lie contiguous to the posterior median fissure. The degeneration may also proceed horizontally, either from the original seat of disease or from the secondary lesions, and then the anterior cornua and their motor nuclei are particularly implicated.

With reference to the influence of affections of the nerves, more or less serious phenomena are attributed to irritation of the nerve-centres excited by lesions of the sensory nerves. Thus, it has been maintained that centric irritation induced in this manner may account for certain grave diseases, such as tetanus. If the anterior root of a spinal nerve is in any way divided, degeneration extends along its peripheral or distal portion; while if the posterior root is cut, the change proceeds towards the centre, along the portion still in connection with the cord.

2. The effects of diseases of various parts of the nervous system upon the nutrition of *other structures* are often very striking. They may be observed in connection with lesions of nerves or of nerve-centres, and have been found more especially associated with the skin and subcutaneous tissues, the muscles, the joints and bones, and certain internal viscera, especially the kidneys and bladder. It has long been known that muscles waste in paralyzed parts from mere prolonged inaction and disuse, and undergo more or less fatty or other degenerative changes; also that inflammation, ulceration, or gangrene may arise in structures deprived of sensation, due merely to the fact that in consequence of the loss of sensibility the patient is unconscious of pressure, of the contact of mechanical irritants or irritating excretions, and of other deleterious influences, and thus is unable to prevent them from injuring the tissues. This is well-illustrated by the bed-sores which are liable to form in persons suffering from spinal disease, with complete paralysis of the lower extremities. The trophic lesions now to be considered are not, however, thus explicable, but are due to irritative or inflammatory lesions of different parts of the nervous system, the nature of which will be presently pointed out.

As regards the character of the consecutive changes in the several structures, in the skin and subcutaneous tissues they are either of an inflammatory or an atrophic nature, and are evidenced mainly by erythematous redness, which may be combined with tumefaction of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, simulating phlegmon; vesicular and bullous, or sometimes pustular skin-eruptions, such as herpes, pemphigus, or ecthyma; glossy skin; and acute gangrene, ending in bed-sores. The muscles undergo acute wasting, more or less complete loss of electric contractility occurring with equal rapidity. These effects are due to an inflammatory process, which is evidenced by hyperæmia and hyperplasia of the interstitial connective tissue, with multiplication of the nuclei of the sarclemma, the muscular fibres being involved as a consequence of these changes, becoming gradually more and more attenuated, but rarely, if ever, losing their striated appearance or undergoing fatty degeneration. In connection with the joints,

the morbid conditions which have been noticed are acute or subacute inflammation or synovitis, which often ends in ankylosis; or sudden attacks attended with more or less diffused swelling of the limb, but with little or no pain, and ending in the rapid destruction and erosion of the cartilages and articular ends of the bones, which may lead to dislocation. Occasionally periostitis occurs, which often terminates in necrosis. Trophic lesions in the viscera resulting from nervous diseases are mainly exemplified by rapidly-developed inflammation of the kidneys and bladder, accompanied with the discharge of ammoniacal and foetid urine, containing blood or pus.

It is necessary now to point out the relation of the different portions of the nervous system to these consecutive lesions.

a. Nerves. The late Brown Séquard attributed to reflex influence, through centripetal nerves, the occurrence of cutaneous eruptions and muscular wasting in some cases; and many pathologists regard various forms of internal inflammation as being due to a similar influence. Certain lesions of motor nerves are followed by rapid reduction of electric contractility, and corresponding atrophy in the muscles which they supply. In connection with diseases of sensory nerves, the different forms of skin-eruption are liable to arise, which is well-exemplified by herpes zoster; and also gangrene or atrophic lesions. In anaesthetic lepra atrophy of the muscles occurs; and erythematous patches appear on the skin, followed by the development of vesicles or bullæ, or by atrophy of the cutaneous tissues, and in some cases leading to gangrene of the skin, of the deeper soft structures, or even of the bones.

b. Spinal cord. Numerous consecutive lesions are liable to follow various diseases of the spinal cord. Thus, in affections involving the posterior columns, such as locomotor ataxy, several skin-eruptions are liable to occur, owing, according to Charcot, to the implication of the nerve-fibres passing through the outer part of these columns before they emerge from the cord. These may also be observed in connection with a form of inflammation of the meninges of the cord, which leads to compression and irritation of its structures, as well as of the roots of the sensory nerves. Perforating ulcer of locomotor ataxy met with in all stages of the disease is of trophic origin, and due to mechanical influence upon a part suffering from nutritional changes owing to affection of the cutaneous nerves. In syringo-myelia and Morvan's disease trophic changes are seen. Facial hemi-atrophy is considered by Mendel to be of trophic origin. Bullæ are sometimes developed in various parts in cases of vertebral caries. Bed-sores form at a very early period and with great rapidity in some cases of paraplegia, appearing only on the paralyzed parts, and especially over the sacral region, hence usually occupying a somewhat central and symmetrical site. They are also sometimes seen on the heels, the hips, and inside the knees. They occur more especially where pressure is exerted, but may be independent of this cause, or of any irritation by the excretions. At first patches of erythema are observed, with more or less infiltration and congestion of the subjacent tissues, which may involve the muscles and bones. Soon vesicles or bullæ form, and superficial sloughing takes place, gradually extending in area and depth, until a large surface may be destroyed, muscles and bones being sometimes involved, and even cavities opened up. These lesions are necessarily very grave, having been mainly observed in connection with haemorrhage or inflammation occupying a considerable extent of the central portion of the spinal cord, and they

may thus be associated with injuries to the spinal column, or with acute exacerbations and complications of chronic diseases of the cord. The lesions of the cutaneous tissues just considered are supposed to be due to implication of the posterior cornua and central grey matter of the spinal cord.

More or less rapid loss of electric contractility in muscles, with corresponding wasting, may follow many injuries and diseases of the spinal cord, if they involve certain special parts of the anterior cornua, including those groups of multipolar nerve-cells from which the motor fibres arise which proceed to the affected muscles. Even diseases which begin in other columns, such as locomotor ataxy, may by lateral extension involve the anterior cornua at different points, and thus induce disseminated atrophic changes in the muscles. They are also seen in connection with diffuse inflammation or haemorrhage into the cord, but are particularly associated with infantile paralysis and corresponding conditions in the adult (polio-myelitis). Joint-affections are also sometimes observed in cases of injury or disease of the spine, and that form in which rapid destruction takes place chiefly occurs in cases of locomotor ataxy. The exact cause of the joint-lesion is not determined. Some authorities consider that they depend on an affection of the anterior cornua of the cord; Buzzard thinks that they are probably due to a lesion of the medulla oblongata. These arthropathies are not uncommonly combined with rapid muscular wasting, and it is supposed that the two classes of morbid changes are connected with lesions affecting the same parts of the cord, but this is not always the case.

It is in certain cases of paraplegia from spinal disease that acute inflammation of the kidneys and bladder takes place, supposed to be of the nature of a trophic lesion.

c. Brain.—In cases of hemiplegia, erythematous, vesicular, or pustular eruptions occasionally appear on the paralyzed limbs. Acute bed-sores, similar to those described in connection with the spinal cord, may also occur in these cases, more particularly if the hemiplegia is due to cerebral haemorrhage. They are almost always observed about the centre of the buttock on the paralyzed side, and at a lower level than those associated with paraplegia. These lesions in cerebral diseases are supposed to be due to irritation of the ganglia at the base of the brain. Acute muscular wasting, with loss of electric contractility, is rare in connection with cerebral disease, and is probably always due to some secondary descending lesion of the spinal cord, involving the motor nuclei. Inflammation of joints is occasionally noticed in hemiplegia, especially if due to softening, usually only affecting the articulations of the upper limb.

Pathology.—Having thus noticed the relation of the chief trophic lesions to the different parts of the cerebro-spinal nervous system, it remains only to offer a few observations as to the explanation of their occurrence. They are not due to mere abolition or suspension of the action of the parts of the nervous system with which they are severally associated, but are always dependent upon some kind of irritation, which leads to inflammation. Thus, in the case of the nerves, it is not complete nerve-division which causes the lesions, but those injuries by which the nerve is contused, punctured, incompletely divided, or lacerated; or diseases in which a nerve is inflamed, compressed, or stretched. Again, as regards the brain and spinal cord, some irritation of an inflammatory nature, in connection with the nerve-cells which are

related to the different parts involved in different cases, induces the trophic changes, and not the mere severance of the nervous connection between them. What the precise cause of the lesions may be is undecided, but they have been supposed to be associated with certain trophic nerves; or to be excited through the vaso-motor nerves, which influence the vessels, leading to neuroparalytic hyperæmia, or setting up an irritative affection. Charcot was of opinion that some of the consecutive changes may be due to the transmission of pathological irritations from their original seat in a centrifugal direction along the nerve-filaments, these irritations thus reaching various structures, in which they originate the trophic lesions.

Facial Hemi-Atrophy is a peculiar and rare trophic affection, which demands separate notice. It is characterized by progressive wasting of the bones and soft tissues of one side of the face. By Hutchinson this is considered to be a form of scleroderma, and of vaso-motor origin. By Mendel, who has made an autopsy on a case, it is attributed to interstitial neuritis of all the branches of the 5th nerve. Very little is known of the aetiology of the disease; it affects particularly the female sex, and the onset has always been prior to the 25th year. Various precursory nervous phenomena in the distribution of the 5th nerve of one side *may* precede the skin-changes. Small white patches or erythematous eruptions on the skin are followed by atrophy of the subcutaneous tissues, the muscles, and the bones, more particularly the upper jaw, the changes being sharply limited to one side of the face, most frequently the left. The disease progresses without affecting the general health, until the two sides of the face become so asymmetrical as to appear to belong to two different persons. Owing to the atrophy of the alveolar process of the jaw the teeth may fall out. The continuous current has been found very successful in treatment.

CHAPTER LXXXI.

ON THE LOCALIZATION OF NERVOUS DISEASES.

The localization of the phenomena presented in various nervous diseases, whether functional or organic, has in modern times come to occupy a prominent position with reference to the diagnosis of this class of affections, and it is now recognized as an important object to be kept in view in making such a diagnosis, to associate these phenomena with particular portions of the nervous system. The knowledge which renders this practicable is partly founded upon anatomical investigations, by which the structure and connections of the different parts of the nervous system have been more definitely determined. It has been mainly acquired, however, as the result of physiological experiments, which have greatly increased our information as to the functions of this system, by indicating the effects of irritation and destruction of its several parts. Some assistance has been derived from observing what portions of the nerve-centres are deficient in their development when a limb or a part of it is either congenitally wanting, or has been amputated. Lastly, the observation of the actual phenomena associated with injuries

and structural changes affecting the nervous structures has contributed much to our knowledge, and the mass of material thus accumulated for our guidance is being continuously added to by numerous workers in this field of pathology. Within certain limits, the diagnosis of the localization of a nervous disease is not only important, but essential ; at the same time it must be remarked that the extreme accuracy in this respect which is now aimed at by many of those who make these affections their special study, is more a matter of scientific than of practical interest, and there are several circumstances which render it very difficult to arrive at a positive opinion as to the precise localization of the lesion in a large number of cases. It will be expedient, before discussing the individual diseases of the nervous system, to consider the subject in some detail, and to point out the main facts bearing upon it.

1. In the first place it is always essential to distinguish between affections of the *brain*, *spinal cord*, and individual *nerves* ; or, in other words, to determine whether a nervous disease is *cerebral*, *spinal*, or *peripheral*. To localize the mischief thus far is usually not difficult, but it must be borne in mind that the brain and spinal cord may be involved simultaneously ; and that special nerves may be implicated along with the nerve-centres.

a. When the *brain* is affected, the special clinical phenomena which, in different combinations, are to be looked for as pointing to this portion of the nervous system, are as follows :—*a. Morbid sensations* referred to the head ; and occasionally evident *objective changes*, affecting its size or shape. *b. Disturbance of the mental faculties* or *speech*. *c. Subjective disorders of the special senses*. *d. Signs of derangement of the functions of certain of the cranial nerves*, either in the direction of irritation or paralysis. *e. Motor phenomena* referred to the limbs, and sometimes to the body, usually unilateral in distribution ; sometimes localized, but then as a rule limited to one side ; occasionally general, affecting more or less both the upper and lower limbs, as well as the trunk. *Hemiplegia* is very common in cerebral diseases. *f. Sometimes disorders of sensation* of corresponding distribution, though these are by far less common, as well as much less in degree. *g. Changes in the eyes*, as observed with the ophthalmoscope. *h. Certain extrinsic symptoms*, especially cerebral vomiting, and obstinate constipation. When certain parts of the brain are involved, respiration and circulation are much affected ; and curious symptoms are observed in particular cases.

b. Diseases of the spinal cord present considerable variations in their symptoms, according to the seat and extent of the mischief, but the usual phenomena noticed are of the following nature :—*a. Morbid sensations*, and occasionally abnormal *objective signs*, referred to some portion of the spinal region, the sensations sometimes shooting from this region in various directions. *b. Motor disorders*, generally bilateral, and usually involving both legs and the lower part of the trunk, *paraplegia* being a frequent symptom in spinal diseases, the muscles of the legs presenting at the same time marked derangements as regards their reflex and electric excitability, or the limbs becoming rigidly flexed, while they often show a tendency to rapid failure of nutrition. In some forms of spinal mischief the prominent motor derangement is in the direction of *ataxy* ; in others of spastic disturbance. *c. Sensory disorders*, of similar distribution to those affecting motion, sensation as well as motor power being often completely lost in the lower limbs and lower part of the body. *d. Derangements affecting the bladder and rectum*, indicated by

retention of urine and its consequences, irritability of the bladder, or incontinence; and inability to expel the faeces, which may accumulate in large quantity, or involuntary escape of faeces. *e. Sexual disorders*, in the direction of undue sexual appetite or constant priapism; or of impairment or loss of sexual power and desire.

c. Peripheral nervous disease is indicated by the localization of the phenomena to the region in which the particular nerve or nerves affected are distributed; these phenomena being either connected with motion, sensation, or both, or of a special nature, according to the functions which the involved nerves normally perform. It must not be forgotten, however, that local nervous symptoms may be the result of limited or commencing central disease, implicating the roots of nerves, or the portions of grey matter to which these severally correspond. In motor paralysis due to actual disease of a nerve or of its nucleus or cells of origin, the muscles show a rapid tendency towards wasting, and loss of faradic irritability with "reaction of degeneration," as has been pointed out in the previous chapter.

2. Having thus far indicated the general distinctions between the effects of lesions of the brain, spinal cord, and nerves respectively, it now remains to consider how far the clinical phenomena observed in different cases can be relied upon for the localization of diseases in the principal parts of the nerve-centres.

a. With regard to the brain, it is a well-known fact that when hemiplegia occurs from any lesion involving one of the cerebral hemispheres, the paralysis is almost invariably on the side opposite the lesion, which is accounted for by the decussation of the motor tracts in the medulla oblongata. The late Brown-Séquard disputed the validity of this law, on the authority of 200 cases, in which the paralysis was on the same side as the disease, but, presuming that these cases were free from fallacy, they are, as has been shown by Ferrier and others, explicable on anatomical grounds, for direct paralysis may occur, in consequence of the motor tracts not decussating according to their usual arrangement. Therefore, it may be definitely stated that opposite paralysis is the rule in cerebral disease, and thus far their localization can usually be determined with certainty, to the extent of referring the mischief to one or other lateral half of the brain.

When, however, we come to attempt to localize a lesion in particular parts of the brain, the question becomes much more difficult, and eminent authorities maintain that it is impossible to do so with any certainty. There are several reasons to account for this. In the first place, it is still by-no-means satisfactorily settled what are the precise functions of the several parts of the brain. Again, lesions frequently give rise not only to direct, but also to indirect symptoms, through their effects upon surrounding parts, as well as upon the entire brain. Moreover, lesions are often very extensive, or there may be more than one, in some cases even several distinct areas of disease being observed. It is believed, too, that certain centres exert a compensatory action with regard to each other, so that when one is destroyed its functions may still be carried on by other centres. Secondary lesions are further liable to be set up, and these tend to complicate the phenomena observed. Notwithstanding these and other difficulties, however, it is possible in a considerable number of cases to refer symptoms to definite portions of the brain, as the result of experimental investigations, and of the pathological and clinical observations of numerous workers in this

field of enquiry. In the following remarks it is intended to point out the phenomena associated with lesions of the principal parts of the brain, so far as they have been determined by these investigations.

The *convolutions* were formerly regarded as being entirely connected with psychical functions, so that, if there were any signs of mental disturbance, it was concluded that the cortex of the brain was involved. That this portion of the brain is concerned with these functions is unquestionably true, but considerable lesions may be met with here, causing marked objective symptoms without any mental disorder, and this is attributed to the fact that when one hemisphere is destroyed, the mental processes can be carried on by the opposite one. On the other hand, lesions which cause mental derangement need not be accompanied with any objective phenomena. In cases of insanity it is presumed that the brain is always diseased, but often no distinct lesions can be discovered; and although various morbid changes have been observed in these cases, no definite relation has been found to exist between any particular lesion, as regards either its nature or locality, and any special form of mental disorder. Modern researches have shown that different regions of the convolutions have distinct functions, by which lesions affecting them can be localized. The *pra-frontal lobe* or *antero-frontal region*, roughly bounded by the coronal suture of the skull, may be the seat of extensive laceration or disease, either suddenly or gradually induced, without causing any objective phenomena, and indeed without any evident disturbance, either bodily or mental, especially if the lesion be unilateral; but in other cases, chiefly where the mischief is bilateral, psychical symptoms have been noticed, and marked mental deficiency has been found in connection with arrested development or atrophy of this lobe. By most authorities, as has been already stated, the faculty of articulate language is now regarded as being lodged in the posterior extremity of the third *left* frontal convolution, and hence any lesion involving this part is accompanied with aphasia, which is most frequently associated with right hemiplegia. If both sides are involved, there is also complete paralysis of articulation. The central convolutions of the cerebral cortex form the so-called *motor area*, but now believed by most authorities to be *sensori-motor*, destructive or irritative lesions of which are indicated respectively by muscular paralysis or spasm, and by less obvious sensory disturbances. This zone is said to include the bases of the three *frontal convolutions*, with those bounding the fissure of Rolando, namely, the *ascending frontal*, the *ascending parietal*, the *postero-parietal lobule*, and the internal surface of these convolutions, or so-called *paracentral lobule*. If a destructive lesion involves this area extensively, it causes complete hemiplegia of the opposite side; it is, however, differentiated into centres for movements of the arm, leg, facial muscles, eyes, etc., and when the lesions are correspondingly limited, various monoplegiae are induced. The same remark applies to spasm, and if a convulsive seizure always begins in the same way, or if monospasms are frequently confined to one limb or a particular group of muscles, and especially if corresponding paralysis becomes subsequently developed, a lesion may be localized in a certain part of the opposite hemisphere with much precision. With respect to the particular centres for each part, the chief are indicated by Ferrier as follows:—For the upper limb, middle two-fourths of ascending frontal and parietal convolutions, and a small area on the marginal convolution behind the leg and trunk.

areas ; hand and wrist, lower and posterior part of the former area ; leg and foot, postero-parietal lobule, upper extremities of the ascending parietal and frontal convolutions, and the posterior part of the marginal convolution ; mouth and tongue, lower third of ascending frontal and parietal ; lateral movement of head and eyes, posterior third of upper frontal convolution and corresponding part of second frontal, and the angular convolution.

How far it may be possible to diagnose between hemiplegia due to general destruction of the motor area of the cortex, or to lesions situated in the interior of the brain, is a matter of doubt, and in many cases such a diagnosis cannot be made, merely judging by the clinical phenomena observed. The main points bearing upon this subject, as given in Ferrier's work, are as follows :—It is said that there is less difference in temperature between the paralyzed and non-paralyzed sides when the paralysis depends upon cortical than on central disease, and that it subsides more rapidly. Cortical lesions are most frequently indicated by fractional or dissociated paralysis, or by a succession of dissociated paralyses and monoplegia. A complete hemiplegia often resolves itself into a monoplegia ; or a monoplegia becomes a hemiplegia by progressive advance of the disease to other motor centres, which is said to be very significant. Again, a monoplegia is very often associated with monospasm or early rigidity of the paralyzed limb, or of the muscles governed by the centres surrounding the lesion. Sometimes the paralyzed limb remains motionless, while convulsions occur in the others. Cortical paralysis is frequently erratic and transitory, more especially in connection with superficial or meningo-cerebritis. Lesions of the cortex are more frequently accompanied with localized pains in the head ; and even when pain is not spontaneously complained of, it may be brought out by percussion over the seat of lesion.

The cortex is also said to have a *sensory zone*, supposed to be localized in the *parieto-temporal lobe*, and to be differentiated for different sensations, as follows :—Tactile sensation is localized by Ferrier in the callosal and hippocampal convolutions, but most authorities now believe the whole Rolandic area to be sensori-motor, particularly the portion situated behind the fissure of Rolando ; smell and taste, hippocampal lobule ; sight, occipito-angular region ; hearing, superior temporo-sphenoidal convolution. Ferrier is of opinion that sensory hallucinations in cases of insanity, as well as certain subjective sensations which usher in some epileptic attacks, are due to a morbid irritation of the cortical sensory centres.

The *occipital lobes* are now considered to be the centre for vision, and destruction of one lobe produces hemianopsia, that is, loss of sight in both eyes for the opposite half of the field of vision. With ablation of the left occipital lobe, the patient cannot see anything to the right of the centre of vision. On the other hand, removal of one angular gyrus produces crossed amblyopia.

Coming now to the ganglia within the brain, and their surrounding medullary substance, the *corpus striatum* and *anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb of the internal capsule* are concerned with motion, and a lesion affecting this part of the brain induces hemiplegia on the opposite side of the body, of the ordinary type. If the lesion is sudden, loss of consciousness usually occurs, of a temporary nature ; but this symptom is the result of its indirect effects. When it involves only the *nucleus caudatus* or the *nucleus lenticularis*, it is believed that the paralysis is

merely temporary, and is comparatively slight in the former case. Hughlings Jackson is of opinion that the arm suffers less, and the leg more, the further back the lesion is situated. Should the anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb of the internal capsule be destroyed, hemiplegia is marked and permanent, and it is only under such circumstances that secondary degeneration of the motor tracts, with consequent permanent rigidity, takes place.

The *optic thalamus* and *posterior third of the posterior limb of the internal capsule* are concerned with sensation. The researches of Charcot and others have shown that destructive lesions of the internal capsule, external to the optic thalamus, cause hemianæsthesia on the opposite side of the body.

Lesions of the *corpora quadrigemina* are very rarely limited to these bodies, but they are liable to be involved along with neighbouring structures. If one of them is destroyed, vision is lost on the opposite side, this being due to destruction of the *anterior tubercle*; conversely, if the eye is destroyed on one side the opposite tubercle becomes atrophied. The motions of the iris are also paralyzed if the lesion extends deeply. Equilibration and co-ordination are likewise disturbed; but these disorders have been attributed to lesions of the subjacent tracts, especially the *superior cerebellar peduncle*. Irritation of both corpora quadrigemina on one side gives rise to dilatation of the pupil, and hemi-opisthotonus of the opposite side, which becomes general if the irritation is prolonged or bilateral, the head being retracted and the legs extended, trismus being also very marked. Unilateral destruction is said to cause incurvation of the trunk, and gyration to the side of lesion.

When either *crus cerebri* is destroyed, the consequences are paralysis of motion and sensation on the opposite side, sensation being especially affected, with marked vaso-motor paralysis, and a consequent rise of temperature of 2° or 3° in the paralyzed limbs; if the lower part of the crus is involved, the third nerve is implicated, there being hence oculomotor paralysis on the same side as the injury.

Before quitting the cerebrum, it may be well to notice the important aid which the ophthalmoscope may afford in localizing diseases in this part of the brain; and Dr. Gowers has also drawn my particular attention to the necessity of testing the field of vision for this purpose. For instance, partial double hemiopia is often present when unsuspected by the patient. This shows disease of the optic fibres on the side opposite to the hemiopia, behind the commissure; or of their terminations in the central ganglia, corpora geniculata, optic thalamus, or occipital lobe; so that when the patient cannot see objects to his right with either eye, the lesion is in the left optic tract. Hence, when other nervous symptoms are bilateral, this hemiopia may afford the only indication as to the side which is affected, and it may be the means of still further localizing the mischief to that part of the hemisphere which is contiguous to the optic tract and ganglia. If the lesion is situated in the commissure itself, which is very rare, the loss of vision is not on the same side in both eyes, but the two outer or two inner fields are lost.

It is not easy to determine definitely the symptoms directly due to disease of the *cerebellum*, so many of the phenomena which are observed being indirectly induced. The chief symptoms are due to a peculiar disorder of equilibrium. There is no true motor paralysis, and although opposite hemiplegia is not unusual in cerebellar disease, this is probably

the result of its indirect effects upon the subjacent motor tracts, which decussate at the pyramids. When any attempt at locomotion is made, the patient exhibits a reeling or staggering gait, with a constant tendency to stumble or fall over any obstacle or on moving hurriedly. The movements are not due to any actual want of co-ordination, but are such as would be made to preserve equilibrium, or to prevent the patient from falling. Sensation is not affected, unless it be indirectly. Nystagmus and strabismus have been noticed, more especially in connection with disease of the cerebellar peduncles. When the middle lobe of the cerebellum is the seat of haemorrhage, vascular excitement of the sexual organs has been frequently observed, indicated in males by marked priapism, and it has been supposed that the cerebellum or, according to some writers, its middle lobe, is connected with the sexual instinct. This is not the case, however, according to the best authorities of the present day, who regard the sexual excitement as an indirect symptom, due to irritation of the posterior surface of the medulla and pons. Pain in the back of the head is often present in cerebellar disease; and vomiting is a very frequent symptom, probably on account of the indirect effect of the disease upon the medulla. In connection with lesions of the *middle cerebellar peduncles*, the special phenomena observed are a rotatory distortion of the head and trunk, usually towards the side of the lesion; and a peculiar distortion of the optic axes, the eye on the side of the lesion being directed downwards and inwards, the opposite one upwards and outwards. Much, however, will depend upon the exact seat of the lesion, and whether it is of a destructive or irritative character.

A sudden lesion in connection with the *pons Varolii* and *medulla oblongata* usually proves speedily fatal, owing to the interference with the functions essential to life thus induced, namely, respiration and circulation. Not only do the motor and sensory tracts meet and blend in this portion of the nerve-centres, but several nerves have their nuclei of origin here. Hence the phenomena observed are liable to considerable variation in character and combination, according to the exact localization of the lesion, for not only may the different tracts be involved, but also either of the nerve-nuclei may be implicated, or the nerves after their emergence from these nuclei, whether their function be motor, sensory, or special. As before stated, it is in connection with lesions involving this region that so-called *cross-paralysis* occurs. In other cases there may be general paralysis of the limbs; or paralysis of one arm and both legs, or *vice versa*. The muscles of the eyes are variously affected; and one or both facial nerves may be involved, according to the seat of the disease. The fifth and other sensory nerves may also be implicated, and thus various degrees of impairment of sensation induced, usually irregular in distribution. Difficulties connected with mastication, deglutition, phonation, articulation, respiration, circulation, or the power of control over the bladder and rectum, are observed in different combinations; and it is to interference with certain of these functions that the great danger arising from diseases implicating the *pons Varolii* and *medulla oblongata* is due.

b. With respect to lesions of the *spinal cord*, if this is destroyed in its entire thickness, complete motor and sensory paralysis in the parts below the seat of lesion will ensue. Generally this involves only the legs and the lower part of the trunk, but if the mischief is situated at or above the cervical enlargement, the arms will also be paralyzed; while if it is

high up in the cervical region, the respiratory muscles and diaphragm become involved, and death will speedily ensue from asphyxia. With regard to micturition, a lesion in the cervical or upper dorsal region generally causes a difficulty in performing the act, or even retention of urine, owing to spasm of the sphincter; or there may be irritability of the bladder, so that the patient cannot hold his water; if it should occupy the lumbar region, the sphincter is paralyzed, with consequent involuntary escape of urine. Constipation is usually marked; and defæcation may be involuntary. In some cases the destruction of the cord is not complete, and hence there is only impairment of the motor and sensory functions below the seat of disease. Again, it not uncommonly happens that motor power is entirely lost, while sensation remains. This is due to the fact that the sensory tracts are confined to the posterior cornua and the rest of the grey matter behind the central canal of the cord; therefore, in diseases of its periphery, or of the surrounding membranes, the sensory tracts are so situated that they may escape, while it also appears that a very narrow thread of grey matter is sufficient to keep up the connection between the peripheral parts and the sensory centres.

Coming now to the consideration of lesions involving special tracts in the spinal cord, it was first pointed out by the late Brown Séquard that unilateral lesions of the spinal cord were followed by paralysis with *hyperesthesia* of the same side, and *anesthesia* of the opposite side below the injury. He formerly maintained that all sensory impulses, except those of the muscular sense, decussated immediately on entering the spinal cord by the posterior roots. A series of experiments made, however, by Dr. Mott have shown that hemi-section in the dorsal region in monkeys is followed by motor paralysis on the side injured, and diminished sensation on *both* sides, if anything the impairment of conscious sensation being more marked on the side of the injury. This observer affirms, moreover, with certainty, that the degeneration above the lesion is for the most part limited to the lateral and posterior columns of that side, and that anatomically the principal decussation of sensory fibres is in the medulla. The experiments of Gotch and Horsley by the "*electrical reaction*" method support this view. But, as Brown Séquard recently pointed out, the clinical phenomenon which bears his name—"Brown Séquard paralysis"—is found with rare exceptions to follow unilateral stabs of the spinal cord. No one, however, was more vehement in opposing the view which he formerly held, that the phenomenon is to be explained by decussation of the fibres in the cord. Probably, as Vulpian pointed out, the hyperesthesia of the paralyzed side is the cause of the anesthesia of the opposite side in those cases which occur in man. Both experimental physiology and pathology seem to confirm the views of Schiff, that tactile sensations and the muscular sense impressions are transmitted by the posterior columns, and painful sensations and those of heat and cold by the grey matter. (*See SYRINGOMYELIA*). Precise limitation of a disease to one half of the spinal cord is very rare, but the lesion may even be confined to a particular tract. It only happens extremely rarely, if ever, that a lesion is limited to the *posterior part of the central region of the cord*, so as to induce bilateral sensory paralysis, motion being unaffected. One particular form of lesion tends to limit itself to special tracts, and consequently very striking phenomena are produced. If the mischief is confined to the *posterior columns*, or, according to Chareot, to the *outer bands* of these columns, which are contiguous to the inner and posterior aspects of the posterior cornua and the roots of the sensory nerves, there is loss of co-ordinating power over the muscles below the seat of disease,

without any actual paralysis, as in locomotor ataxy. If the *lateral columns* are alone involved, more especially the white matter which lies behind a horizontal line drawn laterally through the median canal, motor paralysis occurs in the parts below, the muscles also tending to become at first tremulous, and ultimately more or less rigid and spastic. A lesion may be limited to the groups of large cells constituting the motor nuclei in the anterior cornua, as in infantile paralysis, and then paralysis only affects those muscles supplied by nerves arising from these diseased spots, this being frequently followed by rapid loss of electric contractility and marked wasting. The relations of other trophic lesions to particular parts of the spinal cord have been already pointed out. It will be readily understood that in the case of irritative lesions involving the cord, the distribution of the phenomena observed will be the same as in connection with destructive lesions, according to the part implicated, these phenomena only differing in their kind.

With regard to the localization of the motor roots of the spinal cord, mention must be made of the experiments of Ferrier and Gerald Yeo (Proc. Roy. Soc., 1881), who stimulated by the faradic current the peripheral ends of the divided motor roots of the brachial and lumbo-sacral plexuses, and thereby found that distinct groups of muscles in the limbs were caused to contract; for instance, stimulation of the fifth cervical motor root put into action the deltoid, rhomboid, supra- and infra-spinatus, biceps, brachialis anticus, supinator longus, and extensors of wrist and fingers, and so on with the other roots of the plexus; while in the lumbo-sacral plexus stimulation of the second sacral nerve only caused contraction of the intrinsic muscles of the foot. Ferrier considers that these observations may explain the way in which groups of muscles are affected in diseases of the cells of the anterior cornua, such as occur in infantile paralysis, adult spinal paralysis, and progressive muscular atrophy; the groups of muscles being affected, according as the anterior cornua of different segments of the cord are attacked.

CHAPTER LXXXII.

HEMICRANIA—MIGRAINE OR MEGRIM— SICK-HEADACHE.

Etiology and Pathology.—Most authorities regard the complaint known as *migraine* or *sick-headache* as being quite independent of any morbid state of the alimentary canal, and as essentially a nervous affection. Dr. Clifford Allbutt, however, considers that derangements of the abdominal viscera have an important influence in giving rise to migraine. The chief views as to the pathology of this malady are as follows:—1. That it is a form of neuralgia of the ophthalmic or occipital nerve; or of the filaments distributed to the dura mater. Some regard this neuralgia as being merely due to peripheral causes, but Austie, who was strongly in favour of the theory that migraine is a form of *trigeminal neuralgia*, attributed it primarily to a morbid condition at the root of the fifth nerve in the medulla oblongata, its central nucleus in this part being the seat of atrophic molecular irritation, which has an unusually strong tendency to communicate itself to the

neighbouring and closely-connected nucleus of the vagus. 2. That the complaint is due to vaso-motor disturbance affecting the vessels of the head, produced through the sympathetic nerve. Latham considers that in the premonitory stage of sick-headache the small arteries are contracted, owing to excitement of the vaso-motor nerves, which depends upon a weakening of the controlling power exercised over them by the cerebro-spinal system, this probably originating in the medulla oblongata. During the stage of headache it is supposed that the nerves become paralyzed, and the vessels are consequently dilated; and Latham is of opinion that this paralysis is the result of depression following the previous excitement. 3. E. Living, in his admirable work on this subject, advanced the hypothesis that the paroxysms of migraine are due to "nerve-storms, traversing more or less of the sensory tract from the optic thalami to the ganglia of the vagus, or else radiating in the same tract from a focus in the neighbourhood of the quadrigeminal bodies."

The chief *predisposing causes* of migraine are the female sex, attacks being peculiarly liable to occur about the menstrual periods; hereditary tendency to the complaint, or to various other neuroses; anaemia and general want of tone; and a nervous, excitable temperament. A paroxysm often comes on without any obvious *exciting cause*, but it may follow errors in diet; exposure to the sun; breathing vitiated air; undue mental excitement or effort; fatigue, especially when combined with fasting; excessive sexual indulgence or masturbation; and various other causes which lead to physical or nervous depression. Sometimes it results from some disturbance affecting the sight or hearing; and it may be brought on by straining the eyes, as after prolonged reading or sewing.

Symptoms.—Sick-headache is characterized by periodic attacks, which usually commence during the period of bodily development, in persons from 15 to 25 years old; as a rule becoming more frequent and severe up to a certain time; but tending to diminish in frequency, or even to cease altogether in advanced age, particularly after the change of life in women.

An attack of migraine is generally ushered in by some *premonitory* symptoms, which are mostly observed when the patient wakes in the morning, such as a sense of depression, heaviness, or general uneasiness; vertigo; disturbed vision, especially a wavy glimmering, which appears as a zig-zag outline, sometimes coloured, on one side of the field of vision, or with hemiopia; chilliness and shuddering; coldness of the hands and feet; tingling in the arm or tongue; irritability of temper; yawning, gaping, or sighing; disorder of speech or hearing; or disinclination for food, with a slimy taste. Soon the pain commences, and speedily becomes intense. Almost always it is unilateral, and on the opposite side to that on which the glimmering appears, being felt chiefly in the supra-orbital region or sometimes within the orbit, but not uncommonly extending over the whole side of the head. The precise character of the pain varies much in different cases, but it is generally accompanied with a sensation of throbbing. Pressure on the carotid artery usually diminishes its intensity. There is increased local heat; and in many cases redness of the conjunctiva is observed, with an excessive flow of tears. During a severe paroxysm the patient usually takes to bed, feels extremely depressed and low, dreads every disturbance, begs to be left at rest, and is especially sensitive to light and noise. The pulse is

frequently slow and soft. The pupils are contracted. When the suffering reaches its height, nausea and bilious vomiting generally set in, aggravating the pain, but afterwards this gradually diminishes, and the patient usually falls asleep. Anstie remarked that this vomiting is not ordinarily remedial, but that it "merely indicates the lowest point of nervous depression." Vomiting may be directly beneficial, however, if there is much undigested food in the stomach. On awaking from sleep, the patient finds as a rule that the pain has ceased, but frequently complains of a little superficial tenderness for a day or two, and feels out of sorts. The *duration* of an attack of sick-headache is very variable in different cases, but it does not commonly last more than twenty-four hours, though it may go on for two or three days or more.

Treatment.—During the *premonitory* stage of an attack of migraine, if this is evident, certain measures may be adopted with the view of preventing or mitigating the subsequent symptoms. The patient should at once retire into a quiet darkened room, and lie down on the side which former experience has shown to be usually the seat of pain, with the head low, the extremities being kept warm. Very many remedies have been recommended for sick-headache, but their usefulness differs much in different cases. The most important are *diffusible stimulants* or *sedatives*, such as a little brandy or sherry and soda-water, champagne, or aromatic spirit of ammonia; a cup of simple strong tea or coffee; guarana; hydrate of chloral; butyl-chloral; tincture of cannabis indica; bromides; caffeine, either internally or by subcutaneous injection; nitrite of amyl; and nitro-glycerine. Phenazone, in doses of gr. v to xv every two hours, is found useful in some cases of migraine; and in others acetanilide or phenacetin afford relief. The application of a weak galvanic current may occasionally prove serviceable. Anstie recommended a warm foot-bath containing mustard, and for the patient to breathe the steam rising from this at the same time. In some cases I have found the administration of a simple *emetic*, such as sulphate of zinc, decidedly beneficial. Much relief often results from tightly binding the head with a wet bandage. Probably the steady application of ice, the cold douche, or the ether-spray might be serviceable in some cases. During the height of an attack it is best to leave the patient in perfect quiet, and not to give food or anything else. In the *intervals* many of the measures recommended for the treatment of neuralgia are indicated, and among the most useful medicines may be mentioned strychnine, arsenic, quinine, and bromide of potassium. Tincture of cannabis indica, m v-x thrice daily, has been found beneficial by several observers. Tincture of actaea racemosa has also been specially recommended. It is requisite to attend carefully to the state of the alimentary canal; and to avoid all causes which are likely to give rise to an attack of migraine.

CHAPTER LXXXIII.

EPILEPSY—FALLING SICKNESS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Epilepsy is the name given to a "disease in which there are convulsions of a certain type, or sudden loss or impairment of consciousness, but in which the convulsions are not directly due to active organic brain disease, to reflex irritation, or abnormal blood-states, and in which the loss of consciousness is not due to primary failure of the heart's action." (Gowers.) As there are no visible changes in the brain to explain these phenomena, the condition is termed "*idiopathic*," to distinguish it from the epileptiform convulsions that occur:—1. In connection with various *organic diseases of the brain or its membranes*, for example meningitis, hydrocephalus, tumour, embolism, softening, or syphilitic disease. 2. As the result of morbid conditions of the *skull*, which lead to pressure upon or irritation of the brain, such as exostosis, a fracture with projecting spicula of bone, or necrosis. 3. From disorders of the *cerebral circulation*, leading to congestion or anæmia. 4. In certain forms of *blood-poisoning*, for example uremia and saturnism. Although organic changes have been described in the brain and meninges, in idiopathic epilepsy these are commonly absent, and when present they are probably the effects of repeated fits, rather than the cause of the epileptic phenomena. One view as to the nature of epilepsy is that it depends upon some nutritive change in the medulla oblongata, upper part of the cord, and vaso-motor centres, which leads to excessive and perverted action in these parts, inducing sudden contraction of the vessels of the brain and cord, as well as of those supplying the muscles of the face, pharynx, larynx, respiratory apparatus, and limbs, to which all the subsequent phenomena of the fit may be traced. According to another theory a sudden discharge of nerve-force takes place from an immense number of nerve-cells at the beginning of a fit, which leads to shock, and the convulsions, like other forms of this disorder, are the result of a "discharging lesion." (Hughlings Jackson.) The remote causes to which epilepsy has been attributed are:—1. *Mental disturbance*, especially emotional, for example, a sudden fright; prolonged grief or anxiety; and also excessive mental work, or undue forcing of the brain in childhood. 2. *Physical influences* affecting the brain, as a blow or fall on the head, or sunstroke. 3. Certain conditions affecting the state of the *blood and general system*, and thus influencing the nutrition of the brain, such as syphilis, rheumatism, gout, acute specific diseases, pneumonia, pregnancy. 4. *Reflex irritation*, as from dentition, worms, uterine and ovarian disturbances, and sexual excesses or masturbation. Great prominence has been given by some writers to the sexual functions as a cause of epilepsy. 5. *Hereditary taint*. Undoubtedly this has an important influence in the causation of epilepsy, especially when it comes from the mother's side. In a considerable proportion of cases either epilepsy or some allied neurosis is prevalent in the family. Probably intemperance in

the parents, syphilis, or a fright to the mother while the child is *in utero*, may be the means of originating a congenital tendency to epilepsy. The complaint tends to be developed at an earlier age in hereditary cases. Age requires special notice as a *predisposing cause* of epilepsy. In the great majority of cases the disease is developed between 10 and 20 years of age, and especially at or about the period of puberty. Sex does not seem to have any particular influence in young persons, but it is said that in persons of somewhat advanced age the proportion of cases of epilepsy is greater in women. It rarely happens that any immediate *exciting cause* of a fit can be made out.

Symptoms.—Attacks of true epilepsy assume one of two forms, of each of which it will be necessary to describe the typical characters.

1. *Epilepsia mitior*—*Petit mal*.—This form is characterized by sudden and complete loss of consciousness, coming on without any warning, and lasting only for an instant, or at most for a few seconds; accompanied with slight pallor and subsequent duskiness of the face; loss of all expression; dilated pupils; and often, but not always, slight spasmodic movements affecting the face, respiratory muscles, or limbs. If the individual is speaking, he stops in the middle of a sentence, and generally appears to hold his breath. Voluntary movements cease, but automatic actions go on as a rule, such as those which are necessary for standing, sitting, or riding. In some cases there is not absolute unconsciousness, and there may be but a feeling of sudden vertigo—*vertige épileptique*—which causes the patient to cling to the nearest object. After the attack there is some degree of mental confusion, lasting but a few minutes, during which the patient often says and does things which he afterwards forgets and denies. On recovery there is no recollection of what has happened. These attacks may be preceded by slight warning of giddiness, or there may be no warning at all. *Petit mal* may exist alone, or may be associated with the next form of epilepsy. It is frequently followed by serious mental changes, ending in dementia or mania.

2. *Epilepsia gravior*.—*Haut mal*.—The advent of a fit of epilepsy is in a large proportion of cases indicated by *premonitory symptoms*, varying in duration from an instant to several hours or days. They present great variety, being either subjective or objective. According to Gowers the *warnings* may be classified into (1) Unilateral, motor or sensory, in the face, trunk, arm, or leg; (2) Bilateral sensations in limbs, tremors, starts, etc.; (3) Visceral, especially along the course of the pneumogastric nerve; (4) Vertigo; (5) Pain in the head; (6) Psychical; (7) Special sense warnings. The so-called *aura epileptica* requires a few words of special comment. This is a peculiar sensation, well-known to the patient, which in many cases immediately precedes a fit, generally appearing to start from the distal end of a limb, especially the arm, and to run up towards the head, on reaching which part the seizure takes place. Sometimes it only extends from the elbow to the shoulder, or from the leg to the epigastrium, and has been stated to pass in some instances from the testicle or uterus to the throat. The sensation varies in its exact character, but has been compared to a stream of cold or hot air, and is frequently not unpleasant. It is curious that its ascent may sometimes be stopped, and the fit prevented, by pressure applied above the point from which the sensation starts, and this pressure need not be so powerful as to stop the circulation; occasionally a similar result will happen when the pressure is applied to the opposite arm.

Actual attack.—Three marked stages characterize an epileptic fit:—

Stage I.—The phenomena of this stage are a single, peculiarly disagreeable cry, yell, or moan in many cases, but not in all; immediately followed by absolute and instantaneous loss of consciousness, the patient falling anywhere, or often appearing to be thrown down; a violent tonic spasm of the muscles throughout the body, beginning generally in the face and limbs of one side, the whole muscular system being in a state of extreme rigidity and strain, but not equally so, and hence there is a hideous distortion of the features, limbs, and body, the latter being drawn to one side, and the neck twisted so that the head is rotated towards the shoulder of the same side, while the teeth are firmly clenched, the eyes wide open, and the eyeballs turned towards the same side; arrest of respiration, usually complete, owing to the spasm of the muscles; change in colour of the face almost invariably, in many cases deadly pallor being observed at first, followed by duskeness or lividity, or this may be present from the commencement, or be preceded by florid or dull redness; marked dilatation of the pupils; and feebleness or cessation of the pulse at the wrist, due to the muscular spasm, for the heart acts forcibly, and the carotids throb violently. Practically these phenomena may be considered as simultaneous, the whole stage not lasting longer than from two or three to thirty or forty seconds.

Stage II.—The transition to this stage is abrupt, and is indicated by restoration of breathing, the respiratory muscles becoming relaxed, and the retained air being expelled. Unconsciousness continues, but severe clonic spasms take the place of the tonic rigidity, usually beginning with twitchings about the face or in the limbs, but speedily extending more or less over the whole body, though often more violent on one side than the other. As a rule the side most affected in the first stage is convulsed more than the other; the eyes, mouth, and head being drawn to that side, while the arm and leg of the same side are usually the more convulsed. From these spasms originate the characteristic phenomena of this stage, namely, hideous distortion and clonic convulsive movements of the features and eyeballs; forcible closure and champing of the jaws, causing grating of the teeth, foaming at the mouth, partly due to formation of excess of secretion, which is blown out of the mouth, and biting of the tongue or cheek, the froth being therefore often bloody; violent convulsive movements of the body and limbs, the fingers being generally bent and the thumb pressed into the palm; alternate dilatation and contraction of the pupils; laboured, panting, and irregularly convulsive respiratory movements, often attended with gurgling sounds due to mucus in the trachea; increasing duskeness or lividity and turgidity of the face, tongue, and body generally, with distension of the veins, some of the smaller vessels sometimes giving way, thus giving rise to extensive petechiae about the face or head; profuse perspiration, the sweat being sometimes peculiarly foetid; tumultuous action of the heart, with throbbing of the large arteries, though the radial pulse is often weak; involuntary discharge of urine, faeces, or semen; and occasionally rumbling noises in the intestines, vomiting, or hiccup. The average duration of this stage is said to be from $4\frac{1}{2}$ to $5\frac{1}{2}$ minutes, but it may vary from a few seconds to 10 minutes.

Stage III.—There is a gradual return to consciousness, with cessation of the spasmody movements. After the clonic spasms have stopped, the

patient lies in a comatose state, with stertorous breathing, widely-dilated pupils and cyanosis of the face, and absence of all superficial reflexes, but usually the knee-jerks are excessive, and ankle-clonus can be obtained. He recovers consciousness in about 5 or 10 minutes, and then looks around with a bewildered, alarmed, or sad expression, and often attempts to get up or to speak, but some few minutes usually elapse before consciousness is completely restored. The heart still acts vigorously, and the skin is bathed in sweat. Vomiting occasionally takes place. A large quantity of pale and watery urine may be passed, containing excess of urea and urates, or sometimes abundant phosphates; and it is said that a trace of sugar has been found after a severe epileptic fit. After return to consciousness the patient feels usually very exhausted and sleepy, as well as mentally confused, and complains of headache. In many cases, but by no means in all, he falls into a state of heavy sleep or stupor, almost amounting to coma, attended with a stertorous noise in breathing, from which it is difficult or impossible to rouse him, and which lasts for a variable time, sometimes passing into natural sleep. The muscles are relaxed, but present occasional twitchings or slight spasmoid movements. The face generally remains more or less dusky for some time, and the petechiae continue visible. The patient is often languid and out of sorts for some days after a fit of epilepsy.

The frequency and severity of epileptic fits vary much in different cases. In a good many a tolerably marked periodicity is observed. In few instances does the interval extend beyond a month. The seizures are more frequent as a rule in severe cases, and they tend to increase in frequency and intensity as the disease advances. Not uncommonly two or more fits occur in succession, followed by a period of freedom from attacks. They are liable to come on at night as well as by day; and nocturnal fits of epilepsy may occur without the patient being in the least aware that they have taken place.

The general state of the patient often differs considerably. There is rarely perfect health, especially after epilepsy has existed for some time. Many epileptic patients suffer from headache or giddiness and various other symptoms, the general system and digestive organs being also out of condition. The mental faculties become more or less weakened in most cases, and this may end in complete dementia or dangerous epileptic insanity. Sometimes partial and limited paralysis, twitchings, curious movements, disorders affecting sensation or the special senses, and other nervous phenomena are observed. As complications of epileptic fits, coma resulting from injury to the head, apoplexy, or meningitis may arise.

Epileptiform seizures.—This term has been applied by Dr. Hughlings Jackson to attacks of an epileptic character, distinct from those of epilepsy proper, and the following are some of the prominent points to which this distinguished observer has called attention:—In all cases the spasm begins unilaterally in the hand, face, or foot. In its range it varies widely, but arbitrarily. Dr. Jackson makes three ranges, namely, monospasm; hemispasm; or where the other side of the body, or part of it, is also convulsed. The spasm progresses in a definite direction. When limited or nearly limited to an arm, it usually goes up. If in hemispasm the spasm begins in the hand, it goes up the arm and down the leg; if it begins in the foot, it goes up the leg, and, with many exceptions, down the arm. Dr. Jackson thinks that the more suddenly the spasm starts,

and the more rapidly it begins to spread, the greater the range ultimately attained, and the shorter the seizure. Consciousness is usually unaffected in limited convulsion of a limb, side of face, or even of one side of the body. Roughly speaking, consciousness usually ceases when the eyes and head begin to turn to the side first convulsed. The more sudden and rapid the spasm, the less is the range attained before consciousness is lost. In the severest epileptiform seizures consciousness ceases late in the paroxysm, while in severe epilepsy proper it ceases first thing or very early. Temporary paralysis or partial aphasia may follow the seizures; as well as temporary increased patellar tendon-reflex, and ankle-clonus on the affected side. When the fits are always of the same style, the inference is that there is persistent change in some cells in one locality, and that they occasionally attain high irritability and discharge excessively. They are due to different pathological causes, but when disease exists, it is usually in the so-called motor region of the cerebral cortex.

Diagnosis.—The chief conditions from which idiopathic epilepsy may have to be distinguished are hysteria; reflex convulsions; epileptiform attacks due to cerebral organic diseases, uræmia, or chronic alcoholism; syncope; Menière's disease; and feigned epilepsy. Some of these will be alluded to in future chapters. With regard to hysteria, a condition named *hystero-epilepsy* is now recognized, which presents a combination of the phenomena of both diseases. Attacks of *petit mal* have to be distinguished from fits of syncope; and from vertiginous attacks in cases of Menière's disease.

Prognosis.—A cautious opinion should always be given in cases of epilepsy as to the final issue. Very rarely does a fit end fatally, but this might happen in consequence of some complication. As to the curability or improvement of the disease, the favourable prognostic circumstances are its being recent, or due to some definite cause which can be removed; the patient being very young and a male; absence of hereditary taint; and the mind being unaffected. Inherited epilepsy is very rarely cured; and if the attacks have begun in early childhood from some reflex irritation, and have lasted many years, the prognosis is also very unfavourable. The mental faculties are more liable to become affected in females; in persons who are strong and healthy; when the disease begins late in life; when the fits occur in rapid succession, with attacks of "petit mal"; and, it is said, when the spasms are not marked during the fit, and there is little or no subsequent coma.

Treatment.—*1. During a fit.*—It is best not to interfere actively during an epileptic seizure in most cases, merely attending to the matters mentioned when speaking of convulsions in general, preventing injury, but not holding the patient forcibly, and putting something between the teeth. If the fit does not soon cease, water may be dashed over the face and chest, and should it become dangerously prolonged, such measures might be had recourse to as the application of sinapisms to various parts; a warm bath, with cold affusion while the patient is in it; ice to the spine or head; stimulant enemata, or one containing chloral hydrate and bromide of potassium; local removal of blood from about the head; or even venesection, should there be great danger of asphyxia. After a fit the patient should be placed in a comfortable position, kept quiet, and allowed to sleep.

2. In the intervals.—There are certain well-defined principles to be followed in the management of an epileptic patient. *a.* It is requisite

to look for and remove any obvious cause of epilepsy or epileptiform seizures. Thus, should there be any local irritation, such as a foreign body irritating a nerve, or intestinal worms, this must be got rid of. Further, as epileptic attacks may depend on some central organic mischief, careful investigation is required in order, if possible, to find out and treat any such disease, especially if due to syphilis, when iodide of potassium is of the greatest service. Any constitutional condition must be duly attended to. *b.* The general management of an epileptic patient is highly important. He should have a nutritious but light and digestible diet; take moderate daily exercise in the open air; be surrounded by proper hygienic conditions; avoid much mental work, especially in the case of children, who should be kept from school, though if the general health is good, older patients should follow some light occupation; have cold or tepid sponging daily, with friction afterwards; check any vicious habit, such as excessive venery, masturbation, or intemperance; and take a sufficient amount of sleep, the head being well-raised in bed. It is necessary to regulate the digestive functions, especially avoiding constipation, but only mild aperients should be used. Iron if there is anaemia, quinine, strychnine, arsenic, and other nervine or general tonics are often of service. Cod-liver oil is also frequently of much value. Many epileptics require constant watching, and all need more or less supervision; above all, they must not be allowed to go into positions where they would be in danger from falling, or near a fire or water. Epileptic patients decidedly ought not to marry.

3. Specific treatment.—Innumerable specifics have been brought forward for the cure of epilepsy. Amongst these may be mentioned bromides, especially bromide of potassium, sodium, ammonium, and strontium, or several combined; hydrobromic acid; nitrite of sodium; borax; belladonna or atropine; stramonium; conium; extract or tincture of cannabis indica; preparations of zinc, especially the oxide, the sulphate in gradually increasing doses up to 10, 15, 20, or more grains thrice daily, the valerianate, the acetate, and the bromide; ammonio-sulphate of copper; nitrate of silver in minute doses; opium in small quantities; paraldehyde; and chloroform by inhalation, but not in sufficient quantity to induce complete insensibility, either systematically employed at certain intervals daily, or only administered when there are signs of an impending fit. Nitrite of amyl and nitro-glycerine have also been specially recommended. Doubtless all these agents prove serviceable in different cases, and sometimes they may be usefully combined, as, for example, belladonna with sulphate of zinc. Bromide of potassium has been found eminently beneficial, when given in doses of gr. v-xxx or more, thrice daily, on an empty stomach. It almost always lessens the number of fits; often keeps them off entirely, though the dose has generally to be gradually increased in order to accomplish this end; and sometimes a complete cure is effected by its use. The bromide is found to be particularly useful when the attacks are chiefly or entirely of the “haut mal” type; when they are very frequent; and when they occur mainly by day. The late Brown-Sequard recommended a combination of bromide of potassium and ammonium. The treatment of epilepsy by the constant application of ice to the spine seems to be useful in some instances. In obstinate and dangerous cases local removal of blood from the back of the neck, followed by counter-irritation by means of blisters, the actual cautery, setons, or issues, either over this region, or between the scapulae, has been recommended. In

very severe cases it has also been advocated to shave the scalp and apply croton oil liniment. When there is an aura starting from a limb, finger, or toe, a circular blister applied around the part may prove useful. The treatment of epilepsy by clitoridectomy, castration, and such methods needs only be mentioned to be emphatically condemned. Trephining the skull has been resorted to with advantage in many cases of epileptiform convulsions due to organic disease; and in several cases tumours have been removed from the motor cortex of the brain, in cases where an exact localization of the lesion could be made from the character of the initial tonic spasm of the fit. In a class of cases which he terms "focal epilepsies," where the seat of origin in the brain of the fits can be recognized by the initial spasm, but in which there is no gross lesion, Victor Horsley advocates exposure and excision of the affected focus or foci.

4. *Prevention of fits.*—Some authorities attach considerable importance to the *prevention* of the fits in the curative treatment of epilepsy, by attending to warnings, and thus endeavouring to make the attacks abortive, and to prevent the changes in the nerve-centres which increase the tendency to other attacks. The measures to be adopted depend upon the nature of the premonitory symptoms. Thus, if a sensory aura is felt in a limb, a handkerchief or band should be applied tightly around this part rapidly, and several times in succession. A case was under my notice for a considerable time, in which the aura started from the thumb, and the patient used to prevent fits after a severe struggle by drawing a handkerchief tightly round the wrist. Brown-Séquard has shown that the fits may be averted by applying the ligature round another limb; as well as by pinching or striking the skin, or irritating its nerves by heat, cold, galvanism, or repeated pricks with a needle. If an involuntary muscular contraction precedes loss of consciousness, it is recommended to draw forcibly on the contracted limbs, so as to elongate them; or a blow, pressure, or friction upon parts where some muscles become rigid may have an equally good effect. In cases where disorders of breathing or laryngismus occur at the outset, the use of ether or chloroform as an *anesthetic* is recommended. In connection with laryngismus, Brown-Séquard found cauterization of the fauces with a strong solution of nitrate of silver very efficacious. Among other preventive measures advocated by this authority in different cases may be mentioned the administration of an *emetic*, *purgative*, or *stimulant*; a full dose of chloral hydrate; subcutaneous injection of atropine or morphine; the immersion of the hands in hot water; inhalation of nitrite of amyl; rapid and ample respiratory movements for five or six minutes; jumping or running; and reading very fast.

CHAPTER LXXXIV.

HYSTERIA AND ALLIED AFFECTIONS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Hysteria is a very complex morbid condition, of the nature of which it is impossible to speak definitely. It belongs to the nervous disorders, but its exact seat cannot be localized, though the brain is obviously much disturbed. No characteristic pathological change has been discovered, but there is probably some nutritive derangement of the entire nervous system. The attempt to localize the primary disorder in the sympathetic ganglia, and to attribute the phenomena of hysteria to vaso-motor disturbance, has no sufficient foundation.

Hysteria is infinitely more common among females, beginning usually from 15 to 18 or 20 years of age, but sometimes at a much earlier or later period, in exceptional cases only developing at the change of life. Young girls, old maids, widows, and childless married women are the most frequent subjects of the complaint, and its manifestations often cease after marriage. Hysterical fits are more common about the menstrual periods. These facts have led many to consider the hysterical condition as being primarily connected with some disturbance of the sexual organs or functions, which secondarily affects the nervous system. It has thus been attributed to malpositions of the uterus; undue sexual excitement and unsatisfied desire; venereal excess; and disordered menstruation, in the way of menorrhagia, amenorrhœa, or dysmenorrhœa. Charcot attached great importance to ovarian hyperæsthesia as a cause of hysteria. That uterine and ovarian disturbances do help materially in exciting hysterical attacks in a large number of instances cannot be doubted, but it is a mistake to suppose that these constitute the essence of the complaint. Its frequency in women is probably due to the inherent conditions of their nervous system, often aggravated by their mode of existence. The general system may be disordered by many conditions, but the sexual functions assume an undue prominence in the mind, and thus any disturbance in connection with these functions produces an exaggerated effect. In many cases of hysteria there is nothing wrong about the generative organs or functions, while it occurs often enough in married women with families. The improvement which frequently takes place after marriage may be accounted for by the change in habits, thoughts, purposes, occupation, and general surroundings which this event usually involves.

Hysteria is in some instances distinctly traceable to digestive disturbances, especially long-continued constipation with accumulation of fæces. Causes referable to the mode in which girls are brought up, and to their general habits of life, aid materially in its production, such as want of useful employment; indolent and luxurious habits; over-petting and spoiling; subjection to the petty worries of fashionable life; keeping late hours at parties; or reading sentimental novels. Temperament and hereditary predisposition to nervous affections may have some influence, but the latter may often be explained by the patient imitating a hysterical mother. In not a few cases hysteria results from depressing

influences, such as long-continued anxiety or grief; disappointed affection; or over-work, with bad feeding and improper hygienic conditions.

It may further depend upon some definite chronic disease, either local or general. In some instances the condition called hysterical can only be attributed to wickedness and perversity.

The hysterical state is now and then observed in males, but infinitely rarely an actual fit of hysteria. The subjects of this condition are usually boys about the age of puberty, or men from 35 to 50 years of age, and its causes are excessive venery or masturbation; over-work, with long-continued worry and anxiety; excessive and prolonged mental labour; some violent shock; senile degeneration; or commencing chronic cerebral disease.

The *exciting cause* of the first hysterical fit is generally some powerful and sudden emotional disturbance, such as a fright, but this may be very slight if the patient has previously been in a state of mental restraint, with pent-up feelings; or has been subject to depressing influences for a considerable period. Subsequent paroxysms also are liable to arise from a much slighter disturbance than that which brought on the first attack. Suppressed laughter may lead to a very severe fit of hysteria. Occasionally it results from physical disturbance, such as injury; loss of blood; or some acute illness.

Symptoms.—It is impossible to give even an outline of the diverse clinical phenomena which may be presented in cases of so-called hysteria. There is scarcely a complaint which may not be simulated. In most cases, however, the prominent features are an undue excitability of the emotions, with defect in the power of the will and intellect; alterations in the general cutaneous sensibility, and in the special senses, usually in the direction of hyperæsthesia and dysæsthesia; and a tendency to involuntary muscular movements, or to some other disturbance of the motor functions. It will be necessary to describe first the characters of certain paroxysms or *hysterical fits*; and then to point out some of the principal phenomena which may be noticed in the *hysterical state*.

The Hysterical Fit.—As a rule a fit of hysteria occurs when other persons are present, and never comes on during sleep. The attack is not sudden, but gradually worked up to, the patient generally having time to place herself in a comfortable position, and to adjust her dress; it is often preceded by sighing, sobbing, laughing, moaning, nonsensical talking, gesticulation, or a feeling of *globus hystericus*, but not by any peculiar cry. During the actual fit there may be apparent unconsciousness, but this is not complete, as can be determined by touching the conjunctiva; while the patient is generally aware of what is going on around, and looks out from under her eyelids occasionally. Spasmodic movements are observed, varying from slight twitchings in the limbs to powerful general convulsive movements, or almost tetanic spasms, with opisthotonus. Hysterical patients often struggle violently and throw themselves about, while the thumbs are frequently turned in, and the hands clenched. During these movements, which may last only a few moments, or for an indefinite time with or without intermissions, there is no lividity of the face or other sign of interference with respiration. Breathing is noisy and irregular, while gurgling and spluttering sounds are frequently produced in the throat and mouth. The pupils are not dilated, and react to light; in many cases slight internal strabismus is observed, and the eyes are turned up from time to time, or the eyelids

are kept forcibly closed. The pulse is normal. There is no biting of the tongue, rarely any foaming at the mouth, and no involuntary micturition. The paroxysm generally terminates with crying, laughing, sighing, or yawning, and is followed by a feeling of exhaustion, but not usually by coma, though in rare instances the patient falls into a kind of prolonged trance. Frequently voluminous eructations of gas take place; and there is often a copious discharge of pale watery urine. Rarely an attack is followed by a state of hysterical mania, in which the patient is not responsible for her actions.

The Hysterical State.—The chief deviations from the normal state which so-called hysterical patients present may be considered as they affect the *mental, sensory, and motor* functions respectively.

a. Mental.—There is defect of will and of mental power in hysteria; while the emotional functions are not under proper control, being very readily excited, and tending to lead to exaggerated actions. Some patients affirm that they cannot perform various acts, such as standing, walking, or speaking, which they do perfectly well when they forget themselves. Frequently the spirits fluctuate very rapidly and without cause, from morbid cheerfulness to despondency, and the hysterical patient sobs, sighs, cries, or laughs without adequate reason. Ideation and thought may be over-active in some respects, but the general intellectual vigour is much impaired. Many hysterical patients talk a great deal of nonsense. They have an exaggerated feeling of self-importance; seek attention from others; and are as a rule never so pleased as when they become objects of attraction or sympathy, or are creating a sensation—which accounts for “fasting-girls,” trances, some cases of supposed somnambulism, and allied conditions. Many are very restless, irritable, and impatient. Others, however, seem simply indifferent to all around, and remain melancholy, silent, motionless, and apathetic for long periods together, caring nothing about dress or anything else. In some cases a form of mania sets in. Hysterical patients are strongly disposed to take to drinking to excess, especially in secret.

b. Sensory.—Commonly a condition of general exaggerated sensibility, hyperæsthesia, or nervousness exists, both as regards cutaneous sensation and the special senses, an unusually slight stimulus being recognized or producing an undue effect. Further, there is often a condition of dysæsthesia, or of painful sensation from slight irritation. This is evidenced chiefly by cutaneous tenderness in certain parts, sometimes intense, especially in the left side; along some portion or the whole of the spinal column, slight pressure over which will often cause severe pains to shoot to distant parts; around the joints; and over the abdomen. The apparent tenderness is greatly diminished by taking off the patient’s attention, and it is very superficial, signs of suffering being elicited by a slight touch or pinch of the skin, but not when steady and firm pressure is made, or when a joint is rudely jogged. Dysæsthesia from slight stimuli may also be evinced in connection with the special senses. Spontaneous pains are commonly complained of in various parts, of a more or less neuralgic character, frequently described as very intense, and being especially seated at the top or back of the head, here often assuming the characters of *clavus hystericus*; in the left side; along the back; over the sacrum or coccyx; and in the joints. Paræsthesiæ, such as formication, numbness, tingling, flashes of light, tinnitus aurium, or a peculiar smell or taste, are also common. A curious sensation often complained of is that named *globus hystericus*, which is a feeling of constriction or

of a "ball in the throat," either fixed there and giving rise to the sensation of choking, the patient making all kinds of ineffectual efforts to get rid of it, or ascending upwards from the epigastrium, or even from below this region. In exceptional cases hyperæsthesia or even complete anaesthesia of the skin and deeper structures, or of the special senses, is observed. Anaesthesia is generally limited in extent, and irregular in distribution, but there may be hemianæsthesia, or the loss of sensation is confined to the lower limbs, or may be generally distributed. *Hysterical hemianæsthesia* may be complete or incomplete. There is often analgesia, with or without insensibility to heat and cold. Its characteristic features, when the hemianæsthesia is complete, have been described by Charcot and others as follows :—There is a distinct line of demarcation separating the anæsthetic from the healthy part, often corresponding closely to the median line; the affected side is comparatively cold and pale; there is a more or less permanent ischaemia, and in intense cases there may be a difficulty in inducing bleeding by pricking the anæsthetic part with a pin; the mucous membranes are involved as well as the skin; the organs of the special senses are affected to some extent on the anæsthetic side, and in connection with vision the phenomenon called *achromatopsia* may be observed in some cases; the viscera do not seem to be implicated, but, on the contrary, ovarian hyperæsthesia is observed on the anæsthetic side. If paresis or contracture supervenes, it shows itself on the affected side. The hemianæsthesia is mostly permanent, but presents variations in degree, and in the intensity of its phenomena, some of which are also liable to fluctuate. Patients may be quite unaware of the existence of this symptom. Charcot attached great importance to ovarian hyperæsthesia or *ovarialgia* in cases of hysteria, to which he attributed the following characters :—It is indicated by pain in the lower part of the abdomen, usually felt on one side, especially the left, but sometimes on both, and occupying the extreme limits of the hypogastric region. It may be extremely acute, the patient not tolerating the slightest touch; but in other cases pressure is necessary to bring it out. The ovary may be felt to be tumefied and enlarged. When the condition is unilateral, it may be accompanied with hemianæsthesia, paresis, or contracture on the same side as the *ovarialgia*; if it is bilateral these phenomena also become bilateral. Pressure upon the ovary brings out certain sensations which constitute the *aura hysterica*, but firm and systematic compression has frequently a decisive effect upon the hysterical convulsive attack, the intensity of which it can diminish, and even the cessation of which it may sometimes determine, though it has no effect upon the permanent symptoms of hysteria (Charcot). The bladder or rectum may be affected as regards their sensations in cases of hysteria, leading to great accumulation of urine or faeces, of which the patient is not aware.

c. *Motor.*—Voluntary movements are generally defective in the hysterical state, and the power of the will over the muscles is weakened; while all kinds of involuntary movements are exaggerated and very readily excited, namely, those due to emotions, ideas, sensations, reflex irritation, and organic causes. The patient starts suddenly from any slight disturbance, rushes about under the influence of some notion or other, and does various other silly acts. Spasmodic movements or fixed rigidity or "contracture" of different muscles are not uncommonly observed, independent of fits of hysteria; while cramps are very common,

as well as spasms of internal organs. Occasionally some form of motor paralysis is noticed; generally it follows a hysterical paroxysm, and is limited to one limb, or more often to a part of it, but may be more or less hemiplegic, paraplegic, or even general in its distribution. As a rule sensation is not impaired in the paralyzed part; the paralysis is incomplete; nutrition is not at all impaired, or only slightly after long duration of the paralysis; while electric irritability is usually unaffected, though electric sensibility may be lessened, and now and then both are diminished. Sometimes rigid flexion of one or more joints is observed, difficult to overcome, which is evidently partly due to voluntary opposition on the part of the patient, and when it is overcome the limb rapidly assumes its former position, sometimes flying back with a sudden spring or jerk. Hysterical paralysis is liable to rapid changes, and may cease suddenly. Under chloroform it completely disappears, and power is restored. The important diagnostic marks of *hysterical hemiplegia* are that it is usually incomplete; that the tongue and face are rarely involved, though there may be ptosis; that the manner of walking is different from that characteristic of true hemiplegia, there being merely a dragging of the leg without any swinging movement, while the toes are raised; and that when the patient is made to bend forward, the arm is held back. In *hysterical paraplegia* also the paralysis is rarely complete, and one leg is more affected than the other, generally the left; movement of the limbs can often be readily performed in the recumbent posture, but when an attempt is made to walk, the patient being well-supported on either side, all power and control over the muscles seem to be gone, and she falls if the support is removed, but generally manages to recover herself suddenly when near the ground. The *patellar-reflex* is often exaggerated, and ankle-clonus may temporarily be developed. The bladder and rectum are usually unaffected. *Aphonia* is a frequent symptom in hysterical patients, resulting from a form of laryngeal paralysis. Here there is no alteration in the quality of the voice as a rule, but it becomes a mere whisper, and if the patient is asked to make an effort to speak, even the power of whispering may be lost. Cough is, however, attended with the usual sound. This aphonia often comes on and disappears with remarkable suddenness, especially under the influence of a strong emotion. Some hysterical patients refuse even to attempt to speak. A curious enlargement of the abdomen is observed sometimes, constituting the so-called *phantom tumour*. This region then presents a symmetrical prominence in front, often of large size, with a constriction below the margin of the thorax and above the pubes. The enlargement is quite smooth and uniform; soft; very mobile as a whole from side to side; somewhat resonant but variable on percussion; and not painful. Vaginal examination gives negative results; and under chloroform the prominence immediately subsides, returning again as the patient regains consciousness.

Most hysterical patients are *out of health*, many of them being weak and *anaemic*. It is a remarkable fact, however, that even when they eat but a very small amount, nutrition often does not seem to fail. Among the numerous symptoms complained of or noticed in different cases may be mentioned:—*a. Digestive disturbances*, especially flatulence; borborygmi; copious eructations; cardialgia; depraved appetite; fulness after food; obstinate constipation; gastralgia or intestinal colic. *b. Circulatory disorders*, many of them due to vaso-motor disturbance, such as palpitation; tendency to syncope; epigastric pulsation; throbbing

of vessels; coldness of the extremities; sudden flushing and heat of the face. *c. Respiratory symptoms*, for example, a sense of oppression across the chest; fits of hurried and laboured breathing, sometimes assuming a very serious aspect; spasmodic, irritable, dry cough, of long duration, and having a peculiar squeaking, barking, or howling quality; hiccup; and spitting of blood. *d. Menstrual disorders.* *e. Disorders of micturition.* There may be great irritability of the bladder, with frequent micturition; or in other cases dysuria is present, the urine being retained. Oliguria or even total suppression of urine may be a transient phenomenon in hysterical cases; and Charcot believed that hysterical ischuria may occur as a permanent symptom, in connection with which repeated vomitings take place, the ejected matters occasionally, it is said, presenting the appearance and exhaling the odour of urine, and yielding on chemical analysis a certain quantity of urea. This condition is not accompanied with any of the signs of uræmia. Many authorities doubt the reality of its occurrence, and in most cases it is unquestionably merely a pretended symptom.

The exact grouping of the phenomena above described is extremely variable in different cases, and also in the same case from time to time. The hysterical state may be permanent; or it only breaks out at intervals, with greater or less intensity. It is in connection with hysteria that the peculiar phenomena supposed to arise from applying different metals to the surface of the body have been noticed.

Hystero-epilepsy.—A few observations may be made here with reference to the condition which has been termed *hystero-epilepsy* or *epileptiform hysteria*. In this condition paroxysms occur, characterized by great intensity of the convulsive phenomena, combined with certain more or less marked features which recall the phenomena of epilepsy. The cases thus denominated present various characters. 1. In one group, which is the most frequent, the hysterical seizures and epileptic fits remain distinct—*hystero-epilepsy with distinct crises*, and as subdivisions of this group Charcot gives the following:—*a.* Epilepsy is the primary disease, upon which hysteria becomes grafted, most frequently at the period of puberty. *b.* Epilepsy is superadded to hysteria. This variety is much rarer. *c. Combinations of a secondary order*—(i.) Convulsive hysteria coexists along with *petit mal*. (ii.) Convulsive epilepsy is superadded to some of the phenomena of non-convulsive hysteria, such as contracture, anaesthesia, &c. 2. In another group the attacks are of a mixed character—*hystero-epilepsy with combined crises*. This class of cases is thus described by Charcot:—*a.* The mixed attack is from the outset epileptiform hysteria. *b.* The hysterical aura always constitutes a prominent symptom. It occupies the abdomen, being generally of long duration, and does not affect the head from the first, or one of the extremities, as takes place in epilepsy with aura. *c.* In the convulsive attack there is at first an *epileptic phase*—a sudden shriek, extreme pallor, loss of consciousness, a fall, distortion of the features—then tonic rigidity seizes on all the members. This rigidity is rarely followed by the clonic convulsions, brief in duration, limited in oscillation, predominating on one side of the body. The face may become greatly tumefied and violet-coloured. There is foaming at the mouth, and the foam is sometimes bloody. Finally, general relaxation of the muscles may follow, with coma, and stertorous respiration during a less or greater length of time. *d.* To this first phase the *clonic phase* succeeds. Then all is hysteria; great gesticulations, having a purposive

character, supervene, and sometimes violent contortions are made, characteristic of the most various passions, such as terror or hatred. At the same time paroxysmal delirium breaks out. *e.* The termination of the attack is marked by sobs, tears, laughter, etc. These different phases do not always succeed each other in so regular a manner; they get entangled occasionally, and now one, now the other predominates.

As to the *nature* of these hystero-epileptic seizures, some authorities regard them as a mixture or combination of the two complaints—a *hybrid* composed half of hysteria and half of epilepsy. According to another view, hysteria is the *sole* and original disease, and the convolution, epileptic in form, only appears as an accessory element. This is the view which Charcot supported, on the following grounds:—The epileptic type is never represented in the seizure-fits, save in an imperfect manner; there is never any history of *petit mal* or of epileptic vertigo; and even when the attacks are frequently repeated, obnubilation of the intellect and dementia are never the consequences. Again, in rapidly succeeding fits of true epilepsy the temperature rises quickly to a high degree, accompanied with serious symptoms and often followed by a fatal termination; whereas in hystero-epilepsy the temperature rarely exceeds the normal standard, and the general state of the patient is not of a kind to inspire uneasiness, even if the fits are very numerous, and continue for several days. In this country hystero-epilepsy is certainly very much less severe than in France, and does not present such marked phases.

It will be convenient in this connection just to allude to certain curious nervous phenomena occasionally observed. 1. *Catalepsy*.—In this condition the will seems to be cut off from certain muscles, and whatever position the affected part is placed in—for instance, a limb—it will remain fixed thus for an indefinite time. Catalepsy may or may not be accompanied with unconsciousness. Sensation is usually much impaired, and may be lost. The cataleptic state is sometimes associated with organic disease of the brain; or with serious organic visceral disease. 2. *Trance*.—Here the individual lies as if dead, being ghastly pale, circulation and respiration having almost ceased. Persons in a trance have been “laid out” as dead. 3. *Ecstasy*.—The patient pretends to see visions. Often this is combined with ridiculous dancing movements, such as are practised by certain religious communities.

Diagnosis.—Attention to the characters described as pertaining to a hysterical paroxysm, and the circumstances under which it arises, will usually enable it to be distinguished from epileptic and all other kinds of fits. In women the hysterical state should always be borne in mind, as explaining many of the ailments of which they complain. Among the most important affections which it may simulate are diseases of the brain and spinal cord; disease of the spinal column; peritonitis; abdominal tumours; laryngitis; and diseases of the joints. The general signs of hysteria; the absence of pyrexia, or of the characteristic symptoms belonging to the several affections mentioned; the peculiar superficial nature of any pain or tenderness present; the characters of the different kinds of paralysis, as already described; and the effects of the administration of chloroform, will in most cases enable a satisfactory conclusion to be arrived at.

Treatment.—1. *Of a Hysterical Fit.*—But little interference is needed as a rule. An important matter is to get rid of the numerous

officious and sympathizing individuals who generally surround the patient. She should be treated firmly but kindly, an endeavour being made to gain her confidence, first ascertaining, if possible, the cause of the fit. Care must be taken to prevent injury, and the clothes should be loosened about the neck and chest. If anything further is demanded, affusion of cold water over the face; a shower-bath; the application of ammonia to the nostrils; or the plan of closing firmly the nostrils and mouth for an instant, so that the patient cannot breathe, may be resorted to. In obstinate cases a moderate faradie shock does no harm. If any medicine is needed, aromatic spirit of ammonia with valerian or asafœtida, or foetid spirit of ammonia, may be given. Charcot revived the treatment formerly adopted, of making firm pressure over the ovarian region to check hysterical fits, especially if they are of a severe type, but this method frequently fails in this country.

2. *Of the Hysterical State.*—The management of persistent and confirmed hysteria is often very difficult. Mental and moral guidance is most important, and the patient should be taught to look away from herself and her grievances, and to engage in some useful occupation. Any injurious habit must be rectified. Change of scene and associations, especially with travelling, is often very serviceable. Any cause of discomfort at home or elsewhere should be removed, if possible. General treatment, directed to the state of the system and of the blood, is often most beneficial; attention being also paid to diet, and to the state of the digestive organs. On no account should hysterical patients be encouraged to take alcoholic stimulants. The "Weir-Mitchell" method of treatment is practised in certain severe cases of hysteria. It consists in separating the patient entirely from her friends and home; placing her under a competent nurse; enforcing absolute rest of body and mind; giving her a large quantity of food; and employing massage or in some cases faradization of the muscles. This treatment is continued for some weeks.

Various symptoms often call for interference in hysteria. Pains in different parts of the body are best relieved by belladonna or opium plasters or liniments; that about the joints by warm poultices or fomentations sprinkled with laudanum. Hypodermic injection of morphine may be required. For restlessness and sleeplessness one of the bromides is the best remedy. Paralysis must be treated by electricity; and contracture counteracted by fixing the limbs in other positions by means of splints or other mechanical apparatus, and by passive movements. If necessary, chloroform may be used; this agent may also be employed to get rid of a "phantom tumour." I have in several instances known hysterical aphonia cured by applying a small blister across the larynx, or even a strip of belladonna plaster, these probably acting by influencing the imagination of the patient. In obstinate cases the vocal cords may be galvanized; or the patient may be charged with franklinic electricity, and sparks then taken from over the larynx. It is questionable how far such drugs as asafœtida and valerian are useful in hysteria, when used as a means of cure, except in being very disagreeable; they are valuable, however, as *antispasmodics*. Certain *nervine tonics* may be serviceable in some cases.

CHAPTER LXXXV.

HYPOCHONDRIASIS.

Aetiology.—The affection thus named is in reality merely a mental condition, characterized by inordinate attention on the part of the patient to his own real or supposed bodily ailments and sensations. Adult males of the better class, who have no occupation, are the usual subjects of the complaint, but it is not uncommon to meet with it in lesser degrees among working men in out-patient hospital practice.

Symptoms.—As a rule some actual complaint sets up the hypochondriacal state originally, especially digestive or biliary disorders; venereal disease; or some acute illness. In other instances the symptoms are from the first purely imaginary. The precise symptoms complained of vary much, and they are liable to change from time to time, or new phenomena are added, for which the hypochondriac is ever on the look-out. These patients generally present a healthy appearance, while they sleep and perform their ordinary functions satisfactorily. In typical cases they go the round of the “doctors” if they can afford it; take any amount of physic, which they want to be always changing, being particularly anxious to try any new remedy that becomes fashionable; are delighted to talk about their ailments, often making use of scientific terms; consult every medical work they can get hold of; like to be examined again and again; and are often themselves much addicted to examining their pulse, tongue, urine, and stools. They are very particular about their food and drink, and often as to their dress and general “get up.” Hydropathic and similar establishments, as well as districts famed for mineral waters, are favourite places of resort for hypochondriacs. Their moral character, and their feelings towards friends remain unaltered. These cases are always very difficult to improve, being frequently quite incurable. Ultimately they may become wretched misanthropes, and exclude themselves from all society. In the less pronounced cases hypochondriacs merely fix their attention on one or more symptoms, and cannot be persuaded that these are not due to some serious disease. The condition named *agoraphobia* may be regarded as a form of hypochondriasis, in which the patient dreads being out in the streets alone, and cannot go into the midst of any public gathering.

Treatment.—The main point in treating hypochondriacs is for the practitioner to try to acquire some mental control over them, and to make them believe in him, by investigating their case properly, and showing that he takes an interest in and thoroughly understands it. They cannot be talked out of their ailments, but kind and judicious reasoning may often do much, and they should be urged to take off their attention from their symptoms, to mingle in society, travel, or otherwise occupy themselves. Attention must be paid to bathing, exercise, and other modes of promoting the general health. The diet and state of the digestive organs should also be regulated. As to medicines, something has generally to be administered to hypochondriacs, and the best plan is just to treat the prominent symptoms, taking care not to give anything that can do harm. It is often very useful to send such subjects to hydropathic institutions or mineral Spas, chiefly on account of the change they experience, and the society they meet.

CHAPTER LXXXVI.

CHOREA—ST. VITUS'S DANCE.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Many views have been advanced as to the nature of the complaint named chorea, but only the most important of these views can be alluded to here.

No morbid appearances have yet been acknowledged as characteristic of chorea. Dr. Dickinson has described the morbid appearances observed in several fatal cases as widely-spread symmetrical hyperæmia and its consequences, affecting the nervous centres, but especially the ganglia at the base of the brain and the spinal cord, particularly the upper part of the latter, and the posterior and lateral portions of its grey matter. The hyperæmia was most marked in the arteries, and its effects become apparent according to the duration of the disease, namely, haemorrhages, peri-arterial exudations and degenerations, and spots of sclerosis in chronic cases. To this increased vascularity and its consequences Dr. Dickinson would attribute the phenomena of chorea, localizing the disturbance chiefly in the spinal cord. He considers it as mainly produced by causes belonging to two classes, namely, the rheumatic condition; and various kinds of irritation, mental and reflex, in connection with the nervous system. He regards the lesions as points of irritation, calculated to excite nervous functions unduly, and thus to lead to muscular excitement.

A theory which was first started by Kirkes, and which is supported by Hughlings Jackson, Broadbent, and others, attributes certain cases of chorea to minute emboli, which are conveyed from vegetations on the valves of the heart, and become lodged in the small vessels of the convolutions near the corpora striata and optic thalami; or in these centres themselves, and other neighbouring parts of the brain. Broadbent localizes the mischief in the corpora striata; Jackson in the adjoining convolutions. Bastian regards the plugs as being of the nature of thrombi, which are formed of accumulations of white corpuscles. As a consequence impaired nutrition of the affected nerve-centres results, leading to disturbance, but not to complete abolition of their functions. The embolic theory is believed especially to apply to those cases in which chorea accompanies acute rheumatism.

Another view adopted with regard to the pathology of chorea is that it is entirely a *functional* disorder, affecting the motor centres of the brain or spinal cord. Again, it has been asserted to be of *infective* origin, and due to micro-organisms. The pathology of this complaint is, however, still obscure, none of the theories put forward being incontestably supported by facts.

With regard to the *exciting causes* of chorea, cases of this disease come mainly under three categories, according as they are associated with (1) acute rheumatism; (2) some mental shock or emotional disorder, especially a sudden fright; (3) an anaemic condition of the blood and general debility. Each of these demands brief consideration.

The relation of chorea to rheumatism is now generally recognized, but different observers have come to very different conclusions as to the frequency and importance of this relationship. Thus Dr. Stephen Mackenzie, from an analysis of seventy-two cases, found "that rheumatism had pre-existed in nearly half the cases, and that there were strong grounds for believing that it had been an antecedent in a very much larger proportion of cases." On the other hand, Dr. Sturges concludes that "chorea has nothing to do with rheumatism in three-fourths of the cases;" and "that acute articular rheumatism, although rare in the history of chorea, occurs in such association with it as to justify the assumption of some direct relationship existing in a very small proportion of examples, but that no such connection can be asserted on behalf of rheumatism generally." As this writer states, however, "until we agree upon the particular signs and symptoms which are to be accepted as valid evidence of rheumatism, we have no common factors to deal with, and may expect the remarkable discrepancies in results which actually appear." It is well-known that rheumatism in children often occurs without any of the usual prominent symptoms, or that these are very slight. Certainly there may be endocarditis or pericarditis with choreic symptoms and a high temperature, and no joint-symptoms. As already stated, embolism is supposed to be the usual cause of chorea associated with acute rheumatism.

Mental or psychical disturbance is a very common cause of chorea, and fright is of peculiar frequency in this relationship. Dr. Sturges affirms that psychical disturbance far outweighs all other immediate causes of chorea put together; and asserts that two-thirds of the cases analyzed were due to fright, or something allied to fright. This observer thinks that there are many causes of mental distress which are not revealed in the history of the patients. Chorea may, however, be produced by other emotional disorders besides fright; and it may also be mentioned in this connection that the complaint may arise from imitation, when children associate with others who are suffering from it. This class of causes act most readily upon those who are weak and anaemic.

In some instances chorea cannot be traced to any definite cause, and must be attributed merely to marked anaemia and general debility. The complaint is referred by some writers to a definite change in the blood, and they consider that it is allied to the acute specific diseases.

Amongst individual causes to which chorea has been attributed are slight local disease or haemorrhage in connection with the nerve-centres; disease of the cerebral vessels; injury to the head or to some local nerve; reflex irritation from different sources, such as worms or painful dentition; masturbation; menstrual derangements; and pregnancy. It is most likely to occur in the first pregnancy, and may commence at any period, but most frequently during the third month. The attack is usually severe, and may be accompanied by mania.

There are some important *predisposing causes* of chorea, namely, the female sex; early age, especially from 5 to 15; the period of sexual development; hereditary tendency to various neuroses; a nervous temperament probably, and Dr. Sturges has shown that whooping-cough has more than double the frequency in choreic children than it has in others; bad living and unfavourable hygienic conditions, with consequent imperfect nutrition; a recent attack of some acute lowering illness; and a damp or cold climate or season. Anomalous choreiform movements may occur at any period of life, in connection with various organic

cerebral diseases. Certain disordered movements observed in children, and also in adults, are merely the result of a bad habit, such as frequent closure of the eye-lids, or twitching of the mouth.

Symptoms.—Chorea is characterized by peculiar persistent involuntary movements of various muscles, partaking of the character of clonic spasms; with loss of control over voluntary actions, the influence of the will over the muscles being diminished, while co-ordinating power is also impaired. The complaint generally runs a definite course, though of variable duration; the symptoms setting in gradually; reaching their height in about two or three weeks, at which they remain more or less stationary for a variable time; and then subsiding. Sometimes, however, chorea persists as a chronic condition. The first signs which attract notice are that the patient seems restless and fidgety, cannot keep quiet, jerks one of the limbs about occasionally, halts or drags one of the legs in walking, makes grimaces, performs various acts awkwardly, or drops and breaks things. Dr. Sturges gives the following as the order in which the several muscular groups yield to chorea:—The hands most, the right hand, the left arm, the face, the left hand, the arms, the right arm, the legs, the left leg, the right leg. He concludes that “the muscles chiefly affected by chorea are the same which are devoted to the higher intellectual uses, and such as children have but imperfectly acquired the use of;” and “hence the parts selected by chorea are not those which depend upon a common motor centre, but those which habitually combine in purposeful and emotional movements.”

The phenomena of chorea, when the disease is established, are very characteristic. The term “insanity of the muscles” has been appropriately applied to the absurd, disorderly, involuntary movements which are observed. As a rule they are moderate in intensity, and not painful; they exhibit great variety in combination, being not mere jerks of the muscles, but more like restless movements indicating complex co-ordinations, and often conveying an idea of purpose or design. The head is moved about in various directions; the face exhibits all sorts of ridiculous smiles, frowns, and grimaces; the tongue is often thrust out and coiled and then withdrawn again, or pushed into the cheek, or drawn into the throat, as if an attempt were being made to swallow it. The shoulders are jerked up and the arms thrown about, while various fidgety movements are carried on with the hands and fingers. The legs are frequently unaffected, being in all cases much less disturbed than the arms. Respiratory movements are infrequent, jerky, and irregular, the natural relations of the abdominal and thoracic movements being perverted during breathing; sometimes there is a dry nervous cough or grunting sound. It does not often happen that the muscles of the trunk seem to be much affected, but choreic patients are usually unable to sit or lie quietly for any length of time. The muscles of the larynx are rarely implicated, those of the pharynx never. Very commonly these involuntary movements commence and are more marked on one side than the other; or they may be entirely unilateral—*hemichorea*; or even confined to one limb. They are much intensified by attention being directed to them, as well as under the influence of emotion. A strong effort of the will or a deep inspiration may temporarily control them, but they become worse afterwards. During sleep they cease, but may be excited under the influence of dreams.

The want of control over the voluntary movements is seen in every act which the patient performs, such as walking, holding out the hand,

putting anything to the mouth, eating or drinking, smiling, attempting to take hold of or to carry any object, which is generally allowed to fall or is thrown down. Articulation is commonly indistinct and jerky. Micturition may be difficult, on account of the jerking of certain muscles. The sphincters are never affected. The muscles are in a state of decided weakness, amounting to slight paresis. A sense of fatigue and nervous exhaustion is usually experienced; while aching in the limbs, headache, and pains in the back are often complained of. The expression seems to point to some degree of mental defect, but this is mainly due to the movements of the muscles of the face, though in many cases, especially if the disease is of long duration, the intellectual faculties become somewhat obscured.

The *general health* is almost always below par, anaemia being often a prominent feature in cases of chorea. Temperature is normal unless the disease is associated with some pyrexial condition. The digestive organs are out of order in many cases. The urine is usually concentrated at first; contains excess of urea; and frequently deposits urates abundantly, as well as oxalates and phosphates sometimes.

The state of the *heart* in chorea requires special consideration. In all cases of chorea it is desirable to examine this organ every day, if practicable. There are differences of opinion as to the cardiac phenomena observed in this disease, as well as with regard to their explanation. Dr. Sturges states that the commonest heart symptom is increased frequency. In many cases the cardiac action is easily disturbed, and it may be irregular. With regard to the *physical signs*, in a certain proportion of cases the heart-sounds are merely modified, and there is no distinct murmur. The most frequent and important sign, however, is a murmur of some kind, and Dr. Stephen Mackenzie found that this was present in 54·26 per cent. of the cases analyzed by him. The murmur infinitely most common is mitral systolic, but occasionally a double murmur is heard in connection with the mitral orifice, and still more rarely it is simply praesystolic. Sometimes there is a basic systolic murmur. In markedly anaemic cases the usual haemical bruits are audible. With regard to the explanation of the murmurs, and the mitral systolic murmur more especially, in a large proportion of cases they are due to organic mischief from endocarditis, and are persistent. This is generally believed to be of a rheumatic nature; and in fatal cases of chorea, *post-mortem* examination has usually demonstrated the existence of definite morbid conditions accounting for the murmur. In some cases, however, mitral systolic murmur is not associated with organic mischief, but is an *inorganic* murmur, and different explanations have been given of the regurgitation under these circumstances. Thus it has been attributed to irregular or spasmodic action of the musculi papillares; to fatigue-paresis on the part of these muscles, so that the valves do not close properly; or to a weakened condition of the cardiac muscular walls, so that temporary dilatation occurs, with consequent enlargement of the mitral orifice, which permits regurgitation. It is also supposed that in some instances a murmur may disappear, owing to recent lymph being washed away or absorbed. Dr. Sturges does not attribute the cardiac mischief usually to acute rheumatism, but to the fact that chorea affects the heart along with other muscles which are influenced by emotion. Dr. Dickinson has advanced the opinion that endocarditis may be the consequence of chorea, being brought about by the irregular action of the heart.

Cases of chorea are occasionally met with in which the symptoms present an extremely acute and aggravated character, the spasmodic movements being excessively violent and constant, and extending throughout the body. The patient is unable to swallow or to perform any voluntary act, and becomes greatly distressed and exhausted, sleep being rendered impossible. Death ensues if the movements do not abate, often preceded by adynamic symptoms, delirium, or coma, but the intellect may be clear almost to the last. Two such fatal cases, occurring in girls about the period of puberty, came under my notice many years ago, and it is at this period that these violent attacks are usually noticed; similar attacks have, however, been observed in connection with parturition.

Diagnosis.—The symptoms of well-marked chorea are so characteristic, that it is scarcely possible to make a mistake in diagnosis, and therefore no special remarks need be made on this subject.

Prognosis.—Chorea almost always terminates in recovery, except when it assumes the severe form alluded to above. No definite opinion as to duration should be given. The circumstances favourable to a speedy recovery are that the disease is due to some condition which is amenable to treatment; that such treatment is commenced at an early period; and that the patient can be placed under proper sanitary conditions. The danger of the development of some cardiac complication should always be borne in mind, with the establishment of permanent heart-mischief. Chorea greatly increases the danger from acute rheumatism.

Treatment.—It is difficult to estimate the value of remedies in the treatment of chorea, as the complaint usually tends towards spontaneous cure. The indications which should be primarily attended to are:—
1. To get rid of any obvious causes which have originated the complaint, as well as of any reflex disturbance. 2. To regulate carefully the diet and the state of the digestive organs, especially maintaining a free action of the bowels. 3. To improve the general health and quality of the blood, by nutritious food; proper hygienic conditions; change of air; cold or tepid bathing, or the douche, especially applied over the back, with friction afterwards; and the administration of some preparation of iron, particularly if the patient is anaemic. Many cases do remarkably well under the use of ferruginous preparations, especially the peroxide, tincture of perchloride, ammonio-citrate, or carbonate. A great many supposed *specifics* have been introduced for the cure of chorea, the chief of these including salts of zinc; liquor arsenicalis; tincture of belladonna; conium juice; hydrate of chloral; tincture of cannabis indica; hypophosphites; Calabar bean in the form of powder, extract, or tincture; a combination of morphine with strychnine; physostigmine; and chloroform by inhalation twice or thrice daily. Judging from personal experience, I do not think that any one of these remedies is applicable for all cases, but one or other of them may be found of service in different instances. The application of ice to the spine; the passage of a slight constant galvanic current along this region; and subcutaneous injection of curare, are among other special modes of treatment which have been advocated. The movements may often be diminished by proper discipline, and are greatly improved by gymnastic exercises. When chorea comes under treatment in its very early stage, some practitioners believe that they can check its course by exciting a free action of the skin by means of warm or hot-air baths, followed by saline medicines, or

by small doses of tartar emetic. Others employ *emetics* at the outset. Should sleep be much disturbed, some *hypnotic* must be given. If the movements are very severe, it will be well to let the patient sleep on an air-bed or water-bed. Chorea complicating acute rheumatism usually needs no special treatment. Those dangerous cases in which the movements are extremely violent are but little amenable to any treatment. Inhalation of chloroform; subcutaneous injection of morphine, or, perhaps, of curare; and abundant support of the patient, enemata being employed if necessary, seem to me the most reliable measures to be adopted in such cases. Drs. Goodhart and Phillips have treated successfully some cases of acute chorea by massage and free administration of nourishment.

CHAPTER LXXXVII.

TETANY.

THE complaint named *tetany* is a form of neurosis, attended with idiopathic muscular spasms, which has come into prominence in modern times, and which therefore calls for brief notice.

Aëtiology and Pathology.—The causation of tetany is very uncertain, and it cannot be traced to any definite lesions in any part of the nervous system. The two sexes suffer about equally; and the complaint occurs at all periods of life, from infancy upwards, but is most common in early childhood and in early adult life. It seems to be much more prevalent in France than in England. The neurotic temperament predisposes to tetany; as well as constitutional disturbance or general weakness from various causes, such as bad feeding, dentition, acute diseases, chronic diarrhoea, rickets, the establishment of menstruation, pregnancy, or excessive lactation. The chief *exciting causes* of tetany are said to be emotional disturbance; exposure to cold and damp; and diarrhoea. Dr. Abercrombie has shown that the affection may be associated with rickets. It may also be produced by involuntary imitation, having in this way spread extensively in a girls' school. Nothing definite is known as to the pathology of tetany, but it is regarded as a *functional* disorder of the central nervous system, especially the spinal cord, attended with increased irritability.

Symptoms.—Tetany is characterized by tonic spasmoid contractions of certain muscles; of a painful character; varying much in extent, but usually commencing in, and being often limited to, the hands and forearms, though in other cases extending to the lower extremities, and to other parts of the body; usually bilateral; differing considerably in duration and intensity, being often intermittent; and unattended with loss of consciousness.

The symptoms usually begin with abnormal sensations, such as numbness and tingling, or actual pain, in the fingers or in the hands and forearms. Very speedily the spasmoid movements set in, commencing with contraction of one or more fingers, chiefly induced by attempts to use them. They extend upwards, and the following appearances are thus produced. The fingers are usually drawn together in the form of a

cone, but the ring and middle fingers are sometimes separated: they are slightly flexed at the metacarpo-phalangeal joints, but otherwise extended. The thumbs are strongly adducted, or bent into the palm, their terminal joints being extended; rarely the fingers are flexed over them. The wrists are usually somewhat flexed, and the hands tilted towards the ulnar side. In some cases the forearms are semiflexed, the upper arms adducted, and the hands crossed upon the abdomen. In the lower extremities the symptoms commence with tingling and numbness in the toes, which then become strongly flexed towards the sole, and drawn together, the great toes being generally drawn under them, occasionally extended. The dorsum of the foot is arched, and the heel drawn up; while the legs and thighs are extended. The spasms may extend in severe cases to the muscles of the back of the neck, those of the chest and abdomen, the facial muscles, those of mastication and articulation, the diaphragm, and the larynx. Hence the jaws may be firmly clenched, speech much embarrassed, and respiration seriously interfered with.

The extent of the spasms varies considerably in different cases, being in some instances quite localized, in others widely distributed. The lower extremities are often affected after the upper, or all the limbs are attacked in succession or simultaneously; and the spasms may subside in the limbs as they invade the trunk. The affected muscles feel rigid, resist passive extension, and when the extension is discontinued they resume their contracted state. They sometimes present fibrillar tremblings. An important fact in diagnosis is that the spasms continue during sleep. Trousseau affirmed that they relaxed under chloroform, but Dr. Abercrombie did not find it so in his cases. Trousseau observed that the spasms could be excited by compressing the affected parts, either in the direction of their principal nerve-trunks, or over their blood-vessels, so as to impede the venous or arterial circulation. The application of cold frequently arrests them temporarily. Dr. Abercrombie noticed a peculiar "facial irritability in children affected with tetany." If the finger be drawn across the facial nerve, the orbicularis palpebrarum of the same side contracts, and in some cases also the levator anguli oris et alæ nasi. This phenomenon is often more marked on one side than the other.

The spasms of tetany occur in paroxysms, usually intermittent, not uncommonly, however, and especially in children, only presenting remissions. The attacks last from a few minutes to an hour or two or longer, but seldom over twelve hours; and they come on at intervals, ranging from an hour or two to some days or weeks. The entire duration of the complaint may be only a few days, but more commonly it lasts for several weeks or months, owing to the occurrence of relapses.

The spasms are painful in themselves, and the pain is aggravated by any attempt to overcome them by extension. Severe pain may also be felt along the nerve-trunks, and there may be some diminution of sensibility in the affected parts. Towards the termination of an attack formication and other abnormal sensations are often experienced. Erb states that there is increase of electric excitability in the peripheral nerves to both the constant and induced currents, but not in the facial nerves. Edema, redness, and pain are not uncommonly observed in children on the backs of the hands. Rheumatic inflammation of joints is said to occur occasionally. Dr. Abercrombie states that laryngismus

is frequently associated with tetany in children. There is never any loss of consciousness. When the spasmody attacks are very severe, slight pyrexia is observed, with a rapid pulse and furred tongue.

Tetany is often a slight and temporary disorder, and even in prolonged cases recovery usually takes place, the paroxysms becoming by degrees less frequent and severe. A fatal result has occurred in exceptional instances, either from asphyxia, from prolonged duration of the complaint, or from implication of the medulla oblongata.

Treatment.—The chief indications in the treatment of tetany seem to be to get rid of any obvious exciting cause; to improve the general health; and to attend to any special constitutional disorder, such as rickets. Regular and sound sleep is of much importance; and the nervous system needs due attention. Tonics are often of much service. The chief special drugs which have been recommended for tetany are bromides, chloral, opium, valerian, musk, and conium. Electricity is not of much service, but the constant current answers best. Baths have not proved useful.

CHAPTER LXXXVIII.

ALCOHOLISM.

Aetiology.—The injurious effects produced upon the system by the abuse of alcohol are but too well-known. They are the result of its direct irritant action; of its influence on the vaso-motor nerves; of the circulation of its own poisonous elements, or of those derived from its decomposition, through the various organs and tissues; and of its interference with tissue-metamorphosis, oxygenation, and nutrition. The exact effects will depend on the nature, quantity, and strength of the stimulant indulged in. Spirits do by far the greatest harm, especially when taken in frequent drams, strong, and on an empty stomach. Alcoholism is most frequent in males; and in those who from their occupation are exposed to intemperance, such as draymen, potmen, or cabmen, or whose calling is a lonely or a sedentary one. It is also predisposed to by various conditions which depress the nervous energy, such as working or sleeping in a hot or vitiated atmosphere; excessive mental work; anxiety or worry; or excessive venery. Persons who suffer severe pain, and hysterical individuals are very likely subjects to drink to excess. In not a few instances there seems to be a hereditary tendency to alcoholism, or to some neurosis, such as epilepsy or mania.

Symptoms.—Cases of alcoholism may be clinically arranged under the following groups:—1. *Acute alcoholic poisoning*, the symptoms being those of narcotic poisoning. 2. *Delirium tremens*. 3. *Chronic alcoholism*. 4. *Acute mania*, in which the patient is extremely violent and dangerous, and has a fixed delusion. 5. *Acute melancholia*, with suicidal tendency. 6. *Oinomania*, where there is a constant craving for drink, which breaks out at intervals into an uncontrollable propensity, the moral sense being entirely deadened, so that the subjects of this condition will do anything in order to obtain drink. Only *delirium tremens* and *chronic alcoholism* can be specially considered here.

Delirium Tremens.—This condition may come on under the following circumstances:—1. From mere excessive drinking in a temperate person. 2. An individual who is accustomed to drink freely gets very drunk. 3. A tippler, who without being actually drunk is always more or less saturated with alcohol, experiences some slight disturbance, especially of a traumatic kind, or has an acute illness; delirium tremens occasionally breaks out in such persons without any apparent cause. 4. From deprivation of proper food, with moderate indulgence in stimulants. 5. In consequence of suddenly cutting off the supply of stimulants from an individual who has been accustomed to drink freely, especially if old or debilitated. 6. As the result of inhalation of fumes from a distillery, it is said (?).

Generally delirium tremens is preceded by *premonitory* indications, especially disturbed sleep or absolute insomnia; general discomfort and feebleness; agitation and tremulousness; mental confusion and inability to fix the attention; timidity and lowness of spirits. The alimentary canal is commonly disordered, as evidenced by anorexia, foul tongue and breath, unpleasant taste, and constipation, with unhealthy stools.

The actual symptoms of delirium tremens are usually very characteristic. The patient is either quite sleepless, or only obtains short uneasy dozes. The mind is in a state of general confusion, restlessness, and excitement, and though it may be possible to attract the attention of the patient for a moment, and to obtain a sensible answer to a question, he speedily wanders off, talking ramblingly and incoherently, there being a kind of busy delirium. A variety of mental delusions, illusions, and hallucinations usually exist, the patient fancying he sees or hears all sorts of objects and sounds, often of a hideous character; or distorting in his imagination what he does see and hear into strange and horrible forms and noises. These delusions are generally transient and changeable, but occasionally the patient fixes upon one, and reasons about it. Further, the mental condition is one of combined irritability, marked cowardice, sense of dread, and suspicion. The patient has an anxious, wandering expression, and looks upon everybody around with terror and distrust, imagining that they are trying to poison or otherwise injure him; or fears lest he may do an injury to himself, and has a great sense of alarm as to what is going to happen. These feelings may culminate in fits of violent mania, attended with extreme muscular effort and a wild expression, the patient trying to injure those around, to jump out of the window, or to do various other acts with the view of escaping from some imaginary enemy. There is usually no complaint with reference to the head. Creeping sensations over the skin and other paraesthesiae are common, and the patient often fancies he sees or feels horrible insects crawling over him. The prominent symptoms connected with the muscular system are restlessness, carphology, and general tremors, the latter being especially observed in the hands and tongue. After fits of violence the patient is much exhausted and prostrated. The pupils are generally dilated and sluggish.

The important *extrinsic* symptoms in delirium tremens are profuse perspiration, usually with little or no fever, the sweat having often a very disagreeable smell, the skin feeling moist and clammy, especially that of the palms, or being even drenched: a weak, large and soft, or small and frequent pulse, the sphygmographic tracing often exhibiting

marked diætism ; and disorder of the alimentary canal, as indicated by foulness of the mouth and tongue, which are covered with sticky mucus, peculiarly unpleasant breath, complete loss of appetite, much thirst, nausea but rarely vomiting, and constipation with offensive stools. The urine is sometimes much diminished in quantity, and is deficient in phosphates and urea, but often deposits urates on standing. In exceptional cases of delirium tremens there is severe pyrexia, the temperature rapidly rising to 105° , or even to 108° or 109° .

Recovery is in many cases of delirium tremens preceded by restoration of sleep, but this does not always lead to a favourable termination. In fatal cases typhoid symptoms frequently set in, with a dry brown tongue, sordes on the teeth, and low nervous phenomena, such as muttering delirium, epileptiform convulsions, and coma. Pneumonia or some other inflammatory complication may also arise. Sometimes death results from sudden collapse.

Chronic Alcoholism.—Various grades of this condition are of common occurrence. Its ordinary signs may be summed up as follows :—

1. *Nervous phenomena.* These include muscular restlessness and fidgetiness, culminating in tremors, beginning in the limbs, at first slight and controlled by an effort of the will, but afterwards becoming more marked and constant, being worse in the mornings, and then diminished by food and drink; insomnia, or very disturbed and unrefreshing sleep with terrifying dreams or night-mare; diffused dull pain or heaviness in the head, and sudden attacks of vertigo; disorders of the special senses, as evidenced by photopsia or muscæ volitantes, and noises in the ears; mental disturbance, indicated in the early period by mental disquietude, uncertainty of purpose and inability to fix the attention, indecision of character, a vague sense of dread, or fits of violent temper; later on by impairment of the mental faculties, in some cases very marked, the patient having horrible visions or delusions as to people plotting his ruin, and exhibiting great cowardice with loss of moral power, and a particular tendency to tell falsehoods about drink; impairment of muscular co-ordination, which explains the sensation sometimes experienced by the patient, as if he were going to fall down a precipice when walking on firm ground. 2. *General appearance.* The signs coming under this head are more or less obesity or emaciation, the former being chiefly observed in beer-drinkers, the latter, which may be extreme, in spirit-drinkers; flabbiness or a bloated aspect of the features, with red and watery eyes, yellowness of the conjunctivæ from fat or jaundice, and often redness or a purple colour of the face, with enlarged vessels, especially about the nose and cheeks, or acne. 3. *Disorder of the alimentary canal,* indicated by total anorexia or disgust for food, especially in the mornings, the patient often making this an excuse for taking stimulants in order to "keep up" the system; thick dirty furring of the tongue as a rule, but not always; dryness and cracking of the lips; catarrh of the pharynx; peculiar and disgusting foulness of the breath; severe morning nausea or actual sickness; irregularity of the bowels, with foetid stools; and occasionally serious haemorrhage from the stomach or bowels. 4. *Symptoms due to organic visceral lesions and to degenerative changes.* These have been pointed out in previous chapters, and, as already stated, there is much difference of opinion as to the influence of alcohol in their production. There can be no doubt as to the direct effect of strong spirits upon the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal, and especially upon that of the

stomach, these agents inducing congestion, chronic inflammation, fibroid changes, and glandular degeneration; or that alcoholic abuse tends to lead to fibroid and fatty degeneration, with atrophy, of various organs and tissues, including the nerve-centres.

In very advanced cases of chronic alcoholism still more grave nervous symptoms are met with, such as absolute dementia: signs of peripheral neuritis; extreme muscular trembling, simulating paralysis agitans; general muscular weakness; paralysis or ataxia; epileptiform attacks; or finally coma. Such phenomena are necessarily attended with more or less serious organic changes in the nervous system. Peripheral neuritis is separately considered.

Diagnosis.—*Delirium tremens* has to be mainly distinguished from acute mania or meningitis. The history of the patient, and the circumstances under which the affection occurs; the characters of the nervous and extrinsic symptoms; and the absence of any fixed delusion, generally leave no doubt as to the nature of the case. Sometimes this condition closely simulates low fevers. The association of acute pneumonia with delirium tremens may be very difficult to recognize definitely. *Chronic alcoholism* should always be suspected if any of the symptoms already mentioned are complained of, not forgetting digestive disorders, but especially should there be morning sickness, insomnia, fidgetiness or tremors, mental restlessness, or disturbance of the special senses. Close enquiry is often needed in order to elicit a history of intemperance in these cases, many patients trying to conceal their evil habits in every possible way. The odour of the breath is frequently very characteristic. The late Dr. Anstie considered the following nervous diseases as being particularly liable to be simulated by chronic alcoholism:—Commencing general paralysis of the insane; paralysis agitans; lead-poisoning; locomotor ataxy; softening of the brain or cord; epilepsy; senile dementia; hysteria; and the nervous malaise associated with some forms of dyspepsia.

Prognosis.—*Delirium tremens* usually terminates favourably. The chief unfavourable circumstances are:—A history of chronic indulgence in excess of alcohol, so that the system is more or less saturated; the patient being advanced in years, enfeebled in constitution, or the subject of organic visceral disease, especially disease of the kidneys; a history of previous attacks, particularly if they have been numerous; difficulty in introducing nourishment into the system, either from the patient refusing food, or from assimilation being impaired; inability to procure sleep before the patient is much exhausted; an unfavourable condition of the pulse, which may be evidenced by the sphygmograph; the occurrence of typhoid or low nervous symptoms; and the development of inflammatory complications, especially pneumonia. In the early period *chronic alcoholism* can always be cured if patients will keep away from drink, but it is often a very difficult matter to get them to do this. When serious nervous symptoms have become developed, there is but little hope of recovery, but improvement is possible in some cases.

Treatment.—1. *Delirium tremens.*—*a.* In treating delirium tremens, the first object aimed at should be to *withdraw absolutely*, or to *reduce the quantity* of all forms of alcoholic stimulant, so far as this is practicable, but especially of spirits and wine. In a large proportion of cases it has been found that no harm whatever results from cutting off stimulants completely, especially in young patients and in first attacks; in others they must be limited as much as possible, being chiefly needed if the patient is an habitual drunkard, old, or feeble, or if there are signs of

adynamia. It is well to keep to malt liquors, if possible, but champagne or brandy may be required. At the same time it is highly important to administer nourishment freely. Strong beef-tea, beef-juice, hot soups, milk, eggs beaten up, and other forms of nutritious food which are readily assimilated, must be given at frequent intervals, by night as well as by day. If the patient refuses food, white of egg mixed with iced water is useful; and nutrient enemata must be regularly employed. In the treatment of strong patients, especially if they are young, and a large quantity of spirit has been taken, a brisk *saline purgative* is decidedly beneficial at the outset, but this is not advisable as a rule.

b. The next indication is to endeavour to *procure sleep* before the patient is exhausted. For this purpose certain drugs are most useful when judiciously employed, especially opium or morphine, the latter being best introduced by hypodermic injection; hydrate of chloral; and bromide of potassium or ammonium. Certain of these agents may be advantageously combined. As a general rule I quite agree with the late Dr. Anstie in opposing the notion that "patients in delirium tremens require to be narcotized into a state of repose," but I have met with cases in which the only chance of recovery seemed to be in procuring sleep at any risk, and where the administration of considerable doses of morphine, combined with abundant nourishment, proved, I believe, the means of saving life. Other remedies employed in the treatment of delirium tremens are cannabis indica; tincture of digitalis in large doses ($\frac{3}{ij}$ to $\frac{5}{i}$ every four hours); capsicum in the form of powder or tincture in full doses; tartar emetic in sthenic cases attended with wild delirium; and chloroform, either by inhalation or internally. Chloroform inhalation, carefully employed, may be decidedly serviceable sometimes.

c. *Symptoms* often require attention in acute alcoholism, especially vomiting. Should there be adynamic signs, *diffusible stimulants* must be given, such as ammonia, ether, musk, or camphor, along with brandy; and it may be necessary to administer these agents by enemata. High fever may demand *antipyretic* measures. *Complications* may also call for interference, particularly pneumonia, which always needs a supporting treatment in these cases. A patient suffering from delirium tremens should be placed in a comfortable and well-ventilated room; kept perfectly quiet and apart from friends, only one or two trained attendants being permitted to be present, according as the patient is tractable or violent; treated kindly, but with firmness; and constantly watched, lest he should injure himself. Mechanical restraint, such as that by-means of the strait-waistcoat, is but rarely admissible, though it is needed now and then in cases of extreme violence.

2. *Chronic Alcoholism*.—In treating chronic alcoholism, there should in most cases be no hesitation in forbidding stimulants entirely, but especially spirits or wine. It is often, however, difficult to persuade patients to carry out this advice. A glass of good bitter ale, stout, or lager beer with food may be useful. It is most important to get the patient to take nourishment, and as there is generally a great distaste for food, small quantities of milk, concentrated beef-tea, soups, or meat-juices should be given at frequent intervals. It is wonderful, however, how soon the appetite returns in many of these cases when the intemperate habits are relinquished. If there is much sickness, an effervescent mixture may be given, or soda-water with milk. I have found a mixture containing bicarbonate of sodium or nitro-muriatic acid with infusion of gentian and hydrocyanic acid (m iij -iv), very serviceable in many cases.

Anstie recommended one or two grains of quinine twice or thrice daily. Marcket found oxide of zinc useful, beginning with gr. ij twice daily, and gradually increasing the dose. Others have much faith in tincture of capsicum. If there is much restlessness and sleeplessness, a full dose of bromide of potassium at night will generally procure sleep, or this drug may be given more frequently if necessary. Some practitioners prefer subcutaneous injection of morphine; hydrate of chloral; sulphonal; extract of cannabis indica; or a full dose of ether. Baths are often serviceable in chronic alcoholism; and rest from occupation, with change of air, aids recovery materially. The bowels should be kept well-opened.

In advanced cases the treatment must be varied according to the conditions present. Anstie found the long-continued use of good doses of cod-liver oil most beneficial, with hypophosphite of sodium or lime if there is commencing paralysis of sensation; bromide of potassium should there be epileptiform convulsions; and very minute doses of strychnine when marked muscular tremor is observed.

CHAPTER LXXXIX.

ON CERTAIN FORMS OF METALLIC POISONING.

I. LEAD-POISONING.—SATURNISM.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The introduction of lead into the system is most important in connection with certain occupations in which this metal is used, saturnism being especially common among painters, plumbers, and workers in white-lead. Sometimes it is taken in water kept in leaden cisterns, in cider, in beer which has remained in pewter-pots for the night, in adulterated articles of food, or medicinally; it may be inhaled from fresh paint; or now and then it gains access into the body in curious ways, as from using adulterated snuff, rubbing the ointment into the skin, or using a hair-dye containing lead. Occasionally, although there is clear evidence of the presence of this metal in the system, very minute investigation has to be made before the channel of its introduction can be discovered. As a rule lead is either swallowed or inhaled, and often enters the system in both ways.

With regard to the pathological effects of lead upon the different structures, and the explanation of the phenomena which it produces, there is much uncertainty. It becomes deposited in almost every tissue, being said to be most abundant in the following structures, in the order given:—bones, kidneys, liver, brain and spinal cord, and muscles. The chief morbid changes which have been described in cases of chronic lead-poisoning are contraction and apparent hypertrophy of the muscular coat of the large intestine, and atrophy of the intestinal mucous membrane; atrophy and degeneration of paralyzed muscles, with increase of the connective tissue, and sometimes of fat; changes in the spinal cord, although in some cases careful investigation has failed to discover any such changes; atrophy of nerve-elements, with increase of connective tissue in the abdominal ganglia of the sympathetic; and

degeneration of nerves supplying paralyzed muscles. By different writers the phenomena of lead-poisoning have been attributed mainly to the effects of the metal upon muscular tissue directly; upon the nerve-centres, leading to vaso-motor contraction; or upon the nerves themselves.

Symptoms.—Certain objective appearances are usually very obvious in connection with chronic saturnism, namely, the so-called *blue line* on the gums at their junction with the teeth; a dirty brown or black incrustation of the latter, if they are not cleaned, with rapid tendency to decay; more or less wasting, with a dry harsh skin, anaemia, a peculiar sallow, earthy, pale or yellowish tint of countenance, and yellowness of the conjunctivæ—*saturnine cachexia*. The blue line is not always present even when there are other marked signs of lead-poisoning; while, on the other hand, it may be very distinct, and yet the health is apparently unimpaired. Much depends on the habits of the individual, with regard to cleaning the teeth, for the discoloration seems to be due to the action of sulphuretted hydrogen upon lead in the tissues of the gums, the gas originating in the decomposition of food and tartar upon and between the teeth. The breath is generally offensive; the tongue is furred; and a sweetish astringent taste is frequently noticed. In some cases the pulse is very infrequent and slow. The other prominent clinical phenomena which may be associated with lead-poisoning may be summed up thus:—1. *Lead-colic*, having the characters of more or less severe intestinal colic, accompanied usually with a retracted abdomen; obstinate constipation; nausea and sometimes vomiting; gaseous eructations; and in some cases hiccup. 2. *Disorders of sensation*, such as hyperæsthesia or hypæsthesia of different parts, numbness, formication, neuralgic pains, aching in the limbs and joints, and headache. 3. *Amaurosis*, either single or double, usually associated with other grave nervous symptoms, and accompanied with visible ophthalmoscopic changes. 4. *Mental disorder* in bad cases, such as delirium, mania, or melancholia. 5. *Motor disturbance*, in the way of tremors, epileptiform convulsions, or local paralysis. The most common and important variety of paralysis is that of the extensors of the forearm, giving rise to *wrist-drop*, the patient being unable to extend the wrist-joint. Careful observation has shown that the supinators usually escape, and are able to produce their normal movements. The muscles of the hands not uncommonly suffer; and the upper limbs may in time become more or less affected throughout. In some instances the paralysis involves the lower limbs, and may even extend to those of the trunk, preferably the extensor muscles, so that the patient assumes a stooping and tottering gait. Occasionally voice is lost. As a rule both forearms are implicated, but not equally. The muscles are generally considerably wasted, giving rise to a marked depression on the back of the forearm, and those of the hands may also be much atrophied, so as to make these parts assume the “crow-foot” shape. Sometimes the hands are strongly closed, as if the flexor muscles were rigid. Oval or elongated swellings are also sometimes found in connection with the tendons behind the wrist. Occasionally Dr. Buzzard has noticed an almost unnatural roundness of limb, but with a pulpy feeling of the flesh, which he attributes to a large overgrowth of adipose and connective tissue, masking the muscular atrophy. With regard to the electrical condition of the affected muscles, their excitability to faradism becomes much diminished or lost; in cases of lead-palsy of not long standing, exaggerated reaction to galvanism is not at all in-

frequent (Buzzard). Ultimately the muscles also cease to react to galvanism. The predisposing influence of lead in the system with reference to gout, arterial sclerosis, and chronic renal disease has already been alluded to. Abortion is said to occur frequently in women who work at white-lead works.

Treatment.—Preventive measures are most important in the case of those working with lead. They should be very particular as to cleanliness, especially in washing their hands and cleaning their nails before eating, and in cleansing their lips and teeth. Every precaution should be taken against inhaling particles of lead. As probably a good deal of the metal is introduced during meals, the practice of taking a small quantity of dilute sulphuric acid with water as a drink at these times may be useful, as this would form an insoluble compound with any lead entering the stomach. The bowels must always be kept well-opened, especially by sulphate of magnesium. If there is any lead in the system, iodide of potassium may be given from time to time. Lead-colic must be treated in the same way as other forms of intestinal colic. The great remedy for getting the metal out of the system, which is the main object to be aimed at in all cases, is iodide of potassium, a soluble iodide of lead being formed, which passes away in the urine and other secretions. This drug must be given for a long time; and may often be efficiently combined with sulphate of magnesium. Sulphur-baths are also said to be useful. Paralysis, neuralgic pains, and other nervous symptoms must be treated according to the principles previously laid down. Galvanism to the muscles and musculo-spiral nerve is frequently of great service in the treatment of lead-paralysis.

II. MERCURIAL POISONING.

Individuals who work with mercury are liable to peculiar tremors from the inhalation of this metal, and these have also occasionally followed its medicinal employment. There are the usual signs of mercurialization in connection with the mouth and general system. The tremors almost always begin in the upper limbs, being accompanied with numbness or formication, and pains in the joints, but may afterwards extend to the legs, trunk, face, tongue, and respiratory muscles: in short, to all the muscles except those of the eyeballs. At first the movements are but slight, but afterwards they increase so as to become spasmoidic or convulsive, voluntary acts being performed in a violently jerking or spasmoidic manner. They are greatly increased by any mental excitement. Finally more or less trembling becomes constant, and the patient is rendered quite helpless as regards voluntary movements, speech and breathing being also gravely affected. In most cases the tremors subside if the patient is supported in a sitting or recumbent posture, and they also cease during sleep. Stimulants diminish them temporarily, but they are worse afterwards. The tremulous muscles are decidedly weak. In very advanced cases serious nervous symptoms arise, such as sleeplessness, delirium, coma, or epileptiform convulsions.

Treatment.—As soon as any of the symptoms above described appear, the patient should immediately give up his occupation for a time or permanently. For the elimination of mercury from the system, the chief remedies are warm, vapour, or sulphur baths; sulphur or iodide of potassium internally; and *purgatives*. Medicinal *diaphoretics* and *diuretics* may also be employed. For the nervous symptoms, quinine, iron, opium, nitrate of silver, and galvanism are recommended.

CHAPTER XC.

DIPHTHERITIC AND ALLIED PARALYSES.

Etiology and Pathology.—Diphtheritic paralysis is the most pronounced type of a class of cases, in which paralysis follows an attack of certain fevers and other acute diseases. Thus it has been noticed after typhoid and relapsing fevers, scarlet fever, measles, small-pox, pneumonia, cholera, dysentery, and rheumatic fever. As regards diphtheria, the symptoms generally supervene during the period of convalescence, or when the patient seems to have quite recovered, the interval varying from a few days to some weeks. Occasionally, however, they set in during the acute stage of the disease, even at a very early period. Another important fact is that the paralytic phenomena may follow the mildest attack, so mild, indeed, that the diphtheria has not been diagnosed, there having been apparently only a slight sore-throat. It has been stated, however, that they are more frequent and marked after severe attacks of the disease; but Dr. Abercrombie concludes that the tendency to the nervous affection is at least as great after a mild attack as after a severe one. At the lowest computation diphtheria is liable to be followed by paralysis in 1 in 9 cases.

With regard to the *pathology* of diphtheritic paralysis, this is still very uncertain. By some it has been regarded as merely the consequence of anaemia and debility, produced by diphtheria and other affections, and of a functional nature. Most leading authorities have come to look upon the disease as a "segmental periaxial neuritis," determined by the action, direct or indirect, upon the nervous system of the *toxin* or *toxins* derived from the diphtheritic bacillus. Dr. Sydney Martin found that the *toxin* which he obtained from cultures and from the blood of patients dying of diphtheria, when injected into the venous system of the rabbit, produces in that animal a "segmental neuritis" and fatty degeneration of the muscle fibres. The animal becomes paralyzed.

Dr. Abercrombie has examined the spinal cord and medulla oblongata in fatal cases of diphtheria. There were no lesions discoverable with the naked eye. He found a swollen condition of the large motor cells in the grey matter of the anterior cornua of the cord. Their margins were very ill-defined, and the processes had in most instances entirely disappeared. The contents had a granular aspect; and the nuclei had disappeared, or where still visible were highly granular. These changes only occur in very limited areas, and are not constant in any one region of the cord, but are most common in the upper and middle dorsal regions. Where one cell of a group is affected all the cells of that group show some change. In some places the cells appeared shrunken rather than swollen. The examination of the medulla oblongata in one case only revealed that some of the outermost cells of the vagus nucleus were rounded and more or less completely deprived of their processes. Déjerine has described similar changes, but more advanced; and they have also been found by Dr. Percy Kidd.

Symptoms.—Diphtheritic paralysis varies considerably in different cases as regards its extent, severity, and duration. In some instances the phenomena are localized, especially in connection with the pharynx and palate, and the latter may be alone implicated; the voice then becomes altered, and swallowing is performed with difficulty, which condition may be merely transitory, or may last for a considerable time. This limited and temporary paralysis is especially observed when the condition occurs during the acute stage of diphtheria. The more severe form of diphtheritic paralysis is characterized by being more or less progressive, attacking different parts in succession, so that ultimately the whole body may become implicated. It is very slow and insidious in its origin; and starts usually in the throat and palate. The voice consequently becomes snuffling, nasal, or inarticulate; while deglutition is difficult, fluids being apt to pass into the posterior nares, and fluids or solids giving rise to a choking sensation, with violent irregular action of the muscles, and a spasmodic cough, which may be the first symptom noticed. At the same time the mucous membrane covering this part is more or less deficient in sensibility, the soft palate being often quite anaesthesia. Dr. Abercrombie noticed that usually these symptoms were followed by weakness in the legs, back, and arms in succession. Occasionally this order is reversed, the legs being first involved; and in exceptional cases the arms are affected at the outset. The implication of the limbs is indicated at first by tingling and numbness in the toes and fingers, with impairment of touch, which phenomena spread upwards, power at the same time becoming diminished, so that at last the patient has no control over the voluntary movements, and cannot stand or move. In some cases the muscles show no electrical changes, responding normally to the faradic current. In a great number, however, the reaction to faradism is abolished. After a time the muscles may waste and become flabby. The tongue, lips, and cheeks are often affected, but Dr. Abercrombie only noticed slight and transitory facial paralysis in three cases. The cheeks may become flabby and lose their expression; the lips flaccid, allowing the saliva to escape; and the eyelids may droop. The speech in diphtheritic paralysis is variously modified, according to the implication of the different parts concerned in the act. It is frequently thick, nasal or guttural, stammering, or slow; or the voice may be more or less weakened, until it becomes a mere whisper. Vision is often affected, this being generally due to a paralysis of the muscles of accommodation, and it may become suddenly impaired. Amblyopia is most common, but there may be presbyopia, myopia, or diplopia. The pupils are always dilated and sluggish, and may be unequal. Strabismus is not uncommon, which is always convergent (Abercrombie). There are no ophthalmoscopic changes. Other special senses are sometimes affected. The head sometimes rolls from side to side, owing to paralysis of its supporting muscles. The bladder may be involved, giving rise to retention and dribbling of urine; or there is marked constipation, owing to the abdominal muscles and intestines being affected. Involuntary passage of urine or faeces only occurs in the last stages. In some cases urgent danger arises from the respiratory muscles being attacked, and pulmonary congestion is very liable to follow. Serious symptoms may also supervene in consequence of implication of the heart, its beats becoming infrequent, being sometimes reduced to 16 per minute, as well as slow and weak, and finally the organ may fail. Sudden death from syncope may occur when the heart

is affected. Dr. Abercrombie noticed irregularity of the cardiac action as an early symptom, which often subsided after the patient had been confined to his bed for a few days.

Abnormal sensations are often complained of in various parts, as well as hyperæsthesia and tenderness. Local or general anaesthesia is frequently present in connection with diphtheritic paralysis. The tendon-reflexes are lost in most cases.

Prognosis.—The duration of the nervous symptoms associated with diphtheria varies much. Usually the termination is favourable in adults, provided the respiratory muscles and heart do not become involved, but in children it is frequently fatal. Even very grave cases may ultimately recover.

Treatment.—In the treatment of diphtheritic paralysis one of the essential points is to promote the general health by good nutritious food; by healthy hygienic surroundings, with plenty of fresh air; and by tonics. Ferruginous preparations, quinine, and strychnine are the most serviceable medicinal agents, and these may be required for a long time. Friction with stimulating liniments, shampooing, or the application of small blisters, often prove useful measures in connection with paralyzed parts. The employment of galvanism is of the greatest service in treating the paralyzed muscles, but this agent must be used very carefully and judiciously. In protracted cases change to the sea-side, sea-water baths, and hydropathic treatment may prove beneficial. Should the respiratory muscles become involved, large mustard poultices may be applied over the chest. For cardiac paralysis Duchenne has recommended faradization of the praecordial region.

CHAPTER XCI.

SUN-STROKE—INSOLATION—COUP DE SOLEIL.

Aetiology.—Long-continued exposure to the direct and powerful heat of the sun often gives rise to grave nervous symptoms. These are chiefly met with in soldiers, and of course cases of sun-stroke are by far most frequent in tropical climates, but several have occurred in this country during late years. There are certain powerful *predisposing* causes, namely, wearing heavy or tight clothing and accoutrements; physical fatigue and exhaustion; the state of system induced by overcrowding and bad ventilation; intemperance; and deficiency of drinking water. Most authorities are of opinion that a moist atmosphere is worse than a dry one. The immediate cause of sun-stroke is believed to be interference with evaporation and radiation from the skin, so that the blood gets over-heated, and thus exerts an injurious and depressing effect upon the nerve-centres.

Anatomical Characters.—The only *post-mortem* appearances which have been observed in cases of sun-stroke are fluidity of the blood; some congestion of the brain generally; and extreme pulmonary congestion, with distension of the right heart.

Symptoms.—Generally there are *premonitory* symptoms of sun-stroke, namely, great heat and dryness of the skin, with a subjective feeling

of burning or stinging, the temperature being often hyperpyrexial; marked debility and sense of exhaustion; thirst and nausea; vertigo, but not often headache; conjunctival redness; frequent desire to micturate; and sometimes delirium or delusions. Dr. Muirhead describes three varieties of the actual attack, named respectively *cardiac*; *cerebro-spinal*; and *mixed*. In the *cardiac* variety there is sudden syncope, often terminating in speedy death. The *cerebro-spinal* form is characterized by coma; hurried, laboured, noisy, or stertorous breathing; contracted and immovable pupils; reddened conjunctiva; convulsions in many cases; tumultuous action of the heart, with a very rapid, and in a short time a feeble, compressible, and irregular pulse. The temperature may reach 112° or more, and may continue to rise after death in fatal cases. Should recovery take place, sequelæ are liable to remain behind, such as constant headache, mental disturbance, choreiform movements, or a tendency to epileptiform attacks.

Treatment.—Attention should at once be paid to any premonitory symptoms of sun-stroke. As a rule the great remedial agent is the assiduous use of the cold douche over the head, neck, and chest, many repetitions of which may be required, but care is necessary in its employment. It helps to lower the temperature, and to restore the breathing. The wet sheet, with constant fanning; enemata of iced water; and application of ice to the shaven head and spine are also recommended. Subcutaneous injection of quinine has been found useful in some cases. The patient should drink iced water freely, if he is conscious. If coma persists, a blister may be applied to the nape of the neck or to the shaven scalp. The bowels should be freely opened by enemata. The patient must be properly supported by nutriment and stimulants; and medicinal stimulants may be useful, especially in syncopal cases. Inhalation of chloroform is recommended for the relief of severe convulsions.

CHAPTER XCII.

ACUTE CEREBRAL INFLAMMATIONS.

I. SIMPLE OR PRIMARY MENINGITIS.

Etiology.—The exciting causes to which simple meningitis has been ascribed are:—1. *Direct injury* to the membranes, especially from fracture of the skull. 2. *Disease of the cranial bones*, particularly of the temporal bone in connection with ear-affections. 3. *Prolonged direct exposure to the sun*. 4. *Excessive mental labour*. 5. *Erysipelas* of the head and face. 6. *Local irritation* from adventitious growths, or abscess of the brain; and occasionally traumatic inflammation of the eyeball, which spreads up the sheath of the optic nerve. 7. Certain acute exanthemata in rare instances; and occasionally septicæmia, pneumonia, or rheumatic fever. 8. Sudden disappearance of chronic cutaneous eruptions (?). Inflammation of the cerebral membranes is also a part of cerebro-spinal fever; and may result from extension upwards of spinal meningitis. The disease is most frequently met with in male adults. A hot climate and season; undue mental work, especially if

combined with loss of sleep; a weak and exhausted condition of the system, from previous illness or any other cause; intemperate habits; and the presence of Bright's disease, are regarded as *predisposing causes* of acute meningitis.

Anatomical Characters.—As a rule acute simple meningitis involves the membranes extensively, but is most marked over the convexity of the cerebral hemispheres. It may, however, be localized, or be evident chiefly or solely about the base. When the dura mater is affected, which usually results from injury or bone-disease, the inflammation is localized, and the membrane may be softened and thickened, reddened, black and sloughy, or unusually adherent to the surface of the brain; occasionally exudation or pus collects between it and the bone, and if pus forms, it is apt to perforate the dura mater, and to escape into the arachnoid cavity. Sometimes also inflammation is set up in the venous sinuses, leading to the formation of a thrombus, which may soften into a purulent-looking fluid, and give rise to embolism and septicaemia. Generally in cases of acute meningitis the cerebral arachnoid appears dry and parchment-like, and more or less opalescent or opaque; sometimes it presents over its surface a thin layer of exudation or pus. The pia mater is extremely red and vascular, more so in some parts than others; while frequently small extravasations are observed, with patches of opacity around. In the early period a small quantity of serum, clear or more generally turbid and flocculent, and sometimes blood-stained, is seen in the arachnoid sac, and in the meshes of the pia mater. More commonly there is little or no fluid, but a soft yellowish opaque exudation, often more or less purulent-looking, covers the surface, being particularly abundant in the sulci between the convolutions, and along the course of the larger vessels. When the inflammation affects the base, the exudation involves some of the cranial nerves. The brain frequently presents an inflammatory condition of the superficial layer of its grey matter, especially in prolonged cases, indicated by redness, softening, and adhesion to the pia mater. The ventricles are normal in many cases, but may contain excess of serum or pus, or their walls may be covered with exudation.

Symptoms.—Acute meningitis is usually preceded by *premonitory* symptoms, such as increasing headache or a sense of heaviness; vertigo; disturbances of general sensation or of the special senses; mental irritability, combined with a feeling of depression and restlessness; or sickness. The immediate attack is in most cases ushered in by a marked rigor or feeling of chilliness, speedily followed by pyrexia, and severe headache, with cerebral vomiting. In exceptional instances the first indication of the disease is the occurrence of epileptiform convulsions, hemiplegia, aphasia, or stupor ending in coma. The clinical history of the established disease in typical cases is divided into certain stages, as follows:—

I. *Stage of excitement.*—At this time the symptoms may be arranged thus:—*a. Local.* Intense and constant headache, in most cases chiefly frontal, of a tight or binding character, with sudden darting or plunging exacerbations, which may be so violent as to elicit sharp cries or shrieks, the pain being increased by any slight disturbance, such as movement, noise, or light; marked vertigo; great heat of head, with flushing or alternate flushing or pallor of the face; and conjunctival injection. *b. Mental.* Great irritability and unwillingness to be disturbed, with sleeplessness, culminating speedily in delirium, almost always of an active character, and not uncommonly

almost maniacal, the expression being wild, staring, and savage, or sometimes indicating great terror, the patient shrieking and gesticulating, or being very violent. Occasionally the delirium is more of a muttering kind. *c. Sensorial.* General hyperesthesia; tingling or formication in various parts; diplopia or dim vision, marked photophobia, photopsia, or muscae volitantes; tinnitus aurium, and undue sensibility to sound. *d. Motor.* General restlessness and jactitation; twitchings or spasmodic movements in various muscles, especially those of the face and limbs, either unilateral or bilateral; or sometimes general convulsive movements, rigidity, tetanic spasms, local or unilateral spasms. Slight strabismus is usually observed, and it may be very distinct; while the eyeballs move about convulsively, or stare fixedly. The pupils are very variable, but most frequently contracted or oscillating, and often unequal. *e. Extrinsic.* There is marked pyrexia, without prostration, the skin being very hot and dry; the temperature considerably raised; the pulse remarkably frequent, hard, and sharp; the tongue white, and the mouth clammy; with great thirst and aversion to food. Cerebral vomiting is a prominent symptom; and also constipation as a rule, the stools being offensive and dark. Breathing is generally irregular and moaning. The duration of this stage may vary from one to fourteen days or more.

II. Stage of transition.—This stage is characterized by the cessation of the symptoms of excitement just described, with the development of those indicating failure of the cerebral functions, and there may be apparently a remarkable improvement at its commencement. Generally the change is more or less gradual, but may be very rapid, a sudden fit of convulsions occasionally ushering in the final stage. As a rule the headache, delirium, exalted sensations, and fever subside; while a tendency is observed towards heaviness, somnolence, or muttering stupor ending in coma, with cutaneous hypesthesia or anaesthesia, and impairment of sight and hearing. Motor disturbances become more prominent and general, in the way of carphology, subsultus tendinum, twitchings or tremors, spasmodic movements or convulsions, or paralysis. The pupils become dilated and motionless. The body and limbs cool down considerably, though the head may still remain hot; the pulse is less frequent, but very variable, and sometimes intermittent; the tongue tends to become dry and brown. Respiration is irregular and sighing. Urine is retained, and may overflow. These symptoms culminate in:—

III. Stage of depression, in which there is complete abolition of all the cerebral functions, as shown by absolute coma with stertorous breathing; general anaesthesia, with muscular paralysis and relaxation; great dilatation and immobility of the pupils; and involuntary escape of faeces and urine. The patient presents an aspect of extreme prostration and adynamia, the features being shrunken and ghastly; the surface bedewed with cold clammy sweats; the tongue dry and brown; the teeth and gums covered with sordes; while the pulse is excessively rapid, thready, and fluttering. In this condition the patient sinks more or less rapidly.

Varieties.—Differences are observed in the symptoms of acute meningitis according to the seat and extent of the inflammation. If it affects only one hemisphere, there may be hemiplegia. If it is localized, the symptoms are correspondingly limited. When the base of the brain is most affected, it is said that the pain is more sub-orbital and sub-occipital; the mental and sensorial excitement is less marked, delirium being com-

paratively slight and transient; special paralysis of some of the cranial nerves is observed; while coma sets in early, and speedily becomes profound. Ophthalmoscopic signs, indicative of optic neuritis, are evident when the inflammation is conveniently situated for its extension along the optic nerve; they are therefore common in basic meningitis, but rare when the inflammation is confined to the convexity.

Local inflammation of the *dura mater*, due to injury or bone-disease, is generally very obscure in its clinical history. The symptoms which may indicate this condition are pain, at first localized, being often seated behind the ear, but gradually extending over the head; local tenderness over this part in some cases, or painful oedema; little or no cerebral disturbance at first, but in course of time gradual somnolence ending in coma, or sometimes delirium and convulsions; rigors, which may be periodically repeated, with irregular pyrexia; diminished fulness of the jugular vein on the affected side, if a thrombus forms; and signs of pyæmia, or of embolic deposits in various parts.

II. TUBERCULAR MENINGITIS—ACUTE HYDROCEPHALUS.

Aetiology.—This variety of meningitis is immediately due to local irritation set up by tubercles in connection with the membranes of the brain. Therefore all causes predisposing to tuberculosis may be considered as predisposing to tubercular meningitis; and where a hereditary tendency exists, whatever leads to cerebral excitement, such as unduly forcing the mental faculties in young children, tends to give rise to the formation of tubercle in the meninges. Children are by far the most frequent subjects of tubercular meningitis, especially those from 2 to 10 years of age, but the disease may be met with from earliest infancy to old age, being not uncommon up to the time of puberty, and in young adults. Hereditary predisposition can be traced in the large majority of cases. This complaint not infrequently follows one of the exanthemata.

Anatomical Characters.—Miliary tubercles are found in the meshes of the pia mater, often adhering to the under surface of the arachnoid. They are frequently whitish and opaque, or may be softened and yellowish in the centre. They may appear scattered all over the surface, but are principally seen about the base of the cerebrum; in the fissures, especially the fissure of Sylvius; and along the chief branches of the vessels. The membranes are injected, particularly the pia mater. The surface of the arachnoid feels sticky, and a thin layer of soft lymph or puriform matter can often be scraped off; this substance usually collects in abundance between the arachnoid and pia mater, especially about the base and in the fissures. The pia mater is thickened, and its meshes are infiltrated with the same material or with serum. As a rule there is little or no fluid in the arachnoid sac. Occasionally the signs of inflammation are chiefly observed over the convexity. The ventricles of the brain generally contain a considerable quantity of colourless, usually somewhat turbid and flocculent serum, often amounting to some ounces in each lateral ventricle. This collection of fluid leads to oedema, maceration, and softening of the surrounding brain-structure; to dilatation of the spaces and their communicating channels; as well as frequently to compression of the convolutions of the cerebrum against the skull, so that they appear flattened and pale. Sometimes when the *dura mater* is opened at the *post-mortem* examination the brain gives

way, and the serum escapes. The walls of the ventricles are generally covered more or less with fine granulations. The exact appearances vary considerably in different cases of tubercular meningitis; in some the signs of meningeal inflammation are most prominent; in others the quantity of fluid in the ventricles and its effects are most striking. There is no necessary proportion between the amount of tubercle and of the products of inflammation. Tubercle is generally present in other structures, and sometimes in the brain itself.

Symptoms.—Tubercular meningitis in children is generally preceded for a variable period by *premonitory* symptoms indicative of tuberculosis; while nervous symptoms are often prominent, such as fretfulness, drowsiness, sudden starting, screaming, grinding of the teeth during sleep, headache, vertigo, or a staggering gait. These phenomena may, however, be entirely absent; while in some cases the disease supervenes on long-standing tubercular mischief in other parts. The symptoms of the established disease are described as following certain stages, which have been differently classified by different writers. Certainly they are often very indistinctly marked in practice, and cases present considerable variation in their clinical history. Tubercular meningitis may be very obscurely indicated, being but a part of a general acute tuberculosis; or its own special symptoms may be those which chiefly attract attention. The characteristic phenomena are usually those of basic meningitis, with general cerebral excitement; followed by total abolition of the cerebral functions, owing to the compression of the brain-substance by the fluid.

The *invasion* is in most cases more or less gradual, and not infrequently very insidious. Sometimes the disease sets in very rapidly or even suddenly. The chief invasion-symptoms which may be met with are severe vomiting; intense headache; rigors, followed by pyrexia; marked irritability, nervousness, and obstinacy or unreasonableness in behaviour; or drowsiness. Occasionally tubercular meningitis is revealed by sudden convulsions, delirium, coma, or paralysis.

The ordinary clinical history of the developed disease is more or less as follows:—The early symptoms are severe constant headache, generally frontal, increased by movement, light, or noise, with intense darting paroxysms, causing the child to scream or cry out—the *hydrocephalic cry*, and to hold the head; vertigo, giving rise to staggering and a tendency to cling to surrounding objects; alternate flushing and pallor of the face, the expression being often frowning or sad, or sometimes vacant and stupid; heat of head; marked intolerance of light and sound; general hyperesthesia or dysesthesia; great irritability and peevishness, with unwillingness to be disturbed, to answer questions, or to take food; insomnia or very disturbed sleep; sometimes slight wandering at night, but no marked delirium; unsteady gait, with dragging of the limbs; constant restlessness; grinding of the teeth; alternate contraction and dilatation of the pupils; severe vomiting; usually obstinate constipation and retraction of the abdomen; complete anorexia, without any particular thirst, the tongue being furred, and the breath offensive; and moderate but irregular pyrexia, the temperature not often rising above 101° or 102° in the evenings, the skin being usually harsh and dry, the pulse rather frequent, but easily hurried to 120 or more, and the urine concentrated, but very deficient in chlorides, phosphates, and urea. *Tâches cérébrales* are often easily produced. Subsequently the mental faculties become more disturbed, as evidenced by delirium in some cases,

either wild and restless, or muttering; and increased drowsiness, with tendency to stupor. General sensibility becomes impaired, and the hyperesthesia of the special senses ceases, while signs are developed pointing to implication of the cranial nerves at the base of the brain, such as dim or double vision or hemiopia; tinnitus aurium and partial deafness; twitchings about the face; strabismus; oscillation of one or both eyeballs; and dilatation, inequality, or marked oscillation of the pupils, which are not very sensitive to light. The face assumes a worn, aged, distressed expression, the eyes being half-closed. Vomiting ceases, and diarrhoea may set in. Fever diminishes, while cool sweats often break out, and the pulse becomes in many cases remarkably infrequent and slow, but at the same time extremely variable and fluctuating, as well as often irregular in rhythm and force. Respiration becomes sighing or moaning, and irregular. Still later there is marked general motorial disturbance, as evidenced usually by violent, prolonged, and frequent fits of convulsions; tetanic rigidity, the head being drawn back, boring into the pillow, or rolling from side to side; subsultus tendinum; tremulousness of the limbs; local paralysis or hemiplegia; or occasionally by cataleptic phenomena. The face exhibits grimaces, on account of the muscular twitchings, with partial paralysis; the eyes are half-closed, dim, and covered with a film. When not convulsed the child is generally picking at the bed-clothes, or boring the fingers into the ear or nostril. The pupils are dilated and motionless. The final symptoms include gradual anaesthesia of all the senses; deepening coma; general muscular paralysis and relaxation, with slight twitchings; involuntary passage of urine and faeces; coldness of the extremities, with general cold sweats; and an extremely rapid, feeble, and irregular pulse. Death may take place from gradual coma, or during a fit of convulsions. In some cases the temperature rises considerably before death, or it may sink much below the normal. The ophthalmoscope reveals hyperæmia of the disc, ischaemia, or optic neuritis; but only in very rare instances have tubercles been seen in the choroid. Sometimes the head becomes enlarged, the fontanelles at the same time being very prominent, and presenting pulsation if they are not closed up.

When tubercular meningitis affects only the convexity of the cerebrum, Dr. Gee states that the prominent symptoms are a constant convulsive state, with moderate pyrexia, and a pulse which is rapid and very variable in its frequency.

The ordinary duration of cases of tubercular meningitis in children is said to be from 7 to 23 days. Rilliet states that when prodromata are wanting it averages from 20 to 30 days. When the convexity is involved the disease terminates in one or two weeks, or even sooner. In the course of a case a remarkable remission in many of the symptoms is frequently observed, simulating recovery, but some of them still remain, and it is very important not to mistake this improvement for an indication of approaching convalescence.

In the adult tubercular meningitis is generally considered as being in most cases secondary to chronic tubercular disease, especially to pulmonary phthisis, the symptoms of which often improve markedly just before those of meningitis are developed. Gee states, however, that primary tubercular meningitis is at least as common as secondary. It is of importance to know that the onset is often extremely insidious, and that in young women the phenomena are frequently of a hysterical character. Usually the symptoms more or less resemble those observed in

the child, the most prominent being severe frontal headache with darting paroxysms; heat of head, with redness of the face or alternate flushing and pallor, and suffused conjunctivæ; often a dull, bewildered, heavy, or stupid expression, with mental confusion; a tendency to somnolence and stupor, alternating with wild delirium; indisposition to speak, or sometimes sudden complete aphasia; photophobia, and intolerance of sound; evidences of irritation or paralysis of some of the cranial nerves, such as twitchings or paralysis about the face, ptosis, dilated or unequal pupils, strabismus; convulsive seizures; paralysis of the limbs; and cerebral vomiting. Deep coma follows, with general paralysis, and involuntary passage of faeces and urine, terminating in death.

III. ACUTE CEREBRITIS OR ENCEPHALITIS—CEREBRAL ABSCESS.

Aetiology.—Inflammation of the brain-substance may result from:—
 1. *Injury* caused by fractures, wounds, or mere concussion. 2. *Disease of the bones*, especially in connection with chronic ear-affections, or occasionally with acute disease of the internal ear. 3. *Extension* from meningitis. 4. *Local irritation*, in connection with adventitious morbid products, extravasated blood, infarcts, or spots of softening. 5. Various *acute* and *chronic diseases*, especially if attended with suppuration, the inflammation being then probably pyæmic or septicæmic in character. Thus cerebritis has been met with in connection with low fevers, especially typhus; acute pneumonia; empyema; phthisis; gangrene of the lung; bronchiectasis; osteo-myelitis; ulcerative endocarditis; dysentery; and abscesses in different parts of the body. 6. *Insolation*. Sometimes no cause can be made out.

Anatomical Characters.—Cerebritis is described as *diffuse* or *general*; and *local*. The former does not imply that the whole brain is implicated, which is never the case, but merely that there is extensive inflammation of the superficial grey matter, this condition being associated with meningitis, and evidenced by redness, softening, and adhesion to the pia mater when this is stripped off. *Local* cerebritis is limited to one or more spots of variable dimensions. Some pathologists regard this morbid change as being the invariable cause of *acute softening* or *ramollissement*, especially of *red softening*. As will be hereafter pointed out, however, it is far more likely that the condition thus described has in the great majority of cases an altogether different pathological origin. When resulting from inflammation, it is said that the specific gravity of the softened portion is increased. It has been supposed that the colour may become yellow or green, from infiltration of the affected tissue with exudation or pus. The most important termination of local cerebritis is the formation of *an abscess*, which only happens, however, in connection with injury, bone-disease, empyema, pyæmia, or in rare cases where there is a source of infection distant from the brain, from which septic emboli pass into the circulation. By far the commonest cause of cerebral abscess is chronic ear-disease. The abscess is usually situated in the temporo-sphenoidal lobe or the cerebellum. In chronic disease of the nose or orbit its seat is the frontal lobe. Usually the abscess is single, but there may be several collections of pus, especially in pyæmic cases. Any part of the brain may be involved, and when the abscesses are numerous, they are usually situated chiefly near the surface. Their

size varies as a rule from that of a pin's head to that of a nut or egg; but either hemisphere may be occupied by one large abscess, which alters its shape and flattens its convolutions against the skull. When there are several abscesses they are usually small. Their shape is irregularly round or oval. At first the walls are ragged, softened, or inflamed; but if the disease lasts for some time, a firm fibrous or fibro-cellular capsule is formed, which may attain a considerable thickness, becoming lined by a smooth membrane. The pus may be tolerably healthy, yellow, or green, and sometimes red from admixture of blood; but in old abscesses it becomes unhealthy, foetid, and alkaline, containing but few pus-cells, with abundance of granular matter. A cerebral abscess may burst in various directions, such as on the surface of the brain; into a ventricle; into the tympanum; or in rare instances externally. In other cases the contents become inspissated, cheesy, or calcified, and a firm capsule forms.

Symptoms.—The special characters of the clinical phenomena of cerebritis, as distinguished from those of meningitis, are that they indicate but slight and brief excitement, or none at all; while signs of failure of the cerebral functions speedily set in. The *diffuse* form is always preceded and accompanied by symptoms of meningitis, and in proportion to the slight degree and short duration of these symptoms, and to the rapidity with which stupor and coma, sensory anaesthesia, convulsions, and paralysis set in, the more probable is it that the brain itself is involved. Pyrexia also is not so high as in meningitis. *Local* cerebral inflammation is always very obscure at the outset. Frequently there is a severe prolonged rigor at first, which may be repeated on several days with almost regular periodicity. Sometimes, without any particular previous symptoms, the patient is seized with an apoplectic or epileptiform seizure, or gradual coma sets in; occasionally sudden hemiplegia without loss of consciousness has been observed. As a rule, however, there are early symptoms, namely, deep and sometimes fixed headache, often considerable, of a dull character, but not intensified into violent paroxysms, with localized tenderness over the seat of the abscess; vertigo; heat of head; restlessness and sleeplessness; a heavy expression; mental confusion; irritability; sometimes talkative but not violent delirium; dimness of sight; partial deafness; sensations in various parts of the limbs of tingling, numbness, formication, or deep pain or coldness; general weakness and languor; with tremors, twitchings, rigidity, or paralysis of various muscles. The pupils present all possible variations. There is comparatively little pyrexia. Vomiting is not infrequent. The bowels may be very constipated; and the tongue much furred. Sometimes articulation is impaired, or the patient is disinclined to speak, or complete aphasia may be observed. The subsequent symptoms in fatal cases are stupor, ending in coma; gradual loss of all sensation; convulsions, hemiplegia, or general paralysis, usually with rigidity or tetanic spasms; and involuntary escape of urine and faeces. Some cases do not end fatally, but permanent disorder of the mental, sensory, or motor functions usually remains.

Cerebral abscess in the terminal stage is attended by the symptoms of cerebritis just described, but often in "chronic abscess" there is a "latent period," and the initial inflammatory symptoms may have been so slight as to have been overlooked. The latency is often imperfect, however, and slight symptoms, of which headache is the most common, may be noticed. The latent period may then end

suddenly or gradually. In "acute abscess" the symptoms are continuous with the initial disturbance.

Besides the comprehensive symptoms, of which the more important are headache, delirium, coma, and optic neuritis, which are irrespective of the seat of the abscess, there are often symptoms determined by the *location of the abscess*, the most definite being unilateral paralysis, convulsions, and aphasia owing to implication of motor regions. The temporo-sphenoidal lobe, the commonest seat of chronic abscess, rarely produces localizing symptoms. In cerebellar disease also there are seldom such definite symptoms as to lead to certainty of diagnosis, although vomiting, occipital headache darting from the diseased ear, especially if accompanied with inco-ordination, would point to the abscess being in the cerebellum. In pyæmia it is rarely possible to diagnose cerebral abscess; and in some instances the symptoms closely resemble those of some low fever. Very exceptionally a collection of pus in the brain bursts externally.

IV. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—*a.* Acute inflammatory diseases connected with the brain or its membranes have to be distinguished from various *extrinsic* diseases attended with severe nervous symptoms, and this particularly applies to tubercular meningitis occurring in children. The principal affections of this class with which these diseases are liable to be confounded are the exanthemata, especially typhoid and typhus fever; pneumonia and other acute inflammatory affections; disorder of the alimentary canal in children, particularly if acute and attended with fever and marked cerebral disturbance; anomalous cases of fever with brain-symptoms; great exhaustion of the vital powers, especially as the result of bad feeding, prolonged diarrhoea, or some lowering illness; and various derangements giving rise to reflex convulsions or delirium. The *history* of the case, as revealing some cause of cerebral inflammation, or of one of the other complaints mentioned above; the *age, constitutional condition, and hereditary tendencies* of the patient; the *mode of onset* of the attack; careful investigation regarding the *symptoms*, particularly as to the degree and character of those referable to the head, and the presence or absence of indications of cerebral lesion, in the way of motor or sensory disorder, the intensity and course of pyrexia, the symptoms connected with the alimentary canal, and those characteristic of the various fevers; *physical examination* of the different organs; and the *course and progress* of the case, are the chief data to be relied on in diagnosis. It is frequently impossible in children to determine at first whether they are suffering from tubercular meningitis, or from one of the complaints above enumerated. Under such circumstances the only thing to be done is to watch the case carefully, and observe its progress, at the same time employing some judicious treatment, and the obscurity will in most instances be cleared up before long.

b. Inflammatory diseases have to be separated from *other affections of the nervous system*, which give rise to signs of cerebral excitement. Acute meningitis in an adult may be simulated by active congestion, in which, however, the symptoms are but temporary and usually slight, with little or no fever; by delirium tremens; or by acute mania. In the last two conditions the diagnosis rarely presents much difficulty, if proper attention be paid to the previous history and the existing

symptoms. In mania the presence of one or more fixed delusions, and absence of fever or of signs of vascular excitement about the head, are important points in diagnosis. In doubtful cases the supervention of spasmoidic and paralytic phenomena, or of coma, usually soon reveals the existence of meningitis. Meningcal or cerebral haemorrhage and cerebral tumour have in rare instances been mistaken for tubercular meningitis. The symptoms of acute inflammatory softening, and of that form due to thrombosis, often closely resemble each other; and occasionally cerebral haemorrhage simulates cerebritis at first.

c. The diagnosis of *meningitis* from *cerebritis* and its consequences, and of *simple* from *tubercular meningitis*, calls for a few remarks. *Meningitis* and *cerebritis* are frequently more or less combined, but the latter is distinguished mainly by the symptoms of cerebral excitement being much less marked and of short duration, or even absent altogether; while those indicative of failure of the cerebral functions rapidly supervene; there being also much less local vascular excitement and general pyrexia. The chief circumstances by which *tubercular* is distinguished from *simple* meningitis are the age of the patient in many cases; the presence of signs of the tubercular diathesis, or a history of hereditary taint, and the absence of any other obvious cause of meningitis; the more marked and prolonged premonitory symptoms, with insidious mode of onset; the evidences of inflammation affecting the base of the brain chiefly at first, there being less psychical disturbance, and no wild delirium; the headache being more in severe paroxysms, with the "hydrocephalic cry;" the minor degree of fever, or of local vascular excitement; the special characters of the pulse; and the less rapid course.

d. The diagnosis of *cerebral abscess* is of considerable importance on account of surgical treatment. The co-existence of chronic ear-disease with cerebral symptoms and even optic neuritis may in rare cases lead to error, as after trephining the mastoid process the symptoms have entirely disappeared; but in nine cases out of ten cerebral symptoms with optic neuritis in ear-disease point to abscess. Tumour and chronic abscess present many points of resemblance clinically. The ætiology will help to decide; moreover, rapid and sudden development of cerebral symptoms with optic neuritis, *not* very intense, will point to the latter condition. From functional disease latent chronic abscess may be distinguished by optic neuritis and persistent headache. *Retardation of the pulse* is very frequently met with in cerebral abscess, and is a sign of great diagnostic importance, especially when co-existing with headache, delirium, and stupor, which serve then to distinguish it from a brain-symptom due to a toxic state of the blood.

2. **Prognosis.**—Any *acute inflammation* in connection with the brain or its membranes is extremely dangerous, and in the great majority of cases the termination is fatal. It is exceedingly doubtful whether tubercular meningitis is ever recovered from, at all events when the disease is fully developed, although cases of reputed cure have been brought forward. If a case should terminate favourably the cerebral functions are more or less permanently impaired. Modern surgical treatment has improved the prognosis in cases of cerebral abscess.

3. **Treatment.**—Unfortunately active treatment can be of very little service in any form of acute meningitis or cerebritis, and my own experience is decidedly opposed to the measures usually recommended, such as bleeding; severe purging; mercurialization; and extensive

blistering. The measures which are most likely to be useful in the early stage are to place the patient in a well-ventilated, cool, quiet, and somewhat darkened room, on a comfortable bed, with the head high; to enjoin perfect freedom from every kind of disturbance; to cut the hair very short or even shave the head, and apply cold assiduously, but cautiously, by-means-of the ice-bag, Leiter's coil, or irrigation; to open the bowels tolerably freely, by calomel, croton-oil, and purgative enemata; to limit the diet to beef-tea and milk; and, if there are signs of vascular excitement, to apply a few leeches over the temples. Convulsions are best treated by bromide of potassium in full doses, especially in cases of tubercular meningitis. Opium must be avoided. In the latter stages a blister may be applied to the nape of the neck, or a couple behind the ears, but the advantage of blistering the whole scalp, as has been advocated, seems to be very questionable. Should adynamic symptoms set in *stimulants* are needed, especially brandy, ammonia and ether, with abundant liquid nourishment; if the patient is unconscious they may be injected between the teeth by means of a syringe, or administered by enemata. Care must be taken throughout to keep the feet warm; to attend to thorough cleanliness; and to see that the bladder is properly emptied. Sinapisms and flying blisters over the limbs are recommended in order to endeavour to rouse the patient in the later stages, but they are of little use. Should meningitis arise in connection with rheumatic fever, the application of sinapisms or blisters to the joints might be of service. In cases where an abscess can be definitely localized in the cortex by tenderness of the scalp, convulsive seizures affecting one limb only, or the presence of aphasia, surgical treatment by trephining with antiseptic precautions should certainly be had recourse to, and the pus let out. The full discussion of this aspect of the subject belongs, however, to the domain of surgery.

CHAPTER XCIII.

DISEASES AFFECTING THE CEREBRAL CIRCULATION.

THERE are four groups of morbid conditions which may be referred to the cerebral circulation, namely:—1. Excess or deficiency of blood in the vessels of the brain—*Cerebral congestion* and *anaemia*. 2. *Cerebral embolism* and *thrombosis*. 3. *Cerebral and Meningeal haemorrhage*. 4. *Diseases of the vessels*. Only the first three groups need be specially considered here, for the diseases of the vessels have already been partly discussed, and will be further sufficiently noticed incidentally in dealing with other conditions, with the exception of one particular lesion, namely, aneurism, which it will be more convenient to consider along with tumours of the brain.

Without entering at any length into an account of the peculiarities of the cerebral circulation, it will be expedient to notice here certain points which are of practical importance. There is little or no communication between the arteries of the brain, except at the circle of Willis. Even the finest branches of a particular artery, such as the middle cerebral, do not anastomose, and only communicate through capillary vessels.

Moreover, the arterial branches supplying the central ganglia are distinct from those distributed to the surface of the brain; while the arteries of the convolutions give off long and short branches, which are quite separate, the short ones being distributed to the cortical grey matter, the long to the subjacent white substance. Hence, if any artery is blocked up, the blood is entirely cut off from the area which it supplies, and the resulting lesions are correspondingly limited. In the case of the middle cerebral artery, for example, this vessel may be occluded in its main channel, the whole region which it supplies being thus deprived of blood; or only in one of its branches, so that the cortical grey matter and subjacent medulla may be the seat of disease from this cause, while the basic ganglia are quite healthy, and the lesion may be confined to a very limited area. The ophthalmic artery is a branch of the internal carotid, and so forms a communication between the anterior and middle cerebral arteries, which come off from the same trunk, and the circulation in the eyeball and other parts to which this artery is distributed. The internal ear is mainly supplied from the basilar artery. With regard to the veins, the ophthalmic vein opens into the cavernous sinus; nearly all the venous blood within the skull is conveyed away by the lateral sinuses, and their continuations the internal jugular veins; while the chief sinuses communicate by branches passing through foramina in the skull with the veins on the outside of the head, and with those of the neck.

I. CEREBRAL CONGESTION OR HYPERÆMIA.

Etiology.—The causes of hyperæmia of the brain are:—1. *General plethora*, especially that associated with excessive eating or drinking, and luxurious habits, with want of exercise. 2. *Increased flow of blood* into the brain—*active hyperæmia*—from undue cardiac action, whether merely functional, or associated with hypertrophy of the left ventricle; local irritation, especially in connection with inflammatory affections; diminished resisting power of the arteries, particularly that accompanying vaso-motor paralysis, as from excessive mental labour, strong emotion, sun-stroke, or the effects of alcohol and other poisons; interference with the general arterial or capillary circulation, in consequence of which an extra amount of blood flows into the main arteries of the neck; or, it is said, atrophy of the brain. 3. *Interference with the escape of blood* out of the brain—*mechanical hyperæmia*—especially resulting from cardiac and extensive lung-affections; violent expiratory efforts with the glottis closed, as in coughing or straining at stool; hanging the head downwards; direct pressure upon the veins returning the blood from the brain, as by an aneurism or other tumour; or strangulation of the neck.

Anatomical Characters.—The *post-mortem* appearances usually described as indicative of cerebral congestion are overloading of the venous sinuses and of the vessels of the meninges, including the finer branches as well as the larger veins, so that the pia mater appears extremely vascular and opaque; undue redness of the grey matter of the convolutions; and increased number and size of the drops of blood which are visible on making sections of the brain. The convolutions may be compressed, and the ventricles contracted. Niemeyer justly remarked that it is often difficult to decide whether the vessels of the membranes, and still more whether those of the brain-substance have

been congested during life. He considered that the number and size of the drops of blood on section depend chiefly on its fluidity, and that oedema may follow congestion, the brain-substance then becoming unusually pale, and presenting but few and small blood-spots. As a rule the signs of hyperæmia are equally distributed throughout, but sometimes they are more evident in some parts of the brain than others. Long-continued or repeated congestion leads to permanent enlargement and tortuosity of all the vessels; atrophy of the brain, with a moist and slimy condition of its substance; increase in the subarachnoid fluid; and, it is affirmed, to hypertrophy of the Pacchionian bodies.

Symptoms.—Persistent cerebral congestion is revealed ordinarily by more or less of the following symptoms:—Constant dull headache, not severe, felt all over the head, or chiefly at the vertex or behind; a sense of heaviness, fulness, and oppression in the head; vertigo, which is often a prominent symptom; some degree of mental disturbance, evidenced by dulness of intellect, confusion and slowness of thought, impaired memory, indifference, and indisposition for any effort or occupation; constant drowsiness, though sleep is unrefreshing and often disturbed by unpleasant dreams; photopsia, iridic colours, or specks before the eyes, or sometimes temporary diplopia or dim vision; partial deafness and noises in the ears; a feeling of heaviness in the legs, especially after walking, with restlessness and fidgetiness, twitchings, or sudden startings; increased or impaired cutaneous sensibility; pains in the limbs and various paræsthesiae, these disordered sensations being temporary and variable in their locality. These symptoms are rendered worse by taking a full meal, by mental effort or emotion, by physical exertion, and by the recumbent posture. There are often obvious signs of plethora about the face and head, with throbbing of the carotids.

Occasionally grave symptoms arise from cerebral congestion. The most important are those characteristic of an *apoplectic* attack. Various combinations of symptoms may be met with, but the distinctive features of this *congestive apoplexy* are as follows:—1. Its onset is quite sudden; it reaches its full development at once; and almost always follows some act on the part of the patient which leads to increased congestion in the cranial cavity, such as hanging down the head, coughing, or straining at stool. 2. The coma is rarely complete, there being usually some indications of sensation, or should there be absolute loss of consciousness, this lasts but a very short time. 3. There is generally partial bilateral motor paralysis; very rarely hemiplegia, or more marked paralysis on one side than the other. 4. Rigidity is never observed, but slight bilateral clonic spasms are not uncommon, or they may be unilateral. 5. Respiration is not stertorous. 6. The pulse is generally slow, infrequent, and full. 7. There are external signs of hyperæmia about the head and face. 8. Urine and faeces are not passed involuntarily. 9. Restoration is rapid and ordinarily complete, no permanent mental defect or paralysis of motion or sensation remaining. Some degree of mental confusion may continue for a time, or there may be general impaired sensation with muscular weakness, but these phenomena soon pass away. The patient may be subject to attacks of a similar kind. Occasionally cerebral congestion is supposed to give rise to *epileptiform* seizures: and in some conditions it is said to be attended with delirium and fever.

II. CEREBRAL ANÆMIA.

Aetiology.—Cerebral anæmia may be *partial* or *general*. The former may arise from obstruction of some arterial branch, especially as the result of embolism or thrombosis; or in connection with certain intracranial diseases, such as cerebral haemorrhage or tumour, which either compress neighbouring arteries or capillaries, or give rise to surrounding oedema. Anæmia of the entire brain occurs under the following circumstances:—1. In connection with *general anæmia*. 2. From *failing cardiac action*, cerebral anæmia being a prominent phenomenon of the syncopal state. 3. Rarely from *obstruction or compression of one of the main arteries supplying the brain*. 4. In consequence of the cranial cavity being encroached upon by large tumours, haemorrhages, and other morbid conditions; or by a fractured and depressed skull. 5. From *vaso-motor contraction* of the arteries which supply the brain, it is said.

Anatomical Characters.—Cerebral anæmia is indicated by more or less deficiency or want of blood in the vessels supplying the brain; by pallor of its substance, the white matter being very pale and shiny; and by the absence or small number and size of the spots of blood usually visible on making sections of the brain-substance.

Symptoms.—It is probable that the symptoms which occur in connection with several of the morbid conditions which affect the brain are to some extent due to local anæmia of its substance. This partial anæmia is, however, of most importance, and most strikingly evident in association with embolism and thrombosis, and the phenomena observed will be more appropriately described when these pathological conditions are discussed.

In *general* cerebral anæmia the symptoms may be simply those of more or less sudden syncope, namely, loss of consciousness, with pallor, dilated pupils, and other phenomena, in some conditions these being associated with distinct convulsive movements; or they may come on gradually. The phenomena in the latter case are usually those already described under anæmia, such as headache, dizziness, disturbed vision, and tinnitus aurium. A condition met with in children as a result of depressing causes, such as bad feeding or long-continued diarrhoea, which has been termed *hydrocephaloid*, has also been attributed to cerebral anæmia, the symptoms simulating those of acute hydrocephalus. In cases of starvation, as well as in some instances of mere general anæmia, there may be marked mental excitement, restlessness, and delirium, which may even end in a violent maniacal condition.

III. CEREBRAL AND MENINGEAL HÆMORRHAGE— SANGUINEOUS APOPLEXY.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Cerebral haemorrhage is in the great majority of cases, excluding those of traumatic origin, the result of *structural changes in the minute vessels*, which diminish their resisting power, namely, atheroma or calcification; fatty degeneration; the formation of minute aneurismal dilatations on the small arteries, associated with a fibroid change; or the state of impaired nutrition which is induced by debilitating diseases, such as typhus fever or scurvy. Frequently, in addition to this, the vessels are not properly supported, owing to softening or atrophy of the brain-substance, and hence they are still more

liable to rupture. Not uncommonly they give way spontaneously, but this event is far more likely to happen if a state of cerebral congestion is brought about in any way, but especially as the result of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, excited cardiac action, or interference with the return of venous blood from the brain. On this account cerebral haemorrhage is liable to follow sudden effort; straining at stool; a fit of coughing; powerful emotion; hanging the head down; compression of the neck; exposure to the sun; a fit of drunkenness; a warm bath; or general exposure of the surface of the body to cold. Among *predisposing causes* may be mentioned advanced age; hereditary predisposition to early senile changes in the arteries; luxurious habits, with want of exercise; and a state of general plethora or obesity. Should there be signs of marked degeneration in the arteries, particularly if these are combined with left cardiac hypertrophy or dilatation of the right cavities of the heart, or with renal disease, cerebral haemorrhage is to be feared at any moment. This lesion may occur even in young children. It must be mentioned that *embolism* or *thrombosis* of a large vessel in the brain leads to capillary extravasation into the surrounding area. In very rare instances haemorrhage into the brain has resulted from the *rupture of a vascular tumour*.

Traumatic injury is the usual cause of meningeal haemorrhage, but blood may find its way from the brain into or beneath the pia mater, or into the arachnoid cavity. Another important cause of haemorrhage into the meninges is the *rupture of an aneurism* involving one of the main arteries at the base of the brain, especially the basilar, middle cerebral, or one of the communicating arteries. In a large number of these cases the aneurism is due to embolism from *infective endocarditis*, and when cerebral haemorrhage occurs in young people, this is nearly always the cause. Meningeal haemorrhage also occurs in connection with the condition named *pachymeningitis*. Effusion of blood outside the dura mater is always due to injury.

Anatomical Characters.—The situations in which blood may be found extravasated within the cranium are as follows:—1. Into the substance of the brain. 2. Within the ventricles. 3. In connection with the pia mater. 4. Into the arachnoid sac. 5. Between the skull and dura mater.

The pathological anatomy of haemorrhage into the brain must be considered at some length. *Seat.*—This is by far most frequently the internal capsule, the corpus striatum, or the optic thalamus. Occasionally blood escapes into the pons, cerebellum, convolutions or medullary substance of the cerebrum, crus cerebri, medulla oblongata, corpora quadrigemina, or corpus callosum. Sometimes a part of the brain, as the septum lucidum, is torn through; or the blood makes its way into a ventricle, or out on to the surface of the brain. *Amount.*—The quantity of blood extravasated varies from a few drops to several ounces, and the effusion may be so large as to alter the shape of a hemisphere, flatten its convolutions, and cause marked anaemia around. *Number of hemorrhages.*—As a rule there is but one extravasation, but occasionally two or more are observed, though very rarely on opposite sides. Not uncommonly remains of former hemorrhages are visible. *Recent characters and subsequent changes.*—The blood may accumulate in the form of what is termed a *capillary haemorrhage*; or as a distinct *clot*. The former presents numerous scattered dark-red points of extravasation in the midst of cerebral substance, which is either normal, or frequently of a yellow or reddish colour, as well as softened, this condition consti-

tuting one form of *red softening*. A clot, if small, simply separates the brain-fibres, but if it is large, the cerebral tissue becomes broken down and mixed with the blood, while the surrounding portion is torn, at the same time being often softened and discoloured from inhibition. At first the blood may be found to be quite fluid, or partially or completely coagulated into a soft clot. Subsequently it tends to set up surrounding inflammation, and has been known even to give rise to an abscess. In favourable cases, however, the extravasation undergoes changes ending in its absorption. It separates into its fibrinous and serous portions; becomes decolorized by degrees, passing through stages of reddish-brown, brown, yellowish-brown, and yellow; or granular pigment and haematoxin crystals form. Proliferation of cellular tissue takes place around, forming a capsule, and the clot may in time be entirely absorbed, an apoplectic cyst remaining, containing fluid, often loculated, and this may also be removed ultimately, nothing being left but a firm, fibrous, pigmented cicatrix. It is even said that this may disappear, a loss of substance, with consequent diminution in the size of the brain, being thus occasioned. The nerve-fibres which lead from the seat of haemorrhage to the spinal cord frequently undergo degeneration.

When blood collects in a ventricle it is not nearly so readily absorbed, but tends to become organized. In connection with the membranes an extravasation is generally spread out, and forms a soft red coagulum. In its subsequent changes it becomes altered in colour, granular, and pigmented, the brain underneath being somewhat indurated. Finally it forms a depressed pigmented plate, with serum upon its surface.

The heart, vessels, and kidneys will be found diseased in many cases of cerebral haemorrhage.

Symptoms.—In a considerable proportion of cases of cerebral haemorrhage premonitory symptoms have been noticed for a variable period, such as headache or a sense of heaviness in the head; vertigo; mental confusion and impaired memory; irritability of temper; disturbed sleep or drowsiness; disorder of vision or hearing; thickness of speech; slight or temporary limited paralysis about the face or limbs; local twitchings; impaired sensation or parästhesiae in various parts. These phenomena are usually due to mere vascular disturbance; but may result from the formation of minute thrombi or very small extravasations. The frequent occurrence of epistaxis has been considered an important premonitory sign of cerebral apoplexy; as well as subconjunctival haemorrhages, and the discovery by the ophthalmoscope of clots in the retina. There are usually clinical indications of degeneration of the vessels, as well as of cardiac disease and chronic renal mischief in many cases.

The precise clinical phenomena which result from the actual extravasation of blood into the brain differ very materially. This lesion never causes absolutely sudden death, though in rare instances a fatal termination has occurred within a few minutes. In the majority of cases the immediate symptoms which characterize cerebral haemorrhage may be summed up as those of an *apoplectic seizure* with *hemiplegia*. The main features of the attack are as follows:—It may follow some evident cause which leads to cerebral congestion, but often comes on spontaneously, while the patient is perfectly quiet. The seizure is usually more or less sudden, though not absolutely so, being almost always preceded by some immediately premonitory symptoms, which occa-

sionally last for some time, such as mental confusion, pain in the head, disorder of speech, unilateral numbness, pallor with faintness, or sickness. Sometimes a convulsion ushers in the attack. When fully developed the coma is usually very profound at first, and the deeper it is the more likely is an apoplectic fit to be due to haemorrhage rather than other cerebral lesions. The accompanying phenomena of the comatose state in a considerable proportion of cases of sanguineous apoplexy are flushing or even some degree of lividity of the face, with a turgid condition and fulness of the veins; slow, laboured, irregular, or stertorous breathing, with puffing out of the cheeks in expiration; and throbbing of the carotids, the radial pulse being frequent, slow, laboured, full, and soft. Sometimes, however, signs of shock are noticed, the face being pale, and the pulse rapid, small, and feeble. The temperature is frequently lowered. Hemiplegia exists on the side opposite the lesion, having the extent of distribution described in the chapter on paralysis, but in many instances this condition is not easy to make out at first, when the coma is very profound, the whole body being paralyzed for the time. Sometimes tremors or spasmodic movements are observed in the paralyzed limbs. The head and eyes are usually turned to the non-paralyzed side, being drawn by the unantagonized muscles of the sound side, the patient seeming to be looking over the shoulder on that side, and often both upper eyelids fall. The pupils vary much, but they are generally equal and somewhat dilated; sometimes they are unequal, or very large and insensible to light.

As regards the progress of the symptoms, the comatose state may end in death, which rarely happens under some hours, and not usually for two or three days, some cases lingering for four or five days or even longer. Urine and faeces are then passed unconsciously; and secretions accumulate in the air-tubes, attended with loud rhonchal sounds. On the other hand, in a good proportion of cases consciousness is restored more or less speedily, and when this happens the mind is found to be perfectly natural, or there is only slight mental confusion, which soon passes off. Occasionally delirium is observed; or the mental faculties may be permanently enfeebled, the patient sinking in time into a state of more or less dementia. The hemiplegia becomes evident on the return to consciousness, and when the right side is affected aphasia is common, being also occasionally observed in cases of left hemiplegia, but in these cases the patient is usually left-handed. Sensation is not nearly so much affected as motion usually, there being merely a certain degree of impaired sensibility, or of numbness and tingling in the extremities, and even these disorders usually disappear before long. Now and then, however, permanent anaesthesia is noticed, either over the whole side or in limited spots, which is an indication of severe lesion, extending to, and implicating the posterior part of the internal capsule. There is usually no complaint of head-symptoms or disorder of the special senses, or if such exist, they speedily pass away unless the haemorrhage is extensive. In a few days signs of more or less inflammation from irritation by the clot are generally developed, such as headache, heat of head, restlessness, slight delirium, disturbances of vision, and twitchings or spasmodic movements in the paralyzed parts. These symptoms soon subside as a rule, but violent inflammation may be set up, ending in extensive softening or abscess, indicated by a relapse into the comatose state, with general paralysis and involuntary evacuations before death, which event may take place from this cause.

in three weeks or even later. Should a case progress favourably, the motor paralysis often diminishes markedly in time, the improvement following the usual course, but restoration is seldom complete, certain muscles generally remaining permanently disabled. In other cases there is little or no improvement, and "late rigidity" may ultimately set in.

The clinical variations due to the seat of cerebral hæmorrhage may be gathered from what has been stated in the chapter on LOCALIZATION OF NERVOUS DISEASES, but a few special points may be noticed here, as well as the variations due to the extent of the mischief. As regards either *cerebral hemisphere*, the degree and duration of the comatose state depend mainly on the amount of the extravasation. Hence, if this is moderate, there may be only partial loss of consciousness, the patient exhibiting signs of sensation and perception, while the mental faculties are very speedily and completely restored. If the extravasation is very small, there is no impairment of consciousness at all, and the lesion is merely indicated by sudden hemiplegia; or this is noticed when the patient attempts to move in the morning, the hæmorrhage having occurred during the night. The degree and persistence of the paralysis depend on the seat of the extravasation, as well as on its extent. Thus a small effusion into either *corpus striatum* or into the *internal capsule* will give rise to hemiplegia, and if it is of some size the paralysis is permanent. It may happen that a clot is so small or so situated that it either gives rise to no symptoms whatever; or only to partial hemiplegia, from which recovery is often rapid and complete. Hæmorrhage into the *cortical substance* is said to be usually attended with convulsions, and subsequently by marked mental disturbance, meningitis being often set up. When a very large clot occupies one hemisphere, so that the opposite side is also interfered with, bilateral paralysis is produced, though it is not equal on the two sides, only some degree of weakness of the limbs being observed on the same side as the lesion. General paralysis may also result from extravasation into both hemispheres, but this is extremely rare. If there is extensive *laceration* of the brain, rigidity and muscular twitchings are prominent phenomena. In some cases no impairment of consciousness is observed at first, or this is only partial and of brief duration, but afterwards, owing to increase of the hæmorrhage, or to the rupture of another vessel, profound coma sets in, ending in death.

Ventricular hæmorrhage is attended with deep coma and general paralysis, as well as in some cases with convulsions or marked rigidity and twitchings; or, more commonly, these symptoms follow the signs of hæmorrhage into one hemisphere, which is very significant. Considerable extravasation into the middle of the pons Varolii causes profound coma; general paralysis; marked contraction of both pupils; and usually speedy death. The condition greatly resembles that resulting from opium-poisoning. Hæmorrhage into the medulla oblongata generally proves very rapidly fatal. When blood escapes into the arachnoid sac or sub-arachnoid space the attack is usually not so sudden, but the symptoms are very variable. At the outset premonitory symptoms are frequently present, such as severe headache, vertigo, partial loss of motion, somnolence, or impairment of intellect. Among the signs which may be regarded as most suggestive of this form of hæmorrhage are gradually-developed coma; paralysis beginning on one side and afterwards extending to the opposite one; the occurrence of

convulsions, marked spasmoidic contractions, or rigidity of the limbs; and the supervention of signs of severe meningitis in a few days. Sensation is rarely affected. When meningeal haemorrhage is considerable, it may be impossible to distinguish this condition from extravasation into the substance of the brain.

IV. CEREBRAL EMBOLISM AND THROMBOSIS—CEREBRAL SOFTENING.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The pathology of *softening* of the brain is much disputed, but I propose to treat of this morbid condition in connection with *embolism* and *thrombosis*, because it seems to me certain that cerebral softening is in the great majority of cases due to vascular obstruction thus induced. A cerebral *embolus* of any size generally has its origin in endocarditis affecting the valves of the left side of the heart, especially the mitral, but it may come from a clot in the left auricle in cases of mitral stenosis, from an aneurism, or from a pulmonary thrombus. Minute emboli may also be detached from old clots, or from the inner surface of diseased vessels. The formation of *thrombi* is almost always associated with degeneration or disease of the cerebral vessels; which, however, may be aided by a feeble state of the circulation, and by certain conditions of the blood.

The main pathological causes to which the different forms of *cerebral softening* have been attributed may be thus summarized:—1. Local inflammation of the brain-substance. 2. Obstruction of arteries or capillaries by emboli; of arteries, veins, or venous sinuses by thrombi. 3. Pressure upon one of the main arteries by a tumour. 4. A diseased condition of the walls of the small arteries and capillaries, narrowing their calibre, and interfering with the nutritive relation normally existing between the blood and tissues. Such a condition is important in connection with syphilis. 5. Diminished nutritive activity in the tissue-elements themselves, leading to their degeneration. 6. Effusion of blood into the brain. 7. A peculiar chemico-pathological change in the brain-substance, attended with the liberation of phosphine and one or more of the fatty acids. This form of softening is said to be often observed around adventitious products and old clots, but occasionally is independent of these morbid conditions (Rokitansky). 8. Edema of portions of the brain. 9. Atrophic softening, due to separation of nerve-fibres from their ganglionic communications. I have already expressed my own view as to embolism and thrombosis being by far the most frequent causes of cerebral softening, the nutrition of the part thus deprived of blood being impaired, sometimes to such a degree as to cause its actual death, oedema and capillary haemorrhage also in some cases contributing to the process of softening. It must not be forgotten that the brain may become softened as the result of a *post-mortem* change. With regard to the *predisposing causes* of cerebral softening, this lesion is most common in advanced age, on account of the condition of the vessels, but when due to embolism it may be met with in young adults, or even in children. Excessive and long-continued mental strain undoubtedly aids in its production, and it is by-no-means improbable that this may so disturb the balance of nutrition as of itself to give rise to softening of the brain.

Anatomical Characters.—An embolus may lodge in one of the arteries before reaching the circle of Willis, and then, owing to the collateral

circulation being readily set up, no permanent injurious consequences ensue. Almost always, however, it passes into a branch beyond this circle, most frequently the *middle cerebral artery*, especially the left, according to most observers. The immediate result is anaemia of the portion of the hemisphere which this artery supplies, and in consequence of the anatomical arrangement of the vessels previously described, this is followed by softening, with oedema, while there is a determination of blood into the surrounding capillaries, which often give way, giving rise to capillary haemorrhage, especially at the circumference of the affected part. The effects may partly disappear in course of time in young persons whose vessels are healthy and distensible, and it is not improbable that the consequences of embolism in the minute vessels are often recovered from. After an embolus has been lodged for some time it may be difficult or even impossible to discover it at the *post-mortem* examination.

In *arterial thrombosis* the vessels will generally be found extensively diseased, many of them being usually blocked up. This condition will also lead to anaemia and softening, but owing to the morbid state of the minute vessels, and to the fact that several of them are obstructed, there is no increased vascularity around the affected part as a rule, this portion of the brain being very pale, while, if a vessel of any size is obstructed, for the same reasons restoration cannot be expected. Thrombosis of the *veins* and *venous sinuses* is generally associated with inflammation, resulting from injury or from bone-disease. It may arise, however, from feebleness of circulation accompanied with blood-changes, the thrombus first forming in the superior longitudinal sinus, and then extending, leading to more or less effusion of serum into the ventricles and sub-arachnoid space, or, rarely, even to haemorrhage here or into the brain-substance, but especially to scattered patches of red softening with capillary haemorrhages in the grey matter of the convolutions, or occasionally to more extensive softening.

Three chief forms of *cerebral softening* are described, namely, *red*, *yellow*, and *white*, but the softened part may present numerous grades of these tints, or even other colours, such as brown or greenish. The degree of diminution in consistence varies from what is scarcely appreciable, to a condition in which the brain-substance is converted into almost a fluid pulp. This is determined by the aid of the finger; or by allowing a piece cut out of the softened part to stand, and observing how soon the angles round off, or noting the effects of pouring a stream of water gently upon it. The *seat* and *extent* of softening also vary greatly, and very different statements have been made as to the frequency with which different parts of the brain are involved, but the usual seats seem to be the corpus striatum, optic thalamus, central white matter of the hemisphere, and the convolutions. In *embolic softening* the left hemisphere is most commonly affected. The morbid condition is rarely well-defined, but shades off into the surrounding brain-tissue. A section appears to be swollen, and often rises above the surrounding level. A highly important character of all forms of cerebral softening, except, it is said, the inflammatory variety, is that the specific gravity of the softened part is considerably below that of normal brain-substance. Microscopical examination reveals more or less destruction of the nerve-elements, until in extreme cases no trace of them is visible; abundant granular cells, not of inflammatory origin, but chiefly derived from granular degeneration of the cells of the neuroglia or of nerve-cells; granular fatty débris;

particles of myeline; blood-cells in some varieties of softening, or their remains in the form of pigment and haematoxin crystals. The small vessels often show signs of degeneration, and are in some forms of the disease dilated, or present little aneurismal swellings.

It is necessary to offer a few remarks respecting the three main forms of softening. *Red* softening may be inflammatory in its origin, but in the great majority of cases it depends upon obstruction of large arteries or venous sinuses. The tint at first may vary from pink to deep claret, being most intense in the grey matter. Afterwards it undergoes changes, assuming different hues of yellow, brown, chocolate, buff, and other colours. *Yellow* softening usually results from changes in the red variety, but the peculiar form due to the chemico-pathological change is described as being of this colour. *White* softening is considered by some pathologists as the ultimate condition of the red variety, but undoubtedly it is not uncommonly a primary form, especially in connection with extensive thrombosis and atheroma of the vessels. A white appearance is also observed in connection with oedematous and atrophic softening.

Reparative processes may be set up after softening. On the surface of the brain circumscribed yellow patches—*plaques jaunes*—are produced, of tough consistence, implicating the grey matter of the convolutions. In the interior of the organ a cavity forms, bounded and traversed by a white or greyish or sometimes a yellowish vascular connective tissue, which may divide the space into loculi, and these contain a milky fluid, holding in suspension abundant fat-granules and corpora amylacea. This fluid may be absorbed, contraction and ultimate closure of the cavity subsequently taking place.

Symptoms.—It will be requisite in treating of the clinical history of cerebral softening to describe it under the two forms of *acute* and *chronic*. The latter is considered in the chapter on CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN.

Acute Softening.—Practically it will only be necessary here to indicate the respective symptoms of *embolism of the middle cerebral artery*, and *thrombosis*. *Embolism* may occur at any age, being not uncommon in young persons; some morbid condition likely to originate an embolus can generally be discovered; whilst in most cases no premonitory head-symptoms have been noticed. The usual indications of the lodgment of the embolus in the brain are sudden loss of consciousness and symptoms of shock, though these are not so frequent or so profound as in haemorrhage: with hemiplegia, generally on the *right* side. The case may end fatally, or consciousness may return, but the hemiplegia remains, aphasia being also of very frequent occurrence. The paralysis is rarely recovered from entirely, but power may be partially restored, especially in young persons. In a case mentioned in a former chapter which came under my notice, the leg recovered perfectly, but the arm, face, and tongue remained permanently paralyzed, and aphasia was also persistent.

Arterial thrombosis is met with either in old persons, or in those who are prematurely aged; and usually, but not always, well-marked signs of degeneration of the vessels of the limbs are obvious, along with a feeble heart and other evidences of decay. Commonly there have been marked *premonitory* symptoms, due to interference with the cerebral circulation, or to the formation of minute thrombi, similar to those described under CEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE. The mode of attack varies, but is usually more or less *apoplectiform*. Should a large artery or several smaller vessels be rapidly obstructed, a sudden apoplectic

seizure with hemiplegia occurs, frequently not distinguishable from sanguineous apoplexy. By far more commonly, however, the onset is gradual, there being marked mental disturbance of some kind before the coma supervenes, such as transient excitement, confusion of thought, irritability, or mild delirium, the patient often talking incoherently or acting strangely. There may be complete loss of consciousness for a brief period, but this condition soon passes away, and almost always when the patient is seen the coma is only partial, indications being afforded that sensation and perception are not entirely abolished. In some cases apoplectiform attacks are repeated, with partial restoration in the intervals, absolute coma being ultimately developed, with general paralysis and involuntary passage of faeces and urine, death taking place in a few days. In others the mental faculties become by degrees considerably improved, even up to the previous standard; but as a rule the intellect remains markedly impaired, and this condition tends to become speedily worse and worse. There is frequently permanent aphasia or defect of speech. When sufficiently restored, the patient often gives indications of pain or uneasiness in the head; and of hyperesthesia, dysesthesia, or various paresthesiae in either or both limbs on one side. Hemiplegia is usually present, and during the apoplectic condition the head and eyes are often turned to the sound side. Sometimes the paralysis is bilateral, or is confined to one limb. Generally it is not complete, being also more marked in the arms than in the legs, and at the extremities of the limbs than in other parts. Early spasmodic contractions in the paralyzed parts are very common, in the way of clonic spasms, jerkings, or rigid flexion of joints, especially of the shoulder, elbow, and knee. The affected limbs are often exceedingly irritable on percussion. The paralysis is not likely to diminish. *Hemiplegia without loss of consciousness* is far more common in thrombosis than in cerebral haemorrhage, and the paralysis may come on in a progressive manner, which is very characteristic, affecting first one limb and then the other, at the same time becoming more marked by degrees. Occasionally the early symptoms assume the characters of irregular epileptiform attacks occurring in rapid succession, attended with mental disturbance, ending in coma and hemiplegia. In other instances delirium is the prominent symptom at first, usually mild, sometimes violent, alternating with and finally ending in coma. The subsequent course of cases of acute cerebral softening varies much; many of them become very chronic, the patients gradually sinking into a state of imbecility, and being permanently bed-ridden and helpless; the opposite side often becoming weak; "late rigidity" setting in in the paralyzed muscles; and nutrition being much impaired.

V. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—With regard to the *hyperæmic* or *anæmic* disorders of the circulation of the brain, which give rise to the slighter symptoms, nothing need specially be said as to their diagnosis. Let it be borne in mind, however, that persistent symptoms pointing to the head, especially in persons at all advanced in years, should always lead to a careful investigation of the case. It not uncommonly happens that head-symptoms are complained of more or less constantly, such as headache or giddiness, and it becomes a question whether these depend upon

some *extrinsic* disturbance, especially connected with the digestive organs, heart, or kidneys; or upon congestion of the brain, or disease of the cerebral vessels. It is always well to give a cautious opinion under these circumstances. The general condition of the patient; the presence or absence of marked symptoms referable to the alimentary canal; the state of the heart, vessels, and kidneys, as determined by physical and other modes of examination; and the precise nature of the symptoms complained of, will usually render the diagnosis evident. Any sensory or motor disorder in the limbs, especially if always noticed on one side or fixed in the same spot, should be looked upon with suspicion. Again, slight nervous phenomena, which are often attributed to mere congestion of the brain, may be due to thrombosis of small vessels or to minute haemorrhages. Care must also be taken not to mistake between cerebral congestion and anaemia. In further considering the diagnosis of these affections, it will be convenient to discuss them under the two main groups in which they are usually presented in practice.

a. The Apoplectic Condition.—This must be considered, not only with reference to cerebral diseases, but also to other causes by which it may be induced. The comatose state may either be developed more or less suddenly, while the patient is under observation; or he may be found in an unconscious state. The first thing to be determined in a case of insensibility, of which the cause is unknown, is whether the condition is one of *syncope* or *shock*; *asphyxia*; or *coma*. The characteristic features of each of these conditions have been already described, and need not be recapitulated here. The ordinary causes acting directly on the nervous system which are to be borne in mind as likely to account for unconsciousness, the origin of which is not evident, are:—*a.* Injury to the head. *b.* Epileptic or other form of convulsive seizure. *c.* Uraemia or diabetic coma. *d.* Poisoning by alcohol, opium, or other narcotics. *e.* Sun-stroke. *f.* Certain affections of the brain or its membranes, namely, cerebral congestion; haemorrhage into the brain or meninges; cerebral embolism or thrombosis; and rapid serous effusion.

In endeavouring to arrive at a diagnosis, the following course of investigation should be pursued:—

(i.) Enquiry must first be made as to the *mode of attack*, and if there is any known *cause* for its occurrence. Thus there may be a history of injury, opium-poisoning, or alcoholism. On the other hand, the circumstances under which the seizure occurs may exclude such causes altogether, but it is important to bear in mind that symptoms of opium-poisoning may not appear until some time after the poison has been taken. Not uncommonly, however, the patient is found in a state of insensibility, and no history can be obtained. Should this happen in a house, it is requisite in any suspicious case to look for bottles which might have contained poison. If the attack has come on under observation, it is very important to ascertain whether it arose spontaneously, or followed some obvious cause, such as sudden effort or a fit of anger; whether it was sudden in its onset, or more or less gradual; if preceded or not by mental disturbance, local sensory or motor disorder, or other symptoms; and if any convulsive movements were observed at or soon after the beginning of the attack. This information affords much aid in distinguishing organic lesions from each other; while the occurrence of convulsions entirely excludes poisoning. The *age* of the patient should be ascertained, if it is known.

(ii.) In the next place a *careful examination of the patient* must be carried out, noting especially the following particulars:—*a.* The apparent age; general conformation and appearance, whether full and plethoric or the reverse; and if there are marked signs of degeneration. *b.* The colour of the face, whether indicating congestion or shock. *c.* If any signs of injury about the head can be discovered. *d.* Whether there are any indications that the attack began with convulsions, such as the tongue having been bitten. *e.* The odour of the breath, which may reveal alcohol, opium, uræmia, or diabetic coma. *f.* The degree of insensibility, deep coma usually indicating haemorrhage or narcotic poisoning. *g.* The state of the pupils, any inequality showing some cerebral organic lesion; while extreme contraction is a sign of opium-poisoning, though the same condition is now and then observed in cerebral haemorrhage, and the pupils are greatly dilated at the close in cases of opium-poisoning. *h.* If there are any indications of unilateral motor disorder, looking especially for paralysis; turning of the head and eyes to one side; tremors; or spasmodic movements or rigidity. These afford evidence of some cerebral lesion, though their absence does not exclude such lesion, while marked spasm or rigidity is in favour of plugging of vessels or meningeal haemorrhage. *i.* The characters of the breathing, slow, laboured, and stertorous respiration being usually only observed in the profound coma of cerebral haemorrhage or narcotic poisoning. *j.* The state of the pulse. *k.* It is highly important further to examine the heart and vessels. For instance, valvular disease or some other condition likely to give rise to embolism may be thus discovered; cardiac enlargement is often associated with cerebral congestion or haemorrhage; in cases of thrombosis the heart is usually very weak or fatty; while marked degeneration of the vessels may accompany either haemorrhage or thrombosis. The urine should also be tested, some of which may be withdrawn by the catheter if necessary. Bright's disease may, however, be associated with uræmia, cerebral haemorrhage, or thrombosis. The detection of alcohol in the urine has been considered useful in the diagnosis of alcoholic poisoning. If the patient vomits, the matters vomited ought to be examined in any doubtful case, and it may even be desirable to use the stomach-pump.

(iii.) The *progress* and *termination* of an apoplectic case often give much information as to its nature. Thus, haemorrhage on a very extensive scale or into certain parts of the brain soon terminates fatally; and so usually does opium-poisoning. In a considerable experience of cases of acute alcoholic poisoning at the Liverpool Northern Hospital, I never knew one prove immediately fatal, even when the coma was very deep. The course of events also affords important help in distinguishing between cerebral congestion, haemorrhage, and plugging of vessels.

There are some points of practical importance which demand notice. The greatest care should be taken not to pronounce a person merely drunk in whom there are signs that this condition exists, as there may be at the same time some serious injury to the head, or an organic lesion affecting the brain. Grave mistakes have not infrequently been made in this matter. Alcoholic poisoning may be met with in very young children, even in infants in arms. It is sometimes difficult or impossible to determine whether comatose symptoms are due to some evident injury to the head; or to a sudden cerebral lesion which has caused the patient to fall, and has thus led to the injury.

b. The second group of cases which call for consideration here are characterized by *sudden or rapidly-developed hemiplegia without loss of*

consciousness. This indicates either hæmorrhage into the brain; or plugging of vessels, from thrombosis or embolism. The probability is always in favour of the latter, and the diagnosis of thrombosis is still more certain if the paralysis is not suddenly complete, but increases and extends in a progressive manner.

2. Prognosis.—The immediate prognosis of an *apoplectic seizure* due to cerebral lesion is always doubtful, and a very cautious opinion ought to be given, the case being constantly watched. If the coma is merely due to congestion, the patient will soon recover. The chief circumstances which increase the gravity of the immediate prognosis in cases of sanguineous apoplexy are:—Advanced age of the patient, with very degenerate vessels; a history of previous attacks; the occurrence of convulsions at the outset, or of marked rigidity or spasmodic movements at an early period; a progressive character of the attack; very deep and prolonged coma, with involuntary passage of urine and faeces; general paralysis; great dilatation and immobility of the pupils, or extreme contraction; a very slow or rapid pulse; or signs of profound shock, with feeble circulation, pallor, and cold sweats. As to the ultimate prognosis, supposing consciousness to be restored, this can only be determined by watching the case for some time and noting its progress; and the same is true when hemiplegia sets in without coma. Right hemiplegia is said to be less favourable than left. Anæsthesia affecting any part of the paralyzed limbs is a bad sign, as well as the occurrence of occasional severe pains in them. If no improvement is evident within a month; if the paralyzed limbs exhibit a marked tendency to permanent rigidity; and if electric irritability becomes impaired or lost, the prognosis is very unfavourable. The leg may recover power while the arm remains permanently paralyzed. After cerebral hæmorrhage the mental faculties are often perfectly restored, even though the paralysis is persistent. It must be borne in mind that a clot in the brain may cause serious inflammation of its substance, and may thus prove fatal some time after the occurrence of the hæmorrhage.

Embolism or thrombosis is not so frequently immediately fatal as cerebral hæmorrhage, but the subsequent history is generally very unfavourable, both as regards the mental condition and the paralysis, especially in cases of thrombosis accompanied with extensive disease of the vessels, such cases often going on rapidly from bad to worse.

3. Treatment.—In the treatment of the minor symptoms due to congestion or anæmia of the brain, attention must be paid to the state of the blood and of the circulation. General cerebral anæmia may be obviated by improving the quality of the blood; and stimulating or strengthening the heart's action. No special treatment can be directed to partial anæmia. Cerebral congestion may be relieved by keeping the patient on low diet, and stopping all stimulants; administering saline and other purgatives; avoiding any cause which is likely to give rise to the condition, such as over-study; or, in appropriate cases, removing blood either locally or generally. The patient must be warned against wearing tight clothing about the neck, hanging down the head, straining at stool, and other causes which are likely to increase cerebral congestion, particularly if there are any indications that the vessels are in a diseased state.

Before describing the treatment of an *apoplectic attack* resulting from cerebral mischief, I would remark that in cases where the diagnosis is uncertain, it is desirable to empty the stomach at once by means of the

stomach-pump, lest the symptoms should be due to some poison. In this class of cases the first principle in treatment ought to be not to interfere immediately and actively unless there is some clear indication for such interference. Formerly venesection was at once resorted to, and is now but too often followed as a routine practice. In many cases all that is necessary is to place the patient in the recumbent posture, if possible in bed, with the head high; to loosen all clothing about the neck and chest; to allow plenty of fresh air; and to enjoin perfect quiet. If the attack is merely due to congestion, recovery will soon follow. Should the case be one of haemorrhage, with obvious signs of marked plethora, unquestionably venesection may be useful, but it is rarely needed; on the other hand, the condition is not uncommonly one of shock, and then stimulant enemata, heat and sinapisms to the extremities, and other measures for rousing the vital functions are indicated, particularly when the coma is due to plugging of vessels. The practice of placing a drop of croton-oil mixed with crumb of bread on the back of the tongue is useful in many cases. If the comatose state continues for a considerable time, the patient must be supported by enemata; sinapisms may be applied to various parts; and the bladder must be attended to. If consciousness returns, the patient should be kept completely at rest, free from all mental disturbance, and upon low diet, until the period of danger from cerebral inflammation has passed. Should this morbid condition be set up, the hair may be cut short and cold applied, or small blisters to the nape of the neck. The subsequent treatment of these cases, as well as those of sudden hemiplegia without coma, must depend upon their progress, but it is particularly necessary to guard against employing too active measures, especially at an early period. The main indications are to support the general health, especially by proper diet, attention to hygienic conditions, and the administration of tonics; to avoid all forms of mental disturbance; and to treat symptoms, particularly paralysis, which must be managed according to the principles and methods already pointed out. Iodide of potassium and bichloride of mercury have been supposed to aid in the absorption of a clot in the brain. A blister occasionally applied to the nape of the neck may prove serviceable.

CHAPTER XCIV.

CHRONIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN AND ITS MEMBRANES.

I. CHRONIC MENINGITIS.

Aetiology.—Chronic meningitis is chiefly met with as the result of former injury to the skull; prolonged mental labour, especially if combined with much anxiety; chronic alcoholism; and irritation by tumours and morbid growths, especially syphilitic. In rare instances it remains after the acute form of the disease. One form of chronic meningitis, named *pachymeningitis*, most frequently comes on spontaneously in aged persons who are the subjects of imbecility or dementia. It is said to have been also observed in cases of chronic alcoholism and chronic phthisis. This variety is by far most common after middle age, and in males.

Anatomical Characters.—The most frequent *post-mortem* signs of chronic meningitis are thickening and increased firmness of the membranes in different parts, sometimes extreme, with opacity of the arachnoid; adhesion of the membranes to each other, of the dura mater to the skull, or of the pia mater to the brain; increased vascularity, particularly of the pia mater, with permanent enlargement of many vessels; serous effusion into the meshes of the pia mater, there being also sometimes a considerable quantity of turbid fluid in the subarachnoid space; exudation, especially in the sulci and around the vessels, often surrounding and pressing upon some of the cranial nerves, and becoming organized and firm; and the presence of excess of clear or flocculent serum in the ventricles, the lining membrane of which becomes thickened and rough. Calcareous or osseous laminæ may be formed in the thickened membranes, and the convolutions of the brain are sometimes atrophied. Increase in number and enlargement of the Pacchionian bodies has been regarded as a result of chronic meningitis.

The form of lesion named *pachymeningitis* usually begins in the region corresponding to the distribution of the middle meningeal artery, and occupies a variable extent. A delicate adherent film forms, which mainly consists of large and thin-walled capillaries, partly of embryonic corpuscles. Gradually new films are developed upon the original one in succession, until they may attain a considerable thickness. The deeper layers at the same time become firmer, less vascular, and more fibrous. Extravasations of blood often occur, owing to rupture of the delicate vessels, which are usually small and numerous, but not uncommonly considerable in extent, so that the whole structure may look like a clot. Blood-pigment is frequently precipitated in crystalline and other forms.

Symptoms.—These are often very obscure and ill-defined in chronic meningitis, being a combination of symptoms due to excited action and impaired function of the parts involved. The most important clinical indications of this disease are:—1. More or less constant general headache, of dull and heavy character, not severe or attended with exacerbations. 2. Persistent vertigo, the patient staggering while walking, as if drunk, but particularly on looking suddenly round over the shoulder. 3. Mental excitability at times, especially in the evenings, with peevishness, irritability, restlessness, and wakefulness; alternating with marked depression, the patient becoming apathetic, gloomy, low-spirited, and apprehensive. 4. In course of time failure of the intellectual faculties, sometimes ending in extreme dementia. 5. Subjective sensations of flashes of light, iridic colours, or tinnitus aurium; with at the same time diplopia or more or less impairment of sight in one eye, or partial deafness. 6. Hyperæsthesia of some parts of the skin, with hypæsthesia or numbness of other portions. 7. Irregular twitchings or clonic spasms of various muscles, especially those of the face and eyeballs, causing grimaces, and often external strabismus; also of the muscles of the limbs, which may present curious spasmoid movements from time to time, or be the seat of rigidity. 8. Irregular motor paralysis, usually complete, accompanying and following the above movements, affecting first the cranial nerves on one or both sides, as indicated by partial ptosis, drawing of the face to one side, strabismus or immobility of the eyeball, slight deviation of the tongue, and thickness of speech; then extending to the limbs, in some cases only a few fingers

or certain muscles being involved, in others the whole arm, one arm and leg, or sometimes all the limbs more or less. Irregular epileptiform attacks not uncommonly occur, but they are not attended with any special cry, or with stoppage of respiration and its consequences, while consciousness is not completely lost. The fit lasts an indefinite and often a considerable time, and is not followed by the comatose state observed in true epilepsy. In most cases some degree of pyrexia is noticed towards evening, with heat of head, flushing of the face, and conjunctival injection. Nausea and vomiting, with obstinate constipation, are not infrequent symptoms. Any excitement tends to increase the symptoms markedly. The ophthalmoscope often reveals optic neuritis or ischaemia.

In *pachymeningitis* the symptoms are very indefinite, being described as headache, vertigo, failure of the mental powers, gradually increasing hemiplegia, and occasional epileptiform or apoplectic attacks. Death usually occurs during one of these attacks.

II. CHRONIC CEREBRAL SOFTENING.

Symptoms.—The pathology of this disease has been already considered, and it is only requisite to describe here the clinical history of softening which is chronic from the commencement. The chief symptoms of this condition are:—1. Headache, in many cases persistent but not severe; usually of heavy character, and sometimes only amounting to a feeling of weight and heaviness; frontal as a rule, occasionally general, but never unilateral or localized. 2. Mental changes, namely, gradual failure of the intellectual faculties one after another, of which the patient is generally aware at first, which may ultimately end in complete dementia or mania; change in manner, disposition, and temper; various forms and degrees of aphasia, a tendency to repeat the same words several times, and on all occasions, being considered very characteristic; marked lowness of spirits; emotional disorder, the patient being either apathetic, or the emotions being but little under control, and quasi-hysterical fits of crying or laughing occurring without cause; sometimes a restless and excited manner at night, or even mild delirium. Occasionally the mind seems unaffected. 3. Sensory disorders, especially superficial and deep pains in various parts of the limbs, hyperaesthesia or dysaesthesia, formication, numbness, and gradual impairment of sensation, seldom amounting to complete anaesthesia; some degree of failure of sight and hearing, but rarely complete blindness or deafness. 4. Motor disturbance, in the direction of paralysis, incomplete in degree, developed gradually and often in an intermittent manner, usually beginning in either arm or leg, but soon becoming more or less generally but irregularly distributed, though one side is as a rule more affected than the other, or sometimes confined to special groups of muscles, such as those of the face or part of a limb; frequently tonic rigidity, gradually increasing; tremors or clonic spasms, especially in the paralyzed muscles, with undue irritability on percussion; and sometimes epileptiform convulsions. The subjects of chronic cerebral softening commonly present an old or prematurely aged, unhealthy, and cachectic appearance. Degeneration of the vessels, weak heart, and granular kidneys are frequently well-marked. Usually the bowels are obstinately constipated. The duration of the disease is very variable.

At last gradual coma sets in, usually with general paralysis and relaxation of the muscles, and involuntary passage of urine and faeces. Speedy and unexpected death may happen from extensive thrombosis or from cerebral haemorrhage.

III. ADVENTITIOUS GROWTHS IN CONNECTION WITH THE BRAIN AND ITS MEMBRANES—CEREBRAL TUMOUR.

Anatomical Characters.—The chief adventitious growths or tumours which are met with in connection with the brain or its membranes include:—1. *Tubercle*. 2. *Syphilitic deposit*. 3. *Sarcoma*. 4. *Glioma*. 5. *Myxoma*. 6. *Carcinoma*. 7. *Cholesteatoma*. 8. *Lipoma*. 9. *Parasitic cysts*, namely, *cysticercus cellulosæ* and *hydatids*. 10. *Cysts* containing fluid, fat, or hair; or enclosing cauliflower excrescences. 11. *Aneurisms*. 12. *Vascular erectile tumours*. 13. *Osseous or calcareous masses*.

Excluding syphilitic growths, which are amenable to treatment, and of which therefore accurate statistics cannot be obtained, it is computed by Gowers that four-fifths of the total number of other cases of cerebral tumour are tubercular, sarcomatous, or gliomatous. The statement that carcinoma is common is due to sarcomata or gliomata having been classified under the term cancer (*encephaloid*). The relative order of frequency is tubercle, glioma, sarcoma; the other conditions, excluding syphilis, being comparatively rare.

Tubercle in the brain is described as forming irregularly-roundish masses, yellow and caseous-looking, dry and bloodless, sometimes continuous with the brain-substance through a greyish-white, somewhat translucent border, in other cases separated by a cyst. As a rule there is but one such mass, occasionally two, rarely more. The size generally varies from that of a hemp-seed to a cherry, but it may be equal to a small egg. Tubercle ordinarily occupies the cerebrum or cerebellum, rarely the pons. It occasionally softens in the centre into a purulent-looking fluid, or an actual cavity may form, or it may undergo partial calcification.

Syphilitic disease.—Syphilitic formations are far more commonly met with in connection with the membranes than in the brain itself. These are matted together, the dura mater being closely adherent to the skull at the seat of disease, and the inner membranes to the cerebral substance, while there is more or less thickening from the accumulation of a tough material, yellow in the centre, but usually presenting a greyish-white border around. This often involves some of the nerves. In the brain syphilis generally causes mere induration from interstitial proliferation of cellular tissue, especially at the surface. Gummata are extremely rare in this organ; they assume the form of irregular nodules or tumours, which may attain the size of an egg, their shape being often modified by the part of the brain in which they occur, and they always pass gradually into the surrounding tissue, either through a greyish softer material or an indurated infiltration. A section is yellowish-grey or yellowish and translucent; cheesy or gluey in consistence; and it often presents signs of decay, in the form of opaque spots scattered over the entire surface, but there is no central softening such as may be observed in tubercle. The more vascular parts of the brain are the usual seats of syphilitic gummata. Generally only a single growth is found.

Sarcoma.—This form of tumour is not uncommon, and may be connected with the membranes, or embedded in the brain-substance, espe-

cially the cerebrum. It is round or lobulated, varying in size from a nut to a good-sized apple, being distinctly defined and frequently enclosed in a vascular capsule, from which it can be turned out. A section is smooth, and dirty-white or greyish-red; and the consistence is generally soft, but may be firm and fibrous. In structure a sarcoma consists mainly of spindle-shaped cells. Calcification may take place in spots; or spaces may be formed, containing fluid.

Glioma.—Resulting from a local hyperplasia of the neuroglia, this form of growth is never well-defined, but runs into the surrounding brain-substance, and does not pass from the brain to the meninges. It is usually found in a cerebral hemisphere, and may attain a considerable size. The colour of a section varies from yellow to greyish-red, and cut vessels are generally seen. The consistence is usually rather soft. Glioma consists of a finely-reticulated material enclosing roundish nuclei. It may become the seat of degeneration or haemorrhage. It occurs chiefly in young persons.

Myxoma.—Usually occurring as a distinct tumour of variable size, occasionally as an infiltration, myxoma is generally observed in the cerebrum. It is very soft, and may be almost gelatinous; somewhat translucent; and has usually a yellowish or reddish colour, but may present extravasations of blood. In structure the material consists of variously-formed cells, embedded in a homogeneous hyaline substance.

Carcinoma may originate in the cranial bones, the membranes, or different parts of the brain. The cerebral hemispheres are most frequently involved. All varieties are met with, but encephaloid is the most common form.

Cholesteatoma is a very rare growth, consisting of concentric laminæ of epithelial-cells. It forms a tumour, surrounded by a delicate membrane, and presenting a pearly lustre on section. It may develop from the brain, the meninges, or the skull.

Cysticerci are generally found in the grey substance, being usually numerous when present. *Echinococci* are very rare.

Aneurism is also a rare condition in connection with the brain. It generally affects one of the arteries at the base, being in most cases of small size, but may attain the dimensions of an egg.

The other forms of cerebral tumour do not call for any special description.

Symptoms.—There is no disease of the brain in which the symptoms are more diverse in their characters and course than in the different kinds of tumours, so much depending on their situation, size, shape, number, and rapidity of growth. Further, the symptoms are not only due to the immediate effects of the tumour, but those of cerebral softening, hydrocephalus, and chronic meningitis are often superadded after a time.

Occasionally a cerebral tumour, even of considerable size, is quite latent throughout; or a sudden apoplectic attack, the result of congestion or haemorrhage, reveals its existence. The characteristic clinical features of this morbid condition, however, are as follows:—1. Headache, at first slight, but by degrees becoming very severe; often localized, though not necessarily over the seat of the tumour; constant, and of dull, grinding character, but subject to violent exacerbations, the pain being often increased by any excitement, coughing, sneezing, a deep breath, or strong light; and sometimes accompanied with localized tenderness of the skull to pressure or percussion. 2. Persistent cerebral vomiting, irre-

spective of taking food. 3. Ophthalmoscopic changes, namely, ischaemia of the optic discs, or double optic neuritis going on to optic atrophy.

The above are the three most important signs of an intra-cranial growth, and when they are all present there is very strong evidence of a cerebral tumour. There may be further—4. Signs of irritation, followed by gradual paralysis, of such of the cranial nerves as the growth implicates, these being generally unilateral. Vision is often affected, terminating in complete blindness, and it is not uncommon for one eye to be involved after the other. Smell and hearing may also be impaired or lost, the latter usually on one side. Severe neuralgic pains, hyperaesthesia, and parasthesiae frequently affect the fifth nerve, followed by gradual loss of sensation ending in complete anaesthesia, and paralysis of its motor portion occasionally. The facial nerve is most commonly implicated, next the third and sixth, and sometimes the fourth, there being first twitchings and spasmodic movements, followed by paralysis of the muscles supplied by these nerves; when the paralysis is complete, electric irritability becomes usually quite extinct. Partial paralysis of the eighth and ninth nerves is not uncommon, causing impairment of speech and deglutition, or sometimes disturbance of respiration or cardiac action. If the crus cerebri be pressed upon, the cranial nerves in the neighbourhood are affected on the same, while gradual hemiplegia and hemianesthesia supervene on the opposite side. Another symptom that frequently occurs in tumours is vertigo, which may be due to several causes, but is especially liable to be met with in disease of the base of the brain or cerebellum. Slowness of speech is associated with tumours in almost any situation, but especially when they involve the cerebrum.

It will now be advisable to consider the different symptoms which enable us to localize a growth in the brain.

(i.) Tumours involving the motor part of the cortex give rise to localized epileptiform seizures, often without loss of consciousness, which commence in the limb or joint supplied by the part of the cortex affected, and are often followed by temporary paralysis of the limb. The epileptiform convulsion is frequently preceded by tingling, or "pins and needles", in the part of the limb the movements of which are presided over by the area of motor cortex in which the discharge commences, and where the tumour in all probability is located.

(ii.) Tumours growing in the centrum ovale or about the internal capsule cause a gradual slow progressive hemiplegia, usually without convulsions, unless the motor cortex be involved. Tumours in the anterior frontal lobes cause no paralysis, but only mental changes.

(iii.) When a growth is situated at the base of the brain, or on individual cranial nerves, it gives rise to corresponding local phenomena, according to the nerves implicated.

(iv.) When a tumour occupies certain portions of the brain, peculiar rotatory and other movements are observed. A special feature in tumours of the cerebellum, more especially of the middle lobe, is said to be a tonic rigidity of the muscles of the back of the neck, with retraction of the head, associated frequently with flexion of the fore-arms, and extension of the legs, with pointing of the toes. They also press on the venæ Galeni, and cause dropsy of the ventricles, with corresponding mental symptoms.

Occasionally a cerebral tumour becomes evident externally. In cases of aneurism it is said that a murmur has been in exceptional instances heard over some part of the skull. The general condition of the patient

varies much. The constitution is gravely affected, should there be much suffering, with loss of sleep. Sometimes considerable emaciation and marasmus, or evidences of some cachexia are observed ; or cancerous, syphilitic, or tubercular deposits may be discovered in other parts. The mode in which cases of cerebral tumour terminate is very variable. In those which have come under my observation the end was always unexpected, acute symptoms setting in without any obvious cause.

IV. CHRONIC HYDROCEPHALUS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Chronic hydrocephalus is characterized by accumulation of fluid, either in the ventricles of the brain ; in and beneath the arachnoid ; or in both these situations. In the great majority of cases the condition is either congenital, or is revealed within six months after birth; and has then been chiefly attributed to arrest of development of the brain, or to chronic inflammation of the ventricular lining membrane. It may come on as an acquired complaint, however, in older children, or very rarely even in adults, being then the result of closure of the *venae Galeni*, usually as a consequence of pressure by a tumour; or by meningitis closing the openings between the fourth ventricle and subarachnoid space. Chronic hydrocephalus has no connection with tubercle, but is not uncommon in cases of rickets. Excess of fluid may accumulate in the arachnoid sac in connection with senile or other forms of atrophy of the brain ; or after previous haemorrhage.

Anatomical Characters.—The quantity of fluid in cases of chronic hydrocephalus varies from a few ounces to several pints. It is usually watery, limpid, and colourless ; of low specific gravity ; and contains but a very small quantity of albumin, with some saline matter. The ventricular lining membrane is often altered in appearance, thickened, granular, and rough. The arachnoid is stretched, and signs of chronic meningitis are often observed about the base. The brain is altered in shape, sometimes unsymmetrical, its convolutions being flattened and spread out ; and its texture is in many cases firmer than natural, or, on the other hand, soft and macerated. The optic nerves are usually much stretched. The cranial bones are frequently expanded and thinned, the fontanelles and sutures being considerably widened ; sometimes the bones are thickened, but spongy.

Symptoms.—Only the signs of chronic hydrocephalus in children need be considered here. The head enlarges, in some cases attaining an enormous size, so that it falls from side to side if not supported, and at the same time assumes a curious shape, becoming round and globe-like, with a very large and prominent forehead, the bones being driven apart, while the orbital plates of the frontal are pushed down, especially behind, the eyeballs being thus pressed forward so as to become very prominent, and to look downwards. The fontanelles and sutures are widened to a variable degree, as well as prominent ; while frequently distinct fluctuation can be detected. The scalp feels thin, sometimes almost as if it were going to give way, and the bones may be so attenuated as to yield a crackling sensation. The lower part of the face looks very small, and has a curious worn or stupid expression. It may present a puffy appearance, with enlarged vessels on the cheeks. The nervous symptoms which are liable to be met with are headache, though this is often absent ; vertigo ; non-development or gradual failure of the mental faculties, even to complete imbecility ; disturbed

sleep at night, with drowsiness by day ; marked peevishness, irritability, or depression of spirits ; failure of the special senses, especially that of sight, with signs of ischaemia or atrophy of the disc ; restlessness, with general muscular weakness and loss of co-ordinating power, tottering gait, tremors of the limbs, spasmoid movements or convulsions coming on without any obvious cause, strabismus, or laryngismus stridulus. The body is generally much wasted ; circulation is feeble ; and the child always feels cold. Excessive appetite, vomiting, and constipation with unhealthy stools are common symptoms. The duration of cases of chronic hydrocephalus is variable, but usually death occurs within the first few years of life, chiefly from gradual or sudden coma, exhaustion, convulsions, or laryngismus stridulus.

V. HYPERSTROPHY OF THE BRAIN.

Only a few remarks are required with reference to the so-called *hypertrophy* of the brain observed in children. This is associated either with rickets or with congenital syphilis ; and the increase in size and weight of the organ is probably due either to albuminoid infiltration of the white substance, or to increase in the neuroglia. The tissues become unusually firm, pale, and dry ; the convolutions being compressed, flattened, and closely packed. The head expands, but the enlargement is distinguished from that of chronic hydrocephalus by being much less rapid in its progress, never attaining any great size ; and by having an elongated form from before back ; while the fontanelles and sutures are not at all or but little apart, the former being often depressed, and not yielding fluctuation ; and the eyes are sunken. Frequently there are no evident nervous symptoms, but if the head is closed before the brain enlarges, serious symptoms are liable to arise, such as severe headache, vertigo, mental failure, epileptiform attacks, paralysis, or coma.

VI. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—The principal chronic cerebral diseases between which a diagnosis has usually to be made are *chronic meningitis* ; *chronic softening* ; and *cerebral tumour*. It must be remembered that these are often associated, under which circumstances their symptoms are more or less combined. The chief points to be considered in the diagnosis are :—1. The *history* of the case, as revealing some local cause of meningitis or a syphilitic taint ; or the absence of any such cause. 2. The *age* and *general condition* of the patient, with the state of the main organs and vessels, softening being generally accompanied with signs of marked degeneration, and occurring in old persons or in those prematurely aged. There may be signs of some constitutional taint associated with a cerebral tumour ; or of morbid deposits in other parts, especially cancerous, tubercular, or syphilitic. 3. The seat, intensity, and characters of *headache*, and the presence or absence of local tenderness. 4. The *mental condition*, meningitis being chiefly characterized by excitement alternating with depression ; softening by gradual and permanent impairment of the mental faculties ; while in cases of tumour the mind is often quite unaffected. 5. The character and mode of distribution of *sensory* and *motor* disturbances. These have been already pointed out in the description of the symptoms of each disease, and they

are very important. 6. The appearances revealed by the *ophthalmoscope*. As already stated, the most characteristic signs of cerebral tumour are the headache and local tenderness, cerebral vomiting, and optic neuritis. Occasionally external objective signs of such a tumour are observed. As to the *nature* of a growth in the brain, it is often impossible to come to any certain conclusion. Some indications may be derived from the age of the patient; a history of syphilis; signs of a particular cachexia; or the presence of morbid growths in other parts. The *situation* of a cerebral tumour must be determined by the precise character and localization of the symptoms.

Epileptiform seizures may occur in the course of the diseases just considered. These can generally be distinguished from true epileptic fits by the localized character of the convulsive movements; and by the existence of definite symptoms indicative of one or other of these morbid states.

The difference between *chronic hydrocephalus* and *hypertrophy of the brain* in children, each of which causes enlargement of the head, has been sufficiently pointed out in their several descriptions.

2. Prognosis.—In chronic brain-affections the prognosis is very uncertain. All that can be definitely stated is that any such affection is always serious; and that at any moment dangerous symptoms are liable to arise, which may end in speedy death. If the disease is of a syphilitic nature, however, much improvement may often be effected by proper treatment. If there are indications of frequent or constant disorder of the cerebral circulation, along with degeneration of the vessels, the danger of the supervention of hæmorrhage or thrombosis should be recognized.

3. Treatment.—The principles of treatment applicable to chronic cerebral diseases are very simple, namely :—*a*. To keep the mind free from every possible excitement or anxiety, and to forbid any mental effort; in short, to keep the brain as much at rest as possible. *b*. To support the general health by good food, fresh air, quinine, iron, cod-liver oil, and hypophosphites. *c*. To aid absorption of morbid products. Iodide of potassium or sodium, bichloride of mercury, and grey powder are the chief drugs employed in cases of chronic meningitis, but they are especially important in syphilitic disease. Occasional blistering is supposed to promote absorption. *d*. To treat symptoms, especially headache; paralysis; restlessness and sleeplessness, by means of hyoscyamus, cannabis indica, chloral, or other suitable hypnotics; and convulsive seizures by bromide of potassium. Acute symptoms may arise calling for active interference. For chronic hydrocephalus *diuretics* are recommended, with the view of aiding absorption of the fluid. Pressure around the head, by-means-of a bandage or strapping; and removal of the fluid by the aid of a fine trochar or the aspirateur, have also been employed as methods of treatment in this condition. Within recent years, Macewen, Victor Horsley, and others have in several cases successfully removed tumours from the motor part of the cortex, and if, after a fair trial with mercury and an iodide, no relief be obtained, and if the origin of epileptiform fits can be localized in a definite part of the motor cortex, surgical aid should be had recourse to.

CHAPTER XCV.

DISEASES OF THE SPINAL CORD AND ITS MEMBRANES.

THE knowledge concerning diseases of the spinal cord has been greatly extended during late years, and the subject has now become a very wide one, as well as somewhat intricate. It is only intended in the present chapter to give an account of some of these diseases; certain complaints referred to the cord having already been sufficiently alluded to, while others will be more conveniently discussed in subsequent chapters. It will, however, render the subject clearer, if at the outset a brief summary is given of the morbid conditions to which the spinal cord and its meninges are liable, and of the affections which have been associated by different writers with this portion of the nerve-centres.

The division of diseases into *functional* and *organic* deserves special recognition in the case of the spinal cord; but for practical purposes the conditions in which this structure is actually, or is supposed to be involved, may be conveniently arranged under three groups, as follows:—

1. *Certain definitely-named nervous diseases*, chiefly including tetanus, tetany, chorea, hydrophobia, lead-paralysis, writer's cramp and allied affections, and pseudo-hypertrophic muscular paralysis.

2. *Special functional disorders*.—These include:—*a.* Functional paraplegia, of various kinds. *b.* Spinal irritation, already described under HYSTERIA. *c.* Neurasthenia spinalis.

3. *Special organic diseases*.—Although the organic lesions to which the spinal cord is liable are few in number and easily understood, the individual diseases recognized under this group are very numerous, and their classification is a complicated one. The cord may be involved along with the brain, or with the nerves. When it is affected alone, the lesion may be limited to particular physiological tracts, constituting the group of so-called *system diseases*; or the morbid change is not thus limited, but more or less of the transverse area of the cord is affected, without reference to any special tracts—*indiscriminate diseases*. Again, a morbid condition may implicate the cord at different levels in different cases. And, finally, the disease may be primary in the cord itself; or secondary to, and associated with some extra-medullary mischief, such as caries of the vertebræ, or injury to the spinal column. It will thus be seen that great variety may be anticipated with reference to organic affections of the spinal cord, but the following list includes those which at present demand special recognition:—*a.* Traumatic lesions, especially concussion, this being the only injury which is not strictly surgical. *b.* Acute or subacute inflammatory diseases, namely:—(i.) Acute spinal meningitis, simple or tubercular. (ii.) Acute myelitis (diffuse or general, transverse, central, disseminated, etc.). (iii.) Acute anterior polio-myelitis. (iv.) Subacute anterior polio-myelitis. *c.* Acute ascending paralysis. *d.* Hyperæmia and anaemia of the cord. *e.* Hæmorrhage. *f.* Chronic spinal meningitis. *g.* Chronic myelitis and softening.

h. Progressive muscular atrophy. *i.* Glosso-labial paralysis. *j.* Diseases due to primary sclerosis, including:—(i.) Locomotor ataxy. (ii.) Primary lateral sclerosis. (iii.) Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. (iv.) Multiple or disseminated sclerosis. These will be considered in a separate chapter. *k.* Secondary degenerations, which have already been discussed. *l.* Tumours, new growths, and syringo-myelia.

Having given this summary, I will now proceed to describe briefly the individual diseases of the spinal cord and its membranes which are not discussed in other parts of this work. The signs indicative of mischief in different parts of the cord have already been pointed out in the chapter ON THE LOCALIZATION OF NERVOUS DISEASES, and these must be borne in mind in considering its separate affections. Their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment will be discussed as a whole.

I. NEURASTHENIA SPINALIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The term *neurasthenia spinalis* has been applied to a class of cases supposed to be due to a functional weakness of the spinal cord; but they have also been referred to a similar condition of the cerebellum. What the real state of the cord is can only be a matter of conjecture, but the symptoms have been attributed to marked anaemia, or to a mere alteration in the molecular conditions and actions of the nerve-elements, and impairment of their nutrition. Neurasthenia occurs chiefly in males, especially those of a neurotic temperament. Its main causes are said to be sexual excess or masturbation, undue physical exertion or fatigue, and excessive mental work, especially when these causes are associated with deficient or much disturbed sleep. Sometimes the condition cannot be traced to any definite cause. It may be here mentioned that the symptoms of neurasthenia are very like those which are noticed during convalescence from a severe acute illness, especially of a febrile character, such as typhoid fever.

Symptoms.—These are indicative of great nervous debility, the most striking symptom being that the patient complains of extreme weakness and fatigue, or even of actual prostration, after the slightest exertion. Usually this is accompanied with coldness or numbness of the extremities; and not uncommonly with aching pains in the muscles of the limbs and back, and tenderness along the spine. There may be mental depression, indisposition or inability to perform mental work, and marked sleeplessness. The symptoms are liable to be aggravated after sexual intercourse, especially if excessive. There are no symptoms of any actual disease of the cord, such as paralysis or other objective phenomena. Not uncommonly patients who are the subjects of neurasthenia present a tolerably healthy appearance. The complaint varies much in its duration, but recovery may be brought about in most cases under suitable treatment, if sufficiently prolonged.

II. CONCUSSION OF THE SPINAL CORD.

The description of the various injuries to which the cord is liable does not come within the province of this work; but a few remarks are needed with reference to concussion of this portion of the nervous system, as the effects of such an injury may come under observation in ordinary medical practice, especially as the immediate or remote consequence of railway accidents, and they are particularly important in relation to

actions for damages in such cases. It is difficult to determine the exact nature of the lesions produced in any particular case. Probably in many instances there is no obvious change. In some cases haemorrhage occurs, either in connection with the meninges, or in the form of minute extravasations into the substance of the cord. Sub-acute localized inflammation may also be set up in the membranes shortly after an accident which leads to concussion of the spinal cord.

Symptoms.—When the symptoms of concussion of the cord immediately follow the injury, they are usually those of more or less shock and general nervous disorder, with others pointing more definitely to disturbance of the cord itself. There may be great tenderness along the spine, especially opposite the lowest cervical and first two dorsal vertebrae. Only exceptionally is there complete paralysis, but rather a paresis of one or more limbs; or if the paralysis is marked at first, it may pass away in a few days, sometimes suddenly. Twitchings and startings of the extremities are not uncommon. Sensation may be unchanged, exaggerated, or impaired. Constipation is often present, and micturition may be slow and difficult, followed by irritability of the bladder, and incontinence of urine. The symptoms gradually disappear in favourable cases; while in others they become worse, and give evidence of more definite lesions. Again, they may not appear at the time of the accident, but gradually supervene after a variable interval. In dealing with cases of supposed concussion of the cord, especially in an action for damages, much caution is necessary, as the symptoms are easily imagined, exaggerated, or simulated. They require to be watched for a considerable time, and to be examined repeatedly by someone thoroughly skilled in the investigation of such cases.

III. ACUTE INFLAMMATORY DISEASES.

1. ACUTE SPINAL MENINGITIS.

In spinal meningitis the pia mater and arachnoid are usually chiefly affected—*leptomeningitis spinalis*; but occasionally the dura mater is most involved—*pachymeningitis spinalis*. The latter is almost always local and chronic; and acute spinal meningitis may be regarded for practical purposes as synonymous with *acute leptomeningitis*.

Aetiology.—Acute spinal meningitis may result from :—1. Traumatic injury. 2. Caries of the vertebrae. 3. Bed-sores over the sacrum penetrating deeply, and opening the spinal canal by destroying the sacro-coccygeal ligament. 4. Exposure to cold and wet, especially local; to sudden changes of temperature; or to powerful direct heat over the spine. 5. Acute rheumatism very rarely. 6. The bursting of an abscess into the spinal canal. 7. Adventitious formations and tumours, especially syphilitic growths and tubercle. 8. Tetanus, chorea, or hydrocephalus, it is said. 9. Epidemic cerebro-spinal meningitis. 10. Extension from cerebral meningitis.

Anatomical Characters.—The *post-mortem* appearances resemble more or less those of cerebral meningitis. Usually the membranes are extensively affected, the disease being more or less general. The pia mater is very vascular, infiltrated, and thickened. A soft exudation often covers its surface, as well as that of the arachnoid, which is also swollen and velvety; while fluid occupies the sub-arachnoid space, either turbid and flocculent, or more or less puriform in appearance. This

may be so abundant as to distend the dura mater considerably. The latter is frequently reddened, and exudation of pus may accumulate between it and the bones, or it may exhibit signs of local injury or irritation. These conditions are especially seen in connection with caries of the vertebrae, or sacral bed-sores. The pus in the arachnoid cavity may be foetid, dirty-looking, and greenish. The inflammatory products are generally more abundant towards the posterior surface of the cord, on account of gravitation. In *tubercular spinal meningitis* grey granulations are visible, often in considerable numbers, especially on the surface of the arachnoid. The superficial layer of the cord, as well as the roots of the spinal nerves, are very often involved in the inflammatory process. Should recovery take place, absorption and organization ensue, and adhesions form.

Symptoms.—Acute spinal meningitis is characterized at the outset by signs of irritation of the roots of the spinal nerves; followed by those of paralysis. The disease often sets in insidiously, and at first may be mistaken for rheumatism. In other cases it is ushered in with chills or a rigor, or with convulsions, followed by a variable degree of irregular pyrexia, with its accompanying symptoms; or it may follow cerebral meningitis. The early symptoms are severe paroxysms of pain felt along the spine, but only coming on when the patient moves; tenderness on deep pressure, though not very marked as a rule, and the pain is not increased by percussion; pains shooting from the spine into the limbs and trunk, but especially into the legs, though sometimes they may be chiefly felt in the arms, or even in one arm if the inflammation is limited; some degree of hyperaesthesia; contraction and rigidity of the muscles of the neck and back, which may cause opisthotonus, usually regarded as being due to tetanic spasm, but also considered as an instinctive act to avoid pain; fits of painful spasm in the limbs, neck, and back, with involuntary startings and jerks, but not the powerful spasms observed in tetanus; some embarrassment of breathing, which may be due to pressure by the anterior muscles of the neck upon the larynx, when the breathing is stridulous, and it becomes considerable if the respiratory muscles are affected with spasm, being then attended with a sense of oppression and suffocation; occasionally some difficulty of mastication and deglutition; and irritability of the bladder, or sometimes retention of urine. The reflex irritability is exaggerated at this time, but not to an extreme degree. The patient is usually very restless, anxious, and sleepless; at the same time keeping instinctively as quiet as possible. There are no prominent head-symptoms, if the cerebral membranes are free. Afterwards tingling, formication, and numbness are not uncommonly complained of; while increasing muscular weakness is observed, beginning below and extending upwards; with partial loss of control over the bladder and rectum, involuntary discharge of urine and faeces consequently taking place. Priapism is rarely observed. At this stage the reflex irritability is impaired. In fatal cases death may result from asphyxia; from asthenia and wasting; from implication of the cerebral membranes; or from the cord being compressed by inflammatory products, or becoming itself inflamed. Cases of spinal meningitis last a very variable time. If they become chronic, complete paraplegia is established, motor and sensory, with paralysis of the sphincters, and bed-sores ultimately supervene. Recovery may take place, even in severe cases.

2. ACUTE MYELITIS—INFLAMMATION OF THE CORD.

Under this heading *indiscriminate* lesions of the cord will be dealt with, of an acute inflammatory nature.

Aetiology.—Acute myelitis may result from caries of the spine; injuries, including also severe strain and concussion; excessive muscular effort; irritation by adventitious growths or clots; cold and wet; or direct exposure of the spine to powerful heat. The disease has been attributed to suppression of perspiration or of chronic discharges; the sudden cure of a chronic skin-disease; or sexual excess. Some of the causes mentioned seem to *predispose* to acute myelitis. The cord becomes more or less inflamed in connection with spinal meningitis. A form of myelitis, usually subacute, is in rare instances associated with acute febrile diseases, such as typhoid fever, small-pox, measles, or diphtheria. The complaint is most common in youth and early adult life.

Anatomical Characters.—Inflammation of the spinal cord, when primary, usually begins in the central grey matter, and may either extend along this from one end to the other, or be confined to one or more portions of the cord, spreading throughout its entire thickness, especially opposite the lumbar enlargement. According to its distribution, acute myelitis has been divided into several forms, namely, *general*, *central*, *transverse*, *unilateral*, *disseminated*, and *bulbar*, in which the medulla oblongata is also involved. If myelitis follows meningitis the white substance is first involved, and the central grey matter is not implicated for some time. Three stages are described in the morbid changes characteristic of acute myelitis, namely, those of congestion; exudation and softening; absorption and cicatrization. As usually seen the affected tissue is much softened, being often of cream-like consistence; more or less reddened at first, but afterwards becoming yellowish; swollen and relaxed, the entire cord sometimes presenting a distended appearance, or being nodulated on the surface, while on section the inflamed tissue rises above the level of the healthy structure. The central grey matter has lost its normal contour. Extravasations of blood are liable to occur; and Charcot believed that haemorrhage into the substance of the cord is generally, if not always, the result of previous inflammatory softening. Very rarely abscesses form. There is always more or less spinal meningitis. If the third stage is reached, the affected parts of the cord become contracted and sclerosed, the softened materials being absorbed; and rarely a cyst remains. Subsequently secondary descending degeneration of the pyramidal tracts often occurs. In the early stage microscopical examination reveals accumulation of blood in the vessels; leucocytes in the lymphatic sheaths; hypertrophied and swollen axis-cylinders and nerve-cells; and proliferation of connective-tissue elements. A glistening colloid substance has also been described surrounding the vessels, sometimes present in their interior, and infiltrating the tissues, the nerve-cells of the anterior cornua being often greatly swollen and distended. Some authorities, however, regard this material as merely due to the action of spirit in hardening the cord for examination. When softening occurs, the affected parts are more or less disorganized, as revealed by

broken-down nerve-elements, granular corpuscles, and abundant fat-granules and oil-globules. If sclerosis ensues, the connective-tissue and its cells become increased, and the blood-vessels are sometimes greatly dilated and hypertrophied.

Symptoms.—Primary myelitis is characterized by the absence or slight degree and short duration of the signs of irritation observed in meningitis; with the rapid development of those indicative of destruction of the cord. The disease may set in gradually, with premonitory symptoms; or with remarkably acute or even sudden intensity. Its special symptoms are slight pain over the spine, usually circumscribed, not increased by movement or moderate pressure, but intensified by kneading, and especially by applying a hot sponge or ice, which produces a burning sensation at the upper limit of the inflammation; a feeling of constriction around some part of the trunk, as if it were bound by a tight cord—*girdle sensation*; marked paræsthesiæ in the limbs and trunk, but especially in the legs, such as tingling, formication, furriness, numbness, or subjective coldness, speedily followed by hypæsthesia or anaesthesia and analgesia, more especially in the legs, but sometimes more extensively distributed; marked restlessness, followed rapidly by muscular paralysis below the seat of inflammation, therefore usually paraplegic in its distribution; loss of power over the bladder, not uncommonly accompanied with great vesical irritability, the patient desiring to have the catheter passed very frequently; constipation, followed sometimes by involuntary evacuations, from paralysis of the sphincter ani; and constant priapism. In the paralyzed parts electric sensibility and contractility are sometimes impaired or lost. The condition of the reflexes will depend on the site of the inflammation; so long as the reflex arc of a spinal segment is uninjured, its reflex movements are not affected; if the pyramidal tracts or lateral columns are involved, giving rise to secondary descending degeneration, there is an exaggeration of the reflexes passing through segments lower down. In consequence of the extensive destruction of the grey matter in many cases, the trophic lesions already described as being associated with diseases of the spinal cord are very liable to arise, namely, rapid wasting of muscles, which present the “reaction of degeneration;” the formation of acute bed-sores; and inflammation of the bladder and kidneys. Acute myelitis usually gives rise to little or no fever. The extent and precise character of the symptoms in this disease will vary much, according to the height of the level which it reaches in the cord, and its exact distribution. Thus when it involves the upper part of the cord, the arms are paralyzed; breathing is more or less impeded, and may be gravely disturbed; the voice is weak; there may be dysphagia or difficulty of speech; hyperpyrexia is often present; and the cardiac action is liable to be disordered. Again the condition of the bladder and rectum will depend much on the seat of the disease. In some instances sensation is only partially affected, as evidenced by inability to localize tactile impressions, slowness of conduction of sensation, anaesthesia dolorosa, or a condition in which a touch on the skin produces a diffuse sensation of vibration and pain in the whole of the extremity. Acute myelitis often soon terminates fatally from asthenia, apnea, pulmonary complications, cystitis and renal disease, or acute bed-sores; in other cases chronic disease of the cord remains; while in others still improvement takes place, and rarely a complete cure is established.

3. ACUTE ANTERIOR POLIO-MYELITIS.

In the disease thus named there is an acute inflammation of the *anterior cornua* of the cord, and its usual clinical form is the so-called *infantile paralysis*; occasionally it occurs in adults, and is known as *adult spinal paralysis*. Each of these forms requires brief consideration.

a. Essential Paralysis of Children—*Infantile Paralysis*.

Etiology.—The causation of infantile paralysis is but little known. The complaint occurs in the large majority of cases between 6 months and 3 or 4 years of age, especially in the second year of life, but it may be met with in patients from 2 months to 8 or even 10 years old. Sex and constitutional condition have no influence. It sometimes follows one of the acute exanthemata or other febrile diseases: and has also been attributed to painful dentition; injury to the back; cold from lying on damp ground, or simple exposure to cold and wet; and digestive derangements. Most cases occur during summer and autumn.

Anatomical Characters and Pathology.—It seems now to be generally agreed upon by pathologists that infantile paralysis is due to *acute anterior polio-myelitis*. The inflammation is practically confined to the anterior cornua, and it may occur in different regions, but is usually situated in the cervical and lumbar enlargements, the latter being often alone involved. It may, however, appear in scattered patches, or be tolerably uniformly distributed through a considerable vertical extent of the cord. One or both anterior cornua may be affected, but not always symmetrically. There is a difference of opinion as to whether the inflammatory process begins in the neuroglia or in the nerve-elements, but Charcot was of opinion that the latter are first affected, as the inflammation is sometimes limited to them, or only the immediately surrounding neuroglia is implicated. In any case, more or less of the multipolar nerve-cells become rapidly and completely destroyed; while others are disabled temporarily, but ultimately recover. The involved portions of the cord are softened. The microscope reveals the changes already described as characteristic of acute myelitis. Subsequently the softening is less marked, and finally disappears, the cornua becoming atrophied, shrunken, indurated, and sclerosed, the nerve-elements having to a great extent or entirely disappeared, and the connective tissue being increased. The axis-cylinder processes of the affected nerve-cells, the fibres of the anterior roots of the nerves, and the muscles which they supply undergo secondary atrophy and degeneration, often with great rapidity. The muscles connected with the nerve-cells which are only temporarily disabled are only temporarily paralyzed, and subsequently recover. The wasted nerve-tubules become smaller, and lose their medullary sheath. The involved muscles also shrink rapidly; there is some increase of the cells of the sarcolemma, and, according to some observers, of the intervening connective tissue. Subsequently the muscular fibres lose their transverse striae, and become atrophied, many undergoing more or less fatty degeneration, often with increase in the connective tissue, and the nuclei being increased in number; sometimes a large accumulation of fat takes place, causing the muscles to be enlarged.

Symptoms.—The invasion of infantile paralysis is usually indicated by some *premonitory* symptoms, especially pyrexia, of variable degree, but generally not very marked and exhibiting remissions, which lasts from 24 to 48 hours; sometimes by convulsions, not involving the face, and unattended with cerebral symptoms. Pain is frequently present in the limbs, and also in the back. In exceptional cases mental excitement, delirium, or loss of consciousness is noticed at the outset; or paralysis may set in suddenly without any warning. At first the paralysis is often more or less general, affecting both sides, but usually the lower limbs more than the upper, so that the child lies quite helpless; in many cases it is paraplegic in distribution, occasionally monoplegic, very rarely hemiplegic. The paralysis attains its highest degree at once, any subsequent changes being in the direction of improvement. Rarely are all the muscles of an affected limb involved, and parts of muscles may escape. The paralysis attacks muscles or parts of muscles which are functionally related. Very exceptionally muscles supplied by cranial nerves are implicated (Buzzard). The affected muscles are relaxed and flaccid; while some of them become rapidly wasted, and exhibit the "reaction of degeneration." The reflexes are either much impaired or abolished. Sensation is not perceptibly affected as a rule, but children who are old enough may complain of pains in the limbs and back, and there may be some numbness, which, however, soon disappears. The sphincters are not involved, or only for a very brief period. In rare instances the paralysis disappears entirely in a few days, and the patient is completely restored. The ordinary course of events, however, is for some of the limbs or muscles to recover in from two or three days to a fortnight, while others remain permanently paralyzed. This permanent paralysis is generally of paraplegic distribution, though one leg is more affected than the other; in exceptional cases it is hemiplegic, or a leg and an arm may be implicated on opposite sides, or the paralysis may be confined to one limb, or even to a part of it. Subsequently the paralyzed parts become atrophied, limp, and stunted in their growth, the bones included; electric irritability is entirely lost; all the tissues undergo degeneration; the local pulse becomes small, and the circulation languid; the temperature falls considerably and permanently; and various deformities and distortions arise, according to the part involved, such as club-foot, flexion of the hip, etc., these being much aided by the great laxity of the ligaments and the mobility of the joints, and being usually due to the changes in the muscles, and to unrestrained action of non-paralyzed muscles. Those who have been subjects of infantile paralysis often live to an advanced age, and many belong to the class of mendicant cripples.

b. Adult Spinal Paralysis.

Adult spinal paralysis was originally described by Duchenne and Charcot, and is supposed to be of the same essential nature as infantile paralysis. It begins with febrile symptoms, and not infrequently pain in the spine, with forward curvature, and some degree of pain in the limbs; motor paralysis, of variable extent, occurs either from the outset or speedily; cutaneous sensibility is unaffected; there is no loss of power over the bladder or rectum; nor is there any tendency to the formation of bed-sores. The affected muscles are flaccid, and tend rapidly to waste and to lose their electric contractility. Adult spinal

paralysis is said to differ from infantile paralysis in that the cerebral nerves are more frequently affected; headache is often observed at the commencement; and aching pain or occasionally tenderness may be felt in the paralyzed muscles. In one case observed by Dr. Byrom Bramwell there was temporary aphasia. In the subsequent course of the complaint various degrees of improvement take place in the muscles; deformities do not occur if the bones and joints have reached their full development.

4. SUBACUTE ANTERIOR POLIO-MYELITIS.

Aëtiology and Pathology.—An affection has been thus separately described, of extremely rare occurrence, due to subacute inflammation or degeneration of the anterior cornua, with atrophy of the anterior nerve-roots. It was first described by Duchenne, who named the complaint "*paralysie générale spinale antérieure subaiguée*." In some cases it is chronic throughout. Nothing definite is known about its causation, but Erb has suggested that in some cases the condition is associated with lead-poisoning. It occurs principally in persons between 30 and 50 years of age.

Symptoms.—This complaint comes on insidiously, without any marked fever or other prominent symptoms, but there may be very slight pyrexia, or shooting pains in the back and limbs. Paralysis sets in, usually beginning in the legs, and travelling upwards—*ascending type*; sometimes starting in the arms, beginning in the extremities of the fingers—*descending type*. It progressively increases in degree, the affected muscles being flaccid from the outset. They speedily waste, all the paralyzed muscles undergoing this change simultaneously, so that the limbs shrink markedly. They also exhibit the "reaction of degeneration." The reflexes are first diminished, and subsequently abolished. The skin is apt to become cold and livid. The muscles of the trunk, head, and neck may be afterwards involved; and if the disease is not arrested, the medulla oblongata becomes involved, with the usual consequences. In most cases the paralysis is more marked on one side than the other. Sensation is practically unaffected, but there may be slight numbness. The bladder and rectum perform their functions properly. This disease usually progresses, either continuously or with remissions or intermissions; or temporary improvement may take place; or even complete restoration, either permanent or followed by subsequent relapse. Recovery may occur even after a long duration of the disease. The muscles are restored in the reverse order to which they are attacked. If death occurs, it results usually from implication of the medulla oblongata.

IV. PARALYSIS ASCENDENS ACUTA—LANDRY'S PARALYSIS.

This is another very rare and peculiar disease, originally described by Landry, with regard to the pathology and aëtiology of which nothing positive is known. *Post-mortem* examination in undoubted cases has not revealed any lesion in the nervous system or muscles. The complaint occurs between 20 and 40 years of age, and chiefly among men. It has been attributed to previous acute febrile diseases; syphilis; and exposure to cold and wet.

Symptoms.—Acute ascending paralysis sometimes sets in suddenly; more commonly there are premonitory symptoms, such as slight fever, numbness in the limbs, and a sense of heaviness or weakness. The paralysis begins in the toes and feet, rapidly becomes complete, and extends upwards, involving successively the legs and thighs, the upper extremities, beginning in the hands, the trunk, and the muscles of deglutition and respiration. The muscles do not waste much, and do not exhibit the "reaction of degeneration." The reflexes are soon diminished or abolished. Sensation is usually not affected; the bladder and rectum seldom suffer; and there are no trophic changes in the skin. Usually there is no fever, but this sometimes occurs. Only a few cases recover, a fatal termination usually resulting from asphyxia in from three or four days to two or three weeks, the average duration being from eight to twelve days.

V. SPINAL CONGESTION AND ANÆMIA.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Our knowledge concerning derangements of the supply of blood to the spinal cord is vague and unsettled. *Hyperæmia* of this part is supposed to be *mechanical* or *active*. *Mechanical* congestion is present in cases of cardiac disease obstructing the general venous circulation; and it is believed that it may be local, due to pressure on a particular vein. *Active* hyperæmia has been attributed to vaso-motor paralysis, of reflex origin; and it constitutes the first stage of myelitis. *Anæmia* of the cord may result from general anæmia, embolism, or thrombosis; from local pressure; or, it is said, from vaso-motor irritation, leading to spasmodic contraction of the arteries. This last-mentioned condition was regarded by Brown-Séquard as the cause of "reflex paraplegia." Spinal anæmia has also been referred to aortic regurgitation; and to sudden plugging of the abdominal aorta. The late Dr. Moxon has shown that, from its peculiar mode of blood-supply, the lower end of the cord readily becomes anæmic.

Symptoms.—Congestion of the cord has been supposed to be characterized by the sudden onset of incomplete spinal symptoms, which afterwards disappear, but are liable to recur, namely:—Some degree of dull aching along the spine, increased by heat, but not by movement or pressure; aching pains in the limbs, with variable paræsthesiæ, such as tingling in the toes and fingers, numbness, or sometimes hyperæsthesia, but no anæsthesia; twitchings in the limbs, with partial loss of power in the legs, or sometimes in the arms, often unequal on the two sides, there being no evident alteration in reflex irritability or in electric irritability or sensibility, or any tendency to wasting or other signs of impaired nutrition. The bladder and rectum are not involved. Slight motor and sensory disturbances in the limbs often accompany persistent mechanical congestion of the cord, such as that which results from chronic heart disease. *Anæmia* of the cord has, as already stated, been made to account for some forms of paraplegia. When it is a part of general anæmia no special symptoms are noticed. Sudden paraplegia follows compression of the abdominal aorta in animals, the hinder limbs becoming paralyzed; if the animals are kept alive degenerative changes take place in the anterior cornua, with atrophy of the multipolar cells.

VI. SPINAL HÆMORRHAGE OR APOPLEXY.

Etiology and Pathology.—Hæmorrhage associated with the spinal cord is of extremely rare occurrence. Blood may be extravasated either into the cord itself; or in connection with the membranes, between them or outside the dura mater. By far the most common cause, on the whole, is traumatic injury, but the bleeding then usually takes place outside the cord, and rarely into its substance. Occasionally hæmorrhage into the cord seems to be spontaneous, owing to previous disease of its vessels; usually it supervenes upon some other disease, such as acute myelitis, softening, or the rupture of soft growths. Hæmorrhage associated with the membranes may be due to *pachymeningitis haemorrhagica*; the bursting of an aneurism of the aorta; or purpura, scurvy, and allied conditions. Blood may also escape from the cranial cavity into the spinal canal. Spinal apoplexy is most frequent from 10 to 20 years of age.

Anatomical Characters.—In hæmorrhage into the cord the blood is almost always confined to the central grey matter, and is generally very small in amount. It destroys the involved nerve-structures; and subsequently inflammatory and degenerative changes are set up. The quantity extravasated in connection with the membranes varies much. It is usually clotted and dark; but may be partly fluid.

Symptoms.—1. *Into the spinal cord.*—When hæmorrhage into the cord is sudden, this is evidenced by sudden acute pain in the back, with signs of severe shock to the system, the patient being sometimes unconscious for the time; complete and permanent paralysis of motion and sensation in the legs, or more extensively, according to the seat of mischief; paralysis of the bladder and rectum, with the usual consequences; and priapism. The paralysis comes on with great rapidity under such circumstances; but if the hæmorrhage is gradual it may be some hours before paraplegia is fully established. There may be some signs of irritation at the commencement, such as shooting pains in the limbs, hyperæsthesia, and muscular spasms or twitchings, but they are usually absent, and are never marked. The pain in the back soon subsides. At first all reflexes are abolished; and the temperature of the legs occasionally falls. The paralytic symptoms are usually permanent. Rapid atrophy, with the "reaction of degeneration," is set up in all muscles in immediate relation with the damaged portion of the cord. When the hæmorrhage is in the dorsal or lower cervical region, there may be increased temperature in the legs in a day or two, and some of the reflexes may become exaggerated. Trophic changes in the skin are common, giving rise to large bed-sores; and cystitis occurs early. Very rarely hæmorrhage into the cord gives rise to *hemi-paraplegia*.

2. *In connection with the membranes.*—If the hæmorrhage is abundant the symptoms are as above; but indications of severe irritation are first observed, in the way of painful sensations shooting from the spine, hyperæsthesia, shooting pains in the limbs, painful spasmoid movements in the limbs, rigidity, opisthotonus, or even strong convulsive movements, followed by paralytic symptoms. These are seldom very marked, and come on late. The functions of the bladder and rectum are not much interfered with; and bed-sores do not occur. Recovery often takes place, and may be complete.

VII. CHRONIC SPINAL MENINGITIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Several forms of chronic inflammation in connection with the spinal meninges are described, namely:—
1. *Chronic leptomeningitis*. 2. *Pachymeningitis externa*. 3. *Pachymeningitis interna haemorrhagica*. 4. *Pachymeningitis interna hypertrophica*. *Chronic leptomeningitis* may remain after the acute disease; or may be gradually set up. The chief causes to which it has been attributed are exposure to cold and wet; injury; syphilitic and other growths; and intra-medullary diseases extending to the surface of the cord. *Pachymeningitis externa* is set up by some local irritation, especially spinal disease, or an abscess or deep bed-sore. *Pachymeningitis interna haemorrhagica* is usually observed in cases of general paralysis of the insane, being associated with a similar condition inside the skull; it has also been referred to alcoholism and injury.

Anatomical Characters.—All forms of chronic spinal meningitis are usually localized, but sometimes the membranes are extensively involved. *Chronic leptomeningitis* is characterized by dilatation and thickening of the walls of the blood-vessels; increase in amount, and turbidity of the spinal fluid usually; opacity, thickening, induration, and roughness of the membranes; remnants of old inflammatory products; adhesions or bands passing across the sub-arachnoid space; firm adhesions of the pia mater to the cord; and sometimes calcareous deposits. The cord itself may be more or less affected, as evidenced by thickening of its connective tissue septa, and superficial softening or sclerosis. The roots of the nerves may also be compressed, softened, or atrophied. In *pachymeningitis externa* the inflammation begins in the outer part of the dura mater, and in the connective tissue between it and the spine; but it extends inwards and may reach the pia mater. There is a large amount of exudation, and the dura mater is greatly thickened, thus causing much pressure on the nerve-roots and cord. In *pachymeningitis haemorrhagica* the inner surface of the dura mater presents a thick stratum of exudation; partly soft, partly organized; of rusty or brown colour, from extravasated blood; and enclosing many thin-walled vessels. There may be recent blood visible, or remnants of it, in the form of cysts containing clots. *Pachymeningitis hypertrophica* also affects the inner surface of the dura mater primarily, but extends to the arachnoid and pia mater. It is observed in connection with the cervical enlargement of the cord, and has been described by Charcot as *pachmeningite cervicale hypertrophique*. The layers developed upon the dura mater differ from those on the cerebral portion of the membrane, in being from the first dense and tough, only slightly vascular, and therefore not inclined to bleed. Enormous thickening is ultimately produced, a cicatricial fibrous tissue being formed. The morbid change usually extends in a ring round the cord, which is slowly compressed, the nerve-roots being first irritated, and then destroyed.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of *chronic spinal meningitis* are described as slight pain over some part of the spine; severe pains in the limbs, of a rheumatic character, or shooting; paraesthesiae or hyperesthesia in the legs, with gradually increasing hypesthesia, but not complete anaesthesia; slight spastic movements in the limbs, or rigidity, followed by paralysis, beginning in the lower extremities, and gradually extend-

ing upwards, so that the trunk, bladder, rectum, or even the arms may be ultimately involved; the paralysis being at first slight, increasing very slowly, and being persistent, but subject to marked variations in its course. The symptoms are usually very gradually developed, and are more localized than in acute spinal meningitis. In the earlier period the muscles are not obviously wasted, and reflexes are maintained; subsequently muscles which are supplied by involved nerves may waste markedly, and their reflexes are diminished or abolished. The bladder and rectum are only affected when the nerves arising from the lower part of the cord are implicated. Ultimately all the signs indicative of destruction of the cord may be developed.

All forms of *pachymeningitis* are characterized by localized pain; accompanied with phenomena corresponding in their distribution to the seat of the lesion, and indicative of irritation followed by compression of the cord. They are often very indefinite. *Pachymeningitis haemorrhagica* is usually associated with the symptoms of a similar condition in the cerebral membranes; and signs of meningeal haemorrhage may occur at any time, owing to rupture of the thin-walled vessels in the exudation.

Pachymeningitis hypertrophica demands brief special notice. Clinically the disease was divided by Charcot into two stages, namely (1) that of irritation; and (2) that of paralysis and atrophy.

In the *first stage* the symptoms are acute pains at the back of the neck, shooting to the head and arms, constant, but liable to exacerbations; twitchings, spasms, and rigidity of the muscles, especially of those of the neck, which is kept fixed; hyperesthesia, formication, and a feeling of weight in the limbs; more or less muscular weakness; and not uncommonly herpetic or bullous eruptions. In the *second stage* the pains in the limbs cease; while the muscles of the arm become gradually paralyzed and wasted, especially those of the forearm. The faradic irritability of the muscles is slowly abolished; and characteristic contractures and deformities supervene. If the lesion involves the upper part of the cervical enlargement the musculo-spiral nerve is chiefly involved, and the corresponding muscles are paralyzed; if it occupies the lower part of the enlargement, the median and ulnar nerves are mainly affected, and a form of "claw-hand" is produced. Patches of anaesthesia are also noticed on the arms and upper part of the trunk, corresponding to the compressed sensory nerve-roots. Subsequently the cord being destroyed throughout at the seat of lesion, and secondary descending degenerations taking place, spastic paraplegia gradually supervenes, with sensory disorders and other phenomena characteristic of these morbid changes. This disease is always very chronic; and occasionally it seems to be arrested, and some degree of improvement may even take place.

VIII. CHRONIC MYELITIS—WHITE SOFTENING.

Aetiology and Pathology.—There has been much controversy as to the nature of chronic "softening" of the spinal cord. Many authorities regard the condition as having two distinct modes of origin, namely, in inflammation and in degeneration. Others consider that the change is always of a degenerative kind. It seems certain that softening may remain after an attack of acute or sub-acute myelitis; and there is probably also a chronic form of this disease. *Simple or non-inflammatory*

softening results in the great majority of cases from deficient supply of blood. This may be due to mere degeneration of the blood-vessels, narrowing their calibre; but it sometimes follows embolism or thrombosis. The lower end of the cord is especially liable to become softened from this cause, on account of its peculiar blood-supply (Moxon). Softening is often caused by gradual pressure upon the cord, and is then said to be chiefly inflammatory, and only occasionally simple. It may also follow some injury.

Anatomical Characters.—Softening of the cord is indicated by various degrees of diminished consistence. In chronic myelitis it is said that this is much less marked than in the acute form, and that there is a greater degree of sclerotic change. The softened portion may be quite white, or more or less red or yellowish. Erb distinguishes inflammatory from non-inflammatory softening by the microscopic appearances. In the *inflammatory* form he describes "a large number of cells containing fat-granules, tensely distended blood-vessels, numerous young cells, increase of the interstitial tissue, swollen axis-cylinders, etc.;" in *simple* softening merely "swollen and disintegrated nerve-fibres, ganglion-cells in a state of glassy swelling, a few cellular elements and fat-granule cells, and a small quantity of fatty detritus." It must be noticed that in many cases of chronic myelitis the cord is firmer than natural, on account of considerable increase of connective-tissue elements, and gradual removal of the nerve-tissues. Indeed, by some pathologists the condition termed *sclerosis*, with the particular diseases to which this change gives rise, is believed to be inflammatory in its origin. Chronic myelitis is very variable in its distribution, hence named *transverse, disseminated, annular, general, etc.*

Symptoms.—If the cord becomes gradually softened, from whatever cause, the signs of the change are more or less of the following character:—Dull pain or uneasiness over some portion of the spine, increased by pressure, percussion, or the application of a hot sponge or cold, but not by movement; a feeling of tightness round the body; distressing paræsthesiae, wandering pains or fidgety sensations in the legs, followed by gradual loss of feeling to complete anaesthesia, this often extending up the body to a variable extent; twitchings, spasmodic movements, and cramps in the legs, with diminished power, dragging of the legs in walking, and a sense of heaviness and fatigue, culminating in paraplegia; frequently a marked tendency to painful contractions and rigidity in the paralyzed limbs, the legs being in many cases drawn up involuntarily if left to themselves, sometimes by jerks, so that the joints become strongly flexed, or one or both limbs being rigidly extended; tendency to wasting of the muscles of the legs, with failure of the circulation and nutrition, the skin being often covered copiously with dried epithelium-scales, and bed-sores being very liable to form; paralysis of the bladder, leading to retention and decomposition of urine, and consequent cystitis and renal mischief; paralysis of the rectum, with unconsciousness of the passage of stools; gradual loss of sexual power and inclination, though there is often reflex priapism. In short, the symptoms of chronic myelitis or simple softening of the cord are usually those of slowly-developed chronic paraplegia in its most typical form. The condition of the muscles and the state of the reflexes will depend on the exact seat and extent of the disease. Often there is an exaggeration of the deep reflexes, but they may be impaired or lost. The clinical history is liable to vary much, owing to the association of softening with other

morbid conditions. In rare instances the cord may become so extensively diseased as to give rise to general paralysis, with marked wasting of the muscles, and loss of electric irritability. The general health often remains good; and patients may live for many years. Death may occur from the effects of the cord-lesion; or from intercurrent complications, such as phthisis or pneumonia.

IX. ADVENTITIOUS GROWTHS IN THE CORD.

New growths affecting the cord usually originate in connection with the spinal column, the meninges, or the nerve-roots, and very rarely in the substance of the cord itself. The most important are *cancer*, *tubercle*, *syphilitic formations*, *inflammatory growths*, and *sarcoma*. Of the rarer forms may be mentioned glioma, myxoma, fibroma, lipoma, cartilaginous growths, and hydatids. Some of these formations are the manifestation of a special diathesis; or they are secondary to similar deposits elsewhere. In some cases local injury has been set down as the *exciting cause*, but as a rule none can be discovered. Generally a growth connected with the spinal cord is localized and single; occasionally there are separate formations in different parts. The secondary effects which are usually liable to be produced are gradual displacement and atrophy of the nerve-elements; myelitis or simple softening, with subsequent secondary degenerations; chronic meningitis; and pressure upon the nerve-roots with its consequences. Rarely a sudden haemorrhage takes place, with or without previous changes.

Symptoms.—There is much variety presented by the symptoms of a tumour in connection with the spinal cord, depending upon the region it occupies, whether it begins in the substance of the cord or is extra-medullary, its effects upon the cord or nerves, the rapidity of its growth, and other circumstances. As a rule they are very gradual in their onset and progress, but occasionally sudden or acute symptoms occur, due to spinal apoplexy or to acute myelitis. Taking the mass of cases, the more characteristic phenomena may be described as localized pain in the back, especially in connection with cancer; neuralgic pains shooting from this point into the limbs or trunk, due to irritation of the nerves, with hyperesthesia or paraesthesiae, followed by anaesthesia if the cord becomes destroyed; muscular disturbance, succeeded by paralysis, in some cases beginning on one side and extending gradually to the other. Objective evidences of a tumour might perhaps be discovered on examination of the spinal region. If the growth is in the cord itself, there will generally only be gradual loss of its functions up to the level of the part involved. If the growth affects the cervical enlargement, the upper extremities are implicated. Sometimes one lateral half of the cord is affected, or only its motor or sensory portions. In the case of syphilitic disease, the symptoms often improve greatly or entirely disappear under appropriate treatment, owing to absorption of the deposit. Signs of some cachexia may be present; or there may be indications of morbid growths in other parts. Ultimately all the signs of destruction of the cord may be developed, death occurring from bed-sores, cystitis, paralysis of respiratory muscles, or pulmonary complications.

X. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

Although all the diseases of the spinal cord have not been discussed in this chapter, it will be convenient now to offer a few general remarks with reference to their diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment.

1. **Diagnosis.**—When any case comes under observation in which the symptoms point to the spinal cord, the questions to be determined are :—1. Whether they are real, imaginary, or pretended. 2. Whether they are of functional or organic origin. 3. If due to organic disease, the nature of such disease ; and its situation and extent, with reference to whether it is extra- or intra-medullary, the region it occupies, and the tracts or divisions of the cord which it involves. It will be unnecessary to recapitulate the clinical signs of the various complaints, but these must be duly considered in each case, as regards their mode of onset, nature, combinations, and progress ; along with the history in all its details, the general state of the patient, and the condition of other parts and organs of the body. Of course appropriate skilled examination, directed to the spinal column, and to the investigation of the nervous system as a whole, is often of essential importance ; and in any really difficult case it ought to be conducted by one who is thoroughly experienced and competent, otherwise serious mistakes are liable to be made. In some instances the effects of treatment give valuable diagnostic indications, as in the case of syphilitic disease, the symptoms due to this disease being often greatly improved, or entirely got rid of, by the administration of iodide of potassium. The influence of treatment in curing certain forms of functional paraplegia is also to be borne in mind.

Only a few observations need be made with regard to the diagnosis of the individual diseases of the spinal cord, and it must be remembered that different lesions are often associated together in the same case, or they become developed secondarily. The effects of *concussion* must always be studied with particular care and caution, as they are so easily pretended or imagined, and so much often depends on their correct observation and interpretation. *Neurasthenia spinalis* is generally readily diagnosed. Sudden lesions of the cord, not arising from injury, are due either to some *disorder of the circulation* or to *haemorrhage*, and the symptoms are usually sufficiently characteristic. *Acute spinal meningitis* may be mistaken for *tetanus*; spinal congestion ; or spinal irritation ; but there is rarely any actual difficulty in making a diagnosis between them. *Myelitis* is distinguished from *meningitis*, whether acute or chronic, by the absence or slight degree of symptoms of irritation and severe pain ; with rapid development of signs of destruction of the cord, and failure of its functions. *Chronic* affections of the cord leading to paraplegia may be simulated by various forms of *functional paraplegia*. In *reflex* paraplegia some cause can be discovered ; the paralysis is in proportion to the intensity of this cause, and is generally partial and incomplete ; there is no wasting of muscles ; sensibility is usually normal ; and the bladder and rectum are but little or not at all affected. The paralysis disappears if the cause is removed. *Chronic softening* of the cord is as a rule easily recognized by the local sensations ; and the permanent paralytic and other symptoms. There is no practical clinical distinction between *inflammatory* and *simple softening*. The signs

of *new growths* are as a rule sufficiently diagnostic. The *system diseases* of the cord already considered present highly characteristic phenomena. The diseases due to sclerosis will be individually dealt with in the next chapter.

2. **Prognosis.**—Great caution is required in giving an opinion as to the immediate and remote prognosis of cases where the spinal cord is involved, and this must be founded in the first instance upon as accurate a diagnosis as possible. It must further be guided by the exact nature, severity, effects and symptoms, rapidity of progress, and direction of extension of the disease; the general condition and circumstances of the patient, as well as his mental state; the presence of complications, and their nature; and the results of treatment. *Functional* affections of the cord are often very difficult to cure, although not in themselves dangerous. *Acute inflammatory diseases* of the cord or its membranes are very grave, and often prove rapidly fatal. At the same time it must be remembered that in some very serious cases recovery takes place: or myelitis may remain as a chronic condition. Once the cord is transversely destroyed by a sudden, acute, or chronic lesion, permanent paralysis is established in the parts below the seat of mischief, but cases of this kind frequently linger on for a long while, and the patient may enjoy good general health, and be able to perform excellent mental work. Bed-sores, cystitis, renal disease, and other untoward complications are, however, very liable to arise, and these add to the danger. Symptoms due to *syphilitic disease* of the cord often improve remarkably under appropriate treatment.

3. **Treatment.**—The indications for treatment of affections of the spinal cord lie within a very narrow compass, and it is well in dealing with them not to be too ready to resort to active measures. In the first place, any *cause* that can be discovered must be removed, if practicable, and this is of particular importance in the cure and prevention of functional disorders. Secondly, any *organic lesion* must be attended to, with the view of checking it, removing its effects, and repairing any injury which it has produced; but as a rule little can be done in this direction. Thirdly, *symptoms* must be watched and treated judiciously, especially with the view of influencing the functions of the cord, or of modifying symptoms and conditions depending on abolition or disorder of these functions. Fourthly, it is very important to guard against *complications*, and to treat them as they arise. Fifthly, *general management* is often of much service in chronic cases; and the *general health* needs to be sustained.

As regards individual diseases, sudden lesions, such as *concussion* or *haemorrhage*, must be treated on general principles applicable to such conditions. In treating any *acute inflammation* affecting the spinal cord or its membranes, the patient should be kept at rest, lying on the side or in a somewhat prone position. Ice may be applied constantly along the spine. In some cases the application of leeches over this region is useful. Medicines are of doubtful value. The late Dr. Radcliffe recommended iodide of potassium with opium in the treatment of spinal meningitis. When the cord is involved, belladonna, conium, and ergot are believed to exercise a direct beneficial effect upon it. It is particularly important to attend to the bladder and bowels in all cases of disease of the cord; to see that the patient is kept clean and dry; and to guard against bed-sores, for which object the use of a water-bed or air-bed is very serviceable. This applies more particularly to *chronic* affections, in which all

that can be done further is to support the general health by good food, proper hygienic conditions, and the use of *tonics*, especially quinine, iron, arsenic, phosphorus or hypophosphites; to promote absorption of morbid products, particularly syphilitic deposits, by the aid of iodide of potassium and bichloride of mercury; to stimulate the functions of the cord by minute doses of strychnine or tincture of *nux vomica*; and to treat paralysis or other symptoms, as well as complications. Electricity is often of great service, but must be carefully employed. Treatment directed to the spinal column is often demanded; and surgical interference may be necessary for deformities, abscesses, tumours, and other conditions.

CHAPTER XCVI.

SCLEROSIS OF THE NERVE-CENTRES.

FOR several years the morbid condition named *sclerosis*, which involves the nerve-centres, has attracted considerable attention. The change affects different parts of these centres in different cases, and sometimes the peripheral nerves, but the subject can be most conveniently discussed in a comprehensive article, first considering the lesion from a general point of view, as regards its *etiology*, *pathology*, and *anatomical characters*; and then discussing the individual affections in which sclerosis constitutes the essential pathological change. Certain diseases believed by some authorities to be of this nature, but the pathology of which is still disputed, will be separately considered. Different writers have adopted different classifications of the affections of the nervous system resulting from sclerosis, but the following list includes the chief varieties which have been recognized, and is sufficient for all practical purposes:—I. DIFFUSED CEREBRAL SCLEROSIS (Hammond). II. SPINAL SCLEROSIS, including (1) *Locomotor ataxy*; (2) *Primary lateral sclerosis*; (3) *Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*; (4) *Secondary lateral sclerosis*. III. DISSEMINATED OR MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS.

Etiology.—Age seems to have considerable influence as a *predisposing cause* of the various forms of sclerosis. The *diffused cerebral* form is said to begin during infancy. The *spinal* varieties occur chiefly from 25 to 45 or 50 years of age; while the *disseminated* form usually comes on between 20 and 25, seldom after 30, sometimes at the time of puberty. Males suffer in larger proportion than females, but amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is said to be more common in females; and Charcot affirmed the same fact with regard to disseminated sclerosis, but others deny this. Hereditary predisposition is traceable in some cases, and if not to the actual disease, it may be to some other form of nervous disorder; locomotor ataxy occasionally runs directly in families, and a congenital variety of this complaint, as well as of primary lateral sclerosis, is now recognized. The *exciting causes* of sclerosis are very obscure, and in many cases cannot be made out in the least. When of *cerebral* origin, it has been attributed in different instances to haemorrhagic cysts; injury to the head; acute fevers, especially typhoid and scarlatina; rheumatism or syphilis; dissipation; severe emotional disturbance; excessive mental

application ; or great muscular exertion. The *spinal* varieties have been supposed to be the result of previous inflammation of the cord or its membranes ; injuries to the spine, or shock ; over-exertion and straining ; the constant maintenance of a bent position; sexual excess ; exposure to cold and wet ; gout, serofula, or syphilis ; acute febrile diseases ; or abuse of alcohol. Secondary lateral sclerosis and other secondary forms of the complaint start from some preceding lesion.

Anatomical Characters and Pathology.—Sclerosis consists essentially of hyperplasia of the neuroglia, with atrophy and degeneration of the nerve-elements, which may ultimately lead to their complete destruction and disappearance. The process is looked upon by most pathologists as being of a chronic inflammatory nature ; but others regard it as a degeneration. In most forms of sclerosis the primary change seems to be in the neuroglia, the nerve-elements being strangled and destroyed by the connective tissue which surrounds them ; but in locomotor ataxy it is said to commence in the nerve-tissues themselves. The more obvious characters indicative of the sclerotic change are a greyish, semi-translucent appearance of the affected part ; various degrees of increased firmness and induration, ultimately ending in marked hardness and toughness ; and at first some tumefaction, but soon passing into contraction and condensation, with consequent diminished bulk and shrinking of the affected part. The colour may finally become greyish-white or yellowish-grey. Usually firm adhesions form with the pia mater corresponding to the seat of lesion, which also undergoes analogous changes.

As regards the microscopic changes in sclerosis, in the early period embryonic cells appear in the neuroglia and perivascular spaces, along with more or less increase of the amorphous intercellular substance in the neuroglia, and the connective-tissue corpuscles become large and prominent. Subsequently contraction and induration take place ; the cells become small and indistinct ; the intercellular substance becomes delicately fibrillated ; and the walls of the vessels are thickened, with consequent narrowing of their channels, or they are sometimes dilated. Ultimately wavy bundles of connective tissue are seen. At first the nerve-elements present little if any change in most cases. Later on, if sclerosis involves the white substance, the nerve-fibres become more or less separated from each other, most of them diminish in size, though some may be normal, or even enlarged, and they may present a moniliform appearance. Finally they become greatly atrophied, on account of the loss of their medullary sheath, but they are rarely entirely destroyed. In the grey matter the nerve-cells are also involved. In some cases Charcot described in the early period changes in which the nerve-cells become swollen, sometimes being enormously enlarged, finely granular, and opalescent ; their processes at the same time appearing more or less thickened and twisted. Usually atrophic changes take place in these cells. They may merely shrink in all directions and dry up ; or sometimes a deposit of pigment occurs in them, while they diminish in size, assume a more or less globular shape, their processes become shortened and attenuated, and at last they only form minute roundish collections of pigment, or even disappear altogether. The late Lockhart Clarke described irregular disintegrated patches as being occasionally observed in sclerotic tracts, from which all traces of the different tissues and blood-vessels have disappeared. Compound granule corpuscles, oil-globules and granules, corpora amylacea, and sometimes crystals, supposed to be margarine, are visible under the microscope.

Having thus discussed the general nature of sclerosis, the several varieties of the disease, according to its distribution in different parts of the nervous system, will now be considered. It may be remarked that the lesion shows a peculiar tendency to be confined to certain tracts or regions, rarely passing beyond the limits of those portions of the nerve-centres. Moreover, the ultimate effect of the morbid process is seriously to impair, or even completely to abolish, the functions of the parts involved, though during its progress signs of irritation may be evident.

I. DIFFUSED CEREBRAL SCLEROSIS.

Dr. Hammond describes a form of diffused cerebral sclerosis, in which a large portion or the whole of a lobe is involved, or sometimes even the entire hemisphere, and the lesion is not circumscribed. It becomes less marked at its circumference, and never invades the grey substance of the brain.

Symptoms.—In diffused cerebral sclerosis the mental faculties either remain undeveloped to a variable degree, or become impaired if the disease sets in later in life. The patient never learns to talk, or speech becomes imperfect or lost after it has been acquired. Usually more or less hemiplegia is observed, with arrest of growth, contractions, and distortions of the affected limbs, in which sensation may also be impaired. One or more of the special senses are usually enfeebled or lost. Many of the patients suffering from this complaint belong to the class of idiots or imbeciles, whose habits are filthy, and who pass their excretions involuntarily. Frequent attacks of epileptiform convulsions are not uncommon during the progress of the lesion, with signs of cerebral irritation at an early period. The course of diffused cerebral sclerosis is very chronic; and patients often live to an advanced age.

II. LOCOMOTOR ATAXY—TABES DORSALIS.

Anatomical Characters and Pathology.—This is one of the forms of sclerosis best known and most commonly met with. Many authorities look upon syphilis as a most important factor in the causation of locomotor ataxy, and by some it is even regarded as the sole cause. The disease involves the posterior columns of the spinal cord, as a rule equally, and often throughout their whole horizontal area, the changes commencing and being most marked in the lower dorsal and lumbar regions, and progressively diminishing upwards. Charcot has shown that the tracts which are essentially concerned in producing the symptoms of locomotor ataxy are two narrow bands of white matter, lying on each side between the inner and posterior aspect of the inner cornu and nerve-roots on the one hand, and the posterior pyramid on the other—*postero-external columns*; in some cases the pyramids are quite healthy, but generally they become involved. Moreover, in most cases the internal radicular fibres of the posterior roots of the nerves, and the adjoining parts of the posterior cornua, become more or less implicated. Déjérine has published cases in which chronic neuritis was found in the peripheral nerves, with changes in the cord; and in some cases only peripheral nerve-changes were found, with nothing in the cord. He thinks tabes may arise from primary changes in the peripheral nerves. In exceptional instances the disease spreads to the lateral columns, or

even to the anterior cornua; but, according to Charcot, this extension takes place along the internal radicular fasciculi, and not through the intermediate tissues. In the cervical region the lesion is generally limited to the postero-internal columns, presenting the characters of an ascending degeneration, but may involve the postero-external columns. It can generally be traced as far as the medulla oblongata. The cranial nerves, especially the optic nerve and disc, may be involved in the sclerotic change.

The spinal cord, in a case of advanced locomotor ataxy, appears flattened antero-posteriorly, while the posterior columns and nerve-roots are obviously wasted and shrunken. The membranes are usually thickened and adherent at the back of the cord. On section the posterior columns are found to be firm, and present a translucent grey appearance.

Symptoms.—Locomotor ataxy in the large majority of cases comes on insidiously, and runs a very chronic course. In exceptional instances its characteristic symptoms are developed suddenly or rapidly. Certain so-called *premonitory* symptoms are usually observed, which may last for months or years, but these are really the early symptoms of the disease, constituting its *stage of invasion*. They may be summed up as follows.—1. *Sensory derangements* in the legs and lower part of the body, namely, an unusual feeling of fatigue after slight exertion; painful sensations in various parts of the limbs and about the joints from time to time, supposed to be rheumatic; and also extremely severe neuralgic pains, coming on suddenly and being of momentary duration, described as darting, boring, stabbing, cutting, throbbing, or like an electric shock—the so-called *lightning pains*; sometimes constrictive or girdle-pains, affecting the trunk or occasionally the limbs; hyperæsthesia, hypæsthesia, dysæsthesia, or paraesthesiae of the skin, or retarded conduction of sensation. The lightning pains differ from ordinary neuralgia in being referred to the deeper structures, and not radiating along the superficial branches of any particular nerve. When the postero-external columns of the cervical portion of the cord are involved, these pains are felt in the arms, and rarely in the head. Hyperæsthesia is usually paroxysmal and fugitive in its characters. 2. *Internal pains*, referred to the bladder, urethra, or rectum; or, more particularly, extremely severe attacks of gastral-gia, the pain shooting to the back, around the abdomen, and in other directions, and being accompanied with vomiting, dyspeptic symptoms, faintness, deranged cardiac action, and a feeling of marked illness. These attacks are known as *gastric crises*. They are more frequent in females than in males. 3. *Paralysis of sensory or motor nerves*, sometimes temporary or recurrent, sometimes permanent. 4. *Abolition of the patellar tendon-reflex*, which usually occurs at an early stage of locomotor ataxy, but is not an invariable symptom. The condition of the *superficial reflexes* varies, but it is said that in most cases the plantar reflex is impaired at an early period, and finally abolished. 5. *Disorders of vision and hearing*, and objective changes in connection with the *eyes*, such as dimness of vision at times, or even complete amaurosis; colour-blindness; diplopia; contraction of the field of vision; slight strabismus or ptosis; atrophy of the disc; or chronic optic neuritis. Extreme contraction of the pupils is often a marked feature, so that they become pin-pointed, and they may be unequal. The “Argyll Robertson phenomenon” is frequently observed, there being loss of the pupil-reflex to light; while the iris

still retains its contractility in connection with efforts of accommodation for near objects. Deafness is not uncommon. 6. *Sexual disturbance.* It is said that sexual desire is usually increased at first. Rousseau observed that there is in the early period a peculiar aptitude for repeating sexual intercourse a great many times within a short period. Soon, however, sexual power and desire become gradually lost. Spermatorrhea is frequently complained of. 7. *Disorders of micturition.* In the early stage of locomotor ataxy the most frequent condition is irritability of the bladder, with painful micturition, and difficulty in retaining the urine, the patient being obliged to obey the call to urinate instantly. Occasionally there is a difficulty or inability to pass water, ending in retention of urine. 8. *Constipation* is of very common occurrence, and may be accompanied with a peculiar painful feeling of over-distension of the rectum.

When locomotor ataxy is fully declared—*stage of full development*—the symptoms are very characteristic, and chiefly point to a *loss of the power of co-ordination in the muscles of the legs*, and of the *muscular sense*. At first the patient feels that he is losing control over the movements of his legs, and that he cannot walk steadily or firmly without support, but slips about and has an uncertain gait. This is particularly noticed in the dark, or when he shuts his eyes, and the patient finds that he has to pay special attention to the movements of his lower extremities, in order to carry them on properly. After a while the signs of impaired co-ordination are very evident when the patient is made to walk, and he presents a characteristic gait. He is very unsteady in his movements; tends to stagger and to advance precipitately; and during progression lifts the foot up to an unnecessary height, then throws it forwards and outwards, and brings down the heel suddenly with a heavy stamp. On turning suddenly he staggers or falls, and the same thing happens if he shuts his eyes when standing. Habitually he walks with sticks, and keeps his eyes fixed on his feet or on the ground in front of him; he takes his steps slowly, deliberately, and at regular intervals, and in uncomplicated cases walks in a straight line. The difficulty in walking, and the characteristic disorder of gait, are greatly aggravated by timidity and other mental causes. There is no actual paralysis, as is proved by the fact that the legs can be easily moved in all directions in the recumbent posture; and the muscles sometimes retain extraordinary power. At last walking becomes impossible, the legs being thrown hither and thither without any appearance of design or control, when any attempt at progression is made. The muscles do not waste, and retain their tone. The condition of electric irritability is doubtful, some observers affirming that it becomes much impaired, others that it remains normal; in the early stage it is often exalted. Sensation is frequently much altered in the lower limbs, to both tactile and painful impressions; the pains in the limbs continue; often there is tingling or numbness in the toes and feet; cutaneous sensibility is impaired, the patient not feeling the ground properly, but having a sensation as if he were treading on wool or sand; and sometimes there are spots of complete anaesthesia to all stimuli except heat and cold. Muscular sense is also more or less diminished or even lost in advanced cases, the patient not being aware of the position of his legs when lying down, unless he is looking at them. The electric sensibility is said to be impaired in those muscles in which the muscular sense is affected. There is no loss of power over the bladder and rectum as a rule, but the former may

certainly be much affected, and there may be complete paralysis of this organ, with consequent retention of urine.

In the majority of cases of locomotor ataxy the upper limbs become involved sooner or later. Numbness is noticed in the fingers, generally beginning in the little and ring fingers, and then often extending to the hand or arm. The movements of the fingers, hands, or arms become clumsy, unduly violent, and uncertain, so that the patient cannot perform any delicate combined movements requiring precision. Moreover, if he shuts his eyes, he cannot judge of the extent or direction of the movements of his upper limbs. The voluntary movements are often executed in a jerky manner. In some instances the muscles of the head, neck, and trunk become involved. Articulation may be impaired; and the different cranial nerves may become implicated permanently. Deglutition and respiration may also be affected. The occurrence of atrophy of the optic disc was attributed by Charcot to sclerosis commencing here, and gradually extending backwards along the optic tracts, so far at least as the corpora geniculata. In advanced cases of locomotor ataxy severe and constant aching pains are liable to arise in the head, along the spine, and in the trunk and limbs. Retention or incontinence of urine or faeces may occur; and sexual power and desire are lost. In exceptional cases rigidity, contraction, and wasting of muscles set in, due to the extension of the sclerosis to the lateral columns and anterior cornua. Bed-sores may also be produced.

During the progress of locomotor ataxy trophic lesions are liable to arise, a fact particularly demonstrated by Charcot. Thus *cutaneous eruptions* sometimes supervene, more especially during periods of exacerbation of the disease, and in connection with the lightning pains, these eruptions being not uncommonly limited to the area of distribution of the painful nerve. They include lichen, urticaria, herpes zoster, ecthyma, impetigo, and erythema nodosum. *Joint-affections* are also occasionally met with, usually occurring at the onset of the symptoms of inco-ordination. The knees, elbows, or shoulders are chiefly implicated, there being much effusion into the joints, with very rapid destruction of the articular surfaces, and not infrequently dislocation occurs. The bones also become very friable, and are liable to fracture spontaneously. These articular and osseous lesions are attended with little or no pain; but they may cause marked deformities. They are said to be more common in women, and Dr. Buzzard has shown that they are apt to be associated with gastric crises. This writer thinks that they are probably due to a lesion of the medulla oblongata.

The course of locomotor ataxy is very variable. The limbs may be involved asymmetrically. Usually the disease is exceedingly chronic, and may last many years before it reaches its full development. In early cases treatment may check its progress, or even lead to improvement or a cure. As a rule locomotor ataxy tends to become worse and worse, perhaps with occasional remissions. The mental faculties generally remain quite clear, but it is affirmed that locomotor ataxy is not uncommonly associated with general paralysis of the insane. Febrile paroxysms sometimes occur; and repeated attacks of bronchitis are observed in exceptional instances. Death generally results from intercurrent disease; but may happen from implication of the muscles of deglutition or respiration, bronchitis, renal or vesical disease, or bed-sores. The latest period of locomotor ataxy has been ranked as a separate stage, but it is hardly practicable to make any such division.

Friedreich's Disease.—A peculiar hereditary form of locomotor ataxy has been described by Friedreich. It begins between thirteen and eighteen years of age. There is but little disorder of sensation, the lightning-pains and girdle-sensations being either absent or very slight, while there is little or no anaesthesia. The upper limbs exhibit loss of co-ordination at an earlier period than usual. In all cases a remarkable disorder of speech has been noticed, the utterance being at first slightly lisping, then irregularly interrupted and stammering, and finally almost unintelligible. In some instances there has been a peculiar form of nystagmus, which occurs only when the patient tries to fix his eyes upon some object before him; the movements are bilateral, and comparatively slow, being repeated about two or three times in a second. Cases of Friedreich's disease are very chronic in their progress, and of long duration.

Ataxic Paraplegia (Gowers).—This disease presents a combination of the symptoms of paraplegia and locomotor ataxy. It affects particularly the male sex, about middle age. A history of syphilis is as rare in this disease as it is frequent in locomotor ataxy. Its aetiology is practically unknown; but exposure to cold, and sexual excesses have been regarded as causes. The anatomical basis of ataxic paraplegia is a somewhat diffuse sclerosis of the lateral columns, combined with a sclerosis of the posterior columns, the latter being more marked in the dorsal region, and proportionally less usually in the lumbar region, while it is not specially located in the root-zone of the postero-external column, as in locomotor ataxy.

The onset of ataxic paraplegia is gradual and slow. The legs are the first to suffer, and the symptoms may remain limited to them, namely, unsteadiness of gait, weakness with rigidity, and a tendency to fall when standing with the eyes shut. In walking the patient uses a stick, and keeps the legs far apart, but there is not that high action and sudden descent of the feet so characteristic of tabes. Lightning pains are absent; and there is practically neither sensory disturbance nor visceral crises. The knee-jerk is exaggerated; and there is usually rectus-clonus and ankle-clonus. Eye-symptoms are rare. Sexual power is often lost; and the action of the sphincters is impaired. The incoordination and weakness may extend to the arms. The complaint bears a close resemblance to hereditary ataxy (Friedreich). Prognosis is unfavourable, but the danger to life is small.

III. PRIMARY LATERAL SCLEROSIS—SPASMODIC SPINAL PARALYSIS—SPASTIC PARAPLEGIA.

Pathology.—This form of sclerosis of the cord, which is now recognized as a distinct disease, is of exceedingly rare occurrence. Erb and Charcot predicted the probable pathology of the complaint, and Dr. Dreschfeld subsequently described the morbid changes in a case in which he had the opportunity of examining the spinal cord. He found a band of sclerosis occupying the greater portion of the lateral columns, throughout the cervical, dorsal, and lumbar regions, but not implicating the grey matter or extending to the surface of the cord, while the anterior and posterior columns were quite healthy. In short, primary lateral sclerosis involves symmetrically the crossed pyramidal tracts. The complaint is usually met with in strong, muscular, male adults.

Symptoms.—Primary lateral sclerosis is an extremely chronic disease, and sets in very gradually. It has been divided into three stages. The first stage, that of *incomplete spastic paraplegia*, begins with a sense of weakness, heaviness, and stiffness in the legs, causing some difficulty in walking. This is sometimes preceded by pain in the back and limbs. On examination slight stiffness and rigidity in the legs may be discovered, with exaggeration of the deep reflexes. The symptoms gradually increase, until a characteristic "spastic" gait is developed. "The patient then walks with two sticks; each step is attended with evident effort; the feet appear to be stuck to the ground, and can only be moved forward by raising the pelvis, and with it the limb as a whole. In this process the back is strongly arched, the chest thrown forward, the patient leans forcibly, first on one stick and then on the other, and appears to aid the elevation of the trunk by movements of his arms. The toes are dragged along the ground with an unpleasant scraping noise, the knees are apt to interlock, and the foot which is being brought forward tends to cross in front of its fellow. In some cases, after the foot leaves the ground, a peculiar hopping movement of the whole body is observed. It is due, according to Erb, to spasmodic contraction of the calf muscles." (Byrom Bramwell.) The legs are generally kept close together, owing to spasmodic contraction of the adductors; and when standing thus, if the patient closes his eyes there is no increased unsteadiness or feeling of vertigo. At the same time the muscles of the lower extremities are affected with spasmodic twitchings, tremors, and rigidity. These phenomena are usually due to some reflex irritation, or to attempts to perform voluntary movements, but may occur spontaneously. The affected muscles are tense and rigid, especially on manipulation, and this or any external irritation may throw the whole limb into a state of tonic spasm. Their nutrition is unimpaired. Their reaction to electricity is usually normal, or somewhat decreased; but some writers state that it is increased. The deep reflexes are greatly exaggerated; ankle-clonus is easily elicited, and when the patient, sitting or standing, presses upon the balls of the toes, this reflex is sometimes spontaneously excited, causing a rhythmical tremor. A blow upon one patellar tendon may cause a jerk of the opposite leg; and a knee-clonus is sometimes elicited. The superficial reflexes may be normal, increased, diminished, or abolished. The only sensory disturbance observed is increased sensibility to cold. The bladder and bowels are usually unaffected. Erb states that only one leg, or a leg and arm, may be occasionally involved; or still more rarely both arms are first affected.

In the second stage, that of *complete spastic paraplegia*, the power of locomotion becomes entirely lost, and the patient is confined to bed, the legs being rigidly extended, the thighs closely approximated on account of spasm of the adductors, and the feet inverted. The arms may ultimately become similarly affected.

The third stage results from the implication of the anterior cornua or postero-external columns. In the former case, the muscles slowly waste, while the rigidity decreases; the reflexes become less marked, and are finally abolished. Implication of the postero-external columns is indicated by lightning pains, and signs of inco-ordination. Cystitis or bed-sores may eventually supervene, death ultimately resulting from gradual exhaustion or pyæmia, but usually this event occurs from some intercurrent complaint, such as bronchitis or pneumonia.

Congenital Spastic Paraplegia.—This is a condition occasionally met with, especially by the orthopaedic surgeon, to whom the child is frequently brought on account of bilateral *talipes equino varus*. There is often a history of injury by instruments or prolonged labour at its birth; and there is evidence to show that in many cases the condition is due to a meningeal haemorrhage over the upper part of the central convolutions of both hemispheres, damaging the leg-centres, although possibly in some cases it may result from arrested development of the crossed pyramidal tracts. This congenital complaint is often associated with symptoms of impairment of intellect, nystagmus, and even idiocy. The symptoms are very similar to those of spastic paraplegia in adults. There are the same extensor spasms; increase of all the reflexes; exaggerated knee-jerks, but (owing to the contraction of the calf-muscles probably) ankle-clonus is not often to be obtained. There is usually *talipes equino varus*, and the child learns to walk very late, when it is noticed that it has a most peculiar gait, swinging or oscillating the body from side to side, or a “cross-legged progression” exists in some cases.

IV. AMYOTROPHIC LATERAL SCLEROSIS.

Pathology.—This variety of sclerosis was first described by Charcot, and it presents the following distinctive pathological features:—1. In the great majority of cases it commences and is most marked in the cervical enlargement of the cord, and extends gradually downwards. 2. Though it begins in the lateral columns, it quickly spreads to the anterior cornua, involving and destroying their large motor ganglion-cells, so that there is a combined sclerosis of these portions of the cord. 3. The lesion almost always extends upwards also, involving the medulla oblongata, and sometimes passing through the foot of the cerebral peduncle; the internal capsule is usually intact. The nuclei of the facial, hypoglossal, and spinal accessory nerves are generally involved at the close. Exceptionally the change begins in the medulla oblongata, and extends downwards; or it may commence in the lower part of the cord, and ascend. After the extension of the disease to the anterior cornua, the anterior roots of the nerves become gradually involved, and the muscles waste.

Symptoms.—Three stages are described:—In the *first stage* the arms are affected, presenting weakness gradually increasing to actual paralysis, and soon accompanied with marked muscular atrophy of all the muscles of the arms, fibrillar twitchings, and tremors on movement. Rigidity and contractions also supervene, so that deformities are produced, the arms being fixed closely to the sides, the fore-arms semi-flexed and pronated, and the hands and fingers strongly flexed. In the *second stage*, which sets in in from four to twelve months, the legs become involved, while the symptoms increase in the arms. The lower limbs present at first the signs of spastic paraplegia gradually increasing; while there are no marked sensory disorders; and the bladder and rectum are unaffected. Subsequently the muscles waste; the reflexes diminish; rigidity and spasms gradually decrease; the reaction of degeneration is developed; and fibrillar twitchings occur. There are no bed-sores throughout. In the *third stage*, the upper part of the cord and the medulla oblongata become implicated, and signs of bulbar paralysis appear, involving the lips, tongue, palate, pharynx, and larynx. The phrenic nerve usually becomes affected, and thus the action of the diaphragm is interfered with. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is always fatal, and death generally occurs in from one to three years.

V. SECONDARY LATERAL SCLEROSIS—SECONDARY DESCENDING DEGENERATION.

Pathology.—Secondary degeneration of the crossed pyramidal tract follows some primary lesion, situated either in the brain or spinal cord, which severs the connection of its fibres with their trophic centres, namely, the large pyramidal nerve-cells of the cortex of the brain. This lesion may be of different kinds, such as haemorrhage or softening, and from it a descending sclerosis proceeds. If it is seated in the brain, the sclerosis extends down along the crus cerebri, through the pons, into the anterior pyramid of the medulla, and along the decussation to the opposite side of the spinal cord, in which it passes down almost entirely along the lateral white column, the superficial portion of which, however, is not involved. In short, it affects the crossed pyramidal tract on the opposite side to the brain-lesion; while it also involves the direct pyramidal tract on the same side. The extent of the change becomes more and more confined in its limits, both relatively and actually, as it proceeds downwards. When the original disease is situated in the spinal cord, such as myelitis or gradual compression, the tracts involved in the degenerative process will differ according to circumstances. Thus a complete transverse lesion will cause degeneration of the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts on both sides; a unilateral transverse lesion will involve both tracts on the same side; and if either tract is alone implicated, the degeneration will be confined to it.

Symptoms.—The supervention of secondary degeneration of the tracts of the cord just considered will be indicated clinically by spastic symptoms, muscular rigidity, and exaggerated deep reflexes, as in the other forms of sclerosis of these parts. It is recognized, however, by the fact that these phenomena usually follow, and are super-added to those clearly traceable to the original lesion. Thus, in the case of the spinal cord, rigidity follows distinct paraplegia, usually sensory as well as motor; while the bladder and rectum are affected; and there may be trophic lesions of the skin. These characters are not noticed in primary sclerosis, in which muscular weakness and rigidity advance together, the rigidity being usually in excess. Moreover, secondary degeneration is generally much more rapid in its progress; but, when very chronic, its symptoms are exceedingly like those of primary lateral sclerosis. As regards the brain, there is seldom much difficulty in diagnosis, there being hemiplegia and other characteristic symptoms, to which a condition of spastic hemiplegia is superadded. There are exceptional cases in which difficulty may arise, from the fact that the phenomena may be unilateral in connection with disease of the spinal cord, and thus a cerebral lesion may be simulated. In cerebral cases, however, there is generally a distinct history of the original lesion; brain-symptoms are usually present; the face and tongue are commonly involved; rigidity and paralysis are more marked in the arm; sensation is unaffected, or anaesthesia, if present, is on the same side as the motor paralysis; and superficial reflexes are diminished or abolished.

VI. DISSEMINATED OR MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS.

Pathology.—The form of sclerosis thus denominated is also known by various other names, such as *insular sclerosis* (Moxon), *multilocular sclerosis*, *sclérose en plaques disseminées* (Charcot). It is characterized anatomically by the morbid condition being arranged in small roundish

patches or nodules, scattered irregularly through the nerve-centres, and sometimes involving also the peripheral nerves. They may be found in different parts of the brain or spinal cord, either separately or together, often occupying several regions at the same time. According to the distribution of the nodules in the nerve-centres, disseminated sclerosis has been divided into three main types, namely :—1. *Spinal*; 2. *Cerebral*; 3. *Cerebro-spinal*, the last being the most common. In the cerebrum the nodules are seen chiefly in the corpus callosum, corpora striata, optic thalami, and septum lucidum; sometimes in the centrum ovale; very rarely in the grey matter of the convolutions. The corpus dentatum is almost the only part of the cerebellum which is involved. Sclerotic patches may also be found in the pons or medulla. In the spinal cord their distribution is extremely irregular. They are said to be mainly confined to the white columns, but may involve the grey matter; and are usually indiscriminate, though sometimes symmetrical. The nerves may be studded with patches, or diseased throughout. The nodules are in most cases well-defined, and either project above the surrounding level, or are depressed. Charcot described them as being usually divided into three zones, indicating successive phases of the disease, the innermost zone being most advanced. They vary in size from a pin's head to a bean or larger; and also considerably in number in different cases. They have a grey translucent appearance, and on exposure to air assume a pink colour. Patches of sclerosis rarely lead to secondary degenerations, either ascending or descending.

Symptoms.—It will be readily understood that the precise clinical history of disseminated sclerosis must be variable in different cases, and the symptoms are often exceedingly complex. Charcot aptly called the disease *polymorphous*. Its invasion is usually extremely gradual and chronic, but occasionally is more or less abrupt or sudden. The reason that any definite clinical history of multiple sclerosis can be given at all is that it very frequently involves the lateral columns of the cord, the medulla, and the pons; and the associated symptoms are indicative of such a distribution of the lesion. Usually they point at the outset to the spinal cord, but in a certain proportion of cases the brain is first involved, as indicated by headache, vertigo, mental disorder, or other phenomena. In general terms the symptoms may be described as rhythmical tremors, occurring only with voluntary movement; slow and progressive paralysis, especially of the lower extremities; contraction of the limbs; peculiar vertigo, paroxysmal or almost constant; affections of the eyes; defect of speech, with tremors of the lips and tongue; and marked change in the expression and mental condition. In the course of the disease inco-ordination of the movements of the legs may supervene, or wasting of certain voluntary muscles; as well as disorders of deglutition, respiration, and circulation.

For practical purposes it will be sufficient to give a brief account of a typical case of *cerebro-spinal sclerosis*. The clinical history has been divided into three stages. The *first stage* begins with motor disorder in one leg, usually of the nature of paresis, sometimes of ataxy. The paresis gradually increases to actual paralysis, while the opposite leg becomes similarly affected, and then the arms one after the other. Sensation is either entirely normal, or there may be merely temporary numbness, or a sensation of "pins and needles." Soon a characteristic symptom is developed in the affected limbs, namely, a marked rhythmical jerking, tremor, or shaking, which, however, only occurs on voluntary effort, affecting those muscles or parts of a limb which are

called into action, and immediately ceasing when they are at rest. The disordered movements are usually more marked in some parts than in others. They differ in degree and in exact character, giving rise accordingly to fine tremors or shakings, very marked trembling, or violent movements somewhat resembling those of chorea. As a rule the voluntary movements are not intensified when the eyes are closed, as in locomotor ataxy. In well-marked cases any voluntary action at once brings on the tremor, and this is in proportion to the effort made. Later the muscles of the trunk and neck become affected in the same way as those of the limbs, producing nodding of the head; and the condition then extends to the face, lips, tongue, eyes, or sometimes to the palate, pharynx, and larynx. In well-marked cases the facial expression becomes dull, vacant, stolid, and stupid; or the "air de beatitude" (Charcot) is observed. Articulation is more or less affected, as evidenced by monotonous voice; a peculiar slow, hesitating, drawling, and measured speech, each syllable being separately pronounced—*scanning speech*; or a jerky articulation, ultimately becoming thick and blurred; or by the voice being weak or whispering. Deglutition is less frequently disturbed, but may be involved in advanced cases. In connection with the eye, the most common and characteristic symptom is nystagmus, which is best shown when the patient is made to look upwards, downwards, or to the extreme left or right. Actual paralysis of the ocular muscles is rare. The pupils may be irregular, or sometimes "pin-pointed"; the "Argyll Robertson phenomenon" is rare. Dimness of vision is frequent, and may be unilateral; it may be due to nystagmus, to atrophy of the optic discs, or to changes in the visual centres. Diplopia is rare; and actual blindness very rare.

In order to observe the tremors in cases of multiple sclerosis, it is necessary to make the patient perform various acts. When he is quietly seated nothing may be observed, or at most only a slight rhythmical jerking of the head. Among the actions which have been particularly recommended to demonstrate the irregular movements are rising from a lying to a sitting or standing posture, elevation of a limb, attempts to grasp some object, drinking a glass of water, writing, putting out the tongue, and walking. In the earliest period there is merely slight unsteadiness when walking is attempted, the only thing noticed being some degree of stiffness in the way in which the neck is held, and slight jerking of the head. By degrees the gait becomes more and more unsteady; "in some cases it resembles that of locomotor ataxy; in others the inco-ordination chiefly affects the muscles of the trunk, and the patient does not walk deliberately in a straight line (as the subject of locomotor ataxy does), but is apt to shoot forcibly from side to side; in other cases again the feet seem to cling to the ground, and the spastic gait is conjoined with a rhythmical shaking tremor of the whole body" (Byrom Bramwell). The cause of the tremors is disputed. Charcot attributed them to irregular conduction through axis-cylinders lying in the midst of sclerosed tissues; others regard them as being due to the presence of sclerotic patches in the pons and parts of the brain in front of it.

The muscles which are involved in multiple sclerosis are not wasted; and there is no change in their electric excitability. The deep reflexes seem to be, as a rule, distinctly exaggerated, and ankle-clonus may be readily obtained. The general condition is well-maintained. The bowels are constipated, but the bladder is seldom interfered with, and there are no bed-sores.

With regard to cerebral symptoms, headache is common, and vertigo may be very pronounced. The mental faculties also become gradually more and more affected, as indicated by hebetude and mental obscurity, irritability and loss of self-control, failure of memory, or actual dementia. Other forms of mental derangement occasionally observed are a subacute maniacal condition; delusions of grandeur, as in general paralysis of the insane; or profound melancholy. Apoplectiform or epileptiform attacks occur in some cases from time to time. These attacks do not seem to be attended with any obvious recent lesions. The epileptiform convulsions are often limited to one side of the body, and may last only for a short time, or for hours or even days, with intermissions. The temperature rises in both forms of attack, and may reach 104° or even higher. A fatal result may ensue, but more commonly a temporary hemiplegia remains, which soon disappears; after each attack of this kind, however, the patient is left in a worse condition than previously.

In the *second stage* of cerebro-spinal sclerosis the patient becomes unable to walk or stand, the legs having become more and more paralyzed, and he may be entirely confined to his bed. Rigidity not uncommonly supervenes, the legs being closely drawn together as the patient lies in bed, and rigidly extended, this condition being generally exaggerated when any attempt at movement is made. At first it occurs only at times and in paroxysms, but subsequently becomes permanent. Less frequently the arms are affected in a similar manner to the legs, and they are sometimes rigidly extended and closely drawn to the sides of the trunk. The deep reflexes are now markedly exaggerated, the ankle-clonus being often easily excited, and when set up may cause movements in the opposite leg, or even in the whole body. The tremors are also greatly intensified, and any attempt at movement may cause a violent shaking of the entire frame. Exposure to cold, or various kinds of irritation of the skin, will also often set up a general tremor, which, however, may commonly be made to cease at once by forcible flexion of one of the great toes (Brown Séquard).

In the *third stage* the patient becomes emaciated; some of the paralyzed muscles may be specially atrophied; the mind is more and more affected; bulbar symptoms supervene; the bladder is involved, followed by cystitis and renal complications; and bed-sores may develop.

Multiple sclerosis is usually a very chronic disease, its average duration being from eight to ten years. Death may occur at any time from apoplectiform or epileptiform attacks; or at a late period from exhaustion, interference with respiratory or cardiac functions, pyæmia, or inflammatory or other complications. The varieties in the clinical history of the disease not only depend on the parts of the nerve-centres which it may involve at its commencement or in its course, but also on the particular tracts of the cord which the morbid lesion implicates.

VII. GENERAL DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

1. Diagnosis.—The different forms of sclerosis are as a rule clearly indicated by their clinical history. They are essentially chronic affections, and each variety presents usually certain prominent symptoms, which have been sufficiently pointed out in their several descriptions. In the early stage *locomotor ataxy* is liable to be mistaken for rheumatism or neuralgia, on account of the pains; the gastric attacks are also apt to be regarded as merely dyspeptic, should they occur before the characteristic symptoms of locomotor ataxy are developed. This complaint

should always be suspected when amblyopia and atrophy of the optic disc are present without any obvious cause. The abolition of the patellar-reflex, and the condition of the pupils, afford much aid in diagnosis in the early stage of locomotor ataxy. When the disease is well-established, it is usually easily recognized. The conditions with which it is then most likely to be confounded are cerebellar disease, and cerebro-spinal sclerosis. The different forms of *lateral sclerosis* have to be distinguished from each other, but the principal points in diagnosis have already been indicated. The *amyotrophic* variety somewhat resembles wasting palsy at first, but is much more rapid in its progress; the mode of onset and extension of the disease is different; and there is never any rigidity in progressive muscular atrophy. It may also be mistaken for pachymeningitis cervicalis hypertrophica. *Disseminated sclerosis* has to be distinguished from paralysis agitans; locomotor ataxy; cerebellar tumour; chorea; or tremor following hemiplegia due to cerebral haemorrhage or any other cause.

2. Prognosis.—This is always grave, but in some forms of sclerosis arrest of the disease or even improvement may be effected at an early period, by appropriate treatment. In advanced cases the prognosis is very unfavourable, and sooner or later a fatal issue must always be anticipated.

3. Treatment.—It is important in all varieties of sclerosis of the nervous system to maintain the general health by means of good diet, tonics, cod-liver oil, strychnine, and such remedies. If the patient cannot swallow, it may be desirable to introduce food by the stomach-pump or by means of enemata. Passive exercise in the open air may be of service, but walking is often injurious, and especially fatigue. Reflex sources of irritation must be avoided, as well as exposure to cold. If any syphilitic taint is suspected, iodide of potassium and bichloride of mercury should have a fair trial. Large doses of iodide of potassium have been found decidedly useful in the treatment of locomotor ataxy. Other drugs which have been employed are ergot, nitrate and phosphate of silver, chloride of barium, phosphorus, strychnine, calabar bean, and arsenic. Various baths have been resorted to, but are of questionable use. Warm baths relieve spasmodic rigidity; gaseous thermal waters have also been recommended; and a properly-conducted course of hydro-pathic treatment may be of service. Electricity may prove very useful, but this agent must be used judiciously and according to correct principles. In lateral sclerosis it has been recommended to pass the constant current perseveringly through the spinal cord; but no benefit, in fact rather the reverse, is to be obtained by local electrical treatment of the muscles (Byrom Bramwell). Galvanization of the cord is also employed in locomotor ataxy. Counter-irritation near the spinal column, by means of the actual cautery, has been found useful in some cases of sclerosis of the cord. The plan of treating locomotor ataxy by the "method of suspension," originally introduced by Charcot, in which the patient is suspended by the head and shoulders, by means of a Sayre's apparatus, has a decidedly beneficial effect in some cases. Symptoms must be treated as they arise in cases of sclerosis of the cord, and this is often all that can be done. For the lightning pains in locomotor ataxy subcutaneous injection of morphine, full doses of bromide of potassium, cannabis indica, salicylate of sodium in 20-grain doses, the constant current, and forcibly stretching the sciatic or other large nerves, have been chiefly recommended. Nerve-stretching does not seem to affect the

course of the disease, as was at one time hoped. The gastric symptoms are relieved by morphine, preparations of bismuth, and pepsin. Paralysis, rigidity, vesical symptoms, bed-sores, and other complications must be treated on ordinary principles; and every attention must be paid to cleanliness and other hygienic conditions.

CHAPTER XCVII.

ON CERTAIN SPECIAL NERVOUS DISEASES.

I. PROGRESSIVE MUSCULAR ATROPHY—WASTING PALSY —CRUVEILHIER'S PARALYSIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Wasting palsy has been attributed pathologically to an atrophic and degenerative change beginning in the involved muscles themselves; in the anterior roots of the nerves supplying them; or in the spinal cord. One important view is that the primary lesion consists in a gradual destruction of the motor nerve-cells of the anterior cornua of the cord, either due to a chronic inflammation or to a degeneration, the nerves and muscles being secondarily affected. The theory that the muscles are originally affected has gained much support of late years. The chief supposed *exciting causes* of the complaint are exposure to cold and wet; a blow or a fall on the neck or back, or traumatic injuries of peripheral parts; syphilis; excessive use, with consequent fatigue of the affected muscles; acute fevers; and lead-poisoning. The disease occurs by far most commonly in males; and usually in persons about 30 years of age, though it may be met with at any period from childhood to old age. In some cases it appears to be distinctly hereditary, or to affect several members of the same family.

Anatomical Characters.—The affected muscles in progressive muscular atrophy are wasted more or less, pale and yellowish or fawn-coloured, and soft. The muscles are altered to a very variable degree, and one may be found quite destroyed while the next is unchanged, or healthy bundles of muscular tissue may be seen in the midst of the morbid structures. The upper portions of the muscles are usually most changed. Microscopically it is found that the interstitial connective tissue, and in some cases the fat, are increased; while the muscular fibres have usually undergone simple atrophy, but sometimes they present nuclear proliferation and fatty infiltration. The anterior roots of some spinal nerves and the sympathetic branches joining them have been found atrophied, the nerve-elements being replaced by a finely-granular tissue. The morbid changes in the cord are practically limited to the anterior cornua. The nerve-cells are found in all stages of atrophy and degeneration; and in some instances this change is simple. In others dilatation and thickening of the blood-vessels have been noticed; and in some cases compound granular corpuscles and oil-globules have been present. The anterior columns and adjacent parts of the cord sometimes exhibit distinct sclerotic characters.

Symptoms.—Wasting palsy sets in very insidiously. It usually begins in either shoulder or hand, especially the right, but gradually advances from its starting-point so as to invade other muscles, until finally

every voluntary muscle in the body may be involved, except those of the eyeballs and eyelids, and the muscles of mastication. Exceptionally the muscles of the neck, trunk, legs, or face are first implicated. The atrophy seems to begin most frequently in the right hand, involving the thenar eminence, then the hypothenar, and then the interossei. The right deltoid is not uncommonly first affected. There is a failure of muscular power, corresponding in situation, extent, and degree to the wasting, and this may culminate in absolute helplessness, with inability to swallow, speak, or breathe, death then resulting from asphyxia. At the same time there are marked objective signs of the atrophy of the muscles, which are well seen about the shoulders and in the hands, the latter assuming the "claw-hand" shape or "*main en griffe*," characterized by deep depressions due to the wasting of the muscles, while the tendons stand out, and the fingers are drawn in towards the palm, being also pushed back; the ball of the thumb is much wasted; the shoulder is flattened or depressed; and the bony prominences seem to stand out. The claw-hand is due, as shown by Duchenne, to the special paralysis of the interossei and lumbricales, the extensors and flexors still retaining their power, at least partially. The tissues have a soft and flabby feel. The face assumes a vacant or idiotic expression when its muscles become affected. During the progress of the wasting the muscles present constant flickering or fibrillar movements, so long as any muscular tissue is left, which are more marked if the skin is exposed to cold or blown upon. The irritability and force of contraction under electricity become diminished in proportion to the waste of tissue, but there is no "reaction of degeneration;" in some cases, although the motor nerves do not present the "reaction of degeneration," the muscles themselves do, and are found to react to the anodal closure better than to the cathodal. The reflexes may be exaggerated at an early period of the disease, but soon become diminished, and are finally abolished. The temperature of the affected parts is reduced, and the patient is usually very sensitive to cold. The mind is unaffected to the last. Pains are not uncommon in the diseased parts, either myalgic or articular. There is never any loss of power over the bladder or rectum; and the heart is never implicated. Sexual functions are not involved; and there are no trophic skin-lesions. In some cases wasting palsy does not spread to the extent above described, but is arrested in its progress, the patient ultimately recovering, especially when it is due to fatigue of special muscles. Death generally results from extension of the disease to the medulla oblongata, when bulbar symptoms supervene; or to pulmonary complications, a slight bronchitis being very dangerous if the respiratory muscles are involved. Sometimes the fatal result arises from gradual exhaustion. The duration of wasting palsy is very variable.

Diagnosis.—The conditions which are liable to be mistaken for progressive muscular atrophy are paralysis from local injury or disease of a nerve; amyotrophic lateral sclerosis; chronic lead-poisoning; and anterior acute or subacute poliomyelitis. Attention to the history, symptoms, and mode of progress of the complaint will generally make the diagnosis clear.

Prognosis.—Improvement can often be effected in wasting palsy by early treatment, but in advanced cases very little can be done, especially if the disease is extensive and rapid in its progress. The prognosis is more favourable when the complaint is due to fatigue; while it is worse if any hereditary tendency can be traced.

Treatment.—If wasting palsy has arisen from excessive use of certain muscles, these must be allowed to rest. Improvement of the general health is highly important, by means of nutritious diet, tonics, change of air, and gentle regular exercise. Arsenic, strychnine, preparations of iron, and nitrate of silver are the chief drugs employed; and iodide of potassium if there is any syphilitic taint. Warm or sulphur baths have been recommended, but cold baths should not be used. The chief *local* methods of treatment advocated are systematic friction, for which some simple liniment may be employed; passive motion; kneading or massage; and electricity. The continuous and interrupted currents are both serviceable, and their persevering use often proves very beneficial. According to Duchenne, “the more a muscle is atrophied and its contractility diminished the longer it should be subjected to the stimulation, the more intense should be the current, and the more rapid its intermissions: When the sensibility is seen to return, it is prudent to diminish the intermissions and abate the intensity of the current.” The constant current may also be passed through the affected region of the spinal cord. Pain may be subdued by warm fomentations or baths; or, if it is severe, by the hypodermic injection of morphine. Any hereditary tendency to wasting palsy must be recognized, fatigue of muscles, and exposure to cold or wet being especially avoided under such circumstances.

II. BULBAR PARALYSIS—GLOSSO-LABIO-LARYNGEAL PARALYSIS.

Pathology and Aetiology.—Bulbar paralysis is in exceptional instances an acute or sudden affection, due to haemorrhage into the medulla oblongata and pons, embolism or thrombosis, or acute inflammation, the last-mentioned being more especially termed *Acute bulbar paralysis*. It is chiefly known, however, as a chronic disease, and is sometimes associated with progressive muscular atrophy. In *acute bulbar myelitis* the medulla is occasionally obviously softened, and mottled with minute haemorrhages. The microscope reveals signs of inflammation, such as granular cells, infiltration of nuclei around the blood-vessels, thickening of their walls, minute extravasations, and swollen axis-cylinders. The lesion in the *chronic* form seems to begin in the nerve-elements of the medulla oblongata and upper part of the spinal cord, ultimately involving the nuclei of origin of the hypoglossal, facial, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves. The motor cells are atrophied and shrunken; their processes are lost; and the intermediate tissue is in a state of degeneration. Afterwards the morbid change implicates the roots, and may extend along the trunks of the nerves, the nerve-fibres being grey, translucent, and degenerated. It may also pass down the spinal cord to a variable extent. The muscles which are affected in this complaint may present a healthy aspect; or they are pale, atrophied, with fat between the fibres, which may further present granular degeneration. No definite causes of bulbar paralysis have been made out, but it has been attributed to mental emotion, exposure to cold and wet, and syphilis. It occurs in adults; and chiefly in females.

Symptoms.—In *acute bulbar paralysis* there are usually premonitory symptoms, such as vertigo, headache, vomiting, and occasionally pain in the back of the neck. Bulbar symptoms quickly follow, but they vary in their precise characters, according to the exact seat of the mischief.

Generally dysphagia is first noticed, which may become complete; while, owing to paralysis of the soft palate and laryngeal muscles, liquids may enter the posterior nares or larynx. The tongue becomes paralyzed; and speech is indistinct or nasal. Breathing is much disturbed, as indicated by great rapidity, irregularity, or occasional interruption of the act. The pulse is frequent, feeble, and in some cases irregular or intermittent. Temperature is sometimes a little raised. The facial and ocular muscles may become paralyzed; the limbs are involved less frequently, and may be the seat of sensations of pain or formication, as well as of paralysis. Hiccup may be a distressing symptom. Depression and collapse rapidly supervene; and death occurs from paralysis of respiration, the diaphragm being involved in some instances.

In *chronic bulbar paralysis* the chief clinical phenomena depend upon paralysis of the muscles of the tongue, palate, and pharynx, and of the orbicularis oris. In course of time the larynx and respiratory muscles become involved. In the great majority of cases the tongue is first affected, which is indicated by some embarrassment of speech, and impaired articulation. Special difficulty is experienced in raising the tip of the tongue to the roof of the mouth, or in bringing it against the upper teeth; hence words beginning with lingual and dental consonants give most trouble. The organ can still be protruded, though perhaps not quite normally. Then dysphagia is experienced, particularly as regards fluids, which are apt to pass into the larynx, or through the posterior nares on account of paralysis of the soft palate, causing much distress and danger. Consequently saliva accumulates in the mouth, which assumes a viscid, glutinous, stringy character, and it flows out instead of being swallowed. Food collects between the gums and cheeks, because the tongue cannot remove it; and the cheeks cannot be inflated. Paralysis of the soft palate also produces a characteristic nasal voice. When the orbicularis oris becomes involved the labial sounds are not properly pronounced; whistling is impossible; and in time the lips remain apart and cannot be closed, so that the teeth are exposed, and the corners of the mouth are depressed, the patient presenting a peculiar, mournful, and most unpleasant aspect. Articulation and deglutition become ultimately impossible; the tongue remains at the bottom of the mouth as a sodden inert mass; and the patient has to be fed. General debility and wasting result, in consequence of the interference with nutrition. Subsequently implication of the respiratory muscles leads to difficulty of breathing, and inability to cough; while, when the larynx is affected, voice becomes almost absolutely lost. In some instances the tongue is obviously wasted, wrinkled, and furrowed; but even when it is apparently enlarged, this seems to be due to accumulation of fat, the muscular fibres being atrophied. The lips may also be of normal size or thinned. Electric irritability is usually scarcely altered in the affected muscles. The mind is generally clear to the last, but the emotions are easily excited. If the disease extends down the cord, muscular atrophy or paralysis, with or without rigidity, is observed in the corresponding muscles. Bulbar paralysis always proves fatal, death resulting either from gradual or sudden asphyxia; from exhaustion and asthenia usually; from interference with the cardiac action; or from some intercurrent complaint.

Diagnosis.—*Labio-glosso-laryngeal paralysis* may be confounded with simple paralysis of the tongue; facial paralysis, especially double; general paralysis of the insane; or diphtheritic paralysis.

Treatment.—But little can be done for this disease. Electricity to the affected muscles has been employed, in the early stage, with some benefit. Symptoms must be attended to; and it becomes necessary in time to feed the patient by the stomach-pump or enemata.

III. SYRINGOMYELIA (*συρίγγω*, to become hollow; *μυελος*, spinal marrow).

Syringomyelia is a gliomatous process around the central canal of the spinal cord, followed by excavation and destruction of the grey matter. The symptoms depend upon the situation and extent of the morbid process, and form three groups, viz.:—1. Muscular atrophy. 2. Loss of sensibility to heat and cold, with preservation of the tactile and muscular senses. 3. Trophic lesions.

Etiology and Pathology.—Syringomyelia affects both sexes, but probably males more often than females. It commences in young people between the ages of 15 and 25, but little is known either of the causes which predispose to or excite the disease. It is a complaint which within the last ten years has excited considerable interest, and is by-no-means rare, Baümler having recently collected records of 120 cases. Schultze and Kahler were the first to point out that excavation of the spinal cord was attended with definite clinical phenomena. There are two conditions which may give rise to cavities in the centre of the spinal cord, viz.: 1. *Hydromyelia*—a congenital dilatation of the central canal of the spinal cord, and, therefore, a cavity lined by cylindrical epithelium. 2. *Syringomyelia*—an excavation due to disintegration and destruction of the grey matter of the spinal cord, owing to degeneration and absorption of a central gliomatous infiltration beginning *around* the central canal, in which the wall of the cavity is formed by the dense feltwork of neuroglial substance produced by the neoplastic formation. The excavation may be unilateral or bilateral; it is usually irregular in shape, and extends into one or both posterior cornua or anterior cornua, sometimes into the posterior columns. The length of the cavity varies, as does also the situation, but it involves in most cases the cervico-dorsal region, sometimes the lumbar and lower dorsal, and less frequently the upper cervical. The cavity contains a thin serous, or a blood-stained, thick or gummy fluid, but this never ruptures through the white matter, so that the internal pressure cannot be great. The process generally gradually advances, with occasional stationary periods, commencing as a rule in adolescence, and persisting for 15 or 20 years; it may last 30 or 40 years.

It is of importance to note that Schiff always asserted that the grey matter conducted thermal and painful sensations, the posterior columns tactile and muscular sense. The pathognomonic sensory dissociation of syringomyelia is thus explained, and since the posterior cornua are so often involved, and the posterior columns seldom, the loss of sensibility to heat and cold, with retention of the tactile and muscular senses, is explained.

Symptoms and Course.—The symptoms of syringomyelia may be divided into three groups:—1. Those due to implication of the anterior cornual cells—*motor*, and corresponding very closely with progressive muscular atrophy. Since the *cervical and upper dorsal region* is the commonest seat of the excavation, the muscles innervated by the cells in that region are the most prone to be affected. It is therefore very

common to find a progressive wasting of the small muscles of the hand on one side, with disappearance of the thenar and hypothenar eminences, paralysis and wasting of the interossei, and the typical *Duchenne-Aran paralysis*, with "main en griffe." If the upper part of the cervical enlargement is affected, then the muscles of the shoulder and scapula undergo atrophy, but the disease never affects the bulb, and therefore glosso-labio-laryngeal palsy does not occur. It often spreads over to the opposite side, but the paralysis is seldom symmetrical. Fibrillary contractions may occur; reflexes are abolished or diminished; and there is diminution of electrical contractility in proportion to the atrophy. Scoliosis and cyphosis occur, the former being due to unilateral destruction of the motor cells in the dorsal region, with consequent wasting of muscles. Lordosis is not met with. As the result of pressure upon, or involvement of the lateral columns, spastic paraplegia may result, with increased reflexes, both superficial and deep. 2. Those due to affection of the posterior cornua—*Syringomyelic dissociation of sensibility* (Charcot). There is loss of sensation of heat and cold, and also of painful impressions; with retention of tactile and muscular sensibility. Usually the cutaneous sensory disturbance is located to the parts paralyzed, but anatomical considerations show that both posterior horns may be affected simultaneously with one anterior horn, or there may be other irregularities, and the conditions resulting therefrom will vary accordingly. Occasionally the posterior columns are affected, and then a prominent feature may be ataxy, combined with trophic lesions, and an absence of the characteristic sensory dissociation. 3. Those due to affection of central grey matter.—Probably this accounts for the trophic and vaso-motor changes. They include glossy skin, changes in the nails, ulcerations, bullæ, zona, vitiligo, perforating ulcer, and painless whitlows. Various arthropathies may occur, with deformities, dislocations, and spontaneous fractures, which are especially liable to affect the fingers, shoulder, and elbow joints. It rarely happens that the sphincters are affected in syringomyelia; and visceral crises or genital troubles are unknown in this disease.

Diagnosis.—Since any part of the spinal cord may be affected in syringomyelia, the symptoms may be most varied and diverse. The diseases likely to be mistaken for it are the various muscular atrophies, e.g., progressive muscular atrophy, especially of the Duchenne-Aran type, the various primary myopathies, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and hypertrophic cervical pachymeningitis. The motor phenomena in these diseases may resemble those of syringomyelia, but the absence of sensory and trophic troubles will serve to distinguish between them. A careful consideration of the three characteristic groups of symptoms of syringomyelia will serve to differentiate it from tabes, chronic myelitis, and disseminated sclerosis. The slow onset distinguishes from haematomyelia, which is sudden. Neuritis is distinguished by all the sensations being equally affected; while the sensory disturbance is not in accord with a spinal segmental lesion, but corresponds to the distribution of particular nerves, and there is pain on pressure along the course of the nerve.

Prognosis.—Syringomyelia is incurable, but slow, usually progressive, and may after a great number of years prove fatal, by extension of the disease, or by complications. Frequently the patient dies from intercurrent affections.

Treatment.—Nothing is known to affect the course of syringomyelia. In order to improve the general health tonics may be administered, such

as iron, quinine, strychnine, and arsenic. But the principal attention should be directed to the local treatment of the conditions arising from trophic troubles, which, owing to their painless character, are apt to be neglected, and thereby become sources of septic infection. Galvanism of the wasted muscles may be resorted to in some instances.

MORVAN'S DISEASE.—This is a peculiar disease, met with in Brittany, which bears the name of its discoverer. By Charcot it was considered to be a form of syringomyelia, but it is more probable that the complaint is of the nature of an infective neuritis, perhaps anaesthetic leprosy. The disease is chronic in its progress, and is characterized by neuralgic pains, cutaneous anaesthesia, and painless and destructive whitlows, affecting particularly the upper extremities.

IV. MULTIPLE NEURITIS—PERIPHERAL NEURITIS.

Aetiology.—As the name implies, multiple neuritis is a disease in which different nerves are simultaneously inflamed. It is more especially dependent on chronic alcoholism, although some cases are considered to be due to enteric fever, syphilis, malaria, and exposure to cold. The endemic disease, beriberi, occurring in Japan, seems to belong to this group.

Multiple neuritis rarely occurs before the age of 25 years, and is most common between 30 and 50. Women are more often attacked than men.

Anatomical Characters.—The affected nerves are reddened in recent attacks, and softened in older cases. When examined microscopically, the nerve-fibres are found to be chiefly affected in some cases; while in others the sheath and interstitial tissue, or both, may be involved. The fibres undergo acute degeneration, the myelin-sheath is broken up or removed, while between the nerve-fasciculi there is some increase of connective tissue, and in the fasciculi themselves the connective tissue is much increased, and encloses spaces in which are the remains of nerve-fibres which have undergone degeneration. The walls of the vessels are frequently thickened.

The extent of multiple neuritis varies very much, but as a rule the large nerves of the limbs are affected, especially the anterior tibial and the musculo-spiral, and the inflammation may be traced peripherally to the endings of the nerves, but centrally the disease diminishes, so that their roots are usually normal.

Symptoms.—Multiple neuritis usually exhibits an acute or subacute onset. In the former case there are rigors and pyrexia, the temperature rising to 103° or more; tingling and a sensation of pins and needles are felt in the limbs, and especially in the hands and feet; this is followed by acute pains in the limbs, of darting or burning character, along the course of the great nerves, especially the musculo-spiral and anterior tibials of both sides, with great tenderness, and in some cases the nerves are felt to be swollen. There is also acute tenderness in the muscles of the limbs, and the pain is much increased by passive movements. Muscular weakness then supervenes, and the movements which are first lost are those of the muscles on the back of the forearm and the front of the leg, causing symmetrical wrist-drop and foot-drop; the supinator longus is usually affected, along with the extensors of the wrist and fingers, thus differing from lead-paralysis. In severe cases the flexors of the fingers are affected, and sometimes the muscles of the upper arm and thigh suffer. The trunk muscles and diaphragm are occasionally paralyzed.

The nerves rapidly lose their excitability to electric currents, and the affected muscles show the "reaction of degeneration," and waste considerably. Occasionally there is loss of co-ordination in the muscles, thus resembling locomotor ataxia. The knee-jerks are lost very early if the lower limbs are affected. Sensibility to touch is lost in the area of distribution of the diseased nerves, but that to pain is usually retained, and there is often hyperalgesia. Trophic changes in the skin and nails occur sometimes in multiple neuritis. The sphincters are rarely affected. After some weeks contractures are liable to take place in connection with the joints, owing to the over-action of the unaffected muscles, and especially talipes equinus. The pains in the limbs tend to diminish, but the hyperalgesia persists. The disease progresses for a month or more, then becomes stationary for one or two months, and afterwards begins to improve, but improvement may take place after some months or even a year.

Complications, such as mental changes or diseases of other organs due to alcoholism, may occur. Some cases of multiple neuritis run a rapid course, accompanied with extensive paralysis, death occurring in a week or ten days, as the result of implication of the diaphragm and thoracic muscles.

Diagnosis.—Multiple neuritis has to be distinguished from acute poliomyelitis, locomotor ataxia, and pachymeningitis. The chief points in multiple neuritis are the symmetrical paralysis in all four limbs; the severe pain and tenderness in the nerves and muscles, accompanied with anaesthesia; the absence of optic atrophy; the reaction of the pupils to light; and the fact that the sphincters are rarely affected. In diphtheritic paralysis the palate is usually first affected, and the pains in the limbs are not so severe. Alcoholism should always be sought for when there is symmetrical wrist-drop and foot-drop.

Prognosis is grave in the early stage if the respiratory muscles are affected, but in the later stages there is less danger to life, unless the patient be exhausted by the continual severe pain and bed-sores, which sometimes occur. Recovery usually ensues in from six to nine months, but it may take place even after a year.

Treatment.—In the acute stage absolute rest is required, and hot fomentations with anodynes should be applied to the painful limbs. If there is any history of syphilis, iodide of potassium and mercury should be given after the acute symptoms have subsided. Alcohol should, if possible, be cut off altogether, and the patient should be removed from friends if alcoholism is suspected. In the later stages the muscles should be carefully exercised with the constant current. Rubbing is exceedingly useful, and the stiff joints should be passively worked and adhesions broken down, this treatment being carried out for several months. Tonics and cod-liver oil are of great use after the disease has passed into the chronic stage.

V. WRITER'S CRAMP—SCRIVENER'S PALSY— MOGIGRAPHIA.

Etiology and Pathology.—The form of nervous disorder thus named is but the most common type of a group of diseases, in which sets of muscles, habitually and frequently exercised for certain complicated actions, become the seat of peculiar spasmodic movements. Writer's cramp occurs principally among those who write a great deal, such as teachers, merchants, and clerks; but derangements of a similar character

are met with in connection with other occupations, such as amongst violinists, violoncello players, pianoforte players, telegraphists, watch-makers, composers, engravers, tailors, sempstresses, milkmaids, shoemakers, bricklayers, and nailsmiths. Over-work of the affected muscles seems to be an important element in the causation of the malady, and it is aggravated by mental worry and anxiety. Among writers the use of a steel pen, the wearing of a tight coat-sleeve, and an inconvenient and constrained attitude have been considered as *predisposing causes*. Writer's cramp never occurs under 30 years of age; and is far more frequent among males than females.

The *pathology* of writer's cramp is very doubtful, but the affection has been attributed to some morbid condition or a state of mal-nutrition of the nerve-centres governing the implicated muscles, with consequent diminution in nerve-force, or loss of co-ordinating power; to chronic fatigue of these muscles (Poore); to a reflex neurosis from muscular nerves; or to the transmission of voluntary impressions to other motor nerves besides those which are intended, sympathetic movements being thus excited.

Symptoms.—The earliest symptom in most cases of writer's cramp is a sense of fatigue and aching in the hand after writing, especially in the thumb, as well as often in the muscles of the entire upper extremity. The patient finds that he must hold his pen more firmly, and give more direct mental attention to the act, in order to write properly. This only aggravates the mischief, however, and in time control over the muscles concerned in the act becomes diminished or lost, so that irregular spasmodic movements are excited in the fingers and thumb whenever any attempt at writing is made. The thumb may be convulsively flexed, the pen getting over its knuckle; the index-finger is jerked; or the first three fingers exhibit disorderly spasmodic movements. Of course the writing is more or less altered, and ultimately becomes mere illegible scribbling. The patient learns to alter his mode of writing, using the hand, wrist, elbow, and shoulder in succession, but as he does so the corresponding muscles present similar spasmodic movements. Then he takes to writing with the left hand, which becomes affected in the same manner.

The symptoms just mentioned are intensified by mental excitement, and by anxiety on the part of the patient to write properly. They cease immediately the attempt to perform this act is given up; and all other actions, however complicated and delicate, can be carried on without any difficulty or disorder. In some cases a dull pain is experienced in the muscles of the limb, or a feeling of weight and tightness, and tenderness over the nerve-trunks is often present; but ordinary sensation, electric irritability, and nutrition are in no way impaired. In exceptional cases headache, vertigo, mental dulness, occasional tremors, clonic spasms of some or of all the muscles of the arm, and other nervous symptoms are observed. The general health is usually good; but the patient is liable to be depressed in spirits, and may become actually melancholic. There are some cases in which the impairment of writing power does not depend on any excessive use of the muscles; these seem to be less severe, and Dr. Poore states that the trouble is then not so strictly limited to the act of writing. In the case of the other occupations mentioned, the peculiar character of the disorder will vary with the actions which each habitually involves.

Diagnosis.—There is but little difficulty in recognizing the class of diseases now under consideration, if attention is paid to the occupation of the patient, and the peculiar course of symptoms above described.

Writer's cramp might possibly be mistaken for wasting palsy; or for the effects of chronic lead-poisoning.

Prognosis.—If the condition has only existed for a short time, a cure may be expected under appropriate treatment; but in cases of long duration the prognosis is most unfavourable.

Treatment.—All attempts to check the progress of writer's cramp by using quill pens, altering the mode of writing, employing douches and friction, and such measures, are quite ineffectual, and an essential part of the treatment consists in absolute and prolonged rest from the particular employment which is the cause of the complaint, or, if possible, it should be given up altogether. The regular use of the continuous current has proved serviceable, applied to the muscles and nerves of the arm, and along the spine. Dr. Poore employs this agent along with voluntary rhythmical movements of the muscles. Massage of the affected muscles has been employed with very good results. Subcutaneous injection of atropine has also been found useful. When nothing can be done in the way of improvement, patients can sometimes manage to write by using some special apparatus, such as a pen which brings into use the extensors of the fingers, and not the flexors, as recommended by Nussbaum.

VI. PSEUDO-HYPERTROPHIC MUSCULAR PARALYSIS— DUCHENNE'S PARALYSIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—The exciting causes of this peculiar affection are quite obscure. Pathologically it has been attributed by some writers to a lesion affecting the motor nerve-cells in the spinal cord, and has been considered to be a disease of the same nature as progressive muscular atrophy; others, however, regard it as a disease of the muscles. It commences almost always during early life, and is by far most common in boys. In exceptional cases the disease begins in adults. Hereditary predisposition is said to be present in a considerable number of cases, but the disease is almost exclusively transmitted through the female line, and it attacks several boys in one family. Dr. Gowers thinks that the complaint is more common among the better classes. It sometimes follows an acute febrile attack, such as scarlatina.

Anatomical Characters.—The more obvious changes in Duchenne's paralysis are associated with those voluntary muscles which are affected, these being increased in size and very firm; while they present important structural alterations, the muscular fibres having to a great extent disappeared, many of those which remain being atrophied or in a state of degeneration, while the great mass of the apparently enlarged muscles is made up of fat and fibrous tissue, the latter being partly the remains of the sheaths of the muscular fibres, partly the result of increase of the interstitial tissue. In advanced cases other muscles are simply atrophied. Many eminent observers have been unable to detect any morbid condition of the spinal cord in pseudo-hypertrophic muscular paralysis; but marked changes have been described by several pathologists.

Symptoms.—Pseudo-hypertrophic muscular paralysis is a very chronic disease, and its progress has been divided into certain stages, the duration of which presents much variation. The muscles first affected are those of the legs and back, especially those of the calves, back of the thighs and gluteal regions, and the erector spinae. At the outset these are merely weak, the weakness being noticed when the

child begins to walk. The legs are unsteady, movements are clumsy, and the child often stumbles or falls. Subsequently the muscles increase in size, and then the characteristic symptoms become evident. These are:—1. *Enlargement and unnatural firmness* of the calves, back of the thighs, and lumbar region. 2. Peculiarities in the *attitude*. When standing the patient is evidently unsteady, and keeps the legs wide apart, with the heels raised; the shoulders are thrown back, and the antero-posterior curve of the spine is much exaggerated, so that the abdomen appears peculiarly prominent, but this prominence subsides in a sitting posture. In extreme cases a vertical line from between the shoulders falls behind the sacrum. The hands are extended by the sides, and are used to balance the body. The slightest push will make the patient fall. 3. Peculiarities affecting the *mode of progression and movements*. In walking the legs are also much separated; the patient supports himself almost on tiptoe; and the body is balanced, first on one leg and then on the other, with a kind of waddling or oscillating movement. There is evident difficulty in bending the thigh and bringing the foot forwards. The advance made in each step is very small. The patient easily stumbles or falls, especially on attempting to walk rapidly, and soon becomes tired. Stooping is easily effected, but it is very difficult then to gain the erect posture, except when the patient is sitting down. He has great difficulty in raising himself from the recumbent or sitting position, and in advanced cases is quite unable to do so. When he has nothing to take hold of he goes through a series of characteristic movements when told to rise from the recumbent posture. When on "all-fours," he has first to get the legs straight, and then climb up his legs with his hands.

In course of time the muscles of the upper part of the trunk, of the arms, or even those of the face become involved. These may be also evidently enlarged, but more commonly wasting of the upper part of the body is observed, contrasting markedly with the enlargement of the lower portion. Certain muscles, as the deltoid, infraspinatus, supraspinatus, triceps, glutei, extensors of the knee, and especially the calf muscles, are hypertrophied. Gowers lays stress upon wasting of the latissimus dorsi and sterno-costal portion of the pectoralis major, which may be entirely absent. The paralysis becomes more marked and extensive, and ultimately the patient lies in a completely helpless condition, while at the same time the muscles formerly hypertrophied undergo wasting. Contraction of the affected muscles occurs, producing talipes equinus, etc. The mental faculties may become impaired; and headache, disorders of vision, and other evidences of cerebral disturbance may be noticed before the close. Death results either from gradual exhaustion; from implication of the respiratory muscles or heart; or from some intercurrent malady, very often from bronchitis.

Very different statements have been made as to the electric contractility of the affected muscles in this complaint. It is probably usually impaired to the induced current, but has been found increased to the primary current. The muscles react to the induced current, as long as there are any muscular fibres remaining. The reflex movements of the involved muscles are first impaired, and then abolished. The patellar tendon reflex is abolished in advanced cases. During the active stage of the disease the temperature of the affected parts may be raised. Portions of the diseased tissues may be removed for examination during life, by means of Duchenne's or Leech's trochar.

Diagnosis.—In a well-marked case there is no difficulty in recognizing pseudo-hypertrophic muscular paralysis. It might possibly be mistaken for true muscular hypertrophy; or for spinal disease.

Prognosis.—This is usually very unfavourable. Instances of recovery in the early stage have been reported, and improvement has been effected in more advanced cases, but these are exceptions. The duration is very variable, but the complaint is usually exceedingly chronic; it is said to run a more rapid course in boys, and when it begins soon after birth.

Treatment.—No drug has any direct influence upon Duchenne's paralysis, but arsenic and phosphorus have been recommended. The only local measures from which any benefit can be expected are shampooing and kneading or massage; cold douching; and the use of electricity. Local faradization of the affected muscles is of much use; and the application of the primary current along the spine and sympathetic nerve has also been recommended. The general health must be maintained by good food, fresh air, systematic exercise, and *tonics*, if required. The patient must be carefully protected against cold. He must be encouraged to walk as long as possible, and mechanical appliances and supports may help him to do this. Contractions and deformities must be prevented by passive movements, and by section of tendons, if necessary.

VII. PARALYSIS AGITANS—SHAKING PALSY.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Paralysis agitans must be regarded as a functional disease of the nerve-centres, for, although various organic lesions have been found, there are none having any definite relation to this complaint. It has been mainly attributed to violent emotion; long-continued anxiety or grief; exposure to cold and wet; continuous or severe exertion; injury to nerves; and exhausting diseases. Special varieties of the complaint have been described as *hysterical*, which occurs in hysterical persons; *reflex*, due to some reflex irritation (worms, wounds, etc.); and *toxic*, resulting from the action of some poison upon the system (mercury, alcohol, tobacco, tea, or coffee). True paralysis agitans is rarely met with under 40 years of age, and becomes progressively more frequent as life advances. It seems to be more common in males than females.

Symptoms.—Paralysis agitans is in the great majority of cases an insidious disease, but at the same time progressive. It is characterized chiefly by tremors of the limbs, which are independent of voluntary movements; muscular rigidity; and a tendency to impairment of equilibrium in walking. The complaint begins usually with irregular attacks of tremors, coming on without evident cause, of variable duration, and affecting the hand or foot or the thumb. They become gradually more frequent and severe, and also extend, until finally all the limbs are usually involved, and the tremors are constant. The head and neck remain as a rule entirely free from tremors, but if the lower limbs are affected, and especially on standing, the tremors involve the body. They are made up of fine and rapid oscillations; are subject to exacerbations, especially from mental excitement, fatigue, and other disturbing influences; can sometimes be checked temporarily by voluntary effort; are often very violent when the patient is in other respects perfectly at rest; and cease during sleep. A peculiar rigidity of the muscles usually follows the tremors, or occasionally precedes them; at first more or less intermittent, it subsequently becomes constant, and involves not

only the muscles of the extremities, but also those of the trunk, and of the head and neck; the flexor muscles are most affected. The rigidity is often accompanied with cramp-like pains. The difficulty in maintaining equilibrium in walking is not wholly dependent upon the tremors and rigidity, being observed in some cases at a very early period.

In a well-marked case of paralysis agitans the appearance, attitude, and gait of the patient are highly characteristic. The limbs present a combination of tremors and rigidity. The thumbs are generally extended, and the fingers flexed at the metacarpo-phalangeal joints, but with the phalangeal joints extended; while movements are carried on as if bread were being crumbled. The arms are held out slightly from the sides; the wrists and elbow-joints are a little bent; and the hands are tilted towards the ulnar side, resting on the abdomen at or near the waist. When the patient stands or walks the body is inclined forwards, the knees are slightly bent, and the ankles extended, so that he rests on his toes. The head and neck present a striking appearance, being thrown forwards, and rigidly fixed, while the features are motionless and devoid of expression. The patient rises from his seat with some difficulty, and hesitates before he begins to walk. He starts carefully, but his steps soon become short and rapid, and he cannot prevent himself from running forwards, and will probably fall if not prevented. In some cases the tendency is to run backwards. These movements may often be reversed or altered by a sudden pull at the clothes. Though the disease is called "paralysis," there is usually no marked diminution in muscular power till the later stages of the malady.

In paralysis agitans the involved muscles are generally the seat of a feeling of marked weariness, especially after a paroxysm of tremors, or after exertion. They are usually stronger than those which are unaffected. The patient becomes irritable and fidgety, and may experience an uncomfortable feeling of heat, especially in the epigastrium and back. There is no giddiness. Articulation becomes in time slow and difficult; and the tongue may be tremulous. Deglutition also becomes affected in a similar manner. In some rare cases all the above symptoms are present with the exception of tremor, which is absent.

Paralysis agitans is of slow and often irregular progress. Finally the patient is confined to his bed; the muscles atrophy; the tremors are usually extreme, but occasionally cease; the mental faculties suffer; and bed-sores may form. Death may result from asthenia; or from some intercurrent affection, especially pneumonia.

Diagnosis.—Paralysis agitans is most likely to be mistaken for multiple sclerosis, or mercurial tremors. Due attention to the aetiology and symptoms will generally make the diagnosis quite clear.

Prognosis.—Paralysis agitans must be regarded as practically incurable. Exceptional instances of recovery in the early stage have been recorded. It is, however, a disease of very slow progress.

Treatment.—The indications in the treatment of paralysis agitans are to remove the cause; to give good diet, and attend to hygienic conditions; to avoid fatigue and mental excitement; to improve the general health and condition of the nervous system by strychnine, iron, phosphorus, arsenic, preparations of zinc, and similar remedies; to administer *sedatives*, such as bromide of potassium, *hyoscyamus*, opium, conium, or *cannabis indica*; and to apply the constant current along the affected muscles and over the spine. The systematic use of baths and friction or massage has sometimes proved of service.

VIII. SPASMODIC WRY-NECK—TORTICOLLIS.

Aetiology and Pathology.—Wry-neck has already been alluded to as a form of muscular rheumatism. It may also be a congenital condition, due either to faulty development of the muscles of one side of the neck, or to paralysis, which may result from injury during parturition. The complaint now under consideration, however, is a peculiar nervous affection, attended with spasm of the muscles of one side of the neck, especially the sterno-mastoid. It generally occurs in persons about middle life, who are apparently in good health. It is regarded as a neurosis, allied to writer's cramp and histrionic spasm. It is in many instances due to an irritable state of the spinal accessory nerve. In some cases a weakened and fatigued condition of the muscles of one side of the neck seems to excite irregular contraction in their antagonists. Spasmodic wry-neck is sometimes associated with the hysterical state.

Symptoms.—The spasm in torticollis is usually clonic, rarely tonic. The implication of the sterno-mastoid is indicated by turning of the head to the opposite side; while the occiput is drawn a little downwards, and the chin slightly raised. The trapezius, scaleni, and splenius being not uncommonly involved, a lateral downward bending is noticed, and elevation of the shoulder. The disorder is slight at first, but progressive, and may ultimately become extreme. The spasms are generally remittent; are increased by any mental exertion; and cease during sleep. The electric irritability of the affected muscles is usually greatly increased. The spasmodic movements may be so severe as to produce a sore on the shoulder. Dysphagia, and swelling of the arm from pressure on the subclavian vein, have been observed in exceptional instances. Spasmodic wry-neck is occasionally associated with spinal irritation, histrionic spasm, or spasm of the limbs; and it has also followed writer's cramp. The complaint is very chronic, but generally incurable after it has become well-marked.

Diagnosis.—Spasmodic wry-neck is usually easily recognized. The diseases from which it has chiefly to be distinguished are caries of the spine, and some rare cases of cerebral disease.

Treatment.—The general treatment applicable to this class of affections must be carried out in cases of spasmodic wry-neck. Large doses of succus conii, and subcutaneous injection of morphine, have been found useful by Dr. John Harley. Electricity in various forms has also been employed. Dr. Poore has used with success the continuous galvanic current, combined with rhythmical exercise of the affected muscles. In another case he faradized the antagonist muscles. Mechanical supports and surgical operations have also been resorted to, and, it is affirmed, with success in some instances.

IX. THOMSEN'S DISEASE—CONGENITAL MYOTONIA.

Aetiology and Pathology.—This is a peculiar muscular disorder which was originally described by Dr. Thomsen, of Sleswick, by whom it was termed "tonic convulsions of the voluntary muscles." It appears to be congenital, or at any rate begins during the earliest infancy; and is often hereditary. Males are affected more frequently and more severely than females. The complaint is attributed to a congenital peculiarity of the muscular system. According to Erb, microscopic examination of

excised muscular tissue revealed marked hypertrophy of individual fibres; a rounded outline of these fibres, instead of being polygonal; an increase in the number of the nuclei in the sarcolemma; and increase in the interstitial tissue.

Symptoms.—The essential symptom of congenital myotonia consists in the occurrence of a more or less persistent contraction—a mild sort of tetanus—when any voluntary muscle which has been at rest is made to act, and it cannot be immediately relaxed, the contraction lasting from five to thirty seconds—"myotonic disturbances of motion" (Erb). A feeling of great resistance is experienced in attempting to perform any action, so that voluntary movement is difficult, and quick and accurate motions are often impossible. The stiffness temporarily disappears when movement is persisted in for some time. There is no motor paralysis, while the reflexes and sensation are unaffected. Mental excitement aggravates the muscular disorder. Usually the muscles are obviously developed to an extraordinary degree, especially in the limbs, but the strength is not always proportionately increased. Mechanical excitability of the nerves is probably diminished; that of the muscles exaggerated, a touch with the finger being sufficient to excite tonic contraction. The electric phenomena appear to be very characteristic, and to these Erb has applied the term "myotonic reaction." Faradic excitability of the nerves is normal, but a sudden increase of the current may produce protracted contraction; that of the muscles is very marked, and the effect is prolonged. Galvanic excitability of the muscles is increased quantitatively; qualitatively both poles react alike. During the stable application of the galvanic current, wave-like contractions are seen starting from the cathode and passing one after another over the muscles towards the anode. This complaint is persistent, and the patient gradually becomes accustomed to it as a rule. There is no necessary constitutional disturbance. Sometimes melancholia supervenes.

Treatment.—The measures recommended are cold sponging, friction, massage, and methodical exercise of the muscles, but they have not been attended with much success.

CHAPTER XCVIII.

DISEASES OF THE SKIN.

General Considerations.—The term "skin-disease" may be taken to apply to every deviation from the normal condition of the structure or functions of the skin and its appendages—the glands, hair, and nails. In the following pages, however, it is not intended to discuss those affections that have, by tradition and custom, been unreservedly given up to the charge of the surgeon, and for an account of these the reader may refer to surgical works. There are also many affections, for example, the acute specific diseases, in which a morbid state of the skin plays only a very unimportant rôle in comparison with other symptoms, and these diseases have already been dealt with in another part of this work. The study of skin diseases has been in times past bewildering, partly on account of the paucity of workers in this field, and partly by reason of

the infinite variety of form and aspect of diseased skin, so unlike, apparently, morbid changes in other structures, and this has led to a chaotic and overburdened nomenclature. Rapid strides have, however, been made in the direction of simplification, and there is no reason nowadays why anyone should fail to acquire a sound knowledge of the subject, provided a sufficient time is devoted to practical acquaintance with it. In the character of the morbid processes taking place in the skin there is nothing essentially special, beyond those differences of detail which arise from the situation of the skin on the exterior of the body, and from peculiarities of structure. The facts of general pathology therefore apply here.

Lesions of the skin are made manifest to our senses by alteration in its colour, by depression of the surface or elevation by new growths, by the exudation of cells and fluid from the blood-vessels, and by other indications of the various morbid processes. It is necessary at the outset to have a clear perception of the several types of the forms of cutaneous eruption (*erumpere*, to break out) or lesions of the skin. They are divided into *primary* and *secondary* lesions. The *primary* lesions are distinguished as *maculae*, *papulae*, *nodula*, *phymata*, *pomphi*, *vesiculæ*, *bullæ*, and *pustulæ*. By the term *maculae* is meant any alteration in the colour of a circumscribed area of the skin, whether accompanied or not by structural change, so long as there is not very marked elevation or depression. Tiny points are called *puncta*, and widely diffused stains or blushes *discolorations*. *Maculae* may be caused by simple staining or chemical changes, for example, from iodine or silver nitrate; by extravasations of blood, as in purpura and scurvy; by increased deposition of pigment, as in one phase of leprosy, in Addison's disease, in ephelides or freckles, in chloasma uterinum et gravidarum; by irregular deposition (both removal and deposition going on side by side), as in leucoderma; by the growth of vegetable parasites in the skin, as in tinea versicolor; by new growths or chronic inflammations of the corium, as in nævi or morphæa; or, lastly, by slight congestions or superficial inflammations, as in erythema, and the erythematous phases of lupus, syphilis, and leprosy. A *papule* or *pimple* is a solid elevation of the skin, whatever may be its cause, whether from congestion about one or more follicles, as in miliaria; the accumulation of exudation from inflammation, as in eczema papulosum; new growth, as in adenoma sebaceum; overgrowth of the epidermis, as in some warts; new growths of blood- or lymph-vessels; or blocking or stuffing of the ducts or glands by epithelial exuviae or secretion, as in comedones or milium. Papules vary in size from a pin's head (miliary papules) to a pea, as in syphilis; and they may be rounded (papular erythema), or angular (lichen planus), conical, dome-shaped, disc-like (nummular), or flat (lenticular). When the morbid process giving rise to the papule extends deeply, the term *tubercle* or *nodule* is usually applied, and hence the expressions tubercular lupus, leprosy, and syphilis; but it is not intended to convey the idea of any association with tuberculosis, and the term *nodule* is therefore preferable. *Phymata* or *tumours* are solid formations in the skin, exceeding a walnut in size, as in erythema nodosum and fibroma molluscum. They may be prominent or deep set, and sessile or pedunculate. *Pomphi* or *wheals* are rounded or oval evanescent swellings, accompanied by heat and tingling, due to the sudden and temporary dilatation of a bunch of vessels under nervous influence, causing transient acute hyperæmia and

cœdema of localized areas. They are typically seen in the effects of nettle-stings. The cœdema is generally sufficient in the central parts to obscure the pink colour resulting from the hyperæmia, so that a wheal usually presents a white centre and a pink halo. Wheals may be of all sizes, from a split pea upwards, and sometimes cover very large and irregular tracts by confluence. *Vesicles* are small dome-shaped or acuminate elevations of the skin, formed by the accumulation of fluid, or by the dilatation and projection of lymph- (varicose lymphatics) or blood-radicles (vesicular degeneration of naevi). The accumulated fluid is frequently inflammatory, as in eczema and herpes, and exudes from the blood-vessels to collect within and between the rete cells. These inflammatory vesicles are often compound, and quickly rupture or collapse, and as they are frequently only an advanced stage of the inflammatory papule, so in their turn they may give place to the pustule. In sudamina the sweat passes out of the duct, to accumulate between the strata of the cuticle. The name *bulla* or *bleb* is applied when the collection of fluid is large, for example, greater than a split pea. Bullæ are formed in the same way as vesicles, and are specially characteristic of pemphigus, but may occur less prominently in a number of other affections, such as erysipelas, scabies, erythema, herpes iris, syphilis, leprosy, and also by the coalescence of vesicles in dysidrosis. *Pustules* are circumscribed inflammatory elevations of the surface, of moderate size, formed by collections of pus in the skin. They usually have an inflamed areola, and frequently end in ulceration and scarring. A pustule may be such from the first, or be the late stage of a vesicle or papule, and has a similar mode of formation. Papules and vesicles in the strumous and in children have a strong tendency to this termination. The collection of pus may be superficial, as in pustular eczema ; or deep-seated around a follicle or gland, as in acne and sycosis. The *secondary* lesions, namely, squamæ or scales, crustæ or crusts, ulcera or ulcers, cicatrices or scars, excoriations, and rimæ or fissures and chaps, are so called because they arise out of the primary lesions. *Squamæ* or *scales* are formed by the separation of an increased quantity of imperfect dry epidermic scales, and are a usual consequence of the interference with the nutrition of the skin produced by inflammation. Such desquamation may be very fine, or larger and branny (furfuraceous), or very large, as in pityriasis rubra (membranaceous). *Crusts* differ from scales in being composed mostly of serous and cellular discharge, or of blood which has escaped on the surface. They may also be formed of concreted sebum, as in seborrhœa, or of masses of fungus elements, as in favus. *Ulceration* results when the epithelial layers and more or less of the corium are destroyed or removed. It commonly follows suppurative inflammation, but may result also from necrosis of a new growth or gangrene. *Cicatrices* or *scars* are formed by the substitution of connective tissue, covered by a layer of epithelium, for the normal epidermis and dermis with its appendages, which have been destroyed. Scars are nearly always the consequence of ulceration, but occasionally result from a simple atrophic process. *Excoriations* are due to removal of the cuticle or more or less of the rete, generally by scratching or rubbing. Scarring does not follow, though a crust may form. *Rimæ* or *chaps* or *fissures* are formed by the cleaving of the skin, which has lost its elasticity and suppleness, from unusual dryness or inflammatory infiltration. In addition it may be mentioned that pigmentation and haemorrhage are frequently secondary, the former resulting from con-

tinued hyperæmia, and the latter occurring sometimes after various kinds of primary lesions.

General Aetiology.—Diseases of the skin are due (1) to congenital aberrations of nutrition or imperfect development, for example, navi, ichthyosis; (2) to external causes, or those acting from without directly on the skin; (3) to internal causes, or those acting from within, whether arising primarily in the economy or not; (4) to an innate disposition in the skin-tissues themselves to take on diseased action. Amongst *external* causes may be enumerated local irritants of all kinds, such as cold, heat, friction, scratching, pressure; the irritant juices of plants, such as the *rhus* family and the nettle; substances used or met with in handicrafts and occupations, such as lime, sugar, flour, soda, tar, paraffin, arsenic, oxalic acid, cyanide of potassium, and dyes; medicinal applications, as mustard, croton oil, turpentine, cantharidis, or arnica; animal and vegetable parasites, as ticks, fleas, sand fleas, bugs, and fungi; want of cleanliness or functional disease, leading to blocking and mal-nutrition of the follicles and glands. Many of these agencies only cause mischief when the system generally is debilitated and disordered, such as the skin-inflammation in bricklayers, washerwomen, grocers, and others. An *innate disposition* to take on diseased action, involving a plus or minus state of perversion of nutrition, may exist in a special structure, as the skin, apart from any general nutritional defect, as in rodent ulcer, warty growths, fibroma, keloid, and psoriasis probably. The skin-disease may however be only a local manifestation of a general diathetic state, as in struma. This innate disposition is often hereditary. The chief *internal causes* of cutaneous affections are (α) the introduction of special organisms, poisons, or other deleterious substances from without, as in some acute specific diseases, syphilis, and probably leprosy, in which skin-lesions are a prominent, but not the only symptom; (β) the introduction of animal parasites through the stomach, probably in drinking water, as in elephantiasis arabum and guinea-worm disease; (γ) the circulation in the blood of certain medicinal substances, as the iodide and bromide of potassium, copaiba, and arsenic, which set up morbid changes under certain conditions not well-understood as yet, though we know idiosyncrasy plays a great part; (δ) the accumulation of morbid products from functional or organic disease of internal organs, which render tissues prone to inflammation from any slight exciting cause, or actually themselves set up mischief, as in diabetes, gout, rheumatism; (ϵ) a general lowering of nutrition in which the skin participates, from over-work, starvation, depraved habits, climatic conditions, or other causes; (η) nerve-disturbance, either direct or reflex, and primary or secondary, by which the blood-supply to a part is disordered, as in urticaria, or morbid tissue-changes are set up, as in dystrophia and herpes, or the skin-nutrition is lowered, so that morbid changes are easily excited. As a rule these causes do not operate in a solitary or individual way, but act in combination, so that it is of great practical importance to distinguish predisposing and exciting, producing and intensifying causes. Age, sex, and temperament have also an important influence.

General Diagnosis.—The method of examination in cases of skin-disease should be thorough and complete, both with regard to the history of the affection, and the character of the eruption in the several parts of the body. Some diseases with special and constant characters may no doubt be made out at a glance, but the habit of a partial

inspection is very prone to lead to error, since many skin-diseases present considerable differences of aspect, according to the site on which they occur, the intensity of the morbid process, and the stage of the affection, while some run through different stages, and certain stages of quite different diseases may closely simulate each other. Therefore the whole and not a portion only of the eruption must be examined; while the primary lesion must be sought out in its newest developments, as on the edge of a patch, and the transitional relationship of the stages made out. The history of the lesions and of the disease generally from its beginning, and the general course of the eruption up to the time of observation, must further be carefully traced. Any modifications or complications must also be distinguished from the primary mischief; and the diagnosis should be made both by the positive characters, and by the exclusion of other affections. Lastly, the observer must notice as of great value the extent and sites of the eruption; the degree of symmetry and method of grouping; the mode of extension, whether serpiginously or centrifugally, etc.; the existence of special subjective sensations, such as itching, pain, tingling, or of anaesthesia; the colour of the eruption; the formation of scars; and the age and sex of the patient.

Treatment.—It will be expedient to give a general outline of the principles and methods of treatment which are applicable to skin-diseases as a class, before considering them individually, and they may be indicated in the following way:—1. Any cause which has either directly or indirectly produced a cutaneous affection, or which is keeping it up, must be got rid of, if possible. In many instances this is all that is required. 2. Attention to the *alimentary canal* is often of essential importance. Thus the diet frequently needs regulation; digestive disorders have to be set right; and different kinds of purgatives are not uncommonly of service. 3. *Hygienic conditions* demand notice in many cases, and especially those which promote the healthy action of the skin, such as exercise, cleanliness, and the regular employment of baths. The general habits of life may also require modification in various directions. 4. Treatment directed to the *general system* is frequently of the utmost value in the management of cutaneous diseases. Thus *tonics* are often needed, or remedies directed to the state of the blood, such as anaemia or plethora; the febrile condition may require attention; while different constitutional diatheses, such as syphilis, gout, or tuberculosis, demand their several special treatments when they originate affections of the skin. 5. In certain cases these complaints may be benefited by acting upon particular *organs* or *systems*, such as the kidneys or nervous system. 6. There are some agents which are supposed to have a specific influence upon the skin, and which may be termed *cutaneous alteratives*, of which arsenic is the most conspicuous example. Remedies which affect the perspiration may also be of service in the treatment of skin-diseases, either *diaphoretics* or *anti-diaphoretics*. 7. *Local* treatment is of course imperatively called for in a large proportion of cases, and is often the sole method required. This consists not only in the application of remedial agents of various kinds to the skin, but also in the adoption of particular measures suitable for particular morbid conditions. The kinds of agents to be used differ considerably in different cases, such as emollients, sedatives, anodynes, caustics, irritants, stimulants, astringents, parasiticides, or antiseptics. In modern times great advances have been made in the principles and methods of the applica-

tion of remedies in skin-diseases. Dr. Unna, of Hamburg, employs three special kinds of application:—(a) *Glycerine gelatines*. These belong to the class of dry porous substances, which act by absorbing water and fat readily, and may therefore be used to extract and eliminate the masses of fatty and watery secretion that are formed in abnormally large quantities in certain skin-diseases, while they reduce the centripetal stream to its lowest limits. They are also very adhesive. (b) *Plaster mulls*. By these dressings the fluid-sweat, both watery and fatty, is retained within the cutaneous structures, which become more or less soaked, and the absorption of medicaments is greatly increased. (c) *Salve mulls*. These occupy a middle place between the other two groups. Various remedies are mixed with these preparations, according to the requirements of the case. In addition to these, other methods of application are by means of "salve-soaps," "saponiments," "salve-pencils," and "paste-pencils." Oleates are now much more used than formerly; and among the substances which have come into established repute, lanoline and molline deserve special mention. Lanoline, introduced by Liebreich, appears to have considerable "penetrating" power, and therefore to be very useful as a vehicle for the absorption of different agents, while it is non-irritating. Amongst the more special remedies for skin-diseases, ichthyol, resorcin, cocaine, and chrysarobin call for particular notice.

Classification.—A great many attempts have been made to reduce skin-diseases to some orderly arrangement of groups and divisions, but in such a matter, where the causes and pathology of many affections are yet obscure, and where we are progressing from day to day, any classification at present must be unsatisfactory and temporary. Still some classification is very useful. We may classify skin-diseases, according to a prevalent custom, on the anatomical conditions found associated with certain symptoms, or according to their supposed aetiology: or we may arrange each disease around a chosen type, or "as an assemblage of symptoms conveniently arranged for diagnosis," or according to a mixed plan. The following mixed plan, suggested by the late Dr. Tilbury Fox, is useful clinically:—

1. The eruptions of the acute specific diseases, already described.
2. Inflammations, comprising :—*a.* The erythematous, as erythema, roseola, urticaria. *b.* Catarrhal, as eczema, dermatitis. *c.* Bullous, as herpes, pemphigus. *d.* Suppurative, as impetigo contagiosa, furunculus. *e.* Papular or plastic, as lichen planus, prurigo. *f.* Squamous, as psoriasis, and pityriasis rubra.
3. Diathetic affections, due to some constitutional change or disposition, as struma, syphilis, leprosy.
4. Hypertrophies, as ichthyosis, corns, warts and papillary tumours, keloid, fibroma, scleroderma, and morphœa.
5. Atrophies, as general or local atrophy of the skin or its appendages, senile decay, and some forms of alopecia areata.
6. New formations, as lupus, rodent ulcer, cancer, melanotic sarcoma.
7. Hæmorrhages, as purpura (already described).
8. Neuroses, as hyperæsthesia, anaesthesia, pruritus.
9. Pigmentary changes.—*a.* Increased, moles, melasma, chloasma, lentigines. *b.* Diminished, albinism. *c.* Irregular, leucoderma.
10. Parasitic diseases.—*a.* Dermatozoic, as scabies, phtheirusiasis, gninea-worm disease, elephantiasis arabum. *b.* Dermatophytic, as tinea favosa, tinea trichophytina, tinea versicolor.

11. *Diseases of the glands and appendages.*—*a. Sweat-glands*, as miliaria (*lichen tropicus*), sudamina, dysidrosis, hyperidrosis, anidrosis, chromidrosis. *b. Sebaceous glands*, seborrhœa, comedo, acne, milium, molluscum contagiosum, steatoma, lichen pilaris. *c. Hairs and their follicles*, sycosis, alopecia, canities, fragilitas, hirsuties. *d. Nails*, atrophy, hypertrophy and onychia.

I. ERYTHEMATOUS INFLAMMATIONS.

These are characterized by hyperæmia, and the exudation of serum and wandering cells, mostly into the papillary layer, but in severe cases to a greater depth. The inflammation is chiefly superficial, not very intense, tends to spread at the edge, is generally symmetrical, does not lead to deep suppuration, and after lasting a few days fades away, leaving perhaps some pigmentation and brauny desquamation. The exudation is sufficient generally to cause more or less swelling, and in extreme cases raises the uppermost layers of epidermis so as to form large vesicles or bullæ. The following are the chief varieties:—

Roseola is a term applied in a very indiscriminate way to any non-contagious, fugitive erythematous blotches, arising in young children (*R. infantilis*), associated with gastro-intestinal disturbance and dentition, but apart from this it is a definite affection, presenting, however, much diversity of appearance. It may be *symptomatic*, as in rheumatism, vaccinia (about seventh day), cholera, variola, and cerebro-spinal meningitis; or *idiopathic*, and it then seems to be mostly excited by climatic changes. Idiopathic roseola is characterized by a *rosy* eruption, mostly affecting the trunk, but in very marked cases extending to the limbs. It may be scarlatiniform or morbilliform, but is generally coarser than scarlatina, and not crescentic or mulberry-coloured. In other cases the eruption occurs as well-marked rosy macules, or very slightly marked papules, which extend at their edges, form rings which coalesce, often assume an urticarial character, and extend over the whole body. It is very fugitive. There is hardly any general disturbance; occasionally very slight coryza, and injection of the eyes and throat; but never any marked ill-health.

Erythema multiforme is often ushered in by general malaise, rheumatic symptoms, and febrile reaction; and is characterized by the outbreak of circumscribed erythematous eruptions of various sizes and degrees of swelling, from a mere blush (*E. simplex*) to a papule (*E. papulatum*), or nodosity (*E. tuberculatum* or *nodosum*). The macular eruptions especially tend to enlarge at their periphery, and to clear in the centre to form rings (*E. annulare*), and these rings may coalesce to form patterns (*E. gyratum*). The eruptions also, though generally discrete, may be grouped in rings; and lastly the exudation may be so excessive as to form vesicles and bullæ on the surface (*vesicating erythema*—*herpes iris*). A feeling of heat, pain, or itching may be present. The eruption usually lasts only a few days, and then declines, but occasionally is far more chronic, and may recur apparently under the influence of the seasons. The exact constitutional disturbance present is not known, but frequently it appears to be of a rheumatic nature. As the eruptions subside, a peculiarity of these erythematous inflammations becomes apparent, in that the pigment resulting from the disintegration of exuded red blood-corpuscles goes through a change of colours. The sites affected, which tend to be symmetrically placed, are the extensor

aspects of the hands, the forearms and legs, the face, and occasionally the trunk and other parts.

Erythema nodosum is included by some writers under erythema multiforme, but as it presents certain constant peculiarities, it will be well to describe it separately. In this affection the constitutional symptoms are much the same as in erythema multiforme, but it rarely recurs, and tends chiefly to affect children and young adults, especially females. The painful ovoid swellings, ranging from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch across, are arranged along the tibiae, with their long axes parallel to the bone. They evolve in crops, and the affection lasts one or two weeks. From the occasional distribution of the eruption along the lymphatics, and the circumstance that the latter vessels are sometimes implicated in the neighbourhood, it has been thought that the ovoid swellings are due to lymphatic inflammation, whilst others consider them to arise from capillary emboli.

Peliosis rheumatica, called also *purpura rheumatica*, is an affection which may be mentioned here, although it has already been noticed. It is closely allied to erythema multiforme; is accompanied by some malaise; swelling or pain in some of the large joints occurs (? rheumatic); and with its subsidence crops of a haemorrhagic eruption appear, mostly on the limbs. This occurs time after time, perhaps each afternoon, and thus the affection may be kept up for a considerable period, and a person may have a recurrence after a long interval. The peculiarity of the eruption is that all the lesions are purpuric, though some may present the appearance of erythematous papules, but they do not alter on pressure.

Urticaria is an eruption with very special attributes, which is usually included under the erythematous inflammations, though with doubtful propriety, as it seems to be more a vaso-motor paralysis with serous exudation than a true inflammation. The wheals so characteristic of it, and typified in the effects on the human skin of the common stinging-nettle, result from acute oedema of the cutis, probably from the sudden complete dilatation of a bunch of capillaries. The exudation may be so slight that only a rosy circumscribed elevation is produced; or it may collect in quantity sufficient to mask the central portion of the hyperæmia, so that a white centre is seen, with a pink halo. In rare cases a bulla is produced. The wheal is intensely itchy and tingling; and a striking characteristic is its sudden evolution, and rapid disappearance as the vessels regain their tone. The temporary paresis is brought about either by local irritation, or reflexly from internal functional disturbance, especially of the gastro-intestinal canal. In either case, with the exception of the effects of some special irritants, as the nettle, it is probable that there is a peculiar idiosyncrasy of the spinal nervous system. Wheals vary in area from a split pea to the palm of the hand or larger. Usually only the papillary layer is involved, but occasionally the deeper cutis and even the subcutaneous connective tissue may be affected. Urticaria may be *acute* or *chronic*. The *acute* forms are mostly due to the ingestion of some article of diet, such as mussels, tinned fish or meat, or lobster; and it is remarkable that some persons cannot partake of a certain article of diet, harmless to the generality of people, without inducing urticaria. In acute attacks the fever may run high, and the depression be great. *Chronic* urticaria is very common, especially in women, being almost invariably associated with gastro-intestinal disorder, and occasionally with uterine disturbance. Now and then chronic urticaria is distinctly neurotic, and recurs with much persistency at certain periods.

There are two varieties seen in children to be mentioned, namely, the common *Urticaria papulosa* or *lichen urticatus*; and *Urticaria pigmentosa*. *U. papulosa* is so called because in infants and young children the wheals on subsidence leave little papules behind them, the size of a pin's head. From the fact that a multiform eruption may exist, consisting of wheals, papules, excoriations, and superficial inflammations, scabies is closely simulated. *U. pigmentosa* is a very rare affection, commencing in early infancy, and characterized by two things, namely, the long persistence of the wheals, and the rapid deposition of pigment, so that, even after the wheals have gone, dark stains remain for months or years. The successive evolution of wheals may continue the affection for many years.

Erythema pernio is the name given to the condition known as a chilblain, which may occur on the hands and feet, nose, ears, and other parts. The exudation and inflammation in chilblains are induced by the action of cold on parts distant from the heart, in persons with a bad circulation. The redness that is sometimes seen on the hot, tense, fissured skin of oedematous legs is termed **Erythema læve**.

Treatment.—Roseola soon disappears spontaneously, but any derangement of the system must be remedied, special attention being paid to the gastro-intestinal functions. Locally a soothing and astringent lotion of calamine, oxide of zinc, subacetate of lead, or carbonate or bicarbonate of sodium may be applied. Erythema multiforme and nodosum, and peliosis rheumatica require a cool regimen; careful dieting; rest; and tonic aperient medicines, such as quinine, with sulphate of iron, sulphuric acid, and sulphate of magnesium. If rheumatic symptoms are marked, anti-rheumatic remedies must of course be exhibited. Iodide of potassium has been specially recommended. Locally the above-mentioned lotions are also useful, and in *E. nodosum* hot or belladonna fomentations. Acute urticaria requires the removal, if possible, by an emetic of the injurious article of diet, a purge, and then sedative remedies for the stomach, as bismuth with hydrocyanic acid, or a febrifuge. In chronic urticaria any dyspepsia, uterine disturbance, or plethoric condition must be remedied; and then the general health, and especially the nervous system, be braced up by mineral acids, bitters, ferruginous tonics, quinine, strychnine, phosphoric acid, and similar drugs. Locally in urticaria soda-lotions are, perhaps, the most useful. In chilblains local stimulation to promote good circulation is indicated.

II. CATARRHAL INFLAMMATIONS.

This type of inflammation is the analogue of the catarrh of mucous membranes, and is characterized by infiltration into the skin-textures of migratory cells and inflammatory serous exudation, which stiffens and stains linen, and if it escapes on the surface, and is not so abundant as to flow away, it forms crusts. This exudation may be so slight that no visible signs of its presence are produced; or it may simply cause a congestive redness, with subsequent desquamation, simulating erythema; or it projects on the surface as papules or vesicles; or escapes copiously from the abraded skin; or deeply infiltrates the parts, causing much swelling, especially where the connective tissue is loose. The exudation may further become purulent, and form pustules and thick crusts. Any one of these stages may form the predominant feature, or a mixture of them may be present. Burning heat in the acute stages, and itching in the chronic, are striking characteristics. It is very

necessary to understand how the eruption comes to be so frequently multiform in character, and how it may assume an erythematous aspect at one time, a papular, vesicular, or pustular and crusted condition at later stages, and finally an erythematous and desquamating stage in its decline. Two phases of catarrhal inflammation may be described.

Eczema is a very common catarrhal inflammation, with the characters mentioned above. We may regard it as a special disease, with important constitutional relations. The slightest form, that of congestive redness, is called *E. erythematosum*, and is rare as the sole condition present, but occasionally attacks the head and neck. Soft, red papules, the size of millet seeds (*E. papulosum*), are frequently met with, and this condition must be distinguished from the several forms of lichen and prurigo, which are essentially papular diseases throughout their course. Many of the papules may subsequently become vesicles, or the latter may stud a surface from the outset (*E. vesiculosum*). The contents of these vesicles in children and in strumous subjects become puriform (*E. pustulosum*), and then crusts form. The term *impetigo* was formerly applied to this condition. Frequently the fluid is sufficiently copious to abrade the cuticle, and run from the surface, for instance, about the legs (*E. malidans vel rubrum*). The decline of these stages is marked by an infiltrated reddened scaly skin, called *E. squamosum*; and the loss of elasticity allows the movements of the part to tear open cracks or fissures (*E. rimosum*). The latter state of things is that generally assumed in the palms and soles, where papules and vesicles are rarely formed. Lastly, in very chronic eczemas a warty outgrowth may supervene (*E. verrucosum*). Eczema may be *acute*, *sub-acute*, or *chronic*. Acute eczema is not very common, and when attacking the face may simulate erysipelas, from the swelling of the lax tissues, and the intense burning sensation accompanying the evolvement of vesicles; the attack may subside, or become chronic, or recur. In *sub-acute* eczema the inflammation is less intense, and papules are seen mixed with the vesicles. Chronicity is a prominent feature of eczema in most cases, and the patches do not extend at the periphery like erythematous inflammation, but the papules and vesicles tend to evolve repeatedly over the same area. The complaint occurs at all ages, and attacks all classes. It may be localized to a single patch or be widespread, and it tends to evolve symmetrically on the body. In infants and young children the scalp and face are the regions nearly always attacked, though the inflammation may be more extensive, and, as already mentioned, the exudation is usually puriform. In adults the face and extensor aspects of the limbs are frequently involved together, and in another phase the large flexures. The squamous form is met with on the poll of women, and on the palms and soles. Occasionally the disease is very widespread, and the genitals are not infrequently attacked. The constitutional origin of eczema is not yet placed on a sound footing, but the lowering of the nutrition of the skin leading to its development is always associated with some form of debility referable to one of three conditions, namely (α) a continued imperfect assimilation and elaboration and sub-oxidation of the food, with deficient removal of effete products, leading up to the gouty state; (β) neurasthenia, as seen in people of nervous temperament who are prostrated by nervous strain; and (γ) perhaps struma.

Dermatitis is a term applied to catarrhal inflammations of the skin, other than true eczema. They are indistinguishable to the eye from eczema generally, but have a different causation, and are no more to

be considered eczema than all the serous effusions in the knee-joint are to be put down as rheumatic. Thus dermatitis may be set up by croton oil, mustard, chrysophanic acid, many plants, as the *rhus* or *thapsia*, poisonous dyes, as aniline, and other irritants ; the rubbing together of moist secreting folds of skin about the mammae, axillæ, abdomen, or nates ; the action of the solar rays, and so on. The itch-mite also excites an inflammation indistinguishable in the main from eczema, but this will be considered under parasitic diseases. In bakers, grocers, bricklayers, and washerwomen the substances they respectively handle set up a similar inflammation. These conditions usually cease with the removal of the cause ; but it is probable that for these noxious agents to excite an inflammation, it is in many cases necessary that the nutrition of the skin should be first lowered by internal functional disturbance. In this place, also, it will be convenient to mention under the term *dermatitis medicamentosa* the inflammation of the skin excited in people of special idiosyncrasies by the ingestion of certain drugs. Many of these eruptions are very definite and constant, and recur each time the drug is exhibited. *Arsenic* induces a brown pigmentation, urticaria, erythematous blotches, and a peculiar thickening (keratosis) of the palms and soles ; *belladonna*, *stramonium*, and *hyoscyamus* a more or less widespread scarlatiniform or morbilliform rash. The *bromides* excite acneiform eruptions, which may be confluent and crusted and pseudo-papillomatous ; and also furuncles. *Chloral* may bring out a widespread scarlatiniform or morbilliform rash, accompanied by much dyspnoea and palpitation, and immediately excited by a meal or alcohol. There is not usually any fever. *Copaiba* originates a coarse erythematous eruption ; often with an urticarial element about it. The *iodides* produce an acneiform eruption, rarely confluent, furuncles, pseudo-bullæ, ecthymatous pustules, petechial purpuric spots, and urticaria ; *opium* and *morphine*, a scarlatiniform rash ; *quinine*, a rather coarser erythematous eruption, accompanied by considerable general disturbance, and vesicular eruptions ; and *salicylic acid* produces an erythema.

Treatment.—In dermatitis of local or internal origin the obvious indication is to remove the cause. In eczema a careful investigation should be made for the existence of any imperfect assimilation of food, associated with imperfect digestion and elaboration, plethora of the chylo-poietic viscera, and deficient excretion. The urine must be searched for evidence on these points, the bowels attended to, and then directions given as to irregularities in the quantity and quality of the diet ; or the existence of any debilitating influence, such as sedentary habits or anxiety, must be sought for and remedied. Diuretics are useful to relieve the congested skin, and purgatives at the outset of an attack, but the latter must not be continued too long and overdone. Alkaline remedies are needed where the urine is high-coloured and loaded with lithates, and in gouty conditions. When the functions are in good order the system must be toned up by quinine, strychnine, phosphorus, ferruginous tonics, and cod-liver oil. Arsenic is very useful in many cases of eczema, especially in the chronic scaly forms, but it should not be given in the acute stages. Chrysophanic acid and ichthylol have been recommended as internal remedies in chronic eczema, but are of little value. In selecting a local remedy we must recognize the stage and intensity of the inflammation, and clearly understand what is required, anti-septicism being an important aim. Thus in pustular eczema iodoform will remove the pustular element. In acute and subacute stages

we must soothe. If there is much weeping, we may dry up the discharge by absorbent, astringent, and antiseptic dusting powders, such as starch and oxide of zinc, with a little finely powdered salicylic or boric acid. If the weeping does not trouble us, we may dab on a calamine and oxide of zinc lotion; or if that is too drying, and consequently not soothing enough, we may use lanoline, benzoated oxide of zinc, ointment of oleate of zinc, or bismuth ointment. Even in chronic stages we must always keep the skin supple. According to the amount of the infiltration, and the chronicity, we may select a resolvent and stimulant remedy, such as a mild mercurial salve, carbolic ointment or oil, or tarry applications; or in inveterate cases chrysarobin or chrysophanic acid ointment, or applications of solution of potash. Ichthyol and resorcin have been much employed as local applications in certain forms of eczema; as well as various other remedies, such as laetic acid, salicylic acid, glycerine-gelatines, and other special combinations mentioned in the general remarks on the treatment of skin-diseases. The irritation present often taxes all our resources, and we must alternately soothe, resolve the infiltration, and lubricate the skin. Scratching must be prevented, especially in children, by masking the parts and padding the hands. In obstinately-recurring eczema, which he regards as a vaso-motor neurosis, Dr. Radcliffe Crocker has found benefit from applying counter-irritation in the neighbourhood of the vaso-motor nerves and centres, according to the region affected.

III. BULLOUS INFLAMMATIONS.

In this group are placed those diseases which are characterized by a superficial inflammation of the skin, and the rapid exudation of a quantity of serum, which collects under the epidermis in large vesicles and blebs or bullæ. The contents of the bullæ are usually serous, but may become puriform or sanguinolent, and then crusting results, and more or less ulceration may occur as an exceptional circumstance. The bullæ themselves are short-lived, and quickly collapse or rupture. They may be of all sizes, from that of an eczema vesicle to that of the palm of the hand, and as a rule they rise directly from the surface without any antecedent papule or swelling. There is not the same general infiltration of the skin as in eczema, and usually not the same irritation. Moreover, facts point rather to a neurotic causation for these diseases, and the evidence is very strong at any rate for one member of the group, namely, herpes. It must, however, be borne in mind that we exclude from this group some other inflammations giving rise to bullæ, for instance, the extreme forms of erythema, itch, and syphilis.

Herpes is an acute non-contagious disease, running a definite course, in which groups of vesicles, rather larger than those of eczema, appear on a congested patch of the skin, one or more inches in diameter. There are usually several of such patches, which evolve successively. Two main varieties exist, namely, *H. facialis et preputialis*; and *H. zoster*. *Herpes facialis* is a symptomatic eruption, which has a great tendency to recur in persons of a nervous temperament, about the mouth, face, and ears, when the system is febrile, or in any way upset by a cold, dyspepsia, or other causes. The hard and soft palate may be involved, as well as the nasal mucous membrane, and this is more especially the case in the rare affection known as *H. iris* of the back of the hands, ankles, and knees, which is only an outlying member of the vesicating

erythemata. It is also met with, and is then regarded as a favourable prognostic sign, in pneumonia. Similarly *H. preputialis* recurs about the penis in gouty and neurotic subjects, and may be confounded with a chancreoid. *Herpes zoster*, *zona*, or *the shingles*, is the variety which is more distinctly associated with nerve-distribution, for the patches of vesicles evolve, for instance, around one side of the trunk, in the course of distribution of an intercostal nerve (*H. zoster intercostalis*). Though most common in this situation, it may occur in association with any nerve, as over the distribution of the first division of the fifth (*H. zoster ophthalmicus*), and may then be associated with kerato-iritis, conjunctivitis, and other lesions. Several nerves, generally those in juxtaposition, may be involved simultaneously. The eruption is often ushered in by malaise and some pain; it runs a definite course of from ten days to several weeks; and disappears spontaneously, but is apt in old people to leave neuralgia, which may be very severe. It differs from *H. facialis* et *preputialis* in that it very rarely recurs. *H. zoster* is met with at all ages; equally on either side of the body; and is said to be more frequent in spring and autumn. The evidence for its dependence on nerve-irritation is very strong, namely, its distribution; its occasional complication with disordered sensation, paresis, or amyotrophy; and the demonstration *post-mortem* of congestion and neuritis, sometimes in the ganglia, sometimes in the periphery of the nerve beyond the spinal ganglia, and also in the posterior spinal roots. It is commonly an inflammation of peripheral origin, arising either from chill or some not well-ascertained cause; or from pressure or irritation by an aneurism, carious vertebræ, or a tumour. Now and then it occurs in cerebral affections; and rather more frequently in such cord-lesions as myelitis or locomotor ataxy.

Treatment.—All that is needed is to dust the parts with starch and zinc powder; or to prevent any ulceration and consequent scarring by vaseline, lanoline, or zinc ointment; while the parts are protected from rubbing by means of cotton wool or spongiopiline. Some practitioners attempt to abort the eruption of herpes by such drugs as phosphide of zinc. Solution of cocaine has been used with benefit in some cases. The neuralgia left after herpes is sometimes very obstinate, and if local sedatives prove futile, a blister over the root of the nerve, and hypodermic injections of morphine are occasionally necessary. Quinine and other tonics are often of service.

Pemphigus is a somewhat rare, non-contagious disease, mostly of a definite character, characterized by the formation of isolated bullæ arising rapidly on the skin, generally without any antecedent congestive swelling, at intervals of hours or days. The blebs are mostly dome-shaped and tense, and after one or more days collapse, the wall of the bullæ separating as a scale. The contents are usually clear at first, but may become opaque and puriform, or sanguinolent. In size the bullæ vary greatly, even in the same patient, from that of an eczema vesicle to a pigeon's or hen's egg, but the tiny vesicles are rare, and the bullæ commonly range from a pea to a pigeon's egg in size. They may evolve singly (*P. solitaris*), or in successive crops, and then there may be a certain periodicity observed; and in distribution they may recur about a certain region or be disseminated widely, even on the buccal and vaginal mucous membrane, and irregularly or in corymbose groups or crescents (*Dermatitis herpetiformis*). In some rare cases of universal development the bullæ tend to be flaccid, and easily rupture, a marked exfoliation of thin crusts following (*P. foliaceus*). As a rule there is not

a great deal of local irritation, but in some rare chronic forms, with an eruption of small size, the bullæ arise from and alternate with intensely itchy papules (*P. pruriginosus*). The affection occurs at all ages. The general symptoms are often little marked, but occasionally there is febrile disturbance, with evident debility and anaemia; and the disease may recur with some special condition, such as pregnancy. In chronic cases there is general wasting and prostration, and a fatal termination may ensue. The precise causes of pemphigus are obscure, but some evidence is forthcoming in support of the generally received opinion of its neurotic origin. No gross lesions have, however, been found in the nervous system, excepting, it is said, some parenchymatous neuritis affecting the nerves in immediate relation to the bullæ. Some difference of opinion used to exist as to the occurrence of an acute pemphigus, in which bullæ are rapidly evolved in great numbers, and may prove more or less rapidly fatal; but the great majority of cases are very chronic. As a rule but little difficulty can be presented in the diagnosis, but it should be remembered that bullæ occur in erysipelas, in the vesicating form of erythema, from the use of iodide of potassium, and in hereditary infantile syphilis.

Treatment.—Locally the bullæ should be punctured, and a starch and zinc powder, or zinc ointment be applied to the excoriated surface. In very widespread cases a more or less continuous bath is required, or, at any rate, a thorough lubrication with some bland antiseptic oily lotion. Internally arsenic acts like a charm in a great many cases, though not in all; where debility or cachexia exists, ferruginous and mineral acid tonics, cod-liver oil, and similar remedies are called for.

IV. PUSTULAR INFLAMMATIONS.

Pustular skin-diseases include those in which the inflammation proceeds to visible pus-formation as an essential phenomenon. We have already seen that in eczema the exuded fluid may produce a vesicle, which may become puriform, and, indeed, all cutaneous inflammations may be attended with a certain degree of pus-formation. It is to these pustular phases of eczema and dermatitis that the old term *impetigo*, or *eczema impetiginodes*, has been applied. We may regard them as essentially suppurative forms of inflammation, set up by the usual micrococci.

Impetigo contagiosa (Tilbury Fox) is an affection especially prone to attack children, though it may occur in adults brought into contact with such children, and subject to the same influences. It is usually sporadic, but occasionally apparently epidemic, in schools, streets, or houses. The eruption consists at first of a number of discrete vesico-pustules, from a split pea to a fourpenny-piece in size, rapidly becoming more purulent and often confluent, and in about a week or ten days, if not scratched, drying up into flat yellowish crusts, looking as if stuck on. The eruption evolves spontaneously in crops, or by auto-inoculation, and the affection may last several weeks, but always seems to disappear of its own accord. There may be some antecedent febrile reaction and malaise, but usually such symptoms are but little marked. The site specially attacked is the face, but from this part the eruption may extend about the ears, scalp, hands, mucous membrane of the mouth and eyes, and occasionally is widespread over the body, something like varicella. The inoculability of this affection is due to vegetable organisms, but it must be remembered that many kinds of pus when

inoculated give rise to pustules; for example, the pustular inflammation set up by pediculi in the head, the purulent catarrh of the ears and nose of children, or the pus of the vaccine eruption; and such eruptions are due to local inoculation. Such a compound group has been described as *porrigo* or *impetigo contagiosa* at the Blackfriars Skin Hospital.

Treatment.—All that is usually required is to cleanse away the crusts, and anoint the sore places with weak ammoniated mercury ointment. The eruption then rapidly dies out. Various other methods of treatment are advocated and practised.

Ecthyma is characterized by the evolution of discrete, broad, flat pustules, the size of a fourpenny-piece to a shilling, seated on a reddened, elevated, infiltrated base. The inflammation is superficial, and but rarely leaves scars. The contents dry into brownish crusts, which fall off in from ten to fourteen days, and the red stains disclosed gradually die away. It is really a form of *impetigo contagiosa* in which the lesions have been rubbed, and occurs in scabies, urticaria papulosa, phtheiriasis, and other affections giving rise to scratching, followed by inoculation.

Treatment.—The scabs must be removed, and the sores dressed with an antiseptic ointment, as that of subacetate or carbonate of lead, or ammoniated mercury ointment. Occasionally in cachectic cases, where the reparative process is sluggish, a mild iodoform or balsam of peru salve is useful. An oleate of mercury ointment (5 per cent.) has been found beneficial in obstinate cases. Internally, good food, tonics, and cod-liver oil are sometimes necessary.

V. PAPULAR INFLAMMATIONS.

In the diseases included under this heading the inflammation is of a chronic character, and the eruption preserves the papular form throughout, with the exception that in *prurigo* there is often some attempt at pustulation. *Prurigo* and various forms of *lichen* are the diseases included here. It is necessary to offer a few words of explanation with regard to the term *lichen*. This was formerly applied indiscriminately to a variety of cutaneous diseases, inflammatory and of other kinds, in which the papule was the predominating feature. In the more orderly arrangement adopted at present these affections have been relegated to their proper positions. Thus *L. agrius* and *L. simplex* are now described as papular eczema, *L. tropicus* as miliaria, *L. urticatus* as urticaria papulosa, *L. pilaris* as keratosis pilaris. There remain three chronic inflammations to which the term is still applied.

Lichen circumscriptus vel circinatus is characterized by the formation of persistent, somewhat itchy, small papules, which evolve in round groups or rings. These rings have a red marked border, and clear or stained centre; they spread centrifugally, and may intersect. They are situated mostly on the back, from the shoulders downwards, and often on the chest. This disease must be distinguished from ringed forms of *tinea versicolor*, and is now regarded as a form of seborrhœic inflammation.

Lichen scrofulosorum is a chronic disease described by Hebra, but by no-means yet recognized adequately in this country or America, and it is uncommon here. It is characterized by the development of pale yellowish or red papules, the size of pins' heads, which have a great tendency to a ringed or rounded grouping. Some papules may become crowned by a little scale, and some may inflame and take on an acneiform aspect.

There is usually but little itching. The eruption is generally limited to the trunk, but may extend to the upper parts of the extremities. Lichen scrofulosorum is a disease of childhood, and is rare after puberty. A feature to be noticed is its very general association with glandular and spinal or hip disease, or with phthisis. It must not be confounded with lichen circinatus, or annular miliary syphilide.

Lichen planus (Wilson) is a somewhat rare, non-contagious disease, marked by the development of discrete papules, accompanied by marked itching; in colour from lilac to deep purple; in shape flattened, slightly raised, smooth and shiny, or covered with a slight micaceous scale, well-defined, of angular outline, often with a central umbilication; in diameter from one to three lines; tending to become aggregated into irregular patches and bands, by the development of new papules amongst the persistent older ones; evolving, with a marked tendency to symmetry, chiefly over the anterior aspect of the forearm just above the wrist, round the waist and flanks, over the hips and about the lower end of the vastus internus, but occurring anywhere; and frequently leaving on their disappearance a melasmic staining like a syphilide. The papules persist as such, and show no disposition to become eczematous; there is never any marked scaling, and no bleeding points are exposed by removing the scales, as in psoriasis; nor, as in the latter disease, do the papules continue to enlarge peripherally and form rings. Further, like psoriasis and the papular syphilides, from which the diagnosis must be made, lichen planus tends to recur. In structure the papules approach those of psoriasis, so far that they are mostly formed by a hyperplasia of the epithelium about the sweat-duets. In the usual form of *L. planus* here described a comparatively limited number of papules are seen, but Hebra described an affection called *L. exsudativus ruber*, in which large tracts of skin are involved with sheets of coalesced, slightly scaly papules. In these severe, widespread, and often acutely-developed forms, the papules lose somewhat the typical features described above, and become miliary and more or less acuminate. The nails may be involved; the itching may become intolerable; and marasmus may set in. The causes are unknown, but some attribute the complaint to a neurosis, and there is reason to believe that it is identical with the *pityriasis rubra pilaris* of French authors.

Treatment.—Only local treatment is required for *L. circinatus*. The itching should be alleviated by frequent applications of a soda and glycerine or borax lotion, and the eruption may be removed by rubbing in an antiseptic ointment, such as thymol gr. x to $\frac{1}{2}$ i. of lard. For *L. scrofulosorum* Hebra recommended cod-liver oil internally and externally. Arsenic should be tried in *L. planus* and *exsudativus ruber*, but is not always successful; and then or simultaneously a toning up of the system should be carried out, by ferruginous preparations, mineral acids, and other tonics. Rest and change for an exhausted nervous system is, however, what is really required. Locally the very chronic forms may be treated, and the itching relieved, by tarry preparations, carbolic acid, mercurial, and allied remedies; but alkaline baths and lotions, acid lotions, and lubricating salves, such as vaseline or lanoline, are often useful.

Prurigo is a fairly common disease, characterized by the development of discrete rounded papules, the size of hemp-seeds, with a reddish tinge of colour, or of the same tint as the surrounding skin, and therefore often better felt than seen. The papules are widely disseminated over

the trunk and limbs, and reach the sides of the face and scalp, but they mostly leave the great flexures free. The itching is very marked, and the tops of the papules are excoriated by scratching, whilst the related lymphatic glands, for example, those in the groin, become indurated. This disease usually commences in childhood, and persists with some intermissions, especially in summer-time, throughout the greater part of life. Consequently, in old-standing cases the diagnosis is not so much from scrofula, as it is in milder cases, but from chronic eczema, because the skin gets indurated and harsh, and thickly sown with an excoriated and slightly encrusted eruption, especially about the legs. Some papules may develop into abortive pustules, more particularly in cachectic subjects. The cause of prurigo is obscure, but the subjects of it are usually pallid and often debilitated. The inflammatory papules, which are rarely red and soft like those in eczema, are formed by a moderate exudation of cells and fluid into the papillary layer, with some secondary hyperplasia of the related epidermic structures.

Treatment.—Much relief may be afforded, and the disease held in check, by means of alkaline and sulphur baths, and the inunction of bland lubricants, as vaseline or lanoline, and stimulating salves, such as those of tar, carbolic acid, or naphthol. Occasionally in children the eruption disappears under treatment, especially for a time, but many cases seem quite incurable. As regards internal remedies, the great object is to keep the general health as perfect as possible.

VI. SQUAMOUS INFLAMMATIONS.

In this class are grouped two dissimilar affections, *psoriasis* and *pityriasis rubra*, which are brought together by reason of one marked feature which they have in common, namely, the shedding of much epidermis. Both are characterized by an inflammatory congestion of the skin; in psoriasis, in circumscribed spots and patches, and probably secondary to epidermic hyperplasia; in pityriasis rubra, primary and diffuse. Both are liable to recur, especially psoriasis.

Psoriasis is a chronic, bilateral eruption, frequently met with, and characterized by the evolution, more or less widely disseminated, of dull red, flat, slightly raised, rounded, and somewhat itchy papules (not polished and angular as in lichen planus), surmounted by well-marked silvery scales, which are easily detached by the nail, disclosing hyperæmic points. The eruption may evolve acutely, and disappear spontaneously; but usually pursues a chronic course, by the persistence of the old papules, and the appearance of new ones. The papules appear as dull red circumscribed elevations, the size of pins' heads, tipped with a scale (*P. punctata*). These spots enlarge centrifugally, and the scales increase, so that the eruption at this stage has been compared to drops of dried mortar (*P. guttata*); they continue to enlarge to the size of a sixpence or a shilling (*P. nummularis*); they ultimately clear up in the centre, and finally form large rings (*P. annularis vel circinata*), which may intersect to form patterns (*P. gyrata vel figurata*). The eruption may spread into a large thickened scaly patch, often closely simulating a chronic squamous eczema (*P. diffusa*), especially when inveterate and fissured and weeping from external irritation (*P. invetera* and *eczematous*). Lastly, in some children and strumous subjects pus-cells mingle with the scales, and form crusts to simulate rupia (*P. rupioides*). Many of these phases may co-exist on the same patient. Certain sites are especially prone to

be attacked by psoriasis, such as the elbows and knees, the buttocks, the scalp, and the extensor aspects of the forearms and legs, but patches may occur also widely over the trunk. Though usually widespread, an isolated patch may exist, which makes the diagnosis more difficult. Psoriasis occurs in both sexes, in all ranks of life, and at any age, from childhood upwards. It is extremely rare in infancy, although heredity is sometimes strongly marked. The papules are formed by a primary hyperplasia of the rete, with enlargement of the papillæ and secondary congestion, and increase of imperfectly formed cuticle. The disease is probably due to a peculiar morbid tendency in the skin itself; and although often occurring in apparently healthy subjects, the eruption in predisposed subjects is excited by almost any departure from a state of health, such as gout, struma, dyspepsia, debility from lactation, or pregnancy. The seasons of spring and autumn seem to favour its outbreak, and it is especially prone to recur. The diagnosis of psoriasis has mainly to be made from lichen planus and the scaly syphilides, but the latter will be considered under syphilis.

Treatment.—In acute stages of psoriasis, with active congestion of the skin, soothing applications, such as watery compresses, oily applications, or alkaline baths answer best, combined with diuretics and laxatives internally. In ordinary chronic cases the general rule is to carefully sift out any departure from health, should such exist, and correct it; and then to exhibit arsenic, which has a remarkable influence over a great number of cases. This drug should be given in increasing doses, carefully watching its effects, and continued some time after the disappearance of the eruption. Large doses of iodide of potassium have been recommended in the treatment of psoriasis. Recently Byrom Bramwell has demonstrated that dried thyroid extract is of great value. The dose should be 5 grains, gradually increased to 15 or 20 grains a day. The papules may be got rid of by the brisk friction of various stimulant applications, chosen according to the site involved, the sex and age of the patient, the chronicity of the eruption, and the extent of the disease. It should always be borne in mind that these applications may be absorbed when applied over a large surface. We may enumerate, in order of increasing efficacy, mercurial salves, thymol, carbolic acid, naphthol, tar, and chrysarobin or chrysophanic acid. Ichthyol is also employed as a local application in psoriasis.

Pityriasis rubra, or general exfoliative dermatitis is a very rare affection, which commences as a reddened scaly patch, and as a rule rapidly involves the whole surface, so that in well-marked cases a striking appearance is produced, for the whole skin is of deep red hue, congested, and covered with large membranous scales, which are cast off in great quantities. The disease is a chronic one, as a rule, though occasionally tending to be acute. Patients may quite recover, or the disease may end fatally, and be complicated by remittent fever, albuminuria, pulmonary œdema, or marasmus. They are extremely sensitive to cold. Very exceptional cases of lichen ruber, eczema, and pemphigus foliaceus may be universal, and have then to be distinguished from pityriasis rubra.

Treatment.—Locally bland emollient preparations are called for, such as vaseline, lanoline, glycerine of starch, or linimentum calcis applied after a bath taken for cleanliness. Internally the general health must be steadily toned up by large doses of quinine, and, where the disease is not too acute, by arsenic, large doses of iron, and such remedies.

VII. DIATHETIC DISEASES.

By this term we understand diseases that are dependent on certain persistent morbid dispositions of the body, either acquired or inherited, which modify to a greater or less extent all the nutritive processes. We shall here notice only the skin-manifestations of *syphilis*, its other symptoms and lesions having already been described earlier in this work.

Syphilides or *syphilitic skin-eruptions* vary in character somewhat, according as the patient is the subject of hereditary or acquired syphilis.

Heredity Syphilis.—A *bullous syphilide*, or so-called *syphilitic pemphigus*, is the most precocious skin-manifestation, being frequently developed in the last months of intra-uterine life, and therefore to be seen on the child at birth, or at any rate it is of very exceptional occurrence after the seventh to the eighteenth day (Parrot). The bullæ are developed on a more or less infiltrated base, and hence ecthyma is often simulated. The contents are sero-purulent and thick, and on separation of the crusts unhealthy ulceration may be seen. The bullæ are of all shapes and sizes, from a varicella-vesicle upwards; and either discrete, confluent, or in crescents. The sites selected are especially the palms and soles, the backs of the fingers and toes, and neighbouring parts of the limbs. Only rarely are the bullæ of wider distribution.

The *macular syphilide* is the commonest eruption, and usually develops about the second month of life about the nates, backs of the thighs, and genitalia, as pinkish or coppery macules, rounded or irregular in shape, circumscribed or more or less diffused, and desquamating. These patches may extend widely over the body, face, and upper extremities, leaving untouched, however, the axillæ and lateral parts of the trunk. Mixed with these macules, or developing from them by the infiltration of the cutis, we find raised papules of various kinds, as in acquired syphilis, either small and lenticular, or larger and flattened, or discoid (nummular). The papules may relapse, and they now and again assume the ringed or crescentic forms, simulating a chronic psoriasis. As in the adult also, these papules may become variously modified by the site; thus on the scalp they may be eroded and crustitious; about the anus, vulva, corners of the mouth, and other moist situations, condylomatous; and so on. In strumous and cachectic subjects they ulcerate. Parrot describes a late *lenticular syphilide*, appearing at six months old or later.

The *vesicular* and *pustular syphilide* is more frequently met with, perhaps, in hereditary than acquired syphilis, and is as a rule a comparatively late manifestation. The eruption may closely resemble that of varicella, varioloid, variola, and the general pustular eruption that occasionally shows itself about the eighth day after vaccination. The fluid is often collected on a shotty, well-marked base; and the eruption is often multiform. As for other syphilides, Mr. Hutchinson, in speaking of the rarity of late symmetrical syphilides, remarks that, "after the first year, indeed, the subjects of inherited taint but rarely exhibit any kind of skin disease whatever; but, if they do, it is almost always some form of ulceration of a rupial, lupoid, serpiginous, or phagedænic character."

Acquired Syphilis.—The skin is a structure specially prone to be attacked by the syphilitic virus, and the eruptions induced are of various types, corresponding pretty closely to the roseolous, papular, squamous,

vesicular, pustular, and bullous kinds. Syphilides, as a rule, tend to evolve slowly; to gradually die out spontaneously; and to recur either according to a similar or a different type. Each of these types, it must be pointed out, has its proper time of appearance in the natural evolution of the disease, though the regular order of things may be occasionally altered by various circumstances. The skin-eruptions seen early in the disease tend to be widely and copiously disseminated over the body, to involve the skin superficially, and to be symmetrical; whilst subsequent eruptions get less copious, and more and more localized and asymmetrical, until in the tertiary stages the syphilitic growth involves the deeper layers of the skin, is localized, is present in greater mass and consequently ulcerates frequently, and exhibits but little tendency to symmetry, though both sides of the body may be attacked. The *macular* or *erythematous syphilide* has its time of evolution first after the induration of the glands, and it has a characteristic site about the sides of the abdomen and thorax, or all over the trunk, and perhaps the upper parts of the extremities. The eruption consists of delicate rosy macules, the size of the finger-nail, which evolve in crops, remain out from a few days to several weeks, and then fade away, leaving tawny stains. It only itches when of unusually acute development. It may be confounded with any macular erythematous eruption, such as measles, simple roseola, erythema multiforme, or especially copaiba eruption, but corroborative signs of syphilis are usually present in the throat or elsewhere. The *papular syphilides* present a wide diversity of appearance. They evolve in point of time after the roseolous type, or as the latter is declining, and they may continue to recur year by year, becoming more localized and far less copious. The chief forms are as follows:—The *miliary papular syphilide*, or so-called *syphilitic lichen*, is characterized by collections of conical, shotty papules, the size of a pin's head to a hemp-seed, in consequence of the development of the syphilitic tissue especially around the follicles. They tend to collect in small groups. Large papules may be present, and many of the miliary papules may become tipped with pus. A smaller kind of follicular syphilide is indistinguishable in appearance from a simple or scrofulous lichen. The *large or lenticular papular syphilide*, or so-called *syphilitic psoriasis*, is very common, and consists of circular or oval, flattened, dull-red, indolent papules, usually discrete, but occasionally fused into patches, with very few scales as a rule, and in size from a split pea to a sixpence. Occasionally the papules are disc-like (*nummular papular syphilide*), or circinate, especially about the face; or moderately sealy, and then more closely resembling ordinary psoriasis. The site on which they occur modifies their aspect; for example, about the forehead and hairy parts they become eroded and slightly crusted (*papulo-crustitial syphilide*); in hairy parts often warty (*vegetating* or *frambosoid*); on vascular mucous or muco-cutaneous and other moist situations, as beneath folds of skin, in flexures of joints, interdigital clefts, about the prepuce and labia, or perineum and anus, they become soft, auto-inoculable masses, exuding a viscid secretion (*mucous tubercles* or *condylomata lata*); about the corners of the mouth and between the toes they get fissured and ulcerated; in the mouth they are soddened and silvery-looking (*mucous patches*); and, lastly, in the thick skin of the palms and soles the outlines of the papules are often lost, and the eruption closely simulates chronic eczema or psoriasis. In diagnosing these papular syphilides from psoriasis, it must be remembered that syphilis is almost invariably

acquired in adult life, and in the relapses the eruption is less symmetrical and copious and more localized, and may change its type; whereas psoriasis may evolve for the first time at any age, but often begins in childhood and recurs throughout life. Psoriasis is also often hereditary, whilst the papular syphilides inherited do not occur after the first eighteen months. Psoriasis affects especially the extensor surfaces of the limbs, such as the elbows and knees, also the scalp and buttocks; papular syphilides favour rather the flexor surfaces of the limbs; in both, however, the eruption may encircle the limb or stud the trunk. Psoriasis papules, arising as they do from papillary hypertrophy, are, as a rule, rather the more elevated, in consequence of the notable accumulation of silvery scales, which, when detached, expose bleeding points; syphilitic papules, which are formed by deposition of special cell-growth, rarely have very many scales, and there are no bleeding points to be seen unless the surface is forcibly injured. Syphilitic papules frequently have a dull-red, coppery, or raw-ham tint, distinguishable in many cases from the less sombre hue of psoriasis; and again they often present a multiformity of aspect in different parts of the body. It must also be remembered that relapsing papular syphilides are sometimes annular. In making a diagnosis, then, too much stress must not be laid on any one character, but the features and history of the eruption must be considered in their totality. On the palms and soles a papular or relapsing syphilide may occur asymmetrically; whilst eczema and psoriasis in these regions are symmetrical, and almost invariably associated with disease elsewhere. The papules of lichen planus are frequently mistaken for syphilis by those not acquainted with their peculiar characteristics. The *vesicular syphilide* in the acquired disease is only a curiosity. *Pustular syphilides* are more common, but still rather rare, and they are conveniently arranged as follows:—The *acneiform syphilide* is the pustular development of the miliary papular eruption, and frequently co-exists with it. The shotty, coppery, conical papules are surmounted by a little collection of pus, which dries into a crust or scale, and some pit-like scars result. They are wide-spread at first, but more localized in relapses, for example, about the forehead. The eruption has to be distinguished from acne cachecticum, acne varioliformis, and potassium iodide acne. The *varicelliform* and *varioliform syphilides* have a somewhat greater proportion of pus present, and must be distinguished from varioloid and variola; while some are pemphigoid eruptions. The *impetiginous* and *ecthymatous syphilides* are larger, and simulate a discrete pustular dermatitis, as from scabies and phtheiriasis. A coppery infiltrated base is to be made out, and in cachectic subjects considerable scarring may result. The early forms are superficial, but the relapsing later phases affect the skin more deeply, and much crusting results, so that as the ulceration extends peripherally, adding fresh layers of crust from below, a limpet-like compound crust is built up, of very characteristic appearance. To this the term *rupia* is applied. An eruption like ordinary pemphigus has been described in acquired syphilis, but is very rare indeed. Most bullous forms are rather of an ecthymatous type. There is further a rare *pigmentary syphilide*, closely simulating a small-patterned leucoderma, occurring about the neck of women in the secondary period. *Tubercular* or *nodular syphilides* are common between the second and seventh years, but after that get less frequent. There is usually a marked cachexia present. They occur as more or less rounded, circumscribed, firm or hard, pain-

less and indolent, coppery or livid nodules, involving the skin pretty deeply, and in size from a pea to a large bean. They may be smooth and shining, or occasionally slightly scaly or crusted over, and they evolve in crops in the neighbourhood of pre-existing ones, which resolve, so that they appear to wander. They may be discrete, or grouped in highly characteristic crescentic serpiginous forms. They affect chiefly the face, the bottom of the neck, and behind the sternal and gluteal regions. The nodules may break down into ulceration, and in cachectic subjects this is deep, and may destroy the nose, for instance. In other parts deforming cicatricial bands result. In mass they may closely simulate lupus vulgaris, and the name *syphilitic lupus* has been applied. The diagnosis is sometimes almost impossible; but as a rule lupus nodules are a brighter red; the apple-jelly-like appearance is detected in the smaller ones; and the grouping does not assume the reniform outline. *Gummatæ* rarely occur before the third year, and usually much later. Their favourite sites are the scalp, face, and extremities about the joints. Usually they are few in number. They are isolated, elastic, freely moveable swellings, and circumscribed, unless when involving a part, such as the lip, where the connective tissue is loose. The superficial parts of the skin may become gradually implicated; and an ulcer, with a foul, uneven base, and steep punched-out edges, results. Such multiple ulcers are not uncommon about the upper third of the leg.

With regard to the diagnosis of the syphilides generally, it must be pointed out that, though they present such a diversity of form, they have certain family characteristics. Their slow evolution and indolent character is associated with the absence of marked itching as a rule. A dull reddish-brown, raw-ham, or coppery colour usually characterizes them. The eruption tends to be grouped in a circular or crescentic manner, more especially in relapses; but it must not be forgotten that the ringed form of eruption is seen in many other skin-affections. Syphilides exhibit a polymorphism, that is, the coincidence of several phases of eruption. They also have their favourite sites.

Treatment.—The constitutional treatment for syphilis has been already considered in this work, and we need only refer here to the local measures required. The erythematous and widespread papular eruptions may be treated by the application of dusting powders; or a lotion of calamine, oxide of zinc, and black-wash. To localized non-ulcerating syphilides mild mercurial salves may be applied. Where ulceration exists, the crusts must be removed, and the surface cleansed and healed by iodide of starch paste, iodoform applications, mercurial plaster, black-wash, simple healing remedies, or local mercurial fumigation. Condylomata require great cleanliness, and dusting with calomel, mixed with magnesia or oxide of zinc and starch. Resorcin and ichthyol have been recommended as useful applications for condylomata.

VIII. HYPERSTROPHIES AND ATROPHIES.

In this class are included those diseases which are characterized by an increase or diminution in the size, or in the quantity, of the normal elements of the skin. They comprehend *xeroderma* and *ichthyosis*; *keloid*; *fibroma* and *dermatolysis*; *morphea* and *scleroderma*; *callositas*; *clavus* or *corn*; *verruca* or *wart*; *atrophia cutis*; and *striæ et maculae atrophicæ*. Only the more important of these will be considered here.

Ichthyosis is a congenital structural and functional disease of the skin; presenting much diversity of appearance according to its severity; and involving the greater part of the body, except, as a rule, the great flexures, face, genitals, and palms and soles. Though to be considered congenital, it does not become apparent in the great majority of cases till after the first few months of life. In the mildest forms the extensor aspects of the thighs and upper arms are roughened by the plugging of all the follicles by exuviae—an appearance very similar to that seen in keratosis pilaris. In another very mild phase, known as *Xeroderma*, the skin generally is dry and harsh, shiny or roughened, and dirty-looking from the absence of sebaceous and sweat secretions. This condition is worse in cold weather, and when inflamed simulates an eczema. In a somewhat exaggerated condition of this form the cuticular scales are parcelled out in little lozenge-shaped areas, and these plates show a tendency to adhere only by their central parts. In more severe cases the skin gets thickened, and the plates more and more deeply marked out, and like mother-o'-pearl (*Ichthyosis nacrée vel nitidus*). When the papillæ are much enlarged there is a considerable accumulation of ragged epithelium, and probably entangled inspissated sebum and much dirt, so that large horny or mudlike masses may project from the skin, and to these various phases the terms *I. cornea*, *hystrix*, and *hystricimus* have been applied. Most fanciful names have been applied in popular language, such as man-fish, porcupine-man, serpent-skin, etc. Ichthyosis is often hereditary; it persists throughout life; and is incurable. It may, however, be much ameliorated, and kept in check.

Treatment.—In mild forms of ichthyosis the inunction of lubricants, such as vaseline or lanoline, glycerine of starch, or glycerine and water, suffices. In cases where much epithelial and other débris accumulate, the masses must be removed by prolonged alkaline baths or strong alkaline lotions, and then oily substances or mild stimulants applied beneath.

Fibroma or **Molluscum fibrosum** is an affection of the skin in which there is a special tendency for the connective tissue to hypertrophy and outgrow. There is some doubt as to whether the connective tissue around the sebaceous glands or the nerves is not specially involved. The growths commence as little soft tumours, and as they increase assume all sorts of shapes, and grow to a large size. They may be sessile or pedunculated, smooth or corrugated, flaccid or tense and elastic, normal in colour or livid or darkly pigmented. Old growths may ulcerate. When single they usually come under the care of the surgeon; but occasionally they develop in crops and in large numbers over the body. Cases of the latter class begin early in life and progress, and the subjects often have a stunted mental and physical development. Fibroma has been noticed in several members, and in several generations of a family. The tumours consist of fibrous tissue in various stages of active development and condensation.

Treatment.—The evolution of these growths cannot be prevented but if a tumour is a source of annoyance it may be removed by the knife or by ligature.

Fibroma Pendulum or **Dermatolysis** is a closely allied and often associated affection, in which, however, the whole thickness of the skin hypertrophies and hangs in folds.

Scleroderma and **Morphea** are here classed together, because in this country they are believed to be respectively the diffuse and the circum-

scribed form of the same affection. To understand the different phases of the disease, it is necessary to appreciate the fact that a process of atrophy of the connective tissue and other structures may take place from the outset, or may follow varying degrees of hyperplasia. These changes disturb the vascular supply, the pigmentation, and the nerve functions of the affected parts. *Morphea*, in its most typical aspect, commences as a circumscribed pigmented or rosy macule, in size from that of a finger-nail to the palm of the hand. The skin of this patch becomes gradually denser, from the increase and condensation of connective tissue; often somewhat depressed, until it cannot be pinched up; and paler, whilst enlarged venules are seen to course here and there, and the white alabaster-looking centre is surrounded by a delicate lilac halo of congestion (*M. lardacea*). This condensation of tissue interferes further with the already-disordered nutrition of the part, and the cuticle sometimes tends to separate. There is more or less anaesthesia, with cessation of sweat and sebaceous secretion, and blanching or absence of hair. Occasionally the hyperplasia of connective tissue is sufficient to raise the part up into nodules and large lumps (*M. tuberosa*). These hypertrophic phases may be succeeded by an atrophic process (*M. atrophica*); or the atrophy may be the chief feature from the first, and then a shiny, smooth, shrunken, circumscribed area of skin presents itself. Very considerable pigment-disorder often exists. There may be only a single morphea patch; or several or considerable numbers arising in succession over the body, and more or less confluent, thus approaching the sclerodermatous condition. They tend to assume the rounded form, but often are irregular in shape, or in the form of bands. The sites mostly affected are the base of the neck and adjoining portions of the thorax, the submammary regions and abdomen, the forehead, and the proximal segments of the extremities. *Morphea* occurs mostly in the young or in early middle life, and in females. Often no cause can be made out, but many cases are associated with marked debility, and various circumstances point to a neurotic origin; for instance, the occasionally marked relation between the distribution of the patches and of cutaneous nerves, as in morphea and herpes of the first division of the fifth nerve. *Scleroderma*, or "the hide-bound disease," is still rarer than morphea, and differs from the latter in being characterized by the diffuse symmetrical hardening and stiffening of a large surface, so that the skin feels cold, shrunken, and tightened on the underlying parts. It is sought in England to connect the morphea, in which one circumscribed patch appears, with scleroderma, in which the whole body is involved. In the diffuse forms the atrophic process is predominant. Scleroderma may set in acutely after a chill or an attack of rheumatism, and rapidly involve the greater part of the body, especially the upper portion, which is usually first attacked, or it may affect only a limited region, as the hands and forearms or lower extremities; but at other times it has an insidious onset, and chronic course. It usually begins in the situations just mentioned, or about the nape of the neck. As in morphea, the subcutaneous tissues and even the bones may be involved in the disturbance of nutrition. Much deformity may result from the drawing down and fixing of the eyelids and lips, and the impairment of motion about the joints. Scleroderma occurs most frequently in young and middle-aged women; and tends as a rule to disappear spontaneously, like morphea, after a number of years. *Sclerema neonatorum* is a somewhat similar-looking, though probably distinct generalized affection, occurring in newly-born children.

and ending fatally as a rule. It seems to be due to a setting of the fat, and a peculiar kind of oedema.

Treatment.—The patient should be made to live under the healthiest possible conditions. Internally cod-liver oil, ferruginous and mineral acid tonics, phosphorus, and strychnine are called for; whilst externally Turkish baths or warm bathing, with shampooing, the infliction of bland oils, and the continuous current do most good in restoring the nutrition.

Atrophia cutis occurs as a secondary condition in many affections, such as syphilis, and alopecia areata; but, with the exception of senile atrophy, in which the loss of the subcutaneous fat brings about a wrinkled shrivelled condition, it is rare as a primary change. It would seem to be primary, however, in some cases of morphœa. There is, further, a rare affection occurring in lanceolate stripes and rounded spots, closely simulating the lines of pregnancy, and named *linear* and *muscular atrophy*. It occurs in groups and parallel lines, chiefly about the hips and thighs, the axillæ and upper arms, and above the knees. The affected parts are depressed, livid, or like mother-o'-pearl, glistening and smooth, or reticulated. A primary hyperæmic stage has been described. The cause of the condition is over-distension of the skin in almost all cases.

IX. NEW FORMATIONS.

Under this heading are included the heterologous neoplasms of the skin, namely, *cancer*, *rodent ulcer*, *sarcoma*, *lymphadenoma*, and *lupus*. These diseases are all chronic, and the newly-formed tissue has a constant tendency to invade fresh regions, to break down into ulceration, and in most cases ultimately to destroy life. We shall only discuss here lupus, as the others come within the province of surgical works.

Lupus vulgaris is a non-contagious, chronic, probably non-hereditary disease of the skin and some adjoining mucous membranes, characterized by the formation of a new small-celled growth in the meshes of the cutis, resembling that of syphilis and leprosy, tending to spread peripherally, but not very deeply, by infection of neighbouring cells, and to undergo an atrophic or destructive process, leaving scars. Lupus is now believed to be a form of tuberculosis, and *tubercle bacilli* have been found in connection with it. **Lupus erythematosus**, which Kaposi regards rather as an inflammatory affection, is quite a distinct disease from *L. vulgaris*. Lupus most frequently attacks females; is associated with evident signs of struma in a great many cases; and generally the subjects of it have an enfeebled constitution and a bad circulation. Lupus vulgaris develops, as a rule, in childhood or youth; whilst the rarer *L. erythematosus* commences later, namely, in early adult life. *Lupus erythematosus* and *L. sebaceus* or *acneiform lupus* may have an insidious beginning as a local seborrhœa, or apparently a patch of erythema. The peculiar feature is that the red, raised, spreading border is studded with the dilated openings of the sebaceous ducts; which in their turn are plugged with epithelial débris and inspissated sebum; whilst the older central parts of the patch atrophy and leave faint scars. Such patches may be few in number, reach a considerable size, and fuse together to cover a large area. In rarer cases smaller disc-like patches develop, often in great numbers, and sometimes acutely. *L. erythematosus* occurs with especial frequency about the face, ears, scalp,

hands, and genitals; more rarely on the feet; and occasionally more widely. Over the cheeks and nose a very characteristic fusing of patches takes place, to form what is known as "butterfly lupus." *L. vulgaris* presents itself in many aspects. The mildest form is a chronic erythema-like spreading eruption, which has a dry, gelatinous aspect, and atrophies in the centre. It occurs on regions similar to those affected in *L. erythematosus*, except the scalp, and is almost indistinguishable from the latter disease, save for the absence of implication of the glands. *L. vulgaris* more commonly makes its appearance, however, as little, semi-transparent, grey, glistening, *soft* nodules, embedded in the skin. They have a close resemblance, in appearance and structure, to true miliary tubercles, but do not undergo the same early caseation. The "tubercles" grow in size, or become confluent, so as to form larger red nodules, and then the jelly-like aspect is generally masked by the congestion present. The surface then becomes glazed and wrinkled, and it exfoliates (*L. exfoliatirus*). In chronic cases the skin is occupied by much lumpy growth, which projects very considerably above the surface, or the patch, like other chronically congested areas, is the seat of papillary hypertrophy (*L. hypertrophicus*). Where the new growth is in any quantity it tends to break down into ulceration (*L. exulcerans* or *exedens*, as distinguished from *L. non-exedens*). The ulceration does not tend to go deeply like rodent ulcer, except in rare cachectic cases, but in severe cases the cartilages of the nose and ears may be destroyed, very extensive and deforming cicatrices being left. Lupus spreads in a characteristic chronic way, by the formation of fresh nodules of new growth at the periphery, whilst the central older parts atrophy, often without ulceration, and leave a scar. Consequently the serpiginous form assumed reminds one strongly of the tubercular syphilides. Where ulceration occurs in these spreading forms the ulcer is covered by a crust, and advances *pari passu* with the new growth. The erythema-like forms of lupus manifestly have to be distinguished from chronic forms of erythema, and mild inflammations, such as *tinea circinata*, *seborrhœa*, etc. The implication of the sebaceous glands, and the atrophic process, however, are very characteristic. Lupus vulgaris has to be carefully distinguished from tubercular syphilis, but the diagnosis is not difficult as a rule.

Treatment.—Soothing applications, such as vaseline, oxide of zinc and calamine lotion, or oleate of zinc or bismuth, should be employed in lupus erythematosus, especially when it is actively spreading. If these fail, collodion or solution of subacetate of lead may be painted on, and when quiescent, many practitioners recommend the application of resolvents and stimulating remedies, such as iodine, mercurial plaster, soft soap, or tar. A mixture of egg and vinegar, or one of salicylic acid, pyrogallic acid, and flexible collodion, have also been well-spoken of. Finally, scarification is resorted to occasionally. In lupus vulgaris also soothing measures are called for in irritable and active phases of the disease; but when quiet the soft nodules should be removed or destroyed by means of a sharp spoon, gouging with nitrate of silver points, or the galvano-cautery. When not too extensive excision and Thiersch grafting may be practised. A variety of caustics and resolvents are also used. Among special remedies advocated as local applications may be mentioned perchloride of mercury, lactic acid, a combination of salicylic acid and creasote, ichthyol, and the application of cold by means of ice, in order to check the growth of bacilli. Cocaine may be used before and after

operations, to allay pain. If there is much foul ulceration, it may be cleansed with iodide of starch paste. Internally cod-liver oil often effects wonders, and efforts must be made to build up the health in every way possible. The internal administration of iodoform has been advocated in certain forms of lupus. The subcutaneous injection of tuberculin has had a remarkable effect in some cases of lupus, and is still practised.

X. PIGMENTARY CHANGES.

Melanoderma, **melanopathia**, or **melasma**, are names used at one time or another to denote a state of increase of pigment in the skin. An increased deposition of pigment occurs in a variety of conditions. Thus it very commonly follows any continued hyperæmia of the skin, as after long exposure to the sun or to fire; and is especially prone to ensue in the erythematous inflammations, in syphilides, and in lichen planus. It occurs physiologically in pregnancy and during menstruation; and in cachectic individuals suffering from phthisis and cancer. It is seen about the forehead and temples of debilitated women (*chloasma uterinum et graviorum*); and follows occasionally a persistent phlebitis (so-called "vagabond's disease"). The well-known *ephilides* or *freckles* are usually excited by the sun's rays, but not invariably. In some affections, in which the nerves are involved, pigmentation is seen, as in leprosy and the circumscribed and diffuse forms of scleroderma. This brings us to notice that cases are on record in which intense pigmentation has followed a great fright and mental trouble. Other cases of widespread or universal pigmentation occur without any assignable cause. In such cases a careful study must be made, to exclude, if possible, disease of the supra-renal capsules and neighbouring sympathetic nerves (see ADDISON'S DISEASE).

Leucoderma or **leucopathia** is another disturbance of pigmentation of unknown causation. Here there is not only increased deposition of pigment, but simultaneously a removal of pigment from circumscribed well-defined oval areas, producing a very striking appearance. It occurs at almost any age, from advanced childhood upwards, and in either sex, and is usually very widespread, with a tendency to symmetry. The skin itself is structurally unaffected, and its functions are probably normal. Brunettes are specially subject to these changes, which are seen in spare and often debilitated people.

XI. NEUROTIC AFFECTIONS.

Hyperæsthesia, anaesthesia, and other disorders of cutaneous sensation have been already discussed, and we need only refer here to *pruritus*.

Pruritus, or the sensation of **itching**, must not be confounded with the disease *prurigo*. It is a frequent accompaniment of skin-diseases, especially where there is infiltration about the nerves, as in eczema; or external irritation, as from lice or the itch-mite. It is met with also in a general and most intense form in some neurotic states not well understood; and locally about the vulva or anus, from gout, irritating discharges (diabetes), thread-worms, or venous congestion (haemorrhoids).

Treatment.—This will be as various as the cause of the itching, which must be removed, if possible. Lubricants to soften harsh skin; sedatives, as hydrocyanic acid; stimulants to resolve infiltration; and alkalies are chiefly useful in relieving this symptom. Cocaine is a valuable sedative in many cases; as well as various soothing powders, vaseline or lanoline, or applications containing salicylic acid, boric acid, or carbolic acid in certain local forms of pruritus.

XII. PARASITIC DISEASES.

This class includes all the affections produced by the various animal and vegetable parasites that infest the human skin. We shall therefore have to describe, firstly, *dermatozoic* affections, namely, *phtheiriasis*, and *scabies*, merely mentioning *bug* and *flea-eruptions*; and, secondly, *dermatophytic* diseases, including *tinea farosa*, *tinea trichophytina*, and *tinea versicolor*.

I. DERMATOZOIC.—**Phtheiriasis, pediculosis, or lousiness** is the condition due to the presence of pediculi or lice about the body. Three different species infest the human subject—the *P. capitis*, the *P. vestimenti vel corporis*, and the *P. pubis*. These creatures are furnished with powerful legs, and a proboscis by which they suck up blood from the skin, and so set up irritation and various forms of eruption. The *P. capitis* inhabits the hairy scalp, especially the occipital region in children and young females, and sets up a pustular dermatitis, formerly called impetigo, with consequent enlargement of the related glands. The *P. pubis* or crab-louse is mostly localized to the pubic hair, but in some long-standing cases may be found clinging to the hair of the armpits, trunk, and limbs, and even to the eyelashes and eyebrows. It causes unbearable irritation, but little inflammation as a rule. The *P. vestimenti vel corporis* infests the trunk and clothes of persons, especially of those somewhat advanced in years and of debauched habits. The real habitat of the parasite is the clothes, especially the seams and folds, so that the irritation will always be found worse on those parts of the body where the clothes press, as about the shoulders and waist. The louse inserts its proboscis deep into a follicle, and thence a little blood wells up to form a tiny crust, whilst a transient hyperæmic papule or urticarial wheal forms around. The irritation induces determined scratching, so that many papules are excoriated, and broad linear excoriations are frequent. In cachectic subjects ecthymatous pustules form, and pigmentation may follow in old-standing cases. This disease, once called *prurigo senilis*, must not be confounded with true prurigo.

Treatment.—Locally mercurial powders, lotions, or ointments, saba-dilla, staphisagria, sulphur, and carbolic acid are very effectual. For the hairy scalp crude kerosene oil, or two grains of perchloride of mercury dissolved in an ounce of dilute acetic acid, or carbolic acid lotion 1 in 40 destroy the lice and the nits also. When this has been effected, soothing salves must be applied to allay any inflammation. For pediculi pubis vinegar, ether, and the ether-spray have been found efficacious. A corrosive sublimate bath, of about half an ounce to thirty gallons of water, is also said to act very efficiently in killing all the pediculi. Infected clothes must be heated to at least 200° F.

Scabies, or the **Itch**, is a disease due to the presence on and in the skin of a minute parasite, known as the *acarus scabiei* or *itch-mite*, which is just visible to the naked eye as a white speck. The male is the smaller, and is a wanderer on the surface; whilst the larger impregnated female tunnels her way between the epidermic layers, and there lays at intervals twenty or more eggs, and finally ensconces herself beneath a little eminence or vesicle at the end of the tunnel or *cuniculus*, which looks like a miniature mole-run. These cuniculi are linear tortuous elevations, a few lines long, and present black dots at intervals. The eggs hatch in from five to fourteen days, and the young repeat their parents' history. Besides these pathognomonic cuniculi, the itch insect excites intense itching, increased at night, both at the seat of burrowing and sympathetically over a wider area; as well as various degrees of dermatitis, indistinguishable from eczema, ecthyma, boils, and urticaria. The amount and severity of these eruptions depend on the age and state of health of the patient, and the duration of the disease. The acarus favours the buttocks and feet of babies; the thighs, abdomen, and hands (if not constantly washed) of adults, and in addition the region about the mammae and axillæ of females. The face is very rarely involved. The complaint is of course highly contagious. It must be distinguished from chronic eczema, prurigo, and phtheiriasis at all ages; and in children also from urticaria papulosa.

Treatment.—The first thing to be done is to order a prolonged warm bath, with a thorough scrubbing with soap, in order to open up all the tunnels, and then the *whole body* should be dressed night and morning, for three or four days, with some parasiticide ointment, such as a mild sulphur ointment. After the second bath the patient will be cured. In hospital practice a stronger parasiticide is often used, or the sulphur-bath, and the cure completed in one visit. The balsam of Peru and styrax, and mild mercurial salves are very efficient, and any of these may be used with a preliminary bath. Various other remedies are recommended, such as hyposulphite of sodium, and naphthol. The last is one of the best remedies for children, and where there is an irritable skin. When the acari and their eggs are killed and removed, soothing measures should be adopted, in order to control any inflammation present.

II. DERMATOPHYTIC.—The natural history of the several moulds or fungi which flourish on the human skin, and their relationship to one another, is not yet placed on a sure basis, but the three here considered seem to be distinct.

Tinea favosa or **Favus** is very rare now in England, and when seen is generally met with in foreigners. It is, however, somewhat commoner in Ireland and Glasgow. It is a disease of dirty, ill-nourished children; but as it is very inveterate, it is sometimes met with in adults.

Favus is characterized by the development of a fungus (*Achorion Schöleinii*), rather larger on the average than the trichophyton, composed of spores and branched and unbranched mycelium tubes, terminating in moniliform chains, which ramify in the epidermic layers, and especially about the hair-follicles. The mass of the fungus and the disintegrated epithelium and sebum form small, sulphur-yellow, discoid crusts or cups, with a peculiar mousy smell, and very characteristic

appearance. They leave scars eventually, and may at an early stage be mistaken for pustules.

The hairy scalp is the most frequent site attacked in tinea favosa, but the skin is sometimes implicated, and then the crusts are preceded by an appearance simulating *T. circinata*, to be presently described. The nails may also be involved, and rendered opaque and brittle. The complaint may be acquired directly from animals much subject to it, namely, mice, rats, cats, and canaries.

Tinea trichophytina, or **ringworm**, is due to the growth in the skin and its appendages of a somewhat different fungus, called the *trichophyton*, which consists of wavy, smooth-margined, transparent mycelial tubes, jointed or unjointed, and usually unbranched, terminating in bead-like chains, and of oval or round spores, about half the diameter of a red blood-corpuscle; large and small spored forms are described. The latter only affect the hairy scalp, while the former may affect both the skin and the scalp. It is occasionally contracted from animals. The affection differs in appearance as it attacks the hairy scalp (*T. trichophytina tonsurans*); the general body surface (*T. t. circinata* and so-called *Eczema marginatum*); the hairy parts of the face (*T. sycosis*); and the nails (*T. t. unguuum*). In hair spores, and amongst the epidermic cells of the nails and skin, mycelial threads predominate. *T. circinata* is first noticed as a small, circular, reddish, elevated spot, of the size of a split pea or larger, which becomes slightly desquamative, and is attended with great itching. As the spot extends at its periphery, by the shooting out of the fungus amongst the cuticular and upper rete cells, the centre clears up, as is observed in the fairy rings on grass, and the patch becomes a ring which may increase to a diameter of three, four, or more inches. *T. circinata* may occur on any part of the body, but is more common in those parts which are most freely exposed to the contact of the fungus, as the face, neck, backs of the hands or wrist. The hairs may be to some extent affected. The irritation caused by the growth of the fungus may not be confined to the production of a hyperæmic patch, but the margin sometimes becomes studded with papules, vesicles, or pustules, and then crusts form. This brings us to mention that occasionally, in adults mostly, the inflammatory patch looks like a chronic eczema, especially about the upper part of the thighs, the buttocks, and genital regions (so-called *eczema marginatum*). In warm climates, where the fungus flourishes more luxuriantly, this is not uncommon. *Tinea tonsurans* is met with almost exclusively in children. It may begin on the general surface, but when the patient is brought for advice there are usually several isolated or confluent, rounded, ashy-grey, scurfy patches, over which are studded swollen, opaque, and exceedingly brittle stumps of hair full of spores. Occasionally the diseased hairs may be disseminated singly or in little groups about the scalp. The fungus does not excite, as a rule, the same amount of inflammation in the scalp; but a general seborrhœa or eczema may supervene and mask the primary mischief; or a circumscribed boggy, infiltrated condition, known as *Kerion*, may occur, exuding a viscid fluid, and turning out all the hairs. Ringworm of the hairy scalp is an inveterate malady, but tends to die out towards puberty. *Tinea sycosis* either usually begins as *T. circinata*, and as the hairs become affected they assume an appearance identical with that seen in the scalp; or it may resemble kerion of the scalp, and the pustular folliculitis may be associated occasionally with severe boil-like inflammations. When the fungus attacks the nails, as

it now and then does, they become opaque, brittle, and broken up—*T. unguium*. Usually one or two nails only are affected, and on one hand.

Tinea versicolor, or **Pityriasis versicolo**: (formerly called *Chloasma*), is caused by the growth in the cuticle of the *microsporon furfur* fungus, which has some peculiarities, inasmuch as the mycelial threads end in aggregations or balls of spores, which are very characteristic. The fungus especially selects the skin of the chest and shoulders, but in long-standing or exceptional cases spreads further over the trunk, and to the upper segments of the limbs. The eruption consists of little shiny or furfuraceous spots or discs, very faintly elevated as a rule, of a characteristic fawn or darker colour, starting about the hair-follicles, and slowly enlarging to join other spots in an extensive sheet enclosing islands of normal skin. *Tinea versicolor* is essentially a disease of the middle period of life; and is supposed to be most frequent in phthisical subjects.

Treatment.—The main object is to kill the fungus by parasiticides, when all secondary inflammations and other morbid processes cease. On the general surface this is easily done, because the fungus is superficially placed, but in the nails, and especially the hair-follicles, the fungus reaches so deeply that it is most difficult to get any parasiticides to penetrate. Mere antiseptics are useless, and active parasiticides must be used, such as mercurials, carbolic acid, sulphur compounds, thymol, or chrysophanic acid. The mechanical removal of the upper layers of the skin by blistering or caustic applications is sometimes useful, but the thorough and persistent inunction of milder remedies, properly adjusted to the age of the patient and the state of nutrition of the skin, is generally effective. The hairs should be extracted if sufficiently loose in the follicles. Proper directions must be given to ensure that the disease is not kept up or propagated by infected towels, brushes, linen, etc. In inveterate cases which are *localized to small patches*, kerion may be excited, and the hairs so removed. A hyposulphite of sodium solution ($\frac{5}{j}$ to $\frac{3}{j}$), with thorough soap-washing, is usually sufficient in *tinea versicolor*. Resorcin has also been found useful.

XIII. AFFECTIONS OF THE GLANDS AND APPENDAGES OF THE SKIN.

The glands and their ducts are frequently involved in the skin-diseases which have already been described, and either share in a general atrophy or hypertrophy, or become the special seat of inflammatory mischief, by reason of the rich vascular plexuses surrounding them. Likewise the hairs in their follicles, and the nails may become implicated. We intend here, however, to direct attention only to primary disturbances of these structures.

Affections of the sweat-apparatus.—The sweat may be diminished in quantity (*anidrosis*), as in belladonna-poisoning and ichthyosis; but as an isolated symptom this is rarely met with. On the other hand, excessive sweating (*hyperidrosis*) is common, and affects the body generally in the sweating stage of ague, in rheumatic fever and pyæmia, in debilitating conditions, such as phthisis and cancer, and in the crises of some fevers. Localized sweating occurs in some paralyses and other nerve-lesions; and is also met with about the genitals, the axillæ, and palms and soles of certain people, causing great annoyance on account of the saturation of the clothes, the irritating effects of the decomposing

sweat, and the frequent development of a penetrating disagreeable odour (*bromidrosis*). If the sweating be sudden and violent, or the mouths of the follicles be closed, the retained sweat collects temporarily under the cuticle in tiny pellucid vesicles (*sudamina* or *miliaria alba*), which must not be confounded with rare cases in which discrete eczema vesicles stud an erythematous surface. If the follicle be congested at the same time, the fluid is often less clear and alkaline, and the prominent feature will be a red soft papule (*miliaria rubra*, or *prickly heat*). On the palms and soles of debilitated and neurotic people, the sweat sometimes collects in vesicles imbedded in the thick skin, accompanied by heat and painful tension; these may become raised and confluent into multilocular bullæ, while the skin becomes macerated, but the affection may be distinguished from eczema by the absence of a raw weeping dermis. This *dysidrosis* often recurs, and is occasionally chronic. There is a difference of opinion as to whether it is really a sweat-affection, a pemphigus, or an eczema. Lastly, the sweat under some conditions becomes coloured (*chromidrosis*) red or blue or black, but very many of such supposed cases are impositions.

Treatment.—Belladonna, externally or internally, or atropine, has the power of controlling excessive sweating; and occasionally an astringent, such as alum or oxide of zinc, combined with an absorbent (starch powder), and an antiseptic, such as boric or salicylic acid, is very useful locally, especially where a strong odour exists. It is found in the latter case that the smell comes from the decomposing sweat that has soaked into the wearing apparel, and this must be prevented by antiseptics and frequent change. Where debility exists, ferruginous and mineral acid tonics are called for. A calamine and oxide of zinc lotion is pleasant in miliaria; and in dysidrosis belladonna fomentations afford relief in the early stages, and bland lubricant applications later on.

Affections of the Sebaceous Glands.—The secretion from the sebaceous glands, and its passage from the ducts, may be sluggish from general debility or other causes, and then the follicles become plugged and congested, so as to form little conical papules. Such a condition is seen in one form of ichthyosis; and on the outside of the upper arms and the thighs, and occasionally in other parts, in children of a phthisical habit (*keratosis pilaris*). In adults, too, after pityriasis rubra or idiopathically, a similar state of things is met with, and then the rough tile-like projections are tipped with a black speck of dirt (*lichen pilaris*).

Treatment.—Improve the general health where necessary; remove the plugs by alkaline baths and applications; and excite to healthier action by stimulants.

Acne is an extremely common disease, which begins with a very similar plugging of the sebaceous follicles (*comedones*), but then acne is a definite affection associated with the development of the body at puberty and some years afterwards. In those disposed to the eruption it is frequently to be traced at this period of life to dyspepsia, debility, and derangement of the generative organs. It has its favourite sites on the face, and about the shoulders and chest. The sebaceous plug stimulates the excitable surrounding vascular plexus, and an inflammatory papule is produced (*A. papulosa*), which may pass on to suppuration (*A. pustulosa*) and leave scars, or large chronic boutons or nodules form (*A. indurata*). There are also one or two other acneiform affections to be noticed, in addition to *acneiform syphilides*. Thus an eruption indis-

tinguishable from acne, with the exception that there are no comedones, occurs about the forehead and anterior portion of the scalp of adults (*A. varioliformis*). Deep pits are formed, into which the little crusts sink. It is thought by some to be only a form of relapsing acneiform syphilide. Workers in tar sometimes acquire a more or less general acneiform eruption; as well as persons taking iodide and bromide of potassium. There is finally a general acne met with in very cachectic individuals (*A. cachecticum*).

Treatment.—Where the affection can be traced to a drug, or to tar, or to general debility, such cause must be removed. In the acne of puberty any dyspepsia, constipation, menstrual irregularity, or debility, must be looked to; and locally the comedones should be extracted, and the glands stimulated to healthier action by sulphur salves and lotions. If there is much inflammation, the temporary employment of a soothing calamine lotion is necessary. Ichthyol may be employed in some cases with advantage.

Rosacea or **Acne rosacea** is an affection of middle life, especially of women, and in the latter is much influenced by the catamenia and climacteric. It is, however, almost invariably associated with irritative dyspepsia. The face flushes from any emotion, change of temperature, strong wind, contact of food with the stomach, or sexual excitement, until the flushing becomes almost continuous. The skin gets more and more thickened and inflamed, and acneiform papules and pustules, with dilated veins, form about the cheeks, nose, chin, and other parts.

Treatment.—If the eruption is very angry, a calamine lotion may be used; but if comparatively quiet, a stimulating sulphur salve or lotion may be applied, to resolve infiltration, and give a better tone to the vessels. Ichthyol, sphacelinic acid, and other special remedies are advocated as local applications in the treatment of this disease. We have already suggested the directions in which to look for the selection of internal remedies.

Seborrhœa.—When the sebaceous glands themselves are actively inflamed, there is an increased production of sebum, mixed with some inflammatory products. This discharge collects on the surface of the skin, and if there be much stearin or margarine, flakes and crusts form; but if olein be in excess, the discharge is more fluid and greasy. Such a condition may extend over a considerable area, such as the face, scalp, or genitals, or be in localized patches. The surface of such areas is generally reddened, and so eczema is simulated, especially if the skin become excoriated. On the scalp the concreted sebum usually adheres to groups of hairs in asbestos-like sheaths, or forms substantial fatty scales on an ashy-grey ground.

Treatment.—Constitutional remedies (iron and cod-liver oil) are often required in the treatment of seborrhœa. Locally all exudation must be removed from time to time by alkaline or oily applications, such as an alcoholic solution of soap or olive oil, and in the intervals mild stimulants (mercurials, sulphur, carbolic oil) or astringents may be inuncted. If there is much inflammation bland applications are called for.

Milium is a term used to denote the plugging of the glands whilst the ducts remain free. It occurs as little white papules, the size of pins' heads, about the eyes, and the skin must be pricked with a lancet to remove the contents.

Molluscum sebaceum vel contagiosum.—This is a disease of the children of crowded courts and alleys, and more rarely of adults brought in contact with them. From the latter circumstance, and because several children of a street or house or family *may* be affected in succession, it is thought by many to be contagious, though by what agency is obscure. The little growths are sessile or later pedunculated, rounded, with a semi-transparent look, and an aperture on the summit, through which the milky or inspissated contents may be exuded. They grow from the size of pins' points to a large pea or bean, or even much larger, and they may drop off or wither away, or necrose. They come out in crops over a long period; grow very slowly; and tend to disappear spontaneously. In adults they have been of universal distribution in rare cases. The old idea, from their resemblance to a compound racemose gland, was that they are due to a hyperplasia of the sebaceous glands, but later investigations point to their origin from an overgrowth of the rete.

Treatment.—All that is necessary is to thoroughly enucleate the growth, by splitting it from below upwards, and then applying pressure at right angles to the incision.

Sycosis consists in a simple inflammation of the hair-follicles and related parts of the hairy portions of the face, and must be distinguished from *Tinea sycosis*. Pustules are formed around the hairs, and sometimes there is considerable confluence and induration. The disease is very obstinate, and pursues a chronic course. It is due to the invasion of the follicle by micrococci, setting up suppuration, and is therefore a local disease, though the subjects of it are sometimes deteriorated in health.

Treatment.—The hair should be kept cut close by scissors; all crusts removed; and antiseptic applications, such as iodoform or boric acid, kept constantly smeared on. Where much induration exists resolvents are sometimes useful. In all cases benefit results from the extraction of the hairs. Among special applications recommended may be mentioned resorcin, ichthyol, ointment of oleate of copper, and certain salve-soaps. Any impairment of the general health must be remedied, and tonics given.

Xanthoma is a disease which was formerly considered to be due to an affection of the sebaceous glands, but is now known to be a chronic inflammation of the cutis, and therefore does not properly belong to this section. It is characterized by the formation of circumscribed, smooth, soft streaks or patches (*X. planum*), or papules (*X. papulatum*), or nodules composed of confluent papules (*X. tuberosum*), presenting a remarkable lemon, cream, or buff-yellow colour. The plain patches look like chamois leather embedded in the skin, but the nodules are firmer, and may project considerably. Clinically there are several phases. *X. palpebrum* is a fairly common affection of the middle and advanced periods of life, occurring mostly in women, and sometimes running in families. It is limited to the eyelids, and begins as a rule about the left inner canthus, then the right, and eventually involves both lids. The subjects of this complaint suffer often from sick-headaches and functional liver-disturbance. *X. multiplex* is a rare affection, and here the patches form in the folds and creases of the palms, face, neck, ears, scrotum, penis, soles, abdomen, cleft of nates, and back. The eyelids may be affected or not. Macules have also been found in the mucous membrane of the mouth, lips, tongue, palate, trachea, bile-ducks, and other parts. This

general form has been preceded most commonly by persistent jaundice from an organic cause; or by diabetes. Several cases are on record, however, in which there was no jaundice, but the disease began in infancy or childhood; and in the case of two brothers and a sister it was congenital, and probably hereditary. The corium is the seat of a chronic inflammatory change, in which the young cells become distended with oil, and there are large multi-nucleated or giant cells. In chronic cases the cells and intercellular matrix become organized into a new growth of connective tissue, so as to form the tuberose eruption.

Treatment.—No satisfactory method of treatment is known, though any disfiguring patches may be removed by the surgeon.

Diseases of the hair.—We meet with an excessive growth, a deficiency in the production, or abnormal falling of the hair, and with the last condition is usually associated structural degeneration. *Hyper-trichosis*, or excessive growth, may be acquired on naturally hairy parts, or on regions usually free from growth (as the face of women); or be congenital (hairy moles). *Alopecia* signifies all forms of deficiency of hair or baldness, whether congenital or acquired. The baldness of old age (*A. senilis*), commencing at the junction of the scalp with the forehead, most marked at the temples, and on the vertex, is associated with atrophy of the skin and glands. *Alopecia prematura* comprises a number of conditions, and may be brought about by an ill-nourishment of the hair-papillæ from any general lowering of nutrition, as in syphilis, fevers, or the puerperal state; or from local disease, such as lupus, morphea, eczema, psoriasis, and seborrhœa. There is also a common affection (*A. areata vel circumscripta*), seen most frequently in female children, but met with at all ages. The scalp is generally the seat of the loss of hair, though other, especially hairy parts, may be involved, and even the whole body. It is thought to be due to a tropho-neurosis, and commences by the more or less sudden formation of one or several blanched, smooth and glossy, sharply-defined patches, either absolutely bald, or studded, especially about the margins, with a few stumps, which must not be confounded with ringworm hairs. These stumps are very characteristic, presenting an atrophied root, and a club-shaped free end like a !. The bald patches may coalesce, recover, and recur, and the affection as a whole pursues a very chronic course. It is seen occasionally in more than one member of a family. *Canities*, or a state in which grey hair is formed, may be hereditary or a senile change, or may follow great mental distress, neuralgia and other nerve-disorders; it is also seen in tufts in leucoderma, and in alopecia areata during recovery.

Treatment.—The bald patches of alopecia areata are to be stimulated continually by lotions or ointments, containing cantharides, rectified spirit, ammonia, turpentine, spirit of nutmeg, iodine, capsicum, or similar remedies. Repeated blistering has been found useful in some cases; and also the application of resorcine. Internal treatment is often most unsatisfactory, but nervine tonics are usually given. Various methods are employed for hyper-trichosis, amongst others electrolysis, which is the only permanently successful method.

Diseases of the nails.—The nails become implicated in any general mal-nutrition, and white specks and patches form from imperfect cohesion; also striation and transverse grooving may arise from cessation of growth during fevers, and other causes. The clubbing resulting from persistent pulmonary obstruction has been referred to elsewhere. The nails may be shed in pemphigus, and in post-scarlatinal desquama-

tion. Eruptions may form under the nail in psoriasis, lichen planus, syphilis, struma, and variola; and in these and other diseases, such as eczema, pityriasis rubra, and ichthyosis, where the fold whence the nail grows is implicated, the latter becomes imperfectly formed and loosely constructed, dirty, pitted, striated, and opaque. In peripheral and central nerve-lesions also the nails may shed, or take on an abnormal growth. Fungus may attack a nail, as already described (*onychomycosis*). Apart from all these conditions, there occurs a curious idiopathic affection, which tends to attack all the nails of both hands and feet. They become discoloured, pitted, brittle, disintegrated, and raised at the free end from their beds by a mass of accumulated epithelium. Paronychia, in-growing toe-nail, and hypertrophied toe-nail will be found discussed in surgical works.

INDEX.

- Abdomen, general and local enlargements of the, 674, 675.
— clinical examination of the, 671.
Abdominal aneurism, 660.
— perforations and ruptures, 686.
— reflex, 943.
— typhus, 140.
— walls, rheumatism of, 321.
Abscess, 65; cerebral, 1044; hepatic, 786; pulmonary, 480; renal, 891; retro-pharyngeal, 389.
Absorbent system, diseases of the, 924.
Acephalocyst, 795.
Achorion Schönleinii, 1145.
Achromatopsia, 1014.
Acne, 1148.
Acromegaly, 358.
Actinomycosis, 285.
Acupuncture, 52.
Acute febrile diseases, diag. of, 104.
— febrile icterus, 131.
— miliary tuberculosis, 307.
— yellow atrophy of liver, 791.
Addison's disease, 837.
Adenie, 928.
Adenitis, 925; chronic, 926.
Adenoid cancer, 360.
— growths, 387.
Adherent pericardium, 607.
Adhesive phlebitis, 665.
Adult spinal paralysis, 1079.
Adynamic fever, 102, 278.
Æsthesiometer, 942.
Ætiology, 2, 4.
Aglobulism, 26.
Agraphia, 988.
Ague, 274; symp., 274; description of a fit, *ib.*; temp., 275; urine, 276; varieties, 276; treat., 279.
Albumin, tests for, 815.
Albuminoid disease, 86.
— — — of arteries, 652.
— — — of glands, 931.
— — — of intestines, 757.
— kidney, 909.
— liver, 794.
— spleen, 827.
Albuminuria, 864.
Albumoses, 847.
Albumosuria, 865.
Alcoholism, 1027.
— chronic, 1029.
Algide cholera, 228.
Alopecia, 1151.
Alveolar cancer, 360.
Amaurosis in lead-poisoning, 1033.
Amnesia, 986.
Amœba coli, 239.
Amœboid leucocytes, 62.
Amphoric breathing, 420.
— echo, 426.
— râles, 424.
— resonance, 426.
Amygdalitis, 380.
Amyloid degeneration, 86.
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 1089, 1097.
Anæmia, 18; general, 34; local, 39.
— cerebral, 1051; treat., 1062.
— of the optic disc, 948.
— of the pancreas, 834.
— idiopathic, progressive, or pernicious 829.
— spinal, 1081.
Anæsthesia, 940, 979.
Analgesia, 940.
Anasarca, 45.
Anatomy, morbid or pathological, 2.
Anchylostomum duodenale, 770.
Aneurism, abdominal, 660.
— cardiac, 636.
— internal, 654.
— of arteries, 653.
— of brain, 1067.
— thoracic, 655.
Angioleucitis, 925.
Angina Ludovici, 390.
— simplex, 379; maligna, 384.
— pectoris, 597; pseudo, 599.
Anidrosis, 1147.
Ankle clonus, 943, 978.
Anorexia, 692.
Anthrax, 250.
Anuria, 841.
Aortic aneurism, thoracic, 655; abdominal, 660.
— murmurs, 579.
— obstruction, 621.
— regurgitation, 622.
Aortitis, 650.
Aphasia, 940, 986.
Aphemia, 986.
Aphonia, hysterical, 460.
Aphthous stomatitis, 366.
Apneumatosis, 509.
Apnoea, 18, 431.
Apoplectic diseases, 1051; diag. of, 1059; prog., 1062; treat., *ib.*
— fit or seizure, 961.
Apoplexy, 36; pulmonary, 475; cerebral, 1049; spinal, 1082.

- Appendicitis, 747.
 Appendicular colic, 747.
 Appetite, disorders of, 692.
 Arteries, clinical phenomena connected with, 564; diseases of, 650; exam. of, 582.
 — aneurism of, 653.
 — calcification of, 652.
 — fatty degeneration of, 652.
 — thrombosis of, 667.
 Arteritis, 650.
 Arthritis deformans, 323.
 — senile, 319.
 Articular gout, 331.
 — rheumatism, acute, 310; chronic, 319.
 Ascaris lumbricoides, 765.
 — mystax, 765.
 Ascites, 45, 688; symp., 688; phys. signs, 689; treat., 691.
 Asiatic cholera, 228.
 Asphyxia, 18, 432.
 Asthenia, 18.
 Asthenic fever, 102, 278.
 Asthma, 503.
 — bronchial, 503.
 — cardiac, 562.
 — diaphragmatic, 508.
 — haemic, 503.
 — spasmodic, 503; symp., 504; diag., 506; treat., *ib.*
 Atavism, 7.
 Ataxic fever, 102.
 — paraplegia, 531.
 Ataxy, locomotor, 1091.
 Atelectasis, 509.
 Atheroma, 650.
 Atonic dyspepsia, 711.
 Atrophic cirrhosis, 801.
 Atrophy, 74.
 — of arteries, 652.
 — of the heart, 630.
 — of the liver, 793; acute yellow, 791; chronic, 804.
 — of the optic disc, 950.
 — of the pancreas, 834.
 — of skin, 1141.
 — progressive muscular, 1103.
 Attrition sounds, 424.
 Auditory vertigo, 958.
 Aura epileptica, 1005.
 — hysterica, 1014.
 Auscultation, 407.
 — of the heart, 568, 573.
 — of the respiratory organs, 418.
 Bacilluria, septic, 859.
 Bacillus anthracis, 250.
 — coli commune, 742.
 — of cholera, 228.
 — of diphtheria, 204.
 — of glanders, 247.
 — of influenza, 224.
 — of syphilis, 290.
 — of tetanus, 259.
 — tuberculosis, 297; detection of, 512.
 Bacteruria, 859.
- Barbiers, 283.
 Basedow's disease, 933.
 Basic impulse, 571.
 Bell's palsy, 972.
 Bell-sound, 426.
 Beriberi, 283.
 Bile-ducts, inflammation of, 789.
 — obstruction of, 778.
 Bilharzia haematoia, 872, 916.
 Biliary calculi, 815; colic, 816.
 Bilious cholera, 235.
 Bladder, distended, 861.
 — inflammation of, 922.
 — worm, 766.
 Blood and circulation, abnormal conditions of, 25.
 — clinical examination of, 25.
 — clotting of, 44.
 — determination of, 62.
 — extravasation of, 53.
 Blood-concretions, intra-cardiac, 41.
 Blood-letting, 70.
 Blowing breathing, 420.
 Bloody flux, 239.
 Blue disease, 28, 648.
 Body temperature, changes in, 89.
 Borborygmi, 693.
 Bothrioccephalus cordatus, 765.
 — latus, 765, 769.
 Bovine tuberculosis, 298.
 Bowels, disorders of the, 735.
 Brachycardia or Bradycardia, 591.
 Brain, diseases of, special clinical phenomena of, 994.
 — and membranes, acute inflammations of, 1038.
 — — — adventitious growths in connection with, 1066.
 — anæmia of, 1051.
 — cancer of, 1066.
 — chronic diseases of, 1063; diag., prog., and treat., 1070.
 — congestion of, 1049.
 — embolism of, 1056.
 — haemorrhage into, 1052.
 — hypertrophy of, 1070.
 — sarcoma of, 1066.
 — sclerosis of, 1080.
 — softening of, acute, 1056; chronic, 1058.
 — syphilitic disease of, 1066.
 — thrombosis in vessels of, 1056.
 — tubercle of, 1066.
 — tumours of, 1066.
 Breakbone fever, 282.
 Breath-sounds, 418.
 Bright's disease, acute, 897; treat., 901; chronic, 902; diag., prog., and treat., 911.
 — changes in arteries in, 652.
 Bronchi, diseases of the, 462.
 — dilatation of, 473.
 — inflammation of, 462.
 Bronchial asthma, 503.
 — breathing, 418.
 — catarrh, acute, 462; chronic, 469.

- Bronchial phthisis, 930.
 Bronchiectasis, 473.
 Bronchitis, acute catarrhal, 462; symp., 463;
 diag., 466; treat., 466.
 — chronic, 469; phys. signs., 470;
 treat., 470.
 — capillary, 464.
 — mechanical, 465.
 — plastic or croupous, 472.
 — primary, 463.
 — secondary, 465.
 Bronchocele, 932.
 Bronchophony, 425.
 Bronchorrhœa, 470.
 Broncho-pneumonia, 489.
 Brow-ague, 984.
 "Bruit de pot felé," 417.
 "Buffy-coat," 69.
 Bulbar paralysis, 1105.
 Bulimia, 693.
 Bullous inflammations of skin, 1128.
- Cachexia, 129.
 Calcareous degeneration, 81.
 Calcification, 81; of arteries, 652; of
 tubercle, 365.
 Calculus, biliary, 815.
 — pancreatic, 834.
 — urinary, 919.
 Cancer, 359; anat. char., 360; structure,
 361; path., 359; symp., 362.
 — of the brain, 1066.
 — of the gall-bladder, 814.
 — of the glands, 931.
 — of the intestines, 754.
 — of the kidney, 914.
 — of the liver, 799.
 — of the lungs, 538.
 — of the œsophagus, 396.
 — of the peritoneum, 685.
 — of the spleen, 827.
 — of the stomach, 724.
 Cancroid, 360.
 Cancrum oris, 367.
 Capillary bronchitis, 464.
 Carcinoma, 359.
 Cardiac affections, chronic, general diag.
 of, 637; prog., 638; treat., 641.
 — action, disordered, 591.
 — aneurism, 636.
 — asthma, 562.
 — dyspnœa, 562.
 — enlargement, 625.
 — impulse, 569.
 — movements, 568.
 — murmurs, 576.
 — percussion, 572.
 — region, changes in, 568.
 — — — peculiar sensations over, 571.
 — sounds, 573.
 — symptoms, 561.
 — thrombosis, 663.
 Cardialgia, 692.
 Cardiogram, 569.
 Cardiograph, the, 568, 569.
- Cardio-sphygmograph, 567.
 Carnification, 510.
 Caseation, 78; of tubercle, 304.
 Case-taking, method of, 12.
 Casts, 857.
 Catalepsy, 1017.
 Catarrh, 437.
 — bronchial, acute, 462; chronic, 469.
 — dry, 470.
 — enteric, 742.
 — epidemic, 223.
 — gastric, 716, 719.
 — intestinal, 742.
 — — — chronic, 742.
 — laryngeal, acute, 443; chronic, 448.
 — pharyngeal, acute, 379; chronic, 386.
 — vesical, 922.
 Catarhal fever, 130.
 — inflammation 67.
 — — — of skin, 1125.
 — bronchitis, 462.
 — laryngitis, 440, 443.
 — nephritis, 890.
 — pharyngitis, 379.
 — pneumonia, 489.
 — stomatitis, 365.
 — tracheitis, 440, 443.
 Causation of disease, 4.
 Cavernous breathing, 420.
 — râles, 424.
 Cavities in lungs, signs of, 526.
 Cell-proliferation, 63.
 Cellulitis of the neck, 390.
 Cephalalgia, 955.
 Cephalodynia, 320.
 Cerebral abscess, 1044.
 — anaemia, 1051.
 — congestion or hyperæmia, 1049.
 — diseases, chronic, diag., 1070; prog.,
 1071; treat., *ib.*
 — embolism and thrombosis, 1056.
 — haemorrhage, 1051; symp., 1053.
 — inflammations, acute, 1038; diag.,
 1046; prog. and treat., 1047.
 — sclerosis, 1089.
 — softening, 1056; chronic, 1062.
 — tumour, 1066.
 — vomiting, 703.
 Cerebritis, acute, 1044; treat., 1047.
 Cerebro-spinal fever, or epidemic menin-
 gitis, 266.
 — — — sclerosis, 1099.
 Cervical paraplegia, 969.
 Cestodes, description of, 767.
 Changes in bodily temperature, 89.
 Charbon, 250.
 Cheesy degeneration, 78.
 Chest, physical examination of, 403.
 — shape and size of, 408.
 — deformities of, 408.
 Chest-walls, rheumatism of, 321.
 Cheyne-Stokes' respiration, 562.
 Chicken-pox, 193.
 Child-crowding, 458.
 Chloasma uterinum, 1143.

- Chlorosis, 34.
 Cholagogues, 776.
 Cholelithiasis, 815.
 Cholera, Asiatic, algide, or malignant, 228;
 anat. char., 230; symp., 231; comp.
 and seq., 234; var., *ib.*; path., 229;
 diag., 235; prog., 235; treat., *ib.*
 — morbus, 228.
 Choleraic diarrhoea, 234.
 Cholerine, 234.
 Cholesteatoma of brain, 1067.
 Chondroid cancer, 361.
 — tissue, 348.
 Chorea, 1020.
 Chronic rheumatic arthritis, 323.
 — ulcer of stomach, 721.
 Chylous urine, 855, 867.
 Chyluria, 867.
 Circulatory organs, diseases of the, clinical
 characters, 561; physical exam. of, 567;
 general therapeutics of, 588.
 Cirrhosis of the liver, 801.
 — of lung, 491.
 Cirrhotic kidney, 906.
 Clavus hystericus, 984.
 Clergyman's sore-throat, 379, 448.
 Clinical history, 11.
 — investigation, modes of, 12.
 — thermometry, 89.
 Clotting of blood, 44.
 Cœcum, inflammation of, 747.
 Cold, a, 437.
 Colic, appendicular, 747.
 — biliary or hepatic, 815.
 — intestinal, 734.
 — nephritic, 921.
 Colitis, 743, 745.
 Colloid cancer, 360.
 — degeneration, 86.
 Colloid in the omentum, 685.
 Coma, 18, 961.
 Comedones, 1148.
 Complications, 17.
 Concussion of spinal cord, 1073.
 Congenital diseases, 7.
 — myotonia, 1116.
 — spastic paraplegia, 1096.
 — syphilis, 292.
 Congestion, 29; active, 30; mechanical,
 venous, passive, *ib.*
 — cerebral, 1049.
 — laryngeal, acute, 440; chronic, 448.
 — of the liver, 784.
 — of the spleen, 820.
 — pulmonary, 474.
 — renal, 890.
 — spinal, 1081.
 Consciousness, disorders of, 960.
 Consecutive nephritis, 892.
 Constipation, 736; symp.; *ib.*; treat.,
 737.
 Constitutional diseases, 129.
 — syphilis, 289.
 Consumption, pulmonary, 511.
 Contagion, 115.
- Contagious diseases, treatment and prevention of, 122.
 Continued fever, 101, 130.
 Continuous malarial fever, 276
 Convulsions, 965.
 Cord, diseases of. *See* Spinal cord.
 Cornification, 305.
 Coryza, 437.
 Cough, 400, 433.
 Coup de soleil, 1037.
 Cowpox, 189.
 Cramp of the stomach, 702.
 Cremasteric reflex, 943.
 Crepitant râles, 422.
 Crisis, 101.
 Croup, spasmodic, 458; spurious, *ib.*;
 treat., 459.
 — true, 444; membranous, *ib.*; treat.,
 446.
 Croupous bronchitis, 472.
 — inflammation, 67.
 — laryngitis, 440, 444.
 — pneumonia, 478.
 — stomatitis, 366.
 Cruveilhier's paralysis, 1103.
 Cry fremitus, 413; resonance, 425.
 Crystalline pock, 184.
 Cutaneous diseases, 1117.
 — erysipelas, 198.
 — inflammation, 66.
 Cyanosis, 28, 648.
 Cynanche laryngea, 443.
 — maligna, 384.
 — pharyngea, 379.
 — tonsillaris, 380.
 — trachealis, 444.
 Cystic cancer, 361.
 — disease of kidney, 917.
 Cysticercus, 766.
 — of brain, 1067.
 Cystin, 855.
 Cystitis, 922.
 Cysts in pancreas, 835.
 Dandy fever, 282.
 Defervescence, 100.
 Degeneration, fatty, 77; caseous, 78;
 parenchymatous or granular, 81; vitreous
 or waxy, *ib.*; mineral or calcareous, *ib.*;
 fibroid, 83; pigmentary, 84; mucoid,
 85; colloid, 86; albuminoid, *ib.*
 Degenerative reactions, 946.
 Delirium, 96c.
 — tremens, 1028.
 Delitescence, 64.
 Dengue, 282.
 Derbyshire neck, 932.
 Dermatitis, 1126.
 Dermatolysis, 1139.
 Dermatophytic affections, 1145; dermato-
 zoic ditto, 1144.
 Descending degeneration, 1098.
 Descending optic neuritis, 949.
 Desquamative nephritis, acute, 897.
 — — — chronic, 904.

- Determination of blood, 30.
 Diabetes insipidus, 878.
 — mellitus, 878.
 Diagnosis, 2 ; general remarks on, 18.
 Diapedesis, 63.
 Diaphragmatic asthma, 508.
 Diarrhoea, 739 ; summer, 235.
 Diathesis, 129.
 Diathetic diseases of skin, 1135.
 Dietetic treatment, 22.
 Diffused cerebral sclerosis, 1091.
 Dilatation of bronchi, 473.
 — of oesophagus, 397.
 — of stomach, 727.
 Diphtheria, 203 ; symp., 208 ; clinical varieties of, 209 ; comp. and seq., 210 ; diag., 212 ; treat., *ib.*
 Diphtheritic inflammation, 67.
 — laryngitis, 440.
 Diphtheritic and allied paralyses, 1035.
 — stomatitis, 366.
 Disc, optic, ophthalmoscopic appearances of, 947.
 Disease, causation of, 2, 4 ; definition, 1 ; mode of invasion, course, etc., 11.
 Diseases, nomenclature and classification of, 129.
 Disseminated paralysis, 972.
 — pneumonia, 489.
 — sclerosis, 1098.
 Distoma crassum, 765
 — hepaticum, 778.
 — heterophyes, 765.
 Dochmius duodenalis, 765.
 Dorsodynia, 320.
 Dropsical fluid, 46.
 Dropsy, 45 ; spurious, 45 ; path. conditions producing, 46 ; symp., 48 ; diag., 49 ; orig., seat, and extent, 49 ; treat., 50.
 — of the gall-bladder, 813.
 — of kidney, 917.
 — ovarian, 45, 690.
 — of the peritoneum, 688.
 — of the pleura, 557.
 — pericardial, 608.
 Dry mouth, 376.
 Duchenne's paralysis, 1112.
 Duodenitis, 742.
 Dynamometer, 942.
 Dysæsthesia, 940, 981.
 Dysentery, 239.
 Dysidrosis, 1148.
 Dyspepsia, 107.
 — acute, 710.
 — atonic, 711.
 — chronic, 711.
 — irritative, 711.
 — nervous, 711.
 Dysphagia, 391.
 Dyspnœa, 431 ; inspiratory, 412 ; cardiac, 562.
 Dysuria, 841.
 Ecchymosis, 53.
 Echinococcus hominis, 795.
 Eclampsia, 965.
 Ecstasy, 1017.
 Ecthyma, 1131.
 Eczema, 1126.
 Effusion, 64.
 Electricity, uses of, 944, 976.
 Elephantiasis, 870.
 Emboli, origin of, and anatomical changes resulting from, 41.
 Embolic access, 43.
 Embolism, 41.
 — cerebral, 1056.
 — renal, 890.
 — splenic, 821.
 Emesis, 702.
 Emphysema, interstitial or interlobular, 502.
 — of lungs, 494.
 — vesicular, 495 ; anat. char., 498 ; symp., 500 ; phys. signs, *ib.* ; treat., 501.
 Emprosthotonus, 260.
 Empyema, 545.
 Encephalitis, 1044.
 Encephaloid cancer, 360.
 Endarteritis deformans, 650.
 Endemic diseases, 125.
 Endocardial murmurs, 568, 576.
 Endocarditis, acute, 609 ; treat., 615.
 — chronic, 618.
 English cholera, 235.
 Enlarged liver, 775.
 Enteralgia, 733.
 Enteric catarrh, 742.
 — fever, 140.
 Enteritis, 742.
 Epidemic catarrh, 223.
 — cerebro-spinal meningitis, 266.
 — cholera, 228.
 — roseola, 175.
 Epidemics, 125.
 Epigastric impulse, 571.
 — reflex, 943.
 Epilepsy, 1004 ; symp., 1005 ; stages of attack, 1006 ; treat., 1008.
 — gravior, 1005 ; mitior, 1005.
 Epileptiform hysteia, 1016.
 — seizures, 1007.
 Epistaxis, 53.
 Epithelioma—epithelial cancer, 360.
 Equinia, 247.
 — mitis, 249.
 Erratic erysipelas, 198.
 Eructation, 693.
 Erysipelas, 194 ; symp., 196 ; var., 198 ; treat., 199.
 Erythema, 1123.
 Erythematous inflammations, 1123.
 Essential fever, 95.
 — paralysis of children, 1078.
 Etiology. *See* Aëtiology.
 Examination of patients, modes of, etc., 12.
 Exanthematic typhus, 131.
 Excoriation, 66.
 Exophthalmic goitre, 932.

- Expectoration, 433.
 Extravasation, 53.
 Exudation, 64.
 Eye, paralysis of, 974.
- Facial erysipelas, 198.
 — hemi-atrophy, 993.
 — paralysis, 972.
- Fainting, 595.
 Falling sickness, 1004.
 Famine fever, 158.
 Farcy, 247.
 — buttons and buds, 249.
- Fatty degeneration and metamorphosis, 77.
 Fatty degeneration of heart, 631.
 — — of arteries, 652.
 — disease of the heart, 631.
 — growth or infiltration, 79.
 — — of heart, 631.
 — kidney, 909.
 — liver, 793.
 — pancreas, 834.
- Favus, 1145.
- Febricula, 130.
- Febrile diseases, clinical investigation of acute, 104.
- Fever, 95; path. and anatomical changes, 97; symp., 99; course and terminations, 100; diag., 104; prog., 106; types, 1011; treat., *ib.*
 — cerebro-spinal, 266.
 — continued, 101.
 — dandy, 282.
 — intermittent, 274.
 — malarial, 268.
 — relapsing, 158.
 — remittent, 276.
 — rheumatic, 310.
 — scarlet, 162.
 — typhoid, 140.
 — typhus, 131.
- Fibrinous exudation, 64.
- Fibroma, 1139.
- Fibroid degeneration, 83; of lungs, 491.
 — phthisis, 491.
- Filaria sanguinis hominis, 867.
- Follicular pharyngitis, 380.
 — sore-throat, 386.
 — stomatitis, 366.
- Fomites, 116.
- Fremitus, 413.
 Friction-fremitus, 414; sounds, 424.
- Friedreich's disease, 1095.
- Front-tap contraction, 943.
- Fungous stomatitis, 367.
- Fungus haematoles, 360.
- Gall-bladder, affections of the, 813.
 — stones, 815; symp., 816; treat., 818.
- Galloping consumption, 516.
- Gangrene, 66.
 — of the lung, 493.
- Gangrenous erysipelas, 198.
 — stomatitis, 367.
- Gastralgia, 700.
- Gastric affections, chronic, diag., 730; prog., 731; treat., 732.
 — cancer, 724.
 — catarrh, acute, 716; anat. char., *ib.*; symp., 717; treat., 718.
 — — chronic, 719.
 — fever, 150.
 — ulcer, 721.
- Gastritis, acute, 716.
 — chronic, 719.
- Gastrodynia, 700.
- Gastrorrhœa, 721.
- Gelatiniform cancer, 360.
- General anaemia, 34.
 — hyperæmia, 27.
 — paralysis, 969.
 — venous stagnation, 28.
- Germ theory of disease, 118.
- German measles, 175.
- Germination of cells, 63.
- Giddiness, 956.
- Gin-drinker's liver, 801.
- Glanders, 247.
- Glands of skin, affections of, 1147.
 — absorbent, diseases of, 924.
- Glioma of brain, 1067.
- Glomerulo-nephritis, 163, 897.
- Glossitis, acute, 370; chronic, 371; dissicans, 371.
- Glosso-labio-laryngeal paralysis, 1105.
- Glottis, spasm of, 458.
- Gluteal reflex, 943.
- Glycosuria, 878.
- Goitre, 932; exophthalmic, 932.
- Gonorrhœal rheumatism, 322.
- Gout, 326; acute, 331; chronic, 332; retrocedent, 333; diag., 334; treat., 336.
- Granular degeneration, 81.
 — kidney, 906.
 — liver, 802.
 — pharyngitis, 386.
- Gravel, 919.
- Graves' disease, 933.
- Great vessels, malformations of the, 646.
- Grey granulations, 303.
- Gummata, 291.
- Gummatous hepatitis, 806.
- Gyngivitis ulcerosa, 366.
- Hæmacytometer, 825.
- Hæmatemesis, 53, 693, 705; treat., 706.
- Hæmatinuria, 873.
- Hæmatoidine, 84.
- Hæmatoma in lungs, 542.
- Hæmaturia, 53, 872.
- Hæmoglobinometer, 25.
- Hæmoglobinuria, 873.
- Hæmophilia, 59.
- Hæmoptysis, 53, 435, 523.
- Hæmorrhage, 53; ætiol., *ib.*; classes of, *ib.*; anat. char., 54; symp., 55; treat., 57.
 — — cerebral and meningeal, 1051.
 — — into the lungs, 474.
 — — into the pleura, 557.

- Hæmorrhage, intestinal, 741.
 —— of pancreas, 835.
 —— pericardial, 609.
 —— pulmonary, 474.
 —— spinal, 1082.
 —— ventricular, 1055.
 Hæmorrhagic diathesis, 59.
 —— infarction, 42.
 —— infarction of spleen, 821.
 Hæmorthorax, 557.
 Hair-headed worm, 765.
 Haut mal, 1005.
 Hay asthma, 506; treat., 508.
 Headache, 955.
 Heart, acute diseases and sudden lesions of, 609.
 —— acute degenerations of, 616.
 —— atrophy of, 630; brown, 85.
 —— auscultation of, 573.
 —— chronic affections of, 618; diag., 637; prog., 638; treat., 641.
 —— clinical phenomena connected with, 561.
 —— connective-tissue hypertrophy and fibroid disease of, 634.
 —— dilatation of, 625.
 —— disordered action of, 591.
 —— enlargements of the, 625; symp., 627; phys. signs, 628.
 —— examination of, 568.
 —— fatty disease of, 631.
 —— gouty, 632.
 —— hypertrophy of, 625.
 —— irregularity and intermittency of, 591.
 —— malformations and malpositions of, 646.
 —— new growths in, 636.
 —— palpitation of, 591.
 —— parenchymatous degeneration of, 616.
 —— peculiar degenerations of, 635.
 —— rupture of, 617.
 —— sounds of, 568, 573.
 —— valves, etc., of, affections of, 618.
 Heart-burn, 692.
 Heart-hurry, paroxysmal, 592.
 Hectic fever, 102, 103.
 Helminthiasis, 765.
 Hemi-anæsthesia, 980.
 Hemichorea, 1022.
 Hemicrania, 1001.
 Hemiplegia, 969, 971.
 Hepar adiposum, 793.
 Hepatalgia, 778.
 Hepatic abscess, 786; treat., 790.
 —— affections, chronic, general diag., 807; prog., 809; treat., 810.
 —— colic, 816.
 —— congestion, 784.
 —— enlargements, characters of, 808.
 —— system, general therapeutics of, 776.
 Hereditary disease, 6.
 Hernia, 758.
 Herpes, 1128.
 Hip-gout, 984.
 Hippocratic succussion, 407.
 Histology, morbid, 2.
 Hob-nailed liver, 802.
 Hooping-cough, 219.
 Horn-pock, 185.
 Hodgkin's disease, 823, 928.
 Hydatid fremitus, 672.
 —— tumour of the liver, 795; anat. char., 796; symp., 798; treat., 811.
 —— tumour of brain, 1066.
 —— —— of kidney, 916.
 —— —— of lung, 542.
 —— —— of peritoneum, 685.
 —— —— of spleen, 827.
 Hydræmia, 26.
 Hydrocele, 46.
 Hydrocephalus, 45; acute, 1041; chronic, 1069.
 Hydrometria, 46.
 Hydronephrosis, 46, 917.
 Hydropericardium, 45, 608.
 Hydrophobia, 254.
 Hydro-pneumothorax, 558.
 Hydrops, 45.
 —— vesicæ fellæ, 813.
 Hydrothorax, 45, 557.
 Hygienic treatment, 22.
 Hypæmia, 26.
 Hypæsthesia, 940, 979.
 Hypalbuminosis, 26.
 Hyperæmia, general, 27; local, 29.
 —— cerebral, 1049.
 —— of the optic disc, 948.
 —— of the liver, 784.
 —— of the lungs, 475.
 —— of the spleen, 820.
 —— renal, 890.
 Hyperæsthesia, 940, 981.
 Hyperalbuminosis, 26.
 Hyperidrosis, 1147.
 Hyperinosis, 26.
 Hyperplasia, 73.
 Hyperpyrexia, 102.
 Hypertrophic cirrhosis, 803.
 Hypertrophy, 73; fatty, 79.
 —— of the brain, 1070.
 —— of the glands, 928.
 —— of the heart, 625.
 —— of the liver, 803.
 —— of the pancreas, 834.
 —— of the skin, 1138.
 —— of the spleen, 822.
 Hypnosis, 26.
 Hypochondriasis, 1019.
 Hysteria, etc., 1011; symp., 1012; treat., 1017.
 Hystero-epilepsy, 1016.
 Ichthyosis, 1026.
 Icterus, 778.
 Idiopathic anæmia, 829.
 —— bronchitis, 463.
 —— parotitis, 217.
 Idiosyncrasy, 6.
 Immunity, 121.
 Impetigo, 1126; contagiosa, 1130.

- Indigestion, 707.
 Infantile paralysis, 1078.
 — scurvy, 341.
 Infarction, haemorrhagic, 41; of spleen, 821; renal, 890.
 Infection, 116.
 Inflammation, 60; changes in blood-vessels, etc., 61; in affected tissues, 63; path. terminations, and products, 64; gen. morbid anat., 66; path., 60; symp., 68; treat., 69.
 — of arteries, 650.
 — of the bile-ducts, 789; treat., 790.
 — of the bladder, 922.
 — of the brain and its membranes, 1038; diag., prog., and treat., 1046.
 — of the bronchi, 462.
 — of the gall-bladder, 813.
 — of the glands, 925.
 — of the heart, 615.
 — of the intestines, 742.
 — of the kidney, 891.
 — of the larynx and trachea, 440.
 — of the liver, 785; treat., 790.
 — of the lungs, 478.
 — of the mouth, 365.
 — of the mucous membranes, 67.
 — of the oesophagus, 392.
 — of the pancreas, 833.
 — of the pericardium, 600.
 — of the peritoneum, 676.
 — of the pleura, 542.
 — of the skin, 1123.
 — of the spinal cord and its membranes, 1074, 1076; diag., 1087; prog., 1088; treat., 1088.
 — of the spleen, 820.
 — of the stomach, 716.
 — of the throat, 378.
 — of the tongue, 379.
 — suppurative, 65.
 Inflammatory exudation, 64.
 — fever, 102.
 Influenza, 223; symp., 225; diag., 226; treat., *ib.*
 Inoculated syphilis, 290.
 Inoculation, 110; of vaccine-lymph, 189.
 Inoculations, preventive, 124.
 Inorganic murmurs, 580.
 Insensibility, 961.
 Insolation, 1037.
 Insomnia, 963.
 Inspection, 405.
 Intercostal neuralgia, 984.
 Interlobular emphysema, 502.
 Intermittent fever, 274.
 — heart, 592.
 Internal aneurisms, 654.
 Interstitial absorption, 66; emphysema, 502; hepatitis, 501; nephritis, chronic, 906; pneumonia, 491.
 Intestinal catarrh, 742.
 — colic, 734.
 — haemorrhage, 741.
 — new formations and ulcerations, 753.
 Intestinal obstruction, 757; anat. char., 759; symp., 760; diag., 761; treat., 764.
 — perforation, 145.
 — phthisis, 755.
 — worms, 765; description, 767; treat., 773.
 Intestines, accumulations in, 757, 762.
 — albuminoid disease of, 757.
 — cancer of, 754.
 — compression of, 758, 763.
 — constriction of, 758.
 — incarceration of, 758.
 — inflammation of, 742.
 — intus-susception of, 758, 763.
 — invagination of, 758.
 — perforation of, 686.
 — rotation of, 758.
 — strangulation of, 758, 763.
 — stricture of, 758, 763.
 — torsion of, 758.
 — tubercle of, 755.
 — ulcer of, 753.
 Introduction, 1.
 Intus-susception, 758, 763.
 Invagination, 758.
 Irregular heart, 592.
 — paralysis, 972.
 Irritable heart, 593.
 Irritative dyspepsia, 711.
 Ischæmia of the optic disc, 948.
 Ischuria, 841.
 Itch, the, 1145.
 Itching, 1143.
 Jaundice, 778; anat. char., 780; symp., 781; diag., 782; prog., 783; treat., 783.
 Keloid, 1138.
 Kidney, cancerous growths in, 914; diag., prog., and treat., 918.
 — cirrhotic, 906.
 — congestion of, 890.
 — cystic disease of, 917; treat., 918.
 — dropsy of, 917.
 — fatty, 909.
 — granular contracted, 906.
 — horse-shoe, 860.
 — hydatid disease of, 859.
 — lardaceous or albuminoid, 909.
 — large, white, smooth, 904.
 — movable or floating, 860.
 — parasitic growths in, 916.
 — pelvis of, inflammation of, 892.
 — suppurative inflammation of, 891; general diag., prog., and treat., 896.
 — tubercular disease of, 915; treat., 918.
 — tumour, 859.
 Kiesteine, 855.
 Knee-jerk, 943, 978.
 Landry's paralysis, 970.
 Lardaceous disease, 86.
 — — — of the glands, 931.
 — — — kidney, 909.

- Lardaceous liver, 794.
 —— spleen, 827.
 Laryngeal affections, chronic, diag., prog., and treat. of, 455.
 —— catarrh, 443; chronic, 448.
 —— paralysis, 460.
 —— phthisis, 449.
 —— sound, 418.
 Laryngismus stridulus, 443, 458.
 Laryngitis, acute, 440.
 —— acute catarrhal, 440, 443.
 —— chronic, 448.
 —— croupous or plastic, 440, 444.
 —— oedematous, 440, 444; treat. of, 448.
 Laryngoscope, uses of, 401.
 Larynx, acute congestion and inflammation of, 440.
 —— chronic organic diseases of, 448.
 —— examination of, 401.
 —— functional or nervous affections of, 458.
 —— morbid growths in, 454.
 —— syphilitic disease of, 452.
 —— tuberculosis of, 449.
 —— ulcers of, 451, 453.
 Lateral sclerosis, 454.
 Lead-poisoning, 1032.
 Leptomeningitis spinalis, 1074, 1083.
 Leucocytes, 62.
 Leucocythaemia, 26, 822.
 Leucocytosis, 26.
 Leucoderma or Leucopathia, 1143.
 Leukæmia, 822.
 Lichen, 1131.
 Liquor puris, 65.
 Liver, acute inflammatory diseases of the, 785; diag., prog., and treat., 790.
 —— affections, chronic, general diag. of, 807; prog., 809; treat., 810.
 —— albuminoid disease of, 794.
 —— and appendages, diseases of, clinical characters of, 774.
 —— atrophy of, 793, 801.
 —— cancerous growths of, 799.
 —— chronic diseases of, 793.
 —— cirrhosis of, 801.
 —— congestion of, 784.
 —— fatty, 793.
 —— hydatid tumour of, 795.
 —— hypertrophy of, 793.
 —— inflammation of, 785.
 —— lardaceous, 794.
 —— rickety, 352.
 —— syphilitic, 806.
 —— tuberculosis of, 806.
 Liver-fluke, 778.
 Lobar pneumonia, 478.
 Lobular pneumonia, 489.
 Local asphyxia, 667.
 —— diseases, 364.
 —— paralysis, 972.
 —— syncope, 667.
 Lock-jaw, 258.
 Locomotor ataxy, 1091.
 Lumbago, 321.
- Lungs, brown induration of, 476.
 —— cancer of, 538.
 —— cirrhosis of, 491.
 —— emphysema of, 495.
 —— gangrene of, 493.
 —— haemorrhage into, 475.
 —— hydatids of, 542.
 —— hyperæmia of, 475.
 —— inflammation of, 478.
 —— morbid formations in, 538, 542.
 —— œdema of, 474.
 —— syphilitic disease of, 540.
 —— tubercular disease of, 511.
 Lupus, 1141.
 Lymph, 64.
 Lymphadenoma, 823.
 Lymphadenosis, 928.
 Lymphangiectasis, 927.
 Lymphangioma, 927.
 Lymphangitis, 925.
 Lymphatic dilatation, 927.
 —— leucocythaemia, 823.
 Lymphoma, 928.
 Lymphorrhagia, 928.
 Lymphorrhœa, 928.
 Lympho-sarcoma, malignant, 928.
 Lysis, 101.
- Maculæ, 1118.
 Malaria or marsh-miasm, 268; origin and propagation, 269; nature, 270; mode of entrance, 272.
 Malarial cachexia, 278.
 —— diseases, 274.
 Malformations and malpositions of heart and great vessels, 646.
 Malignant growths, 359; of lungs, 538.
 —— endocarditis, 611.
 —— fever, 277.
 —— lympho-sarcoma, 928.
 —— pustule, 250.
 Malignant type of fever, 103.
 Malta fever, 284.
 Marasmus, 75.
 Masked intermittent, 278.
 Marsh-miasm, 268.
 Maxillary nerve, paralysis of, 975.
 Measles, 171; symp., 171; varieties, 173; treat., 174.
 Mechanical bronchitis, 465.
 —— phthisis, 528.
 Mediastinal abscess, 669; emphysema, *ib.*
 —— growths and tumours, 670.
 Mediastinitis, 669.
 Mediastinum, diseases of the, 669.
 Medullary cancer, 360.
 Melæna, 53, 693, 741.
 Melanæmia, 27, 84.
 Melanin, 84.
 Melanoderma, 1143.
 Melanotic cancer, 361.
 Melasma, 1043.
 Membranous laryngitis, 440, 444.
 Menière's disease, 956, 958.
 Meningeal haemorrhage, 1051.

- Meningitis, cerebral, simple or primary, 1038.
 — cerebro-spinal, 266.
 — chronic, 1063.
 — spinal, 1074, 1083.
 — tubercular, 1041.
 Menorrhagia, 53.
 Mensuration, 405.
 Mercurial poisoning, 1034.
 — stomatitis, 368.
 — tremors, 1034.
 Metallic poisoning, 1032.
 — tinkling, 426.
 Metamorphosis, 77 ; fatty, *ib.*
 Metastasis, 64.
 Metastatic erysipelas, 198.
 Microsporon furfur, 1147.
 Migraine or megrim, 1001.
 Migration of blood-corpuscles, 62.
 Miliaria, 1148.
 Miliary erysipelas, 198.
 — tubercle, 303.
 — tuberculosis, acute, 307.
 Milium, 1149.
 Mineral degeneration, 81.
 Mitral murmurs, 577.
 — obstruction, 620.
 — regurgitation, 619.
 Mogigraphia, 1110.
 Mollities ossium, 356.
 Molluscum contagiosum vel sebaceum, 1150.
 — fibrosum, 1139.
 Morbid anatomy, 2.
 Morbilli, 171.
 Morphœa, 1139.
 Mortification, 66.
 Morvan's disease, 1109.
 Motor disorders, 965.
 — paralysis, 968.
 Mouth and tongue, diseases of, 364.
 — dry, 376.
 — ulcers of, 372.
 Mucin, 64.
 Muco-enteritis, 742.
 Mucoid degeneration, 85.
 Mucous inflammation, 67.
 — membrane of throat, relaxed, 386.
 — râles, 423.
 Mulberry calculus, 919.
 — rash, 134.
 Multilocular hydatid cyst, 798.
 Multiple neuritis, 1109.
 — sclerosis, 1098.
 Mumps, 217.
 Murmurs, 568, 576.
 Muscles, tests applied to, 942.
 Muscular and tendinous rheumatism, 320.
 — atrophy, progressive, 1103.
 — palsy, 968.
 — paralysis, pseudo-hypertrophic, 1112.
 Myalgia, 320 ; varieties, *ib.* ; treat., 321.
 Myelitis, acute, 1076 ; chronic, 1084.
 Myelogenic leucocytæmia, 823.
 Myo-carditis, acute, 615.
 Myoidema, 524.
 Myotonia, congenital, 1116.
 Myxoedema, 49, 936.
 Myxoma of brain, 1067.
 Nails, diseases of, 1151.
 Nasal diphtheria, 209.
 Necrobiosis, 74.
 Nematodes, characters of, 768.
 Nephritic colic, 921.
 Nephritis, desquamative or tubal, acute 897 ; chronic, 903.
 — catarrhal, 890.
 — interstitial, chronic, 906.
 — suppurative, 891.
 Nerve-centres, sclerosis of, 1089 ; treat., 1102.
 Nervous diseases, localization of, 993.
 — — — secondary atrophic lesions in, 989.
 — dyspepsia, 711.
 — system, diseases of the, clinical characters, 939 ; phys. and skilled exam., 941.
 — uses of electricity in diagnosis of, 944.
 Nervous and muscular systems, general therapeutics of, 951.
 Neuralgia, 981 ; varieties, 983 ; treat., 985.
 Neurasthenia spinalis, 1073.
 Neuritis, multiple or peripheral, 1109.
 — optic, 949.
 Noma, 367.
 Numerical hypertrophy, 73.
 Nutmeg liver, 784.
 Nystagmus, 941.
 Obesity, 81.
 Obsolescence of tubercle, 305.
 Obstruction, aortic, 621.
 — intestinal, 757.
 — mitral, 620.
 — of the absorbent vessels, 926.
 — of the œsophagus, 395.
 — pulmonary, 624.
 — pyloric, 727.
 — tricuspid, 624.
 Obstructive suppression of urine, 875.
 Edema, 45.
 — of the disc, 948.
 — of the lungs, 474.
 Edematous erysipelas, 198.
 — laryngitis, 440, 444.
 Egophony, 425.
 Esophagismus, 394.
 Esophagitis, acute, 392.
 Esophagus, diseases of, 391.
 — acute diseases of, 392 functional disorders of, 393 ; chronic organ diseases of, 395 ; diag. and treat., 398.
 Oidium albicans, 367.
 Oinomania, 1027.
 Oligæmia, 26.
 Oligochrœmæmia, 26.
 Oligocythaemia, 26.
 Oliguria, 841.
 Omentum, colloid in, 685.

- Omodynias, 320.
 Ophthalmoscope, uses of, 947.
 Optic disc, hyperæmia of, etc., 948.
 — neuritis, 949.
 Opisthotonus, 260.
 Organs, inflammation of, 68.
 Orthotonus, 260.
 Osseous system, general diseases affecting, 346.
 Osteo-arthritis, 323.
 Osteo-malacia, 356.
 Osteoid cancer, 361.
 — tissue, 349.
 Ovarialgia, 1014.
 Ovarian dropsy, 45.
 — tumour, physical signs of, 690.
 Oxyuris vermicularis, 770.
 Pachymeningitis, spinal, 1074, 1083.
 Palpation, 405.
 Palpitation, 591; symp., 593; treat., 594.
 Palsy, muscular, 968; wasting, 1103;
 Scrivener's, 1110; shaking, 1114.
 Paludal fevers, 268.
 Pancreas, diseases of the, 832.
 Pandemic wave, 127.
 Papillary stomatitis, 366.
 Papular inflammations of skin, 1131.
 Paracentesis, 52.
 — abdominis, 691; thoracis, 551.
 Paraesthesiae, 940.
 Paraglobulin, 847.
 Paralysis agitans, 1114.
 — ascendens acuta, 1080.
 — bulbar, 1105.
 — Cruveilhier's, 1103.
 Paralysis of children, essential, 1078.
 — diphtheritic and allied, 1035.
 — disseminated, 972.
 — Duchenne's, 1112.
 — facial, 972.
 — general, 968.
 — glosso-labio-laryngeal, 1105.
 — in connection with the eye, 974.
 — infantile, 1078.
 — intestinal, 763.
 — Landry's, 1080.
 — laryngeal, 460.
 — motor or muscular, 968.
 — of inferior maxillary nerve, 975.
 — of oesophagus, 393.
 — of pharynx, 975.
 — of tongue, 975.
 — pseudo-hypertrophic muscular, 1112.
 — sensory, 979.
 — spinal, 1078, 1079.
 — treatment of, 975.
 — uses of electricity in, 976.
 Paraplegia, 969; spastic, 971; ataxic, 1095.
 Parasitic diseases of the skin, 916.
 — growths in kidney, 916.
 — stomatitis, 367.
 Parenchymatous degeneration, 81.
 — inflammation, 63.
 — — — of tongue, 370.
 Paresis, 968.
 Parotid bubo, 374.
 Parotitis, idiopathic, 217; symptomatic, 374.
 Paroxysmal haemoglobinuria, 873.
 Patellar reflex, 978.
 Pathological anatomy, 2.
 Pathognomonic symptoms, 17.
 Pathology, definition, etc., 2.
 Pectoriloquy, 425.
 Pediculi; pediculosis, 1144.
 Peliosis rheumatica, 344; 1124.
 Pemphigus, 1129.
 Pentastoma denticulatum, 916.
 Peptones, 848.
 Peptonuria, 865.
 Percussion, 406, 414, 568, 572.
 Perforating ulcer of stomach, 721.
 Perforation, abdominal, 686.
 — of the oesophagus, 393.
 — in typhoid fever, 145.
 Peri-arteritis, 650.
 Pericardial dropsy, 608.
 — haemorrhage, 609.
 — murmurs, 568, 581.
 Pericarditis, acute, 600; symp., 602 phys.
 signs, 603; treat., 605.
 — chronic, 607.
 Pericardium, diseases of, 600.
 — adherent, 607.
 Perihepatitis, 789; treat., 790.
 Perinephritis, 895.
 Perineuritis, 949.
 Peripheral nervous diseases, clinical phe-
 nomena of, 994.
 Peripheral neuritis, 1109.
 Peripleuritis, 556.
 Peritoneum, diseases of, 676.
 — cancer of, 685.
 — dropsy of, 688.
 — hydatids of, 685.
 — inflammation of, acute, 676; chronic,
 684.
 — morbid growths in, 685.
 — tubercle of, 685.
 Peritonitis, acute, 676; anat. char., 677.
 symp., 679; var., 680; treat., 681.
 — chronic, 684; treat., 685.
 Perityphlitis, 747.
 Pernicious anaemia, 35, 829.
 — fever, 277.
 Pertussis, 219.
 Pestis, 261.
 Petechiae, 53.
 Petit mal, 1005.
 Petrification, 81.
 Pharyngeal catarrh, acute, 379; chronic,
 386.
 Pharyngitis, acute catarrhal, 379; follicular,
 380.
 Pharynx, diseases of, 377.
 — — — paralysis of the, 975.
 Phlebitis, 665.
 Phlebolith, 665.
 Phlegmasia dolens, 665.

- Phlegmonous erysipelas, 198.
 Phyctenous erysipelas, 198.
 Phtheiriasis, 1144.
 Phthisis, 511; path., *ib.*; aetiol., 513.
 — acute, 516; treat., 517; diag., *ib.*
 — bronchial, 930.
 — chronic, 518; symp., 521; phys. signs, 524; diag., 529; prog., *ib.*; treat., 530.
 — fibroid, 491.
 — inflammatory forms of, 512.
 Physical examination of the abdomen, 671.
 — — of the chest, 403.
 — — of circulatory organs, 567.
 Piarhæmia, 870.
 Pica, 693.
 Picric acid as test for albumin, 846; for sugar, 848.
 Pigmentary degeneration, 84.
 — changes in skin, 1143.
 Pityriasis rubra, 1134; versicolor, 1147.
 Plague, 261.
 Plantar reflex, 943.
 Plaques, molles, 143; dures, *ib.*
 Plasmodium malariæ, 271.
 Plastic bronchitis, 472.
 — laryngitis, 444.
 Plethora, 27.
 Pleura, diseases of, 542.
 — dropsy of the, 557.
 — haemorrhage into the, 557.
 — malignant disease of the, 560.
 Pleurisy, 542; anat. char., 544; symp., 546; phys. signs, 547; treat., 550; diag., 549.
 Pleuritic friction-fremitus, 414; sounds, 424.
 Pleurodynia, 321.
 Pleurosthotonus, 260.
 Pleximeter, 406.
 Pneumonia, 478.
 — acute croupous, 478; anat. char., 480; symp., 481; phys. signs, 484; term. and dur., 485; prog., 486; diag., 485; treat., 486.
 — catarrhal, 489; diag., 491; treat., *ib.*
 — chronic or interstitial, 491.
 — disseminated or lobular, 489.
 — hypostatic, 479.
 — intermittent, 483.
 — latent, 482.
 — lobar, 478.
 — typhoid, 483.
 Pneumo-pericardium, 609.
 Pneumothorax, 558.
 Podagra, 326.
 Polio-myelitis anterior acuta, 1078; sub-acuta, 1080.
 Polyæmia 26.
 Polycythæmia, 26.
 Polydipsia, 889.
 Polyuria, 841, 889.
 Portable tests for urine, 846.
 Portal congestion, 784.
 Preventive inoculations, 124.
 Primary lateral sclerosis, 1089, 1095.
 Prognosis, 2, 20.
 Progressive anæmia, 35.
 Prolapsus ani, 758.
 Prophylaxis, 281.
 Prosopalgia, 983.
 Proteids in urine, 845.
 Prurigo, 1132.
 Pseudo-angina pectoris, 599.
 Pseudo-leukæmia lymphatica, 928.
 Psoriasis, 1133.
 — lingual, 371.
 Ptyalism, 375.
 Pulmonary artery and branches, thrombosis in, 664.
 — — murmurs, 580.
 — — apoplexy, 475.
 — — breathing, 418.
 — — collapse, 509.
 — — compression, 509.
 — — congestion, 474; symp., 476; phys. signs, 477; prog., *ib.*; treat., *ib.*
 — — consumption, 511.
 — — obstruction and regurgitation, 624.
 — — orifice, disease at, 625.
 — — percussion-sound, 414.
 — — phthisis, 511.
 Pulse, the, 583.
 Purpura, 343; rheumatica, 1124.
 Purulent urine, 866.
 Pus, formation of, 65; kinds of, 65.
 Pustular inflammations of skin, 1130.
 Pustule, malignant, 250.
 Putrid fever, 103.
 Pyæmia, 20c.
 Pyæmic hepatic abscess, 786.
 Pyelitis, 892.
 Pyelo-nephritis, 892.
 Pyle-phlebitis, suppurative, 786.
 Pyloric obstruction and incompetence, 727.
 Pyonephrosis, 892.
 Pyo-pneumothorax, 558.
 Pyrexia, 95.
 Pyrosis, 693.
 Pythogenic fever, 140.
 Pyuria, 866.
 Quartan ague, 276.
 Quinsy, 380.
 Quotidian ague, 276.
 Rabies, 254.
 Rachitis, 346; symp., 353; treat., 355.
 Râles, 407, 421; classification of, 422.
 Raynaud's disease, 667.
 Reaction of degeneration, 946.
 Red softening of brain, 1058.
 Referred pains, 981.
 Reflexes, exam. of, 942.
 — — superficial and deep, 943, 977.
 Regurgitation, aortic, 622.
 — — mitral, 619.
 — — pulmonary, 624.
 — — tricuspid, 624.
 — — of food, 693.

- Relapsing fever, 158 ; symp., 159 ; relapse, 160 ; comp. and seq., 161 ; treat., *ib.*
- Relapsing type of fever, 102.
- Remittent malarial fevers, 276.
- type of fever, 102.
- Renal abscess, 891.
- calculus, 919.
- casts, 857.
- colic, 921.
- congestion, 890.
- embolism, 890.
- infarction, 890.
- tumour, 859.
- Resolution, 64.
- Respiration, movements of, 410 ; sounds of, 418.
- Respiratory organs, diseases of the, clinical phenomena, 400 ; general therapeutics, 427.
- Retching, 693.
- Retinitis, 949.
- Retrocedent gout, 333.
- Retro-pharyngeal abscess, 389.
- Rheumatism, 310 ; diag., 315, 335.
- acute articular, 310.
- chronic articular, 319.
- gonorrhœal, 322.
- muscular, 320.
- Rheumatic fever, 310 ; aetiol., 311 ; anat. char., 312 ; symp., *ib.* ; comp., 314 ; treat., 316.
- gout, 319.
- Rheumatoid arthritis, 223 ; diag., 325, 335.
- Rhonchus, 414.
- Rhonchi, 407, 421.
- Rickets, 346.
- acute, 339, 355.
- in glands, 931.
- Rickety liver, 806.
- Ringworm, 1146.
- Rosacea, 1149.
- Rose, the, 194.
- Roseola, 1123.
- epidemic, 175.
- Rotation of intestine, 758.
- Rötheln, 175.
- Round-worm, 766, 772.
- Rubeola, 171.
- notha, 175.
- Rubella, 175.
- Rupia, 1137.
- Rupture of heart, 617.
- Ruptures, abdominal, 686.
- St. Anthony's fire, 194.
- St. Vitus's dance, 1020.
- Saccharine diabetes, 878.
- Salivary glands, diseases of, 364.
- Salivation, 375.
- Sanguineous apoplexy, 1051.
- Sarcina urinæ, 859.
- ventriculi, 693.
- Saturnism, 1032.
- Scabies, 1145.
- Scalp, rheumatism of, 320.
- Scapular reflex, 943.
- Scapulodynia, 320.
- Scarification, 52.
- Scarlatina or Scarlet fever, 162 ; symp., 164 ; var., 165 ; comp. and seq., 167 ; diag. of, 168 ; prog., *ib.* ; treat., *ib.*
- Schönlein's disease, 344.
- Sciatica, 984.
- Scirrus cancer, 360.
- Scleroderma, 1139.
- Sclerosis of nerve-centres, 1089 ; treat., 1102.
- Scorbutus, 339.
- Scrivener's palsy, 1110.
- Scrofulous diathesis, 301.
- disease of the glands, 930.
- Scurvy, 339.
- Sea-sickness, 703.
- Seat-worm, 765, 772.
- Sebaceous glands, diseases of, 1148.
- Seborrhœa, 1149.
- Secondary fever, 95.
- lateral sclerosis, 1089, 1098.
- lesions in nervous diseases, 989.
- syphilis, 290.
- Semeiology, 2, 11.
- Senile arthritis, 319.
- Sensory paralysis, 979.
- Septic fever, 104.
- Septicæmia, 200.
- Sequelæ, 17.
- Serous inflammations, 67.
- Serum, 64.
- Shaking palsy, 1114.
- Sick-headache, 1001.
- Simple continued fever, 130.
- Skin, diseases of the, 1117.
- diathetic diseases of, 1135.
- hypertrophies and atrophies of, 1138.
- inflammation of, 66.
- inflammatory diseases of, 1123 ; bullous, 1128 ; catarrhal, 1125 ; erythematous, 1123 ; papular, 1131 ; pustular, 1130 ; squamous, 1133.
- new formations of, 1141.
- pigmentary changes of, 1143.
- parasitic diseases of, 1144.
- Sleep, disorders of, 963.
- Small-pox, 177 ; anat. char., 178 ; symp., 179 ; eruption, *ib.* ; secondary fever, 181 ; varieties, *ib.* ; inoculated, 183 ; after vaccination, *ib.* ; comp. and seq., 184 ; diag., 186 ; prog., 185 ; treat., 186.
- Soft cancer, 360.
- Softening of the brain, 1056 ; acute, 1058 ; chronic, 1065.
- of spinal cord, 1084.
- Somnambulism—somniloquism, 964.
- Somnolence, 963.
- Sore-throat, relaxed, 370 ; hospital, 382 ; sloughing, 384 ; granular, 386 ; follicular, *ib.*
- Sounds of the heart, 568, 573.
- respiratory, 418.
- Spasm, 965.
- of the glottis, 458.

- Spasm of intestines, 734, 758.
 —— of oesophagus, 394.
 —— of the stomach, 702.
Spasmodic asthma, 503.
 —— croup, 458.
 —— spinal paralysis, 1095.
 —— wry-neck, 1116.
Spastic paraplegia, 1095; congenital, 1096.
Sphygmograph, description of the, 584; uses, 586.
Sphygmographic tracings, 584.
Sphygmomanometer, 567.
Spinal cord, diseases of, clinical phenomena, 994.
 —— and membranes, diseases of, 1072; diag., 1087; treat. of, 1088.
Spinal cord, adventitious growths in, 1c86.
 —— concussion of, 1073.
 —— congestion of, 1c81.
 —— haemorrhage into, 1083.
 —— inflammation of, 1076.
 —— meningitis, acute, 1074.
 —— —— chronic, 1083.
 —— paralysis, 1078, 1079, 1095.
 —— sclerosis, 991, 1098; treat., 1101.
 —— softening, 1084.
Spirillum—*Spirochæte Obermeirii*, 158.
Spleen, diseases of the, 819; general diag., prog., and treat., 827.
 —— congestion of, 820.
 —— hypertrophy of, 822.
 —— rare morbid conditions of, 827.
Splenic cachexia, 819.
 —— leucocythaemia, 822.
Splenic tumour, 819.
Splenification of lung, 475.
Splenitis, 821.
Sporadic cholera, 235.
 —— diseases, 125.
Spotted fever, 130.
Sputa, 400.
Squamous inflammations of skin, 1133.
Stenocardia, 597.
Stiff-neck, 320.
Stigmata, 53.
Stomach, atrophy and degeneration of, 721.
 —— cancer of, 724; treat., 732.
 —— chronic diseases of, 719.
 —— dilatation of, 727.
 —— fibroid disease of, 719.
 —— and intestines, diseases of the, clinical characters, 692; general therapeutics of, 696.
 —— inflammation of, acute, 716; chronic, 719.
 —— spasm or cramp of, 702.
 —— ulcer of, 721; diag., 730; treat., 732.
Stomatitis, 365; treat., 369.
Stricture of intestines, 758.
 —— of oesophagus, 395.
 —— of pylorus, 727.
Strongylus gigans, 916.
Strumous diathesis, 301.
Stupor, 961.
Subcuticular mottling in typhus, 135.
Succussion, 426.
Sudamina, 1148.
Suffocative breast-pang, 597.
Sugar, tests for, in urine, 848.
Summer diarrhoea, 235.
Sunstroke, 1037.
Suppression of urine, obstructive, 891.
Suppuration, 65.
 —— of gall-bladder, 813.
Suppurative inflammation of kidney, 891.
 —— —— of liver, 786.
 —— nephritis, 891.
 —— phlebitis, 666.
 —— pyle-phlebitis, 786.
Supra-renal capsules, diseases of, 837.
Surgical kidney, 892.
Sweat-glands, diseases of, 1147.
Sycosis, 1150.
Symmetrical gangrene of extremities, 667.
Symptomatology, 2, 11.
Symptomatic fever, 95.
 —— parotitis, 374.
Symptoms, mode of examination for, 12.
Syncope, 595; treat., 596.
Syphilides, 1135.
Syphilis, acquired, skin eruptions in, 1135.
 —— congenital, 292.
 —— constitutional, 289; diag., 294; treat., 295.
 —— hereditary, 292.
 —— inoculated, 290.
Syphilitic acne, 1118.
 —— disease of arteries, 652; of brain, 1c66; of larynx, 452; of liver, 806; of lungs, 540; of spleen, 827.
 —— skin-eruptions, 1135.
Syringomyelia, 1107.
Systemic veins, thrombosis in the, 665.

Tabes dorsalis, 1091.
 —— mesenterica, 930.
Tâches cerebrales, 950.
Tachycardia, 591.
 —— paroxysmal, 592.
Tænia Egyptica, 765.
 —— elliptica, 765.
 —— flavo-punctata, 765.
 —— medio-canellata, 766.
 —— nana, 765.
 —— solium, 767.
Tape-worms, 765, 767.
Temperaments, 6.
Temperature, 89.
 —— in disease, 92; uses in diag., tb.; in prog., 94.
Tender spots, 981.
Tendinous rheumatism, 320.
Tendon reflexes, 942, 978.
Tenesmus, 694.
Terminations of disease, 18.
Tertian ague, 276.
Tetanus, 258.
Tetany, 1025.
Therapeutics, 2, 21.
 —— of the respiratory system, 427.

- Therapeutics of the circulatory system, 588
 —— of the hepatic system, 776.
 —— of the nervous and muscular systems, 951.
 —— of the stomach and intestines, 696.
 —— of the urinary system, 861.
 Thermo-anæsthesia and hyperæsthesia, 940.
 Thermometer, clinical, 89.
 Thomsen's disease, 1116.
 Thoracic aneurism, 655.
 Thorax, divisions of, 404.
 Thread-worm, 765, 766.
 Thrill, 571, 582.
 Throat, diseases of, 377.
 —— ulceration of, 384.
 Thrombosis, 44.
 —— arterial, 167.
 —— cardiac, 663.
 —— cerebral, 1056.
 —— in the pulmonary artery, 664.
 —— in the systemic veins, 665.
 Thrush, 367.
 Thyroid gland, diseases of, 932.
 Tic-douloureux, 983.
 Tinea favosa, 1145; tricophytina, 1146; versicolor, 1147.
 Tongue, acute inflammation of, 370; chronic, 371.
 —— characters of, 693.
 —— diseases of, 364.
 —— palsy of, 975.
 —— ulcers of, 372.
 Tonsilitis, acute, 380; treat., 383.
 Tonsils, chronic enlargement of, 386.
 Torsion, 758.
 Torticollis, 320, 1116.
 Torula cerevisiae, 119.
 Trachea, affections of, 440; exam. of, 401.
 Tracheal catarrh, 443.
 —— phthisis, 449.
 —— sounds, 418.
 Tracheitis, 440.
 Trance, 1017.
 Traumatic haemorrhage, 53.
 Treatment, 2, 21.
 Tremor, purring, 571.
 Trichina spiralis, 288.
 Trichinosis, 287.
 Tricocephalus dispar, 770.
 Tricophyton, 1146.
 Tricuspid murmurs, 579.
 —— obstruction, 624.
 —— regurgitation, 623.
 Trophic lesions in nervous diseases, 989.
 Tropical hepatic abscess, 786.
 Tubal nephritis, acute, 897.
 —— chronic, 904.
 Tubercle, 296.
 —— bacillus, 296; detection of, 522.
 —— of brain, 1066.
 —— of glands, 930.
 —— of intestines, 755.
 —— of kidney, 915.
 —— of liver, 806.
 —— of lungs, 512.
 Tubercle of peritoneum, 685.
 —— of spleen, 827.
 Tubercular diathesis, 301.
 —— disease of the glands, 930.
 —— meningitis, 1041.
 —— phthisis, 512.
 —— ulceration of the intestine, 755.
 Tuberculosis, 296; acute miliary, 307.
 —— of intestines, 755.
 —— of larynx and trachea, 449.
 —— of liver, 806.
 —— of lungs, 512.
 Tubular breathing, 420.
 —— percussion-sound, 415.
 Tumour, cerebral, 1066; renal, 859.
 Tumours, mediastinal, 670.
 Tussive fremitus, 414; resonance, 407, 426.
 Tympanitic sound, 414.
 Types of disease, 17.
 Typhilitis, 747.
 Typhoid fever, 140; predisposing causes, 142; anat. char., *ib.*; stages, 143; symp., 146; varieties, 150; comp. and seq., 151; duration and term, 152; prog., 153; treat., 154.
 —— type of fever, 103.
 Typhus fever, 131; anat. char., 132; symp., 133; varieties, 136; sequelæ, 137; term. and duration, *ib.*; treat., 138.
 Ulceration, 66.
 Ulcerative endocarditis, 609.
 —— stomatitis, 366.
 Ulcers of the intestines, 753.
 —— of the larynx, 451, 453, 454.
 —— of the mouth and tongue, 372.
 —— of the oesophagus, 395.
 —— of the stomach, 721.
 —— of the throat, 384.
 —— typhoid, 143.
 Unilateral paralysis, 969; sensory, 979.
 Uræmia, 841, 875.
 Urinary calculus, 919.
 —— deposits, 852.
 —— organs, diseases of, clinical phenomena, 840; general therapeutics of, 861.
 Urine, abnormal conditions of, 864.
 —— chylous, 855, 867.
 —— examination of, 841; genera chemical, *ib.*; microscopical, 852.
 —— purulent, 866.
 Urticaria, 1124.
 Vaccinia, Vaccination, 189.
 Valves and orifices of heart, affections of, 618.
 Valvulitis, 618.
 Varicella, 193.
 Varieties of disease, 17.
 Variola, 177.
 Vaso-motor disorders, 40.
 Veins, clinical phenomena connected with the, 567.
 —— exam. of, 586.
 Venesection in inflammation, 70.
 Venous hyperæmia, 30.

- Venous murmurs, 568, 587.
 — stagnation, general, 28.
 Ventricular haemorrhage, 1055.
 Vertige épileptique, 1005.
 Vertigo, 956.
 Vesical catarrh, 922.
 Vesicular breathing, 418.
 —— emphysema, 495.
 Vibices, 53.
 Villous cancer, 361.
 Virus, 118.
 Vitreous degeneration, 81.
 Vocal cords, paralysis of muscles of, 460.
 —— fremitus, 413; resonance, 408, 425.
 Volvulus, 758.
 Vomiting, 702; treat., 704.
 —— of blood, 705.
 Wart-pox, 184.
 Wasting palsy, 1103.
 Water-brash, 693.
 Water canker, 367.
 Waxy disease, 86.
 —— liver, 794.
 Weil's disease, 131.
 Whip-worm, 765, 771.
 White leg, 666.
 —— mouth, 367.
 Whooping-cough, 219.
 Wool-sorter's disease, 250.
 Word-blindness, 989.
 —— deafness, 989.
 Worms, intestinal, 765.
 Writer's cramp, 1110.
 Wry neck, 320; spasmodic, 1116.
 Xanthoma, 1150.
 Xanthopsia, 781.
 Xerostomia, 376.
 Yellow atrophy of liver, acute, 791.
 Yellow fever, 263.
 —— tubercle, 303.
 Zona or Zoster, 1129.
 Zyme, 118.
 Zymotic diseases, 115.

October, 1894.

CATALOGUE OF WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

H. K. LEWIS

136 GOWER STREET, LONDON, W.C.

Established 1844.

A. C. ABBOTT, M.D.

First Assistant, Laboratory of Hygiene, University of Pennsylvania.

THE PRINCIPLES OF BACTERIOLOGY: A Practical Manual for Students and Physicians. With Illustrations, post 8vo, 7s. 6d.

H. ALDER-SMITH, M.B. LOND., F.R.C.S.

Resident Medical Officer, Christ's Hospital, London.

RINGWORM: Its Diagnosis and Treatment.

Third Edition, enlarged, with Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

HARRISON ALLEN, M.D.

Consulting Physician to Rush Hospital for Consumption.

A HANDBOOK OF LOCAL THERAPEUTICS. General Surgery by R. H. HARTE, M.D., Surgeon to the Episcopal and St. Mary's Hospitals; Diseases of the Skin by A. VAN HARLINGEN, M.D., Professor of Diseases of the Skin in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Diseases of the Ear and Air Passages by H. ALLEN, M.D.; Diseases of the Eye by G. C. HARLAN, M.D., Surgeon to Wills Eye Hospital. Edited by H. ALLEN, M.D. Large 8vo, 14s. nett.

JAMES ANDERSON, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Late Assistant Physician to the London Hospital, &c.

MEDICAL NURSING. Notes of Lectures given to the Probationers at the London Hospital. Edited by E. F. LAMPORT, Associate of the Sanitary Institute. With an Introductory Biographical Notice by the late SIR ANDREW CLARK, BART. Crown 8vo.

[*Nearly ready.*

E. CRESSWELL BABER, M.B. LOND.

Surgeon to the Brighton and Sussex Throat and Ear Hospital.

A GUIDE TO THE EXAMINATION OF THE NOSE, WITH REMARKS ON THE DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES OF THE NASAL CAVITIES. With Illustrations, small 8vo, 5s. 6d.

JAMES B. BALL, M.D. LOND., M.R.C.P.

Physician to the Department for Diseases of the Throat and Nose, and Senior Assistant Physician, West London Hospital.

INTUBATION OF THE LARYNX. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 2s. 6d.

G. GRANVILLE BANTOCK, M.D., F.R.C.S. EDIN.
Surgeon to the Samaritan Free Hospital for Women and Children.

ON THE USE AND ABUSE OF PESSARIES. Second Edition, with Illustrations, 8vo, 5s.

ON THE TREATMENT OF RUPTURE OF THE FEMALE PERINEUM IMMEDIATE AND REMOTE. Second Edition, with Illustrations, 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A PLEA FOR EARLY OVARIOTOMY. Demy 8vo, 2s.

FANCOURT BARNES, M.D., M.R.C.P.
Physician to the Chelsea Hospital for Women; Obstetric Physician to the Great Northern Hospital, &c.

A GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY OF WORDS AND TERMS USED IN MEDICINE AND ITS COGNATE SCIENCES. Square 12mo, Roxburgh binding, 9s.

JAMES BARR, M.D.

Physician to the Northern Hospital, Liverpool; Medical Officer of Her Majesty's Prison, Kirkdale, &c.

THE TREATMENT OF TYPHOID FEVER, and reports of fifty-five consecutive cases with only one death. With Introduction by W. T. GAIRDNER, M.D., LL.D., Professor of Medicine in the University of Glasgow. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 6s.

ASHLEY W. BARRETT, M.B. LOND., M.R.C.S., L.D.S.E.
Dental Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Dental Surgery in the Medical School of, the London Hospital.

DENTAL SURGERY FOR MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS OF MEDICINE. Second Edition, with Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 3s. 6d. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

ROBERTS BARTHOLOW, M.A., M.D., LL.D.
Professor Emeritus of Materia Medica, General Therapeutics, and Hygiene in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia, &c., &c.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON MATERIA MEDICA AND THERAPEUTICS. Eighth Edition, revised and enlarged, large 8vo, 21s.

A TREATISE ON THE PRACTICE OF MEDICINE, FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. Fifth Edition, with Illustrations, large 8vo, 21s.

H. CHARLTON BASTIAN, M.A., M.D., F.R.S., F.R.C.P.
Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine in University College, London; Physician to University College Hospital, &c.

PARALYSSES: CEREBRAL, BULBAR, AND SPINAL. A MANUAL OF DIAGNOSIS FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. With numerous Illustrations, 8vo, 12s. 6d.

VARIOUS FORMS OF HYSTERICAL OR FUNCTIONAL PARALYSIS. Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d.

GEO. M. BEARD, A.M., M.D.

AND

A. D. ROCKWELL, A.M., M.D.

Formerly Professor of Electro-Therapeutics in the New York Post Graduate Medical School; Fellow of the New York Academy of Medicine, &c.

ON THE MEDICAL AND SURGICAL USES OF ELECTRICITY. Eighth Edition. With over 200 Illustrations, roy. 8vo, 28s.

NERVOUS EXHAUSTION (NEURASTHENIA) ITS HYGIENE, CAUSES, SYMPTOMS AND TREATMENT. Second Edition, 8vo, 7s. 6d.

W. M. BEAUMONT.

Surgeon to the Bath Eye Infirmary.

THE SHADOW-TEST IN THE DIAGNOSIS AND ESTIMATION OF AMETROPIA. Post 8vo, 2s. 6d.

E. H. BENNETT, M.D., F.R.C.S.I.

Professor of Surgery, University of Dublin,

AND

D. J. CUNNINGHAM, M.D., F.R.C.S.I.

Professor of Anatomy and Chirurgery, University of Dublin.

THE SECTIONAL ANATOMY OF CONGENITAL CŒCAL HERNIA. With coloured plates, sm. folio, 5s. 6d.

A. HUGHES BENNETT, M.D., M.R.C.P.

Physician to the Hospital for Epilepsy and Paralysis, Regent's Park, and Assistant Physician to the Westminster Hospital.

I.
A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON ELECTRO-DIAGNOSIS IN DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS-SYSTEM. With Illustrations, 8vo, 8s. 6d.

II.
ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE SUPERFICIAL NERVES AND MUSCLES, WITH THEIR MOTOR POINTS; a knowledge of which is essential in the Art of Electro-Diagnosis. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HORATIO R. BIGELOW, M.D.

Permanent Member of the American Medical Association; Fellow of the British Gynaecological Society, &c.

I.
GYNAECOLOGICAL ELECTRO-THERAPEUTICS. With an Introduction by DR. GEORGES APOSTOLI. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 8s. 6d.

II.
PLAIN TALKS ON ELECTRICITY AND BATTERIES, WITH THERAPEUTIC INDEX, FOR GENERAL PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS OF MEDICINE. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

DR. THEODOR BILLROTH.

Professor of Surgery in Vienna.

GENERAL SURGICAL PATHOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS. With additions by Dr. ALEXANDER VON WINIWARTER, Professor of Surgery in Luttsch. Translated from the Fourth German edition, and revised from the Tenth Edition, by C. E. HACKLEY, A.M., M.D. 8vo, 18s.

DRS. BOURNEVILLE AND BRICON.

MANUAL OF HYPODERMIC MEDICATION.

Translated from the Second Edition, and Edited, with Therapeutic Index of Diseases, by ANDREW S. CURRIE, M.D. Edin., &c. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ROBERT BOXALL, M.D. CANTAB., M.R.C.P. LOND.

Assistant Obstetric Physician at the Middlesex Hospital, &c.

ANTISEPTICS IN MIDWIFERY. 8vo. 1s.

RUBERT BOYCE, M.B., M.R.C.S.

Assistant Professor of Pathology in University College, London.

A TEXT-BOOK OF MORBID HISTOLOGY for Students and Practitioners. With 130 coloured Illustrations, royal 8vo, 31s. 6d.

[Now ready.]

GURDON BUCK, M.D.

CONTRIBUTIONS TO REPARATIVE SURGERY:

Showing its Application to the Treatment of Deformities, produced by Destructive Disease or Injury; Congenital Defects from Arrest or Excess of Development; and Cicatrical Contractions from Burns. Large 8vo, 9s.

MARY BULLAR & J. F. BULLAR, M.B. CANTAB., F.R.C.S.
RECEIPTS FOR FLUID FOODS. 16mo, 1s.

CHARLES H. BURNETT, A.M., M.D.

Emeritus Professor of Otology in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Clinical Professor of Otology in the Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania; Aural Surgeon to the Presbyterian Hospital, Philadelphia.

SYSTEM OF DISEASES OF THE EAR, NOSE AND THROAT. By 45 Eminent American, British, Canadian and Spanish Authors. Edited by CHARLES H. BURNETT. With Illustrations, in two Imperial 8vo vols., half morocco, 48s. nett. [Just published.]

STEPHEN SMITH BURT, M.D.

Professor of Clinical Medicine and Physical Diagnosis in the New York Post-graduate School and Hospital.

EXPLORATION OF THE CHEST IN HEALTH AND DISEASE. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 6s.

DUDLEY W. BUXTON, M.D., B.S., M.R.C.P.

Administrator of Anaesthetics and Lecturer in University College Hospital, the National Hospital for Paralysis and Epilepsy, Queen's Square, and the Dental Hospital of London.

ANÆSTHETICS THEIR USES AND ADMINISTRATION. Second Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 5s.

[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

HARRY CAMPBELL, M.D., B.S. LOND., M.R.C.P.
Physician to the North-West London Hospital.

I.
THE CAUSATION OF DISEASE: An exposition of the ultimate factors which induce it. Demy 8vo, 12s. 6d.

II.
FLUSHING AND MORBID BLUSHING: THEIR PATHOLOGY AND TREATMENT. With plates and wood engravings, royal 8vo, 10s. 6d.

III.
DIFFERENCES IN THE NERVOUS ORGANISATION OF MAN AND WOMAN, PHYSIOLOGICAL AND PATHOLOGICAL. Royal 8vo, 15s.

IV.
HEADACHE AND OTHER MORBID CEPHALIC SENSATIONS. Royal 8vo, 12s. 6d. [Just published.]

R. E. CARRINGTON, M.D., F.R.C.P.
Late Assistant Physician and Senior Demonstrator of Morbid Anatomy at Guy's Hospital.

NOTES ON PATHOLOGY. With an Introductory Chapter by J. F. GOODHART, M.D. (ABERD.), F.R.C.P., Physician to Guy's Hospital, Edited by H. EVELYN CROOK, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG., and GUY MACKESON, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ALFRED H. CARTER, M.D. LOND.
Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians; Physician to the Queen's Hospital, Birmingham; Professor of Therapeutics in Queen's College, Birmingham.

ELEMENTS OF PRACTICAL MEDICINE. Sixth Edition, crown 8vo, 9s.

F. H. CHAMPNEYS, M.A., M.D. OXON., F.R.C.P.
Physician-Accoucheur and Lecturer on Obstetric Medicine at St. Bartholomew's Hospital: Examiner in Obstetric Medicine in the University of Oxford, &c.

I.
LECTURES ON PAINFUL MENSTRUATION. THE HARVEIAN LECTURES, 1890. Roy. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

II.
EXPERIMENTAL RESEARCHES IN ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION IN STILLBORN CHILDREN, AND ALLIED SUBJECTS. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

W. BRUCE CLARKE, M.A., M.B. OXON., F.R.C.S.
Assistant Surgeon to, and Senior Demonstrator of Anatomy and Operative Surgery at St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Surgeon to the West London Hospital, &c.

THE DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY AMENABLE TO DIRECT SURGICAL INTERFERENCE. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 7s. 6d.

JOHN COCKLE, M.A., M.D.
Physician to the Royal Free Hospital.

ON INTRA-THORACIC CANCER. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

ALEXANDER COLLIE, M.D. ABERD., M.R.C.P. LOND.
Secretary of the Epidemiological Society for Germany and Russia, &c.

ON FEVERS: THEIR HISTORY, ETIOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT. Illustrated with Coloured Plates, crown 8vo, 8s. 6d. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

M. P. MAYO COLLIER, M.B., M.S. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG.
Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology at the Royal College of Surgeons, England, &c.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM.
 Illustrations, 8vo, 3s. 6d.

WALTER S. COLMAN, M.B., M.R.C.P. LOND.
Pathologist and Registrar to the National Hospital for the Paralysed and Epileptic.

SECTION CUTTING AND STAINING: A Practical Guide to the Preparation of Normal and Morbid Histological Specimens.
 Crown 8vo, 3s.

W. H. CORFIELD, M.A., M.D. OXON., F.R.C.P. LOND.
Professor of Hygiene and Public Health in University College, London; Medical Officer of Health for St. George's, Hanover Square, &c.

DWELLING HOUSES: their Sanitary Construction and Arrangements. Third Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

J. LEONARD CORNING, M.A., M.D.
Consultant in Nervous Diseases to St. Francis Hospital.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON HEADACHE, NEURALGIA, SLEEP AND ITS DERANGEMENTS, AND SPINAL IRRITATION. With an Appendix—Eye Strain, a Cause of Headache
 By DAVID WEBSTER, M.D. Second Edition, Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d.

EDWARD COTTERELL, F.R.C.S. ENG., L.R.C.P. LOND.
Late House Surgeon, University College Hospital.

ON SOME COMMON INJURIES TO LIMBS; their Treatment and After-treatment, including Bone-setting (so-called). With Illustrations, small 8vo, 3s. 6d.

SIDNEY COUPLAND, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Physician to the Middlesex Hospital, and Lecturer on Practical Medicine in the Medical School; late Examiner in Medicine at the Examining Board for England.

NOTES ON THE CLINICAL EXAMINATION OF THE BLOOD AND EXCRETA. Third Edition, 12mo, 1s. 6d.

CHARLES CREIGHTON, M.D.
Demonstrator of Anatomy in the University of Cambridge.

I.
A HISTORY OF EPIDEMICS IN BRITAIN FROM A.D. 664 TO THE EXTINCTION OF THE PLAGUE. Demy 8vo, 18s.

II.
ILLUSTRATIONS OF UNCONSCIOUS MEMORY IN DISEASE, including a Theory of Alteratives. Post 8vo, 6s.

III.
CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE PHYSIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY OF THE BREAST AND LYMPHATIC GLANDS. New Edition with additional chapter, with wood-cuts and plate, 8vo, 9s.

IV.
BOVINE TUBERCULOSIS IN MAN: An Account of the Pathology of Suspected Cases. With Chromo-lithographs and other Illustrations, 8vo, 8s. 6d.

H. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, M.D. LOND., B.S., F.R.C.P.
Physician for Diseases of the Skin in University College Hospital, &c.

DISEASES OF THE SKIN; THEIR DESCRIPTION, PATHOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT. Second Edition, with 92 Illustrations, 8vo, 24s. [Just published.]

EDGAR M. CROOKSHANK, M.B. LOND., F.R.M.S.
Professor of Comparative Pathology and Bacteriology in, and Fellow of King's College London.

I.
MANUAL OF BACTERIOLOGY: Illustrated with Coloured Plates from original drawings, and with other Illustrations in the text. Third Edition, 8vo, 21s.

II.
HISTORY AND PATHOLOGY OF VACCINATION. Vol. I., A Critical Inquiry. Vol. II., Selected Essays, (Edited) including works by Jenner, Pearson, Woodville, Henry Jenner, Loy, Rogers, Birch, Bousquet, Estlin, Ceely, Badcock, Auzias-Turenne, Dubreuilh and Layet. Two volumes, illustrated with 22 coloured plates, including reproductions of the plates illustrating Jenner's Inquiry, of selected plates from the work of Ceely and others, and with a reduced facsimile of an engraving of Mr. Jesty, a facsimile of the first folio of the manuscript of Jenner's original paper, a facsimile of an unpublished letter from Jenner to Mr. Head. Royal 8vo, 20s. nett.

J. BRENDON CURGENVEN, M.R.C.S., L.S.A.
Formerly House Surgeon to the Royal Free Hospital; Honorary Secretary of the Harveian Society, the Infant Life Protection Society, &c.

THE DISINFECTION OF SCARLET FEVER AND OTHER DISEASES BY ANTISEPTIC INUNCTION. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

HERBERT DAVIES, M.D., F.R.C.P.
Late Consulting Physician to the London Hospital.

THE MECHANISM OF THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD THROUGH ORGANICALLY DISEASED HEARTS. Edited by ARTHUR TEMPLER DAVIES, B.A. (Nat. Science Honours), M.D. Cantab., M.R.C.P.; Physician to the Royal Hospital for Diseases of the Chest. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

HENRY DAVIS, M.R.C.S.
Teacher and Administrator of Anæsthetics at St. Mary's Hospital, and Assistant Anæsthetist to the Dental Hospital of London.

GUIDE TO THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANÆSTHETICS. Second Edition, fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

J. THOMPSON DICKSON, M.A., M.B. CANTAB.
Late Lecturer on Mental Diseases at Guy's Hospital.

THE SCIENCE AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE IN RELATION TO MIND, the Pathology of the Nerve Centres, and the Jurisprudence of Insanity, being a course of Lectures delivered at Guy's Hospital. Illustrated by Chromo-lithographic Drawings and Physiological Portraits. 8vo, 14s.

F. A. DIXEY, M.A., D.M.
Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.

EPIDEMIC INFLUENZA: A Study in Comparative Statistics. With Diagrams and Tables. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

HORACE DOBELL, M.D.

Consulting Physician to the Royal Hospital for Diseases of the Chest, &c.

ON DIET AND REGIMENT IN SICKNESS AND
Health, and on the Interdependence and Prevention of Diseases and the
Diminution of their Fatality. Seventh Edition, 8vo, 5s. nett.

CHARLES W. DULLES, M.D.

Fellow of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia and of the Academy of Surgery;

Physician to the Rush Hospital.

ACCIDENTS AND EMERGENCIES: A Manual of the
Treatment of Surgical and Medical Emergencies in the absence of a
Physician. Fourth Edition, with Illustrations, post 8vo, 3s. nett.

JOHN EAGLE.

Member of the Pharmaceutical Society.

A NOTE-BOOK OF SOLUBILITIES. Arranged chiefly
for the use of Prescribers and Dispensers. 12mo, 2s. 6d.

ARTHUR W. EDIS, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P.

*Senior Physician to the Chelsea Hospital for Women; Late Obstetric Physician to the
Middlesex Hospital.*

STERILITY IN WOMEN: including its Causation and
Treatment. With 33 Illustrations, demy 8vo, 6s.

ALEXANDER S. FAULKNER.

Surgeon-Major, Indian Medical Service.

A GUIDE TO THE PUBLIC MEDICAL SERVICES.
Compiled from Official Sources. 8vo, 2s.

W. SOLTAU FENWICK, M.B., B.S. LOND.

*Member of the Royal College of Physicians; Assistant Physician to the Evelina Hospital
for Sick Children, &c.*

THE DYSPEPSIA OF PHTHISIS: Its Varieties and
Treatment, including a Description of Certain Forms of Dyspepsia
associated with the Tubercular Diathesis. Demy 8vo. [Just ready.]

DR. FERBER.

MODEL DIAGRAM OF THE ORGANS IN THE
THORAX AND UPPER PART OF THE ABDOMEN. With
Letter-press Description. In 4to, coloured, 5s.

J. MAGEE FINNY, M.D. DUBL.

King's Professor of Practice of Medicine in School of Physic, Ireland, &c.

NOTES ON THE PHYSICAL DIAGNOSIS OF LUNG
DISEASES. 32mo, 1s. 6d.

AUSTIN FLINT, M.D., LL.D.

*Professor of Physiology and Physiological Anatomy in the Bellevue Hospital Medical
College, New York; Visiting Physician to the Bellevue Hospital, &c.*

A TEXT-BOOK OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. Fourth
Edition, Illustrated by plates, and 316 wood engravings, large 8vo, 25s.

W. H. RUSSELL FORSBROOK, M.D. LOND., M.R.C.S.
*Consulting Medical Officer to the Government of the Cape of Good Hope; formerly Surgical
Registrar to Westminster Hospital.*

A DISSERTATION ON OSTEO-ARTHRITIS.
Demy 8vo, 5s.

J. MILNER FOTHERGILL, M.D., M.R.C.P.
Late Physician to the City of London Hospital for Diseases of the Chest, Victoria Park, &c.

I.
INDIGESTION AND BILIOUSNESS. Second Edition, post
8vo, 7s. 6d.

II.
GOUT IN ITS PROTEAN ASPECTS. Post 8vo, 7s. 6d.

III.
THE TOWN DWELLER: His Needs and His Wants.
With an Introduction by SIR B. W. RICHARDSON, M.D., LL.D., F.R.S.
Post 8vo, 3s. 6d.

PROFESSOR E. FUCHS.

Professor of Ophthalmology in the University of Vienna.

TEXTBOOK OF OPHTHALMOLOGY.

Translated from the German by A. DUANE, M.D., Assistant Surgeon,
Ophthalmic and Aural Institute, New York. Second Edition, with
190 Illustrations, large octavo, 21s.

SIR DOUGLAS GALTON.

*Late Royal Engineers, K.C.B., Hon. D.C.L., LL.D., F.R.S., Assoc. Inst. C.E., M.I.Mech.E.,
F.S.A., F.G.S., F.L.S., F.C.S., F.R.G.S., &c., Formerly Secretary Railway
Department Board of Trade, &c., &c.*

HEALTHY HOSPITALS. Observations on some points
connected with Hospital Construction. 8vo, with Illustrations, 10s. 6d.

JOHN HENRY GARRETT, M.D.

*Licentiate in Sanitary Science and Diplomate in Public Health, Universities of Durham
and Cambridge, &c.*

THE ACTION OF WATER ON LEAD; being an inquiry
into the Cause and Mode of the Action and its Prevention. Crown 8vo,
4s. 6d.

ALFRED W. GERRARD, F.C.S.

*Examiner to the Pharmaceutical Society; Teacher of Materia Medica and Pharmacy
at University College Hospital.*

ELEMENTS OF MATERIA MEDICA AND PHAR-
MACY. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

II.
NEW OFFICIAL REMEDIES, B.P., 1890. Supplement
to the above. Crown 8vo, 1s.

HENEAGE GIBBES, M.D.

*Lecturer on Physiology and on Normal and Morbid Histology in the Medical School of
Westminster Hospital; etc.*

PRACTICAL HISTOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY.
Third Edition, revised and enlarged, crown 8vo, 6s.

R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S.

Assistant Director of the Cavendish Laboratory; Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

HEAT AND LIGHT. Crown 8vo, 5s. The two parts are also pub-
lished separately. HEAT, 3s.; LIGHT, 3s.

[CAMBRIDGE NATURAL SCIENCE MANUALS.]

JAMES F. GOODHART, M.D. ABERD., F.R.C.P.
Physician to Guy's Hospital, and Consulting Physician to the Evelina Hospital for Sick Children.

ON COMMON NEUROSES: or the Neurotic Element in Disease and its Rational Treatment. Second Edition, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
 [Just published.]

C. A. GORDON, M.D., C.B.
Deputy Inspector General of Hospitals, Army Medical Department.

REMARKS ON ARMY SURGEONS AND THEIR WORKS. Demy 8vo, 5s.

JOHN GORHAM, M.R.C.S.

TOOTH EXTRACTION: a Manual on the proper mode of extracting Teeth. Fourth Edition, fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

GEORGE M. GOULD, A.M., M.D.
Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Philadelphia Hospital, &c.

A NEW MEDICAL DICTIONARY: including all the words and phrases used in Medicine, with their proper pronunciation and definitions. 8vo, 1os. 6d.

II.

A POCKET MEDICAL DICTIONARY, Giving the Pronunciation and Definition of about 12000 of the Principal Words used in Medicine and the Collateral Sciences. 32mo, 4s. nett.

W. R. GOWERS, M.D., F.R.C.P., M.R.C.S.
Physician to University College Hospital, &c.

DIAGRAMS FOR THE RECORD OF PHYSICAL SIGNS.
 In books of 12 sets of figures, 1s.

SURGEON-CAPTAIN A. E. GRANT, M.B.
Indian Medical Service; Professor of Hygiene, Madras Medical College.

THE INDIAN MANUAL OF HYGIENE.
 Vol. I., 8vo, 1os. 6d. nett.

LANDON C. GRAY, M.D.

Professor of Nervous and Mental Diseases in the New York Polyclinic; Visiting Physician to St. Mary's Hospital, &c.

A TREATISE ON NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASES FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS OF MEDICINE. With 168 illustrations, 8vo, 21s.

J. B. GRESSWELL, M.R.C.V.S.

Provincial Veterinary Surgeon to the Royal Agricultural Society.

VETERINARY PHARMACOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS. With an Index of Diseases and Remedies. Fcap. 8vo, 5s.

A. HILL GRIFFITH, M.D.
Surgeon, Manchester Royal Eye Hospital.

THE DIAGNOSIS OF INTRA-OCULAR GROWTHS.
 With 8 woodcuts, 8vo, 1s. 6d.

SAMUEL D. GROSS, M.D., LL.D., D.C.L. OXON.
Professor of Surgery in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE DISEASES, INJURIES, AND MALFORMATIONS OF THE URINARY BLADDER, THE PROSTATE GLAND, AND THE URETHRA. Third Edition, revised and edited by S. W. GROSS, A.M., M.D., Surgeon to the Philadelphia Hospital. Illustrated by 170 engravings, 8vo, 18s.

SAMUEL W. GROSS, A.M., M.D.
Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Clinical Surgery in the Jefferson Medical College Hospital and the Philadelphia Hospital, &c.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON TUMOURS OF THE MAMMARY GLAND: embracing their Histology, Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment. With Illustrations, 8vo, 10s. 6d.

DR. JOSEF GRUBER.

Professor of Otology in the University of Vienna, etc.

A TEXT-BOOK OF THE DISEASES OF THE EAR. Translated from the second German edition, and Edited, with additions, by EDWARD LAW, M.D., C.M. EDIN., M.R.C.S. ENG., Surgeon to the London Throat Hospital for Diseases of the Throat, Nose and Ear; and COLEMAN JEWELL, M.B. LOND., M.R.C.S. ENG., late Surgeon and Pathologist to the London Throat Hospital. Second English Edition, with 165 Illustrations, and 70 coloured figures on 2 lithographic plates, royal 8vo, 28s.

F. DE HAVILLAND HALL, M.D., F.R.C.P. LOND.
Physician to Out-patients, and in charge of the Throat Department at the Westminster Hospital, &c.

DISEASES OF THE NOSE AND THROAT. Crown 8vo, with 2 coloured plates and 59 illustrations, 10s. 6d. [Now ready.]
[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

WILLIAM A. HAMMOND, M.D.

Professor of Mental and Nervous Diseases in the Medical Department of the University of the City of New York, &c.

SPIRITUALISM AND ALLIED CAUSES AND CONDITIONS OF NERVOUS DERANGEMENT. With Illustrations post 8vo, 8s. 6d.

ALEXANDER HARVEY, M.D.

Late Emeritus Professor of Materia Medica in the University of Aberdeen, &c.,

AND

ALEXANDER DYCE DAVIDSON, M.D., F.R.S. EDIN.
Late Regius Professor of Materia Medica in the University of Aberdeen.

SYLLABUS OF MATERIA MEDICA FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS, TEACHERS AND PRACTITIONERS. Based on the relative values of articles and preparations in the British Pharmacopœia. Ninth Edition, 32mo, 1s. 6d.

H. HELBING, F.C.S.

MODERN MATERIA MEDICA: FOR MEDICAL MEN, PHARMACISTS, AND STUDENTS. Fourth Edition, 8vo, 8s. nett.
[Just published.]

C. HIGGENS, F.R.C.S.

Ophthalmic Surgeon to Guy's Hospital; Lecturer on Ophthalmology at Guy's Hospital Medical School.

MANUAL OF OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE.

Illustrations, crown 8vo, 6s.

[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

BERKELEY HILL, M.B. LOND., F.R.C.S.

Professor of Clinical Surgery in University College; Surgeon to University College Hospital and to the Lock Hospital.

THE ESSENTIALS OF BANDAGING. With directions for Managing Fractures and Dislocations; for administering Ether and Chloroform; and for using other Surgical Apparatus; with a Chapter on Surgical Landmarks. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged, Illustrated by 144 Wood Engravings, crown 8vo, 5s.

BERKELEY HILL, M.B. LOND., F.R.C.S.

Professor of Clinical Surgery in University College; Surgeon to University College Hospital and to the Lock Hospital;

AND

ARTHUR COOPER, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S.

Surgeon to the Westminster General Dispensary.

I.

SYPHILIS AND LOCAL CONTAGIOUS DISORDERS.
Second Edition, entirely re-written, royal 8vo, 18s.

II.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF VENEREAL DISEASES. Being a Concise Description of those Affections and of their Treatment. Fourth Edition, post 8vo, 2s. 6d.

FROM HOSPITAL WARD TO CONSULTING ROOM,
with Notes by the Way; a Medical Autobiography. By a Graduate of the London University. Post 8vo, 3s. 6d.

PROCTER S. HUTCHINSON, M.R.C.S.

Assistant Surgeon to the Hospital for Diseases of the Throat.

A MANUAL OF DISEASES OF THE NOSE AND THROAT; including the Nose, Naso-pharynx, Pharynx, and Larynx. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

C. R. ILLINGWORTH, M.D. ED., M.R.C.S.

THE ABORTIVE TREATMENT OF SPECIFIC FEBRILE DISORDERS BY THE BINIODIDE OF MERCURY.
Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

SIR W. JENNER, Bart., M.D.

Physician in Ordinary to H.M. the Queen, and to H.R.H. the Prince of Wales.

THE PRACTICAL MEDICINE OF TO-DAY: Two Addresses delivered before the British Medical Association, and the Epidemiological Society, (1869). Small 8vo, 1s. 6d.

GEORGE LINDSAY JOHNSON, M.A., M.B., B.C. CANTAB.
Clinical Assistant, late House Surgeon and Chloroformist, Royal Westminster Ophthalmic Hospital, &c.

A NEW METHOD OF TREATING CHRONIC GLAUCOMA, based on Recent Researches into its Pathology. With Illustrations and coloured frontispiece, demy 8vo, 3s. 6d.

JOHN M. KEATING,
Fellow of the College of Physicians, Philadelphia, &c.

AND

HENRY HAMILTON.

POCKET MEDICAL LEXICON.

32mo, 3s. nett.

T. N. KELYNACK, M.D.

Pathologist to the Manchester Royal Infirmary; Demonstrator and Lecturer on Pathology in the Owen's College.

A CONTRIBUTION TO THE PATHOLOGY OF THE VERMIFORM APPENDIX. With Illustrations, large 8vo, 1os. 6d.

HENRY R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S.

Instructor in the Hygienic Laboratory, University College, and Assistant to Professor Corfield in the Public Health Department, University College.

PUBLIC HEALTH LABORATORY WORK, including Methods employed in Bacteriological Research, with special reference to the Examination of Air, Water and Food, contributed by RUBERT BOYCE, M.B., Assistant Professor of Pathology, University College. With Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 1os. 6d.

[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

NORMAN KERR, M.D., F.L.S.

President of the Society for the Study of Inebriety; Consulting Physician, Dalrympie Home for Inebriates, etc.

INEBRIETY OR NARCOMANIA: its Etiology, Pathology, Treatment, and Jurisprudence. Third Edition, 8vo, 21s.

[Now ready.

NORMAN W. KINGSLEY, M.D.S., D.D.S.

President of the Board of Censors of the State of New York; Member of the American Academy of Dental Science, &c.

A TREATISE ON ORAL DEFORMITIES AS A BRANCH OF MECHANICAL SURGERY. With over 350 Illustrations, 8vo, 16s.

F. CHARLES LARKIN, F.R.C.S. ENG.

Surgeon to the Stanley Hospital; late Assistant Lecturer in Physiology in University College, Liverpool,

AND

RANDLE LEIGH, M.B., B.Sc. LOND.

Senior Demonstrator of Physiology in University College, Liverpool.

OUTLINES OF PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. Second Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, paper 2s. 6d. nett, or cloth 3s. nett.

J. WICKHAM LEGG, F.R.C.P.

Formerly Assistant Physician to Saint Bartholomew's Hospital, and Lecturer on Pathological Anatomy in the Medical School.

I.

ON THE BILE, JAUNDICE, AND BILIOUS DISEASES.
With Illustrations in chromo-lithography, 719 pages, roy. 8vo, 25s.

II.

A GUIDE TO THE EXAMINATION OF THE URINE.
Seventh Edition, edited and revised, by H. LEWIS JONES, M.D., M.A., M.R.C.P., Medical Officer in charge of the Electrical Department in St. Bartholomew's Hospital. With Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

[Now ready]

ARTHUR H. N. LEWERS, M.D., LOND., M.R.C.P. LOND.
Obstetric Physician to the London Hospital; Examiner in Midwifery and Diseases of Women to the Society of Apothecaries of London, &c.

A PRACTICAL TEXTBOOK OF THE DISEASES OF WOMEN. Fourth Edition, Illustrations, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

LEWIS'S POCKET CASE BOOK FOR PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS. Roan, with pencil, 3s. 6d. nett.

LEWIS'S POCKET MEDICAL VOCABULARY.

Second Edition, thoroughly revised, 32mo, roan, 3s. 6d.

T. R. LEWIS, M.B., F.R.S. ELECT, ETC.

Late Fellow of the Calcutta University, Surgeon-Major Army Medical Staff, &c.

PHYSIOLOGICAL & PATHOLOGICAL RESEARCHES.

Arranged and edited by SIR WM. AITKEN, M.D., F.R.S., G. E. DOBSON, M.B., F.R.S., and A. E. BROWN, B.Sc. Crown 4to, portrait, 5 maps, 43 plates including 15 chromo-lithographs, and 67 wood engravings, 30s. nett.

* * * A few copies only of this work remain for sale.

C. B. LOCKWOOD, F.R.C.S.

Hunterian Professor, Royal College of Surgeons of England; Surgeon to the Great Northern Hospital; Senior Demonstrator of Anatomy and Operative Surgery in St. Bartholomew's Hospital.

HUNTERIAN LECTURES ON THE MORBID ANATOMY, PATHOLOGY AND TREATMENT OF HERNIA.
36 Illustrations, Demy 8vo, 5s.

WILLIAM THOMPSON LUSK, A.M., M.D.

Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Women in the Bellevue Hospital Medical College, &c.

THE SCIENCE AND ART OF MIDWIFERY.

Fourth Edition, with numerous Illustrations, 8vo, 18s.

A. W. MACFARLANE, M.D., F.R.C.P. EDIN.

Examiner in Medical Jurisprudence in the University of Glasgow; Honorary Consulting Physician (late Physician) Kilmarnock Infirmary.

INSOMNIA AND ITS THERAPEUTICS.

Medium 8vo, 12s. 6d.

RAWDON MACNAMARA.

Professor of Materia Medica, Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland; Senior Surgeon to the Westmoreland (Lock) Government Hospital; Surgeon to the Meath Hospital, &c.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE BRITISH PHARMACOPŒIA. Demy 32mo, 1s. 6d. [Just published.]

JOHN MACPHERSON, M.D.

Inspector-General of Hospitals H.M. Bengal Army (Retired).

Author of "Cholera in its Home," &c.

ANNALS OF CHOLERA FROM THE EARLIEST PERIODS TO THE YEAR 1817. With a map. Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d.

A. COWLEY MALLEY, B.A., M.B., B.CH., T.C.D.

PHOTO-MICROGRAPHY; including a description of the Wet Collodion and Gelatino-Bromide Processes, together with the best methods of Mounting and Preparing Microscopic Objects for Photo-Micrography. Second Edition, with Photographs and Illustrations, crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

PATRICK MANSON, M.D., C.M.

THE FILARIA SANGUINIS HOMINIS; AND CERTAIN NEW FORMS OF PARASITIC DISEASE IN INDIA, CHINA, AND WARM COUNTRIES. Illustrated with Plates and Charts. 8vo, 1os. 6d.

JEFFERY A. MARSTON, M.D., C.B., F.R.C.S., M.R.C.P. LOND.
Surgeon General Medical Staff (Retired).

NOTES ON TYPHOID FEVER: Tropical Life and its Sequelæ. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

EDWARD MARTIN, A.M., M.D.

MINOR SURGERY AND BANDAGING WITH AN APPENDIX ON VENEREAL DISEASES. 82 Illustrations, crown 8vo, 4s.

WILLIAM MARTINDALE, F.C.S.

Late Examiner of the Pharmaceutical Society, and late Teacher of Pharmacy and Demonstrator of Materia Medica at University College,

AND

W. WYNN WESTCOTT, M.B. LOND.

Deputy Coroner for Central Middlesex.

THE EXTRA PHARMACOPŒIA, with Medical References, and a Therapeutic Index of Diseases and Symptoms. Seventh Edition, limp roan, med. 24mo, 7s. 6d.

WILLIAM MARTINDALE, F.C.S.
Late Examiner of the Pharmaceutical Society, &c.

COCA, AND COCAINE. Their History, Medical and Economic Uses, and Medicinal Preparations. Third Edition, fcap. 8vo.
[In preparation.]

ANALYSES OF TWELVE THOUSAND PRESCRIPTIONS: being Statistics of the Frequency of Use therein of all Official and Unofficial Preparations. Fcap. 4to, 2s. 6d. nett. [Now ready.]

MATERIA MEDICA LABELS.

Adapted for Public and Private Collections. Compiled from the British Pharmacopœia of 1885, with the additions of 1890. The Labels are arranged in Two Divisions:—

Division I.—Comprises, with few exceptions, Substances of Organized Structure, obtained from the Vegetable and Animal Kingdoms.

Division II.—Comprises Chemical Materia Medica, including Alcohols, Alkaloids, Sugars, and Neutral Bodies.

On plain paper, 10s. 6d. nett. On gummed paper, 12s. 6d. nett.

The 24 additional Labels of 1890 only, 1s. nett.

* Specimens of the Labels, of which there are over 470, will be sent on application.

S. E. MAUNSELL, L.R.C.S.I.
Surgeon-Major, Medical Staff.

NOTES OF MEDICAL EXPERIENCES IN INDIA
 PRINCIPALLY WITH REFERENCE TO DISEASES OF THE EYE. With Map, post 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ANGEL MONEY, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P.

Late Assistant Physician to University College Hospital, and to the Hospital for Sick Children Great Ormond Street

TREATMENT OF DISEASE IN CHILDREN: EMBOODYING THE OUTLINES OF DIAGNOSIS AND THE CHIEF PATHOLOGICAL DIFFERENCES BETWEEN CHILDREN AND ADULTS. Second Edition, with plates, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

THE STUDENT'S TEXTBOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Fcap. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

A. STANFORD MORTON, M.B., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Assistant Surgeon to the Moorfields Ophthalmic Hospital; Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Great Northern Central Hospital.

REFRACTION OF THE EYE: Its Diagnosis, and the Correction of its Errors. Fifth Edition, with Illustrations, small 8vo, 3s. 6d. [Now ready.]

C. W. MANSELL MOULLIN, M.A., M.D. OXON., F.R.C.S.
Surgeon and Lecturer on Physiology at the London Hospital; Formerly Radcliffe's Travelling Fellow and Fellow of Pembroke College Oxford, etc.

ENLARGEMENT OF THE PROSTATE: its Treatment and Radical Cure. With plates, roy. 8vo. [Nearly ready.]

SPRAINS; THEIR CONSEQUENCES AND TREATMENT. Second Edition, crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

PAUL F. MUNDE, M.D.

Professor of Gynecology at the New York Polyclinic; President of the New York Obstetrical Society and Vice-President of the British Gynecological Society, &c.

THE MANAGEMENT OF PREGNANCY, PARTURITION, AND THE PUERPERAL STATE. Second Edition, square 8vo, 3s. 6d.

WILLIAM MURRAY, M.D., F.R.C.P. LOND.

Consulting Physician to the Children's Hospital, Newcastle-on-Tyne, &c.

ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE INDUCTIVE METHOD IN MEDICINE. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

WILLIAM MURRELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Physician to, and Lecturer on Pharmacology and Therapeutics at Westminster Hospital; late Examiner in Materia Medica to the Royal College of Physicians of London, &c.

WHAT TO DO IN CASES OF POISONING.

Seventh Edition, royal 32mo., 3s. 6d.

MASSOTHERAPEUTICS, OR MASSAGE AS A MODE OF TREATMENT. Fifth Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

CHRONIC BRONCHITIS AND ITS TREATMENT. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

HENRY D. NOYES, A.M., M.D.

Professor of Ophthalmology and Otology in Bellevue Hospital Medical College; Executive Surgeon to the New York Eye and Ear Infirmary, &c.

A TEXTBOOK ON DISEASES OF THE EYE.

Second and revised Edition, Illustrated by 5 chromo-lithographic plates, 10 plates in black and colours and 269 wood engravings, 28s. nett

GEORGE OLIVER, M.D., F.R.C.P.

PULSE-GAUGING: A Clinical Study of Radial Measurement and Pulse Pressure. With Illustrations, fcap. 8vo. [Nearly ready.]

THE HARROGATE WATERS: Data Chemical and Therapeutic, with notes on the Climate of Harrogate. Addressed to the Medical Profession. With Map of the Wells, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ON BEDSIDE URINE TESTING: a Clinical Guide to the Observation of Urine in the course of Work. Fourth Edition, fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

DR. A. ONODI.

Docent of Rhinology and Laryngology in the University of Budapest.

THE ANATOMY OF THE NASAL CAVITY, AND ITS ACCESSORY SINUSES. An Atlas for Practitioners and Students, translated by ST. CLAIR THOMSON, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG., M.R.C.P. LOND. With plates, royal 8vo. [In preparation.]

SAMUEL OSBORN, F.R.C.S.

Surgeon to the Hospital for Women, Soho Square; Surgeon to the Royal Naval Artillery Volunteers.

AMBULANCE LECTURES: FIRST AID. Third Edition, with Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, 2s. [Just published.]

AMBULANCE LECTURES: HOME NURSING AND HYGIENE. Second Edition, with Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, 2s.

WILLIAM OSLER, M.D., F.R.C.P. LOND.

President of the Association of American Physicians; Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University, and Physician-in-Chief Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore.

ON CHOREA AND CHOREIFORM AFFECTIONS.

Demy 8vo, [redacted] 5s.

[Just ready.]

THE CEREBRAL PALSISES OF CHILDREN. A Clinical Study from the Infirmary for Nervous Diseases, Philadelphia.

Demy 8vo, 5s.

KURRE W. OSTROM.

Instructor in Massage and Swedish Movements in the Philadelphia Polyclinic and College for Graduates in Medicine.

MASSAGE AND THE ORIGINAL SWEDISH MOVEMENTS; their application to various diseases of the body. Second Edition, with Illustrations, 12mo, 3s. 6d. nett.**CHARLES A. PARKER.**

Assistant Surgeon to the Hospital for Diseases of the Throat, Golden Square, London.

POST-NASAL GROWTHS. Demy 8vo, 4s. 6d. [Just published.]**ROBERT W. PARKER.**

Senior Surgeon to the East London Hospital for Children; Surgeon to the German Hospital.

DIPHTHERIA: ITS NATURE AND TREATMENT, WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE OPERATION, AFTER-TREATMENT AND COMPLICATIONS OF TRACHEOTOMY. Third Edition, with Illustrations, 8vo, 6s.**CONGENITAL CLUB-FOOT; ITS NATURE AND TREATMENT.** With special reference to the subcutaneous division of Tarsal Ligaments. 8vo, 7s. 6d.**LOUIS C. PARKES, M.D. LOND., D.P.H.**

Lecturer on Public Health at St. George's Hospital; Medical Officer of Health for Chelsea.

HYGIENE AND PUBLIC HEALTH. Third Edition, with numerous Illustrations, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]**INFECTIOUS DISEASES, NOTIFICATION AND PREVENTION.** Fcap. 8vo, roan, 4s. 6d.**JOHN S. PARRY, M.D.**

Obstetrician to the Philadelphia Hospital, Vice-President of the Obstetrical and Pathological Societies of Philadelphia, &c.

EXTRA-UTERINE PREGNANCY; Its Causes, Species, Pathological Anatomy, Clinical History, Diagnosis, Prognosis and Treatment. 8vo, 8s.

THEOPHILUS PARVIN, M.D.

Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Women and Children at the Jefferson Medical School.
LECTURES ON OBSTETRIC NURSING, Delivered at
the Training School for Nurses of the Philadelphia Hospital. Post 8vo,
2s. 6d.

E. RANDOLPH PEASLEE, M.D., LL.D.

*Late Professor of Gynaecology in the Medical Department of Dartmouth College; President
of New York Academy of Medicine, &c., &c.*

OVARIAN TUMOURS: Their Pathology, Diagnosis, and
Treatment, especially by Ovariotomy. Illustrations, roy. 8vo, 16s.

LESLIE PHILLIPS, M.D.

Surgeon to the Birmingham and Midland Skin and Lock Hospital.

**MEDICATED BATHS IN THE TREATMENT OF SKIN
DISEASES.** Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

HENRY G. PIFFARD, A.M., M.D.

*Clinical Professor of Dermatology, University of the City of New York; Surgeon in
Charge of the New York Dispensary for Diseases of the Skin, &c.*

**A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DISEASES OF THE
SKIN.** With 50 full page Original Plates and 33 Illustrations in the
Text, 4to, £2 12s. 6d. nett.

G. V. POORE, M.D., F.R.C.P.

*Professor of Medical Jurisprudence, University College; Assistant Physician to, and Physician
in charge of the Throat Department of, University College Hospital.*

**LECTURES ON THE PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF
THE MOUTH AND THROAT.** With an Appendix of Cases. 8vo,
3s. 6d.

R. DOUGLAS POWELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.

*Physician Extra-ordinary to H.M. the Queen; Physician to the Middlesex Hospital; Consulting
Physician to the Hospital for Consumption and Diseases of the Chest at Brompton.*

DISEASES OF THE LUNGS AND PLEURÆ, INCLUDING CONSUMPTION. Fourth Edition, with coloured plates and
wood engravings, 8vo, 18s. [Now ready]

**TABLE OF PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE
LUNGS:** with Note on International Nomenclature of Physical Signs
(reprinted from DR. POWELL'S "Diseases of the Lungs,"). On one
sheet, 6d.

HERBERT A. POWELL, M.A., M.D., M.CH. OXON., F.R.C.S.E.

THE SURGICAL ASPECT OF TRAUMATIC INSANITY. Medium 8vo, 2s. 6d.

URBAN PRITCHARD, M.D. EDIN., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Professor of Aural Surgery at King's College, London; Aural Surgeon to King's College Hospital; Senior Surgeon to the Royal Ear Hospital.

HANDBOOK OF DISEASES OF THE EAR FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. Second Edition, With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 5s. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

CHARLES W. PURDY, M.D. (QUEEN'S UNIV.)

Professor of Genito-Urinary and Renal Diseases in the Chicago Polyclinic, &c., &c.

BRIGHT'S DISEASE AND THE ALLIED AFFECTIONS OF THE KIDNEYS. With Illustrations, large 8vo, 8s. 6d.

DR. THEODOR PUSCHMANN.

Public Professor in Ordinary at the University of Vienna.

A HISTORY OF MEDICAL EDUCATION FROM THE MOST REMOTE TO THE MOST RECENT TIMES. Translated and edited by EVAN H. HARE, M.A. OXON., F.R.C.S. ENG., L.S.A. Demy 8vo, 21s.

C. H. RALFE, M.A., M.D. CANTAB., F.R.C.P. LOND.

Assistant Physician to the London Hospital; Examiner in Medicine to the University of Durham, &c., &c.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS AND URINARY DERANGEMENTS. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

FRANCIS H. RANKIN, M.D.

President of the New York Medical Society.

HYGIENE OF CHILDHOOD. Suggestions for the care of Children after the Period of Infancy to the completion of Puberty. Crown 8vo, 3s.

AMBROSE L. RANNEY, A.M., M.D.

Professor of the Anatomy and Physiology of the Nervous System in the New York Post-Graduate Medical School and Hospital, &c.

THE APPLIED ANATOMY OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. Second Edition, 238 Illustrations, large 8vo, 21s.

H. A. REEVES, F.R.C.S. EDIN.

Senior Assistant Surgeon and Teacher of Practical Surgery at the London Hospital; Surgeon to the Royal Orthopaedic Hospital.

BODILY DEFORMITIES AND THEIR TREATMENT: A HANDBOOK OF PRACTICAL ORTHOPÆDICS. Illustrations, crown 8vo, 8s. 6d. [LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

RALPH RICHARDSON, M.A., M.D.

Fellow of the College of Physicians, Edinburgh.

ON THE NATURE OF LIFE: An Introductory Chapter to Pathology. Second edition, revised and enlarged. Fcap. 4to, 10s. 6d.

W. RICHARDSON, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P.

REMARKS ON DIABETES, ESPECIALLY IN REFERENCE TO TREATMENT. Demy 8vo, 4s. 6d.

SAMUEL RIDEAL, D.S.C. (LOND.), F.I.C., F.C.S., F.G.S.
Fellow of University College, London.

I.

PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY; The Detection and Properties of some of the more important Organic Compounds. 12mo, 2s. 6d.

II.

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS, required at the First Examination of the Conjoint Examining Board in England. Foolscap 8vo, 2s.

J. JAMES RIDGE, M.D.
Medical Officer of Health, Enfield.

ALCOHOL AND PUBLIC HEALTH. Second Edition, crown 8vo, 2s.

E. A. RIDSDALE.
Associate of the Royal School of Mines.

COSMIC EVOLUTION; being Speculations on the Origin of our Environment. Fcap. 8vo, 3s.

SYDNEY RINGER, M.D., F.R.S.
Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine in University College; Physician to, and Professor of Clinical Medicine in, University College Hospital.

I.

A HANDBOOK OF THERAPEUTICS.
Twelfth Edition thoroughly revised, 8vo, 15s.

II.

ON THE TEMPERATURE OF THE BODY AS A MEANS OF DIAGNOSIS AND PROGNOSIS IN PHTHISIS. Second Edition, small 8vo, 2s. 6d.

R. LAWTON ROBERTS, M.D. LOND., D.P.H. CAMB., M.R.C.S. ENG.
Honorary Life Member of, and Lecturer and Examiner to, the St. John Ambulance Association.

I.

ILLUSTRATED LECTURES ON AMBULANCE WORK.
Fourth Edition, copiously Illustrated, crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

II.

ILLUSTRATED LECTURES ON NURSING AND HYGIENE. Second Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

FREDERICK T. ROBERTS, M.D., B.S.C., F.R.C.P.

Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics and of Clinical Medicine in University College; Physician to University College Hospital; Consulting Physician to Brompton Consumption Hospital, &c.

I.

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE.

Ninth Edition, with Illustrations, large 8vo, 21s. [Just Published.]

II.

THE OFFICIAL MATERIA MEDICA.

Second Edition, entirely rewritten in accordance with the latest British Pharmacopœia, fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

III.

NOTES ON THE ADDITIONS MADE TO THE BRITISH PHARMACOPŒIA, 1890. Fcap. 8vo, 1s.**D. B. ST. JOHN ROOSA, M.D.**

Professor of Diseases of the Eye and Ear in the New York Post-Graduate Medical School; Consulting Surgeon to the Brooklyn Eye and Ear Hospital, &c.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF THE EAR: Including a Sketch of Aural Anatomy and Physiology. Seventh Edition, Illustrated, large 8vo, 25s.**ROBSON ROOSE, M.D., LL.D., F.C.S.**

Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians in Edinburgh, &c.

I.

GOUT, AND ITS RELATIONS TO DISEASES OF THE LIVER AND KIDNEYS. Seventh Edition, crown 8vo, 4s. 6d. [Now ready.]

II.

NERVE PROSTRATION AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS OF DAILY LIFE. Second Edition, demy 8vo, 18s.

III.

LEPROSY AND ITS PREVENTION: as Illustrated by Norwegian Experience. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.**WILLIAM ROSE, M.B., B.S. LOND., F.R.C.S.**

Professor of Surgery in King's College, London, and Surgeon to King's College Hospital.

HARELIP AND CLEFT PALATE. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 6s.**BERNARD ROTH, F.R.C.S.**

Fellow of the Medical Society of London; Member of the Clinical and Pathological Societies and of the Medical Officers of Schools' Association.

THE TREATMENT OF LATERAL CURVATURE OF THE SPINE. With Photographic and other Illustrations, demy 8vo, 5s.

J. BURDON SANDERSON, M.D., LL.D., F.R.S.

Zodrell Professor of Physiology in University College, London.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE COURSE OF PRACTICAL EXERCISES IN PHYSIOLOGY. With the co-operation of F. J. M. PAGE, B.Sc., F.C.S.; W. NORTH, B.A., F.C.S., and AUG. WALLER, M.D. Demy 8vo, 3s. 6d.

W. H. O. SANKEY, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P.

Late Lecturer on Mental Diseases, University College, London, etc.

LECTURES ON MENTAL DISEASE. Second Edition, with coloured Plates, 8vo, 12s. 6d.

JOHN SAVORY.

Member of the Society of Apothecaries, London.

A COMPENDIUM OF DOMESTIC MEDICINE AND COMPANION TO THE MEDICINE CHEST: Intended as a source of easy reference for Clergymen, Master Mariners, and Travellers; and for Families resident at a distance from professional assistance. Tenth Edition, sm. 8vo, 5s.

DR. C. SCHIMMELBUSCH.

Privat-docent and Assistant Surgeon in Prof. v. Bergmann's University Clinic at Berlin.

THE ASEPTIC TREATMENT OF WOUNDS.

With a Preface by Professor DR. E. VON BERGMANN. Translated from the Second German Edition by A. T. RAKE, M.B., B.S. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG., Registrar and Pathologist to the East London Hospital for Children. With Illustrations, crown 8vo. [Nearly ready.]

E. SCHMIEGELOW, M.D.

Consulting Physician in Laryngology to the Municipal Hospital and Director of the Oto-Laryngological Department in the Polyclinic at Copenhagen.

ASTHMA: Especially in its Relation to Nasal Disease. Demy 8vo, 4s. 6d.

DR. B. S. SCHULTZE.

Professor of Gynecology; Director of the Lying-in Hospital, and of the Gynecological Clinic at Jena.

THE PATHOLOGY AND TREATMENT OF DISPLACEMENTS OF THE UTERUS. Translated by J. J. MACAN, M.A., M.R.C.S. and edited by A. V. MACAN, M.B., M.Ch., Master of the Rotunda Lying-in Hospital, Dublin. With 120 Illustrations, medium 8vo, 12s. 6d.

JOHN SHAW, M.D. LOND., M.R.C.P.
Obstetric Physician to the North-West London Hospital.

ANTISEPTICS IN OBSTETRIC NURSING. A Text-book for Nurses on the Application of Antiseptics to Gynaecology and Midwifery. Coloured plate and woodcuts, 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A. J. C. SKENE, M.D.

Professor of Gynecology in the Long Island College Hospital, Brooklyn, New York.

TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF WOMEN, FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. Second Edition, with coloured plates and 251 engravings, large 8vo, 28s.

J. LEWIS SMITH, M.D.

Physician to the New York Foundling Asylum; Clinical Professor of Diseases of Children in Bellevue Hospital Medical College.

A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF INFANCY AND CHILDHOOD. Seventh Edition, with Illustrations, large 8vo, 21s.

FRANCIS W. SMITH, M.B., B.S.

THE SALINE WATERS OF LEAMINGTON. Second Edit., with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 1s. nett.

JOHN KENT SPENDER, M.D. LOND.
Physician to the Royal Mineral Water Hospital, Bath.

THE EARLY SYMPTOMS AND THE EARLY TREATMENT OF OSTEO-ARTHRITIS, commonly called Rheumatoid Arthritis, with special reference to the Bath Thermal Waters. Sm. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

LOUIS STARR, M.D.

Physician to the Children's Hospital, Philadelphia; late Clinical Professor of Diseases of Children in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania.

HYGIENE OF THE NURSERY. Including the General Regimen and Feeding of Infants and Children; Massage, and the Domestic Management of the Ordinary Emergencies of Early Life. Third Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

JAMES STARTIN, M.B., M.R.C.S.
Senior Surgeon to the London Skin Hospital.

I.

A PHARMACOPŒIA FOR DISEASES OF THE SKIN. Third Edition, 32mo, 2s. 6d.

II.

LECTURES ON THE PARASITIC DISEASES OF THE SKIN. VEGETOID AND ANIMAL. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

W. E. STEAVENSON, M.D.

Late in charge of the Electrical Department in St. Bartholomew's Hospital,

AND

H. LEWIS JONES, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P.

Medical Officer in charge of the Electrical Department in St. Bartholomew's Hospital.

MEDICAL ELECTRICITY. A Practical Handbook for Students and Practitioners. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 9s.

[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

JOHN LINDSAY STEVEN, M.D.

Assistant Physician and Pathologist, Glasgow Royal Infirmary; Physician for Out-patients, Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Glasgow; Lecturer on Pathology, St. Mungo's and Queen Margaret Colleges, Glasgow, &c.

THE PATHOLOGY OF MEDIASTINAL TUMOURS. With special reference to Diagnosis. With Plates, 8vo, 4s. 6d.

LEWIS A. STIMSON, B.A., M.D.

Surgeon to the Presbyterian and Bellevue Hospitals; Professor of Clinical Surgery in the Medical Faculty of the University of the City of New York, &c.

A MANUAL OF OPERATIVE SURGERY.

Second Edition, with three hundred and forty-two Illustrations, post 8vo, 10s. 6d.

ADOLF STRÜMPPELL.

Professor and Director of the Medical Clinique at Erlangen.

A TEXT-BOOK OF MEDICINE FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. Second Edition translated from the German by Dr. H. F. VICKERY and Dr. P. C. KNAPP, with Editorial Notes by Dr. F. C. SHATTUCK, Visiting Physician to the Massachusetts General Hospital, etc. Complete in one large vol., with 119 Illustrations, imp. 8vo, 28s.

JUKES DE STYRAP, M.K.Q.C.P., ETC.

Physician-Extraordinary, late Physician in Ordinary, to the Salop Infirmary; Consulting Physician to the South Salop and Montgomeryshire Infirmaries, etc.

I.

THE YOUNG PRACTITIONER: WITH PRACTICAL HINTS AND INSTRUCTIVE SUGGESTIONS, AS SUBSIDIARY AIDS, FOR HIS GUIDANCE ON ENTERING INTO PRIVATE PRACTICE. Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d. nett.

II.

A CODE OF MEDICAL ETHICS: WITH GENERAL AND SPECIAL RULES FOR THE GUIDANCE OF THE FACULTY AND THE PUBLIC IN THE COMPLEX RELATIONS OF PROFESSIONAL LIFE. Third Edition, demy 8vo, 3s. nett.

III.

MEDICO-CHIRURGICAL TARIFFS.

Fourth Edition, scap. 4to, revised and enlarged, 2s. nett.

IV.

THE YOUNG PRACTITIONER: HIS CODE AND TARIFF. Being the above three works in one volume. Demy 8vo 10s. 6d. nett.

C. W. SUCKLING, M.D. LOND., M.R.C.P.

Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics at the Queen's College, Physician to the Queen's Hospital, Birmingham, etc.

I.

ON THE DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES OF THE BRAIN, SPINAL CORD, AND NERVES. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

II.

ON THE TREATMENT OF DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

JOHN BLAND SUTTON, F.R.C.S.

Lecturer on Comparative Anatomy, Senior Demonstrator of Anatomy, and Assistant Surgeon to the Middlesex Hospital; Erasmus Wilson Lecturer, Royal College of Surgeons, England.

LIGAMENTS: THEIR NATURE AND MORPHOLOGY.

With numerous Illustrations, post 8vo, 4s. 6d.

HENRY R. SWANZY, A.M., M.B., F.R.C.S.I.

Examiner in Ophthalmic Surgery in the University of Dublin, and in the Royal University of Ireland; Surgeon to the National Eye and Ear Infirmary, and Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Adelaide Hospital, Dublin.

A HANDBOOK OF THE DISEASES OF THE EYE AND THEIR TREATMENT. Fourth Edition, Illustrated with wood-engravings, coloured plates, colour tests, etc., small 8vo, 1os. 6d.

EUGENE S. TALBOT, M.D., D.D.S.

Professor of Dental Surgery in the Woman's Medical College; Lecturer on Dental Pathology and Surgery in Rush Medical College, Chicago.

IRREGULARITIES OF THE TEETH AND THEIR TREATMENT. With 152 Illustrations, royal 8vo, 1os. 6d.

ALBERT TAYLOR.

Associate Sanitary Institute; Chief Sanitary Inspector to the Vestry of St. George, Hanover Square, etc.

THE SANITARY INSPECTOR'S HANDBOOK.

With Illustrations, cr. 8vo., 5s.

H. COUPLAND TAYLOR, M.D.

Fellow of the Royal Meteorological Society.

WANDERINGS IN SEARCH OF HEALTH, OR MEDICAL AND METEOROLOGICAL NOTES ON VARIOUS FOREIGN HEALTH RESORTS. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 6s.

J. C. THOROWGOOD, M.D.

Assistant Physician to the City of London Hospital for Diseases of the Chest.

**THE CLIMATIC TREATMENT OF CONSUMPTION
AND CHRONIC LUNG DISEASES.** Third Edition, post 8vo, 3s. 6d..

D. HACK TUKE, M.D., LL.D.

Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, London.

**THE INSANE IN THE UNITED STATES AND
CANADA.** Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d.

DR. R. ULTZMANN.

ON STERILITY AND IMPOTENCE IN MAN. Translated from the German with notes and additions by ARTHUR COOPER, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., Surgeon to the Westminster General Dispensary. With Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

W. H. VAN BUREN, M.D., LL.D.

Professor of Surgery in the Bellevue Hospital Medical College.

DISEASES OF THE RECTUM: And the Surgery of the Lower Bowel. Second Edition, with Illustrations, 8vo, 14s.

ALFRED VOGEL, M.D.

Professor of Clinical Medicine in the University of Dorpat, Russia.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF CHILDREN. Third Edition, translated and edited by H. RAPHAEL, M.D., from the Eighth German Edition, illustrated by six lithographic plates, part coloured, royal 8vo, 18s.

A. DUNBAR WALKER, M.D., C.M.

THE PARENT'S MEDICAL NOTE BOOK.

Oblong post 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

A. J. WALL, M.D. LOND.

Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons of England; of the Medical Staff of H. M. Indian Army (Retired List).

**ASIATIC CHOLERA: ITS HISTORY, PATHOLOGY,
AND MODERN TREATMENT.** Demy 8vo, 6s.

JOHN RICHARD WARDELL, M.D. EDIN., F.R.C.P. LOND.

Late Consulting Physician to the General Hospital Tunbridge Wells.

CONTRIBUTIONS TO PATHOLOGY AND THE PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Medium 8vo, 21s.

W. SPENCER WATSON, B.M. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Surgeon to the Throat Department of the Great Northern Hospital; Senior Surgeon to the Royal South London Ophthalmic Hospital.

I.

DISEASES OF THE NOSE AND ITS ACCESSORY CAVITIES. Second Edition, with Illustrations, demy 8vo, 12s. 6d.

II.

THE ANATOMY AND DISEASES OF THE LACHRYMAL PASSAGES. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 2s. 6d.

III.

EYEBALL-TENSION: Its Effects on the Sight and its Treatment. With woodcuts, p. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

IV.

ON ABSCESS AND TUMOURS OF THE ORBIT.
Post 8vo, 2s. 6d.

FRANCIS H. WELCH, F.R.C.S.

Surgeon Major, A.M.D.

ENTERIC FEVER: as Illustrated by Army Data at Home and Abroad, its Prevalence and Modifications, *Ætiology, Pathology and Treatment.* 8vo, 5s. 6d.

W. WYNN WESTCOTT, M.B.

Deputy Coroner for Central Middlesex.

SUICIDE; its History, Literature, Jurisprudence, and Prevention. Crown 8vo, 6s.

FRANK J. WETHERED, M.D.

Medical Registrar to the Middlesex Hospital, and Demonstrator of Practical Medicine in the Middlesex Hospital Medical School; late Assistant Physician to the City of London Chest Hospital, Victoria Park.

MEDICAL MICROSCOPY. A Guide to the Use of the Microscope in Medical Practice. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, gs.

[LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.]

E. G. WHITTLE, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Senior Surgeon to the Royal Alexandra Hospital for Sick Children, Brighton.

CONGESTIVE NEURASTHENIA, OR INSOMNIA AND NERVE DEPRESSION. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

SIR JOHN WILLIAMS, BART., M.D., F.R.C.P.
Consulting Physician to University College Hospital; Physician Accoucheur to H.R.H.
Princess Beatrice, &c.

CANCER OF THE UTERUS: Being the Harveian Lectures for 1886. Illustrated with Lithographic Plates, royal 8vo, 10s. 6d.

E. F. WILLOUGHBY, M.D. LOND.

THE NATURAL HISTORY OF SPECIFIC DISEASES OR STUDIES IN CAETIOLOGY, IMMUNITY, AND PROPHYLAXIS. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

E. T. WILSON, M.B. OXON., F.R.C.P. LOND.

Physician to the Cheltenham General Hospital; Associate Metropolitan Association of Medical Officers of Health.

DISINFECTANTS AND ANTISEPTICS: HOW TO USE THEM. In Packets of one doz. price 1s., by post 1s. id.

[Just thoroughly revised.]

DR. F. WINCKEL.

Formerly Professor and Director of the Gynaecological Clinic at the University of Rostock.

THE PATHOLOGY AND TREATMENT OF CHILD-BED: A Treatise for Physicians and Students. Translated from the Second German Edition, with many additional notes by the Author, by J. R. CHADWICK, M.D. 8vo, 14s.

BERTRAM C. A. WINDLE, M.A., M.D. DUBL.

Professor of Anatomy in the Queen's College, Birmingham; Examiner in Anatomy in the Universities of Cambridge and Durham.

A HANDBOOK OF SURFACE ANATOMY AND LANDMARKS. Illustrated, post 8vo, 3s. 6d.

EDWARD WOAKES, M.D. LOND.

Senior Aural Surgeon and Lecturer on Aural Surgery at the London Hospital; Surgeon to the London Throat Hospital.

I.
ON DEAFNESS, GIDDINESS AND NOISES IN THE HEAD. Third Edition, with Illustrations, 8vo. [In preparation.]

II.
POST-NASAL CATARRH, AND DISEASES OF THE NOSE CAUSING DEAFNESS. With Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

III.
NASAL POLYPUS: WITH NEURALGIA, HAY-FEVER, AND ASTHMA, IN RELATION TO ETHMOIDITIS. With Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

HENRY WOODS, B.A., F.G.S.

ELEMENTARY PALÆONTOLOGY—INVERTEBRATE. Crown 8vo, 6s.

[CAMBRIDGE NATURAL SCIENCE MANUALS.]

DAVID YOUNG, M.C., M.B., M.D.

Licentiate of the Royal College of Physicians, Edinburgh; Licentiate of the Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh, etc.

ROME IN WINTER AND THE TUSCAN HILLS IN SUMMER. A CONTRIBUTION TO THE CLIMATE OF ITALY. Small 8vo, 6s.

HERMANN VON ZEISSL, M.D.

Late Professor at the Imperial Royal University of Vienna.

OUTLINES OF THE PATHOLOGY AND TREATMENT OF SYPHILIS AND ALLIED VENEREAL DISEASES. Second Edition, revised by M. von ZEISSL, M.D., Privat-Docent for Diseases of the Skin and Syphilis at the Imperial Royal University of Vienna. Translated, with Notes, by H. RAPHAEL, M.D., Attending Physician for Diseases of Genito-Urinary Organs and Syphilis, Bellevue Hospital, Out-Patient Department. Large 8vo, 18s.

OSWALD ZIEMSEN, M.D.

Knight of the Iron Cross, and of the Prussian Order of the Crown.

THE TREATMENT OF CONSTITUTIONAL SYPHILIS. Post 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Lewis's Diet Charts.

Price 6s. 6d. per packet of 100 charts, by post 6s. 10*½*d.

A suggestive set of diet tables for the use of Physicians, for handing to patients after consultation, modified to suit individual requirements, for Albuminuria, Alcoholism, Anæmia and Debility, Constipation, Diabetes, Diarrœa, Dyspepsia, Fevers, Gout, Nervous Diseases, Obesity, Phthisis, Rheumatism (chronic), with blank chart for other diseases.

Lewis's Four-Hour Temperature Charts.

25s. per 1000, 14s. per 500, 3s. 6d. per 100, 2s. per 50, 1s. per 20, carriage free.

This form has been drawn up to meet the requirements of a chart on which the temperature and other observations can be recorded at intervals of four hours. They will be found most convenient in hospital and private practice. Each chart will last a week.

Clinical Charts for Temperature Observations, etc.

Arranged by W. RIGDEN, M.R.C.S. 50s. per 1000, 28s. per 500, 15s. per 250, 7s. per 100, or 1s. per dozen.

Each Chart is arranged for four weeks, and is ruled at the back for making notes of Cases; they are convenient in size, and are suitable both for hospital and private practice.

Lewis's Clinical Chart, specially designed for use with the Visiting List. This Temperature Chart is arranged for four weeks and measures 6 x 3 inches. 30s. per 1000, 16s. 6d. per 500, 3s. 6d. per 100, 1s. per 25, 6d. per 12.

Lewis's Nursing Chart.

25s. per 1000, 14s. per 500, 3s. 6d. per 100, 2s. per 50, or 1s. per 20.

These Charts afford a ready method of recording the progress of the case from day to day.

Beards to hold the Charts, price 1s.

Chart for Recording the Examination of Urine.

40s. per 1000; 25s. per 500; 15s. per 250; 7s. 6d. per 100; 1s. per 10.

These Charts are designed for the use of Medical Men, Analysts, and others making examinations of the urine of patients, and afford a very ready and convenient method of recording the results of the examination.

LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.

Under this title a Series of Monographs is published, embracing the various branches of Medicine and Surgery. The volumes are written by well-known Hospital Physicians and Surgeons, recognized as authorities in the subjects of which they treat. The works are of a THOROUGHLY PRACTICAL nature, calculated to meet the requirements of the practitioner and student, and to present the most recent information in a compact form.

DISEASES OF THE NOSE AND THROAT.

By F. de HAVILLAND HALL, M.D., F.R.C.P. Lond., Physician to Out-patients, and in charge of the Throat Department at the Westminster Hospital. With coloured plates and wood engravings, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. [Now ready.]

PUBLIC HEALTH LABORATORY WORK.

By HENRY R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S., Instructor in the Hygienic Laboratory, University College, and Assistant to Professor Corfield in the Public Health Department, University College. With Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

MEDICAL MICROSCOPY: A GUIDE TO THE USE OF THE MICROSCOPE IN MEDICAL PRACTICE.

By FRANK J. WETHERED, M.D., M.R.C.P., Demonstrator of Practical Medicine in the Middlesex Hospital Medical School, &c. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 9s.

MEDICAL ELECTRICITY. A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS.

By W. E. STEAVENSON, M.D., and H. LEWIS JONES, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P., Medical Officer in charge of the Electrical Department in St. Bartholomew's Hospital. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 9s.

HYGIENE AND PUBLIC HEALTH.

By LOUIS C. PARKES, M.D., D.P.H. LOND. UNIV., Fellow of the Sanitary Institute, and Member of the Board of Examiners. Third edition, with numerous Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

MANUAL OF OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE.

By C. HIGGENS, F.R.C.S., Ophthalmic Surgeon to Guy's Hospital; Lecturer on Ophthalmology at Guy's Hospital Medical School. Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 6s.

A PRACTICAL TEXTBOOK OF THE DISEASES OF WOMEN.

By A. H. N. LEWERS, M.D. Lond., M.R.C.P., Obstetric Physician to the London Hospital, etc. Fourth Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

ANÆSTHETICS THEIR USES AND ADMINISTRATION.

By DUDLEY W. BUXTON, M.D., B.S., M.R.C.P., Administrator of Anæsthetics and Lecturer in University College Hospital, etc. Second Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 5s.

TREATMENT OF DISEASE IN CHILDREN.

By ANGEL MONEY, M.D., F.R.C.P., late Assistant Physician to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street. Second edition, cr. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

ON FEVERS: THEIR HISTORY, ETIOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.

By ALEXANDER COLLIE, M.D. Aberd., M.R.C.P. Illustrated with Coloured Plates, crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

HANDBOOK OF DISEASES OF THE EAR FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS.

By URBAN PRITCHARD, M.D. Edin., F.R.C.S. Eng., Professor of Aural Surgery at King's College, London. Second Edition, with Illustrations, crown 8vo, 5s.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS AND URINARY DERANGEMENTS.

By C. H. RALFE, M.A., M.D. Cantab., F.R.C.P., Assistant Physician to the London Hospital; Examiner in Medicine to the University of Durham, etc., etc. Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

DENTAL SURGERY FOR MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS OF MEDICINE.

By ASHLEY W. BARRETT, M.B. Lond., M.R.C.S., L.D.S., Dental Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Dental Surgery in the Medical School of, the London Hospital. Second edition, with Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

BODILY DEFORMITIES AND THEIR TREATMENT: A HANDBOOK OF PRACTICAL ORTHOPÆDICS.

By H. A. REEVES, F.R.C.S. Edin., Senior Assistant Surgeon and Teacher of Practical Surgery at the London Hospital, etc. With numerous Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

. Further volumes will be announced in due course.

THE NEW SYDENHAM SOCIETY'S PUBLICATIONS.*President* :—T. BRYANT, Esq., F.R.C.S.*Honorary Secretary* :—JONATHAN HUTCHINSON, Esq., F.R.S.*Treasurer* :—W. SEDGWICK SAUNDERS, M.D., F.S.A.*Secretary* :—J. HUTCHINSON, JUN., Esq., F.R.C.S.**Annual Subscription, One Guinea.**

The Society issues translations of recent standard works by continental authors on subjects of general interest to the profession.

Amongst works recently issued are "Sir William Gull's Collected Works," "Laveran's Paludism," "Pozzi's Gynecology," "Flügge's Micro-Organisms," "Cohnheim's Pathology," "Henoch's Children," "Spiegelberg's Midwifery," "Hirsch's Historical and Geographical Pathology," "Ewald's Disorders of Digestion," works by Charcot, Duchenne, Begbie, Billroth, Graves, Koch, Hebra, Guttmann, etc.

The Society also has in hand an *Atlas of Pathology with Coloured Plates*, and a valuable and exhaustive "Lexicon of Medicine and the Allied Sciences."

The Annual Report, with full list of works published, and all further information will be sent on application.

PERIODICAL WORKS PUBLISHED BY H. K. LEWIS.

THE BRITISH JOURNAL OF DERMATOLOGY. Edited by William Anderson, H. G. Brooke, H. Radcliffe Crocker, T. Colcott Fox, Stephen Mackenzie, Malcolm Morris, J. F. Payne and J. J. Pringle. Published monthly, 1s. Annual Subscription, 12s. post free.

THE MEDICAL MAGAZINE. Edited by George J. Wilson, M.A., M.B. Published monthly, 2s. Annual subscription, 20s. post free.

THE NEW YORK MEDICAL JOURNAL. A Weekly Review of Medicine. Annual Subscription, Thirty Shillings, post free.

THE THERAPEUTIC GAZETTE. A Monthly Journal, devoted to the Science of Pharmacology, and to the introduction of New Therapeutic Agents. Edited by Dr. R. M. Smith. Annual Subscription, 10s., post free.

THE GLASGOW MEDICAL JOURNAL. Published Monthly. Annual Subscription, 20s., post free. Single numbers, 2s. each.

LIVERPOOL MEDICO-CHIRURGICAL JOURNAL, including the Proceedings of the Liverpool Medical Institution. Published twice yearly, 3s. 6d. each number.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS OF PHILADELPHIA. Volumes I. to VI., 8vo, 10s. 6d. each.

MIDDLESEX HOSPITAL, REPORTS OF THE MEDICAL, SURGICAL, AND Pathological Registrars for 1883 to 1892. Demy 8vo, 2s. 6d. *nett* each volume.

ARCHIVES OF PEDIATRICS. A Monthly Journal, devoted to the Diseases of Infants and Children. Edited by Dr. W. P. Watson. Annual Subscription, 12s. 6d., post free.

* * * MR. LEWIS is in constant communication with the leading publishing firms in America, and has transactions with them for the sale of his publications in that country. Advantageous arrangements are made in the interests of Authors for the publishing of their works in the United States.

Mr. Lewis's publications can be procured of all Booksellers in any part of the world.



*The University Library
Leeds*

*Staff and Research
Students*

Date issued

Other Readers

Date due for return

23 JUL 1940

